AMADIS OF GAUL

VASCO LOBEIRA

A NOVEL OF CHIVALRY OF THE 14th CENTURY

Revised and Reworked
by Garci Rodríguez de Montalvo
prior to 1505

Translated from the Putative Princeps
of Saragossa, 1508

Contents

Chapters:

1. Esplandián at the foot of the crag of the Enchantress Damsel
2. Esplandián and the lively discussion he had with Sargil
3. The author adds that free will has greater power than the planets
4. Esplandián and Sargil each climbed into a boat steered by a mute
5. Esplandián's discussion with a hermit on a high mountain
6. Esplandián killed three giants and freed King Lisuarte from prison
7. Giant Matroco agreed to a contest of arms with the Black Knight
8. Master Helisabad entered the castle
9. Queen Arcabona confesses that she captured King Lisuarte
10. Giant Matroco expired and Queen Arcabona threw herself into the sea

11. King Lisuarte had the dead buried
12. Master Helisabad went to visit the Black Knight
13. Damsel Carmela went to see the Black Knight
14. Damsel Carmela took the knight's sword secretly to the alcázar
15. King Lisuarte accompanied Carmela to the hermitage
16. Why the story refers so often to Damsel Carmela
17. Talanque and Ambor de Gadel tell the king about their exploits
18. The king ordered the stories of these feats of arms written down
19. A damsel gave Esplandián some arms and a horse
20. Why there were crowns on Esplandián's arms
21. Urganda's damsel left with the two mutes in the little vessel
22. King Lisuarte departed and Esplandián sent a message to Leonorina
23. The Great Serpent sailed without being steered by sailors
24. The joy and happiness Amadís, Agrajes, and the others had over the arrival of the king and Esplandián
25. King Lisuarte went to London to see the queen
26. Don Galaor declared why the knights invited Esplandián to joust
27. The king's arrival in his kingdom and Esplandián's departure
28. Esplandián and a knight in a battle that left them close to death
29. Amadís declared to the king why he had tested his son
30. King Garinto of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent rescued Urganda
31. Urganda took the prince to the emperor of Rome
32. The strange adventures that happened to the novice knights
33. A sea storm threw the valiant Frandalo and his ship on shore
34. Frandalo surrendered to Maneli's mercy
35. These knights asked the damsel to tell them what news she had
36. The knights accompanied the damsel to the palace in Constantinople
37. Damsel Carmela gave Princess Leonorina a ring, and the emperor ordered Amadís's son to present himself in the palace
38. The emperor ordered that Carmela be treated with high honors
39. Leonorina was wounded by Cupid's arrows and spilled sweet tears
40. The emperor refused to allow the knights and Carmela to depart
41. The emperor sent Frandalo and the knights to aid those on the mountain
42. Esplandián received permission to go to Firm Island
43. Esplandián defeated two frightening and savage giants
44. Esplandián ordered the liberated prisoners to go to Constantinople
45. Esplandián and Norandel went to see Master Helisabad

46. Norandel and Esplandián told Master Helisabad their adventures
47. Esplandián saw the wonders on Santa María Island
48. Esplandián gives reasons why he could defeat his father Amadís
49. Esplandián entered Constantinople aboard the Great Serpent Caravel
50. The Great Serpent Caravel arrived near Forbidden Mountain
51. Carmela wanted Esplandián to know nothing about her
52. Frandalo was baptised and chose Esplandián and Norandel as his godfathers
53. The exchange between the king of Dacia and Esplandián
54. Esplandián and Frandalo entered the fortress together
55. Talanque told how the enemies entered the mountain
56. Armato, king of Persia, decided to go see the Great Serpent Caravel
57. The extraordinary things Esplandián and Frandalo did against Armato
58. The Turks burned Frandalo's great fleet and angered Esplandián
59. The reverence shown the king by Frandalo
60. Carmela gave the good knight a message and all saw the emperor's ensign come across the sea
61. The reception Esplandián and Frandalo gave the emperor's nephew
62. King Lisuarte decided to follow the kingdom of heaven
63. King Lisuarte left his daughter and Amadís to inherit his kingdom
64. Lisuarte and Brisena retired to Miraflores Castle
65. The principal lords of Britain swore allegiance to Amadís
66. The favors King Amadís gave King Lisuarte's knights
67. Queen Oriana gave birth and her subjects celebrated the event
68. King Amadís sent aid to his son Esplandián on Forbidden Mountain
69. Frandalo affirmed loyalty to the new holy faith he adopted
70. Esplandián's speech to Gastiles in Frandalo's presence
71. Frandalo, Esplandián, and Gastiles counselled with each other
72. Esplandián and Frandalo arrived near Villa Alfarín and found Infanta Heliaxa
73. Esplandián and Frandalo saw their men engaged in battle
74. The knight and Frandalo continued to fight while trapped in the town
75. Esplandián sent for Infanta Heliaxa
76. Frandalo implored the good knight to free the infanta and his cousin
77. Infante Alforax came to the infanta's rescue near Venturous Spring

78. Gastiles saw a caravel approach and it disembarked in Constantinople
79. Frandalo received the knights of Great Britain
80. Infanta Leonorina gave a gruff answer to Esplandián's just request
81. Esplandián sallied forth following advice by Frandalo the Strong
82. Frandalo sent his nephew Belleriz to fight at Xanthinomela
83. Belleriz and his companions engaged in a terrible slaughter
84. Esplandián and his companions returned safely to Villa Alfarín
85. Cupid forced the author to turn his hand to the things of love
86. The change Esplandián felt when informed about Leonorina's reply
87. Garinto gave the distressed knight good consolation
88. A storm forced Esplandián to land on the Enchantress Damsel's crag
89. Esplandián and his companions climbed up the crag
90. Esplandián opened the enchanted treasure chamber
91. Carmela and others took the treasure to the caravel, and the knight sent Garinto to the emperor's daughter
92. Garinto was lost for forty days
93. Carmela found a remedy for the knight to speak to Leonorina
94. Esplandián arrived secretly in the port of Constantinople
95. About love, who presented the lover before the proud princess
96. The infanta opened the tomb and they spent the night talking
97. The handsome knight departed from the beautiful princess
98. The author brings this work to an end without conclusion
99. A strange adventure forced the author to return to this work
100. The sea's fortunes threw Esplandián into an unknown port
101. The holy group found Melía, a female magician
102. Esplandián and Frandalo won Villa Galacia from the Turks

EXCLAMATION BY THE AUTHOR

103. Infante Alforax consoled those who retreated to Ctesifonte
104. Esplandián requested that the emperor send reinforcements
105. Rich presents were sent to Constantinople, and the captives were received by the emperor's daughter
106. The emperor's admiral took a great fleet to the port of Galacia
107. Frandalo ordered fighting men to disembark, and the Great Serpent Caravel arrived in port without aid from the wind
108. Esplandián and others went to see Urganda the Unknown
109. Esplandián liberated the common folk by following Scipion's example
110. The amusing battle both female magicians fought
111. Esplandián, Urganda, and the knights took Melía to Villa Galacia

112. Carmela presented the prisoners to Heliaxa in Ctesifonte
113. Two valiant men defeated three fierce giants
114. The Turks lost their lives to the water and the sword
115. Esplandián and his companions entered Galacia
116. Urganda the Unknown ordered the knights outfitted
117. Forty novice knights errant were armed by old Urganda
118. Norandel and Queen Menoresa became captives of inflamed love
119. Urganda the Unknown declared what prophecy was found in the tomb
120. Fortune gave its wheel a spin, and two dragons flew off with Urganda
121. The dragons placed King Armato and Urganda in Ctesifonte
122. King Armato thanked the gods for freeing him from his enemies
123. A letter by king Armato sent to all of paganism
124. Pagan kings met in the seaport of Ténedon
125. Belleriz, Talanque, and Maneli went to discover news
126. The knight was informed that the seas were covered with pagan ships
127. Esplandián had the emperor informed about the armada
128. Esplandián wrote letters after the armada weighed anchor
129. Letter to the emperor of Rome
130. Another letter sent to his uncle Don Florestán, king of Sardinia
131. Esplandián sent Gandalín to ask for help from kings and grandees
132. Esplandián's letter to his father
133. The emperor of Rome and Don Florestán reached an agreement
134. Gandalín presented letters to King Amadís and Queen Oriana
135. The mother sent the father to guide the good son
136. King Lisuarte's and Queen Brisena's feelings about Esplandián
137. Amadís informed his father and others about Esplandián's need
138. The letter King Amadís sent his brother Don Galaor
139. The letter King Amadís sent his father, King Perión de Gaula
140. King Amadís married Gandalín to the damsel from Denmark
141. Amadís informed Don Gasquilán, Don Bruneo, and Don Cuadragante
142. King Amadís's letter to Gasquilán, king of Sweden
143. Another letter from Amadís to Don Bruneo and Don Cuadragante
144. The knight Handro departed with letters Amadís gave him
145. The Turks arrived in the port of Constantinople while Norandel and Frandalo left the field covered with dead

146. The Turks retreated and the emperor's troops withdrew
147. The holy banner was surrounded by pagan forces
148. The letter Radiaro de Liquía sent Esplandián
149. The crusaders accepted the challenge that Radiaro issued
150. The note that the crusaders sent Radiaro, soldan of Liquía
151. One side and the other agreed upon a battle of ten against ten
152. Norandel named the nine knights to enter the battle with him
153. Infidels and faithful killed each other
154. The first combat against the noble city took place on land and sea
155. Night came and Frandalo and his forces withdrew to the city
156. The knights were most bloodied after their cruel fights
157. Succor Calafía brought to Constantinople to help the Turks
158. Griffins seized the men they perceived
159. The author's exhortation to Christians about the griffins' obedience
160. Calafía wreaks great havoc with her Amazonian stand
161. Many caravels met at Firm Island and sailed to succor the emperor
162. Amadís called Esplandián from Forbidden Mountain
163. Calafía and the Turk wrote a letter of fury to the king of Britain
164. A letter from the soldan of Liquía and Calafía to Amadís and Esplandián
165. Calafía went to view the Serpent Knight as woman to man
166. Radiaro and the Amazon queen left the battlefield vanquished
167. The great Christian kings deployed their battalions
168. The first battle fought against the Turks on land and at sea
169. Fifty kings battled against the city
170. The sky was rent with laments that are the stuff of myth
171. The pagans reached a decision concerning the next battle
172. The holy team carried off the victory, but two kings lost their lives
173. Frandalo captured thirty of the enemy's xebecs
174. The Turks reacted to the rout by fleeing to their ships
175. The emperor had the two aged kings buried with full honors
176. Messages were sent to all the kings about bans of marriage
177. The emperor married his daughter to Esplandián
178. Talanque and Calafía were married and the newlyweds sailed away
179. Emperor Esplandián married Norandel to Menoresa
180. The Serpentine Caravel hid from everyone with raging might
181. The Christian kings returned to their kingdoms, and Urganda returned to Unfound Island
182. Esplandián the emperor conquered Ctesifonte and dubbed two knights
183. Amadís and others were summoned by Urganda to Firm Island where they were enchanted
184. The Author summarizes what occurred after they were enchanted

THE PRINTER TO THE READER.

Courteous Reader,

IT is not long since I printed the History of *Palladine* of *England*, in the *Advertisement* whereof I promised the sudden publishing of this which is now perfected, and I now intend to proceed in the performance of what I therein further promised, which was, not onely to proceed in the printing and publishing of more Parts of this History, but also in publishing that so much desired, and long-expected Piece, called, *The Second Part of* Don Bellianis *of*

Greece, which I now assure you is in the Press, and will be finished about a month hence. And the Author of that hath proceeded, not onely in continuing that History in a third Part, which I am confident will be very pleasant and delightful, but also in translating more parts of this excellent History, which shall all be published with all convenient expedition. And now, Gentle Reader, hoping that the Book-seller and my self shall receive so good Encouragement in these Pieces already published, that we shall not have occasion to repent our selves of our pains, cost, and trouble, which is all intended for thy delight, I remain thine in all friendship,

T. F.

THE

A48.F

The Translators EPISTLE TO THE READER.

I Have published this ancient History (Gentle Reader) partly, at the intreatie of some of my familiar friends, and partly, through the desire which I had to put to light, so worthy a worke. There hath been as yet, but five parts thereof published in English, although, there are to the number of twentie four parts thereof in most of other Languages. Wherefore thinking it in my apprehension, as well worthy the translation as any other Histories of the like nature, I did so far presume upon my owne abilities (and to benefit my selfe in the Language) as to begin the Translation thereof: Yet I had not the least intent to have it come into the publique view. But being (as I have said) instigated and earnestly perswaded thereunto, I have now presumed to publish the same. Not having so much confidence of my owne weak

abilities, as to imagine, that it will be accepted of and liked by all, but rather hoping that some will looke on it, and value it not according to the worth, but the good will of the writer. As for such, as either rashly condemne without judgment, or lavishly dislike without advice: I esteeme them like feathers, soone dispersst with every blast, accounting their discontent my content, not caring to please every Momus.

All that I desire is, to have the good opinion of the well-affected to Learning, and that I hope (Gentle Reader) you will favourably afford me; which if you doe, I shall account my self much obliged to you, my labor and time well imploied, and my selfe (by my future engagements to my ability, in somewhat of the like nature, or some more worthy work) bound to be alwayes ready, and willing to requite your kindnesse.

But if I shall find the contrary, (and that I too boldly building on your courtesies, be wounded with repentance, and brought to despaire) then you will render me altogether useless, not daring to venture any more being blasted in my first designes. Thus hoping that you will peruse this (as an earnest of my further travailes) with so favourable an aspect, as that I may be emboldned to proceed in the following parts of this History,

I rest

Yours as you like him

Francis Kirkman Jun.

To the ingenious Translator F. K.

OUr Love is well, our labour ill plac't, since
Thou canst not stand in need of our defence,
Our weak Pygmie-defence, in whose just right
So many valiant Knights are proud to fight.
Champions thou canst not want, who writes their glory
They'r bound in honor to protect thy Story.
Come hither then yee *Heroes* of our age
Who have this ten years acted on Wars stage,
Compare your deeds with ours, and blushing see
Your selves out done in feats of Chivalrie.
What ist, you ever did, deserves a name
In competition set with *Perions* fame?
Great *Perion*, who his Prowesse doth display
Far and as freely as *Hyperion* day.
By which our *Perions* deserts appear
Great as *Hyperions*, for the *golden Sphere.*
In the next Orbe of Worthies *Lisvart* hight,
Vaillides and *Quedragant* shine bright:
But what surpasseth all, and's above words
There's no oppression followes our Knights swords.
We know no plunder we, no itch of Sway,
Our aime is onely honor, and the day.
We for oppressed ones hold forth a shield,
Gyants to us are Pygmies and must yield
But 'tis in vaine particulars to write
Concerning this adventure, or that fight:
This onely I will say, they doubly live,
One life their sword, a new thy pen doth give.
In one atchievment thou hast all out-gone
Even *Amadis* himself, and his bold son:
For *Amadis*, *Brittain's* King, so long a *Gaule*
Thou hast to *Brittain* brought from Language-thrall.
Who then dislikes thy Book, we have a hull
To ship away to th' land of —— such a gull.

Vid. ch. 2.

Thomas Snelling Gent.

Upon the Tranſlation of the ſixth Book of AMADIS de GAULE, *performed by his loving friend* F. K.

AS in a Mirror here you may behold
Succeſſefull Virtue, joyfully to hold
A Crowne of Laurell; whilſt dejected Vice
Vanquiſh't and trampl'd on, receives the price
Of feigned pleaſures; lively ſetting forth
The latter's vileneſs, and the former's worth.
Both thus rewarded, we are hereby taught
To imitate the good, t'avoid the naught.
This Paragon, which France of yore did boaſt,
Was no where to be found, but in her coaſt,
Which *France* did ſo long time monopolize,
Is here preſented (Readers) to your eyes
In Engliſh dreſſe, which if he chance to finde
Your cenſure Candid, eetertainment kinde,
May thereby be provoked to deſire,
Her ſiſters preſence in the ſame attire.
And now, Ingenious *Franck*, I muſt be bold
(Avoiding adulation) to unfold
In part thy merits, whoſe induſtrious paines
Yield's us ſuch gainefull pleaſure, pleaſing gaines.
This *Gallick* Lady is by thy Tranſlation
So neatly deck't, and dreſt in the Engliſh faſhion
That (though thy unripe years might thee excuſe,
For what erratas *Momus* may infuſe
Into the (Reader's minde) yet doſt not thou
Need ſuch defence againſt the lowring brow
Of Carping Criticks, then prethee Engliſh all
The reſt o'th' ſtory of *Amadis de Gaule*.

Your loving Friend

J. W.

Know Readers all,
That to my loving brother,
And unto none other,
On this Translation of his,
Of the sixt Book of Amadis de Gaule.
I doe indite
These verses which I write.

COme all yee Heroe's of our warlike age
And learn of *Perion*, and of *Lisvart* stout,
Who soone will teach you how for to engage
With all your Foes, and put them to the rout.
Here you may read of fights and most strange news,
As wars between great Emperors, Kings, and Sultanes:
How Christians alwayes vanquish't Turks and Jews,
And streams of bloud did run like living fountaines.
Here you may see the deeds and famous Acts
Of Chivalrie perform'd by worthy Knights,
As good as e're wore Armour on their backs,
Or e're were seen in mortall cruell fights.
Here you may read of many most strange things,
As th'Isle of Apes, and Apes that Sailors were,
And sometimes carried Knights, and Queens, and Kings
In their great Barque, which was a thing most rare.
Here you may read of *Lisvart's* gallant fame
And *Perion's*, who by none surpassed were
In Prowesse, Wisdome, Vertue and in name, (Sphere.
And oft was known by the name of th'Knight of th'
Here you may read of Ladies of great beautie
Who courted were by many valiant Knights,
And you may read of some who did their duty
In many warlike deeds, and cruell fights.
Great prayses you deserve for your Translation,
And bringing of such famous deeds to light,
It having done so much good to our Nation,
Which now accustom'd is so oft to fight.

Your Loving Brother

Robert Kirkman.

To my loving friend Francis Kirkman.

The good Succeſs And uſefulneſs | Of Tranſlations In all Nations.

BEſpeak eſteeme of this book made compleat,
Not Cobler like, but like Tranſlator neat,
Heroick hearts come read in poliſht words
Puiſſant actions of old Warlike Swords,
And learn for ever how to make your names
Glitter as Star-light, or Sol's brighter flames:
Come *Cupid*-ſmitten Carbonado'd hearts,
And freſh your ſelves with amorous pleaſant parts.
The work was great delight to th'Authors minde,
As great delight the Readers all may finde.
The words are well exchang'd, not put to rout,
Nor ſhall you finde at all their braines daſht out.
From all true Lovers of deſert and Learning
Acceptance of the work's the workman's earning:
Then ſet aſide all doubting and diſdaine,
And buy out right this bloſſome brave amaine.
Proceed young *Kirkman*, thus improve thy Reaſon,
And publiſh rare Antiquities in ſeaſon,
And ſo become an happie Conſtellation
To poure a ſtrong influence on our Nation.

Chi parla ſemina } The ſpeaker ſowes.
Chi tace raccoglia } The hearer reaps.

La volunta ſupplice } The good will doth ſupply
a la faculta } want of Ability.

Yours

Thomas Heath.

PREFACE.

1

Amadis of Gaul was written by Vasco Lobeira, a Portugueze, who was born at Porto, fought at Aljubarrota where he was knighted upon the field of battle by King Joam of Good Memory, and died at Elvas, 1403; where he formed a *Morgado*, an entailed and unalienable estate, which afterwards descended to the Abreus of Alcarapinha.

The Spanish version, which is the oldest extant, is by Garciordoñez de Montalvo, Regidor of Medina del Campo. He says he has corrected it from the old originals, which were corrupted by different and bad writers, and badly composed in an ancient

fashion; that he has many superfluous words, and inserted others of a more polished and elegant style.

The Comte de Tressan has claimed the work as a French production. It is doing too much honour to Vasco Lobeira, he says, to consider him as the author. The French translation by Nicolas d'Herberay was indeed made from the Castilian, but there is reason to believe that he only restored it to the literature of his own country, from which it had first been taken by the Spaniards. D'Herberay *remembered* certain manuscripts of Amadis in the Picard language, and these he *thought* might be the originals which Montalvo modernized. These manuscripts, says the Comte, *might* very easily fall into the hands of the Spaniards. Philip the *Good, or Charles the

* It is indeed probable that Amadis was in the Duke of Burgundy's Library, for Philip the Good married

Bold *might* have found them when they carried their arms into Picardy; thus they *might* get into the library of Marie of Burgundy, and her son the Archduke Philip *might* carry them into Spain. The Comte does not found his opinion entirely upon this concatenation of contingencies; he *thinks* he has seen a manuscript of Amadis, in the Romance, or what D'Herberay calls the Picard language, among Queen Christina's collection in the Vatican; from the manifest superiority of the three first books to all the continuation, he *argues* that they cannot have been written in the same country; and from their *good taste and high tone of sentiment he proves that*

Isabel daughter of Joam of Portugal. The children of Joam were distinguished for their love of literature. If she carried with her this Romance, it is not unlikely that a French translation may have been made, anterior to Montalvo's version.

they must be originally French. This is indeed French reasoning!

Had the Comte de Tressan been versed in Portugueze literature, he might have found one single evidence in favour of his assumption. In the Agiologio Lusitano, T. 1, p. 480, Joze Cardoso says, that *Pedro* de Lobeira translated the History of Amadis de Gaul from the French language, by order of the Infante Dom Pedro, son of King Joam I. He calls him *Pedro*, says Barboza, that he may be wrong in every thing. The first volume of the Agiologio was printed in 1652. With this single exception, the Portugueze have always ascribed the work to Vasco Lobeira; and the authority of this tradition would alone outweigh all the possibilities of the French writer. It is substantiated by the work itself, and by old and unquestionable testimony.

At the end of the 41st chapter, Vol. 2. p. 42, it is said, that Briolania would have given her-

self and her kingdom to Amadis, but he told her right loyally how he was another's. In the Spanish version, ff. 72, this passage follows, "But though the Infante Don Alfonso of Portugal, having pity upon this fair Damsel, ordered it to be set down after another manner, that was what was his good pleasure, and not what actually was written of their loves; and they relate that history of these loves thus, though with more reason faith is to be given to what we have before said. Briolania being restored to her kingdom and enjoying the company of Amadis and Agrayes, persisted in her love: and seeing no way whereby she could accomplish her mortal desires, she spake very secretly with the Damsel to whom Amadis, and Galaor and Agrayes had each promised a boon if she would guide Don Galaor where he could find the Knight of the Forest. This Damsel was now returned, and to her she disclosed her mind, and besought her with many tears to advise some remedy for that strong passion. The Damsel then in pity to her Lady,

demanded as the performance of his promise from Amadis, that he should not go out of a certain tower, 'till he had a son or daughter by Briolania; and they say, that, upon this, Amadis went into the tower because he would not break his word, and there because he would not consent to Briolania's desires he remained, losing both his appetite, and his sleep, 'till his life was in great danger. This being known in the court of King Lisuarte, his Lady Oriana, that she might not lose him, sent and commanded him to grant the Damsel's desire, and he having this command, and considering that by no other means could he recover his liberty or keep his word, took that fair Queen for his Leman, and had by her a son and a daughter at one birth. But it was not so, unless Briolania seeing how Amadis was drawing nigh to death in the Tower, told the Damsel to release him of his promise, if he would only remain 'till Don Galaor was arrived; doing thus, that she might so long enjoy the sight of that fair and famous Knight,

whom when she did not behold she thought herself in great darkness. This carries with it more reason why it should be believed, because this fair Queen was afterwards married to Don Galaor, as the fourth book relates."

Here then it appears that an Infante of Portugal commanded some alteration to be made in the story: because he was dipleased that Briolania should love in vain. There exists a Sonnet ascribed to an Infante of Portugal, and addressed to Vasco Lobeira, praising him as the author of Amadis, and objecting to this very part of the story. It is thus printed in a work entitled *Obras ineditas dos nossos insignes Poetas dadas a luz por Antonio Lourenço Caminha. Lisboa* 1791.

SONETO.

Feito polo Senhor Infante Dom Pedro, filho do Senhor Rey Dom Joam primeiro. Outros dizem que he do Senhor Rey Dom Affonso quarto, mais prova-

se que foi do antecedente, porque o Lubera morreo no anno de 1403.

Bom Vasco de Lubera, e de graõ sem
De pram que vos avades bem contado
O feito de Amadis o namorado,
Sem que dar ende por contar irem,
E tanto vos-apprôve, e a tambem,
Que vos seredes sempre ende loado.
E antre os homes hos por honẽtado,
Que vos eraõ adiante, e que era bem.
Mais porque vos fizeste a formoza
Brioranjà amar endoado hu nom,
Esto cõhade, e contra sa amarom vontade:
Ca eu hey graõ do da a ver queixosa
Por sa graõ formozura, e sa bondade,
E hor porque alfim amor no lho pagaraõ.

Tom. 1. 213.

In the reign of Joam I. says Manuel de Faria y Sousa, the Infante Don Pedro wrote the Sonnets *Bom Vasco &c. Vinha Amor &c.* in praise of Vasco Lobeyra, the inventor of the Books of Chivalry by that of Amadis." I know not where the second of these Sonnets is to be found, neither of them are among the Infante Dom Pedro's Poems

published by Joseph Soares da Sylva at the end of his *Memorias para a Historia del Rey Dom Joam* 1. as copied from the Cancioneiro of Resendé; nor do I recollect them in that very rare and valuable Collection, to which I cannot now refer. But it is impossible that this sonnet should have been written by either of the Princes to whom it has been ascribed. The Infante Dom Pedro was but in his eleventh year when Vasco Lobeira died, and Lobeira himself must have been a boy at the time of Affonso the 4th's death. Montalvo and Manuel de Faria and the Portugueze Editor are in this point all in the wrong. If it be the composition of a royal or of a princely author, it must be King Pedro. This however must remain uncertain. But we may believe what Montalvo tells us that the story had been altered in compliance with the taste of some noble Portugueze. The language of this sonnet is certainly as old as the time of Joam 1. It agrees with the opinion of the person whom Montalvo calls the Infante

Alfonso, and it addresses Vasco Lobeira by name as the author of Amadis of Gaul.

This evidence is sufficiently decisive. It is incontrovertibly confirmed by Gomes Eannes de Zurara, in his Chronica do Conde Dom Pedro de Menezes; a work written in 1463, and first published in the Collecçaõ de Livros Ineditos de Historia Portugueza, 1792. He expressly says that Vasco Lobeira wrote the book of Amadis, and that the whole was his own invention. Could he have foreseen that it would have ever become a subject of controversy, his testimony could not have been more decisive. "Jaa seja, que muitos Autores cobiçosos d'allargar suas obras, forneciam seus Livros recontando tempos que os Principes passavam em convites, e assy de festas, e jogos, e tempos allegres, de bue se nom seguia outra cousa, se nom a deleitaçaõ delles mesmos, assy como som os primeiros feitos de Ingraterra, que se chamava Gram Bretanha, e assy *o Livro d'Amadis, como quer que soomente este fosse feito a prazer de hum homem, que*

se chamava Vasco Lobeira, em tempo d'El Rey Dom Fernando, sendo toda-las cousas do dito Livro fingidas do Autor." T. 2. P. 422.

Therefore it can no longer be doubted, that Vasco Lobeira is the Author of Amadis of Gaul. The Romance was written towards the close of the fourteenth century; if in Fernando's reign, before 1383, but certainly after Edward III. had laid claim to the crown of France, and when the Court of Windsor was the most splendid in Europe. This is evident from the work itself. Had it been written later, even by one generation, Montalvo could not have complained of its rude and ancient style.

Barboza says the original work was preserved in the family of the Aveiros. If this copy has escaped the earthquake, it may probably be traced from the wreck of that family; and it is greatly to be wished that the Royal Academy of Lisbon would publish it for the honour of Portugueze

Literature, to which that Academy has already rendered such essential services, and which by other nations is little valued, only because it is little known.

2

Tressan claims for his countrymen only the three first books; in the fourth, he says, the Spanish taste begins to predominate; but the ridiculous anachronisms which he particularizes, are all interpolated by D'Herberay. King Lisuarte's train of artillery, his powder, his bullets, his bombs and his culverines, are not to be found in the Spanish version. Cannon are once mentioned, as they are in Hamlet; but as in Hamlet it is a casual absurdity, the effect of carelessness, not of an ignorance which would have infected the whole work. The beginning of the fourth book is indeed very inferiour in interest to what precedes it: the business and bustle of adventure are succeeded by long speeches, and a needless detail of the different embassies. How much of this prolixity

is to be attributed to what Montalvo calls his more polished and elegant style, it is now impossible to ascertain. Yet this prolixity has its effect; if it provokes impatience, it also heightens expectation; it is like the long elm avenues of our forefathers, we wish ourselves at the end, but we know that at the end there is something great.

The Comte was of opinion that the original Romance concluded with the rescue of Oriana. This would have been an unsatisfactory conclusion, nor would it have compleated the Author's design. Amadis is not safe, and cannot be happy while King Lisuarte is his enemy; the preeminence of Oriana above all her sex is not proved, till she has atchieved the adventure of the Forbidden Chamber. The reconciliation of her husband and her father, and this triumph which proves that, as the best and fairest of women, she alone is worthy to be the wife of the best and bravest of men, must be the work of the original author, unless he left the story incompleat. But there

is no reason to suspect that the work of Vasco Lobeira was not compleated. That, as well as the rudeness of the language, would have been mentioned by Montalvo; he would have claimed the merit of finishing the story, as well as of polishing the style.

With the celebration of the marriage, the story obviously concludes. I have ended here, and left the reader to infer that Amadis and Oriana, like the heroes of every nursery tale, lived very happy after. The chapters which follow in the Spanish are evidently added to introduce the fifth book, or what Montalvo, in something like a Quack's Greek, calls the Sergas of Esplandian. It is one Romance growing out of another as clumsily as a young oyster upon the back of its parent. The episode of the Queen of Dacia has been introduced for the same purpose. This has been here retained, that if any person should hereafter continue these volumes upon the plan of the *Bibliotheque des Romans*, every thing necessary to render the after stories intelligible may be

found in this, though this is in itself compleat. The patchwork of Montalvo's imagination is in many places distinguishable: the letters upon Espandian's breast, the most foolish fiction in the book, are his invention, for the interpretation is in the Sergas. Probably he has lengthened the period between the quarrel of Amadis and the King, and their reconciliation. Oriana has no spell to preserve her charms, when she wins the prize of beauty, and yet her son is at the age of manhood; it was convenient for the continuation of the history, that Esplandian should be of age to follow arms when his father retired. If the faults inserted by the Spaniard, with reference to his own supplement, were weeded out, the skilful structure of the original story would not be less admirable, than the variety and beauty of its incidents.

The Orlando Innamorato is the only story that has ever been successfully continued. Boyardo had written but a fragment, and a fragment it was left by Berni. Montalvo

had no such plea for adding his supplement to Amadis; the design was compleat, and whatever he added to the finished structure could only mar its proportions. It is dangerous to attempt subjects which have been ennobled by a great master. Even the Greek Tragedians were not equal to the task of dramatizing the characters of Homer: they could not bend the bow of Mæonides. They teach us to despise Ajax, and to dislike Ulysses; for they attribute nothing but cunning to the one, and only brutal courage to the other. They caught the outline, but the finer shades, and discriminating lines escaped them. In our own literature we have an illustrious instance; who can tolerate the tale of Paradise Lost in the rhymes of Dryden's play? It is fortunate for the fame of even Milton, that he did not execute his design of writing a second Macbeth.

3

When the Curate purged Don Quixote's library with fire, he spared three romances: Tirante the White, for its quaintness; Palmeirim of England, partly for its merit, and partly because by some unaccountable blunder, he fancied that it was written by a King of Portugal; Amadis of Gaul, because it was the first of the kind, and the best.

The censure of Cervantes was more efficient than his praise. Lobeira, like Ariosto, would have received no injury from his ridicule, if like Ariosto he had stood alone. But the old judgement was reversed, the proscription acted like the laws of treason in the East, and the father suffered for the faults of his worthless children. Montalvo and his imitators sheltered themselves under

a great name; the Sergas of Esplandian is called the fifth book of Amadis of Gaul, the histories of Esplandian's son, and his son's son, were the sixth, seventh, and eighth; and thus they went on from generation to generation. *Fortes creantur Fortibus* might be their standing motto. Instead of concluding, Chronicle-like, with "he died, and his son reigned in his stead," they keep Amadis alive like a Patriarch, or an Adept; the father of a flock sees not so many generations sprung from him; to such longevity do they prolong his life, that instead of fixing his birth not many years after the Crucifixion, it should have been dated some time before the Flood.

This perpetual succession of Heroes was ill imagined. The son was always to exceed the father, and in his turn yield to the grandson; as our hosiers besides the best stockings, sell the extra best, and the best superfine. Esplandian must fight with Amadis, and Lisuarte of Greece with Esplandian, and Amadis of Greece with

Lisuarte. Hence also the ridiculous hyperboles; when all the varieties of fighting had been exhausted by Amadis, it only remained to make taller giants for Esplandian, and give a stronger scythe-sweep to his sword to mow them down. The fictions of Lobeira are more modest. Famongomadan and his family are but giants of the O'Bryan breed, with names, to the great merit of their godfathers, of a most giantly proportion. If the Author of Amadis be compared in his battles with Ariosto, his descriptions will be found as lively and as varied, he brings every thing before the eye with the same poet's power, but he rarely or never so wantonly abuses his prerogative.

In one respect the after Romances copy the original with undeviating servility; they all have their Amadis and their Galaor, the constant and the general Lover. There is at least some morality in the preference, but all the first-born are illegitimate. The hero must be every way irresistible. The loves of King Perion and of his son are justi-

fied or palliated by a pledged promise, which the Catholic Church considers binding. Lobeira expressly says they were not without fault, because the promise had been so secret. Montalvo's morals are more casuistical and convenient. It is glory enough for me, says Urganda, when she gives the Bastard sons of Galaor and King Cildadan as comrades to Esplandian, it it glory enough for me, since I can have no children myself, that these, by my means, have been born of others; for they shall do such things for the service of God, that not only will they be forgiven who begot them against the command of the holy Church, and I who was the cause, but it will be imputed to them as so great a merit, that they shall thereby obtain rest for their bodies in this world, and for their souls in the next. B. 4. ff. 270.

Montalvo and his followers have totally changed the machinery. The Urganda who appears to Galvanes and the Child of the Sea, is a true Fairy, like Morgaine le Fay and the Lady of the Lake. Arcalaus is but a poor

Enchanter; he has only a room in his castle protected by a spell; his courage is more formidable than his black art, it is the fleetness of his horse that preserves him, not his magic. But the Urganda who sails about in the Great Serpent is an Enchantres of a different species, and her rivals Zirfea and Melia are as tremendous as the Medea of classical Romance.

The difference of religious temper is remarkable. Vasco Lobeira, who had never borne arms against any but the Castilians, made his hero fight with Christian enemies, and only now and then kill a stray Pagan. In Montalvo's days the reign of persecution had begun; the expulsion or extirpation of the Moors was a favourite hope of the Spaniards after they had subdued them, and the heroes of Spanish Romance naturally became the champions of the faith. It is no wonder that the original work differs so materially from the swarm of imitations! Tressan need not have supposed that they must have

been written in a different country to account for its superiority. Lobeira could paint heroes from the life. The fame of the Black Prince and the odour of his virtues were still fresh in Spain. It was the age of chivalry, the noon-day of heroism and honour. A Portugueze, one of the good and loyal Portugueze as their own excellent chronicler calls them, who fought at Aljubarrota, for King Joam of Good Memory, might conceive the character of Amadis. Nuno Alvares Pereira might be his living pattern. But a Spaniard who described humane and generous valour in the days of Ferdinand and the Austrian family, could paint only from a dim recollection of the past. A century the most eventful of any in human history had changed every thing, the mode of warfare, the politics, the religious feelings of Europe were all altered. The Inquisition and the house of Austria, two curses more fatal than all the plagues of Egypt were established in Spain, and her civil and religious liberties were destroyed.

Inferior as these after-books of Amadis certainly are, they form so singular an epoch in the history of literature that an abridgement of the whole series into our language is to be desired. Should this be attempted, it must be from the Spanish, not from the *Bibliotheque des Romans*, nor from the versions of D'Herberay. D'Herberay has omitted much that is curious in manners, and inserted much that is abominable in morals; he is inaccurate and obscene. There is occasionally, though but rarely, a rude and savage nakedness in the original which I have veiled. The Frenchman has always delighted to expose it; he has dilated single phrases into whole paragraphs, with that love of lewdness which is so peculiarly and characteristically the disgrace of French literature.

What is become of these books which were once so numerous? in their own country they are as rare as they are in this. Almost one might suppose that the Curate and the

Barber had extended their inquisitorial scrutiny to the Booksellers shops, and committed editions instead of volumes to the flames.

4

It is the hypothesis of Warton, that Romance was introduced by the Moors into Spain, and from thence diffused over Europe. Writers of equal eminence have controverted this opinion, and advanced others equally hypothetical. Romance, or fictitious narrative, is, in fact, like Poetry, common to all countries, and its character is in like manner every where modified by the circumstances of society.

The machinery of the early Romance writers is probably rather of classical than of oriental origin. Classical superstitions lingered long after the triumph of Christianity. The Spanish chronicles continually speak of augury. Certain practises of Heathen faith were prohibited in Portugal, by a law enac-

ted during the life of Vasco Lobeira. The Fathers of the Church expressly assert that the Gods of the Gentiles, are the Fallen Angels; and with this key, a Catholic may believe the whole of Ovid's Metamorphoses. St. Anthony the Great saw and conversed with a Centaur, and St. Jerome vouches for his veracity.

Enchanted weapons, may be traced to the workshop of Vulcan as easily as to the Dwarfs of Scandinavia. The tales of dragons may be originally oriental; but the adventures of Jason and Hercules, were popular tales in Europe, long before the supposed migration of Odin, or the birth of Mohammed. If magical rings were invented in Asia, it was Herodotus, who introduced the fashion into Europe. The Fairies and Ladies of the Lake, bear a closer resemblance to the Nymphs and Naiads of Rome and Greece, than to the Peris of the East.

5

The reputation of the books of chivalry was declining, when Cervantes destroyed it. George of Montemayor had newly introduced the Pastoral Romance; his Diana is so dull and worthless a story, that it is wonderful it should ever have been successful enough to provoke imitation. Tales of intrigue were becoming fashionable. Of these Juan de Timoneda, a Valencian, is said to have been the first writer in Spain. His first work *El Patranuelo* bears date 1576. These *Novelas* were symptomatic of worse morals than the books of chivalry. The comic romance, of which the heroes are uniformly rogues, was still more mischievous. Lazarillo de Tormes was the first of this class: of the swarm which followed, Guzman de Alfarache, and La Picara Justina are the best known.

The common ballads of the country were infected, and ruffians and sharpers are still the heroes of the popular songs of Spain. The French Romances do not appear to have been naturalized either in Spain or Portugal. Of late indeed we are told by Fischer that two editions of Cassandra have sold in the space of a year and half at Madrid. It is singular that Calprenade should have found no readers in Spain, till he was no longer read in any other part of Europe.

The books of chivalry have become scarce, in consequence of their popularity. They have probably been fairly worn out by repeated perusal; but as their fashion was gone by, it was useless to reprint them for general sale. Some few are still published for children, and it is no little proof of their merit that they are their favourite books. In England we have Valentine and Orson, and the Seven Champions of Christendom. Parismus and Parismenos, which is among the boys' books mentioned by Uncle Toby,

and in the very interesting Memoirs of Mr. Gifford, has lost its ground. In Portugal, Turpin's History of Charlemain and the Twelve Peers is the popular work; the parent of the whole stock, is the last survivor.

6

It remains that I should state in what manner the present version has been executed.

To have translated a closely printed folio would have been absurd. I have reduced it to about half its length, by abridging the words, not the story; by curtailing the dialogue, avoiding all recapitulations of the past action, consolidating many of those single blows which have no reference to armorial anatomy, and passing over the occasional moralizings of the Author. There is no vanity in saying, that this has improved the book, for what long work may not be improved by compression? meagre wine may be distilled into Alcohol. The minutest traits of manners have been preserved,

and not an incident of the narrative omitted. I have merely reduced the picture, every part is preserved, and in the same proportions. Amadis of Gaul is valuable, not only for its intrinsic merit, as a fiction, but as a faithful representation of manners and morality; and as such, these volumes may be referred to, as confidently as the original. The edition which I have made use of is that of Seville,* 1547. The copy, for

---

* M. le C. Gordon de Percel in his Bibliotheque des Romans, says the oldest edition of Amadis is that of Seville, 1526. His work is exceedingly inaccurate. He has not mentioned that of 1547. I should conjecture, that there must have been an Edition printed at Medina del Campo.

The story of Amadis was certainly popular before the date he has assigned for its first publication. When the Spaniards first saw Mexico, they said to each other it was like the places of enchantment which were spoken of in the book of Amadis. This was 1519. There is another passage in the excellent history of Bernal Diaz which seems to imply that they knew the original Amadis, not

the book itself is exceedingly rare, was from the library of Mr. Heber, a gentleman whose liberality, in the disposal of a very valuable collection, leaves his friends less reason to regret, that the public libraries of England should be more difficult of access, and consequently less useful, than those of any other country in Europe.

The Comte de Tressan in his free translation, has compleatly modernized and naturalized the character of the Romance: his book is what he designed to make it, an elegant work; but the manners and feelings of the days of Chivalry are not to be found there; they are all hidden under a varnish of French sentiment. He has scoured the

---

the work of Montalvo; he says they compared a boastful man who did nothing in battle to Agrayes. *Llamavámosle que era otro Agrajes sin obras.* It should seem that the character of Agrayes had been modified by Montalvo. Yet, could a Manuscript story have been so commonly known as to be the talk of the soldiery?

old shield; the glitter which it has gained does not compensate for the loss of its sharpness, nor for the lines that are effaced.

I should have abridged from the English translation had it been accurate, that the character of the language might have assimilated better with the work. But the English version, which bears date as late as 1618, a century after the publication of the book in Spain, has been made from the French; every trait of manners which were foreign to D'Herberay, or obsolete in his time, is accordingly omitted, and all the foolish anachronisms and abominable obscenities of the Frenchman are retained. I kept my eye upon it as I proceeded, for the purpose of preserving its language where it was possible. A modern style would have altered the character of the book; as far as was in my power I have avoided that fault, not by intermixing obsolete words, but by rendering the original structure of sentence as literally as was convenient, and by re-

jecting modern phraseology and forms of period. It cannot be supposed that I have uniformly succeeded in this attempt: the old wine must taste of the new cask.

The names which have a meaning in the original have not been translated. I have used Beltenebros instead of the Beautiful Darkling or the Fair Forlorn; Florestan instead of Forester; El Patin instead of the Emperor Gosling; as we speak of Barbarossa, not Red-Beard; Bocanegra, not Black Muzzle; St. Peter, not Stone the Apostle.

The praise of accuracy is all to which I lay claim for the present work; and that I claim confidently. Perhaps others may not see the beauties which I perceive; the necessity of dwelling upon every sentence has produced in me a love for the whole. The reader will pass rapidly where I have lingered and loitered; he who drives post through a country sees not the same beauties as the foot-traveller. But the merit of the work

itself is not now to be ascertained, the verdict of ages has decided that. Amadis of Gaul is among prose, what Orlando Furioso is among metrical Romances, not the oldest of its kind, but the best.

Alonso Proaza,[1] *Proofreader, to Author*

The illustrious geniuses who wish to look[2]
Up the famous stories about great señores,
And their fierce battles, their acclaimed victories,
Should seek to peruse this particular book;
If they suffer their pains and passionate thrall,
No less will they be able to discover
The most chaste, beloved, and noble lover
That could ever be found in the world at all.

He continues:

On these pages handsome cuirasses glow,
Shining helmets that the lame Vulcan[3] made,
The strong and bright kind that reduce to shade
The sun's rays on the orb of the world below;
Here the courageous knights appear valiant;
Here are courtly lists, battles, tournaments;
Here are royal tents with rich adornments;
Here virtues and glories are heaven-sent.

The weak forces of the winds of Boreas[4]
Fight against the sails that are unfurled herein;
For so many caravels arrive and sail in
That they use up the waters of wild Nereus;[5]
The powerful sons of Atreus,[6] Agamemnon,
and Menelaus, where Europe and Asia meet,
Scarcely gathered more men or ships in their fleet
Than when they besieged the strong walls of Ilion.

Here, leaving her sleepy isle is chaste Diana[8]
With her black companions, all vestal damsels,
And in them we read important examples
And we see wise deeds performed by Carmela;
Herein this story eschews the filthy word
With a supreme example of moral perfection;
Of Venerean acts it never makes mention,
Nor does the good son do anything untoward.

Here are fully displayed, with pen in hand,
The grand delights of elegant speaking,
The fine manners of very good writing,
The pinnacle of our common Castilian;
Here the fame of our Quintillian[9] Rhetor
Could at long last, I think, be laid to rest;
Now another giant has surpassed the test
Of the Roman consul and orator.

Therefore, I beseech you, discrete reader,
To give those of crude style no special nook
And to place this writer in your song book,
For, from him your profit will be greater;
Herein you will find highly praised teaching
And moral examples to make you better;
And duennas can find a precious sampler
In this magnificent piece of writing.

PREFACE

THE SAGES OF OLD, ON CONSIDERING HOW BRIEF, in the great battles whereof they have left written records, was the actual military action that took place in those battles — as occurs in the battles of our own time which we ourselves have witnessed and whereof we have a clear idea through experience and report — sought to provide some foundation of truth on which to elaborate and adorn such extraordinary deeds; whereby not only did they think to leave a perpetual memory of those engagements for the benefit of professional men of arms, but also for the enlightenment and delight of others who might read their accounts with a wonder no less great than is felt concerning the written accounts of the exploits of the Greeks and Trojans.

Sallust says that the deeds of the Athenians were famous in proportion to the exaltation and embellishment accorded them by the writers of antiquity. Therefore, if the generation of those discoursers who exercised their wits and wearied their minds on matters of fame rather than on subjects of material interest had been able to witness and bear testimony of the saintly conquest that our most valiant King recently made of the Kingdom of Granada, how many flowers, how many roses would have been strewn on it by them — as much with regard to the courage of the knights, to the uprisings, skirmishes and dangerous combats, and to everything else regarding the perilous confrontations and hardships of said war, as concerning the courageous speeches of the great King to his nobles gathered in the royal tent, and the obedient replies made by them; and, above all, the great praise, the heightened encomiums that the King deserves for having undertaken and finished that most Catholic struggle. Cer-

tainly I believe that both the true and the embroidered that might have been related by the writers of antiquity about the fame of so great a prince, rightly based on a broad foundation of truth, would have been able to reach the clouds.

And thus it may be believed that by his own learned chroniclers, if it had been granted to them to imitate the antiquity of that style as a memorial for those to come, it would have been left in writing, by rightly elevating his great deeds to a higher degree of fame and loftiness than those of the other emperors who with more affection than truth have been lauded more than our king and queen; for the greater the difference in the law they upheld, the more the latter were deserving, because the ones first mentioned served the world which gave them their reward; and ours its Lord, who with such recognized love and volition sought to aid and favor them on account of finding them so worthy in executing with much toil and expense what to such a high degree is in His service. And if perchance something remain forgotten here below, in the presence of His Royal Majesty, where He holds ready for them the reward that they deserve, it will not so remain.

Another manner, more properly to be accredited, that great historian Titus Livy adopted to exalt the honor and fame of his Romans; for turning them away from brute force, he invested their hearts with boldness and courage; because if as regards the first item there be some doubt, none would be found concerning the second. If he by extreme effort recorded the daring of him who burned his own arm and of him who voluntarily plunged into the perilous lake, we have already beheld other deeds by those who, with no regard for their own lives, sought death in order to save others from it; so that by virtue of what we have seen we can believe what we have read in Livy, however bizarre it may seem to us. But certainly nowhere in his great history will there be encountered any of those awful blows or superhuman clashes to be found in the other histories, such as those concerning mighty Hector, famous Achilles, courageous Troilus, and brave Ajax, and many others of whom much is recorded, in accordance with the writers' high regard for them. Hence these accounts, as well as others closer to our own times concerning that distin-

guished duke Godfrey of Bouillon's sword slash on the bridge at Antioch administered to the armed Turk whom he almost cut in half when he was King of Jerusalem.

One may very well believe that Troy existed and that it was besieged and destroyed by the Greeks, and likewise that Jerusalem, along with many other places, was conquered by the abovementioned duke and his companions. But let us attribute such blows as the foregoing to the writers, as I have already said, rather than to their actually having taken place. There were other writers of lower quality who not only failed to base their works on fact, but on any semblance of it. These are the ones who composed the feigned histories in which marvelously unnatural things are to be found, which very rightly ought to be deemed fakes.

Now let us see whether the martial perils occurring resemble that which almost daily we see and experience, even though such martial perils be not for the most part of virtue and good conscience — and let us be apprised that those which seem to us very strange and difficult are fabricated and faked — and what should we derive from them all which would be fruitful for us? Certainly nothing more than the good examples and teachings which most closely relate to our own salvation, so that, through there having been impressed on our hearts the grace of the most high Lord in order to bring us into contact with said teachings, we may take them as wings whereby our souls may rise to the height of the glory for which they were created.

And I, considering all this, desiring that some vestige of remembrance of me might remain, and not daring to set my feeble talents at that with which the wisest learned men have been concerned, have sought to join the latest ones to write about the most trivial and insubstantial matters on account of their being most in keeping with the weakness of my talents; namely, by correcting these three Books of *Amadis,* which through the fault of poor scribes or revisers were read in corrupt and defective versions; and by translating and emending the fourth Book, together with the *Exploits of Esplandián* its offspring, which up to now within no one's memory has been seen, for very fortunately it came to light in a stone tomb discovered under-

ground below a hermitage near Constantinople and was brought to this part of Spain by a Hungarian merchant, being inscribed on parchment so old that only with great difficulty were those who knew the language able to read it. The said five Books, although up to now they have been considered fictions rather than chronicles, by virtue of the said emendations are augmented with moralizations and teachings of such a kind that they properly can be compared with cheap, coarse, cork salt shakers encased and adorned with bands of silver and gold — thus augmented in order that gentlemen, both old and young, may find in them what pertains to each.

And if perchance in this ill-planned work some error appears of the kind that transgresses civil and canon law, I humbly ask pardon for it, for since I firmly hold to and believe in everything that Holy Church holds to and enjoins, my unwary discretion, rather than my labors, was the cause of it.

Just as the length and antiquity of the past have left many great events for us to remember, so it is equally credible that an infinite number of others have remained hidden without any memory of them remaining. And on this account I think that famous witty sage, Giovanni Boccaccio, made no mention in his *De casibus virorum illustrium* of anything noteworthy happening in the earliest period, the one extending from the first ancestor down to Nimrod; nor of anything in the period from Nimrod to King Latinus of Latium, thereby skipping over very long stretches of time, during which one very justifiably must believe that great happenings occurred; but all memory of them having been lost, Boccaccio was unable to present any account of what took place.

And for the same reason very extraordinary things and many great edifices are to be found throughout the world without its being known who their original founders and builders were. And not only of those very ancient times, but even of our own we could cite similar cases.

Then of course we shall not deem strange after so many years the appearance of this book, which was found hidden away in

that very ancient sepulcher mentioned in the Preface to Book I, first of the three Books of *Amadis;* and in which mention is made of that Catholic and virtuous prince Esplandian, son of Amadis, to whom these two adjectives have been very aptly applied, as the most esteemed formal designations, and by such he sought to be entitled, rejecting all others — which, although they may appear loftier, are more in keeping with what is temporal than with what is divine; for when life comes to an end, they end likewise, just like thick high-extending smoke; which, when the flame from which it proceeds is extinguished, is dissolved and obliterated without any vestige or trace of it remaining —; considering that he who is a Catholic would be God's friend, would be thankful to be His lieutenant, His viceroy in those great empires and suzerainties, thankful to fear and serve Him, thankful to treat his great estate not as his very own, but lent to him, hoping to give a very strict accounting to his Lord; recalling sad death, fearful Hell, and glorious Paradise whereby he would escape from damnation and reach what is firm and safe, which would cause his soul to attain to endless delight. Then while he existed he would be humane, gracious, liberal in his generosity — but guided by reason rather than by impulse —, compassionate, possessed of the diplomacy by reason of which princes and grandees are beloved and willingly served by their subjects and vassals with prayers and petitions to Almighty God as well as by exposing themselves to death in battle. And besides this, even though they set great store by their estates, these subjects, unpressured and without grief, would deliver them to their overlords wherever they would be well used in virtuous, Catholic enterprises. Then shall we dare to say that the desire of this prince was effected and he realized it as much in deed as in thought? Yes, indeed, if any credence of the kind that be not feigned it ought to yield concerning what is written of him about these exploits of his; because, according to what appears in them, as long as he remained youthful he always feared God, persevering in complete virginity, in a saintly life, in augmenting his holy faith, avoiding the use of his great strength and the ardor of his brave heart against those of his own religion, many times staking everything, even at the risk of death, against the infidel enemies of the Redeemer of the world. And after he had reached his elder years and

had attained such high estate as to be emperor of Constantinople, King of Great Britain and Gaul, then continuing to tread the path of virtue, he was most humane, most liberal, best known to his subjects, conferring boons upon them, bringing them together, honoring them as friends, admonishing them concerning their mistakes with compassion and with a tender heart devoid of any haughty or vengeful harshness, desiring that justice be done with reason rather than with wrath; and many other good ways he had which it would take too long to enumerate and which afford evidence why justly and with reason he could be described by those two excellent adjectives "Catholic" and "virtuous," whereby the Lord of the world permitted that in addition to what his soul was able to achieve in glory at his life's end, so much time having already elapsed with the recollection of his great deeds remaining so hidden and concealed as has been said already, it should be made known to everyone, not because he needed it, but in order that it be an example to those who more truly than he possess very great states and seigniories, who will wish to read his history in order that, with their haughtiness, wrath and rage put aside which render them enemies of the One of whom they ought to be friends and servants, they may turn and direct these emotions against those infidel enemies of our holy Catholic faith, since their travail and their expenditures, and finally death, if it should overtake them, would be all in all very well employed because thereby perpetual blessed life is won.

Prologue

If great kings and other high-born men who rule over Christendom always kept the almighty Lord foremost in their minds, the fact that He gave them greatness, set them apart from other mortals, and, along with immense riches and other worldly glories, granted them authority over so many peoples, cities, villas, and castles, then they would choose to restrain, shackle, and severely curb their uncontrolled wills, which lead them to fall headlong into infinite pits of passion, which in turn cause their minds to be obscured by a tenebrous cloud. Also, with this thought they would awaken as if from very heavy sleep and, following the doctrine left for them by their Savior's works, they would tread the open pathway that leads to Holy Paradise[2] (Oh, how blessed they who achieve such venturous bliss should consider themselves, and how unfortunate are those who do not wish to attain it, as if serving Him meant they must be roasted, flayed, wracked, or shot with arrows as the glorious saints were!);[3] for the Lord admonishes them to be honest and just, not to strive for more than they justly deserve, to make the justice they administer conform to the piety and moderation that caused Him, our just Judge, to be nailed to the cross, and to practice the other holy Catholic works which bring great repose to the body and even greater rest to the soul.

Well then, the Lord in the Highest,[4] does he perchance take away their savory dishes, their golden robes, and their soft beds with which their bodies are maintained? No, of course not, provided they use some similar, yet different, means—such as carefully displaying good works and by making more provision for their souls' richness and cleanliness[5] than they do for their bodies—to prepare their souls to go before the almighty Lord who created them and made them immortal.

Now, exalted princes, let us see what happens when one forgets spirituality. What then does temporality show you? It shows you your parents, grandparents, and ancestors holding as great seigniories and authority as you and spending their days engaged in many battles, dangers, tribulations, and other kinds of worldly matters. Given the weakness of human nature, it would not be unusual if worldly matters, when placed on the eternal scale, dragged down with them those things deserving of meritorious guerdons as if the latter were so much fluff. And concerning these exalted princes, where did their life's sojourn end, living as they did in such a mixture of pleasure and travail? Yea, in that narrow jail below the cold, heavy earth, where their fragile bodies will be decomposed and converted into the same earth. And about their souls, where shall we say they will be lodged? In the only abodes that their good works succeeded in building for them when they sustained breath.

Hence, great kings and señores, if you wish to unite in your minds the infinite with the finite and perishable, and if you wish to fulfill your service to the Lord who made you so great, your cruelties and anger must be turned aside while you leave in peace those who live in the holy faith opened to them in the campaign waged against the infidels by the great and Catholic emperor who is referred to so often in this book.[6] This is so because your anger should be hidden in light of the despoiled and endangered circumstances suffered by those whose conversions may seem feigned to you and despite many other things that have happened to them in reality.[7] And, great kings and señores, do this in time (for time compels you to do so) in order to prevent the anger of your enemies' forces—who, seeing your weakness, are pressing close upon you—from overpowering you so much that you may be unable to find a solution just when a solution is most needed.

INCIPIT

HERE BEGINS THE FIRST BOOK of the courageous and virtuous knight Amadis, son of King Perion of Gaul and of Queen Elisena, which was corrected and emended by the honorable and virtuous gentleman Garci-Rodríguez de Montalvo, Alderman of the noble town of Medina del Campo. He corrected the ancient originals which were corrupt and poorly composed in the antique style through the fault of diverse poor scribes, taking out many superfluous words and putting in others of a more polished and elegant style pertaining to chivalry and the deeds thereof.

Not many years after the passion of our Redeemer and Savior, Jesus Christ, there was a Christian king in Little Brittany by the name of Garinter, who being completely sincere was quite devout and well mannered. This king had two daughters by a noble matron, his wife. The elder was married to Languines, King of Scotland and was called the Garland Lady because the king her husband never would permit her to cover her beautiful hair except with a very rich garland, so pleased was he to gaze upon her locks. This couple were parents of Agrajes and Mabilia. Of the one as a knight and the other as a damsel much mention is made in this great narration. The second daughter, who was named Elisena, was infinitely more beautiful than the first. And although she was much sought in marriage by very great princes, it was not her pleasure to wed any of them. Rather, her devout and secluded way of life caused everyone to call her a confirmed bigot, for they held the opinion that for a person with such a high rank, endowed with such beauty, demanded in marriage by

so many grandees, the adoption of such a style of life was not suitable.

At any rate this aforementioned King Garinter, being of sufficiently advanced age, in order to give repose to his mind, used to go hunting in the forest occasionally on horseback. On one such occasion, he set out one day from one of his towns which was called Alima, and having strayed away from the beaters and hunters, going through the forest saying his prayers, he saw at his left a fierce battle of a lone knight engaged in fighting two; he recognized the two knights as vassals of his, from whom because of their arrogance, evil ways, and the fact that they were relatives-in-law, he had received great annoyance. But the one whom they were fighting he could not recognize, and not trusting enough in the prowess of the one to dispel the fear that the other two would kill him, he stood apart from them and watched the fight. Finally, by the hand of the one, the two were overcome and killed. This done, the knight came over to the king, and as he saw him alone, said to him:

"My good sir, what land is this where knights errant are attacked in this manner?"

The king replied: "Do not be surprised at this, sir, for just as in other lands there are good knights and bad, so there are in this. And those of whom you speak not only have done great wrongs and outrages to many, but also to their very own king, their master, who is unable to bring them to justice; being related by marriage, they have committed enormous offenses, including some in this densely forested region where they were wont to take refuge."

The knight said in reply: "Well, this king of whom you speak I have come from a distant land to seek out and to bring news of a great friend of his. And if you know where I can find him, I beg of you to tell me."

The king replied: "Come what may, I shall not fail to tell you the truth: Know you then, with certainty, that I am the king you are seeking."

Taking off his shield and helmet and giving them to his squire, the knight went and embraced the king, saying he was

King Perion of Gaul, who very much wished to make his acquaintance.

Great was the delight of these two kings on having been thus brought together. And speaking of many things they went to the place where the hunters were, so that they might return to the town; but before this there appeared an exhausted deer that had slipped by the beaters. Whereupon both the kings went after it at top speed of their horses with the intent to kill it, but the affair turned out otherwise: emerging in front of them from a dense thicket, a lion overtook the deer and killed it; and having ripped it open with its very strong claws, it exhibited an ill-restrained ferocity to the kings.

And as King Perion saw it thus, he said: "You can't be so enraged as not to leave to us a part of the game."

And taking his arms he dismounted from the horse which, fearful of the strong lion, did not want to go forward; and holding his shield in front of him, sword in hand, he advanced toward the lion; for the great shouts that King Garinter uttered could not deter him. Likewise, the lion, leaving the prey, came toward him. And both joining in combat, and the lion having him beneath him and being on the point of killing him, the king, not losing his great strength, wounding it with his sword through the belly made it fall dead before him. Whereupon King Garinter, greatly surprised, said to himself, "Not without cause does he have that fame of being the best knight in the world."

This done, the band of hunters being assembled, the king had the lion and the deer loaded on two palfreys and carried to the town. There the queen having been notified of their guest, they found the palace hall impressively and splendidly adorned and the tables set. At the highest table sat the kings and at another nearby, Elisena, Garinter's daughter. And there they were served as was fitting in the house of such a great man. Then being in such contentment, as that princess was so very handsome and King Perion likewise, and the fame of his great deeds at arms published throughout the world, under such circumstances they gazed at each other, that her great modesty and exemplary life could not prevent her from becoming a prisoner of incurable and great love for him, and the king in like manner for her (for until

then his heart he had kept free from subjection to anyone), in such wise that all during the dinner both of them were almost out of their senses. Then, the tables having been cleared, the queen wished to retire to her room, and on rising, Elisena dropped from her lap a very beautiful ring which she had removed from her finger in order to wash and because of her great confusion had not bethought herself to put it on again. She stooped to pick it up; but King Perion, who was beside her, sought to give it to her, and thus their hands met at the same time. And the king took her hand and squeezed it. Elisena blushed and looking at the king with amorous eyes, said softly that she was grateful to him for the service.

"Ah, madam," said he, "I hope it will not be the last, for my whole life will be employed in serving you."

She withdrew in her mother's wake so greatly agitated that she could scarcely see, from which it followed that this princess, not being able to endure that new pang that with such power had overcome the old resolution, divulged her secret to a maid of hers by the name of Darioleta whom she trusted, and with tears in her eyes and more in her heart, she begged her to advise her how she would be able to know whether King Perion loved any other woman and whether that amorous state that he had revealed to her had come upon him in the same way and as forcibly as in her heart she had felt it. The maid, startled by such a sudden change in a person so removed from relations of that kind, taking pity on such pitiful tears, said to her:

"Madam, well I see that according to the excessive passion that that tyrant Love has implanted in you, it has left no place in your judgment where advice or reason can be lodged; and for this reason, following not what I owe to you as a servant, but what I owe to your will and my obedience, I will do what you command by the most upright means that my poor discretion and great desire to serve you can find."

Then leaving her, she went to the chamber where King Perion was housed and found his squire at the door with the apparel that he wanted to give him to wear; and she said to him:

"Friend, go do something else, while I stay with your master and take care of him."

The squire, thinking it would be to his advantage, gave her the clothes and left. The damsel entered the room where the king was in bed; and when he saw her, he recognized her to be the one he had seen Elisena speak with more than with anyone else, since she trusted her more than any other person — and he believed that she had not come without some remedy for his mortal desires; and with a trembling heart, he said to her:

"Good maid, what is it that you wish?"

"To give you some clothing," said she.

Said he: "This must be for my heart, which is quite stripped and bare of pleasure and joy."

"In what way?" said she.

"In that coming to this land," said the king, "with complete freedom, solely fearing the adventures at arms that could befall me, in some way or other on entering the house of your master and mistress I am wounded with a mortal wound; and if you, good damsel, procure some remedy for me, I shall reward you well."

"Certainly, sir," said she, "it would make me very happy to serve a person of such high degree and such a good knight as you are, if I knew how I might do so."

"If you promise me," said the king, "as a loyal maidservant not to reveal it except there where it is proper to do so, I shall tell you."

"Tell me without fear," said she, "for it will be kept quite secret by me."

"Well then, my friend," said he, "I say to you that at a crucial moment I beheld the great beauty of Elisena, your mistress, that tormented by strong desire and yearning I am at the point of death, which if I do not find some remedy cannot be avoided."

The damsel, who knew the heart of her mistress completely in this matter, as you have already read, when she heard this, was very happy, and said,

"Sire, if you promise me as a king to guard the truth, as you are more than anyone else obligated to do, and as a knight who reputedly has endured many trials and perils in order to maintain it, and to take her for your wife, when it be time, I shall put you in a situation where not only your heart may be satisfied,

but hers also, which as much as — or perchance more than yours — is in distress and pain from that same wound; and if you do not do this, you will not have her nor shall I believe that your words spring from a loyal and sincere love."

The king, on whose will the permission of God was already imprinted for that to ensue which you will hear later, took the sword that he had near him and putting his right hand on its hilt, said, "I swear by this hilt and sword which I received with the order of knighthood, to do what you, damsel, ask of me, whenever it be demanded of me by your mistress Elisena."

"Then now rejoice," said she, "For I shall carry out what I said."

And leaving him, she returned to her mistress, and relating to her the pact that she had made with the king, she brought great joy into Elisena's heart.

The latter embracing her, said, "My true friend, when can I hold in my arms the one whom you have given me for master?"

"I will tell you," she said. "You know, madam, how that room in which King Perion is lodged has a door that opens on the garden, through which your father sometimes goes out to take recreation. Now it is covered up with curtains, and for it I have the key. Well, when the king goes out from there I shall open it, and it being so late at night that those who dwell in the palace will be taking their rest, we shall be able to enter through it without anyone's noticing. And when it is time to leave, I shall call you and return you to your bed."

Elisena on hearing this, was so overwhelmed with joy that she was unable to speak at first. Then recovering her composure, she said to her:

"My friend, to you I entrust my whole affair. But how can what you say be carried out, for my father shares the room with King Perion, and if he should hear, we would be in great danger?"

"Leave that to me," said the damsel, "for I shall take care of it." With that they left off talking.

And the kings and the queen and the Princess Elisena spent the day dining and supping as before. And when it was dark, Darioleta took aside the squire of King Perion and said to him:

"Ah, friend, tell me if you are a well-born man."

"Yes, I am," he replied, "and even the son of a knight; but why do you ask?"

"I will tell you," she said, "because I wanted to ascertain one thing from you, and I beg of you by the faith that you owe to God and to the king, your master, that you tell me."

"By Holy Mary," said he, "everything I know I shall tell you, if it be not such as would endanger my master."

"This I swear to you," said the damsel, "that neither shall I question you to his harm, nor would you be right to tell it to me. But what I wish to know is that you tell me who the damsel is that your master loves extremely."

"My master," said he, "loves all damsels in general, but certainly I don't know anyone that he loves in the manner you say."

At this moment King Garinter came up to where they were talking, and seeing Darioleta with the squire, he called her to him and said,

"What do you have to talk about with the king's squire?"

"In heaven's name, sire, I will tell you: he called me and told me that his master is accustomed to sleeping alone, and he certainly feels much embarrassment with your company."

The king left her and went to King Perion and said to him:

"My lord, I have many matters to deal with in my administration, and I get up at the hour of matins. So in order not to annoy you, I consider it proper that you remain alone in the room."

King Perion replied, "Sire, do in this as you please."

Then King Garinter recognized that the damsel had told him the truth and he ordered his butlers immediately to take his bed out of the chamber of King Perion.

When Darioleta saw that thus, indeed, what she desired had come to pass, she went to Elisena, her mistress, and told her all that had happened.

"Dear friend," said she, "now I believe, since God thus ordains it, that this which at present appears to be an error, later will be greatly in His service. And tell me what we shall do, for the great joy that I have robs me of a large part of my wits."

"Lady," said the damsel, "Let us do tonight what is arranged, for the door of the room that I told you about I have open."

"Then to you I leave the duty to bring me there when it is time."

Thus they stayed until everybody went to bed.

CHAPTER I

How princess elisena and her maidservant darioleta went to the chamber where king perion was.

When everyone was at rest Darioleta arose and took Elisena as bare as she was in her bed — clad only in her shift and covered with a cloak — and they both went out into the garden. The moon was shining brightly. The maidservant looked at her mistress, and opening the latter's cloak she gazed at her body and said, laughing:

"Madam, in a lucky hour was born the knight who this night will possess you."

And it was well said that of face and body this was the most beautiful maiden then known.

Elisena smiled and said:

"The same you can say for me: that I was born with good luck to be joined with such a knight."

Thus they came to the door of the chamber. And although Elisena was going to the person whom she loved best in all the world, her whole body was trembling so much that she could not utter a word.

And as they knocked on the door to enter, King Perion, who not only with the great anguish that he had in his heart but also with the hope that the maidservant had given him, had not been able to sleep, and at that moment already exhausted and overcome by drowsiness, had fallen asleep and was dreaming that someone was entering that chamber by a side door, and he did not know who, and that this person on going up to him and putting his

hands on his side, drew out his heart and threw it in the river. And he said:

"Why did you commit such a cruel act?"

"This is nothing," said the other, "for there remains for you another heart that I shall take from you, although it will not be through my desire."

The king, who felt a great anguish within him, awoke terrified and began to make the sign of the cross. By this time the maidens already had opened the door and were entering. And when he heard them, he feared treachery because of what he had dreamed; and raising his head through the curtains, he saw the open door, about which he knew nothing, and by the moonlight entering through it, he saw the forms of the maidens. Leaping from the bed where he lay, he took his sword and shield and went toward where he had seen them. And Darioleta, when she saw him thus, said to him,

"What is this, sir? Put down your weapon, for against us little defense is required."

The king, who recognized her, looked and saw Elisena, his greatly beloved; and throwing down the sword and shield, he covered himself with a cloak that he had at his bedside, with which he sometimes arose, and went to take his lady in his arms. And she embraced him as the one she loved more than herself.

Darioleta said to her:

"Remain, lady, with this knight, for although up to now you have defended yourself as a maiden against many men, and he also has defended himself against many other women, your powers are not sufficient for you to defend yourselves from each other."

And Darioleta looked about for the sword where the king had cast it, and took it as a token of the oath and promise that he had made with regard to his marriage with her mistress, and went out into the garden.

The king remained alone with his mistress, whom he gazed at by the light of the three candles that were in the chamber. As he looked at her it seemed to him that all the beauty in the world was united in her, considering himself very fortunate that God had brought him to such a connubial state. And thus embracing

they went to bed. Whence she, for so long a time with such beauty and youth, sought after by so many princes and men of high degree, who had defended herself, maintaining the freedom of a maiden, now in a little more than a day, when her thoughts were farthest removed and withdrawn from it, Love breaking those strong bonds of her modest and saintly life, made her lose that freedom, becoming from then on a matron.

From which one is given to understand that thus women, by withdrawing their thoughts from worldly things, scorning the great beauty with which nature has endowed them, the fresh youth that in a large measure enhances that beauty, the pleasures and delights that with the abundant wealth of their parents they expected to enjoy, seek to save their souls by putting themselves as recluses into convents, yielding with complete obedience their free will to the will of others, seeing their lifetime passing without fame or worldly glory, which they know that their sisters and other relatives are enjoying. Thus they must carefully cover their ears and close their eyes, avoiding seeing relatives and neighbors, withdrawing into devout contemplations and saintly prayers, taking these as true delights, as they really are; because with conversing and seeing they endanger their sacred purpose; wherefore may it not be like that of this beautiful princess Elisena, for after so long a time that she had sought to preserve herself, in one single moment on her seeing the very good looks of that King Perion, her purpose was changed in such a way that if it had not been for the discretion of her maidservant, who sought to preserve her honor with secret matrimony, in truth she would have been completely determined to fall into the worst and lowest path of dishonor; just as it is with many others whom one could mention in this world, who not guarding themselves from what is mentioned above, did likewise, and in the future unheedingly will do so.

While these two lovers thus were taking their pleasure, Elisena asked the king if his departure would be shortly. He said to her:

"Why, my lady, do you ask?"

"Because this good fortune," said she, "that has placed my mortal desires in such joy and peace, already threatens me with

the great sadness and worry that your absence will cause me, to the point of being nearer death than life."

Having heard these words, he said:

"Have no fear of that, for although this my body be separated from your presence, my heart will remain joined with yours, which will give strength to both of us, to you to endure, and to me that I may return quickly; for without my heart there is no other force so strong as to detain me."

Darioleta, who saw it was time to leave, entered the chamber and said,

"Madam, I realize that at other times you have been more pleased with me than now, but it is necessary that you get up and that we go, for it is high time."

Elisena arose and the king said:

"I shall dwell here longer than you imagine, and this will be on your account; and I beg of you not to forget this place."

They went off to their beds, and he remained in his own bed greatly pleased with his mistress, but fearful of the dream that you have already heard. And because of it he was more desirous of going back to his own land where there were at the time many learned men who knew how to explain and clarify such things, and even he himself knew something that he had learned when younger.

Amid this great delight and pleasure King Perion dwelt there for ten days, dallying every night with his very beloved mistress; at the end of which he decided to leave, constraining his will and the tears of his lady, which were no few. So, having bade farewell to King Garinter and the Queen, clad in full armor, when he wanted to gird on his sword he did not find it; and he did not dare ask for it, although it grieved him deeply because it was a very fine and beautiful one; he followed this course in order that his love affair with Elisena be not revealed and in order not to anger King Garinter. And he ordered his squire to find another sword for him; and thus wearing full armor except on hands and head he set out on horseback straight for his kingdom with no other company than his squire. But first Darioleta spoke to him, telling him of the great sorrow and loneliness in which he was leaving his mistress. And he said to her:

"Ah, my friend, I commit her to you just as to my own heart."

And taking from his finger one very beautiful ring of the two he wore, both alike, he gave it to her that Elisena might wear it for love of him. Thus Elisena remained with much loneliness and great sorrow for her friend, so much so that if it had not been for that maidservant who encouraged her very much, she would not have been able to endure except with great difficulty; but by having conversation with her, Elisena felt some surcease.

Thus they were passing their time until she became aware that she was pregnant, losing her appetite, her sleep, and her very beautiful color. Then her worries and sorrows were exceedingly great and not without cause, because at that time it was established by law that any woman, of however high estate and nobility she might be, if she were discovered in adultery, could not by any means avoid death. This very cruel and abominable custom lasted until the coming of the very virtuous King Arthur, who was the best king of those who reigned there, and he revoked the law at the time that he killed Floyan in battle before the gates of Paris. But many kings reigned who upheld this law between him and King Lisuarte. And although by those words that King Perion had sworn on his sword hilt, he was without guilt in the sight of God, he was not without it in the world's view because said words had been so clandestine. But to think of making it known to her friend could not possibly be, since he was so young and proud of heart that he never took pleasure anywhere except in winning honor and fame, and never spent his time in anything except going from one place to another as a knight errant. Thus it was that she did not find relief for her condition in any way. She did not regret so much the loss of her sight of the world in death, as that of her very beloved master and true friend; but that all-powerful Lord through whose permission all of this came to pass, for His holy service infused such courage and discretion in Darioleta that she sufficed with His help to solve everything as you will now hear.

There was in that palace of King Garinter a secluded cave room opening on a river that flowed by there, and it had a small iron door through which the maidens sometimes went out to the river to disport themselves. And it was unoccupied, for no one

lived in it. On the advice of Darioleta, Elisena asked her father and mother for this chamber as a retreat and restorative for her poor state of health, and for the solitary posture which she always tried to maintain, and in order to recite her prayers without being disturbed by anyone except Darioleta, who knew about her indisposition and who would serve her and keep her company. This request was quickly granted by them in the belief that it was her intention solely to restore her body to better health and her soul with more austerity, and they gave the key to the small door to the maid to keep and to open whenever their daughter wished to take comfort there. Thus lodged, Elisena, with somewhat more repose on seeing herself in such a place — for in her opinion there rather than anywhere else she could guard against her peril — took counsel with her maid as to what to do with the one to be born.

"What, lady?" said she. "Let it suffer in order that you may be free."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Elisena; "how can I consent to killing what was engendered by the person whom I love most in the world?"

"Don't worry about that," said the maidservant, "for if they kill you, they will not spare it."

"Although I may die adjudged guilty," said she, "they will not want the innocent baby to suffer."

"Let us stop talking any more about it," said the maid. "For it would be madness that in order to save a thing to no advantage we condemn you to death, and your beloved who without you would not be able to live. But with you and he both living, you will have other children which will cause you to lose the desire for this one."

Since this damsel was very wise and guided by God's mercy, she sought to have a remedy ready before the difficulty arose. And it was in this wise: she obtained four boards large enough so that a baby with its swaddling clothes could be contained therein as in an ark, and as long as a sword, and she caused certain materials to be brought for making a pitch with which she might join them together so that water would not enter. And she kept everything under her bed without Elisena's being

aware of it, until with her own hands she fastened the boards together with that durable pitch. And she made the ark as exact and well executed as a master carpenter would have done. Then she showed it to Elisena and said:

"What do you think this was made for?"

"I do not know," she said.

"You will know," said the maidservant, "when it becomes necessary."

She said, "I would give very little to know anything that is being said or done since I am close to losing my happiness and what I hold most dear."

The maid was greatly distressed to see her thus, and the tears coming to her eyes, she withdrew from Elisena's presence so that she might not see her weeping.

Then it was not long before the time came for Elisena to give birth, she feeling the pangs of childbirth as a thing so new, so rare for her that her heart was in great affliction. As one for whom it was necessary to be able not to moan or complain, her anguish in giving birth was doubled. But finally after a time, the all-powerful Lord willed that without danger to herself she should bear a son. The maidservant, taking it in her hands, saw that it would be handsome if it were fortunate. But Darioleta did not delay in putting into execution the plan that she previously had thought necessary; and she wrapped it in fine swaddling clothes and put it near its mother, and brought there the ark that you have already heard about.

Elisena said to her,

"What do you want to do?"

"Put the baby in here and set it afloat on the river," said she, "and with good luck it can be saved."

The mother held it in her arms weeping bitterly and saying:

"My little one, how grievous to me is your misfortune!"

The maidservant took ink and parchment, and wrote a letter saying, "This is Amadis, the Ill-Timed, son of a king." She said "ill-timed" because she believed that it would soon be dead, and this name was much esteemed there because thus a saint was named to whom the maid commended it. She covered this whole letter with wax, and attached with a cord she put it around the

neck of the child. Elisena had the ring that King Perion gave her when he left her, and she put it on the same cord with the wax, and at the same time that they put the child in the ark, they placed in it the sword of King Perion. This is the sword which on the first night that she had slept with him he cast on the floor, as you have already heard, and which was kept by the maidservant. And although the king missed it, he never dared ask for it lest King Garinter should become angry with those who entered the chamber.

This done, she put the plank on top so well joined and calked that neither water nor anything else could enter there. And taking it in her arms and opening the door, she put it in the river and let it go. And as the water was high and strong it soon passed out to sea, which was not more than half a league away. At this time the dawn was appearing and there occurred a beautiful and marvelous thing, one of those that the very great Lord is accustomed to perform when it so pleases him: for over the sea a ship was proceeding in which was a knight from Scotland with his wife. The wife, whom he was bringing from Little Brittany, had just given birth to a son who was named Gandalin. And the knight's name was Gandales. And going at full speed on their way to Scotland, the morning being already clear, they saw the ark floating on the water; and summoning four sailors, he ordered them quickly to cast off a small boat and bring the ark to him; which was speedily done, although the ark had already floated a long distance from the ship. The knight took the ark and pulled open the covering and saw the boy baby. He took it in his arms and said,

"This is from some good place."

He said this because of the fine clothing and the ring, and the sword which seemed to him very handsome. He began to curse the woman who through fear had abandoned so cruelly such a baby. Putting away for safe-keeping those objects, he begged his wife to rear the child; and she put it to the breast of that nurse who was rearing Gandalin, her own son. And he took it with great desire to suckle, for which the gentleman and his lady were very happy. Thus they crossed the sea with favorable weather until they landed at a town in Scotland which

was called Antalia. And leaving there, they arrived at a castle of theirs, one of the finest of that land, where they had the child brought up as if it were their own son. And everybody thought it was, for the event of its discovery could not be known from the sailors, because they sailed to other places in the ship, which was their own.

CHAPTER II

How king perion went his way with his squire, with heart more accompanied by sorrow than by joy.

King Perion having left Brittany as has already been related, his spirit was greatly tormented by grief as much on account of the great longing that he felt for his mistress whom he truly loved as because of the dream you have already heard which he had at that time. Having arrived in his own kingdom, he sent for all his nobles and commanded the bishops to bring to him the wisest clerics there were in his land in order to explain his dream.

When his vassals learned of his arrival, those summoned, as well as many others, came to him with a great desire to see him, for he was well beloved by all. And often their hearts were tormented on hearing of the armed confrontations in which he engaged. Being fearful of losing him on that account they wanted to keep him with them. But they could not accomplish it, for his mighty heart was happy only when he put his body in great danger.

The king spoke with them concerning the state of the kingdom and about other things having to do with its affairs, but always with a sad countenance, which caused them much sorrow. All matters having been disposed of, he ordered them to return to their lands.

And he had three clerics remain whom he knew to be wisest for what he wanted. Taking them with him, he went to his chapel, and there on the sacred Host he made them swear that they would speak the truth concerning whatever he might ques-

tion them about, not fearing anything, no matter how serious it might seem to them. This done, he commanded the chaplain to leave, and he remained alone with them. Then he recounted to them the dream as already related, and told them to explain to him what might occur from it. One of them, named Ungan the Picard, who was the one who knew most, said:

"Sire, dreams are a vain thing and should be regarded as such, but since it pleases you that yours be deemed important, give us time to examine it."

"So be it," said the king, "and take twelve days for it."

And he commanded them to separate and not to speak with, or see one another during that time.

They established their judgments and firm convictions, each to his best ability. The time having arrived, they came together before the king. And he took aside Albert of Champagne and said,

"You know what you have sworn to me; now speak."

"Then let the others come," said the cleric, "and I will speak in their presence."

"Let them come," said the king. And he had them called.

Then all being together, Albert said,

"Sire, I shall tell you what I understand. It seems to me that the room that was well locked and that you saw entered by the little door signifies that this kingdom of yours, though locked and guarded, would be entered by someone through some part of it in order to take something from you, and just as he placed his hand on your sides and drew out your heart and threw it in a river, so he will take city or castle and will place it in the power of one from whom you will not be able to get it back."

"And the other heart," said the king, "which he told me was left to me and which he would unwillingly cause me to lose?"

"As for that, it seems that another person will enter your land to take something similar, more constrained by force of someone who commands him to do so than of his own free will. And on this case I do not know, sire, what more to say to you."

The king commanded the other cleric, whose name was Antales, to say what he had found out. He agreed with everything that the other had said. "Except that my reading of auguries shows me it is already done and by the one who loves you; and

this makes me wonder, because even now you have not lost any of your kingdom, and if such were the case, it would not be by a person who loved you greatly."

On hearing this the king smiled a little, for it seemed to him that nothing had been said. But Ungan the Picard, who knew much more than they, lowered his head and laughed most assuredly, although he did so seldom, for by nature he was an aloof, sad man. The king looked at him and said.

"Now, master, tell us what you may know."

"Sire," said he, "by chance I saw things that it is not necessary to make known except to you alone."

"Then everybody go outside," said he, and closing the doors they both remained.

The master said,

"Know you, oh king, that what I was laughing about was those words which you had just held in low esteem, for he said it was already done by the one who loves you most. Now I wish to tell you what you are keeping quite secret and you think that nobody knows. You love where already you have done your will, and the one whom you love is wondrously beautiful." — And he described to him all her features as if he had her before him. — "And concerning the room in which you saw yourself locked, this you clearly understand and how she, wanting to remove from your heart and hers those troubles and worries, sought to enter through the door you had not perceived, without your knowledge; and the hands that she put into your side is the joining of you both, and the heart that she drew out signifies a son or daughter that she will have by you."

"But master," said the king, "what does her throwing it into the river show?"

"That, sire," said he, "don't seek to know, for it holds no advantage for you."

"Still," said he, "tell me and don't fear."

"Well, since such is your pleasure," said Ungan, "I wish of you a guarantee that because of anything that I may say here you will not be angry at her who loves you so much."

"I promise," said the king.

"Then you must understand the one thing by means of the other, which is that you will have another son and in some manner you will lose it against the will of that one who now will cause you to lose the first."

"Tremendous things you have told me," said the king, "and may it please God in his mercy that the last item concerning the sons not turn out to be as true as what you have told me concerning the lady whom I love."

"The things ordained and permitted by God," said the master, "no one can hinder or know how they will end, and for this reason men should not become saddened or happy on account of them, because often the bad like the good that apparently can happen to them, happens differently from what they expected. And you, noble king, dismissing from your memory all this which you with such insistence have wanted to know, maintain in it always the need to pray to God that in this as in all other things He do what is in His holy service, because that without doubt is best."

King Perion was very well satisfied with what he wanted to know and even more with the advice of Ungan the Picard, and always kept him near at hand, bestowing on him many boons and favors. And on leaving for the palace, he encountered a damsel more adorned with finery than beauty; and she said to him:

"Know you, King Perion, that when you recover what you have lost, the seigniory of Ireland will lose its flower."

And away she went and he could not stop her. Thus the king was left meditating about this and other things.

The author ceases to speak of this and returns to the youth that Gandales was bringing up, who was called the Child of the Sea, for thus they named him; and he was reared with great care by that knight Don Gandales and his wife, and became so handsome that all who saw him marvelled. And one day Gandales rode forth armed, for he was a very fine knight and very courageous. And he was always accompanied by King Languines in the period when they pursued a martial career, and although the king had ceased to do so, Gandales did not; rather he used arms often, and going along thus armed as I am telling you, he came upon a damsel who said to him:

"Alas! Gandales, if many men of high degree knew what I know now they would cut off your head."

"Why?" said he.

"Because you are custodian of their deaths."

And know you that this was the damsel who said to King Perion that when his loss was recovered, the seigniory of Ireland would lose its flower. Gandales, who did not understand, said:

"Damsel, in God's name, I beg of you to tell me what that is."

"I shall not tell you," said she, "but nevertheless it will so come to pass." And leaving him, she went her way. Gandales kept thinking about what she had said, and after a bit he saw her turn around very quickly on her horse, crying out:

"Oh, Gandales, succor me, or I'm a goner!"

And he looked and saw an armed knight coming after her with his sword in his hand. And Gandales spurred his horse and placed himself between them and said,

"Sir knight, God curse you, what do you want of the damsel?"

"Why," said he, "do you want to protect this woman who by deceit has me ruined in both body and soul?"

"I know nothing about that," said Gandales, "but I am here to protect her from you, because women should not be chastised this way, no matter how much they deserve it."

"Now you will see," said the knight. And putting his sword in the scabbard, he returned to a grove where there was a very beautiful damsel, who gave him a shield and a lance. He rode on the run toward Gandales, and Gandales toward him. And they struck each other on their shields with their lances so hard that they flew to pieces, and horses and men collided so violently that both men fell, each in a different spot, and their horses with them. Each one got up as quickly as he could, and they gave battle on foot, but it did not last long, for the damsel who had been fleeing placed herself between them and said,

"Gentlemen, have done!"

The knight who had come up behind her then drew aside, and she said to him,

"Obey me."

"I shall come willingly," said he, "as to the thing I love most in the world." And throwing down the shield from his

neck and the sword from his hand, he knelt before her. And Gandales was greatly amazed at this; and she said to the knight whom she had before her:

"Tell that damsel under the tree to go away at once; otherwise that you will cut off her head."

The knight turned to the other damsel and said,

"Alas, you evil woman, I marvel that I don't knock off your head."

This damsel saw that her friend was enchanted, and mounting her horse, she then went away weeping. The other damsel said,

"Gandales, I am very grateful to you for what you have done; good luck to you, for if this gentleman wronged me, I pardon him."

"I don't know about your pardon," said Gandales, "but I am not calling off the combat unless he concede defeat."

"You will call it off," said the damsel, "for even though you were the best knight in the world, I would cause him to vanquish you."

"You will do whatever you can," said he, "but I will not stop unless you tell me why you said that I was custodian of the deaths of many men of high degree."

"Rather shall I tell you," said she, "because I love this knight as my lover, and you as my helper."

Then she drew him aside and said,

"You shall swear to me as a loyal knight, that no other shall ever learn it until I command you to tell."

He so agreed, and she said to him,

"I say to you that the one you found in the sea will be the flower of the knights of his time; he will make strong men shudder; he will begin all things and will finish honorably where others fail; he will do such things as no one ever thought could be commenced or concluded by mortal man. He will cause the proud to be of good grace; he will have cruelty of heart against those who deserve it; and even more I tell you, for this will be the knight who in the world most loyally will maintain love and he will love such a person as is becoming to his high prowess. And know you that he comes of kings on both sides. Now, go you," said the damsel, "and believe firmly that all will hap-

pen as I tell you; and if you reveal it, there will befall you because of it more evil than good."

"Oh, lady," said Gandales, "I beg of you in God's name that you tell me where I shall find you in order to speak with you concerning his concerns."

"This you will not know from me or from any other," said she.

"Then tell me your name, by the faith that you owe to the thing that you love most in the world."

"You entreat me so much that I will tell you; the thing that I love most I know dislikes me more than anything that is in the world, and this is that most handsome knight with whom you fought; but I do not cease on this account to force him to do my will without his being able to do otherwise. And know you that my name is Urganda the Unknown; now gaze on me well and recognize me if you can."

And he who first saw her as a damsel in his opinion not over eighteen years of age, now saw her so old and weak that he wondered how she was able to maintain herself on the palfrey. And he began to cross himself at that marvel. When she saw him thus, she laid hands on a coffer that she carried on her lap. And passing her hand over herself, she became as she was at first.

"Does it seem to you that you would find me even though you searched for me? Well, I tell you not to go to any trouble about it; for if all those in the world should seek me, they would not find me against my will."

"May God save me, lady," said Gandales, "I so believe it. But I beg of you in God's name to remember the youth who is abandoned by all except me."

"Don't think about that," said Urganda, "for that abandoned one will be protection and restorative for many, and I love him more than you think, as one who expects from him soon to have two aids that no one else would be able to plan, and he will receive two rewards for which he will be very happy; and now I commend you to God, for I wish to go, and you will see me sooner than you think."

And she took her lover's helmet and shield in order to carry them to him. And to Gandales, who saw him with his head

disarmed, he seemed the most handsome knight he had ever seen. And thus they departed from their encounter.

This is where we shall allow Urganda to go away with her friend and shall tell about Gandales, who departing from Urganda, headed for his castle. And on the way he encountered the damsel who had been accompanying Urganda's beloved and who was weeping near a fountain. And when she saw Gandales she recognized him and said:

"What about that, sir? Why hasn't that treacherous woman whom you helped had you killed?"

"Treacherous she is not," said Gandales, "but good and wise; and if you were a knight, I would make you pay well for your insane talk."

"Alas, wretched woman that I am!" said she. "How well she knows how to deceive everyone!"

"And what deceit did she wreak on you?" said he.

"She took from me that handsome knight whom you saw, who of his free will would rather live with me than with her."

"That deceit indeed she did practice," said he, "for beyond all reason and without conscience you and she are holding him; so it seems to me."

"However that may be," said she, "if I can I shall avenge myself."

"You are thinking wildly," said Gandales, "in seeking to anger that woman, who will know it, not only before you do it, but before you plan it."

"Go away now," said she, "for often those who know most fall into the most dangerous snares."

Gandales left her and as before went his way thinking about the affairs of his young man child. And arriving at the castle, before disarming he took him in his arms and began to kiss him, gazing at him with tears in his eyes, saying to himself: "My handsome son, may God grant that I live to see your heyday."

At that time the child was three years old and his extraordinary good looks were regarded as marvelous; and when he saw his foster father weeping, he put his hands before the latter's eyes as if he wanted to wipe them; for which Gandales was happy considering that the older he grew the more he would

grieve about his sadness. He put him down and went to remove his armor. And from that time forward with greater fondness he took care of him until he was five years old. Then he made him a bow to his size and another for his son Gandalin; and he had them shoot in his presence; thus he continued to rear him up to the age of seven years.

Then at this time King Languines, on passing through his kingdom with his wife and his entire retinue from one town to another, came to the castle of Gandales, which was on his way, and where he was very well entertained. But Gandales commanded that the Child of the Sea and his own son Gandalin and other youths be put in a yard so that the king and his retinue might not see the boy. But the queen, who was lodged in the highest part of the house, on looking out from a window, saw the youths who were shooting their bows, and the Child of the Sea among them, so spruce and handsome that she was astonished on seeing him; and she beheld him better dressed than all the others, so that he seemed to be their lord; and since she did not see any of Don Gandales' household whom she could ask, she summoned her ladies-in-waiting and maids, saying:

"Come and see the most handsome child you have ever seen."

Then while all were gazing as at a thing very strange and extraordinarily handsome, the youngster became thirsty; and putting down his bow and arrows he went to a water pipe to drink, and a youth older than the others took his bow and sought to shoot with it, but Gandalin would not permit it, and the other pushed him roughly.

Gandalin said: "Help me, Child of the Sea."

And when he heard him, he stopped drinking and went over to the big boy, and the latter let go of the bow, and he took it in his hand and said,

"You struck my brother at a bad time;" and with the bow he struck him as hard a blow on top of his head as he could, and they grappled with each other, so that the older one, in poor shape, began to run away and met the tutor who was in charge of them. He said,

"What is the matter?"

"The Child of the Sea," said he, "struck me."

Then he went to him with a leather strap and said,

"How is this, Child of the Sea, that you now dare to attack the boys? Now you will see how I shall punish you for it."

He knelt before him and said,

"Sir, I would rather you strike me than that in my presence anyone should dare harm my brother." And tears came to his eyes.

The tutor had compassion, and said to him:

"If you do that again, I shall make you really weep."

The queen had a good view of all this, and she wondered why they called the boy Child of the Sea.

CHAPTER III

How king languines took with him the child of the sea and gandalin, the son of don gandales.

At this juncture the king and Gandales entered, and the queen said,

"Tell me, Don Gandales, is that handsome boy your son?"

"Yes, madam," said he.

"Well why," said she, "do they call him Child of the Sea?"

"Because he was born at sea," said Gandales, "when I was coming from Brittany."

"By Heaven, he resembles you very little," said the queen.

She said this because the boy was marvelously handsome and Don Gandales had more virtue than good looks. The king, who was gazing at the boy, who seemed to him very handsome, said,

"Summon him, Gandales; I wish to rear him."

"Sire," said he, "I will do so; but he is not yet old enough to leave his mother."

Then he went for him and brought him, saying to him,

"Child of the Sea, do you wish to go with my lord, the king?"

"I shall go wherever you bid me," said he, "and let my brother go mith me."

"I shall not stay without him," said Gandalin.

"I believe, sire," said Gandales, "that you will have to take them both, for they don't want to part."

"That pleases me very much," said the king.

Then he brought him to his side and ordered his son Agrajes summoned, and said to the latter:

"Son, cherish greatly these youths, as much as I cherish their father."

When Gandales saw this, that the Child of the Sea was being put into the hands of another who was not worth as much as he, the tears came to his eyes and he said to himself: "Fair son, who when tiny didst begin to encounter adventure and danger, and whom I see in the service of those who might well serve you; may God protect and direct you in all matters pertaining to His service and your great honor, and may He render true the words which the wise Urganda said to me of you, and may He let me live to see your great deeds at arms which are promised you." The king, who saw Gandales' eyes full of tears, said:

"I never thought you were so foolish."

"I am not so much so as you think," said he, "but if you please, grant me brief audience in the queen's presence." Then they ordered everyone to withdraw, and Gandales said to them:

"My lord and lady, know you the truth about this boy whom you take and whom I found on the sea." And he related to them in what manner it had come about, and also told them what he found out from Urganda except that covered by the oath he took.

"Now do with him as you ought, for may God save me: according to the trappings he brought, I believe he is of very high lineage."

The king was quite pleased to know it, and esteemed the knight who had watched over him so well. He said to Gandales,

"Well, since God took such care in preserving him, it is right that we take care also in bringing him up, forming his character properly when it be time."

The queen said:

"I wish him to be mine, if it so pleases you, while he is of an age to serve women; afterwards he will be yours."

The king agreed.

The next morning they departed from there, taking the boys with them, and went their way. But I tell you concerning the queen that she had the Child of the Sea brought up with as much care and honor as if he were her own son.

But the pains that were taken with him were not in vain, because his talent was such and his nature so noble that he

learned everything much better and more quickly than anyone else. He loved hunting and wild country so much that if he had been permitted it, never would he have withdrawn from it, shooting with his bow and feeding game to the dogs. The queen was so pleased with the way he served that she never let him leave her presence.

The author here tells again of King Perion and of his mistress Elisena. As you have heard, Perion was in his kingdom after having talked with the clerics about the dream they explained to him, and often he thought about the words that the damsel had said to him; but he could not understand them.

Then a few days having passed, and as he was in his palace, a damsel entered by the door and gave him a letter from Elisena, his mistress, in which he was informed that King Garinter, her father, had died and that she was left without any protector to take pity on her; for the queen of Scotland, her sister, and the king, husband of the latter, were seeking to take her lands. King Perion, although he felt great sorrow for the death of King Garinter, was happy to think of going to see his mistress, for whom he had never lost his desire, and he said to the damsel:

"Now go and tell your mistress that without lingering a single day, I will be with her soon."

The damsel returned very happy. The king, arranging for the people that were needed for his journey, set out straightway for where Elisena was; and so much ground did he cover each day that he soon reached Brittany, where he found news that Languines had entire possession of the land, except those towns that her father had left to Elisena. And knowing that she was in a town called Acarte, he went there, and whether he was well received, there is no need to tell, and likewise she by him, for so deeply they loved each other. The king told her to have all her friends and relatives summoned because he wished to take her as his wife. Elisena did so with great joy of heart, because that was the goal of all her desires.

The arrival of King Perion being learned by King Languines, and how he wanted to marry Elisena, King Languines ordered summoned all the nobles of the land, and taking them with him set out to join him. Both of them having greeted and received

each other with good will, and the wedding and festivities having been celebrated, the kings decided to return to their kingdoms. As King Perion and Elisena, his wife, were traveling, on passing near a river at a place where they wanted to camp for the night, the king went alone upstream thinking about how he would find out from Elisena concerning the son that the clerics had told him about when they explained the dream. And so far did he walk while thinking of this that he arrived at a hermitage; into which, tying his horse to a tree, he entered in order to offer a prayer. And he saw inside an old man dressed in clerical garb, who said to the king:

"Sir, is it true that King Perion is married to the daughter of the king our lord?"

"It is true," said he.

"It gives me great pleasure," said the good man, "for I know for certain that he is loved by her with all her heart."

"How do you know?" said he.

"From her lips," said the good man.

The king, thinking he would find out what he desired to know, made himself known to him and said,

"I beg that you tell me what you know from her."

"I would commit a great error in doing that," said the good man, "and you would regard me as a heretic if I were to make known to you what was said in confession; let what I now tell you suffice: that she loves you with a true and loyal love. But I want you to know what a damsel who seemed to me very wise told me at the time you came to this land, and I do not understand it. She said that from Brittany would come two dragons who had their seigniory in Gaul and their hearts in Great Britain, and they would go forth from there to eat the beasts of the other lands, and that they would be very fierce and ferocious against some; and against others, gentle and humble, as if they had neither claws nor hearts. And I was greatly amazed to hear it. But not that I know the sense of it."

The king marvelled, and although at that time he did not understand it, time was when he clearly knew it to be the truth. And so King Perion bade farewell to the hermit and returned to the tents where he had left his wife and retinue, where that night

he remained with great delight. Being in their bed in much pleasure, he told the queen what the learned men had declared about his dream, and he begged her to tell him whether she had borne a son. The queen on hearing this was so ashamed she wished she were dead, and she denied it, saying that she had never given birth. Thus the king was not able at that time to find out what he wanted. The next day they departed from there and pursued their daily journeys until they reached the kingdom of Gaul. And everyone in the land was pleased with the queen, who was a very noble lady. And there the king dallied somewhat more than was his wont, and had by her a son and a daughter. The son they named Galaor, and the daughter, Melicia.

When the son was two and a half years old, it so happened that the king his father was at a town near the sea called Bangil. He was at a window overlooking a garden, and the queen was in the garden amusing herself with her ladies-in-waiting and her maidens, having by her side the son, who was already beginning to walk. They saw enter through a postern that opened on the sea, a giant with a very large mace in his hand, and he was so large and so terrible in appearance that there was no man who saw him who was not frightened thereby. And so were the queen and her retinue, for some fled among the trees, and others fell to the ground, covering their eyes in order not to see him. But the giant went straight to the child, whom he saw helpless and alone; and on his reaching it, the child stretched out his arms laughing, and the giant took him in his arms, saying:

"The damsel told me the truth." And he returned the way he had come, and getting into a boat he went away over the sea.

The queen, who saw him go carrying the child, shouted loudly, but it availed her little; but her grief and that of everyone was so great that although the king had great sorrow at not having been able to rescue his son, on seeing that it couldn't be helped he went down to the garden to comfort the queen, who was beside herself; for there came to her the memory of the other son whom she had launched on the sea, and now that she was intending to remedy her great sadness with this one, to see it lost in such a way, not having any hope of ever recovering it, caused the greatest raving madness in the world. But the king

took her with him and made her repair to her room, and when he beheld her somewhat calmer, said,

"Lady, now I know to be true what the clerics told me, that this was the last heart, and tell me the truth, for in view of the occasion, you ought not to be blamed."

The queen, though with much shame, related to him all that had happened to the first son, and how she had cast it into the sea.

"Don't be distressed," said the king. "Since it has pleased God that we should take but little enjoyment in these two sons, I hope in His name that the time will come when by some good fortune we shall find out something concerning them."

This giant who took the child was a native of Leonis and had two castles on an island, and his name was Gandalas, and he was not such a doer of evil as the other giants. Rather he was well-disposed until he was enraged, but after he was, he was wont to commit great acts of cruelty. He went with his child to the extremity of the island, where there was a hermit, a good man of saintly life. And the giant, who had had that island populated with Christians, customarily ordered them to give alms for the hermit's maintenance, and said,

"Friend, I give you this child to bring up and teach all that befits a knight, and I tell you that he is the son of a king and queen, and I forbid you ever to be against him."

The good man said to him,

"Tell me, why did you commit this very cruel act?"

"I will tell you," said he. "Know you that being about to enter a boat in order to fight with Albadan, the fierce giant who killed my father and holds, taken by force from me, the rock of Galtares, which is mine, I encountered a damsel who said to me,

" 'What you wish must be carried out by King Perion of Gaul's son, who will have much greater strength and dexterity than you.'

"And I asked her if she was telling the truth.

" 'This you will see' said she, 'at the time when the two branches of one tree which now are separated are united.' "

Thus this boy called Galaor remained in the power of the hermit, and what happened to him will be related hereafter.

At the time that the things happened which you have heard previously, there reigned in Great Britain a king named Falangriz, who on dying without issue, left a brother greatly skilled at arms and of great discretion by the name of Lisuarte, who had just wedded the daughter of the King of Denmark, Brisena by name, who was the most beautiful maiden to be found in all the islands of the sea. And although she had been courted by many princes of high degree, and her father out of fear of some, did not dare give her to any of them, on seeing this Lisuarte and learning of his good conduct and great strength, rejecting all others, she married him, who was serving her out of love. This King Falangriz now being dead, the nobles of Great Britain, knowing the feats at arms that this Lisuarte had accomplished and that through his great prowess he had attained such a fine marriage, sent for him to take over the kingdom.

CHAPTER IV

How king lisuarte sailed across the sea and made port in the kingdom of scotland, where he was received with great honor.

After the embassy was heard by King Lisuarte, the king set out on the sea, aided by his father-in-law with a great fleet. Sailing over the sea he was carried to the kingdom of Scotland, where he was received with great honor by King Languines. This Lisuarte brought with him Brisena, his wife, and a daughter he had by her when he dwelt in Denmark, Oriana by name, about ten years old, the most beautiful creature ever seen. So beautiful was she that she was called the peerless one, because in her time there was no one who was her equal.

And because she was prone to seasickness, he decided to leave her there, begging King Languines and the queen to take charge of her. They were happy to do so, and the queen said, "You may believe that I will watch over her just as her mother would."

And very hurriedly taking ship, Lisuarte arrived in Great Britain and found some who obstructed him, as is customary in such situations. For this reason he did not bethink himself of his daughter for some time. And by dint of the great effort he put forth, he was king — the best king there ever was there; the one who best maintained knighthood in its rights until King Arthur reigned, who surpassed in might all the kings who went before, although many reigned between the one and the other.

The author leaves Lisuarte ruling with great peace and quiet in Great Britain and returns to the Child of the Sea, who at that time was twelve years old, and in his height and limbs seemed

fully fifteen. He was in the queen's service, and thus by her and by all her ladies-in-waiting and maids was greatly beloved. But as soon as Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte, came there, the queen gave the Child of the Sea to her for her service, saying to her,

"My dear, this is a youth who will serve you."

She said that she was pleased. The youth took this word to heart in such a way that never afterwards did he remove it from his memory, so that without fail, just as this story relates, in all the days of his life he was never weary of serving her and his heart was always given into her keeping. This love lasted as long as they lived; for just as he loved her, so did she love him. Thus they never stopped loving each other for an instant. But the Child of the Sea, who did not recognize or know anything about how she loved him, considered himself very bold to have his thoughts on her, because of her high estate and her beauty, without any intention of being so bold as to say to her a single word about it. And she who had for him a heartfelt love, refrained from talking with him any more than with others, in order that people might not suspect anything. But their eyes had great pleasure in showing their hearts what they loved most in the world. Thus they lived in secrecy without saying anything about their affair of the heart to each other.

In the course of time as I am telling you, the Child of the Sea felt that he would be capable of bearing arms if there were someone to make him a knight. And he desired knighthood with the resolve that he would be such a knight as to perform deeds whereby he would die, or if he lived his lady would esteem him. And with this desire he went to the king, who was in a garden, and kneeling he said to him,

"Sire, if it please you, it might be time for me to be a knight."

"Why, Child of the Sea, do you strive already to maintain knighthood? Know you that it is easy to attain and difficult to maintain. And for him who seeks to win this name of knighthood and to maintain it to his own honor, so many and so difficult are the deeds that he must do that often his heart becomes embit-

tered; and if he is such a knight that through fear or greed he fails to do what is proper, death would avail him more than to live in shame; and therefore I should deem it well then that you be patient for a while."

The Child of the Sea said to him:

"Not for all that will I fail to be a knight, for if in my thought I could not fulfill what you have said, my heart would not be striving to be one. And since I am voluntarily your servant, perform what you ought with me in this matter; if not, I shall seek someone else to do it."

The king, who feared he would do just that, said,

"Child of the Sea, I know when it will be necessary and most to your honor that you be made a knight. And I promise you to do it; and meanwhile your armor, weapons, and riding gear shall be made ready. But to whom do you intend to go?"

"To King Perion," said he, "who they tell me is a good knight and married to the sister of my lady the queen; and I shall let him know that I was a servant of hers, and when he knows this, I thought that he would gladly knight me."

"Now," said the king, "stand by, for when it is time you will be honorably knighted."

And then he ordered that the things needed for the order of knighthood be prepared for him, and informed Gandales of all that had befallen him with the latter's ward, for which Gandales was very happy, and sent to the Child of the Sea by a maiden the sword, the ring, and the letter wrapped and sealed in wax just as they were in the ark where he found him. And one day as the beautiful Oriana was amusing herself in the palace with other ladies-in-waiting and maidens while the queen was sleeping, the Child of the Sea was there with them, though he did not dare even gaze at his lady, and he was saying to himself:

"Oh God, why does it please You to give such beauty to this lady and to me such great trouble and sorrow because of her? In an unfortunate moment my eyes beheld her, for by losing the light of her countenance they will pay with death for that great madness which they have put into my heart."

And while he was thus almost out of his senses, a page entered and said to him,

"Child of the Sea, there outside is a strange damsel who brings you gifts and wishes to see you."

He wanted to go out to her. But when she who loved him heard her, her heart fluttered so that if anyone had looked at her, he would have been able to perceive her great perturbation. But the others had no such thought. And she said,

"Child of the Sea, remain here and let the damsel enter, and we shall see the gifts."

He remained and the damsel entered, and she was the one whom Gandales sent. And she said,

"Child of the Sea, your foster father Gandales greets you heartily as one who loves you, and he sends you this sword and this ring and this wax, and begs you out of love for him to wear this sword as long as it lasts."

He took the gifts and put the ring and wax in his lap, and he began to unwind from around the sword a piece of linen that covered it, while wondering why it did not bear a scabbard. And meanwhile Oriana took the wax which she did not believe would have any other object in it, and said to him,

"Of these gifts I wish this one."

But he begged her to take the ring, which was one of the most beautiful ones in the world. And while he was looking at the sword the king entered and said,

"Child of the Sea, what do you think of this sword?"

"Sire, it seems to me to be very beautiful, but I don't know why it is without a scabbard."

"For full fifteen years it has not had one," said the king.

And taking him by the hand, he drew him aside and said to him,

"You wish to be a knight, and you do not know whether by right it befits you, and I wish you to know the facts about yourself as I know them."

And he related to him how out in the sea he was found in the ark with that sword and ring, as you have heard.

"I believe what you tell me, because that damsel told me that my master Gandales sent me this sword, and I thought that she misspoke in not telling me that it was my father who sent it. But what you tell me does not cause me sorrow, except my

not knowing my lineage, nor they about me. But I consider myself a nobleman, for my heart so constrains me. And now, sire, knighthood is more important to me than before, and to be one to win honor and glory, as one who knows not where he comes from, and as if all those of my lineage were dead, for so I consider them, since they do not know me, nor I them."

The king believed he would be a good man and very courageous for everything; and while they were engaged in this conversation, a knight came and said to him:

"Sire, King Perion of Gaul has arrived at your house."

"Why at my house?" said the king.

"In your palace he is," said the knight.

He went then very quickly, as one who knew how to honor everyone; and when they saw each other they greeted one another, and Languines said to him:

"Sire, why did you come to this land so unexpectedly?"

"I came to seek friends," said King Perion, "because I have more need of them now than ever, for King Abies of Ireland is waging war against me; and he is with all his forces in my land, and he is entrenching himself in my waste land and comes with his cousin Daganel, and both have so great a force gathered against me that I need very much my relatives and friends as much on account of having lost many of my people in the war, as on account of many others in whom I trusted having failed me."

Languines said to him:

"Brother, I am very sorry for your trouble; and I shall help you as best I can."

Agrajes was already a knight, and kneeling before his father said:

"Sire, I beg of you a boon."

And he who loved him as he did himself said:

"Son, ask whatever you wish."

"I ask of you, sire, that you permit me to go to defend the queen, my aunt."

"I grant it," said he, "and I shall send you with the most honor and the most elegantly equipped that I can."

King Perion was very happy about this. The Child of the Sea, who was there, was gazing fixedly at King Perion, not as his

father, for he did not know that, but more on account of the great prowess at arms that he had heard told of him, and he wanted to be a knight by his hand more than by any other in the world. And for this he believed that the request of the queen would be of much avail to him; but finding her very sad because of her sister's loss, he did not seek to speak to her, and he went where his lady Oriana was; and kneeling before her, he said:

"Lady Oriana, might I learn from you the cause of the sadness that the queen has?"

Oriana, who thus saw before her that one whom she most loved, without his knowing it or anyone else, was thrilled to the heart, and said to him:

"Oh, Child of the Sea, this is the first thing you have asked of me, and I shall do it willingly."

"Ah, lady," said he, "I am not so bold or so worthy as to beg anything of such a lady, but to do what I am commanded by you."

"And why is it?" said she. "Is your heart so weak that it is not strong enough to ask?"

"So weak," said he, "that in all things opposing you it must fail me, except to serve you as one who without being his own master is all yours."

"Mine," said she, "since when?"

"Since when it pleased you," said he.

"And how did it please me?" said Oriana.

"Let it be recalled, lady," said the Child of the Sea, "that the day when your father left here, he took the queen by the hand and placing me before you, said, 'This youth I give you to serve you,' and you said you were pleased thereby. Since then I hold and shall hold myself ready to serve you without any other woman or myself having mastery over me as long as I live."

"That word," said she, "you took with greater understanding than the purpose with which it was said, but it pleases me well as it is."

He was so overcome at the pleasure that he received from this that he was unable to make any answer; and she saw that she had complete mastery over him; and leaving him she went to

the queen and found out that the cause of her sadness was her sister's loss, which on returning to the Child of the Sea she made known to him.

"If it should please you, lady, that I be a knight, it would be in aid of that sister of the queen, by your permitting my departure."

"And if I did not permit it," said she, "would you not go there?"

"No," said he, "for without the favor of the one whose it is, my vanquished heart could not be supported in any affront, even less without affront."

She laughed with good countenance and said to him,

"Well, since this I have won from you, I agree that you be my knight and that you help that sister of the queen."

The youth kissed her hands and said,

"Since the king, my lord, has not wished to make me a knight, I should be most willing that it be by King Perion at your request."

"I shall do in the matter what I can" said she, "but it will be necessary to say so to Princess Mabilia, for her request would be of great avail with the king her uncle."

Then she went to her and told her how the Child of the Sea wished to be a knight at the hands of King Perion, and that her request for it on their behalf would be necessary. Mabilia, who was very courageous and who loved the Child with a wholesome affection, said,

"Then let us do it for him, for he deserves it, and let him come to my mother's chapel wearing full armor, and we shall keep him company with other damsels; and when King Perion starts to take horse to leave, which according to what I have learned will be before dawn, I will send him a message to request that he see me; and there he will carry out our request, for he is very much a well-mannered gentleman."

"You are talking sense," said Oriana; and calling the Child they told him how they had it arranged. He took it as a favor to himself. Thus they ended that conversation in which all three were in agreement; and the Child of the Sea called Gandalin and said to him:

"Brother, bring all of my arms secretly to the queen's chapel, for tonight I intend to be a knight, and because on the hour I must depart from here, I wish to know if you will want to go with me."

"Sire, I tell you I shall never willingly be parted from you."

The tears came to the eyes of the Child, and he kissed him on the face and said to him:

"Friend, now do what I told you."

Gandalin put the arms in the chapel while the queen was having supper; and the tables having been cleared, the Child of the Sea went to the chapel and armed himself completely except his head and hands, and said his prayers before the altar, praying God that in arms as in those mortal desires that he had for his lady, he be given victory. As soon as the queen went to bed, Oriana and Mabilia with a few damsels went to him to bear him company; and when Mabilia ascertained that King Perion was on the point of riding away, she sent for him to tell him to see her beforehand. He came immediately and Mabilia said to him,

"Sire, do what Oriana, daughter of King Lisuarte, will request of you."

The king said he would do it willingly, for the merit of her father obliged him to do so. Oriana came before the king, and when he beheld her so beautiful, he believed that the equal of such beauty could not be found anywhere in the world; and she said,

"I wish to ask a boon of you."

"Willingly," said the king, "I will grant it."

"Then make my page a knight."

And she pointed him out as he knelt before the altar. The king saw the youth to be so handsome that he was greatly astonished, and coming up to him, he said,

"Do you wish to receive the order of knighthood?"

"I do," he replied.

"In the name of God, and may He ordain that it be in you as well employed and as augmented in honor as He augmented your good looks." And putting the right spur on him, he said to him:

"Now you are a knight and you may take the sword."

The king took it and gave it to him, and the Child of the Sea girded it on in very proper fashion.

And the king said,

"Certainly I should like to have performed this act of dubbing you knight with greater honor in accordance with your bearing and appearance. But I hope to God that your fame will be such as to give testimony of what should have been done with more honor."

And Mabilia and Oriana were very happy, and kissed the hands of the king; and commending the Child of the Sea to God, the king went on his way.

That was the beginning of the love affair of this knight and this maiden; and if to anyone who reads these words, they seem naive, may he not wonder at it, because not only at such a tender age as hers, but at other ages at which with great discretion, many things have happened, great, over-abundant love has had such force that senses and speech in such situations were disturbed. Thus very rightly they in saying the words and the author in not writing them in more polished ones should be without blame, because to each thing one must give what befits it. The Child of the Sea being knighted as is told above, and wishing to bid farewell to Oriana, his lady, and to Mabilia and the other damsels who kept vigil with him in the chapel, Oriana, to whom it seemed that her heart was breaking, without letting him know it took him aside and said to him,

"Child of the Sea, I consider you so good that I do not believe you are the son of Gandales; if you know anything else about this, tell me."

The youth told her what he had ascertained from King Languines concerning his antecedents, and she, being very happy to learn it, bade him godspeed.

And at the door of the palace he found Gandalin, who had for him his lance, shield, and horse. And mounting it he went on his way, without anyone's seeing him, it being already night. He went on until he entered a forest, where past mid-day he ate what Gandalin had brought him. And it being now late, he heard to his right some very sad cries as of a man who was suffering greatly; and he went in that direction; and on the way he found a dead knight, and passing by him, he saw another who was sorely wounded, and bending over him was a woman who

was causing him to make the outcries by inserting her hands in his wounds; and when the knight saw the Child of the Sea, he said:

"Alas, sir knight, help me! And don't let this treacherous woman kill me in this fashion."

The Child of the Sea said,

"Withdraw, lady, for what you are doing does not become you."

She withdrew and the knight went into a swoon, and the Child of the Sea dismounted, for he wanted very much to know who the knight was, and took him in his arms; and as soon as he revived, he said,

"Oh, sir, I am dying; and take me where there is counsel for my soul."

The Child of the Sea said to him,

"Sir knight, exert yourself and tell me, if you please, what plight this is in which you are."

"That which I sought," said the knight, "for I, being rich and of a distinguished lineage, married that woman whom you saw, out of the great love which I had for her, she being contrary in all respects. And last night she was going away with that knight who lies there dead, whom I had never seen until last night, when he lodged with me. And after I killed him in combat, I told her that I would pardon her if she swore not to do me any more wrongs or dishonor, and she agreed to this. But when she saw me bleeding so much from my wounds that I no longer had any strength, she sought to kill me by inserting her hands in them. So I am dying and I beg you to carry me on to where a hermit dwells who will care for my soul."

The young knight had him mount in front of Gandalin, and he mounted and they went toward the hermitage. But the evil woman, fearing that her husband would go after her, had three brothers of hers come along that road, and these encountered her and asked her why she was going thus; she said,

"Ah, sirs, help me, for heaven's sake, for that bad knight who goes yonder killed this one whom you see there and is carrying away my lord as good as dead! Go after him and kill him, and

also the man whom he has with him, who did as much harm as he did."

She said this because if both died, her evil deed would not be known, for her husband would not be believed. And mounting her palfrey, she went with them in order to point them out to them. The Child of the Sea had already left the knight in the hermitage and was continuing on his way; but he saw the woman coming with the three knights, who said, "Stop, traitors, stop."

"You lie," said he, "for I am not a traitor. Rather I shall defend myself well from treachery; and come at me like knights."

"Traitor!" said the foremost one, "all of us ought to do you ill, and so we shall."

The Child of the Sea, who held his shield and had his helmet linked, let himself go at the first one, and he at him, and he struck his shield so hard that it went through it and the arm on which he held it; and he knocked down both him and his horse with such ferocity that the knight had his right shoulder broken and the horse had a leg broken from its great fall; in such wise that neither the one nor the other could get up. And he had broken his lance, and grasped the sword which Gandales had saved for him, and let himself go at the other two, and they at him. And they struck him on his shield, which they pierced, but not his coat of mail, which was strong. And the Child of the Sea struck the one on top of his shield and cut it as far down as its clasp, and the sword reached his shoulder in such wise that with its point he cut flesh and bones, for his coat of mail was of no avail to him; and when he pulled his sword back the knight went to the ground, and the Child of the Sea went at the other one, who was striking him with his sword, and struck him on top of his helmet; and he hit him with such force on the top of his head that he made him embrace the neck of the horse, and the other let himself fall in order not to await another blow. The treacherous woman tried to flee, but the Child of the Sea shouted to Gandalin to capture her. The knight who was on foot said,

"Sir, we do not know whether this combat was right or wrong."

"It could not be right," he said, "for that evil woman killed her husband."

"We are deceived," said he, "and grant us security and you shall know the reason why we attacked you."

"I give you security," he said, "but I do not exempt you from the combat."

The knight related to him the reason they came at him. The Child of the Sea made the sign of the cross many times on hearing it, and told them what he knew.

"And here is her husband in this hermitage who will tell it to you just as I have."

"Since that's the way of it," said the knight, "let us be at your mercy."

"This I will not grant unless you swear as loyal knights that you will carry this wounded knight, and his wife with him, to the court of King Languines and tell all that happened concerning her, and that a novice knight, who today left the town where he is, sends her, and that he sends word to him to do whatever he considers right."

The two agreed to this, as did the other one after they had pulled him out in very bad shape from under the horse.

CHAPTER V

How Urganda the Unknown brought a lance to the Child of the Sea.

The Child of the Sea turned over his shield and helmet to Gandalin and went on his way; and he had not gone far when he saw a damsel coming on her palfrey, and she carried a lance with a sash. And he saw another damsel, who was coming along another road, join her, and they both came towards him talking; and as they drew near the damsel with the lance said,

"Sir, take this lance, and I say to you that before the third day you will give with it such blows that you will free the house from whence you first came forth."

He was amazed at what she said, and replied,

"Damsel, how can the house either die or live?"

"It will be as I tell you," she said, "and the lance I give you for some favors I expect from you. The first will be when you confer an honor on a friend of yours whereby he will be put in the greatest confrontation and danger into which any knight has been put for the past ten years."

"Damsel," said he, "such an honor, God willing, I shall not confer on my friend."

"I know well," said she, "that it will happen just as I tell you."

And spurring her palfrey, she went her way; and know you that this was Urganda the Unknown. The other maiden remained with him and said,

"Sir knight, I am from a foreign land, and if you wish, I will await you until the third day and cease to go where my lady is."

"And where are you from?" said he.

"From Denmark," said the maiden.

And he recognized that she was telling the truth by her language, which he occasionally had heard his lady Oriana speak when she was younger; and he said,

"Lady, it pleases me, provided you do not regard it as a hardship."

And he asked her whether she knew the damsel who gave him the lance. She said she had never seen her except there; but that she told her she was carrying it for the greatest knight in the world, "and she told me that after she left you, I should inform you that she was Urganda the Unknown and that she loves you very much."

"Oh, heavens!" said he, "how unlucky I am not to recognize her; and if I fail to look for her, it is because no one will ever find her without her consent."

And thus he traveled with the damsel until nightfall, when he encountered a squire on the road who said to him:

"Sir, where are you going?"

"I am going along this road," said he.

"That is true," said the squire, "but if you wish to lodge in a town it will be desirable for you to leave it, because from here on for a long distance nothing will be found except a fortress which belongs to my father, and there every service will be rendered you."

The damsel told him it would be all right and he agreed with her. The squire turned them off the road in order to guide them, and this he did on account of a custom that obtained at a castle on ahead along the knight's route; and this squire wanted to see what the knight would do, for he had never seen a knight errant fight. Then, having arrived there, they were very well served that night. But the Child of the Sea did not sleep very much, for most of the night he was thinking about his lady, from whom he had departed. And in the morning he put on his armor and went his way with the damsel and the squire. His host told him he would accompany him as far as a castle that was ahead. Thus they went three leagues, and they saw the castle, which appeared very beautiful, for it was on a river and had a drawbridge at the end of which was a very fine, high tower. The Child of the Sea asked

the squire whether that river had any other crossing except by the bridge. He said not, that everyone crossed on it, "and we are going to cross there."

"Then onward," said the Child of the Sea.

The damsel crossed and the squires next, with the Child of the Sea in the rear; and so intently was he thinking of his lady that he was completely beside himself. As the damsel entered the tower, some foot soldiers wearing helmets and cuirasses seized her mount by the bridle and said,

"Lady, you must swear, or die."

"What shall I swear?"

"You will swear never to make love with your lover if he does not promise you that he will help King Abies against King Perion."

The lady shouted that they were about to kill her. The Child of the Sea went to where she was and said,

"Evil churls, who ordered you to lay hands on matron or maiden, on this one in particular who is under my protection?"

And coming up to the elder of them he seized his battle axe and gave him such a blow with its tip that he knocked him down. The others began to strike him, but he gave one such a blow that he split his head open down to his eyes and struck the other on the shoulder, cutting through to his ribs. When the others saw these two dead from such blows, they were hesitant, and started to flee; and he threw at one the battle-axe, which cut off half his leg. And he said to the damsel:

"Go ahead, for all those be damned who take as a right that any churl lay hands on a matron or maiden."

Then they went ahead along the bridge and heard from the castle at the other end a great hubbub. The damsel said,

"There is a lot of shouting, and I would be in favor of your arming yourself."

"Do not fear," said he, "for anywhere where women are mistreated, whereas they ought to go about in safety, there can't be a man worth anything."

"Sir," said she, "if you do not arm yourself, I would not dare to proceed further."

He armed himself and went forward and on entering the gate of the castle he saw a squire who approached weeping and said,

"Oh heavens, why are they killing the greatest knight in the world because he will not take an oath that he cannot rightly keep."

And going past him, the Child of the Sea saw King Perion, who had dubbed him knight, greatly maltreated, for they had killed his horse, with two knights with ten armed foot soldiers attacking and wounding him in many places; and the knights were saying to King Perion:

"Swear; if you don't, you die."

The Child of the Sea said,

"Stand aside, you evil, arrogant people, don't lay hands on the greatest knight in the world, or all of you shall die because of him."

Then one knight and five foot soldiers drew away from the others and coming forward said to him:

"You will have to swear thus or you die."

"How," said he, "can I swear against my will? It will never be, God willing."

They shouted to the gate keeper to close the gate. And the Child of the Sea, giving his horse free rein, charged the knight and struck him with the lance on his shield so hard he fell over the rump of the horse to the ground, and on falling he hit his head on the ground in such wise that he twisted his neck and was as good as dead. And leaving the foot soldiers who were attacking him, the Child of the Sea went for the other knight, and pierced his shield and cuirass and thrust his lance into his side so that he had no further need of a physician. When King Perion saw that he was succored in such fashion, he endeavored to defend himself better, and with his sword gave strong blows to the men on foot. But the Child of the Sea, still mounted, charged so violently into their midst, attacking them with his sword with such deadly, harsh blows, that he felled most of them. Thus with this and with what the king accomplished there was no great delay in their being annihilated, and some who managed to flee climbed the wall; but the Child of the Sea dismounted from his horse and went after them, and so great was the fear they had, that not daring to tarry, they let themselves fall down from the wall, except two of them, who put themselves in a chamber. And the Child of the Sea, who followed them, entered

behind them, and he saw on a bed a man so old that he could not rise from there, who was shouting,

"Evil churls, from whom are you fleeing?"

"From a knight," they said, "who is raising the devil, and has killed both your nephews and all our companions."

The Child of the Sea said to one of them,

"Show me your master, or you die."

He showed him the old man who lay on the bed.

The Child of the Sea began to make the sign of the cross and said,

"Evil old man, being on the point of death, do you maintain such a custom? If you were able now to take up arms, I would prove you were a traitor, and this you are to God and to your own soul."

Then he pretended to be about to strike him with his sword, and the old man said,

"Alas, sir, mercy; don't kill me."

"Dead you are," said the Child of the Sea, "unless you swear that such a custom will never more be maintained during your life."

He swore it.

"Now then, tell me why you maintained this custom."

"For King Abies of Ireland," said he, "who is my nephew, and not being able to help him with my body, I wished to help him with the knights errant."

"False old man," said the Child, "what have the knights to do with your help or opposition?"

Then he kicked the bed and turned it over on top of him, and commending him to all the devils of hell, he went out into the courtyard, and taking one of the horses of the knights whom he had killed, he brought it to King Perion and said,

"Take horse, sire, for I am but little content with this place, or with those who are in it."

Then they mounted and went out of the castle; and the youth did not doff his helmet, so that the king might not recognize him, and being already outside, the king said:

"My dear sir, who are you who have succored me when I was near death, and have deterred from attacking me many

knights errant, and the friends of the damsels who pass by here, for I am that one against whom they had to take oath?"

"Sire," said the Child of the Sea, "I am a knight who has desired to serve you."

"Sir," said he, "this I see well, for a man would hardly be able to find any other help so good; but I shall not leave you without knowing who you are."

"This is not to your advantage or to mine."

"Then I ask as a courtesy that you take off your helmet."

He lowered his head and did not answer; but the king begged the damsel to take it off, and she said,

"Sir, comply with the request of the king, who wishes it so much."

But he would not; and the damsel took off his helmet against his will, and as the king saw his face, he recognized him as the youth whom he had dubbed knight by request of the damsels; and embracing him, he said,

"By heavens, friend, now I know you better than before."

"Sire," said he, "indeed I recognized you, for you gave me the honor of knighthood; on account of which if it please God, I shall serve you in your war in Gaul, as soon as it be permitted, and until then, I had not wished to make myself known to you."

"I am very grateful to you," said the king, "for you do so much for me that it is not possible to do more, and I give thanks to God that such an act was performed by me."

This he said on account of having made him a knight, for the relationship that he had to him he neither knew nor imagined.

Conversing on this, they arrived at two highways, and the Child of the Sea said,

"Sire, which of these do you wish to follow?"

"This one that goes to the left," said he, "for it is the right one for going to my land."

"God be with you," said he, "for I shall take the other."

"May God guide you," said the king, "and remember what you have promised me, for your help has removed most of my fear, and gives me hope that with it my loss will be remedied."

Then he went on his way, and the knight remained with the damsel, who said to him:

"Sir knight, I have awaited you on account of what the damsel who gave you the lance told me: that she was bringing it for the best knight in the world; and I have seen enough to know it to be the truth. Now I wish to resume my way to see that lady whom I told you about."

"Who is she?" said the Child of the Sea.

"Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte," said she.

When he heard his lady mentioned, his heart was so shaken that he almost fell from his horse, and Gandalin, who saw him so overwhelmed, embraced him; and the Child of the Sea said,

"My heart is overcome."

The damsel, worrying lest it might be another ailment, said,

"Sir knight, disarm yourself, for you have suffered great distress."

"It is not necessary," said he, "for I often have this illness."

The squire, whom you have already heard about, said to the damsel,

"Are you going to the court of King Languines?"

"Yes," said she.

"Well, I will accompany you," said he, "for I have to be there by a certain time."

And bidding good-bye to the Child of the Sea, they turned back over the way whence they had come; and he went along his way where adventure guided him.

The author here ceases to speak of the Child of the Sea and again tells about Don Galaor, his brother, whom the giant had borne away. Don Galaor, who was being brought up by the hermit, as you have heard, being now eighteen years old, had become valiant of body and husky; and he was always reading in some books which the good man gave him of the ancient deeds at arms which the knights were engaged in; so partly because of this and because of his innate nature, he had been moved to desire greatly to be a knight; but he did not know whether by right he ought to be; and he frequently besought the good man who reared him to tell him. But, knowing for certain that after being a knight he would have to fight the giant Albadan, tears came to his eyes and he said to him,

"My son, it would be better if you pursued another path more secure for your soul than to put yourself in armor and in the order of knighthood, which is very difficult to maintain."

"Sir," said he, "I could ill pursue what I took up unwillingly; and in this which my heart wishes, if God gives me success I will devote myself to His service; and without it, I would not wish my life to continue."

The good man, who perceived Galaor's firm will, said,

"Since that is the way of it, I tell you truly that if it be not lost through you, it will not be lost because of your lineage, for you are the son of a king and queen; and may the giant not find out that I told you."

When Galaor heard this he was so happy that he could not have been more so; and he said,

"The aspiration to be a knight which until now I deemed so lofty, according to what you have told me, I now consider a small matter."

The good man, fearing that he might leave, sent to tell the giant how his servant was at the age and with the desire to be a knight, and that he consider what befitted him. Having heard this, the giant mounted his horse and went there, and found Galaor very handsome and brave, more so than his age required, and he said to him,

"Son, I know that you wish to be a knight, and I wish to take you with me, and I shall strive for it to be greatly to your honor."

"Father," said he, "in that my wish will be entirely fulfilled."

Then he had him mount a horse in order to take him away. But before he bade farewell to the good man, he knelt before him, begging him to remember him. The good man wept and kissed him many times; and after he gave him his blessing, Galaor went away with the giant. And on their arrival at the castle, he made him armor to his measure; and had him ride and tilt in the field; and gave him two fencing instructors to develop him and make him dextrous with shield and sword, and he had him learn all the things about arms that it befitted a knight to know; and in this he kept him occupied for one year, which the giant saw sufficed for him to be able to be a knight without hindrance.

Here the author leaves off narrating this, because in its proper place mention will be made of what this Galaor did; and he returns to his narration of what happened to the Child of the Sea after he left King Perion and the Damsel of Denmark, and the castle of the old man.

He went along for two days without encountering any adventure, and on the third day at noon he arrived in sight of a very beautiful castle which belonged to a knight, Galpano by name, who was the bravest and most courageous at arms to be found in those parts, so that he was much feared and distrusted by all. And with his great valor together with the strong fortification of the castle, he maintained customs that a very arrogant man must needs maintain while following more the service of the Devil than that of that high Lord, (which would have rendered him so distinguished among all others) as you will now hear:

He made the matrons and maidens who passed by go up to the castle, and working his will on them by force, they had to swear to him that as long as he should live they would not take any other lover; and if they did not so swear he beheaded them, and the knights he caused likewise to take an oath, for they had to fight with two brothers of his; and if one defeated them, he had to fight him. And he was so good at arms that no one dared to await him in the field. And he made them swear to call themselves, "Conquered by Galpano," or he cut off their heads; and he taking from them whatever they brought, they had to leave on foot. But God, already angered that such great cruelty should continue for such a long time, permitted Fortune — while those people whom He had supported so frequently in their great haughtiness and in excessive delights so to their liking were proceeding against Him — within a short interval to reverse her wheel by paying back those wicked men for their iniquity, thus affording to others like them a fearful object lesson whereby they might mend their ways, as now will be told you.

CHAPTER VI

How the Child of the Sea fought with the foot soldiers of the knight, who was called Galpano, and afterwards with the brothers of the lord of the castle, and with the lord himself, and how he killed him without having mercy on him.

Then the Child of the Sea arriving near the castle saw coming toward him a damsel greatly lamenting, and a squire and page who were awaiting her. The damsel was very beautiful with lovely hair and she was tearing it out. The Child of the Sea said to her,

"Friend damsel, what is the cause of such great distress?"

"Alas, sir," she said, "so great is my trouble that I cannot tell it."

"Tell me," said he, "and if I can rightly be of help to you, I will be."

"Sir," said she, "I come on a mission of my master's to one of the good young knights now known; and four foot soldiers seized me yonder, and taking me to the castle, I was violated by a traitor, and on top of everything else he made me swear not to have any other lover as long as he lived."

The Child of the Sea took her steed by the bridle and said to her,

"Come with me and I shall obtain justice for you if I can."

And taking her steed by the reins, he went along talking with her, asking her who the knight was to whom she was bringing the message.

"You will find out," said she, "if you avenge me; and I tell you that he is such that he will have great sorrow when he learns of my dishonor."

" 'Tis right," said the Child of the Sea.

Thus they arrived where the four foot soldiers were, and the Child of the Sea said to them:

"Foul traitors, why did you do evil to this damsel?"

"Because we were afraid," said they, "of your winning justice for her."

"Now you will see," said he, and he laid hand on his sword and let himself go at them and gave to one, who was raising a battleax to strike him, such a blow that he cut off his arm and knocked it to the ground. The foot soldier fell down shouting. Afterwards he struck another across the nose and he cut him to the ears. When the other two saw this they began to flee toward a river through a dense thicket. He put his sword in the scabbard and took the damsel by her steed's bridle and said, "Let us go ahead."

The damsel said, "Near here is a gateway where I saw two armed knights."

"All right," said he, "for I want to see them." Then he said, "Damsel, come behind me and do not be afraid."

And on entering through the castle gate, he saw an armed knight before him who was riding a horse; and once the latter had issued forth a portcullis was lowered behind him. And the knight said to them very haughtily,

"Come, you will receive your disgrace."

"Let us leave that," said the Child of the Sea, "to him who can ascertain it; but I ask you whether you are the one who raped this damsel."

"No," said the knight, "but if I were, what would therefore happen?"

"My avenging her," said he, "if possible."

"Then I want to see how you fight."

And he let himself go at him, and his blow missed. And the Child of the Sea struck him with the lance on the shield so hard that no items of armor that he wore availed him. The steel penetrated through to his back, and he knocked him dead to the

ground. And pulling his lance out of him, he went for another knight, who was coming toward him saying,

"You enter here inauspiciously." And the knight struck him on the shield and went through it; but the iron of his lance was arrested by his coat of mail, which was strong; but the Child of the Sea struck him with his lance with gusto on his helmet and knocked it off his head; and the knight fell to the ground immediately. And when he saw himself in this situation he began to utter loud outcries, and three armed foot soldiers came out of a room and he said to them,

"Kill this traitor."

They struck his horse in such a way that they felled it to the ground along with him; but getting up enraged from the horse which they had killed, he went and struck the knight with his lance on the face so that the iron went between his ear and his neck and he fell at once. And he turned to those on foot who were striking him, and they had wounded him on one shoulder, from which he was losing much blood; but so great was his rage that he did not feel it, and he struck with his sword on the head that one who had wounded him, in such wise that he sliced off his ear and his face, and whatever he reached; and the sword descended as far as his chest; and the other two went toward the courtyard saying in loud voices,

"Come, sir, come, for we are all being slain."

The Child of the Sea mounted the horse of the knight whom he had killed and went after them and saw at a door an unarmed knight who said,

"What is this, sir? Have you come here to kill my men?"

"I came," said he, "to avenge this damsel for the outrage that was done her here, if I find the one who did it."

The damsel said,

"Sir, that is the one by whom I am put to shame."

The Child of the Sea said to him,

"Ah, haughty knight, full of villainy, now you will pay for the evil you did. Arm yourself immediately; if not, I shall kill you as you are, unarmed; for with evil men like you one ought not to exercise restraint."

"Ah, sir," said the damsel, "kill that traitor, and don't give him an opportunity to do more evil, for now everything would be your responsibility."

"Ah, wicked woman," said the knight, "in an evil hour the one who came with you believed you." And he entered a large room and said,

"You, knight, await me and do not run away, for nowhere will you be able to take refuge from me."

"I swear," said the Child of the Sea, "if I can get out of here, don't leave me any place heavily guarded."

And in a short time he saw him come out on a white horse, and so completely armed that he lacked nothing; and he came saying, "Ah, bad knight errant, in an unlucky hour you saw the damsel; for here you will lose your head."

When the Child of the Sea heard himself threatened, he was very angry and said,

"Now may each one protect his own, and he who does not defend it will lose it."

Then they let themselves go at full speed of their horses, and they struck each other with their lances on their shields, which immediately were penetrated; and their coats of mail likewise; and the iron lance points thrust into their flesh, and they collided with their bodies, shields, and helmets so violently that both fell to earth. But it fared so well with the Child of the Sea that he held the reins in his hand, and Galpano got up very battered; and they laid hands on their swords and held their shields before them and struck each other so fiercely that they frightened those who were watching them. From their shields there fell to the earth many slices and from their coats of mail many fragments, and their helmets were dented and broken; so the area where they were fighting was red with blood. Galpano, who suffered from a wound that he had sustained on his head so that the blood was dropping down over his eyes, retired to one side in order to clean them; but the Child of the Sea, who was moving very nimbly and with great courage, said to him,

"What is this, Galpano? Cowardice does not befit you. Don't you remember that you are fighting for your head and if you do not defend it, you will lose it?"

Galpano said,

"Hold up a moment and let us rest, for there is time for us to fight."

"There is no need for that," said the Child of the Sea, "for I am not fighting you through courtesy, but to give satisfaction to that damsel whom you dishonored."

And he went and struck him so fiercely on top of his helmet that he made him kneel down on both knees; and he got up at once and began to defend himself, but not in such a way that the Child of the Sea was unable to make him do his will, for the knight was already so tired that he could hardly hold his sword and thought only to cover himself with his shield, which was all cut up on his arm so that nothing remained of it. Then having no other recourse, he began to flee through the square hither and yon from the sword of the Child of the Sea, who did not let him rest; and he sought to escape to the tower, where he had his men. But the Child of the Sea overtook him on some steps, and taking him by the helmet he jerked him so violently that he made him fall prone to the ground, and the helmet remained in his hands. And with his sword he gave him such a blow on the neck that his head was severed from his body; and the Child of the Sea said to the damsel:

"From today on you may have another lover if you wish, for this one to whom you swore is dispatched."

"Thanks to God and to you," said she, "who have killed him."

He had wanted to go up into the tower, but he saw the stairway raised; and he mounted Galpano's horse, which was very handsome, and said,

"Let's go away from here."

The damsel said,

"Sir, I shall carry the head of this one who dishonored me, and I shall give it on your behalf to the one to whom I carry the message."

"Do not carry the head," said he, "for it will be a bother to you; but carry the helmet in place of it."

The damsel agreed and ordered her squire to take it; and they left the castle and found the gate opened by those who had

fled through it. Then, being on their way, the Child of the Sea said,

"Tell me who the knight is to whom you bring the message?"

"Know you," said she, "that he is Agrajes, son of the King of Scotland."

"Blessed be God," said he, "that I have been of such avail that he will not receive this offense; and I say to you, damsel, that he is the best young knight that I know of, and if you took dishonor on account of him, he will make return in honor. And tell him one of his knights sends regards to him — whom he will encounter at the war in Gaul if he goes to it."

"Ah, sir," said she, "since you love him so, I beg you to grant me a boon."

He said,

"Very willingly."

"Then," said the damsel, "tell me your name."

"Damsel," said he, "don't seek now to know my name, and ask another boon that I can grant."

"I do not wish any other boon," said she.

"So help me God," said he, "you are not courteous in wanting to know from any man something against his will."

"Nevertheless," said she, "tell me, if you want to be quits."

When he saw that he could not do otherwise, he said,

"They call me the Child of the Sea."

And leaving her as quickly as he could, he went on his way. The damsel was quite delighted to learn the name of the knight. The Child of the Sea was sorely wounded, and so much blood flowed from him that the road was red from it, and the horse, which was white, seemed vermilion in many places. And going along until the hour of vespers, he saw a very beautiful fortress and toward him came an unarmed knight, and as he reached him, he said to him,

"Sir, where did you get these wounds?"

"In a castle hereabouts that I left," said the knight.

"And that horse, how did you get it?"

"I took it in exchange for mine which was killed," said the Child of the Sea.

"And the knight whose it was, what became of him?"

"Alas, he lost his head," said the Child of the Sea.

Then the knight got down to kiss his foot. And the Child of the Sea removed his foot from the stirrup, and the other kissed the skirt of his coat of mail and said,

"Ah, sir, be you very welcome, for through you I have recovered all my honor."

"Sir knight," said the Child of the Sea, "do you know where these wounds might be cared for?"

"Yes, I know," said he, "for in this my house there will care for you a damsel, who is my niece, better than any other woman there is in this land."

Then they dismounted and went and entered the tower; and the knight said,

"Ah, sir, that traitor whom you have killed has held me for a year half dead and in ridicule, so that I did not take up arms; and he made me lose my name and swear not to be called anything except one vanquished by him; because of you I am given back my honor."

There they placed the Child of the Sea in a luxurious bed, where his wounds were treated by the hand of the damsel, who told him she would restore him provided that he avoided traveling for a few days. And he said he would follow her advice.

CHAPTER VII

How on the third day after the Child of the Sea left the court of King Languines there came those three knights who brought a knight on a litter, and his treacherous wife.

On the third day after the Child of the Sea departed from the house of King Languines, where he was dubbed a knight, there arrived there the three knights who were bringing the false matron, and the knight, her sorely wounded husband, on a litter. And the three knights put the matron into the hands of the king on behalf of a novice knight. And they related to the king what had happened concerning the knight. The king made the sign of the cross many times on hearing of such treachery by a woman, and was very grateful to the knight who sent her, for no one knew that the Child of the Sea was a knight, except his lady Oriana and the other women whom you have already heard about. Rather, they thought that he had gone to see his foster father Gandales. The king said to the knight of the litter,

"A woman so treacherous as your wife is ought not to live."

"Sir," said he, "Do what you must, but I shall never consent to kill the thing that I love most in the world."

And having bade farewell to the king, he had himself carried away on the litter.

The king said to the matron,

"By heaven, that knight was more loyal to you than you to him; but I shall have you pay for your disloyalty." And he ordered her burned to death.

The king wondered greatly who the knight could be who had made them come there, and the squire in whose castle the Child of the Sea had lodged said,

"Perchance he is a novice knight for whom I and a damsel from Denmark, who arrived here today, were waiting."

"And what knight is that?" said the king.

"Sire," said the squire, "he is very young and so handsome it is a marvel to see him, and I saw him perform so well at arms in a short time that if he has the good fortune to live, he will be the greatest knight in the world." Then he related all that he had seen and how the Child of the Sea had saved King Perion from death.

"Do you know," said the king, "what his name is?"

"No, sire," said he, "for moreover he is very secretive concerning himself."

Then the king and all the others were more desirous than ever of learning it. And the squire said,

"The damsel was with him more than I."

"Is the damsel here?" said the king.

"Yes," said he, "for she comes seeking the daughter of King Lisuarte."

Then he commanded her to come before him and she told all that she had seen concerning him, and how she had awaited him because the damsel who gave him the lance had said that she was bringing it for the best knight who now would be able to hold it in his hand.

"So much do I know of him," said she, "but of his name I know nothing."

"Oh, heavens, who could he be?" said the king.

But the Child of the Sea's beloved had no doubts as to who he might be, because the damsel had told her how he had come to seek her in order to take her away with him. And as soon as she named him, Oriana experienced great agitation, because she had the belief that the king would afford the opportunity for her to take her to her father, and once departed she would not have news so continuously of the one whom she loved more than herself. Thus six days passed during which they did not ascertain any news of him. And as the king was talking to his son

Agrajes, who was about to leave for Gaul with his company, a damsel entered by the door, and kneeling before them said,

"Sir, hear me a little, in the presence of your father."

Then she took in her hands a helmet with so many sword strokes that there was no untouched place on it, and she gave it to Agrajes and said,

"Sir, take this helmet instead of the head of Galpano, and I give it to you on behalf of a novice knight, who is more fit to bear arms than any other knight in the world; and he sends you this helmet because its owner dishonored a damsel who was going with a message for you."

"What," said he, "Is Galpano dead by the hand of a knight? By heavens, damsel, you tell me wondrous things!"

"Certainly, sir," said she, "that man he overcame, and he killed all there were in the castle; and finally he fought him alone and cut off his head, and it being an annoyance to carry, he told me that the helmet was sufficient."

"Certainly," said the king, "that is the novice knight who passed through here, for clearly his deeds of chivalry are foreign to other knights."

And he asked the damsel if she ascertained his name.

"Yes, sire," said she, "but this was with much cunning."

"By heavens, tell me what it is," said the king, "for you would make me very happy."

"Know you, sire," said she, "that he has the name of the Child of the Sea."

When the king heard this he was astonished, and all the others too. And he said,

"If he went in search of someone who would make him a knight, he ought not to be blamed, for a long time ago he besought it of me and I delayed it; and I did wrong to delay knighthood for one who does so well as knight."

"Alas," said Agrajes, "where could I find him?"

"He sends you his regards," said the damsel, "and through me the message to tell you that you will find him at the war in Gaul if you go there."

"Oh, heavens, what good news you tell me," said Agrajes; "now I have a greater desire to leave; and if I find him, never shall I willingly be separated from him."

"That is right," said the damsel, "for he loves you much."

Great was the joy that all had from the good news concerning the Child of the Sea; but especially so was that of his lady Oriana, although more than anyone she concealed her rejoicing. The king sought to learn from the damsels in what manner he was made a knight, and they told him everything. And he said,

"He found more courtesy in you than in me, yet I delayed only for his sake, for I saw he was very young."

The damsel told Agrajes the message that she brought to him from the lady about whom the story will tell later. And he departed with a very good company for Gaul.

CHAPTER VIII

How king Lisuarte sent to the court of king Languines for his daughter, and Languines sent back with her his daughter Mabilia, the two being accompanied by knights and matrons and damsels.

Ten days after Agrajes had departed there arrived there three ships in which came Galdar of Rascuyl with a hundred knights from King Lisuarte, and matrons and damsels to escort Oriana. King Languines received Galdar well, for he deemed him a good knight and very prudent. Galdar gave the message of the king his lord: that he was sending for his daugther, and furthermore this Galdar said to the king on behalf of King Lisuarte that he was requesting him to send with Oriana his daughter Mabilia, who at his command would be treated and honored like Oriana herself.

The king was very happy about this, and fitted them out very well, and retained the knight and the matrons and damsels in his court for several days, honoring them with many feasts and favors. And he had other ships prepared and equipped with the necessary things, and caused those knights and matrons and damsels who seemed suitable for such a voyage to make ready. Oriana, who saw that this journey could not be avoided, prepared to gather up her precious possessions; and while so engaged, she saw the wax that she had taken from the Child of the Sea, and she was reminded of him, and tears came to her eyes and she wrung her hands with the love anguish that took possession of her. And she broke the wax, and saw the letter that was inside, and reading it, found that it said, "This is Amadis, the Ill-Timed

One, son of a king." She, who beheld the letter, thought a while and understood that the Child of the Sea had the name of Amadis and she realized that he was the son of a king. Such joy never entered the heart of anyone else as into hers; and calling the maid of Denmark, she told her:

"My dear, I want to tell you a secret that I would tell to no-one except my heart; and keep it as a secret of such a noble damsel as I am and of the greatest knight in the world."

"I shall do so," said she, "and, lady, do not fear to tell me what to do."

"Well, my dear," said Oriana, "go to the novice knight whom you know, and I tell you he is called the Child of the Sea, and you will find him at the war in Gaul; and if you arrive before him, wait for him and then as soon as you see him, give him this letter and tell him that in it he will discover his name, the one that was written in it when he was cast into the sea; and let him know that I know that he is the son of a king, and that since he was so effective when he did not know it, now let him strive to be better; and tell him my father sent for me and that they are taking me to him; and that I send you to tell him that he leave the war in Gaul and go immediately to Great Britain, and strive to live with my father until I command him what to do."

The damsel with this message that you hear was bidden good-bye by her and started on her way to Gaul, of which we shall speak in due time. Oriana and Mabilia with matrons and maidens, king and queen commending them to God, were put into the ships; the sailors weighed anchor and spread the sails, and as the weather was favorable, they traveled quickly to Great Britain, where they were very well received.

The Child of the Sea lay wounded for two weeks in the house of the knight and of the maiden his niece who was ministering to him. At the end of this time, although the wounds were still recent, he did not wish to tarry there any longer and departed one Sunday morning, and Gandalin with him, for he never left him. This was in the month of April, and entering a forest he heard the birds singing and saw flowers everywhere, and as

he was so completely in the power of love, he remembered his beloved and began to soliloquize:

"Alas, miserable Child of the Sea, without lineage and without possessions, why were you so daring as to put your heart and your love in the keeping of that lady who is worth more than all the others in goodness and beauty and in lineage? O, wretch that I am! For any of these three things the best knight in the world ought not to be so presumptuous as to love her, for she is more fair than the best knight under arms, and her goodness is worth more than the wealth of the greatest men in the world; and I a wretch, I who do not know who I am, who live with torment of such madness that I shall die loving without daring to tell her of it."

Thus did he lament, and he went along so overwhelmed that he did not see anything except the neck of his horse; and then he glanced into a thicket of the forest and saw an armed and mounted knight waiting for his enemy, and who had heard all that lament that the Child of the Sea made; and as the knight saw that the latter was keeping silent, he stopped in front of him and said,

"Sir, it seems to me that you love your lady friend more than you do yourself, greatly depreciating yourself and praising her. I wish you to tell me who she is and I shall love her, since you are not the sort to serve a lady so noble and so beautiful, according to what I have heard from you."

The Child said,

"Sir knight, reason obliges you to say what you have said, but the rest you shall not find out at all. And I tell you more, that from your loving her you would not be able to garner any fruit."

"If there come to a man toil and danger," said the knight, "for the sake of a good lady, he should receive the same with pleasure, because finally he will derive from it the reward that he hopes for. And since a man loves as you do so highly placed a lady, he ought not to be disturbed by anything that might befall him."

The Child of the Sea was consoled by what he heard him say, and considered that this discourse was of benefit to him; and he tried to go ahead. But the other said,

"Halt, sir, for still you have to tell me what I am asking you, either by force or of your own free will."

"May God not help me," said the Child of the Sea, "if you ascertain it from me of my own free will, or from anyone else so authorized by me."

"Then forthwith you are engaged in combat," said the knight.

"That is more to my liking," said the Child of the Sea, "than telling you."

Then they linked their helmets and took up their shields and lances; and as they were about to draw apart from each other for their joust, a damsel arrived who said to them,

"Stay, sirs, stay, and tell me some news if you know it, for I come in a great hurry and cannot wait for the conclusion of your battle."

They asked her what she wanted to know.

"Whether either of you has seen," said she, "a novice knight called Child of the Sea."

"And what do you want him for?" said he.

"I bring him news of Agrajes, his friend, the son of the King of Scotland."

"Wait a minute," said the Child of the Sea, "for I will tell you about him."

And he went at the knight, who was shouting that he defend himself, and the knight struck him so fiercely on the shield that the lance flew through the air in pieces. But the Child of the Sea, who performed with complete accuracy, struck him with his horse to the ground, and the horse arose and tried to run away, but the Child of the Sea seized it and gave it to him saying,

"Sir knight, take your horse and do not seek to ascertain anything from anyone against his will."

He took the horse but could not mount so quickly, for he was hurt from the fall. The Child of the Sea turned to the damsel and said to her:

"Friend damsel, do you recognize this one about whom you are asking?"

"No," said she, "for I have never seen him; but Agrajes told me that he would make himself known as soon as I told him that I was his servant."

"That is true," said he, "and know you then that I am he."

Then he unfastened his helmet and the damsel, who saw his face, said,

"I really believe you are telling the truth, for I heard you praised extravagantly for your good looks."

"Well, tell me," said he, "where did you leave Agrajes?"

"On a beach," said the damsel, "near here where he has his company in order to go to sea and cross over to Gaul, and he has first sought to find out about you so that you might go with him."

"God give you thanks," said he. "And now lead the way and let us go and see him."

The damsel set out on the way and it was not long before they saw on the beach the tents of the knights, and the knights nearby; and being now close to the camp, they heard behind them a voice shouting,

"Turn back, sir knight, for it is still necessary that you tell me what I ask of you."

He turned his head and saw the knight with whom he had jousted before, and another knight with him, and taking up his arms he went toward them, who carried their lances lowered, and were coming at full speed of the horses. And those in the tents saw him go so well seated in his saddle that they marveled. And you may well believe there was not in his time any other knight who seemed more spruce in the saddle, or tilted more beautifully, — to such a degree that in some places where he wanted to hide his identity, by that fact he was recognized. And the two knights struck him with their lances on his shield, which they penetrated, but not the coat of mail, which was strong, and their lances were broken; and he struck the first whom previously he had felled, and he collided with him so forcibly that he threw him to the ground and broke one of his arms, and he seemed dead; and the Child of the Sea lost his lance, but he laid hand on his sword and let himself go at the other who was striking him, and the Child of the Sea struck him on top of his helmet so that the sword reached his head, and when he tugged at it, the laces broke and he jerked the helmet from his head, and he raised his sword to strike him, and the other raised his shield

and the Child of the Sea held up his blow, and passing his sword to his left hand, he seized the shield and pulled it from his neck and struck him with it on the head, so that the knight fell to the ground stunned.

This done, he gave his arms to Gandalin and went with the damsel to Agrajes at the tents. The latter was greatly wondering who the knight could be who so quickly had overcome the two knights, and he went toward him, recognized him, and said,

"Sir, you are very welcome."

The Child of the Sea dismounted and they embraced. And when the others saw that he was the Child of the Sea, they joined him very happily. And Agrajes said to him,

"Oh, heavens, how I wanted to see you!"

And then they brought him to his tent and Agrajes had him disarm, and he ordered that they bring there the knights who remained injured on the field. And when they came before him, he said,

"By heavens, in complete madness you undertook combat with such a knight."

"It is true," said the one with the broken arm, "but there was a time today that I held him in such small esteem that I did not expect to find any defense in him."

And he related all that had befallen him with the Child of the Sea in the forest, but of the lamentation he did not dare tell. They laughed heartily at the patience of the one and the great arrogance of the other. On that day they took their ease there with much pleasure, and the next day they mounted and rode until they arrived at Palingues, a good town which was a seaport facing Gaul, and there they entered the ships of Agrajes, and with a good wind they quickly crossed the sea and arrived at another town, Galfan by name, in Gaul, and from there they went overland to Baladin, a castle where King Perion was, where he was waging his war, having lost many men. He was very happy at their arrival, and had them given good quarters, and Queen Elisena sent word to her nephew Agrajes to come and see her. He summoned the Child of the Sea and two other knights to go there with him. King Perion gazed at the Child of the Sea and

recognized that he was the one he had made a knight and the one who had come to his rescue in the castle of the old man. And he went to him and said,

"Friend, you are very welcome, and know you that in you I have great strength, so much so that now I have no fear concerning my war, since I have you in my company."

"Sire," said he, "you will have me in your aid as long as I endure and until the end of the war."

Conversing thus they came to the queen, and Agrajes went and kissed her hand, and she was very happy with him. And the king said,

"Lady, here is the very good knight of whom I spoke to you, who extricated me from the greatest danger I was ever in. I tell you to esteem this knight more than any other."

And she came and embraced him. And he knelt before her and said,

"Madam, I have been reared by your sister, and on account of her I come to serve you, and as if you were she herself you may command me."

The queen thanked him with great affection and noticed how handsome he was; and recalling her sons whom she had lost, the tears came to her eyes. Thus she wept for him who stood before her and she did not recognize him. And the Child of the Sea said,

"Madam, do not weep, for happiness will quickly return to you with the help of God and the king, and with that of this knight, your nephew and of mine, for I willingly will serve you."

She said, "My good friend, you who are my sister's knight, I wish that you lodge in my house, and there they will give you the things that you need."

Agrajes wanted to take him with him, but the king and the queen begged him so insistently that he had to consent. Thus he remained under the protection of his mother, where he was highly honored.

King Abies and Daganel, his half brother, learned the news that these knights had arrived at King Perion's court. And King Abies, who was at that time the most highly esteemed knight known, said,

"If King Perion has the heart to fight and is enterprising, now he will seek a battle with us."

"He will not do so," said Daganel, "because he is very much afraid of you."

Galayn, the Duke of Normandy, who was there, said,

"I will tell you how he will do so; let me and Daganel ride forth tonight, and at dawn we shall appear near his town with a fair-sized number of men; and let King Abies remain hidden with the rest of the force in the forest of Galpano, and in this manner we shall encourage him to dare to come out; and we by showing some fear, shall strive to get them into the forest as far as the place where the king is, and thus they will all be lost."

"You speak well," said King Abies, "and so let it be done."

Then immediately Daganel, and Galayn, who had given the advice, went armed with all the men and entered the forest, and passed well in front of where the king was, and thus they remained all night. But when morning came, King Perion and his wife went to see what the Child of the Sea was doing; and they found that he had arisen and was washing his hands, and they saw his eyes a bright red, and his face wet with tears, so that it appeared plainly that he had slept little the night before, and thus it was without mistake; for remembering his beloved and considering the great longing that came over him without having any hope of remedy, he hoped only for death. The queen called Gandalin and said to him,

"Friend, what was the matter with your master, for he seems to me in his appearance to be in great sorrow? Is it on account of some discontentment that he has experienced here?"

"Madam," said he, "here he receives great honor and favor, but he has the habit of weeping while sleeping, which now you see shown in his appearance."

And while thus they stood, those in the town saw many enemies well-armed near them, and they shouted, "To arms! To arms!" The Child of the Sea, who saw the commotion, was very happy, and the king said to him:

"Good friend, our enemies are here." And he said, "Let us arm ourselves and go see them."

And the king called for his arms and the Child of the Sea for his, and as soon as they were armed and mounted, they went to the gate of the town: where they found Agrajes, who was complaining greatly because it was not being opened, for he was one of the knights in the whole world most spirited of heart and most aggressive at all affronts; and if his strength had been equal to his courage, there would not have been anyone to surpass him in armed might. And as they arrived, he said to the Child of the Sea,

"Sir, command them to open the gate for us."

And the king, who was no less pleased to fight, commanded that they open it, and all the knights went out, and when they saw their enemies were so many, some there were there who said it was madness to attack them. Agrajes spurred his horse saying,

"Now bad luck to the one who holds himself back the most."

And moving against them, he saw the Child of the Sea, in the van as they all moved forward together. Daganel and Galayn, who saw them come against them, prepared to receive them as those whom they greatly hated. The Child of the Sea attacked Galayn, who was in the fore-front, and struck him so hard that he overthrew him and his horse, and Galayn had one leg broken; and the Child of the Sea broke his lance and immediately took his sword in hand and let himself run at the others like an enraged lion, performing wonders in striking blows everywhere; so that there was nothing before his sword that he did not cause to be knocked to the ground, some men dead, others wounded. But so many attacked him that his horse could not go anywhere with him, so that he was in a serious predicament. Agrajes, who saw it, arrived there with some of his men and did great damage to the enemy. King Perion came with all the troops very courageously, for he of his own volition had a great desire to attack them; and Daganel received him with his men very spiritedly. So they were all mingled together in a melee. There you would have seen the Child of the Sea doing extraordinary deeds, overthrowing and killing as many as he found in front of him, for there was no man who dared await him; and he rushed at his enemies, causing them to make way for him so that he

resembled a fierce lion. Agrajes, when he saw him do these things, took on much more strength than he had before, and cried out in a loud voice in order to encourage his men:

"Knights, behold the best and most courageous knight that ever was born."

When Daganel saw how he was destroying his men, he went toward the Child of the Sea to strike his horse in order that he might fall into their midst, but he could not, and the Child of the Sea gave him such a blow on top of his helmet that its laces were perforce broken and it fell from his head.

King Perion who arrived in aid of the Child of the Sea, gave Daganel such a blow with his sword that he cleaved him down to the teeth. Then those from the Desert and from Normandy were defeated, fleeing to where King Abies was, and many were saying,

"Alas, King Abies, why do you delay so long that you let them kill us?"

And King Perion and his company continuing to strike the foe, it was not long before King Abies of Ireland appeared with all his men, and they came saying:

"Now at them, and let no man remain whom you do not kill, and fight to enter with them into the town."

When King Perion and his men, all unsuspecting, saw those they did not know about, they were greatly alarmed, for they were already weary and did not have lances; and they knew that King Abies was one of the best knights in the world, and the one whom they most feared; but the Child of the Sea began to say to them,

"Now, sirs, it is necessary to maintain your honor and it will be manifest in which of you there is a point of honor."

And he made all those who had scattered gather together, and those from Ireland came on to attack so fiercely that it was a wonder, like men coming fresh and full of the urge to do evil. King Abies did not leave a knight in the saddle as long as his lance lasted him; and when he lost it, he took his sword in hand and began to attack with it so fiercely that he made his foes take fright; and his own men continued to keep with him, attacking and unhorsing the enemy, so that the men of King Perion,

not being able to endure it any longer, were retreating toward the town.

When the Child of the Sea saw that things were going badly, he began with great fury to fight better than before, lest those on his side flee in disarray, and he kept thrusting himself between the two forces and by wounding and killing amid those of Ireland, he gave reason for his own men not to turn their backs completely. Agrajes and King Perion, who saw him in such great danger doing so much, remained always with him. So that all three were a protection to their men and with them their opponents had their hands full, for King Abies had placed his men ahead while anticipating victory in order that together with them he might enter the town, where he expected his war to be finished. And in this crush which you are hearing about they arrived at the gate of the town, where if it had not been for these three knights, all would have entered together. But they suffered so many blows and gave so many that their being able to stand it was a wonder. King Abies, who believed that his men were inside with them, passed forward; and it did not turn out for him thus, for which he had great sorrow, and still more on account of Daganel and Galayn, for he learned that they were dead. And a knight of his came to him and said,

"Sir, do you see that knight on the white horse? He performs nothing but marvels and has killed your captains and many others."

He was talking about the Child of the Sea, who was riding on the white horse of Galpano. King Abies went closer and said,

"Sir knight, through your coming the man whom I loved most in the world is dead. But I will make you pay dearly for it if you are willing to fight any more."

"It is not the proper time for me to fight you," said the Child of the Sea, "for you have many men well rested, and we are very few and weary, so that it would be a wonder if we were able to withstand you. But if you want to take revenge as a knight for that of which you speak, and to show the great valor for which you are lauded, choose among your people those whom you endorse most highly and I among mine and if they be equal in number, you would be able to achieve greater honor than with

a great surplus of men and with excessive arrogance to come to take without any reason what belongs to another."

"Then say," said King Abies, "how many you want to be in the battle."

"Since you leave it to me," said the knight, "I shall propose to you another agreement, and it may be most to your liking. You are angry at me for what I have done and I at you for what you have done in this land; therefore for our guilt there is no reason why anyone else should suffer; and let the fight be between you and me and immediately if you wish, provided that your people and ours also give assurance that no one move until the end of it."

"So be it," said King Abies.

And he had ten knights called, the best of his men, and with another ten that the Child of the Sea put forward, they made safe the field by guaranteeing that whatever happened, for good or ill, they would not interfere. King Perion and Agrajes argued with the Child against the battle's taking place until the next morning because they saw him badly wounded; but they were not able to dissuade him from it, because he wanted the battle more than anything else. And this was for two reasons:

One, to test himself with that knight who was so highly praised as the best in the world. And the other, because if he won, the war would be finished, and he would be able to go to see his lady Oriana, for in her was his entire heart and his desire.

CHAPTER IX

How the Child of the Sea fought King Abies over the war that he had with King Perion of Gaul.

The battle between King Abies and the Child of the Sea having been arranged, as you have heard, those on the one side and those on the other, seeing that the greater part of the day was gone, agreed against the will of both of them that it be for the next day. In order to repair their arms as well as to alleviate somewhat the wounds they had, and because the men on both sides were so battered and weary that they wanted the respite for their repose, each one repaired to his lodging. The Child of the Sea with bared head entered the town with King Perion and Agrajes, and everyone said,

"Ah, good knight, God help you and give you honor, so that you may finish what you have commenced! Ah, what knightly good looks! In this man knighthood is well employed, since more than all others he maintains it in its high place."

And when they arrived at the palace of the king, a damsel came who said to the Child of the Sea:

"Sir, the queen begs that you do not disarm except in your lodging where she awaits you."

This was by the advice of the king, and he said,

"Friend, go to the queen, and let Agrajes go with you to keep you company."

Then the king went to his apartment and the Child of the Sea to his, where they found the queen and many matrons and damsels who disarmed them. But the queen did not permit anyone to lay a hand on the Child of the Sea except herself, who disarmed

him and covered him with a cloak. At this moment the king arrived and saw that the Child of the Sea was wounded, and said,

"Why didn't you extend the time limit for the battle?"

"It was not necessary," said the knight, "because I do not have any wound on account of which I should fail to wage it."

Then they treated his wounds and gave him and Agrajes their supper. The next day early the queen and all her damsels came to them and found them talking to the king, and the mass began, and it having been said, the Child of the Sea armed himself, not with those arms that he had worn in the fight the day before, for they did not remain in such condition as to be of any use, but with others much more handsome and strong; and having taken leave of the queen and of the matrons and damsels, he mounted a fresh horse which they had for him at the castle gate. And King Perion carried the Child of the Sea's helmet and Agrajes his shield, and an old knight, Agonon by name, who was greatly esteemed at arms, his lance. And for his great past excellence in courage as well as in virtue, he ranked third after the king and Agrajes, son of a king.

And the shield that the latter bore had its field of gold and two lions on it in blue, rampant, as if they sought to bite each other. And coming out of the gate of the town, they saw King Abies on a great black horse and fully armed except that he had not yet laced his helmet. Those of the town and those of the army all placed themselves where they could best see the combat, and the lists were already marked and the paling set up with many wooden stands around it.

Then they laced on their helmets and took their shields. And on his neck King Abies slung a shield that had a blue field and on it a giant depicted, and next to him a knight who was cutting off his head. He bore these arms because he had fought with a giant who kept coming into his land and laying it all waste, and just as he had cut off his head, so did he bear it depicted on his shield. And as soon as both took up arms, all others left the field, each one commending his own champion to God; and they went and attacked each other without any delay as fast as their horses could run, as men who were of such great strength and heart. At the first blows all their arms were pierced, and breaking their lances,

they collided, horses as well as men, with such force that each one fell in turn, and everyone believed they were dead; and they had bits of the lances thrust through their shields so that the iron points pierced their flesh; but as both were very agile and keen of heart, they quickly got up and removed the pieces of the lances from themselves, and laying hands on their swords they attacked each other so fiercely that those who were round about were frightened to see them. But the combat seemed unequal, not because the Child of the Sea was not well knit and of fair height, but because King Abies was so tall that there was never found a knight than whom he was not a hand taller, and his limbs seemed aught but those of a giant. He was well loved by his people and his ways were all good except that he was more arrogant than he should have been.

The combat between them was so cruel and hard-fought without their permitting themselves to rest, and the blows so great that they seemed those of twenty knights. They slashed the shields, making large slices fall on the field, and they dented the helmets and stripped the trim from the coats of mail. So indeed each made known to the other his strength and courage. And the great force and effectiveness of their swords made the armor of little avail, so that for the most part they cut into their flesh, for there remained nothing of the shields with which they could cover or protect themselves, and so much blood flowed from them that it was a wonder that they were able to hold themselves up; but so great was the courage that they brought with them that they were not aware of this. So they continued in this first combat until the hour of tierce, nor could one perceive in them any weakness or cowardice, only that they were fighting with great spirit. But the sun, which was heating up their armor, produced in them some fatigue; and at this juncture King Abies stepped a little to one side and said,

"Hold on, and let us straighten our helmets, and if you are willing for us to rest a bit, our combat will not waste time; and although I dislike you very much, I value you more highly than any other knight with whom I have fought, but my esteem for you does not afford you the advantage of causing me to keep from doing you harm, for you killed the one whom I loved so

much; and you put me to great shame before so many commoners by withstanding me for so long."

The Child of the Sea said,

"Does this shame you, and not your coming with great pride to do so much evil to one who does not deserve it? Consider that men, especially kings, are not to do what they can, but what they ought, because often it happens that the harm and violence that they wish to do to those who do not deserve it, finally falls on themselves and they lose everything, and even their lives also; and if now you would like me to let you rest, so also others have wished, whom you, without consenting to it, were greatly harassing; and in order that you may feel what you made them feel, prepare yourself, for you will not rest with my consent."

The king took his sword and said,

"This fiery courage ill serves you, for it puts you in this lion's den from which you will not come out without losing your head."

"Now make your effort," said the Child of the Sea, "for you shall not rest until your death arrive or your honor be achieved."

And they attacked each other much more furiously than before and as fiercely as if the battle just then had begun and they had not delivered a blow that day. King Abies, as he was very skillful because of great practice in arms, fought very prudently, protecting himself from blows and striking where he best could harm. The wonders that the Child of the Sea performed in moving nimbly and aggressively, and in delivering very severe blows, put all of King Abies's knowledge in confusion, and not being able any longer to endure it, in spite of himself he began losing ground. And the Child of the Sea finished destroying the whole shield on his arm, so that nothing remained of it, and he cut his flesh in many places, so that the blood flowed freely and King Abies was no longer able to attack, for his sword was revolving in his hand. He was so harassed that almost turning his back, he went looking for some shelter out of fear of his sword, so cruelly did he have experience with it. But when he saw there was nothing except death, he turned, taking his sword in both hands and let himself go at the Child of the Sea, thinking to strike him on top of his helmet; and the latter raised his shield, where he received the blow, and the sword so embedded itself in it that he was not

able to withdraw it; and throwing it aside, the Child of the Sea without opposition gave him on his left leg such a wound that half of it was cut off, and the king fell his full length on the field. The Child of the Sea advanced upon him and jerking off his helmet said to him,

"You are a dead man, King Abies, unless you accept defeat."

"Truly, I am dead, but not defeated, and I believe that my pride has killed me; and I beseech you to assure for me the safety of my followers against harm and they will carry me to my own land, and I pardon you and those for whom I wish ill, and I command that as much as I took from King Perion be restored to him; and I beg of you that you let me have confession, for I am dying."

When the Child of the Sea heard this from him, he had extraordinarily great sorrow for him. But well he knew that the other would not have had any sorrow for him if he had been of more avail. All of this having occurred as you have heard, those of the army and of the town whose safety was assured gathered together. King Abies ordered that all he had taken from him be given back to King Perion, and the latter guaranteed the safety of all Abies's people until they bore him to his native land. And having received all the sacraments of Holy Church, King Abies's soul departed his body, and his vassals carried his remains back to their own land amid great weeping for him.

The Child of the Sea having been taken by King Perion and Agrajes and the other grandees supporting them, and removed from the field with that glory which is wont to accrue to conquerors in such actions — glory not only of honor but for restitution of a kingdom to him who had lost it — went away to the town with him. And the damsel of Denmark, who on behalf of Oriana was coming to him, as I have already told you, arrived there at the time the battle commenced; and as she saw that he had concluded it so greatly to his honor, she came up to him and said,

"Child of the Sea, speak with me privily, and I shall tell you concerning your affairs more than you know."

He received her kindly and turned aside with her on going across the field, and the damsel said,

"Oriana, your lady love, sends me to you, and I give you from her this letter on which is written your name."

He took the letter but did not understand anything of what she said. So perturbed was he when he heard his lady mentioned, that first the letter fell from his hand and then the reins on the neck of the horse, and he was as though out of his senses. The damsel requested the letter that was on the ground from one of those who had watched the battle, and returned to him, while everyone was watching what had occurred and wondering why the Child of the Sea had been disturbed by the damsel's news. And when she reached him, she said to him,

"What is this, sir; do you receive so badly the message of the most exalted maiden in the world, the one who loves you deeply and who caused me to endure so much fatigue while seeking you?"

"Friend," said he, "what with this ill which came upon me, I did not understand what you told me, as already once before happened to me in your presence."

The damsel said,

"Sir, deceit is not necessary with me, for I know more of your affairs and of those of my lady than you know; for she wished it thus and I say to you that if you love her, you do no wrong, for she loves you so much that it could not easily be told. And know you that they have brought her to the house of her father, and she sends word to you that as soon as you leave this war, you are to go to Great Britain and strive to dwell with her father as long as she commands. And she tells you that she knows that you are the son of a king, wherefore she is no less happy than you, and since while not knowing your lineage you were so good, that now you should strive to be much better."

And then she gave him the letter and said to him,

"Here is this letter in which is written your name, and this you wore around your neck when they cast you upon the sea."

He took it and said,

"Ah, letter, how well guarded you were by that lady of my heart, by that one for whom I have come many times to the point of death; but if I have had pain and anguish for her cause, to a much greater extent with great joy I am satisfied! Ah, Lord God,

when shall I see the time when I shall be able to repay that lady for this favor that she renders me!"

And on reading the letter, he learned from it that his right name was Amadis. The damsel said to him:

"Sir, I wish to return immediately to my mistress, since I have carried out her command."

"Ah, damsel," said the Child of the Sea. "By heaven! Rest here until the third day, and do not in any wise leave me and I shall escort you wherever you wish."

"To you I came," said the damsel, "and I shall do only what you command."

Their talk having been concluded, the Child of the Sea went at once to the King and Agrajes who were waiting for him, and on their entering the town everyone said:

"Welcome to the good knight through whom we have recovered honor and happiness!"

Thus they went as far as the palace and found in the room of the Child of the Sea the queen with all her attendants, manifesting very great joy, and into their arms was he taken from his horse and disarmed by the queen's own hand. And master physicians came who cared for his wounds; and although these were many, there was none that might give much trouble. The king had wished that he and Agrajes dine with him, but he was unwilling to dine with anyone except this damsel, in order to do her honor, for he saw very well that she was able to alleviate most of his distress. So he took his ease for a few days with great pleasure, especially from the good news that had come to him, until neither the past travail nor the present wounds prevented him from getting up and walking about through a room talking always with the damsel, who had been detained by him, so that she not leave until he were able to take up arms and escort her. But one wonderful thing that happened to him at this time caused the damsel to depart from there alone, while he tarried a few days longer, as you shall now hear.

CHAPTER X

How the Child of the Sea was recognized by King Perion, his father, and by his mother, Elisena.

At the beginning it was related how King Perion gave Queen Elisena, when she was his mistress, one of two rings that he wore on his hand, both exactly alike without any difference appearing; and how at the time when the Child of the Sea was cast upon the river in the ark, he wore that ring suspended from his neck; and how later it was given to him along with the sword by his foster-father Gandales. And King Perion had asked the queen several times for the ring, and she, not wanting to tell him where she had put it, told him she had lost it.

Then it so happened that the Child of the Sea, on passing through a room talking with his damsel, saw the little girl Melicia, daughter of the king crying, and asked her what was the matter. The little girl said,

"Sir, I have lost a ring that the king gave me to keep while he was sleeping."

"Well, I will give you," said he, "another as good or better to give to him."

Then he drew from his finger a ring and gave it to her. She said,

"This is the one that I lost."

"It is not," said he.

"Well, it is the one ring in the world that most resembles it," said the girl.

"Therefore that's even better," said the Child of the Sea, "for you shall give it to him in place of the other."

And leaving her he went with the damsel to his bedroom and lay down on a bed and she on another which was there. The king awoke and asked his daughter to give him the ring, and she gave him the one she had. He put it on his finger thinking it was his, but saw lying at one side of the room the other that his daughter had lost; and taking it, he put it with the other one and saw that it was the one he had given to the queen, and he said to the child,

"What about this ring?"

She, who greatly feared him, said,

"By heaven, sire, I lost yours, and the Child of the Sea passed by; and as he saw I was weeping, he gave me this one that he wore, and I thought it was yours."

The king was suspicious of the queen lest the great excellence of the Child of the Sea, together with his very handsome appearance, may have led her to some improper thought. Taking his sword he entered the queen's chamber, closed the door, and said,

"Lady, you always denied me the ring that I gave you, and now the Child of the Sea has given it to Melicia; how could it be that you see it here? Tell me where he got it, and if you lie, your head will pay for it."

The queen, who saw that he was very angry, fell at his feet and said,

"Alas, sire, in heaven's name have mercy, for you wrongly suspect me! Now I will tell you of my trouble, which up to now I have denied to you."

Then she began to weep, very bitterly, striking her face with her hands, and she told how she had cast her son upon the river and that he had carried with him the sword and that ring.

"By Holy Mary!" said the king, "I believe that this is our son."

The queen held out her hands, saying.

"So might it please the Lord of the world."

"Now let us go there, you and I," said the king, "and ask him about his affairs."

Then they both went alone to the room where he was, and found him sleeping very quietly; and the queen kept weeping on account of the suspicion that so unreasonably he had of her. But the king took in his hand the sword, which was placed at the

head of the bed; and examining it, he recognized it at once as that with which he had given many and good blows; and he said turning toward the queen,

"By heaven, I know this sword well, and now I believe more truly what you have told me."

"Ah, sire," said the queen, "let us permit him to sleep no longer, for my heart is sorely beset."

And she went to him and taking him by the hand, drew him a little closer to her, saying,

"My dear sir, aid me in this distress and anguish in which I find myself."

He awoke and saw her weeping very bitterly, and said,

"Madam, what is this which troubles you? If my service can remedy it somewhat, command me, for until death it will be rendered."

"Ah, my friend," said the queen, "then help us now with a statement telling us whose son you are."

"So help me God," said he, "I do not know, for by extraordinary chance I was found at sea."

The queen fell at his feet quite perturbed, and he knelt down before her and said,

"Ah, heavens! What is this?"

She replied, weeping,

"Son, you behold here your father and mother."

When he heard this, he said,

"Holy Mary! What is this that I hear?"

The queen, holding him in her arms, turned and said,

"It is, son, that God wills through His mercy that we make amends for that error which through great fear I made; and, my son, I as a bad mother cast you upon the sea; and here you see the king who engendered you."

Then he knelt and kissed their hands with many tears of pleasure, giving thanks to God because He had thus delivered him from so many dangers in order to give him at last so much honor and good fortune with such a father and mother. The queen said,

"Son, do you know whether you have another name besides this one?"

"Madam, yes I do," said he, "for on my leaving the battle, that damsel gave me a letter which was wrapped in wax when I was cast upon the sea, in which it said I was called Amadis."

Then, drawing it from his breast, he gave it to them, and they saw it was the same that Darioleta in her own hand had written; and the queen said,

"My beloved son, when this letter was written I was in great distress and grief, and now I am in complete delight and joy; blessed be God, and from now on call yourself by this name."

"So I shall do," said he.

And he was called Amadis, and in many other regions Amadis of Gaul. The pleasure that Agrajes, his cousin, and all the others of the kingdom, had with this news it would be unnecessary to relate; for by finding lost sons, although they be intractable and ill-conditioned, their parents and relatives receive consolation and joy.

Then consider how it could be with him, who in the whole world was a clear and shining model.

Therefore, ceasing to speak any more about this, we shall relate what happened afterwards. The maid of Denmark said,

"Amadis, sir, I wish to leave with this good news from which my lady will derive great pleasure, and you remain to give joy and happiness to those eyes which out of desire for you have shed so many tears."

Tears came to his eyes, and streamed down his face; and he said,

"My dear, go, and may God be with you; and to you I entrust my life that you may have pity, for from my lady I would not be so bold as to ask it, in view of the great favor that she has now done me. And I will be there to serve her quickly with arms similar to those I had in the battle with King Abies, by which you can recognize me if there be no opportunity to ascertain from me my identity."

Agrajes in like manner bade farewell to him, telling him how the damsel to whom he gave Galpano's head in revenge for the dishonor that he did her, brought him a message from his lady love Olinda, daughter of King Vavayn of Norway, to the effect that he should go see her at once. He had won her as his

sweetheart at the time that he and his uncle, Don Galvanes, were in that kingdom. This Galvanes was a brother of his father, and because he had only the poor castle as an inheritance he was called Galvanes Lackland. And Agrajes said to him,

"Sir cousin, I would prefer your company to anything, but my heart, which is very troubled, permits only that I go see that woman in whose power I always am, whether near or far away, and I wish to know where I might find you when I return."

"Sir," said Amadis, "I believe you will find me in the house of King Lisuarte, for they tell me that there chivalry is maintained at a higher level than in the house of any other king or emperor in the world. And I beg of you to give my regards to the king, your father, and to your mother, and to tell them that on account of the rearing that they gave me, they may consider me in their service to the same extent as you."

Then Agrajes bade farewell to the king and to the queen, his aunt; and on riding forth with his company, and the king and Amadis with him in order to do him honor, as they went out by the town gate they met a damsel, who taking the king's horse by the bridle, said,

"Remember, king, that a damsel told you that when you recovered your lost one, the seigniory of Ireland would lose its flower, and see whether she spoke the truth, for you recovered this son whom you had lost and that courageous King Abies died, who was the flower of Ireland. And even more I tell you: that it will never regain that flower through any lord there until the good brother of the lady comes, who by force of arms will cause tribute to come from another land, and he will die by the hand of the one that will be killed by the thing that he loves most in the world. (This was Morlote of Ireland, brother of the Queen of Ireland, the one who killed Tristan de Leonis over the tribute that he demanded from his uncle, King Mark of Cornwall. And Tristan died afterwards on account of Queen Isolt, who was the thing that he loved most in the world.) And this, Urganda, my mistress, sends me to tell you."

Amadis said to her:

"Damsel, tell your mistress that the knight to whom she gave the lance sends his best regards to her, and that now I see what

she told me to be the truth: that with it I would liberate the house from which I first issued, for I freed the king, my father, who was at the point of death."

The damsel went her way, and Agrajes also, having taken leave of the king and of Amadis; at which point we shall leave him until the proper time.

King Perion ordered his parliament to assemble in order that all might see his son Amadis, whence many demonstrations of joy and many festivals resulted, to the honor and in the service of that lord whom God had given them, with whom and with his father they hoped to live in much honor and repose. There Amadis learned how the giant had carried away Don Galaor, his brother, and he resolved to try hard to ascertain what might be done and to recover him by force of arms or in whatever other way might be necessary. Many things were done at that parliament meeting and many and great gifts the king presented at it, which would be a long story. At the end of said session, Amadis spoke with his father, saying that he wished to go to Great Britain, to the end that since the king had no need of him, he be given leave. The king and queen strove hard to detain him, but were in nowise able to do so, for the great longing that he continually felt for his lady did not leave him, nor did it permit any other obedience except that which was subjugating his heart. And taking with him only Gandalin and a new set of arms like those which King Abies had cut to pieces, he departed, and traveled until he reached the sea. And boarding a light boat, he crossed to Great Britain and reached port at a good town called Bristol. And there he ascertained that King Lisuarte was in a town of his called Windsor, and that he was very powerful and well supported by good knights, and that all the other kings of the islands nearby were submissive to him. Amadis left there and entered upon his way, but he had not traveled far along it, when he encountered a damsel who said to him,

"Is this the road to Bristol?"

"Yes," said he.

"By chance do you know if I would find there a vessel that might be crossing to Gaul?"

"Where are you going there?" said he.

"I am going to look for a good knight, son of the King of Gaul, called Amadis, who has just been recognized by his father."

He marveled and said,

"Damsel, through whom do you know that?"

"Through that woman from whom things cannot be hidden, and who knew the facts about him before he or his father did, for she is Urganda the Unknown, and she has so much need of him that if not by him, by no one else can she recover what she greatly desires."

"Thanks be to God," said he, "that the one they all need has need of me. Know you, damsel, that I am the one you are seeking, and now let us go wherever you wish."

"What," said she, "are you the one I am looking for?"

"I am most certainly," said he.

"Then follow me," said the damsel, "and I shall take you to where my lady is."

Amadis left his road and entered the one on which the damsel guided him.

CHAPTER XI

How the giant conducted Galaor to be armed by the hand of King Lisuarte, and Amadis knighted him very honorably.

Don Galaor being with the giant as we have told you, learning to ride and to wield a sword and all the other things that were proper for a knight, being already very skillful in them, and the year having been completed that the giant had set as the time limit, he said to him,

"Father, I now ask you to make me a knight, since I have attended to everything that you have commanded."

The giant who saw it was high time, said to him,

"Son, I am pleased to do so, and tell me whom do you wish to do it?"

"King Lisuarte," he replied, "who is reputedly so famed."

"I shall take you there," said the giant.

And the third day, having all their equipment, they departed from there and went on their way, and on the fifth day they found themselves near a very strong castle that overlooked salt water, and the castle was called Bradoyd, and it was the most beautiful in all that land, and was located on a high cliff, and on one side flowed that water and on the other there was a great marsh; and on the water side one could enter only by boat, and on the side toward the marsh there was a causeway so wide that one cart could go and another come, but at the entrance to the causeway there was a narrow bridge and it was a drawbridge, and when it was lifted the water was very deep, and at the entrance to the bridge were two tall elms; and the giant and Galaor saw under them two damsels and a squire, and they

saw an armed knight on a white horse with arms bearing the device of a lion, who had arrived at the bridge, which was raised, and he could not pass, and he was shouting to those in the castle. Galaor said to the giant,

"If you please, let us see what that knight will do."

And it was not long before they saw at the castle end of the bridge two armed knights and ten foot soldiers without armor, and they asked the knight what he wanted.

"I want to enter there," said the knight.

"That cannot be," they said, "if you do not fight with us first."

"Since otherwise it is not possible," said he, "lower the bridge and come to the joust."

The knights had the foot soldiers lower it, and one of the former let himself go on the run at the one who carried his lance low, and with his horse going as swiftly as he could carry him. And the knight with the lion device on his arms moved against him, and they struck each other fiercely. The knight of the castle broke his lance and the other struck him so hard that he knocked him to the ground, and his horse on top of him; and he went for the other who was starting over the bridge, and both horses collided, for the lances missed their aim, and the knight from outside collided so heavily with the knight of the castle that he knocked him and his horse into the water and the knight was killed immediately. And the knight from the outside crossed the drawbridge and kept on going toward the castle, and the churls raised the bridge, and the maidens from outside shouted to him that they were raising the bridge; and he who was returning to them, saw coming toward him three knights very well armed, who said to him,

"You have crossed here inopportunely, for you will have to die in the water just as he who is more worthy than you died."

And all three charged at him, and they struck him so fiercely that they made the horse kneel and he was near to falling; and they broke their lances and he was wounded by two of them, but he struck one of them in such a way that the armor he was wearing was of no use to him, for the lance entered him through one side and the iron with a piece of the shaft came out his other side; and the knight with the lion device seized his sword very

bravely and went and struck the two knights and they, him, and they began between them a dangerous battle; but he of the lion device, who feared death, fought to rid himself of them, and gave one such a blow with his sword in the right arm that he made him fall to the ground with his sword, and he began to flee toward the castle, shouting,

"Help, friends, for they are slaying your lord!"

And when he of the lion device heard that that other was the master, he strove all the more to defeat him, and gave him such a blow on top of his helmet that he thrust his sword through to the flesh; whereat the knight was so undone that he lost his footing in the stirrups and would have fallen if he had not grasped the neck of the horse. And he took him by the helmet and jerked it from his head, and the knight tried to flee, but saw that the other one was between him and the castle.

"You die," said he of the lion device, "unless you surrender at once."

And he, who was much afraid of the sword that he had already felt on his head, said,

"Ah, good knight, have mercy, don't kill me; take my sword and I yield myself up as a prisoner."

But he of the lion, who saw the knights and armed foot soldiers coming out of the castle, took him by the boss of his shield and put the point of his sword to his face and said,

"Command those to turn about; if not, I shall kill you."

He shouted to them to turn back if they loved their lives; they seeing his great danger, did so, and the knight with the lion device said further,

"Have the foot soldiers lower the bridge."

And he immediately so ordered. Then the former took him with him and crossed the bridge with him, and he of the castle who saw the damsels, recognized one of them, who was Urganda the Unknown, and said,

"Ah, sir knight, if you do not protect me from that damsel, I am dead!"

"So help me God," said he, "that I will not do; rather I shall do with you what she commands."

Then he said to Urganda:

"Here is the knight of the castle; what do you wish me to do to him?"

"Cut off his head, if he does not give you my friend whom he has there imprisoned in the castle and if he does not put in my hands the damsel that caused him to be held."

"So be it," said he.

And he raised the sword to frighten him, but the knight said,

"Ah, good sir, don't kill me; I shall do all that she commands."

"Well, let it be at once," said he, "without any more delay."

Then the knight of the castle called one of the foot soldiers and said to him,

"Go to my brother and tell him, if he wishes to see me alive, to bring immediately the knight who is there and the damsel who brought him."

This was done at once, and he of the lion device having come, he said to the released knight,

"Knight, there is your friend, love her, for she endured much anxiety to get you out of prison."

"I love her indeed," said he, "more than ever." Urganda went and embraced him, and he her.

"Then what will you do with the damsel?" said the knight of the lion device.

"Kill her," said Urganda, "for I have endured her for a long time." And she made a spell in such wise that the damsel, trembling, was going to cast herself into the water.

But the knight said,

"Madam, in heaven's name, don't let this damsel die, for she was captured by me."

"I shall let her off this time for your sake, but if she fails me, she will pay for everything altogether."

The lord of the castle said,

"Sir, since I have complied with all you commanded, free me from Urganda."

She said to him,

"I free you, in honor of this man who overcame you."

He of the lion device asked the damsel why of her own volition she was casting herself into the water.

"Sir," said she, "it seemed to me I had on each side a blazing torch which was burning me, and I wanted to save myself with the water."

He began to laugh and said,

"By heaven, damsel, yours is a great madness, to anger one who can avenge herself so well."

Galaor, who had seen it all, said to the giant,

"This one I wish to dub me knight, for if King Lisuarte is so renowned, it would be for his eminence, but this knight deserves fame for his great courage."

"Then go to him," said the giant, "and if he will not do it, it will be to his harm."

Galaor went where he of the device of the lion was standing under the elms, and in his company with him he had four squires and two damsels; and as Galaor arrived, they both greeted each other; and Galaor said,

"Sir knight, I ask of you a boon."

He, who saw him handsomer than any man he had ever seen, took him by the hand and said,

"If it be right, I grant it to you."

"Well, I beg of you that as a favor, you make me a knight without delay, and you will save me from going to King Lisuarte, to whom just now I was going."

"Friend," said he, "you would be doing a very foolish thing to reject for such an honor the greatest king in the world and to take instead a poor knight like me."

"Sir," said Galaor, "the greatness of King Lisuarte would not infuse in me as much courage as your great valor which here I have seen you demonstrate. And do fufill what you have promised me."

"Good squire," said he, "with any other favor that you may ask of me, I shall be happier than with this one which does not befit me, nor is it an honor to you. "

At this moment Urganda came to them, as one who had not overheard anything, and said,

"Sir, how does this youth strike you?"

"He strikes me as the most handsome youth I have ever seen, and he asks of me a favor which befits neither him nor me."

"And what is it?" said she.

"That I dub him knight," said he, "he being on the way to go ask it of King Lisuarte."

"Of course," said Urganda, "in failing to be knighted there would come to him greater harm than advantage, and I say to him not to release you from granting the boon and to you that you comply. And I tell you that chivalry will be in him better served with one single exception than in any of all the knights there are now in all the islands of the sea."

"Since that's how it is," said he, "in the name of God, so be it; and now let us go to some church in order to hold the vigil."

"It is not necessary," said Galaor, "for I have already heard mass and I saw the true Body of God."

"This suffices," said he of the lion device.

And placing on him the right spur and kissing him, he said,

"Now you are a knight, and take the sword from whomever you prefer."

"You shall give it to me," said Galaor, "for from no other would I willingly take it."

And he summoned a squire to bring a sword that he had in his hand. But Urganda said,

"You shall not give him that one, but the one yonder that is hanging in that tree, with which you will be happier."

Then they all looked at the tree; they saw nothing. She began to laugh in earnest, and said,

"By heaven, it has been there for all of ten years, and no one ever saw it who passed by here and now everyone shall see it."

And again looking, they saw the sword hanging from a limb of the tree, and it appeared very beautiful, and as fresh as though it had been placed there just then, and the sheath very richly wrought of silk and gold. He of the lion device took it and girded it on Galaor, saying,

"Such a beautiful sword was appropriate for such a handsome knight, and certainly the one who guarded it for you for such a long time does not dislike you."

Galaor was very happy with it and said to him of the lion device,

"Sir, it is necessary that I go to a place that I cannot avoid. But I desire your company much more than that of any other knight, if you please, just tell me where I shall find you."

"In the court of King Lisuarte," said he, "where I shall be happy to see you, for it is right to go there because it has been only a short time that I have been a knight, and in such a court I have to earn some honor like you."

Galaor was very happy with this, and said to Urganda,

"Lady maid, I am very grateful for this sword you have given me; remember me as your knight."

And having taken leave of them he returned to where he had left the giant, who had remained hidden on the bank of a river.

Meantime, while this took place, a damsel of Galaor's was talking with the other, who was one of Urganda's, and from her found out that that knight was Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, and that Urganda, her mistress, had him come there to get her friend out of that castle by force of arms, for her great knowledge did not avail her because the lady of the castle, who knew much of that art, had first put a spell on him, and not fearing the knowledge of Urganda they sought to insure themselves against force of arms by that custom that the lion device knight overcame by crossing the bridge, just as it has been related to you; and for this reason they had held there Urganda's friend, whom a damsel, niece of the lady of the castle, had brought there, the one who, as you have already heard, wanted to drown herself in the water. Thus Urganda and the knight of the lion device remained conversing a part of that day, and she said to him,

"Good knight, don't you know whom you knighted?"

"No," said he.

"Then it is right that you should know, since he has the same stout heart as you yourself, so that if you encountered him while not knowing him, it would be a great misfortune. Know you that he is the son of your father and mother, and this is the one whom the giant took, when he was a child of two and a half years, and he is as tall and handsome as now you see; and for love of you and of him, I kept that sword for him for such a long time;

and I tell you that he will make with it the best start in chivalry that ever a knight made in Great Britain."

The eyes of Amadis filled with tears of joy, and he said,

"Ah, lady, tell me where I shall find him."

"It is not now necessary," said she, "for you to search for him, for it is needful that what is ordained should occur."

"Then can I see him soon?"

"Yes," she said, "but it will not be so easy for you to recognize him as you think."

He abstained from asking any more about it, and she with her beloved went their way; and Amadis departed with his squire along another road with the intention of going to Windsor, where at that time King Lisuarte was.

Galaor came to where the giant was and said to him,

"Father, I am a knight; praise be to God and to the good knight who accomplished it."

He said,

"Son, I am very happy about this and I ask you a boon."

"Very willingly," said he, "I grant it, provided that it not be a hindrance to my going to win honor."

"Son," said the giant, "if it please God, rather will there be a great increase of it."

"Then ask it," said he, "for I grant it."

"Son," said he, "sometimes you have heard me tell how Albadan the giant treacherously killed my father and took from him the Rock of Galtares which should be mine. I ask of you that you confer on me the right to it, for no one but you can give it to me, and remember the rearing that I have given you and that I would risk death out of love for you."

"It is not for you to ask that boon of me," said Galaor; "rather I ask of you that you grant me that battle, since it is so crucial to you. And if I come out of it alive, all the other things that be most to your honor and advantage, until this life of mine repays that great debt that it owes you, I am prepared to do. And let us go there at once."

"In God's name," said the giant.

Then they entered upon the road to the Rock of Galtares and had not traveled far when they met Urganda the Unknown. And they greeted each other courteously, and she said to Galaor:

"Do you know who knighted you?"

"Yes," said he, "the greatest knight of whom I have ever heard."

"That is true," said she, "and he is even better than you think, and I wish you to know who he is."

Then she called Gandalas the giant and said,

"Gandalas, don't you know that this knight whom you have brought up is the son of King Perion and of Queen Elisena, and because of the words I spoke to you you took him and have reared him?"

"It is true," said he.

Then he said to Galaor:

"My dear son, know you that the one who knighted you is your brother, and that he is two years older than you, and when you see him, honor him as the best knight in the world, and strive to resemble him in courage and good will."

"Is it true?" said Galaor, "that King Perion is my father and the Queen my mother, and that I am the brother of that very fine knight?"

"It certainly is," said she.

"Thanks be to God," said he, "now I tell you that I am placed in much greater concern than before and my life in greater danger, for now it behooves me to be as you say, damsel, so that they, as well as everyone else, must rightly believe it."

Urganda bade them good-bye, and the giant and Galaor went on their way as before; with Galaor asking the giant who that very wise lady was, and he telling him it was Urganda the Unknown, and that she was called thus because she often transformed herself and became quite changed. They reached a riverside and it being very warm, they agreed to rest meanwhile in a tent that they set up. It was not long before they saw a damsel coming along the road and another along a different road, so that they met near the tent; and when they saw the giant they sought to flee, but Don Galaor went to them and made them

return by reassuring them; and he asked where they were going. One of them said to him,

"I am going by order of my mistress to see a very strange combat of a single knight who is to fight with the strong giant of the Rock of Galtares, in order that I may bring back to her a report of it."

The other damsel said,

"I marvel that you say that there is a knight who dares to commit such a mad act; and although my way lies elsewhere, I wish to go with you to see a thing so far removed from reason."

They started onward, and Galaor said to them,

"Damsels, do not worry about reaching there, for we go to see this battle, and you may go in our company."

They promised him not to worry, and took great pleasure in seeing such a handsome youth with the apparel of a novice knight, which rendered him much more elegant, and they all ate together there and disported themselves. Galaor drew the giant aside and said to him,

"Father, it would please me very much if you would allow me go on to do my battle, and without you I shall arrive sooner."

He said this in order that they might not find out that he was the one who was to do battle and that they might not suspect that with his strength alone he wanted to undertake something so tremendous. The giant grudgingly agreed, and Galaor armed himself and started on his way, and both the damsels with him, and three of the giant's squires whom the latter ordered to go with him to carry the arms and whatever else he needed; and so he went until he arrived at two leagues from the Rock of Galtares, and there nightfall found him in the house of a hermit, and knowing he was in orders, he confessed to him. And when he told him he was going to do that battle, the latter was greatly shocked and said to him,

"Who has incited you to such great madness as this? Because in all this region there are not ten knights who would dare to undertake it, for he is so fierce and frightful and merciless. And you being so young, to put yourself in such danger amounts to your seeking to lose your life and even your soul, for those who

knowingly put themselves in the path of death when being able to avoid it, kill themselves."

"Father," said Don Galaor, "God will do His will with me, but the battle I shall not abandon under any circumstances."

The good man began to weep and said,

"Son, may God help and give you strength, since in this matter you do not wish to do anything else, and I am pleased at finding you to be of exemplary life."

And Galaor begged him to pray to God for him. There they lodged that night; and the next day, having heard mass, Galaor armed himself and went out toward the Rock, which he saw ahead standing very high and with many fortified towers that made the castle appear marvelously beautiful. The damsels asked Galaor if he knew the knight who was to fight the battle. He said to them,

"I believe I have already seen him."

Galaor asked the damsel who came to see the battle on behalf of her lady to tell him who the latter was.

"No one can know this except the knight who is to fight."

And while talking about this they arrived at the castle, and they found the gate locked. Galaor knocked and two men appeared above the gate; and he said to them,

"Tell Albadan that a knight of Gandalas's is here, who comes to fight him. And if he delays there, no man will come out or enter whom I do not kill, if I can."

The men laughed and said to him,

"This rancor will not last long, because either you will flee or you will lose your head."

And they went to tell the giant, and the damsels came to Galaor and said,

"Sir friend, are you the fighter of this battle?"

"Yes," said he.

"Alas, sir," said they, "may God help you and let you conclude it to your honor, for you begin a great deed, and farewell, for we dare not await the giant."

"Friends, do not fear, and do watch that for which you came, or return to the house of the hermit, for I shall be there if I do not die here."

One of them said,

"Whatever ill befalls you, I wish to see what I came for."

Then, going away from the castle, they stationed themselves at the edge of a forest into which they expected to flee if things went badly for the knight.

CHAPTER XII

How Galaor fought with the great giant, lord of the Rock of Galtares, and overcame and killed him.

To the giant went the news, and it was not long before he came out on a horse, appearing on it so tremendous that there was no man in the world who would have dared to look at him. He wore plated armor of such length that it covered him from his neck down to his saddle, and a large helmet, which was moreover very bright; and he carried a huge, very heavy iron mace with which he was accustomed to deal blows. The squires and the damsels were very much frightened on seeing him, and Galaor was not then so courageous as not to have great fear. But the closer he approached him, the more it diminished. The giant said,

"Wretched knight, how dare you await your death? For he who sent you here will not see you any more. And just wait and you will see how I can lay on with a mace."

Galaor was enraged and said,

"You devil, you will be overcome and killed with what I bring to my aid, which is God and the right."

The giant, who seemed as big as a tower, moved against him. Galaor went at him with lance lowered and at the greatest speed of his horse, and struck him on the chest with such force that he made him lose one stirrup, and he broke his own lance. The giant raised the mace in order to strike him on the head, and Galaor passed so quickly that he only reached the boss of his shield, and breaking its arm bands and neck cord, the giant caused it to fall to the ground, and Galaor almost fell after it,

and the blow was so strongly given that his arm could not hold back the mace and he struck the head of his own horse, so that he knocked it down, and he was under it; and on his trying to stand up, after having extricated himself from underneath with great effort, Galaor came up and struck him with his horse's chest and trampled him hard twice before he could get up, and then Galaor's horse stumbled over that of the giant and fell beyond it. Galaor left it immediately, for he saw himself risking death, and he grasped the sword that Urganda had given him, and charged at the giant, who was picking up his mace from the ground, and he struck the mace with his sword on its handle and cut it in two so that only a piece of it was left in the giant's hand, and with that the giant struck him such a blow on top of his helmet that he was forced to drop one hand to the ground, for the mace was strong and heavy and he who was striking was of great strength; and Galaor's helmet was twisted askew on his head; but since he was very nimble and strong of heart, he got up at once and returned to the giant, who sought to strike him again; but Galaor, who continued resourceful and agile, avoided the blow and struck him on the arm with his sword such a blow that he cut it off at the shoulder, and the sword swooping down his leg cut it nearly half off. The giant gave a great cry and said,

"Ah, wretch that I am, I am held up to ridicule by one man only."

And he sought to embrace Galaor with great fury, but he could not go forward because of the great wound on his leg, and he sat down on the ground. Galaor again attacked him, and as the giant thrust out his hand to seize him, Galaor gave him a blow that hurled his fingers to the ground along with half his hand. And the giant, who in order to seize him had reached far out, fell, and Galaor went at him and killed him with his sword and cut off his head. Then the squires and the damsels came to him and Galaor ordered the squires to carry the head to their lord. They were happy, and said,

"By heaven, sir, he gave you a good upbringing, for you have won glory and he the revenge and the profit."

Galaor mounted a horse of the squires, and saw coming out of the castle ten knights attached to one chain, and they said to him,

"Come and take the castle, for you have slain the giant, and we are those who were serving him as guards."

Galaor said to the damsels,

"Ladies, let us stay here this night."

They said they would be pleased to do so. Then he had the chain removed from the knights, and they all repaired to the castle, where there were beautiful apartments, and in one of them he disarmed, and was fed, and his damsels with him. So they took their ease there with great pleasure, as they looked at that strong array of towers and walls that to them seemed marvelous. The next day there were gathered there all those of the land round about, and Galaor went out to them, and they received him with great joy, saying to him that since he had won that castle by slaying the giant who ruled them by force and great oppression, they wanted him for their lord. He was very grateful to them for this. But he told them that they already knew that that land was Gandalas's by right, and that he as his foster son had come there to win it for him; that they were to obey him as their lord just as they were in duty bound, and that Gandalas would treat them kindly and honorably.

"Be he welcome," they said, "for since he is our native-born lord, he will take care to do well by us as his very own, for this other one whom you have killed treated us as foreigners and strangers."

Galaor took a solemn oath of fealty from two knights who seemed to him most honorable, to the end that they hand over the castle to Gandalas when he should arrive. And taking his arms and the damsels and one squire of the two that he had brought there, he started out on his way to the house of the hermit, and on his arrival there, the good man was quite delighted with him, and said to him:

"Fortunate son, you must love God much, for He loves you, since He desired that such a great vengeance be accomplished by you."

Galaor, taking his blessing and beseeching him to remember him in his prayers, started on his way. The one damsel begged him to grant her his company. And the other said,

"I came here only to see the conclusion of this battle, and I saw so much that I shall have plenty to relate wherever I go; now I wish to go to the court of King Lisuarte to see a knight, my brother, who is questing thereabouts."

"My dear," said Galaor, "if there you should see a young knight who bears on his arms a lion device, tell him that the youth whom he knighted sends regards to him, and that I shall strive to be an honorable man; and if I see him, I shall tell him more about his and my affairs than he knows."

The damsel went her way, and Galaor said to the other one that since he had been the knight who had done battle, she tell him who her lady was that had sent her there.

"If you wish to know," said she, "follow me, and five days from now I shall show her to you."

"Not on that account will I fail to find out, for I shall follow you."

So they traveled until they reached two roads, and Galaor, who was going ahead, went on one road thinking that the damsel was behind him, but she took the other, and this was at the entrance to the forest called Brananda, which divided the counties of Clare and Gresca, and soon Galaor heard some voices shouting,

"Ah, good knight, help me."

He turned his face and said,

"Who is doing that shouting?"

The squire answered,

"I think it is the damsel who has got herself separated from us."

"What," said Galaor, "did she leave us?"

"Yes, sir," said he, "she is going along that other road."

"By heavens, I watched over her poorly."

And lacing on his helmet and taking shield and lance, he went as fast as he could to where he heard the cries, and saw an ugly dwarf upon a horse and five foot soldiers with him wearing capelines and armed with battle axes, and the dwarf was striking the damsel with a stick he had in his hand.

Galaor came up to him and said,

"Get out, you evil, ugly thing; may God put a curse on you!"

And he transferred his lance to his left hand and went at him; and taking the stick, he gave him such a wound with it that he fell to the ground quite stunned; the churls went at him, and attacked him from all sides; and he gave one of them such a blow in the face with the stick that he beat him down to the ground, and struck another with his lance on the chest, who had his battle axe imbedded in Galaor's shield and could not draw it out, for it had gone clear through it, and he fell and the lance remained in him; and Galaor pulled the axe out of the shield and went at the others, but they did not dare await him and fled through so dense a thicket that he could not go after them; and when he returned he saw that the dwarf had mounted, and the latter said,

"Knight, inopportunely have you struck me and killed my men."

And he lashed his nag and went away as fast as he could along a highway. Galaor drew out the lance from the churl and saw it was still undamaged, for which he was pleased, and he gave his arms to the squire and said,

"Damsel, go in front and I shall protect you better."

And so they returned to the road, by which in a short time they reached a river, which was named Bran and which could not be crossed without a boat; the damsel, who was going ahead, found the boat and crossed to the other side, and while Galaor was waiting for the boat, the dwarf whom he had wounded arrived saying,

"By my faith, traitor, you die and you shall give up the damsel whom you took from me."

Galaor saw that with him came three knights well armed and on good horses.

"What!" said one of them, "All three of us to one alone? I don't want any help."

And he let himself go at him as hard as he could; and Galaor, who already had taken up his arms, went toward him and they struck each other with their lances, and the knight of the dwarf penetrated all his armor, but the wound was not great, and

Galaor struck him so violently that he knocked him from his saddle, so that the other two were amazed; and the two of them together let themselves go at him on the run, and the one missed his blow and he broke his lance into pieces against the shield; and Galaor struck him so hard that he knocked his helmet from his head and he lost his stirrups and was about to fall. But the other returned and struck Galaor with his lance on the chest and broke the lance, and although Galaor felt the blow, it did not make much of a hole in his coat of mail; Then they all grasped their swords and began to fight, and the dwarf said in a loud voice,

"Kill his horse and he will not flee."

And Galaor sought to strike the one whose helmet he had knocked off, and the other raised his shield and Galaor's sword entered through the shield arm band almost a span and reached with the sword point the knight's head and clove him down to his jawbone so that he fell dead. When the other knight saw this blow he fled, with Galaor in pursuit of him, and he struck him with his sword on top of his helmet and he did not aim it well, so that the blow came down to the saddle cantle and took off a piece of it and many meshes of his armor, but the knight dug strongly into the horse with his spurs and cast away the shield from his neck in order to go faster.

When Galaor saw him go thus, he left him and sought to order the dwarf to be hung by his legs, but he saw him go fleeing on his horse as fast as he could, and he turned to the knight with whom he had fought just before and who was already regaining consciousness and said to him,

"I'm sorrier for you than for the others, because in the manner of a good knight you tried to fight; I do not know why you attacked me, for I did not deserve it from you."

"It is true," said the knight; "but that treacherous dwarf told us that you had attacked and killed his men and had taken by force a damsel who wished to go with him."

Galaor pointed out to him the damsel who was waiting for him on the other side of the river and said,

"You see the damsel, and if I had forced her, she would not wait for me; but on coming in my company she wandered from

me in this forest, and he took her and was beating her very severely with a club."

"Ah, the scoundrel!" said the knight, "inopportunely did he make me come here; if I only meet him!"

Galaor had him given his horse and told him to torture the dwarf, who was a scoundrel. Then he crossed in the boat to the other side and started on his way guided by the damsel. And when it was between none and vespers, the damsel pointed out to him a very beautiful castle overlooking a valley, and said to him,

"We shall go there to lodge."

And they went on until they arrived, and they were very well received, as it was the house of the damsel's mother, and she said to her:

"Madam, honor this knight as the best that ever slung a shield on his neck."

She said,

"Here we shall provide for him every service and pleasure."

The damsel said to him,

"Good knight, in order that I may comply with what I have promised you, you must wait here and immediately I shall return with instructions."

"I earnestly beg you," said he, "not to delay me, for it would make me very sorry."

She went away, and it was not long before she returned and said to him,

"Now mount and let us go."

"In God's name," said he.

Then he took his arms, and mounting his horse he went with her, and they kept riding through a forest, and as they emerged from it night fell, and the damsel, leaving the road that they were following, took off in another direction; and a part of the night having passed, they reached a beautiful town called Grandares. As soon as they arrived where the fortress was, the damsel said,

"Now let us dismount, and you come behind me, for in that fortress I shall tell you what I have promised."

"Then shall I bring my arms?" said he.

"Yes," said she, "for one does not know what may happen."

She went ahead and Galaor behind her until they reached a wall, and the damsel said:

"Climb over here and enter there, and I shall go another way, and shall hasten to you."

He climbed up with great effort and took his shield and helmet and let himself down; and the damsel went away. Galaor went through a garden and reached a small wicket which was in the wall of the fortress; and he was there only a short time when he saw it open, and saw the damsel and another damsel with her. And she said to Galaor:

"Sir knight, before you enter, it is necessary that you tell me whose son you are."

"Enough of that!" said he, "for I have father and mother of such quality that until I am more worthy, I would not dare to say I am their son."

"Still," said she, "it is important that you tell me, for it will not be to your harm."

"Know you that I am the son of King Perion and Queen Elisena, although less than a week ago I would not have been able to tell you."

"Enter," said she.

He having entered, they had him take off his armor and they covered him with a cloak, and they left him. And one damsel went behind him and the other in front and he in between, and entering a large and very beautiful palace where many matrons and damsels were lying on their beds, if some of them asked who was going there, both the damsels answered. Thus they went on to a room that was within the palace confines, and on entering it, Galaor saw a beautiful damsel seated in a chamber with very rich hangings, who was combing her beautiful hair; and when she saw Galaor, she placed on her head a lovely garland and came to him saying,

"Friend, may you be welcome as the greatest knight that I know."

"Lady," said he, "and be you very well met as the most beautiful maiden I have ever seen."

And the damsel who had guided him there said,

"Sir, behold my lady, and I am acquitted of my promise; know you that she has the name Aldeva and is the daughter of the King of Serolis; and the Duke of Bristol's wife, who is her mother's sister, has reared her here."

Then she said to her mistress:

"I have given you the son of King Perion of Gaul, both of you are children of kings and very handsome; if you love each other much, no one will take it amiss."

And they having gone out, Galaor dallied with the damsel that night at his pleasure, and without any more about it being recounted to you here, because from such acts, which do not conform to good conscience or virtue, one should rightly pass on quickly, holding them in that small esteem that they deserve.

Then the hour at which it behooved him to leave having arrived, he took with him the damsels and returned to where he had left his arms, and arming himself, went out to the garden and found there the dwarf whom you have heard about, and the latter said to him,

"Sir, in an evil hour you have entered here, for I shall have you and the treacherous woman who brought you here killed."

Then he shouted,

"Come out, knights, for a man is leaving the duke's chamber."

Galaor climbed up on the wall and betook himself to his horse, but it was not long before the dwarf with other people came out of a door that they opened, and Galaor who saw himself in the midst of them all, said to himself,

"Ah, wretch that I am, I am dead unless I take satisfaction from this scoundrel of a dwarf!"

And he set out to go and take him; but the dwarf on his nag placed himself behind everyone else. And Galaor with the great rage that he bore threw himself among them, and they began to strike from all sides. When he saw that he could not pass through, he attacked them so fiercely that he killed two of them, on whom he broke his lance. And he grasped his sword and gave them deadly blows, so that some were killed and others wounded; but before he came out of the melee, they killed his horse; he stood up with a great effort, and they attacked from all sides. But as soon as he was on foot, he gave them such an object

lesson that none dared to approach him. When the dwarf saw he was on foot, he thought he would strike him down with the breast of his horse and went at him as hard as he could; and Galaor reached out a little and extended his hand, and seizing his horse by the bridle he gave him such a wound in the breast with the hilt of his sword that he knocked him to the ground, and the dwarf was so stunned by the fall that blood came out of his ears and nose; and Galaor jumped on the horse; and on mounting he lost the reins and the horse went out of the melee with him, and as it was large and a great runner, before Galaor could recover the reins he had moved away a good bit, and when he recovered the reins he sought to return and smite them; but he saw at the window of a tower his mistress, who with a cloak was making signs for him to leave. He departed thence, because a crowd of people had already come on the scene. And he went on until he entered a forest; there he gave his shield and helmet to his squire.

Some of the men said that it would be well to follow him; others that it would not be of any use, since he was in the forest; but all were astounded to have seen how fiercely he had fought. The dwarf, who was in bad shape, said,

"Take me to the duke and I shall tell him on whom he should take vengeance."

They took him in their arms and they went up to where the duke was, and he told him how he had found the damsel in the forest, and because he had wanted to bring her with him, she had made a loud outcry, and the knight had hastened to her aid, and had killed his men and had wounded him with the club, and that afterwards he had followed him with the three knights in order to take the damsel from him, and how he had routed and overcome them. Finally he told him the damsel brought the knight there and had put him in the duke's chamber. The duke asked him if he would recognize the damsel; he said that he would. Then he commanded that all the damsels in the castle come there, and as the dwarf saw her among them he said,

"This is the one by whom your palace was dishonored."

"Ah, scoundrel," said the damsel, "but you beat me badly

and commanded your men to strike me, and that good knight defended me, and I do not know whether it was he or not."

The duke was very furious and said,

"Damsel, I shall make you tell me the truth."

And he commanded them to put her in prison; but neither by torture nor privations to which they subjected her did she disclose anything, and there they let her remain to the great sorrow of Aldeva, who loved her very much and who did not know by whom she could make it known to Sir Galaor, her friend.

The author leaves off here the narration of this, and again tells of Amadis, and concerning Galaor he will make relation in its proper place.

CHAPTER XIII

How amadis left urganda the unknown and arrived at a fortress, and what happened to him there.

Amadis, having departed from Urganda the Unknown with great joy in his heart at having learned that the one whom he had knighted was his brother and because he believed he would quickly be where his lady was, for even though he might not see her, it would be a great consolation to him to see the place where she was, traveled so far toward that destination through a forest without finding a town that nightfall overtook him in the forest; and after a bit he saw at a distance a lighted home that appeared over the trees, and he went toward it, thinking to find lodging. Then leaving the road, he went until he arrived at a beautiful fortress, through the windows of whose tower shone the light of some candles, and he heard voices of men and women singing and making merry. He knocked at the gate, but they did not hear him, and after a little while those in the tower looked out between the merlons and saw him who was knocking. And a knight said to him,

"Who are you who knocks at such an hour?"

And he said,

"Sir, I am a stranger knight."

"So it seems," said the one on the wall, "for you are a strange fellow to avoid traveling by day and to travel by night; but I believe you do it in order not to have reason to fight anyone, for now you will find no one but devils."

Amadis said to him,

"If there were any good in you, sometimes you would see walking at night those who cannot help it."

"Now go away," said the knight, "for you shall not enter here."

"May God help me," said Amadis, "I think that you would not want a man worth anything in your company. But I should like to know before I leave what your name is."

"I will tell it to you," said he, "provided that when you encounter me you fight with me."

Amadis who was furious, agreed to it. The knight said,

"Let it be known that my name is Dardan, and that this night you cannot fare so ill that the day you encounter me will not be much worse."

"Well, I wish to free myself immediately from this promise, and let us be lighted by those candles so that we may fight."

"What!" said Dardan, "in order that I go to battle with such as you, I would have moreover to take up arms in the night-time? Bad luck to anyone who would put on spurs or bear arms in the name of honor."

Then he left the wall and Amadis went his way.

Here the author discusses prideful people and says, Proud ones, what do you want? What is your thought? I beg of you to tell me whether a handsome person, great valor, ardor of the heart, were by chance inherited by you from your parents, or whether you bought such things with riches, or obtained them in the schools of great sages, or won them through the bounty of great princes. It is certain that you will say you didn't. Well, where did you get them? It seems to me that they came from that most high Lord whence all good things occur and come. And to this Lord what thanks, what services do you give in payment? Certainly none others than by scorning the virtuous and dishonoring those who are good, mistreating those in holy orders, killing the weak out of your great pride, and doing many other insults to His service. Believing, as it seems to you that just as in this way you gain worldly fame and honor, so with a small penance at the end of your days you will win the glory of the other world. Oh, what a vain and mad thought! Having spent your time in such things without repentance, without the satis-

faction that you owe to your Lord, you hold back everything together for that sad and perilous hour of death, which will come to you you know not when or in what guise! You probably say that the power and grace of God is very great, together with his mercy; that is true. But thus your power would have to be such as to subdue in time your wrath and cruelty and take from you those things which He holds in such abhorrence, in order that by making yourselves deserving, deservingly you may be able to attain His forgiveness, considering that not without cause cruel hell was established by Him.

But now I wish to put aside this which you do not see and discuss with you the present which we have seen and read about. Tell me, for what reason was that evil Lucifer cast down from Heaven into the bottom of the abyss? Only for his great pride. And that strong giant Nimrod who first ruled the whole human race? Why was he forsaken by everyone and why, like a stupid animal devoid of sense, did he waste away his life in the desert? Not for any other cause save because with his great pride he sought to make a stairway in the manner of a road, thinking thereby to ascend to and command the heavens. Well, what shall we say was the reason great Troy was laid waste and destroyed by Hercules, and its powerful King Laomedon, father of King Priam of Troy, killed? For no other thing than on account of the haughty message he sent to the Greek knights by his emissaries, who arrived under safe-conduct at the port of Simois. Many others could be cited who on account of this evil and accursed pride perished in this world and in the next, whereby my exposition would be even more reinforced. But one refrains from any further citation because, being more prolix, it would be more annoying to read. It only will be brought to your mind that if those who in heaven, and on earth where they had such great power and honor, through pride were lost, dishonored, and damned, what fruit is there in those vile words uttered by Dardan and by others like him? What control do they hold or can accrue to them in either case? Our story will show you later on.

Amadis, greatly infuriated, having left that very proud knight Dardan, went through the forest looking for some suitable thicket where he might take shelter. And thus going along, he heard

ahead of him someone speaking; and hurrying, spurring his horse harder, he found two damsels on their palfreys, and a squire with them. He came up to them and greeted them. And they asked him where he was coming from armed at such an hour. He recounted to them all that had happened to him since night had fallen.

"Do you know," they asked, "what the name of this knight was?"

"Yes, I know," said he, "for he told me his name was Dardan."

"It is true," said they, "that he has the name of Dardan the Proud, and he is the most arrogant knight of this land."

"I well believe it," said Amadis.

And the damsels said to him,

"Sir knight, our camp is near here; stay with us."

Amadis agreed to this; and going together, they found two small tents set up in which the damsels were to lodge, and they dismounted there; and when Amadis disarmed himself, the damsels were very pleased with his good looks and made for him a shelter where he might sleep, and meanwhile the damsels asked him where he was going.

"To the house of King Lisuarte," he said.

"And we are going there," they said, "to see how things will turn out for a lady who was one of the best looking and noblest in this land, and all she has in the world she has staked on a battle; and she is to appear within these ten days before King Lisuarte with someone to do her battle for her; but we do not know what will happen to her, for the one against whom she is to defend herself is now the best knight there is in Great Britain."

"Who is that knight," said Amadis, "who is at arms so highly touted where there are so many good ones?"

"The same one whom you have just now left," they said, "Dardan the Proud."

"For what reason must this battle be? So may God help you, tell me."

"Sir," said they, "this knight loves a lady of this land who was daughter of a knight married to this other lady, and the loved one said to her friend Dardan that she would never make love with him unless he brought her to the house of King Lisuarte

and declared that the estate of her stepmother ought to be hers, and that over this right, he would fight anyone who might say the contrary, and he did just as his friend ordered; and the other lady was not so supported by evidence as was necessary, and she said that she would present a defense advocate for herself before the king, and this she said because she was so greatly in the right and was intending to find someone who would maintain it for her; but Dardan is such a good knight at arms that, rightly or wrongly, everyone has fears about her battle."

Amadis was very happy about this news because the knight had been arrogant to him and he would be able to take revenge for his anger while being in the right, and because the battle would be performed in the presence of his lady Oriana. And he began to think about it very steadily. The damsels noticed his concern and one of them said,

"Sir knight, I beg of you out of courtesy to tell us the reason for your meditation if it can properly be told."

"Friends," said he, "if you promise as loyal damsels to maintain secrecy and not tell it to anyone, I shall tell you willingly."

They agreed and he said,

"I have been thinking of fighting on behalf of that lady you were telling me about, and I shall do so, but I do not want anyone to know about it."

The damsels thought highly of him for it, for Dardan had been greatly lauded to them for his prowess at arms; and they said,

"Sir, your thought is good and of great courage; God grant that it come out well."

And they went to sleep in their tents, and in the morning they mounted and went their way. And the damsels begged him that since they were on a journey and some men of ill-repute frequented that forest, he should not leave their company. He agreed to this.

Then they went on together talking about many things, and the two damsels asked him, since God had thus brought them together, that he tell them his name. He told them and recommended to them that no one find it out. So traveling as you have heard, lodging in the wilds, being comfortable in their tents with the

provisions that the damsels brought, they happened to see two armed knights under a tree, who were mounting their horses and who placed themselves in front of them on the road, and one of them said to the other,

"Which of these damsels do you want, and I will take the other?"

"I want this damsel," said the knight.

"Then I this other one."

And each took his own.

Amadis said to them:

"What is this, sirs? What do you want with the damsels?"

They replied,

"To treat them as our mistresses."

"So lightly do you wish to take them," said he, "without their consent?"

"Well, who will take them from us?" said they.

"I," said Amadis, "if I can."

Then he took his helmet and shield and lance and said,

"Now you must give up the damsels."

"First you shall see that I know how to joust," said one.

And both charged at the full speed of their horses and attacked each other fiercely with their lances. The knight broke his lance, and Amadis wounded him so severely that he knocked him head down and feet up from his horse, and breaking the laces of his helmet, it flew off his head. The other knight came at him with great force and struck him in such wise that piercing his armor he wounded him; but the wound was not serious and the knight broke his lance. Amadis missed his aim and they met head on with their horses and shields. And Amadis seized him and pulling him from his saddle, he beat him down to the ground; and so the two knights were on foot and the horses loose.

Amadis had the two damsels ride ahead of him and they went on their way until they reached a river bank where they ordered their tents set up, and that they be given food. But before he dismounted, the two knights with whom he had jousted arrived and said to him,

"You have to defend the damsels with the sword, just as with the lance; if not we shall take them."

"You will not take them," said he, "as long as I can defend them."

"Then put aside your lance," said they, "and let's have the battle."

"I will do that," said he, "provided you come on one at a time."

And giving his lance to Gandalin he grasped his sword and went toward one of them, the one who prided himself most on his blows, and they began their battle; but in a short time the knight was so maltreated that it was necessary that his companion help him, although he had promised otherwise. And Amadis who saw him said,

"What is this, knight? Don't you keep your word? I tell you that I despise you."

The knight came rested to the fray, and as he was brave, he attacked Amadis with severe blows. But the latter, who saw himself fighting both of them, did not try to be slothful and struck that rested newcomer with all his strength on his helmet, and the blow came obliquely so that it descended to his shoulder and cut off of him the leather straps of the coat of mail along with flesh and bones. And the sword fell from his hand. The knight considered himself as good as dead and began to flee. And Amadis went for the other one and pierced his shield on direct line with his fist and cut it so badly that the thrust reached his hand and split it to the arm, and the knight said,

"Alas, sir, I am dead!"

Then he dropped his sword and the shield from his neck; and Amadis said to him,

"That is not necessary, for I shall not leave you unless you swear never to seize a matron or damsel against her will."

The knight swore it immediately, and Amadis had him put his sword in its scabbard and suspend his shield from his neck, and he let him go wherever he might find shelter. Amadis returned to where the damsels were, near the tents, and they said to him,

"It is certain, sir knight, that we would have been objects of scorn if it had not been for you, in whom there is more prowess than we thought; and we are very hopeful that not only will you receive satisfaction for the haughty words that Dardan spoke to

you, but that the lady will also for the great danger in which she is placed, if Fortune directs that you win the battle."

Amadis was abashed because they thus praised him; and after he disarmed, they ate and rested a bit. And returning to their road, they traveled along it until they reached a castle, and there they lodged with a lady who did them much honor. And the next day they traveled uneventfully until they arrived at Windsor, where King Lisuarte was; and on approaching the town, Amadis said to the damsels,

"My dears, I don't want to be known by anyone, and until the knight comes to the combat I shall remain here in some hidden place; send to me one of these young squires who knows about me and can call me when it is time."

"Sir," said they, "The appointed time is only two days from now; if it pleases you, we shall remain with you, and we shall have in the town someone who will tell us when the knight will have come there."

"So let it be done," said he.

Then they left the road and had their tents set up together near a river. And the damsels said that they wanted to reach the town and return at once. Amadis mounted his horse, unarmed as he was, and Gandalin with him, and they went to a knoll from where it seemed to them they would be able to see the town better, and near there there was a great highway. Amadis sat down at the foot of a tree and began to look at the town and saw the towers and the very high walls, and he said to his heart:

"Ah, God! where yonder is the flower of the world? Ah, town, how lofty art thou now because that lady is within thee — she who has no equal in all the world in goodness or beauty, and I even say that she is more beloved than all divinely gifted women, and I shall prove this to the best knight of the world if it be granted me by her."

After he had praised his lady, such a great concern possessed him that tears came to his eyes, and with flagging heart he fell into a deep reverie, to the extent that he was swooning and unconscious. Gandalin saw coming along the highway a company of matrons and knights, and that they were approaching where his master was. And he went to him and said,

"Sir, don't you see this group that is coming here?"

But he did not answer, and Gandalin took him by the hand and drew him toward himself. And breathing hard he recovered consciousness and his face was all wet with tears. And Gandalin said to him,

"So help me God, sir, I am much worried about you to think that you take such concern as no other knight in the world would take, and you ought to be sorry for yourself and pluck up your courage as you do in other matters."

Amadis said to him,

"Ah, friend Gandalin, how my heart suffers! If you love me, I know that you would rather counsel death for me than that I should live in such great anguish desiring what I do not see."

Gandalin could not help weeping and said to him,

"Sir, such a deep-felt love is a great misfortune, for so help me God, I believe there is no woman so good and so beautiful as to be equal to your goodness, and that there never will be."

Amadis, when he heard this, was very angry and said,

"Be gone, you crazy, senseless fellow, how dare you utter such great nonsense? Would I, or anyone else equal in worth her in whom all the good in the world resides? And if you ever say that again, you will not go another step with me."

Gandalin said,

"Dry your eyes; don't let those who are coming see you thus."

"What! Is someone coming?"

"Yes," said Gandalin.

Then he showed him the matrons and knights who were now coming near the hillock. Amadis mounted his horse and went toward them, and greeted them, and they, him, and he saw among them a very beautiful, well-dressed matron who was weeping immoderately. Amadis said to her,

"Lady, may God make you happy."

"And to you may He give honor, for now I am far removed from joy, if God does not counsel me."

"May God counsel," said he, "but what worry do you have?"

"Friend," said she, "I have everything I possess risked on the outcome of a battle."

And then he understood that she was the matron they had told him about, and he said to her:

"Lady, do you have anyone to fight for you?"

"No," said she, "and my time limit is tomorrow."

"Then what are you considering doing about it?"

"Losing all that I have," said she, "if in the house of the king there is not someone who will take pity on me and undertake this combat out of mercy and to maintain the right."

"May God give you good counsel," said Amadis, "for that would greatly please me as much for your sake as because I hate the one who is against you."

"God make you a good man," said she, "and quickly give you and me revenge on him."

Amadis went to his tent and the lady with her companions to the town. And the damsels came a short while later and told him how that Dardan was already in the town, well accoutered to do battle. And Amadis told them how he found the lady, and of their interview. That night they rested, and at dawn the damsels got up and told Amadis that they were going to the town and that they would send word to him of what the knight was doing.

"I intend to go with you," said he, "in order to be nearer, and when Dardan comes out on the field, one of you come and tell me."

And then he armed himself and they all went together. And when they were near the town, Amadis remained at the edge of the forest and the damsels went on.

He dismounted and took off his helmet and shield and stood waiting. And this was about sunrise.

At this said hour King Lisuarte mounted with a large retinue of nobles and went to a field that was located between the town and the forest, and Dardan came there heavily armed on a beautiful horse, and was escorting his sweetheart by leading her horse, she being as gorgeously dressed and adorned as he could have her, and thus he stopped with her before King Lisuarte and said,

"Sire, let it be ordered that what should be hers be delivered to this lady, and if there is any knight who dissents, I will fight him."

King Lisuarte then had the other lady called, and she came before him, and he said to her,

"Lady, do you have anyone to fight for you?"

"No, sire," said she weeping.

And the king was very sorry for her, because she was a good woman. Dardan stopped in the place where he was to wait until the hour of tierce so armed, and if no knight came, the king would award him a decree of judgment, for thus it was the custom. When the damsels saw him waiting, one of them went as fast as she could to tell Amadis. He mounted, and taking his arms, told Gandalin and the damsel to go by another route, and that if he came out of the battle with honor, to go back to the tents, for he would come there. And then he came forth from the forest completely armed and on a white horse, and he went to where Dardan was preparing his arms. When the king and those of the town saw the knight come out of the forest, they wondered who it could be; but they said that they had never seen a knight who appeared so handsome armed and mounted. The king said to the challenged lady,

"Madam, who is that knight who wishes to support your right?"

"So help me God," said she, "I do not know, for I have never seen him that I remember."

Amadis entered the field where Dardan was and said to him,

"Dardan, now maintain the right of your lady love, for I shall defend the other lady with the help of God, and acquit myself of what I promised you."

"And what did you promise me?" he said.

"That I would fight with you," said Amadis, "and this was in order to find out your name when you were ill-mannered with me."

"Now I esteem you less than before," said Dardan.

"Now nothing you may say irks me," said Amadis, "for I am about to avenge myself if God grants me good fortune."

"Then let the lady come," said Dardan, "and request you for her knight; and take your vengeance if you can."

Then the king came with his knights to see what was going on; and Dardan said to the lady,

"This knight wishes to fight for you; do you confer on him the right?"

"I confer it," said she, "and may God give him a good reward for it."

The king looked at Amadis and saw that he had his shield pierced in many places, and around the edges cut by sword strokes, and he said to the other knights,

"If that strange knight should ask for a shield, he would rightly be given it."

But Amadis was so concerned about fighting with Dardan that he had no thought for anything else, bearing in mind those base words that he had said as more vivid and recent than when they occurred; which everyone should take as an object lesson and put a curb on his tongue, especially with those one does not know, because from such situations have often come notable consequences. The king and all the others withdrew. And Dardan and Amadis moved toward each other from a distance, and the horses were runners and swift and their riders of great strength, who attacked each other with their lances so fiercely that their armor was completely pierced, but neither was wounded; and their lances were broken and they collided with their horses' bodies and with their shields so furiously that it was a wonder. And Dardan fell to the ground on that first joust, but he was so lucky as to succeed in holding on to the reins. And Amadis passed by him, and Dardan got up quickly and mounted, for he was very agile, and he grasped his sword in a fury. When Amadis turned his horse toward him, he saw him about to attack him, and he grasped his sword, and both went ahead and attacked so fiercely that all were frightened to see such a battle, and the people of the town were on the towers and on the wall and in places where they best could see them fight; and the rooms of the queen overlooked the wall and there were there many windows where there were many ladies-in-waiting and damsels, and they watched the battle of the knights which seemed to them frightful to see, for they were striking each other on their helmets, which were of fine steel, so that it seemed to all that their heads were flashing, because of the many sparks of fire emanating from them. And from their coats of mail and other arms many pieces and bits of

mail and many large slices from their shields fell to the ground. So that their battle was so cruel that those who were watching it took very great fright; but the combatants did not desist from striking each other everywhere, and each one showed the other his strength and zeal. To King Lisuarte, who was gazing at them, no matter how many perilous confrontations he had personally experienced or had seen with his own eyes, all seemed as nothing compared to this, and he said,

"This is the fiercest battle man has ever seen, and I want to see how it will end, and I shall have a statue erected at the gate of my palace to the one who is victorious, so that all who are to win honor may see it."

While the knights were continuing their battle with great zeal, just as you are hearing, and striking each other great blows without resting a bit, Amadis, who was very angry at Dardan, and who hoped to dwell in that king's house where his lady was in order that he might serve her at her command, on seeing that the knight was causing him so much delay, began to belabor him with great, hard blows, like a man who, if he was of any worth, wanted to demonstrate it there where his lady was, rather than anywhere else; so that before the hour of tierce arrived, everyone recognized that Dardan was getting the worst of it in the battle, but not in such a way as to fail to defend himself so well that there was no one present so bold as to dare to fight him. But all was of no avail, for the strange knight only improved in strength and ardor and struck him as hard as at first; so that all said that nothing was failing him except his horse, which was no longer as effective as was needful. And likewise the opposing horse, for both horses often stumbled, and fell to their knees with them, so that they could hardly get them to go forward; and Dardan, who deemed himself a better fighter on foot than on horseback, said to Amadis,

"Knight, our horses are failing us, for they are very tired; and this is prolonging our battle; and I believe that if we had proceeded on foot, I would have had you beaten a while back."

He said this so loud that the king and all those around him heard it. And the strange knight was thereby very much embarrassed, and said,

"Since you believe you can defend yourself better on foot than on horseback, let us dismount, and do you so defend yourself, for you need to, although it does not seem to me that a knight should leave his horse as long as he can stay on it."

So then they dismounted without delay, and each one took what remained of his shield and with great zeal they attacked each other, and they struck each other much more fiercely than before, so that it was a wonder to see them. But by far the strange knight was having the best of it, for he was able to reach him better, and he was striking him with very great blows and with great frequency, for he did not let him rest; but he saw that he needed to do so, and many times he made him swing around from one side to the other, and sometimes he brought him to his knees, to such an extent that everyone was saying,

"Dardan made an insane request when he sought to get down on foot with the knight, for he was not able to reach him on horseback, because his horse was very tired."

Thus the strange knight was dominating Dardan quite at will, for now the latter was struggling more to guard himself from the blows than to attack, and he kept withdrawing toward the palace of the queen, and the damsels and everyone else were saying that Dardan would die if he persisted any longer in the battle. When they were under the windows, they all said,

"Holy Mary, Dardan is as good as dead!"

Then Amadis heard the damsel from Denmark talking, and recognized her by her speech and looked up and saw his lady Oriana, who was at a window. And as soon as he saw her, the sword turned in his hand, and his fight and everything else were out of his control on account of seeing her. Dardan had seized the opportunity to rest a bit, and he saw that his enemy was looking away; and taking his sword in both hands, he gave him such a blow on top of his helmet that he caused it to be twisted around on his head. Amadis for that blow did not give another nor did he do anything except to straighten his helmet. And Dardan began to strike him every place. Amadis struck him only a few times, for his intentions were changed from combatting to gazing at his lady. At this time Dardan began to improve and he to get worse, and the damsel from Denmark said,

"It was ill luck that that knight saw some woman here, for by being distracted he has caused Dardan, who had arrived at the point of death, to recover. Certainly at such a time the knight should not give up his task.

Amadis heard her, and was so ashamed that he would rather have been dead, for he feared that his lady would think that there was cowardice in him; and he rushed at Dardan and struck him on top of the helmet such a mighty blow that he made him touch hands to the ground, and so he took him by the helmet and jerked it so hard that he pulled it off his head, and he gave him with it such a blow that he made him fall stunned, and striking him with the hilt of his sword on his face, he said,

"Dardan, you are dead unless you concede that the lady is acquitted."

And he said,

"Ah, sir, mercy, don't kill me, I concede that she is acquitted."

Then the king and his knights came up and heard him. Amadis, who was ashamed of what had happened to him, went and mounted his horse, and set out to go as fast as he could to the forest. Dardan's lady love came to where he stood all battered, and she said to him,

"Dardan, from today on do not regard me as your lady love, neither you nor any other man in the world, except that good knight who just now fought this battle."

"What!" said Dardan; "I am vanquished and made a laughingstock for your sake, and you want to forsake me for that one who was the vanquisher, to your detriment and my dishonor? By heaven, you are indeed a woman to say such a thing, and I shall give you the reward for your treachery."

And grasping his sword that he still had on his belt, he gave her such a blow with it that he cast her head at her feet; he stood for a moment thinking about himself and said,

"Ah, wretch that I am! What have I done to kill what I loved most in the world! But I shall avenge her death."

And taking his sword by the point he thrust it into himself, so that he could not be succored, although it was attempted. And as everyone came to view him, for a wonder no one went in pursuit of Amadis to find out who he was. But with that death

everyone was pleased, because although this Dardan was the most valiant and strong knight of all Great Britain, his pride and bad temper caused him not to employ his talents except to the harm of many, appropriating things in an outrageous manner, esteeming his own strength and the great zeal of his heart more than the judgment of the most high Lord, who with very little of His power brings it about that the very strong are overcome and dishonored by the very weak.

CHAPTER XIV

How king Lisuarte had Dardan and his lady love buried, and caused to be placed on their tomb an inscription that told of the manner of their death.

This battle, in which Dardan and his lady love had such a cruel death, having thus been won, the king ordered two burial crypts to be brought and had put on them lions of stone, and within the crypts they placed Dardan and his lady love in the field where the battle had taken place, together with an inscription that signalized what had happened. And afterwards in due time there was placed there the name of the one who defeated him, as will be subsequently related.

And the king asked what had become of the strange knight. But they did not know what to say except that he went away toward the forest as fast as his horse could run.

"Ah," said the king, "Would that one could have such a man in his company! For in addition to his great strength, I believe that he is very self-restrained, for all of you have heard the vilification that Dardan heaped on him, and although he had him in his power, he did not seek to kill him, for I really believe that he perceived in the other's mood that he would not have had any mercy if he had the power over him."

While speaking about this, he went to his palace, he and all the others talking about the strange knight. Oriana said to the damsel from Denmark:

"My dear, I suspect that that knight who fought here is Amadis, for now it would be time for him to arrive, because since I sent word for him to come, he would not tarry."

"Certainly," said the damsel, "I believe it is he, and I ought to have remembered today when I saw the knight riding a white horse, for I certainly left him such a horse when I departed from there."

She said furthermore,

"Did you recognize the arms he bore?"

"No," said she, "for the shield was battered from the blows; but it seems to me it had a field of gold."

"Lady," said the damsel, "He had in the battle with King Abies a shield that had a field of gold and two rampant blue lions on it, but that shield was there completely ruined and he ordered immediately another like it made, and told me that he would be bearing the new one when he came here, and I believe it is that one."

"My dear," said Oriana, "if it is he, he will either come or send word to the town, and now go out there farther than your wont to see if you will find a message from him."

"Lady," said she, "I shall do so."

And Oriana said,

"Ah, God, what a favor you would confer on me if it were he, because I would now have the opportunity to speak with him."

Thus the two pursued their conversation.

And the author again tells about Amadis and what happened to him. When Amadis left the battle he went through the forest so secretly that no one found out anything about him, and he arrived late at the tents, where he found Gandalin and the damsels, who had food prepared, and on his dismounting they disarmed him, and the damsels told him how Dardan had killed his mistress and afterwards himself and for what reason. He made the sign of the cross many times at such a bad outcome and then they sat down to eat with much pleasure; but Amadis never forgot how he would advise his lady of his arrival and what she commanded him to do. The table having been cleared, he got up and drawing Gandalin aside, he said to him,

"Friend, go to town and try to see the damsel from Denmark and let it be in great secrecy, and tell her I am here, and to send to tell me what I shall do."

Gandalin agreed to go on foot in order to go more secretly, and so he did; and arriving in town, he went to the king's palace. And he was not there long before he saw the damsel from Denmark, who was walking back and forth. He came up to her and greeted her and she, him; and she looked at him more closely and saw it was Gandalin, and she said to him,

"Ah, my friend, be you very welcome; and where is your master?"

"Already today there was a time you saw him," said Gandalin, "for he was the one who won the battle, and I left him hidden in that forest, and he sends me to you for you to tell him what to do."

"Be he welcome to this land," said she, "for his lady will be very happy with him, and come along after me; and if someone asks, tell them you are from the Queen of Scotland and bringing a message from her to Oriana; and that you came to look for Amadis who is in this land, in order to accompany him, and thus you will remain afterwards in her company and no one will suspect anything."

So they entered the palace of the queen, and the damsel said to Oriana,

"Madam: here you see a squire who brings you a message from the Queen of Scotland."

Oriana was very happy about it, and much more so when she saw it was Gandalin; and kneeling before her, he said,

"Madam, the queen sends you many greetings as one who loves you and esteems you highly, and who would be very much pleased at your fame and would not fail to do what she could to increase it."

"May the queen have good fortune," said Oriana, "I am very appreciative of her message; come to this window and you shall tell me more."

Then she drew apart with him, had him sit down beside her, and said to him,

"Friend, where did you leave your master?"

"I left him in that forest yonder," said he, "where he went last night when he won the battle."

"Friend," said she, "I adjure you to tell me how he fares."

"Lady," said he, "he fares according to whatever you wish, as a man who is all yours, and who for you is dying, and his soul endures that which no other knight has suffered." And he began to weep, and said,

"Lady, he will not disregard your command either for ill or for good that may befall him. And for heaven's sake, lady, have mercy on him, because the anguish that he has suffered up to now, no one else in the world could endure; for often I expected him to fall down dead before me, having already his heart dissolved in tears; and if he should have the good fortune to live, he would become the greatest knight who ever bore arms, and certainly according to the great things that have taken place through him and to his honor since he has been a knight, he is now such a knight. But luck failed him when he made your acquaintance, for he will die before his time. And certainly it would have been better for him to die in the sea, upon which he was launched without his parents knowing him, inasmuch as they are seeing him die without being able to help him." And she did nothing but weep, and he said,

"Lady, this death of my lord would be cruel and many would grieve for him if thus, without any help, he should suffer more than in the past."

Oriana said, weeping and wringing her hands,

"Ah, friend Gandalin, in heaven's name, hush and don't tell me any more! For God knows how much it distresses me if you believe what you say. For I would rather kill my own heart and all I hold dear, and it would be as hard for me to desire his death as for one who would not live a single day if he were to die; and you blame me because you know his anguish and not mine, for if you knew mine, you would grieve more for me and you would not blame me. But persons cannot hasten to give aid as they desire; rather, the situation of being farthest apart is what obtains, with the continuance of what aggravates and angers them; and so it is with me and your lord, for God knows, if I were able, with what good will I would apply a remedy to his great desires and mine."

Gandalin said to her:

"Do what you should if you love him, for he loves you more than all the things that today are loved; and lady, now command what he should do."

Oriana showed him a garden that was below that window where they were talking and said,

"Friend, go to your lord and tell him to come tonight very secretly and go into the garden, and here below is the chamber where Mabilia and I sleep, which has near the ground a small window with a grating of iron, and at it we shall talk, for Mabilia already knows my heart."

And taking a very beautiful ring from her finger, she gave it to Gandalin to take to Amadis because she liked it more than any other ring she had; and she said,

"Before you go, you will see Mabilia, who will know how to conceal you very well, for she is very wise, and you both will say that you are bringing to her news of her mother, so that no one will suspect anything."

Oriana called Mabilia to see that squire who had come from her mother; and when she saw Gandalin, she understood very well the reason; and Oriana went to the queen her mother, who asked her whether that squire would return soon to Scotland, because she would send gifts to the queen by him.

"Lady," said she, "the squire comes to look for Amadis, son of the King of Gaul, the fine knight of whom many here are speaking."

"And where is he?" said the queen.

"The squire says," she said, "that more than ten months ago, they had word that he was coming here and he wonders why he doesn't find him."

"So help me God," said the queen, "it would give me much pleasure to see such a knight in the king my lord's household; he would be of great aid to him in the many disputes that on every hand confront him; and I say to you that if he comes here, he will not fail to become his liege man on account of anything he may demand which the king can satisfy."

"Madam," said Oriana, "of his knighthood I know no more than what they say, but I tell you he was the handsomest youth

known at the time he served me, Mabilia, and other damsels in the house of the King of Scotland."

Mabilia, who had remained with Gandalin said,

"Friend, is your master already in this land?"

"Lady, yes," said he, "and he sends cordial greetings to you as the cousin whom he loves more than any other, and he was the knight that won the battle here."

"Oh, Lord God," said she, "be Thou blessed for having created such a great knight in our family and for having made him known to us."

Thus she said to Gandalin:

"Friend, how is it with him?"

"Madam," said he, "it would be well, if it were not for the power of love, which keeps him half-dead, and for heaven's sake, madam, hasten and help him, for truly if he does not have some relief in his love, the greatest knight in our family and in all the world is lost."

"He will not expire through my fault," said she, "in whatever I can do; now go and greet him kindly for me and tell him to come as my lady orders, and every time it is necessary you will be able to speak with us as the squire of my mother."

Gandalin parted from Mabilia with that message that he was carrying to his lord, and the latter was awaiting him, expecting life or death according to the news he might bring, for he certainly at that time was so worried that his strength was not sufficient to bear it; for the great relief he had received on seeing himself so near to where his lady was, had changed into such a desire to see her, and with the desire such great concern and anguish, that he had reached the point of death; and when he saw Gandalin coming, he went to him and said,

"Friend Gandalin, what news do you bring me?"

"Good news, sir," said he.

"Did you see the damsel of Denmark?"

"Yes, I saw her."

"And did you find out from her what I am to do?"

"Sir," said he, "the news is better than you think."

He trembled with joy and said,

"In God's name, tell me quickly."

Gandalin told him all that had happened with his lady, and the talks that they both had, and what his cousin Mabilia said to him, and the talk that he left arranged, so that nothing more remained to be told him. You can well imagine the great joy he had from this; and he said to Gandalin:

"My true friend, you have been more wise and daring in my behalf than I would have been, and this is not surprising, for your father has both attributes to perfection. And now tell me if you know well the place where she ordered me to be."

"Yes, sir," said he, "for Oriana showed it to me."

"Oh, heavens," said Amadis, "how shall I requite this lady for the great favor that she now does for me? I do not know why I should complain of any worry."

Gandalin gave him the ring and said,

"Take this ring that your lady sends you because it is the one she likes best."

He took it with tears coming to his eyes, and kissing it, put it straightway over his heart, and it was a few moments before he was able to speak. Then he put it on his finger and said,

"Ah, ring, to think that you were on that hand! For one would not be able to find another hand anywhere of such worth."

"Sir," said Gandalin, "go to the damsels and be happy, because this worry is destroying you and it can endanger your affair."

He did so, and at that supper he talked more and with more enjoyment than was his wont, for which the damsels were very happy; for he was the most gracious and pleasant knight in the world when meditation and worry did not stand in the way. And the hour of sleeping having arrived, they went to bed in their tents as usual; but the proper time having come, Amadis arose and found that Gandalin already had the horses saddled and his arms prepared, and he armed himself, for he did not know what might befall him; and mounting, they went toward the town, and arriving at a great many trees that were near the garden, which Gandalin on that day had noted, they dismounted and left their horses there and continued on foot. And they entered the garden through a little opening that the rains had made; and arriving at the window Gandalin knocked very softly.

Oriana, who did not care about sleeping, when she heard him, got up and called Mabilia, and said to her:

"I believe that your cousin is here."

"He is my cousin," said she, "but you have more of him than his whole family does."

Then they both went to the window and put in it some candles that gave a bright light, and they opened it. Amadis saw his lady by the light of the candles, appearing so perfect to him that there was not a person who could believe that such beauty could be possible in any woman in the world. She was dressed in clothing of India silk, embroidered with many heavy gold flowers, and she was with hair bared, which was wonderfully beautiful, and she covered it with a very rich garland; and when Amadis saw her thus, he trembled all over with the great joy that he had on seeing her, and his heart beat so hard that he was not able to be at ease. When Oriana saw him thus, she approached the window and said,

"My lord, be you very welcome to this land, for we have desired you very much and have taken great pleasure in your fine strokes of good fortune, both at arms and in your becoming acquainted with your father and mother."

Amadis when he heard this, although he was overwhelmed, by exerting himself more than for any other confrontation, he said,

"Lady, if my discretion is not sufficient to satisfy the favor that you tell me of and that which you did me in sending the damsel of Denmark, do not wonder at it, because my heart, very perturbed and a prey to excessive love, does not allow my tongue its freedom; and because just as with my delightful memory of you, I think I shall subdue everything, so at the sight of you I myself am subdued without there remaining in my senses anything free in my power; and if I, my lady, were so deserving or my services were to merit it, I would ask of you now your pity for this so afflicted heart of mine before it be entirely dissolved with tears; and the favor which I ask of you, my lady, is not for my repose, for of the things truly beloved the more one attains, the more one's desire and concern increase and grow; but because if everything came to an end, there would also come

to the end of his life the one who thinks only of serving you."

"My lord," said Oriana, "all that you tell me I believe unhesitatingly, because my heart by what it feels shows that it is true; but I tell you that I do not consider sensible what you are doing in having such anguish as Gandalin tells me about, because nothing can come from it except that it be either the cause of disclosing our love affair, from which so much misfortune could befall us, or that if the life of one of us came to an end, that of the other would not be able to endure. And for this reason I command you, by that dominion that I have over you, that by imposing temperance on your life, you impose it on mine, which thinks only of finding a way that your desires may have surcease."

"Lady," said he, "in everything I shall carry out your command except for what my strength does not dispel."

"And in what is that?" said she.

"The thought," said he, "that my judgment can not resist those mortal desires with which it is so cruelly tormented."

"I do not say," said she, "that you put your thought aside completely, but that it be with such moderation that you not allow yourself to be disgraced in the presence of noblemen; because you already know what will be gained by destroying one's life, as I have said. And, my lord, I tell you to remain with my father if he asks you to do so, in order that the situations you may encounter, you meet at my command. And from now on, speak with me without inhibition, telling me the things that most please you, for I shall do all I possibly can."

"Lady," said he, "I am yours, and at your command I have come: I shall do nothing except what you command."

Mabilia came and said,

"Lady, let me share this knight."

"Approach," said Oriana, "for I wish to see him as soon as you have spoken with him."

Then she said,

"Sir cousin, be you very welcome, for you have given me great joy."

"My lady cousin," said he, "and be you very well met, for wherever I might see you, I should be obliged to love and cherish

you, and much more in this place, where by observing our relationship you will be taking pity on me."

She said,

"At your service I shall put my life and my services, but I well know, according to what I have learned from this lady, that they can be superfluous."

Gandalin, who saw morning near at hand, said,

"Sir, although you may not like it, the approach of daybreak obliges us to leave here."

Oriana said,

"Sir, now go, and do as I have told you."

Amadis, taking her hands, which through the grating of the window she extended, she wiping away with them the tears that fell on his face, he kissing them many times, parted from the ladies; and mounting their horses, he and Gandalin arrived before dawn broke at the tent; where, disarming himself, he went to bed unperceived by any person.

The damsels arose, and one stayed to keep company with Amadis, and the other went to the town; and know you that both were sisters, and first cousins of the lady for whom Amadis fought. Amadis slept until the sun came up; and getting up, called Gandalin and gave orders that he go to the town, as his lady and Mabilia had commanded. Gandalin departed, and Amadis remained talking to the damsel. And before long he saw the other damsel coming, who had gone to town, and she was weeping bitterly and riding at full speed. Amadis said,

"What is the matter, my good friend? Who has made you grieve? For so help me God, amends will be made for it, unless I lose my life first."

"Sir," said she, "the remedy depends entirely on you."

"Now tell it," said he; "if I do not uphold your cause, do you never again accompany a strange knight."

When she heard this, she said,

"The lady, our cousin, for whom you fought, is imprisoned, for the king orders her to have the knight who fought for her come there, and if she does not, she will in no wise leave the town; and well you know that she cannot do so, for she never knew anything about you; and the king in a great fury at her,

believing that you are hidden through her knowledge, orders that you be looked for everywhere."

"I should have preferred," said he, "that it be otherwise, because I am not of enough renown to make myself known to such an eminent man, and I tell you that although all those of his house were to find me, I would not take a single step to go there if not by force; but I cannot continue to be in the situation of not doing what you wish, for I love and esteem you highly."

The damsels knelt before him, giving him many thanks.

"Now one of you go," said he, "to the lady and tell her to obtain an agreement from the king that he will not demand anything from the knight against his will, and I shall be there tomorrow at the hour of tierce."

The damsel returned to town and so told the lady, which made her very happy, and she went before the king and said,

"Sire, if you agree not to ask anything of the knight against his will, he will be here tomorrow at the hour of tierce; and if not, neither shall I have him here nor shall you meet him, for so help me God, I do not know who he is, or for what reason he willed to fight for me."

The king agreed, for he had a great desire to meet him. With this the lady went away, and the news was reported throughout the palace and the town to this effect: tomorrow the good knight who won the battle will be here.

And all were very pleased with the news, because they hated Dardan for his pride and bad nature. And the damsel returned to Amadis and told him how the agreement had been approved by the king, just as the lady had asked.

CHAPTER XV

How Amadis made himself known to King Lisuarte and to the grandees of his court and was well received by all.

Amadis took his ease that day with the damsels, and next morning armed himself, and mounting his horse, taking with him only the damsels, he went to the town. The king was in his palace, for he did not know from what direction the knight would come. Amadis went to the lodging of the lady, and when she saw him, she knelt before him and said,

"Ah, sir, all I have you gave to me."

He raised her up, and said,

"Lady, let us go to the king, and by his giving you your release, I shall be at liberty to return to where I have to go."

Then he took off his helmet and shield and took with him the lady and the damsels, and went to the palace; and wherever he went everyone said: "This is the good knight who defeated Dardan."

The king, who heard him, came out to him with a great company of knights, and when he saw him, went to him with outstretched arms and said to him,

"Friend, be you very welcome, for we have desired you greatly."

Amadis knelt before him and said,

"Sire, may God keep you in honor and joy."

The king took him by the hand and said,

"So help me God, I consider you the greatest knight in the world."

"Sire," said he, "with more reason one could say that you are the most worthy king in the world; but, tell me, is the lady acquitted?"

"Yes," said he, "and she ought be as grateful to you for your coming as for the battle you fought, for she would not leave this town until she had brought you here."

"Sire," said Amadis, "all that you do you do rightly; but do believe that the lady never knew who fought the battle until now."

They all marveled greatly at the extreme good looks of this Amadis and at how, being so young, he was able to overcome Dardan, who was so valiant and strong that in all Great Britain they feared and stood in awe of him. Amadis said to the king,

"Sire, since your will is carried out and the lady released, to God be you commended, and you are the one king in the world whom I would prefer to serve."

"Ah, friend," said the king, "do not make this departure so soon if you do not wish to give me very great sorrow."

He said,

"God keep me from this; rather, so help me God, I intend to serve you if I were such as to deserve to."

"Since that is the way it is," said the king, "I beg you to remain here today."

He agreed without showing that it pleased him. The king took him by the hand and conducted him to a beautiful chamber where he had him disarm and where all the other knights of great importance who came there, disarmed; for this was the king who in the whole world most honored them and who had most knights in his household. And he had him given a robe to put on; and calling King Arban of North Wales and the Earl of Gloucester, he said to them:

"Knights, bear this knight company, for the accompaniment of nobles is appropriate for him."

And he went to the queen and told her he had in his household the good knight who had won the battle.

"Sire," said the queen, "it gives me great pleasure. And do you know his name?"

"No," said the king, "for according to the promise I made, I have not dared ask it."

"By chance," said she, "is he perhaps the son of King Perion of Gaul?"

"I do not know," said the king.

"That squire," said the queen, "who was talking with Mabilia, goes in search of him and says he has discovered news to the effect that he was coming to this land."

The king ordered him called and said,

"Come with me and I shall ascertain whether you recognize a knight who is in my palace."

Gandalin went with the king and as he knew what he was to do, as soon as he saw Amadis, he knelt before him and said,

"Ah, Sir Amadis, for a long time I have been in quest of you."

"Friend Gandalin," said he, "be you welcome. And what news is there from the King of Scotland?"

"Sir," said he, "very good news, and from all our friends."

He went and embraced him, and said,

"Now, my lord, it is not necessary to conceal yourself, for you are that famous Amadis, son of King Perion of Gaul, and your recognition of each other came when you killed in battle that esteemed King Abies of Ireland, through which you restored King Perion to his kingdom which already he had almost lost."

Then more than before everybody approached to have a look at him, since now they knew him to have done such feats at arms as no one else could do. Thus they passed that day with all doing him much honor; and night having fallen, King Arban of North Wales took him with him to his dwelling on the advice of the king, who had told him to try hard to have him remain in the King's household. That night Amadis lodged with King Arban of North Wales very well served and to his pleasure. King Lisuarte spoke with the queen, telling her how he could not detain Amadis and that he was very desirous that a man so distinguished in the world should remain in his household, for with such men princes were greatly honored and feared, and that he did not know how he should set about detaining him.

"Sir," said the queen, "it would be counted against such a great man as you that such a knight, on coming to your house, should depart without your granting him whatever he might ask."

"He demands nothing of me," said the king, "and I would grant him everything."

"Then I'll tell you what: plead with him to stay or have someone do it on your behalf; and if he will not do so, tell him to come to see me before he departs, and I shall beg him along with my daughter Oriana and her cousin Mabilia, who have known him well since the time he was a page and served them; and I shall tell him that all the other knights are yours, and we wish him to be ours for whatever we may require."

"You speak most reasonably," said he, "and with that approach he will undoubtedly remain; and if he should not do so, we could rightly judge him to be more lacking in good breeding than great in strength."

King Arban of North Wales spoke that night with Amadis, but he could not obtain from him any hope that he would remain. And next day they both went to hear mass with the king; and after it was said, Amadis went to bid farewell to the king, and the king said,

"Certainly, friend, your departure grieves me greatly and because of the promise I made you I do not dare to demand of you anything, for I do not know whether it would irk you; but the queen eagerly desires to see you before you go."

"I shall see her very willingly," said he.

Then he took him by the hand and went where the queen was and said to her,

"Behold here the son of King Perion of Gaul."

"So help me God, sir," said she, "I am very pleased and be he very welcome."

Amadis sought to kiss her hands; but she made him sit beside her, and the king returned to his knights, many of whom he had left in the patio. The queen spoke with Amadis about many things, and he responded very sagaciously. The duennas and damsels were very astonished to see how handsome he was; and he could not lift his eyes without beholding his lady, Oriana, and Mabilia came and embraced him as if she had not seen him. The queen said to her daughter,

"Receive this knight who served you so well when he was a page, and will serve you now that he is a knight, unless he is

lacking in courtesy; and all of you ladies help me to beg for what I shall ask of him."

Then she said,

"Sir knight, the king my lord very much had wanted you to remain with him, and he has not been able to accomplish it; now I wish to see how much greater influence women have on knights than men do. And I beg you to be my knight and my daughter's and the knight of all these ladies whom you see here. In this you will be signifying submission and respect and you will free us from any imposition on the king in demanding of him the services of any knight for our needs; for if we have you, we can exempt all of his knights."

And then all came to entreat him, and Oriana nodded to him that he should agree. The queen said to him,

"Well, sir, what will you do with regard to our request?"

"Madam," said he, "who would do aught else but your bidding, for you are the best queen in the world, not to mention all these ladies? I, madam, am staying on account of your request and your daughter's, and secondarily on account of that of all the others; but I tell you I shall be your knight only. And if I serve the king in something it will be as your knight and not as his."

"Thus I and all the other ladies accept you," said the queen.

Then she sent word of it to the king, who was very happy, and he sent King Arban of North Wales to bring Amadis to him, and so he did; and when he came into his presence, embracing him with great affection, the king said,

"Friend, now I am very happy in having accomplished this which I so much desired, and I certainly should like you to receive thanks from me."

Amadis took it as a signal favor on his part. In this way, as you have heard, by command of his lady Amadis remained in the household of the king.

Here the author ceases to tell of this, and the narrative again speaks of Don Galaor.

Don Galaor, having departed from the household of the Duke of Bristol, where the Dwarf had occasioned him so much trouble, went on through that forest called Arnida and traveled until about

the hour of vespers without knowing where he was or finding any town. And at that hour he overtook an elegant squire who was riding a very fine-looking hackney — and the knight Galaor, who bore a very great and terrible wound which one of the three knights whom the dwarf brought to the boat had given him, and which as a result of his working his will on the damsel had become much worse, said to him,

"Good squire, would you be able to tell me where I could be treated for a wound?"

"I know of one place," said the squire, "but those such as you dare not go there, and if they do go, they leave as laughing-stocks."

"Never mind that," said he, "would there be there anyone who would care for my wound?"

"Rather do I believe," said the squire, "that you will find one who will inflict others upon you."

"Show me where it is," said Galaor, "and I shall see what you want to frighten me with."

"I shall not do that if I don't want to," said he.

"Either you will show it to me," said Galaor, "or I'll make you show it, for you are so base that anything done to you, you rightly deserve."

"You can't do a thing," said he, "that would make me give pleasure to a knight so bad and so devoid of virtue."

Galaor grasped his sword in order to frighten him and said:

"Either you will guide me there or you will leave your head here."

"I will guide you," said the squire, "to where your folly will be castigated and I avenged for what you do to me."

Then he went along the road and Galaor behind him but off the road, and after going as much as a league they arrived at a beautiful fortress, which was in a valley covered with trees.

"Here you see," said the squire, "the place I told you about; let me go."

"Go," said he, "for I am but little pleased with your company."

"You will be even less pleased with it," said he, "before long."

Galaor went on toward the fortress and saw that it was newly built; and on reaching the gate, he saw a knight well armed on his horse and with him five foot soldiers also armed, and they said to Galaor:

"Are you the one who brought our squire along as a prisoner?"

"I do not know," said he, "who your squire is, but I forced to come here a man in every way the worst and with the most evil disposition I ever saw in any man."

"That may well be," said the knight, "but you, what do you want here?"

"Sir," said Galaor, "I am traveling sorely wounded from a blow and I should like to have my wound cared for."

"Enter then," said the knight.

Galaor went forward, and the foot soldiers attacked him from one side and the knight from the other, and one churl went for him, and Galaor, snatching from his hands a battle-axe, turned to the knight and hit him with it such a mighty blow that he was beyond medical help; and he used it on the churls in such a fashion that he killed three of them and the other two fled to the castle keep, and Galaor after them; and his squire said to him,

"Sir, take your arms, for I hear a great commotion in the citadel."

He did so, and the squire took a shield and an axe from the dead men, and said,

"Sir, I shall help you against the churls, but I shall not lay a hand on any knight, for I would lose forever the chance to be a knight."

Galaor said to him,

"If I find the good knight that I am looking for, I shall quickly make you a knight."

And then they went forward and saw two knights and ten churls coming, and they turned to the two that were fleeing; and the squire who had guided Galaor there was at a window shouting:

"Kill him! Kill him! But keep the horse and it will be mine."

When Galaor heard this, his anger mounting, he charged at them and they at him, and they broke their lances, but from the one that Galaor encountered there was no need to take away his arms; and he turned to the other with his sword in hand with great courage and with the first blow he gave, he knocked him down from his horse and turned very quickly to the churls and saw that the squire had killed two of them, and he said to him:

"Let them all die, for they are traitors."

And so they saw to it that none escaped. When the squire who was looking out the window saw this, he went and climbed a stairway to a tower in great haste, shouting,

"Sir, arm yourself, or you die."

Galaor went toward the tower, and before he got there, he saw a knight coming fully armed, and at the foot of the tower a horse was being held for him and he was about to mount. Galaor, who had dismounted from his horse because it could not enter under a little gateway, reached him and laying hold of his rein, said,

"Knight, don't mount, for I have no surety from you."

The knight turned his face to him and said,

"Are you the one who has killed my cousins and the people of this castle of mine?"

"I do not know whom you are referring to," said Galaor, "but I tell you that here I have found the worst and most treacherous people I have ever seen."

"By my good faith," said the knight, "those you have killed are better than you and you will pay dearly for it."

Then they rushed at each other on foot just as they were and had their very cruel fight, for the knight of the castle was very good, and everyone who saw the fight marveled; and thus they continued striking each other for quite a bit. But the knight, not being able any longer to withstand Galaor's great blows, began to flee, and he after him, and thus he went under a little doorway, intending to jump from a window to a scaffolding, and with the weight of his armor he was not able to jump to where he intended, and it was so high that he was smashed to bits; and Galaor, who saw him fall thus, turned back cursing the castle

and its inmates. At this juncture, he heard a voice in a room that said,

"Sir, for mercy's sake, don't leave me here!"

Galaor reached the door and said,

"Well, open up."

And the other said,

"Sir, I cannot, for I am imprisoned in chains."

Galaor kicked the door and knocking it down, entered and found a beautiful lady who had a heavy chain around her neck, and she said to him,

"Sir, what happened to the lord of the castle and the other people?"

He answered,

"They are all dead." And that he had come there to find someone to attend to his wound.

"I shall minister to you," said she, "and do get me out of this captivity."

Galaor broke the chain lock and took the lady from the room; but first she took from a small coffer two little boxes that the lord of the castle had there together with other things for treating wounds, and they went to the gate of the castle and there Galaor found the first one with whom he had fought, who still was stirring, and he trampled him for a bit with his horse, and they went out of the castle. Galaor glanced at the lady and saw that she was wondrously beautiful and said to her,

"Lady, I freed you from prison, and I am fallen into it unless you succor me."

"I shall succor you," said she, "in all that you command, for if I did otherwise, I would be ungrateful, in view of the great tribulation out of which you took me."

With these amorous words of good will and with the wiles of Don Galaor and with those of the lady, which fortunately were in agreement with them, they undertook that which not without great embarrassment is to be put in writing; at last that night they lodged in the forest with some hunters in their tents. And there the matron took care of his wound and of the passionate desire he had for her, and related to him how, she being the daughter of Lelois the Fleming, to whom King Lisuarte at that

time had given the County of Clare, and of a lady whom he had kept as his mistress; "and being with my mother there," said she, "in a convent which is near here, that arrogant knight whom you killed demanded me in marriage, and because my mother scorned him, he waited one day while I was frolicking with some other damsels and seized me and carried me away to that castle, and putting me under that very harsh confinement, he said to me,

"'You have rejected me for a husband, whereby my reputation and honor have been quite discredited, and I tell you that you will not leave here until your mother and you and your relatives beg me to take you as my wife.' And I who hated him more than anything in the world, took as my best remedy, trusting in the mercy of God, to remain there in that hardship for some time rather than to endure it forever by being married to him."

"Well, lady," said Galaor, "what shall I do with you, for I am going a long way and on such a matter as probably to make it irksome for you to wait for me."

"Take me," said she, "to the convent where my mother is."

"Then guide me," said Galaor, "and I shall follow you."

Then they entered upon their way, and before the sun had set they arrived at the convent, where the young lady and Galaor were received with great pleasure and even more as soon as the former told them the extraordinary things Galaor and his squire had performed at arms. There Galaor rested at the request of those ladies.

The author here ceases to tell of this, and again speaks concerning Agrajes and of what happened to him after he came from the war in Gaul.

CHAPTER XVI

Concerning what Agrajes saw after he came from the war in Gaul, and some of the things he did.

Agrajes, having returned from the war in Gaul at the time that Amadis had killed in battle King Abies of Ireland and had become acquainted with his father and mother, as has been related; having prepared to cross to Norway where his lady Olinda was, went hunting one day, and being on a rocky hill overlooking the sea coast, suddenly there came up a hail storm with a very high wind, so that it caused the sea to become very rough; on which he saw a ship, buffeted many times by the force of the waves, in danger of being sunk. Moved to great pity, with night approaching, he kindled large fires in order that their warning might cause the people on the ship to be saved; he awaiting there meanwhile the outcome of that great peril. Finally the force of the wind, the prudence of the sailors, and above all the mercy of our true Lord, caused that boat, which many times was thought to be lost, to make port safely. From it some damsels greatly perturbed over their present danger, having been taken off, were delivered over to Agrajes, who on the crags was shouting to his beaters to help them diligently. He sent them to some country houses near his own lodging.

The crew, having left the ship and having been lodged in those houses, after having supped around the great fires that Agrajes had ordered them to make, slept very soundly. In the meantime, the damsels, having been lodged by his command in his very own chamber in order that they receive more honor and service, had not yet been seen by him. But the crew now being

quieted down, as a young knight desirous of seeing women more to serve and honor them than to subjugate his heart in any quarter other than where it already was enthralled, he endeavored to look through the doors of the chamber at what they were doing; and seeing them around a fire talking with great pleasure about their relief from the past danger, he recognized among them that beautiful princess Olinda his lady love, daughter of the King of Norway, because in the kingdom of his father as well as in that of hers, he had performed many feats at arms — Olinda, that princess who, when his heart was free, had captivated and subjugated it with such force that its strength was weakened, being tormented by great anguish and cares, bringing to his eyes very many tears. Then moved by such a sight and remembering the great danger in which he had seen her and the place where he was looking without her, as if out of his mind he said,

"Oh Holy Mary, save me, for this is the lady of my heart!"

This outcry having been heard by her and not suspecting what it was about, she ordered a damsel of hers to find out. Then the latter, on opening the door saw Agrajes there as though enraptured; who making himself known to her and she telling her lady, the latter, becoming no less joyous than he was, commanded him to enter, where after many amorous advances took place between them, as the culmination of their great desires they spent that night with great pleasure and to the great joy of their hearts. And that group remained there in great repose for six days, until the sea became calm, and all of these days, Agrajes spent with his lady, without any person's being aware of it, except her maids. Then at that time he learned that Olinda was going to Great Britain to live in the household of King Lisuarte, where her father was sending her; and he told her how he was prepared to go to Norway where she was, and that since God had given him such happiness, that his journey's destination would be changed to where hers was, in order to serve her and to see his cousin Amadis, whom he thought he would find there. Olinda was very grateful to him for this, and begged and commanded that he do so.

This having been agreed upon, at the end of six days the sea being in such a calm that they could sail without any danger, they all betook themselves to the sea and bidding farewell to

Agrajes, they went on their way, and without any obstacle to hinder them, reached Great Britain; where having left the sea, they arrived at the town of Windsor, where King Lisuarte was. Olinda, judged to be of such high estate and abundant beauty, was very well received both by the king and queen, and by their daughter and all the other duennas and damsels.

Agrajes, who had remained on the seashore gazing at that ship in which that greatly beloved lady of his was traveling, when it had been lost to his view returned to Briantes, that town where King Languines, his father, was; and finding there his uncle Don Galvanes Lackland, he said to him that it would be good to go to the court of King Lisuarte, where so many good knights lived, because there in that land, more than anywhere else, they could win honor and fame, which would be all wasted in Scotland, where they could not exercise their valor except with people of little worth at arms. Don Galvanes, who was a good knight desirous of winning honor, and not being impeded by having to rule any seigniory, because he only had one castle, considered it a good thing to make that journey that Agrajes his nephew had suggested to him; and they bidding farewell to King Languines, entering upon the sea with only their arms and horses and squires for each of them, the favorable weather brought about their arrival in a short space of time in Great Britain at a town called Bristol; and on leaving there and traveling through a forest, on the way out they met a damsel who asked if they knew whether that road went to the Rock of Galtares.

"No," said they, "But why do you ask?" said Agrajes.

"To ascertain," said she, "whether I shall find there a good knight who will remedy a great sorrow that I carry with me."

"You are mistaken," said Agrajes, "for in that Rock that you speak of, you will not find any other knight but that fierce giant Albadan, who, if you carry sorrow, judging by his evil deeds, will double it."

"If you knew what I do," said she, "you would not consider it an error, for the knight whom I seek fought with that giant and killed him in single combat."

"Certainly, lady," said Galvanes, "you tell us wonders, that any knight should take on any giant, especially that one who is

the fiercest and harshest one that there is in all the islands of the sea, unless it were King Abies of Ireland who fought with one, he armed and the giant unarmed, and he killed the latter; and even so, it was considered the most insane exploit in the world."

"Sirs," said the damsel, "this other that I am talking about did it more in the manner of a good knight."

Then she told them about the battle and they were amazed; and Agrajes asked the lady if she knew the name of the knight who had attacked with such courage.

"Yes, I know it," said she.

"Then I beg of you," said Agrajes, "please tell us the name."

"I tell you," said she, "that his name is Galaor and he is the son of the King of Gaul."

Agrajes trembled all over and said,

"Ah, lady, you tell me news that makes me the happiest man in the world by finding out about that cousin that I considered dead rather than alive."

Then she told Don Galvanes what she knew of Galaor, how he had overcome the giant, and that up to then she had not had any news of him.

"Certainly," said Galvanes, "his life and that of his brother Amadis have been nothing short of wondrous, and also the beginning of their deeds at arms, to such an extent that I doubt if one can find any others in the world to equal them."

Agrajes said to the damsel,

"My dear, what do you want of this knight you are seeking?"

"Sir," said she, "I wish him to help a maiden who is imprisoned on account of him; and it was a traitorous dwarf, the most false creature in all the world, who caused her to be seized."

Then she related to them all that had happened to Galaor with the dwarf, just as it has already been told; but of that relating to his lady love Aldeva, she told them nothing.

"And, sirs, because the maiden does not wish to assent to what the dwarf says, the Duke of Bristol swears that he will have her burned ten days from now, and the great worry of the other duennas is whether the maiden through fear of death may be willing to condemn some one of them by saying that that one

brought Galaor there for that purpose. And four of the ten days have passed."

"Since that's the way it is, don't go on any farther, for we shall do what Galaor would do; if not by force it will be voluntarily; and now guide us in God's name."

The maiden returned to the road along which she had come and they followed her, and they reached the house of the duke the day before the maiden was to be burned, and at the time that the duke was sitting down to dine; and dismounting they entered thus armed where he was. The duke greeted them and they him, and he told them to eat.

"Sir," said they, "first we shall tell you the reason for our coming."

And Don Galvanes said,

"Duke, you have a maiden imprisoned because of false and evil words that a dwarf spoke to you, and we earnestly beseech you to order her released, since she is not to blame; and if it be necessary to fight about this, we shall defend her against any two other knights who may want to take up the duel."

"You have said a great deal," said the duke.

And he gave orders to call the dwarf, and said to him,

"What do you say to this which those knights say: that you made me seize the damsel with lies and that they will support it by combat? I tell you it is necessary for you to have someone to defend you."

"Sir," said the dwarf, "I shall have someone to demonstrate the truth of what I say."

Then he called a knight, his nephew, who was so strong and husky that he did not appear to be related to him, and said,

"Nephew, you must maintain my right against these knights."

The nephew said,

"Knights, what are you saying against this loyal dwarf who sustained great dishonor from the knight who brought the maiden here? By chance is it you? And I would prove to you that he wronged the dwarf and that the false maiden ought to die, because she put him in the duke's chamber."

Agrajes, who was most impatient, said,

"Certainly, he is neither one of us, although we should like to appear to answer for his deeds, nor in him was there any wrong, and I shall fight it out with you at once; and as for the maiden, I say that she should not die, and that dwarf was disloyal to her."

"Then let the battle be fought at once," said the dwarf's nephew.

And asking for his arms, he armed himself and mounted a good horse, and said to Agrajes:

"Knight, now would that God might decree that it be you who brought the maiden here, for I would make him pay for his immoderate act."

"Certainly," said Agrajes, "he would consider himself demeaned to fight with two such as you, for whatever reason, even more so over this, in which he would be maintaining the right."

The duke stopped eating and went with them and put them in a field where a few other trials by battle had already been fought, and he said to them,

"The maiden that I have imprisoned I do not permit to be judged by your battle, since the wrong which the dwarf received does not concern her."

"Sir," said Agrajes, "you imprisoned her because of what the dwarf said, and I say he told you a falsehood; and if I overcome this knight who maintains his right, by rights you will give her up to us."

"I have already told you my position," said the duke, "and I shall do nothing more."

And coming forth from among them, they went and attacked each other at full speed of their horses and struck each other fiercely with their lances, which were immediately broken; and the bodies of their horses and their shields having come into close contact, they fell in different directions. And each one got up angrily and with the great rage that they had, they grasped their swords and attacked each other on foot, giving each other such great, hard blows that all who watched them were amazed. The swords were sharp and the knights of great strength, and in a short time their arms were rendered in such condition that there was not much defense in them; their shields were hacked in many

places and their helmets dented. Galvanes saw his nephew carry on skillfully with agility and more aggressively than the other, and he was very happy; and if he esteemed him before, now he did much more. And Agrajes was so astute that although at the beginning he showed himself to be very lively, whereby it seemed that he would be very soon tired, he maintained his strength in such condition that at the end he showed himself to be much more agile and aggressive, so that in some places he was held in such low esteem at the beginning that at the end he achieved victory in the battle; thus watching him, Galvanes saw how the nephew of the dwarf drew aside and said to Agrajes:

"We have fought enough, and it seems to me that the knight for whom you fight is not to blame nor is my uncle the dwarf, for otherwise the battle would not have continued so long; and if you so desire, let it be concluded, declaring the knight and the dwarf of good faith."

"Certainly," said Agrajes, "the knight is of good faith and the dwarf is false and evil, and I shall not leave you until your mouth says so; and strive to defend yourself."

The knight showed his power, but it availed him but little, for he was already sorely wounded. And Agrajes was dealing him mighty and frequent blows. And the knight had no thought except to cover himself with his shield. When the duke saw him thus at the point of death, he was very sad, for he loved him very much, and kept going towards his castle so as not to see him killed; and he said,

"Now I swear I shall not give a knight errant aught except gross insults."

"You have undertaken a crazy war," said Galvanes, "in picking on the knights errant who wish to right wrongs."

At this moment the knight fell at the feet of Agrajes, and the latter jerked off his helmet and gave him heavy blows on the face with the hilt of his sword, and said,

"You have got to say that the dwarf wronged the knight."

"Ah, good knight," said the other, "do not kill me! I say of the knight for whom you fought that he is good and loyal and I promise to free the maiden from prison; but in heaven's name!

don't try to make me say of the dwarf, who is my uncle and who reared me, that he is false."

All those who were watching round about heard this. Agrajes felt sorry for the knight and said,

"For the dwarf I would not do anything, but for you, whom I hold to be a good knight, I shall do so much that I shall consider you free of any obligation if you free the maiden from being held in your power."

The knight agreed to it. The duke who heard none of this, was already near the castle, and Galvanes took his horse by the rein and showed him the nephew of the dwarf at the feet of Agrajes and said,

"That one is either dead or vanquished; what do you say about the maiden?"

"Knight," said the duke, "You are more than mad if you think I shall do anything to the maiden except what I have agreed upon and sworn."

"And what did you swear?" said Galvanes.

"That I would burn her tomorrow," said the duke, "if she didn't tell me who put the knight in my palace."

"What!" said Galvanes, "you won't give her to us?"

"No," said the duke, "nor don't you remain any longer in this place, otherwise I shall order something else to be done."

Then many of his company approached and Galvanes snatched his hand away from the rein and said,

"You threaten us and do not free the damsel, as rightly you should; I challenge you, therefore, for myself and for all the knights errant who may wish to help me."

"And I challenge you and all of them," said the duke, "and they will go about on my land to their own detriment."

Don Galvanes returned to where Agrajes was and told him what he had experienced with the duke and how they had been challenged by him, at which he was very furious and said,

"Such a man as this, from whom justice cannot be obtained, should not be a feudal lord."

And mounting his horse, he said to the nephew of the dwarf:

"Remember what you promised me in regard to the maiden and comply with it at once to the best of your ability."

"I shall do all I can," said he.

It was now close to vespers, for at that time the battle was concluded; and immediately they left there and entered a forest called Arunda, and Galvanes said,

"Nephew, we have challenged the duke; let us wait here and seize him and any other, as soon as he passes by."

"All right," said Agrajes.

Then they left the road and plunged into a thick undergrowth, and there they dismounted and sent their squires to the town to bring them what they needed; thus they lodged that night. The duke was angrier at the maiden than before, and had her come before him and told her to prepare her soul, for next day she would be burned if she did not tell them the truth about the knight; but she did not want to say anything. The nephew of the dwarf knelt before the duke and told him the promise he had made, begging him for heaven's sake to give the maiden up to him; but this was futile, for he would rather have lost his entire estate than to break his oath.

It grieved the knight sorely because he had wanted to discharge his feudal obligation to Agrajes. Then the next morning the duke ordered the maiden to be brought before him and said,

"Choose either the fire or to tell me what I ask you, for you cannot escape from making one of these choices."

She said,

"You will do your will, but not what is right."

Then the duke ordered twelve armed men and two armed knights to take her with them, and he mounted a big horse with only a staff in his hand, and went with them to burn the maiden at the edge of the forest; and having arrived there, the duke said,

"Now set fire to her and let her die with her stubbornness."

Don Galvanes and his nephew saw all this very well, for they were on the watch, not for it, but for any other thing they could do to enrage the duke; and since they were armed, they quickly mounted and commanded a squire to concern himself only with taking the maiden and putting her out of harm's way. And setting out thither, they saw the fire and how they already were about to throw the maiden into it; but she was so frightened that she said,

"Sir, I shall tell the truth."

And the duke, who was approaching to listen to her, saw Don Galvanes and Agrajes as they came on the field shouting,

"You have got to set the maiden free."

The two knights came at them and they struck each other with their lances very fiercely. But the knights of the duke both fell to the ground, and the one that Galvanes overthrew was beyond any need of a physician. The duke threw his escort between himself and them. And Galvanes said to him,

"Now you will see the war that you have undertaken."

And they let themselves go at him; and the duke said to his men,

"Kill their horses and they will not be able to leave."

But the knights hurled themselves into their midst so fiercely, striking in all directions with their swords and trampling them with their horses, that they scattered them over the field, some dead and others crippled; and those who remained fled at full speed. When the duke saw this, he was uncertain and began to go toward the town as fast as he could, and Galvanes went after him for a bit, saying,

"Stop, sir duke, and you will see what sort of person you have taken to hating."

But he only fled and shouted for help; and Galvanes and his nephew on turning back found that the squire had the maiden on his palfrey and he on a horse of one of the dead knights, and they went with her toward the forest. The duke armed himself with his whole company and reaching the forest did not see the knights, and he distributed his own men throughout it in groups of five; and he went with five others along a highway and made a tremendous effort to hasten along until being above a valley, he looked down and saw them as they were going along with the maiden, and the duke said,

"Now at them and don't spare them."

And they went at full speed of the horses. Galvanes, who saw them thus, said,

"Nephew, let your prowess in knowing how to defend yourself be shown, for this is the duke and those of his company; they are

five in number, but let not cowardice be felt in us on that account."

Agrajes, who was very courageous, said,

"Certainly, uncle, being with you, I would give little for five of the members of the duke's retinue."

At this juncture the duke arrived and said to them,

"It's unlucky for you that you dishonored me, and it bothers me that even by killing such as you I shall not be avenged."

Galvanes said,

"Now at them."

Then they charged at each other and struck each other with their lances on their shields so hard that they were immediately shattered, but the two held steadfast so well that they could not budge them from their saddles; and grasping their swords they struck each other mighty blows, as they well knew how to do. And the duke's men attacked them fiercely, so that their battle with swords was harsh and cruel. Agrajes went and attacked the duke with great fury and struck him under the visor of his helmet; and the blow was so heavy that cutting through the helmet, he cut his nose to cheek level. And the duke, considering himself a goner, began to flee as fast as he could, and Agrajes after him; and not being able to overtake him, he turned about and saw how his uncle was defending himself from the four, and said to himself,

"Oh, God, protect such a good knight from these scoundrels!"

And he went and attacked them fiercely, and Galvanes struck the one in such wise that he made his sword fall from his hand; and as he saw him with his shield on his arm, he took him by the boss of the shield and jerked him so hard that he knocked him to the ground, and he saw that Agrajes had overthrown one of the others, and Galvanes charged at the two who were attacking him; but they did not wait, for he could not overtake them as they fled through the forest; and returning to where the maiden was, he asked her if there was some populated place nearby.

"Yes," said she, "for there is a fortress of a knight by the name of Olivas, who on account of being an enemy of the duke, because the latter had killed one of his brothers, will welcome you gladly."

Then she guided them until they arrived at the fortress; the knight gave them a good welcome, and a much better one when

he learned what had happened to them. Then next day they armed themselves and were resuming their journey, but Olivas took them aside and said to them,

"Sirs, the duke killed a brother of mine, a good knight, deceitfully, and I wish to denounce and challenge him before King Lisuarte; I ask of you advice and help as from knights who go about exposing themselves to great dangers in order to maintain trustworthiness and to force those to maintain it who without fear of God and of their own shame violate it."

"Knight," said Galvanes, "you are obliged to seek satisfaction for this slaying that you mention, if it was done shamefully, and we to help you if it be necessary, since you have a just cause, and so we shall do if the duke wishes to put several knights into the combat, because like you we hate him and have been defied by him."

"I thank you very much," said he, "and I wish to go along with you."

"In God's name," said they.

Then they armed themselves and set out on the way to Windsor, where they thought to find King Lisuarte.

CHAPTER XVII

How Amadis was very well liked in the court of King Lisuarte, and the news he learned concerning his brother Galaor.

It has been related to you how Amadis remained in the household of King Lisuarte as knight of the queen at the time that he killed that haughty and brave Dardan in battle, and there he was greatly beloved and honored by the king as well as by all others; and one day the queen sent for him in order to speak with him, and while he was in her presence, a damsel entered by the gate of the palace and kneeling before the queen, said,

"Lady, is there a knight here who bears arms with a lion device?"

She understood then that the damsel was speaking about Amadis, and said,

"Damsel, what do you want?"

"Madam," said she, "I bring a message from a novice knight who has made the most eminent and greatest beginning in knighthood that any knight has ever made in all the islands."

"You are saying a great deal," said the queen, "for there are many knights in the islands, and you do not know about all of them."

"Madam," said the damsel, "That is true; but when you learn what this one did, you will agree with what I say."

"Then I beg of you," said the queen, "to tell it."

"If I were to see," said she, "the very good knight whom he esteems more than all others, I would tell him this and many other things that he directs me to say."

The queen, who was desirous of learning about it, said,

"You may see here the good knight whom you seek, and I tell you truly that it is he."

"Madam," said the maiden, "I believe it, for such a good lady as you would tell only the truth."

Thereupon she said to Amadis:

"Sir, the handsome young man whom you dubbed knight before the castle of Baldoyd when you overcame the two knights of the bridge and the three of the causeway, and seized the lord of the castle and took out by force of arms Urganda's friend, sends his regards to you as to the one whom he regards as his overlord; and he sends word to you that he will strive to be a good knight or otherwise he will pay with his own death; and that if he be good in prowess and in chivalric honor, he will tell you concerning your affairs more than you now know; and that if it turns out that you ought not to esteem him, he will remain silent."

At this juncture Amadis remembered immediately that it was his brother, and the tears came to his eyes, which all the duennas and maidens who were there noticed, and his lady more than everyone else, for she was greatly surprised at it, wondering whether on account of her such emotion could come upon him as to make him weep, for that had come about not from grief but from great joy. The queen said,

"Now tell us of the beginnings of the knight that you praise so much."

"Madam," said the maiden, "the first place where he undertook a quest was on the Rock of Galtares, fighting with that brave and strong Albadan, whom in the field, in single combat, he overcame and killed."

Then she related how the battle took place, and what she had seen and the reason it took place.

The queen and all the others were greatly astounded at such a rare thing.

"Damsel," said Amadis, "do you know where the knight went when he slew the giant?"

"Sir," said she, "I left him after he won the fight, and I left him with another damsel who was to guide him to her lady who had sent her there, and I cannot tell you any more."

And she left there.

The queen said,

"Amadis, do you know who that knight was?"

"Madam, I know, although I am not acquainted with him."

Then he told her that he was his brother, and that the giant had carried him away as a child, and what Urganda had said of him.

"Certainly," said the queen, "your upbringing and his are two rare wonders. And how could it be that you should not know of your family, nor they of you? And it would greatly please me to see such a knight in the household of the king, my lord."

They were talking thus, just as you hear, for a long while. But Oriana, who was some distance from them, did not hear anything, and was very angry because she had seen Amadis crying. And she said to Mabilia:

"Call your cousin and we shall find out what it was that happened to him."

She called him. And Amadis went to them, and when he saw himself before his lady, he forgot everything in the world; and Oriana said with an angry and troubled countenance,

"At the damsel's news, of whom were you reminded that it made you weep?"

He related to her everything just as he had told it to the queen. Oriana lost all of her anger and became very happy, and said to him,

"My lord, I beg you to pardon me, for I suspected what I should not."

"Ah, madam!" said he, "There is nothing to pardon, for anger toward you has never entered my heart."

Besides this he said to her:

"Madam, may it please you that I go to look for my brother and bring him here into your service, for otherwise he will not come."

And Amadis said this for the sake of bringing him, for he much desired it, and because it seemed to him that Galaor would gladly rest up without looking for adventures in which he might win glory and honor.

Oriana said to him:

"So help me God, I would be very happy for such a knight to come here and that you both might dwell together, and I agree to your departure; but tell the queen and let it appear that you go at her command."

He thanked her humbly and went to the queen and said,

"Madam, it would be well for us to have that knight in the company of the king."

"Certainly," said she, "I would be very glad of it if it could be done."

"It can be," said he, "by giving me, madam, permission to look for him and to bring him, for in no other way shall we have him here without much time elapsing while he wins more honor."

"In the name of God," said she, "I grant you permission to leave, provided that on finding him you return."

Amadis went away very happy, and bidding farewell to her and to his lady and all the others, went to his lodging; and the next morning, after having heard mass, he armed himself and mounted his horse accompanied only by Gandalin, who carried his other weapons, and started on his way. He traveled until night, when he lodged in the house of an old nobleman; and the next day, continuing on his way he entered a forest; and after going through it for two-thirds of the day, he saw coming toward him a duenna who was bringing with her two maidens and four squires, and they were bearing a knight on a litter and they were all weeping bitterly. Amadis went up to her and said,

"Madam, What are you carrying in that litter?"

"I carry," said she, "all of my sorrow and sadness, which is a knight to whom I was married, and he is so badly wounded that I think he will die."

He approached the litter and raised the cloth that covered him and saw inside a knight quite tall and well built; but of his good looks nothing was apparent, for his face was black and swollen and bruised in many places; and reaching out his hand to him, Amadis said:

"Sir knight, from whom did you receive this bad treatment?"

He did not answer but turned his head away a little; then Amadis said to the duenna:

"From whom did the knight receive such harm?"

"Sir," said she, "from a knight who guards a bridge down this road a bit; who, not wanting us to pass, said that first he had to tell him whether he was from the household of King Lisuarte, and my lord asked why he wished to know that. The knight said to him:

" 'Because no one who is Lisuarte's shall pass here whom I don't kill.' And my lord asked him why he hated so much the knights of King Lisuarte.

" 'I hate him very much and would like to have him in my power in order to take vengeance on him.' He replied asking again why he hated him so much. He said:

" 'Because he has in his household the knight who killed that mighty Dardan; and because of this he will receive dishonor from me, and from many others.' And when my husband heard this, irked at those words that the knight spoke, he said to him:

" 'Know you that I am his man and his vassal, for I would not deny it on account of you or anyone else.'

"Then the knight of the bridge, with the great anger that he felt for him, took up arms as quickly as he could and they began their fight, which was very harsh and wondrous fierce, and finally my lord was as battered as you, sir, now see; and the knight believed he was dead and bade us carry him to the house of King Lisuarte the third day."

Amadis said,

"Madam, give me one of these squires to point out to me the knight, for since he received this harm out of regard for me, it is more fitting that I avenge him than that anyone else do so."

"What," said she, "are you the one on account of whom he hates King Lisuarte?"

"That I am," he said, "and if I can, I shall see to it that he not hate him or anyone else."

"Ah, good knight," said she, "may God lead you on a good journey and give you strength!"

And on her giving him a squire to go with him, they took leave of each other. And the lady continued on her way as before and Amadis on his. He traveled until they reached the bridge, and he saw how the knight was playing backgammon with another,

and immediately the knight stopped playing and came toward him on horseback completely armed, and said,

"Stop, knight; do not enter the bridge unless you swear first."

"And what shall I swear?"

"Whether you are of the household of King Lisuarte; and if you are, I shall cause you to lose your head."

"I don't know about that," said Amadis, "but I tell you that I am of his household and a knight of the queen's, his wife, but this has not been for long."

"How long have you been her knight?" said the knight of the bridge.

"Since a challenged lady came there."

"What!" said the knight, "Are you the one who fought for her?"

"I caused her right to be upheld," said Amadis.

"By my head," said the knight, "may I make you lose yours if I can, for you killed one of the best of my family."

"I did not kill him," said Amadis, "but made him withdraw the arrogant demand that he made, and as an evil heretic he killed himself."

"That doesn't help you any," said the knight, "for he was killed by you and not by any other, and you shall die for him."

Then he moved against him at the full speed of his horse, and Amadis toward him; and both struck each other on their shields with their lances, and they were at once shattered, but the knight of the bridge fell to the ground without any delay, whence he was very much astounded that Amadis had overthrown him so easily. And Amadis, whose helmet he had knocked askew on his head, straightened it; and meanwhile the knight had the opportunity to get up on his horse, and he gave him three blows with the sword before Amadis grasped his own; but seizing it, he went for the knight and struck him a downward blow on the edge of his helmet and cut from it a piece, and the sword reached his neck and cut it so much that the head was not able to support itself and remained dangling over his chest, and immediately he died. When those of the bridge saw this, they fled. The squire of the duenna was frightened by two such blows, one with the lance and the other with the sword. Amadis said to him,

"Now go and tell your lady what you saw."

When he heard this, he went on his way at once, and Amadis crossed the bridge without being stopped there any more; and he traveled along the road until he came out of the forest and entered a very beautiful, wondrously large fertile plain, and he liked very much the green grass that he saw all around, as one who was flourishing in the verdancy and sublimity of a love affair; and he looked to his right and saw a dwarf of very misshapen appearance who was riding along on a palfrey, and calling him, he asked him where he came from. The dwarf answered him and said,

"I come from the house of the Count of Clare."

"By chance," said Amadis, "did you see there a novice knight by the name of Galaor?"

"No, sir," said the dwarf, "but I know where there will be three days from now the best knight that ever entered this land."

Hearing this Amadis said,

"Ah, dwarf, by the faith that you owe to God, take me there and I shall see him."

"Yes, I shall take you," said the dwarf, "on condition that you grant me a boon, and you shall go with me to where you may seek him out."

Amadis, with the great desire he had to know about Galaor, his brother, said,

"I grant it to you."

"In the name of God," said the dwarf, "be our departure; and now I shall guide you to where you shall see the very good knight, very courageous at arms."

Then said Amadis,

"I beg you out of regard for me to take me by the highway that we may traverse most quickly."

"I shall do so," said he.

And they then left that road, and taking another, journeyed all that day without encountering any adventure, and night overtook them near a fortress.

"Sir," said the dwarf, "here you may lodge, where there is a duenna who will serve you."

Amadis reached that fortress and found the duenna, who lodged him very well, giving him his supper and a very comfortable bed in which to sleep; but he did not do so, for his meditation about his lady was so great that he slept almost not at all that night; and next day, having said farewell to the duenna, he started out under guidance of the dwarf and went until noon. And he saw a knight who was fighting with two others; and coming up to them he said,

"Stop, sirs, please, and tell me why you are fighting."

They drew aside, and one of the twain said,

"Because he says that he alone is as able to perform a great deed as the two of us together."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "the cause is petty, for the bravery of anyone does not occasion the loss of it by someone else."

They saw that he spoke with sound judgment, and they gave up the fight and asked Amadis if he knew the knight who had fought for the duenna at the court of King Lisuarte, where Dardan, the good knight, was slain.

"And why do you ask?" said he.

"Because we should like to find him," said they.

"I don't know whether you speak with good or evil will. But I saw him not long ago at the court of King Lisuarte."

And so he left them and proceeded on his way.

The knights conversed together, and spurring their horses they went after Amadis; and he, who saw them coming, took his arms, and neither he nor they carried lances, for they had broken them in their jousts. The dwarf said to him:

"How about it, sir, don't you see there are three knights?"

"I don't care," said he, "for if they attack me without cause, I shall defend myself if I can."

They arrived and said,

"Knight, we wish to ask a boon of you, and grant it to us; if not, you shall not leave us."

"Rather I shall grant it to you," said he, "if I can rightly do so."

"Then tell us," said the one, "as a loyal knight, where you think we shall find the knight by whom Dardan was killed."

He who could only tell the truth said,

"I am he, and if I had known that such was the boon, in order not to be praised for it I would not have granted it to you."

When the knights heard him, they all said,

"Ah, scoundrel, you die!"

And grasping their swords they charged at him very furiously. Amadis grasped his sword, as a stout-hearted man, and rushed at them very angrily on account of having given them quittance for their battle and because they were attacking him so evilly. And he struck one of them on top of his helmet such a blow that he landed it on the shoulder in such wise that his coat of mail with the flesh and bones was all cut, to the point of the sword's reaching down to his side; thus with his arm dangling he fell from his horse. And Amadis charged at the two who were furiously attacking him and gave one of them such a blow on the helmet that he made it fly from his head, and the sword came down on his neck and cleaved it almost through, and the knight fell. The other, who saw this, began to flee whence he had come. Amadis, who saw that he was riding a fast horse and that he was putting distance between them, stopped following him and returned to Gandalin. The dwarf said to him:

"Certainly, sir, I have a better surety for the boon you promised me than I expected, and now let us go on."

So that day they went and lodged at the house of a hermit, where they had a very poor supper. In the morning Amadis returned to the road along which the dwarf was guiding him and traveled until the hour of tierce; and then the dwarf showed him in a beautiful valley two lofty pines and under them a knight fully armed on a big horse, and two knights who were pursuing their horses, which were running away through the countryside because the knight of the pine had unseated their riders; and beneath the other pine lay another knight resting on his helmet and with his shield beside him, and more than twenty lances around the pine tree, and nearby two saddled horses. Amadis, who saw them, said to the dwarf:

"Do you know these knights?"

The dwarf said:

"Do you see that knight stretched out under the pine?"

"I see him," said he.

"Well that is," said the dwarf, "the good knight whom I was to show you."

"Do you know his name?" said Amadis.

"Yes, I do, sir, for his name is Angriote d'Estravaus, and he is the finest knight that I would be able to show you almost anywhere."

"Now tell me why he has so many lances there?"

"That I shall tell you," said the dwarf. "He is in love with a lady of this land and she is not in love with him, but he laid such siege to her that her relatives forcibly put her in his power. And when he had her in his power, he said he considered himself the richest man in the world. She said to him, 'You shall not consider yourself urbane to hold thus a lady by force; you can easily hold me, but never will you have my love given willingly, unless you do one thing for me first.' 'Lady,' said Angriote, 'Is it a thing I can do?' 'Yes,' said she. 'Then command me for I shall carry it out until death.' The lady, who hated him intensely, thought to put him where he would die or gain so many enemies that with them she would defend herself from him; and she gave orders that he and his brother should guard this valley of the pines from all the knights errant who might pass through it, and that they should make them promise by force of arms that, appearing in the court of King Lisuarte, they would grant that the lady love of Angriote was more beautiful than any of their own ladies; and if by chance this knight, Angriote's brother, whom you see on horseback, were conquered, that it not be possible to fight any more for this reason, and all the quest devolves on Angriote alone; and they should guard the valley for one year. And so the knights guard it by day, and at night they lodge in a castle that lies behind that knoll that you see. But I tell you that it has been three months since they began, and never has Angriote laid hands on a knight, for his brother has overcome them all."

"I believe," said Amadis, "that you are telling me the truth, for I heard at the court of King Lisuarte that there had been a knight there who had conceded that lady to be more beautiful than his own lady love, and I believe her name is Grovenesa."

"That is true," said the dwarf; "and, sir, since I have complied with your request, stick to what you promised me, and go with me where you are to go."

"Very willingly," said Amadis. "Which is the right road?"

"Through the valley," said the dwarf, "but I don't want us to go through it, because it has a certain obstruction."

"Don't worry about that," said he.

Then he pushed onward, and at the entrance of the valley he found a squire who said to him:

"Sir knight, you do not pass any further unless you concede that the lady love of that knight lying under the pine is more beautiful than yours."

"If it is God's will," said Amadis, "I shall never concede such a great falsehood unless by force you make me say it or you take my life."

When the squire heard this, he said,

"Then turn about; if you do not, you will have to fight with them."

Said Amadis,

"If they attack me, I shall defend myself if I can."

And he went forward without any fear whatever.

CHAPTER XVIII

How Amadis fought with Angriote and with his brother and overcame them, who were guarding a pass into a valley at which they were maintaining by force of arms that no one had a more beautiful ladylove than Angriote had.

As soon as the brother of Angriote saw him, he took up his arms and kept advancing toward him, and said,

"Certainly, knight, you have done a very mad thing not to concede what has been demanded of you, for you will have to fight with me."

"This gives me more pleasure," said Amadis, "than to agree to the greatest falsehood in the world."

"And I know," said the knight, "that you will concede it in another place where greater shame will be yours."

"I do not think so," said he, "God willing."

"Defend yourself then," said the knight.

Then they went at each other at the full speed of their horses, and they struck each other on the shields, and the knight pierced the shield of Amadis, but was stopped by the coat of mail and his lance broke. And Amadis struck him so hard that he hurled him over his horse's haunches to the ground; and the knight, who was very brave, pulled at the reins so hard that he broke them; and clutching them in his hands, he struck the ground on his neck and back, and was so badly injured as to lose all consciousness of what was going on. Amadis got down to him and took his helmet from his head and saw him so out of his senses that he was speechless. And taking him by the arm, he drew him up, and

the knight came to and opened his eyes; and Amadis said to him:

"You die unless you yield yourself up as a prisoner."

The knight, who saw the sword over his head, fearing death quickly agreed. Then Amadis mounted his horse, for he saw that Angriote was mounting and was taking his arms, and was sending him a lance by his squire. Amadis took the lance and went for the knight, and the latter came toward him at top speed; and they struck each other with their lances on the shields, so that they were broken, without doing any other harm, for as very handsome knights they passed by each other, such knights as would not frequently be found eleswhere. Amadis grasped his sword and turned his horse toward him, and Angriote said,

"Stop, sir knight, do not hurry to do battle with the swords, for you might well fight it, and I believe that it would be to your detriment."

He said this because he thought there was no knight in the world a better wielder of the sword than he was.

"And let us joust until those lances fail us and one of us fall from his horse."

"Sir," said Amadis, "I have things to do elsewhere and cannot stop so long."

"What?" said Angriote, "do you think to part from me so easily? I do not think so, but I beg you fervently that before using our swords, we joust again."

Amadis agreed to it, since it pleased him, and then they both went and took lances, the ones that best satisfied them; and moving away from each other, they charged and struck each other with the lances very violently; and Angriote fell to the ground and his horse on top of him; and Amadis who passed by, collided with Angriote's horse and fell with it on the other side, and one fragment of the lance which had gone through his shield with the force of the fall, pierced his coat of mail and through his flesh, but not much. He quickly got up, like one who did not want shame for himself, the more so because it involved his lady; and he quickly drew out of himself the fragment of the lance, and grasping his sword, rushed at Angriote, whom he saw with his sword in hand. And Angriote said to him,

"Knight, I consider you a good youth, and I beg of you before you receive any further harm that you concede that my ladylove is more beautiful than yours."

"Be silent!" said Amadis, "for such a falsehood will never come out of my mouth."

Then they went forward to attack and strike with their swords such powerful blows that they frightened those who were looking on just as they did themselves who received them, while wondering to themselves whether they could endure them. But this fight could not last long, for Amadis fought because of the beauty of his lady, whence he would have preferred to be dead rather than to fail one iota in what he owed her, and he began to deliver blows with all his strength so hard that neither his great knowledge nor his great vigor of sword play was of any benefit to Angriote, for in a short time Amadis drained him of all his strength, and so many times caused his sword to descend on Angriote's head and his body that from more than twenty places the blood was already flowing. When Angriote saw himself in danger of death, he stepped aside as far as he was able, and said,

"Certainly, knight, you are a better man than one would think."

"Surrender immediately," said Amadis, "and it will be to your advantage, for you are so badly injured that were it a finish fight your life would be finished also, and I should be sorry about it, for I esteem you more than you think."

He said this because of Angriote's great skill at arms and for the courtesy that he had used with the duenna when he had her in his power. Angriote, who could do no more, said,

"I concede myself to be your prisoner, as that of the finest knight in the world, and thus should all those who bear arms concede; and I tell you, sir knight, that I do not consider it a mere discredit, but rather a great loss that today I lose the thing that I love most in the world."

"You shall not lose," said Amadis, "if I can be of avail, for it would be very unreasonable if that great restraint which you used with that lady you mention did not bring out the satisfaction and reward that it deserves, and you shall have it, if I can accomplish it, more quickly than before. This I promise as a loyal

knight as soon as I return from a quest on which I am going."

"Sir," said Angriote, "Where shall I find you?"

"In the court of King Lisuarte," said Amadis, "for there I shall return, God willing."

Angriote would have liked to bring him to his castle, but he did not want to leave the way that he had pursued previously; and taking his leave of them, he placed himself under the guidance of the dwarf in order to give him the boon that he had promised him; and he journeyed five days without encountering any adventure; at the end of these the dwarf showed him a very beautiful and marvelously strong castle, and said to him:

"Sir, in that castle you are to give me the boon."

"In the name of God," said Amadis, "I shall give it to you if I can."

"I have that confidence," said the dwarf, "and even more since I have seen your great deeds. Sir, do you know what this castle is called?"

"No," said he, "for I have never entered this land."

"Know you," said the dwarf, "that it is called Valderin."

And talking thus, they arrived at the castle; and the dwarf said,

"Sir, take your arms."

"How is that," said Amadis, "will they be needed?"

"Yes," said he, "for they do not allow those who enter there to leave so easily."

Amadis took his arms and pushed forward, and the dwarf and Gandalin behind him; and when he entered the gate he looked to one side and the other, but saw nothing, and said to the dwarf,

"This place seems to me to be deserted."

"By heavens," said he, "to me also."

"Well, why did you bring me here, and what boon do you want me to give you?"

The dwarf said,

"Certainly, sir, I saw here the most valiant knight and the strongest at arms that I think I shall ever see, and he killed there at that gate two knights, and the one of them was my lord, and the latter he killed so cruelly, as one who never had mercy; and I should like to request of you the head of that scoundrel who

killed him, for already I have brought other knights to avenge him, and, alas, some of them received death and others cruel imprisonment."

"Certainly, dwarf," said Amadis, "you are loyal, but you shouldn't bring knights, unless you tell them beforehand with whom they must fight."

"Sir," said the dwarf, "the knight is very well known as one of the fiercest in the world, and if I mentioned him, there would be no one so bold as to dare come with me."

"And do you know his name?"

"Yes, I know it," said the dwarf, "for he is called Arcalaus the Enchanter."

Amadis looked everywhere and did not see anyone, and he dismounted and waited until vespers, and said,

"Dwarf, what do you wish me to do?"

"Sir," said he, "night is coming on, and I do not consider it good to lodge here."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "I shall not leave here until the knight comes, or someone who can tell me about him."

"By heaven, I shall not stay here," said the dwarf, "for I am very much afraid, for Arcalaus knows me and knows that I am striving to have him killed."

"Nevertheless," said Amadis, "here you shall remain, and I do not want to free myself from granting the boon even if I can."

And Amadis saw a courtyard beyond and entered it, but he saw no one, and he saw a very dark place, with some steps that went underground; and Gandalin brought along the dwarf so that he would not flee, for he was very much afraid, and Amadis said,

"Let us enter down these steps and see what there is there."

"Ah, sir," said the dwarf, "mercy, for there is nothing which would induce me to enter such a fearful place; and by heavens, let me go, for I am very frightened at heart."

"I shall not let you go," said Amadis, "until you have the boon that I promised you or you see how I do all I can."

The dwarf, who was quite frightened, said,

"Let me go, and I free you from the obligation of the boon, and I consider myself content without it."

"In so far as I am concerned," said Amadis, "I command you not to release me from the boon, and that you not say afterwards that I failed in what I had the obligation to do."

"Sir, I give you your release and consider myself satisfied," said he, "and I wish to wait for you outside where we came in until I see whether you come out."

"Good luck go with you," said Amadis, "and I shall remain here tonight, until morning waiting for the knight."

The dwarf went his way and Amadis descended the steps, and went ahead, for he saw nothing, and he went down them until he found himself on a level; and it was so dark that he did not know where he might be, and so he went forward and bumped into a wall, and rubbing his hands along it he touched an iron rod on which was hanging a key; and he unlocked a padlock of the metal cage, and he heard a voice that said:

"Oh, Lord God, how long will this great distress last? Ah, death, why do you delay where you would be so necessary!"

Amadis listened a while and heard no more, and he went farther into the cellar, his shield on his neck and his helmet on his head and his drawn sword in his hand; and then he found himself in a beautiful hall where there was a lamp which illuminated it; and he saw on a bed six armed men sleeping, and they had near them shields and battle axes. He came and took one of the axes and went forward and heard more than a hundred loud voices that cried:

"Lord God, send us death, so that we suffer not such grievous distress."

He was greatly astounded to hear them, and at the sound of the voices, the men who were sleeping awoke and one said to another:

"Arise and take a whip and make those wretched people be quiet, for they do not let us enjoy our sleep."

"That I shall do willingly," said he, "and let them pay for the dream from which they awakened me."

Then he quickly got up, and taking the whip he saw Amadis coming toward him, whom he was very surprised to see there, and said,

"Who goes there?"

"I go," said Amadis.

"And who are you?" said the man.

"I am a foreign knight," said Amadis.

"Well, who let you in here without any permission?"

"No one," said Amadis, "for I entered by myself."

"You," said he; "this was your bad luck, for it will be necessary that you be placed under that same duress as are those captives who shout so."

And turning he quickly closed the door and awakening the others, said:

"Comrades, you see here an unfortunate errant knight who entered here of his own free will."

Then one of them, who was the jailer and was excessively large and strong, said,

"Now leave me with him, for I shall put him with those who lie yonder."

And taking a battle axe and a shield, he came toward him, and said:

"If you fear death, put down your arms, and if not, await it, for from my battle axe you will quickly have it."

Amadis was furious to hear himself threatened and said,

"I wouldn't give a straw for you, for no matter how big and brave you may be, you are evil and of evil blood, and your heart will fail you."

And then they raised their axes and each attacked the other with them; the jailer hit him on top of the helmet and the axe went part way through it; and Amadis struck him on the buckler so that it went through it, and the other, who stood aside, caught the axe on his buckler; and Amadis grasped his sword, and rushed at him and cut off the shaft of his axe; the other, who was very brave, thought to put him under himself, but it came about otherwise, for in Amadis there was more strength than in any one else who might be found at that period; the jailer seized him in his arms and struggled to throw him down, and Amadis hit him on the face with the hilt of his sword so that he broke one jaw-bone and hurled him down in front of him stunned, and struck him on the head in such a way that he was beyond any need of

a physician; the others who saw them shouted not to kill him, otherwise Amadis would be killed.

"I don't know how it will come out," said Amadis, "but of this man I shall make sure."

And putting his sword in its scabbard, he pulled the axe out of his buckler and went at them, for they all together were coming at him to attack him, and they dealt him blows as hard as they could; but he struck the one and split his head open to the brain, bringing him down at his feet; and then struck another, who was harassing him the most, in the side and opened it so that he knocked him down; and he seized another one by his axe so forcefully that he knocked him to his knees on the ground, and so this one as well as the other who sought to attack him, begged mercy, that he not kill them.

"Then put down your arms at once," said Amadis, "and show me these people who are shouting."

They put them down and then went at once ahead of him; Amadis heard groaning and crying in a small chamber, and said,

"Who lies here?"

"Sir," said they, "a lady who is very troubled."

"Then open this door," said he, "and I shall look at her."

One of them returned to where the big jailer was lying, and taking from him two keys that he had on his belt, opened the door of the chamber, and the duenna, who thought it was the jailer, said,

"Ah, man, for heaven's sake, have mercy on me and give me death, and not so many torments such as you are giving me." Likewise she said, "Oh, king, on an unfortunate day was I so beloved by you, for your love is costing me so dearly!"

Amadis greatly pitied her, for tears came to his eyes and he said,

"Lady, I am not the one you think; rather I am the one who will take you out of here if I can."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" she said, "who are you who were able to enter here?"

"I am a foreign knight," said he.

"Then what has become of the big cruel jailer and the others who were on guard?"

"What will happen to all the evil ones who do not mend their ways," said he.

And he gave orders to one of the men to bring him a light, and he did so, and Amadis saw the duenna with a heavy chain around her throat and her clothing torn in many places, so that her flesh was showing. And as she saw that Amadis was regarding her with pity, she said,

"Sir, although you see me thus, there was once a time when I was rich, as a king's daughter, which I am, and on account of a king I am in this distress."

"Lady," said he, "do not lament, for such as these are the turns and acts of Fortune, because no one can flee from them or escape them; and if the one on account of whom you suffer and endure this ill is a person who is worth something, your poverty and humble garb will turn into wealth, and your distress into great joy; but we ought to put but little trust in either one."

And he made them cast off her chain and ordered them to bring something with which she could cover herself. And the man who held the candles brought a scarlet robe that Arcalaus had given his jailer. Amadis covered her with it, and taking her by the hand, took her out to the hall, telling her not to fear returning there unless they killed him first; and he bringing her with him, they came to where the big jailer and the other dead men were, at which she was greatly astounded, and said,

"Ah, hands, how many wounds, how many acts of cruelty have you inflicted on me and on others who lie here without deserving it! And although you do not feel the vengeance, that hapless soul in purgatory which sustained you feels it."

"Lady," said Amadis, "as soon as I put you in charge of my squire, I shall return to bring them all out so that no one remains."

Thus they went ahead, and on their reaching the barred cell a man came there and said to the one who carried the candles,

"Arcalaus asks you where the knight is who came in here: whether you killed him or whether he is a prisoner."

He was so frightened that he did not speak and the candles fell from his hands; Amadis took them and said,

"Don't be afraid, knave. Of what are you afraid when you are in my keeping? Go ahead."

And they went up the stairs until they emerged into the courtyard and saw that much of the night was over and the moon was very bright. When the lady saw the sky and the open air, she was wondrously happy, as one who had not seen them for a long time, and she said,

"Ah, good knight, God keep you and give you the reward that you deserve for getting me out of here."

"Amadis took her by the hand and arrived where he had left Gandalin; but he did not find him, and was afraid he had lost him, and said,

"If the best squire in the world is dead, for him will be taken the greatest and most cruel vengeance that was ever taken if I live."

At this juncture he heard shouts, and going in their direction he found the dwarf, who had left him, suspended by a leg from a rafter and under him a fire of ill-smelling things, and saw in another place Gandalin, for even he was being tied up; and when Amadis was about to untie him, he said,

"Sir, help the dwarf first, for he is in great distress."

Amadis did so, for holding him on his arm, he cut the cord with his sword, and put him on the ground and went to untie Gandalin, saying,

"It is certain, my friend, that he who put you here did not esteem you as highly as I do."

And he went to the gate of the castle and found it closed by a portcullis, and when he saw that he could not leave, went over to one side of the courtyard where there was a stone bench, and sat down there with the lady, and took with him Gandalin and the dwarf and the two men from the jail. Gandalin showed him a building where they had put his horse, and he went there, and breaking down the door, found it saddled and bridled, and brought it along; and willingly he would have sought to return for the prisoners, but he was afraid that the lady would be harmed by Arcalaus, since he was already in the castle, and he decided to wait for daybreak. And he asked the lady who the

king was who loved her and for whom she had suffered that great distress.

"Sir," said she, "This Arcalaus being a very great enemy of the king whose beloved I am, and on finding out our relationship, not being able to obtain vengeance on the king, decided to take it on me, believing that this was the greatest harm he could do him. And although he seized me in the presence of many people, he put himself with me in such a dark fog that no one could see me. This was by means of the enchantments that he conjures up; and he put me there where you found me, saying that by my suffering such darkness, and the one who loves me not seeing or having information about me, his heart would take delight in that vengeance."

"Tell me," said Amadis, "if you please, who that king is."

"Arban of North Wales," said the lady, "I do not know whether you know of him."

"Thanks be to God!" said Amadis, "for he is the knight whom I love the most in the world; now I have not so much pity for you as before, for you have suffered for one of the best men in the world, for one by whom your will shall be satisfied with doubled joy and honor."

Speaking of these and other things, they were there until bright daylight; then Amadis saw at the windows a knight who said,

"Are you the one who killed my jailer and my men?"

"What!" said Amadis; "Are you the one who unjustly kills knights and imprisons matrons and maidens? Certainly I consider you the most disloyal knight in the world, on account of your being more cruel than good."

"You do not know yet," said the knight, "all my cruelty; but I shall see to it that you know it before long and I shall see to it that you do not strive to correct or annul anything that I do rightly or wrongly."

And he withdrew from the window, and it was not long before he saw him sally forth to the courtyard very well armed and mounted on a large horse; and he was one of the biggest knights in the world exclusive of giants; Amadis stared at him,

believing that in him there was enormous strength by right, and Arcalaus said to him,

"Why are you staring at me?"

"I am staring at you," said he, "because judging by your appearance, you probably could be a very distinguished man if your evil deeds and the disloyalty that you are desirous of maintaining were not preventing it."

"To a fine pass," said Arcalaus, "has fortune brought me if I were to be rebuked by such as you."

And he went for him with lance lowered, and Amadis likewise, and Arcalaus struck him on the shield and his lance broke into pieces, and they and their horses collided so violently that they fell to each side; but quickly they were on their feet, as knights who were very agile and strong. And they struck each other with their swords in such wise that it became such a cruel, fierce battle between them that no one could have believed it if he had not seen it — a battle which lasted a long time, both being of great strength and courage. But Arcalaus withdrew to one side and said,

"Knight, you are in danger of death, and I do not know who you are; tell me so that I may know, for I am thinking more about killing you than overcoming you."

"My death," said Amadis, "is at the will of God, whom I fear; and yours at that of the devil, who is already angry for having supported you and wishes that your body, to which so many evil vices he has given, should perish along with your soul; and since you wish to know who I am, I tell you I bear the name of Amadis of Gaul, and I am Queen Brisena's knight. And now try to put an end to the combat, for I shall not let you rest any longer."

Arcalaus took his shield and his sword and they both struck each other very strong, hard blows, so that the ground was littered with fragments of their shields and coats of mail; and it being now the hour of tierce, when Arcalaus had lost much of his strength, he went to deliver a blow on top of Amadis's helmet, and not being able to hold on to his sword, it flew from his hand and fell to the ground; and when he sought to pick it up, Amadis pushed him so hard that he made him fall on all fours;

and when he arose, he gave him such a blow with the sword on top of his helmet that he befuddled him. When Arcalaus saw himself in danger of death, he began to flee toward a hall from which he had emerged, and Amadis after him, and both entered the hall, but Arcalaus took refuge in a chamber, and at the door of it was a lady who was watching how they fought. Arcalaus, as soon as he was in the room, took a sword and said to Amadis,

"Now come in and fight with me."

"Let us fight in the hall, which is larger," said Amadis.

"I do not wish to," said Arcalaus.

"What!" said Amadis, "you expect to protect yourself in there?"

And putting his shield before him he entered, and raising the sword in order to attack him, he lost his strength in all his limbs, and his senses, and fell to the ground as though dead; Arcalaus said,

"I do not want you to die any other death but this."

And he said to the lady who was watching,

"Does it seem to you, my dear, that I shall avenge myself well on this knight?"

"It seems to me," said she, "that you will avenge yourself at your will."

And then he disarmed Amadis, who was unconscious, and armed himself with those arms, and said to the lady:

"In the name of all that you hold dear, don't move this knight, and leave him as he is, until his soul has departed."

And thus armed he went out to the courtyard and everybody thought that he had killed him; and the lady who had come out of the prison mourned loudly, but Gandalin's mourning was indescribable. And Arcalaus said,

"Lady, look for someone else to take you away from here, for he whom you saw is dispatched."

When this was heard by Gandalin he fell to the ground as though dead. Arcalaus took the lady and said,

"Come with me and see how that ill-starred one who fought with me died."

And taking her to where Amadis was, he said,

"What do you think about it, lady?"

She began to weep bitterly, and said,

"Ah, good knight, how much grief and sadness for many good people your death will bring!"

Arcalaus said to the other lady, who was his wife,

"My dear, as soon as this knight is dead, have this lady returned to the cell from which he took her; and I shall go to the court of King Lisuarte and I shall tell there how I fought with this man, and that of his own free will and mine it was agreed to undertake this combat, on condition that the victor chop off the other's head, and that he go and relate that decapitation within two weeks. And in this way no one will have any right to challenge me for this death, and I shall remain with the greatest glory and supremacy at arms that any knight in all the world may have, by having overcome this one who had no equal."

And returning to the courtyard, he had Gandalin and the dwarf put into the dark prison. Gandalin wished him to kill him and was shouting:

"Scoundrel, for you have killed the most loyal knight ever born!"

But Arcalaus ordered his men to carry him away dragging him by the leg, saying:

"If I killed you, I would not be giving you any hardship; inside there you will have it much greater than death itself."

And mounting Amadis's horse, and taking with him three squires, he set out on the way to where King Lisuarte was.

CHAPTER XIX

How Amadis was enchanted by Arcalaus because he sought to disenchant and take lady Grindalaya out of prison, and how he escaped from the spell under which Arcalaus had put him.

Grindalaya, for this was the name of the imprisoned lady, so sorely grieved over Amadis that it was pitiful to hear her, saying to the wife of Arcalaus and to the other duennas who were with her,

"Oh, my ladies! Don't you see what knightly good looks and at what a tender age he was one of the greatest knights in the world? Cursed be those who know enchantments which so much evil and harm can do to good men! Oh, my God, who art willing to permit this!"

The wife of Arcalaus who, to the same degree that her husband was inured to cruelty and evil, was inured to virtue and piety, was heartsick over what her husband was accustomed to do, and always in her prayers prayed God to reform him, consoled the matron as much as she could. And at this juncture, two damsels entered the gate of the palace carrying in their hands many lighted candles, and they put some of them in the corner of the room where Amadis was lying; the matrons who were there were unable to speak to them or move away from where they were; and one of the damsels took out a book from a coffer that she was carrying under her armpit and began to read from it; and a voice answered her from time to time; and reading in this wise a bit, many voices finally responded in unison inside the chamber, and they appeared to be more than a hundred. Then they saw a book rolling along over the floor of the chamber as

if a wind were carrying it; and it stopped at the feet of the damsel; and she took it and divided it into four parts, and went and burned them in the corners of the chamber where the candles were burning; and she turned to where Amadis was, and taking him by the right hand said,

"Sir, arise, for you have lain in distress for a long time."

Amadis got up and said,

"Holy Mary! How was it that I had almost died?"

"Certainly, sir," said the damsel, "a man such as you ought not to die thus, for rather, God will desire others to die at your hands who deserve it more."

And both damsels returned to where they had come from without saying any more; Amadis asked what had become of Arcalaus; and Grindalaya told Amadis how he had been enchanted, and all that Arcalaus had said, and how he had gone on horseback armed with Amadis's armor to the court of King Lisuarte to tell him how he had killed him. Amadis said,

"I felt it all right when he disarmed me, but all seemed to me like a dream."

And then he returned to the chamber and armed himself with the arms of Arcalaus, and left the hall and asked what they had done with Gandalin and the dwarf. Grindalaya told him they had put them in the prison. Amadis said to the wife of Arcalaus:

"Guard this lady for me as you would your own head until I return."

Then he went down the stairway and went out to the courtyard. When Arcalaus's men saw him thus armed, they fled and scattered in all directions; and he went at once to the jail; and he entered into the hall where he had killed the men, and from there reached the dungeon in which the prisoners were; and the place was very cramped in space and the prisoners many; and it was in length more than one hundred cubits and in width one and one half; and it was as dark as any place where neither light nor air could enter; and there were so many prisoners that there no longer was enough room for them. Amadis entered through the door and called Gandalin, but he was as though dead; and when he heard his voice he trembled and did not think it was

he, for he considered him dead, and thought he himself was under a spell. Amadis made a greater effort and said,

"Gandalin, where are you? Ah, heavens, what ill you do in not answering me!"

And he said to the others,

"Tell me, in heaven's name, whether the squire whom they put in here is alive."

The dwarf, who heard this, recognized that it was Amadis and said,

"Sir, here we lie and we are alive, although we have earnestly desired death."

He was very happy to hear him, and took candles that were at the side of the hall lamp, and lighting them, returned them to the dungeon, and saw where Gandalin and the dwarf were, and said,

"Gandalin, come out, and after you, all that are here, for let no one remain." And they all said,

"Ah, good knight! May God give you a good reward for having rescued us."

Then he took Gandalin, who was the rearmost one, from the chain, and after him the dwarf and all the others who were captives there, one hundred fifteen in number and the thirty knights; and they all followed after Amadis, and went out of the cellar, saying,

"Ah, very fortunate knight! Thus did our Savior Jesus Christ go forth from hell when he took out his servants; may He give you thanks for the kindness you do us."

So they all came out to the courtyard, where on seeing the sun and the sky, they dropped to their knees with hands held high, giving many thanks to God, who had given such strength to that knight to take them out of such a cruel and harsh place. Amadis looked at them, feeling great sorrow to see them so maltreated, for they seemed in their faces more dead than alive; and he saw among them one quite tall and well built, although his impoverishment was a disguise. This man came to Amadis and said,

"Sir knight, who shall we say freed us from this cruel jail and frightful gloom?"

"Sir," said Amadis, "I shall very willingly tell you. Know you that my name is Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, and I am of the court of King Lisuarte and a knight of Queen Brisena, his wife; and as I was coming in search of a knight, a dwarf brought me here, on account of a boon that I promised him."

"Well," said the knight, "I am of his court, and well known to the king and to his knights there, where I saw myself with greater honor than I now have."

"You are of his court?" said Amadis.

"Yes, I certainly am," said the knight, "and I came from there when I was placed in this bad situation from which you have extricated me."

"And what is your name?" said Amadis.

"Brandoyvas," said he.

When Amadis heard it, he was very much pleased, and went and embraced him, and said,

"Thanks be to God, for wishing me to have the opportunity to extricate you from such cruel hardship, for many times I have heard King Lisuarte and all those of his court speak of you, while I was there, praising your virtues and chivalry, and having great regret in never ascertaining any news of you."

So all the prisoners came before Amadis and said to him:

"Sir, here we are at your disposal; command us what to do, for we shall do it willingly, since there is so much reason for us to do so."

"Friends," said he, "may each one of you go wherever he please and where it be most advantageous for him."

"Sir," said they, "although you do not know us, nor do you know from what land we are, we all know you and wish to serve you, and when it be time to help you, we shall not wait for your command, for without it we shall hasten to wherever you may be."

With this each went his way as fast as possible, for they needed to do so. Amadis took Brandoyvas with him along with two squires of his who had been imprisoned there, and went where the wife of Arcalaus was together with other women, and found Grindalaya with her, and said,

"Madam, for your sake and for that of these your women I abstain from burning this castle, which the cruel wickedness of your husband gave me reason to do, but one must desist because of that reverence that knights owe to matrons and damsels."

The lady said to him weeping,

"God is witness, sir knight, to the pain and sorrow that my spirit feels for what Arcalaus my lord does; but I can only obey him as my husband and pray to God for him; it is for you at your volition to do against me whatever, sir, you may wish."

"What I shall do," said he, "is what I have said, but I beg of you to give some fine clothing to this lady, who is of high rank, and some arms to this knight, for here his own were taken from him, and a horse; and if you feel this a burden, it will not be demanded, except that I shall bear the arms of Arcalaus for mine and his horse for mine; and indeed I tell you that the sword that he took from me, I would want more than all this."

"Sir," said the matron, "what you demand is just, and even though it were not, knowing your moderation, I would do it willingly."

Then she gave orders to bring the same arms of Brandoyvas and had him given a horse; and she took the lady to her chamber and clothed her with some very good clothes of hers, and she took her into Amadis's presence and begged him to eat before he departed; he agreed; then the lady had them give him the best that could be had. Grindalaya could not eat; rather, she was eager to go away from the castle, at which Amadis and Brandoyvas laughed heartily, and much more at the dwarf, who was so frightened that he could neither eat nor speak, and had lost his color. Amadis said to him:

"Dwarf, do you want us to wait for Arcalaus, when I'll give you the boon from which you released me?"

"Sir," said he, "this one is costing me so dearly that never as long as I live shall I ever ask for a boon from anyone else; and let us go from here before the devil sends him back here, for I cannot bear standing on this leg by which I was hung up and with my nostrils full of the sulphur that he put under me, for I have done nothing since but sneeze and even something else worse."

Great was the laugh that Amadis and Brandoyvas, and even the matrons and damsels, had over what he said; and as soon as the table was cleared, Amadis bade farewell to the wife of Arcalaus and she commended him to God and said,

"May God put agreement between my lord and you."

"Certainly, lady," said Amadis, "although I do not have it with him, I shall have it with you who deserve it."

Now there was a time when this promise that he made there was of great advantage to the matron, as will be related in the fourth Book of this story. Then they mounted their horses and the lady a palfrey, and leaving the castle, they traveled all that day together until night, which they spent in the house of a nobleman who dwelt five leagues from the castle, where great honor and service was done them; and next day after hearing mass, having taken leave of their host, they took to the road, and Amadis said to Brandoyvas:

"Good sir, I am going in search of a knight as I have told you, and you are weary; it will be well that we part."

"Sir," said he, "I must go to the court of King Lisuarte, and if you command, I shall wait for you."

"I thank you very much," said Amadis, "but I have to go alone to escort this lady to the place where she may wish to go."

"Sir," said she, "I shall go with this knight to where he is going, for there I shall find that one on whose account I was imprisoned, who will have pleasure at seeing me."

"In the name of God," said Amadis, "and to God may you go commended."

So they parted just as you hear; and Amadis said to the dwarf:

"Friend, what will you do with yourself?"

"Whatever you command," said he.

"What I command," said Amadis, "is that you do whatever pleases you most."

"Sir," said he, "since you leave it to me, I should like to be your vassal to serve you, for I do not now perceive anyone with whom I could better live."

"If it pleases you," said Amadis, "it does me, and I receive you as my vassal."

The dwarf kissed his hand. Amadis traveled along the road as Fortune guided him, and it was not long before he encountered one of the damsels who had come to his aid, crying bitterly, and he said to her:

"Damsel, why are you weeping?"

"I am weeping," said she, "for a coffer that that knight who goes yonder took from me, and it is of no use to him, although by what is in it, the best knight in the world was saved from death, not three days ago, and I weep for another maiden my companion, whom another knight is taking away by force in order to dishonor her."

This maiden did not recognize Amadis because of the helmet that he had put on when he had seen the knights from a greater distance; and when he heard that, he passed her and overtook the knight, and said to him:

"Certainly, knight, you are not very courteous in making the maiden behind you cry. I advise you to stop acting outrageously and return her coffer to her."

The knight began to laugh, and Amadis asked him:

"Why are you laughing?"

"I am laughing at you," said he, "for I consider you a fool to give advice to one who does not ask for it nor will do anything that you tell him."

"It might be," said Amadis, "that it will not turn out well for you; and give her her coffer, since it is of no use to you."

"It seems," said the knight, "that you are threatening me."

"Your great arrogance is threatening you," said Amadis, "for it sets you at forcing one whom you should not."

The knight put the coffer in a tree and said,

"If your boldness is as great as your words, come for it and give it to its owner," and he turned the head of his horse toward him.

Amadis, who was now enraged, went toward him and he came at full speed to attack him, and he struck him on his shield, which he penetrated, but he did not pierce his coat of mail, which was strong, and he broke his lance. And Amadis met him so forcibly that he threw him to the ground and his horse on top

of him, and he was so injured that he was unable to rise. Amadis took the box and gave it to the maiden, and said,

"Wait here while I help the other girl."

Then he went as fast as he could to where he had seen the knight, and in a short while he found him among some trees where he had his horse and the damsel's palfrey tethered; and the knight was with her, and using force in order to violate her, and she was making great outcry, and he was dragging her by the hair to a thicket, and she was saying in great distress:

"Ah, scoundrel, my enemy! May you soon die a bad death for what you are doing to me, in seeking thus to violate me, for I haven't done you any harm!"

At this juncture, Amadis arrived shouting and telling him to let go of the damsel; and the knight, who saw him, went at once to take up his arms. And he mounted his horse and said:

"At an inopportune moment you hinder me from exercising my will."

"May God confound such a will," said Amadis, "that thus makes a knight lose his sense of decency."

"Certainly if I didn't avenge myself on you," said the knight, "I should never bear arms."

"The world would lose very little," said Amadis, "in your abandoning them, since with such villainy you use them, by ravishing women, who ought to be protected by knights."

Then they attacked, each at the full speed of his horse, and they met so violently that it was a wonder; and the knight broke his lance, but Amadis knocked him over the top of his saddle-cantle and he landed on his helmet on the ground, and as the whole weight of his body was on his neck, he twisted it in such a way that he was left more dead than alive. And Amadis, who saw him thus injured, rode his horse over him and said:

"Thus you lose your indecent passion."

And he said to the damsel:

"My friend, no longer will you fear this man."

"So it seems to me, sir," said she, "but I fear for the other maiden, my companion, from whom they took a coffer, lest she receive harm."

"Have no fear," said Amadis, "for I made him give it back to her, and you see her coming with my squire."

Then he took off his helmet and the maiden recognized him, and he, her, for she was the one who brought him, when he was coming from Gaul, to Urganda the Unknown when he rescued her friend by force of arms from the castle of Baldoyd. And getting off his horse, he went and embraced her, and did likewise with the other damsel as soon as she arrived. And they said to him:

"Sir, if we had known that we had such a defender, we would have feared little being ravished, and you can say indeed that if we rescued you, it was because you deserve it, for you have rescued us."

"Ladies," said Amadis, "I was in major danger, and I beg you to tell me how you found it out."

The maiden who had lifted him up by the hand said:

"Sir, my aunt Urganda ordered me a good ten days ago to try to arrive there at that hour in order to free you."

"May God thank her for it," said he, "and I shall requite her for it in whatever she may command and desire, and do the same for you, who have carried out her order so well; and do see whether I am needed further."

"Sir," said they, "return to your journey which you left for us, and we shall go our way."

"God be with you," said he. "Give my best regards to your mistress, and tell her to understand that I am her knight."

The damsels went their way, and Amadis returned to his; whence there will remain to be told what Arcalaus did.

CHAPTER XX

How Arcalaus carried the news to the court of King Lisuarte that Amadis was dead, and concerning the great weeping done for him throughout the court, especially Oriana's.

After he left Amadis enchanted, Arcalaus on Amadis's horse and wearing his armor, traveled so fast that in ten days he arrived at the court of King Lisuarte one morning as the sun was rising; and at this time King Lisuarte had ridden forth with a very large retinue and was going along between his palace and the forest, and saw Arcalaus as he came toward him. And when they recognized the horse and also the arms, they all thought it was Amadis, and the king went toward him very happily. But when they were closer, they saw it was not the one they thought, for he had his face and his hands unarmed, and they were astonished. Arcalaus went before the king and said,

"Sire, I come to you because I made a compact to appear here to relate how I killed in combat a knight, and certainly I come with shame because by others rather than by myself I would like to be praised; but I cannot do anything else, for the agreement between him and me was that the victor should cut off the head of the other and present it before you on this day; and I was very sorry when he told me he was a knight of the queen. And I told him that if he killed me, that he killed Arcalaus, for that is my name. And he told me his name was Amadis of Gaul; so he thus received death, and I remained with the honor and glory of the combat."

"Oh, Holy Mary be of avail!" said the king, "dead is the finest and most courageous knight in the world; Oh, Lord God! Why

did it please you to make such a good beginning for such a knight?"

And he began to weep many bitter tears, and so did all the others who were there. Arcalaus returned to where he had come from, quite angry, and those who saw him cursed him, beseeching and petitioning God to give him quickly a bad death; and they themselves would have given it to him, except that according to his story there was no reason to do so. The king went off to his palace very pensive and extraordinarily sad. And the news was reported everywhere until it reached the house of the queen; and the ladies who heard Amadis was dead began to weep, for he was held in great affection and loved by them all. Oriana, who was in her chamber, sent the damsel from Denmark to find out what was the cause of that weeping that was going on. The damsel went out, and when she learned the reason, returned, striking her face with her hands and weeping very bitterly, looked at Oriana and said to her:

"Ah, lady, what sorrow and what great grief!"

Oriana trembled all over and said,

"Oh, Holy Mary, what if Amadis is dead!"

"Oh, unfortunate one, he is dead!"

And her heart failing, Oriana fell to the floor in a swoon. The damsel, who saw her thus, stopped crying and went to Mabilia, who was showing very great grief by tearing her hair, and said to her:

"Lady Mabilia, help my lady, for she is dying."

She turned her head and saw Oriana lying on her dais as if she were dead. And although her distress was very great and could not have been greater, she sought to render the aid needed, and gave orders to the damsel to close the door of the chamber so that no one would see Oriana thus, and went and took her in her arms and had cold water thrown on her face, with which at once she revived somewhat; and when she was able to speak, she said weeping:

"Ah, my dears, in heaven's name, do not prevent my death if you wish peace for me, and do not cause me to be so disloyal as to live a single hour without that one who not with my death, but with his desire for me, would not have been able to live so

much as one hour." Furthermore she said, "Ah, flower and mirror of all chivalry! So oppressive and strange is your death to me, that on account of it not only shall I suffer, but the whole world, in losing its great leader and captain, both at arms and in all the other virtues from which those who live in it could derive a moral lesson; but if some consolation gives comfort to my sad heart, it is only that since it is not able to suffer such a cruel wound, by taking leave of it goes away to your heart; for although its dwelling place is in the cold earth where our two hearts will be consumed and destroyed in that great fire of love which, though separated in this life, sustained them so fondly; much more in the life to come by their being together, if it be possible for them to be vouchsafed permission will they be sustained."

Then she fell into such a deep swoon that they all thought she was quite dead, and those very beautiful tresses of hers were lying in disorder on the floor and she was clasping her hands over her heart where ravenously death was overtaking her, and she was suffering to an excessive degree that cruel sorrow; for until then she and Amadis had had pleasures and delights in their love affair, just as happens continually in similar situations of deep love. Mabilia, who truly thought she was dead, said,

"Oh, Lord God! May it not please you that I live any longer, since the two beings I loved most in this world are dead."

The damsel of Denmark said to her:

"For heaven's sake, my lady, let not your discretion fail you at such a time, and apply yourself to what can be remedied."

Mabilia, taking courage, got up; and they, picking up Oriana, put her in her bed. Oriana sighed then, and moved her arms from one side to another as if her soul was being snatched away. When Mabilia saw this, she took some water and again threw it over her face and breasts, and it made her open her eyes and to a further degree recover consciousness. And Mabilia said to her:

"Oh, my lady! What little intelligence you show to let yourself die thus at such insubstantial news as that knight brought, not knowing it to be true; he either by demanding those arms or that horse of your lover, or perhaps by having stolen them from him, was able to obtain them, and not in the way that he said; for God did not make your lover so hapless as to take him out of the

world so quickly; what you will be doing, if anything is known of your great sorrow, will be to ruin you both forever."

Oriana exerted herself somewhat more and held her eyes fixed on the window where she spoke with Amadis at the time that he first came there; and she said in a very weak voice, like a woman who had lost her strength:

"Ah, window, what sorrow for me is that beautiful conversation which at you was carried on; I well know that you will crumble into dust before at your sill two other people have such a genuine and disillusioned conversation!" Furthermore she said: "Ah, my lover, flower of all knights, how many have lost help and protection by your death, and what sorrow and pain it will be for all of them, but to me much greater and more bitter, as to one who much more than her own was yours; for just as in you was all my joy and happiness, so without you it is turned into the reverse, namely, into grave and unbearable torments; and my spirit will be very much fatigued until death, which I so much desire, comes upon me, which for me will be the occasion for my soul to unite with yours in much greater repose than in my afflicted life!"

Mabilia with simulated anger, said:

"Do you think, my lady, that if I believed this news, I would have the strength to console anyone? The love that I have for my cousin is not so small or so fickle; rather, so help me God, if I were able to believe it right, not to you nor to all those in the world who have regard for him, would I concede superiority in what one should show or do because of his death; so what you are doing is without any benefit, and could cause much harm, since with it very quickly one could reveal what we keep so concealed."

Oriana, hearing this, said,

"About this I already have little worry, for now sooner or later it won't be long in being evident to all, even though I may try to hide it; for whoever has no desire to live can fear no danger, even though it should come."

They were on this subject that you hear all that day, the damsel of Denmark saying to everyone that Oriana did not dare to leave Mabilia, lest she kill herself, so great was her sorrow;

but night having come, they spent it with more fatigue, for Oriana frequently fainted — so frequently that they thought that they would never bring her through to daybreak, so great was the pensiveness and distress that she had in her heart. Then next day at the hour that they were about to set the king's table, Brandoyvas entered by the gate of the palace, leading Grindalaya by the hand, as one who had affection for him, which gave much joy to those who knew him, because a long time had passed since they had ascertained any news of him. And both knelt before the king. The king, who held him in high regard, said thus:

"Brandoyvas, welcome, why have you delayed so long, for greatly have we desired you?"

To this which the king said to him he answered, and said:

"Sire, I was thrown into such a huge prison from which I could not get out in any way except with the help of the very good knight, Amadis of Gaul, who through his courtesy brought me and this lady and many others out, performing at arms what no one else could have done, and the traitor Arcalaus would have killed him by the greatest deception ever seen; but he was helped by two maidens, who must have esteemed him not a little."

The king when he heard this got up quickly from the table and said:

"Friend, by the faith that you owe to God and to me, tell me if Amadis is alive."

"By that faith, sire, that you speak of, I say that it is true that I left him alive and well not ten days ago; but why do you ask?"

"Because Arcalaus came to tell us last night that he had killed him," said the king. And he told him how Arcalaus had related it.

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Brandoyvas. "What an evil scoundrel, for the combat came out worse for him than de thought!"

Then he related to the king all that had befallen them with Arcalaus, omitting nothing, just as you have already heard it. The king and all those of his court when they heard it were so happy that they could not be more so, and he gave orders that they take Grindalaya to the queen and that she tell her the news about her knight. Grindalaya by her, just as by all the other ladies, was received with much love and great joy on account

of the good news that she told them. The damsel of Denmark, who heard it, went as quickly as she could to tell it to her lady, because Mabilia wanted to speak to her, and immediately she ordered her to go to the queen and to send to them the matron, because Mabilia wanted to speak to her, and immediately she did so, for Grindalaya went to Oriana's chamber and told her all the good news that she brought. They did her much honor, and wanted her to eat nowhere except at their table, on account of its affording an opportunity to learn more in detail about that which gave such great joy to their hearts, which had been so sad; but when Grindalaya came to relate how Amadis had entered the prison, and how he had killed the jailers and had taken her from where she was in such distress, and the battle he had with Arcalaus, and all the other things that had happened, she moved her friends to great pity. Just as you are hearing they were engaged in dining, with their great sadness turned into great joy. Grindalaya bade them good-bye and returned to where the queen was, and found there King Arban of North Wales, who loved her very much, who was going about in search of her, knowing she had come there. The pleasure both had could not be adequately described to you. There it was agreed between them that she remain with the queen, since she would not find anywhere another court so honorable. And Arban of North Wales told the queen how that lady was the daughter of King Adroyd of Serolis, and that all the evil that she had received had been because of him, and that he was begging of her the favor of taking her with her, since she wanted to serve her. When the queen heard this, she was very much pleased to receive her in her household, as much for the good news she brought of Amadis of Gaul as for being a person of such an exalted station. And taking her by the hand, as a king's daughter, which she was, she had her seated in her presence, asking her pardon for not having paid her so much honor, for the cause of it was not knowing her. Also the queen learned how this Grindalaya had a very beautiful sister, Aldeva by name, who had been reared in the house of the Duke of Bristol, and the queen gave orders that they bring her to her at once to live in her household, because she wanted very much to see her. This Aldeva was the sweetheart of Don

Galaor, the one on account of whom he received much offense from the dwarf, as you have already heard.

Just as you hear, King Lisuarte and all his court were very happy, and were desirous of seeing Amadis, for that bad news about him that had been told them had greatly shocked them. The story will cease to talk of them, and will tell of Don Galaor, for it has been a long time since anything has been said or brought up about him.

CHAPTER XXI

How Galaor arrived at a monastery sorely wounded and stayed there two weeks, at the end of which he was healed, and what happened to him afterwards.

Don Galaor was for two weeks wounded in the monastery to which the damsel who had gotten him out of prison brought him; at the end of which being disposed to take up arms, he left there and traveled along a road where chance guided him, for his will was to go no more in one direction than in another; and at noon he found himself in a valley where there was a fountain, and he found at the side of it an armed knight, but he had no horse or any other animal, at which Galaor was surprised and said to him:

"Sir knight, how did you come here on foot?"

The knight of the fountain answered him:

"Sir, I was going through this forest to a castle of mine, and I encountered some men who killed my horse, and I had to come here on foot very weary, and thus I shall have to return to the castle, for they know not of me."

"You shall not return except on that palfrey of my squire."

"Many thanks," said he, "but before we go I want you to know the great virtue of this fountain, for there is in the world no poison so strong as to withstand this water; and often some poisoned beasts happen to drink here, and immediately they are relieved by breaking wind, so that all the people of this region come here to treat their illnesses."

"Certainly," said Don Galaor, "what you say is marvellous and I wish to drink of such water."

"And who would do here otherwise?" said the knight of the fountain, "for if you were somewhere else, you ought to seek for it."

Then Galaor dismounted and said to his squire:

"Dismount and let's drink."

The squire did so and leaned the arms against a tree. The knight of the fountain said:

"Go and drink, for I shall hold the horse."

He went to the fountain to drink, and while they were drinking he laced on the helmet and took the shield and the lance of Galaor, and mounting the horse said,

"Sir knight, I am going, and stay you here until you deceive someone else."

Galaor, who was drinking, lifted his face and saw that the knight was going away and said:

"Certainly, knight, you not only have deceived me, but have done me great treachery, and this I shall prove to you if you wait for me."

"Let this wait," said the knight, "for when you have another horse and other arms with which to fight."

And putting the spurs to the horse, he went on his way.

Galaor remained greatly enraged and after a short while during which he was thinking, he mounted the palfrey on which his arms had been carried and went along the way that the knight went, and arriving where the road forked, he remained there a little while, for he did not know which way to go. And he saw coming along one road a damsel hurrying along on a palfrey, and he awaited her until she reached where he was, and on her arrival he said:

"Maiden, have you, by chance, seen a knight who is riding a bay horse and carrying a white shield with a bright red flower device?"

"And why do you want him?" said the maiden.

Galaor responded,

"Those arms and that horse are mine, and I should like to recover them if I could, for he took them from me so basely."

"How did he take them from you?" said the maiden.

He told her everything just as it had happened.

"Well, what would you, thus disarmed, do to him?" said she, "for as I believe, he didn't take them from you in order to return them."

"I should like," said Galaor, "to make contact with him."

"Well, if you grant me a boon," said she, "I shall put you in contact with him."

Galaor, who wanted very much to speak with the knight, granted it to her.

"Now follow me," said she.

And turning back towards where she had come from, she went along the road and Galaor behind her; but the maiden went a little bit ahead, for the palfrey of Galaor was not going so fast because it was carrying him and his squire, and he went a good three leagues without seeing her. And on passing a grove of dense trees, he saw the maiden coming toward him, and Galaor went up to her; but the maiden was acting deceitfully, for the knight was her lover and she had gone to tell him she was bringing Galaor so that he could seize the other arms that he was carrying. He had stationed himself in a tent, all armed as he was, and had told the maiden to bring Galaor there, for he would be able to kill him or render him ridiculous without danger. Then by traveling along just as you have heard, Galaor and the damsel reached the tent, and the damsel said,

"There is the knight you seek."

Galaor dismounted and went towards the tent, but the other, who was at the door, said:

"You are not welcome here, for you will have to give up these other arms, or you will be killed."

"Certainly," said Don Galaor, "I do not fear anything from such a base knight as you."

The knight raised his sword to attack him; and Galaor, safe from the blow — for being very agile and of such great strength, he was equal to the situation, and the other's blow missed its target — gave him on top of the helmet such a hard blow that he went down on his knees. So Galaor took him by the helmet and jerked it so hard that he snatched it from his head and made him fall outstretched. The knight shouted to his mistress to help

him; and she, who heard him, came as fast as she could to the tent, saying in a loud voice:

"Hold up, knight, for this is the boon I asked of you."

But Galaor, with the rage that he felt, had wounded him in such a way that he was beyond needing a physician. When the damsel saw him dead, she said:

"Oh, wretch that I am, I delayed too long, and thinking to cheat another, I cheated myself!" Then she said to Galaor:

"Alas, knight, may you die a bad death! For you have killed what I loved most in the world; but you will die for it, for the boon that you promised me I shall demand of you in a place where you will not be able to flee death, even though you are stronger. And if you do not give it to me, you will be publicized and vilified by me everywhere."

Galaor answered, saying:

"If I had thought that it would distress you so greatly I would not have killed him, although he well deserved it; and you should have come to his aid sooner."

"I made the mistake," said she, "and I shall make amends for it, for I shall cause your life to be given for his."

Galaor mounted his horse and the squire took the arms, and he left there; and having gone ahead as much as a league, he turned his face to the right and saw that the damsel was coming behind him, and when she reached him, he said to her:

"Maiden, where do you want to go?"

"With you," said she, "until we arrive where you may give me the boon that you have promised me and I cause you to die an evil death."

"It would be better," said Don Galaor, "to take other amends of me, some such thing that you might desire most, rather than what you mention."

"Other amends," said she, "there will not be, except for you to give your soul for his or remain traitorous and false."

Thus Galaor went on his way and the maiden with him, and she did nothing but insult him. And at the end of three days they entered a forest by the name of Angaduza.

The author here leaves off speaking of this in order to relate it in its proper place. And he returned to Amadis, who having

parted from Urganda's damsels, as we have already told you, traveled until noon; and leaving a forest through which he was journeying, he found himself on a plain, on which he saw a beautiful fortress and saw going along the plain a cart, the largest and most beautiful he had ever seen, and twelve palfreys were pulling it, and it was covered on top with a bright red cloth of silk, so that one could not see anything of what was inside. This cart was guarded on all four sides by eight armed knights. Amadis, when he saw it, went toward it with the desire to find out what all that was; and as he drew near, a knight came out to him, who said,

"Withdraw, sir knight, and do not dare to come near there."

"I do not come with evil intentions," said Amadis.

"However that be," said the other, "do not make any effort in the matter, for you are not such a one as ought to see what is going on there; and if you persist in it, it will cost you your life, for you will have to fight with us; and here are such knights as would keep you from it with a single one of their number, not to mention all of them together."

"I know nothing of their excellence; but still, if I can, I shall see what rides in the cart."

Then he took his arms, and the two knights who were riding in front, charged him, and he them. One struck him on the shield in such a way that he broke his lance, and the other missed his blow. Amadis overthrew the one who met him, without any delay; and turning to the other who had passed by him, he met him so violently that he threw him and his horse to the ground; and on trying to go toward the cart, two other knights came toward him at full speed, and he charged them and struck one so hard that the coat of mail the latter wore was of no use to him; and he gave the other on top of his helmet with the sword such a blow that he made him clasp the neck of his horse, for he lost his senses. When the four saw their companions overcome by a single knight, they were very much frightened to see such a rare thing, and they moved together and with great wrath toward Amadis in order to attack him; but before they arrived he had knocked the other to the ground. And they struck him thus angrily, some on his shields and the others failing to

clash with him; but toward the one who came in front went Amadis to attack him with the sword, and the other came on so hard that they met with the shields and the helmets so fiercely that the knight fell from his horse so completely stunned that he fainted; and the three knights turned on him and struck strong blows, and with regard to one of them who carried a lance, Amadis loosed the sword from his own hand and laid hold of him by the lance so forcibly that he took it from his hands, and went and gave with it one of them such a blow in the throat that the iron and the wood came out through his neck, and he struck him down dead. And then he charged as hard as he could at the other two, and struck one of them on the helmet with all his strength so hard that he knocked it from his head. And Amadis saw his face, which was very old looking, and he was sorry for him and said,

"Certainly, sir knight, now you should give up this in which you are engaged, for if you haven't won honor until now, from here on your age exempts you from winning it."

The knight said,

"Dear sir, rather it is the contrary, for it is necessary for youths to win honor and glory, and for the old to maintain it as long as they are able."

Amadis, having heard the reasoning of the old man, said:

"I consider what you say, knight, better than what I said."

They being engaged in this conversation, Amadis raised his head and saw that the other knight who remained was going as fast as he could in flight to the castle; and saw the others who could get up going after their horses; and he went to the cart, and lifting up the cloth, put his head inside, and saw a tomb of marble and on its cover a sculptured image of a king with a crown on the head and dressed in royal garments, and he had his crown split down to his head, and his head down to his neck; and he saw a lady sitting on a bed and a girl beside her, and the girl seemed more beautiful than any other he had ever seen in all his days, and he said to the matron:

"Madam, why does this image have its face split thus?"

The lady looked at him and saw he was not one of those accompanying her, and said:

"What is this, knight? Who ordered you to look at this?"

"I," said he, "who wished to see what was going by here."

"And our knights, what did they do yonder?" said she.

"They did me more harm than good," said he.

Then the matron raising the cloth saw some dead and the others who were going after their horses, whereupon she was very disturbed, and said:

"Ah, knight, cursed be the hour in which you were born, to commit such devilish acts!"

"Madam," said he, "your knights attacked me; but if you please, tell me what I ask you."

"So help me God," said the matron, "you never will learn of it from me, for I am made a mockery by you."

When Amadis saw her so angry, he left there and resumed his journey. The lady's knights put the dead in the cart; and they with great shame mounted and went toward the castle. The dwarf asked Amadis what he had seen in the cart. Amadis told him, for he had not been able to learn anything from the lady.

"If she had been an armed knight," said the dwarf, "she would have told you quickly."

Amadis was silent and went ahead; and when he had journeyed a good league he saw coming behind him the old knight whom he had overcome, and he shouted for Amadis to stop. Amadis stood still, and the knight came up unarmed and said:

"Sir knight, I come to you with a message from the lady whom you saw in the cart, who wishes to make amends for the discourtesy with which she spoke to you, and begs that you lodge in the castle tonight."

"Good knight," said Amadis, "I saw her with so much passion because of what happened to me with you that the sight of me would give her more anger than pleasure."

"Believe me, sir," said the knight, "you would make her very happy with your return."

Amadis, who considered the knight at such an age that he would not lie, and the insistency with which he besought him, turned back, chatting meanwhile with him, asking him if he knew why the image of stone had its head thus split; but the latter did not want to tell him this; however, as they drew near the

castle, he said that he would like to go ahead so that the lady might know of his arrival. Amadis went more slowly and arrived at the gate, over which was a tower; and he saw at a window of it the lady and a beautiful girl, and the lady said:

"Enter, sir knight, for we thank you very much for coming."

"Madam," said he, "I am very happy to give you pleasure rather than anger."

And he entered the castle; and going forward he perceived a great uproar of people in a hall, and then armed knights and other people on foot came out of it, and they came saying:

"Halt, knight, and surrender; if not, you are a dead man."

"Certainly," said he, "I shall not willingly become a prisoner of such deceitful people."

Then he laced on his helmet and was not able to take his shield because of the way they rushed him, and they began to attack him from all sides; but he as long as his horse lasted, defended himself very fiercely, hurling down at its feet those on whom he landed good blows; and as he saw himself very hard pressed, the people being many in number, he was going toward a shed that was in the courtyard, and positioned there, he performed miracles in defending himself; and he saw how they seized the dwarf and Gandalin, and he plucked up more courage than he had before to defend himself; but as the people were many and they attacked him from all sides with such blows that at times they made him sink to his knees on the ground, he no longer would have been able to escape in any way being killed; for they would not have taken him to prison, because he had killed six of his opponents, and others were badly wounded. But God and his own great loyalty succored him very well and in the following manner. For the girl who was watching the battle and saw him perform such marvelous deeds, had great pity on him, and calling to a damsel, said:

"My dear, the great valor of that knight has moved me to such great pity that I would wish that all these people of ours should die rather than he alone; and come with me."

"Madam," said the damsel, "what do you want to do?"

"To let loose my lions," said she, "to kill those who hold the best knight in the world in such straits; and I command you as

my vassal to set them free, since no one else but you would be able to do so; for the lions are not acquainted with anyone else and I shall exempt you from blame."

And she returned to the lady. The damsel went to set free the lions, which were two in number, very fierce and chained up, and they came out into the courtyard; and she shouted to the people to protect themselves from them, saying that they had been set free; but before the people could flee, the lions tore to pieces with their sharp and strong claws those they could reach.

Amadis, who saw the people fleeing to the wall and the towers, and himself free from them, while the strong lions were surfeited with those they had before them, went at once as fast as he could to the gate of the castle, and going outside closed it behind him, so that the lions remained inside; and he sat down on a rock very weary, as one who had fought very well; his bare sword in his hand, a third of it broken off. The lions were going from one side of the courtyard to the other and rushed to the gate in order to get out; the people of the castle did not dare to come down, nor did the damsel who took care of the lions, for they were so infuriated and enraged that they obeyed no one, so that those inside did not know what to do; and they agreed that the damsel should ask the knight to open the gate, believing that he would do it for her rather than for anyone else; but she, thinking about the excessively great outrage she had perpetrated against him, did not dare to ask him any favor. But not expecting any other help, she placed herself at the window and said:

"Sir knight, although we have made a very bad mistake with you without knowing you, may your humble courtesy prevail against our guilt, and if you please, open the gate to the lions because by their going outside, we shall be without fear and free of danger, and along with this there will be made to you all the amends that one is obligated to make for the error that we made and committed with respect to you; although I wish to say to you also that my intention and will was only to have you imprisoned in a stout jail."

He answered with very gentle speech:

"That, lady, did not have to be in the way you did it, for willingly would I have been your servant, just as I am of all the duennas and maidens that have need of my service."

"Then, sir," said she, "you will not open the gate?"

"No, so help me God," said Amadis, "you shall not have this courtesy from me."

The lady withdrew weeping from the window; the beautiful girl said:

"Sir knight, here there are people who have no guilt for the harm that you have received; rather they deserve thanks for that which you do not know about."

Amadis was very much attracted to her and said,

"My fair friend, would you like me to open the gate?"

"I should be very grateful to you for it," said she.

Amadis went to open it, and the child said:

"Sir knight, wait a moment and I shall tell the matron that you made a truce with those who are over there."

Amadis esteemed her highly and considered her discreet, since the matron gave assurance and said that she would immediately yield up Gandalin and the dwarf. And the old knight, whom you have heard about already, told Amadis to take a shield and a mace because with it he would be able to kill the lions as they went out of the gate.

"This I wish," said Amadis, "for another purpose, and may God not help me if I do ill to those who helped me so much."

"Certainly, sir," said the knight, "you greatly esteem loyalty in men, inasmuch as you have it for wild beasts."

Then they threw the mace and the shield to him, and Amadis put in the sheath what remained of his sword and grasped his shield, and with the mace in hand he went and opened the gate. The lions, when they saw him open the gate, hastened there and in a rush went out to the countryside, and Amadis remained withdrawn to one side and he entered the castle; and then the matron and all the other people came down from the upper stories and came to him and he went to them, and all received him very well, and they brought Gandalin and the dwarf to him. Amadis said to the lady,

"Madam, I lost here my horse, if you order that I be given another in exchange for it, all right; if not, I shall leave on foot."

"Sir," said the lady, "disarm yourself and you shall rest here tonight, for it is late. And you shall have a horse, since it would be very outrageous for such a knight to go on foot."

Amadis considered it all right, and immediately was disarmed in a chamber, and they gave him a robe to cover himself, and took him to the windows, where the lady and the young girl awaited him. But when they saw him thus, they were greatly astonished at how handsome he was, and at his doing things so wondrous at arms when at such a tender age. Amadis gazed at the young girl, who moreover seemed to him very beautiful; furthermore he said to the lady:

"Tell me, madam, if you please: why did the figure that I saw in the cart have its head split open?"

"Knight," said she, "if you agree to do about it what you ought to, I shall tell you; if not, I shall desist from it."

"Lady," said he, "it is not right to promise to do what a man does not know; but knowing it, if it is a thing that pertains to a knight and which one should rightly take on, it will not be abandoned by me."

The lady said that he spoke very well, and gave orders for all the matrons and maidens and the other people to withdraw. She took the young girl beside her and said:

"Sir knight, that figure of stone that you saw was made in remembrance of this beautiful girl's father, who lies placed in the tomb which is in the cart. He was a crowned king, and being in his royal chair at a festival, a brother of his arrived there, and telling him that that crown would not look less well on his head, since both were of one ancestry, and drawing a sword that he was wearing under his mantle, he struck him on top of his crown and split his head open just as you have seen depicted; and as he had planned that treason beforehand, he brought with him many knights so that the king once dead, and there remaining no other son or daughter of his, except this girl, he quickly acquired the kingdom, which he holds in his power; and at the time he had in custody the old knight who caused you to come here to this girl; and he fled with her and brought her to me

at this castle because she is my niece; and afterwards I obtained the stone image of her father and each day I put it in the cart and go with it through the countryside, and I have sworn not to show it except to the one who through force of arms might see it; and although he sees it, I shall not tell him the reason for it unless he agrees to avenge such great treason; and if you, good knight, on account of what reason and virtue obligate you to do, wish to employ in such a just cause that great valor and strength of heart that God implanted in you, once I have you, I shall continue my custom until I find two other knights that I need so that all three fight with that traitor and two sons of his over this cause; for there exists an agreement among them not to leave one another; rather, to be together in combat, if it be demanded of them."

"Lady," said Amadis, "you do right to try to find a way for the greatest treason I have ever heard of to be avenged; and certainly he who committed it cannot last long without being brought to shame, for God will not suffer it. And if you could bring it about that they came to the battle one by one, with the help of God, I would take it on."

"They will not do this," said the lady.

"Well, what are you pleased to have me do?" said he.

"That you be here," said she, "a year from today, if you are alive and with full vigor; and by then I shall have the two knights and you will be the third."

"Very willingly," said Amadis, "will I do this, and don't put yourself to any trouble looking for them, for I intend to bring them by that deadline and they will be such as will uphold very well all justice."

And he said this because he believed he had already found for it his brother Don Galaor and Agrajes, his cousin, for with them he would indeed dare to undertake a mighty deed.

The lady and the girl thanked him very much, telling him to try to find very good ones, because such they had to be; for he should regard it as certain that that evil king and his sons were among the valiant and courageous knights that there were in the world. Amadis said to them:

"If I find one knight whom I am looking for, I should not be troubled much about a third one, even if the opponents are more vigorous."

"Sir," said the matron, "Where are you from, and where shall I look for you?"

"Lady," said Amadis, "I am from the court of King Lisuarte and a knight of Queen Brisena, his wife."

"Then now," said she, "let us go dine, for after such an agreement it will do us good."

Then they entered a very beautiful hall, where they were given a well-planned meal; and when it was time to sleep, they took Amadis to a room where he might lodge, and only the maiden who set free the lions stayed with him; and she said to him:

"Sir knight, here is one who helped you, although you do not know it."

"And why was that?"

"It was," said she, "to save you from the death, which you had very close at hand, by means of the lions, which through the order of that beautiful girl, my mistress, I set free, she having pity because of the harm they were doing you."

Amadis marveled at the prudence of a person of such a tender age, and said:

"Certainly, damsel, I believe that if she lives, she will have in herself two very extremely unusual qualities, which will be: to be very beautiful and of great intelligence."

Amadis said also:

"It certainly seems so to me, and tell her that I thank her very much, and to regard me as her knight."

"Sir," said the damsel, "what you tell me gives me great pleasure, and she will be very happy as soon as she learns of it from me."

And she leaving the room, Amadis remained in his bed; and Gandalin and the dwarf, who lay in another bed at the feet of their master, heard well what they were talking about; and the dwarf, who did not know of the affair between his lord and Oriana, thought that he was in love with that very beautiful girl, and because he had taken such a liking to her he had

bound himself to her as her knight; with the result that this understanding did not help Amadis, since because of it there was the period during which Amadis came very close to a very cruel death, as will be related further on. That night having passed and morning come, Amadis arose and heard mass with the matron. Then he asked the names of those whom he would have to fight. She said:

"The father is called Abiseos, the elder son Darasion, and the other Dramis, and all three are of great prowess at arms."

"And the land," said Amadis, "what is it called?"

"Sobradisa," said she, "which borders on Serolis, and on the other side it is bounded by the sea."

Then he armed himself, and mounting the horse that the duenna gave him, as he was about to take his leave, there came the beautiful girl with a fine sword in her hands, which had been her father's, and she said:

"Sir knight, out of regard for me bear this sword as long as it endures, and with it may God help you."

Amadis, laughing, thanked her for it, and said:

"Dear lady, consider me your knight to perform everything that may be for your benefit and honor."

She was very glad about that and showed it clearly in her countenance. The dwarf, who saw all of it, said:

"Certainly, lady, you have gained no little, inasmuch as you have such a knight for yourself."

CHAPTER XXII

How Amadis set out from the castle of the duenna, and what happened to him along the way.

Amadis took leave of the duenna and the girl and started on his way, and journeyed without finding any adventure until he reached the forest which is called Angaduza; the dwarf was going ahead, and along the road that they were following came a knight and a maiden, and when he was near him, the knight took his sword in hand and charged at the dwarf to chop off his head. The dwarf, frightened, dropped from the hackney, saying:

"Help me, sir, for they are killing me!"

Amadis, who saw it, hastened up very quickly, and said:

"What is this, sir knight? Why do you want to kill my dwarf? You are not behaving courteously in laying hands on such a wretched creature; besides its being mine and your not having made on me a rightful demand for him. Do not lay a hand on him, for I shall protect him against you."

"I regret your protecting him," said the knight, "but it is still necessary for me to cut off his head."

"You will have a fight first," said Amadis.

And taking up their arms, covered with their shields, they moved toward each other at the full speed of their horses; and they struck each other so violently on their shields that they pierced them and their coats of mail also, and the horses came together, and they themselves with their bodies and helmets, in such a way that they fell hard to each side; but immediately they were on their feet and began a battle with their swords, so cruel and so violent that there was not a person who saw it who was

not frightened by it; and so were they both, for never until then did they find anyone who placed his life in such great straits. Thus they kept striking each other very mighty and harsh blows, for a great part of the day, until their shields were split and cut in many places, and likewise their coats of mail, in which now there was very little protection; and their swords had many opportunities to penetrate often and with danger to their flesh, since their helmets were cut and dented all over. And being very tired, they drew to one side, and the knight said to Amadis:

"Knight, do not endure any more toil on account of this dwarf, and let me do with him what I wish; and afterwards I shall make amends to you for it."

"Do not speak of that," said Amadis, "for I shall help the dwarf in every way."

"Well certainly," said the knight, "either I will die, or that maiden who asked me for it will have his head."

"I tell you," said Amadis, "that one of ours will be lost first."

And taking his shield and sword, he again attacked him with great fury, because thus without cause the knight with such arrogance wanted to slay the dwarf, who did not deserve it; but if he was courageous, he did not find the other weak; instead, he came at him with great daring and they gave each other many strong blows, each one striving to acquaint the other with his courage and valor, so that now they expected only death of each other; however, that knight was badly injured, but not so much that he could not fight with great strength. So being in these great straits that you are hearing about, a knight fully armed arrived by chance where the maiden was, and as he saw the battle, began to make the sign of the cross, saying that since he was born he had never seen such a mighty fight between two knights, and he asked the maiden if she knew who those knights were. "Yes," said she, "for I made them come together, and therefore I can not leave here except happy, for it would please me very much whichever of them dies, and much more if both did."

"Certainly, maiden," said the knight, "That is not a good desire or pleasure; rather, a good desire would be to pray God for two such good men; but tell me, why do you hate them so much?"

"This I shall tell you," said the maiden, "that one who has the less damaged shield is the one man in the world who hates Arcalaus, my uncle, most, and whose death Arcalaus most desires. And his name is Amadis; and this other one with whom he is fighting is called Galaor, and he killed the one man in all the world I love most, and he had promised me a boon, and I was going to ask it of him in a situation where death might come to him; and as I knew the other knight, who is the best in the world, I demanded of him the head of that dwarf; so that this Galaor, who is a very strong knight to give it to me, and the other to defend it, are brought to the edge of death, for which I receive great glory and pleasure."

The knight who heard this said:

"Damned be the woman who planned such a great betrayal in order to cause the two best knights in the world to die!"

And drawing his sword from the scabbard he gave her such a blow on the neck that he caused her head to fall at the feet of the palfrey; and he said:

"Take this reward for your uncle Arcalaus, who held me in the cruel prison, from which that good knight delivered me."

And he went shouting, as fast as his horse could carry him, saying:

"Stop, Sir Amadis, for that is your brother Don Galaor, the one you are looking for."

When Amadis heard this, he let his sword and shield fall to the field and went toward him, saying:

"Oh, brother, good luck be to whoever has caused us to know each other."

Galaor said:

"Oh, wretched, unlucky man that I am! What have I done to my brother and lord?"

And kneeling before him, he begged his pardon, weeping.

Amadis lifted him up and embraced him, saying:

"My brother, I consider well employed the danger that I underwent with you, since it was a false accusation so that I might test your very lofty prowess and excellence."

Then they unlaced their helmets in order to rest, for it was very necessary to them. The knight told them what the damsel had said and how he had killed her.

"Good luck be yours," said Galaor, "for now I am freed from her boon."

"Certainly, sir," said the dwarf, "but I am even more pleased that you are freed from the boon than by the manner that you began it; but I wonder very much why she hated me, for I had never seen her."

Galaor related what had happened to him with her and her friend, as you have already heard, and the knight said to them,

"Sirs, you are sorely wounded; I beg of you to mount and let us go to my castle, which is nearby, and you will recover from your wounds."

"May God give you good fortune," said Amadis, "for what you are doing for us."

"Certainly, sir, I regard myself as fortunate to serve you, for you took me out of the most cruel and harsh prison man was ever in."

"Where was that?" said Amadis.

"Sir," said he, "in the castle of Arcalaus the Enchanter, for I am one of the many who came out from there freed by your hand."

"What is your name?" said Amadis.

"They call me," said he, "Balays, and on account of my castle, which is called Carsante, I am called Balays of Carsante; and I earnestly beg of you, sir, that you go with me."

Don Galaor said:

"Let us go with this knight who esteems us so highly."

"Let us go, brother," said Amadis, "since it gives you pleasure."

Then they mounted as best they could and arrived at the castle, where they found knights and matrons and maidens who received them with great esteem; and Balays said to them:

"Friends, you see that I am bringing all the flower of chivalry in the world; the one is Amadis, the one who took me out of the harsh prison; the other, his brother Don Galaor; and I found them at such a point that if God through his mercy had not

brought me that way, one of them would have died, or perhaps both; serve and honor them as you should."

Then he took them off their horses and brought them to a chamber where they were disarmed and placed in luxurious beds; and there they were cared for by two nieces of Balays' wife, who were well acquainted with the art of healing; but their lady aunt came before Amadis and with great humility thanked him for what he had done for her husband in getting him out of Arcalaus's prison.

Then while they were there, Amadis told Galaor how he had left the court of King Lisuarte in order to look for him, and that he had promised to bring him there, and he begged him to go with him, for in the whole world there was not a court so honored or where so many excellent knights dwelt.

"Sir and brother," said Don Galaor, "all that gives you pleasure, I must follow and do, although I believe I had said to myself that I would not be known there until my deeds should bear witness that in some respect they resembled yours, or I die in the undertaking."

"Certainly, brother," said Amadis, "don't give it up on that account, for there your great reputation is such that mine, if it is anything, was being obscured."

"Oh, sir," said Don Galaor, "by heaven, don't say such a wrong thing, for neither with deeds nor thought thereof would I be able to overtake or equal your great might!"

"Now let us drop this," said Amadis, "for between your accomplishments and mine, according to the great prowess of our father, by rights there ought not to be any difference."

And then he gave orders to the dwarf to go forthwith to the court of King Lisuarte, and paying Amadis's respects to the queen, to tell her on his behalf how he had found Galaor and that as soon as they had recovered from their wounds they would leave for those parts. The dwarf, complying with the command of his lord, set out on the road to Windsor, where the king was at that time, well attended by all his knights.

CHAPTER XXIII

How king lisuarte, going out on a hunt as he was accustomed to do at other times, saw three armed knights coming along the road, and what happened to him with them.

As King Lisuarte was a great hunter, and would have been a game beater if he had been free from other things more befitting his high estate, he often went out to hunt in a forest that was near the town of Windsor, in which, it being very well protected, there were many deer and other wild animals; and he was always accustomed to wearing hunting clothes, for he took care of each situation in the proper way. And one day, being with his company of game beaters near a main highway, he saw coming toward him three armed knights, and he sent a squire to tell them on his behalf to come to him, of which they having been apprised, leaving the highway, they entered the forest at the place to which the squire guided them; and know you that these were Don Galvanes Lackland and Agrajes, his nephew, and Olivas who was traveling with them in order to challenge the Duke of Bristol to a duel; and they were bringing with them the maiden whom they had saved from death when the attempt was made to burn her. And when they were near the king, he recognized very well Don Galvanes and said to him:

"Don Galvanes, my good friend, be you very welcome."

And he went and embraced him, saying:

"I am very pleased to be with you."

And with the same good grace he received the others, for he was the one man in all the world who received the knights who

came to his court with greatest affection and honor. Don Galvanes said to him:

"Sire, here you see Agrajes, my nephew, and I present him to you as one of the greatest knights in the world; and if he were not such, I would not present him to such a great man as you, whom so many good and valued ones serve."

The king, who had already heard the deeds of Agrajes praised highly, was very happy with him and embraced him, and said:

"Surely, good friend, I owe you great thanks for coming, and I even consider myself blameworthy in not having invited you to do so when I knew your great valor."

The king knew Olivas very well, for he was a member of his retinue; and said:

"Friend Olivas, I haven't seen you for a long time; surely, such a good knight as you would not have wanted to be separated from me."

"Sire," said he, "the things that have happened to me against my will have caused me not to have seen or served you, and now I come not so far removed from them as to avoid having to face much danger and hardship."

Then he related to them how the Duke of Bristol had killed his brother, for which the king was very sorry because he had been a good knight; and he said to Olivas:

"Friend, I hear what you say, and tell it to me thus at my court, and a deadline will be given to the duke to come and make answer."

And taking them with him, leaving the chase, he went with them to the town; and on the way he learned how that maiden whom they were escorting they had saved from death, which they wanted to give her because of Don Galaor; and the king told them how Amadis had gone to look for him, and the great fright which Arcalaus had given them by saying he had killed him. Agrajes was much surprised to hear it, and said to the king:

"Sire, do you know for certain that Amadis is alive?"

"I know it for certain," he said.

And he related how he ascertained it from Brandoyvas and from Grindalaya.

"And you must not doubt it, since I in my own mind am satisfied, for I would yield to no one in desiring for him life and honor."

"So we believe," said Agrajes, "for because of his great worth he well deserves of yours to be loved and esteemed with that zeal with which good men desire what is good."

The king having reached his palace with these knights, the news of their arrival was at once learned in the queen's household, at which many ladies were happy, especially the beautiful Olinda, Agrajes's beloved, who loved him as she did herself; after her it was Mabilia, his sister; who, when she learned of his arrival, left the queen's chamber, and on her meeting Olinda, the latter said to her:

"Lady, aren't you very happy at the arrival of your brother?"

"Yes, I am," said Mabilia, "for I love him very much."

"Then ask the queen to have him come, and you shall see him, because a part of your joy will overflow to those who love you very much."

Mabilia went to the queen and said:

"Madam, it will be well for you to see Agrajes my brother and Don Galvanes my uncle, since they come to serve you, and I have a desire to see them."

"My dear," said the queen, "I shall do this with pleasure, for I am very happy to see two such knights at the court of my lord the king."

And immediately she gave orders to a damsel to ask the king on her behalf to send them to her in order that she might see them; the maiden told him, and the king said to them:

"The queen wishes to see you; it will be well for you to go there."

When Agrajes heard him, he was very joyful, because he was hoping to see that lady of his whom he loved so much and on whom his whole heart and desires were focused; also it pleased Galvanes to see the queen and her duennas and maidens, but not because he was in love with any one of them. So they went immediately into the presence of the queen, who received them very well, and having them sit down before her, she talked with them about many things, showing her esteem for them, as one

who assuredly was one of the ladies of the world who most intelligently spoke with good men; because of which she was highly appreciated and esteemed, not only by those who knew her, but even by those who had never seen her, for humanity holds this high preeminence among people of high degree without their expending for it more than that to which virtue and nobility constrains them; and to those who do the opposite, the opposite comes, for in temporal matters it must be considered worst to be hated and abhorred.

Olinda came to Mabilia thinking that Agrajes would hasten there; but he, who was talking with the queen, was not able to take his eyes off that one on whom his heart was. The queen, who thought he was looking at his sister Mabilia with a desire to speak to her, said:

"Good friend, go to your sister, who has greatly desired to see you."

Agrajes went to her, and they received each other with that true love of brother and sister who love each other very much, which seldom is in accord with the name; and Olinda greeted him much more with her heart than with her countenance, subordinating reason to will, which likewise is hard to do unless great prudence, with which this maiden was endowed, intervenes. Agrajes had his sister sit between him and his beloved in order that while she was there, he might not shift his gaze away from the latter, for the sight of her gave him great comfort and peace. Thus he was talking with them, but since his thought and his eyes were on his lady, his mind understood very little of what his sister was saying to him. So he gave no reply, nor did he pay attention to her questions. Mabilia, who was very understanding, sensed it immediately, knowing that her brother loved Olinda more than her, and Olinda him, according to what she had told her before and his having seated himself with her in order to talk with Olinda; and as she loved this brother as she loved herself, she thought that since she had to try to please him in everything, she would be able to please him in that more than in anything else, and she said to him:

"Sir and brother, call my uncle, for I would truly like to speak with him."

Agrajes was very pleased at this and said to the queen: "Madam, be so kind as to send to us here that knight, so that his niece may speak to him."

The queen ordered him to come, and Mabilia went to him and sought to kiss his hands; but he withdrew them and embraced her, and said:

"My niece, let us sit down, and I shall ask you how you happen to be in this land."

"Sir," said she, "let us go over to that window, for I do not want my brother to hear my secret."

And Galvanes said, laughing:

"Certainly I am very glad, for he is not such a one as ought to hear such a good secret as yours and mine."

And they went to the window, and Agrajes stayed with his lady as he wanted; and on seeing himself alone with her, he said:

"My lady, in order to carry out what you bade me do, and because elsewhere my heart found no rest, I have come here to serve you, for the sight of you will be for me a reward for the troubles and mortal desires that I suffer continuously."

"Ah, my dear sir!" said she, "of the pleasure my heart feels at your coming, that Lord who knows all is a witness; for if you were absent from me, I would not be able to have any good time or pleasure, even if I had everything in the world I might want. I think that you came to this land only for me, and I must strive to give you your reward for it."

"Ah, madam!" said Agrajes, "all that you do is done in your own interest, for this life of mine will never cease to be placed at your service against all the others in the world, and all those who regard you as their lady my life will consider interlopers."

"Dear sir," said she, "you are the one who will win out over them all, and you will win me who will never fail you, for so help me God, I am very happy when I see all those who bring news of your great deeds praising you."

Agrajes lowered his eyes with embarrassment on hearing himself praised, and she stopped and said,

"My dear, since you are here, what will you do?"

"As you command," said he, "for I come to this land only to carry out your order."

"Then I wish," said she, "you to consort here with your cousin Amadis, whom I know you regard with a great affection; and if he advises you to join the retinue of the king, do so."

"Lady," said he, "you do me a great favor in everything, for except for what relates to you, there is nothing in which I would have greater pleasure than in submitting my concerns for the counsel of my cousin."

As they were saying this which you hear, the queen called them, and both the knights went before her; and the queen well knew Don Galvanes from the time that she was a princess dwelling in the kingdom of Denmark, of which she was a native, for there, as well as in the kingdom of Norway, he had performed many chivalrous deeds, whence he was reputed to be a very good knight. While the queen was talking with Don Galvanes, Oriana spoke with Agrajes, for she knew him and esteemed him very much, as much on account of knowing that Amadis loved and esteemed him, as because she considered herself belonging to his father and mother, who brought her up very honorably at the time that King Lisuarte left her in their custody, as we have told you. And she said to him,

"My good friend, your arrival has given us great pleasure, especially to your sister, who had so much need of it; for if you knew what I went through with her on account of the news of the death of Amadis, your cousin, you would consider it extraordinary."

"Surely, madam," said he, "my sister ought rightly to feel deeply about such a thing; and not only she, but all those who are of her family; since if he died, there would die the principal leader of all of us and the best knight who ever slung a shield on his neck or took a lance in hand, and his death would be avenged or accompanied by many others."

"May that traitor of an Arcalaus die a bad death," said Oriana, "for he knew well how to cause us great sorrow!"

While they were speaking about this, the knights were summoned on behalf of the king, and they went there; and they found that he wanted to dine, and he had them sit at a table where there were other knights of great worth; and the table having been set, two knights entered the gate of the

palace and knelt before the king, and he greeted them. One of them said:

"Sir, is Amadis of Gaul here?"

"No," said the king, "but we should be very pleased if he were."

"Surely, sir," said the knight, "and I would be very happy to find him, as one who through him expects to recover the joy from which I am now separated."

"And what is your name?" said the king.

He responded:

"Angriote D'Estravaus, and this other man is my brother."

King Arban of North Wales, who heard that that was Angriote, rose from the table and went to him, who was still kneeling before the king, and lifting him by the hand, said:

"Sire, do you know Angriote?"

"No," said the king, "for I have never seen him before."

"Certainly, sire, those who know him consider him one of the best knights at arms in all your land."

The king arose and said to him:

"Good friend, pardon me if I did not do you the honor that your worth merits; the reason for it was that I did not know you, and I am very pleased with you."

"Many thanks," said Angriote, "and so would it please me to serve you."

"Friend," said the king, "where did you know Amadis?"

"Sire, I knew him, but not for long; and when I made his acquaintance it cost me dearly, even to being wounded to the point of death. But he who did me the harm, administered to me the medicine that was most suitable for overcoming it, as one who is the one knight in the world of most good will."

Then he related there all that had befallen him with Amadis just as the story set it forth. The king said to Arban to take Angriote with him and he did so, and seated him at the table beside himself; and they having eaten and speaking of many things, Ardian, Amadis's dwarf, entered; and Angriote, who saw him, said:

"Ah, dwarf, be you welcome! Where did you leave your master Amadis, with whom I saw you?"

"Sir," said the dwarf, "wherever I leave him, he esteems and prizes you highly."

Then he went to the king and all fell silent in order to hear what he would say, and he said:

"Sire, Amadis sends you his regards and sends greetings to all of his friends."

When they heard the news about Amadis, they were exceedingly overjoyed. The king said:

"Dwarf, so help you God, tell us where you leave Amadis?"

"Sire," said he, "I have left him where he is sound and in good health, and if you wish to know more of him, place me before the queen, and I shall tell her."

"One shall not be kept from knowing it because of this," said the king.

And he ordered the queen to come there, who came immediately with as many as fifteen of her duennas and damsels; and there were those present who blessed the dwarf because he was the cause of their seeing their beloveds. The dwarf went before her and said:

"Lady, your knight Amadis orders me to pay his respects to you, and he sends me to tell you that he has found Don Galaor, whom he was seeking."

"Is it true?" said the queen.

"Lady, it is true," said the dwarf, "beyond all doubt; but in his recognition of him there would have been great misfortune if God at the time had not brought there a knight by the name of Balays."

Then he related to them all that had happened, and how Balays had killed the maiden who had brought Amadis and Galaor together in order that they kill each other, for which he was highly praised by the king and all the others. The queen said to the dwarf:

"Friend, where did you leave him?"

"I left him in the castle of that Balays."

"What did you think of Don Galaor?" said the queen.

"Lady," said he, "he is one of the handsomest knights in the world; and if you were to see him together with my lord, it would be hard for you to tell which is which."

"Certainly," said the queen, "I should be very pleased if they were here."

"As soon as they are healed," said the dwarf, "they will come, and here I am to await them."

And he related all that had happened to Amadis while he was waiting for him. The king and the queen and all the knights were very happy with this good news; but Agrajes especially was, and he kept questioning the dwarf. The king requested and ordered those who were there not to leave the court until Amadis and Galaor came, because he intended to hold a very special convocation of nobles; and they agreed and praised him very much; and he ordered the queen to send for the most beautiful damsels and of the highest rank that could be had; for besides her being well attended, because of them there would come many knights of great valor to serve her, to whom he would render great honor and many favors and rewards.

CHAPTER XXIV

Concerning how Amadis and Galaor and Balays decided to go to King Lisuarte, and the adventures that thereby came to them.

Amadis and Galaor were in the house of Balays until they were healed of their wounds, and they agreed to go to the court of King Lisuarte before they became involved in other adventures; and Balays, who wanted very much to be of that court, especially having acquaintance with two such knights, begged them to take him with them, to which they willingly agreed; and after hearing mass, they all three armed themselves and started straight for Windsor, were the king was; and they traveled so far that at the end of five days they arrived at a crossroads, where there was a huge tree; and they saw under it a dead knight on a very luxurious bed, and at his feet he had a candle burning and another at his head, and they were made in such a way that no wind, however strong it might be, could extinguish them. The dead knight was in full armor and not covered by anything, and there were many bruises on his head, and he had a piece of a lance thrust into his throat, its iron tip protruding from his neck and both hands placed on it as though he wanted to pull it out; they were greatly astonished to see the knight in such wise. And willingly they would have asked about him, but they saw no one or any place around where they might obtain information.

Amadis said:

"This dead knight is not here in such wise without some good reason, and if we were to tarry, some adventure would not be slow in coming about."

Galaor said:

"I swear, by the chivalric faith that I hold, not to leave here until I ascertain who this knight is or why he was killed, and to avenge him if reason and justice so warrant it."

Amadis, who was making that journey with the hope of seeing his lady, to whom he had promised to return as soon as he found Galaor, was distressed at this, and said:

"Brother, I am very sorry about what you have promised, for I have the fear of its occasioning for you here a long delay."

"The die is cast," said Galaor.

And dismounting, he seated himself beside the bed, and the other two likewise, for they would not leave him alone. This was probably between nones and vespers. And while they were looking at the knight and Amadis was saying that the latter had put his hands there to draw out the piece of lance while still breathing, and on his expiring, it certainly thus had remained, it was not long before they saw coming along one of the roads a knight and two squires; and one of them was bringing a maiden seated in front of him on a horse, and the other was carrying the knight's shield and helmet; and the maiden was weeping bitterly, and the knight was striking her on her head with his lance, which he was carrying in his hand. Thus they passed near the bed where the knight lay dead; and when the maiden saw the three companions, she said:

"Alas, good knight who lies there dead! If you were alive, you would not consent to my being carried off in such a manner, for first your body would have been exposed to every danger, and the death of these three would be worth more than yours alone."

The knight who was bringing her struck her with more rage with the shaft of his lance, so that blood ran down her face; and they passed by so quickly that it was a wonder.

"Now I tell you," said Amadis, "that I have never seen a knight so vile as this one in seeking to strike the maiden in such fashion; and God willing, I shall not let this violence continue." And he said: "Galaor, brother, if I delay, go on to Windsor, for I shall be there if I can, and Balays will keep you company."

Then mounting his horse, he took up his arms and said to Gandalin:

"Come behind me."

And he went as fast as he could after the knight, who already was far ahead. Galaor and Balays stayed there until night closed in. Then there arrived a knight who was coming along the road on which Amadis had gone, and he came moaning from a leg injury and fully armed; and he said to Galaor and Balays:

"Do you know who the knight is who is going on the run along this road that I have come on?"

"Why do you ask?" they said.

"So that he be damned to hell," said he, "for thus he goes so belligerently that it seems all the devils accompany him."

"And what belligerence did he exhibit to you?" said Don Galaor.

"Because he did not want to tell me," said he, "where he was going in such a hurry, I seized his horse by the bridle and told him to tell me or fight with me; he told me angrily that since I was not letting him go on, it would delay him longer to tell me than to free himself from me by combat; and he withdrawing from me, we galloped toward each other, and he struck me so hard that he brought me and my horse to the ground and put my leg in the condition you see."

They began to laugh, and Don Galaor said:

"Another time restrain yourself by not seeking to ascertain anyone's business against his will."

"What!" said the knight, "are you laughing at me? Certainly I'll fix it so that you will be less moved to do so."

And he went to where the horses were and with his sword hit Galaor's on the face so that he made it rear up and break the reins and run away over the countryside; and the knight tried to do the same to Balays's horse, but he and Galaor took their lances and were going toward him, which deterred him from doing it. The knight went away saying:

"If I showed a lack of restraint toward the other knight and paid for it, so shall you pay for laughing at me."

"May God not help me," said Balays, "if you do not give your horse for the one that you turned loose."

And he quickly mounted, saying to Galaor that he would probably be with him the next day if chance did not prevent him.

"Good-bye," said he.

Don Galaor remained alone with the dead knight, for he commanded his squire to go after his horse, and he remained waiting until more than five hours of the night had passed. Then overcome by sleep, he put his helmet at his head and the shield over him. He fell into a doze, and so he remained for quite a long time; but when he awoke, he did not see any light from the candles that were previously burning, nor did he find the dead knight, at which he was greatly disturbed, and he said to himself: "I certainly ought not to strive for what other good men strive for, since I don't know how to do anything except sleep, and therefore I have failed to carry out my promise; but I shall give myself the penalty that my negligence deserves, for I shall have to look on foot for what, if I had remained here quietly, I would have been able to ascertain without any effort."

And thinking how he might be able to follow the trail of those who came there, he heard a horse neighing, and went in that direction; and when he came to the place where he had heard it, he found nothing. But immediately he again heard another horse somewhat farther away, and he kept following that road; and when he had walked for a bit, dawn came and he saw in front of him two armed knights, and one of them was dismounted and was reading some letters that were inscribed on a stone; after which he said to the other:

"They had me come here gratuitously, for this seems to me of little profit."

And mounting their horses, they were both going away; Galaor called them and said:

"Sir knight, could you tell me who took away a dead knight who was lying under the tree at the crossroads?"

"In truth," said one of them, "we know only that after midnight we saw three damsels and ten squires going along carrying a litter."

"Well, which way were they going?" said Galaor.

They showed him the road, and on their leaving him, he went that way; and in a short while he saw a maiden coming toward him, and he said to her:

"Damsel, by chance do you know who carried a dead knight away from under the tree at the crossroads?"

"If you promise to avenge his death, which was a great sorrow to many men and women because of his great worth, I shall tell you."

"I agree," said he, "for according as it seems to you, one can undertake this vengeance justly."

"That is quite certain," said she; "and now follow me and mount this palfrey, and I'll ride on it behind you."

And she had wanted him to ride in the saddle, but he was in nowise willing to do it; and on his mounting behind her, they went where the damsel guided them. And when at some two leagues away from there they saw a very beautiful castle, the maiden said:

"There we shall find what you seek."

And reaching the gate of the castle, the maiden said:

"Enter, and I shall go away; and tell me your name and where I shall be able to find you?"

"My name," said he, "is Don Galaor, and I think that you will find me at the court of King Lisuarte rather than anywhere else."

She went away and Galaor entered the castle, and saw the dead knight lying in the center of the courtyard, and they were lamenting exceedingly over him; and approaching an old knight who was among those who were there, he asked him:

"Who was the dead knight?"

"Sir," said he, "he was such that the whole world should rightly mourn for him."

"And what was his name?" said Galaor.

"Antebon," said he, "and he was a native of Gaul."

Galaor had greater pity for him than before, and said,

"I beg you to tell me why he was killed."

"Gladly shall I tell you," said he. "This knight came to this land, and on account of his excellence he married that duenna

who is weeping over him, who is the lady of this castle, and they had a very beautiful daughter, who was loved by a knight who dwells near here in another fortress; but she hated him more than anything. And the dead knight was accustomed to go out often to the tree by the crossroads, because there many adventures of knights errant always took place, and he had a desire to correct those that happened unreasonably, in which he performed so well at arms that in these lands he was highly praised; and being there one day, by chance that knight who loved his daughter, passed by, and going by him he went to the castle where the maiden had remained with her mother, gamboling with other women in this courtyard. And taking her by the arm, he went out before they could close the gate, and he took her to his castle; the maiden did naught except weep, and the knight said to her:

'My dear, since I am a knight and love you very much, why will you not take me in marriage, since I have greater wealth and a higher rank than your father?'

'Not willingly;' said she, 'rather I shall hold to an oath I made to my mother.'

'And what is the oath?'

'Not to marry or make love except to a knight praised at arms, like that one whom she married, who is my father.'

'You shall not refrain on this account, for I am no less courageous than your father, and before the third day you shall know it.'

'Then he left the castle armed and mounted, and went to the tree at the crossroads, where at the time he found this knight dismounted and with his arms beside him; and going up to him without speaking, he struck him with the lance through the throat as you see, before he could take up his arms, and he fell to the ground, the blow being mortal; and the knight dismounted then and struck him with the sword all those blows that you see he received until he killed him.'

"So help me God," said Galaor, "the knight was killed without any provocation, and everyone would have sorrow for him. And now tell me why they put him in such wise under the tree at the crossroads."

"Because many knights errant pass by there, and they are told what I have told you on the chance that some one of them might avenge him."

"But why do you leave him there alone?" said Galaor.

"There have always been," said the knight, "four squires with him until last night, when they fled from there because the other knight sent word to threaten them, and therefore we brought him away."

"I am very sorry," said Don Galaor, "not to have seen you."

"What!" said the other, "Were you the one who was sleeping there, lying on his helmet?"

"I am," said he.

"And why did you stay there?" said the knight.

"To avenge that death if with justice it could be done," said Galaor.

"Are you still of that resolve now?"

"Yes, certainly," said he.

"Ah, sir!" said the knight, "may God in his mercy permit you to bring it to a conclusion with honor."

And taking him by the hand, he brought him to the bed and made all those who were mourning be silent, and said to the matron:

"Lady, this knight says that he will avenge the death of your husband to the best of his ability."

She fell at his feet and kissed them, and said:

"Ah, good knight! May God reward you; for he does not have in this land any relative or friend who strives to do so, for he is from a foreign land; but when he was alive, many showed themselves to be his friends."

Galaor said:

"On account of his being from the same land as I am, I have greater desire to avenge him, for I am a native of where he was from."

"Friend," said the matron, "perchance are you the son of the king of Gaul who my lord used to say was at the court of King Lisuarte?"

"I never was in his court," said he, "but tell me who killed him and where I shall be able to find him."

"Good sir," said she, "I shall tell you and I shall guide you there; but I am very much afraid, in view of the danger, that you may fear to attack him, as others whom I have sent there have feared."

"Lady," said he, "for this reason the good are set apart from the evil ones."

The matron ordered two damsels to guide him.

"Madam," said Galaor, "I am on foot."

And he told her how he had lost his horse, and said:

"Order me to be given a steed on which to ride."

"I shall do so gladly," said she, "on condition that if you do not avenge him, you will return the horse to me."

"I agree," said Galaor.

CHAPTER XXV

How Galaor avenged the death of the knight whom they had found foully murdered at the tree by the crossroads.

They gave him a horse, and he went away with the maidens; and they journeyed until they reached a forest and saw in it a fortress that was on a very high cliff, and the maidens said to him:

"Sir, there you have to avenge the knight."

"Let us go there," said he, "and tell me the name of the one who killed him."

"Palingues," said they.

At this point they arrived at the castle and saw the gate closed. Galaor knocked, and an armed man coming above the gate, said:

"What do you want?"

"To enter there," said Galaor.

"This gate," said the other, "is only for those to leave who are here."

"Then, where shall I enter?" said he.

"I will show you," said the other; "but I am afraid that you will try in vain and not dare enter."

"So help me God," said Galaor, "I should like to be there within already."

"Now we shall see," said he, "if your strength is as great as your desire; and dismount and come on foot to that tower."

Galaor gave the horse to the maidens and stationed himself where they told him; and it was not long before they saw the knight and another large one well armed on top of the tower; and

they began to unwind a windlass and they lowered a large basket fastened with strong ropes; and they said:

"Sir, if you want to enter here, this is the way."

"If I enter the basket," said Galaor, "will you put me up there safely?"

"Yes, indeed," said they, "but afterwards we do not guarantee your safety."

Then he entered the basket and said:

"Then pull, for I trust in your word."

They began to lift it, and the maidens who were watching said:

"Oh, good knight! God protect you from treachery, for certainly in your heart lies great courage."

Thus the knight hauled Galaor up to the top of the tower; and being aloft, he came out of the basket very agilely and came among them on the tower. They said:

"Knight, you have to swear to help the lord of this castle against those who demand reparations for the death of Antebon, or you will not leave here."

"Is one of you the one who killed him?" said Galaor.

"Why do you ask?" said they.

"Because I would like to make known to him the great treachery that he committed."

"Why are you so mad?" said the knights. "You are in our power and you threaten him? Well, now you will pay for your madness."

And taking their swords in hand, they went for him very angrily; and Galaor grasped his sword, and they gave each other fierce blows on top of their helmets and shields, for the two knights were brave and Galaor, who saw himself in danger, endeavored to bring death to them.

The maidens, who were below, heard the blows that were delivered, and said:

"Oh, God! What can become of the good knight who is already fighting?"

And one of them said:

"Let us not depart from here until we see the culmination of this affair."

Galaor fought so fiercely that he frightened the knights greatly; and he rushed at one of them and gave him a blow with all his might on top of his helmet, so that the sword reached his head and penetrated two inches into it; and jerking it back, he threw him to his knees. Furthermore he began to overwhelm him with such hard blows that no matter what wounds that the other might inflict on him, he did not let up until he killed him; and he turned then to the other, who, as he saw himself alone with him, sought to flee; but he caught up with him, and seizing him by the boss of his shield, he jerked him so hard that he threw him down at his feet; and he struck him such blows with the sword that he was beyond any need of a physician. This having been thus accomplished, he put the sword in its scabbard and threw the knights down from the tower, telling the maidens to look and see whether either of them was Palingues; they said:

"Sir, these are too badly disfigured to recognize them; but we really think that neither one is he."

Then Galaor came down the stairway of the tower, and entering in a hall, saw a beautiful maiden who was saying:

"Palingues, why did you flee if you were so strong as to kill my father in battle, as you say? Pay attention to this knight who is coming."

Galaor looked ahead and saw a knight well armed with all weapons, who was trying to open a door to another tower, but was not able; and from the words of the beautiful maiden he knew him to be the one whom he was seeking; and he was pleased and said:

"Palingues, it does not behoove you to flee, nor to summon aid, for even though you summon it, you will not escape anywhere."

Then he went toward him; and the other, who had no other recourse, turned likewise to attack him, and struck a mighty blow on top of the boss of his shield; hence the sword entered for a palm's length, so that he could not draw it out; and Galaor struck him thus exposed on his right arm, and cut through the sleeve of his coat of mail, and his arm near the elbow, and knocked it to the ground. And Palingues sought to flee to a chamber and fell across the doorway. Galaor took him by the leg and dragged

him along, and took his helmet off his head and struck him with his sword, saying:

"Take this for the treachery that you committed in killing Antebon."

And he split his head open down to the teeth; then he put his sword in its scabbard, and the beautiful maiden who heard those words, came to him and said:

"Oh, good knight! God cause you to live in honor, for you have avenged my father and the violence that was done to me."

Galaor took her by the hand and said:

"Certainly, my lovely dear, one ought to be ashamed to cause sorrow to anyone of such beautiful appearance, who, so help me God, merits much more to be served than angered." Furthermore he said: "Dear lady, are there any ones in the castle whom I may fear?"

"Sir," said she, "only serving people remain here, and all will be at your service."

"Then let us go," said he, "and admit the two damsels of your mother who by her command guided me here."

Then he took her by the hand, and reaching the gate of the castle, they opened it and found there the damsels, who were waiting; and one brought him his horse, and they had them enter; and when they dismounted, they embraced their mistress with great joy and they asked her if the death of her father was avenged.

"Yes," said she, "thanks to God and to this good knight who avenged him, something no other had been able to do."

And then they went together to where Galaor was, who had already taken off his shield and helmet, and they saw him so young and so handsome that they were astonished; and the maiden whom he helped became more fond of him than of anyone else she had ever seen, and went and embraced him, saying:

"Dear sir, I ought to esteem you more than any other person; and I would like very much to know, if you please, who you are."

"I am a native," said he, "of the same country as your father."

"Then tell me your name."

"My name is Galaor," said he.

"Thank God," said she, "that my father was avenged by such a knight, for he mentioned you many times and another good knight, your brother, by the name of Amadis; and he said that you are sons of the king of Gaul, whose vassal he was."

At this time the maidens were going about through the castle searching with the other women in order to give them something to eat; and Galaor and the maiden, called Brandueta, were talking alone about what you hear, and as she was very beautiful and he was covetous of such viands, before the meal came or the table was set, both of them rumpled a bed that was in the hall where they were, thus making her a matron who before that was not, satisfying their desires, which, in such a short space of time, each looking at the other's beautiful youthfulness in bloom, had become very great.

The tables having been set and everything prepared, Galaor and the maiden went out to the courtyard, and under a tree that was there they were served; and Brandueta told him there how Palingues, fearful of him and of his brother Amadis, placed such a heavy guard in that castle, thinking that since Antebon, her father, was a compatriot of theirs, that to them rather than to anyone else was given the vengeance for his death. Afterwards they disported with great pleasure, and because Brandueta was eager to leave the castle and to go see her mother, Galaor, considering it a good idea, decided to go there although it was already late, and at once they mounted their palfreys; and having set out on their way, they arrived two hours after nightfall at the house of the matron her mother; who, through one of the damsels, who had gone on ahead, already knew all that had happened; and so she, like all the other people, men and women, was waiting for them in the courtyard where Antebon lay dead, evincing great joy because his death was avenged so fully and honorably. And Galaor dismounted into the embraces of the lady, who was saying:

"Sir knight, this castle is yours, and we shall all do whatever you command."

Then she had him disarm and brought him to a luxurious room where there was a bed with beautiful bedclothing. There he lodged that night much to his joy, because Brandueta, thinking

that if he were left alone, the great honor that he deserved would not be complete, when she saw a suitable time went to him; and at times sleeping and at other times talking and dallying, they were together until near daybreak, when she returned to her bed.

CHAPTER XXVI

WHAT HAPPENED TO AMADIS WHEN HE WENT IN QUEST OF THE DAMSEL WHOM THE KNIGHT WAS CARRYING OFF BY FORCE AND ABUSING.

Amadis, who was going after the knight who was abducting the maiden by force and kept striking her, traveled a long way in order to overtake him; and before he overtook him, he met another armed knight on horseback, who said to him:

"What trouble of yours is so great as to make you come at such speed?"

"What is it to you," said Amadis, "if I go fast or slow?"

"If you are fleeing from someone, I will protect you."

"I do not need your protection now," said Amadis.

The knight took his horse by the reins and said:

"You have to tell me; otherwise you are in combat."

"I like that better," said Amadis, "because I shall delay longer if I tell you about it than if by combat I get rid of you; for judging by your immoderation, I would not be able to tell you enough so that you would not want to know more."

The knight drew back and came toward him at the full speed of his horse, and Amadis at him, and the knight struck him forcibly on his shield so that his lance was shattered; and Amadis struck him so hard that he fell to the ground and the horse on top of him, and the knight was injured so badly in one leg that he could hardly stand up. Passing by him, Amadis went ahead on his way. And this was the knight who turned Galaor's horse loose. And Amadis made such an effort to hurry that he overtook the knight who was taking away the maiden, and said:

"A while ago you were immoderate, and now I ask you not to be."

"And what immoderate act did I commit?" said the knight.

"The greatest that you could," said Amadis, "for you are abducting the maiden and moreover you beat her."

"It seems," said the knight, "that you seek to admonish me."

"I am not admonishing you," said he, "but I tell you what is for your own good."

"I believe it would be better for you to return to where you came from."

Amadis became furious, and went for the squire and said to him:

"Release the maiden, or you die."

The squire, fearful, put her on the ground. The knight said:

"Sir knight, you have done a very insane thing."

"Now we shall see," said Amadis.

And lowering their lances, they attacked each other in such wise that they were shattered, and the knight went down to the ground; and as soon as he fell he got up quickly, and Amadis went toward him to strike him down in collision with his horse's chest. The other one said:

"Stop, sir, for because of my being immoderate, don't you be, and have mercy on me."

"Then swear," said Amadis, "that you will not force a matron or a maiden against her will to do anything."

"Very willingly," said the knight.

When Amadis came up to him to receive his oath, the other, who had his sword in his hand, struck with it the belly of his horse which caused it to fall with him. Amadis came out from under it immediately, and grasping his sword, charged at him so furiously that it was a marvel. And the knight said:

"Now I shall make you see that you were very unlucky to come here."

Amadis, who was very wrathful, did not answer, but struck him on the helmet below the visor, and cut through it until his sword reached his face; so that he cut off his nose and half his face, and the knight fell; but he, not content, chopped off his head; and putting his sword in the scabbard, went to the maiden

at a time when night had already fallen and the moon was shining bright. She said to him:

"Sir knight, God give you honor for the help you have rendered me, and more if you finish it, which is to escort me to the castle to which I should like to go; for I wouldn't set out on the road at this hour for anything."

"Maiden," said he, "I shall escort you gladly."

At this juncture, Gandalin arrived, and Amadis said to him:

"Give me that horse of the knight, for he killed mine, and you take the maiden on the palfrey, and let us go on to where she may guide us."

So they left that road to take another that the maiden knew. Amadis asked her if she knew the name of the dead knight by the tree at the crossroads. She said she did, and she told him all about him and the reason for his death, which she knew well. At this point they arrived at a river bank. It now being midnight, and because the maiden was very sleepy, at her request they agreed to sleep there a while; and dismounting from the beasts, they put Gandalin's cloak down for her to sleep on; and Amadis, lying on his helmet, stretched out near her and Gandalin on the other side. Then while they were all sleeping, as you hear, there arrived by chance a knight who was coming downstream along the bank; and as soon as he saw them, while mounted he bent over them and put the tip of his lance between the arms of the maiden and woke her; and as she saw the armed knight, she thought it was the one who was protecting her, and getting up sleepily, said:

"Sir, do you want to go?"

"Yes, I do," said the knight.

"In the name of God," said she.

The knight leaned down and taking her by the arm mounted her in front of him and began to go.

"What is this?" said she, "It is better for the squire to carry me."

"He will not carry you," said he, "since you have wished to go with me."

She looked behind her and saw Amadis, who was sleeping soundly, and she shouted:

"Alas, sir, help me, for someone I do not know is taking me away!"

The knight spurred his horse and went away with her as fast as he could. Amadis awoke on hearing the shouts of the maiden, and saw that the knight was taking her away, at which he was greatly distressed; and he quickly called Gandalin to give him his horse, and in the meantime he laced his helmet and took up his sword and lance. And mounting, he went where he had seen the other go; and he had not journeyed far when he found himself among some trees of dense foliage, on account of which he lost his way, for he knew not where to go; although he was the most restrained knight in the world, great fury against himself arose in him, and he said:

"Now I say that the damsel can well say that I brought her as much harm as help; for if I defended her from one ravisher, I have left her in the power of another."

And so he journeyed quite a distance through the countryside, doing his horse more harm than it deserved; and in a short while he heard a horn sounding, and he kept going toward that place, thinking that the knight had come there; and it was not long before he discovered ahead of him a beautiful fortress on a high hill, and it was well guarded; and on arriving at it, he saw its wall to be high and its tower strong, but its gate it had well locked. The watchmen, who saw him, asked him what sort of man he was to go about armed at such an hour.

"I am a knight," said he.

"And what do you seek?" said they.

"I seek," said he, "a knight who took a maiden away from me."

"We have not seen him," said those above.

Amadis went around the castle; and on the other side he found a postern gate open, and he saw on foot the knight who had carried away the maiden; and his men who were unsaddling his horse, which otherwise could not go through the gateway. Amadis thought it was he, and said:

"Sir knight, wait a moment and do pay us heed. First tell me if you are the one who took my maiden away from me."

"If I carried her away," said he, "you protected her poorly."

"You took her from me by deceit," said Amadis, "for otherwise it would not have been so easy to do it; and certainly you were not polite there, nor did you acquire there any knightly honor."

The knight said to him:

"Friend, I have the maiden, who of her own free will wanted to come with me; I maintain that I did not force her."

"Sir knight," said Amadis, "show me her, and if she says that, I shall stop demanding her."

"I shall show her to you tomorrow inside there, if you wish to enter the castle in accordance with its custom."

"And what custom is that?"

"Tomorrow you will be told, and you will not regard it lightly if you risk it."

"If I should wish to see it now, would I be welcomed within?"

"No," said the knight, "because it is night; if you wait until daybreak, we shall see what you will do there."

And closing the gate, he withdrew inside. And Amadis withdrew to the shelter of some trees, where he dismounted and remained talking with Gandalin about many things until morning; and at sunrise, he saw the gate open; and mounting his horse he came up to it and saw stationed there a knight fully armed on a big horse. And the gatekeeper, who was watching, said to him:

"Sir knight, do you want to enter here?"

"I do," said Amadis, "for I come here for that purpose."

"Then first I shall tell you," said the gatekeeper, "the custom so that you may not complain. And I tell you therefore that before you enter, you will have to fight with that knight, and if he overcomes you, you will swear to carry out the commands of the lady of this castle; if you don't, they will throw you in an evil prison, and even though you win, we shall not let you leave, and you will have to go forward where you will find at another gate two other knights. And farther on two more knights, and with them all you have to fight under the same stipulation as at first; and if you are so excellent as to do yourself honor, besides winning great prestige at arms, you will be adjudged in the right in whatever you demand."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "if you speak truly, he who is so adjudged here would pay dearly for it; but however that may be, I still want to see my damsel who is being held here, if I can."

Then he went inside the castle gate, and the knight shouted for him to protect himself, and charged at him, and Amadis at him, they striking each other on their shields with their lances; and the knight broke his lance, and Amadis brought him to the ground so violently that the knight broke his right arm; and Amadis turned back to him, and putting his lance on his chest, said:

"You die, unless you admit defeat."

The knight said:

"Sir, mercy."

And he showed him the broken arm. Amadis passed by him and went forward, and saw at the other gate two armed knights and they said to him:

"Enter, knight, if you wish to fight with us; if not, you will be imprisoned without reason."

"I will surely fight," said he, "rather than surrender."

And covering himself with his shield, he lowered his lance and charged them on the run, and they him; and the one missed his target and the other struck him on the shield so that he pierced it and wounded him in the left arm and broke his own lance into pieces. Amadis struck him so hard that he beat down him and his horse to the ground, and he was so stunned from his fall that he fainted; and he charged at the other one, who had remained on horseback, and he met him with the lance without its tip, which had remained in the other's shield, on his helmet in such wise that he knocked it off his head; and the knight struck him at a slant on the boss of his shield; so that he did not receive the shock and the lance remained there whole. And grasping their swords, they struck each other powerful blows. And Amadis said to him:

"You, knight, are certainly mad to fight with your head unprotected."

"My head," said he, "I shall guard better than you yours."

"Now that remains to be seen," said Amadis.

Then he struck him on top of his shield such a mighty blow that the sword pierced it, and the knight lost his stirrups and would have fallen. Amadis, who saw him thus embarrassed, hit him with the flat of his sword on the head, from which he was quite stunned; and Amadis put his hand on his shoulder and said:

"Knight, you protect your head very poorly, for you would have lost it if the blow had been struck directly."

The knight let his sword fall from his hand and said:

"I don't want to risk my body with any more madness, since already you have given it back to me once; and go forward."

Amadis demanded of him his lance, which lay on the ground, and he gave it to him; and reaching the other gate, he saw within the castle matrons and maidens up on the wall, and heard them saying:

"If this knight passes the bridge in spite of the three, he will have performed the greatest feat of chivalry in the world."

Then the three knights very well armed and on beautiful, big horses came out to him, and one of them said:

"Knight, surrender or swear that you will do the bidding of the lady of the castle."

"I shall not surrender," said Amadis, "as long as I can defend myself; nor do I know what the will of the lady is."

"Then protect yourself now," said they.

And all together they went to attack so fiercely that they might have overthrown him with his horse. Amadis struck one of them so hard that he put the iron tip of the lance through his side; and there he broke his lance, just as the others broke theirs on him; and grasping their swords, they attacked each other so fiercely that those who were watching them were greatly astounded, for the three knights were valiant and skilled in arms, and that one whom they had before them did not want shame for himself. The battle was ferocious, but it did not last long, for Amadis, showing his strength, struck them such blows that he caused his sword to reach their flesh and their heads; so in a short time he had them in such shape that they couldn't stand it, and they fled to the castle and he behind them; and as he was pressing them hard, one of them got off his horse, and Amadis said to him:

"It's no use for you to dismount, for I shall not let you be if you do not concede defeat."

"Certainly, sir, I shall do that gladly," said he, "and all those who fought with you ought to be declared defeated in the light of what you are accomplishing."

And he gave him his sword. Amadis returned it to him and went behind the others, whom he saw enter a great hall; and he saw at its door a good twenty matrons and maidens, and the most beautiful of them said:

"Hold, sir knight, for you have done much."

Amadis stood still and said:

"Lady, let them admit defeat."

"And what difference does it make to you?" said the duenna.

"Because they told me at the gate that it would be necessary for me to kill or to conquer, for in no other way would I obtain my right."

"But they told you," said the matron, "that if you entered here in spite of them, that they would render you justice on what you demanded; and now tell us what will please you."

"I demand," said he, "a maiden that a knight took from me along a riverbank where at night I was sleeping, and he brought her to this castle in spite of her wishes."

"Now, sit down," said she, "and let the knight come and tell us his reason and you, yours, and each one shall have his rights; and dismount for a bit while the knight is coming."

Amadis got off his horse and the matron had him sit beside her, and said to him:

"Do you know a knight called Amadis?"

"Why do you ask?" said he.

"Because all this guard that you see in this castle is placed for him; and indeed I tell you that if he should enter here, he would in no wise leave until he had acquitted himself of a thing that he promised."

"And what was that?" said he.

"I shall tell you," said the duenna, "on condition that with all your power, you make him give up what he promised, whether by force of arms, or in any other manner, since he did not do it with justice."

Amadis said:

"I tell you, madam, that whatever thing Amadis has promised — provided he has — with all my might, I shall make him give up."

She, who did not understand to what end it was said, replied:

"Then now know you, sir knight, that that Amadis of whom I am talking promised Angriote D'Estravaus that he would cause him to win his beloved, and this promise you must make him rescind, since such a union, God and reason desire that, rather than by force, should be accomplished voluntarily."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "you are right, and if I can, I shall make him give it up."

The lady was very pleased. But he was no less happy, because by carrying out his promise he freed himself from it.

"And tell me," said he, "are you by chance, lady, the one whom Angriote loves?"

"Sir," said she, "I am."

"Certainly, madam," said he, "I consider Angriote one of the finest knights in the world, and to my thinking, there is not a lady of such high degree as not to be constrained to take pride in having such a knight, and this I do not say in order not to abide by what I have promised, but I say it because he is a better knight than he who gave the promise."

CHAPTER XXVII

How Amadis fought with the knight who had stolen the maiden while he was sleeping, and how he defeated him.

While they were talking about this, there came to them a knight fully armed except his head and hands. He was tall and muscular and sufficiently well-built to have great strength; and he said to Amadis:

"Sir knight, they tell me you demand a maiden whom I brought here; and I did not use force on you, for she wanted to come with me rather than remain with you; and so I maintain that I don't have any reason to give her up to you."

"Then show her to me," said Amadis.

"I do not have any reason to show her to you," said the knight, "but if you tell me she should not be mine, I shall prove to you in combat that she should."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "I shall prove to anyone that you should not have her by rights, if the maiden does not confirm it."

"Then you are in battle," said the knight.

"I am quite pleased," said Amadis.

Now know you that this knight was called Gasinan, and he was the uncle on her father's side of Angriote's lady love and was the relative for whom in the whole world she had most affection. And on account of his being the best knight at arms of his family, she conducted her affairs in accordance with his advice. And they brought this Gasinan a big horse, and he took up his arms. And Amadis likewise mounted his horse and took his arms, and the lady, whose name was Grovenesa, said:

"Uncle, I would praise you if this battle were not to occur, for I would have great sorrow if anything bad should happen to either one of you, for you are the man whom I esteem more than anyone else in the world; and this knight swore to me that he would have Amadis freed from what he promised Angriote."

"Niece," said Gasinan, "How do you think that he or another could dissuade the best knight in the world from carrying out his will?"

Grovenesa said to him:

"So help me God, I consider this one the best knight in the world, and if it were not so, he would not have entered here by force of arms."

"Why," said Gasinan, "do you so esteem him for getting past those who guarded the gates? Certainly he performed well as a knight, but because of that I do not fear him very much; and if there is greatness in him, now you will see it; and may God help me not if I release the maiden as long as I can defend her."

Grovenesa turned away, and they started toward each other at top speed of their horses, with lances lowered, and struck each other on their shields so fiercely that they were broken at once, and they collided with shields and helmets so hard that it was a wonder; and Gasinan, who had less strength, went out of his saddle, and fell hard; but he got up at once like one who was of great strength and courage, and grasped his sword, and kept going toward a stone post that stood high in the center of the courtyard; for there where he was he thought that Amadis would trample him with his horse, and if he should approach him, that he would be able to kill him. Amadis rushed at him to attack him, and Gasinan struck with his sword the face of Amadis's horse, at which Amadis was very angry and endeavored to strike him with all his might, and Gasinan stepped aside and the blow fell on the post, which was of hard stone, so that he cut off a piece of it; but his sword was broken into three pieces. When he saw it thus, he had great concern, as one who was in danger of death and had nothing else with which to defend himself; and he dismounted as quickly as he could. Gasinan, who saw him thus, said:

"Knight, concede the maiden to be mine; if not, you are dead."

"That will not be," said he, "if she does not first say that it pleases her."

Then Gasinan rushed at him and began to strike him all over as one who was of great strength and had the desire to win the maiden. But Amadis covered himself so well with his shield and with such caution that he received most of the blows on it, and others he made him miss. And sometimes he struck him with the hilt of the sword, which remained in his hand, such blows as made him turn back and forth, and often twisted the helmet on his head. Thus they went on a long while with the fight, while the duennas and maidens marveled how Amadis could stand it without having anything with which to strike; but as soon as he beheld holes in his coat of mail in many places and himself at a disadvantage with respect to his shield, he staked everything on a life or death gamble, and rushed with great fury at Gasinan, so quickly that the other could not, or did not, have time to strike him; and they embraced each other, each striving to overthrow the other; and so they continued for a while, for Amadis never let him get loose; and being near the big rock that was in the courtyard, Amadis put forth all his strength, which was greater than anyone would have thought he had, since he was not of large physique, and caused him to fall on top of it so hard that Gasinan was completely stunned, so that he didn't stir hand or foot. Amadis took the sword quickly, which had fallen from his hand, and cutting the laces of the helmet, removed it from his head; and now the knight regained consciousness somewhat but not in such wise as to be able to get up, and Amadis said to him:

"Sir knight, you have caused me much trouble without any right, and now I shall avenge myself for it."

And he raised the sword as if he were about to strike him. And Grovenesa raised a great outcry, saying:

"Alas, good knight, for God's sake have mercy! Let it not be so!"

And she went up to him weeping.

When Amadis saw that it was distressing her so greatly, he pretended even more to be about to kill him, and said:

"Lady, do not beg me to release him, for he has caused me so much distress that in nowise shall I desist from cutting off his head."

"Ah, sir knight!" said she. "In heaven's name, order whatever be your will that we do, so that he not die, and immediately it will be granted."

"Lady," said he, "in the world there is nothing for which I would desist, except for two things, if you wish to do them."

"What are they?"

"Give me the maiden," said he, "and swear to me as a lady of good faith that you will go to the first court that the King Lisuarte holds, and there you will grant me whatever favor I may ask."

Gasinan, who was now more conscious, and saw himself in such great danger, said:

"Ah, niece, have mercy for heaven's sake and don't let me be killed; be sorry for me and do what the knight says!"

She promised what Amadis asked. Then he left the knight and said:

"Lady, I shall comply faithfully as regards the boon that I promised you, and keep to your oath and do not fear that I shall demand anything that might be against your honor."

"Many thanks," said she, "for you are one who will do everything right."

"Then now let the maiden whom I am seeking come forth."

The duenna ordered her to come, and she went and knelt before Amadis and said:

"Certainly, sir, you have endured much anxiety on my account; and although Gasinan took me away by deceit, I know that he loves me well, since he would rather fight than give me up in any other way."

"Dear lady," said Gasinan, "if it appears to you that I loved you, so help me God, great truth is evident to you, and I earnestly beg you to remain with me."

"I shall do so," said she, "if this knight is willing."

"Certainly, lady," said Amadis, "You choose one of the good knights whom you would be able to find; but if this is not agreeable

to you, then tell me and do not blame me for anything that on that account may befall you."

"Sir," said she, "I give great thanks to God because you leave me here."

"In the name of God," said Amadis.

Then he demanded his horse; and Grovenesa had wanted him to stay there that night, but he did not do so; and mounting his horse, having taken leave of her, he ordered Gandalin to bring the pieces of the sword. He left the castle; but first Gasinan begged him to take his sword, and he thanked him very much for it and took it; and Grovenesa had a lance given him; and thus he started out on the direct road to the crossroads tree, for there he thought he would find Galaor and Balays.

CHAPTER XXVIII

Concerning what happened to Balays, who went in search of the knight who had caused Don Galaor to lose his horse.

Balays of Carsante went after the knight who turned loose Don Galaor's horse, who already was a long distance away; and although he hurried greatly to overtake him, night overtook him first, which was very dark, and he traveled on until midnight. Then he heard some voices in front of him on a riverbank and went thither, and found five thieves who had a maiden whom they were seeking to rape; and one of them was dragging her by the hair to put her among some rocks, and all were armed with battle axes and coats of mail. Balays, who saw it, shouted:

"Churls, base ones, scoundrels; what do you want of the maiden? Let her go; if you don't, you all will be dead."

And he charged at them and they at him; and he struck one with the lance on his chest and the iron of his lance penetrated through to his back in such a way that the lance was broken and the thief was dead. But the four attacked him in such wise that his horse fell at once among them, and he came out from under it as quickly as he could, like one who was a courageous and excellent knight; and he grasped his sword and the thieves charged at him and struck him from all sides, wherever they best could, and he struck the one whom he found closest at hand, on top of his head, and cleaved it to the neck and struck him down dead; and allowing his sword to hang by its chain, he picked up very quickly the axe, which had fallen from the churl's grasp, and went toward the others, who seeing the mighty blows that he was delivering, took refuge in a quaking bog that had a

narrow entrance; but first he reached and struck one of them with the axe on the back, which he cut, both flesh and bones, down to the loins; and passing over him he went to the two who had sought refuge in the bog, and there was a big fire there, and the thieves placed themselves on the other side, turning their faces toward him, for there was nowhere to flee to. Balays covered himself with his shield and went for them, and the thieves struck him great blows on top of his helmet, to that they made him put one hand on the ground; but he got up bravely, as one who was of great courage, and gave one of them with the axe such a wound that he knocked off half of his head and flung it into the fire. The other one, when he saw himself alone, let the axe fall from his hands, and stock still before him on his knees, said:

"Oh, sir, in heaven's name, mercy! don't kill me, for I have been engaged so long in this evil occupation that I would lose my soul along with my body."

"I leave you alive," said Balays, "since your prudence suffices for you to recognize that in such a life you were damned, so that you may take up that one whereby you will be restored to the opposite category."

This thief did so, for thereafter he was a good man of good life and was a hermit.

This episode over, Balays came out of the bog to where the maiden was, who was very happy to see him uninjured; and she thanked him profoundly for what he had done for her in freeing her from those evil men who were seeking to abuse her; and he asked her how those bad men had taken her.

"In a mountain pass," said she, "which is above this forest, and which they guard; and there they killed my two squires who were traveling with me, and they brought me here to hold me captive in order to do their will."

Balays saw that the maiden was very beautiful, and he became greatly taken with her, and said:

"Surely, madam, if they held you captive in the way your beauty holds me, you never would have gotten away from there."

"Sir knight," said she, "if I, had I lost my chastity the way that the thieves were contriving, would have been rendered

blameless by its having been by force, were I to yield it up to you willingly, how would I or could I be excused? What you have done up to now was the act of a good knight; I beg of you that your strength at arms be accompanied by the restraint and virtue to which you are obligated."

"My good lady," said he, "disregard entirely the words that I spoke to you, for it befits knights to serve and to covet maidens and to want them for wives and mistresses, and it befits maidens to keep from erring as you seek to do; because whereas at the beginning we value highly the attainment of what we desire of them, they are much more highly regarded and esteemed by us when they defend themselves with discretion and virtue by resisting our evil appetites, and by protecting that which, if lost, they would have nothing left worthy of praise."

The maiden bent over to kiss his hand and said:

"To the same degree that one should consider greater this saving of my honor, which you effected, than that of my life, the difference between the two acts is greater."

"Well now," said Balays, "what do you command me to do?"

"That we move away from these dead men," said she, "until day comes."

"How can that be?" said he, "for they killed my horse."

"We shall go," said she, "on this palfrey of mine."

Then Balays mounted and took the maiden behind him, and they went some distance away, where they found a meadow within a bow's shot of a road, and there they took shelter while speaking of various things, and Balays related to her the reason why he came after the knight. And morning having come, he armed himself, they mounted the palfrey and went to the road, but did not see a trace of anyone's having gone along there; and he said to the damsel:

"My dear, what shall I do with you, for I cannot in any way free myself of this quest?"

"Sir," said she, "Let us go along this highway until we find some town; and I remaining there, you will go ahead on the palfrey."

So proceeding onward from there, as you hear, in a short while they saw a knight coming who had one leg on his horse's

neck, and when he came nearer he put it in the stirrup, and spurring the horse he came up to Balays and gave him such a lance thrust on his shield that he hurled him and the maiden to the ground, and said:

"My dear, I am sorry you fell; but I shall take you to where amends will be made, for this man is not worthy to escort you."

Balays got up very angry and recognized that that was the knight he was seeking, and putting his shield in front of himself, with his sword in hand, he said:

"Sir knight, you were fortunate that I lost my horse, for so help me God, I would have made you pay for the villainous act that you committed last night."

"What," said the knight, "were you one of those who were laughing at me? I shall certainly cause the ridicule to fall on you."

And he rushed at him with upraised lance and gave him such a blow on the shield that he pierced it. Balays severed the lance near his hand; and the knight grasped his sword and went and struck him a blow on top of his helmet that caused the sword to penetrate it a good two inches; and Balays leaned forward and laying hands on his shield, he pulled on it so hard that the saddle turned and the knight fell down in front of him. And Balays bent over him, and taking the laces off his helmet, he gave him on the face and the head heavy blows with the hilt of his sword, so that he stunned him. And as he saw that there was no defense left in him, he took the sword and struck it so many blows on a rock that he broke it to pieces, and put his own in the scabbard; and he took the knight's horse and put the maiden on her palfrey, and went on his way to the tree by the crossroads; and they found on the way some habitation belonging to two matrons who were leading a saintly life; where they took something to eat from their poverty, and these matrons gave many blessings to Balays because he had killed those thieves, who had been doing much harm throughout that land. So they pursued their way until they reached the tree by the crossroads, where they found Amadis, who had just then arrived, and it was not long before they saw Don Galaor coming.

Then together there the three took great joy in having finished their adventures so greatly to their honor, and they agreed to lodge that night in a castle near there of a very honorable knight, who was the father of the maiden whom Balays was bringing, and so they did; and on their arrival at the castle, they were very well received and provided with all that they needed; and next morning, after they had heard mass, they armed themselves, and mounting their horses, leaving the maiden in the castle with her father, they took the direct road to Windsor. Balays gave the horse to Don Galaor, as he had promised it to him; but he would not take it, as much on account of having lost his own only in his efforts to recover it, as for Balays's having already acquired another.

CHAPTER XXIX

How king lisuarte held a convocation of nobles, and concerning what happened there.

With the news that the dwarf brought to King Lisuarte about Amadis and Don Galaor, the king was very happy, having the intention of holding the most honorable convocation of nobles and of the greatest number of knights that was ever held in Great Britain, pending the arrival of Amadis and Galaor.

One day Olivas appeared before the king to complain about the Duke of Bristol, who had treacherously slain a cousin of his. The king, having taken counsel with those who knew the most about this, set one month as a deadline for the duke to come and answer, and sent word to him that if perchance the duke should want to put two knights with himself into this duel, Olivas had on his side such knights as to be able with complete equality of lineage and excellence to maintain right and justice. This done, the king gave order that all his high nobles be notified to be with him at a court convocation on Saint Mary's Day, September eighth; and the queen likewise to notify all the ladies and maidens of high rank.

Then everyone being in the palace talking very happily about the things that must be arranged for the court convocation, not knowing or thinking how at such times fickle Fortune wishes to inflict cruel injury by lying in wait, in order that it be well-known by all that men's intentions are not realized with that certainty that they hope for, there happened to enter the palace a strange damsel quite well dressed and an elegant youth who accompanied

her; and dismounting from a palfrey, she asked which was the king; he said:

"Damsel, I am."

"Sire," said she, "you certainly seem a king in appearance, but I do not know whether you are at heart."

"Maiden," said he, "this you now see, and when for the other you test me, you will know."

"Sire," said the maiden, "you respond according to my wish, and may you remember this word that you give me in front of so many nobles, because I wish to test the strength of your heart when I need to; and I have heard that you intend to hold a court in London in September on Saint Mary's Day, and there where there will be present many nobles, I wish to see whether you are such as rightly ought to be the overlord of such a great realm and of such famous knights."

"Maiden," said the king, "since my deeds will prove my power better than my words, the more pleasure I shall have, the more nobles be present there."

"Sire," said the maiden, "if your deeds are like your words, I shall consider myself very happy; and may you be commended to God."

"God be with you, maiden," said the king.

And thus all the knights greeted her.

The damsel went her way. And the king remained talking with his knights; but I say to you that there was no one there whom what the king had promised did not worry greatly, they fearing that the damsel would want to put his person in some great danger; and the king was such that however great the danger might be, he would not fear it from dread of being put to shame. And he was so beloved by all his people that they would have preferred to be exposed to great danger and shame rather than to see him suffer it; and they did not consider it proper that a prince so great should give as a boon without further thought his promise to a strange woman, being obliged to fulfill it and without assurance concerning what she intended to demand.

Thus having spoken of many things, and the queen being about to retire to her own palace, three knights entered the gate,

two fully armed, and one unarmed, and the latter was tall and well built and his head almost entirely hoary, but for his age ruddy and handsome. He carried in his hands a small coffer; and he asked for the king, and they pointed him out to him; then he descended from his palfrey and went and knelt before him with the coffer in his hands, and said:

"God save you, sire, as the one prince in the world who has made the best promise, if you fulfill it."

The king said:

"And what promise is this, or why do you mention it to me?"

"I have been told," said the knight, "that you were seeking to maintain chivalry at the highest level and honor possible; and because so few are the princes who strive to do so, your activities are to be praised much more than theirs."

"Certainly, knight," said the king, "I shall keep that promise as long as I live."

"May God permit you to carry it out," said the knight, "and because I have heard that you were about to hold court in London with many nobles, I bring to you here what befits such a man as you and such a festive occasion."

Then opening the coffer, he took from it a crown of gold so well wrought and with so many stones and pearl trimmings that all were greatly amazed to see it; and it certainly seemed that it ought not to be placed on any head except that of a very great lord. The king looked at it carefully with the desire to have it for himself; and the knight said to him:

"Believe me, sire, that this creation is such that not one of as many today as know how to work in gold and to set stones would be able to evaluate it."

"So help me God," said the king, "that is my opinion."

"Then," said the knight, "however rare its workmanship and beauty may be, it has intrinsically something else that is to be valued much more highly, and this is that the king on whose head it is placed will always have his honor maintained and enhanced; and so had the one for whom it was made until the day of his death. And since then no king has ever had it on his head; and if you, sire, wish to have it, I shall give it to you as

a thing that will be a protection for my head, which I am in danger of losing."

The queen, who was in the foreground, said:

"Certainly, sir, such a jewel as this greatly befits you; give for it all that the knight may ask."

"And you, madam," said he, "shall buy from me a very beautiful mantle that I am bringing."

"Yes," said she, "very willingly."

Then he drew out of the coffer a mantle, the richest and best made that was ever seen, for besides the stones and pearl ornaments of great value that there were on it, there were depicted on it all the birds and animals in the world, so subtly that it was regarded as a marvel. The queen said:

"So help me God, friend, it seems that this cloth was made by no other hand than that of the Lord who is all-powerful."

"Certainly, madam," said the knight, "you can well believe infallibly that this cloth was made by the hand and advice of man; but it would be very difficult now to find anyone to make another like it." And he said: "Furthermore I tell you that this mantle is more suitable for a married woman than for an unmarried one, for it has such virtue that the day that she has it under her roof there cannot be any hard feelings between her and her husband."

"Certainly," said the queen, "if that is true, it cannot be bought for any price."

"You cannot see the truth of that unless you possess the mantle," said the knight.

And the queen, who loved the king very much, wanted to have the mantle in order that between them anger might be avoided; and she said:

"Sir, I shall give you for this mantle whatever you wish."

And the king said:

"Ask for the mantle and for the crown whatever you please."

"Sire," said the knight, "I am going with great sorrow summoned by that one whose prisoner I am, and I have no time to stop nor to find out how much these gifts are worth; but I shall be with you at the court convocation in London, and meanwhile let the crown remain with you and the mantle with the queen,

on condition that you give me for them what I may demand of you, or else that you return them to me, and you will have them already tried on and tested; for I well know that you will pay me with better grace then than now."

The king said:

"Knight, now believe that you shall have what you may demand, or the mantle and the crown."

The knight said:

"Knights and ladies: Do you hear well what the king and queen promise me, that they will give me back my crown and my mantle or whatever I ask of them."

"We all hear," said they.

Then the knight bade farewell and said:

"May God be with you, for I go to the harshest prison that man ever had."

And one of the two armed knights took off his helmet while he was there, and he seemed quite young and handsome; but the other was unwilling to do so, and held his head somewhat low; he appeared so big and so out of proportion that there was no knight in the house of the king who was his equal by a foot. So all three went away, the mantle and the crown remaining in the king's possession.

CHAPTER XXX

How Amadis and Galaor and Balays came to the palace of King Lisuarte, and what happened to them afterwards.

Having left the maiden's castle, Amadis and Galaor, and Balays with them, pursued their journey until they arrived at the court of King Lisuarte, where they were received with such honor and joy by the king and the queen, and by all those of the court, as never in any other place were other knights received where they arrived: Galaor, because they had never seen him, and knew of the great feats at arms that he had performed through hearsay; and Amadis, on account of the news of his death that had reached there, for as he was esteemed by all, they did not think they would see him alive. Therefore so many were the people who came out to see them that they could scarcely go through the streets or enter the palace. And the king took all three of them and had them disarmed in a chamber, and when the people saw them disarmed, so handsome and spruce and so young, they cursed Arcalaus, who had sought to kill two such brothers, thinking that the one would not live without the other. The king gave orders to the queen through a page that she receive very graciously those two knights, Amadis and Galaor, who were going to see her. Then he took them with him, and Agrajes, walking with his arms about them, and so happy with them that he could not have been more so, and he went with them to the queen's chamber, and Don Galvanes and King Arban with him; and when they entered the door, Amadis saw Oriana, his lady, and his heart leaped from great pleasure, but no less did she feel, so that whoever was looking on could have

recognized it very clearly; and although she had heard much news about him, she had remained uncertain whether he was alive. And when she saw him healthy and happy, remembering the sorrow and grief she had had for him, involuntarily tears came into her eyes; leaving the queen before her there she paused a bit and wiped her eyes, for no one saw her, because all were intent on looking at the knights. Amadis knelt before the queen, taking Galaor by the hand, and said:

"Madam, here you see the knight whom you sent me to find."

"I am very happy about it," said she.

And taking him by the hand, she embraced him, and then Galaor.

The king said:

"Lady, I wish that you share with me."

"What?" said she.

"That you give me Galaor," said he, "for Amadis is yours."

"Certainly, sir," said she, "You do not ask for little, for never was such a great boon given in Great Britain; but it is only just, for you are the best king that has reigned in it."

And she said to Galaor:

"Friend, what do you think I should do, for the king my lord asks me for you."

"Madam," said he, "I think that everything that such a great lord asks for should be given him if it can be had, and you have me to serve you in this and in all things except the will of my brother and lord Amadis, for I shall not do anything except what he commands."

"I am very pleased," said the queen, "to command your brother, for then I shall have a share in you, as well as in him who is mine."

Amadis said to him:

"Brother, carry out the queen's mandate, for I beg you to do so, and such is now my pleasure."

Then Galaor said to the queen:

"Madam, since I am freed from this other's will — one which has so much power over me — I now put myself at your mercy to do with me whatever pleases you most."

She took him by the hand and said to the king:

"Sir, I now give you Don Galaor, for whom you have asked me, and I tell you to esteem him for the great excellence that there is in him, for it will not be slight."

"So help me God," said the king, "I think that it would be hard for anyone to esteem him, or anyone like him, so greatly that the esteem would exceed his great excellence."

When Amadis heard this remark, he thought of his lady and sighed, not giving any credence at all to what the king was saying, deeming the love he had for his lady greater than his own excellence or that of all those who bore arms.

Hence, just as you hear, Galaor remained a vassal of the king under such good auspices, that never did he cease to maintain the relationship, on account of anything that later came between Amadis and the king, as we shall subsequently relate. And the king sat down beside the queen and called Galaor to come before them in order to talk with him; Amadis stayed with Agrajes, his cousin; Oriana and Mabilia and Olinda were together, apart from all the other women, because they were the most honored and the ones of highest rank. Mabilia said to Agrajes:

"Brother, bring to us that knight whom we have greatly desired."

They approached the ladies; and as Mabilia knew very well with what medicines their hearts could be assuaged, she placed herself between Oriana and Olinda and put Amadis at Oriana's side and Agrajes at Olinda's, and said:

"Now I am between the four persons whom I love most in this world."

When Amadis saw himself in his lady's presence, his heart palpitated, while guiding his eyes to gaze at what he loved most in all the world; and he came to her with great humility, and she greeted him; and reaching out her hands from under her mantle, she took his hands in hers and squeezed them a bit as the token of an embrace, and said to him:

"My dear, what pain and what sorrow did that traitor cause me who brought the news of your death! Believe me, never was a woman in such great danger as I. Certainly, dear sir, this was with good reason, because never did a person sustain such a

great loss as I would in losing you; for just as I am more loved than all other women, so my good fortune willed that I be loved by the man who is worth more than everyone else."

When Amadis heard himself praised by his lady, he lowered his eyes to the ground, for he did not even dare to look at her, and she appeared to him so beautiful that his agitated feelings inhibited his speech, so that he did not respond. Oriana, who held her eyes fixed on him, immediately recognized the fact, and said:

"Oh, my dear sir, why should I not love you more than anyone else, for all who know you love and esteem you? And I being the woman whom you love and esteem most, it is quite right that I prefer you to every other man."

Amadis, whose agitation was now subsiding, said to her:

"Madam, on that painful death that I suffer each day on account of you I beg that you have pity, for as regards the other death which was mentioned previously, if it were to come to me, I would be placed in great repose and given consolation; if, madam, this sad heart of mine were not sustained by that great desire it has to serve you, which, in opposition to the many bitter tears that flow from it with great force, resists that force, already in them it would be completely undone and consumed, not because it fails to recognize that its mortal desires are satisfied to a large extent by recalling only your memory of them; but as the greatness of its need requires greater mercy than what it deserves in order to be sustained and restored, if this mercy does not come soon, very quickly will it have come to its cruel end."

When Amadis said these words, the tears streamed from his eyes down his cheeks, without his being able to remedy them; for at this time he was so troubled that if that true love that made him so disconsolate had not been consoled with that hope which love is wont in similar straits to infuse in those under its thrall, it would not have been surprising if in the presence of his lady his soul had taken leave of him.

"Ah, my dear! for heaven's sake do not talk to me," said Oriana, "about your death, for my heart fails me, as one who does not hope to live a single hour afterward, and if I have

any liking for the world, I have it because you live in it. This which you tell me, I believe without any doubt for myself, for I am in the same state, and if your sorrow seems greater than mine, it is only because desire being in me as it is in you, and I lacking the power that you do not lack to put into effect what our hearts so greatly desire, much greater in you than in me do love and pain appear. But whatever happens, I promise you that if good fortune or my judgment does not show you some way for relief, my weak daring will find it; for if from it danger befalls us, let it be rather with the disaffection of my father and of my mother and of others, which because of our abundant love might come to us, we being as now in suspense, suffering and enduring such rigorous and cruel desires that each day increase and overtake us."

Amadis, who heard this, sighed deeply and tried to speak, but could not; now she, for he seemed to be completely carried away, took him by the hand and drew him close to her, and said:

"Dear sir, do not grieve, for I shall surely fulfill the promise that I give you, and meanwhile do not leave this court convocation which the king, my father, intends to hold, for he and the queen will ask you not to, because they know how much more the convocation will be honored and exalted by your presence."

Then at this juncture the queen called Amadis and had him sit beside Don Galaor; and the duennas and maidens looked at them saying that God had wrought quite well in both to have made them handsomer than other knights, and better in other fine qualities; and they resembled each other so much that they could hardly be told apart except that Don Galaor was a little more fair, and Amadis had curly blond hair and his face was a little ruddier, and he was somewhat more robust. Thus they remained talking for a while with the queen, until Oriana and Mabilia made a sign to the queen to send Don Galaor to them, and she took him by the hand and said:

"Those maidens want you, for you do not know them, but know you that the one is my daughter and the other your first cousin."

He went over to them, and when he saw the great beauty of Oriana he was quite astounded, for he could not believe that

any woman could attain it so perfectly, and he suspected that in view of the great excellence of Amadis his brother, his fondness for dwelling at that court more than at any other, which he had observed in him, came to him only because it was vouchsafed to him, more than to anyone else, to love a person so distinguished in the world. Mabilia and Oriana greeted and received him with very good grace, saying to him:

"Don Galaor, be you very welcome."

"Certainly, ladies, I would not have come here for the next five years, if it had not been for that one who has made all who bear arms come, as much on account of his might as because of his good will, for both are found in him more perfectly than in anyone else living today."

Oriana lifted her eyes, and glancing at Amadis, sighed; and Galaor who saw her, knew his suspicion to be even more true than he had previously thought, — not because he sensed anything else, but because it seemed to him that his brother was more justified in being loved by that lady than was anyone else. Then while he was speaking with them about many things, the king arrived and stood there speaking and laughing with great animation, in order that all might share in his pleasure. And taking the men with him, he went to the great palace hall where there were many men of high degree and knights of great prowess. And finding the tables set, they sat down to dine. And the king ordered Amadis and Galaor and Galvanes Lackland and Agrajes to sit down at one of the tables without any other knights sitting with them; and just as these four knights found themselves together at that dinner, so later they were together in many places, where they underwent great perils and dangers at arms, because these accompanied one another often on account of the great kinship and love they had for each other; and although Don Galvanes had no relationship except with Agrajes, Amadis and Galaor always called him uncle and he called them nephews, which was a great cause for his increasing greatly in honor and esteem, as will be related later.

CHAPTER XXXI

How king lisuarte went to hold his convocation of nobles in the city of london.

As God made this Lisuarte king, who had been a prince without inheritance, by His mercy through the death of his brother King Falangriz, King of Great Britain, so did He impel (as may all things be permitted and guided by Him) so many knights, so many royal princesses, and many others from foreign lands of high degree and lineage, to come to serve him with great affection, no one considering himself satisfied in his duties unless he could call himself the king's man; and because such things, according to our weakness, attract great arrogance and with it to a much greater degree the ingratitude and disregard for that Lord who brings them about, by Him was granted to Fortune, that by imposing on him some difficult intervals which might have obscured this very bright glory in which he found himself, his heart would be softened and made completely gentle, so that by pursuing the service of the Giver of rewards rather than the perverted appetite which they bring about, in that high estate and to a much higher degree he might be maintained; and by doing the opposite be tormented with a much lower and more dangerous fall.

Then, this king wishing that the great excellence of his royal state be known to all the world, with the consent of Amadis and Galaor and Agrajes and of other valued knights of his retinue, he ordered that within five days, as previously he had planned and said, all the grandees of his realm should come to a court convocation in London, which at the time, like an eagle

was at the top of most of Christendom, in order to regulate the affairs of chivalry, so that its acts might be upheld and augmented with greater excellence than in the court of any other emperor or king; but there where he thought that everybody would bow before him, there overtook him the first waylaying by Fortune which placed his person and his kingdom in danger of being annihilated, as will now be related to you.

King Lisuarte left Windsor with all the knights and the queen with her matrons and damsels for the court convocation which was to convene in the city of London. The people appeared in such great numbers as would be wondrous to relate. There were among them many young knights richly armed and adorned, and many royal princesses and other maidens of high degree who were greatly beloved by the knights, who for them had held great jousts and festivals along the way. The king had ordered that tents and equipment be brought so that they would not enter any town and would set up camp in the meadows near the rivers and springs with which that land abounded. Thus in every way there was provided for them the happiest and most gracious way of living that they had ever had up to then, so that such very harsh and cruel contrasts coming immediately after so much pleasure might be felt with greater anguish and sadness of mind. Thus then they arrived in that great city of London, where they found so many people that it seemed as if the whole world was there assembled. The king and the queen with their entire retinue went to dismount at their palaces, and there in one part of them, he ordered Amadis and Galaor and Agrajes and Don Galvanes and some others of the most esteemed knights to lodge, and the other people in very good lodgings that the billeters of the king had designated for them in advance. Thus they rested and enjoyed themselves that night and two more days with many dances and games, which were performed in the palaces and outside in the city, at which Amadis and Galaor were so gazed at by everyone and so many were the people who came to look at them wherever they went that all the streets were crowded to such a degree that often they ceased to leave their lodgings.

To this court convocation that you hear, there came a great lord, more so in estate and dominion than in dignity and virtues,

called Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, not because he was a vassal of King Lisuarte, but for the reason that you shall now hear. Know you that when this Barsinan was in his own land, Arcalaus the Enchanter arrived there and said to him:

"Barsinan, sir, if you wished, I would arrange it so that you might be king, without your having great anxiety or trouble about it."

"Certainly," said Barsinan, "I should willingly take whatever hardship might come to me on this account, provided that I could be king."

"You answer wisely," said Arcalaus, "I shall bring it about that you become king if you are willing to believe me and give me the assurance that you will make me your chief major-domo, and that you will not deprive me of it during my whole lifetime."

"This I shall do very willingly," said Barsinan; "and tell me how what you are saying to me can be accomplished."

"I will tell you," said Arcalaus, "Go thou to the first court convocation that King Lisuarte holds, and take a large company of knights, for I shall seize the king in such wise that he cannot be rescued by any of his men; and that day I shall take possession of his daughter Oriana, whom I shall give to you as your wife; and at the end of five days I shall send to the court of the king his decapitated head. Then strive to take the King's crown, for he being dead and his daughter, who is the rightful heiress, in your power, there will be no one who can oppose you."

"Certainly," said Barsinan, "if you do this, I shall make you the richest and most powerful man of all those who may be with me."

"Then I shall do as I say," said Arcalaus.

On account of this which you hear, this great lord of Sansuenia, Barsinan, came to the court. The king came out with a large company to receive him, believing his arrival was with sincere good will; and he ordered him and his whole company to be given lodging and all the things that they might need. But I tell you that he, on seeing such a great array of knights, and having learned of the loyal regard they had for King Lisuarte, very greatly repented of having undertaken that enterprise, believing

that no adversity could injure such a man. But since he was already involved, he agreed to remain to the end, because often what seems impossible, by means of unanticipated advice comes to pass more quickly than what seems possible. And speaking with the king, he said:

"King, I heard that you were holding this magnificent court convocation and I come here to pay my respects; for I do not have land from you as overlord, but from God, who gave it freely to my ancestors and to me."

"Friend," said the king, "I am very grateful to you, and I shall reward you with what, being relevant to you, may come to hand, for I am certainly very happy to see such an excellent man as you are; and although I have many high ranking men who are nobles, I shall be more pleased to take your vow of allegiance than theirs, believing that with that good will with which you left your land in order to visit me, you will guide your actions and my interests and honor."

"Of that you may be certain," said Barsinan, "for that in which I take part will be counselled by me according to the purpose and desire that caused me to come here."

In this matter he spoke the truth; but King Lisuarte, who attributed it to another purpose, thanked him heartily for it.

Then the king gave orders to set up tents for himself and the queen outside the town in a large field, and left his houses for Barsinan to occupy; and he spoke to him of many of the things that he intended to do at that court convocation, and especially to make known the art of chivalry; and he praised all of his knights highly to him, telling him of their great excellence. But ahead of all others' deeds he put the accomplishments of Amadis and Don Galaor, his brother, as being those of the two best knights that could be found at that time in the whole world. And leaving him in the palace, he went to the tents where the queen was already, and he gave orders to tell his nobles that next day all were to be there with him, for he wanted to tell them the reason he had convoked them. Barsinan and his companions had in abundance all the things they needed; but I tell you that that night he did not sleep peacefully, because of thinking about the great folly he had committed in believing that such a good man

as the king, the possessor of such authority, could be harmed by the great cunning of Arcalaus or the power of the whole world.

The next morning the king put on the regal robe befitting such a day, and he ordered the crown brought to him which the knight had left him, and that the queen be told to put on the mantle. The queen opened the chest in which everything was with the key she always kept in her possession, and did not find anything in it, at which she was greatly astonished and began to make the sign of the cross, and sent word to the king. And when he learned about it, he was much troubled, but he did not show it outwardly, nor let it be known; and he went to the queen and drawing her aside, said to her:

"Madam, why did you guard so poorly a thing of so much importance to us at such a time?"

"Sire," said she, "I don't know what to say about it, except that I found the chest locked; and I have held the key, not having entrusted it to any other person; but I tell you this much: that last night it seemed to me that a maiden came to me and told me to show her the chest; and I in my dream showed it to her, and she asked me for the key and I gave it to her, and she opened the chest and took out of it the mantle and the crown, and closing it again she put the key in the place where it was previously; and she covered herself with the mantle and put the crown on her head, they being so becoming to her that I greatly savored looking at her. And she said to me: 'That man and that woman whose property they will be, will reign before five days in the land of the powerful one who now strives to defend it and to go and conquer the land of others.' And I asked her 'Who is that?' And she said to me: 'At the time that I say you shall find out.' And taking the crown and the mantle she disappeared before my eyes. But I tell you that I cannot understand whether this happened to me in a dream or in fact."

The king considered it a great marvel and said:

"Now let it go at this, and do not speak with anyone else about it."

And both leaving the tent, they went to another accompanied by so many knights and ladies and maidens that anyone who might have seen it would have considered it something wonderful.

And the king seated himself in a very ornate chair and the queen in another somewhat lower, the two chairs being located on a dais of cloth of gold. And at the side of the king the knights took their places, and by the queen her ladies-in-waiting and maidens. And those who were closest to the king were four knights whom he esteemed the most. One was Amadis and another Galaor, along with Agrajes and Galvanes Lackland. And at his rear was Arban, King of North Wales, fully armed, with his sword in his hand and with him two hundred armed knights.

Then all thus remaining silent, for no one was talking, a beautiful lady richly attired arose and there rose with her upwards of a dozen ladies and maidens all dressed in the same attire as the first, for the ladies of high degree had the custom, and the noblemen also, of bringing their attendants at such celebrations as well dressed as themselves. Then that beautiful lady went before the king and queen with her attendants and said:

"Lord and lady, hear me and I shall tell you of a pact which I have with that knight who is yonder."

And she extended her hand toward Amadis, and beginning her discourse, said:

"A long time ago I was sought in marriage by Angriote de Estravaus who is present yonder" — and she told all that happened to her with him, and for what reason she had him guard the valley of the pines — "and it happened that a knight by the name of Amadis made him leave the valley by force of arms, and I am told that they being in friendship, Amadis promised him that he would do all in his power to enable Angriote to have me, and I set such a guard in my castle as I pleased, and such as in my opinion no strange knight could pass." And she told what the custom was there, just as the story has related it. Furthermore she said: "Sire, that knight who is there at your feet has passed all that guard that I am telling you about." And she was saying this about Amadis, not knowing which one he was. "And as soon as that knight entered my castle, he promised me willingly to have Amadis released from that boon which he had promised Angriote, to the full extent of his loyal ability, either by force of arms or by any other way; and then after this promise that knight fought in the castle with my uncle, who is here."

And she related for what reason the battle had taken place and what happened to them in it; and then many looked at Gasinan, whom up until then they had not noticed, when they heard her tell that he had dared to fight with Amadis; and when the matron came to tell of the outcome of their battle, she related how her uncle had been defeated and was about to lose his life, and how she had asked the knight as a boon not to kill him.

"And ladies and gentlemen," said she, "at my request he left him, on condition that I come to the first court that you might hold and grant him whatever boon he may demand; and I in order to comply have come to this court, which has been the first one since then, and I say in your presence that he should abide by what he promised me, and I shall fulfill what he demands if it can be carried out."

Amadis then arose and said:

"Sire, the lady has spoken the truth about our promises, which thus were made; and I promise in your presence that I shall free Amadis of what he promised Angriote; and may she give me the boon as she promised."

The lady was very happy about it, and said:

"Now ask whatever you wish."

Amadis said to her:

"What I wish is that you marry Angriote and that you love him just as he loves you."

"Holy Mary, help me!" said she; "what is this that you are saying to me?"

"Good lady," said Amadis, "I tell you to marry such a man as a beautiful woman of high degree such as you are ought to marry."

"Alas, knight," said she; "and how do you thus keep your promise?"

"I did not promise you anything that I am not adhering to with you," said he, "I promised to free Amadis of the promise he made to Angriote; and this I do, for I am Amadis and I give back to you his boon that I granted him; and thus I abide by all that I told you and him."

The lady marvelled greatly and said to the king:

"Sire, is it true that this good knight is Amadis?"

"Indubitably, yes," said the king.

"Alas, wretched woman that I am," said she, "how deceived I was; now I see that neither by scheming nor by guile can one escape the things that are pleasing to God; for I tried as hard as I could to be separated from Angriote, not for any displeasure that I have with him, nor because I fail to recognize that his great valor deserves to be lord of my person, but on account of my purpose being such that while living in complete chastity I came to the decision not to take anyone as my lord and master; and when I think I am farthest withdrawn from him, then I behold myself as close as now you see."

The king said:

"So help me God, my dear, you ought to be happy about this union, for you are beautiful and of noble lineage and he is a handsome knight and young; and if you are very rich in property, he is in excellence and virtue, in arms as well as in all the other good ways that a good knight should possess; and therefore it seems to me that very rightly your and his marriage is appropriate and thus I believe it will seem to all who are at this court."

The lady said:

"And you, oh, queen, whom God made one of the outstanding women of the world in intelligence and goodness, what do you say to me?"

"I say to you," said she, "that since Angriote is praised and esteemed among good men, he deserves to be lord of a great land and loved by whatever lady he loves."

Amadis said to her:

"My good lady, do not believe that I made that promise to Angriote by accident or out of zeal; for if it were so, the making of it ought to be adjudged more out of folly and flightiness on my part than out of virtue; but knowing his great excellence at arms, which might have cost me very dear, and the great affection and love that he has for you, I have considered it right that not only I, but all those who have good understanding, ought to bring it about that he with regard to that passion, and you with respect to the little understanding that you have of him, might be remedied."

"Certainly, sir," said she, "in you there is such excellence that it would not permit you to say anything but the truth before so many noblemen; and since you consider him so good, and the king and the queen my lord and lady do, I would be very foolish if I did not like him, even if he had no such covenant to hold over me; from which I cannot depart rightly. And here you see me; dispose of me at your pleasure."

Amadis took her by the hand and calling Angriote, said to him in front of fifteen knights of his lineage, who came with him:

"Friend, I promised you that by every possible means I would obtain your beloved for you, and tell me if this is she."

"She is," said Angriote, "my lady, whose lover I am."

"Then with respect to her I hand you over," said Amadis, "on condition that you both marry, and that you honor her and love her above all other women in the world."

"Certainly, sir," said Angriote, "concerning this I shall very well believe you."

The king gave orders to the Bishop of Salerna to take them to the chapel and to give them the blessings of Holy Church; and so Angriote and the lady and all those of his lineage went with the bishop to the town, where he performed the marriage ceremony with great solemnity. For we can say that not men, but God, seeing the great restraint which Angriote used with that lady, when he had her in his absolute power, and did not seek to do against her free will that which he desired most in the world; rather did he put himself with great danger to his person at her command where by Amadis he was brought close to death, God — we repeat — decreed that such a great resistance by reason to a will so confused should not remain without the reward so deserved and which Angroite greatly desired.

CHAPTER XXXII

How king Lisuarte, his parliament of nobles having assembled, sought to learn the counsel of the knights on what was proper for him to do.

King Lisuarte remained to speak with his nobles, and said to them:

"Friends, since God has made me richer and more powerful in land and people than any of my neighbors, so it is right that while maintaining my service to Him, I should try to do better and more praiseworthy things than any of them; and I wish you to tell me all that your judgment perceives wherein I may sustain you and me in greater honor; and I say to you that I shall do it thus."

Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, who was in the council, said:

"Good lords, now you have heard what the king requests of you; I should consider it good, if it should be pleasing to him, that, he leaving you by yourselves without his presence in order that your judgments might be guided in reason without inhibition, you should determine what he asks for, and afterwards his judgment may take that which might be most in conformity with his wishes."

The king said that he spoke reasonably, and begging him to stay with them, he went to another tent, and they remained in the one where they were. Then spoke Seroloys, the Fleming, who at the time was Count of Clare:

"Sirs, in this matter on which the king commands us to counsel him, it is well known and manifest what is most important in order that his greatness and honor be protected and exalted; in

this way, men in this world cannot be powerful without having great forces of men or great treasure; but since the treasure is for the purpose of seeking and paying the forces, for this is the most appropriate temporal thing on which it should be spent, everything is shown clearly to refer to a large force as the most important thing by which kings and grandees not only are protected and defended, but subjugate and rule over what belongs to others as if it were their own. And therefore, good sirs, I should deem it wise that counsel other than this, the king our lord should not take, searching everywhere for good knights, giving them abundantly of his resources, esteeming them and honoring them; and with this the foreigners from other lands would be moved to serve him, hoping that their work would attain the fruit it deserves; for you will discover if you search back in your memory, that never until today has there ever been any king great or powerful, except those who sought out and held in their company the famous knights, and that with them, by spending their treasure they obtained other, much greater foreign knights."

There was not a man there in the council who did not consider good what the count spoke, and they agreed with him on it. When Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, saw how all agreed with that, he was heavy of heart because there could come about by that means only with great difficulty what he was intending; and he said:

"Certainly, I have never seen so many nobles agree so foolishly with a speech, and I shall tell you why. If this your lord does what the Count of Clare has said, there will be in your land, before two years pass, so many foreign knights that the king will not only give them what he should give to you, but through his seeking to please and satisfy them as is naturally done for what is new, you will be forgotten and esteemed much less; therefore consider well and with more reflection what you ought to advise, for since I am here, I am not concerned with being well content and satisfied, any more than that my advice be very advantageous to you."

There were some envious and covetous people who heeded this advice, so that then there was immediately discord among

them; whence they agreed that the king should come and with his great wisdom choose what was best. Then he, having come, on hearing in its entirety what they were concerned with, and the dissension that they had, what was right became in his eyes clearly apparent; and he said:

"Kings are not great only for how much they have, but for how much they maintain, for by themselves alone what would they do? Perchance not so much as someone else; or with good fortune, what would be enough? But to govern his state — and now you can understand the problem — would great wealth be powerful enough to free a king from worry? Certainly not; if it were not spent there where it ought to be; then we can indeed decide that the good understanding and effort of men is the real treasure. Do you want to know? Then consider what that great Alexander did with them, that mighty Julius Caesar and that proud Hannibal, and many others who could be cited, who being voluntarily liberal, very rich in money and very exalted in this world with their knights, they kept distributing money among them, according as each one deserved; and even if he acquired somewhat more or less in the process, one can believe that for the most part they accomplished it, since they were served and revered so loyally by most of them. Therefore, good friends, not only do I deem it good to procure and have good knights, but also that you with all concern bring and recruit them for me, for the more I am honored and feared by foreigners, the more you will be honored and protected; and if in me there be some virtue, I shall never forget the old ones on account of the new ones. And do you immediately name to me here all those that you know to be the best of these who at present have come to my court, in order that before they depart they may be induced to remain in our company."

This was done at once; for the king taking the names down in writing, gave orders to them to call at his tent when he had dined; and there he begged them to offer him their loyal companionship and not to leave his court without his command, and he promised them to love and esteem them and to do them great honor and favor so that by guarding his possessions their states might be maintained by his very own estate. All those who

were there agreed, except Amadis, who on account of being a knight of the queen, with some reason could be excused from voting. This having been done thus, the queen told them to listen to her, if they pleased, for she wanted to speak to them. Then they all drew near and were quiet in order to hear what she would say. She said to the king:

"Sir, inasmuch as you have extolled and honored your knights, it would be advisable for me to do so with regard to my ladies and maidens in waiting, and on their behalf with regard to all women in general wherever and in whatever place they may be; and to this end I beg of you and these nobles to grant me a boon, for at such festivals one should ask for and grant good things."

The king looked at the knights and said:

"Friends, what shall we do in this matter that the queen asks for?"

"That all that she asks be granted her," said they.

"Who will do anything else in the matter," said Don Galaor, "except to serve such a good lady?"

"Then if it so pleases you," said the king, "let the boon be granted, even though it be difficult to do."

"So be it," they all said.

When the queen heard this, she said:

"What I ask of you as a boon is that matrons and maidens always be well protected and defended from whoever does them injustice or outrage. And likewise, if there be a case involving the promise of some boon to a man who asks you for it, and another boon to a matron or maiden, that you be obliged to fulfill hers before his, since she is the weaker vessel and one who has greater need of help. And by your so doing the matrons and maidens will be thereby more favored and protected along the highways which they may traverse, and insolent and cruel men will not dare to do them violence or wrong, knowing that they have such defenders on their side and in their favor."

This having been heard by him, he was very happy about the boon which the queen asked for, and so were all the knights who were in their presence. And so the king commanded this boon to be maintained just as she asked, and thus it was maintained in

Great Britain for a long time, for never did any knight violate it in those times which followed in Britain; but of how it was broken we shall not tell you, since it has nothing to do with the subject.

CHAPTER XXXIII

How while king lisuarte was greatly enjoying himself, a maiden clad in mourning bowed before him to ask of him a favor such that it was granted her by him.

While King Lisuarte was enjoying himself so much with such companionship as you hear, Fortune now being about to begin her work whereby that great festival might be thrown into confusion, a very beautiful maiden clad in mourning entered the gate of the palace, and kneeling before the king, said:

"Sir, everybody is pleasured except me alone, who have worry and sadness, and I cannot lose it except through you."

"Friend," said the king, "What is this worry that you have?"

"Sir," said she, "It is on account of my father and my uncle who are in a lady's prison from which she will never have them released until they give her two knights as good at arms as the one they killed."

"And why did they kill him?" said the king.

"Because," said she, "out of the great pride and arrogance that he had in himself he boasted that he singlehanded would fight the two of them; and he so importuned them that, constrained by overwhelming shame, they had to enter with him into the lists, where the two of them being victors, the knight was killed. This was in front of Galdenda's castle. She, being owner of the castle, at once gave orders to seize my father and uncle, swearing not to set them free, because they had killed that knight whom she was holding in order that he might fight a duel. My father said to her:

" 'Lady, do not hold me or this brother of mine, for I will fight that duel.'

" 'Certainly,' said she, 'you are not such as to safeguard my justice; and I tell you that you shall not leave here until you bring me two knights, each one of them as excellent and as experienced at arms as the one you killed, in order that with them amends may be made for the harm that came to me from my knight's death.' "

"Do you know," said the king, "where the lady intends the battle to be fought?"

"Sir," said the maiden, "I do not know that. I see only my father and my uncle imprisoned against all justice, where their friends cannot help them."

And she began to weep very bitterly. And the king, who was very compassionate, was very sorry for her, and said to her:

"Now tell me whether where these knights are imprisoned is very far away."

"One could probably go and return easily in five days," said the maiden.

"Then choose here two knights to your liking, and they will go with you."

"Sir," said she, "I am a stranger and do not know anyone, and if you please, I shall go to the queen, my lady, for advice."

"In the name of God!" said he.

She went to the queen and told her her story just as she had related it to the king, and at the end said that he was giving her two knights to go with her, and that she begged the queen as a favor, since she did not know them, by the faith that she owed to God and to the king, to choose for her those who best would be able to remedy her great distress.

"Ah, maiden," said the queen, "You have besought me in such wise that I shall have to do it, but I regret very much sending them away from here."

Then she called Amadis and Galaor and they came before her, and she said to the maiden:

"This knight is mine, and this other one is the king's; and I say to you that these two are the best I know here or any place else."

The maiden asked their names; the queen said:

"This is Amadis, and the other, Galaor."

"What, sir!" said the maiden, "Are you Amadis, the very fine knight who has no peer among all the others? By heaven, now what I seek can be accomplished as soon as you arrive there with your brother." And she said to the queen:

"Lady, in heaven's name, I beg you to ask him that they make the journey there with me."

The queen asked him to do so, and commended her highly. Amadis looked toward Oriana, to see if she authorized that departure. And she, taking pity on that maiden, let fall her gloves from her hand as a sign that she authorized it, for this signal they had agreed on between them. And when he saw this, he said to the queen that he was pleased to carry out her command. She asked of him that they return as quickly as possible. And she forbade their delaying their coming on account of anything that might be avoided. Amadis came up to Mabilia, who was talking with Oriana, as if he were about to take leave of her, and Oriana said:

"My dear, so help me God, I regret very much having agreed to your going, for my heart feels great distress about it; may God will that it be for the best."

"Lady," said Amadis, "May He who made you so beautiful, always give you joy, for wherever I may be, I am yours to serve you."

"Dear sir," said she, "since it now cannot be otherwise, may you go commended to God, and may He protect you and honor you above all the knights in the world."

Then they left there and went to arm themselves; and having bade farewell to the king and to their friends, they started on their way with the maiden. Thus they journeyed whither the maiden guided them until it was past noon, when they entered a forest called Ill-omened, because a knight errant never entered it who had good luck or fortune, nor did these two leave there without great tribulation; and as soon as they ate something of what their squires brought along, they journeyed again until night, which was brightly moonlit. The maiden was hurrying along very fast without slackening her pace. Amadis said to her:

"Maiden, don't you wish us to rest a while?"

"I do," said she, "but it will be farther on, where we shall find some tents with people whom the sight of you will please very much; and come along at your own pace, and I shall go ahead to see about your lodging."

Then the maiden went on and they slowed their pace somewhat; but they had not gone far when they saw two tents near the road, and they found the maiden and others with her, waiting for them, and she said:

"Sirs, dismount and you shall rest in this tent, for today you have made a long day's journey."

They did so and found servants who took their arms and horses, and took everything outside. Amadis said:

"Why do you take away our arms?"

"Because, sir," said the maiden, "You are to sleep in the tent where they are put."

And they being thus unarmed, seated on a rug awaiting their supper, it was not long before some fifteen men, some of them knights and the rest churls, all well armed, descended upon them; and entered the door of the tent, saying:

"Surrender; if not, you are dead."

When he heard this, Amadis arose and said:

"By Holy Mary, brother! We are brought by deception to the greatest treachery in the world."

Then they stood together and would have defended themselves willingly, but they did not have the wherewithal. The men put their lances at their chests, at their backs, and at their faces. And Amadis was so furious that the blood flowed from his nose and eyes; and he said to the knights:

"Ah, traitors! You see well how it is; for if we had arms, the contest would be ended in another manner."

"That talk doesn't help you any," said a knight, "surrender."

Galaor said:

"If we do, we shall because of great treachery, and this I will prove to the two best of you, and I would even allow three, provided you give me my arms."

"There is no need of proof here," said the knight, "for if you speak any more about this matter, you will receive harm."

"What do you want?" said Amadis, "for we shall be dead rather than be prisoners, and moreover, prisoners of a traitor."

The knight turned to the door of the tent and said:

"Madam, they do not want to be imprisoned; shall we kill them?"

She said:

"Wait a bit, and if they do not do my will, cut off their heads."

The lady entered the tent; she was very beautiful and was very angry, and she said to the knights of King Lisuarte:

"Surrender to me; if not, you die."

Amadis was silent, and Galaor said:

"Brother, now we do not have to fear, since the lady wishes it."

And he said to the lady:

"Order them to give us, lady, our arms and horses, and if your men cannot seize them from us, then we shall place ourselves in your prison, for now by being in it we do nothing for you in view of our present situation."

"I shall not believe you," said she, "this time, but I advise you to be my prisoners."

They promised her, since they saw they could not do more. In the manner that you hear they were conceded her prisoners without the lady's knowing who they were, for the maiden did not want to tell her, because she knew for certain that within the hour she would have them killed; whereupon she would consider herself the most ill-starred maiden in the world, in that because of her two such knights should die; and she would have preferred death to having made that journey; but now she could do no more than keep it secret. The lady said to them:

"Knights, now that you are my prisoners, I want to promote an agreement with you, for if you agree, I shall let you go free; otherwise, believe me, I shall put you in such a strict confinement that for you it will be worse than death."

"Lady," said Amadis, "the agreement can be such that we shall agree to it without much trouble, and such that if it is to our shame, we would rather suffer death."

"About your shame," said she, "I don't know; but if you agree to bid farewell to King Lisuarte on arriving where he is, and say

that you are doing it by command of Madasima, the chatelaine of Gantasi, I shall order you set free; — and that she commands it because he has in his court the knight who killed the good knight Dardan."

Galaor said to her:

"Madam, if you command this in order that the king be distressed, don't so regard it, for we are two knights who for the present have only those arms and horses, and as at his court there are many others of great valor who serve him, little will he care whether we stay or whether we go; and that is very shameful for us, so much so that we shall in nowise do it."

"What?" said she, "you would rather be put in that prison than be separated from the falsest king in the world?"

"Madam," said Galaor, "what you say does not become you, for the king is good and trustworthy, and there is no knight in the world to whom I would not prove that in him there is not a jot of falsity."

"Certainly," said the matron, "to your own detriment you esteem him so greatly."

And she ordered that their hands be tied.

"I shall willingly do that," said a knight, "and if you order it, I shall chop off their heads."

And he seized Amadis by an arm; but the latter jerked him forward and went to strike him on the head with his fist; and the knight turned aside; and reaching his chest, the blow was so hard that it knocked him down at his feet, completely stunned. Then there was a great scuffle in the tent, all coming up to kill him; but an old knight who was there grasped his sword and began to threaten those who were seeking to attack Amadis, and he made them draw back; but before that they gave Amadis a lance thrust on his right shoulder, but it was not serious. And that old knight said to the matron:

"You do the greatest deviltry in the world in holding noble knights in your prison and letting them be killed."

"Why not kill," said she, "the craziest knight in the world who inopportunely has committed such folly."

Galaor said:

"Madam, we shall not consent that our hands be tied except by you, for you are a lady and very beautiful, and we are your prisoners, and it behooves us to observe obedience to you."

"Well, since that's how it is," said she, "I shall do it."

And taking their hands she tied them tight with a strap; and having the tents taken down, putting Amadis and Galaor, thus tied each on a palfrey, and with men to hold their reins, they began to travel; and Gandalin and the squire of Galaor went on foot, tied to a rope; and thus they journeyed all night through that forest. And I tell you that then Amadis wished for his death, not on account of the predicament in which he was, for better than anyone else he knew how to endure such things, but on account of the pledge that the lady demanded of them, for if he did not make it, they would put him where he would not be able to see his lady Oriana; and if he agreed to it, he would likewise be far removed from her by not being able to live at her father's court; and with this he was so overwhelmed that he forgot everything else in the world. The old knight who had rescued him thought he was injured by the blow and felt very sorry for him, because the maiden who brought them there had told him that he was the most valiant and most courageous knight at arms that there was in all the world; and this maiden was the daughter of that knight, and had implored him in heaven's name and for mercy's sake, to try to protect them from death, for she would be blamed by everybody and would be considered a traitress. And she told that that one was Amadis of Gaul and the other Galaor, his brother, who had killed the giant. The knight knew very well for what purpose they had been brought there, and he was very sorry to see them treated in such a manner, since they were fine knights at arms; and he wanted very much to save them from death, if he could, for he saw it so close and near at hand for them; and coming up to Amadis, he said to him:

"Do you feel ill from your wound, or how are you?"

Amadis, when he heard the knight speak thus, lifted his face and saw that it was the old knight who had rescued him in the tent from the other knights who had sought to kill him; and he said to him:

"Kind sir, I have no wound paining me; rather I am grieved about a maiden who escorted us so deceitfully, we coming to her aid, and she committing against us such great treachery."

"Ah, sir," said the knight, "it is true that you were deceived, and by chance I know more about you than you think, and so help me God and protect me from evil, how I would make amends for it if some way could be found! And I wish to give you a piece of advice that will be good, for if you take it, no harm will come to you from it; because if they do recognize your identity, there is nothing but death for you, for in the world there is nothing that will deliver you from it; but now do thus: You are very handsome and you make a good appearance, and I will put you in such close touch with the lady as to tell her that you are the finest knight in the world; and do you seek her hand in marriage, or to have her love in some other way, for she is a woman who has her heart wherever it pleases her, and I believe that on account of your excellence, or your good looks, which you possess to a high degree, you will succeed in one of these two things; and if she should be willing to grant one of them, strive that it be very soon, because she is to send from where we shall go to sleep today; to find out your names; and I want to tell you more that is certain: that the maiden, who has brought you has not been willing to tell her your names, denying that she knows them. In this way and the way in which I shall help you, it would be possible for you to be freed."

Amadis, who was more in awe of his lady Oriana than of death, said to the knight:

"Friend, God can do his will with me, but that never shall be, even though she beg me and I be acquitted thereby."

"Certainly," said the knight, "I consider it a wonder that you are about to die and do not try to have liberty by whatever means."

"Such liberty," said Amadis, "I shall not take if God wills; but speak with that other knight, whom you can praise more rightfully than me."

The knight then went to Galaor and spoke to him in the same way he had spoken to his brother; and he was very happy when he heard him, and said:

"Sir knight, if you arrange that I be united with the lady, we shall always honor you and be at your command."

"Now let me go and speak with her," said the knight; "I think that I shall accomplish something."

Then he went forward and coming to the lady, said:

"Lady, here you are bringing prisoners, and you do not know whom."

"Why do you say that?" said she.

"Because you bring the best knights at arms that I now know, and the most perfect in all good qualities."

"May it be Amadis," said the lady, "whose life I should like so much to take."

"No, madam," said the knight, "for I do not say so except about this man who is coming along here, for besides his great excellence, he is the most handsome young knight I have ever seen, and you are discourteous to him, and don't be, for it is a great impropriety; for even though he be a prisoner, he has never deserved it from you, rather it is on account of the hatred that you have for someone else. Honor him and show him a good countenance, and it may be that in that way you will attract him to what may give you pleasure rather than by any other means."

"Then I wish to await him," said she, "and I shall see what kind of man he is."

"You will see," said the knight, "one of the most handsome knights you have ever seen."

At this time Amadis joined Galaor and said to him:

"Brother Galaor, I see you with great anger and in danger of death; I beg of you that this time you pay attention to my advice."

"I shall do so," said he, "and may God put in you more humility than fear."

The lady held back her palfrey and awaited him and saw him better than she had seen him at night, and he seemed to her the most handsome man in the world; and she said:

"Knight, how are you getting along?"

"Lady," said he, "I am getting along as you would not if you were in my power, as I am in yours, because I would provide

for you great service and pleasure, and I do not know why you would do with me entirely the opposite, I not deserving it of you, for I would be better for you as your knight, both to serve and love you as my lady, than to be thrown in prison, which brings you such little benefit."

The lady, who was gazing at him, was very much taken with him, more than with anyone whom she had seen or dealt with, and she said to him:

"Knight, if I should be willing to take you for a lover and set you free from this prison, would you leave the companionship of King Lisuarte for me and would you tell them that you were leaving it for my sake?"

"Yes," said Galaor, "and I shall make you whatever agreement you demand for it. Likewise that other man, my companion, will do so, for he will not depart from what I command."

"I am very happy about this, and now promise me what you say in the presence of all these knights, and I shall then agree to do your will, and I shall set you and your companion free of prison."

"I am very content," said Galaor.

"Then I wish," said the lady, "that all be agreed to in the presence of a lady where we are going to lodge today, and meanwhile assure me that you will not leave me, and your hands will be untied and you will go free."

Galaor called Amadis and told him that he should promise him not to leave the lady. And he so agreed. And then she ordered them to untie his hands, and Galaor said:

"Then give orders to free our squires, who will not leave us."

And likewise they were set free; and they gave them a palfrey without a saddle on which to ride.

So they went all that day, and Galaor was talking with Madasima; and at sunset they arrived at the castle called Abies, and the lady received them very well, for both ladies loved each other very much. Madasima said:

"Galaor, will you carry out the agreement that we have stipulated?"

"I will gladly," said he, "and grant me what you promised me."

"In God's name," said the lady.

Then she called the chatelaine of the castle and two knights, sons of the latter, who were there with her, and said to them:

"I want you to be witnesses of an agreement that I am making with these knights."

And she said for Don Galaor:

"This knight is my prisoner and I wish to make him my friend; and likewise is the other, his companion; and I have an agreement with them as follows: that they leave King Lisuarte and tell him that they are doing this for me and that I released them from prison leaving them free; and that you and your sons be with them before King Lisuarte and see that they carry out this agreement, and if not, that you say and make public what occurs, so that all may know it; and for this I give them a time limit of ten days."

"Good friend," said the lady of the castle, "I am very pleased to do what you say, as soon as they agree to it."

"So do we agree to it," said Don Galaor; "and may this lady carry out on her part what she says."

"That," said she, "shall be done at once."

So they agreed as you heard. And that night Don Galaor lay with Madasima, who was very beautiful and very rich and noble, but she was not of such a great worth as she should have been; and she was more taken with him than with any other man she had ever seen. And in the morning she ordered them to be given their horses and arms, and setting them free, she went on her way to Gantasi, for thus her castle was called; and they started out on the road to London, where King Lisuarte was, very happy to have escaped thus from such treachery and because they thought to free themselves of their promise much to their honor; and that night they lodged in the house of a hermit, where they had a very poor supper, and next day they continued on their way.

CHAPTER XXXIV

IN WHICH IS SHOWN THE RUINATION OF KING LISUARTE; AND CONCERNING ALL THAT HAPPENED TO HIM BECAUSE OF HIS PROMISES, WHICH WERE IMPROPER.

King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena, his wife, being with many knights and ladies and maidens in their tents on the fourth day after Amadis and Galaor had departed from there, the knight who had left him the mantle and the crown, as you have heard, entered the door and knelt before the king and said to him:

"Sire, how is it that you do not have the beautiful crown that I left you; and you, Madam Queen, the luxurious mantle?"

The king remained silent, for he did not seek to make any reply, and the knight said:

"I am quite pleased that you were not satisfied with them, as I shall be freed from losing my head or the boon that you were to give me for them; and since that is the way it is, give orders that they be given to me, for I can in nowise tarry."

When the king heard this, he was greatly troubled and said:

"Knight, I cannot give you either the mantle or the crown, for I have lost them both; and it worries me more for your sake, for you need them so much, than for mine, although they were worth a great deal."

"Ah, wretch that I am, I am as good as dead!" said the knight.

And he began to make such a show of great sorrow that it was a wonder, saying:

"Unhappy me, without luck, I am to die and by the worst death that there ever died a knight who so little deserved it!"

And his tears were falling down over his beard, which was as white as white wool. The king had great pity for him, and said:

"Knight, don't fear for your head, for everything that I have, you shall have in order to preserve it, for thus have I promised you and thus I shall keep my promise."

The knight fell at his feet to kiss them, but the king lifted him by the hand and said:

"Now ask for whatever you like."

"Sire," said he, "It is true that you were to give me back my mantle and my crown, or whatever I might ask you for them. And God knows, sire, that it was not my intention to demand what I shall now ask; and if there were anything else in the world which would help me, I would not vex you about the matter; but I cannot do otherwise in this; though I well know that it will be very hard for you to give; but it would be just as hard for such a man as you to be remiss in trustworthiness; it will cause you much sorrow to give it to me, and me to receive it."

"Demand at once," said the king, "for what I have will not be too precious for you to have."

"Many thanks," said the knight, "but it is necessary that you make me a guarantee for as many as now are in your court that they will not do me harm or violence because of my boon, and for you to guarantee me with respect to yourself; for otherwise neither your veracity would be protected nor would I be satisfied if the boon were given me on the one hand and taken away from me on the other."

"What you ask is reasonable," said the king, "and thus do I promise and command it to be publicly announced."

Then the knight said:

"Sir, I would not be able to be released from death except by my crown and my mantle, or by your daughter Oriana, and now give me whichever you wish, for I should prefer what I gave you."

"Alas, knight!" said the king, "You have asked a great deal of me."

And all were so distressed that they could not have been more so; but the king, who was the most faithful person in the world, said:

"Do not grieve, for the loss of my daughter is more fitting than failure to keep my word; because the one harms but few and the other, people in general; whence greater danger would result, because if the people were not sure of the veracity of their lords, it would be very difficult to preserve true esteem between them, since where this does not exist, there cannot be anything of much benefit."

And then he gave the order to bring his daughter there.

When the queen and the ladies and maidens in waiting heard this, they began to express the greatest grief in the world; but the king ordered them to retire to their chambers, and commanded all his men not to weep, under penalty of losing his esteem, saying:

"Now there will come to pass with my daughter whatever God considers good; but my veracity will not be to my knowledge false."

At this juncture the very beautiful Oriana came, as it were, overwhelmed, before the king, and falling at his feet, she said:

"Father, what is this that you seek to do?"

"I do it," said the king, "in order not to break my word."

And he said to the knight:

"Here you see the boon that you ask, do you wish any retinue to go with her?"

"Sir," said the knight, "I have only two knights and two squires with me — those with whom I came to Windsor — and any other company I cannot take along; but I say to you that there is no need to fear until I place her in the hands of the one to whom I must give her."

"Let a damsel go with her," said the king, "if you wish, in order that there be more honor and decorum, and that she go not alone among you."

The knight agreed. When Oriana heard this, she fell down in a faint; but there was no need of this, because the knight took her in his arms, and weeping, for he seemed to do it against his will, and he gave her to a squire who was on a very large and very fast hackney, and placing her in the saddle, he mounted behind her; and the knight said:

"Hold on to her, don't let her fall, for she is insensible, and God knows that in all this court there is no knight who grieves more than I at this deed."

And the king made the damsel of Denmark come, and he gave orders to put her on a palfrey, and said:

"Go with your mistress and do not leave her, no matter what happens to you, as long as they allow you to be with her."

"Alas, unfortunate woman that I am!" said she, "I never expected to make such a journey."

And then they moved away from the king's presence, and the huge and very muscular knight who in Windsor was unwilling to remove his helmet took Oriana's horse by the rein; and know you that this was Arcalaus the Enchanter. And on leaving the courtyard, Oriana sighed very deeply, as if her heart would break, and said as if she were out of her mind,

"Alas, good friend! Most unfortunately the boon was granted, since on this account you and I are dead."

She said this with reference to Amadis, whose departure with the maiden she had authorized, and the others thought it was said with reference to herself and her father. But those who were conducting her at once entered the forest, traveling with her in great haste until they left that highway and entered a deep valley. The king mounted a horse with a staff in his hand, to assure that none should oppose them, since he had given them safe conduct. Mabilia, who was at a window demonstrating very great grief, saw pass near the wall, Ardian, Amadis's dwarf, who was going by on a big, nimble nag; she called to him out of the great sorrow that she had, and said:

"Friend Ardian, if you love your master, don't rest day or night until you find him and tell him about this misfortune that here is brought about; and if you do not do it, you will be a traitor to him, for it is certain that he would rather know this at once than to have this city for his own."

"By Holy Mary!" said the dwarf, "he shall know of it as quickly as it be possible."

And giving the lash to his nag, he went at full speed down the road on which he had seen his master go.

But now we shall tell you what happened at this time to the king. When he was thus at the entrance to the forest, as you heard, making all the knights who came out there turn back, having with him twenty knights, he saw coming the maiden to whom he had promised the boon while saying that she should test him and that she would know more of the strength of his heart. She was riding a palfrey that was going fast; and she bore suspended from her neck a well-ornamented sword and a lance with a very handsome iron tip and painted shaft; and coming up to the king, she said:

"Sir, may God protect you and give you joy and courage so that you abide by what you promised me in Windsor before your knights."

"Maiden," said the king, "I have need of more joy than I have; but however that may be, I well remember what I said to you, and I shall keep my promise."

"Sir," said she, "With that hope I come to you as the most trustworthy king in the world; and now seek satisfaction for me from a knight who goes through this forest, who wounded my father by the greatest treachery in the world, and violated me; and enchanted him in such wise that he cannot die unless the most honorable man in the kingdom of London gives him a blow with this lance and another with this sword, and that knight had given the sword to a woman friend of his to keep, thinking that she loved him very much; but it was not so, for she hated him with a deadly hatred; and she gave it to me, and the lance, in order that I take vengeance on him; and I know that if it be not by your hand, for you are the most honorable man, he cannot be killed by the hand of anyone else; and if you make bold to take the vengeance, you are to go alone because I promised to give him today a knight with whom to fight, and for this reason he has come there, thinking that I could not have the sword and the lance; and such is the agreement between us, that if he wins, I renounce to him my complaint, and if he be overcome that I may do as I wish with him."

"In the name of God!" said the king, "I am willing to go with you."

And he gave orders to bring his arms, and he quickly armed himself and mounted his horse, which he valued highly; and the maiden told him to gird on the sword that she brought. And he, leaving his own, which was the finest in the world, took the other one and hung his shield on his neck; and the maiden carried for him his helmet and the painted lance; and he went with her, issuing to all the prohibition that no one be so daring as to think of going after him; and so they journeyed a while along the highway; but the maiden made him leave it and guided him in another direction near some trees that were where those who were taking Oriana had entered. And there the king saw a knight fully armed upon a black horse, and at his neck a green shield and the helmet likewise. The maiden said:

"Sir, take your helmet, for you see there the knight that I told you about."

He laced it on at once and taking his lance, said:

"Proud and stubborn knight, now protect yourself!"

And lowering his lance and the knight his, they charged each other as fast as their horses could carry them; and they struck each other with their lances on their shields, so that they were immediately shattered, and that of the king broke so easily that he did not even feel it in his hand, and thought that he had missed his blow. And he grasped his sword, and the knight his, and they struck each other on top of their helmets, and the knight's sword pierced a good half-way through the king's helmet; but that of the king broke immediately near the hilt and the iron blade fell to the ground. Then he recognized that it was treachery. And the knight began to deal him and his horse blows all over. And when the king saw that he was killing his horse, he went and grappled with him, and the other likewise with the king; and they jerked each other so hard that they fell to the ground, and the knight fell underneath, and the king took the sword that the other had lost from his hand and began to give him with it the hardest blows he could. The maiden who saw this shouted, saying:

"Oh, Arcalaus, lend aid, for you are delaying greatly and allowing your brother to die."

When the king was thus about to kill the knight, he heard a great rumble, and he turned his head and saw ten knights who were coming at him on the run, and one came ahead, shouting:

"King Lisuarte, you die, for you will not reign another day or take a crown on your head."

When the king heard this he was very frightened and was fearful of being killed; and he said with the great courage that he always maintained and continued to have:

"It may well be that I shall die, for you have such an advantage over me; but all of you shall die on account of me, as the traitors and cowards that you are."

And that knight, coming forward at the full speed of his horse, gave the king with all his strength such a lance thrust on his shield that, without any delay on the latter's part by further resistance, put his hands on the ground. But at once the king got up like one who was seeking to protect himself until death, which he had very near, and struck such a cruel blow with his sword on his horse's leg that he cut it off, and the knight fell under the horse. Then they all attacked him; and he defended himself furiously, but further defense was useless, for he was put in a bad way by the horses' chests, and the two knights who were on foot grappled with him and took the sword from his hands; then they jerked the shield from his neck and the helmet from his head, and put a heavy chain around his throat, attached to which there were two lead ropes, and they made him mount on a palfrey; and with a knight on each side holding on to one of the lead ropes, they began to go forward with him; and on arriving amidst the trees of a valley, they found Arcalaus, who was holding Oriana and the damsel of Denmark; and the knight who was going ahead of the king said:

"Cousin, here you see King Lisuarte."

"Certainly," said he, "this has been a good arrival, and I shall bring it to pass that I may never fear him or those of his court."

"Ah, traitor!" said the king, "I know well that you would commit complete treason; that I would make you recognize, although I am sorely wounded, if you now would be willing to fight with me."

"Certainly," said Arcalaus, "of vanquishing such a knight as you, I would no longer boast."

So they moved all together along that highway, which was branching into two, and Arcalaus called a page of his and said:

"Go to London as fast as you can and tell Barsinan to strive to become king, for I shall adhere to what I told him, for everything is now arranged."

The page departed at once, and Arcalaus said to his retinue:

"Go to Daganel with ten of these knights and take Lisuarte and put him in my dungeon, and I shall take Oriana with these four, and I shall show her where I have my books and things in Mount Aldin."

This was one of the strongest castles in the world. Then the ten knights departed with the king, and the five with Oriana, with whom Arcalaus was going, thus giving to understand that his person was worth as much as five knights.

What shall we say here, emperors, kings, and grandees who are placed in high estate? This King Lisuarte in one day thought to rule the world with his greatness, and on this same day, his daughter, heiress apparent to his kingdom, having been lost, he imprisoned, dishonored, enchained, saw himself helpless in the power of an enchanter, evil and cruel. Protect yourselves, protect yourselves, have an understanding of God, who, although He bestows great and high estates, desires that your wills and hearts be very humble and lowly, and not considered so highly that the thanks and the services that He deserves be consigned to oblivion; but that with which you intend to sustain them, which is great pride, excessive covetousness, which is the opposite of what He desires, He will cause you to lose with corresponding dishonor. And, above all, consider His great, secret judgments, for this King Lisuarte being so just, so frank, so gracious, He permitted such cruel reverses to come to him; what then will He do to those who hold contrary qualities? Do you know what? For just as it was His will that Lisuarte was to be miraculously helped in this cruel danger of his, deeming his good works somewhat deserving in the matter; so for those who do not perform good deeds or impose restraints on their wickedness, in

this world their bodies and in the other world their souls will be lost and damned. Since now the very powerful Lord, contented with having given such harsh blows to this king, wishing to show that His strength thus suffices to lower and raise the lofty, provided in the matter the help that you shall now hear.

CHAPTER XXXV

How Amadis and Galaor learned about the treason perpetrated, and decided to accomplish, if they could, the liberation of the king and of Oriana.

While Amadis and Galaor were coming along the road to London from where they had incurred no less than the danger of death by being in the prison of the chatelaine of the castle of Gantasi, at two leagues from the city, they saw Ardian the dwarf coming as fast as his steed could carry him. Amadis, who recognized him, said:

"That is my dwarf. I doubt not that he comes in distress about someone, for he is seeking us."

The dwarf came up to them and told them all the news, how they had carried away Oriana.

"Alas, Holy Mary, help us!" said Amadis, "and which way are those who are taking her going?"

"Near the town is the most direct route," said the dwarf.

Amadis spurred the horse and began to ride as fast as he could, so beside himself that he could not even talk to his brother, who was going along behind him; thus they both passed near the town of London, as fast as the horses could carry them, for they heeded nothing except that Amadis kept asking those he saw in which direction Oriana was being taken, and they pointed it out to him. As Gandalin was passing under the windows where the queen was with many other women, the queen called to him and threw down to him the king's sword, which was one of the best that ever a knight girded on; and she said to him:

"Give this sword to your master and may God aid him through it, and tell him and Galaor that the king went from here this morning with a maiden, and he has not returned and we do not know where she took him."

Gandalin took the sword and went on as fast as he could; and since Amadis, with his great distress and grief, did not heed where he was going, in crossing a stream and striving to jump to the other side, his horse, which was tired, was not able to do so, and fell in the mud; Amadis got off and pulled at it by the bridle, and there Gandalin caught up with him, and gave him the king's sword and told him the news about the latter, as the queen had told him. And taking Gandalin's horse, Amadis returned to the road, and Galaor went at his own pace, while Amadis rode along and found a trail along which it appeared mounted men had gone; and he waited for his brother; and leaving the highway, they followed the trail and in a short while they met some wood-cutters; and the latter had seen the whole ill-fortune of the king and that of Oriana, but did not know who they were, nor did they dare approach them; rather they hid themselves in the densest thickets; and one of them said:

"Knights, do you come from London?"

"And why do you ask?" said Galaor.

"Because if there is any knight or maiden missing from there," said he, "we saw here a strange incident."

Then they told all that they had seen of Oriana and the king; and Amadis and Galaor knew then that the king had been made a prisoner through treachery, and Amadis said to them:

"Do you know who they were and who took that king prisoner?"

"No," said he, "but I heard the maiden who brought him here shout for Arcalaus."

"Oh, Lord God," said Amadis, "May it please You to put me in contact with that traitor."

The peasants went and showed them in what direction the ten knights took the king, and the five, Oriana. And the peasant said:

"One of the five was the best knight I have ever seen."

"Ah!" said Amadis, "that one is that traitor of an Arcalaus."

And he said to Galaor:

"Brother, sir, go you after the king, and may God guide me and you."

And spurring his horse, he went the way taken by the five, and Galaor as fast as he could travel on the one along which they were taking the king.

Having left his brother, Amadis made such an effort to travel fast that when the sun was about to set, he had so exhausted his horse that he could not get him to go faster than a walk. And going along greatly distressed, he saw on his right hand beside a road a dead knight, and beside him was a squire, who held by the reins a big horse. Amadis came up to him and said:

"Friend, who killed that knight?"

"A treacherous man killed him," said the squire, "who comes along here bringing by force the most beautiful maidens in the world; and he killed him for no other reason than because he asked who they were; and I can't get anyone to help me carry him away from here."

Amadis said to him:

"I shall leave you this squire of mine to help you; and give me that horse and I promise to give you two better horses for it."

The squire agreed to it. Amadis mounted the horse, which was very handsome, and said to Gandalin:

"Help the squire, and as soon as you put the knight in some populated place, return to this road and come after me."

And leaving there, he began to go along the road as fast as he could; and near daybreak he found himself in a valley where he saw a hermitage, and he went there to find out if anyone was living in it; and finding a hermit, he asked him whether five knights who were bringing two maidens had passed by there.

"Sir," said the good man, "they have not passed, for I would have seen them. But did you see a castle which is over yonder?"

"No," said Amadis, "and why do you ask?"

"Because," said he, "right now a youth, my nephew, is leaving here, and he told me that Arcalaus the Enchanter had lodged there, and was bringing along some beautiful maidens held by force."

"In heaven's name," said Amadis, "I am seeking that traitor."

"Certainly," said the hermit, "he has done much harm in this land, and may God remove such an evil man from the world, or may he make amends for it. But don't you have any other aid?"

"No," said Amadis, "except that of God."

"Sir," said the hermit, "aren't you saying that they are five plus Arcalaus, who is the best knight and the most fearless one in the world."

"Let him be everything that he wishes," said Amadis, "for he is treacherous and arrogant, and so probably are those who guard him, and therefore I shall not fear them."

Then he asked who the maiden was; Amadis told him. The hermit said:

"Ah, may Holy Mary help you, so that such a good lady may not be in the power of such an evil man!"

"Do you have any horse feed," said Amadis, "for this horse?"

"Yes," said he, "and gladly will I give it to you."

Then while the horse was eating, Amadis asked him to whom the castle belonged. The good man replied:

"To a knight called Grumen, first cousin of Dardan, the one who was killed at the court of King Lisuarte, and I think that on that account he would receive there those who hate King Lisuarte."

"Now I commend you to God," said Amadis, "and I beg you to bear me in mind in your prayers, and show me the way that leads to the castle."

The good man showed it to him, and Amadis journeyed until he arrived there; and he saw that it had a high wall and thick towers, and he came up to it; but he did not hear anyone inside, and he was pleased, for he indeed thought that Arcalaus probably had not yet departed. And he went all around the castle, and saw it had only one window; then he withdrew to a distance among some rocks, and dismounting from his horse, he took it by the reins, and remained immobile, keeping his eyes always on the gate, like one who had no desire to sleep. At this time dawn was breaking, and mounting his horse, he moved farther away along a valley; for he was afraid, if he were seen, of

creating suspicion so that they would not leave the castle, thinking there were more people; and he climbed a knoll covered with great dense thickets. Then he saw a knight coming through the gate of the castle, and he climbed another higher hillock. And he scrutinized the terrain in all directions. Afterwards he returned to the castle, and it was not long before he saw Arcalaus and his four companions come out very well armed. And in their midst the very beautiful Oriana, and he said:

"Oh, God, now and always help me, and guide me in protecting her!"

At this, Arcalaus approached so close to him that he passed near where he was; and Oriana was saying:

"My dear lord, I shall never see you, since my death is already approaching."

The tears came to the eyes of Amadis; and descending the knoll as quickly as he could, he entered with them into a great field, and said:

"Ah, treacherous Arcalaus, it is not fitting for you to conduct such a good lady."

Oriana, who recognized the voice of her beloved, trembled all over; but Arcalaus and the others charged at him and he at them, and he struck Arcalaus, who was coming in front, so violently that he fell to the ground over the haunches of his horse, and some of them failed in their encounter; and Amadis passed by them, and turning his horse very quickly, struck Grumen, the lord of the castle, who was one of them, in such wise that the iron tip and the wooden shaft of his lance pierced him through and through, and immediately he fell dead, and the lance was broken. Afterwards Amadis grasped the king's sword and charged at the others; and he threw himself among them so fiercely and with such rage that the blows he gave them were a marvel. And his courage and intrepidity so increased by virtue of his being brave and agile that it seemed to him that even if the field were entirely full of knights, they could not endure or make defense against his good sword. While he was working these marvels that you are hearing, the damsel of Denmark said to Oriana:

"Madam, you are rescued, for here is the knight of very good fortune, and look at the wonders he performs."

Oriana then said:

"Oh, my dear, God help and protect you, for there is no one else in the world to help us or to be of more avail."

The squire who had her on his nag said:

"Certainly I shall not wait to take on my head the blows that the helmets and the coats of mail cannot stop or resist."

And putting her down on the ground, he went away, fleeing as fast as he could.

Amadis, who was going about among them bending them to his will, gave one such a slash on the arm that he cut it off, hurling it to the ground; this one began to flee crying out in deadly agony, and Amadis went for another, whose helmet he had already knocked from his head, and clove him down to his neck. When the other knight saw such an annihilation of his companions, he began to flee as fast as he could. Amadis, who was going after him, heard his lady making an outcry, and turning quickly saw Arcalaus, who had already mounted, and seizing Oriana by the arm, had placed her in front of him and was going off with her as fast as he could; Amadis went after him without any delay, and overtook him in that great field. And raising his sword to strike him, forbore giving him a tremendous blow, for his sword was such that he thought it would kill him and his lady, and he struck him on his back but not with all his strength; however he cut off a piece of his coat of mail and a piece of hide from his back. Then Arcalaus, in order to get away more quickly, let Oriana fall to the ground, for he feared death, and Amadis said:

"Ah, Arcalaus; turn back and you will see whether I am as dead as you said."

But he did not wish to believe him; rather, he cast away the shield from his neck; and Amadis caught up to him beforehand and gave him a blow from a distance on his sword belt and cut his coat of mail and into his lower back, and the point of the sword reached the horse in the flank and cut it somewhat; so that the horse with fear began to run so fast that in a short time it put quite a distance between them. Amadis, even though he

hated him intensely and wanted to kill him, did not go on any farther in order not to leave his lady in the lurch, and he returned to where she was; and getting off his horse, he went and knelt before her and kissed her hands, saying:

"Now, may God do with me as He wishes, for never, my lady, did I think I would see you."

She was in such a state of fright that she could not speak; and she embraced him, for she was quite horrified at the dead knights who were near her. The damsel of Denmark went to take Amadis's horse and saw Arcalaus's sword on the ground, and picking it up, she brought it to Amadis and said:

"Look, sir, what a beautiful sword."

He looked at it and saw it was the one with which he had been cast upon the sea, and which Arcalaus had taken from him when he enchanted him. And as you hear, Amadis being thus seated beside his lady, who did not have strength to get up, Gandalin arrived, who had traveled all night, and had left the dead knight at a hermitage, whereat they were quite pleased; and very greatly pleased was he to see the strife thus ended. Then Amadis ordered them to put the damsel of Denmark on one of the loose horses, and he put Oriana on the damsel's palfrey, and they moved on from there as happy as could be. Amadis led his lady's steed by the reins, and she was telling him how frightened she was of those dead knights, and that she could not regain her composure; but he said to her:

"Much more frightful and cruel is that death that I suffer on account of you; and, lady, have pity on me and remember what you have promised me, for if up to now I have endured, it is only because I believed that it was not in your hands or power to give me more than you have already given me; but if from now on, while I see you, my lady, in such freedom, you were not to succor me, nothing would suffice any longer to sustain my life; rather it would come to an end from the most maddening expectation with which any person ever died."

Oriana said to him:

"Forsooth, my dear, never, if I am able, shall you be in that danger because of me. I shall do what you wish, and you see to

it that, although here below it may appear error and sin, it not be so before God."

Thus they journeyed three leagues, until they entered a very dense forest that was about one league from a town. Oriana became very drowsy, as one who had not slept at all the night before, and said,

"Dear, I am so sleepy that I cannot stand it."

"Lady," said he, "let us go to that valley and you shall sleep."

And leaving the road, they went to the valley, where they found a little stream and very fresh green grass. There Amadis helped his lady to dismount and said:

"Lady, the afternoon is starting out to be warm; here you shall sleep until the cool comes. And meanwhile I shall send Gandalin to that town yonder to bring us something to refresh us."

"Let him go," said Oriana, "but who will give it to him?"

Amadis said:

"They will give it to him in exchange for that horse as security, and he will return on foot."

"It shall not be thus," said Oriana, "rather, have him take this ring of mine, which will never be worth so much to us as right now."

And taking it off her finger, she gave it to Gandalin. And as he was leaving, he said in a low voice to Amadis:

"Sir, he who does not take time by the forelock, may never have another chance."

And having said this, he went away at once; and Amadis understood very well why he said it to him.

Oriana lay down on the damsel's mantle; meanwhile Amadis disarmed, for he had certainly needed to do so; and when he was disarmed, the damsel entered a thicket to sleep and Amadis returned to his lady. And when he saw her thus so beautiful and in his power, she having agreed to do his will, he was so distraught with joy and bashfulness that he did not dare even to look at her; so that one could well say that in that green grass, on that mantle, more by the grace and courtesy of Oriana than by any immodesty or boldness on Amadis's part, was the most beautiful maiden in the world made a matron. And thinking thus

to cool their ardent passion, it increasing to a much greater degree, remained more burning and with greater force than ever, as it is wont to happen in sincere and true love affairs. Thus were they together in those acts of love, such that he and she can think and feel that their hearts are wounded by the same Cupid's arrow, until the hindrance of Gandalin's arrival caused Amadis to get up; and calling the maiden, they gave good orders to prepare a meal, for they really had need of it; where, although there were lacking there the many servants, the grand table service of gold and silver plate, that did not take away that sweet and great pleasure that they had from the repast on the grass. Then, just as you hear, these two lovers were in that forest with such a life as never at their pleasure would have been abandoned if they could have maintained it without embarrassment and great shame.

Where we shall leave them enjoying themselves and resting, and we shall tell what happened to Don Galaor in his quest for the king.

CHAPTER XXXVI

How don galaor set free king lisuarte from the captivity in which he was being treacherously transported.

Don Galaor, having left Amadis, his brother, as you have already heard, started along the road over which they were taking the king. And he made haste to go as fast as he could, as one who had a very great anxiety to overtake them, and who was not paying attention to anything he might see except their trail; and thus he journeyed until the hour of vespers, when he entered a valley and found in it the hoof prints where the horses had stopped; then he followed that trail as fast as his horse could carry him, for it seemed to him that they could not go far; but it was not long before he saw in front of him a knight fully armed on a good horse, who sallied forth toward him, and said to him:

"Stop, sir knight, and tell me what concern causes you thus to gallop."

"For heaven's sake!" said Galaor, "don't bother me with your question, for I am being detained by you, whence much ill can result."

"By Holy Mary!" said the knight, "You shall not go ahead until you tell me about it, or you fight with me."

And Galaor did nothing about this except to go on; and the knight of the valley said:

"Surely, knight, you flee because of having done something base; and now protect yourself, for I want to know what it is."

Then he went at him with his lance lowered and his horse at full speed. Galaor turned; but his shield having been placed on his

back, when he saw him near at hand, he quickly guided his horse off the highway and withdrew to one side, and the knight was not able to make contact with him, but instead passed by him quickly, like one who had a spirited and well rested horse; and so he went for a bit in front of Galaor, and he turned, holding high his lance, and said:

"Ah, base and cowardly knight! You cannot protect yourself in any way from telling me what I ask you. If you don't tell me, you will die."

Then he went for him very hard. And Galaor, who had the more nimble horse, guarded himself from the encounter and did nothing but go forward as fast as he could. The knight, who could not stop his horse so quickly, when he turned, saw that Galaor had put quite a distance between them and said:

"So help me God, you don't go away on me like that."

And he, who knew the terrain well, took a short cut and went and stationed himself in a pass. Galaor, who saw him, was much troubled, and the knight said to him,

"Coward, base one, without courage! Now choose from three things whichever you wish: either fight or turn back, or tell me what I ask you."

"I am irked at any of the three, but you are not very courteous, for I shall not turn away, and if you fight me, it will not be to my liking; but if you wish to know why I am in such a hurry, follow me and you shall see, because it would take me too long to tell you, and in the end you would not believe me; so great is the misfortune."

"In the name of God!" said the knight, "go now, and I tell you that you shall not be going without me three days from now."

Galaor went on, and the knight behind him; and when they were a half league from that place, they saw a knight fully armed going on foot after a horse from which he had fallen, and another knight departing from him, who was going at a slower pace. And the knight who was going behind Galaor recognized the fallen knight, who was his first cousin, and went quickly to catch the horse for him; and he gave it to him, saying:

"What was this, sir cousin?"

He said:

"I was going along thinking of you know what; so that I wasn't even watching out for myself, and I paid no heed until that knight who goes yonder struck me with his lance on my shield, so that my horse went to his knees with me, and I fell to the ground, and my horse ran away; but at once I grasped my sword and called on him to fight, but he would not come; instead he told me that another time I should be more alert in answering when I was called."

"And by the faith you owe to God," said he, "let's go after him, if we can do it, and you will see how I take revenge."

"That I cannot do," said the cousin, "because for three days I have to attend that knight after whom I am going."

And he told him what had happened to him.

"Certainly," said the knight, "either he is the most cowardly man in the world, or he is going to undertake some great deed, because he takes care of himself thus, and I am willing to put off the avenging of my injury in order to see what will come of this affair."

At this point they saw Galaor riding in the distance, for he did nothing but travel, and the two cousins went on behind him. And at this hour it was near nightfall. Galaor went into a forest, and in the darkness he lost the trail, and did not know which way to go. Then he began to pray for God's mercy to guide him that he might be the first to effect that rescue. And thinking that the knights had gone off somewhere with the king to sleep, he journeyed listening through some valleys from one end to the other, but he heard nothing; the two cousins who were following him thought he was going along the road; but as soon as they had traveled about a league, they came out of the forest and did not see him; and believing that he had hidden from them, they went and lodged at the home of a lady who dwelt near there. Galaor went through the forest in all directions. He decided to bypass the forest, since he found nothing in it, and to climb up next day on some high knoll to look over the land; and taking the road that he was previously following, he journeyed until he came out on level ground; and then he saw ahead in a valley a small fire; and going there, he found that muleteers were camping there; and when they saw him thus armed, with fear

they took up lances and axes and went toward him; and he told them not to fear any harm, but he asked them to give him a little barley for his horse. They gave it to him, and there he fed his horse. They asked him if he would eat; he said not, but that he would sleep a little, and that they should awaken him before dawn. At that time two-thirds of the night had already passed; Galaor threw himself down to sleep near the fire thus armed, and when dawn began to break, he got up, for he did not sleep very peacefully, because he had great anxiety over not finding those he was looking for; and mounting his horse, taking his arms, he bade them good-bye. And they, him, for his squire he had not been able to keep with him; and from then on he promised, if God protected him, to give his squire the best horse; and he went straight to a high hillock, and from there began to examine the terrain in all directions. At that time the two cousins, who had lodged in the lady's house, sallied forth. And it was now morning, and they saw Galaor and recognized him by his shield and went toward him; but on moving forward, they saw him descend the hill as fast as his horse would carry him. And the unhorsed knight said:

"He has seen us already and is fleeing; certainly I think that on account of some ill-fortune he keeps fleeing and hiding; and may God help me, provided I can overtake him, if I don't ascertain it to his harm, if he deserves it; and let us go after him."

But Galaor, who was far from thinking of them, had already seen the knights going through a pass at the edge of the forest, and the other five knights were going ahead, and the five behind, and in between them unarmed men were going; and he thought that those were the ones who were taking the king away, and he went toward them as one who already had made an offering of his death in order to save another's life; and when he was near them, he saw the king on the chain, and was so grieved at it that not thinking about death, he ran to the five who were going in front, and said:

"Ah, traitors! To your own harm you laid hands on the best man in the world."

And the five came toward him; but he struck the first on his chest so that the iron with a piece of the shaft came out his back,

and he struck him down dead. And the others struck him so hard that they made his horse go to his knees, and one of them thrust his lance between Galaor's chest and shield; and he losing it, Galaor took it and went and hit another one with it in the muscle of his leg, and he penetrated his armor, and his leg, and the lance went into his horse; so that the knight was transfixed; there he broke his lance, and grasping his sword he saw all the others coming at him, and he rushed into their midst so violently that there is no man who, if he saw it, would not marvel at how he could stand so many and such powerful blows as they gave him. And being in this great press and danger on account of the knights being many in number, God sought to succor him with the two cousins who were following him; who, when they saw him thus, marvelled greatly at such knightly prowess; and the one who was going behind him said:

"We certainly blamed that man for cowardice unjustly; and let us go help him in such a great melee."

"Who would do otherwise in the matter," said the other one, "but succor the best knight in the world? And don't think that he would attack so many men except on account of some extraordinary action."

Then they charged at full speed, and went and struck them very fiercely like men who were very vigorous and experienced in the exercise of arms, for both of them had been knights errant for more than ten years; and I tell you that the first was called Ladasin, the fencer, and the other, Don Guilan the Pensive, the good knight. At this time Galaor already had great need of their help, for his helmet was slashed and dented in many places and his coat of mail rent all over, and his horse wounded and about to fall; but in spite of this he did not stop performing wonders, and giving such mighty blows to those whom he could reach that they hardly dared to await him. And he thought that if his horse were not failing him, they would not maintain themselves against him sufficiently to avoid his killing them in the end. But the two cousins having arrived, as you have already heard, the fight then changed for the better for him, for they fought so well with such great strength that he marvelled greatly; and thus he found himself more free because the blows that he had been enduring

were distributed about. Then he accomplished wonders, for he could attack at his will; and so great was the pressure that he put on them, and the cousins with their help, that in a short time they were all dead or overcome.

When Arcalaus's cousin saw this, he rushed at the king to kill him; and as those who were with him had all fled, the king got down from the palfrey just as he was with his chain around his throat, and took a shield and the sword of the knight who died first; and the other tried to strike him on top of the head. The king raised the shield, on which he received the blow, and it was such that the sword went through the boss for a good span, and reached the king on the head with its point, and cut skin and flesh to the bone. But the king gave the horse such a blow on its face with the sword that he could not withdraw it; and the horse reared and fell on top of the knight. Galaor, who was now on foot because his horse couldn't move, and was going to help the king, went for the knight to cut off his head. And the king shouted not to kill him. The two cousins, who had gone after a knight who was escaping them, and had killed him, when they returned and saw the king, were greatly shocked, for they knew nothing about his being taken captive. And they quickly dismounted, and taking off their helmets, they went and knelt before him, and he recognized them and lifting them up by their hands, said:

"By heaven, friends, you helped me at a good time; and the friend of Don Guilan's lady love does me great evil, for she took him away from my retinue, and on account of her I lose you, Ladasin."

Guilan was very much ashamed and his face turned red; but not on this account did he cease to love his lady, the duchess of Bristol, and she loved him; so that already they had attained the objective of their love that they desired; and always the duke suspected that Guilan had been the one who entered his castle when it was Galaor who went there, as the story has related to you.

But let us leave this and return to the king, and what he did after he was free. Know you that Galaor extricated Arcalaus's cousin from under the horse; and taking the chain away from the king, he put it on him; and taking the horses of the dead knights,

the king took one and Galaor the other, for his own did not stir, and very happy they started out on the road to London. Ladasin told the king all that had happened to him with Galaor; and the king esteemed the latter highly for abstaining from fighting in view of the quest that he was pursuing, and Guilan likewise told him how when he was thinking about his lady love so intently that he did not heed anything else, the knight had overthrown him without saying anything to him. The king laughed mightily at this, saying that although he had heard many things that the enamored do on account of their sweethearts, nothing equalled this; and, said he, "I see that with good reason they call you Guilan the Pensive."

Of these things and of others very agreeable they continued to talk until they reached the house of Ladasin, for he dwelt very near there; and there Galaor's squire overtook them, and Ardian the dwarf, who thought his master was going along that road, to look for him. Galaor related to the king the way he and Amadis had separated, and said that he ought to send word to London, because the wood-cutters would have told the news, whereupon the whole court would be up in arms.

"Since Amadis," said the king, "goes in aid of my daughter, I don't think I shall lose her, if that traitor does not practice some deception upon her by enchantment. And as for what you say, it will be well that the queen learn what has happened to me."

And he gave orders to a squire of Ladasin's who knew his way about the country, to go at once with that news. Then the king lodged there that night, where he was very well served. And next day they resumed their journey, and Arcalaus's cousin told them how all that had occurred had been on the advice of Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, he intending to be king of Great Britain. Then the king strove to go faster than before in order to find him there.

CHAPTER XXXVII

How the news came to the queen that king Lisuarte was a captive; and how Barsinan carried out his treason, seeking to be king, and finally was ruined and the king restored to his kingdom.

The wood-cutters who had seen what had happened to the king, reached the town and told everything. When this was known, the agitation was tremendous; and all the knights armed themselves and they set out in all directions at the full speed of their horses, so that the countryside seemed to be full of them. Arban, the king of North Wales remained speaking with the queen, and his squires arrived there with his arms and horses; and coming in to where he was, a page said to him:

"Sir, arm yourself; what are you doing? Now not a knight of the king's retinue remains in the town except you, for all are going at top speed of their horses through the forest."

"And why?" said Arban.

"Because they say," said the page, "that ten knights are carrying the king away a prisoner."

"Alas, Holy Mary!" said the queen; "for I have always feared that."

And she fell in a faint.

Arban left her in the care of the ladies and maidens in waiting, who were lamenting bitterly, and went and armed himself; and mounting his horse, he heard it shouted that they were taking the citadel.

"Holy Mary!" said Arban, "we are all betrayed."

And he thought that he would do wrong if he left the queen unprotected.

At this time throughout the town there was such a great turmoil as if everyone in the world were there. Arban stopped thus armed at the gate of the queen's palace with two hundred of his knights; and he sent two of them to find out what the tumult was about; and reaching the citadel, they saw that Barsinan was inside with all his company, and he was beheading and killing as many as he could capture, and others he was hurling from the walls; for when he heard of the tumult and the capture of the king, he had no eyes for anything else. And the king's men, not suspecting it, were going without qualms to his aid; and Barsinan had with him six hundred knights and servants well armed. When Arban was informed of it by his knights, he said:

"The king is a captive through the counsel of a traitor."

Barsinan now being in control of the citadel, he left forces there to guard it; and he went forth with the rest to seize the queen and take the king's seat and crown. Those in the town who saw that the contest was going thus, all went to the queen's residence as well armed as they were able. When Barsinan reached the queen's residence, he found there Arban with all his company and a lot of townspeople. And Barsinan said to him:

"Arban, up till now you have been the most sensible young knight that I have seen; and act from now on so that you may not lose your good sense."

"Why do you say that to me?" said Arban.

"Because I know," said he, "that King Lisuarte is in the hands of one who will send me his head without his body within five days; and in this land there is nobody except me who can and should be king, and so it shall yet be; and the land of North Wales which you hold as a fief I grant unto you, because you are an excellent knight and knowledgeable. Stand aside and I shall take the throne and crown; and if you should wish to do otherwise, herewith I challenge you, and I say to you that no one will be against me to take away my land from me whose head I don't order cut off."

"Certainly," said Arban, "you say things for which I shall be against you as long as I live. The first, that you counsel me to

be a traitor against my lord when he is in such great distress. And the other, that you know that they who bear him away will kill him; whence it seems clear that you are a party to the treason. Since I always keep in mind that loyalty is one of the most precious things in the world, and you spurning it, and as an evil man being against it, we could ill come to any agreement."

"What!" said Barsinan, "you think to deter me from being king of London?"

"A traitor will never be king of London," said Arban, "and moreover, never in the lifetime of the most loyal king in the world."

Barsinan said:

"I made an advantageous proposal to you first, rather than to the others, believing you were smarter than they, and now you appear to me lacking in intelligence, and I shall force you to recognize your folly; and I want to see what you will do, for I intend to take the crown and the throne, which I deserve because of my good deeds."

"Concerning that, I shall do as much," said Arban, "as I would if the king my lord were seated on it."

"Now I shall see," said Barsinan.

And he commanded his company to go and attack them. And Arban awaited them with his company, as one who was very courageous and loyal in all things. He was very angry at what he heard about the king his lord; and very fiercely they joined in hand-to-hand fighting with their opponents, everywhere giving each other mighty blows; so that many were killed and wounded, and both sides fought as hard as they could to overcome and kill each other; but Arban did so much that day that more than all others in that struggle he was praised; for he was the defender of all his men, and kept going forward, knocking down and striking, putting his life at the point of death. Thus they continued until nightfall, for they could not overcome each other; and this was caused because the streets were narrow, for otherwise Arban would have seen himself in danger and the queen would have been taken prisoner. But Barsinan took refuge with his company in the citadel, and found a good bit of his force

missing, both dead and wounded, so that it was very necessary for the remainder to rest. And Arban said to his men:

"Sirs, let your loyalty and ardor be exhibited, and do not be disheartened by this bad fortune, for quickly it will be recouped."

Furthermore he arranged his company so that they might protect themselves during the night.

This done, the queen, who was frightened almost to death, gave orders to call Arban; and he came just as he was, armed and wounded in many places; and on arriving where the queen was, he took off his helmet, which was broken, and they saw five wounds on his face and his throat, and his face covered with blood, for he was quite disfigured; but he seemed very handsome to those ladies who, after God, regarded him as their protector. When the queen saw him thus, she was sorely grieved on his account, and said to him weeping:

"Alas, good nephew! May God sustain you and aid you, that you may be able to sustain this loyalty of yours to a conclusion. In heaven's name, tell me: what will become of the king and what will become of us?"

"We," said he, "shall be all right if God wills it, and of the king we shall hear good news; and I tell you, my lady, not to fear the traitors who were planted here, in view of the great loyalty of your vassals who are here with me, who will defend you very well."

"Ah, nephew!" said the queen, "I see you in such a state as to be unable to bear arms, and I do not know what the others will do without you."

"Lady," said he, "do not worry about that, for as long as I have my soul in my body, my arms will never be put down by me."

Then he left her and returned to his company; and thus they passed that night. And Barsinan, although he found his company in bad shape, showed great spirit, and said to them:

"Friends, I do not wish us to fight any more over this, nor have more dead, for I shall bring it to a conclusion without excess or battle, as you shall see later; and now rest without any misgiving."

So they rested that night. And next morning, he armed himself and mounted his horse, and taking twenty knights with him, he went to a short cut that Arban's steward was guarding; and as those at the barricade saw them, they took up their arms in order to defend themselves; but Barsinan told them he was coming to speak with them, and that they be assured of a truce until noon. And the steward then went to tell his master, and he was happy about the truce, for the majority of his company were so badly injured that they could not take up arms; and he went at once with his steward to his camp. And Barsinan said to them:

"I wish a truce with you for five days, if you are willing."

"I am willing," said Arban, "on condition that you do not try to attack anything in the town; and if the king should return, that we do whatever he commands."

"I agree to all of that," said Barsinan, "provided that there be no battle, for I value my followers, and I esteem you people, for you will be mine more quickly than you think; and I shall tell you that the king is dead; and I have his daughter and wish to take her for my wife, and you will see this before the truce comes to an end."

"Now may God not help me," said Arban, "if you ever have a truce with me, being an accomplice in the treason that was done my lord. Now go and do your worst."

And I tell you that before night came, Barsinan attacked them a good three times, and retired outside.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

CONCERNING HOW AMADIS CAME TO THE AID OF THE CITY OF LONDON AND KILLED THAT TRAITOR OF A BARSINAN AND RESTORED THE WHOLE CITY TO CALM.

Amadis, lodging in the woods with his lady Oriana, as we told you, asked her what Arcalaus said; she replied:

"That I should not lament, that he would make me queen of London within two weeks and that he would give me Barsinan for my husband, whom he would make king of my father's land, and that he would be his chief steward in exchange for his having given him me and my father's head."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Amadis. "What great treason Barsinan's, to pretend to be such a friend of the king! And I am afraid he will wreak some harm on the queen."

"Oh, my dear!" said she, "lend aid in the matter as best you can."

"That I must do," said Amadis, "and I am very sorry; for I would have taken great pleasure in enjoying with you four days in this forest if, my lady, it had been to your liking."

"God knows," said she, "how much I would have liked it; but very great harm might have come of it to the land which, God willing, will be mine and yours."

Thus they took their ease until dawn. Then Amadis arose and armed himself very well; and leading his lady's steed by the reins, he started out on the road to London, and he traveled as fast as he could; and he met some of the knights just as they were leaving in groups of five or ten, and there were probably more than a thousand of these knights; and he showed them where to

go to look for the king, and he told them how Galaor was going ahead to the rescue; and passing by all of them, he encountered at five leagues from London Don Grumedan, the good old man who had served as foster-father to the queen, and with him were twenty knights of his family, who went all night through the forest from one end to the other looking for the king; and when he recognized Oriana, he went to her weeping and said:

"Madam, Oh, heavens! What a good day with your arrival! But, in heaven's name, what news of the king your father?"

"Certainly, my friend," said she crying, "near London they separated me from him; and it was God's pleasure that Amadis overtook those who were carrying me away and exercised such might that he rescued me from them."

"Certainly," said Don Grumedan, "whatever he couldn't accomplish, let no one else strive to do." Then he said to Amadis: "Dear sir, what has your brother done?"

"There," said Amadis, "where they separated the king from his daughter was when he and I separated; and he followed the king, and I Arcalaus, who was carrying away this lady."

"Now I have more hope," said Don Grumedan, "since such a daring and successful knight as Don Galaor is going to the aid of the king."

Amadis told Don Grumedan of the great treachery of Arcalaus and of Barsinan, and furthermore he said:

"Take Oriana, and I shall go to the queen as quickly as I can, for I am afraid that that traitor will seek to do her harm; and you order the knights that you meet to go back; for if the king is to be rescued by people, so many are going in quest of him that many of them are not needed."

Don Grumedan took Oriana and continued on the road to London as fast as he could, meanwhile ordering all the people that he met to return. Amadis went as fast as his horse could carry him, and as he was entering the town met the squire whom the king had sent to give the news that he was free; and the squire told him how it had occurred. Amadis gave many thanks to God for his brother's successful exploit. And before entering the town, he ascertained all that Barsinan had done; and he went in as secretly as he could. And when Arban saw him, both he and his

men were very happy, and greatly plucked up courage. Arban went and embraced him, saying to him:

"My good sir, what news do you bring?"

"All of it pleasing to you," said Amadis, "and let us go before the queen and you shall hear it."

Then they entered where she was, Amadis leading the squire by the hand; and when he saw her, he knelt before her and said:

"Madam, this squire leaves the king safe and sound, and he sends him to you to tell you so; and I left Oriana in the hands of Don Grumedan your foster father, and she will be here at once; and in the meantime, I want to see Barsinan if I can."

And leaving his helmet and shield and taking another in order that he might not be recognized, he said to Arban:

"Have the barriers torn down, and let Barsinan and his company come; and God willing, we shall make him pay for his treachery."

And he told him what he knew about Barsinan and Arcalaus. The road blocks were at once demolished; and Barsinan and his men charged in, believing they would win everything without being stopped; and Arban's men received them; so between them there began a very dangerous engagement, where there were many killed and wounded. Barsinan went forward, for as his men were many and the opposing ones but few, they were unable to hold against them; and Barsinan strove to do all he could to take the queen. Amadis saw the fray, went out against them, carrying at his neck a disfigured shield and a rusty helmet, such that it was worth very little, but in the end it was adjudged good; and he went forward through the melee, with the king's good sword girded on. And coming up to Barsinan, he gave him a lance thrust on his shield of such force that it penetrated it and his coat of mail, and the tip went half-way through into his flesh and there broke off; and grasping his sword he struck him on top of his helmet and cut as much skin from his head as he could reach; so that Barsinan was stunned; and the sword cut so delicately that Amadis did not feel it in his hand any more than nothing at all; and he struck him again on the arm with which he was holding his sword and cut the sleeve and the arm with it close to his hand; and the sword descended to his leg and cut off a good

half of it. And Barsinan tried to flee, but could not and fell down immediately; and Amadis went and attacked the others so violently that those whom he reached with a direct blow had no further need of a physician; so that as soon as they recognized him by the marvels that he was performing, they left his way clear, vying with each other in fleeing from death. Arban and those men of his who followed him as leader pressed forward so hard that Barsinan's company, many of them having been left dead or wounded in the street where they fought, took refuge in the citadel. Amadis came up to the gate, and would have started to go inside if it had not been locked against him. Then he returned to where he left Barsinan with many from the town, who were guarding him; and on arriving where Barsinan was, he saw he was still breathing; and he ordered him to be taken to the palace and to be guarded until the king came. And the combat having been concluded just as you hear with some dead and others locked up, Amadis looked at the bloody sword which he held in his hand and said:

"Ah, sword! on a good day was born the knight who acquired you; and certainly you are being rightfully used, for since you are the best sword of the world, the best man in it owns you."

Then he ordered himself disarmed; and he went to the queen, and Arban went to lie down on his bed, for he had great need of it in view of the seriousness of his wounds.

Meanwhile King Lisuarte, who was coming at full speed on his way to London to find Barsinan, met many of his knights who were looking for him, and he had them turn back; and he sent some of them over the highways and through the valleys to have all those whom they might find return, for they were many; and the first ones whom he met were Agrajes and Galvanes, and Soliman and Galdan, and Dinadaus and Bervas; these six were traveling together lamenting bitterly, and when they came before the king, with great joy they sought to kiss his hands; but he embraced them, and said:

"My friends, you were close to losing me, and it would undoubtedly have been so, except for Galaor and Don Guilan and Ladasin, who by great good fortune were united."

Dinadaus said to him:

"Sire, all the people of the town have sallied forth at the news, and they will all be lost."

"Cousin," said the king, "take the best of these knights, those who are most satisfactory to you; and take this shield of mine, so that they obey you with more circumspection, and make them return."

This Dinadaus was one of the best knights of the king's lineage, and very highly esteemed among the excellent ones, both for courtesy and for good deeds of chivalry, and also for his prowess; and he went at once, so that he made many return. The king proceeding, as you have heard, thus accompanied by many knights and other forces and entering the great highway to London, found that very intimate friend of his, Don Grumedan, who was bringing Oriana. I tell you that their mutual pleasure was very great, all the more so because they had given up hope of the possibility of their great tribulation's being remedied. Grumedan told the king how Amadis had gone into the town to the queen. At this point the king reached London, and in his company were more than two thousand knights; and before he entered the town, they told him all that Barsinan had done, and the defense that King Arban made and how with the arrival of Amadis, everything had been settled by taking Barsinan prisoner. So already everything sad was rendered joyous. The king having arrived where the queen was, who can relate to you the pleasure and joy that she and all her ladies and maidens in waiting had with him and with Oriana? Certainly no-one, for it was so overwhelming. The king ordered siege laid to the citadel and he caused to be brought before him Barsinan, who had regained consciousness, and the cousin of Arcalaus, and had them tell why they had plotted that treachery. They told him everything, without any omissions. And he gave orders to have them brought to within view of the citadel, where their men might see them, and that they both be burned to death, which was done at once. Those in the citadel not having provisions or help, after five days threw themselves upon the mercy of the king; and he imposed penalties on some according to his pleasure and released the others. But nothing more will be told about this, except that because of this death of Barsinan there was for a long time great hatred between

Great Britain and Sansuenia; there coming against this same king a son of this Barsinan, a valiant knight, with many companies of soldiers, as the story will relate subsequently.

King Lisuarte, having surcease from his misfortunes, returned to the court convocation as before, with everyone holding very great celebrations both by night in the towns and by day in the countryside. And one day there came there the lady and her sons in whose presence Amadis and Galaor had promised Madasima to leave King Lisuarte, as you have already heard. When they saw her, they went to her to do her honor, and she said to them:

"Friends, I am come here for the purpose that you know; tell me what you will do about it."

"We shall carry out all that was agreed upon with Madasima."

"In the name of God!" said the lady.

"Since today marks the time limit, let us go at once before the king," they said.

"Let us go," said she.

Then they went where the king was; and the lady bowed low. And the king received her with very good will. The matron said:

"Sire, I have come here to see if these knights will keep a promise they made to a lady."

The king asked what the promise was.

"It will be such," said she, "as I think will grieve you and those of your court who esteem them."

Then the duenna told the entire affair just as it had taken place with Madasima, the chatelaine of Gantasi. When he heard this, the king said:

"Ah, Galaor, you have killed me!"

"It is better this way," said Galaor, "than to die; for if we had been recognized, nobody would have saved our lives; and do not worry about this, sire, very much; for the remedy will be soon, more quickly than you think."

Afterwards he spoke to Amadis, his brother:

"You promised me that you would do in this matter just as I do."

"That is true," said he.

And Galaor then told the king and the knights who were present, by what deceit they had been imprisoned. The king was greatly astounded on hearing of such treachery; but Galaor said that he thought the lady would be the one thwarted and deceived in that agreement, as they would see; and in the presence of the duenna he said to the king, for all to hear:

"Sir king, I take my leave of you and your retinue, as I have promised, and so fulfill my promise; and I leave you and your company for Madasima, the chatelaine of the castle of Gantasi; who considered it good to cause you this sorrow and as many others as she can, because she hates you very much."

And Amadis did the same thing. Galaor said to the lady and to her sons:

"Does it seem to you that we have kept the promise?"

"Yes, without fail," said she; "for all that you have agreed to you have fulfilled."

"In the name of God!" said Galaor; "so now when you please, you may depart; and tell Madasima that she did not agree as wisely as she thought; and now you can see it."

Then he turned to the king and said:

"Sire, we have carried out with Madasima what we promised her, not setting any limit to how long a time we were to be separated from you; so that we can without difficulty return every time that it be our will to do so; and let us do so at once, returning to what we were before."

And when the king and those of his court heard this, they were very happy, considering the knights clever. The king said to the lady who had come there to see about the agreement:

"Surely, madam, according to the great treachery that was done these knights through such deceit, they are not obligated further, nor were they even obligated to do what they did, for it is very just that those who seek to deceive be deceived; and tell Madasima that if she hates me so much, she had it in her power to inflict on me the greatest harm and sorrow that could have come to me at this time; but God, who protected them well elsewhere from great dangers, did not wish them to suffer in the power of such a person as she is."

"Sire," said the lady, "tell me, if you please, who are these knights who are so highly esteemed?"

The king said:

"Amadis and Don Galaor, his brother."

"What!" said the matron, "this is Amadis whom she had in her power?"

"Yes, without doubt," said the king.

"Thank God," said the lady, "that they are saved, for it certainly would have been a very great misfortune if two such excellent men had died in such wise; but I believe that she who had them, when she finds out it was they and that thus they escaped from her, the same death that she had ordered given them, she will give herself."

"Certainly," said the king, "that would be the fairest thing to do."

The matron took her leave and went her way.

CHAPTER XXXIX

ABOUT HOW KING LISUARTE HELD HIS CONVOCATION OF NOBLES THAT LASTED TWELVE DAYS, DURING WHICH GREAT CELEBRATIONS WERE HELD BY MANY OF HIGH DEGREE WHO CAME THERE, LADIES AS WELL AS KNIGHTS, MANY OF WHOM STAYED ON THERE A FEW DAYS.

The king held his court there for twelve days, at which many things were done to the great aggrandizement of his honor and veracity; afterwards the convocation was adjourned, and although many people went back to their lands, so many nobles remained with the king that it was marvellous to see them; furthermore the queen had many ladies and maidens of high rank remain with her, and the king took as members of his retinue Guilan the Pensive and Ladasin his cousin, who were very good knights; but Guilan was the better, as in all the kingdom of London there was no one who excelled him in excellence; and likewise he had all the other good qualities that befitted a good knight except that a long interval of inactivity was wont to render him so pensive that men were unable to enjoy his conversation or his company; and the cause of this was love which had him in its power and impelled him to love his lady, for he loved not himself nor any other thing so much; and the one whom he loved was very beautiful, and her name was Brandalisa, sister of the wife of the King of Serolis and married to the Duke of Bristol. Then, just as you hear, King Lisuarte was in London with such knights, his great fame spreading more than that of any other prince in the world. Fortune being content for a long period of time — having placed him, as you have heard, in great danger — not to test him further, believing that ought to be sufficient for a man so

prudent and so upright as he was, not on that account its purpose failing to be changed if the king's purpose were through greed, pride or the many other things with which kings, when not seeking to guard themselves against them, are endangered and their great fame obscured with more dishonor and vilification than if the great things of the past in their favor and to their great glory had not come to them; because one should not account unfortunate anyone who never had good fortune, except those who, having exalted their fortune to the heavens, by their poor intelligence, by their vices and sins attract the attention of Fortune, who to the great pain and anguish of their spirits took it away from them.

The king being as you hear, the Duke of Bristol arrived there at the time for which he had been cited on petition of Olivas by virtue of what the latter had said before the king, and the duke was well received by the king, and said:

"Sire, you ordered me summoned to appear today before you in your court, because of what they said about me, which was a very great lie; and in this matter I shall clear myself as you and those of your court deem right."

Olivas stood up and went before the king, and with him arose most of the knights errant who were there. The king asked them why they all came thus, and Don Grumedan told him:

"Sire, because the duke threatened all the knights errant and we with great reason should deter him."

"Certainly," said the king, "if that is so, he would be undertaking an insane war, for I believe that there is not in the world a king so powerful or so wise as to be able to prosecute successfully such a war; but go hence all of you, for here you will not seek trouble for him, for he will have all his rights without their being diminished by anything I and these nobles who will counsel me may be able to infer."

Then they all went to their places, except Olivas, who remained before the king and said:

"Sire, the duke who is before you killed a cousin of mine without motivation or ever telling him why, and I say to you he is on this account treacherous, and this I shall force him to say, or I shall either kill him or force him to flee from the lists."

The duke said he was lying and that he would comply with whatever the king and his court should order. The king postponed the dispute until the next day. But the duke willingly would have begun the battle were it not for his two nephews who had not yet arrived, for he wanted to put them into it with him if he could, for he esteemed them so highly at arms that he did not think that Olivas would have any knights aiding him who could not quickly be vanquished by himself and his nephews. That day passed, and the duke's nephews arrived at nightfall, for which he was very glad. And next morning they went before the king, and Olivas challenged the duke, and he gave him the lie and promised him the combat, of three against three. Then Don Galvanes who was at the feet of the king, arose and called Agrajes, his nephew, and said to Olivas:

"Friend, we promised that if the duke of Bristol, who is present, should want to put more knights in the battle, we would be in it with you; and so we willingly wish to be, and let the battle be at once without further delay."

The nephews of the duke said that the battle should be at once. The duke looked at Agrajes and at Galvanes, and recognized that they were the ones whom he had insulted at his home, and the ones who had taken away from him the maiden whom he was seeking to burn to death, and who afterwards put him to rout in the forest; and although he esteemed his nephews highly, that time he would not for anything in the world have wished to promise the battle; rather, he would have liked to give one of his nephews to enter into it with Olivas, for he very much feared those two knights, but he could not do otherwise. Then all of them went to arm themselves, and they came into the open square, which was set apart for such fights; some through one gate, and the others through another. When Olinda, who was at the queen's window from where the whole field was in view, saw her beloved Agrajes intending to fight, she had such great sorrow that her courage sank, for she loved him more than anyone else in the world; and with her was Mabilia, sister of Agrajes, who grieved much to see her brother and her uncle Don Galvanes in such danger. And with them was Oriana, who certainly wished to see them successful because of the great love that Amadis had

for them and because of the rearing which she had had with King Languines and his wife, parents of Agrajes. The king, who was there with many knights, when he saw it was time, withdrew from the lists, and the knights went and attacked each other at the full speed of their horses; and none of them missed his blow. Agrajes and his uncle collided with the nephews of the duke, and knocked them out of their saddles over their horses' rumps; and their lances were broken and they went on by them looking very spruce and well mounted. Olivas was wounded in the chest by the duke's lance, and the duke lost his stirrups and would have fallen if he had not embraced the neck of his horse, and Olivas went by him badly wounded, but the duke righted himself in the saddle; and the knight whom Agrajes had overthrown got up as best he could and went up close to the duke and stopped. And Agrajes charged the duke, whom he hated very much, and he began to give him mighty blows on top of his helmet and caused his sword to penetrate through to his head; but the knight who was on foot near him, and saw his uncle in such danger, came up to Agrajes and struck his horse on the flank, so that he put his whole sword into it. Agrajes was not thinking about anything except taking the duke's life, and saw nothing of this; while he was bringing him to a point where he might cut off his head, his horse fell with him. Don Galvanes continued to be so involved with the other knight that he did not see any of this. Agrajes and his horse being on the ground, the one who had killed it struck him great and very heavy blows; and the duke also as hard as he could. At that hour all their friends were sorely distressed, and Amadis especially so, for gladly he would have endeavored to be there where his cousin was, and that the latter not be present, because he was very much afraid of seeing him die in view of his being so hard pressed. And the three maidens already mentioned, who were at the windows watching, were so distraught to see him thus that they were on the point of taking their own lives. But Olinda, his lady love, was more distraught than the others; on seeing her exhibit her great anxiety, those who were watching her were sad. Agrajes, being agile, came out from under his horse very quickly, for no other more ready or stouter of heart than he would be found in all the land,

and he defended himself from the two knights very well with Amadis's good sword, which he held in his hand and with which he was delivering blows. Galaor, who was watching him with great anxiety, said in an undertone with great sorrow:

"Oh, heavens! What is Olivas waiting for that he does not bring help where it is needed? Certainly it would have been better for him never to have borne arms than thus to err with them at such a time."

This Don Galaor said, not knowing of the great trouble Olivas was in, for he was so badly wounded and so much blood flowed from him, that it was a wonder how he could even keep himself in the saddle; and when he saw Agrajes thus, he sighed with great grief, as one who, although lacking strength, was not lacking courage; and raising his eyes to heaven he said:

"Oh, Lord God! I beg you to give me the opportunity, before my soul be departed from my body, to aid that good friend of mine."

Then guiding his horse toward them, he grasped his sword very weakly and went to attack the duke, and the duke, him, and they gave each other strong blows with their swords; for Olivas's fury caused him to recover his strength somewhat, to such a degree that it appeared to all that he was not fighting more poorly than the duke. Agrajes remained alone with the other knight, and they both fought so well on foot that it would be hard to find anyone who would fight better; but Agrajes was striving hard to overcome him, as one who saw his lady watching him, and did not want to make a single mistake, not only in what he had to do then, but even later. So much so that his friends were troubled about him, fearing that at a critical juncture his strength and breath would fail him; but it was ever his way in every place he fought to be always more aggressive than any other knight, and to strive hard to put an end to his battles; and if his strength had equalled his effort, he would have risen to be one of the best knights in the world, and so he was very excellent and much esteemed. And he delivered so many blows on top of the knight's helmet that by cutting through it in four places he rendered it of very little value and less defense; and the knight thought of nothing but defending himself and protect-

ing his head with his shield, for his helmet was of little protection and his coat of mail of much less, for it was rent in many places and the flesh cut in more than ten, which were bleeding. When the knight saw himself in such bad shape, he went as fast as he could to where the duke was, to see if he would find some protection in him; but Agrajes, who kept following him, overtook him before he reached there, and gave him on top of the helmet, which was broken in many places, such a blow that the sword penetrated through it and into his head so far that on pulling his sword out, he laid the knight low at his feet, quivering in his death agony. Agrajes saw what the duke and Olivas were doing, and perceived that Olivas had lost so much blood that Agrajes wondered how he could live, and he went to aid him; but before he arrived Olivas fell from his horse in a faint, and the duke, who had not seen how Agrajes had killed his nephew, and did see Don Galvanes fighting with the other one, left him thus on the ground, and went as fast as he could to Galvanes and gave him heavy blows. Agrajes, considering Olivas dead, mounted quickly on the latter's horse and went to help his uncle, who was in bad straits; and when he reached there, he gave the duke's nephew such a blow that he cut the baldric of his shield and his coat of mail, and caused his sword to penetrate his flesh to the bone. The knight turned his face to see who was attacking him, and Agrajes gave him another blow on the visor of his helmet, and the sword went in so far that he could not draw it out; and on tugging at it, he broke the lacings of the helmet, so that it followed the finally withdrawn sword and fell to the ground. Galvanes, who was enraged at him, leaving the duke, returned and struck him on his bare head; but the other one covered himself with his shield, which he had much used for that function; but as he had his baldric cut, he could not prevent his head's giving satisfaction to Don Galvanes's rage by ending up almost smashed to pieces and its owner on the ground dead. Meanwhile Agrajes was involved with the duke in exchanging mighty blows; but as his uncle came up, they took him on between them, and began to attack him from all sides, for they hated him to the death; and when he saw himself thus between them, he began to flee as fast as his horse could carry him; but

those who hated him followed him wherever he went as fast as they could.

When they saw him thus, all the knights errant were very happy, and Don Guilan more than anyone else, thinking that, if the duke were dead, he would be able to enjoy his lady more at his ease, for he loved her more than anything else. Galvanes's horse was badly wounded, and with the great punishment that he gave it in order to overtake the duke, not being able to endure it any longer, it fell with him; so that Galvanes was very greatly shaken up. Agrajes went to the duke and struck him with his sword on the boss of his shield, and the sword came down to his neck almost a span; and when he pulled on it, he would have unhorsed him but the duke quickly flung the shield from his neck and left it on the sword, and again fled as fast as he could. Agrajes pulled the sword out of the shield and went after him; but the duke turned toward him and struck him a blow or two, and again fled as before. Agrajes cursed him and followed him, and struck him such a blow on his left shoulder that he cut the coat of mail and the flesh and the bones down close to the ribs, so that his arm was left dangling from his body. And the duke uttered a loud cry, and Agrajes took him by the helmet and pulled; and as he was already slightly paralyzed, he knocked him from his horse, leaving one foot in the stirrup, which he could not withdraw; and as the horse fled, it dragged him here and there over the field until it issued from it at a bowshot's distance away. And when they reached him, they found him dead, with his head smashed to bits by the horse's feet. Agrajes returned where his uncle was, and getting down off his horse, he said:

"Sir, how are you?"

"Nephew," said he, "well, God be blessed; and I am very sorry about Olivas, our friend, who, I understand, is dead."

"In good faith, I believe so," said Agrajes; "and I am very sorry about it."

Then Galvanes went where he was, and Agrajes went to cast out of the lists the duke's nephews and all their arms; and he returned to where Olivas lay and found that he was reviving somewhat, and was opening his eyes with great effort, asking for confession. Galvanes looked at the wound and said:

"Good friend, don't be afraid of death, for this wound is not in a dangerous place, and as soon as the blood has been stanched, you will be on the way to recovery."

"Alas, sir!" said Olivas, "my heart and limbs are failing me; though already once before I have been badly wounded, never have I felt so weak."

"The loss of blood," said Galvanes, "does it, for much has gone from you, but do not be afraid about anything else."

Then they disarmed him; and when they gave him some air, he was stronger and his bleeding then began to stop. The king sent for a litter on which to carry Olivas to his dwelling; and there physicians came to care for him, and on seeing the wound, although it was deep, they said that they would cure him with the help of God; and the king and many others were very happy about this.

So he remained under the care of the physicians; and the relatives of the duke and his nephews carried their remains away to their own land. And for that battle Agrajes received great honor as a very good knight, and his excellence was better known than it was before. The queen sent word for Blandisa, wife of the duke, to come to her and that she would do her every honor, and to bring with her Aldeva, her niece. Don Guilan was very pleased with this. Don Grumedan, the queen's foster father, went for them; and before a month was up, he brought them to the court, where they were well received.

Then, just as you hear, the king and the queen were in London with many people — knights, and ladies, and maidens — where within half a year, there having become known throughout other lands the great heights at which chivalry was there maintained, so many knights went thither that it was considered wonderful; these the king honored and greatly rewarded; hoping by means of them not only to defend and protect Great Britain, that great kingdom of his, but also to conquer other kingdoms that in times past were subject and tributary to it, and which through the failure of previous kings who were weak, stingy, addicted to pleasures and delights, but at this time were not. It was thus that ultimately he brought it to pass.

CHAPTER XL

How the battle took place that Amadis had promised the beautiful young girl Briolanja in Grovenesa's castle to wage against Abiseos and his two sons in revenge for the death of the king her father.

The story has related to you how Amadis was in the castle of Grovenesa where he promised Briolanja, the beautiful young girl, to afford her vengeance for the death of the king, her father, and to be there with her within a year, bringing with him two other knights in order to fight with Abiseos and his two sons; and how at his departure, the beautiful young girl gave him a sword to bear for love of her, seeing that he needed it, because he had broken his own defending himself from the knights who deceitfully sought to kill him in that castle; from which, in addition to God's help, he was freed by the lions that this beautiful young girl had ordered set free, having great pity lest such a good knight be so basely slain. And how this same sword Amadis broke in another castle, belonging to the beloved of Angriote D'Estravaus, by fighting with a knight by the name of Gasinan; and by his command those three pieces of the sword were preserved by Gandalin, his squire; and now you will be told how that promised battle took place, and such great peril came to him because of that broken sword, not through his fault but that of his dwarf, Ardian; who in great ignorance, was mistaken in thinking that his master Amadis was seriously in love with that beautiful girl, Briolanja; because Ardian had seen, being present, how he offered himself as her knight, and wanted to undertake that battle for her.

Now know you that while Amadis was in the court of King Lisuarte, seeing many times that very beautiful Oriana, his lady, who was the end and objective af all his mortal desires, he remembered this battle that he was to undertake and that its deadline was approaching. So it was necessary for him in order to keep his promise to ask very insistently the permission of his lady — although departing from her presence would be as serious for him as separating his heart from his flesh — making known to her what had occurred in that castle and the promise he had made to avenge that girl Briolanja and to restore her in her kingdom, which had been taken away from her with such great treachery. But she with many tears and sadness of heart, as if she foresaw the misadventure that came to them both because of it, considering how remiss he would be if she detained him, agreed to it; and Amadis obtaining permission likewise from the queen in order that it might appear that he was going by her command, the next morning he, taking with him his brother, Don Galaor, and Agrajes, his cousin, armed and mounted on their horses, set out on his way; and having gone about half a league, Amadis asked Gandalin if he was carrying the three pieces of the sword that the beautiful girl had given him; he said no. And he ordered him to return for them. The dwarf said he would bring them, since he was not carrying anything burdensome.

This was the occasion whereby Amadis and his lady Oriana being without blame as was the dwarf, who acted through ignorance, the lovers were both brought to the point of death; cruel Fortune, which exempts no one, wishing to show them the bitter potions which that sweetness of their great love had hidden and contained in itself, as you shall now hear; for the dwarf, having arrived at Amadis's residence and taking the pieces of the sword and stowing them in the skirt of his tabard, then passing near the palace of the queen, heard voices calling to him from the windows; and raising his head, he saw Oriana and Mabilia, who asked him why he had not left with his master.

"Yes, I left; but I had to return for what I am carrying here."

"What is that?" said Oriana.

He showed it to her; and she said:

"Why does your master want the broken sword?"

"Why?" said he, "because he values it more for the girl who gave it to him than the two best unbroken ones he could be given."

"And who is that girl?" said she.

"The same one," said the dwarf, "for whom he is going to do battle, for although you are the daughter of the best king in the world, and so beautiful, you would want to have gained what she won, more than all the land your father has."

"And what gain," said she, "was that which is so precious? By chance did she win your master?"

"Yes," said he, "for she has his heart completely, and he has remained her knight in order to serve her."

And giving the lash to his hackney, as quickly as he could he overtook his master, whose thought was indeed without worry or blame for this.

The dwarf's statement having been heard by Oriana, and recalling that Amadis had asked permission of her with such great insistence, believing implicitly what the dwarf said, her color deathlike and her heart burning with anger, she began to utter very violent words against him who was wont to think of nothing but serving her, wringing her hands, her heart so hardened that no tears could come from her eyes — tears, which bottled up within her, made her more cruel and with more enduring harshness so that one could compare her with much justice to that strong Medea when she saw her much beloved husband who had repudiated her married to another. Therefore, neither the counsel of that very wise Mabilia, given along the lines of reason and truth, nor that of her maid of Denmark, was of any avail; but she, following what the impassioned minds of women are accustomed for the most part to follow, fell into an error so great that the mercy of the most high Lord was needed for its correction. And the dwarf went on his way until he caught up with Amadis and his companions, who were traveling along slowly until the dwarf returned.

Then they hastened somewhat more; but neither did Amadis ask the dwarf anything of what occurred, nor did the dwarf tell him about it, except that he showed him the pieces of the sword.

So going along just as you hear, in a short while they met a damsel. And after they had greeted each other, she said to them:

"Knights, where are you going?"

"Along this road," said they.

"Then I advise you," said she, "to leave this road."

"Why?" said Amadis.

"Because for a good two weeks," said she, "no knight errant has gone along there who has not been slain or wounded."

"And from whom do they receive that harm?"

"From a knight," said she, "who is the best at arms of any I know."

"Damsel," said Agrajes, "Will you show us that knight?"

"He will show himself to you," said she, "as soon as you enter the forest."

Then continuing along their way, they and the maiden who was following them were looking everywhere, and from the fact that they saw nothing, they considered her words of no consequence; but on the way out of the forest they saw a great knight fully armed on a beautiful roan horse, and beside him a squire who was holding four lances for him, and he had another in his hand; and as he saw them, he gave an order to his squire, and they did not know what, but he leaned the lances against a tree and went to them, and said to them:

"Sirs, that knight gives orders to tell you that he had to keep guard over this forest against all knights errant for two weeks, during which things turned out so well for him that he has always been the victor; and on account of his liking for jousting he has been here for a day and a half over his time limit; and now, as he was about to leave, he has seen you coming, and commands that you be told that if you care to joust with him, he will do so on condition that the battle with swords not take place, because unintentionally he has done badly in it; and he would not wish to do it from now on if it could be avoided."

While the squire was saying this to them, Agrajes took his helmet and slung his shield around his neck and said:

"Tell him to be on his guard, for on account of me a joust will not be lacking."

The knight, when he saw him coming, came at him; and at the full speed of their horses they struck each other with their lances on the shields, so that they were broken at once; and Agrajes went to the ground so easily that he was astonished and very much ashamed, and his horse was loose; Galaor who saw this, took up his arms to avenge him; and the knight of the forest, taking another lance, went at him, and no one failed in the encounter; but the lances having broken, and the horses and the shields of their riders colliding, the impact was so great that Galaor's horse, which was weaker and more tired than that of the other, went down to the ground with his master; and leaving Galaor on the ground, the horse ran away through the countryside. Amadis, who was watching, began to make the sign of the cross, and taking up his arms, said:

"Now the knight can consider himself good against the two best in the world."

And he went against him; and as he reached Don Galaor he found him on foot with sword in hand, calling the knight to battle on horseback and he on foot; and the knight was laughing at him, and Amadis said to him:

"Brother, do not complain, for previously he told us that he would not fight with a sword."

After that he told the knight to be on guard. Then they charged at each other, and their lances flew through the air in pieces; but their shields and helmets collided in a wondrous way, and Amadis and his horse fell to the ground; the horse broke his shoulder, the knight of the forest fell, but held on to the reins and mounted at once very agilely. Amadis said:

"Knight, you must joust again, for the joust is not lost, since we both fell."

"I do not want to joust any more now," said the knight.

"You do me an injustice," said Amadis.

"Arrange it," said he, "when you can, and I, according to what I ordered said to you, am not obligated."

Then he moved from there through the forest as fast as his horse could carry him. Amadis and his companions, who thus saw him go, they being on the ground, considered themselves objects of mockery; and they could not think who the knight might be

who had parted from them with so much glory. Amadis mounted Gandalin's horse and said to the others:

"Mount and come behind me, for I shall regret it very much if I do not find out who that knight is."

"Certainly," said the maiden, "your thinking to find him, however much effort you might devote to it, would be the greatest folly in the world, for if all those who are at the court of King Lisuarte were looking for him, they would not find him this year if they did not have someone to guide them."

When they heard this, it greatly irked them; and Galaor who was angrier than the others, said to the damsel:

"Dear lady, by chance do you know who this knight may be, and where he can be found?"

"If I know anything about him," said she, "I shall not tell it to you, for I do not want to anger such a good man."

"Oh, damsel," said Galaor, "by the faith you owe to God and to the thing you love most in the world, tell us what you know about him."

"It is of no use to entreat me," said she, "for I would not disclose the facts about such a good knight without something in return."

"I ask now," said Amadis, "for whatever it may please you that we can fulfill, and it will be granted you, provided you tell us."

"I shall tell you," said she, "on condition that you tell me who you are, and that you each grant me a boon when I ask you for them."

They, who were very eager to know it, agreed to it.

"In the name of God," said she; "then tell me at once your names."

And they told her.

When she heard that that one was Amadis, she became very happy and said to him:

"Thanks be to God that I ask you."

"And why?" said he.

"Sir," said she, "you will know when it is time; but tell me if you remember the battle that you promised the daughter of

the King of Sobradisa when she succored you with the lions and freed you from death."

"Yes, I remember," said he; "and I am going there now."

"So why do you wish," said she, "to follow this knight who is not so easy to find as you think, and your time limit is approaching?"

"Brother," said Don Galaor, "she speaks truth; you and Agrajes keep the appointment you arranged, and I shall go in search of the knight with this damsel, for I shall never be happy until I find him; and if it can be, I shall return to you at the time of the battle."

"In the name of God," said Amadis, "since it pleases you thus, so be it."

And they said to the maiden:

"Now tell us the name of the knight and where Galaor will find him."

"His name," said she, "I would not be able to tell you, for I do not know it, although there was a period that I watched him for a month, and I saw him perform so well at arms that anyone who had not seen it would scarcely be able to believe it; but to where he will go I shall guide whoever wishes to go with me."

"I am satisfied with this," said Galaor.

"Then follow me," said she.

They commended each other to God. Amadis and Agrajes started out on the road they had been following previously, and Don Galaor departed under the guidance of the damsel. Amadis and Agrajes, after separating from Don Galaor, traveled so far each day that they reached the castle called Torin, where the beautiful girl and Grovenesa were; and on the way, before they arrived there, they performed many chivalrous exploits.

When the lady found out that Amadis was coming there, she was very happy, and came to him with many matrons and maidens in waiting, leading by the hand the beautiful young girl; and when they saw each other, they received each other very well; but I tell you that at this time the girl was so beautiful that she seemed a veritable bright star. So they were very astounded to see her, for in comparison with how she appeared at present, she was as nothing when Amadis first saw her, and he said to Agrajes:

"What do you think of this maiden?"

"I think that if God had a desire to make her beautiful, very fully his will was carried out."

The lady said:

"Sir Amadis, Briolanja thanks you very much for coming, and for what will ensue from it with the help of God; and disarm yourselves and you shall rest."

Then they summoned them to a chamber; from where, having left their arms, and each one of them clad in a mantle, they returned to the room where they were being awaited; and while they were talking with Grovenesa, Briolanja was looking at Amadis and he seemed to her to be the most handsome knight she had ever seen; and certainly such he was at that time, for he was not over twenty years of age and had his face stained with armor rust; but considering how becoming to him those blemishes were, and how with them he was rendering fame and honor so clean and bright, they enhanced greatly his bearing and good looks; and he was seen at such a juncture that by that very beautiful maiden who looked upon him with such affection he was so loved that for a very long time she was unable to remove the remembrance of him from her heart; whence constrained by the very great force of love, her spirit not being able to endure it or resist it, having regained her kingdom, as will be told later, he was besought on her part to be master forthwith of it and of her person; but, once this was known by Amadis, he gave her to understand completely that the anguish and suffering with the many tears shed for his lady Oriana, not without great loyalty did he endure them; although Prince Alfonso of Portugal, having pity on this beautiful maiden, ordered the story to be set down differently, he did what was willed by him, but not what was really written of their love affair.

In another way their love affair is related, to which credence may more reasonably be given: that Briolanja, being restored to her kingdom, reposing there with Amadis and Agrajes, who were wounded, she remaining in love, seeing no way for her mortal desires to reach fulfillment with Amadis, speaking aside in great secrecy with the damsel to whom Amadis, Galaor, and Agrajes had each promised a boon if she would guide Don Galaor

to the place where the knight of the forest had gone, (Don Galaor already had returned from that journey) and revealing to her her situation, demanded of her with many tears a relief for her greatly augmented passion; that the maiden, feeling sorry for her mistress, demanded of Amadis in fulfillment of her promise that he not leave a tower until he had begotten a son or a daughter in Briolanja and it had been given to her; and that Amadis, in order not to break his word, had put himself in the tower as was demanded of him; where not being willing to have intercourse with Briolanja, losing appetite and sleep, he was placed in great danger to his life; which fact having become known in the court of King Lisuarte, his lady Oriana, in order to save his life, sent word commanding him to do what the maiden demanded of him; and that Amadis with this permisison, considering that he would not be able to leave otherwise nor could his word be kept except by taking as his mistress that beautiful queen, had by her twin children, a son and a daughter.

But neither version was true, for Briolanja, seeing that Amadis was dying in the tower where he was, gave orders to the maiden to release him from the boon, on condition that he not go away from there until Don Galaor's return; desiring that her eyes might enjoy the sight of that very handsome and famous knight, for if not, they would remain in darkness and obscurity. This has more reason to be believed, because this beautiful queen was married to Don Galaor, as the fourth Book relates.

So both Amadis and Agrajes were in that castle, as you hear, waiting while the things necessary for the journey were being prepared in order to go and fight the battle.

CHAPTER XLI

How Don Galaor went with the maiden in search of the knight who had overthrown them, until he fought with him, and how in the greatest violence of the battle he recognized him as his brother Florestan.

Don Galaor traveled four days under the guidance of the maiden, who was to show him the knight of the forest; during which time such great fury entered his heart that he did not fight with a single knight to whom he did not exhibit complete animosity, so that most of those he fought with were killed by his hand, thus compensating for the success of one whom they did not know; and at the end of these days he arrived at the home of a knight who dwelt in the highest point of a valley in a beautiful fortress. The maiden told him there was no other place where they could spend the night, except that one, and that they should go there.

"Let us go if you wish," said Don Galaor.

Then they went to the castle, at the gate of which they found men and matrons and maidens, for it appeared to be the house of a nobleman; and among them was a knight of some seventy years, dressed in a leather cape of scarlet, who received them very well, telling Don Galaor to get off his horse, for they would gladly do him great honor and afford him much pleasure.

"Sir," said Don Galaor, "You welcome us so heartily that even though we should find another lodging, we would not leave yours."

And the men taking his horse and the palfrey of the maiden, they all went into the castle, where in a palace hall they gave

Don Galaor and his maiden their supper, at which they showed them special courtesy; and after the tables were cleared, the knight of the castle went to them, and asked Don Galaor in an undertone if he would lie with his maiden, and he said no. Then he had two damsels come who took her with them, and Galaor remained alone in order to sleep and rest in a luxurious bed that was there, and the host said:

"From now on rest at your pleasure, for God knows how much pleasure I have had with you, and I would have with all knights errant; because I was a knight and so are the two sons that I have now badly wounded, for their custom is to seek adventures in many of which they have won great prestige at arms; but last night a knight passed by here who overcame them both in encounters with each one, whence they deemed themselves made laughing stocks; and mounting their horses they went after him and overtook him at a river crossing where he was about to get into a boat, and they told him that since they already knew how he jousted, he should battle them with swords; but the knight, who was in a hurry, was unwilling to do so; but my sons kept after him so hard, telling him that they would not let him enter the boat, that a matron who was in it said to them:

"'Certainly, knights, you show us a lack of restraint in detaining our knight with such arrogance.'

"They said that they would in nowise let him go until he proved himself with them at sword play.

"'Since that's the way it is,' said the matron, 'now he will fight with the better of you; and if he overcomes him, let the other fight be called off.'

"They said that if one of them should win, he would have to test the other also. And the knight said then very angrily:

"'Come both at once, since I cannot depart from you by any other means.'

"And he grasped his sword and charged at them; and one of my sons went toward him, but could not withstand his fighting, for the knight is not like any other he had seen; and when the other, his brother, saw him in danger of death, he sought to help him by attacking the knight as fiercely as he could; but his help was of little use, for the knight disposed of both of them

in a short time, because he knowked them incapacitated from their horses; and entering the boat, he went his way; and I went for my sons, who were badly wounded; and the better to believe what I have said to you, I wish to show you the strongest and harshest blows that were ever delivered by hand of a knight."

Then he ordered them to bring the arms that his sons had in the battle; and Galaor saw them blood-stained and slashed from such mighty blows of the sword that he was greatly astounded by it; and he asked the nobleman what weapons the knight carried; he told him:

"A bright red shield with two brown lions on it, and on the helmet another such; and he was riding a roan horse."

Don Galaor knew then that this was the one he was seeking, and he said to the host:

"Do you know anything about this knight?"

"No," said he.

"Well, now go to sleep," said Galaor, "for that knight I am looking for; and if I find him, I shall obtain justice from him for myself and for your sons or I shall die."

"Dear sir," said the host, "I would praise you if you took up some other quest and abandoned this very dangerous one, for if my sons fared so badly, their great pride brought it about."

And he went to his own quarters.

Don Galaor slept until morning, and called for his arms, and with his damsel returned to the road, and went on beyond the boat, which you have already heard about; and when they were five leagues from that place, they saw a beautiful fortress, and the damsel said to him:

"Wait for me here, for I shall be back quickly."

And she went to the castle; and not long afterward he saw her coming back, and another maiden with her and ten horsemen; and the maiden, who was wondrously beautiful, said to Galaor:

"Knight, this maiden who is traveling with you tells me that you are looking for a knight with bright red arms and a device of brown lions in order to know who he is; I say to you that if not by force of arms, neither you nor anyone else can ascertain it in any other way for these next three years; and this would be for you very difficult to bring about, because be as-

sured that another such knight would not be found in all the islands."

"Damsel," said Galaor, "I shall not desist from looking for him, even though he further conceals his identity; and if I find him, I should be more pleased that he fight with me than to learn anything about him in any other way."

"Since you have such a desire for it," said the maiden, "I shall show him to you within three days because of my love for this sister of mine, who esteems you and who has earnestly besought me to do so."

"I am greatly in your debt," said Don Galaor.

And starting out on the road, at the hour of vespers they arrived at an arm of the sea that encircled an island; so they would go over the water for a good three leagues without reaching land before they could arrive there; and getting on a boat which they found in the port, swearing first to the one who carried them over that only one knight was crossing, they began to navigate. Don Galaor asked the maiden for what reason they took from them that oath.

"Because it is ordered," said she, "by the chatelaine of the island where you are going, that not more than one knight should be brought across until that knight returns or is slain."

"Who kills or vanquishes them?" said Don Galaor.

"That knight whom you are seeking," said she, "for this lady that I am telling you about has had with her for a good half year the one whom she loves very much; and the reason is that a tournament having been established in this land by her and by another very beautiful lady, this knight, who came from a foreign land, being on her side, has won in it all the honors; and she was so fond of him that she never rested until she had him for her lover; and she has him with her, for she does not permit him to go anywhere; and because he has sought a few times to leave in search of adventures, the lady, in order to detain him, has a few knights who are willing cross over to fight with him; whose arms and horses he gives to his friend; and they bury those who have the ill luck to die; and they expell those conquered. And I tell you that the lady is very beautiful, and is named Corisanda, and the Island Gravisanda."

And Don Galaor said to her:

"Do you know why this knight went to a forest where I found him, and was there two weeks, guarding it from all the knights errant who were in it?"

"Yes," said the damsel, "for he promised a boon to a maiden before he came here, and she asked of him that he guard that forest for two weeks, as you say; and his beloved, although much against her will, gave him the time limit of a month to go and come and guard the forest."

Then while talking about this they reached the island; and a good bit of the night had now passed, but the moon shone brightly; and leaving the boat, they lodged that night on the bank of a small stream, where the damsel had given orders to set up two tents; and there they ate supper and rested until morning. Galaor had sought to spend that night with the damsel, who was very beautiful; but she was unwilling, although he seemed to her the most handsome knight of any she had seen, and she took great delight in talking with him.

Morning having come, Don Galaor mounted his horse armed and prepared to enter into battle; and the maidens and the other men likewise mounted; and they went their way. Galaor all the time kept talking with the damsel, and he asked her if she knew the knight's name.

"Certainly," said she, "there is not a man or a woman in this whole land who knows it, except his mistress."

Then he had an even greater eagerness to know him than before, and to learn for what reason, when he was so highly praised at arms in that way, he should thus seek to conceal his identity; and after a short period of travel, they reached a plain, where they found a very beautiful castle that was located on top of a high hill; around it there was a large, very beautiful meadow, which extended a good league in every direction. The damsel said to Galaor:

"In this castle is the knight you seek."

He evinced very great pleasure at finding what he was seeking; and they went farther and found a column of stone of good workmanship, and on top of it a horn; and the damsed said with pleasure:

"Sound that horn so they hear it, and immediately on hearing it the knight will come."

Galaor did so; and they saw leaving the castle some men, who set up a very beautiful tent in the field; and some ten matrons and maidens came out; and among them came one very richly garbed, hence mistress of the others; and they entered the tent. To Galaor, who was watching it all, the knight seemed to be delaying, and he said to the maiden:

"Why doesn't the knight come out?"

"He will not come," said she, "until that lady commands him to do so."

"Then I beg of you, please," said he, "to go up to her and tell her to order him to come, because I have much to do elsewhere and cannot delay."

The maiden did so. And when the lady heard the message, she said:

"How is it that he holds in such low esteem this knight of ours, and thinks he can leave so quickly to carry out his obligations elsewhere? Well, he will go away more quickly than he thinks, and more to his harm than he thinks."

Then she said to a page:

"Go and tell the foreign knight to come."

The page told him. And the knight came out of the castle armed and on foot, and his men were bringing his horse and shield and lance and helmet; and he went to where the lady was, and she said to him:

"You see there a crazy knight who thinks he can leave you easily; now I tell you to make him recognize his folly." And she embraced and kissed him.

From all of this, greater anger possessed Don Galaor. The knight mounted and took his arms and went down a slope at his own pace, and he looked marvelously fine and spruce. Galaor laced his helmet and took his shield and lance; and when he saw him on the plain, he told him to be on guard; and they both let their horses charge at each other, and with their lances they struck each other on the shields, which they penetrated, and ripped off pieces of their coats of mail. So each one of them was badly wounded and their lances were broken, and they passed

on by each other. Don Galaor grasped his sword and returned to him; but the knight did not draw his out of his scabbard; and said to him:

"Knight, by the faith that you owe to God and to what you love most, let us joust again."

"You entreat me so earnestly," said he, "that I shall do so; but I regret that I do not bring such a good horse as you, for if it were, I would not stop jousting until one of us fell, or until we broke all the lances you might have."

The knight did not answer; rather he ordered a squire to give him two lances; and taking one he sent the other to Galaor; and they charged again striking each other with such force on their shields that it was a marvel, and Galaor's horse went to its knees and almost fell; and the foreign knight lost both his stirrups and had to cling to the neck of his horse. Galaor spurred his horse hard and grasped his sword, and the foreign knight stood up in his saddle and was quite ashamed; afterwards he grasped his sword and said:

"Knight, you want the combat with swords, and I certainly feared it more on your account than on mine; if you didn't believe me, now you will see."

"Do all in your power," said Galaor, "for I shall do likewise until dying or avenging those whom you maltreated in the forest."

Then the knight looked at him and recognized that he was the knight who called him to combat on foot; and he said to him very angrily:

"Come on if you are able, although I rather believe that you will suffer one discredit on top of another."

Then they attacked each other so fiercely that there is no man who on seeing them would not have been greatly affrighted. The matrons and all those of the castle thought, according to the ferocity of the joust, that they were seeking to come to an understanding; but on seeing the battle of the swords, it indeed seemed to them more cruel and savage so that they might kill each other; and they struck each other so frequently with such deadly blows that they knocked each other's heads down to their chests in spite of themselves, cutting from their helmets the steel

arches with part of their flaps, so that the swords came down to their mail coifs and they felt them on their heads, for they were cutting their shields to shreds, with which the field was littered, as it was with the meshes of their coats of mail; in this obstinacy they persisted for a long while, so that each one was astounded that he did not overcome the other. At this time Don Galaor's horse began to tire and falter, for it was unable any longer to go to and fro, whence he was greatly angered, because he really thought that the default of his horse was taking victory from him so late in the fight; but the foreign knight was dealing him great blows and escaped from his every time he wished, and whenever Galaor reached him, he would strike him so hard that he caused him to feel the sword in his flesh; but Galaor's horse was staggering blindly and about to fall. There he feared more his death than in any other confrontation, unless it was in the battle he had with Amadis his brother, from which he never thought he would come out alive; and after that he esteemed this knight more highly than any other of those he had tested, but not to such a degree as not to have expected to vanquish him if his horse had not hindered him. And when he saw himself in these straits, he said:

"Knight, either let us fight on foot, or give me a horse with which I may be aided; if not, I shall kill yours, and yours will be the guilt for this base deed."

"Do all you can," said the knight, "for our battle shall not be delayed further, because it is a great shame that it is lasting so long."

"Then, guard your horse now," said Don Galaor.

And the knight went to attack him, and with fear lest he kill the horse, he crowded him. Galaor who struck him on the shield and saw him so close, threw his arms around him, pressing as hard as he could, and struck his own horse with the spurs, pulling so hard at his opponent that he jerked him from the saddle. And they both fell to the ground locked in an embrace. But each one had a very strong sword, and thus they were rolling about on the field for quite a bit, until they let go of each other, and they got to their feet. And they started to fight so fiercely and so cruelly that it seemed as if they had just begun; and if the

first fight, on horseback, seemed strenuous and harsh to all, this second was much more so; for they were able to come to grips and strike each other more without hindrance; they did not rest a moment, but fought continually. But Don Galaor, who because of the great weakness of his horse, up until then had not been able to attack at will, and now was coming to grips with him every time he wished, gave him such mighty and such heavy blows that he was with ferocity causing him to lay down his arms, but not in such a way as not to defend himself courageously. When Galaor saw that he was improving a great deal and his opponent was indeed weakening, he withdrew to one side and said:

"Good knight, stop a moment."

The other, who had great need of it, stood quite still, and Galaor said:

"Now you see that I have the better of the combat; and if you wish to tell me your name and why you hide your identity thus, I shall receive great pleasure. In return, I shall leave you free, and otherwise I shall by no means let you off."

On hearing this the knight said:

"Nor am I by any means pleased to stop the battle in this way, because never was my temperament such; because I have never had a greater inclination to enter into battle than now; because I have never found myself so courageous as now for entering into combat; and may God command that I be not known to a single knight except to my special glory."

"Don't be stubborn," said Don Galaor, "for I swear to you by the faith I have in God, not to leave you until I know who you are and why you conceal yourself thus."

"Now may God not help me," said the knight, "if you learn it from me, for I would rather die in battle than tell it, particularly through force of arms, except to two alone whom I know not, for to these as a courtesy or by force no one would not be able nor ought to refuse this if they seek to ascertain it."

"Who are these whom you value so highly?" said Galaor.

"You shall not find out that or any other thing from me, for it seems to me it would please you."

"By Holy Mary!" said Galaor, "either I shall find out what I ask you, or one of us shall die, or both."

"Nor do I wish anything else," said the knight.

Then they went and attacked each other with such fury that they forgot past wounds, and their weakened strength was revived; but neither strength nor courage that the unknown knight put forth had availed him anything, for Galaor struck him so fiercely that he pulverized his armor along with part of his flesh so that he lost much blood, which stained the field red. When the lady of the island saw her friend at the point of death, he being the one in the world she loved most, her heart could not endure more and she went there on foot as if crazed, and the other matrons and maidens behind her. And when she was near Don Galaor, she said:

"Hold, knight; would that the boat that brought you here were broken to bits, for you have caused me such sorrow."

"Lady," said Galaor, "if it grieves you for me to take vengeance for myself, and for another who is worth more than I, for the harm that we received from him, I have no blame."

"Do not harm the knight," said the lady, "for you will die for it by the hand of one who will have no mercy on you."

"I do not know how it will come about," said he, "but I shall in nowise leave him if first I do not find out what I am asking him."

"And what do you ask him?" said she.

"That he tell me his name," said he, "and why he so hides his identity, and who the two knights are whom he values more than all those in the world."

"Alas," said the lady, "cursed be the one who showed you how to attack, and you who learned it thus. I am willing to tell you what you wish to know. I tell you that this knight of ours is named Florestan, and he conceals his identity thus on account of two knights who are in this land, his brothers, of such great prowess at arms that although his be so excellent, as you have learned by experience, he does not dare to make himself known to them until he has done so well at arms that without fear he can join his prowess with theirs; and he is quite right in view of their great valor; and these two knights are at the court of

King Lisuarte, and the one is named Amadis and the other, Don Galaor, and they are all three sons of King Perion of Gaul."

"Oh, Holy Mary help me!" said Don Galaor, "What have I done?"

Afterwards he handed over his sword, and said:

"Good brother, take this sword and the honor of the combat."

"What," said he, "am I your brother?"

"Yes, indeed," said he, "for I am your brother, Don Galaor."

Don Florestan knelt before him and said:

"Sir, pardon me, for if I wronged you in fighting you, not knowing of it, it was not because of any other thing except to be able to call myself your brother, as I am, without shame, by approaching somewhat your great valor and great prowess at arms."

Galaor took him by the hands and raised him up, and took him in his arms for a moment, weeping with pleasure at having made his acquaintance, and with pity to see him so injured with so many wounds, thinking his life was in great danger. When the lady saw this, she was very happy, and said to Don Galaor:

"Sir, if you put me into great anguish, with double joy you have set matters right."

And taking them with her, she led them to the castle, where she made them lie down in a beautiful chamber on two beds with luxurious bed clothing; and as she knew how to heal wounds, she took great care to restore them to health, considering that on the life of either one of them depended the life of both, because of the great love they had shown for each other, and that her own would be in jeopardy if any danger should befall her very beloved lover, Don Florestan. So just as you hear, the two brothers were in the custody of that beautiful and rich lady Corisanda, who was as much concerned for their lives as for her own.

CHAPTER XLII

WHICH RELATES OF DON FLORESTAN HOW HE WAS A SON OF KING PERION, AND HOW HE WAS ENGENDERED IN A VERY BEAUTIFUL DAMSEL, DAUGHTER OF THE COUNT OF ZELANDIA.

Concerning this brave and courageous knight Don Florestan, I want you to know how and in what land he was begot and by whom. Know you that when King Perion was a youth, with his courageous and valiant heart looking for adventures in many foreign lands, he dwelt two years in Germany, where he performed so many great deeds at arms, that were recounted as marvels among all the Germans. Then returning now to his land with much glory and fame, he happened to lodge one night in the house of the Count of Zelandia, who was very happy with him, because just like King Perion, he enjoyed pursuing the exercise of arms, and with them he had attained much praise and glory; and as through experience he was familiar with all the anxieties, labors, and anguish good knights had to undergo in order that the measure of what they were obligated to do be full, he highly esteemed this Perion, as one who was at the pinnacle of the fame and glory at arms in which he was established; and he rendered him great honor and service to the limit of his ability. And as soon as they had supped and talked about some things that they had experienced, King Perion was called to a chamber, where he lay down on a luxurious bed; and as he had arrived weary from travel, he fell asleep at once, and it was not long before he found himself embraced by a very beautiful maiden, and her mouth pressed against his, and as he awoke he tried to pull away, but she held him and said:

"What is the matter, sir; won't you enjoy yourself better with me in this bed, than alone?"

The king looked at her by the light that there was in the room and saw that she was the most beautiful woman he had ever seen and said to her:

"Tell me, who are you?"

"Whoever I may be," said she, "I love you deeply, and I wish to give you my love."

"That cannot be, unless first you tell me."

"Alas!" said she, "How much I regret that question, lest you consider me worse than I am; but heaven knows that it is not in me to do otherwise."

"It is still necessary," said he, "that I know it, or I shall do nothing."

"Rather, I will tell you," said she, "Know you that I am the daughter of this count."

The king said to her:

"A woman of such high rank as you ought not to commit such folly; and now I tell you that I shall not do a thing at which your father would be so angry."

She said:

"Alas! cursed be all those who praise you for goodness, since you are the worst man in the world and the most insolent! What excellence can you have when you reject a person so beautiful and of such high rank?"

"You shall do," said the king, "whatever may be to your honor and mine, but not what is so opposed to them."

"No?" said she, "Then I shall do what will make my father more vexed with you than if you granted my request."

Then she got up and went over to take the king's sword that was beside his shield; and it was the one that later was placed beside Amadis in the ark when he was cast into the sea, as has been related to you at the beginning of this Book; and she drew it from the scabbard and put its tip against her heart, and said:

"Now I know that my father will be grieved at my death more than at anything else."

When the king saw this, he marvelled and made a great leap from the bed to her, saying:

"Stop, for I shall do what you wish."

And taking the sword from her hand, he embraced her lovingly and carried out her desire that night, from which she became pregnant, without the king's seeing her any more; for daybreak having come, he parted from the count, continuing on his way; and she concealed her pregnancy as well as she could; but the time of the birth having come, she could not do so; however she contrived that she and a damsel of hers should go see one of her aunts who lived nearby, where sometimes she was accustomed to go for diversion; and going through an area of the forest, the birth pangs came upon her so insistently that on dismounting from her palfrey she gave birth to a son. The maiden, who saw her in such great peril, put the baby at her breasts and said to her:

"Lady, that courage that you had in erring, now maintain to help yourself, until I come back to you."

And then she mounted her palfrey, and as fast as she could reached the castle of the aunt and told her the situation just as it had come to pass; and when she heard it she was very sad, but on that account did not fail to help her; and then she mounted her horse and ordered a litter to be brought, in which, to protect herself from the sun, she sometimes went to see the count; and when she arrived where her niece was, she dismounted and wept with her and had her put on the litter with her son; and they returned by night so that no one saw them, except those whom she brought with her, and they were admonished to keep that secret very carefully.

In short, the maiden was there succored and returned to the count her father without anyone's finding out anything about this; and the child was reared until it reached eighteen years of age, and it seemed very excellent of body and strength, more so than anyone in the whole region. The lady, who saw him with such an aptitude, gave him a horse and arms and took him with her to the count his grandfather to be knighted; and he did so without knowing it was his grandchild; and she returned with her foster-child to the castle; but on the way she told him that he for certain should know that he was the son of King Perion of Gaul and grandson of the one who knighted him, and that he

ought to go to acquaint himself with his father, who was the finest knight in the world.

"Certainly, madam," said he, "I have heard that many times, but never did I think he was my father; and by the faith that I owe to God and you who have reared me, I swear never to make myself known to him or to anyone else, if I can, until people say that I deserve to be the son of such an excellent man."

And bidding her farewell, taking two squires with him, he went his way to Constantinople, where it was reliably reported that a cruel war had broken out in the empire. He was there four years, during which he performed so many exploits at arms that he was considered the best knight they had ever seen there; and as he saw himself at such heights of honor and fame, he decided to go to Gaul to his father and make himself known; but on coming near that land, he heard about the great fame of Amadis, who then was beginning to do wonders, and likewise about Don Galaor, so that his intention was changed on thinking that his accomplishments were as nothing in comparison with theirs; and for this reason he intended to begin anew to win honor there in Great Britain, where there were knights esteemed more highly than in any other place, and to conceal his identity until his deeds should make it manifest to his satisfaction; and thus he spent some time performing many deeds of chivalry, excelling in them to his honor, until Don Galaor his brother fought with him, as you have heard, and they came to know each other as aforementioned.

Amadis was five days in the castle of Grovenesa, and Agrajes with him; and the things needed for travel having been prepared, they left there, Grovenesa and Briolanja taking only two damsels and five men on horseback to serve them, and three palfreys led by the halter bearing their very fine apparel; but Briolanja was wearing only black garments, and she was to dress in black until her father was avenged. Then having gone as much as a league, Briolanja asked a boon of Amadis, and Grovenesa another from Agrajes, and these having been granted by them without their investigating or thinking what it was all about, they demanded of them that they not interrupt their journey for anything that they might see, without their permission, so that they might not

concern themselves with any other affair of honor except the one which they had on their hands.

It grieved them much to agree, and they experienced great shame because in some places there had been much need of their help, which could have been employed with great justice; but they did not do so, and therefore they were ashamed. And traveling as you hear, in twelve days they entered the land of Sobradisa. And it was pitch dark; then they left the main highway, and by a short cut they journeyed a good three leagues; so that a great share of the night having passed, they reached a small castle, which belonged to a matron who had been reared by Grovenesa's father and was named Gabalumba, and she was very old and very discreet. They having knocked at the gate and the members of the household coming out — for the lady and all her household were greatly pleased — they opened the door and welcomed them inside where they gave them supper and beds on which to sleep and rest. And the next morning Gabalumba asked Grovenesa what her journey was about. She told her that Amadis had promised Briolanja to avenge the death of her father, and that she should believe without any doubt that he was the finest knight in the world; and she related how in order to see the cart in which she and Briolanja were traveling, he overcame eight very good knights that she was bringing along for her protection; and likewise what she had seen him do in the castle to her men, when he had been rescued by the lions. The matron marvelled at such knightly prowess and said:

"Since he is so excellent, his companion is probably worth something, and he will indeed be able to accomplish this deed, which so rightly they are undertaking. But I am afraid lest that traitor work some deceit whereby he may kill them."

"On that account I come to you," said Grovenesa, "so that you may counsel me."

"Now," said she, "leave this matter to me."

Then she took ink and parchment and wrote a letter, and sealed it with Briolanja's seal; and she spoke privately for a bit with a maiden, and giving her the letter gave her instructions as to what she was to do.

The maiden left the castle on her palfrey and went until she reached that great city called Sobradisa, from which the whole kingdom because of this took that name; and Abiseos was there, and his sons Dorasion and Dramis; these were the ones with whom Amadis was to do battle; for that Abiseos had killed Briolanja's father, his elder brother, out of a very eager desire that he had to take the kingdom from him, as he did, for from then on until that hour he reigned unopposed more by force than by the free will of those of his land.

Well, the maiden, having arrived, went at once to the palace of the king, and entered the gate riding on horseback and very richly garbed. And the knights came up to help her dismount, but she told them that she could not alight until the king saw her and ordered her to dismount, if he were pleased to do so. Then they took her horse by the reins and put her in a hall where the king was with his sons and many other knights; and he commanded her to get down off the palfrey if she wished to say something. The maiden said:

"I shall do it on condition that you take me under your protection against receiving ill-treatment for anything I may say here against you or against anyone else."

He said he took her under his protection and with his royal word of honor, and that she could say without fear what she had come for. Then she was taken off the palfrey, and she said:

"Sire, I bring you such a message as requires you to be in the presence of all the chief nobles of the kingdom; order them to come and you will hear it at once."

"I understand," said the king, "that they are here assembled as you wish, for I had them come a good six days ago for matters of importance."

"I am very glad," said the maiden, "then order them to assemble here."

The king gave orders to call them, and when they were assembled, the maiden said:

"King, Briolanja, whom you keep disinherited, sends you this letter; have it read before these people and give me the answer as to what you will do."

When the king heard his niece Briolanja mentioned, he was much ashamed, considering the wrong he had done her; but he ordered the letter read; and he said only that they should believe what that damsel of Briolanja's would say on the latter's behalf. The natives of the kingdom who were there, when they saw that message from their sovereign lady, had great pity in their hearts on seeing her so unjustly disinherited, and silently prayed to God to help her and not to permit such great treason to endure for such a long time. The king said to the damsel:

"Tell what they ordered you to, for you will be believed."

She said:

"Sir king, it is true that you killed the father of Briolanja and you keep her deprived of the inheritance of her land, and you have said many times that you and your sons will maintain by force of arms that you did it justly; and Briolanja orders you to say whether you abide by it, for she will bring here two knights who concerning this right will do battle on her behalf, and they will make you acknowledge the disloyalty and great arrogance that you have displayed."

When Darasion, his eldest son, heard this, he was very angry, for he was quite irascible in his ways; and standing up, he said without his father's approval:

"Damsel, if Briolanja has those knights and they wish to fight for such a right, I promise right now a battle by me and my father and my brother; and if I do not have this done, I promise before these knights to give my head to Briolanja so that she may order it chopped off in retaliation for her father's."

"Certainly," said the maiden, "Darasion, you answer like a knight of great courage, but I do not know whether you do it out of rage, for I see you to be greatly angered; but if you execute with your father what I now tell you, I shall believe that you will fight with the excellence and courage that is within you."

"Damsel," said he, "what is it that you will say?"

She said:

"Have your father give a truce to our knights with all those of this land to the effect that on account of any ill-fortune that may come to you, they not receive harm except from you; and

if you give this assurance, on the third day from now the knights will be here."

Darasion knelt before his father and said:

"Sire, now you see what the maiden asks for and what I have promised; and since my honor is yours, let it be granted by you, for otherwise they would be victors without affront, and you and we at great fault, having always proclaimed that if any charge to your integrity in the past be imputed, by battle of all three of us it is to be purged; and even if this had not been promised, we ourselves ought to take up this challenge, because according to what I am told, these knights are some of the madmen of the court of King Lisuarte, whose great pride and little sense, while they hold their own concerns in great esteem, cause them to scorn those of others."

And the king, who loved this son more than himself, although the death of his brother that he had brought about rendered him culpable and he was very doubtful concerning the battle, granted safe-conduct to the knights just as the maiden demanded; the hour now having arrived, permitted by the most high Lord, in which his treason was to be punished, as you shall hear later. The damsel, on seeing her mission thus effected, said to the king and his sons:

"Prepare yourselves, for tomorrow those with whom you are to fight will be here."

And mounting her palfrey, she traveled so fast that she arrived at the castle and related to the ladies and to the knights how completely she had succeeded in her mission; but when she said that Darasion considered them madmen because they were of the court of King Lisuarte, Amadis was roused to great fury and said:

"Well even in that court there are those who would deem it a small matter to break his pride and even his head."

But he saw that anger was dominating him, and he was sorry for what he had said. Briolanja, whose eyes did not leave him, and who heard it, said:

"My lord, you cannot say or do so much against those traitors that they do not deserve more, and since you know about the death of my father and the period of time that they have kept

me disinherited so without justice, have pity on me, for I entrust all my fortunes to God and to you."

Amadis, whose heart was ruled by virtue and rendered completely gentle, felt sorry for that beautiful maiden, and said to her:

"My good lady, the hope you have in God, I have that tomorrow before it be night your great sadness will be turned into the great brightness of joy."

Briolanja so bowed before him that she sought to kiss his feet; but he with much embarrassment stepped aside and Agrajes lifted her by the hands.

Then it was at once agreed that leaving there at dawn of the next day, they would go to hear mass in the hermitage of the three fountains, which was a half league from Sobradisa. So they took their ease that night very comfortably and to their pleasure. And Briolanja, who had spoken with Amadis a great deal, was often tempted to propose marriage to him; but she was fearful that such insistent thoughts and the tears which were sometimes seen on his cheeks were not caused by any weakness of his strong heart but by his being tormented, subjugated and afflicted by another woman for whom he felt that passion that she suffered for him; so that reason, curbing her desire, made her desist. She left him, so that by sleeping and resting in peace he would be able to rise at the aforementioned hour.

Then morning having come, Amadis and Agrajes taking with them Grovenesa and Briolanja with their retinue, at the first hour of the day were in the hermitage of the three fountains, where they heard mass from a cleric hermit. And those knights with great devotion asked God to help them in that battle through His mercy, since He knew them to have right and justice on their side. And then they armed themselves with all their arms, with only their faces and hands bare; and mounting their horses, and the ladies their palfreys, they continued on their way until they arrived at the city of Sobradisa, at whose approaches they encountered King Abiseos and his sons, who with a large company of people, knowing already that they were coming, were awaiting them. All moved close to where Briolanja was coming, with Amadis leading her horse by the reins; and they loved her with

heart-felt love, considering her their rightful and natural sovereign. And when Amadis came with her into the crowd of people, she took off her veil for all to see her beautiful face; and when they saw her with tears falling from her eyes, and turning her face toward them, with great love in their hearts they blessed her, praying God not to continue her disinheritance any longer.

For Abiseos, who saw before him his niece, his cupidity and wickedness were not of sufficient avail to prevent his feeling great shame on remembering the treachery that he had committed against the king, her father; but as with the long peried of time he was hardened to it, he thought that Fortune was not yet angry about that great pinnacle on which she had placed him; and sensing what the people felt on seeing Briolanja, he said:

"Wretched hapless people, I see indeed the pleasure that this maiden with her appearance gives you; and this causes you to lack good sense; for if you had any, you ought to be more contented and honored with me, a knight, for your alleviation and defense than her knight is with her, she being a weak woman; if not, behold what strength or favor is hers, for after so long a time she has not been able to obtain more than these knights who with such great self-deception, coming to receive either death or dishonor, cause me to have pity for them."

Hearing this, Amadis was moved to great fury, so much that blood seemed to flow from his eyes, and he said to Abiseos, raising himself in his stirrups so that all heard him:

"Abiseos, I see that you are quite worried at the coming of Briolanja, on account of the great treason that you committed when you killed her father, who was your elder brother and natural lord. If there were in you sufficient virtue and understanding to yield up to her what is her own, desisting from this very great wickedness, I would afford you the opportunity by releasing you from the combat, in order that, asking God for mercy for your sin, you might do such penance that just as in this world you have your honor lost, so in the other where you are to go, your soul, through its salvation, might make amends."

Darasion came forward very angrily before his father could reply, and said:

"Certainly, mad knight of the court of King Lisuarte, I never thought that I would be able to endure from anyone all that you have just said in my presence; but I do it because if you dare to keep to what is arranged, my fury will be soon avenged; and if, with your courage failing you, you try to flee, you will not be any place where I cannot seize you and order you punished in such wise that all those who watch it will grieve for you."

Agrajes said:

"Since you so wish to support the treason of your father, arm yourself and come to the battle as per agreement; and if your luck be such that the death you all three have crowning your list of accomplishments to be memorialized is brought to life, all right; if not, you, Darasion, will have the kind of death, and they with you, that your evil deeds deserve."

"Say what you wish," said Darasion, "for it won't be long before that tongue of yours without its skin will be sent to the court of King Lisuarte, so that on seeing this penalty, those like you restrain themselves in their follies."

And then he began to ask for his arms, and his father and brother likewise; and they armed themselves and mounting their horses, they placed themselves in an open square which in former times was enclosed for combats; Amadis and Agrajes, lacing their helmets and taking their shields and lances, placed themselves with them in the field. Dramis, the middle brother, who was a valiant knight, so much so that no two knights of that land held the field against him, said to his father:

"Sir, where you and my brother were, I used to find it unnecessary to speak, but now I do so deem it for carrying on with that great courage that I had from God and from you; leave me with that knight who spoke ill of you, and if I do not kill him with my first lance thrust, I never more wish to bear arms; and if such be his good fortune that I do not hit him with a direct blow, the same will I do with my first sword stroke."

Many heard what this knight said, and they reflected on it, not holding in high esteem that wild boast of his nor doubting that he would be able to bring it about, according to the great feats of arms they had seen him perform. Then at this juncture,

Darasion looked at them and saw that they were only two, and shouted:

"What is this? I know that you are to be three; I believe that the other one lacked courage; call him to come quickly so as not to delay us."

"Don't worry," said Amadis, "about the third one, for indeed there are here those who exempt him; and I trust in God that not much time will pass before you would wish to see the second man out.

And he said:

"Now protect yourselves!"

Then the knights, very well protected, let their horses run against one another as fast as they could, and Dramis went straight for Amadis, and they struck each other so fiercely on their shields that they shattered them, and the lances reached their sides; and Dramis broke his lance; but Amadis struck him so ferociously that without his coat of mail's being rent anywhere, his heart within his body was disabled, and he struck him dead to the ground in such a great fall that it seemed as if a tower had fallen down.

"In the name of God!" said Ardian, the dwarf, "my lord is free already; and his deeds appear to me more certain than the other's threat."

Agrajes went for the two and clashed with Darasion, and their lances were broken, and Darasion lost one stirrup, but neither of them fell; Abiseos missed his target; and when he turned his horse about, he saw his son Dramis dead, for he was motionless, at which Abiseos was greatly distressed, but he did not think that he was quite dead yet; and he charged with great fury at Amadis, like one who was intending to avenge his son; and he tightly grasped the lance under his arm and struck him so hard he pierced his shield, so that he thrust the iron tip of the lance through his arm and the lance broke in such a way that everybody thought that he would not be able to maintain himself any longer in the combat.

That Briolanja was sorrowful about this, is not to be questioned, for certainly her heart and her eyesight failed her, and she would have fallen from her palfrey if she had not been aided.

But that one, who was not frightened by such blows, grasped firmly the hilt of the good sword that he had taken from Arcalaus a little before, and went and struck Abiseos such a mighty blow on top of his helmet that he caused the sword to descend to his shoulder and cut it, and he had cut through his head to the bone; and Abiseos was so overwhelmed by the blow and so stunned that he could not stay in the saddle, and he fell, for with difficulty could he have held on. Those who saw how Amadis with two blows had thus stunned two such strong knights, were quite astounded, for they really believed that there were no better ones in the world. And Amadis charged at Darasion, who was fighting so fiercely with Agrajes that it would be hard to find two others who would fight better, and said:

"Certainly, Darasion, I well believe that you would rather see the second one out than the third coming in."

And Darasion did not reply, but he covered himself well with the shield; and Agrajes stopped in front of Amadis, who was going to attack Darasion, and said:

"Sir cousin, you have done enough; leave me with this one who threatened me with such arrogance to pull out my tongue."

But Amadis, who was in a state of great rage, did not understand very well what Agrajes said to him; and went by him and gave Darasion such a great blow on the shield that everything that he reached went to the ground, and the sword went down to the saddlebow and cut down into the neck of the horse; and on passing, Darasion did so in such wise that he found the opportunity to thrust his sword into the belly of Amadis's horse; and when it felt itself wounded it began to flee with Amadis unable to rein it in; but he pulled so hard on the reins that they were left in his hand; and as he saw himself helpless, and that the horse would take him from the field, he struck it such a blow with his sword between its ears that he split its head in two, and it fell to the ground dead, in such wise that Amadis was quite shaken up. But he got up very quickly, although with great effort, and with his sword in hand went to Abiseos, who had already risen and was going to help his son; and at this moment Agrajes gave Darasion such a mighty blow with his sword on top of his helmet that he could not withdraw it; and Darasion carried it

imbedded there, and began to deal him heavy blows with his own sword; and then when Agrajes saw himself without a sword, he betrayed no weakness; but rather, he went in close, past his sword, so quickly that the other had no opportunity enabling him to attack him, and he threw his armas around him as one who was very quick; and Darasion threw his sword away and seized him in a strong grip, and with both of them tugging, they pulled each other from their saddles and fell to the ground; and being thus locked in each other's arms, for they were not relaxing their grip, Abiseos came up and attacked Agrajes with heavy blows, and if he had had somewhat more time he would have killed him. But Amadis who saw him thus, hurried over as fast as he could; and Abiseos, who was lifting up the skirt of Agrajes's coat of mail in order to thrust his sword into him, came up to him, and with the fear he had, left him and covered himself with his shield, and Amadis struck him on it such a great blow that he knocked it against his helmet, so that he stunned him and he was about to fall.

When Agrajes saw his cousin beside him, he made a greater effort to stand up, and Darasion also, so that each one decided to let go of the other; and as they got to their feet, Agrajes, who saw the other's sword on the ground, took it; and Darasion laid hands on the one he had in his helmet, and pulled until he drew it out, and went close to his father; but Agrajes was losing so much blood from a wound that he had on his throat that all of his armor was red with it. When he saw him thus, Amadis was terribly grieved, for he thought the wound was mortal, and said to him:

"Good cousin, rest and leave me with these traitors."

"No, sir," said he, "I do not have such a wound as to cause me to stop aiding you, as you now see."

"Then at them," said Amadis.

Then they went to strike them with very harsh blows. But because Amadis thought that Agrajes was in peril from his wound, with his great worry, his anger increased and with it his strength in such wise that both of them in a short time he put in such shape that their armor was hacked to pieces and their flesh little less. So that no longer being able to withstand his many hard

blows, they went fleeing hither and you, trembling with their great fear of death. In this distress and misfortune that you hear, Abiseos and his son Darasion suffered until the hour of tierce; and as Abiseos saw that his death had arrived, he took his sword in both hands and rushed with great fury at Amadis, and struck him so hard on top of his helmet that it did not seem a blow from a man so badly wounded; he wounded him, knocked off the rim of his helmet, and the sword went down to the left shoulder and cut off a piece of the coat of mail with a piece of flesh. Amadis really felt this blow and did not delay long in giving him the payment for it, and struck him such a deadly blow with all his might on the unfortunate arm with which he had killed his brother the king, his natural lord, that cutting it off close to the shoulder he hurled it to the ground. When Amadis saw him thus, he said:

"Abiseos, you see here the arm which treasonably put you in great pleasure and a high place, and which now will put you in death and the depths of hell."

Abiseos fell down with the fear of death; and Amadis looked around for the other one and saw that Agrajes had him on the ground and had cut off his head. Then all those of the land went very happily to kiss the hands of Briolanja, their sovereign.

Counsel

Take heed, covetous ones, those of you to whom are given by God great dominions to govern, who not only failing to remember to give thanks for his having placed you at such great heights; but against His commands losing the fear due Him, not being content with those estates that He gave you, and which fell to you from your ancestors; by murder, fires, thefts foreign to those who uphold God's law, you seek to usurp and seize, always withdrawing your thoughts from turning your fury and cupidity against the infidels in which everything would be better employed, not wishing to enjoy that great glory that our Catholic Sovereigns in this world and in the next enjoy and will enjoy because by serving God with much labor they have done so. Then remember that great estates and riches do not satisfy covetous

and depraved appetites; rather for the most part they enkindle them. And you of lower rank, those to whom fortune gave so much power and position, by your being placed in their councils to guide them, just as the rudder guides and governs the large ship, counsel them faithfully, esteem them, for in so doing you serve God, you serve everything in general; and even though you do not obtain from this world the satisfaction of your desires, you will attain what is of the other world, which is without end; and if you do the opposite for the sake of yielding to your passions, your greed, in quite the opposite way will everything come to you, with great sorrow and anguish of your souls; for with much justice, one must believe that nearly everything is in your charge; because the heads of state, either on account of their tender age or of enmity, could err in judgment or array themselves without any recollection of good sense against the sharp points of swords, considering that to be best; so that their fault would have some excuse, especially if they committed it on your advice; but you who are free, who see the error before your eyes, and esteeming more highly the favor of mortal man than the anger of the most high Lord, not only do not restrain and try to remove them from that great error; but hoping to be to a greater degree esteemed, more benefited, forgetting what is spiritual, you embrace the things of this world, not remembering how many counselors of men in high places have suffered the cruel death that those same ones to whom they gave bad advice, caused them to be given because, although at present mistaken things, being in accordance with harmful desires, may give much contentment, afterwards when that dark cloud is removed and true understanding remains clear, to a greater degree such things are abhorred along with those who advised them.

Then all of you take warning from the case of that king, whose unruly greed stirred his heart to such great treachery, killing that brother, his king and natural lord, seated on the royal throne, splitting his head and his crown into two parts, he remaining to rule that kingdom by great force and in his opinion with much glory, believing he had fickle fortune underfoot. Well, what fruit did he derive from such blossoms as these? Certainly no other save that the Lord of the world, sufferer of many offenses,

merciful pardoner of them, provided there be due recognition of them and repentance, but a cruel avenger when the same are absent, permitted that there come there that harsh executor, Amadis of Gaul; who, by killing Abiseos and his sons, avenged that very great treachery that was done to that noble king; and if their hearts experienced very great duress in the battle on seeing their armor rent, their flesh cut to bits, as a result of which they suffered cruel death, do not believe that by that they paid and expiated their guilt; rather, their souls, with very little understanding of that One who created them, accomplices in their errors and sins, in cruel Hell in burning flames, without any separation will be perpetually damned.

Then let us leave those perishable things that by many others were ill-gotten through great effort and with great sorrow abandoned, paying for what they sinned in order to keep them, and by us likewise they will be abandoned, and let us strive for those which promise glory without end.

The story again relates the action under way. This battle having been won by Amadis and Agrajes, in which Abiseos and his two sons died, as you have already heard, having cast them out of the field, Amadis did not seek to disarm, although he was wounded, until he found out if in the meantime there was anything occurring that might hinder Briolanja in recovering the kingdom; but there came at once there a great and very powerful lord of the kingdom, Goman by name, with as many as a hundred men of his lineage and house, who at the time were with him; and that man assured Amadis that that realm, not being able to do otherwise, for such a long time had been under the domination by that man who with great treachery had killed his natural lord, and that since God had provided such a remedy, he should not fear or think aught except that they all participated in that loyalty and vassalage which they owed that sovereign of theirs, Briolanja.

With this, Amadis and all his retinue went to the royal palace, where they had not spent a week, before all those of the kingdom, with much delight and happiness of spirit, came to swear allegiance to Queen Briolanja. There was Amadis lying in his bed, where that beautiful queen, who loved him more than herself,

never left his presence, except to sleep. And Agrajes, who was very dangerously wounded, was placed under the care of a man who knew a great deal about his profession, keeping him indoors to prevent him from speaking with anyone; for the wound was in his throat, and so it was necessary to do that.

All that is said in addition to this in this first Book concerning the love affair of Amadis and this beautiful queen, was added, as has already been told you; and therefore, as superfluous and vain, will not be related, since it is not pertinent; rather, this untrue material would contradict and damage what more rightly this great story will recount to you later.

CHAPTER XLIII

ABOUT HOW DON GALAOR AND FLORESTAN, BEING ON THEIR WAY TO THE KINGDOM OF SOBRADISA, MET THREE MAIDENS AT THE FOUNTAIN OF THE ELMS.

Don Galaor and Florestan were in the castle of Corisanda, as you have heard, until they were healed of their wounds; then they agreed to leave in order to look for Amadis, whom they understood that they would find in the kingdom of Sobradisa, wishing that the battle that was to be there had not taken place until they should arrive and take part in the danger and the glory, if God granted it to them. When Florestan bade farewell to his sweetheart, her anguish and grief were so excessive, and with so many tears, that they pitied her very much; and Florestan consoled her by promising her that they would return to see her as quickly as could be. Having taken leave of her, armed and mounted and their squires with them, they went and got on the boat in order to be transported to therra firma and on their way to Sobradisa; and Florestan said to Don Galaor:

"Sir, grant me a boon, please."

"Will it irk my lord and good brother?" said Don Galaor.

"No, it will not," said he.

"Then ask for what I can in good conscience grant without shame, for I shall gladly grant it."

"I ask of you," said Don Florestan, "not to do combat on this trip on account of anything that may befall, until you see that I am helpless."

"Certainly," said Don Galaor, "I am sorry about what you request of me."

"Don't be sorry," said Florestan, "for if I value anything, it is your honor to the same extent as my own."

And it so happened that in the four days that they journeyed along that road they never found any adventure worth mentioning; and the last day they arrived at a tower at such a late hour that it was time to find lodging, and at the gate of the courtyard they found a knight who with good grace invited them, and they were pleased to stay there that night; and disarming them and taking their horses in order to care for them, they gave them each mantles to don, and they walked about there talking and enjoying themselves until they took them inside the tower and gave them a very good supper.

That knight whose guests they were was tall and handsome and well-spoken; but they saw him turn sometimes so sad and full of care that the brothers noticed it, and were talking to each other about what might be the cause; and Don Galaor said:

"Sir, it seems to us that you are not as happy as need be, and if your sadness is for something in which our help may be useful, tell us so and we shall do your will."

"Many thanks," said the knight, "for I understand that you will be doing so as good knights; but the power of love causes my sadness; and I shall not tell you any more now, for it would be to my great embarrassment."

And while they were speaking of other things, the hour for sleep arrived; and the host going to his own lodging, they remained in quite a handsome chamber, where there were two beds on which they slept and rested that night; and in the morning they were given their arms and horses, and they took up their journey; and the host with them unarmed on a big, swift horse to keep them company and to see what they would encounter on ahead; so he was guiding them, not along the right road, but along another one he knew, where he wanted to see if they were such at arms as their appearance indicated; and they journeyed until they reached a fountain that there was in that land, called the Fountain of the Three Elms, because there were three big, tall elms there. Then, having reached there, they saw three maidens who were beside the fountain; they appeared very beautiful and well dressed, and atop the elms they saw a dwarf

seated. Florestan went forward to the maidens and greeted them very politely, as one who was circumspect and well reared. One of them said:

"God give you health, sir knight; if you are as courageous as you are handsome, God was very good to you."

"Maiden," said he, "if you like good looks so much, even better you will like courage if you need it."

"You speak well," said she, "and now I wish to see if your vigor will suffice to take me away from here."

"Surely," said Florestan, "for that, only a little excellence would suffice; and since you desire it, I will take you."

Then he ordered his squires to put her on a palfrey that was tied there to the branches of the elms. When the dwarf who was up in the elm tree saw that, he shouted:

"Come out, knights, come out, for they are taking your lady friend away from you."

And at these shouts, a knight fully armed on a big horse came out of a valley and said to Florestan:

"What is this, knight; who told you to lay hands on my damsel?"

"I don't consider her to be yours, since she of her own free will asked me to take her away from here."

The knight said:

"Although she agrees to it, I shall not permit you to do so, for I have defended her from other knights better than you."

"I do not know how," said Florestan, "it will be; but if you don't do any more than speak these words, I shall take her."

"First you will find out," said he, "of what stuff are the knights of this valley and how they defend those ladies whom they esteem."

"Then be on your guard right now," said Florestan.

Then they let their horses run toward each other, and with their lances they struck each other on the shields, and the knight broke his lance, and Florestan caused him to be struck on the helmet with the boss of his own shield, which snapped the lacing and knocked the helmet from his head, and he could not hold himself in the saddle, so that he fell on his sword and broke it into two pieces; Florestan passed by him and lifted high his

lance and returned to the knight, and saw him apparently dead; and putting the lance to his face, he said:

"You die."

"Alas, sir, mercy!" said the knight; "You see already that I am as good as dead."

"That will not get you anywhere," said he, "unless you agree the maiden is mine."

"I agree to it," said the knight, "and cursed be she and the day that I saw her, for she has made me commit so many follies, until now I have lost my life."

Florestan left him and went to the damsel, and said:

"You are mine."

"You have won me properly," said she, "and you can do with me what you like."

"Then let us go now," said he.

But another of the maidens at the fountain said:

"Sir knight, you have broken up a good company, because for a year we have traveled together, and we are very sorry to be thus separated."

Florestan said:

"If you wish to go in my company, I will take you, and thus you two will not be separated from each other, for otherwise it cannot be, because I would not leave behind here a maiden as beautiful as this one."

"She is indeed beautiful," said she, "nor do I consider myself so ugly that some knight ought not to undertake a great deed for me; but I do not believe you will be one of those who would dare do it."

"What!" said Florestan, "Do you think I am leaving you out of fear? So help me God, it was only for the sake of not contravening your will, and now you will see."

Then he ordered her to be put on another palfrey; and the dwarf shouted as he did the first time, and immediately another knight came out of the valley, very well armed on a good horse, and very elegant in appearance, and behind him a squire, who was carrying two lances; and he said to Florestan:

"Sir knight, you have won one maiden and not content, you take the other. Now you will have to lose them both, and your

head along with them, for it is not proper for a knight of such a lineage as yours to have in your keeping a woman of such high rank as the maiden is."

"You boast too much," said Florestan, "for there are two knights of my lineage, either one of whom I would wish to come to my aid, rather than you alone."

"Because those of your lineage you value so greatly," said the knight, "I do not on this account regard you more highly; for I consider you and them as nothing at all. But you won one maiden from one who did not have the power to aid her, and if I overcome you, the maiden is mine; and if I be conquered, you take with her this other one that I am protecting."

"I am satisfied with that agreement," said Florestan.

"Well now protect yourself if you can," said the knight.

Then they charged each other at the full speed of their horses, and the knight struck Florestan on the shield, which his lance pierced, and it was arrested by his coat of mail, which was strong and well made, and the lance broke; and Florestan missed in his encounter and passed on beyond him. The knight took another lance from the squire who was carrying them; and Don Florestan, who was ashamed and very angry because in front of his brother he missed the blow, let himself go at him and struck him so forcibly on the shield that he broke it and the arm on which he was carrying it, and the lance penetrated to the cuirass; he pushed him so hard that he lifted him off the saddle and on to the haunches of the horse; which, when it felt him there, kicked so violently that it threw him to the ground, which was hard, in such a mighty fall that he stirred neither hand nor foot. Florestan, who saw him thus, said to the maiden:

"You are mine, for this friend of yours will defend neither you nor himself."

"So it seems to me," said she.

Don Florestan looked at the other maiden, who remained alone at the fountain, and saw her very sad and said to her:

"Maiden, if it does not cause you sorrow, I would not leave you there alone."

The maiden looked toward their host and said to him:

"I advise you to go away from here, for you well know that these two knights are not enough to defend you against the one who will come now; and if he overtakes you, there is no other thing except death."

"Still," said the host, "I wish to see what will happen, for this horse of mine is a good runner and my castle very close, so that there is no danger."

"Oh," said she, "be careful, for you are only three, and you unarmed, and well you know that against him, that is as nothing at all."

When Don Florestan heard this he was even more eager to take away the maiden for the sake of seeing that one of whom they were speaking so highly. And he had her mount another palfrey just as he had the others; and the dwarf who was above in the elm, said:

"Sir knight, at a bad time you are so daring, for now will come one who will avenge himself and the others."

Then he shouted:

"Help, sir, for you are very late."

And then there came out of the valley whence the others had come, a knight who was wearing armor striped in gold, and he came on a bay horse so big and spirited that it would have sufficed for a giant. And the knight was also very tall and muscular, for there was quite apparent in him the existence of very great strength and valor. And he came completely armed, lacking nothing; and behind him came two squires armed with armor and capeline half-helmets, and each one carried a big and very sharp battle axe in his hand, by which the knight set great store for striking; and he said to Florestan:

"Hold, knight, and don't flee, for it will do you no good; for nevertheless you have to die; therefore die as a man of courage and not as a coward, for you cannot escape through cowardice."

When Florestan saw himself threatened by death and vilified as a coward, he was so furious that it was a wonder, and he said:

"Go to, you devilish monstrosity! So help me God, I fear you as I would a great beast without courage or heart."

"Oh!" said the knight, "how I regret that I shall not be avenged by anything that I may do to you; and would that God

might arrange for me right now that the four of your lineage that you esteem most highly might be here, so that I might cut off their heads along with yours."

"Defend yourself from me alone," said Florestan, "for I shall bring it to pass with God's help that they be exempted."

Then they let themselves charge at each other with lances lowered, and well protected by their shields, and each one was in a great rage at the other. Their encounters were so violent on the shields that they pierced them, and also the coats of mail were unmeshed with the great force of their attack; and the huge knight lost both stirrups, and would have left the saddle if he had not clasped the neck of his horse; and Don Florestan, who passed by him, went to one of the squires and seized from him the battle axe he had in his hand, and jerked it so hard that he overthrew him and his beast and went to the knight, who, straightening himself in the saddle, had taken the other axe, for the one who had it was quick to put it into his hands, and both the axes were upraised, and they struck each other on top of their helmets, which were of fine steel, and they penetrated through them to a depth of more than three fingers' breadth, and Florestan was battered down by the blow, so that it caused his cheeks to sink to his chest, and the huge knight was so dazed that the axe, leaving his hand, remained stuck in Florestan's helmet, and he did not have enough strength to raise his head above the level of his horse's neck, and Florestan returned to attack him, and as he had him bent over so low, he struck him thus unprotected between his helmet and the gorget of his cuirass such a blow that he quickly cut off his head, casting it at the feet of his horse. This done, he went to the maidens, and the first said:

"Certainly, good knight, there was a time when I did not think that ten such as you would win us, as you alone have, and it is right that you have us as your damsels."

Then their host, who was a young knight and handsome as you have already heard, came up to him and said:

"Sir, I love this maiden with a deep love, and she loves me; and it had been a year that that knight whom you killed had held her by force without letting me see her, and now that I can have

her through you, I shall be very grateful to you if you are not irked thereby."

"Certainly, host," said he, "if it is just as you say, in me you will find a good helper; but against her desire I would not agree to it with you or anyone else."

"Oh, sir!" said the maiden, "I am pleased, and I beg of you to give me to him, for I love him very much."

"In the name of God!" said Florestan, "I set you free to do as you wish."

The maiden went away with the host, being very happy. Galaor gave orders to seize the huge bay horse, which he thought was the most beautiful he had ever seen, and he gave the host the one he had brought; afterwards they started on their way, and the maidens with them, and I tell you they were young and beautiful, and Don Florestan took the first for himself, and said to the other:

"My dear, do for that knight whatever he pleases, for I bid you do so."

"What," said she, "Do you seek to give me to this one who saw you in such a predicament and did not help you? I really believe that the armor he wears is more for someone else than for him, judging by the spirit of the one who wears it."

"Maiden," said Don Florestan, "I swear to you by the faith that I have in God, that I am giving you the finest knight that I know of in the world, except for Amadis, my lord."

The maiden looked at Galaor. And she saw him so handsome and so young that she wondered about what she had heard concerning him; and she granted him her love; and the other hers to Don Florestan; and that night they went and lodged in the home of a beautiful matron, a sister of their host from whom they had parted; and she rendered them all the service that she could as soon as she learned what had happened to them. There they rested that night, and in the morning they resumed their way; and they said to their girl friends:

"We are to travel through many foreign lands, and it would be very hard on you to follow us; tell us where you will be content for us to take you."

"Since such is your pleasure," said they, "At four days' journey from here, on this road that you are following, is a castle of a lady, our aunt, and there we shall remain."

So they continued on their way. Don Galaor asked his maiden:

"How did that knight hold you?"

"I will tell you," said the maiden. "Now know you that that big knight who died in the combat loved very much the maiden that your host took with him; but she hated him with all her heart, and loved the one to whom you gave her more than anything in the world. And the knight as he was the best in these lands took her by force without anyone's opposing him in the matter; and she never of her own free will was willing to give him her love; and as he loved her so much, he avoided angering her, and said to her:

"'My dear, in order that quite rightly I may be esteemed and loved by you, as the best knight of the world, I shall do for love of you this which you shall hear: know you that a knight who is famous everywhere as the best that ever was who is called Amadis of Gaul, at the court of King Lisuarte killed a cousin of mine, who had the name, Dardan the Proud; and I shall search for this man and I shall cut his head off. Thereby all his fame will be diverted to me; and while this is being done I shall put with you two maidens, the most beautiful of this land, to watch over you, and I shall give them as male friends two of the best knights of my lineage, and we shall take you each day to the Fountain of the Three Elms, which is passed by many knights errant, and if they wish to take you, there you will see beautiful jousts and what I shall do in them; thus by your own free will I shall be much beloved by you just as I love you.'

"This said, he took us and gave us to those two knights who were conquered, and kept us at that fountain for a year, where they have performed many great exploits of chivalry until now, when Don Florestan settled the strife."

"Certainly, my dear," said Don Galaor, "the intent of that knight was quite grandiose, if he had been able to carry it out as he said. But first I believe he would have undergone great danger if he had met that Amadis whom he wanted to look for."

"So it seems to me," said she, "according to the superiority you recognize that he has over you."

"What was the name of that knight?" said Galaor.

"Alumas," said she; "and be certain that if his great arrogance had not corrupted him, he would have been of very high repute at arms."

Talking about this and other things, they journeyed until they reached the castle of the aunt, where they were well served, the lady learning how Don Florestan had killed Alumas and had overcome his companions, who had been holding her niece by force very dishonorably and without cause or reason. Then leaving the damsels there, they mounted the next day and traveled until, after four days, they were in a town of the kingdom of Sobradisa; and there they found out how Amadis and Agrajes had killed in combat Abiseos and his sons and had made Briolanja queen without delay, at which they had great pleasure and delight, and they gave many thanks to God. And leaving there, they arrived at the city of Sobradisa and went directly to the palace, without anyone's recognizing them; and dismounting from their horses, they came in where Amadis and Agrajes, who were now healed of their wounds, were with the new and beautiful queen.

When Amadis saw them thus, for he had already recognized the maiden as the one who had guided Galaor, and saw Don Florestan so tall and handsome, of whose great excellence he had already had information, he went to him, tears of joy falling from his eyes, and Don Florestan knelt before him to kiss his hands; but Amadis raised him, embracing and kissing him, and asking him in very great detail about the things that had happened to him; and afterwards he spoke to Don Galaor, and they to their cousin Agrajes, for they loved him very much.

When the beautiful queen saw in her house four such knights, she having been for so long a time disinherited and imprisoned with such fear in a single castle, where almost out of pity she was kept, and who now was being reinstated in her honor and her kingdom with such a great turn of the wheel of Fortune, and who not only had the means to defend it, but even to conquer realms of others, she knelt down after having received with much affection those two brothers, giving sincere thanks to the very

powerful Lord, who in such a way and with such great compassion remembered her; and she said to the knights:

"Believe for certain, sirs, such rotations and changes as these are wonders of the very high Lord; which when we see them, appear very great, and yet compared with His great power should rightly be considered as nothing."

Then let us now regard these great dominions, these riches, which cause us so many sorrows, cares, feelings of anguish, in order to attain them and, once attained, to keep them; would it be better to leave them and abominate them as superfluous and cruel tormenters of bodies and even more of souls, seeing that they are not certain or lasting? I certainly say no; rather, I affirm that when won and acquired fairly and with good conscience, and when we in moderation render satisfaction for them to that Lord who gives them, retaining for ourselves such a share that not our desire but our reason be satisfied, we would be able to obtain repose, pleasure and joy in this world, and in the other, eternal world perpetually to enjoy in glory their fruits.

Here ends the first Book of *Amadis.*

THE SECOND BOOK OF *AMADIS OF GAUL* BEGINS

Because the abundance of great events of Book IV of the *Amadis* was initiated from the Firm Island, just as it is shown in said Book, it is fitting that in this second Book an account be given concerning what this island was like, and who had those enchantments that were in it and the great riches thereof; since this being the beginning of said Book II, it is related in the proper place.

There was a king in Greece married to a sister of the emperor of Constantinople, by whom he had two very handsome sons, especially the elder, whose name was Apolidon, for he was unequaled in his own time both in vigor of body and fortitude of heart. This Apolidon then, giving himself over, with his subtle genius, to a mastery of all the arts, though genius is seldom consonant with great valor, attained so much proficiency in them, that just like the bright moon among the stars, he shone more than all those of his time, especially in those arts of necromancy; although through them impossible things seem to be realized. Then this king, the father of these two princes, being very rich in money and poor in remaining alive because of his great age, seeing himself at the point of death, gave orders that his son Apolidon, being the elder, should have the realm; to the other he left his great treasures and books, which were many and were worth a great deal. But the younger brother, not satisfied with this, told his father with many tears that with that bequest he was almost disinherited.

The father wringing his hands, not being able to do any more, was greatly disheartened; but that famous Apolidon, whose heart

was as adequate for virtuous acts as for confronting great danger, seeing the sorrow of his father and the pusillanimity of his brother, said that to console the latter's soul he would leave the kingdom to him, he himself taking the treasures and books; whereby the king his father was greatly consoled and with many pious tears gave him his blessing. Then Apolidon, taking the great treasures and the books, had certain ships fitted out with good, well-chosen knights as well as with provisions and weapons; and going on board, he put out to sea, not to any fixed destination, but to wherever Fortune might guide him. And Fortune, on seeing how this prince was submitting to her authority, willed it that that great obedience to his old father, given with much glory and much grandeur, be rewarded by attracting so favorable a wind that in a short time he arrived in the empire of Rome, where at the time the emperor was called Siudan, by whom he was well received. And as he stayed there for some time, the totality of his great feats at arms accomplished previously in other lands — for which great praise will be exalted to high esteem by virtue of the feats he accomplished there in the Roman empire — caused him to be loved inordinately by a sister of the emperor, Grimanesa by name, whose great fame and beauty caused her at that time to be outstanding among women throughout the world; whence it ensued that since he loved her as much as she did him, and since neither one had any hope of their love being consummated in any other way, with the consent of both lovers Grimanesa left the palace of the emperor her brother and went aboard a ship of her lover Apolidon's fleet. Sailing over the sea, they reached port at the Firm Island, which was ruled by a mighty giant. Apolidon, not knowing what land it was, ordered a tent set up with a fine dais on which his lady might rest, for she was quite seasick.

But immediately without any delay the fierce giant came to them armed, greatly startling them. With him, in accordance with the custom of the island, in order to save his lady, himself and his company, Apolidon fought. And by overcoming him with his excellence and valor and leaving him dead on the field, Apolidon was free of the overlord of that same island; for after having seen his great fortress, he not only did not fear the emperor of

Rome, who was angry at him for thus having carried off his sister, but also was unafraid of the whole world. On the island, because the giant was so base and arrogant, he had been greatly hated by all; but Apolidon, after becoming known, was very much loved.

The Firm Island having been won by Apolidon, as you have heard, on it with his mistress Grimanesa he dwelt sixteen years with so much pleasure that their hearts found satisfaction for those mortal desires that they had experienced for each other. In the Firm Island at that time were built very fine buildings, not only with Apolidon's great wealth but also out of his abundant knowledge — buildings so fine that any emperor or king, however rich he might be, would have had great difficulty in completing them.

At the end of those years, the emperor of Greece, having died without issue and the Greeks knowing the excellence of this Apolidon and that he was on his mother's side of the emperor's blood and lineage, unanimously chose him, sending to him there where he was on the island their messengers, through whom they made known to him their desire that he be their emperor. Apolidon, on seeing himself offered such a great empire, although he could obtain on that island all the pleasures that one could find, and knowing that from great dominions fatigue and travail, rather than delights and pleasures, are attained, and that if there are some of the latter, they are mixed with bitter potions, true to the nature of mortal men, which is not content or satisfied with its ever insatiable desires, he reached an agreement with his mistress that leaving that island where they were, they should take the empire that was offered them; but she, having a strong sentimental feeling about a thing as outstanding as that island was, where so many and such great things remained — an island possessed by her great lover, the best knight at arms to be found in the world, and by her, who likewise was praised above all those women of her time for her great beauty — and together with this their being loved by each other to that very perfection attainable by love, implored Apolidon that before their departure, out of his great knowledge he make provision so that in the future that place might be ruled only by a person who both in strength

at arms and in constancy of love, and also in overwhelming good looks, would resemble them both. Apolidon said:

"My lady, since that is your pleasure, I shall do so in such a way that here no lord or lady can live, except those who are most distinguished in what you have said."

Then he made an arch at the entrance to a garden in which there were trees of all kinds, and furthermore there were in it four vaulted chambers richly wrought; and the garden was fenced in such a way that no one could enter it except under the arch. On top of the latter he put a copper image of a man with a horn in his mouth as if he were about to blow it; and inside one of those rooms he placed two figures, one in his own semblance and the other in that of his mistress, so contrived that they seemed alive, with their faces and figures the same as his and hers, and beside them a very bright stone of striped marble; and he caused a column of iron five cubits in height to be set up, at half the distance of a crossbow shot from the arch, in a large field that was nearby; and he said:

"From now on no man or woman will pass ahead if they have wronged those whom they first began to love; because the image that you see blowing that horn, with such an awful sound, amid smoke and flames of fire, will cause them to be paralyzed; and almost like dead they will be thrust forth from this place. But if there come here such knights, matrons or maidens as be worthy of completing this adventure by reason of their great fidelity, as I have said already, they will enter forthwith and the image will make such a sweet sound that it will be delightful for those to hear who are present; and the latter will see our images and their own names inscribed on the marble, not knowing who inscribed them."

And taking his mistress by the hand, he had her enter beneath the arch, and the image made the sweet sound, and he showed her the images and their own names inscribed on the marble. And on going outside, Grimanesa had a desire to test them and she asked some matrons and maidens of hers to enter; but as the image produced the frightful sound, great smoke and flames of fire, they were at once paralyzed and insensible, and were expelled from the enclosure and the knights likewise; whereupon Grimanesa,

being certain of the absence of danger, laughed at them with great enjoyment, thanking very much her beloved lover Apolidon for what he had done to satisfy so greatly her desire. She then said to him:

"My lord, what then will happen to that luxurious chamber in which we had such great pleasure and delight?"

"Now," said he, "let us go there and you will see what I shall do in it."

Then they went where the chamber was; and Apolidon gave orders to bring two columns, one of stone and the other of copper; and the one of stone he had placed at five paces from the door of the chamber, and the one of copper another five somewhat to one side; and he said to his mistress:

"Now know you that in this chamber no man or woman can enter in any way or at any time until there come here such a knight as may surpass me in excellence at arms or a woman surpassing you in beauty; but if such come as do excel me at arms and you in beauty, they will enter without hindrance."

And he put some letters on the column of copper which read:

By here will pass the knights in whom there may reside great excellence at arms; each one in proportion to his worth will pass beyond.

And he placed other letters on the column of stone which read:

Beyond here will pass only the knight who surpasses Apolidon in excellence at arms.

And over the door of the chamber he put some letters that read:

He who surpasses me in excellence will enter the luxurious chamber and be lord of the island. And thus will matrons and maidens approach, so that none will enter within if she does not excel you in beauty.

And out of his learning he wrought such an enchantment that no one could come within twelve paces of the chamber from any direction, nor did it have any other entrance except by way of the columns as you have heard. And he gave orders that in that island there was to be a governor to manage it and to collect the income from it and that this income was to be kept for that knight who would have the good fortune to enter the chamber

and to be lord of the island; and he gave orders that those who failed in the test of the lovers' arch should be thrown out without any honor being done them and that those who completed it should be rendered service; and furthermore he said that the knights who underwent the test of the chamber and were unable to reach the column of copper should leave their arms there; and that from those who passed somewhat beyond the column only their swords should be taken; that from those who reached the column of marble, only their shields; and if such come as could pass beyond this column and could not enter, only their spurs. And that from the maidens and matrons nothing should be taken, but that after they told their names, these names should be put on the castle door, together with information concerning how far within each one had penetrated. And he said:

"When this island has a lord, the enchantment for knights will be ended, for freely they will be able to pass by the columns and enter the chamber; but it will not be ended for the women until there comes that woman who by virtue of her great beauty will end the adventure and occupy the luxurious chamber in company with the knight who will have won the seigniory."

This having been done thus, Apolidon and Grimanesa, entrusting the Firm Island to such protection as you have heard, left there in their ships and went to Greece, where they were emperor and empress, and had sons, who succeeded them in the empire after their days.

But now desisting from speaking any more about this, there will be related to you what Amadis and his brothers, and Agrajes, his cousin, did after they had departed from the house of the beautiful queen Briolanja.

CHAPTER XLIV

How Amadis with his brothers and Agrajes, his cousin, left for where King Lisuarte was; and how they chanced to go to the enchanted firm island to test its hazards, and what happened to them there.

Amadis and his brothers and his cousin Agrajes were with Queen Briolanja in the kingdom of Sobradisa, where they were highly honored by her and were very well served by all those of the kingdom. As Amadis kept thinking about his lady Oriana and her outstanding beauty, his heart was tormented by great anguish and by great grief. So many tears did he shed sleeping and awake, that however much he wished to conceal them, they were manifest to all; but not knowing the cause of them, they interpreted them in various ways; because just as the situation was serious, so with great discretion was the secret of them kept by Amadis, as one who had locked in his strong heart everything of virtue; but that afflicted heart no longer being able to endure such suffering, he asked permission of the very beautiful queen for himself and his companions and set out on the road to where King Lisuarte was, not without occasioning great sorrow and anguish for that lady, who loved him more than herself.

Then after he had journeyed for a few days with burning desire, Fortune, because such was her pleasure, with a greater delay than he had wished or intended sought to hinder him, as you now will hear; for on encountering a hermitage on their way and entering it to say a prayer, they saw a beautiful damsel and two other maidens, and four squires who were protecting them. The damsel who had already come out of the hermitage and was

waiting for them on the road, asked them when they reached her where they were going. Amadis said to her:

"Maiden, we are going to the court of King Lisuarte, and if you would like to go, we shall accompany you."

"I should be most grateful," said she, "but I am going elsewhere, and because I saw you go armed as knights seeking adventure, I decided to await you to see whether any of you would like to go to the Firm Island to behold its strange things and its wonders, for I am going there, and I am the daughter of the governor who now has the island."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Amadis, "By heaven, many times I have heard of the marvels of that island and I have wanted to see them, but so far I have made no plans to do so."

"Good sir, don't worry about having delayed," said she, "for many others have had that desire, and when they put it into execution, they did not leave there as cheerfully as they entered."

"You are right," said he, "according to what I have heard about it; but tell me, would we go much out of our way if we were to go by there?"

"You would go two days' journey out of your way," said the maiden; "this Firm Island is on this side of the great sea."

He said:

"Where the enchanted arch of loyal lovers is, where no man or woman can enter if he or she has made any mistake since first beginning to love?"

"That is it, certainly," said the maiden, "for that arch is in it, as well as many other things at which to marvel."

"Then," said Agrajes to his companions, "I do not know what you will do; I wish to go with this maiden and see the things of that island."

She said to him:

"If you are so faithful a lover that you can enter under the arch, there you will see the beautiful images of Apolidon and Grimanesa and your own name engraved on a stone, where you will find two other names engraved and no more, although it has been a hundred years since that enchantment was made."

"May you go with God," said Agrajes, "for I shall test whether I can be the third."

Amadis, who with heartfelt desire was no less hopeful of success in that adventure, said to his brothers:

"We are not in love; but I consider it good to wait for our cousin, who is in love and is of gallant heart."

"In the name of God!" said they, "May it please Him that it turn out well."

Then all four, together with the maiden, started on their way to the Firm Island. Don Florestan said to Amadis:

"Sir, do you know anything about this island? For, although I have gone through many lands, I have heard nothing about it until now."

"I have been told by a young knight," said Amadis, "whom I greatly esteem, who is Arban, King of North Wales, a man who has entered upon many adventures and has previously spent four days on this island, that he had tried to see these adventures and marvels that are on it, but that he could not finish any of them, and that he left there with great shame. But this maiden can tell you about it very well, for she dwells there; and according to what she says, she is the daughter of the governor who holds it."

Don Florestan said to the maiden:

"Dear madam, I beg of you, by the faith that you owe to God, to tell me all that you know about this island, since the length of our journey affords us the opportunity for it."

"That I shall do gladly, as I learned of it from those in whose memory it remained."

Then she told him all that the story has related to you, without leaving out anything, at which they were not only astounded to hear of such strange things, but also very desirous of testing them, as men whose strong hearts were satisfied only when they tried those things at which others had failed, for without fearing any danger they desired to finish them.

Then, just as you hear, they traveled until sunset; and on entering a valley, they saw in a meadow tents set up and people beside them who were resting; but among them was a knight richly attired, who seemed to them to be the leader of them all. The damsel said:

"Good sirs, the one you see there is my father, and I wish to go to him in order that he may do you honor."

Then she left them, and on her telling the knight of the quest of the four knights, he came on foot with his company to receive them; and as soon as they had greeted each other, he asked them to disarm in one of the tents and told them that the next day they would be able to go up to the castle to try those adventures. They approved this; hence having disarmed and dined, being very well served, they rested there that night; and early the next day with the governor and others of his retinue they went to the castle, which dominated the whole island, for to the island there was only that one entrance, which was at about a bowshot's distance from the mainland. Everything else was surrounded by the sea, although the island was seven leagues long and five leagues wide. And because of its being mostly an island and the slight amount of terra firma, they called it Firm Island.

Then having arrived there, on entering by the gate, they saw a large palace with the doors open and many shields in it placed in three ways, for a good hundred of them were leaning against some stone ledges and above them were ten higher up, and on another ledge, above the ten, were two, and one of them was more than half again higher than the other. Amadis asked why they had placed them thus, and they told him that thus was the order of excellence of each one whose shield was there, who had sought to enter into the forbidden chamber; and that those who did not reach the column of copper were the owners of shields on the ground, and the ten who reached the column were higher, and of the two the lower one passed the column of copper but could not reach the other column; and the one that was highest reached the column of marble but did not pass beyond. Then Amadis went up to the shields to see if he would recognize any of them, for on each one there was a label indicating whose it was. And he looked at the ten and among them was one much higher, and it had a black field and a lion likewise black, but the lion had white claws and its teeth and mouth were bright red, and he recognized that that one was Arcalaus's. And he looked at the two shields that were highest, and the lower one had a blue field and a giant depicted on it, and beside it a knight who was cutting off its head, and he knew it to be that of King Abies of Ireland, who came there two years before he fought with Amadis.

And he examined the other and it also had a blue field and three golden flowers on it; and that one he could not recognize, but he read the letters that were on it, which said: "This shield is Don Cuadragante's, brother of King Abies of Ireland"; and it had not been more than twelve days before that he had attempted that adventure and had reached the column of marble, at which no other knight had arrived, and he had come from his land to Great Britain to fight with Amadis in order to avenge the death of King Abies, his brother. As soon as Amadis saw the shields, he greatly feared that adventure, since such knights had not completed it. And they left the palace and went to the arch of faithful lovers, and on reaching the place where entrance was forbidden, Agrajes reached the marble and dismounting from his horse and commending himself to God, he said,

"Love, if I have been loyal to you, remember me."

And he passed the enclosure and when he came under the arch, the image that was on top emitted a melody so sweet that Agrajes and all those who heard it felt great delight. And he reached the palace where the images of Apolidon and of Grimanesa were, which seemed to them all quite alive; and he looked at the marble and saw there two names inscribed and also his own. And the first that he saw stated:

"Madavil, son of the Duke of Burgundy, finished this adventure."

And the other stated:

"This is the name of Don Bruneo of Bonamar, son of Valladas, the Marquis of Troque."

His own read:

"This is Agrajes, son of Languines, King of Scotland."

And this Madavil loved Guinda the Fleming, a lady of Flanders. And it had not been more than a week since Don Bruneo had finished that adventure; and the one whom he loved was Melicia, daughter of King Perion of Gaul and sister of Amadis.

When Agrajes entered under the arch of the loyal lovers as you hear, Amadis said to his brothers:

"Will you try this adventure?"

"No," said they, "for we are not so subject to this passion of love as to deserve to complete it."

"Since there are two of you," said Amadis, "keep each other company; and if I can, I shall go with my cousin Agrajes."

Then he gave his horse and his arms to his squire Gandalin and went forward as quickly as he could without any fear, as one who felt he had been true to his lady not only in deed but also in thought. And as he went under the arch, the image began to make a melody much more outstanding in sweetness than it had made for the others, and through the mouth of the trumpet it cast very beautiful flowers that gave off a fine perfume and fell in thick clusters to the ground, so that never was the like of it done for any knight who entered there. And he went on to where the images of Apolidon and Grimanesa were located, and stood looking at them very fondly, for they seemed to him very beautiful and as fresh as if they were alive. And Agrajes, who knew something of his love affair, came to him from where he was walking through the garden looking at the strange things there were in it, and embracing him, said:

"Sir cousin, it is not right that from now on we conceal our love affairs from each other."

But Amadis did not answer him; and he having taken him by the hand, they kept on looking at that place, which was very pleasant and delightful to behold. Don Galaor and Florestan, who were waiting for them outside, on seeing that they were tarrying, decided to go see the forbidden chamber, and they asked Ysanjo, the governor, to show it to them. He told them he would be very pleased to do so, and taking them with him, went with them and showed them the chamber from the outside and the columns that you have already heard about. And Don Florestan said:

"Sir brother, what do you wish to do?"

"Nothing," said he, "for I have never had the desire to go against enchanted things."

"Then rest," said Don Florestan, "for I wish to see what I can do."

Then commending himself to God, and putting his shield in front of him and with his sword in his hand, he went forward; and entering the defended area, he felt himself struck from all

sides with lances and swords such mighty and frequent blows that it seemed to him that no man could stand it; but he, since he was strong and valiant of heart, did not cease to go ahead, striking with his sword to right and left; and it seemed to him from the way his hand felt that he was striking armed men and that his sword was not cutting. Thus he passed the column of copper and reached the column of marble, and there he fell and could not go any farther, so deprived of all his strength that he had no more feeling than if he were dead; and then he was thrown out of the place, as had been done to the others. Don Galaor, who saw him thus, was quite worried about him, and said:

"Even though my desire for this proving was very different, I shall not fail to take my share of the danger." And ordering the squire and the dwarf not to leave and to throw cold water on his face, he took his arms, and commending himself to God, went toward the door of the chamber. And they attacked him immediately from all sides with very hard and mighty blows, and with great effort he arrived at the column of marble and embraced it and stopped for a bit. But when he took a step forward, he was so beset with blows that not being able to stand it, he fell to the ground just like Florestan, so befuddled that he didn't know whether he was dead or alive; and then he was thrown out just as the others had been. Amadis and Agrajes, who had gone a long distance in the garden, returned to the images and saw Amadis's name engraved there on the striped marble stone, and it read:

"This is Amadis of Gaul, the faithful man in love, son of King Perion of Gaul."

And while they were reading the inscription with great pleasure, Ardian, the dwarf, arrived at the enclosure shouting:

"Sir Amadis, help; for your brothers are dead!"

And when he heard this, he came out of there quickly and Agrajes behind him, and asking the dwarf what it was he said, he replied:

"Sir, your brothers were testing themselves in the chamber and did not finish and have remained as though dead."

Then they mounted their horses and went where the brothers were, and they found them as battered as you have heard,

although now semiconscious. Agrajes, as he was of great courage, got off his horse quickly, and as fast as he could run went with his sword in hand to the chamber, striking right and left; but his strength was not enough to withstand the blows given and he fell between the column of copper and the one of marble, and was carried out paralyzed like the others. Amadis began to curse their having come there and said to Don Galaor, who was now almost completely conscious:

"Brother, I cannot excuse my body from being placed in the same danger as yours."

Galaor sought to stop him; but he quickly took up his arms and went forward, asking God to help him; and when he arrived at the prohibited place, he stopped a moment and said:

"Oh, my Lady Oriana, from you come to me all my strength and ardor; remember me, lady, at this time when your delightful remembrance of me is essential."

And then he went ahead and felt himself attacked severely on all sides, and he reached the column of marble. And when he was passing it, it seemed to him that everyone in the world was there to attack him, and he heard a great outcry of voices as if the world were crashing, and the voices were saying:

"If you turn back this knight, there is no one now in the world who can enter here."

But he, despite his anxiety, did not cease to go ahead, falling at times on his hands and at others to his knees, and the sword with which he had given many blows he had lost from his hand and it was hanging by a strap in such wise that he could not seize it again. Thus he reached the door of the chamber and saw a hand that took him by his own hand and led him inside, and he heard a voice which said:

"Welcome to the knight who, surpassing in excellence the one who made this enchantment and in his own time had no peer, will be lord here."

That hand seemed to him large and hard, like that of an old man, and on the arm was a sleeve of blue samite; and as they went inside the chamber, the hand, which he saw no more, released its hold on him and he remained refreshed and again in possession of all his strength. And taking off the shield from his

neck and the helmet from his head, he put his sword in its scabbard and thanked his lady Oriana for that honor which he had won because of her.

At this time, all those of the castle, who had heard the voices granting him dominion and saw him inside, began to say in loud voices:

"Sir, we have accomplished, praise be to God, what we had so greatly desired."

The brothers, who were more completely conscious and saw how Amadis had completed what they had failed in, were joyful because of the great love they had for him, and just as they were, they ordered themselves brought to the chamber, and the governor with all his men came up to Amadis and in acknowledgment of him as their lord they kissed his hands. When they saw the priceless objects of art and needle work that there were inside the chamber they were astounded at the sight; but this was nothing compared to the private room contrived there, in which Apolidan and his mistress dwelt; and this was so formed that not only would no one be able to succeed in reproducing it, but would not even be able to understand how it could be constructed; and it was contrived in such wise that being inside, they could see clearly what was being done outside, and those outside would in no wise see anything within. There they all were for quite a bit with great pleasure: the knights because in their family they had such a knight who surpassed in excellence all those in the world at present and for a hundred years past; those of the island for having gained a lord with whom they hoped to be fortunate and to rule from there many other lands. Ysanjo, the governor, said to Amadis:

"Sir, it will be well for you to eat and rest, and tomorrow all the nobles of the land will be here and will pay homage to you, receiving you as their lord."

Whereupon they left, and entering a great palace, they ate what was prepared, and rested that day, then the following one most of those of the island came there and gathered together for great games and festivities. Being his vassals, they took Amadis for their lord with those safeguards that in that time and land were customary.

Just as the story has related, the Firm Island was won by Amadis at the end of a hundred years after that handsome Apolidon left it with those enchantments, which were true testimony that in all that intervening time never did a knight reach port there who surpassed his excellence. Then whether from this he attained such glory and fame, let those judge who have attempted great exploits with arms, both conquerors and conquered, the first experiencing what this knight Amadis was enabled to feel, and the others, hopeful of a victory, but when it was converted into defeat, weeping for their misfortune. Then, from these two extremes, which shall we deem the better? Surely, I say, that the first, according to human weakness, which has no measure, can attract great sins with its pride, and the second, great despair. Who will set himself up to choose which of the two is better? That reasoning capacity to judge given by the true Lord to mankind over all other living things, for He knows the prosperous and the adverse are not lasting; by His ruling and strengthening hearts to subdue both, these hearts would probably be able to attain the happy medium. Then will Amadis of Gaul take this method in what fickle Fortune now prepares for him, showing the narcotic henbane and the other poisons that are concealed in the midst of such joys as these and of this high estate? I think not; rather, since without stint favorable things up to now have happened to him, without any pause or any struggle with Fortune; so without comparison his heart and discretion will be conquered and subdued by her, he not being favored or aided by his stout armor, the delightful memory of his lady or the great bravery of his heart; but by the great compassion of that Lord who in order to help sinners and the afflicted came into the world, as now what is sad and afterwards what is happy will be told to you.

As has already been told previously in the first part of this great story, Oriana being, because of the words that she heard from the dwarf about the pieces of the sword, dominated by anger and fury and moved to such great agitation that neither Mabilia nor the maiden of Denmark obtained good results from the honest advice that was given by them, it now will be told what she did about this from that day on, always permitting her

passion to grow, with her usual inclination, which was to be in the company of those ladies, transformed, and withdrawing with much aloofness, most of the time she remained alone, thinking how she would be able in vengeance for her fury, to give the penalty that he deserved to that one who had caused it. And she decided that, since his presence was withdrawn, in his absence all of her feeling should be manifested in writing. And finding herself alone in her room, taking ink and parchment from her coffer, she wrote a letter that read thus:

The Letter Which Lady Oriana Sent to her Lover Amadis

My rabid complaint accompanied by abundant reason, causes my weak hand to declare what my sad heart cannot conceal from you, false and unfaithful knight Amadis of Gaul, since already the infidelity and scant steadfastness are known that to me, the most unhappy and unfortunate woman in the world, you have shown in discarding your love for me who above everything loved you, by bestowing it on one whose discretion, in view of her age, does not suffice for love or understanding. And since my subjugated heart cannot take any other vengeance, I wish to withdraw from you all the excessive and ill-placed love that I had for you. For it would be a great mistake for me to love one who has ceased to love me, whereas I had ceased to esteem everything else on account of loving and esteeming him. Oh, how badly did I use and subjugate my heart, since in payment for my sighs and passions I have been deceived and cast aside! And since this deceit is now manifest, do not appear before me nor at any place where I may be, for be assured that the very burning love I had for you is deservedly transformed into a very rabid and cruel hate; and with your broken faith and learned deceits, go and deceive another wretched woman like me, for thus I was vanquished by your deceitful words, for which no solemn promise nor excuse will be accepted; rather, without seeing you I shall accept, lamenting with tears, my disastrous ill fortune and with those tears accept putting an end to my life and terminating my sad plaint.

The letter having been finished, she closed it with Amadis's very well-known seal, and put into the outside inscription: "I am the maiden wounded by the tip of the sword through the heart, and you are the one who wounded me."

And speaking secretly with a page named Durin, brother of the maiden of Denmark, she ordered him not to rest until he arrived at the kingdom of Sobradisa, where he would find Amadis, and to give him that letter, to watch his face while he was reading it, and to attend him that day, not taking any reply, even though he might wish to give one to him.

CHAPTER XLV

How Durin left with Oriana's letter for Amadis, and how Amadis, having seen the letter, abandoned all that he had undertaken and in despair went secretly to a forest.

Then Durin, carrying out Oriana's order, left at once on a very swift palfrey so that at the end of ten days he arrived in Sobradisa, where the beautiful queen Briolanja was. When he arrived in her presence, she seemed to him the most beautiful woman, next to Oriana, that he had seen; and having learned from her that two days before he arrived Amadis and his brothers and his cousin Agrajes had left there, he, following their trail, journeyed so fast that he reached the Firm Island at the time that Amadis was entering the arch of the loyal lovers. And he saw that the image had done for Amadis more than it had done for the others; and although when Amadis came out from there because of the news he was given about his brothers, and Durin saw him with Gandalin, he did not give him the letter, nor afterwards, until he entered the forbidden chamber and was received by all those of the island as lord; and this was on the advice of Gandalin, who knowing the letter to be from Oriana, feared what might come in it, whether happy or sad, and that before his master received that sovereignty, some other emotional crisis or non-lucid interval might overtake him; for he was very certain that he would leave not only that but also the world, were it his, in order to comply at once with whatever she might order him to do. But after things were quieted down, Amadis ordered Durin called in order to ask him for news of the court of King Lisuarte. And he having come by Amadis's orders, and the latter strolling with him through a

very delightful garden, and having withdrawn somewhat from his brothers and all the others who were there, he asked Durin if he came from the court of King Lisuarte and to tell him the news that he had learned there. Durin answered and said:

"Sir, I left the court as it was when you left it; but I come to you with a message from my Lady Oriana, and you will see the cause of my coming by reading this letter."

Amadis took the letter, and although his heart felt great joy at the moment, considering that Durin knew nothing of his secret, he concealed it as much as he was able; because his sadness could not restrain him — for once he had read the strong and fearful words that came in it, his strength and judgment were not enough — from plainly showing that he had arrived at cruel death, with so many tears, with so many sighs that his heart seemed to be broken to bits, he remaining so faint and swooning as if his soul had already left his flesh. Durin, who was completely without any suspicion of this, when he saw him weeping very bitterly cursed himself and his luck, and even death, because it had not come to him before he arrived there.

Amadis, not being able to stand, sat down there on the grass and took the letter that had fallen from his hands and when he saw the inscription which said, "I am the maiden wounded by the tip of the sword through the heart, and you are the one who wounded me," his grief was so excessive that for a time he was in a faint, so that Durin was quite frightened and wanted to call his brothers; but as he perceived the secrecy required in such a situation, he was afraid that it would greatly anger Amadis. But the latter, having now revived, said very sadly:

"Lord God! Why have you been pleased to kill me undeservedly?" And afterwards he said: "Ah, Fidelity, what a poor reward you give to one who has never failed you! You have caused my lady to fail me, knowing that I would endure death a thousand times over, rather than disregard her commands!" And again taking the letter, he said: "You are the cause of my grievous end; and so that it may come upon me more quickly, you will go with me."

And he put it in his bosom and said to Durin:

"Were you ordered to tell me anything else?"

"No," said he.

"Then you will bear my message," said Amadis.

"No, sir," said he, "for I was forbidden to bring any."

"And what about Mabilia or your sister? Didn't they tell you anything to say to me?"

"They did not know," said Durin, "of my coming, for my lady ordered me to conceal it from them."

"Alas, Holy Mary, save me!" said Amadis, "now I see that my misfortune is without remedy."

Then he went to a stream that came out of a fountain and bathed his face and eyes, and told Durin to call Gandalin and that they should come alone. This he did; and when they came to him, they found him motionless as though dead, and thus he remained meditating for a long while; and when he emerged from his meditation, he told them to call Ysanjo, the governor. And when he came, he said to him:

"I desire that as a loyal knight, you promise me that until tomorrow after my brothers have heard mass, you will not tell anything of what you now see."

He so promised; and another such guarantee Amadis took from those two squires; then he commanded Ysanjo to have the gate of the castle kept secretly open and that Gandalin bring out his horse and arms without anyone's knowing it.

They went to carry out his orders, and he remained thinking about a dream that he had dreamed the night before: that he seemed to find himself on top of a hillock covered with trees, on a horse and armed, and around him many people who were evincing great joy, and that there arrived among them a man who said to him:

"Sir, eat of this that I carry in this case!" And he made him eat of it, and he seemed to taste the bitterest thing that ever could be found. And feeling thereat very faint and disconsolate, he loosed the rein of his horse and it went wherever it wished; and it seemed that the people who before were happy, became so sad that it pained him; but the horse carried him far away from them and brought him under some trees from where he saw

a place formed of rocks surrounded by water. And leaving the horse and the arms, he went to this place as though thereby he was hoping for repose; and an old man dressed in monastic garb came to him and took him by the hand. Drawing him close and showing pity, he said to him a few words in a language that he did not understand, and with this he awoke.

And it seemed to him that no matter how groundless he had previously considered it, he now found it to be true. And when he thought about this for a while, taking Durin with him, speaking with him while hiding his face from his brothers and from the other people in order that they might not perceive his emotion, he went to the gate of the castle, where he found the sons of Ysanjo, who had the gate open, and Ysanjo, who was outside. And Amadis said to him:

"Go with me and let your sons remain and have them say nothing of this."

Then they both went to the hermitage that was located at the foot of the cliff, and Gandalin and Durin were already accompanying them there.

Amadis was sighing and groaning with such anguish and grief that those who saw him were thereby moved to sorrow. And calling for his arms, he armed himself and asked Ysanjo of what saint that church was; he told him that it was of the Virgin Mary, and that there many times miracles were performed; he entered and kneeling on the floor, he said weeping:

"Holy Virgin Mary, consoler and helper of the afflicted, to you, Lady, I commend myself that you may intercede for me with your glorious Son that he may have pity on me; and if it is your wish not to help my body, have mercy on this soul of mine in this my last hour; for I hope only for death!"

And then he called Ysanjo and said to him:

"I want you as a loyal knight to promise me to do what here I shall tell you."

And turning to Gandalin, he took him in his arms weeping bitterly, and thus he held him a while without being able to speak, and he said to him:

"My good friend Gandalin: You and I were as one and nourished from the same milk, and all our lives we have always

been together, and I have never been in any anxiety or danger which you did not share, and your father pulled me out of the sea when I was such a tiny thing as to have been born that same night, and your parents brought me up as a good father and mother would rear a much beloved son, and you, my loyal friend, have thought only to serve me, and as I was expecting that God would give me some fief whereby I might satisfy somewhat your merit, this great misfortune has come to me, which I consider more cruel than death itself; whence it is necessary that we part, and I have nothing to leave to you except only this island, and I command Ysanjo and all the others, by the homage they have done me that as soon as they learn of my death, they take you for their lord. And although this seigniory be yours, I command that your father and mother enjoy it during their lifetime, and that afterward it remain freely yours. This in return for all the rearing they gave me, for my fortune has not permitted me to come in time to give them the satisfaction that they deserve and that I have desired."

Then he told Ysanjo that from the rents or income of the island that he had in his keeping, to take enough to establish a monastery in honor of the Virgin Mary in that hermitage, in which thirty friars could live well and to give them an income to sustain them.

Gandalin said to him:

"Sir, you have never had a worry in which I was separated from you, nor shall I be now for anything, and if you die I don't wish to live, for after your death may God never give me a fief or a seigniory, and this one which you would give to me, give to one of your brothers, for I shall not take it, nor do I need it."

"Be silent, for heaven's sake!" said Amadis, "Don't speak such madness or cause me worry, for you have never done so, and carry out my wishes, for my brothers are so fortunate and of such great prowess at arms that they will be well able to win great lands and seigniories for themselves, and even some to give to others."

Then he said:

"Alas, Ysanjo, my good friend, I am very sorry not to be enabled at this time to honor you as you deserve; but I leave you among those who will fulfill for me my desire."

Ysanjo said weeping:

"Sir, I beg you to take me with you, and I shall undergo what you undergo, and this I ask in payment for this good will you have for me."

"My friend," said Amadis, "I hold the opinion that you would do so; but this sorrow of mine no one but God can help, and I desire of Him that He guide me with His compassion without my taking any other companion."

And he said to Gandalin:

"Friend, if you wish to be a knight, be so immediately with these arms of mine, for since you have taken such good care of them, they ought rightly to be yours, because they are of little use to me now; if it is not your wish to be knighted at once, let my brother Don Galaor make you a knight and have Ysanjo tell him so for me; and serve him and protect him instead of me, for you know that I love him always above all others of my lineage and for him I bear great sorrow in my heart, more than for all the others, and this is right because he is worth more and was always very humble to me; whereby he now doubles my sadness; and tell him that I commend to him Ardian, my dwarf, and that he take him with him and not abandon him, and tell the dwarf to live with him and serve him."

When they heard this from him, they grieved bitterly, without replying anything in order not to anger him. Amadis embraced them, saying:

"I commend you to God, for I never expect to see you again."

And forbidding them to follow him by any manner of means, he spurred his horse without remembering to take his helmet or shield or lance, and very quickly he plunged into the deep forest, without destination except where the horse wanted to take him. And so he journeyed until after midnight without being aware of anything, until the horse happened upon a little stream of water that flowed out of a spring, and with its thirst it went up the stream until it arrived at a place to drink from it. And the limbs

of the trees having brushed Amadis on the face, he recovered his senses and looked from one side to the other, but saw nothing but thick brush, and was quite pleased to think that he was very secluded and hidden. And while his horse drank, he dismounted, and tying it to a tree, he sat down on the green grass to grieve; but he had wept so much that his head was giddy and he fell asleep.

CHAPTER XLVI

How Gandalin and Durin trailed Amadis, bringing to him the arms that he had left behind; and how they found him and how he fought with a knight and overcame him.

Gandalin, who had remained in the hermitage with the others as you have heard, when he saw Amadis leave thus, said while shedding many tears:

"I shall continue to follow him, although he has forbidden me to do so, and I shall bring him his arms."

And Durin said to him:

"I wish to keep you company this night, and I should be quite pleased if we were to find him with a better resolution."

And then mounting their horses, they bade farewell to Ysanjo and started out on the road that Amadis had taken; and Ysanjo went to the castle and threw himself down on his bed with very great sorrow. But Gandalin and Durin, who went into the forest, journeyed everywhere, and chance guided them near where Amadis was; his horse, which heard the other horses, neighed and then they knew he was there, and they went through the underbrush very quietly so that he would not hear them, for they did not dare appear before him. And when they were nearer, they got off their horses, and Gandalin went very cautiously and reached the fountain, and saw that Amadis was sleeping on the grass; and taking his horse, he returned with it to where Durin was; and taking off the bridles, they left the horses to graze and to nibble the green boughs; and they remained quiet. But it was not long before Amadis awoke, for with the great shock to his heart, his sleep was not restful; and he stood up and saw that the

moon was disappearing from view and that there still was a good share of the night remaining, and the woods being thick, he remained quiet; and sitting down again, he said:

"Alas, Fortune, you human thing devoid of a source! Why did you exalt me to such a great height among knights, and then bring me down from there with such ease? Now I see indeed that your mischief can do more harm in one hour than your favor can benefit in a thousand years, because if you gave me delights and pleasures in past times, now by cruelly robbing me of them, you have left me in what is much more bitter than death itself; and since, Fortune, you were pleased to do so, you ought to have balanced the one with the other, for if some pleasure and repose you have granted me in the past, you well know that it was mingled with great anguish and grief; therefore in this cruelty with which you now torment me, at least you might have retained some hope whereby this troubled life of mine could have taken refuge in some tiny nook. But you have made use of that function for which you were created, which is contrary to the thoughts of us mortal men, who considering certain and lasting those honors, splendid displays, and vainglories — all of them perishable — that come to us from you, take them to be enduring, not remembering that besides the torments that our bodies receive in maintaining them, our souls are finally placed in great danger and risk with respect to their salvation. But if, with that clear vision for comprehension that the Lord on high gave us when our own vision was obscured by our passions and affections, we should seek to look at your fickleness, we ought to consider adversity much better than prosperity, because since prosperity is in conformity with our qualities and appetites, we while embracing what ahead of us appears gratifying, finally fall irretrievably into the depths of bitterness. And the adverse being the opposite, not of reason but of desire, if we rejected what desire covets, we would be raised from the depths to the heights into eternal glory. But I, a sad unfortunate being, what shall I do? for neither my judgment nor my weak forces suffice to resist such a great temptation, for if everything in the world were mine and you had taken it away from me leaving only my lady's love for me, this would have been enough to sustain me at a blissful

height; but lacking this, not being able to bear life without her, I say that your cruelty to me is unparalleled. I beg of you in payment for my having been such a loyal servant to you, that I not be tolerating death for every moment of the day: if it is granted you to take life by torments, then take my life from me, having pity for what you know that I suffer by living."

And after he had said this, he became silent and was stupefied for a while from much weeping, for he was not conscious; and then he said:

"Oh, my Lady Oriana! you have brought me to death by the prohibition that you impose on me that I must not disregard your command; since by observing it I do not protect my life, I receive this death unjustly; whence I am greatly grieved, not for receiving it, since with my death your desire is satisfied, for as long as I live I would not be able to deny that for the least thing that pertained to your pleasure my life should be exchanged for death a thousand times over. And if this anger of yours had been aroused justifiably with my deserving it, I would suffer the penalty, and you, lady, would have peace of mind in having vented your anger justly, and this would make you live such a happy life that my soul, wherever it might go, would feel great peace because of your pleasure. But as I am without blame, it being known by you that the cruelty that is inflicted on me is more from passion than with reason, from now on, for the little time that I may endure in this life, and afterwards in the next one, I begin to lament and grieve over the affliction and great sorrow that will come to you because of me, and much more because there will be no remedy remaining for your sorrow once I have departed from this life."

And moreover he said:

"Oh, King Perion of Gaul, my father and lord, what little reason have you, not knowing the cause of my death, to grieve about it! Rather, according to your great worth and that of your esteemed sons, you ought to take consolation that when obligated to imitate your lofty prowess, abhorred, despairing, as an unhappy knight who cannot resist the harsh blows of Fortune, I myself take death as consolation and remedy; but if you knew the reason for it, I am sure that you would not blame me; but may it please

God that you not know, since your grief cannot help mine; rather, since I would regret it, my grief would be very greatly increased."

Having said this, he was silent for a short while; but then with great weeping and loud groans, he said:

"Oh, good and loyal knight, my foster father Gandales! For you I bear deep sorrow, because my contrary fortune does not permit me to reward that very great beneficence that I received from you; for you, my good foster father, pulled me out of the sea, when I was such a tiny thing, just born that night. You gave me life and rearing as your own son; and if just as my first days were increased in your lifetime, my last days might come to an end with you, very gladly my soul would part from this world; and if it is not able to do so, I shall always be greatly desirous of your coming."

And likewise he spoke of his loyal friend Angriote of Estravaus and of King Arban of North Wales, and of Guilan the Pensive and other great friends of his, and finally he said:

"Oh, Mabilia, my lady cousin, and you, good maid of Denmark! where did your help and aid tarry so long that you have left me thus to be killed? Certainly, my good friends, I would not have delayed in aiding you, if you had had need of my help. Now I see very well since you have forsaken me, that everybody is against me and all are involved in bringing about my death."

And he became silent, for he said no more; and Gandalin and Durin, who were listening, manifested great grief, but they did not dare appear before him.

Then at this juncture, there passed along a road that was near them, a knight who was singing, and when he came near where Amadis was, he began to say:

"Love, oh Love, I must thank you very much for the good that comes to me from you and for the great height to which you have elevated me over all other knights, leading me always from good to better, for you made me love the very beautiful Queen Sardamira, believing I had wonderfully won her heart with the honor that I shall carry from this land; and now, in order to render me much more fortunate, you cause me to love the daughter of the best king in the world, and this is that

beautiful Oriana, who has no equal anywhere. Love, this lady you have caused me to love and you give me strength to serve her."

And as soon as he had said this, he went under a large tree that was near the road, for there he intended to wait until morning; but it turned out otherwise for him, for Gandalin said to Durin:

"Stay here, and I intend to go and see what Amadis will want to do."

And going to where he was, he found him already up and going about looking for his horse, which he had not found, and as he saw Gandalin:

"What man are you, who goes there? please tell me."

"Sir," said he, "I am Gandalin, for I wish to bring you your horse."

He said to him:

"Who told you to come to me after my prohibition? Know you that you have caused me great sorrow; and here give me, give me my horse and go on your way; don't tarry here longer; if you do tarry, you will force me to kill you and myself."

"Sir," said Gandalin, "By Heaven, stop this and tell me if you heard the nonsense that a knight said who is over yonder?"

And he told him this in order to arouse his fury so that it would cause him to forget the other thing. Amadis said:

"Indeed I heard what he said, and for this reason I want my horse on which to go away from here, for I have tarried too long."

"What?" said Gandalin, "Aren't you going to do any more against the knight?

"And what must I do?" said Amadis.

"Fight with him," said Gandalin, "and make him acknowledge his folly."

And Amadis said to him:

"How foolish you are in what you say! Don't you know that I have neither brains, nor heart, nor spirit, that all is lost when I lost the favor of my lady, for from her and not from me came everything. And so she has taken it away, and you know that I am worth no more for fighting than a dead knight, for in all of

Great Britain there is not so unfortunate, nor so weak a knight as not to kill me easily, if he were to fight with me, for I shall tell you that I am the most defeated and desperate of all those in the world."

Gandalin said:

"Sir, I am very sorry that at such a time your courage and great excellence should fail you, and, by Heaven! speak softly, for there is Durin, who heard the lamenting you did and all that the knight said."

"What?" said Amadis, "Durin is here?"

"Yes," said he, "for we both came together, and I think he comes to see what you are doing, in order to find out what to tell the person who sent him here."

Amadis said to him:

"I am sorry about what you have said to me."

But knowing that Durin was there, his courage and spirit grew, and he said:

"Now give me my horse and guide me to the knight."

Gandalin brought him the horse and the arms, and he mounted and took up his arms; and Gandalin went to point out the knight, and it was not long before they saw him under a tree, and he was holding the horse by the reins, and Amadis approached him and said:

"Knight, you who are resting must needs rise that we may see whether you know how to maintain the love within you which you praise so highly."

The knight got up and said:

"Who are you who ask me such a thing? Now you will see how I defend love if you dare to fight with me, for I shall put fear into you and all those who are forsaken by love."

"Now we shall see," said Amadis, "for I am one of those forsaken by love, and I alone am the one who had ever put trust in it, because with all the great services I did for it, it gave me a poor reward, which I did not deserve. To you, knight in love, I shall say more: never did I find in it so much truth that I did not find seven times more falsehoods. Now come and defend its rights, and let us see whether it won more in you than it lost in me."

And when he said this, he became enraged as one whom his lady had abandoned against all reason. The knight mounted and took up his arms, and said:

"You, knight, despairing of love and scornful of all good, about which you ought ont to speak; for if love abandoned you, it had good reason for it, for such as you were not for accompanying or serving it, and it, seeing that you were unworthy, separated you from itself; and now go away at once, and don't stay here any longer, for by merely looking at you I become very angry; and whatever arms I might use on you, I would therefore despise."

And he sought to leave. And Amadis said to him:

"Knight, either you want to defend love only with words, or you go out of cowardice."

"And what, O knight!" said he, "I was leaving you, because of not esteeming you, and you think that it was through fear; you are insistently asking for injury to yourself; now protect yourself if you can."

Then they raced their horses at each other at full speed as hard as they could, striking each other with their lances on their shields so that they pierced them and the lances were arrested by their coats of mail, which were very strong. But the knight who was in love fell to the ground without any delay, and on falling, held the reins in his hand and mounted at once on his horse like one who was valiant and agile. And Amadis said:

"If you don't defend love any better with the sword than with the lance, the good reward it has given you is ill used."

The knight did not answer, but grasped his sword very angrily and went for him. And Amadis, who already had his sword in hand, moved against him and they both struck each other; and the knight hit him on the boss of his shield, so that the blow was at a slant and he thrust a palm's length of the sword through it, and when he tried to withdraw it, he could not do so; and Amadis grasped his sword, and raising himself in his stirrups, gave him such a mighty blow on top of his helmet that it cut all that it reached and some of the coif of mail; and he cut his head down to the skull, and the sword went down and hit the neck of the horse and cut half of it; thus both went down and the horse

died at once, and the knight was so dazed as to be insensible. Amadis, who saw him remain quiet, waited a moment to see if he recovered his senses, for he thought he was dead; and when he saw him somewhat recovered, he said to him:

"Knight, may whatever love gained in you and you with it be yours and its, for I intend to leave."

And leaving him, he called Gandalin and saw Durin who was with him and had witnessed all that had occurred, and he said to him:

"Friend Durin, in me, abandonment has no equal, nor is my sorrow and loneliness bearable, and I must die; and may it please God that it be quickly. And death would be now a relief to me, since I am tormented by this very keen and cruel anguish. Now go you in good fortune and give my sincere greetings to Mabilia, my good cousin and to the good maiden of Denmark, your sister, and tell them to grieve for me, for I am going to die on account of the greatest injustice that ever in the world a knight died for; and tell them of the great sorrow I carry in my heart for them, who loved me so much and did so much for me, without receiving from me any reward."

He said this weeping very bitterly. And Durin was standing in front of him weeping so that he could not reply. Amadis embraced him and commended him to God, and Durin kissed the skirt of his cuirass and bade him farewell. Then dawn broke, and Amadis said to Gandalin:

"If you wish to go with me, do not deter me in anything that I may do or say; otherwise, go away from here at once."

He answered that he would obey, and giving him his arms, he told him to draw the sword out of the shield and give it to the knight and to follow behind him.

CHAPTER XLVII

WHICH RELATES WHO THE KNIGHT CONQUERED BY AMADIS WAS, AND THE THINGS THAT HAD HAPPENED TO HIM BEFORE HE WAS OVERCOME BY AMADIS.

That wounded knight of whom we already have told you, was named Patin, and he was a brother of Don Sidon, who at the time was emperor of Rome, and was the finest knight at arms in those parts, so that by all those of the empire he was greatly feared. And the emperor was very old and had no heir, so that everybody thought that this Patin would succeed him in ruling. He loved a queen of Sardinia named Sardamira, who was a very elegant and beautiful maiden, who, because she was a niece of the empress had been reared in her house, and served her so well that she was constrained to promise her that if she were to marry, it would be with Patin rather than with anyone else. Patin, hearing this, taking greater pride in himself than he had by nature, which was no little, said to her:

"My dear, I have heard that King Lisuarte has a daughter; throughout the world she is lauded for her great beauty, and I wish to go to his court and I shall say that she is not as beautiful as you are and that I shall fight the two best knights who would say the contrary, for they tell me there are some there very highly esteemed at arms; and if I do not overcome them in one day, I want that king to order my head cut off."

"That you shall not do," said the queen, "for if that maiden is very beautiful, it does not take away from me the part that God gave me, if any, and in something else more reasonable and less prideful you can show your excellence; for this quest on

which you set forth, besides not being proper for a man of such eminence as you have, since it is unreasonable and presumptuous, you ought not to expect a happy conclusion."

"No matter what happens," said he, "this which I tell you I carry out in your service and for the great love that I have for you, as a token that just as you are the most beautiful woman in the world, you are loved by the finest knight that could be found in it."

And so he bade her farewell; and with his fine arms and ten squires he journeyed to Great Britain and immediately went to where he knew King Lisuarte was; who, as he saw him thus accompanied, thought he was probably a circumspect man and received him very kindly; and as soon as he was disarmed, all gazed at him with admiration as he was large of body and they considered that by rights he really must be very valiant. The king asked him who he was. He told him:

"King, I shall tell you my name, for I do not come to your court to conceal my identity, but to make myself known to you. Know you that I am Patin, brother of the Emperor of Rome; and as soon as I see the queen and her daughter Oriana, you will know the cause of my coming."

When the king heard he was a man of such high estate, he embraced him and said:

"Good friend, we are quite pleased with your arrival, and you shall see the queen and her daughter, and all the other ladies of my court, whenever you please."

Then he seated him with himself at table, where they dined in a way appropriate to the table of such a great man. Patin gazed about, and as he saw so many knights he marvelled to see them, and considered less than nothing the court of the emperor his brother, and every other court that he had seen. Don Grumedan took him to his lodging by order of the king and paid him high honor.

Next day, after having heard mass, the king took Patin and Don Grumedan with him and went to see the queen, who had already found out who he was from the king. He having been received by her, she had him sit down before her and next to her daughter, who was much diminished in the beauty that she

was accustomed to have, because of her anger that you have already heard about. When Patin saw her, he was thunderstruck and said to himself that all those who praised her spoke not half the truth about how beautiful she was; so that his heart was changed with respect to what he came for, and with all its force was set on having her. And he thought that since he was of such high rank and so excellent as a person and heir to the empire, if he were to ask for her in marriage, she would not be denied him; and taking the king and queen aside he said to them:

"I have come to your court to marry your daughter, and this is on account of your excellence and her beauty, for if I had desired other ladies I would find some of such great rank in accordance with what I am and what I expect to have."

The king said:

"We thank you very much for what you have said, but the queen and I have promised our daughter not to marry her against her will, and we shall have to speak with her before answering you."

The king said this in order that Patin not be rendered antagonistic to him, but he did not have it in his heart to give her to him or to any other who would take her out of that land where he would be lord. Patin was very happy with this reply and waited there five days expecting to succeed in getting what he so much desired, but neither the king nor the queen, considering it a wild idea, said anything to their daughter. But Patin asked the king one day how the matter of his marriage was progressing. He said to him:

"I am doing as much as I can, but it is necessary that you speak with my daughter and ask her to carry out my command."

Patin went to Oriana and said to her:

"Lady Oriana, I wish to ask something that would be much to your honor and advantage."

"What thing is it?" said she.

"That you carry out a command of your father," said he.

She, who did not know why he said it to her, replied:

"That I shall gladly do, for I am certain that I shall gain these two things that you mention, honor and advantage."

Patin was very happy at such a reply, for he indeed thought that he had already won her, and he said:

"I wish to go through this land seeking adventures, and before long you will hear things said of me such as more rightly will cause you to agree to what I desire."

And so he said to the king that he wanted to leave at once in order to see the wonders of that land of his. The king said to him:

"That is up to you; but if you believe me, you would forego it; for you will find great adventures and dangers, and very strong, robust knights trained at arms."

"I am greatly pleased with all that," said he, "for if they are strong and bold, they will not find me weak or languid, a fact which my deeds will confirm to you."

And having taken leave of him, he went on his way very happy with Oriana's reply; and therefore he was going along singing, as you have already heard, when his contrary fortune guided him to that place where Amadis was mourning. This is the reason why this knight came from a land so distant.

So now, returning to the subject matter, after Durin left Amadis, it being already bright daylight, he passed by where Patin remained wounded, and the latter had taken from his head what was left of his helmet and his face and neck were covered with blood; and when he saw Durin, he said to him:

"Good youth, tell me, as you hope that God may make you a good man, whether you know of some place near here where one could have this wound cared for."

"Yes, I do," said he, "but in those who are there sadness is so excessive that they will not pay heed to anything else."

"Why is that?" said the knight.

"On account of a knight," said Durin, "who, having won that seigniory and seen Apolidon's and his mistress's images and secret things, which no one until now has been able to see, has now departed from there with such great sorrow that nothing short of his death is expected."

"It appears to me," said the knight, "that you are talking about the Firm Island."

"That is true," said Durin.

"What!" said the knight. "Does it already have a lord? By Heaven I am sorry, for I was going there to test myself and win the seigniory."

Durin smiled and said:

"Certainly, knight, if you do not bring some of your prowess concealed, as regards what you have shown here, you would have little advantage, and rather I believe that it would be to your dishonor."

The knight stood up then as well as he could and tried to grasp the reins of Durin's horse; but Durin drew back from him, and as he could not seize them, he said:

"Youth, tell me who was the knight who won the Firm Island?"

"Tell me first who you are," said Durin.

"You shall not wait long for that," said he. "Know you that I am Patin, brother of the emperor of Rome."

"Thank God!" said Durin, "you are of higher lineage than of excellence at arms or in restraint; now know you that the knight you ask about is the one who departed from you, and from what you saw of him you will be able to believe that he deserved to be worthy of what he won."

And leaving him, he went on his way and took the direct road to London very eager to tell Oriana all that had happened to Amadis.

CHAPTER XLVIII

How Don Galaor, Florestan, and Agrajes went in search of Amadis, and how Amadis, having abandoned his arms and changed his name, retired to a solitary life with a good old man in a hermitage.

How Amadis departed in great sorrow from the Firm Island has already been told to you — for it was so secret that Don Galaor and Don Florestan, his brothers, and his cousin Agrajes were not aware of it — and how he took assurance from Ysanjo that the latter would not tell of his departure until the next day after mass. Ysanjo complied, for having heard mass, they asked for Amadis, and he told them,

"Arm yourselves and I shall tell you his message."

And after they were armed, Ysanjo began to weep bitterly and said:

"Oh, sirs, what sorrow and what pain have come upon us in our lord's remaining with us so short a time!"

Then he related how Amadis had left the castle, and the sorrow and grief that he had manifested, and all that he had ordered him to say, and what he told them to do with that land, and how he begged them not to come after him, for they could not in any way bring help to him or give him comfort, and that, in God's name, they should not grieve on account of his death.

"Oh, Holy Mary, help us!" said they; "the finest knight in the world is going to die; it is necessary that, disregarding his order, we go look for him, and if with our lives we cannot give him comfort, it will be our deaths in company with his."

Ysanjo told Don Galaor how he begged him to make Gandalin a knight, and to take with him Ardian, the dwarf. And Ysanjo told them this while weeping bitterly and they likewise; Galaor took in his arms the dwarf, who was loudly mourning and striking his head on a wall, and he said to him:

"Ardian, come with me as your lord commanded, for whatever becomes of me, it will become also of you."

The dwarf said:

"Sir, I shall serve you, but not as my master until I have definite news of Amadis."

Then they mounted their horses, and with Ysanjo pointing out to them the road that Amadis had taken, all three started out on it and journeyed all day without meeting anyone to interrogate. And they reached the place where Patin lay wounded and his horse dead and where his squires were, who had come and were going about cutting wood and branches on which to carry him, for he was very faint from the great amount of blood that he had lost and unable to say anything to them; and he made signs to them to leave him, and they asked the squires who had wounded that knight. They told him they knew only what he told them on their arrival: that he had jousted with a knight who was coming from the Firm Island and who easily had overthrown him at their first encounter, and immediately had remounted, and with a single blow of the sword had given him that wound and had killed his horse; and as soon as he left him, he had found out — he said — from a maiden that that knight was the one who won the lordship of the Firm Island. Don Galaor said to them:

"Good squires, did you see in which direction that knight went?"

"No," said they; "but before we arrived there we saw a knight going through this forest armed on a big horse, weeping and cursing his luck; and a squire behind him who was carrying his arms; and his shield had a field of gold and two purple lions on it; and the squire likewise was going along weeping very bitterly."

They said:

"That is he."

Then they went in that direction at full speed; and on leaving that forest, they found a broad countryside in which there were many roads on which there were tracks leading in every direction, so that they were not able to find his; then they decided to separate and that in order to know what each one had sought out in that quest and the lands through which he had journeyed, they should come together on Saint John's Day at the court of King Lisuarte; and if until then their luck should be so adverse to them that they had found out nothing about him, that they would make another agreement there. And then they embraced each other weeping and parted, carrying very firm in their hearts the resolve to undergo all the hardships that might befall them on their quest, until they concluded it. But this was in vain; for although they journeyed through many lands, in which they experienced great adventures and many dangers at arms, as those who were of strong and brave hearts, and enduring great hardships, it was not their luck to find out any news of him. Their exploits will not be related here, because they failed in their quest; and the cause of it was that Amadis departed from where he left Patin wounded, journeyed through the forest, and on the way out of it found an open area in which there were many roads, and he turned aside from it so that from there they might not pick up his trail, and set out through a valley and over a mountain, and he was going along thinking so hard that the horse went wherever it chose; and at noon the horse reached some trees that were on the bank of a stream that came down from the mountain, and with the great heat and the toil of the night it stopped there. And Amadis emerged from his preoccupation and looked in all directions and saw no town, at which he was pleased; then he got down and drank some water; and Gandalin arrived, who was going behind him, and taking the horses and putting them out to graze on the grass, he returned to his master, and found him so faint that he seemed more dead than alive; but he dared not disturb him in his preoccupation and he threw himself in front of him; Amadis emerged from his revery at about sunset, and getting up, kicked Gandalin and said:

"Are you sleeping, or what are you doing?"

"I am not sleeping," said he, "but I am thinking of two things that concern you, and if you want to hear me, I shall tell you of them; if not, I shall abstain from doing so."

Amadis said to him:

"Go saddle the horses, and I shall leave; for I shouldn't want those who might look for me to find me."

"Sir," said Gandalin, "you are in a remote place and your horse, according to his state of weariness and exhaustion, if you don't give him some rest, will not be able to carry you."

Amadis said, weeping:

"Do what you think best, for whether resting or traveling, I shall have no repose."

Gandalin took care of the horses, and returned to him and begged him to eat some meat pie that he brought, but he would not do so. And Gandalin said:

"Sir, do you want me to tell you the two things I was thinking about?"

"Tell what you wish," said he, "for no longer do I care what is said or done, nor would I want to live any longer in the world as soon as I have come to confession."

Gandalin said:

"Still, sir, I beg you to hear me."

Then he said:

"I have been thinking a great deal about this letter that Oriana sent you and about the words that the knight with whom you fought said; and as the constancy of many women is very slight, their desires changing from one man to another, it could be that Oriana has you deceived, and sought, before you found it out, to feign anger against you; and the other thing is that I consider her so good and so loyal that she would not be so moved unless something falsely had been told her about you that she probably considers true, feeling in her heart, which loves you so unswervingly, that you likewise ought to love her; and since you know that you have never deceived her, and if something was said to her, she will find out the truth, in which you will be without blame, whereby she will not only repent of what she has done, but with great humility will ask your pardon and you will return with her to those great delights that your heart

desires. Is it not better that while awaiting this remedy, you eat and take such comfort whereby you may sustain your life? For if you die with such little hope and courage, you lose her and you lose the honor of this world and even the other world that you may have provisionally"

"By Heaven, be silent!" said Amadis, "for such madness and falsehood you have spoken that everyone would be enraged with it; and you tell me in order to comfort me, what you do not believe can be; for Oriana, my lady, has never deceived in anything; and if I die it is right, not that I deserve it, but because thereby I carry out her desire and command; and if I didn't know that you have told me this in order to comfort me, I would cut off your head; and know you that you have made me very angry, and from now on don't dare to say to me anything like that."

And leaving him, he went for a walk along the riverbank below, thinking so hard that he had no awareness of himself. Gandalin slept as one who had gone two days and one night without sleeping; and Amadis on returning, now relieved of his anxiety, and seeing how he was sleeping so calmly, went and saddled his horse and hid Gandalin's saddle and bridle among some thick underbrush so that he would not be able to follow him. And taking his arms, he plunged into the most heavily wooded part of the mountain with great anger toward Gandalin on account of what he had said to him.

Then he journeyed thus all night and the next day until vespers. Then he entered a broad fertile plain that was at the foot of a mountain, and on it there were two tall trees that overlooked a spring; and he went there to give water to his horse, for that whole day he had gone without finding water; and when he reached the spring he saw a man in holy orders, his head and beard white, and he was watering an ass, and was dressed in a very poor cassock of goat's wool. Amadis greeted him and asked him if he was a priest. The good man told him that he had been one for a good forty years.

"Thank God!" said Amadis, "Now I beg you to rest here tonight for the love of God, and you must hear me in confession, for I have great need of it."

"In God's name!" said the good man.

Amadis got off his horse and placed his arms on the ground, and unsaddled his horse and left it to crop the grass; and he disarmed himself and knelt before the good man, and began to kiss his feet. The good man took him by the hand, and raising him up, made him sit beside him and saw that he was the most handsome knight he had ever seen in his life; but he saw him pale and his face and chest bathed in tears that he was shedding, and he was sorry for him and said:

"Knight, it seems that you are very sad; and if it is because of some sin that you have committed, and these tears come to you from repentance for it, you were born into this world with good fortune, but if some temporal things cause your sadness, for according to your age and good looks, you rightly ought not to be very withdrawn from them, remember God and ask of Him mercy to bring you to His service."

And he raised his hand and blessed him and said to him:

"Now tell all the sins that you remember."

Amadis did this, telling him all about himself, leaving out nothing. The good man said:

"According to your understanding and the very high lineage that you come from, you should not kill or ruin yourself for anything that may have happened to you, much less for actions relating to women, who easily are won and lost. And I advise you not to consider any such thing and give up any such folly which you may not be committing out of love for God who is not pleased with such things; and even for mundane reasons one should reject it, for one cannot and should not love someone who does not love him."

"Good sir," said Amadis, "I am wounded to such an extent that I cannot live much longer, and I beg of you, in the name of that powerful Lord whose faith you sustain, that you please take me with you for this short time that I may last, and I shall take counsel with you concerning my soul; since no longer do I need arms or horse, I shall leave them here and go with you on foot, doing that penance that you impose on me; and if you do not do this, you wrong God, for as a lost soul I shall go through this forest without finding anyone to help me."

The good man, who saw him so genteel and so sincere of heart to do good, said:

"Surely, sir, it does not befit such a knight as you are to give up thus, as if everyone had failed him, and much less because of a woman, for women's love is nothing more than what their eyes see and when they hear a few words spoken to them, and when that is over, they forget at once, especially in those false love affairs that are entered into contrary to the service of the most high God; for that same sin that engenders them, rendering them at the beginning sweet and delicious, makes them come out in reverse with such a cruel and bitter fruition as you now have. But as for you, who are so excellent and have land and control over many people and are the loyal advocate and guardian of all men and all women who receive injustice, and are such a maintainer of the right, it would be a great misfortune and great harm and loss to the world if you continued to forsake it. And I do not know who the woman is who has brought you to such a state, but it seems to me that if in one single woman there were all the goodness and beauty that there is in all the others, on account of her such a man as you ought not to be lost."

"Good sir," said Amadis, "I do not ask of you advice in this matter, for I do not need it, but I ask of you counsel for my soul and that you be pleased to take me with you; and if you do not do this, I have no other remedy but to die on this mountain."

And the good man began to weep with the great sorrow that he had, so that the tears were falling on his beard, which was long and white; and he said:

"My son, sir, I dwell in a place very forbidding and difficult to live in, which is a hermitage located a good seven leagues out to sea on a very high cliff, and this cliff is so narrow that no ship can reach it except in summer, and there I have dwelt for thirty years, and anyone who dwells there must leave worldly delights and pleasures; and my sustenance is from alms that those of the land give me."

"All of this," said Amadis, "is to my taste, and I should like to live thus with you during the short lifetime that remains to me, and I beg you, for the love of God, to grant it to me."

The good man agreed to it much against his will, and Amadis said to him:

"Now command me, father, what to do, for I shall be completely obedient to you."

The good man blessed him and then said vespers, and bringing out a bag of bread and fish, told Amadis to eat, but he did not do so, although three days had already gone by during which he had not eaten; and the priest said:

"You will have to give obedience to me, and I order you to eat; if not, your soul would be in great danger if thus you should die."

Then he ate, but very little, for he could not free himself from that great anguish in which he was; and when it was time to sleep, the good man threw himself down on his cloak, and at his feet Amadis, who, out of great sorrow, the greater part of the night did nothing but toss and turn and heave great sighs; and now tired and overcome by drowsiness, he fell asleep, and in that sleep he dreamed that he was locked in a dark room that had no view, and not finding any exit, his heart became disconsolate, and it seemed to him that his cousin Mabilia and the maiden of Denmark came to him, and in front of them was a ray of sunshine that took away the darkness and illuminated the chamber, and that they took him by the hands and said:

"Sir, come forth to this great palace"; and it seemed that there was great joy; and on coming forth, he saw his lady Oriana, encircled by a great flame of fire, and he himself was shouting, saying: "Holy Mary, help her!" And he passed through the midst of the fire, but felt nothing, and taking her in his arms, he put her in a garden, the greenest and most beautiful he had ever seen. And at his great shouts, the good man awoke and took him by the hand, asking him what was the matter with him. He said:

"Sir, I had just now while sleeping such great anxiety that I almost died."

"So it seemed from your shouts," said he, "but it is time for us to go."

And then he mounted his donkey and started out on the road. Amadis was going with him on foot, but the good man by dint of great urging made him ride his horse, and so they went along

together as you hear, and Amadis asked him to grant him a favor in which he would not risk anything. He willingly agreed to it, and Amadis asked him as long as he dwelt with him not to tell anybody who he was or anything about his affairs, and not to call him by his name, but by any other he wished to give him, and as soon as he was dead to notify his brothers so that they might transport him to his own land.

"Your death and life are in God," said he, "and do not talk any more about it, for He will give you help, if you recognize Him and love and serve Him as you should; but tell me, what name would you like to have?"

"Whatever one you consider good," said he.

The good man kept gazing at him, noting how handsome and well proportioned he was and the great distress in which he was; and he said:

"I wish to give you a name that will be in conformity with your person and the anguish in which you are, for you are young and very handsome and your life is in great bitterness and in darkness: I want you to have the name Beltenebros."

Amadis was pleased with that name, and considered the good man understanding in having given it to him so rightly; and by this name he was called as long as he lived with him, and for a long time afterward he was no less praised under that name than under the name of Amadis, in accordance with the great feats that he performed, as will be told later.

Then talking about this and other things, they reached the sea, it being already nightfall, and they found there a boat in which the good man was to be transported to his hermitage. And Beltenebros gave his horse to the sailors, and they gave him an old cloak and a tabard of heavy brown wool; and they got in the boat and went toward the cliff, and Beltenebros asked the good man what his dwelling place was called and what his name was.

"The dwelling place," said he, "is called the Poor Cliff, because no one can dwell there except in extreme poverty, and my name is Andalod, and I was a well educated cleric, and I spent my youth in many vanities; but God, through his mercy, set me to thinking that those who are to serve Him have great

difficulties and obstacles in communicating with the people — for in accordance with our weakness, we are inclined to evil rather than to what is good — and therefore I decided to withdraw to this very solitary place, where thirty years have already passed during which I never had left it until now, when I came to the burial of a sister of mine."

Beltenebros was very fond of the solitude and ruggedness of that place, and when he thought about dying there, he received some surcease. Thus they went sailing in their boat until they reached the Cliff. The hermit said:

"Go back."

And the sailors returned to land with their boat; and Beltenebros, thinking about that austere and holy life of that good man, with many tears and groans, not from devotion but out of great despair, thought that along with the hermit, he would endure everything while he lived, which to his way of thinking would not be long.

Thus, just as you hear, Amadis, under the name of Beltenebros, was secluded on that Poor Cliff which was located seven leagues out to sea, forsaking the world, honor, those arms with which he had attained such lofty heights, wasting away his days in tears and endless grief, having no memory of that valiant Galpano, that strong King Abies of Ireland and the arrogant Dardan; nor of that famous Apolidon either, whom in his own time, or for a hundred years afterwards, no knight had ever surpassed in excellence — all save Apolidon being persons who by his own strong arm were overcome and killed, along with many others of whom the story has told you. Then if he were asked the cause of such deterioration, what would he reply? Only that it was the anger and fury of a weak woman, invoking the example of that strong Hercules, that brave Samson, that learned Virgil, not forgetting among them King Solomon, all of whom by this same passion were tormented and subjugated, and many others whom he could mention. With this would her guilt be pardoned? Certainly not; because the mistakes of others are to be remembered, not to be imitated but in order to flee from them and use them as admonishments; then was it right to have pity for a knight so vanquished, so subdued, for such a trivial cause, in order to take him from

there with victories double those of the past? I would say no, unless the things done by him at his own great peril redounded so greatly to the advantage of those who, after God, had no other help but his. So that, having greater pity for these than for that one who having conquered everyone, could not conquer or subdue himself, we shall relate in what form when most without hope, when he had already reached death's door, the Lord of the world miraculously protected him.

But because thus it maintains the sequence of our story, first we must tell you something of what happened in the meantime. Gandalin, who had remained sleeping on the mountain, when Amadis, his lord, left him, on awakening after a long interval and looking all around, saw only his horse; and quickly he arose and began to shout, weeping, and searching through the thick underbrush; but when he did not find Amadis or his horse, immediately he was certain that he had left him, and he went back to mount and go after him, but he did not find his saddle or bridle. Then he began to curse himself and his luck and the day he was born; and while going back and forth, he found them thrust into a very dense thicket. And saddling his horse, he mounted it, and journeyed for five days, lodging in the wilderness and in towns while asking about his lord; but all was wasted effort. And after six days, Fortune guided him to the spring where Amadis had left his arms, and he found beside them a tent set up and two maidens in it; and Gandalin dismounted and asked them if they had seen a knight who was bearing a shield with a device of gold with two lions in red on it. They told him:

"We have not seen such a knight, but we found this shield and all the very good knightly equipment beside this spring, without anyone's guarding it."

When he heard this, he said, tearing his hair:

"Oh, Holy Mary! save me! My lord, the best knight in the world, is dead or lost."

And he began to grieve so deeply that he moved the damsels to great compassion, and he began to say:

"My lord, how poorly have I protected you, for by all those in the world I ought rightly to be hated, and the world ought not to keep me in it, since I failed you at such a time! You, my

lord, were the one who protected everybody, and now you are abandoned by all, for now the world and those who are in it fail you; and I, a wretch more unfortunate than all those ever born, by reason of a lessening of vigilance, forsook you at the time of your sad death."

And he fell face downward on the ground as though dead. The maidens shouted, saying:

"Holy Mary! this squire is dead!"

And they went to him to resuscitate him, but they could not, for many times he was at death's door; but they stayed with him so long, throwing water on his face, that they brought him back to consciousness, and they said to him:

"Good squire, do not despair about what you do not know for certain, for you do no good for your lord, and it is more important for you to search until you find out whether he is dead or alive, for good men with great sorrows must exert themselves and not despairingly let themselves die."

Gandalin was encouraged by those words of the maidens and decided to look for him everywhere until death should overtake him in his search; and he said to the maidens:

"Ladies, where did you see the arms?"

"We shall gladly tell you that," said they; "Know you that we were going in company with Don Guilan the Pensive, who had released us, and more than twenty other maidens and knights, from the prison of Gandinos the Good-for-nothing; for Guilan did so well at arms that overcoming all the customs of Gandinos's castle and finally him himself, he took us all out of prison, and made him swear never more to maintain those customs. And the knights and maidens went where they pleased, and we came with Guilan to this region which we had left, and it has been a good four days since we arrived at this fountain; and when Guilan saw the shield about which you are asking, he was greatly distressed; and dismounting from his horse, he said that it was not fitting that the shield of the finest knight in the world remain thus, and he lifted it from the ground with heartfelt tears and put it on that branch of that tree and told us to guard it while he went to look for the one whose shield it was; and we had these tents set up, and Don Guilan traveled for three days through

all this region and did not find anything, and last night very late he arrived here, and in the morning he gave the equipment to the squires and he girded on the sword and took the shield and said:

" 'By heaven, oh shield, this is a bad exchange, to leave your lord and go with me!' "

"And he said he was going to the court of King Lisuarte to give those arms to Queen Brisena, so that she might order them conserved; and we are going there, and so will all those who were imprisoned, to beg as a favor of the queen that she reward Don Guilan for what he did for us; and the knights, the same of the king."

"Then God be with you," said Gandalin, "For I, taking your counsel and advice, am going to look for that most wretched and unfortunate man ever born, in whom is my life and death."

CHAPTER XLIX

How Durin, Oriana's page, returned to his mistress with the reply to the message that he had brought for Amadis, and concerning the weeping she did when she had the news.

After Durin left Amadis in the forest where Patin remained wounded, as we have related, he started out on the road to London, where King Lisuarte was, and he hurried his pace in order to acquaint Oriana with that unfortunate news about Amadis, so that, if it were possible, he might help somewhat in the matter in which her letter had done so much harm. And he covered so much distance that in ten days he reached London; and dismounting at his lodging, he went to the palace of the queen. And when Oriana saw him, her heart was so startled that she was not able to calm it; and at once she went to her chamber and lay down on her bed and gave orders to the maid of Denmark to call Durin, the latter's brother, and to be careful that no one see her. The maiden called him and went out to where Mabilia was; Oriana said to him:

"Friend, now tell me where you went and where you found Amadis, and what he did when you gave him my letter, and if you saw Queen Briolanja; tell me everything, and let nothing be omitted."

"Lady," said Durin, "I shall tell you everything, although there is much to relate, for I have seen many marvellous and strange things. And I tell you that I arrived at Sobradisa and saw Briolanja, who is so beautiful and so elegant and with such grace that, excepting you, I believe that in the whole world there is not such a beautiful woman as she. And there I found news of

Amadis and his brothers, who had departed, and by following their trail I ascertained that they turned aside from their route and went with a maiden to the Firm Island to test themselves in the strange adventures that are there. And when I reached there, Amadis was entering beneath the arch of loyal lovers where no one can enter if he has deceived the woman whom first he began to love."

"How," said Oriana, "did he dare to try such an adventure knowing that he could not complete it?"

"It did not seem to me," said Durin, "that it occurred in that way; rather, he completed it with greater fidelity than any other one who had been there, because for him were made at his reception the signals that up until then had never been made."

When she heard this, in her heart she felt great joy in finding out that what was considered sound and so certain was so contrary to her opinion. And likewise he told her how Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes, on essaying the adventure of the guarded room were not able to finish it and remained as stunned as if they were dead; and how afterwards Amadis had tried it and completed it, winning the sovereignty of that island, which was the most beautiful in the world and the strongest; and how they had all entered the chamber, which was the rarest and finest that could be found. This having been heard by Oriana, she said:

"Be silent for a bit."

And raising her hands to heaven, she began to beseech God that He through His pity might contrive how she could quickly be in that chamber with that one who through his great excellence had won it. Then she said:

"Now tell me: what did Amadis do when you gave him my letter?"

Tears came to the eyes of Durin, and he said to her:

"Lady, I would advise you not to seek to find out about it, because you have committed the greatest cruelty and act of deviltry that any maiden in the world has ever done."

"Alas! Holy Mary! help me!" said Oriana. "What are you saying to me?"

"I tell you," said Durin, "that in rage you have slain, with the greatest possible injustice, the best and most faithful knight

that ever woman had or will have as long as the world endures. Cursed be the hour in which such a thing was imagined, and cursed be death for not having killed me beforehand so that I might never have gone with such a message; for if I had known what I was carrying, I would have gone and lost myself out in the world rather than appear before him! For you in sending it and I in carrying it have been the cause of his death."

Then he told her what Amadis did and said when he gave him the letter, and how he came away from the Firm Island and what he said in the hermitage, and how there he departed alone from them and plunged into a mountain area and how following him against his prohibition, he and Gandalin found him beside the fountain, not daring to appear before him; and the sorrowful tears he shed there, and how Patin passed by there singing and the words that he spoke, and the fight he had with Amadis; and afterwards the latter left him, telling Gandalin not to prevent his death; otherwise, he should not go with him, so that not a thing remained that he did not tell her just as it had happened and as he had seen it.

When Oriana heard this the rage in her heart was shattered and she was overcome by pity to a greater degree than she had been by anger and fury, that great mastery that truth has over falsehood causing it. So that in her thought her guilt together with the blame for which the one who was without any was suffering, had such force that they left her almost dead without any feeling, without being able to say a single word.

Durin, when he saw her thus, had pity on her, but he saw clearly that she was getting what she deserved; and he went to Mabilia and to the maid of Denmark and said to them:

"Help Oriana, because she really needs help, for it seems to me that if she erred, she admits her share of the wrong."

And he went to his lodging, and they went to Oriana; and on seeing her so insensible, they closed the door of the room, and by throwing water on her face, brought her back to consciousness. And when she spoke, she said:

"Alas, wretched, hapless woman that I am, for I have killed the thing I loved most in the world! Alas, my lord, I have killed you very wrongfully, and rightly shall I die for you, although your

death will be poorly avenged by mine; for you, my lord, being loyal, will not be satisfied that the disloyal and unfortunate woman should die."

She said this with as much pain and anguish as if her heart were breaking to pieces; but those servants and friends of hers, on sending for Durin and learning all that had happened, wholeheartedly helped with that medicine that both Oriana and Amadis needed for their relief; for after having given her much consolation, they had her write a letter with very humble words and very insistent entreaties — as later will be told with more detail — for Amadis to leave everything and come to her, that she was waiting for him in her castle of Miraflores where amends would be made for her great error. She entrusted the letter to the maid of Denmark, who with much pleasure would undertake every task that might come to her in order to give aid to the two persons she loved most. In order that without any suspicion of anything she might be able better to make that journey, Durin having said that Amadis in his sorrow had made much mention of his foster father, Don Gandales, they, believing that he would be there, rather than elsewhere, decided that the maiden should carry gifts to the queen of Scotland and tell her news of Mabilia, her daughter, and bring to Mabilia news from the queen. Oriana spoke with the queen, her mother, informing her that that maiden was being sent with that message; she considered it good and likewise sent gifts by her.

This having been agreed upon, she taking with her Durin, her brother, and a nephew of Gandales, Enil by name, who had come there recently to look for his lord, and traveling until they arrived at a port called Vegil, which is in Great Britain, they boarded a ship for Scotland, and after seven days of navigation, it arrived in Scotland at a town called Poligez. From there the maid of Denmark went directly to the castle of Gandales, and found that he was out hunting with his squires, and he was sent for and came to her and they greeted each other. And Don Gandales saw by her speech that she was a foreigner and asked her where she was from, and she told him:

"I am a messenger of some maidens who love you very much, who sent me with gifts to the queen of Scotland."

"Good maiden," said he, "tell me, if you please, who are they?"

"Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte, and Mabilia, whom you know."

"Lady," said he, "be you very welcome, and let us go to my house, and you shall rest, and from there I shall take you to the queen."

She agreed, and they went together; and speaking of this and that, Gandales asked her about Amadis, his foster son, for she was very sad on observing that he was not there; and in order not to make him worry, she did not tell him that he was lost, but that after he left the court to avenge Briolanja, he had not returned to it.

"Rather, they thought there when I left, that he had come to this land with Agrajes, his cousin, to see you who brought him up and the queen, his aunt; I was bringing him letters from Queen Brisena and from other friends of his, with which he would be pleased."

She said this because if he were hiding, on learning what she said, he would consider it good to see her and talk with her; but Gandales did not know anything about him. There the maiden rested for two days, and she was highly honored and served by all, including the wife of Gandales, who was a very noble lady; and then she went to where the queen was and gave her the letters and the gifts that were sent her.

CHAPTER L

How Guilan the Pensive took the shield and the arms of Amadis, which he found at the fountain of the grassy plain without any guard, and brought them to the court of King Lisuarte.

After Don Guilan the Pensive left the fountain where he found the arms of Amadis, as has been told you, he traveled seven days over the road to the court of King Lisuarte, and always wore the shield of Amadis slung from his neck; he never took it off except in two places where he was forced to fight, when he gave it to his squires and took his own. And one was when he met two knights, nephews of Arcalaus, and they recognized the shield and sought to take it away from him, saying they would take it to their uncle or the head of the one who was bearing it; but Don Guilan, on learning that they were of the lineage of such an evil man, said:

"Now I think less of you."

And then they attacked each other fiercely, for the two knights were young and sturdy; but Don Guilan, although he was older, was more valiant and skilled in arms; and although the battle lasted for quite a while, at the end he killed one of them, and the other fled to the mountain, and Don Guilan remained wounded, but not seriously; and he went on his way as before. And that night he lodged in the house of a knight whom he knew, and who did him great honor, and in the morning he gave him a lance, for his own was broken in the previous joust that he had had, and he went his way until he reached a river called Guinnon; and the water was high and there was a bridge of wood across it, wide enough for two knights to pass each other.

And at the end of it he saw a knight standing, who wanted to cross the bridge, and he had a green shield with a white band on it, and he recognized that he was Ladasin, his cousin; and on the other side was a knight who was defending the passage and was yelling:

"Knight, don't come on the bridge unless you want to joust."

"On account of your joust," said Ladasin, "I shall not fail to cross."

Then, grasping his shield, he started across the bridge. And the other knight, who was guarding the bridge was on a big bay horse, and on his neck he had a white shield and a brown lion on it, and the helmet likewise, and the knight was large of body and was well mounted. And when he saw Ladasin on the bridge, he let himself go at him at full gallop and they both jousted at the entrance to the bridge, and it so happened that Ladasin and his horse fell from the bridge into the water, and he grasped some willow branches that he saw, and with great effort came out on the bank, for he had fallen from high up, handicapped by the weight of his armor; and he who overthrew him, retraced his footsteps along the bridge and placed himself where he was before. And Don Guilan reached his cousin and he and his squires pulled him from the water and took off his shield and helmet and said to him:

"Certainly, cousin, you would soon have been dead if your great courage had not prevented it by your taking hold of these branches; and all knights ought to fear jousts on bridges, because those who guard them already have their horses trained, and win honor more through them than by their own valor; and as for myself, I would gladly rather go now by a roundabout way; but since it has happened to you thus, it is proper that I avenge you if I can."

And meanwhile Ladasin's horse crossed over to the other side, and the knight gave orders to his men to take it, and they put it in a tower, which was in the middle of the river, and was a beautiful fortress, and [from the other side] it was reached by a stone bridge.

Don Guilan took off Amadis's shield and gave it to his squires, and took his own and his lance and went to the bridge; but the

other knight, who was guarding it, came at once toward him and they ran at each other at the full speed of their horses; and the encounter was with such force that the knight was thrown from his saddle and fell in the river, and Guilan fell on the bridge, and almost would have fallen in the water if he had not held on to the bridge timbers, and the knight who fell in the water seized Guilan's horse, which he found beside him, and pulled it out, and the squires of Guilan took the other man's horse, and Guilan looked and saw that the knight was at the foot of the bridge, holding his horse by the reins while shaking off the water; and he said:

"Order my horse given to me and we shall go."

"What!" said the knight. "Do you expect to leave here with so much?"

"With so much," said Guilan; "for already by crossing we have done what we should."

"That cannot be," said he; "for since we both fell, the battle is not concluded until we come to the swords."

"What!" said Don Guilan. "By force you want me to fight you; isn't the trouble that you have caused sufficient? For bridges are open for all to pass over them."

"I don't care anything about that," said he, "for it still is necessary that you feel how my sword cuts, either by force or willingly."

Then he jumped on his horse without setting a foot in the stirrup, so agile that it was a wonderful thing to see him, and he straightened his helmet very quickly and went to place himself on the road along which Guilan was to pass, and he said to him:

"Sir knight, tell me before we fight, whether you are a native of the land of King Lisuarte or of his household."

"Why do you ask?" said Guilan.

"Now would to God I had King Lisuarte as I have you," said the knight, "for I swear by my head that he never more would reign!"

Don Guilan was very angry about this, and said:

"Certainly, if my lord, King Lisuarte, were here as I am, he would quickly chastise this madness of yours. As for myself, I tell you that I am his subject and a dweller in his court, and from

what you have said, I am desirous of fighting with you, as before I was not; and if I can, I shall bring it to pass that that king of whom you speak not receive offense or disservice from you."

The knight laughed as if in scorn and said:

"I promise you that before noon you will be put in such straits that having been rendered quite ridiculous, you will carry out my orders; and I want you to know who I am and what gifts you will give him on my behalf."

Don Guilan, who with great fury wanted to attack him, restrained himself in order to find out who he was.

"Now," said he, "know you that I have the name Gandalod, and I am son of Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, the one whom King Lisuarte killed in London, and the presents that you will carry to him are the heads of four knights of his house that I have imprisoned there in my tower — and one of them is Giontes, his nephew — and your right hand cut off and suspended from your neck."

Don Guilan put his hand on his sword and said:

"There is enough in you to be threatening, if I were frightened by threats."

And he went for him, and the other likewise, and they attacked each other with great fury, beginning the fight so fiercely and with such cruelty that it was a wonder to see them; for they struck each other from all sides with such hard and cruel blows, without taking any rest for themselves, that Ladasin and the squires who were watching were frightened and thought that, even though Guilan were victor, neither one of them would be able to survive to escape death. But what helped them was that as both were quite well skilled in arms, they protected themselves very well from the blows and their flesh did not suffer; and when they were continuing thus, thinking only of killing each other, they heard a horn blowing on top of the tower, at which Gandalod was surprised, and he strove hard to finish the fight in order to find out what it could be; and coming to grips with Don Guilan, he threw his arms around him and they seized each other so violently, that pulled from their saddles they fell from their horses to the ground and were grappling a while, tossing around on the field. But each one grasped his sword firmly in his hand

and Don Guilan got loose from Gandalod, rose up first, and gave him two blows; but the other having risen, they began a much stronger and more dangerous battle than before, because, being on foot, they moved closer to each other more easily than on horseback, and they strove mightily to have done; Don Guilan thought that the horn sounded in order to help Gandalod, and Gandalod believed some treachery was afoot in the fortress; so each one without rest or relief tested all his strength against the other; but after they were on foot, Don Guilan began to improve a great deal, at which Ladasin was greatly pleased, as were his squires who were watching him, because Gandalod was no longer able to protect himself well with what he had left of his shield, nor to endure a sword blow that could injure, so tired was he. And Don Guilan, who saw him thus, kept on waiting and gave him when uncovered a blow on the arm which cut it off along with his hand so that he fell to the ground and with him his sword. And Gandalod uttered a great shout and tried to flee to the tower, but Guilan overtook him and jerked his helmet so hard that he pulled it off his head and brought him down at his feet, and he put his sword to his face, saying:

"It is necessary that you go to King Lisuarte with those presents that you indicated to me; but they will be in another manner than what you had thought, and if you don't do this, your head will be separated from your body."

"I will do so," said Gandalod, "for I would rather await the mercy of the king than die now on such an occasion."

Then he took from him a pledge, and he went to the tower, where he heard a great disturbance, and he mounted his horse and Ladasin with him, and they found that the imprisoned men had set themselves free, and having come out of the dungeon, they had armed themselves in the tower with weapons they found there, and they had sounded the horn; and with one of them remaining, the others had come down and killed as many as they could reach. Then Don Guilan and Ladasin having arrived, they saw their companions on top of the gate and a knight with seven churls who were fleeing from the tower and taking refuge in a forest; and those above told them to kill them, especially the knight. They went at once and in a short while they killed four,

and three escaped from them; but the knight was seized and brought to his companions. Don Guilan addressed them and said:

"Sirs, I cannot stop here, for I am going to the queen, but let my cousin Ladasin stay with you and take these knights to King Lisuarte, to do with them whatever he considers right; see to it that this fortress remains under my command."

"We shall do so," they said.

Then Don Guilan took off his shield, which was not worth much according to the way it was hacked in many places; and weeping he took that of Amadis.

Those knights who recognized the shield and saw him weeping, were astounded, and asked why he was bearing it; he told them of the way that he found it at the Fountain of the Grassy Plain with all the other arms, and how he had searched for Amadis through that whole region and had never been able to learn any news of him; they were much grieved, believing that some great misfortune had happened to him.

With this, he parted from them, and without any hindrance occurring, he arrived where the king was, who already had found out how Amadis had completed all the adventures of the Firm Island and had won the sovereignty of it, and how he had left secretly in great sorrow, but no one knew the cause of it, except those men and women identified to you. When Don Guilan arrived, everyone came to see Amadis's shield and to find out something about him, and the king said:

"By heaven, Don Guilan, tell me what you know about Amadis."

"Sire," said he, "I know nothing, for I heard nothing concerning him; but what happened to me with the shield I shall tell you in the presence of the queen, if it so pleases you."

Then the king took him with him, and on reaching the queen, Don Guilan knelt before her and said weeping:

"Madam, I found at a fountain called the Fountain of the Grassy Plain all of Amadis's arms, at which place this shield of his was abandoned, whereat I was greatly distressed; and putting it in a tree, leaving to guard it some maidens whom I was bringing in my company, I went through all that region looking for

Amadis, and it was not my luck to find him, nor any news of him. And knowing the valor of that knight and that his wish was to put it at your service until death, I decided that since I could not bring him, his arms should give you testimony of how obligated I was to you and to him. Let orders be given to put them in a place where all may see them, so that some who come from many regions to this court of yours, may be able to learn something about their owner, and that those arms may be reminders to those who want to be excellent knights, to emulate that great fame that their master won so supremely with them in his time among so many knights."

"I am very sorry," said the queen, "for the loss of such a man, which will cause such bereavement in the world, and you, Don Guilan, I thank very much for what you have done, and thus I shall thank all those who bear arms, if they try to find that one by whom the order of chivalry and matrons and maidens were so esteemed and protected."

The king and all those of the court were very sorrowful about this news, believing that Amadis had died; but especially so was Oriana, who not being able to remain there with her mother, sought refuge in her chamber; where with many tears, she cursed her luck for having been the cause of such misfortune, from which she expected nothing but death. But all the consoling by Mabilia and the expectation of the coming of her maid, who might bring her good news, gave her some consolation; and at the end of five days there arrived there at the court the knights and the maidens whom Don Guilan had taken out of the prison, and who came to the king and the queen to ask them as a favor to thank him for what he had done for them; and there came the maidens who told of the mourning that they saw Gandalin exhibit, not that they knew his name, but saying that he was a squire who was asking for the owner of the shield and of the arms.

Then there arrived there the knights who were bringing Gandalod as a prisoner, and they told the king about the battle that Don Guilan had with him and for what reason, and all the words that passed between them, and how he held them prisoners and in what manner they were set free. The king said:

"In this place I killed your father for the great treason that he committed against me, and here you shall die, for what you wanted to commit against me."

Then he gave orders to have Gandalod and the knight mentioned above as seeking to flee, both flung down from a tower at the foot of which Barsinan, their father, had been burned, as the first part of our story relates.

CHAPTER LI

WHICH TELLS HOW, WHILE BELTENEBROS WAS ON THE POOR CLIFF, A SHIP ARRIVED THERE IN WHICH CORISANDA WAS COMING IN SEARCH OF HER LOVER, FLORESTAN, AND OF THE THINGS THAT HAPPENED; AND WHAT SHE RECOUNTED AT THE COURT OF KING LISUARTE.

Beltenebros being on the Poor Cliff, as we have already told you, one day the hermit had him sit down beside him on a stone bench that was at the door of the hermitage, and said:

"Son, I beg you to tell me what it is that made you shout so in your dreams when we were at the Fountain of the Grassy Plain."

"That I shall tell you, good sir, gladly, and I beseech you in heaven's name to tell me what you make of it, whether it be to my pleasure or my sorrow."

Then he told him the dream as you have already heard, but not to the extent of telling him the names of the maidens. The good man who heard it, remained for a while in thought and then turned to him laughing and said genially:

"Beltenebros, good son, you have made me very happy and you have given me great pleasure with this which you tell me; and likewise may you be, for you very rightly should be. And I want you to know how I understand it; know you that the dark room in which you saw yourself and which you were not able to leave, signifies this anxiety in which you now are, and all the maidens who were opening the door are some of your friends who are talking about your concerns with the woman whom you love most; and they will take action in such wise as to remove you from here and from this distress in which you now are.

And the ray of the sun that was passing in front of them is a message that they will send you of joyous news with which you will go from here; and the fire in which you saw your ladylove is a sign of the pangs of love which she will be suffering on account of you, just as you are for her, and from that fire, which signifies love, you will extricate her, for she will be freed from her pangs when she sees you; and the beautiful garden into which you carry her, signifies the great pleasure she will have at the sight of you. I well know that, in view of my clerical garb, I should not speak of such matters, but I think that it is a greater service to God to tell you the truth, with which you may be consoled than to remain silent and let your life be in a deadly despair."

Beltenebros knelt before him and kissed his hands, thanking God that in his very great distress and sorrow He had given him a person who knew how to counsel him thus, and he prayed to Him with tears that out of His pity He make the words of that holy man, his humble servant, come true. Then he asked him to tell him what the dream meant that he had dreamed the night before Durin gave him the letter, when he was on the Firm Island. The good man said:

"That clearly shows you that you have already passed through all that: I tell you that that high knoll covered with trees on which you saw yourself, and the many people making merry who were around you, represent that Firm Island which you at that time won, whereby you gave great joy to all the dwellers on the island. And the man who came to you the container of bitter electuary is your ladylove's messenger who gave you the letter, for you know better than anyone, since you tasted it, the great bitterness of her words; and the sadness in which you saw the people who had been joyful, is that of those same people of the Island, who because of you are in great sorrow and loneliness; and the clothing that you stripped from yourself represents the arms that you left; and that rocky place where you hid yourself in the water, stands for this Cliff on which you are; and the man in holy orders who was talking to you in a language you did not understand is I, who spoke to you the holy words of God, which previously you did not know or think about."

"Certainly," said Beltenebros, "you are telling me the absolute truth about this dream, for everything happened to me thus, from which I take great hope for the future."

But it was not so certain nor so great as to free him from that anguish in which the despair that he had concerning his lady had placed him, and he very frequently looked landward, remembering the pleasures and great honors that he had there, and on seeing everything reversed with such cruelty, many times he reached such straits that if it had not been for the counsel of that good man his life would have been in great danger — that good man, who in order to withdraw him somewhat from his very great misgivings and his grief, frequently in the company of two youths, his nephews, whom he had with him, had him go fishing with a rod in a small river that was near there, where they caught plenty of fish.

Just as you hear, Beltenebros was doing his penance with much grief and great misgivings, which he had continually, believing that if God through His pity did not help him with the favor of his lady, he would have death nearer than life, and most nights he spent the whole night under some trees with heavy foliage, which were there in an orchard near the hermitage, in order to grieve and weep without the hermit's or the youths' being aware of it. And recalling the loyalty he always had maintained to his lady Oriana and the great deeds he had performed to serve her, and her having given him such a bad reward, without cause or his having deserved it, he composed this song out of the great rage he had, as follows:

Since victory is denied me
Where rightly it was owed to me,
There where glory dies
It is glory for life to die.

And with this death of mine
Will die all my hurts
My hope, my striving,
Love and its deceits.
But there will remain in my memory
A lament never lost,

For in order to kill my glory
My glory and life have been slain.

After he had composed this song that you hear, it happened that being one night under those trees, as was his wont, grieving deeply, weeping very bitterly, much of the night having now passed, he heard some instruments very sweetly playing near there, so that he had a great desire to listen, and he wondered about it, for he really thought that in that place there was no other company than the hermit and himself and the youths. And getting up, he went stealthily to find out who it was; and he saw two maidens beside the fountain who had the instruments in their hands and he heard them play and sing very delightfully; and after an interval during which he listened, he said to them:

"Good maidens, God be with you, for with your very sweet playing you have caused me to miss matins."

And they wondered what man it could be, and they said:

"Friend, be kind enough to tell us what place this is to which we have come, and what man you are who speaks to us."

"Madam," said he, "this place is called Hermitage Cliff on account of a hermit and a hermitage that are here, and I am a very poor man who dwells and lives with him, doing great and very harsh penance for my great misfortune and sins."

Then they said:

"Friend, could we have here some house in which a very sick lady might lodge whom we bring here in order for her to rest two or three days? She is of high rank and moreover rich, and is much abused by love."

When Beltenebros heard this, he said:

"There is a small house here in which I dwell, and if the hermit gives it to you, in order to please you I will sleep outdoors, as many nights I happen to do."

The maidens thanked him very much for what he had said, and considered it a great favor. At this juncture, dawn was already breaking, and Beltenebros saw under some trees on a beautiful and very luxurious bed, the matron about whom they had told him, and four armed knights on the beach, who were guarding her and sleeping, and five men lying near them, who did not

have any arms; and he saw a ship in the sea, equipped with everything it required, and it was moored to an anchor, and the lady seemed quite young and very beautiful, so that he enjoyed looking at her; then he went to the hermit, who was dressing to say mass, and said to him:

"Father, we have strangers; it will be well for you to wait for them and delay the mass."

"I shall do so," said the good man.

Then they both went out of the hermitage and Beltenebros showed him the ship, and they saw that the knights and the other men were bringing the sick lady up to where they were, and her maidens with her, and they asked the hermit whether there might be some house there where they might put her; he said:

"There are two houses over there, in one of them I dwell, and no woman will ever enter it with my consent; in the other dwells this poor gentleman, who is here doing penance, and I would not take it away from him without his approval."

Beltenebros said:

"Father, you may indeed give it to her, for I shall lodge under the trees, as I am accustomed to do many times."

Whereupon they all went into the chapel to hear mass, with Beltenebros, who was looking at the maidens and the knights, and it reminded him of himself, his lady, and his past life, began to weep very loudly and kneeling before the altar, begged the Virgin Mary to help him in that great distress he was in. And the maidens and knights who saw him thus weeping such heartfelt tears, thought he was a man of good life and with respect to his youth and good looks were wondering why he would want to expend all that in such a place for any sin, however grave it might be, since the mercy of God reached everywhere if men are truly repentant. As soon as mass was said, they carried the matron to the chamber and placed her on a very fine bed they had prepared for her. And she wept and wrung her hands out of the great sorrow that was afflicting her.

Beltenebros, on seeing her thus, asked the maidens, who now were taking up their instruments to console her, what was the matter with her or why she was exhibiting such great anguish; they said to him:

"Friend, that lady is very rich and of high rank; and she is beautiful, although her malady now detracts from it; and her worry, although it would not be told to others, will be told you, for you will keep it secret. Know you that it concerns a very great love that torments her, and she goes to look for the one whom she loves at the court of King Lisuarte, and may God grant that she find him there, so that some of her suffering may be appeased."

When he heard mention of the court of King Lisuarte and that the lady was dying of love just as he was, the tears came to his eyes, and he said to them:

"I beg of you, ladies, to tell me the name of the one she loves."

"This knight," said they, "of whom we speak is not of this land, and is one of the finest knights in the world, excepting two only, who are highly esteemed."

"Now I beg of you," said he, "by the faith you owe to God, to tell me his name and the names of those two of whom you speak."

"We shall tell you on condition that you tell us whether you are a knight, for you appear so in all respects, and what your name is."

"I will do so," said he, "in order to find out what I am asking you."

"In the name of God! said they; "now know you that the knight whom the lady loves has the name Don Florestan, brother of the good knight Amadis of Gaul and of Don Galaor, and he is the son of King Perion of Gaul and of the Countess of Selandia."

"Thanks be to God! Now I know that you are telling me the truth about his affairs and his excellence, and I believe you will not praise him so highly that still more praise be not due."

"What!" said they, "do you know him?"

"I saw him not long ago," said he, "in Briolanja's house, and I saw the fight that Amadis and his cousin, Agrajes had with Abiseos and his sons, and I saw the outcome they achieved up to the time that Florestan arrived, and he seemed to me very

modest; and of his great prowess at arms I heard Don Galaor, his brother, speak frequently, for he had fought with him."

"Because of this battle of theirs," said the maidens, "Florestan left there, for in it they recognized each other as brothers."

"What!" said he, "is this the lady of the island where their battle took place?"

"She is," said they.

"I understand," said he, "that she has the name Corisanda."

"You speak the truth," said they.

"Now I do not have such grief over her misfortune," said he, "for I well know that he is so moderate and of such good will that he will always do what she commands."

"Well, tell us now," said the maidens, "who you are."

"Good ladies," he said, "I am a knight and I once had better fortune than now in the vain things of this world, and for this I am now paying; and my name is Beltenebros."

"Thank God!" said they, "now God be with you, and we shall go comfort our lady with these instruments."

And so they did; for entering where she was and having played and sung for a while, they told her all that they heard from Beltenebros about Don Florestan.

"Oh!" said she, "summon him to me right away, for he must be some excellent man, since he saw Don Florestan and knew him."

And one of the maidens brought him with her and the lady said to him:

"These maidens tell me you have seen Don Florestan and have affection for him; I beg of you, by the faith that you owe to God, to tell me what you know about him."

He told her all that he had said to the maidens and that he knew that he and his brothers and his cousin Agrajes had gone to Firm Island, and that afterwards he had seen him no more.

"Now tell me," said Corisanda, "if you please, if you have with him some kinship, for it seems to me you have affection for him."

"Lady," said he, "I am very fond of him for his valor and because his father made me a knight, for which I am much

indebted both to father and sons; and I am very sad on account of some reports that I heard about Amadis before coming here."

"And what is that?" soid she.

"When I was coming to this place, I saw a maiden," said he, "in a forest beside the road that I was traveling, and she was singing a song very delightful to hear and I asked her who had composed it."

"'A knight composed it,' said she, 'to whom may God give greater joy than he had at the time that he composed it, for according to its words, he had received great injury from love and he complains a great deal about love in the song.' I dwelt with the maiden two days, until I learned it, and she told me that Amadis showed it to her weeping and evincing great grief."

"I earnestly beseech you," said the lady, "that you teach that song to my maidens in order that they may sing it and play it on their instruments."

"I am pleased," said he, "to do so out of regard for you and for the one whom you love most, although now it be not a time when I should be singing or doing anything that smacks of joy or pleasure."

Then he went with the maidens to the chapel and taught them the song, for he had a very marvelous voice and his great sadness rendered it sweeter and more harmonious. The maidens learned the song very well and sang it to their lady, who heard it with great pleasure.

So Corisanda was there four days, and on the fifth she bade farewell to the hermit and Beltenebros and she asked him whether he would be there a long time.

"Lady," said he, "until I die."

Then they entered their ship and continued their voyage to London, where King Lisuarte was, for there, rather than elsewhere, she hoped to learn news about Don Florestan. She was very well received by the king and the queen on their learning that she was a lady of high rank, and they had her dwell in their palace. The queen asked her the purpose of her coming, and said that she would be in favor of the king's helping her if she had come with any need.

"My lady," said Corisanda, "I consider that you do me a great favor, but my purpose is to look for Don Florestan, and because news comes to your court from everywhere, I should like to remain in it for some time until I find out something about him."

The queen said:

"Good friend, you can do that for as long as you please; but up to now, nothing is known about him except that he has gone in search of Amadis, his brother, who for some unknown reason has gone astray." And she told her how Don Guilan had brought his arms and that he could not find out anything about him.

Corisanda, having heard this, began to weep bitterly, saying:

"Oh, Lord God, what will become of my lover and lord, Don Florestan, who according to the way he loves that brother, if he does not find him, he also will be lost, and I shall never more see him!"

The queen comforted her and regretted the news she had given her. Oriana, who was beside her mother, on hearing the lady tell how she loved Don Florestan, brother of Amadis, became desirous of honoring her and keeping her company, and took her to her apartment, where she found out everything about her. Then, while she was speaking with her about many things, Corisanda told her and Mabilia how she had been on the Poor Cliff and had found a knight doing penance who had taught her maidens a song which Amadis had composed at a time when he was full of great sorrow, and that according to the words of the song, it certainly must have been he. Mabilia said to her:

"My good lady and friend, I beg you as a favor to have your maidens sing it, for I shall be very pleased to hear it, because that knight whose cousin I am, composed it."

"I will gladly do that," said she, "for my heart would feel no less joy in hearing it because of the great kinship he has with my lord Don Florestan."

Then the maidens came with their instruments and sang it very sweetly, so that it was great joy to hear insofar as the grace with which it was sung was concerned, but sad for those who listened to it. And Oriana reflected on those words and saw well, since she had wronged him, that Amadis rightly was complaining; and she was heartsick, so that not being able to

remain there any longer, she went to her chamber, ashamed of the many tears that came to her eyes. Mabilia said to Corisanda:

"Friend, you see that Oriana is ailing, and to please and honor you she remains here longer than she should. I intend to go help her, and I beg you to tell me what man that man on the Poor Cliff is, who taught your maidens the song, and whether he knows any news about Amadis."

She told her how she had found him and all that he had said to her, and that she never had seen a suffering and weak man so handsome and so elegant in his poverty, and that she had never seen a man so young who was so learned. Mabilia at once thought that that man was Amadis, who in his great despair had established himself in such a confined and secluded place, fleeing from every place else in the world. And she went to Oriana, who was in her chamber, very pensive and weeping bitterly, and Mabilia entered laughing genially and said to her:

"Lady, on inquiring, one sometimes finds out more than one expects; know you that according to what I have found out from Corisanda, that suffering knight who is called Beltenebros and is on the Poor Cliff, by all odds must be Amadis, who has withdrawn there from everyone in the world and has sought to fulfill your command not to appear before you or anyone else. Therefore be happy and take comfort, for my heart tells me that it is he without any doubt."

Oriana raised her hands and said:

"Oh, Lord of the world! May it please you that it be so; and you, my good friend, advise me what to do, for I am in such a state that I have neither judgment nor intelligence; and for Heaven's sake have pity on me as a wretched, unhappy woman who through her madness and wild anger has lost all her possessions and pleasures."

Mabilia was sorry for her, so that tears came to her eyes, and she turned her face away so that she would not see them, and said to her:

"Lady, my advice is that we await your maiden, and if she does not find him, you leave the task to me, for I shall devise a way to find out about him, because I am still sure that he is the one who calls himself Beltenebros."

CHAPTER LII

How the maid of Denmark went in search of Amadis, and by lucky chance, after much effort, landed on the Poor Cliff, where Amadis, who was called Beltenebros, was; and how they came to see Lady Oriana.

The maid of Denmark was with the queen of Scotland for ten days, not so much for her pleasure as because she was quite seasick, and moreover because she had not found any news of Amadis in that land, to which she had come with high hopes of obtaining some, believing that the death of her lady would be entailed by the bad report that she carried. And bidding good-bye to the queen, bearing the gifts that she gave her for Queen Brisena, and Oriana, and Mabilia, her daughter, she returned to the sea in order to go back with that unfortunate, fruitless result of her mission, not knowing what more to do. But that Lord of the world, when it seems to people that they are without hope and help, wishing to show something of His power by giving everyone to understand that no one, however wise or prudent he be, can be helped without His aid, changed her voyage, to her great fear and tribulation and that of all those on the ship, giving them final outcome with that joy and good fortune that she was seeking. And the fact was that the sea becoming rough, an unparalleled storm befell them, so that proceeding without a rudder, without any course, the navigator's sense of direction having been completely lost, not having any confidence that they would live, finally one morning at daybreak, they arrived at the foot of the Poor Cliff, where Beltenebros was, which was immediately recognized by those of the ship, for some of them

knew that Andalod the holy hermit was there living in the hermitage above. This they had told the maid of Denmark, and she, as one who had escaped from such danger, being returned thus from death to life, gave orders that she be taken up to the Cliff, in order that while hearing mass from that good man, she might thank the Virgin Mary for that favor that her Glorious Son had rendered them.

At this time Beltenebros was at the fountain under the trees that you have already heard about, where he had lodged that night; and now his state of health was approaching so near the end that he was not expecting to live two weeks, and from his excessive weeping, together with his great weakness, his face was very gaunt and dark, much more so than if it had been disfigured by some great sickness; so that there was no person who could recognize him. And after he had looked a while at the ship and saw that the maiden and the two squires were ascending the Cliff, since his thought was only to seek death, everything with which up to then he had had much pleasure, which was to see strangers, both to make their acquaintance and to help them in their fortunes, those and all similar things were abhorred by him in his great despair; and leaving there he went to the hermitage and said to the hermit:

"It seems to me that people are leaving a ship and are coming to you."

And he knelt before the altar, saying his prayer, praying God to have mercy on his soul, for which he would quickly be at the point of rendering Him an accounting. The hermit dressed to say mass, and the maiden with Durin and Enil came in through the door, and on saying their prayers, they at once took off the veil that she wore over her face.

Beltenebros having been there a while, got up and turned his face toward them, and looking at them recognized at once the maiden and Durin, and the shock was so great that not being able to stay on his feet, he fell to the ground as if he were dead. When the hermit saw this, he thought that he was already in the last stage of his life and said:

"Oh, almighty Lord! Why have you not been willing to have pity on this man who could have done so much in Your service?"

And tears in abundance fell on his white beard, and he said:

"Good maiden, have those men help me carry this one to his room, for I believe that this will be the last help that can be rendered him."

Then Enil and Durin, with the hermit, carried him to the house where he lodged and placed him on a very poor bed, none of them recognizing him. Then the maiden heard mass and wishing to dine ashore, for she was quite seasick, by chance she asked the hermit who that man was who was afflicted with such great sickness. The good man said:

"He is a knight who is doing penance here."

"He must be very guilty," said she, "since he has sought to do it in such a forbidding place."

"It is just as you say," said he, "since he does it more because of the vain and perishable things of this world than in God's service."

"I wish to see him," said the maiden, "since you tell me he is a knight, and some of the things that I carry on the ship, I shall leave for him so that with them he may be somewhat strengthened."

"Do so," said the old man, "but I understand that death, to which he is so close, will save you that trouble."

The maiden entered alone the room where Beltenebros was; who, on thinking what he might do, was unable to make up his mind; for if he made himself known to her, he would be violating the command of his lady; and if not, if that woman, who was the whole restorative of his life, were to go from there, no hope remained for him. Finally, believing it would be much harder for him to anger his lady than to suffer death, he decided by no means to let her recognize him. Then the maiden coming close to his bed, said:

"Good man, from the hermit I have learned that you are a knight, and because maidens are indebted to most knights for the great dangers in which they place themselves in our defense, I have decided to see you and leave here, from the supplies of the ship, everything that may be found in it for your good health."

He did not answer anything, instead was weeping with great sobs and groans, so that the maiden thought his soul was parting from his body, for which she had great compassion; and because there was but little light in the room, she opened a window that was closed, and approached the bed to see if he had died, and began to look at him, and he at her, still weeping and sobbing, and thus he continued for a while, for the damsel did not recognize him, because her thought was quite unprepared to find in such a place the one she was looking for; but seeing on his face a scar that Arcalaus the enchanter gave him with the tip of his lance when Oriana was taken away from Arcalaus, as has been told you in the first Book, it made her awaken to what she had previously never suspected, and she clearly recognized that man to be Amadis, and she said:

"Alas, Holy Mary, help me! What is this which I see? Oh, sir, you are the one for whom I have undergone great hardship!"

And she fell on her face against the bed, and kneeling she kissed his hands many times, and said to him:

"Sir, now it is necessary to have pity and pardon for the one who wronged you, for if by her evil suspicion she has put you unjustly in such straits, she with great cause and rightly is enduring a life more bitter than death itself."

Beltenebros took her in his arms and gathered her to him without being able to say anything. She, giving him the letter, said:

"This your lady sends you, and through me informs you if you are that Amadis that you were wont to be, whom she loves so much, that forgetting what is past, be with her at once in her castle of Miraflores, where with great pleasure amends will be made for the pain and anguish that the boundless love she has for you, has caused."

He took the letter and after kissing it many times, placed it on his heart, and said:

"Oh, afflicted heart, which for so long a time with such great anguish, shedding so many tears, have been able to sustain yourself even unto the straits of cruel death, receive this medicine, for none other could have sufficed for your good health; take away those clouds of great gloom with which until now you were

covered, take courage with which to be able to recompense that lady of yours for the favor she does you in freeing you from death."

Then he opened the letter to read it, and it read thus:

(Letter from Oriana to Amadis)

If the great mistakes that are done through hatred, when transformed into humility are worthy of being pardoned, then what will become of those that are caused by great excess of love? Nor on that account do I deny, my true beloved, that I deserve much punishment, because one must consider that in prosperous and happy situations Fortune lies in wait in order to render one wretched, and rightly I ought to have considered your discretion and your uprightness which have not erred in anything up to now; and especially the great surrender of my sad heart, which came to it only from that subjection, for in it yours is confined; for if by chance some portion of its burning flames had been cooled, and my heart sensing it, some rest fon its mortal desires they would have been the cause of bringing about. But I erred like those women who, being very fortunate and very sure of those they love, not being able to contain so much good, through suspicions conceived more willfully than reasonably from the words of innocent or slanderous persons — words of little truth and less virtue — want to obscure that great joy with a cloud of scant tolerance; thus, my loyal lover, as from a guilty person who recognizes her error with humility, may this maid of mine be received, who better than the letter will make known to my lover the extremity that my life is in, for which, not because it deserves it, but for the restoration of yours, one should have pity.

The letter having been read, the joy of Beltenebros was so excessive that just as with his past sadness, so with joy he was swooning with tears falling down his cheeks without his feeling them. Immediately by those present he was brought back to consciousness so that making known to all those who were coming there that the maiden, in God's service was taking him from that place, where there was no provision for his good health, and that within the hour, having returned to the ship, they should reach the mainland, thus this was done. But first, bidding farewell

to the hermit, letting him know how that maiden through God's compassion, by great good luck was carried there for his salvation; and begging him earnestly to take charge of reorganizing the monastery which he had promised to build at the foot of the Cliff of the Firm Island, and this having been agreed to by him, Beltenebros put out to sea, without being recognized by anyone except only by the maiden.

Then having reached land and the sailors having said farewell to the maiden and she remaining with her companions, he began to travel the road to where his lady was; and finding a village located on the bank of a very pleasant stream amid beautiful trees, in order for the great weakness of Beltenebros to be restored in some way, by her own request the maid of Denmark made him rest. Where, if the longing he had for his lady had not tormented him so much, he would have had the most wondrous life for his good health that there was anywhere in the world, because under those trees, at the foot of which springs gushed forth, he was given his dinners and suppers, they retiring at night to the lodgings that they had in the village. There they both talked about past things. Then the maiden told him about the weeping and lamenting his lady Oriana had done when Durin brought her the report, and how neither she nor Mabilia had known about what she said in the letter she sent him. And Beltenebros likewise told her the vicissitudes he had experienced and the life he had led on the Poor Cliff, and the many and diverse thoughts that came to his memory each day, and how Corisanda, the mistress of his brother Florestan, had come by there, and the great affliction of love that she was suffering on account of him, which was the cause — when he saw how she was dying for her lover and since he himself was without reason ceast aside and abhorred by his beloved — of bringing him more quickly to death's door; and how he taught the maidens the song that he had composed, and many other things that it would take too long to relate; from which, being now free of the cruel death that he was expecting, he received great pleasure, to such an extent that when they had been there for ten days his heart was already commanding him to return to arms. Then he there made his identity known to Durin, and he took Enil, nephew of Don Gandales, his foster father, for his squire

without Enil's knowing who he was or whom he served, but being happy with him on account of his being fair-spoken. And leaving there, after four days of travel, they arrived at a convent of lay sisters that was near a good town, where it was decided that the maiden and Durin should go on, and he, remaining there with Enil, should await the command of his lady. And thus it was done; for the maid of Denmark, leaving Beltenebros as much money as was necessary to obtain arms and a horse and things to wear, along with some portion of the gifts that she was carrying deliberately forgotten so that with them as a pretext Durin might return to him with the reply, went on her way directly to Miraflores where she hoped to find her mistress Oriana, according to what she had heard her say before she left there.

CHAPTER LIII

How Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes left the Firm Island in search of Amadis; and how they traveled a long time without being able to find any trace of him, and so they came completely disconsolate to the court where King Lisuarte was.

It has already been related to you how Don Galaor and Don Florestan and Agrajes left the Firm Island on their quest for Amadis, and how they traveled through many lands, each one following a separate route, performing mighty exploits at arms, not only in populated places but also in forests and on mountains, of which, because they did not complete their quest, no mention is made, as we have already said. Then at the end of a year, during which they could find out nothing, they returned to the place which they had agreed upon, which was a hermitage a half league from London, where King Lisuarte was, believing that there rather than elsewhere, because of the many and diverse people who continually came, they would be able to ascertain some news of their brother Amadis. And the first one to arrive at the hermitage was Don Galaor and then Agrajes, and in a short while, Don Florestan and Gandalin with him. When they saw themselves together there, they embraced one another with great pleasure; but learning from each other the scant information that they had found, they began to weep bitterly, considering that having failed in that, when they had been so fortunate in finishing everything else, very little remedy or hope was left them for the future. But Gandalin, who was grieved by the loss of Amadis no less than any of them, encouraged them to stop the weeping, which availed little or nothing, and to return to the search begun, reminding

them what their lord would do for each one of them if he saw them in trouble; and that by losing him, they were losing a brother, the finest knight in the world; so that, considering it a good idea, they agreed first to enter the court, and if they did not find there any report of news, to search through all parts of the world, on land and sea until they found out that he was either dead or alive.

Then with this agreement, having heard the mass that the hermit said for them, they mounted and went on their way to London. This was on St. John's Day, and on approaching the city, they saw ahead of them the king, who riding with many knights was honoring that feast day; as much on account of that saint as because on that same day he had been elevated to the throne. And when the king saw the three knights, he truly thought that they were probably knights errant, and went to them to honor them, as one who honored and esteemed all such; and as they saw him come toward them, they took off their helmets and pointed out to Florestan which one the king was, as he had never seen him before; and coming closer there were many who recognized Don Galaor and Agrajes, but they did not know Florestan, but he seemed to them very handsome, and before they reached them, they were taking him for Amadis; and the king thought so too, for he resembled Amadis in his features more than Galaor did; and when they reached the king, they put Florestan in front in order to honor him. And the king said to Galaor:

"I understand that this is your brother, Don Florestan."

"Yes, he is," said he.

And when he tried to kiss his hands, he did not wish to give them to him; rather, he embraced him with great affection, and afterwards the others; with great joy he joined them and went on to the city. Gandalin and the dwarf, who witnessed that reception, where their lord used to be received and regarded by all with such honor, having lost him, mourned loudly — so much so that they moved both the king and all the others to have great pity for them, and even more for their lord, whom they dearly loved.

The king was asking the three companions if they had found out any news about Amadis, their brother. But they, with tears

in their eyes, told him no, although they had traveled in search of him through broad lands. The king consoled them, saying that worldly things were like that, even for those who with great concern by fleeing affronts and dangers thought to protect their persons from them; even more so for those whose custom and function it was to look for them, a thousand times risking their lives to the point of death; and that they should have hope in God, who had not rendered Amadis so fortunate in all things in order thus to forsake him.

The news of the arrival of these knights was reported in the queen's house, whereupon she and all the other ladies were joyful, especially Olinda, Agrajes' circumspect beloved, who knew already how he had completed the adventure of the arch of the faithful lovers, and Corisanda, mistress of Don Florestan, who was waiting for him there, as has been told you previously. Mabilia, who was very happy at the arrival of Agrajes, her brother, went to Oriana, who was very sad at a window of her room reading a book, and said to her:

"Lady, go to your mother, for Don Galaor will come now, and Agrajes and Florestan."

She responded, weeping and sighing as though her heartstrings would break:

"My dear, where would you have me go? For I am out of my mind, so that I am more dead than alive; and my face and eyes from weeping are in the condition you see. And besides this, how now shall I be able to see those knights, in whose company I used to see my lord and lover Amadis? In heaven's name, do you want to kill me, for it is harder for me than experiencing death."

Moreover she said weeping:

"Ah, Amadis, my good lover! what will this wretched unhappy woman do when she does not see you among your brothers and friends, whom you love so much, with whom she was wont to see you? By Heaven, my lord, my longing for you will be the cause of my death. And this will be with great justice, for I contrived that both of us should die."

And not being able to remain standing, she fell over upon a dais. Mabilia encouraged her as much as she could, suggesting to

her the hope that her maid would bring her good and joyful news. Oriana said to her:

"When these knights so fortunate in their quests, having sought him for such a long time with such great zeal, have not found out anything about him, how could the maiden, who only will go to one place, find him?"

"Don't think about that," said Mabilia, "for the way he was going, he is probably fleeing from all those of the world; and to your maiden he will come out to be recognized by her from wherever he may be hidden, for she is a person who knows all your secrets and his, and can bring a restorative to his life."

Oriana, encouraged and consoled somewhat by this, got up as best she could and washed her eyes and gave orders to call Olinda; then she went with them to where the queen her mother was. And when the three knightly companions saw her, they were quite pleased, and went to her and were graciously received. The king then said to Don Galaor:

"You see how afflicted and very ailing your friend Oriana is."

"Sire," said he, "I am very sorry about it, and it is quite right that we should all serve her in those things that can bring about better health for her."

Oriana said to him laughing:

"My good friend Don Galaor, God is the one who mends illnesses and fortunes, and so, if it should please Him, He will restore mine and yours, for such a great loss has come to you in losing your brother, that, so help me God, it would give me great pleasure that the effort and dangers we are told that you have undergone be somewhat fruitful in what you have desired, as much for your sakes as because the king my lord was always well served by him."

"Lady," said Don Galaor, "I trust in God that quickly we shall have good news of him, for he is not a man who is dismayed by great sorrow; for there is no knight in the world who knows better how to remain firm against all danger."

Oriana was greatly consoled by what she heard from Don Galaor. And taking him and Don Florestan with her, she sat down on a dais and had great enjoyment in gazing at Don Florestan, for he greatly resembled Amadis. But it made her greatly long for

the other, so much so that her heart was breaking. Mabilia called Agrajes, her brother, and had him sit beside her and beside Olinda, his beloved, who was very cheerful and happy on learning that for love of her he had been under the enchanted arch of lovers, which fact she let him know very definitely there by the loving reception that she gave him, demonstrating her very good will. But Agrajes, who loved her more than himself, very humbly thanked her, refraining from kissing her hands so that the secret of their love affair would not be manifest. And while talking thus, they heard some shouts, and a noise being made in the palace, and when the king asked what that was, they told him that Gandalin and the dwarf, having seen the shield and the arms of that famous knight Amadis, were loudly mourning, and that the knights were consoling them.

"What!" said the king, "Is Gandalin here?"

"Yes, sir," said Don Florestan, "for a good two months ago I found him at the foot of the mountain of Sanguin, and he was going about to ascertain some news of his lord. And I told him I had already gone all over the mountain and that I had not found any news; and he considered it good to go along with me, because I asked him to do so."

The king said:

"I consider Gandalin one of the best squires in the world, and it will be right that we console him."

Then he got up and went there where he was. And when Oriana heard them talk about Gandalin and the grief he had, she turned pale, and could not stay on her feet. But Don Galaor and Don Florestan supported her, lifting her by her hands to go with the king. And Mabilia, who knew the cause of her faintness, came to her and put Oriana's arms around her own neck. And Oriana said to Galaor and Don Florestan:

"My good and loyal friends, if I do not see and honor you as I should, put the blame for it, not on my desire, but on the severe illness that I have."

"Madam," said they, "this must be believed with good reason, for as our great desire is to serve you in all things, it would not be right that some reward for us from your great virtue and goodness should not be inferred."

And leaving her, they went away to the king. And Oriana took refuge in her chamber, where stretched out on her bed she tossed about with loud groans and lamentations, with a great desire to learn and understand about that one whom more through desire than through reason or any agreement, she had separated and entirely alienated from herself. Oriana spoke with Mabilia, saying:

"My true friend, since we entered this city of London I have never lacked sorrow and anguish; therefore I should think it a good idea, if so it appears to you, if we were to go to my castle of Miraflores, which is a very delightful dwelling place, for although I am convinced that my sad heart will not have repose anywhere, I am willing to concede that it might find more there than in any place else."

"Madam," said Mabilia, "You should do so. As much on that account as in order that, if the maid of Denmark brings you the news that we wish, you may be able without any delay, not only to enjoy the pleasure of it, but to afford it to him who with much reason in view of his past sadness, ought to have it; which, if you were here, you would not be able to enjoy — that is, neither the one thing nor the other."

"Oh, for heaven's sake, dear!" said Oriana, "let us go at once without more delay."

"It is necessary," said Mabilia, "that you speak to your father and mother, for since they desire your good health, they will do everything to please you."

This castle of Miraflores was at two leagues from London and was small, but the most delightful dwelling that there was in all that land; for it was situated in a forest at the foot of a mountain and was surrounded by orchards that bore much fruit, and by other large groves, in which there were plants and flowers of many kinds, and it was very wonderfully wrought; and within there were great halls and chambers richly adorned, and in the courtyards many delightful fountains shaded by trees that bore flowers and fruit the year round. And one day the king went there to hunt and took with him the queen and his daughter, and because he saw that his daughter was very fond of that castle on account of its being so beautiful, he gave it to her for her own. And in front of its gate there was at a distance of a crossbowshot

a convent, which Oriana ordered built after the castle was hers. In it were women of good life. And that night she spoke with the king and the queen, asking their permission to stay at the castle a few days — a permission which was gladly granted by them.

Then the king being at table, having beside him Don Galaor and Agrajes and Don Florestan, he said to them:

"I trust in God, my good friends, that we shall quickly have good news about Amadis, because I have sent thirty of the excellent knights of my court to look for him; and if such as they do not bring him, take all those whom you prefer, and go search for him wherever you see that with reason one ought to make the effort. But I urgently request you that this be after a battle takes place for which I have a time set in concert with King Cildadan of Ireland, who is a king highly esteemed at arms, and he was married to a daughter of King Abies, the one whom Amadis had killed; and the battle was to be one hundred against one hundred."

And the reason for it was a contention over a certain tribute which that king was obligated to give to the kings of Great Britain, and it had been agreed that if Lisuarte should win, the tribute be doubled and King Cildadan would remain his vassal; and if he were defeated, the latter would be freed of all tribute forever; and according to what he had learned about the people who were being prepared to be opponents of his, he would certainly need all his knights and friends.

Because of what those three knights heard from the king, they remained, though much against their will, for they would have preferred to return at once to the quest for Amadis, because they wanted very much to find out about him and quite rightly; but they were very much ashamed not to serve and help the king in a matter so outstanding and involving such a great imperilling of honor. After the table was cleared, Don Florestan told Gandalin to go see Mabilia who had asked for him, and he did so; and when they both saw each other, they could not avoid weeping. And Gandalin said to her:

"Oh, lady, what great wrong Oriana has done to you and to your family, for she has taken from you the finest knight in the

world! Alas! how poorly employed was all your service to her, what great injustice you have received from her, and an even greater one that man who has never wronged her in word or in deed! God ill-employed such beauty and all her other virtues, since in her there was treachery; but as for this harm that she has done, I well know that no one has lost as much as she."

"Ah, Gandalin!" said she, "I beg of you not to say this, nor believe it, for you will make a mistake; because she did it out of great sorrow and anxiety, occasioned by some words which were said to her, from which she could with good reason conceive suspicion, and according to which she was already forgotten by her lord, and he loved another woman with much affection. And although the letter was written and sent in great anger, she did not think that it would do so much harm; and of the mistake she made in this matter, you can then believe that the cause was the excessive and immoderate love she has for him."

"Oh, Heavens!" said Gandalin; "why was the good intelligence of Oriana lacking? And yours and that of the maid of Denmark to think that my lord would do such wrong to that woman at whose slightest angry word heard by him — for such is his great fear of angering her — he would bury himself alive? And what words could be these that would so perturb the keen judgment and virtue of you ladies as to cause the death of the finest knight ever born?"

"Ardian the dwarf," said Mabilia, "thinking that he was enhancing the honor of his lord, has caused it."

Then she told him all that had happened concerning the three pieces of the sword, just as the first Book relates.

"And do not think, Gandalin," said she, "that either I or the maid of Denmark could do more, for the anger of Oriana was so great in thinking that a man whom she loved so much would leave her for another woman, that her heart could never be at ease until she sent that letter without our knowledge — an act which is bringing us all to the point of death. But you can believe that after Durin found out what Amadis did, she has been in such great distress and sorrow that this gives us comfort in the anxiety we must have for Amadis."

To all these words that Mabilia exchanged with Gandalin, Oriana was listening from within one part of her quarters, and she heard everything they said. And when she saw that they were no longer talking about the matter, she came out to them as if she had heard nothing; and when she saw Gandalin, her heart trembled and she could not keep from falling on a dais, and she said weeping so profusely that she could scarcely speak:

"Oh, Gandalin, as you hope that God may protect you and make you happy, do now what you must, and you will be carrying out what you are under obligation to do."

"Madam," said he weeping, "and what do you command me to do?"

"Kill me," said she, "for I killed your lord most unjustly, and you should avenge his death, as he would avenge yours if someone should kill you."

And with this she fell into such a deep swoon that it seemed as if her soul were departing from her. Gandalin was greatly disturbed, and he wished like everything that he had not come there. And Mabilia, taking some water, threw it in her face, so that she brought her back to consciousness sighing and violently wringing her hands. And Oriana said:

"Oh, Gandalin! why do you delay doing what you ought to do? By heaven, your father would not delay doing what he should."

"Lady," said Gandalin, "God protect me from committing such disloyalty; for if I contemplated it, it would be the greatest act of treachery in the world; and not only one but two, you being my lady and Amadis my lord, for I well know for certain that after your death he would not live one hour; and I never thought that I would be so ill-advised by you, madam; especially since my lord Amadis is not dead; because although the sadness and the anguish that he had because of your anger were in his hands to endure, death is not, except when God considers it right; for if He were to give him such an end, He would not have made him in the beginning so favored by fortune; and do you, Madam, so hold, for God will not wish a man as distinguished in the world as this one to die so unjustly."

This and many other things he said to her to comfort her, and his words were really helpful in consoling her somewhat. And she said:

"My good friend Gandalin, I am going tomorrow to Miraflores, where I wish to await life or death according to the news that may come to me; and do you come to see us, for Mabilia will send for you, because you take away much of the sadness that is in my heart."

"Lady," said Gandalin, "I shall do so; and everything else that you may command."

With this he left them; and as he passed by where the queen was, she called him, and had him stand before her, and she remained talking with him for a long time about the matter of Amadis and the great anxiety she had on his account; and tears came to her eyes, and Gandalin said to her:

"Madam, if you grieve for him, it is with great justice, for he is very much your servant."

"Plus good friend," said the queen, "and a good defender; and may it please God to bring us good news of him from which we may receive some comfort."

And while he was there, Gandalin saw in one part of the palace Don Galaor and Florestan sitting and Corisanda very happy between them; and she seemed to him a very beautiful lady, whom he never before then had seen or known who she was; and he asked the queen who that very beautiful lady was who was talking with such pleasure to those two brothers. And the queen told him who she was and why she had come to the court and how she loved Don Florestan, for love of whom she had dwelt there awaiting him for some time. When Gandalin heard this, he said:

"If she loved him, she is to be lauded, for her love is given to one who has complete excellence and circumspection; and she can find but few, even though she traverse the whole world, who are his equals at arms; and lady, if you were to know Don Florestan well you would not esteem any knight more than him, for to a high degree he is distinguished at arms and in all other good qualities."

"So it appears in him," said the queen, "for a man who has such a kinship with such noble knights who are such performers at arms, it would be quite illogical not to resemble them, and likewise in view of his temperament."

Thus was the queen talking with Gandalin, and Don Florestan with his beloved, showing her great affection, for besides being very beautiful and rich, and loving him so much without ever having conferred her love on anyone else, she came from the most noble and highest ranking earls there were in all Great Britain; and there he talked with her in Don Galaor's presence concerning how she might return to her land, and that he and Don Galaor and Agrajes would escort her on two days of the journey, and that after hearing some definite news about Amadis, and after the battle had taken place for which King Lisuarte had set a date, if he came out alive from it, he would go to her and would dwell in her land for a long time.

"May it please God through His mercy," said she, "to protect you and to bring good news of Amadis, so you may be able to carry out what you promise, for with it, I am greatly consoled."

Then they went to the king, and Gandalin with them. Then Oriana asked permission that night from the king and the queen because the next day she wanted to go to Miraflores. They gave it to her, and commanded Don Grumedan to start out at dawn with her and Mabilia and the other matrons and maidens, and to establish them in the castle and then to return, leaving the servants that they needed and the gate-keepers to guard the gates of the castle. Don Grumedan prepared everything as the king commanded, and before daybreak he took Oriana and all the other ladies, and early in the morning he arrived with them at Miraflores; where, when Oriana saw the place so delightful and so fresh with flowers and roses and water in ditches and fountains, her troubled, distraught mind felt great peace, trusting in the mercy of God that there would come that man to revive her life; for without him her cruel death could not be avoided.

Then, having arrived there, she sent to tell Adalasta, the abbess of the monastery, to send her the keys of the castle and of some wickets through which they were wont to go out into a beautiful garden adjacent to it; and giving the keys to the gatekeepers

whom her father had sent there, she told them that each day they should take charge of locking the gates and wickets and give the keys to the abbess to keep at night. When Oriana saw herself in such a delightful place, she raised her hands to heaven and said to herself:

"Oh, Amadis, my dear, this is the place where I want to have you always with me, and from here I shall never depart until I see you. And if this in nowise can be, here my longing for you will kill me; therefore, my dear, may your prudence save me and help me, for I am dying. And if at any time and season you were indeed sent to me and never failed me, now when it is most necessary, I beg and command you to help me and free me from death. And, my good lover, do not delay, for I ask it of you in the name of that sovereignty that I hold over you."

And thus she remained for a long time half swooning, speaking with Amadis, as if she had him before her; but Mabilia took hold of her hands and had her sit down on a dais that she had had made for her beside a beautiful fountain; and from there she retired to her apartment, in which there were very luxurious chambers and a small patio which was in front of the door of her room with three trees that shaded it entirely so that the sun could not enter. Oriana said to Mabilia:

"Know you that I have given orders to have the keys brought to us by day, because I wish Gandalin to have others made for us, in order that if my luck be such that Amadis should come, we may be able to smuggle him in here through the garden and through the wickets."

"You have taken a good resolution," said Mabilia.

Thus they rested and enjoyed themselves that day and night, although they were waiting for the maid of Denmark with great foreboding. Then the next day Gandalin arrived, and the gatekeeper told Mabilia that that squire wanted to speak to her. Oriana said:

"Open it for Gandalin, for he is a very good squire and was brought up with us, and more unfortunate because he is a foster brother of Amadis, whom may God protect from evil."

"May God do so," said the gatekeeper, "for it would be a great loss and very damaging to the world if such a good and virtuous knight, so skilful at arms, were lost."

"You speak the truth," said Oriana, "and now go at once and have Gandalin enter."

And turning to Mabilia, she said:

"My dear, don't you see how Amadis is loved and esteemed by all and even by common men who have little understanding of things."

"Indeed I do see it," said Mabilia.

"Then what shall I do," said she, "but die for that one who, being so loved and esteemed by all, loved and esteemed me more than himself, and of whose death I was the cause? Accursed was the hour in which I was born, since on account of my folly and evil suspicions I committed such a great injustice."

"Stop that," said Mabilia, "and have good hope, for what you are doing helps very little to remedy the situation."

At this moment Gandalin entered, and was very well received by them. And seating him beside her, Oriana told him how she had sent the maid of Denmark carrying a letter for Amadis, and the words which were in it, and said to him:

"Does it seem to you, Gandalin, that he will be willing to pardon me?"

"Lady, you are speaking in a good cause," said he; "it seems to me you have little understanding of his heart; for by heaven, at the slightest word in the letter, he will put himself alive under ground if you order him to do so, not to mention his coming at your command, especially if the maid of Denmark brings the letter to him. And, madam, I am very happy about what you have said, because if the whole world were to look for him, it would not be as effective in finding him as the maiden alone; for since even from me he tried to conceal himself, I do not believe he would want to show himself to any other person. And you, my lady, with hope of the good news she will bring you, do not fail to live a better life, so that when he comes, he may not see you so far removed from your beauty; otherwise he will start running away from you."

Oriana was quite pleased with what Gandalin said to her, and she said to him laughing:

"What, do I appear so ugly to you?"

And he said:

"If to the same degree you seemed so ugly to yourself, you would go hide where no one would see you."

"Well for that reason," said she, "I came away to dwell in this castle of mine, so that if Amadis should come, and should try to start fleeing from me, he would not be able to do so."

"Would that I might see him in this prison," said Gandalin, "and free from the other where your love affair holds him."

Then they showed him the keys and told him to try to have others made like them, so that, with the arrival of his lord, as he was hoping, Oriana might without delay fulfill her message to him to the effect that she would have him there with her. Gandalin took them, and going to London, brought back duplicates, for there was no difference except that the original ones were old and the others new. Mabilia showed the keys to Oriana and said to her:

"Madam, these will be the instrument for uniting with you that man who without you cannot live; and since we have supped and all the people of the castle are quieted down, let us go and try them."

"Let us go," said Oriana, "and may it please God, through His mercy that they may mend what my feeble intelligence has damaged."

And hand in hand they went alone in the darkness to the wickets that opened on to the garden, as you have already heard; and being now near the first one, Oriana said:

"By heaven, dear, I am so dead with fear that I haven't the strength to go with you."

Mabilia took her by the hand and said laughing:

"Don't fear anything; wherever I go, I shall protect you, for I am a cousin of the best knight in the world, and I go in his service; believe in me without fear."

Oriana could not help laughing, and said:

"Since I go in your care, I must not fear, according to the trust that I have in your great prowess at arms."

"Since you recognize me for such a one," said Mabilia, "now let us go forward, and now I shall see how I shall conclude this adventure, and if I fail in it, I swear that in this whole year, I shall not sling a shield on my neck or gird on a sword."

And laughingly clasping hands, they reached the first wicket, which without any delay was opened, and so was the other so that they saw the entire garden; Oriana said:

"Well, what will happen? For according to the height of this garden wall, Amadis will not be able to climb over it."

"Don't think about that," said Mabilia, "for I have considered it, and there where the castle wall joins that of the garden a corner is formed, and with a timber placed outside and our giving him a hand, he will climb up without much trouble; but this courage is yours, and you will have the payment for it."

Oriana took her by the headdress and threw it down on the ground, and they were both for a while with great laughter and joy, and they closed the wicket again and went off to bed; and when Oriana was getting into bed, Mabilia said:

"May God be willing, lady, to unite you here with that wretched man who is in despair, since that union is so necessary for him."

Oriana said:

"And may it please Him, through His compassion, to have pity on us and on him."

"About what rests with God," said Mabilia, "have no worry, for He will apply the remedy that may be in His service; eat and sleep in order that your beauty may recoup the great amount it has lost, as Gandalin told you."

With this they slept that night with more calm than in the past; and morning having arrived, after having heard mass they went out to the courtyard of the beautiful fountains and found that Gandalin was just arriving, for by their orders each day he came from London to see them; and taking him with them they retired to the patio of the three beautiful trees, and there they told him that the keys were very good, and the words that Mabilia spoke when she tried them, at which they all laughed a great deal; and he told them what he had experienced with Amadis, when he, in order to comfort him, had spoken ill of Oriana, and

that with the anger he had over it he was close to killing him; and how for that reason when he saw him asleep, he had hidden the saddle and the bridle from him and had left him on the mountain, where never more had he been able to find news of him.

"And, lady," said he, "just as I told him a big falsehood about you, so did I at once receive the punishment that I deserved, for when I awoke and found that he had gone without me, if I had had any weapon left, without doubt I would have killed myself."

Oriana said to him:

"Oh, for heaven's sake, Gandalin! do not tell me more, for I am sure he loves me; without intent you are breaking my heart, for life and death with good news or the opposite that may come to me concerning him I want to receive together, without any more anguish or grief coming to me than I have had in the past."

CHAPTER LIV

How, when king lisuarte was at table after eating, a strange knight entered completely armed and challenged the king and his whole court; and concerning what florestan did with him; and how oriana was consoled and amadis found.

King Lisuarte being at table after eating, and the table having been cleared, when Don Galaor and Don Florestan and Agrajes were about to bid him farewell in order to escort Corisanda on her way, a strange knight in full armor except head and hands, entered the gate of the palace, and two squires with him; and he was bearing in his hand a letter with five seals, and kneeling he gave it to the king saying to him:

"Read that letter, and afterwards I shall tell you what I come for."

The king read it, and on seeing that it was a letter vouching for the knight, he said to him:

"Now you may say what you please."

"King," said the knight, "I challenge you and all your vassals and friends on behalf of Famongomadan, the giant of Boiling Lake; and of Cartadaque, his nephew, the giant of the Forbidden Mountain; and of Madanfabul, his brother-in-law, the giant of the Vermilion Tower; and for Don Quadragante, brother of King Abies of Ireland; and for Arcalaus the enchanter; and I am ordered to tell you to fear death from them — you as well as all those who call themselves yours; and Famongomadan apprises you that they with all those great friends of theirs will be against you in aid of King Cildadan in the battle for which you

have set a date with him. But if you wish to give your daughter Oriana to Madasima, the very beautiful daughter of the aforementioned Famongomadan, to be her damsel and serve her, that they will not challenge you, nor will they be your enemies; rather they will marry Oriana to Basagante, her brother, when he sees that it is time; and he is such a lord that your land and hers will be well used by him; and now, king, consider what will come out best for you; either peace as they want it, or the most cruel war that can come to you with men who are so powerful."

The king replied laughing, as one who scorned their challenge, and said to them:

"Knight, dangerous war is better than dishonorable peace, for a bad accounting would I be able to give to that Lord who has placed me at such a height, if through lack of courage, with such discredit and such humiliation I were to lower it; and now you may go; and tell them that I would rather desire war with them all the days of my life and at the end to die, than to agree to the peace they demand of me; and tell me where one of my knights will find them so that they may learn through him this reply of mine that is given to you."

"At Boiling Lake," said the knight, "whoever seeks them will find them. This is on the island called Mongaza; there he will find both them and those who with them will be engaged in the battle."

"I do not know," said the king, "in view of the nature of giants, whether my knight will be able to go and return safely."

"Do not have any doubt about that," said he, "for where Don Quadragante is, nothing can be done unreasonably, and I take the responsibility."

"In the name of God," said the king, "now tell me your name."

"Sir," said he, "My name is Landin, and I am a nephew of Don Quadragante, son of his sister; and we have come to this land to avenge the death of King Abies of Ireland, and we regret that we cannot find the one who slew him, nor do we know whether he is dead or alive."

"It may well be," said the king, "but now might it please God that you should find out that he is alive and in good health, for afterwards everything would come out well."

"I understand," said Landin, "from what you say, that you believe that one to be the finest knight of all those you have seen; but whatever I may be, you will find me in the battle between you and King Cildadan, and there my good deeds or the opposite will be made manifest to you by the greatest damage to you of which I am capable."

"I'm very sorry," said the king, "for I would rather have you in my service; but I well believe that you will not lack here opponents with whom to fight."

"Nor they," said the knight, "opponents who will resist until death."

When Don Florestan heard this, he became somewhat angry because that man dared to say that he was seeking his brother Amadis, and he said to him:

"Knight, I am not of this land or a vassal of the king; therefore nothing of this matter that you have been talking about with him arrays me against you, nor do I by reason of it say anything, because in his court there are many others better than I to say and do; but because you say that you are going about looking for Amadis and do not find him, in which matter, I think, I'm not to your detriment, and if you would like to fight with me, who am Don Florestan, his brother, on condition that if you are overcome, you renounce this quest, and if I be killed, some of your anger and dishonor may be satisfied, I shall do so because that feeling that you have for King Abies, that much more augmented Amadis will have for my death."

"Don Florestan," said Landin, "I see indeed that you have a desire for battle; but I fear it to the utmost, because I have to go with the reply to this embassy on a day appointed, and also because those gentlemen exacted a pledge from me that I would engage in no other confrontation; but if I come out of there alive, I shall have a battle with you at a day appointed."

"Landin," said Don Florestan, "you speak like a good and honorable knight; because those who come with such messages have to deny their own desires in order to carry out the will of those whose message they carry; for otherwise although you might be able to satisfy your own honor, their honor by your

delay would be discredited, since everything was in your charge; and therefore I consider it right that it be as you say."

And offering his gloves as a token of battle gage, he gave them to the king, and Landin extended the skirt of his coat of mail; thus with the consent of both, the battle was set for thirty days after that of the kings had taken place. Then the king gave orders to a knight whom he had reared, Filispinel by name, that in company with Landin he should go challenge those who challenged him.

Then these two knights having departed, as you hear, the king remained talking with Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes and many others who were in the palace, and he said to them:

"I want you to see something from which you will have pleasure."

Then he gave orders to summon Leonoreta, his daughter, with all her little maids to come and dance as was their wont, a thing which he had never commanded after the news of Amadis's being lost; and the king said:

"Daughter, sing the song that Amadis composed for love of you, when he was your knight."

The little girl, with the others, her little maids, began to sing it; and it went thus:

Leonoreta, delicate little rose
Whiter than all other flowers,
Delicate little rose, let not my love for you
Put me in such distress.

Without fortune
I have gone mad
Out of love for you; it is a madness
That endures,
From which I cannot withdraw;
Oh, beauty without peer,
Which gives me sorrow and sweetness!
Delicate little rose, let not my love for you
Put me in such sorrow.

Of all the ladies whom I see,
I do not wish to serve
Any but you;
Well I see that my desire
Is madness,
From which I cannot depart;
Since I cannot flee
From being your servant,
May I not be put, delicate little rose,
By your love in such sorrow.

Although my plaint seems
To refer to you, lady,
Another is the victor,
Another is the slayer
Who weakens my life;
That one has the power
To wage total war against me;
That one can bring it about
Without my deserving it
That I live dead and buried.

"I want you to know why Amadis composed this carol for this princess Leonoreta. One day he was talking with Queen Brisena, Oriana and Mabilia and Olinda, and they told Leonoreta to tell Amadis that he was her knight and to serve her very well, paying no heed to any other damsel. She went to him and told him so. Amadis and the queen, who heard her, laughed heartily; and taking her in his arms, Amadis seated her on the dais, and said to her:

"Since you want me to be your knight, give me some jewel in acknowledgment that you consider me yours."

She took from her head a gold barrette set with very precious stones and gave it to him. They all began to laugh on seeing how the child took so seriously what had been told her in fun; and Amadis remaining as her knight, composed for her the carol that you have already heard. And when she and her maids sang it, they were all with garlands and dressed in fine costumes similar to Leonoreta's. And she was quite beautiful, but not to

such a degree as Oriana, for the latter was without a peer in the world; and Leonoreta became in due course empress of Rome, as will be told you later; and those little maidens of hers were twelve in number, all daughters of dukes and counts and other great lords; and they sang that carol so well and so appropriately that the king and all the knights took great pleasure in hearing it. And after they had sung a while, they made a curtsey to the king and went away to where the queen was.

Don Galaor and Don Florestan and Agrajes told the king they wanted to go with Corisanda, to the end that he give them permission to do so, and he drew them to one side of the hall and said to them:

"Friends, in the world there are not another three in whom I have such great strength as in you, and the time limit for the battle is drawing near, for it is to be the first week of August, and you have already heard mentioned the people who are to be against me; and these will bring others very aggressive and strong at arms, as well as those who are naturally and by heredity gigantic; for which reason I earnestly beg you that until that time limit you not take on any other challenges or quests that would prevent your being with me in the battle, for I have deadly major enemies and you would cause me a very great shortage of strength and unjustifiably; because I trust in God that with your great prowess and that of all the others who will serve me, the great valor and strength of our enemies will not be so overwhelming as finally to prevent their being overcome and destroyed and discredited by us."

"Sire," said they, "for something so notable and famous everywhere as this will be, your command and request are not necessary, for even if the desire and good will that we have to serve you were lacking, there never would be lacking our great desire to be in such a great confrontation, where our hearts and good will may have that for which they go searching through many lands and strange places of the world, which is to find themselves in situations of greatest danger, because by conquering they obtain the glory that they desire and if conquered they fulfill that destiny for which they were born; and therefore our return will be immediate; and meanwhile cheer and encourage

your knights, because for those who serve with great love and affection, their weak effort becomes strong."

And leaving the king, they, armed and mounted, taking Corisanda with them, left London and went their way. Gandalin, who was there and saw all that, left at once for Miraflores and told Oriana and Mabilia of it and that those three companions ordered him to convey their best regards to them. Oriana said:

"Now Corisanda is quite content, since she has Don Florestan whom she loves so dearly in her company. And may God always keep her so, for she is a very good lady."

And she began to sigh, so that the tears came to her eyes, and she said:

"Oh, Lord God! why do you not want me to see Amadis even for one single day? Oh, Lord! grant me this out of your bounty, or take me from this world and do not let me live in such distress and pain."

Gandalin felt very sorry for her, but pretended to be angry, and said:

"Lady, see to it that I do not appear in your presence, for we are expecting good news which God will send us, and you want to plunge us into despair."

Oriana brushed the tears from her eyes and to him:

"Oh, Gandalin, for heaven's sake do not complain! For if I could do something, gladly would I do it, for even if I display a cheerful countenance, my heart never stops weeping. And if it were not for this hope that I have from the words that you say to me, do believe that I would not have enough strength to rise to my feet; but now tell me what will become of the king my father since he cannot have Amadis for this battle."

"Lady," said he, "My lord cannot be so hidden or secluded that a thing as outstanding as this would not come to his attention, since who doubts that he knowing how much it concerns you, should your father be overcome, would want to come to put his strength at your service? For although on account of the prohibition that you imposed on him, he may dot dare to appear before you, he will appear there where he may see that he can be of service and obtain pardon for the mistake that he did not make nor intend to make."

"May it so please God," said Oriana, "that it be as you think."

And as they were talking about this, a girl came running in and said:

"Lady, here you see the maid of Denmark who is bringing you many rich gifts."

Her heart trembled and faltered, so that she could not speak, and she was in complete agitation because from the maiden's arrival she expected life or death, depending on the message she might bring. And Mabilia, who saw her thus, said to the girl:

"Go and tell the maiden to come here alone, because I should like to see her privately."

And she did this so that no one would see the great sorrow or the great joy of Oriana, according as the news might be. And the girl went out and told her what was requested; but as for Mabilia and Gandalin, I tell you they were in great suspense, not knowing what the maiden was bringing. And the maiden came in cheerful and self-assured, and kneeling before Oriana, she gave her a letter she was carrying and said to her:

"Lady, here you see news quite to your liking, and know you, lady, that I have achieved everything that you sent me to do just as you wished; and read that letter and you will see whether Amadis wrote it with his own hand."

She took the letter, but her hands trembled so from the great joy that she let it fall. And as soon as her heart had calmed somewhat, she opened the letter and found the ring that she had sent to Amadis by Gandalin, when he fought with Dardan at Windsor; which ring she readily recognized and she kissed it many times and said:

"Blessed be the hour in which you were made, for you have moved with such joy and pleasure from one hand to another."

And she put it on her finger and when she saw the very humble words contained in the letter and his great gratitude for her having remembered him, and how he had returned from death to life, her heart rejoiced; and raising her hands, she said:

"Oh, Lord of the world, restorer of all things! Blessed be you who at such a time have helped me and delivered me from death, which was so near."

And she had the maiden sit down before her and said to her:

"My dear, now tell me how you found him, and the days you were with him, and where you leave him."

She told her how she had looked for him; and that when she was coming back very sadly without any word, the great storm that came up while she was at sea caused her to arrive at the Poor Cliff, where she found him. And she related all that happened to her there with him and the great pleasure Oriana's letter gave him; and likewise she told her where she had left him and how he was awaiting her command. But when she came to telling how he had come close to death and was so changed that he could only be recognized by the scar that he had on his face and how he had changed his name and it was three days before Durin recognized him, Oriana had great sorrow and compassion for him. And as soon as everything had been told her, Oriana said:

"By heaven, friend, it is necessary that he have our message at once, and tell me how it is to be accomplished."

"I will tell you," said she; "there I left on purpose two of those jewels I was bringing, so that on the pretext of Durin's returning for them he might bring your message."

"You have done very well," said she; "and now give me the gifts you are bringing in the presence of these people who are here, and say that Mabilia's were forgotten by you, as you have said."

Then they told the maiden how Corisanda had told them about him, and that he was called Beltenebros, but she had not recognized him or found out who he was.

"It is true he is so called," said the maiden, "and he says he will not drop that name until he sees you and you tell him what to do."

And also they told her how they had the keys to the garden wickets; and they called Durin and pointed out to him the place to which he was to bring Beltenebros when he came; and they commanded him to go at once and bring him; but they did not have to exert themselves greatly in the matter, because being still quite distressed about the unfortunate news that he had carried to him, whereby he had brought him close to death, and believing

that with the news with which he was now going, everything would be corrected and straightened out, he agreed to it with much joy in his heart, and kissed the hands of Oriana because she had so ordered him. And there it was agreed that Mabilia was to ask him in the presence of everyone to go for those gifts, and that he should exhibit ill-humor about it, as if he were much irked, in order not to arouse suspicion about his going. And thus he did, for when they requested it of him, he showed vexation about it, and said angrily to Mabilia:

"I tell you, madam, that on account of their being yours, I shall go there; for if they were the queen's or Oriana's I would not do so, for I have undergone much hardship from toiling over this road."

Mabilia was very grateful, and Oriana said to him:

"My friend Durin, however well you serve, don't seek to find fault with the service that you may render in such a way that people will not be thankful to you for it."

"I shall so do it for you," said he, "when you order me to serve you, for I well believe that your gratitude is worth as little as my service."

They all laughed a great deal at the anger that Durin showed and about how he replied; and he said to Mabilia:

"Madam, since it pleases you that I go, I intend to go immediately tomorrow morning early." And taking leave of the ladies he went to sleep in the town with Gandalin, who asked him to give his best regards to Enil his cousin, and that on his part he should invite him to come and see him if he could do so, because he had a few things to talk over with him, and that he begged him earnestly that while he was going about with that knight, to ask him for news concerning Amadis. He sent him to say this so that Amadis might go about better disguised and in order that, if he should wish to leave him, he could do so on the pretext of seeing Gandalin. While speaking about this, they reached London, and early the next morning Durin mounted his palfrey and went on his way to where he had left Beltenebros; but first he had sought to find out all the news of the court in order to be able to tell everything to him.

CHAPTER LV

How Beltenebros ordered arms and complete equipment made in order to go and see his lady Oriana, and concerning the adventures that happened to him on the way, he overcoming don Quadragante and the giants Famongomadan and Basagante.

Then returning to Beltenebros, who had remained in the quarters of the lay sisters, waiting for the message from his lady, the story tells that being already, because of his great contentment, considerably restored in health and strength, he gave orders to Enil to have made in that town near where he was, some arms with a green field and as many small lions in gold as there would be room for, along with his device, and to buy for him a good horse and a sword and the best coat of mail that he could get. Enil went up to the town and did everything as he had commanded him. So that in the space of twenty days everything was prepared according to his need. At this time Durin arrived with the message he was bringing, with which Beltenebros was greatly pleased; and asking him in front of Enil how the good maid of Denmark, his sister, was, and why he had come, he told him that the maiden asked him to convey her best regards to him, and that he came for two pieces of jewelry that she had forgotten, which were among the pillows on which she had slept; and he told Enil that his cousin Gandalin greeted him heartily and everything else that he was charged with telling him. Beltenebros asked him who that Gandalin was.

"My cousin, a squire," said he, "who for a long time attended a knight by the name of Amadis of Gaul."

And then he took Durin with him and went for a walk through a public square, asking him for news of his sister; but when they had withdrawn somewhat Durin told him the message of his lady, how she awaited him in Miraflores, and that she had it very well arranged to have him there with her, so that he might be well concealed; and he told him how his brothers and Agrajes were in the court, and they were to be in the battle for which King Lisuarte had set a date with King Cildadan of Ireland; and furthermore the challenge of Famongomadan, and of the other giants and knights who had made a challenge, and how they demanded Oriana to serve as Madasima's maid, and that they would give her in marriage to Basagante, son of Famongomadan. And when Beltenebros heard this, his flesh trembled with the great anger he had within him, and his heart seethed with great fury; and he made the resolve until he saw his lady, not to take upon himself any other confrontation or quest until he found Famongomadan, and to fight with him, and to die or kill him for what he had said about Oriana. After Durin had related what you have heard, he took the gifts, and having bade him farewell, he returned very happy at having brought to a conclusion what he desired.

Beltenebros remained, giving many thanks to God for thus having helped him in bringing him back into the favor of his lady, for while he was considering her lost to him, his life had come close to the end, as we have told you; and that night, having said good-bye to the matrons one hour before dawn, armed with those verdant and fresh arms, on his beautiful, spirited horse, and Enil with him, carrying his shield and helmet and lance, he set out on his way to go and see that lady of his, whom he loved so much; and going along thus through the countryside, it now being bright daylight, he put the spurs to his horse very hard and made it go from one side to the other, in such a way that Enil, who was watching him, was greatly surprised, and said:

"Sir, I know nothing of the courage of your heart; but I have never seen a knight who appeared so handsome armed."

"The hearts of men, and not their good appearance," said Beltenebros, "accomplish good things, but to the one whom God

gives both together, he does a great favor; and since now you have judged the appearance, judge the heart according to what you observe that it deserves."

Thus he continued talking and laughing with him as one who, casting aside that great gloom in which he had been, was restored to the delight without which he could not live. So thus he traveled until night, when he lodged in the home of an old knight, where great honor was paid him; and the next day, leaving there, wearing the helmet on his head in order not to be recognized, he journeyed seven days without encountering any adventure; but on the eighth it happened that on passing at the foot of a mountain, he saw coming along a narrow road, on a big bay horse, a knight so large and so muscular that he seemed aught but a giant, and two squires who were carrying his arms. And when he came closer, the huge knight said to Beltenebros in a loud voice:

"You, sir knight, who come there, stop and do not come farther ahead until I find out from you what I want."

Beltenebros stopped in a level field through which he was going, and gazed at the shield of the knight and saw that it had on it three flowers of gold on a field of blue, and recognized him to be Don Quadragante, because one other such shield he had seen on the Firm Island raised above all the others as one who had won greatest honor in the test of the Forbidden Chamber; and he was very sorry, because he thought he would not be able to avoid a battle with him, having in mind a battle with Famongomadan, for on account of the latter he had wished to avoid all others, and also in order to go to the rendezvous as ordered in the message from his lady; and he had a fear that the great prowess of that knight might hinder him somewhat; and he remained motionless; then calling to Enil, he said:

"Come to me, and you will give me the arms if I need them."

"God protect you," said Enil, "for this man seems to me more of a devil than a knight."

"He is not a devil," said Beltenebros, "but a very good knight, of whom I have heard several times already."

At this juncture Don Quadragante came up and said to him:

"Knight, it is important that you tell me if you are from King Lisuarte."

"Why do you ask?" said Beltenebros.

"Because I have challenged him," said Quadragante, "and all of his men and his friends, and I shall find none of them that I do not kill."

Great anger came to Beltenebros, and he said to him:

"Are you one of those who challenged him?"

"I am," said he, "and the one who will do to him and to all of his men, all the harm that I can."

"And what is your name?" said Beltenebros.

"Don Quadragante," said he.

"Certainly, Quadragante," said he, "although you may be of high lineage and of great deeds at arms, your challenging the best king of the world is a great act of folly because knights should undertake things that are appropriate for them, and when they go beyond that, it must be taken more for folly than for courage; I am not a vassal of this king you mention, nor a native of his land; but because of what he deserves, my heart is given over to serving him; therefore I can rightly consider myself challenged by you, and if you wish combat, you shall have it; and if not, go on your way."

Don Quadragante said to him:

"I really believe, knight, that the meager information that you have concerning me causes you to speak so boldly and so insanely, and I earnestly beseech you to tell me your name."

"I am called Beltenebros," said he, "and therefore as much because of the name as on account of my being of little renown, you will not know me any better than before; but although I be of a foreign and remote land, I have heard that you are seeking Amadis of Gaul, and according to reports about him, I understand that it is not to your harm to be unable to find him."

"What!" said Don Quadragante, "you esteem him whom I so greatly hate more than you do me? Know you that you have come to your death, and take up your arms if you dare to defend yourself with them."

"Although against others," said Beltenebros, "I might hesitate to take them, not against you, who make to me such arrogant remarks and threats."

Then, taking up their arms with great fury, they spurred their horses at each other, and they clashed so violently that the horse of Beltenebros was about to fall; but Don Quadragante went out of his saddle, and each one had great pain from that encounter; Beltenebros had the nipple of his breast split open by the lance blade, and the other was wounded in the ribs; but the wound was small, and he got up at once, as one who was very valiant and agile; and grasping his sword he went at Beltenebros, who was adjusting his helmet on his head, so that he did not see him, and he struck the horse with the point of his sword, in such a way that he thrust half of it through its haunches, hence with the wound it went across the field kicking and about to fall; but Beltenebros got off at once, and grasping his shield, with sword in hand went to Don Quadragante in a great rage and furiously because he had killed his horse, and said:

"Knight, you do not show the proper spirit in what you have done; but yours will suffice for the one who obtains the victory of the battle."

Then they attacked each other so fiercely that it was frightful to see; for the noise that they made with their swords in slashing each other's armor was such that it seemed as if ten knights were fighting there, and sometimes they clutched one another in attempts to overthrow each other; so that each one exerted all his strength and valor against the other. Some squires who were watching them, deeming it frightening to see such cruelty in two knights, never expected that either of them could stay alive; and thus they continued in their battle from tierce until vespers without resting or speaking a word. But at this time Don Quadragante was overwhelmed by fatigue and injured by a blow that Beltenebros gave him on top of his helmet, so that he fell headlong and insensible to the ground as if he were dead; and Beltenebros took off his helmet to see if he was dead; but on giving him air, he almost recovered his senses, and Amadis put the point of his sword to his face and said:

"Quadragante, give thought to your soul, for you die."

And he, who was now more conscious, said:

"Alas, Beltenebros, I beg you in God's name to let me live for the sake of my soul's salvation."

He said:

"If you want to live, admit defeat and that you will do what I command you."

"Your will," said he, "I shall do in order to save my life; but by rights I ought not to admit myself defeated, for he is not defeated who in his defense, not showing cowardice, does all he can until strength and breath fail him and he falls at the feet of his enemy; for the defeated man is he who stops performing through lack of courage what he would be able to do."

"Certainly," said Beltenebros, "you speak the absolute truth, and I am very pleased from what now I have learned concerning you; give me your hand and give me your pledge that you will do what I command."

And he gave it to him as best he could.

Then Beltenebros called the squires who were looking on, and said to Quadragante:

"I order you, as per the compact you make with me, to be immediately at the court of King Lisuarte and that you not leave there until Amadis, the one you are looking for, is there; and he having come, you place yourself in his power and pardon him for the death of your brother, King Abies of Ireland; since, according to what I have found out, they of their own free will challenged each other and alone entered into battle. Therefore such death as this should not be sought even among common people, much less in those like you, according to the great deeds at arms in which you have participated with very good fortune; and likewise I command you to retract the challenge to the king and to all of his men, and not take up arms against what is service to him."

Don Quadragante agreed to it all much against his will; but he did it with the great fear of death, which he had very near; and he gave orders at once to his squires to make a stretcher for him and transport him where Beltenebros ordered, in order to carry out his promise. Beltenebros saw Enil, his squire, who was

holding Don Quadragante's horse and was very happy and with great joy about the good fortune that God had given his lord. Beltenebros mounted the horse and gave his arms to Enil and again took up his journey; and he had not traveled far along the way when he found a maiden hunting with a goshawk, and three other maidens with her who had seen the battle and had heard most of the words that were exchanged; and as they saw that he was so battered and that he needed to rest, they begged him earnestly to go with the huntress to a castle of hers where he would be rendered every service on account of that willingness to serve the king, their lord, which they discerned in him. He thought it good because he was in considerable pain by reason of the great physical stress he had undergone; but as soon as they arrived there, on examining him to see if he was wounded, they found only that small wound on his nipple, from which he had lost much blood; and at the end of three days he left there and traveled all that day without encountering any adventure. That night he lodged in the house of a noble who dwelt near the road; and next day he went on until at noon, on reaching the top of a hill, he saw the city of London, and to his right the castle of Miraflores, where his lady Oriana was; and when he saw it, his heart felt great joy. Then he paused there quite a while thinking about how he might rid himself of Enil; and he said to him:

"Do you know this region where we are?"

"Yes, I know it," said he, "for in that valley is London, where King Lisuarte is."

"Are we so close to London?" said he. "Well, I do not wish to make myself known to the king now, nor to anyone else until my deeds merit it; for, as you see, I am young, and have not done enough to be highly esteemed; and since we are so near London, go and see that squire Gandalin, from whom Durin gave you greetings, and find out what they are saying of me in the court, and when the battle with King Cildadan will be."

"How can I leave you alone?" said he.

"Don't worry," said he, "for sometimes I am accustomed to going about without anyone; but first I wish us to settle on some appointed place where you may find me."

And they went ahead along that road; and it was not long before they saw two tents set up beside a stream, and between them another very fine tent, and in front of them knights and maidens were frolicking. And he saw at the door of one tent five shields, and at the other, five more, and ten armed knights. And in order not to have any reason to joust with them, he turned aside from the road that he was following.

The knights at the tents called him to come to the joust.

"I do not care to joust now," said he, "for you are many and rested, and I am alone and tired."

"Rather do I think," said one of them, "that you refuse out of fear of losing your horse."

"And why would I lose it?" said he.

"Because it would go to the one who overthrew you," said the knight, "which is more certain than that those which you might be able to win from us would be yours."

"Since thus it must be," said Beltenebros, "I would rather go on riding it than to involve it in that adventure."

And he began to go circling around them as before. The knight said to him:

"It seems to us, knight, that those arms of yours are defended more with pretty words than with strength of heart; so that they could well remain and be placed on your tomb, although you live a hundred years."

"You may think whatever you wish of me," said he, "for no matter what you say to me, you do not take from me my excellence, if there is any in me."

"Now, might God grant," said one of them, "that you should take the notion to joust with me, for you would not go today to look for lodging on that horse, under penalty of being called a traitor or that in this year I might not mount another."

Beltenebros said:

"Good sir, that is what I fear, and therefore I leave my road."

They all began to say:

"Oh, Holy Mary, protect us, what a timid knight!"

But he paid no attention to this, and went on his way; and on reaching a ford of the river that he wanted to cross, he heard someone saying to him:

"Wait, knight."

And he, on looking to see who it might be, saw a maiden very well attired on a beautiful palfrey; and coming up to him, she said:

"Sir knight, in that tent is Leonoreta, the daughter of King Lisuarte, and she and all the maidens wish to beg you to hold a joust with those knights, and that you do this out of regard for them as ladies, inasmuch as you are more obligated to honor their request than that of the knights."

"What!" said he, "the daughter of the king is the one who is there?"

"Yes, sir," said she.

"I regret," said he, "to have any enmity with her knights, for I would like instead to serve her; but since she orders it, I shall do so on condition that the knights do not ask of me more than to joust."

The maiden went away with his reply, and Beltenebros took up his arms; and returning to the tents he found a good level field and waited there; and it was not long before he saw the knight coming who had talked to him and who would not permit him to go away on his horse if he jousted with him, for he had thought a lot about him, and was quite pleased that he should be the first. And coming closer they let their horses run at each other as hard as they could; and the knight broke his lance and Beltenebros struck him so hard that he threw him from his saddle, sending him rolling over the field; and he ordered Enil to take the horse; and the knight remained so jarred from the fall that he was insensible; and he came out of his faint groaning and rolling around over the field as one who had three ribs and a hip broken. Beltenebros said:

"Sir knight, if your word is good, for one year from now you will not fall again from a horse, for thus you promised if you did not win."

And at this juncture, while he was still there, he saw another knight coming to the joust and shouting to be on guard; and Beltenebros let his horse run at him and he overthrew him just as he had the first one; and similarly he did so to the third and the fourth, and on that one he broke his lance, but the knight

was so badly wounded that the lance went through the shield and the arm; and from all of them he took their horses and tied them to the branches of the trees; and after he had overthrown those four knights, he wanted to go, but he saw coming another knight prepared to joust, and he brought a squire with four lances, and said to him:

"Sir knight, Leonoreta sends you these lances, and gives orders to tell you to do with them what you should with the knights who remain, since you have unhorsed their companions."

Beltenebros said:

"For the love of Leonoreta, who is the daughter of such a good kind, I shall do what she commands, but for the knights I tell you that I would not do anything, for I consider them very insolent in forcing knights who are going on their way to fight against their will."

And taking a lance, he let himself go at the knight and unhorsed him like the others, and likewise he did all the others, except the one who came at the end, for he jousted with him twice and broke two lances on him without being able to budge him from his saddle; but with the third one he overthrew him as he had the others; and if anyone were to ask who this one might be, I would say that he was Nicoran, he of the Frightful Bridge, who at the time was one of the good jousters of the kingdom of Great Britain.

These jousts having been completed by Beltenebros as you have heard, he sent all the horses he had won from the knights to Leonoreta, and gave orders to tell her that she should order her knights to be more courteous to those who pass along the road, and that they should joust better, for a knight might come there who would make them go on foot. And the knights were so ashamed of what had happened to them that they made no reply and marveled at being thus overthrown by a single knight, and could not imagine who he could be, for they had never seen a knight who bore such emblems on his arms; Nicoran said:

"If Amadis were alive and healthy, I would truly say that this was he, for I do not think of any other knight who would leave us thus."

"Certainly," said Galiseo, "it must not be he, for some of us would have recognized him; and all the more so because he would not have been willing to joust, since he knew us all as his friends."

Giontes, the king's nephew, who was there, said:

"If it pleased God for it to be Amadis, we would consider our shame well employed; but whoever he be, may God grant him good fortune wherever he goes, for he won our horses like a good knight, and as a good knight he sent them to us."

"May he be damned," said Lasanor, "as long as I continue in poor shape with my ribs and hip broken; but the blame is mine, for I was the solicitor, more than anyone else, of my injury."

And this man was the first one in the joust.

Beltenebros left them, very happy about how it had come out for him; and he went on his way talking to Enil, and he was looking at the lance that he had left, which seemed to him very good; and with the excessive heat and the jousting he was very thirsty; and when he was at as much as a quarter-league's distance from there, he saw a hermitage shaded by trees; and as much for the sake of saying his prayers in it, as to drink some water, he went to it, and saw at the gate three palfreys with women's sidesaddles and two others with squires' saddles. He dismounted and went inside, but he saw nothing; and he said his prayers, committing himself very devoutly to God and to the Virgin Mary. And on leaving the hermitage, he saw three maidens under some trees at a fountain and the squires with them; and he came up to drink of the water, but did not recognize any of the maidens. And they said to him:

"Knight, are you from the court of King Lisuarte?"

"Good maidens," said he, "I should like to be such a knight as to be wanted in his company; but you, where are you going?"

"To Miraflores," said they, "to see our aunt who is abbess of a nunnery, and to Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte; and we decided to rest here until the heat passes."

"In the name of God!" said he, "I will keep you company until it be time to go."

And he asked them what the name of that fountain was.

"We do not know," said they, "or about any other that there is in this forest, except the one in that valley near those big trees, which is called the Fountain of the Three Jets."

And they pointed out to him the valley, which was near there; but he knew it better, for many times he had gone through there to hunt; and that fountain he wanted for a landmark to which Enil might come, because he wanted him to be separated from him while he went to see his lady.

Then, while they were talking, as you hear, it was not long before they saw coming along the same road over which Beltenebros had come, a cart that twelve palfreys were pulling, and two dwarfs on top of it who were driving it, and in it they saw many armed knights chained together, and their shields suspended on rods; and among them beautiful maidens and little girls who were uttering loud cries; and in front of the cart came a giant so huge that he was a frightful thing to see, on a black horse and armed with strong plated arms and a helmet that shone brightly; and he was carrying in his hand a javelin; and behind the cart came another giant who appeared larger and much more fearful than the first. The maidens were all frightened and hid among the trees because of their great fear and terror; and the giant who came in front, turning to the dwarfs, said to them:

"I shall tear you into a thousand pieces if you do not keep those little girls from shedding their own blood, because with it I must make sacrifice to the god I worship."

When Beltenebros heard this, he recognized him to be Famongomadan, for he had the custom, which he would never relinquish, of cutting the throats of many maidens before an idol that he had at the Boiling Lake, by whose advice and speech he was guided in all things, and with that he kept the idol contented, as one who, being the Devil, with such great deviltry was to be satisfied. And although Amadis had his mind set on fighting with him because of what he had said about Oriana, he had not wanted to meet him until he had spent that night with his lady Oriana, as was agreed, and also because he was very fatigued from the joust with the ten knights. But recognizing the knights who were riding in the cart, and Leonoreta and her maidens with them, he was very sorry to see them, and more on account of the grief that

his lady would have if such a misfortune should befall her sister; for it seemed that after he departed from the joust, as you have already heard, leaving those knights battered, in a short while there arrived those two giants, father and son, who had challenged King Lisuarte; and taking them all, men and women, they put them, as you have heard, in that cart that they brought with them in order to transport the prisoners that they might be able to take. And at once mounting his horse, he asked Enil to give him his arms; but the latter said to him:

"Why do you want them? First let these devils who are coming here, go by."

"Give them to me," said Beltenebros, "for before they go by I want to test the compassion of God, whether it will please Him that the very great violence that these enemies of His commit be done away with by me."

"Oh, sir!" said he, "Why do you want to have poor enjoyment of your youth? For if the twenty best knights that King Lisuarte has were here, they could not dare undertake this."

"Don't worry," said he, "for if in my presence I should let such a thing happen without doing all I could, I would not be fit to appear before men of excellence, and you will see what my luck will be."

Enil gave him the arms, weeping very bitterly. Beltenebros came down a slope towards the giant and before he reached him, he looked at the place where Miraflores was, and said:

"Oh, my lady Oriana! Never did I begin a great feat on my own initiative wherever I might be, except with your help; and now, my good lady, help me, for it is so necessary for me."

With this it seemed to him that such great courage came to him that it caused him to lose fear, and he told the dwarfs to stop. When the giant heard this, he turned toward him with great anger, for steam came out through the visor of his helmet and he flourished the javelin in his hand, so that he caused it to bend double; and he said:

"Luckless wretch, who gave you such boldness as to appear before me?"

"That Lord," said Beltenebros, "whom you offend, who will give me today strength with which your great arrogance may be broken."

"Well, come on, come on," said the giant, "and you will see if your might is enough to defend yourself from mine."

Beltenebros settled the lance under his arm, and at full gallop went toward him and struck him so violently on the strong plate below his belt that perforce he broke the steel sheets and the lance pierced his belly and penetrated through to the other side; and the encounter was so hard that the lance on striking the saddletree broke the saddle girths; so that it turned the saddle with him upside down under the horse, and a piece of the lance remained lodged in his body; but before he fell, he flung the javelin at him and put it through the forequarters of the horse so that it came out between its legs. And Beltenebros came out from under it as quickly as he could and grasped his sword; but the giant was mortally wounded, and the horse was dragging him under it to his great harm; but with the strength that he had, he came out from under it at once, and extracting the lance fragment he hurled it at Beltenebros, and with it gave him such a blow on the helmet together with the shield that he might have knocked him to the ground; and with the force that he put into this blow, most of his guts came out of his belly through the wound, and he fell to the ground, shouting:

"Help me, son Basagante, and come on, for I am dying."

At these shouts Basagante came up at the full speed of his horse, carrying a very heavy steel axe, and he went toward Beltenebros to strike him with it, for he intended to cut him in two; but through his great skill Beltenebros protected himself from the blow, and on passing, he sought to wound the horse, but could not, and he reached him with the tip of the sword and cut off his stirrup strap and half of his leg. And the giant because of his great fury, did not feel it, although he missed his stirrup; and he turned toward him, and Beltenebros had taken his shield off his neck, and was holding it by the arm bands, and the giant delivered such a blow on it with the axe that he hurled it to the ground. Beltenebros struck him with his sword on the arm and cut his cuirass and into his flesh, and the sword went down

through the armor plates, which were of fine steel, and he broke it in such wise that nothing remained of it but the hilt. But he was not disheartened by this, nor did he lose his great courage; rather, when he saw that the giant was trying to pull the axe out of the shield, and could not, he went as fast as he could and seized it, and his good luck so guided him that he was on the side where the stirrup was missing, and while they were both tugging at it, the giant was upset and his horse started up quickly, so that it threw him to the ground and the axe remained in the hands of Beltenebros. The giant got up with great effort and drew a very large sword that he was carrying, and as he tried to go to Beltenebros he was not able to do so because of the severed nerves he had in his leg, and he fell with one knee on the ground. And Beltenebros struck him with the axe on top of his helmet such a mighty blow that perforce all the laces were broken and it caused it to bounce off his head. And Basagante, who saw him so near, thought he would cut off his head; but he struck him high on his helmet so that it cut the whole crown all around and his hair in addition, without wounding his flesh; and Beltenebros drew back, and the helmet, which had nothing to support it, fell to his shoulders, and Basagante's sword fell to the ground on some rocks and was broken in two. Those who were watching thought that he had cut half of Beltenebros's head and they uttered loud laments, especially Leonoreta with her little girls and maidens, who were on their knees in the cart, with their hands uplifted to heaven, praying God to free them from that danger; they tore their hair and uttered loud shouts and cries as they invoked the Virgin Mary; but Beltenebros, taking off his helmet and feeling his head with his hands to see if he was mortally wounded, and not feeling anything, went with the axe against the giant. Although the latter was very strong, when he saw him coming, he became so faint-hearted that he was not able to protect himself, and Beltenebros struck him such a mighty blow on top of the head that one ear along with the jawbone he cut off and knocked to the ground. The giant hit him with the half sword and cut him a little on the leg; then Basagante fell over, rolling about on the field in the agony of death. At this time, Famongomadan had taken his helmet off his head and was

putting his hands on his wounds to staunch the blood; and when he saw his son dead, he began to blaspheme God and Saint Mary, His mother, saying that he only regretted dying because he had not destroyed their churches and monasteries, whereas they were permitting him and his son to be overcome and killed by a single knight, when they did not expect to be overcome by a hundred.

Beltenebros knelt on the ground, giving thanks to God for the great favor that he had granted him, and said to Famongomadan:

"Deprived of the hope of God and of the blessed Mary, now you will be the victim of your own great acts of cruelty."

And he made him remove his hands from the wound and said:

"Ask your idol that in exchange for all the innocent blood you have offered him, he keep that blood from flowing which is taking your life."

The giant did nothing but curse God and His saints. And Beltenebros pulled the javelin out of the horse and thrust it into Famongomadan's mouth so that it protruded from the back of his head by a good span and went into the ground; and he took Basagante's helmet and put it on his own head so that he would not be recognized; then mounting on Famongomadan's horse, which Enil had given him, he went to the cart. And the knights and maidens and little girls bowed before him, thanking him profusely for the help that he had given them; but he had them taken from their chains, and he asked them to mount their horses which were following along tethered to the cart, and to bring those two giants in the cart, and Leonoreta and her maidens on the palfreys that her squires, who also were prisoners, were leading, and to give the bodies to King Lisuarte on behalf of a foreign knight called Beltenebros, who wished to serve him, and to tell him why he had killed them. Also he asked them to give him on the king's behalf Basagante's horse which was very large and handsome, on which he might enter the battle for which the king had set a date with King Cildadan.

The knights carried out his orders with great pleasure, and they put the giants in the cart. Although it was big, they were carried in it with their legs dangling at the knees, so huge were they. And Leonoreta and the little girls and damsels made garlands of forest flowers, and with these placed on their heads, with great

joy, laughing and singing, they went off to London, where all were surprised when they saw them enter the city in such a manner, and to see such monstrous things as the giants were.

When the king learned of the great danger of his daughter, and how Beltenebros had delivered her at such great risk and danger to himself, and Quadragante having already arrived there, presenting himself before the king as one who had been vanquished by Beltenebros, he greatly wondered who that knight might be who recently had arrived in his country, surpassing all others in rare deeds at arms. And he went on praising him for quite a while, asking everybody if anyone knew him; but there was no one who knew any other news reported about him except that Corisanda, the beloved of Don Florestan, had said that on the Poor Cliff she had found a sick knight who was called Beltenebros.

"Now might it please God," said the king, "that such a man were among us, for I would not let him go, no matter what he might demand and I grant."

CHAPTER LVI

How Beltenebros, the aforementioned adventures having been finished, went to the fountain of the three jets, from where he arranged to go to Miraflores, where his lady Oriana was; and how a strange knight brought some jewels testing faithful lovers to the court of the king; and Beltenebros with his lady Oriana went unrecognized to win the glory of the quest in the test of true love.

Beltenebros, experiencing great pleasure at having concluded such a dangerous confrontation, having taken leave of the maidens and knights, returned to the other maidens whom he had found at the fountain, who had already emerged from among the trees to come to him. And he gave orders to Enil to go to London to see Gandalin, Enil's cousin, and to have some arms and armor made similar to those he had borne in those battles, for his were all so shattered that he had no protection from them, and to buy him a good sword, and at the end of a week to come back to him at that Fountain of the Three Jets, for there he would find him. He took leave of the damsels and of him, and entered the most dense part of the forest; and Enil went to carry out his orders, and the maidens to Miraflores, where on relating to Oriana and to Mabilia what they had seen, and telling them how a knight called Beltenebros had set everything to rights, their pleasure and joy were unparalleled, knowing now that Beltenebros was so close to them with such personal honor and prowess as no other could attain.

Beltenebros in the midst of the forest, as you hear, kept veering toward Miraflores and found a river that was flowing

beneath large groves; and because it was still early, he dismounted from his horse and let it graze on the green grass, and taking off his helmet, he washed his face and hands and drank of the water; and he sat down thinking of the changeable things in the world, recalling the great despair in which he had been, and how of his own free will he had asked for death, not expecting any relief for his great distress and grief, and that God, more through His compassion than through his own merits, had so restored everything, not only in leaving him as he was before, but also with much more glory and fame than ever; and especially, his being so close to seeing and possessing that lady, his greatly beloved Oriana, on account of whom when his heart found itself absent, he was placed in great sadness and tribulation; which led him to recognize how little confidence men in this world ought to have in those things in the pursuit of which they suffer and toil, devoting to them so much zeal, so much love, not remembering how quickly they are won and lost, forgetting to serve that all-powerful Lord, who gives them and can confirm them. And when they think they hold them most securely, then they are taken from them to the great anguish of their hearts, and sometimes their lives are taken, their souls not departing from them except with great assurance of their salvation. And many times things being thus lost, without any hope of their being recovered, that Lord of the world has returned them as He had done with him, giving to understand that neither in things acquired nor things lost should one have faith, but that, doing what people are obliged to do, they leave them to That One who commands and rules them without any contradiction, as one without whose hand nothing can be done.

Oh, those of you who with such tricky methods gain fortunes! How frequently and with how much diligence should you reflect that with possessions won and soul lost forever, how little such riches help to preserve you from the perpetual punishment which the justice of that eternal God has prepared for such people!

Quite carried away about these and other things, in retrospect he was raising questions and reflecting. Thus Beltenebros was meditating beside that stream voluntarily restraining the great pleasure and pride that came to him from those very great ad-

ventures that he had completed in only one day, considering that in another such short space of time, Fortune could turn that great joy into weeping, just as it had done to many others who had attained great good fortune in this world. And night having come, he mounted his horse and went on to the castle of Miraflores, and to that part of the garden where he found Gandalin and Durin, who took his horse. And Oriana and Mabilia and the maid of Denmark were on top of the wall, and with the help of the squires, and they lending a hand, he climbed up to where they were and took his lady in his arms.

But who would be the one qualified to recount the loving embraces, the sweet kisses, the tears which, with mouth pressed to mouth, were blended there together? Certainly only that one who, being subjected to that same passion and burning with such flaming ardor with his heart tormented by those wounds of love, would have been able to draw from it what those who, already cold, with youthful vigor lost, are unable to attain. Therefore, relying on the foregoing, nothing further will be related about it.

Then as they were locked in an embrace, oblivious to all else, Mabilia, as if she were arousing them from some deep sleep, taking them with her, brought them to the castle. There Beltenebros was lodged in the chamber of Oriana, where, according to the past things that you have already heard, one can believe that it was probably much more agreeable for him than Paradise itself. There he was with his lady for one week, which except for the nights, they spent in a patio where the beautiful trees were, of which we have told you, beside themselves with delightful pleasure and everything in the world that might be said and done. There Gandalin came frequently, from whom they learned all the news of the court; he had in his lodging Enil, his cousin, while the latter was having the arms made that Beltenebros had ordered.

King Lisuarte feared greatly the battle that he was to have with King Cildadan; knowing the fierce and evil giant people and other knights of his blood that he would bring to the battle, he tried very hard to prepare so that it would come out to his honor; and he had there in London with him Don Florestan and Agrajes and Galvanes Lackland, who at that time had arrived, and many other knights of great importance. They all talked a

great deal about the great deeds of Beltenebros, and many said that they surpassed in large measure those of Amadis. Don Galaor and Florestan, his brother, were so irked at this that if it had not been for the promise that they had given the king not to involve themselves in any confrontation until the battle took place, they would have searched for, and fought with him, with such anger and fury that death to him or them could not have been avoided. And they had said to themselves that if they should come out alive from the battle, they would not involve themselves in any pact except to find him; but they only spoke of this among themselves. Then the king being one day in his palace talking with his knights, an old squire came through the gate and with him two other squires, all three dressed alike, and the old squire's hair was cut short and his ears seemed large and his hair white. He went to the king, and kneeling before him, greeted him in the Greek language, as he was a native of Greece, and said to him:

"Sire, the great fame of the knights and ladies and maidens of your court, which is current throughout the world, has given me the reason for coming to see whether among them I will find what I have been seeking for sixty years everywhere in the world, without obtaining any fruit from my great efforts. And if you, noble king, think it right that a test be made here, which will not be to your harm or discredit, I shall tell you about it."

The knights, with a desire to see what it might be, humbly begged the king to grant him the favor; and he who was as eager as they were, thought well of it. Then the old squire took in his hands a chest of jasper, three cubits in length and a span wide, and its components were fastened together with gold plates; and opening it, he drew out the most extraordinary sword ever seen, for its sheath was of two emerald green strips, and they were of bone so transparent that the iron of the sword appeared within, but it was not like that of other swords, for half of it appeared so hard and bright that it could not be more so, and the other half as glowing and red as fire. The decorations on it and the sword belt on which it was suspended were of the same bone as the sheath, made of many pieces fastened together with gold screws in such a way that it could easily be girded on like any other sword belt. The squire slung it around his neck and drew

out of the chest a headdress of very beautiful flowers, half of them as beautiful and green and of a color as bright as if they had been cut immediately after blossoming; and the other half of flowers so dry that it seemed that if one merely came near them they would fall to pieces.

The king asked why those flowers coming from the same cluster were so different, some so fresh and the others so dry, and the sword so extraordinary in appearance.

"King," said the squire, "no one can draw this sword from the scabbard except the knight who loves his lady more than anyone else in the world so loves, and when it be in the hand of such a one, the half that now glows will be rendered as clean and bright as the other half appears; thus the iron will appear uniform; and this headdress of these flowers that you see, if it should happen to be placed on the head of a matron or maiden who loves her husband or lover to the same degree as the knight loves, then the dry flowers will be as green and beautiful as the others, without there being any difference; and know you that I cannot become a knight except by the hand of that faithful lover who draws out the sword, or take a sword except from her who can win the headdress of flowers. And therefore, good king, I have come to your court after sixty years of going about on this quest, thinking that just as in all of them no court of emperor or king has been able to equal yours in honor and fame, so in it will be found what until today, although I have visited them all, could not be found in them."

"Now tell me," said the king, "why does this very intense fire of this half of the sword not burn the scabbard?"

"That I shall tell you," said the squire, "gladly; know you, king, that between Tartary and India there is a sea so hot that it boils just like water over a fire, and it is all green, and within that sea are bred serpents bigger than crocodiles, and they have wings with which they fly and they are so poisonous that people flee from them with fear; but sometimes when they find them dead they value them highly, for they are very useful for making medicines; and this serpent has one bone from head to tail, and it is so thick that the whole body is formed on it, just as green as you see here on the sheath and its decoration; and because it was

reared in that boiling sea, no other fire can burn it. Now I tell you about the headdress of flowers, which are from trees that there are in the land of Tartary on an island located fifteen miles out to sea; and there are only two trees, and others are not known to exist today in any place on it; and a whirlpool is formed there in that sea so formidable and dangerous that men fear to cross over it to capture the serpents; but some who take a risk and bring them back, sell them as they wish, because if they are preserved, their greenness and vividness never perish. And now that I have told you the reasons for both phenomena, I want you to know why I travel around this way and who I am. Know you that I am a nephew of the best man of his time that there ever was, who was called Apolidon, and he dwelt for a long time in this land of yours on the Firm Island, where he left many enchantments and marvelous things, as is well known to everyone. And my father was King Ganor, his brother, to whom he left the kingdom, and by that Ganor and a daughter of the King of Canonia was I engendered; and when I was already at an age to be a knight, she asked me to grant her as a favor that since I had been a product of the great love obtaining between her and my father, I was not to be a knight except by the hand of the most faithful lover that ever was in the world, nor was I to take the sword except from the matron or maiden who loved to that same degree. I promised it to her, thinking I would not be delayed any longer in fulfilling my promise than it would take me to be in the presence of Apolidon, my uncle, and of Grimanesa, his mistress; but for me it turned out otherwise; for when I went before him, I found Grimanesa dead; and the cause of my coming having been ascertained by Apolidon, he had great pity for me, because the custom of that land is such, that not being a knight I am not able to reign in that seigniory, which comes to me by right. Therefore, not being able to remedy the situation at that time, he commanded me to return to him within a year, at the end of which he gave me this sword and headdress, telling me that for the act of stupidity I had committed in promising such a boon, I should compensate with the travail of seeking the knight and the woman who, by bringing to an end these two adventures, might enable me to fulfill my promise. Therefore, good king, this

is the reason for my quest; let your nobility appear, which has not been lacking for anyone, by your testing the magic sword, and all your knights likewise; and the queen with her ladies-in-waiting and maidens, the headdress of flowers; and if those be found who can complete it, the jewels will be theirs and the benefit and relief mine, with your carrying off the honors more than any other prince by finding in your court what is lacking in theirs."

When the old squire had finished his speech, all the knights who were with the king begged him very earnestly to order the test made; and he, who also wanted it, authorized it; and he told the squire that inasmuch as it was only five days until St. James' day, and on that day there were to be with him many knights whom he had summoned, to wait until then, because there being a larger number of people present there, it would be possible to find more easily what he was seeking. He considered it a good idea.

Gandalin, who was in the court at the time and had heard all that the squire said and what the king replied, mounting his horse went to Miraflores, and with the pretext of seeing Mabilia, went into the little patio of the beautiful trees, where he found Beltenebros playing chess with Oriana; and he said to them:

"Good friends, I bring you strange news that came today to the court."

Then he told them all about the business of the sword and headdress of flowers, and the reason the old squire brought them; and how the king had agreed that the test should be made, just as has been told you above.

Beltenebros, having heard this, lowered his head and became immersed in deep thought, so that he did not heed anything else, for in the opinion of Oriana and Mabilia and Gandalin, he was oblivious to the world. And thus he remained for a while, so long that Mabilia and Gandalin went out. And when he emerged from his meditation, Oriana asked him what caused that deep thought of his. He said to her:

"My lady, if through God and through you, my thought could be put into execution, you would make me very happy for all time."

"My good lover," said she, "for one who has made you master of her person, everything else will be easy to perform."

He took hold of her hands and kissed them many times, and said:

"Lady, what I was thinking about is that if you and I won those two jewels, our hearts would remain forever in great contentment, all the doubts by which they have been tormented being removed from them."

"How could that be done," said Oriana, "without its being for me, and for these maidens who know about our love affair, a great embarrassment and a greater danger?"

"It could be done very well," said Beltenebros, "for I shall escort you so well disguised and with such guarantees from the king your father that we would not be recognized, as if we were to go before the greatest strangers having no acquaintance with us."

"Well if that is so," said she, "let us carry out your wish, and may God grant that it be for the best, for I have no doubts about my wearing the headdress of flowers, if it can be won through excessive love."

Beltenebros said to her:

"I shall obtain a guarantee from your father that nothing will be demanded of me against my will; and I shall go fully armed, and you, my lady, will wear a brocade cape and a mask on your face, so that you can see everyone, and no one can see you; and in this manner we shall go and come without its being possible to ascertain who we are."

"My dear," said Oriana, "what you say seems good to me, and let us call Mabilia, for without her advice I would not dare agree to such an important matter."

They then called her, and the maid of Denmark, and Gandalin, who was with them; and they told them their plan; and although the danger appeared to them to be very great, recognizing that to be their desire, they did not contradict it; instead, Mabilia told them:

"The queen my mother sent to me, along with the other gifts that the maid of Denmark brought me, a very beautiful, well-

made cape, which has never been worn nor seen in all this land; and that will be for you, lady, to wear."

And at once they brought it there and put it on Oriana in a chamber, and dressing her the way she would go, with her gloves in her hand, and wearing her mask, they took her before Beltenebros, and however much he and they looked her over from head to toe, they could not find a thing by which she could be recognized by them or anyone else; and Beltenebros said:

"I never thought, lady, to be so happy not to see or recognize you."

And he ordered Gandalin to go at once to that market, and buying the most beautiful palfrey that could be had, to bring it there the day of the test to the wall of the garden, as soon as it would be past midnight. And likewise he ordered Durin, as soon as it was night, to wait for him with his horse at that place where they had entered the garden, because that night he wanted to go to the Fountain of the Three Jets; and to send Enil, his squire, to the king for the guarantee, and to take the arms that he was bringing him.

Finally, the hour having come, he left the garden and mounting his horse, went alone through the forest, which he knew very well, as one who had gone hunting in it many times; and it now being dawn, he found himself near the fountain, and it was not long before he saw Enil coming with his arms, including armor, very well made and beautiful, from which he derived great pleasure; and he asked him for news of the court. Enil told him that the king and all his men were speaking highly of his great prowess; and he sought to tell him about the sword and the headdress; but Beltenebros said to him:

"A good three days ago I obtained information about that from a maiden, on condition that I take her to the test very secretly; and it is important to me that it be done thus, and that I go with her incognito, and I shall test the sword; and because, as you know, it is my wish not to make myself known to the king or to anyone else until my deeds may merit it, you will return at once and tell the king that if he gives me a guarantee for myself and for a maiden that I shall bring, to the effect that nothing shall be done or said to us against our will, then we shall

go and try that adventure; and you will speak before the queen and her ladies-in-waiting and maidens about how the maiden makes me come there against my will, but that I could not do anything else, for I had promised it to her. And the day that the test is to be performed, come to this place at sunrise, in order that the maiden may know whether you bring the guarantee or not, and in the meantime I shall return to her in order to bring her, for she dwells fam from here."

Enil said he would do so; and giving him the arms, he went away to carry out his orders. Beltenebros went to the stream that you have already heard about, and there he remained until night, and then he left for Miraflores. When he arrived he found Durin, who took his horse, and he went to the entrance of the garden, where he saw that his lady Oriana and the others were, who received him very well; and giving them his arms, he climbed up. Mabilia said to him:

"How is this, sir cousin? you come back richer than you left here?"

"You do not understand," said Oriana; "know you that he went to look for arms with which to get out of this prison."

"That is so," said Mabilia; "it is necessary that you take counsel, since you have to fight with him."

Thus they went in high good humor to the castle, where they fed Beltenebros, for the whole day he had not eaten in order not to be discovered.

CHAPTER LVII

How Beltenebros and Oriana sent the maid of Denmark to the court to ascertain the reply which for security they had sent to ask the king for, and how they went to the test and were the ones who won the honor over all others.

Next day they told the maid of Denmark to go to London to find out what reply the king was giving to Enil, and to tell the queen and all the ladies-in-waiting and maidens that Oriana had felt ill and she was staying abed. The maiden went at once to carry out their order and she did not return until quite late; and her delay was because the king came out to receive Queen Briolanja, who had come there, and she was bringing a hundred knights to look for Amadis, under the direction of his brothers. "And she brought twenty maidens dressed in black garments like herself, and she will not cease to wear black until she has news about him; for he found her thus dressed when he enabled her to reign; and she wants to stay there with the queen until her knights return, or until she has news of Amadis." Then Oriana said to her:

"Does she appear to you as beautiful as they say?"

"So save me God," said she, "excepting you, lady, she is the most beautiful and elegant woman of any I have seen. And she was very sorry when she learned of your illness. And through me she sends word to let you know that she will see you whenever you consider it all right."

"I shall be very pleased to be with her," said Oriana, "for she is the person in the world I want most to see."

"Honor her," said Beltenebros, "for she well deserves it, although you, madam, had certain thoughts."

"My dear," said she, "let us forget this, for I am sure my thought was erroneous."

"Well, I understand," said he, "that what we now obtain from this test will render you freer from it and me much more your slave."

"Then if what happened," said Oriana, "was because of the abundant love that I have for you, I trust in God that that headdress of flowers will give proof of it."

Furthermore, the maiden told them that the king had granted Enil all the guarantees he had asked of him.

In this and other things in which they took pleasure, they spent that day and the others until the test was to be made. And the night before it, they got up at midnight and they dressed Oriana in the cape that you have already heard about, and they put the mask on her face; and Beltenebros, armed with that new and strong armor and other arms that Enil had brought him, having gone down over the garden wall, they mounted, she on a palfrey that Gandalin brought, and he on his horse; and alone they went through the forest by way of the Fountain of the Three Jets, with no little fear and dread on the part of Mabilia and the maid of Denmark lest they be recognized and that great radiance of joy be changed to great gloom. But when Oriana saw herself thus alone with her lover at night and in the forest, she was so frightened that her body trembled and she was not able to speak, and fear came to her concerning her ability to succeed in that adventure, and that to her lover, himself assured of his love for her, there might occur thereby some suspicion, and she wouldn't have set out on that journey for anything in the world. Beltenebros, seeing her deep agitation said to her:

"So help me God, lady, if I had thought that you feared this journey so much I would have died rather than to have started you out on it, and it will be well for us to turn back."

Then he turned the horse and the palfrey in the opposite direction from the one in which they were going; but when Oriana saw that because of her, such a significant thing as that was, was being blocked, she had a change of heart and said:

"My dear, don't be concerned with the fear that I as a woman have on seeing myself in a place so strange for me, but be concerned with what you as a good knight ought to do."

"My good lady," said he, "since your prudence overcomes my folly, pardon me; for I would not have dared to say or do anything, save that commanded willingly by you."

Then they went on as before; and they reached the Fountain of the Three Jets an hour before dawn; and when it was already bright daylight Enil arrived, whereat they were quite pleased, and Beltenebros said:

"Lady, this is the squire who I told you went to the king on my behalf; let us find out what word he brings."

Enil told them he brought word that everything was arranged by the king according to their desires, and that after mass the test would begin. Beltenebros gave him the shield and the lance, but did not remove his helmet; and they journeyed along the road to London, and traveled until they came through the town gate. Everyone was looking at them, saying:

"This is that good knight Beltenebros who sent Don Quadragante and the giants here. Surely, this man represents armed might at its pinnacle; that maiden who comes escorted by him ought to consider herself very fortunate."

Oriana, who heard all this, became proud to see herself the lady of that man who dominated by reason of his great strength so many and such others. Thus they reached the king's palace, where he and all his knights and the queen and her ladies-in-waiting and maidens were assembled for the test in a large hall; and when they ascertained their arrival, the king came out to receive them at the entrance to the hall; and as they came up to him, they knelt to kiss his hands. The king did not give them to them, and said:

"My good friend, note that whatever you wish, I shall do gladly, because it is for one who in a short time served me better than any knight has ever served a king."

Beltenebros thanked him with great humility and did not try to speak, and went with his maiden where he saw that the queen was. Oriana's flesh trembled with the terror she had on seeing herself in the presence of her father and mother, fearing to be

recognized; but her lover never relinquished her hand, and they knelt before the queen, and the queen raised them by the hands, and said:

"Maiden, I do not know who you are, for I have never before seen you; but for the great services which that knight who escorts you has rendered us, and for your own worth, all honor and favor as is owed to him, will be shown him and you."

Beltenebros evinced gratitude; but Oriana did not answer anything, and held her head lowered in token of humility. The king placed himself with all his knights at one side of the hall, and the queen at the other side with her ladies and maidens. Beltenebros told the king he wanted to remain apart with his maiden in order that they might be the last ones to try that adventure. The king agreed to this.

Then the king went and took the sword that was on top of a table, and drew it out a span and no more. Macandon, for thus was the squire named who brought it, said:

"King, if in your court there is not any other more enamored than you, I shall not go from here with what I desire."

And he put the sword back again, for he had to do so each time; and then Galaor made the trial, and he did not pull it out more than three fingers' breadth. And after him Florestan, and Galvanes, and Grumedan, and Brandoyvas, and Ladasin tried it, and none of them drew it out as much as Don Florestan, who took it out a span. And then Don Guilan the Pensive made the trial, and drew it half out. And Macandon said to him:

"If you were to love twice that much, you would win the sword, and I, what I have been seeking for so long."

And after him more than a hundred very well-known knights tried it, and none of them drew the sword out, and there were those who drew it out not at all. And Macandon told those that they were heretics of love. Then Agrajes came to make the trial, and before he took it, he looked toward where his lady Olinda was, and he thought that the sword would be his, in view of the faithful and true love he had for her; and he drew it out until only a span remained of it, and he tried so hard to pull it out that the glowing part of the sword reached his clothing and burned part of it, and being happier for having drawn out more of it than

anyone else, he left it and returned to his place; but first Macandon said to him:

"Sir knight, you very nearly made yourself happy and me satisfied."

And then Palomir and Dragonis, who had arrived the day before at the court, tried it, and they drew the sword out as far as Don Galaor, and Macandon said to them:

"Knights, if you divide up the portion of the sword that you have drawn out, little would remain to you with which to defend yourselves."

"You speak truly," said Dragonis, "but if you at the end of this testing are dubbed a knight, you won't be too young to remember it."

They all laughed at what Dragonis said; but now with no one remaining in the whole court to try this adevnture, Beltenebros stood up and took his lady by the hand and went where the sword was, and Macandon said to him:

"Sir foreign knight, this sword would become you better than the one you are wearing; but it would be well for you not to give up the latter out of confidence that you will obtain it, because this one, more through fidelity of heart than by force of arms is to be won."

But he took the sword and when he drew it completely out of the scabbard, at once the burning part was as shining as the other half, so that it all appeared as a unit. When Macandon saw this, he knelt before him and said:

"Oh good knight! May God honor you since you have so honored this court; quite rightly you should be loved and desired by the one you love, unless she is the falsest and most impudent woman in the world; I ask of you the honor of knighthood, since I can have it from your hand and not from any other, and you will be giving me land and sovereignty over many nobles."

"Good friend," said Beltenebros, "make the test of the headdress, and I shall do for you what I rightly should."

Then he made the sign of the cross on the sword, and leaving his own for whoever should want it, he slung the other from his neck, and taking his lady by the hand returned to where he was before; but the praise of him was so great on the part of all the

knights and ladies in love who were in the palace that Don Galaor and Florestan were moved to great fury, considering it a great dishonor that anyone in the world, other than their brother, should be put ahead of them; and they immediately decided that the first thing after the battle of King Lisuarte and King Cildadan, if they remained alive, would be to fight with him and to die or make all recognize the difference there was between him and their brother Amadis.

The test of the sword having been completed by Beltenebros, as you have heard, the king gave orders that the queen and all the others who were in the palace were to test the headdress of the flowers without being afraid of it, for if a matron were to win it, she would be more beloved and desired by her husband, and if a maiden, that it would be glory for her to be the most faithful of all women. Then the queen went and put it on her head; but the flowers did not undergo any change from what they were before; and Macandon said to her:

"My lady queen, if the king your husband did not win much with the sword, it seems indeed that you have paid him back that same way."

She returned abashed without saying anything; and then that very beautiful Briolanja, queen of Sobradisa, came up, but won no more than the queen. Macandon said to her:

"Most beautiful maiden, you must be more beloved than you love, according to what you have shown here."

And then there came four princesses, daughters of kings: Elvida, and Estrelleta, her sister, who was very buxom and beautiful, and Aldeva; and Olinda the prudent one on whose head the dry flowers began to turn somewhat green, so that everyone thought that this woman would win it; but although she wore it for quite a bit, it did not make any other change; on the contrary as she took it off, the flowers became again as dry as before. And after Olinda, more than a hundred matrons and maidens tried it; but none came up to her, and Macandon was telling jokes and saying pleasantries to all the ladies; and Oriana, who had seen all of this, was very fearful that Queen Briolanja would win it; and when she saw that the latter had failed, she was quite pleased that her lover would not think

that the love which that lady had for him had been the cause of it, for as she seemed to her to a high degree more beautiful than any woman she had ever seen in her life, she did not think she would lose the headdress, unless to her; and when she saw that now no woman remained to try it, she gave a sign to Beltenebros that he escort her; and when she came up, they placed the headdress on her head, and immediately the dry flowers turned so green and so beautiful that one could not distinguish them from the others. And Macandon said:

"Oh good maiden! You are the one I had been seeking for forty years before you were born."

Then he told Beltenebros that he should make him a knight and he begged that maiden to give him the sword from her own hand.

"Let it be at once," said he, "for I cannot linger."

Macandon put on some white clothing that he had brought with him and some white armor as a novice knight; and Beltenebros dubbed him a knight in the customary way and placed on him the right spur, and Oriana gave him quite a splendid sword that he had brought. When they saw him thus, the matrons and maidens began to laugh, and Aldeva said, and all heard it:

"Oh heavens, what an extraordinary youth and what an extraordinary adornment to all novice knights! It ought to please us greatly that he will be a novice all his life."

"How do you know that?" said Estrelleta.

"By those clothes," said she, "that he is wearing, which cannot wear out before he does."

"May God make him so," said they, "and may He keep him as handsome as he is now."

"Good ladies," said he, "I would not give my pleasure for your politeness; for better am I in politeness and youth than you in politeness and sense of shame."

The king was pleased with what he had replied, for what they had said to Macandon did not seem proper to him.

This business done, Beltenebros took his lady and bade the queen farewell and she said to her daughter, whom she did not recognize:

"Good maiden, since your desire has been that we not recognize you, I beg you that from wherever you may be you let me know how you are getting along, and that you ask favors of me, for they will be granted you with pleasure."

"Lady," said Beltenebros, "I am as well acquainted with her as I am with you, although it has been only seven days that I have been going about with her; but as for what I have seen, I tell you she is beautiful and with such hair that she has no reason to cover it up."

Briolanja said to her:

"Maiden, I do not know who you are, but judging by what you have shown here of your love, if your lover loves you as much as you love him, this would be the fairest match that love ever united, and if he is smart, he will make it so."

Oriana was quite pleased with what Briolanja said. Whereupon they took leave of the queen and went away on horseback as they had come; and the king and Don Galaor went with them, and Beltenebros said to the king:

"Sire, take this maiden and honor her for she well deserves it, since she has so honored your court."

The king took her by her palfrey's rein, and he went on talking with Don Galaor, who had no desire to hear from him anything about good love because he already considered it settled that he would fight with him; and when they had ridden on for a while, Beltenebros took Oriana and said to the king:

"Sire, from here on may God be with you, and if you see fit that I be one of the hundred for your battle, I shall gladly serve you."

The king was quite pleased at this; and embracing him, he thanked him, saying that by having him come to his aid he was losing much of his fear.

So he and Galaor turned back. And Beltenebros penetrated into the forest with his mistress and with Enil, who was carrying the arms, very happy that their adventures had come out so well, he wearing that green sword at his neck and she wearing on her head the headdress of flowers. Thus they arrived at the Fountain of the Three Jets, and down from a mountain near at

hand they saw a squire coming on horseback; and on approaching, he said:

"Knight, Arcalaus orders you to bring this damsel before him, and that if you tarry and make him take horse, he will cut off your heads."

"Where is Arcalaus the enchanter?" said Beltenebros.

The man pointed him out to him under some trees, and another with him; and they were armed and their horses beside them. Oriana, having heard this, was so frightened that she could hardly keep herself on the palfrey. Beltenebros came up to her and said:

"Lady, don't fear; for if this sword does not fail me, I shall protect you."

Then he took his arms, and said to the squire:

"Tell Arcalaus that I am a foreign knight who does not recognize him or has any reason to do his bidding."

When Arcalaus heard this, he was very furious and said to the knight who was with him:

"Nephew Lindoraque, take that headdress that that maiden is wearing and it will be for your beloved, Madasima, and if the knight forbids your taking it, cut off his head, and hang her by the hair from a tree."

Lindoraque mounted and went at once to do so, but Beltenebros, who had heard him, stopped in front of him and although he saw he was very big, as he was a son of Cartadaque, the giant of the Forbidden Mountain, and of a sister of Arcalaus, he held him in low esteem for the great arrogance with which he came, and he said to him:

"Knight, don't come forward any farther."

"On account of you I shall not desist from doing what you as an arrogant man and he an an evil one can do."

"Then now," said Beltenebros, "there will be shown what you as an arrogant man and he ans an evil one can do."

They they went and struck each other, with heavy collisions, so that their lances were broken, and Lindoraque was thrown from his saddle, and carried a piece of the lance thrust into his body; but he got up at once with his great valor, and seeing Beltenebros coming to strike him, and wishing to protect himself

from the blow, he stumbled and fell to the ground, so that the iron of the lance came through his back and he died at once. Arcalaus who saw him thus, quickly mounted to come to his aid; but Beltenebros went for him and made him miss with his lance thrust; and as he passed he gave him with the sword such a blow that he caused the lance along with half of his hand to fall to the ground, so that all he had left was his thumb. When he saw himself thus, he began to flee, and Beltenebros after him; but Arcalaus threw away the shield that he was wearing on his neck, and with the great speed of his horse pulled so far ahead that Beltenebros could not overtake him. Then he returned to his lady, and ordered Enil to take Lindoraque's horse and the hand and shield of Arcalaus, and to go to King Lisuarte and tell him why they had attacked him.

This having been done, he took his lady and went on his way; and after they had rested a little while beside a fountain, night having already come, they reached Miraflores, where they found Gandalin and Durin, who took their animals; and Mabilia and the maid of Denmark, who with great joy in their hearts received them at the wall of the entrance to the garden, as women who if for them some interval of time had elapsed, would not be expecting anything but their death; Mabilia said to them:

"You bring beautiful gifts; but indeed I tell you that we have paid for them with great anxiety of mind and many heartfelt tears; and thanks be to God who brought it off so well."

And they entered the castle, where they dined and rested with great joy and happiness.

King Lisuarte and Don Galaor returned to the town after they left Beltenebros; a maiden came to them and gave the king a letter, saying that it was from Urganda the Unknown, and another to Don Galaor; and without saying any more to him, she turned back on the road over which she had come previously. The king took the letter and read it. It read as follows:

"To you, Lisuarte, king of Great Britain: I, Urganda the Unknown, send greetings and make known to you that in that cruel and dangerous battle of yours and King Cildadan's that Beltenebros, by whom you are so much strengthened, will lose his name and great renown; for that one, by one blow that he

will strike will have all his great deeds placed in oblivion; and in that hour you will be in the greatest sorrow and danger you were ever in; and when the sharp sword of Beltenebros scatters your blood, you will be in complete danger of death. That will be a cruel and grievous battle where many strong and valiant knights will lose their lives; it will be of great fury and of harsh cruelty without any pity. But at the end, by the three blows which that Beltenebros will strike in it, those on his side will be the victors. Take care, king, what you do, for what I am sending to tell you will be done without doubt."

The letter having been read by the king, although he was absolutely a man of his word and of stout heart in all dangers, deeming this Urganda to be so wise that for the most part all the things she foretold turned out to be true, he was somewhat frightened, having believed that Beltenebros, whom he so greatly esteemed, would lose his life there and his own life would not be without great danger; but with a happy mien he went to Don Galaor, who had now read his letter and was thinking, and he said to him:

"My good friend, I wish to take counsel with you without anyone's knowing it, about this matter concerning which Urganda writes me."

Then he showed him the letter, and Don Galaor said to him:

"Sire, according to what is contained in mine, it is more fitting for me to be advised than to advise; but still, if some way could be found whereby this battle might be avoided with honor, I should deem it a good idea; and if this cannot be, at least I should think that you, sire, ought not to be in it, because I see here two very serious matters: one, that by the arm and sword of Beltenebros your blood will be shed, and the other that by three blows that he will give, those on his side will be victors. I don't know how to interpret it, because he is now on your side, and according to what the letter says, he will be on the other."

The king said to him:

"My good friend, the great love you have for me causes me not to be well advised by you; for if I were to lose my hope in that Lord who has placed me at such a great height, by thinking that the knowledge of any person could thwart His will, with

much cause and reason it being permitted by Him, I ought to be down from that height; because the courage and prudence of kings must be in conformity with the greatness of their status, and by doing what they should, not only with their subjects but in defense of them, the remedy for things that infuse in them fear and fright they must leave to that Lord in whom is complete power. Therefore, very good friend, I shall be in the battle, and that risk which God may give to my people, that risk I wish Him to give to me."

Don Galaor, deflected from another opinion and seeing the great spirit of the king, said:

"Not without cause are you praised for being the greatest and most honorable prince in the world; and if kings thus avoided the weak counsel of their subjects, no one would dare to tell them anything except what would truly be in their service."

Then he showed him his letter, which read thus:

"To you, Don Galaor of Gaul, strong and vigorous, I, Urganda, greet you as the one whom I esteem and love, and I wish that through me you learn what in the grievous battle, if you go into it, will happen to you; for after great atrocities and deaths seen by you in its final melee, your valiant body and tough limbs will fail your strong and ardent heart; and at the conclusion of the battle your head will be in the power of that one who will give the three blows by which it will be won."

When the king saw this, he said to him:

"Friend, if what this letter says, comes out true, it is clear that your death would come if you were to enter into that battle. And according to the way great conflicts at arms have turned out for you, very little fault would be found with you if you left this battle. So I shall arrange it so that in conformity with your service to me and with your own honor, you may be excused from it."

Don Galaor said to him:

"It indeed appears, sire, that from the advice that I gave you you have received annoyance, since although I am healthy and able-bodied, you command me to fall into such great error and discredit to my honor. May it please God not to give me any opportunity for being obedient to you in such a matter."

The king said:

"Don Galaor, you speak better than I. And now let us stop talking about this, having trust in that Lord which one should have, and let us guard these letters, because in view of the fearful words that come in them, if they were to be known, they could implant great cause for fear in people."

Thereupon they went to the town, and before they entered it, they saw two armed knights on their weary, exhausted horses, and their armor hacked in some places, for it really appeared that they had not been without great confrontations; their names were Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil, his brother; and they came in order to be in the battle if the king should wish to receive them; and Don Bruneo knew about the sword test; he had made a great effort to arrive in time to try the test, as one who already had been under the arch of the faithful lovers, as you have already heard; and because of the great and faithful love that he had for Melicia, Amadis's sister, he really thought that he would have won the sword and that any other thing, no matter how difficult, by reason of his great love, he would have accomplished; and he regretted very much that that adventure was ended. And when they saw the king they went to him with great humility, and he received them quite cordially. And Don Bruneo said to him:

"Sire, we have heard of a battle for which you have a date set, in which, as the number of people will be small, it will be important that choices be made, and if you have a report on us to the effect that our valor deserves to be in it, we shall serve you gladly."

The king, who had already been informed by Don Galaor of the excellence of these two brothers, especially that of Don Bruneo, who was, although a youth, one of the outstanding knights to be found in a large area, was very pleased with them and with their service, and thanked them very much. Then Don Galaor made himself known and begged them to lodge with him, and until the battle was waged, that they be together, reminding him concerning Florestan his brother, and Agrajes and Don Galvanes, that these were always in one company.

Don Bruneo greatly appreciated his offer, saying to him that he was the knight whom he loved most in the world outside of Amadis, his brother, for whom he had spent great effort in searching, after he found out how he had set out in such wise from the Firm Island, and that he would not desist in the search, except for being in that battle, and that he agreed with him in what he said. Thus Don Bruneo and his brother Branfil stayed in the company of Don Galaor and in the service of King Lisuarte, as you have heard.

The king having betaken himself to his palace, Enil, squire of Beltenebros, arrived with the head dangling by the hair from the breast strap of his hackney, and with the shield and half of the hand of Arcalaus the enchanter; and before he entered the palace, there came behind him many people of that town to find out what that could be about. Reaching the king, he told him what Beltenebros had directed him to say to him, with which the king was very happy and marveled at the great deed of this valiant and courageous knight, and he was praising him highly, and thus did they all; but this increased the fury of Don Galaor and Don Florestan all the more, and they longed to fight with him, and to die or make everybody recognize that his deeds could not equal those of Amadis, their brother.

At this time Filispinel arrived, the knight who had gone on behalf of King Lisuarte to challenge the giants, as you have heard, and he identified most of those who were to be in the battle, in which there were many fierce giants and other knights with records of great deeds, and that they were already going to Ireland to join King Cildadan, and that within four days they would disembark at the port of Vega, where the battle was by agreement to take place; and also he told how he had found at Boiling Lake, which is on the Island of Mongaza, King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus held captives by Gromadaza, the fierce giantess, wife of Famongomadan, who was holding them in very cruel captivity, in which they were tortured each day by many lashings and other severe tortures, so that their flesh, afflicted with many wounds, bled continually. And with him he brought a letter written for the king, which read thus:

"To the great lord Lisuarte, King of Great Britain, and to all our friends of his seigniory: I, Arban, wretched former king of North Wales, and Angriote of Estravaus, cast into a doleful prison, make known to you that our great misfortune, much more cruel than death itself, has put us in the power of violent Gromadaza, wife of Famongomadan, who in revenge for the death of her husband and son, makes us bear such tortures and punishments, cruel beyond all imagining, to such an extent that many times we have asked for death, which for us would be a great relief; but she, desirous of giving us each day a living death, causes our lives to be sustained, though they already would have been forsaken by us, if the loss of our souls had not prevented it. But because we have already arrived at the end of our ability to live, we have sought to send this letter written with our blood, and with it to say good-bye, beseeching our Lord that He may give you the victory of the battle against these traitors who have done us such harm."

The king was greatly distressed about the loss of those two knights and had great grief in his heart; but perceiving that thereby they would be benefited very little, he mustered a cheerful countenance while encouraging his own men, putting before them many other serious affairs, in which those who seek to achieve honors and feats at arms had participated; inciting them to the battle, which if won, would be the real means of delivering those knights from prison. And he gave orders at once to all those who were to be with him in the battle, to be ready the next day; saying that he wanted to set out against his enemies, and so he did; for with that great courage he always had in all confrontations, he moved with his knights to give battle to them.

CHAPTER LVIII

How Beltenebros came to Miraflores and was with his lady Oriana after the victory of the sword and headdress; and from there he went to the battle that was agreed upon with King Cildadan, and what happened in it at the victory that they had.

Beltenebros was with his lady in Miraflores for three days after he had won the sword and the headdress of flowers; and on the fourth day he left there alone at midnight, with only his arms and horse, for he ordered his squire Enil to go to a castle that was at the foot of a mountain near where the battle was to take place. This castle belonged to an old knight who was called Abradan, from whom all the knights errant received much service; and that night Beltenebros passed near the army of King Lisuarte. And he traveled so far that on the fifth day he arrived there and found Enil who had come that day, at which he was quite pleased, and he was very well received by the knight. And while he was there, two squires, nephews of the host, arrived, who came from where the battle was to be, and they said that Cildadan had already arrived with his knights, and that they lodged in tents near the seashore and they were unloading their arms and horses, and that they saw arrive there Don Grumedan and Giontes, nephew of King Lisuarte, and that they had arranged a truce until the day of the battle, and also that neither one of the kings was to put in the battle more than one hundred knights, as had been stipulated. The host said to them:

"Nephews, what do you think of those people whom may God curse?"

"Good uncle," said they, "it is not for discussion, in view of the extent to which they are strong and formidable, for we shall tell you that unless God miraculously favors the side of our lord the king, his power against them is as nothing."

Tears came to the eyes of the host and he said:

"Oh, powerful Lord, do not forsake the finest and most upright king in the world!"

"Good host," said Beltenebros, "do not be dismayed by fierce people, for many times excellence and modesty overcome arrogant valor. And I beg you earnestly to go to the king and tell him that in your house is a knight by the name of Beltenebros, and that he let me know the day of the battle, for I shall be there at once.

When he heard this, he was very cheerful and said:

"What, sir, you are the one who sent Don Quadragante to the court of the king my lord, and the one who killed that fierce giant Famongomadan and his son when they took Leonoreta and her knights prisoners! Now I tell you that if I have done some service to knights errant, with this single reward I consider myself satisfied for everything, and what you command me, I shall gladly do."

Then taking with him those nephews of his, he went where they guided him and found that King Lisuarte and all his company had arrived within a half league of their enemies and that the battle would be the next day; and he told him the message that he brought, which made the king and everyone very happy, and he said:

"Now we lack only one knight for the full complement of the hundred."

Don Grumedan said:

"Rather I think, sire, that you have an excess of them, for Beltenebros is well worth five."

Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes were greatly irked at this remark, for they did not like any honor to be given to Beltenebros, through envy of his great deeds rather than for any other enmity, but they kept silent. Abradan, being informed concerning what he had come for, having taken leave of the king, returned to his guest and told him of the pleasure and the great

joy that the king and all his men had with his message, and that to fill out the complement of one hundred only one knight was lacking. Enil, hearing this, drew Beltenebros aside through a door and kneeling before him said:

"Although I, sir, have not served you, presuming on your great integrity, I wish to ask a favor of you, and I beg you in heaven's name to grant it to me."

Beltenebros raised him up and said:

"Ask whatever you wish, that I am able to do."

Enil sought to kiss his hands, but he would not permit it, and Enil said:

"Sir, I ask of you that you make me a knight and that you ask the king to put me into the count of the hundred knights, since one is lacking."

Beltenebros said to him:

"Friend Enil, let not a desire to begin with such a great and dangerous action as this will be enter into your heart. And I do not tell you this in order not to make you a knight, but because it is more fitting for you to begin with other, easier actions."

"My good sir," said Enil, "for the sake of being in this battle I cannot be risking danger to such an extent from being in it, even if death may come to me, as that extent to which great honor may accrue to me from it; for if I come out alive, it will always be an honor and a distinction for me to have been included in the number of the aforesaid one hundred knights, and I shall be regarded as one of them; and if I die, death would be quite welcome, because memory of me would be joined with that of the other valued knights who are to die there."

A loving compassion came to the heart of Beltenebros and he said to himself: "You indeed seem to be of that lineage of the esteemed and loyal Don Gandales, my foster father." And he replied to him:

"Since you want it thus, so be it."

He went at once to his host and asked to give him some arms for his squire, for he wanted to dub him a knight. The host gave them to him gladly, and Enil having kept his vigil that night in the chapel and having said mass at dawn, Beltenebros dubbed him knight. And immediately he left for the battle, and his host with

him with the two nephews, who were carrying their arms for them. And on arriving where it was to be, they found good King Lisuarte, who was setting his knights in battle order for attacking their enemies, who were waiting for them on a level field; and when he saw Beltenebros, he as well as his men took very great courage, and Beltenebros said to him:

"Sire, I come to carry out my promise, and I bring a knight with me in place of the one I learned you were lacking."

The king received him with great joy, and he placed his knight in the complement of the hundred.

Then he moved one battle line of his men against their enemies, as there were not enough men for more. But in front of the king, who was going in the middle of the battle line, they put Beltenebros and his companion, and Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes, and Gandalas, foster father of Don Galaor and his sons Bramandil and Gavus, whom Don Galaor had already dubbed a knight, and Nicoran of the Fearful Bridge and Dragonis and Palomir, and Vinorante and Giontes, nephew of the king, and the esteemed Don Bruneo of Bonamar, and his brother Branfil and Don Guilan the Pensive. These went together in front of everybody as you have heard; at their head went that honorable and esteemed old man Don Grumedan, foster father of Queen Brisena, with the king's standard.

King Cildadan had his people very well drawn up and in front of himself the giants, who were very evil folk, and with them twenty knights of their lineage, who were very brave; and he ordered Madanfabul, the giant of the island of the Red Tower and ten knights with him, the most valued that he had there, to stand on a little knoll. And he commanded him not to move from there until the battalion was engaged and all were tired, and that then attacking fiercely, he should try to kill King Lisuarte or capture and bring him to the ships.

Thus, as you hear, they went at each other in fine order and very slowly. But when they came close, those who were going in front collided so violently that many of them went to the ground. But at once both battalions joined in battle with such great fury and cruelty that their strong valor caused many horses to flee across the field without their masters, leaving some of

them dead and others badly wounded. Therefore with good reason it could be said that that day was violent and grievous for those who were there. With them attacking and killing one another, the third part of the day passed without there being any rest, with so much rigor and travail on the part of everyone that it being in the boiling hot weather of summer, with its tremendous heat, they as well as their horses very exhausted and weary went on miraculously, and the wounded lost much blood, so that not being able to maintain life, they remained on the battlefield as ugly corpses, especially those who had been wounded by the giants.

At that time Beltenebros performed great feats at arms, holding that very good sword of his in his hand, knocking down and killing those whom he found in front of him, although the concern over guarding the king in the great melee in which he saw him hindered him, for if the king were overcome, the entire dishonor would be his, just as if he were victor, the glory would be his, and this caused the king to put those protecting him in the greatest danger. But the rare exploits accomplished by Beltenebros having been seen by Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes, they kept on holding along with him, giving and sustaining so many blows that the great envy felt by them caused those on their side to be pointed out to the great advantage of all. And Don Bruneo joined with them and guarded Don Galaor, who like a furious lion, in order to equal the prowess of Beltenegros, not fearing the tremendous blows of the giants or the death that he saw others suffer before his eyes, plunged with his sword among his foes attacking and killing them; and going about as you hear, with angry, raging heart, he saw before him the giant Cartadaque of the Forbidden Mountain, who with a heavy axe was striking all those he could reach such tremendous blows that he had more than six knights lying at his feet; but he was wounded in the shoulder by a blow that Don Florestan had given him, so that much blood was flowing from him. And Don Galaor seized his sword and went for him, and gave him such a slanting blow on top of his helmet that as much as he reached of it along with one ear, he struck off; and his sword not stopping there, cut the shaft of the axe near his hands. When the giant saw him so near, not having anything with which he could strike, he threw his

arms around him with such force that the saddle girths having been broken, he dragged the saddle off after him and Don Galaor fell to the ground, the giant holding him so tightly that he could not escape from his strong arms; it seemed to him rather that all his bones were being pulverized. But before losing his senses, Don Galaor recovered his sword that he had hanging at his side; piercing the giant through his visor, he made him lose the strength of his arms, so that in a short time he was dead. Galaor got up so tired with the great effort that he had exerted and from the blood that was flowing copiously from his wounds that he was not able to draw his sword out of the head of the giant.

And there gathered there to aid them many knights from both sides, who made the battle more harsh and cruel than it had been all day, among whom King Cildadan arrived to aid his side and Beltenebros the other side. And with his sword he struck King Cildadan on the head two blows so heavy that he caused him, devoid of all his strength, to fall from his horse at the feet of Don Galaor; who took the sword that fell from him and began to deliver mighty blows in all directions until he lost strength and consciousness, and not being able to hold himself upright, fell on top of King Cildadan as though dead.

At this hour the giants Gandalas and Albadanzor came to grips and they both struck each other with their maces such heavy blows that they and their horses went down to the ground. This Albadanzor had one arm broken, and Gandalas a leg, but he and his sons killed Albadanzor.

At that time there were on both sides more than one hundred twenty knights dead, and it was already noon. And Mandafabul, the giant of the Island of the Red Tower, who was on the hillock as you have heard, at that juncture scrutinized the battle, and as he saw so many dead and the others weary and their armor rent in many places, and the horses wounded, he decided that with his companions he could easily conquer the others; and he moved from the hill with such momentum and so furiously that it was a marvel, shouting to his men:

"Don't leave a man alive, and I shall take or kill King Lisuarte."

And Beltenebros, who saw him coming thus, and who then had taken a rested horse from one of the nephews of Abradan, his host, placed himself in front of the king, calling Florestan and Agrajes, whom he saw nearby; and they were joined by Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil and Guilan the Pensive and Enil, who had done much in that battle, for which reason he was forever held in high fame. All these, although they and their horses were wounded severely, placed themselves in front of the king. And in front of Madanfabul came a knight named Sarmadan the Lion, the strongest and most valiant at arms of all those of the lineage of King Cildadan, and he was his uncle. And Beltenebros came out to him from among his men, and Sarmadan struck him with his lance on the shield, and although it was broken, he pierced it and gave him a wound, but not a severe one. And Beltenebros as he passed him struck him with the sword across the visor of his helmet such a glancing blow that both eyes were shattered and he fell to the ground senseless. But Madanfabul and those who came with him attacked so fiercely that most of those who were with King Lisuarte were unhorsed. And Madanfabul went straight for the king with such ferocity that those who were with him were not powerful enough to defend him with any blows they might deliver, and he threw his arm around his neck and squeezed it so hard that he pulled him out of his saddle deprived of all his strength and was going away with him to the ships. Beltenebros, who saw him carried thus, said:

"Oh, Lord God, may it not please you that Oriana suffer such offense!"

And he spurred his horse and seized his sword, and overtaking the giant, struck him with all his strength on the left arm, on which he was carrying the king, and cut it off near the elbow, and cut one side of the king's coat of mail and gave him a wound from which much blood flowed; and leaving him on the ground, the giant fled hobbling like a cripple.

When Beltenebros saw that he had destroyed that fierce giant with that blow and freed the king from such danger, he began to shout:

"Gaul, Gaul, for I am Amadis!"

And he said this while attacking his foes, unhorsing and killing many of them, which was very necessary at that time, because the knights on his side were very much decimated in number, some of them wounded, others on foot and still others dead. And the enemy had arrived rested and with great strength and with a strong desire to kill as many as they could reach, and for this reason Amadis hurried very fast. So it can well be said that his great strength was the restorative and protection of all those on his side; and what made him gather more strength was Don Galaor, his brother, whom he saw on foot and very tired; and afterwards he had not seen him, although he had searched thoroughy for him; and he thought he was dead, whereupon he killed every knight he met.

When King Cildadan's men saw such havoc among those on his side and the great deeds that Amadis was performing, they took for their leader a knight of the lineage of the giants, a very valiant man, Gadancuriel by name, and he was inflicting such great damage on their opponents that he was scrutinized and singled out by all; and with him they hoped to overcome their foes. But at this hour, Amadis with the great rage that he felt and with his desire to kill those whom he overtook, penetrated so deeply into the ranks of his opponents that he might have been lost. And King Lisuarte, having now taken a horse — there being with him Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Don Florestan and Guilan the Pensive and Ladasin and Galvanes Lackland and Olivas, and Grumedan, from whose arms they had cut away the standard he was bearing — on seeing Amadis in great danger, although he was wounded with many wounds, came to his aid like a good king to the great pleasure of all when they learned that Beltenebros was Amadis; and all together they went in among the foe, attacking and killing, so that they did not dare await them. And they allowed Amadis to go wherever he wished so that chance guided him where Agrajes, his cousin, and Palomir and Branfil and Dragonis were on foot, for their horses had been killed and many knights had set upon them who were trying to kill them; and they were together and were defending themselves very bravely. And as he saw them there, he shouted to Don Florestan, his brother, and to Guilan the Pensive, and with

them he rescued them. And there came at him a very distinguished knight, Vadamigar by name, whose helmet had been knocked off his head, and he gave Amadis a tremendous thrust with the lance on the neck of his horse, so that the iron tip of the lance passed through to the other side; but Amadis reached him with the sword and cleaved him down to his ears. And as he fell, Amadis said:

"Cousin Agrajes, mount that horse."

And Don Florestan unhorsed another knight, Danel by name, and gave his horse to Palomir; and Don Guilan gave another horse to Branfil, from which he had unhorsed Landin, leaving him very badly wounded; and Palomir brought another horse to Dragonis, so that all were rescued. And they followed where Amadis was leading, performing wonders at arms and calling out his name so that the enemy might recognize him and be plunged into greater fear. And so well did he and Agrajes and Don Florestan fight along with those knights that they found themselves joined with them. And with the great excellence of the king, their lord, who that day was of considerable avail, demonstrating his fine courage, they won the battle, most of their foes remaining dead or wounded on the battlefield. But Amadis with the great rage he had on thinking that Don Galaor, his brother, was dead, went on attacking and killing them until he drove them to the sea, where they had their fleet.

But that valiant and courageous Gadancuriel, leader of the opponents, when he saw his men thus overcome and that he would not be allowed to go on board the ships, gathered as many as he could with him and turned with sword raised in his hand to attack the king, who was closest to him; but Florestan, who had seen him delivering great and vicious blows that day, fearing danger to the king, put himself in front in order to receive the blows on himself, although there remained to him only the hilt of his sword. And Gadancuriel struck him so hard on top of the helmet that he cut it down to the flesh and Florestan struck him with what he had left of the sword such a blow that he knocked the helmet from his head. And the king came up then and hit Gadancuriel with his sword, so that he split his head in two.

And since he was dead, nobody remained to hold the field; rather, in order to reach the boats they died in the water and the others on land, so that none remained. Then Amadis called Don Florestan and Agrajes and Dragonis and Palomir, and said to them weeping:

"Ah, good cousins, I am afraid we have lost Don Galaor. Let us go and look for him."

So they went to where Amadis had seen him on foot, there where he had unhorsed King Cildadan, and there were so many dead that they could not find him. But by turning them all over, Florestan found him, recognizing him by a sleeve of his surcoat that was blue with flowers embroidered on it in silver; and they began to lament loudly over him. When Amadis saw this, he dropped from his horse, and the wounds that were already coagulated, with the force of the fall were opened, so that blood flowed freely from him. Taking off his helmet and his shield, which were shattered, he came up weeping to Galaor and took off the latter's helmet and put his head on his knees; and Galaor, with the air he gave him, began to stir somewhat.

Then they all came up weeping with bitter grief on seeing him thus. And when they had been there for a short while, twelve maidens, well-dressed, arrived there, and with them squires who were bearing a litter covered with fine cloth, and they knelt before Amadis and said:

"Sir, we have come here for Don Galaor. If you want him alive, give him to us; if not, all the doctors in Great Britain will not cure him."

Amadis, who did not recognize the maidens, was thinking about Galaor's great danger; he did not know what to do; but those knights advised him that it was better to give him to them at a risk than to see him die before their eyes without being able to help him. Then Amadis said:

"Good maidens, could we find out where you are taking him?"

"No," said they, "for the present, and if you want him alive, give him to us at once; if not, we shall go away."

Amadis begged them to take him with him, but they would not; and at his request they took Ardian, his dwarf, and his squire.

Then they put him thus armed except his head and hands, and half dead, on the litter. And Amadis and those knights, lamenting loudly, went as far as the sea with him, where they saw a ship, into which the maidens put the litter. And then they asked King Lisuarte please to give them King Cildadan who was among the dead, reminding him that he had been a good king and that by his doing what he was obligated to do, Fortune had led him into such great tribulation that he should have compassion for him, so that if that Fortune were to turn against him, he might encounter it in others. The king gave orders to deliver him more dead than alive to them; and at once they took him in that litter and put him on the ship. And hoisting the sails, they left the shore in great haste.

At this point the king approached, who had been making an effort so that nothing might be saved of the fleet of his enemies, and causing those to be taken prisoners who had not died in battle; and he found Amadis and Don Florestan and Agrajes weeping, and all the others who were there. And finding out that the cause of it was the loss of Don Galaor, he was much grieved and pained in his heart, as one who loved him sincerely and held him dear. And this very rightly, for since the day he remained as his liege man, he never thought of any thing but serving him. And the king dismounted, although he had many wounds, for his arms were all stained with his blood, and embraced Amadis, out of the very great love he had for him, and consoling him and telling him that if great regret could cure the ills of Galaor, his own would suffice in view of the great sorrow for him that he felt in his heart; but by having hope in the powerful Lord, who would not want to forsake entirely such a man, he consoled himself, and thus with their courageous minds, they should do. And taking them with him he went to the tent of King Cildadan, which was rare and luxurious, and there he kept them with him, asking that he be brought something to eat and afterwards that diligence be exercised in burying the knights who died on his behalf in a monastery that there was at the foot of that mountain. And he ordered them to make provisions for their souls and he gave great sums of money, not only for the restoration of their souls, but also that a very fine chapel be built and that

here they be placed in tombs richly ornamented, and their names inscribed on them. And messengers having been dispatched to Queen Brisena, informing her of that good fortune that God had given him, he and those knights who were badly wounded went to a town four leagues from there, which was called Ganota, and there they remained until they were healed of their wounds.

In the meantime while the battle took place, the beautiful Queen Briolanja, who had remained with Queen Brisena, decided to go to Miraflores to see Oriana, for they, the one just as much as the other, wanted to see each other because of the reputation of their beauty. Oriana, having learned of Briolanja's intention, ordered her apartment to be adorned with very luxurious hangings; and when the queen arrived and they saw each other, they were greatly astounded, so much so that neither the enchanted arch nor the trial of the sword had such an effect or gave such assurance as to exempt Oriana from a very great shock, she believing that in the world there was not a heart so captivated and subjugated that the beauty of Briolanja by breaking those bonds would not win it for itself. And Briolanja, having sometimes seen the anguish and tears of Amadis together with those great tests of arms here told, suspected at once that in view of his great worth, his heart did not deserve to suffer except for that one before whom all those women who were esteemed for their beauty had to flee in order that their beauty not be eclipsed by her great brilliance, freeing Amadis from blame for thus having rejected what on her part was tried on him.

Thus they were both together speaking with much pleasure about the things that they liked best. And as Briolanja was telling among other things what Amadis had done for her as the most important, and how she had sincere regard for him, Oriana, in order to find out more, said:

"My lady and queen, since he is so excellent and of such high esteem, as a descendant of the most lofty emperors in the world, according to what I have heard, and expecting to be king of Gaul, why wouldn't you take him with you, making him lord of that realm that he gave you to win, since in all things he is your equal?"

Briolanja said to her:

"Dear lady, I really believe that although you have seen him many times, you do not know him. Don't you think I would consider myself the luckiest woman in the world if I could have achieved what you say? But I want you to know what happened to me in this matter, and keep it secret as such a lady as you should keep it, for I came at him with what you said just now and I tried to have him for myself in wedlock, about which I am always ashamed whenever I think of it; and he gave me clearly to understand that he cared little about me or about any other woman. And this I have believed because while he dwelt with me during that period of time, I never heard him speak of any other woman as all the other knights do. But this much I tell you that he is the one man in the world for whom I would rather lose my kingdom and risk my person."

Oriana was very happy about this which she heard from her, and more confident of this friend of hers, from witnessing the great feeling with which Briolanja uttered it, than because of any of the other proofs, and she said:

"I am astounded at what you have told me, for if Amadis did not love any woman, he could not have entered under the arch of the loyal lovers, where they say that for him were made greater signs of loyal love than for any other who was there."

"He can indeed love," said the queen, "but he is the most secretive knight that ever was."

Talking about this and many other things, they were there ten days, at the end of which they both went with their retinue to the town of Fernisa, where Queen Brisena was awaiting the king her husband. She was very pleased with them on seeing her daughter in good health and her beauty restored. There the good news came to them of the winning of the battle, and as a result of the great pleasure it gave them, Queen Brisena gave many alms to churches and monasteries, and to other persons who were needy. But when Queen Briolanja heard that Amadis was the one they called Beltenebros, who could tell you the joy that her heart felt? And equally joyful were Queen Brisena and all the matrons and maidens who loved him dearly; and with them Oriana and Mabilia pretending that that news had come to them as recently as to the others. And Briolanja said to Oriana:

"What do you think, my dear, about that good knight who until now was praised, while the fame of Amadis was becoming beclouded? For already there was scarcely any remembrance of him: and although I esteemed him greatly and knew much concerning his deeds of chivalry, I was already in doubt, on seeing the mighty exploits of Beltenebros, as to which of them I should be inclined to favor."

"My lady queen," said Oriana, "I know that already we were all in the same situation; and if he comes with the king, my father, let us ask him for what reason he abandoned his name and who is the woman who won the headdress of the flowers."

"So let it be done," said Briolanja.

CHAPTER LIX

How king cildadan and don galaor were carried away in order to heal them, and were placed, the one in a strong tower flanked by the sea, the other in a garden with high walls and adorned with iron gratings, where each one of them, on recovering consciousness, thought he was in prison, they not knowing by whom they had been brought there and what else had happened to them.

Now we shall tell you what became of King Cildadan and Galaor. Know you that the maidens who carried them away took care of their wounds and on the third day they were completely conscious again. And Don Galaor found himself inside a garden in a finely wrought edifice supported by four marble pillars, enclosed from pillar to pillar with a strong grating of iron, so that the garden, from a bed where he was placed, was visible, and what he could manage to see of it appeared to be surrounded by a high wall, in which there was a little door covered with sheet-iron, and he was frightened on seeing himself in such a place, thinking he had been put in prison, and he found himself in great pain from his wounds, so that he expected only death. And there he remembered how he went to the battle, but he did not know who took him out of it, nor how they had brought him there.

King Cildadan on returning to complete consciousness, found himself in a vaulted chamber of a great tower, on a luxurious bed set beside a window. He looked from one end to the other, but did not see a single person, and he heard people talking overhead, above the vault, but could not see any door or entrance in that

chamber where he was. And he looked through the window, thrusting his head out, and saw the sea and that where he was, was a very high tower, built on a steep cliff, and it seemed to him that the sea surrounded it on three sides; and he remembered that he had been in the battle, but did not know who had taken him out of it. But he really thought that since he was in such bad physical condition and thus imprisoned, his own men were probably not very free; and as he saw that there was nothing more he could do, he settled down in his bed, groaning and suffering a great deal from his wounds, awaiting what might happen to him.

And Don Galaor, who was in the garden-house, as you have already heard, saw the small door open, and he raised his head with great effort and saw a maiden, very beautiful and well dressed, enter through it, and with her a man so weak and so old that it was a wonder that he could walk; coming up to the iron grating of the chamber, they said to him:

"Don Galaor, think of your soul; and we are not saving you or guaranteeing your safety."

Then the beautiful maiden took out two containers, one of iron and the other of silver, and showing them to Don Galaor, said to him:

"The one who brought you here does not want you to die until he knows whether you will do his will, and in the meantime he wants you ta be treated for your wounds and be fed."

"Good maiden," said he, "if the will of the one of whom you speak is to want me to do what I should not, it would be a harder thing for me than death; as regards everything else, in order to save my life, I shall do it."

"You will do," said she, "what may be best for you, for we care little about what you say. Whether to live or die is in your hands."

Then that old man opened the door of the cell and they came in; and she took the iron container and told the old man to withdraw outside, and he did so. And she said to Don Galaor:

"My lord, I have such grief for you that in order to save your life I am willing to risk death, and I shall tell you what I have been ordered to do: that I should fill this container with poison

and the other with ointment that makes one sleep a great deal; because if the poison were placed in your wounds and the other used to put you to sleep, since it works most powerfully in sleep, you would quickly be dead. But feeling sorry that such a knight should die in such wise, I have done the opposite, for here I have put that medicine which, if it is taken by you each day, after seven days will make you so well that without difficulty you can ride horseback."

Then she put on the wounds that ointment, so soothing that the swelling and pain were reduced immediately, so that he found himself quite at ease, and he said to her:

"Good maiden, I thank you very much for what you have done for me, for if I leave here by your hand, never was the life of a knight so well rewarded as this one will be to you. But if by chance your efforts to that end are not sufficient and you wish to do something for me, contrive that this very dangerous imprisonment of mine be made known to that Urganda the Unknown, in whom I have great hope."

The maiden began to laugh heartily, and said:

"What! You have so much hope in Urganda, who cares so little about your welfare or harm?"

"So much," said he, "that if she knows the wills of others, then she knows that my wish is to serve her."

"Do not pay attention," said she, "to any other Urganda but me, provided that you, Don Galaor, just as you have had great courage to place your health in such danger, so also have courage to mend it, for a great and courageous heart ought to make itself manifest in things other than fighting, and in payment for the danger I incur for you, not only to bring you back to health but also to get you out of here, I wish you to grant me a boon, which will not be to your discredit or harm."

"I grant it to you," said he, "if I can give it to you legitimately."

"Then I am going away until it be time to see you; and lie down, pretending to be sound asleep."

He did so, and the maiden called the old man and said:

"Look how this knight is sleeping. Now the poison will work on him."

"Thus it is necessary," said the old man, "in order that the one who brought him here be avenged. And since thus you have carried out what they ordered you to do, henceforth you will come without a guard; and keep him this way for two weeks so that he neither dies nor lives except in great pain, because in the meantime those will come who will give him the payment for the offense he has given them."

Galaor heard all this, and it indeed seemed to him that the old man was his mortal enemy. But he had hope in what the maiden had told him, that she would turn him out cured in seven days, because if Fortune were to restore him to health, then he would be able to free himself from that danger; and for this reason he plucked up courage, as the maiden advised him. At this juncture she and the old man went away, but it was not long before he saw her return, and with her two little girls, beautiful and well dressed, and they were bringing something for Don Galaor to eat. And opening the door they came inside, and the maiden fed him and left with him those two little girls to keep him company, and story books for them to read to him, and orders not to let him sleep by day. Galaor was very much comforted by this, for he saw indeed that the maiden wanted to carry out what she had promised him, and he was very grateful to her for it. Then she went away, closing the door, and the little girls remained, keeping him company.

Thus it happened also, as you have heard, to King Cildadan, who found himself locked in that strong, high tower overlooking the sea; and after a little while during which he was in deep thought, he saw a door of stone open that was set in the tower, so joined that it appeared just like the wall itself, and he saw a matron of middle age and two armed knights enter through the door. And they came over to the bed where he was, but they did not greet him, and he did greet them, speaking to them with a good countenance; but they did not reply to him. The matron took off the covering that he had over himself and examining his wounds, she put medicine on them and fed him. And they returned to where they had come from without saying a word, and left the stone door closed as it was before. This having been seen by the king, he really believed that he was in prison, placed in

the custody of persons in whose keeping his life was not very safe; but he plucked up his courage as best he could, not being able to do more.

The maiden who was caring for Galaor returned to him when she saw it was time, and asked him how he was. He told her he was all right, and that if he kept on improving, he believed he would be in a good state of health by the deadline she had set.

"I am quite pleased about that," said she, "and with regard to what I told you, do not doubt that it will be carried out thus. But I wish you to grant me a favor as a loyal knight: that you will not try to leave here except by my hand, because it would be for you mortal harm and danger for your life, and at the end you would not be able to carry it through."

Galaor promised her this, and begged her earnestly to tell him her name. She said:

"What, Don Galaor, don't you know my name? Now I tell you that I am mistaken about you, because there was a time when I did a service for you, which as I see, you little remember; and if my name recalls it to you, know you that I am called Sapience Super-sapience."

And at once she went away; and he, when thinking about that and recalling the beautiful sword that Urganda gave him at the time that Amadis, his brother, made him a knight, suspected that this maiden might be she; but he was doubtful about it, because at that time he saw her very old, and now young; for this reason he did not recognize her. And he looked for the little girls, but did not see them; but he saw instead Gasaval, his squire and Ardian, Amadis's dwarf, whereat he was astounded and happy with them; and he called them, for they were asleep until he awoke them. And when they saw him, they went weeping with joy to kiss his hands, and they said to him:

"Oh, good sir, blessed be God, who has united us with you where we may serve you!"

He asked them how they had entered there. They told him they didn't know except that "Amadis and Agrajes and Florestan sent us with you." Then they told him about the condition he had been in, and how, when Amadis was holding his head in his lap, the maidens came up to ask for him; and how by agreement

between them and his friends they had given him to the maidens on seeing him at the point of death; and how they had put him in the boat and King Cildadan with him. Don Galaor said to them:

"How was Amadis found at such a time?"

"Sir," said they, "know you that he who was called Beltenebros is your brother Amadis, and through his great courage the battle was won for King Lisuarte."

And they told him how he had come to the aid of the king when the giant was carrying him under his arm, and how then he called himself Amadis.

"Great things," said Galaor, "you have told me, and I am very pleased to have the news about my brother; although if he does not give me a legitimate reason why he had to hide his identity from me for such a long time, I shall be complaining about him a great deal."

Just as you hear, King Cildadan and Don Galaor remained, the one in that great tower and the other in the garden-house, where they were healed of their wounds until they could now go wherever they wished without danger. Then Urganda, in whose power they were on that island of hers called the Undiscovered, after making herself known to them and telling them that the fears that she had infused in them had been in order to give them back their health more quickly, for in view of the great straits in which their lives were, that was necessary for them. She commanded two nieces of hers — very beautiful maidens, daughters of King Falangris, late brother of King Lisuarte, who begot them as a youth in a sister of this same Urganda, Grimota by name — to serve and visit them and complete their cure. One of them was named Julianda, the other, Solisa; during the said visitations, occasions were afforded for their becoming pregnant by them with two sons: the son of Don Galaor was Talanque; that of King Cildadan, Maneli the Prudent; both of whom turned out to be very brave and courageous knights, as will be related later. With these ladies Galaor and Cildadan were there much to their pleasure in great delight, until Urganda was pleased to take them away from there, as you will hear further on.

But King Lisuarte, now recovering somewhat from his wounds, as also were Amadis and all the other knights, went to Fernisa,

where Queen Brisena, his wife, was; and there by her and by Briolanja and Oriana, and all the other ladies and maidens of high degree, he was so well received and with such joy as never was any other man in any time; and after him, Amadis, for by now the queen and all those ladies knew how he not only had saved the king, their lord, from death, but also that the battle was won through his great courage; thus they welcomed all the other knights who remained alive. But what Queen Briolanja did with Amadis, this can by no means be written down; and taking him by the hand she had him sit between her and Oriana, and she said to him:

"My lord, the grief and sadness that I felt when they told me you were lost I would not be able to tell you; and then taking one hundred of my knights, I came to this court, where I knew that your brothers were, in order that they might apportion them in a search for you. And because this battle that has now taken place was a hindrance to the search, I agreed to remain here until it was over. And now that, thanks to God, it has come out as I desired, tell me what you would like me to do and it will be undertaken."

"My good lady," said he, "if you feel unhappy about my misfortune, you have good reason, for certainly you can believe that in the whole world there is not a man who would carry out your command with more good will than I. Since you leave your affairs in my hands, I should consider it good that you be here these ten days and settle your business with the king, and meanwhile we shall find out some news of Don Galaor, my brother, and a battle will take place that Don Florestan has arranged with Landin; and then I shall take you to your kingdom, and from there I shall go to the Firm Island, where I have much to do."

"Thus I shall do," said Queen Briolanja, "but I beg you, my lord, to tell us about those great wonders that you found on that island."

And when he sought to avoid doing so, Oriana took him by the hand and said:

"We shall not let you go until you have told us something about them."

Then Amadis said:

"Do believe, good ladies, that even if I try hard to tell about them, it would be impossible to do so. But I tell you that that forbidden chamber is the most luxurious and most beautiful that could be found in all the world, and if it is not won by one of you ladies, I believe it will not be by anyone else in the world."

Briolanja, who was somewhat subdued, said:

"I don't consider myself one who could complete that adventure successfully, but whatever I be, if you didn't think it folly on my part, I would try it."

"My lady," said Amadis, "I do not consider it folly to test that in which all other women have failed, it being by reason of beauty, especially when it concerns you to whom God has sought to give so great a share of it; rather I consider it honorable to want to win that fame that will be able to endure for many and long periods of time without any part of the honor being lessened."

Oriana was greatly irked by this which Amadis said and showed it in her face, so that Amadis, whose eyes never left her, understood it at once, and regretted having said it, even though his intention was to honor and praise her the more, knowing from having seen a representation of Grimanesa, that Briolanja's beauty did not approach hers sufficiently to enable her to win that adventure, which he did not doubt that his lady could accomplish.

But Oriana, who was quite disturbed about it, fearing that if in the world there was a thing by right of beauty to be won, Briolanja would achieve it, after having been there some time, and having begged Briolanja, if she were to enter the forbidden chamber to let her know how it was, went to find Mabilia; and speaking privately with her told her all that Briolanja and Amadis had said to each other in her presence, saying to her:

"This always happens to me with your cousin, for my unhappy heart is never thinking about any other thing except humoring and following his desire, not heeding God or the anger of my father; and he recognizing that he alone has complete dominance, holds me in little regard."

And tears came to her eyes and ran down her very beautiful cheeks. Mabilia said to her:

"I am astonished at you, lady. What kind of heart do you have, for you haven't yet emerged from one sorrow and you seek to involve yourself in another? What great wrong is this that you say that my cousin has done you, to put you in such a passion, knowing that never by deed or word has he wronged you and seeing with your own eyes those tests that he has completed for your assurance? Now I tell you, lady, that you are giving me to understand that you are not pleased that he live, for according to what he has suffered because of your anger, at the least sign of it he senses in you, death threatens him. And I don't know why you are angry at him for what he cannot help, for if Apolidon left that there to be tested by all men and all women generally, how could he prevent it, since that's the way it is, if he believed Briolanja by completing it, will take it from you? Certainly, although you may not like it, I believe that neither her beauty nor yours will be enough to bring to an end that which in a hundred years no woman, no matter how beautiful she be, has completed. But this is only that rigorous fortune of his that made him to such a degree your subject and captive, that abandoning and casting aside his whole lineage for the sake, lady, of serving you, considering them strangers, and serving where you so order him, with such cruelty you want to take it from him. Ah, how ill employed is all the time he has served and has made his lineage and his brothers serve, since the reward of it all is to bring him undeservedly to death's door! And I, lady, in exchange for all the time that I have watched over and served you, to have as a reward to see die before my eyes the flower of my lineage, the one who loves me so dearly. But if it please God, I shall not see this death nor this sorrow, for my brother Agrajes and my uncle Galvanes will escort me to my own land, because it would be a great mistake to serve one who so poorly recognizes and rewards services."

And she began to weep, saying:

"This cruelty that you do to Amadis, may God grant that you be called to account for it by him and his family; although I am indeed certain that his loss, however great it may be, will not equal yours; because forgetting them, he loves you alone above all things that are loved."

When Mabilia said this, Oriana was so frightened that her heart became constricted, so that she was unable to speak for a while. And when she was calmer, she said to her, weeping heartfelt tears:

"Oh, hapless woman that I am, more unfortunate than all the women ever born! What can become of me with such understanding as you have? I came for help in my great sorrow, not having anyone else to advise me, and you dishearten me even more by suspecting what I never thought. And it is just my bad luck that you should take offense at what I told you in good faith, for may God not save me or help me if my heart ever had any such thoughts as you have attributed to me; nor do I doubt that the share I have in your cousin is entirely to the satisfaction of my desires. But what I most keenly regret is that, he having won the sovereignty of that island, if another woman should complete that test before I do, it would be much greater sorrow for me than death itself; and with this great rage that my heart feels, I take amiss what perchance he said with good intentions. But no matter what may have happened, I demand of you pardon for what I did not deserve of you, and beg of you in the name of that great love that you have for your cousin that I be pardoned, and that you advise me as to what most befits him and me."

Then, with a charming laugh, she went and embraced her, saying to her:

"My true friend above all others in the world, I promise you never to speak about this to your cousin or to give him to understand that I considered it. But tell him yourself whatever you consider proper and that I shall take as good."

Mabilia said to her:

"Lady, I pardon you, provided that you make a compact with me that, although you may be angry with him, you not show it to him without my first intervening in the matter, so that another such mistake as the past one may not occur."

With this they were well reconciled, as women between whom there could be no hatred. But Mabilia, not forgetting what Amadis had said, confronted him bitterly with anger, scolding him severely and condemning what Briolanja had said in the presence of his lady, reminding him of the danger of that woman, advising him

that always, when he talked with her, he should be very careful, thinking how hard it was to eradicate jealousy rooted in the heart of a woman, and telling with what feeling his lady had resented that remark, and the procedure she had used to calm her. Amadis, after having thanked her with great courtesy, valuing highly what she had done for him, and promising if he lived, to make her a queen, said to her:

"My lady and good cousin, very different is my thinking about the suspicion that my lady had, because one of the greatest services that I could render her in an affair of such a character is not only by advising Briolanja to try that adventure, but also for me to go for her, wherever she may be; for the purpose and the reason is this: in the opinion of all, Briolanja is considered one of the most beautiful women in the world, so much so that she is deemed without doubt to be sufficiently so for her to enter that chamber without embarrassment. And because I hold the contrary view, for I saw Grimanesa, and Briolanja does not equal her by any means in beauty, I am certain that that honor that all the others have won Briolanja will win, about which as concerns Oriana, I have no doubts, for to finish it she has only to try it. And if this were before Briolanja's test, everyone would say that the other lady, if she had tried it first, could have finished it. And if Briolanja is first, and fails in it as I deem certain, afterwards all the glory will be for my lady. This was the cause of my boldness."

Mabilia was very happy with what Amadis said to her, and Oriana much more so after she learned of it from her, being very repentant about that fit of anger she had, remembering how already another time in a similar episode her anger had placed her and her lover in great danger. And to make amends for that mistake they agreed that by an old underground passageway extending from the apartment of Oriana and Queen Briolanja to a garden, Amadis should enter in order to dally and speak with her. This having been thus arranged, and Amadis having left Mabilia, Briolanja and Oriana, who were together, called him, and when he came to them, they asked him to tell them the truth concerning what they wanted to ask. He so promised them. Oriana said to him:

"Well, tell us who that maiden was who carried off the headdress of flowers when you won the sword."

He was irked with that question, because he had to tell the truth; but he turned to Oriana and said to her:

"May God not save me, lady, if I know her name or who she is any more than you do; although I was seven days in her company. But I tell you she had beautiful hair and from what I saw of her, she was indeed lovely, but of her affairs I know no more than you, lady, know, for I understand that you have never seen her."

Oriana said:

"If she obtained great glory in successfully terminating that adventure, it might have cost her dear; for according to what I have been told, Arcalaus the Enchanter, and Lindoraque, his nephew, wanted to take her headdress and hang her by the hair, if it had not been for your defense of her."

"It does not seem to me," said Briolanja, "that he defended her, if he is Amadis, but that valiant one at arms, Beltenebros, who ought not to be considered of lower rank than Amadis. And although I received such a great benefit from him, it is not for that that I shall stop telling the truth without any bias. And I say that if Amadis, by surpassing to a great degree the courage of that strong Apolidon, attained great glory in winning the Firm Island, Beltenebros, by overcoming in the space of one day ten of the good knights of your father's court and killing in battle that fierce giant Famongomadan and Basagante, his son, has not attained less. Then if we say that Amadis, by passing under the arch of the loyal lovers — there being done for him what the image with the horn did, to a greater degree than for any other knight — gave to understand the fidelity of his love; then it seems to me that one should not esteem Beltenebros less for having drawn that burning sword when for more than sixty years no other had been found who could draw it out. Therefore, my good friend, it is not just that the honor owed to Beltenebros be wrongly given to Amadis, since people ought to judge the one as good as the other. And that is my opinion."

Just as you hear, these two ladies, in whom all the beauty and charm of the world was united, were joking and laughing, so

they with great pleasure were in the company of that knight who was so beloved by them; and his heart took all the more delight in it, the more he recalled that great misfortune, that sadness which, when he was on the Poor Cliff without hope of aid, had brought him so close to death.

While they were together, as you have heard, Amadis was summoned by a maiden on behalf of the king, telling him that Don Quadragante and Landin, his nephew, wanted to free themselves from their promises; hence it was necessary for him, leaving that great pleasure, to go where they were, and with him Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil. They having arrived where the king was with many good knights, Don Quadragante rose and said:

"Sire, I have waited here for Amadis of Gaul, as you know, and since he is present, I wish in your presence to free myself of the promise I made him."

Then he related there all that had happened to him in the battle and how, being overcome by him, much against his will he came to that court to put himself in his power and to pardon him for the death of King Abies, his brother; and because, freed from the passion that he had until then, for his perception had been inhibited, not permitting his judgment to determine the truth, he found that more by excessive arrogance than with just reason he had sought and tried to avenge that death, realizing that that battle had taken place between knights, devoid of anything whereby it might have been inhibited, and since that was the way it was he pardoned the killing and took Amadis as a friend, subject to the latter's pleasure. The king said to him:

"Don Quadragante, if up to now with great praise and winning high honor, your mighty deeds at arms are made known, in no less honor should this be held, because the valor and courage that are not subject to reason and good counsel, ought not to be highly esteemed."

Then he had them embrace, Amadis thanking Quadragante profusely for what he was doing for him and the friendship that he was seeking from him; which although at the time it was considered trivial, lasted and was kept between them for a long period, as the story will relate. And with regard to the battle that

was arranged between Florestan and Landin, for the same reason it was found to be right that since Quadragante, who was the leading participant, had pardoned, Landin with just cause ought to do so; which being done, the battle was called off, from which Landin derived no little pleasure, having seen the bravery of Florestan in the past battle of the kings.

This having been done as you have heard, and King Lisuarte having rested a few days from the great effort he had put forth in the battle with King Cildadan, remembering the cruel imprisonment of Arban, King of North Wales, and of Angriote de Estravaus, he decided to go to the Island of Mongaza where they were, and so he told Amadis and his knights; but Amadis said to him:

"Sire, you already know what a loss to your service the lack of Don Galaor's presence occasions, and if you think it a good idea, I shall go to look for him in the company of my brother and my cousin, and God will be pleased, for we shall bring him to you at the time for this trip you wish to make."

The king said to him:

"God knows, friend, if I did not have so many things to remedy, with what willingness I would personally go in search of him; but since I cannot, I consider it good that what you say be done."

Then more than a hundred knights, all very highly esteemed and of great prowess at arms, stood up and said that they also wanted to embark on that quest, that if they were obligated to undertake great adventures, there could not be any greater one than to search for such a knight now missing. The king was pleased by it, and asked Amadis not to leave, for he wanted to talk to him.

CHAPTER LX

How the king saw the rare spectacle of fires coming along over the sea, which were from a ship in which Urganda the enchantress was traveling; and what happened to him with her.

After having supped, the king being on a gallery, it being already almost bedtime, on looking toward the sea he saw coming over it two fires that were approaching the town; at which all were frightened, it seeming to them a strange thing that fire should unite with water. But when they drew nearer they saw between the fires a galley on the mast of which some huge burning candles appeared so that it seemed that the whole galley was burning. The noise was so loud that all the people of the town came to the walls to see that marvel, thinking that since water was not powerful enough to put out the fire, no other thing would be and the town would be burned. And the people were in a great fright because the galley and the fires were approaching; so the queen with all her matrons and maidens, out of fear went to the chapel. And the king mounted his horse, and fifty knights with him who always protected him; and reaching the seashore, he found that all the rest of his knights were there. And he saw in front of everyone Amadis and Guilan the Pensive and Enil, so close to the fire that he wondered how they were able to endure it; and spurring his horse, which was frightened by the loud noise, he joined them. But it was not long before they saw coming out from the ship, from under a canopy a matron dressed in white garments and with a golden coffer in her hands; opening it before everybody and taking out of it a lighted torch; which on being thrown and extinguished in the sea, those great fires were

immediately quenched, so that no sign of them remained; at which all the people were happy, losing the fear they had before, there remaining only the light of the wax candles that were on the mast of the ship, a light which was so bright that the whole beach was illuminated. And the canopy that covered the ship having been taken off, they saw it all bedecked with branches and covered with roses and other flowers, and they heard within it instruments playing with wondrously sweet sounds. And when the playing ceased, ten maidens came out richly dressed with garlands on their heads and wands of gold in their hands, and in front of them the matron who had extinguished the torch in the sea, coming up on the deck of the ship in a direct line with the king. The maidens all bowed, and likewise the king to them, and he said:

"Lady, you have put us in great fright with your fires, and if you please, tell us who you are; although I really think that we should be able to guess without much effort."

"Sire," said she, "in vain would he strive who thought to put fright or fear into your great heart and in the hearts of all the knights who are here; but the fires that you see, I carry in protection of myself and my maidens, and if your thought is that I be Urganda the Unknown, you think correctly. And I come to you as to the greatest king in the world, and to see the queen, who has no equal in virtue and goodness."

Then she said to Amadis:

"Sir, come forward here, and I must tell you how in order to free you and your friends of the labor in which you intend to engage in order to search for Don Galaor, your brother, I am come here; because all would be effort lost, even though everybody in the world were to look for him. And I say to you that he is cured of his wounds, and living such a life amid such pleasure as he never before had in his life."

"My lady," said Amadis, "I always have had in my thought that after God, your help was for the welfare of Don Galaor and my great relief; for in view of the manner it was asked of me and carried out before my eyes, if I did not have this suspicion, I would rather receive death with him than to have him separated from me. And the thanks that I can give you for this are only, as

you know better than I, that this my person will be involved in matters of your honor and service, without fear of any danger, even though it be death itself."

"Then relax," said she, "for very quickly you will see him in such pleasure that a large share of it may overtake you."

The king said to her:

"Lady, it is about time that you leave the ship and come to my palace."

"Many thanks," said she, "but tonight I shall stay here and tomorrow I shall do what you command. And let come to me Amadis, and Agrajes, and Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Guilan the Pensive, because they are all in love and very exuberant of heart, just as I am."

"Thus shall be done," said the king, "in this and in everything whatever your desire may be."

And commanding all the people to go to the town, having taken leave of her, he returned to his palace and gave orders there to leave twenty crossbowmen on guard so that no one might come to the seashore. Early the next morning the queen sent a dozen palfreys richly caparisoned for Urganda and her maidens to ride, and Amadis and the three knights whom she named, dressed in very noble and luxurious garb, went to escort them. And when they arrived they found Urganda and her maidens out of the ship in a tent that she had had set up the night before; and dismounting they went to her, who received them very well and they her with great humility. Then they placed them on the palfreys, and the four knights encircled Urganda; and as she saw herself thus, she said:

"Now my heart rejoices in complete peace, since it sees itself surrounded by those who are in harmony with it."

She said this because, just as they were in love, she was enamored of that handsome knight, her lover. Then on arriving at the palace they went in where the king was, who received her very well; and she kissed his hands. And gazing here and there, she saw many knights throughout the palace, and she looked at the king and said to him:

"Sire, you are well accompanied, and I do not say it to you so much on account of the valor of these knights as because of

the great love they have for you, for princes being loved by their people renders their states safe. Therefore, know how to keep them, so that it may not seem that your administration lacks any of that good fortune that could be contained in it. Protect yourself from evil counsellors, for that is the true poison that destroys princes. And if you please, I shall see the queen and I shall talk with you, sire, before I leave, about a few matters."

The king said to her:

"My friend, I thank you very much for the advice you give me, and I shall follow it to the best of my ability. And see the queen, who greatly esteems you; and believe with certainty that she will gladly do everything that will be agreeable to you."

She went with her four companions to the queen, by whom and by Oriana and Queen Briolanja, and by all the other ladies and maidens of high rank, she was received with much affection. She gazed long at Briolanja's beauty, but saw clearly that it fell far short of equalling Oriana's, and she had a great desire to see them. And she said to the queen:

"Madam, I came to this court to see the king's and your great highness and the excellence at arms and the flower of the world's beauty which I certainly believe would not be found to such a high degree so completely in the company of any emperor or prince. That this be proven so, testimony is afforded by the winning of the Firm Island by exceeding in courage that mighty Apolidon, the death of the fierce giants, the grievous and cruel battle in which such a large share of the raw courage of the king, your husband, and of all his men, was shown. Who would be so bold and so ignorant as to seek to affirm that there is in the whole world beauty that could equal that of these two ladies? No one, truly. Therefore, on seeing these things my heart is put completely at ease and rest. Even more do I say: that here love is maintained with the greatest fidelity that it ever has been at any time; which has been demonstrated in those tests of the glowing sword and of the headdress of flowers, which after sixty years of their being carried about over most of the world, no one could be found to complete; and that woman who won the flowers certainly gave people to understand that she is outstanding in the world over all other women in being loyal to her lover."

When Oriana heard this, she became pale, and was very faint, thinking that if Urganda revealed something about her and her lover, they would be exposed to great danger and shame; and in the same state were all those ladies who had lovers there. But especially Mabilia and the maiden of Denmark were afraid, believing that the greatest danger might come upon them. Oriana looked at Amadis, who was near her, and as he understood her fear, he came up to her and said to her:

"Madam, do not be afraid, for it will not be disclosed as you are thinking."

Then he said to the queen:

"Madam, ask Urganda who that one was who carried off from here the headdress of flowers."

And the queen said:

"Friend, tell us if you please, this which Amadis wishes to know."

She said, laughing:

"He should know better than I, for he went in her company, and greatly exerted himself to free her from the hands of Arcalaus the Enchanter and Lindoraque."

"I, madam?" said Amadis. "It could not be that I knew her, nor she me, as you know, because if she wished to conceal herself from me as she did, from you she would strive in vain to do so."

"Since that is the way it is," said she, "I wish to tell what I know about it."

Then she spoke distinctly so that all heard her, saying:

"Although Amadis brought her as a maiden there to that trial, certainly she is nothing else but a matron, and she became that through the good offices of the man who caused her to win the headdress of flowers for loving him so dearly. And know you that she is a native of the king's and your dominions, and on her mother's side she is not of this land, and she dwells in this seigniory and in it is well endowed. And if she lacks anything, it is not having that one whom she loves so deeply as disposed to do her bidding as she would like. And I shall not tell you more about her affairs, and may God forbid that I disclose things that it befits others to conceal; and whoever wishes to know her

let him look for her in the king's realm, where his effort will go for naught."

Oriana's heart and the hearts of all the other ladies became calm. The queen said to Urganda:

"I believe what you say, but I know exactly as much as before, except that I thought she was a maiden, whereas you say that she is a matron. "

"This is enough without your learning any more about it," said Urganda, "since by honoring your court she showed her great loyalty."

With this which Oriana heard, she was relieved of her agitation and so were all the other ladies. Whereupon they went to dinner, which had been prepared, as in a house where they were always accustomed to serve meals punctually. Urganda asked the queen to let her lodge with Oriana and with Queen Briolanja.

"So be it," said the queen, "but I think their giddy ways will disturb you."

"Their beauty," said Urganda, "will disturb more the knights who do not protect themselves from it, for against such beauty courage will not suffice, nor will valor nor prudence, to deflect from them a danger more grave than death."

The queen said to her, laughing:

"I think they will be quickly pardoned for their having tormented and slain the knights."

Urganda derived much pleasure from what the queen said; and taking leave of her, she went with Oriana to her room, which was a chamber in which there were four beds: one belonging to Queen Briolanja, another Oriana's, another Mabilia's, and the other for Urganda. There they enjoyed themselves talking about many things that gave them pleasure, until they went to bed. But after the others were all sleeping, Urganda saw that Oriana was awake, and said to her:

"Dear lady, if you do not sleep, the reason is that that one who never has sleep or rest without the sight of you keeps you awake, and that's the way to get even."

Oriana was abashed by what Urganda said, but the latter, who understood that she was, said to her:

"My lady, don't fear me, lest I learn your secrets, for I shall keep them as well as you do; and if I say something, it will be so veiled that when it becomes known, the danger from it will no longer be able to do any harm."

Oriana said:

"Lady, speak softly, so that it be not heard by these ladies who are here".

Urganda said:

"I shall free you of this fear."

Then she took out a book so small as to be hidden within one's hand, and made her put her hand there, and she began to read from it, and said:

"Now know you that whatever may be done to them, they will not awaken, and if someone comes in, immediately he will fall to the floor asleep."

Oriana went to Queen Briolanja and sought to waken her, but could not; and she began to laugh, seizing her by the head and by the arms, and letting her dangle from the bed, and doing the same to Mabilia; but not on that account did they awaken. And she called the maid of Denmark who was at the door of the room; and as she came in, she fell down asleep. Then with great pleasure she went to fling herself down on the bed with Urganda, and she said to her:

"Lady, I earnestly beg you, since your great wisdom and knowledge understand the things to come, to tell me something of what could happen to me before it comes about."

Urganda looked at her laughing as if in mockery, and said:

"My beloved daughter, do you think that by finding out what you are asking, if it were to your harm, you would flee from it? Don't believe it, for whatever is by that very exalted Lord permitted and ordered, no one is powerful enough to prevent, whether it be good or bad, if He does not help him. But since you have such a desire for me to tell you something, I shall do so; and observe whether by learning it, you are doing anything to your own advantage."

Then she said to her:

"In that time when the great sorrow will be present for you, and on account of you many people tormented by great sadness,

the strong lion will come out with its beasts, and your protectors having been frightened by its great rage, you will be abandoned in its very strong claws; and the famous lion will remove from your head the exalted crown that will no longer be yours. And the hungry lion will be in possession of your flesh, so he will put it in his caves, whereby his ravenous hunger will be appeased. Now, my good daughter, consider carefully what you will do, for this is to come to pass thus."

"Lady," said Oriana, "very happy would I have been not to have asked you anything, for you have put me into such great fright with such a strange and cruel outcome."

"Lady and beautiful daughter," said she, "do not seek to know what neither your prudence nor your strength is sufficient to prevent. But concerning hidden things, people often fear that at which they ought to rejoice; and meanwhile be very happy that God has made you a daughter of the best king and queen in the world, with such beauty that it is everywhere proclaimed a wonder; and He made you love that one who over and above all those who have and achieve honor and distinction shines as daylight over darkness. Concerning him, according to things past and seen by you, without any doubt you can be sure of being the woman whom he loves more than his own life. From this, my lady, you ought to receive great glory from lording it over that one who through his merits, has deserved to be lord of the world. And now it is high time that these ladies be awakened."

Then by taking the book out of the room, all were brought back to their senses. As you hear, Urganda rested there, being well provided with everything she needed; and after a few days she asked the king to assemble all his knights, and the queen her ladies-in-waiting and maidens, because she wanted to speak to them before she departed. This was done at once in a large, handsome hall, richly adorned, and Urganda stationed herself in it where everyone could hear her. Then she said to the king:

"Sire, since you have kept the letters that I sent to you and to Don Galaor at the time that Beltenebros left you, having won the sword and his lady the headdress of flowers, I earnestly beg you to have them brought here, so that it may clearly be recognized that I had known things before they came about."

The king had them brought and read to all, and they saw that all that had been said in them had been completely fulfilled, at which they were greatly astounded, and much more at the great courage of the king in having dared enter the battle in the face of such fearful words. And there they saw how the battle was won by the three blows that Beltenebros struck: the first when at the feet of Don Galaor he unhorsed King Cildadan; the second when he killed that very powerful Sarmadan the Lion; the third when he rescued the king whom Madanfabul, the fierce giant of the Red Tower, was carrying away under his arm in order to put him in the ship, and he cut off Mandafabul's arm near the elbow, and by him the king having been rescued, the giant was slain. Also what she said of Don Galaor was fulfilled: that his head would be placed in the power of that one who would deliver those three blows. This was when Amadis held Galaor in his lap apparently dead at the time that he yielded him up to the maidens who were asking him for him.

"But now," said Urganda, "I want to tell you some of the things that are in the future to come about successively, according to the times."

And she spoke thus:

"Strife will arise between the great serpent and the strong lion, in which many fierce animals will be involved. Great anger and fury will overtake them, so that many of them will suffer cruel death. The great Roman fox will be wounded by the claw of the strong lion, and his hide cruelly torn to pieces, for which reason the side of the great serpent will be in much distress. At that time the gentle ewe covered with black wool will be placed among them, and with her great humility and loving cajoleries she will tame the harsh ferocity of their strong hearts and will separate some from others. But then the hungry wolves will descend from the rugged mountains against the great serpent, and being conquered by them with all his animals, he will be confined in one of his caves. And the tender unicorn, putting its mouth to the ear of the strong lion, with its outcry will awaken it from its long sleep, and making it take with it some of its fierce animals, going at a very swift pace it will be involved in the rescue of the great snake, and will find it bitten and gnawed

by the hungry wolves, so that much of its blood will be spilled out between its strong scales. And the lion dragging it away from their ravenous mouths, all the wolves will be torn and battered to pieces. And the life of the great serpent being restored, and all of its poison expelled, the white doe, which in the fearful forest, while emitting piteous bleatings, will have taken refuge, will consent to be placed within the cruel claws of the lion. Now, good king, have it written down that thus everything will take place."

The king said he would do so, but that for the time being he did not understand a bit of it.

"Well, a time will come," said she, "when it will be very plain to everyone."

And Urganda looked at Amadis, and saw that he was pensive, and said:

"Amadis, why are you thinking about what brings you no benefit? Desist from it and think about a business deal that you are now to make. To that point of death you will be brought for the life of another, and for the blood of another you will give yours; and from that transaction, you being the martyr, the profit will be for the other; and the reward that you will have from it will be rage and the postponement of your desire. And that sharp and splendid sword of yours will disturb your flesh and bones in such a way that you will be in great want of blood. And you will be in such a state that if the half of the world were yours, you would give it provided that your sword were broken up or thrown into some lake from where it would never be recovered. And now be careful what you do, for everything will happen just as I say."

Amadis, seeing that all of them had their eyes on him, said with a cheerful mien, which was just the way he looked:

"Lady, from the past events told by you, we can believe this present thing to be true, and just as I have believed myself to be mortal and unable to achieve a longer life than the one God may be pleased to give me, declaring my concern for accomplishing by fair means the great and serious things where honor and fame are won, rather than for sustaining my life; likewise, if I were to fear frightful things, I would with greater justification

be afraid of the present ones that each day happen to me, rather than the hidden ones that are in the future."

Urganda said:

"It would be as great a labor to try to take away from that heart of yours its mighty spirit as to draw all the water from the great ocean."

Then she said to the king:

"Sire, I wish to leave; remember what I have said in your presence as from one who desires your honor and service. Close your ears to all men, and above all to those in whom you perceive evil deeds."

With this she took leave of everyone, and with her four companions, without wishing any others to accompany her, she went to her ship; which having entered upon the high sea was enveloped in a shroud of darkness.

CHAPTER LXI

How king lisuarte was discussing with his knights his desire to attack the island of the boiling lake in order to set free from prison king arban of north wales and angriote of estravaus; and how he being thus engaged, a giant maiden came by sea and asked the king in the presence of the queen and the court that amadis fight with ardan canileo; and if that ardan canileo were defeated, the island would be subject to the king, and the prisoners whom they so greatly desired to set free would be yielded; and if amadis were defeated, they wanted only to be allowed to take his head to madasima.

Urganda having left as you have heard, and some days having passed, while King Lisuarte was riding through the countryside talking with his knights about the voyage he wished to make to the island of Mongaza, where the Boiling Lake was, in order to release from prison King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus, they saw approaching over the sea a ship that was coming to land at the port of that town, and he went there at once to find out who was traveling in it. When the king arrived, there were already coming in a small boat a maiden and two squires; and as they reached land, the maiden stood up and asked if King Lisuarte was there. They told her he was, but all were greatly astounded at her size, for in the entire court there was not a knight who came within a full span of equalling her, and all her features and limbs were in proper proportion to her height, and she was very beautiful and richly garbed. And she said to the king:

"Sire, I bring you a message, and if you please, I shall tell it to you in the queen's presence."

"So be it done," said the king.

When he went to his palace, the maiden went behind him. Being then before the queen and before all the knights and ladies of the court, the maiden asked if Amadis of Gaul was there, the one who formerly was called Beltenebros. And he replied and said:

"Good maiden, I am he."

She looked at him with a frown and said:

"It may well be that you are, but now it will be seen whether you are as good as you are alleged in praise to be."

Then she took out two letters that bore gold seals, and one she gave to the king and the other to the queen, and they were her credentials. The king said:

"Maiden, tell us what you desire, for we shall hear you."

The maiden said:

"Sire, Gromadaza, the giantess of the Boiling Lake, the very beautiful Madasima, and Ardan Canileo the Feared, who is with them in order to defend them, have found out that you want to go to their land in order to seize it; and because this would not be possible to do without great loss of men, they say that they will let it be decided by a combat in this wise: that Ardan Canileo will fight with Amadis of Gaul, and if he defeats or kills him, that with the land remaining free, they be permitted to carry his head to the Boiling Lake; and if Ardan be overcome or killed, they will give up all his land to you, sire, and King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus, whom they hold prisoners; who will then be brought here. And if Amadis loves them as much as they think, and wishes to make real the hope they have in him, let him agree to the battle in order to set free two such friends; and if he be overcome or killed, Ardan Canileo takes them. And if he does not wish to agree, immediately he will see their heads cut off in his presence."

"Good maiden," said Amadis, "if I agree to the battle, how will the king be certain that what you say will be carried out?"

"I shall tell you how," said she. "The beautiful Madasima with twelve maidens of high degree will submit to imprisonment

by the queen as security that it will be fulfilled or their heads cut off. And from you she does not wish any other security except that if you are killed, she will bear away your head, she being permitted to leave in safety. And they will do more, for by this compact there will enter the king's prison Andanguel, the old giant with two sons of his and nine knights, who have in their power the prisoners and towns and castles of the island."

Amadis said:

"If under the power of the king and of the queen come those you say, there is a sufficiency of good guarantees. But I tell you that you will not have an answer from me if you and these squires whom you bring with you do not agree to dine with me."

"And why do you invite me?" said she. "You do not display good judgment, for all your effort will be in vain, because I hate you implacably."

"Good maiden," said Amadis, "I am very sorry about this, because I esteem you and I would do you all the honor that I could. And if you want an answer, agree to what I ask of you."

The maiden replied:

"I agree to it, more to remove an obstacle to your answering what you should, than of my own free will."

Amadis said:

"If I risk myself for two such friends, and in order that the domains of the king may be increased, the thing is just, and therefore I accept the battle in the name of God; and let those you mention come to offer themselves as hostages."

"Certainly," said the maiden, "you have responded to my desire, and let the king promise, if you withdraw, never to help you against the relatives of Famongomadan."

"That promise is unnecessary," said Amadis, "for the king would not have in his company anyone who did not maintain the truth. And let us go dine, for it is already time."

"I shall go," said she, "and more cheerfully than I thought; and since the integrity of the king is what you say, I declare myself satisfied."

And she said to the king and to the queen:

"Tomorrow Madasima and her maidens and the knights will be here in your prison. Ardan Canileo will want to have the battle

at once, but it is necessary that you insure him against everyone save Amadis, whose head he will carry away from here."

Don Bruneo of Bonamar, who was there at the time, said:

"Lady maiden, sometimes someone expects to take the head of another and loses his own; and very quickly it could happen thus to Ardan Canileo."

Amadis begged him to be quiet, but the maiden said to Bruneo:

"Who are you to reply thus for Amadis?"

"I am a knight," said he, "who would gladly enter the battle if Ardan Canileo should want to place another companion with himself."

She said to him:

"You are excused from this battle, but if you have such a desire to fight, I shall give you on another day a brother of mine who will answer you, and he is as great a mortal enemy of Amadis as you show yourself to be his friend, and I think in view of what he is, that I shall be saving you the effort of speaking for him again."

"Good maiden," said Don Bruneo, "if your brother is such as you say, it will really be necessary to pursue further what you with rage and great anger have promised. And you see here my gage in token that I wish the combat."

And he extended the end of his mantle toward the king, and the maiden took from her head a silver net and said to the king:

"Sire, observe here mine, in token that I shall truly carry out what I have said."

The king took the gages, but he was not pleased, for he had enough to look after in the matter of Amadis and Ardan Canileo, who was so valiant and so feared by all those in the world that it had been four years since he had found any knight who dared to fight with him if he recognized him.

This having been done thus, Amadis went to his lodging and took with him the maiden, which he ought not to have done, even in exchange for the best castle that his father had. And in order to pay her greater honor, he had her lodge in a chamber where Gandalin kept for him all his armor, other arms, and finery, and with her two squires. The maiden, gazing about the room,

saw Amadis's sword, which appeared rare to her; and she told her squires and others who were there to go out a while and leave her. And thinking she wanted to attend to some necessity of nature that cannot be avoided, they left her alone; and she, closing the door, took the sword and leaving the scabbard and the guard arranged in such a way that the sword did not seem to be missing from there, she put the latter under a loose-fitting cloak of very unusual cut that she was wearing; and when she opened the door, the squires entered, and she put the sword under the mantle of one of them and ordered him to go secretly to the boat, and said to him:

"Bring me my cup with which to drink, and it will be thought that you went for it."

And the squire did so. Then Amadis and Branfil came into the room, and had her sit down on a bench, and Amadis said to her:

"Madam, tell us what time tomorrow Madasima will come, if you please."

"She will come," said she, "before dinner, but why do you ask?"

"Good lady," said he, "because we should like to go forth and receive her and extend to her every courtesy and service; and if she has received any annoyance from me, I would make amends for it in whatever she might command."

"If you do not withdraw from what you have promised," said she, "and Ardan Canileo is the one that he always has been since he took up arms, you will have to give her that head of yours for amends, for your amends cannot be worth much."

"I shall protect myself from that if I can; but if she would be pleased by anything else from me, I would gladly do it to obtain pardon from her; but someone else would have to negotiate it who desired it more than you do."

With this they went outside, and left there Enil and others to serve her. But she wanted so much to go away that the many viands annoyed her; and so as they cleared the table she got up and said to Enil:

"Knight, tell Amadis that I am going, and that he consider that all he did for me was wasted."

"So help me God," said Enil, "that I believe, for according to what you are, all that is done for your pleasure will be wasted."

"However it be," said she, "I have little fondness for you and much less for him."

"Then believe," said Enil, "that with a maiden as insolent as you, neither he nor I, nor anyone else, can find much contentment."

With these words the maiden departed, and went to the ship very happy about the sword that she had, and told Ardan Canileo and Madasima how she had delivered their message and how the battle remained fixed and how she was bringing a guarantee from the king whereby they might land without fear. Ardan Canileo thanked her for what she had done, and said to Madasima:

"My lady, do not consider me a knight if I do not cause you to go from here with honor and with your land freed; and if I do not give you the head of Amadis before a man walks half a league, no matter however swift he may be, do not grant me your love."

She was silent, for she said nothing at all; because although she wished for vengeance for her father and brother on that one who had killed them, there was not a thing in the world for which she would see herself united with Ardan Canileo, for she was beautiful and noble, and he was ugly and very disfigured and coarse, the like of which was never seen. And her coming was not because of her wish, but on account of her mother's, in order to have Ardan Canileo to defend her land; and if he avenged the death of her husband and son, she wanted to marry him to Madasima and leave him all her land. Inasmuch as this Ardan Canileo was a knight famous in the world and of great prowess and performance at arms, the story wishes to tell you of what region he was a native, and the appearance of his body and face, and other things pertaining to him. Know you that he was a native of that province that is called Canileo, and he was of the blood of giants, for there are more there than in other places, and he was not enormously large of body, but was taller than other men who were not giants. He had heavy limbs and broad shoulders and a thick neck, and a heavy, well-proportioned

chest, and hands and legs to correspond. He had a large, flat nosed, dog-like face, and because of this resemblance they called him Canileo (Dog-lion). His nose was flat and wide and was all red and covered with thick black spots, with which his face and hands and neck were sprinkled, and he had a fierce expression resembling that of a lion. He had thick twisted lips, and kinky hair and beard that he could scarcely comb. He was thirty-five years old, and since twenty-five he had never found a knight or a giant, however strong they might be, who could prevail over him in any kind of contest. But he was so big-boned and heavy that with difficulty did he find a horse which could carry him. This is what this knight was like. And when he, as you have already heard, was promising the beautiful Madasima the head of Amadis, the enormous maiden said to him:

"Sir, with much reason we ought to have hope for this battle, since Fortune appears to be on your side and against your enemy, for you see here his precious sword that I bring you, which could not have been had without great secrecy concerning your good fortune and the great misfortune of Amadis."

Then she put it in his hand and told him how she had obtained it. Ardan took it and said:

"I am very grateful to you for this gift that you give me, more because of the good procedure you followed in obtaining it than on account of any fear I may have of combat with a single knight."

And then he gave orders to take the tents off the ship and have them set up in a meadow that was near the town, where they all went with their war horses and palfreys and the arms of Ardan Canileo, expecting next day to be before King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena, his wife. There went Ardan very happy to have that combat scheduled for two reasons: one, that he expected without any doubt to take the head of Amadis, who was so renowned in the world, and that all that glory would be his; the other, that by this death he would win that beautiful Madasima whom he loved so much, and this made him proud and exuberant without fearing any danger. Thus they were in their tents awaiting the king's command.

And also Amadis was in his dwelling with many knights of high degree who always gathered about him, and they all greatly

feared that combat, so dangerous did they consider it and so greatly were they afraid of losing him in it. And at this time Agrajes arrived and Don Florestan and Galvanes Lackland and Don Guilan the Pensive, who knew nothing about this because they had been hunting in the forests. And when they found out about the battle that was arranged, they complained bitterly because it was not set up for more knights, whereby rightly they could enter; and the one who was most disturbed about it was Don Guilan, who sometimes had heard that this Ardan Canileo was stronger and more powerful at arms than anyone else in the world; and he was worried to death because he believed that Amadis would in nowise be able to face up to him in single combat, and he would have liked very much to be in that combat if Ardan had put in another person with himself, and to undergo the same risk as Amadis. And Don Florestan, who was all afire with anger, said:

"So help me God, sir brother, you do not consider me worth anything, not even as a knight, nor do you love me, since at such a time you did not remember me; and indeed you give one to understand that it is of no use for me to accompany you, since in such dangers, you treat me as a stranger."

And also Agrajes and Don Galvanes complained bitterly.

"Sirs," said Amadis, "do not complain or regret this in order to blame me, for the battle was sought of me alone, and on account of me it is initiated, so that I could not and should not answer, without showing weakness, except in accordance with the demand for it; for if it had been otherwise, by whom would I be succored and aided, if not by you? For your great strength would add force to mine whenever I would be in danger."

Just as you hear, Amadis excused himself from blame by those knights, and said to them:

"It will be good for us to take horse tomorrow before the king leaves, and we shall receive Madasima, who is highly esteemed by all those who know her."

Thus they spent that evening talking about what most pleased them; and morning having come, they dressed in very fine clothes, and having heard mass, mounted on beautiful palfreys and went to welcome Madasima, and with them Don Bruneo of Bonamar

and his brother Branfil and Enil, who was a very handsome, spruce, and light-hearted knight, and for his good manners and great vigor he was much esteemed and valued by all; so eight companions went forth to receive Madasima. And on coming near the tents, they saw her and Ardan Canileo and their retinue; and Madasima was dressed in black cloth in mourning for her father and her brother, but her beauty was so striking and so abundant that even in mourning she seemed so fine that all marvelled; and beside her were her maidens dressed in that same garb, and Ardan Canileo led her palfrey by the rein; and there came the old giant and his sons, and the nine knights who were to serve as hostages. Those knights on approaching bowed, and she bowed to them, apparently with good countenance. Amadis came up to her and said to her:

"Lady, if you are praised, this is with great justice according to all appearance, and he who has your acquaintance must consider himself fortunate to honor and serve you; and for my part I tell you that so I shall do in whatever may be commanded me by you."

And Ardan Canileo, who was watching him and saw him so handsome, more so than anyone else he had ever seen, was not pleased that he was talking with her, and said to him:

"Knight, stand back and don't be so bold as to talk to someone you do not know."

"Sir," said Amadis, "for that we come here; to make her acquaintance and to serve her."

Ardan spoke to him scornfully:

"Then tell me now who you are, and I shall see if you are such that you should serve a maiden of such high rank."

"Whoever I may be," said Amadis, "I shall serve her gladly, and as for not being worth as much as I might need to be, not on that account do I cease to have this desire; and since you want to know who I am, tell me who you are, who thus seek to take away from her one who will gladly carry out her command."

Ardan Canileo looked at him very angrily and said to him:

"I am Ardan Canileo, who will be able to serve her better in one single day than you in all your life, even if you were worth twice as much as you are."

"It could well be," said Amadis, "but I well know that your service, in accordance with your insolence and ill-humor, would not be rendered so wholeheartedly as my small one. And since you want to make my acquaintance, know you that I am Amadis of Gaul with whom you demanded combat; and if I have annoyed and distressed this lady by doing what could not be avoided without great embarrassment, I shall very gladly make amends for it with another service."

And Ardan Canileo said:

"If you dare attend to what you promised, she will certainly have that head of yours, which I shall give her, as amends for her annoyance."

"Those amends," said Amadis, "she will not have with my consent, but she will have others of greater import and more befitting, which will consist of my preventing your marriage with her, for I can't conceive of a man's being so ignorant as to think it proper for your devastating beauty to be united with hers."

Madasima was not irked at what he said: she laughed a bit, as did her maidens; but Ardan became so enraged that he trembled all over with the great anger that he felt, and he took on an appearance so fierce and so frightful that those who looked at him without being experts in feats of arms considered nil the strength and valor of Amadis in comparison with Ardan's, and they were sure that that would be the last battle, and that day the last of his life. And as you hear, they went on until they came before the king; and Ardan said:

"King, you see here the knights who will enter your prison to render firm the commitment made by my maiden, if Amadis dares to hold to what he proposed."

Amadis came forward and said:

"Sire, you see me here, for I desire the battle at once without more delay; and I tell you that even if I had not promised, I would undertake it solely to dissuade Madasima from such a monstrous marriage. But I want King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus to come and to be where I may reach them if I win the battle."

Ardan Canileo said:

"I shall have them come where the battle will be, and if I carry your head away, let me take the prisoners, and I shall also take Madasima and her maidens; let them be in the custody of the queen, for thus is carried out what was agreed upon; but it will be necessary for Madasima to be where she may see the battle and the vengeance that I shall cause her to have."

Then just as you hear, that beautiful Madasima and her maidens were in the custody of the queen; and in that of the king, the old giant and his sons and the nine knights. But as for Madasima, I tell you that she appeared before the queen with such humility and discretion that although so much danger accrued to Amadis through her coming, for which all the ladies were very sorry, they were very content with her and paid her great honor. But Oriana and Mabilia, on seeing the fierce attitude of Ardan Canileo, were quite frightened, being plunged into great anxiety and sorrow; and in the privacy of their room they shed many tears, for they thought that the great courage of Amadis was not enough against that devil. And if they had some hope, it was only in his good fortune, which had extricated him from great dangers many times in struggles so serious that little hope was entertained of their being won by him or by anyone else, although Mabilia always kept Oriana's hopes high with much reassurance.

This having been done, and the date for the battle set for next day, the king commanded his huntsmen and crossbowmen to enclose with chains and posts a field that was in front of his palace, so that the knights might not lose any honor through the fault of their horses. When Oriana saw this from a window and thought about the danger that was being prepared there for her lover, she became so faint that almost unconscious she fell into the arms of Mabilia. The king went to Amadis's quarters, where many knights were, and told them that since Queen Briolanja and his daughter and Queen Brisena and all the other ladies and maidens were going that night to his chapel to pray God to protect that knight of theirs, he wanted to take him with him to his palace and with him Florestan and Agrajes and Don Galvanes, and Guilan and Enil, and that they should relax just as they were. And he told Amadis to order his arms to be taken to the chapel because he wanted to arm him next day before the

altar of the Virgin Mary, in order that she be his advocate with her glorious Son.

So as they were going with the king, Amadis told Gandalin to take the arms to where the king ordered; but he, on gathering them up in order to carry out his order, and not finding the sword in the scabbard, was so frightened by it, and so sad that he would have preferred death both because of its happening at a time of such great danger, and on account of considering it a sign that the death of his lord was near. And he looked everywhere for the sword, asking those who might know something about it; but when he found no clarification, he was about to throw himself out of the window into the sea, if he had not remembered that with his suicide he would lose his soul; and he went to the king's palace with great anguish of heart, and taking Amadis aside he said to him:

"Sir, cut off my head, for I am a traitor to you, and if you don't do so, I shall kill myself."

Amadis said to him:

"From what have you gone crazy, or what bad fortune is this?"

"Sir," said he, "it would be better if I were crazy or dead than for such a misfortune to have come at such a time; for know you that I have lost your sword, which has been stolen from its scabbard."

Amadis said to him:

"You are complaining about that? I thought something else far worse had happened to you. Now have done with this, for another sword will not be lacking with which God may help me if He so pleases."

Although he said this to comfort him, he was much grieved by the loss of the sword, not only on account of its being one of the best in the world and because he had such great need of it at that time, but also for having won it with the force of the great love he had for his lady; for to look at it and recall this circumstance constituted a very great help to his mortal desires when he found himself absent from her. And he told Gandalin not to tell anyone and to bring him the scabbard, and to find out from the queen if he could have that sword of his which Don Guilan had brought with the other arms; and that if he could see his

lady Oriana, to ask her on his behalf that when he and Ardan Canileo came on the field to place herself where he could see her, because the sight of her would make him the victor in that affair, and in any other much more serious one. Gandalin went to do what his lord had commanded him, and the queen ordered that he be given the sword. But Queen Briolanja and Olinda told him:

"Alas, Gandalin! what do you think your lord will be able to do against that devil?"

He said to them laughing and with good countenance:

"Ladies, this is not the first dangerous deed that my lord has undertaken; and just as God has protected him until the present, so He will protect him now; for he has completed to his honor many other more dangeous exploits, and thus will he complete this one."

"So may it please God," said they.

Then he went to Mabilia and told her to tell Oriana what his lord was sending him to ask of her. Whereupon he returned to the chapel where he had the arms, and he told his lord how he was leaving everything done in accordance with his will, whereat he was greatly pleased and took great courage on knowing that his lady would be where he could see her from the field. Then drawing the king aside, away from the other knights, he said to him:

"Know you, sire, that I have lost my sword, and I didn't find it out until just now, and they left me the scabbard."

The king was very sorry about it, and said to him:

"Although I have agreed and promised never to give my sword to any knight to fight in single combat at my court, I shall give it to you now, remembering those great encounters when your sword was put at my service."

"Sire," said Amadis, "may it not please God that I, who must promote and sustain your word, be the cause of your breaking it, after your having made a promise before so many nobles."

Tears came to the eyes of the king, and he said:

"Such a stickler you are for upholding all justice and loyalty! But what will you do, since that very fine sword cannot be had?"

"Here I have," said he, "the one with which I was cast upon the sea, which Don Guilan brought here and the queen gave orders to guard it. With this and with your prayer to our Lord, which before Him will be of much avail, I shall be able to be helped."

Then he tried it in the scabbard of the other one and it went in well, although it was somewhat smaller. The king was pleased with it, because by his carrying the scabbard with him, through its great virtue, he would be freed from considerable heat and cold, for such a property those serpent bones had, out of which it was made; but this sword was very far removed from the excellence of the other. Thus they spent that day until it was the hour for sleeping, and all those knights that you have heard about had their arms stacked around the king's bed. But I tell you about Ardan Canileo that that whole night he had all his people make a big celebration and dance play instruments of various kinds in their tents, and at the end of their songs they all said in loud voices:

"Come, tomorrow, come and bring the bright day, so that Ardan Canileo may fulfill what he has promised that very beautiful Madasima."

But Fortune in this was to be contrary to what they had thought. Amadis slept that night in the chamber of the king, but the sleep he had was not of any benefit to him, for promptly at midnight he got up without saying anything and went to the chapel, and awaking the chaplain he confessed to him all his sins, and they were both praying before the altar of the Virgin Mary, asking that she be his mediator in that battle. And dawn having come, the king arose, and those aforementioned knights, and they heard mass; and such knights as knew very well how to do it armed Amadis. But before he put on his coat of mail, Mabilia came in and put around his neck some relics set in gold, saying that the queen, her mother, had sent them to her by the maid of Denmark; but it was not so, for Queen Elisena gave them to Amadis when she recognized him as a son, and he had given them to Oriana at the time he freed her from Arcalaus and those who were carrying her away. As soon as he was armed, they brought him a beautiful horse that Corisanda had sent with

other gifts to Don Florestan, her lover; and Don Florestan brought the lance to him and Don Guilan the shield, and Don Bruneo, the helmet; and the king was riding a big horse with a staff in his hand. And know you that all the people of the court and of the town were surrounding the field to see the combat, and the matrons and maidens were at their windows, and the beautiful Oriana and Mabilia at a window of their chamber, and with the queen were Briolanja and Madasima and other princesses.

Amadis having arrived on the field, they raised a chain and he came in and took up his arms; and when he was to put on his helmet he looked at his lady Oriana, and such great courage came to him that it seemed to him that there was nothing else in the world so powerful to protect him. Then into the field came the judges, who were to render justice to each one, and they were three in number: one of them was that old man Don Grumedan, who knew a great deal about these matters; and Don Quadragante, who was a vassal of the king; and Brandoyvas. Then came Ardan Canileo, well armed on a big horse and his coat of mail of very thick mesh, and he was carrying a shield and a helmet of a steel as clean and brilliant as a bright mirror, and wearing Amadis's very good sword that the maiden had stolen for him, and carrying a thick lance, brandishing it so hard that he seemed to be trying to break it; and thus he came on the field. When Oriana saw him, she said with great anxiety:

"Alas, my friends, how violent and frightful comes my death, if God out of His great compassion does not render help!"

"Lady," said Mabilia, "stop that and put on a good countenance, so that with it you may give your lover courage."

Then Grumedan took Amadis and put him at one end of the field, and Brandoyvas put Ardan Canileo at the other end, with the horses' heads facing each other, and Don Quadragante in the middle, who had in his hand a trumpet at whose blast the knights were to move. Amadis who was looking at his lady, said in a loud voice:

"What is Quadragante doing, that he does not blow the trumpet?"

Then Quadragante blew it, and the knights dashed forward at full speed and struck each other with their lances on their

shields so violently that they were quickly broken, and the knights collided with each other so that Ardan Canileo's horse fell on his neck and was killed immediately, and that of Amadis had one shoulder broken and could not get up; but Amadis, with great strength of heart stood up at once, but with considerable effort, for he had a piece of the lance thrust through his shield and through the sleeve of his cuirass without touching the flesh; and drawing it out, he seized his sword and went toward Ardan Canileo, who had stood up with great effort and was straightening his helmet. And when he saw him thus, he grasped his sword, and they went to attack each other so fiercely that there was no man who saw them who was not greatly frightened, for their blows were so powerful and so quick that they made sparks flash from their helmets and from the swords, so that they seemed to be on fire. But much more of this appeared on the shield of Ardan Canileo, for since it was of steel, and the blows of Amadis were so heavy, it seemed as if the shield and arm were being consumed in living flame; but its great strength protected his flesh from being cut, from which fact Amadis was in mortal danger; for since his armor was not so thick and Ardan had one of the best swords in the world, no blow reached him that did not cut through his armor and his flesh, so that in many places he was stained with his own blood and his whole shield was almost cut to pieces. And the sword of Amadis was not cutting through the armor of Ardan Canileo, which was very strong; but although his own coat of mail was of thick and strong mesh, it was already rent in more than ten places, so that he was shedding blood through them all. And what was of greatest advantage to Amadis at that time was his great agility, for with it he dodged most of the blows, although Ardan had had much practice in that profession and knew a great deal about sword play.

They continued in such furious fighting as you hear, dealing each other mighty and harsh blows until the hour of tierce, coming to grips with hands and arms so violently that Ardan Canileo was thrown into great terror, for never had he found such a strong knight, nor even such a brave giant, who so greatly resisted his valor; and what made the battle last longer was that he found

his foe ever quicker and stronger than at the beginning, and he himself more tired and exhausted and covered all over with blood.

Then Madasima recognized indeed that he was failing in what he had promised, namely that he would overcome Amadis in less time than it would take to walk half a league, at which she was not sorry, nor even if Ardan Canileo should lose his head, for her thought was so lofty that she would rather lose all of her land than to see herself united in matrimony with such a man.

The knights were striking each other with very mighty blows wherever they could do each other harm, and each one was striving to bring the other to his death. And if Amadis had borne such strong arms, in view of his great agility and the way his vigor remained with him, the other one would not have been able to hold the field against him; but all that he did and strove for was indeed needed, for he had to deal with a very strong and sinister knight at arms, the more so since he already had all his arms rent and his shield broken and his flesh cut in many places, from which his blood was flowing freely. When Oriana saw him thus, her heart not being able to stand it, she left the window in great anguish, and seated on the floor, she struck her face with her hands, thinking that death was approaching her lover Amadis. Mabilia, who saw her thus strike herself, was sad of heart, and made her return there, manifesting great anger at her, telling her that at such a time and at such danger she should not forsake her lover; and because she could not stand seeing him so maltreated, she turned her back to him in order that her lover might see her beautiful hair so that he would take more courage and ardor. They being at this point, Brandoyvas, who was one of the judges, said:

"I am quite worried about Amadis, for I see him very much at a disadvantage as regards his arms and his shield."

"So it seems to me," said Don Grumedan, "because of that I am greatly distressed."

"Sirs," said Quadragante, "I consider Amadis to have shown himself when I fought with him, so valiant and bold as to give the impression that his strength keeps doubling, and of all the knights I have seen, he is the one who best knows how to conserve his resources and is most vigorous; and I see him now with his

strength completely intact, which with Ardan Canileo is not the case, and if anything is hurting Amadis it is merely the great haste with which he fights; for if he would be patient, he would make his foe run after him and Ardan's great weight would tire him; but Amadis's great ardor does not allow him to calm down."

Oriana and Mabilia, who heard this, were greatly comforted. But Amadis, who had seen his lady leave the window, and since then had not glanced in that direction, thought that she had done it through grief for him, and went with great fury at Ardan Canileo. And he took his sword in hand and struck him with all his strength on top of his helmet such a mighty blow that he stunned him and he went to the ground on one knee, as the blow was so great and the helmet so strong that he broke his sword into three pieces, so that the smallest remained in his hand. Then was he in total fear of death and so also were all who were watching. When Ardan Canileo saw this, he drew back on the field and took his shield by the clasp and brandishing the sword, shouted in a loud voice so that all heard him, and said to Amadis:

"You see here that good sword which you won to your harm. Assure yourself that this is the one, and with it you shall die."

And then he shouted:

"Come out, come out to the window, Lady Madasima, and you will see the beautiful vengeance that I shall give you, and how through my prowess I have won it for you in such a way that no other woman will have such a lover as you have."

When Madasima heard this, she was very sad, and she threw herself at the feet of the queen and begged the favor that she should protect her from him, which with great justice could be done, for Ardan had promised to kill or overcome Amadis before a man walked half a league, and if he did not do it, that she should not grant him her love. So whether that time had elapsed in more than four hours, she could see for herself. And the queen said:

"I hear what you say and I shall do what is just."

Amadis, when he saw himself thus, with armor hacked to pieces and without a sword, remembered what Urganda had told him, that he would give half of the world, were it his, for his sword to be cast into a lake; and he looked toward the window

where Oriana was, and seeing her back, he knew indeed that his contrary fortune had caused it, and such great strength welled up in him that he decided to gamble his life, wishing to die rather than to fail to do what he could. And he went toward Ardan Canileo as if he were prepared to attack him; and Ardan lifted his sword and waited for him; and when he came up he tried to strike him, but Amadis dodged and made him miss the blow; and he came to grips with him so quickly without the other being able to thrust the sword between them, and seized the boss of the shield so forcibly that he removed it from his arm and he might have landed with it on the ground; but he swerved away from him and clasped the shield and picked up a piece of a lance with the iron head that he found in front of him and returned at once to Ardan, well protected by his shield. And Ardan, who was furious because he had thus lost his shield, went toward him and intended to strike him on top of the helmet. Amadis raised the shield and received the blow on it, and although it was very strong and of fine steel, the sword went through the boss a good three fingers. And Amadis struck him with the fragment of lance on the right arm near the hand, so that half of the iron went through between the long bones and made him lose his strength in such wise that he was not able to withdraw his sword, which Amadis took away from him still embedded in the shield. And whether he was quite happy and content about this, it is needless to ask. So then he threw the fragment of lance a considerable distance away, and drew the sword out of the shield, profusely thanking God for that favor He had done him.

Mabilia, who was watching him, took Oriana and made her turn around to see her lover obtain that great victory in surmounting the very considerable danger in which he had been at that time. Then Amadis went for Ardan Canileo, who at once grew weak on seeing his death thus in prospect; and with the thought that he would find no protection or help, he tried to take the shield away from Amadis, just as the latter had taken it from him; but the other, who beheld him close at hand, struck him on the left shoulder in such a way that he cut his armor and deeply into flesh and bones; and as he saw he had lost the use of his arm, he retreated across the field out of the intense fear he

had of the sword. But Amadis went after him; and as soon as he saw him weary and confused, he seized him by the helmet with such force that he made him fall at his feet; and he picked up the helmet and went at him as he was kneeling, and cutting off his head, brought great joy to everyone, especially to King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus, who had experienced great anguish and grief when they saw Amadis in the straits that you have already heard about.

This done, Amadis took the head and threw it out of the field, and he dragged the body to a promontory, from which he dropped it into the sea; and cleaning the blood from his sword, he put it in the scabbard; and immediately the king commanded that he be given a horse, on which, with many wounds and much blood lost, accompanied by many knights, he went to his lodging. But first he had King Arban of North Wales and Angriote de Estravaus taken out of their cruel imprisonment, and he took them with him, and sending King Arban of North Wales to Queen Brisena, his aunt, who had sent word to his room asking for him; retaining his loyal friend Angriote, together they were given medical attention, Amadis for his wounds, of which he had many, and Angriote for the lashings and other injuries given him in prison. There they were visited with great show of affection by the knights and ladies and maidens of the court, and Amadis by his cousin Mabilia, who brought him that true medicine whereby his heart, duly strengthened by it, might be enabled to transmit to his minor wounds the health that was needed for their cure.

CHAPTER LXII

How the battle was fought between Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Madaman the Envious, brother of the big damsel; and concerning the uprising caused through envy of these knights who were friends of Amadis, for which reason Amadis took leave of the court of King Lisuarte.

This battle between Amadis and Ardan Canileo having taken place as you have heard, there appeared promptly the next day before the king Don Bruneo of Bonamar, and with him many good knights by whom he was loved and esteemed; and he found there the big damsel, who was saying to the king that her brother was ready for the battle, that he should order that one to come with whom he was to fight; and although the vengeance achieved on him would be small in comparison with the worth of that brave Ardan Canileo, since no more could be done, with those poor amends they would be somewhat consoled. Don Bruneo, desisting from answering those insane words, said that he wanted the battle at once. Therefore both were armed at once and placed in the field, each one accompanied by those who wished him well; although with a difference, for with Bruneo there were many esteemed knights, and with Madaman the Envious, for thus he was called, three knights of his company who bore his arms. And as soon as the judges had put them in their proper places for the battle, they ran their horses at each other as fast as they could go. At the first encounter, when they broke their lances to pieces, Madaman went out of his saddle and Don Bruneo carried a part of the lance thrust through his shield and, inflicting a slight wound, into his chest; but when he turned his horse around, he

saw the other with his sword in his hand in an attitude of defense, and he said to him:

"Don Bruneo, if you don't want to lose your horse, dismount from it or let me mount mine."

"This and whatever you like," said Don Bruneo, "for that I shall do."

Madaman thinking it would be better to fight on foot than on horseback, because of his own bulk and the other's slightness of build, said to him:

"Since you leave it to me, dismount and let us have the battle on foot."

And Don Bruneo pulled to one side and dismounted, and they began a fierce battle, so that in a short space of time their arms were rent in many places and their flesh cut, from which much blood flowed, and their shields demolished on their arms, with slashings from them littering the ground.

And when they were thus engaged in this very great battle crush, which you are hearing about, a strange thing occurred by which it seems that in animals there is an understanding of their masters, for the horses, which had remained loose on the field, having gotten together, began a battle of biting and kicking with such persistence and animosity that all were greatly astonished at it; and it lasted until Madaman's horse, not being able to stand it any longer, on fleeing before the other, leaped with great fear over the chains by which the field was enclosed; which those who desired the victory of the battle for Don Bruneo took as a good omen. And again paying attention to the battle of the knights, they saw that Don Bruneo was harassing his foe with great hard blows, so that he drew aside and said:

"Don Bruneo, why do you drive yourself so hard? Isn't the day long enough? Restrain yourself a bit and let us rest, for if you consider your arms and the blood that is flowing from your wounds, you will really need to do so."

"Madaman," said Don Bruneo, "if our battle were of another kind and not from such great enmity, then you would find in me complete courtesy and tolerance; but in view of the extreme arrogance that up till now you have shown, if I were to comply with what you ask for, it would cause your fame and worth to be

discredited; therefore it is not for anything good that I may get from you, but in order that by overcoming you I obtain more glory, that I do not wish to afford an opportunity for your weakness to be manifest; and be on your guard, for I shall not let you rest."

Then they attacked each other as before; but it was not long before Don Bruneo, showing the great strength and zeal of his heart, rendered Madaman so weary that his only concern was to defend and protect himself from the blows; and since he was not able to endure them any longer, he retreated as far as he could toward the sea, thinking that there among some rocks he might be able to defend himself. But seeing the distance down to the sea so great and so frightening, he stopped; and Don Bruneo, who was following him, came up and caught him at such close quarters that he could not defend himself, and he struck him with the shield and with his hands pushing him so hard that he hurled him down from such a height that he was smashed to bits before reaching the water. Then he knelt, thanking God for that great favor he had done him. When Mataleza, the huge damsel, saw this, she came on the field, running as fast as she could, and reached that great precipice with considerable effort, and saw how the waves of the sea were carrying to and fro the blood and flesh of her brother. Then, picking up his sword, which had fallen there, she said:

"Here, where the blood of my uncle Ardan Canileo and that of my brother remain, I wish mine to stay, so that my soul be united with theirs, there wherever they may be."

And thrusting the point of the sword into her body, she allowed herself to fall backward over that cliff so that she was completely destroyed. This affair having ended thus, Don Bruneo, mounting his horse amid great praise from the king and from all those who were there, accompanied by many of them, went to Amadis's quarters, where on a luxurious bed beside his and Angriote's, his wounds were treated along with theirs. There they were frequently visited by knights, as well as by nany ladies and maidens, for the purpose of affording them relaxation and pleasure.

But Queen Briolanja, with the consent of Amadis, on seeing that his incapacity would be prolonged, and receiving permission

to leave from him, departed for her kingdom. But first she wanted to see the marvels of Firm Island and to test herself in the forbidden chamber, and she took Enil with her to show her everything; and she promised Oriana to let her know about everything she found there and what happened to her, which will be told later.

And at this juncture, as the story seeks to proceed, you will be able to see how little the strength of the human mind suffices when that high Lord, with slackened reins, and lifted hand withdrawing His grace, permits the judgment of man to exercise its powers freely; whence it will be manifest to you whether great estates, high dominions can be won and governed with the prudence and diligence of mortal man; or if when divine Grace is lacking, great pride, great greed, a throng of armed soldiers are enough to maintain them. Now you have heard how King Lisuarte when a prince, possessing only his arms and horse, with some few servants, going about as a knight errant seeking adventures, on arriving in the kingdom of Denmark, Fortune, which wished it thus, by that princess Brisena, daughter of that king — who on account of her beauty and surpassing virtue, was much esteemed and sought after by many knights and men of high degree, she casting them all aside — was greatly beloved, she choosing him from among all of them for her husband. This was the first good fortune that he had, which among the worldly ones should be accounted one of the best. Then his good fortune not being content with this, the all-powerful Lord wishing it, Falangriz his brother, king of Great Britain, had departed without heir from this present life; therefore without very much delay this disinherited prince is made king, not like those of his time who only with their own natives, with their own realms were content, but winning and dominating those of others, there coming to his court sons of kings and of great princes and dukes, among whom were those three brothers, Amadis of Gaul, Don Galaor, and Florestan, with many others of high rank. Among the emperors and kings of the world he shone above all others, and if his brightness was somewhat obscured by the boon he had promised to the deceitful damsel, which was the cause of his being imprisoned by Arcalaus, it must be attributed more to

his spirit of courage than to carelessness; because at that time, great courage, prowess at arms possessed by kings, princes and great lords, flourished notably in contests with others more lowly, just as one finds among the Greeks and Trojans in stories of antiquity.

Well, what more shall we say of the greatness of this powerful king? To his court came rare adventures, which, having wandered long throughout the world, without finding anyone to bring them to fruition, there to his great glory they were consummated; since there is no reason why the victory of that grievous, frightful battle that he had with Cildadan should remain in oblivion, where so many strong and sinister giants, so many valiant knights of their blood and others of very high rank and very renowned throughout the world, by his great effectiveness and courage and that of his men, were killed and destroyed. And then in a short while that powerful and famous Ardan Canileo, who through all the lands where he went never found four knights to stay with him in the field, was overcome and killed in the court of this king by one single knight.

Then, shall we say now that this good fortune which he had, caused this king to be as he was, very gracious, very humane, and very frank and courageous? Certainly in some way one could think so, if in it all he had learned how to govern, and if with such a slight cause most of it had not been undone and cast aside as you now shall hear; whence one ought to believe that when someone is provided with much good fortune and his judgment and prudence are not enough to preserve it, it should not be attributed to him, but to that very high and mighty Lord who to whomsoever he pleases gives it with such secrecy that it would be the greatest folly for us to try to fathom it.

Now know you that here in this court of this King Lisuarte there were two old knights who had served King Falangriz, his brother, for a long time, so that with that old upbringing more than with virtue or good astuteness, their increasing years giving them authority, they were placed in the council of King Lisuarte. One of them was called Brocadan and the other Gandandel. And this Gandandel had two sons who were considered valued knights before Amadis and his brothers and those of his lineage had come, but the exceeding excellence and vigor of the latter had placed

in oblivion the fame of those two knights; over which their father Gandandel, having great anguish in his heart, brooded so deeply, that not fearing God or considering the faith that he owed his lord the king, or the honors and favors received from Amadis and from his family, sought for his own private honor and advantage to endanger and obscure the general good, to which he was most obligated, by plotting and fabricating in his evil heart a great act of treason in the following manner. Speaking one day to the king, he said:

"Sire, it is necessary for us both that you hear me secretly, because for a long time I have refrained from speaking to you, thinking that the matter would be remedied in some other day; whereby I realize that I have greatly wronged you, because, in proportion as the evil increases each day, it is very necessary to take counsel with you."

When the king heard this, he wanted to know what the matter was, and took him to his private room without anyone else being there; and he said to him:

"Now tell me whatever you wish."

And Gandandel said to him:

"Sire, I have always had the desire to protect my soul and my honor, and — thank God — not to do anything bad even though it were possible! Therefore I am very free and without prejudice, so that my judgment may uninterruptedly give advice in your interest, and you, sire, do that which most befits it. And because I understand that I would wrong God and you if I should remain silent, I decided to tell this to you. Now know you, sire, that for a very long time, there has always been great discord between the kingdom of Gaul and that of Great Britain, and that by right that kingdom should be subject to this one, recognizing it as sovereign as all its neighbors do; and this is a sickness for which health does not come until a just conclusion of this matter. Now I have seen how, Amadis being not only a native from there but also the outstanding lord of his family, they have established themselves in your land so authoritatively and with such great fondness on the part of your natives that it seems to rest only with them to rise up in insurrection as if Amadis were the rightful heir of it. It is true that I never received

from this knight and from his brothers anything but much honor and pleasure, for which I am obligated to them with my person and sons' estate. But may it never please God that I be so obligated with what is yours, for you are my lord and native-born king; rather do I have to subordinate their interests and mine to the least of yours, because otherwise in this world I would fall into an evil way and in the other my soul into hell. Therefore, my lord, I have told you what I was obligated to tell you, discharging what I owe you; command it to be remedied in time before the delay brings greater danger, for in view of your greatness, you may live more honored and trustingly with your own people, than with those from other countries who are opposed to your natives, you being in great danger with reference to your status, although at present it may seem otherwise."

The king said to him, without any manifestation of irritation about it:

"These knights have served me so well and so greatly to my honor and benefit that I can think nothing of them but good."

"Sire," said Gandandel, "that is a sign to which you ought to pay least heed, because if they were to do you an ill turn, you would be on guard against them, as against foes; but services have hidden and concealed in them the deception of those who finally would not be able to refuse what in a feudal sense is natural, as I have already said to you."

At this which you hear, the conversation stopped, because the king did not make further reply. But this Gandandel spoke then with the other old knight whose name was Brocadan, and who was his brother-in-law and in agreement with his evil designs; and by telling him all about his interview with the king, he involved him in the same matter; thus with what both of them said, alleging it was all for the good of the realm, the king was stirred to great resentment against those who thought only to serve him, forgetting that great danger from which Don Galaor had delivered him when he was a prisoner in the hands of the ten knights of Arcalaus; and the other danger from which he was rescued by Amadis, at the time calling himself Beltenebros, when Madanfabul, the fierce giant of the Vermilion Tower, was carrying him off to the ships, taking him from his saddle and

holding him under his arm; for in each one of these episodes one can rightly say that his life was restored to him along with all his dominions.

Oh, kings and great lords who govern the world, how pertinent and appropriate for you is this example, so that, remembering it, you may entrust your confidence to men of good conscience, of good will, who without deceit and without malice will tell you the facts pertaining not only to your service alone but to your service in relationship to your salvation, banishing from your presence men like Brocadan and Gandandel and many others of this ilk, who go about your courts scheming and striving with great flattery, with much concealed deceit to move you away from the service of that Lord of yours whose ministers you are, merely in order that they and their sons may obtain honors and advantages, as these evil men have done! Look out, look out for yourselves, observe that those who are entrusted with great dominions must render to that Lord who gave them to them a very good and detailed accounting; and if not, that glory, that command, and the many delights that you have had in this world, in the other where you have to endure without end, your souls will be afflicted and tormented by much anguish and suffering. And not only in such endless postponement will you be left, but also in this world where honor and fame are so esteemed by you, and where your minds are so concerned to maintain them, from them you will be brought down as this King Lisuarte was, he believing in and trusting more to the words of those known to harbor evil deeds than to what he saw with his own eyes, to the great discredit and dishonor of his court, without his obtaining any remedy for it as long as he lived. And if Fortune from here onward granted him a few victories, it was in order that, by falling from higher places, his spirit might be tormented by greater anguish and pain.

Then returning to the story, I say that those words said to the king had such force that that great overflowing love he had with much cause and reason for Amadis and his relatives, with great injustice was not only chilled, but abandoned in such wise that without more accord or taking counsel, he was longing to see them gone from him; so that immediately he discontinued

the conversing and visiting with Amadis that had been his wont while Amadis lay wounded in bed, passing some times by his dwelling without remembering to inquire how he was nor to speak to the knights who were in his company; who, on seeing such novel and strange behavior on the king's part, were greatly astounded, and sometimes talked about it in front of Amadis. But he, believing, since he was so devoted to the king's service, that the latter was equally favorable to him, attributed this neglect to preoccupation with other matters and concerns, and thus he explained it to those who suspected that it was otherwise, and especially to his great and loyal friend Angriote of Estravaus, who more than any other showed himself distressed about it.

While matters were at such a pass as you hear, King Lisuarte commanded that Madasima and her maidens be called, and the old giant and his sons, and the nine knights that he held as hostages, and he told them that if they did not surrender to him at once the Island of Mongaza, as it had been agreed, he would have their heads cut off. When Madasima heard this, since her fear was very great, tears in great abundance fiilled her eyes, and she considered that if she were to give up her land, she would be disinherited, and if she did not give it, she would suffer a cruel death; and not knowing what to answer, she was trembling violently in great anxiety. But that Andaguel, the old giant, told the king that if he were to give him permission and some troops, he would promise him to have the island surrendered to him or return to that imprisonment. The king having considered it good and giving him the troops, he departed from there at once. And Madasima, returning to the prison, was accompanied by many knights, among whom was Don Galvanes Lackland. When Don Galvanes saw those tears falling down over the beautiful cheeks of that maiden, not only was his heart moved to great pity, but casting aside that freedom that he had possessed until then without being captivated by any woman of the many he had seen, suddenly, not knowing in what manner or how, he was subjugated and made captive, to such a degree that without further reflection or delay, within the hour speaking privately with Madasima, disclosing his heart, he told her that if she were pleased to marry him he would contrive that in addition

to saving her life, he would enable her to remain in free possession of her land. Madasima, already having information concerning the excellence of this knight and of his great and noble lineage, granting what he asked, kneeling, sought to kiss his hands in token thereof. Having received this assurance, Don Galvanes, with those enkindled flames ever swelling in his heart, felt them even more and with greater cruelty because he had remained free from such combat for so long; and not many days having passed, putting into effect what he had promised, he went to the dwelling of Amadis. And speaking with him and with Agrajes, his cousin, he made known to them the whole secret of his heart, informing them that if they did not help him in the matter, his life would be imperilled. They, being surprised by such a sudden quirk in a man who was so aloof from any desire for anything of the sort, and so unlike those who were wont to lavish care and thought on such matters, told him that in view of his worth and the great services he had rendered to King Lisuarte, they thought that it would be very easy to arrange that Madasima as well as all of her land be handed over to him, especially if the seigniory remained vested in the king and he as the latter's vassal, and when Amadis was able to mount his horse, he would go and settle it with the king.

In the meantime that trouble-maker Gandandel went often to see Amadis and showed great affection for him; and each time that they talked of the king, he always said something about how the king appeared to him to be very cool in his regard for Amadis, and that he should be careful lest some harm befall him on account of it, for which he would be very sorry because of being greatly indebted to him for favors that he and his sons had received from him. But however many subtle things he said to Amadis, he never could move him to any anger or suspicion; and he importuned him so much that Amadis told him with some anger not to speak to him any more about that, for even though everybody in the world were to tell him so, he could not believe that a man so wise and of such great virtue as the king would move against him, for never whether asleep or awake had he ever thought of anything but serving him.

Then, some days having passed during which Amadis and Angriote de Estravaus and Don Bruneo of Bonamar were able to rise from their beds with the great improvement of their wounds, richly dressed they mounted on horseback one morning, and as soon as they heard mass, they went to the palace of the king, where they were well received by all except the king alone, who did not look at them or receive them as he was accustomed to do, which attracted the attention of many; but Amadis paid no heed to it, for he did not think that the king did it with ill will. But that meddler, Gandandel, who was there, laughingly embraced Amadis and said to him:

"At times men are told the truth and won't believe it."

Amadis did not reply, but after leaving him, on seeing that Angriote and Don Bruneo were quite aggrieved at having been so discourteously received, Gandandel went to the king and said to him in an undertone, so that no one heard him:

"Don't you see, sire, the resentment manifested toward you by those knights?"

The king was silent, for he made no effort to reply; and Amadis with complete good will and being without any suspicion of that plot so falsely woven, came up to the king with great humility and taking with him Galvanes and Agrajes, said:

"Sire, we wish, if you please, to speak with you, and at the talk let there be present those whom you may so order."

The king said that Gandandel and Brocadan would be present. Amadis was very pleased with this because he sincerely considered them his very good friends. Then they all went together to a garden, where the king sat down under some trees, and they near him. And Amadis said to him:

"Sire, it has not been my good fortune to follow you to the extent I should have liked; but even though I do not deserve it from you, trusting in your virtue and great nobility, I want to make bold to ask a favor of you whereby you will be well served; you will be doing what is prudent and right."

"Surely," said Gandandel, "if that is so, you are asking for a fine boon, and it is well that the king know what you want."

"Sire," said Amadis, "what Agrajes and Don Galvanes and I, who have served you so well, wish to ask is that the Island of

Mongaza, which is under your feudal sovereignty, be given by you to Don Galvanes along with Madasima given to him in marriage; and in this, sire, you will confer a favor on Don Galvanes, who is of such high rank and yet has no seigniory anywhere, and he will render you good feudal service for it and you will be treating Madasima, who by us is disinherited, with compassion."

This having been heard by Brocadan and Gandandel, they looked at the king with expressions denoting disapproval. But for a while the king did not reply, thinking about the great valor of Galvanes and how he had served him and how Amadis had won that land with such great danger to his life, and he well recognized that their request was reasonable, just and honorable. But as his will was corrupted, it afforded no opportunity for virtue to exercise its obligation and he answered as one who was unwilling to do so, and said:

"One is not of good intelligence who asks what he cannot have. I say this with reference to you, because what you ask for, I gave a good five days ago to the queen for her daughter Leonoreta."

This he thought to reply, more to excuse himself, than for its being true as he stated it. Gandandel and Brocadan were very happy about this reply, and showed by their expression that he had answered well. But Agrajes, who was quite quick-tempered, when he heard such a surly answer, and how he excused himself with such scant courtesy, could not remain silent; rather, very angrily he said:

"You really give us to understand, sire, that if we are not worth something for ourselves, our services, according to the way they are appreciated, avail us little. But if I had been believed, our life would have been spent in some other way."

"Nephew," said Don Galvanes, "very little force do services have in themselves, when they are done for those who do not know how to give thanks for them, and therefore men ought to look where their services may be well employed."

"Sirs," said Amadis, "don't complain if the king does not give us what we ask him for, since he has given it away already. But I shall beseech him to give you Madasima, and keep the land

for himself, and I shall give you the Firm Island, where you may pass the time with her until the king has something to give you."

The king said:

"I have Madasima in my prison in order to obtain from her the land, and if not, I shall give orders to cut off her head."

Amadis said to him:

"Certainly, sire, you ought to answer us more courteously, if you please; and you would not do wrong in the matter if you sought to become better acquainted with it."

"If I do not acquaint myself well with you," said the king, "the world is quite large; go out into it and look for someone with whom to become acquainted."

Oh what words so worthy of noting! For even yesterday, we could say, this knight Amadis of Gaul was so beloved by this King Lisuarte, so highly esteemed, held in such favor that he, Lisuarte, thought that both with Amadis's person and with the persons of his brothers and other relatives, becoming lord of the world was merely a matter of initiating the enterprise; having such compassion for the danger to his life when the battle between him and Ardan Canileo was arranged that tears came to his eyes, knowing at that time that his very good sword was lost to him and contrary to that great oath that he had made before his court not to give his sword to any knight, begging and urgin ghim to take it, an action which certainly must not have been motivated without his having abundant love for him, recalling then the great services received from him, that were the cause of the restoration of his life and realm. And now to think that this great love, this abundant good judgment and prudence of his, his knowledge of things were of no avail against a few facile words uttered by an ill-starred man of evil deeds, without seeing any reminders that would certify to him the prevention of all that from being confused and obscured! It seems to me an extraordinary thing and very significant to believe that neither from enemy arms nor from cold poisons so much danger and harm could come to kings and grandees as from ears alone by listening, because that good or evil transmitted to them persuades the heart, and guides the will to a large degree to follow what is just or the opposite. Therefore, great lords, you to whom in

this world so much power is given that it suffices to satisfy your appetites and your desires, beware of wicked men, for since they have little concern for themselves and their own souls, one must believe that they will have much less concern for yours.

Then returning to our subject matter, when that very dishonest and surly reply of the king was heard by Amadis, he said to him:

"Certainly, sire, in my thinking up to now, I did not believe that in the whole world any other king or great lord had such a high degree of understanding of things as you; but since you have shown yourself so foreign and so contrary to my thinking, it is proper that with equally new counsel and mandate we seek a new life."

"Do whatever you wish," said the king, "for that is what I am doing."

Then he arose angrily and went where the queen was, and Brocadan and Gandandel with him, praising him highly for thus having discharged and freed himself from those from whom such great danger could befall him; and he told the queen all that had happened with Amadis and how on account of it he was very happy. But she told him that from his happiness she received sadness, because since Amadis and his brothers and other relatives had been at his court, his affairs always had been promoted and advanced without the opposite being done by any of them, and that if his own judgment was the sole cause of this separation, it had become greatly impaired in the understanding it should have; and if on the advice of some other people, that it probably was through the great envy they had of them and of their good deeds; and that the harm done was not only present but for the future, for others on seeing thus cast aside and ill-recognized the eminence of those knights who deserved such honor and so many favors for their great services, having very little hope for their own, which in the majority of cases were not equal to those of Amadis and his kin, with good reason would begin to flee from him to look for another who might have better understanding. But the king said to her:

"Stop talking any more about it, for I know what I am doing; and say as I have said that you asked me for that land for Leonoreta and that I have given it to her."

"I shall say it," said the queen, "just as you command and may God grant that it be for the best."

With more anger and melancholy than he showed in his face, Amadis went to his dwelling, where he found many good knights who always stayed with him, and he didn't want to tell them anything about what happened with the king until he had spoken with his lady Oriana. And taking Durin aside, he asked him to tell his cousin Mabilia for him that that night it was very important for him to see Oriana, and that at the underground garden passageway, where on a few other occasions he had entered, they should expect him. Thereupon he returned to those knights, and they ate and relaxed just as they were accustomed to do in days past. And he said to them:

"Gentlemen, I earnestly entreat you to be here together tomorrow, because I must speak to you about something very important."

"Thus it will be done," said they.

Then the day having passed, and night come, after they had dined and people had quieted down, Amadis, taking Gandalin with him, went to the garden. And entering through that passageway as he had done several times, he reached the chamber of Oriana, his lady, who was waiting for him with a love as loyal and true as that which he bore for her, so that with many kisses and embraces they were united without having any envy of other true lovers anywhere in the world, considering their own love quite peerless. As they lay in Oriana's bed, she asked him why he had sent word to her that it was very important for him to speak to her. He said to her:

"Because of a very strange thing, according to my thinking, that has happened to me and Agrajes, my cousin, and Don Galvanes while in conversation with your father."

Then he told her everything just as it had happened and how at the end the king had told them that the world was quite large and for them to go through it looking for someone who would judge them better than he.

"My lady," said Amadis, "since thus it is pleasing to him, thus we must do it; for otherwise all that glory and fame that I have won with my delightful memory of you would be lost, to the great discredit of my honor, so much so that in the whole world there would not be such a defamed or such a vilified knight as I. For this reason I beg of you, lady, that no other thing be commanded by you, because just as I am more yours than mine, so the greater share of the discredit which would fall on you, even if it were concealed from everyone else, being to you, my lady, manifest, your heart would always suffer great anguish."

Oriana having heard this, although her heart was breaking, summoned all her resources and said to him:

"My true beloved, with very little reason you ought to complain of my father, because not him but me, by whose command you came to his court, you have served and from me you have and shall have the reward as long as I live. And if some blame can be imputed to my father, it is only that since he doesn't know that you do things at my command, and therefore thinks they are done in his service; this imposed on him the obligation not to reply to you so violently. And although your departure is for me as serious as if my heart were broken into bits, heeding reason more than my desire and the mad love that I have for you, I am pleased that it be done as you ask; since according to the great sway I have over you, it will be in my hand to remedy it, as may be most to my pleasure, and in order that my father, on losing you, may know that all that remains to him will be for him a cause of great discredit and loneliness."

Amadis, when he heard this, kissing her hand many times, said to her:

"My true lady, although up till now I have received from you many and great favors, whereby my sad heart was returned from death to life, this must be accounted as very much greater, in accordance with the great ascendancy that matters of honor have over those of delights and pleasures."

Talking about this and other affairs they spent that night, mingling many tears with their great pleasure, when they reflected on the great loneliness that was awaiting them in the future. But now, as daybreak was approaching, Amadis arose,

accompanied by his very beloved cousin Mabilia and by the maid of Denmark, begging them very humbly to comfort Oriana, and as they acquiesced amid tears, he departed from them; and going to his lodging, he spent all that was left of the night and some part of the day in sleeping. But it now being time, he having aroused from their beds all those knights that you have already heard about, they came to him; and as soon as they had heard mass, all having gathered together on horseback in a field, Amadis spoke to them in this wise:

"It is well-known to you, my good sirs and honorable knights, whether after I had come from the kingdom of Gaul to Great Britain, and my brothers and friends likewise because of me, the affairs of King Lisuarte were enhanced in honor or placed in greater discredit; and for this reason it will be unnecessary to recall these matters to your memory. But I think that it ought to be told and very rightly that both you and I should have expected a large reward; but because fickle Fortune, playing its usual role, muddles and confuses things, on account of some evil counsellors, or perchance the king's nature being changed by the onset of old age, for some reason or other we have found him quite the opposite of what we thought he was; for he having been besought by Agrajes and Don Galvanes and me, as a boon, for Madasima with her land so that she might be married to Don Galvanes, remaining under his sovereignty and as his vassal; not appreciating the great worth of this knight and his very high lineage, and the great services received from him, not only did he refuse to grant this boon to us, but he refused us with a reply so intemperate and so indecent that on account of its having come out of a mouth so wont to speak truth from judgment normally so discreet, I am greatly embarrassed that you should learn it from me. But, since there's no help for it, the affair having reached such an ending, you must know, sirs, that at the end of our talk, when we told him our services were poorly recognized by him, he told us that the world was large and that we should go through it and seek some one to appreciate us better. So it is proper that, just as we have always been obedient to him in harmony and friendship, that now we be obedient in discord and enmity by carrying out what he considers good for us to do. It

seems to me proper that you know about this, because it not only relates to us in particular but to everyone in general."

When those knights heard what Amadis said, they were greatly surprised, and talking with each other, they said that their small services would be very poorly rewarded when those great ones of Amadis and his brothers were thus consigned to oblivion; so that their hearts immediately were constrained not to serve the king any longer but to do him disservice whenever they could. And Angriote de Estravaus, as one who intended to have his share of both the bad and the good that might come to Amadis, said:

"Gentlemen, for a long time I have known the king, and I have always seen him very calm in all of his affairs and not aroused except with great cause and just reason; therefore what came over him in talking with Amadis and these knights, I cannot believe, nor will it fit into my thinking that it came from his nature or desire; rather I truly think that some trouble-makers have cut him off from his usual good will and good sense. On that account I do not fail to attribute great blame to the excellence and great virtue of the king, and what I truly think is that I having seen him these past few days, talking more than his wont to Gandandel and Brocadan, and they being false and deceitful, forgetting God and the world, they and their sons thinking to obtain what their evil deeds do not deserve, have caused this change in the king. And so that you may see how the justice of God is carried out, I want to go and arm myself at once and tell them that they are evil and envious, and the great treachery and falsification that they have committed as regards the king and Amadis, and I want to fight with both of them, and if their age excuses them from it, let them each put one of their sons with me alone, to back the evil deeds of their fathers."

And as he was about to leave, Amadis stopped him and said to him:

"My good friend Angriote, may it not please God that your good and loyal body be placed in danger for what is not known for certain."

He said to him:

"I am sure that it is thus, according to what I have known of them for a long time; and if the desire of the king were to speak the truth, I know that he would agree with me."

And Amadis said:

"If you love me, do not concern yourself this time with it, so that the king be not angered. And if these persons that you say, showing themselves to such a degree my friends, have been enemies to me, besides not being able to conceal themselves, they will suffer that penalty that false people deserve; and when it is known and revealed, you will be able to proceed against them with greater reason and cause; and believe that then I shall not prevent you from doing so."

Angriote said:

"Although it be against my will, I shall desist this time, since it pleases you thus; but it will be for later."

Then Amadis, turning to those knights, said to them:

"Sirs, I wish to bid farewell to the king and queen if they wish to see me, and to go to the Firm Island; and to those of us who would like to live in unity there, they shall do us honor, in addition to the pleasure that we shall have, for that land is very delightful, abounding in all things and in good hunting and beautiful women, which are the cause wherever they may be, of pleasure to the most vigorous and proud knights. And in it I have many and precious jewels of great value that will be enough for our needs. There many of those who know us will come to see us, not only men but women, who have need of our help. And there we shall return each time that we please to seek shelter and take restoratives for our hardships. Then together with this, just as in the lifetime of King Perion, my father, as after it, that kingdom of Gaul in Little Brittany will not be lacking to us, for now I have had letters attesting the fact that while he was alive, it was given to me. All of this certainly you can consider as yours. So also I remind you of the kingdom of Scotland which my cousin Agrajes will have, and that of Queen Briolanja, which come what may will not fail us."

"That you can, Sir Amadis, with good reason say," said a knight by the name of Tantiles, majordomo and governor of that

kingdom of Sobradisa, "for that beautiful queen whom you restored to reign will always be at your command."

Don Quadragante said to him:

"Now, sir, bid the king farewell, and there will appear those who love you and wish your company."

"So shall I do," said Amadis, "and I shall long hold in high esteem those who at this time may wish to honor me; it is not for this reason that I say that by remaining with the king to their own advantage do they fail to do so. Certainly I think that such a good lord would not be found at this time either far or near."

The king went by on horseback, and Gandandel who was guarding him, and many other knights; and he was going hunting with falcons. And so he went for a while with them; and not speaking to them or looking at them, he returned to his palace.

CHAPTER LXIII

How Amadis took his leave of King Lisuarte, and with him ten other knights, relatives and friends of Amadis, the best and most vigorous of all the court; and they pursued their way to the firm island, where Briolanja was trying the adventure of the staunch lovers and that of the forbidden chamber; and how they decided to free Madasima and her maidens from the power of the king.

As Amadis saw the dislike that the king showed toward him, taking with him all those knights he went to take leave of him; and as he entered the palace, and they saw his face changed from what it was accustomed to be, and at such a time that the tables were already set, they all arrived to hear what he would say. And coming before the king, he said to him:

"Sire, if you wrong me in any way, God and you know it, and now I shall say no more, because although my services were great, much greater was my desire to repay you for the honors that I have received from you. Yesterday you told me to go traveling through the world and to look for someone who would recognize me better than you, giving me to understand that what will please you most is that I be away from your court; and since this is what you wish, it is proper for me to obey. I cannot take my leave as your vassal, since I never was yours, nor of anyone else save of God. But I say farewell to that great desire that as long as it pleased you, you had to do me honor and favor, and to the great love that I had to serve and repay you for it."

And then Don Galvanes and Agrajes and Florestan took their leave; and Dragonis and Palomir, cousins of Amadis; and Don

Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil, his brother; and Angriote de Estravaus and Grindonan, his brother, and Pinores, his nephew. And Don Quadragante appeared before the king and said:

"Sir, I stayed with you only because of Amadis's request, wanting and desiring to have his love, since with true reason a way was found that the feeling that I had for him might be set aside to my honor; and since on account of him I was your vassal, for the same reason I shall not be henceforth, for my small services would have scant expectations when he fails with his great services; for poorly you remember how he snatched you from the hands of Madanfabul, from whom no one else was able to deliver you; and of the victory that he caused you to have in the battle with King Cildadan, and of how much blood he and his brothers and other relatives lost there; and how he removed me as an obstacle to you, and Famongomadan and Basagante, his son, who were the strongest giants in the world; and also Lindoraque, the son of the giant of the Forbidden Mountain, who was one of the best knights of any that I knew; and Arcalaus the Enchanter; and to think that all this should be obliterated in your memory, having a bad reward! For if these of us that I mention were against you in that battle, and Amadis had not been on your side, think what might have come to you from it."

The king replied:

"Don Quadragante, I understand very well from your words, that you do not esteem me; you do not say it for my benefit, nor do you even have with Amadis such a relationship as to cause you to desire his advantage or welfare, but you say what perchance is not so steadfast in your thought as in your speech."

Don Quadragante said:

"You will say what you please as the great lord you are, but I am certain that you will not influence Amadis with meddlesome words, as others are influenced who finally will recognize their mistake. And whether I be a good friend or a bad one to Amadis, we are close to showing."

And he withdrew from before the king. And then Landin approached and said to him:

"Sire, in your court I have found no help or restorative for my wounds, except in Amadis; therefore ceasing to be yours, with him and with my uncle, Don Quadragante, I wish to go."

And the king responded:

"Certainly I think that in you we would not have a good friend."

"Sire," said he, "as they are to you, such shall I be, since I do not have to depart from their command."

At this time there were gathered at one end of the palace Don Brian of Monjaste, highly esteemed knight, son of King Ladasan of Spain and of a sister of King Perion of Gaul, and Grandiel, and Orlandin, son of the count of Urlanda, and Grandores and Madancil, he of the Bridge of Silver, and Listoran of the White Tower, and Ladedeoin of Fajarque, and Tranfiles the Proud, and Don Gavarte of Valtemeroso. And when they saw that those knights, for love of Amadis, had taken leave of the king, they all went before him and said to him:

"Sire, we came to your house to see Amadis and his brothers, and to win their esteem; and since this was the principal reason for our being here, so it is the reason for us not to be on bad terms in it."

These knights having taken their leave as you have heard, and no one else remaining, Amadis had wished to bid farewell to the queen; but this was not the king's pleasure because she had always been very much opposed to him in this discord; but Amadis sent Don Grumedan to say his farewells. And leaving the palace he went to his dwelling, and all those knights with him, where they found the tables set and they were served many good viands. And at once they mounted their horses, fully armed, and they probably numbered some five hundred knights, among whom there were sons of kings and counts and others of high rank, not only in lineage but also in great prowess and excellence at arms, for their mighty deeds were known throughout the whole world; and they took a direct route to the Firm Island, and rested that night along a riverbank about three leagues from there, where already by command of Amadis, the tents were set up. Mabilia, who was watching them from one window of the palace, saw them go forth so spruce in appearance, for their arms were

new and fine, and with the brightness of the sun, which was reflected on them, they shone very resplendently. There was not a person who saw them who did not marvel and who did not consider the king unfortunate that such a knight as Amadis should wish to leave there along with those who followed him. And Mabilia went to Oriana and said to her:

"Madam, abandon that sadness and look at those vassals of yours, and let your heart be glad to have such a lover, for if until now by serving your father, he led the life of a knight errant, now out of his service, as a great prince he will show himself to be powerful; all of which redounds to your greatness."

Oriana, greatly comforted by those words, gazed at them, remedying with her great prudence and discretion that passion and affliction that was tortured by desire and appetite.

There went out with Amadis to do him great honor, King Arban of North Wales, and Grumedan, the foster father of the queen, and Brandoyvas, and Quinorante, and Giontes, nephew of the king, and Listoran the good jouster. These went with him separated from his people, and very sad because of this separation from the king. And Amadis kept begging them to be friends with him to the degree that without burdening their honor, they could be, for he would always hold them in the same degree of esteem that until then he had held them; and even though the king should hate him, not having any just reason for it, they should not hate the king, nor therefore stop serving and honoring him as such a good king deserved. They told him that they would never hate him for any reason, for although they would serve the king with the loyalty to which they were obligated, their hearts would never be separated from loving him.

Amadis said to them:

"I beg you, gentlemen, to tell the king that now it seems clear what Urganda, in his presence, told me: that for the sovereignty that I won for another, I would have no reward except anger and separation from my desire, just as now it has happened to me in my gaining the island of Mongaza for his sovereignty, by which his will was moved in defiance of all reason, against me without my deserving it, as you see. And that such things as

these that just Judge often remedies by rendering justice to each one."

Don Grumedan said that he would tell the king everything just as he bade him, and that cursed be Urganda for being so infallible. And with this they returned to the town, and Don Guilan the Pensive came up to Amadis, and weeping said to him:

"Sir, you well know my situation, that by myself or on impulse I cannot do anything, and I have to follow another's will — the will of that woman on whose account I am placed in mortal anguish and sorrow; by whom this time I am forbidden to go with you; on account of which I am put to great shame, for now I should like to repay those great honors that I have always received from you and from your brothers, but I cannot."

Amadis, who knew about the great and tempestuous love affair of this knight, and how he himself loved his lady Oriana and feared her, embraced him laughing, and said to him:

"Don Guilan, my good friend, may it not please God that a man so good and so understanding as you should be remiss in obedience to your lady or violate her command, nor would I give you such advice, for if so, I would not be your friend; rather I urge you to serve her and carry out her will and that of the king, your lord; for I am indeed certain that with your keeping your loyalty wherever you may be, I shall have you for a friend, as I always have had."

"Now, sir," said Don Guilan, "come what may, I trust in God that you will always have my service."

Then he bade him farewell; and Amadis and his company went that night to the seashore, where they had lodging. And all were cheerful and they were encouraging each other and saying that their having left the king would be a divine favor since the king held their services in such low esteem, and that it was better to find out early that deceit than by wasting any more time in his service. But Amadis's heart although courageous in all other respects, in this separation from his lady was greatly weakened, not knowing or thinking when he could see her. Thus they spent that night very well provided with all that they needed. And next morning they mounted and went on their way straight to the Firm Island.

The day after Amadis and his companions left, the king, after having heard mass, sat down in his palace as he was wont to do and looked about him, and when he saw himself so bereft of those knights who used to be there, he recalled how recklessly he had proceeded against Amadis; and he became immersed in such a deep meditation that he paid no heed whatever to anything else. And Gandandel and Brocadan, who already knew what Angriote had said about them, and who saw the king in such deep thought, were quite frightened, believing that the king was not satisfied with the adverse advice that they had given him concerning Amadis. But seeing that it was no longer possible to annul it, they sought to pursue further their evil designs, for great mistakes suffer from this malady. And they decided to go and prevent those knights from returning to the king unless they were dead; and they then went to him together, and Gandandel said to him:

"Sire, from today on you can enjoy yourself and rest, since you have removed from your service those who could have harmed it, for which you should give many thanks to God; and the affairs of your land and court we shall handle for you with greater concern than for our own. Because, sire, when you reflect on the wealth you were wont to give them, and which now is free and at your disposal, your mind will be greatly at ease."

The king glowered at them and said to them:

"I am quite surprised by your telling me that I should leave in your hands my land and my court, that I, with all those that I employ am not adequate for it, and you in whom I see no such prudence, think you can succeed in it! And even assuming that you were capable of it, my vassals and those of my court would not be content to be governed by your authority; and concerning what you tell me of that great wealth being left free that I used to give those knights, I would like to know in what way I could use it better that would be to my honor and in my service. Because no wealth is well employed except in the power and value of men, for if what those knights bore away went forth from my hand and power, my honor was well protected and my sovereignty increased, and in the end everything was returned to my hand; therefore wealth that is employed where it should be,

rests in a good treasury where it is never lost; and on this matter I do not wish you to speak to me, for I shall not take your advice."

And rising to his feet between them, giving orders to call the hunters, he went to the country; and they remained quite frightened by that answer, seeing that already the king was reflecting on the evil counsel they had given him.

At this time there arrived a maid of Queen Briolanja's, who came with her message to Oriana to let her know what had happened to her on the Firm Island, whereat they were quite pleased, because that queen was dearly loved by them. And then she said to Oriana:

"Lady, I have come to you sent by Briolanja to tell you about the wonders she found on the Firm Island, and she has desired that you be informed by me, for I saw them all."

"May God give her long life," said Oriana, "and good fortune to you for the trouble you have taken."

Then they all came to see what she would say; and the maiden said:

"Lady, know you that Briolanja arrived with all her retinue, just as she went from here, at that island, where she stayed five days; and immediately she was asked whether she would try the chamber and the arch of love, and she said that those two tests she wanted to leave for the last; and they took her at once a league from the castle to some very beautiful houses, which on account of being situated in a very luxurious, delightful place were some of the famous and principal residences of Apolidon. And as soon as the dinner hour came they took us to a large, very beautiful and marvelously wrought room, and at one end of it was a large cave, very deep and very dark, and so frightful to look at that no one dared approach it. And at the other end of that very large palace hall was a very beautiful tower, from the windows of which one can see all the things that are done in that room, and they made us all go up there; where we found the tables and daises placed near the windows, and there the queen and ourselves were very well served with diverse viands by matrons and maidens. And below in the palace hall, as you have heard, the knights and the rest of our people ate, and they were served by knights of the land; and when they placed before them the second

course, they heard very loud hisses in the cave, and hot smoke belched forth, and it was not long before a huge serpent came out and took a position in the center of the hall with a display of ferocity so frightful that nobody dared look at it; and it emitted abundant smoke through its mouth and nose, and it lashed its tail so hard that it made the whole palace shake. And then after it there came forth from the cave two huge lions, and they began between themselves such a fierce and evil battle that no human heart remained there unterrified. Then the knights and the other people, leaving the tables, came out of the palace hall as quickly as they could; and although the windows through which Briolanja and ourselves were looking were very high, not on that account did we fail to have great fear and fright. The fight lasted a half hour, and finally the lions were so tired that they stretched out on the ground as if dead, and the serpent so tired and so weak that it could hardly draw its breath; but after it had rested a bit it took one of the lions in its mouth and carried it to the cave, and returning for the other, it threw them inside and flung itself after them. So they did not appear again the whole day, and the men of the island laughed a great deal at our fright; and making certain that there would be no more that day, we returned to the tables and finished our meal. Thus we spent that day and that night in good lodgings, and next day they took us to another place more delightful than the former, where we spent the day with great enjoyment and a good supply of the things we needed. And when it was time to sleep, they took us to a room surprisingly luxurious and beautiful, where there was a bed of fine and costly bedclothes for Briolanja, and other very good beds for us. And after we had lain down, it being past midnight, for we were very subdued and sleepy, the doors were opened with such a loud noise that we were awakened in great terror, and saw a stag entering the door with lighted candles on its antlers, which illuminated the whole room as if it were day, and half of the stag was as white as snow, and the neck and the head as black as tar, and one antler appeared golden and the other scarlet. And behind it came four dogs of the same appearance as it had, and each one of them was greatly harassing it so that they had the stag in a grievous plight. And behind them came a horn of ivory with

tubes of gold, and it was playing by itself, going through the air as if it went in someone's hand, and it made its own hunting sound, and with it the dogs were stimulated, so that they did not allow the deer to quiet down, for they made it flee from one side to the other of the room, and it was jumping over our beds and making them shake, and sometimes it stumbled on them and fell, and we out of bed in our nightgowns and with hair unbound fleeing before the deer, and some girls hid under the beds. But the dogs did not cease to pursue it as hard as they could; and when the deer saw that there was no shelter in the room, it left through a window, running as fast as it could, and the dogs after it, for which we were all very happy. And taking some of that clothing that was strewn about there, with which to cover ourselves, we gave Briolanja, who was greatly distressed, a smock to put on; and that fear having passed, we had a very great dispute about that disorder in which we saw ourselves. And as we were putting our beds in order, there entered through the door a matron and two maidens with her, and a small girl in front who was carrying candles for her; and she said to Briolanja: 'Lady, what is the matter with you to have arisen at such an hour?' She said to her: 'Friend, such a disturbance as would require a long time to describe.' The matron laughed heartily and said: 'Well, madam, go to bed and sleep, for tonight there will be nothing more for you to fear.'

"With this assurance we arranged the beds and slept for what remained of the night, and next morning early we moved from there and went to a forest where there were big pine groves and beautiful gardens and we were housed in tents on the bank of a stream, and there we found a round house on twelve pillars of marble, with a strangely wrought roof. Between the pillars it was closed with keystones of glass very subtly, so that the one who is inside can see all those outside, and it had some doors wrought with plates of gold and of silver of great and wonderfully rare value. And beside each pillar inside the house was an image made of copper in the likeness of a giant, and the images have very strong bows in their hands, and arrows in them with fiery iron tips as burning and alive as if they had just come out of the fire; and they say that there is nothing that enters there that with

the strength of those arrows and of their fire would not be turned to ashes at once, for the images shoot immediately with the bows, so that they never miss with a shot. And in the presence of Briolanja and ourselves they put there two buck fallow deer and a stag, and immediately the arrows were shot into them; and they having been returned to the bows, the animals remained burnt to ashes. And on the doors of that palace there was an inscription that read: 'Let no man or woman dare enter this house unless he or she be that one who as much and as loyally maintains his love as did Grimanesa and Apolidon who made this enchantment; and it is necessary that they enter together the first time, for if each one by himself does it, he will suffer the cruelest death that ever was seen; and this enchantment and all the others shall last until that man and that woman come who by the great loyalty of their love and the great prowess at arms of the knight shall enter the beautiful enchanted chamber, and there may they be united. And when the marriage of both be consummated, then all the enchantments of this Firm Island shall be ended.' There we were that day, and Briolanja gave orders to call Ysanjo and Enil, and told them that we did not want to see any more except the arch of love and the forbidden chamber; and she asked Ysanjo what that thing was about the serpent and the lions and that of the deer and the dogs. 'Madam,' said he, 'we know only that each day they come out at that hour that you saw them, and they have their fight in that way; and of the deer and of the dogs, I tell you that every night they come to that chamber at that hour that you saw them, go out again through the window, and the dogs behind them, and they go to hurl themselves into a lake that is near here, that we believe comes from the sea; and I do not know, madam, any more to tell you, except that in a year you would not be able to finish seeing the great marvels that there are on this island.' Then morning having come we mounted our palfreys and returned to the castle; and Briolanja went at once to the arch of loyal lovers and entered by the defended columns like one who had never once erred in her love. And the image made a very sweet sound with the trumpet, so much so that it made all of us swoon; and as soon as Briolanja went within where the images of Apolidon and Grimanesa were, the sound

stopped with a very sweet final note that was a marvel to hear; and there she saw those images as beautiful and fresh as if they were alive. So that though she was alone, she found herself well accompanied by them; and then she saw on the jasper the freshly inscribed letters that read: 'This is the name of Briolanja, daughter of Tagadan, king of Sobradisa; this is the third maiden who has entered here.' And then she decided to leave because of her great fear of seeing herself alone, for none of her retinue could enter there. And having come forth from there, she went to her lodging, and on the fifth day she went to try the forbidden chamber and went dressed in a very wondrously splendid costume, and wore nothing on her beautiful hair but a very handsome gold barrette set with precious stones; and all those who saw her there said that if she did not enter the chamber, there was no other woman in the world who would complete the test, and that from that time on there would be an end to all those enchantments. And she commended herself to God and entered through the forbidden place and passed by the column of copper, and reached the one of marble, and read the letters that were inscribed on it, and passed beyond so far that everybody thought that it was finished; and on coming within three paces of the door of the chamber, three hands took her by her beautiful, precious hair and drew her from the field most pitilessly. Just as the others, they expelled her from the forbidden place, and so badly buffeted that we could not at first revive her."

Oriana, whose heart was depressed and sad with what she had heard previously, became very happy, and she looked at Mabilia and the maid of Denmark and they at her, and they were quite pleased; and the maiden said:

"That day, madam, we spent there, and the next day Briolanja departed for her kingdom."

And as soon as the news had been thus related, the maiden left to go to her lady, and she bore with her the regards of Queen Brisena and of Oriana, and of the other ladies and maidens.

Amadis and his companions, who left the court of King Lisuarte as you have heard, reached the Firm Island, where they were received with great pleasure and joy by all the dwellers of the island; because just as with great sadness that they had lost

their new lord, so in having recovered him, their heartfelt pleasure was doubled. And when those knights who came with him saw the castle which was so strong, and that the island had no other entrance except through it, and was so abundant in land, and as delightful as they had heard, and populated by so many and such good people, they said that it was adequate for waging war from there on everybody in the world. And they were at once lodged in the chief town, which was below the castle.

And know you that this island was nine leagues long and seven leagues wide, and it was entirely populated, with urban areas and other fine dwelling places of knights of the land. And Apolidon had built in the most delightful places, four dwellings for himself, the rarest and most luxurious ever to be seen. And one was that of the serpent and the lions, and another that of the deer and the dogs; and the third, which was called the revolving palace, was a house that three times a day and another three times at night revolved so swiftly that those who were in it thought that they were sinking. The fourth was called Tower of the Bull because each day a fierce bull came out from an old underground passage and charged at people as if it wanted to kill them; and with everyone fleeing before it, it would break down with its strong horns the iron door of a tower and go inside. But in a short while it would come out very gentle, with an old monkey riding on it, so wrinkled that its skin hung down in folds on each side; and this monkey by lashing the bull with a whip, would make it return to the cave from whence it had come. All those knights took great pleasure and delight in watching these enchantments and many others that Apolidon had created out of love of affording pleasure to Grimanesa, his mistress; so that they always had something on which to spend their time. And all were very steadfast in their affection for Amadis and determined to follow him in everything that he might will to do.

Then at this time of which you hear, there arrived there the hermit Andalod, the one who was living on the Poor Cliff at the time Amadis was there; he came to set up the monastery of which you have heard. And when he saw Amadis, he gave many thanks to God for having restored life to such a good man, and he gazed at him and embraced him as if he had never seen him.

And Amadis kissed his hands, thanking him with great humility for the health and the life he had had through God and through him; and a monastery was then founded at the foot of the Cliff in that hermitage of the Virgin Mary, where Amadis, greatly despairing of his life, with great sorrow in his heart on account of the letter that his lady Oriana had sent him, said his prayer and was going to be lost, as has already been told you; and in which monastery there remained a good man whom Andalod had brought, Sisian by name, and thirty friars with him. And Amadis issued orders to give them the amount of income needed for them to live comfortably, and Andalod returned to the Poor Cliff as before.

Then there arrived there Balays of Carsante, the one whom Amadis had taken out of Arcalaus's dungeon, who had gone to say farewell to King Lisuarte, when he found out that Amadis was leaving him, unhappy; also there came with him Olivas, the one whom Agrajes and Don Galvanes had helped in the battle with the Duke of Bristol. And they asked Balays for news of the court of King Lisuarte. And he said:

"There is plenty of news that one can tell." Then he told them: "Know you, sirs, that King Lisuarte has sent orders that all his troops be with him at once, because Count Latine and those he sent to take the island of Mongaza informed him that the old giant had given them all the castles that he and his sons had in their power, but that Gromadaza does not want to give the Boiling Lake, which is the strongest castle there is on the whole island, and three other very strong castles. And know you that Gromadaza has said that never as long as she lives will she give up that one where she already was with her husband Famongomadan and Basagante, their son, and that she will die rather than surrender them, and that he will always receive great offense from her; and that as regards her daughter Madasima and her maidens, he do what he considers good, that she would give very little for them or for their lives, though their loss might cause her some sorrow. Hence I say that thus one can take as an example how rigorous and strong is a woman's heart when angered, seeking to leave those suitable things for which she was engendered, for as her nature does not succeed in doing so, it follows that her

scanty intelligence can provide little that is fitting; and if some woman be found who belies this, it is through the immense grace of the very high Lord in whom is all power, who without any halt can guide things where it pleases Him most, forcing and opposing all the things of nature."

After Balays told them this news, they asked him what the king had said or what he was about to do; and he said to them:

"He is gathering together his strength as I have already told you, and he has sworn that if he did not get the castles that Gromadaza had, within a month, he would behead Madasima and her maidens, and that then he would advance upon the Boiling Lake and that he would not leave it until he had taken it; and that if he had the old giantess in his power, he would have her thrown to his very fierce lions."

This news having been heard by them, they were very angry; and they had those knights lodged, and they talked a great deal about the matter. But Don Galvanes, who did not forget the promise made by him to Madasima, and the great anguish and sorrows by which his heart was tormented on account of his love, said to them:

"Good sirs, you all well know that the chief reason why Amadis and ourselves left the king was on account of Madasima and myself; and I earnestly beseech you all to be my helpers so that I may be able to redeem the word that I left there, which was to defend her with good arguments and if arguments are of no avail, to defend her by force of arms; which with God's help and yours I intend full well to do."

Don Florestan stood up and said:

"Don Galvanes, others are here more learned and of better counsel than I, whom you have to protect Madasima, and if one can defend her through reason, this would be best; but if combat is necessary, I shall take it in the name of God in order to defend her and keep your word."

"Good friend," said Don Galvanes, "I thank you as much as I can, because you well demonstrate that you are my loyal friend; but if one must free her by means of arms, it is fitting that I carry that out, for I promised to do so and I shall undertake it."

"Good sirs," said Brian of Monjaste, "You both speak very well, but we all have a share in this deed; what happened to Amadis with the king was to give us all to understand in what esteem we were held, and what happened to him and to you, Don Galvanes, thus could have happened to any one of us who was there; and if we didn't take further action concerning this act, great discredit would accrue to us all, even though the chief cause be Amadis's; for, since we left together and thus we are, what belongs to each one of us belongs to us all, so that in this there is nothing divided. And leaving aside our own cause, Madasima is a maiden, one of the good ones of the world, and she is in danger of losing her life, and her maidens likewise; and as the principal business of the order of chivalry is to help such women, I tell you I shall strive for them to be defended with reason; and when this fails, it will be with arms, to the full extent that my strength may suffice for it."

Don Quadragante said:

"Certainly, Don Brian, you speak as a very highly placed man, and so I believe that you will fight much better, for this business pertains to us all, and we should so take it that we be regarded as men of good faith, and at once without any more delay, because often it happens that good will helps little with delay, since the deed cannot be accomplished at a time that it may be useful. And remember, sirs, that those maidens are wretched, forsaken, and that not by their own will were they thrown in prison, but on account of that obedience that Madasima owed to her mother; so that, although from a worldly point of view the king has something against them, in the eyes of God, not a thing, since they were condemned more by force than by their desire."

Amadis said:

"I am quite pleased, gentlemen, to hear what you are saying, because when things are considered with love and harmony, only a good outcome may be expected; and if thus your strong and brave hearts in the future as in the present hold to it, not only for the aid of those maidens do I have high hopes, but for passing on to other equally great concerns, for no knights in the world could be equal to you. And since all of you are participating in

this rescue, if you please I shall tell you my opinion of what ought to be done."

They all begged him to tell it. Then he said:

"The maidens are twelve. I should consider it good that they be rescued by twelve of you knights by reason and by arms, each one his own, either together in one body if possible, or separated if the necessity arises; and I am quite certain that all of you who are here, in accordance with your great strength would take this adventure as a delight and a pleasure; but it cannot be, since more than twelve they cannot be; and these I wish to name, the others and I myself being left for matters of greater danger that may befall to us."

Then he said:

"You, Don Galvanes, will be the first, since the affair is chiefly yours, and Agrajes, your nephew, and my brother Don Florestan, and my cousins Palomir and Dragonis, and Don Brian of Monjaste and Nicoran of the White Tower, and Orlandin, son of the Count of Urlanda, and Gavarte of Valtemeroso, and Ymosil, brother of the Duke of Burgundy, and Madancil of the Silver Bridge, and Ladaderin of Fajarque. These twelve I consider good to go on this matter, because among them are sons of kings and queens, and of dukes and of counts, of such high lineage that they can find no one there of whom they are not peers."

All were very pleased with what Amadis had said, and the ones named went at once to their dwellings to prepare the things suitable for their departure, which was to be early the next morning; and that night they all lodged with Agrajes, and at midnight they were armed and on horseback, and on their way to Tasilana, the town where King Lisuarte was.

CHAPTER LXIV

How Oriana found herself in great distress on account of the departure of Amadis and the other knights, and more so on finding herself pregnant; and how twelve of the knights who were with Amadis on the firm island came to protect Madasima and the other maidens who were placed with her in danger of death without having any just reason as to why they should die.

It has been related to you how Amadis was with lady Oriana in the castle of Miraflores during the period of a week apparently; from that union Oriana was made pregnant, which was not known or perceived by her as a person who knew little about such matters, until the great change in her health and the weakness of her person had already made it manifest to her. And when she realized it, she drew Mabilia and the maid of Denmark aside, and weeping, said to them:

"Alas, my good friends! What will become of me? For as I see it, my death has arrived, which I always have feared."

They, thinking that she said it because of the departure of her lover and her yearning for him, comforted her as they had done until then. But she said:

"Another misfortune along with that one has come upon me, which places us in greater risk and danger. And this is that truly I am pregnant."

Then she told them the signs by which they should believe it, so that they knew her suspicion to be true; at which they were quite frightened, although they did not let it be apparent; and Mabilia said to her:

"Lady, do not be afraid, for everything there will be a good remedy; and I have always held the opinion that from such games that is what you would win."

Oriana, although she was greatly troubled, could not keep from laughing, and said:

"My friends, it is necessary that from now on we take counsel in order to help ourselves, and it will be well that immediately I appear more ill and weak, and that I withdraw as much as possible from the company of all women except you, and thus when necessity arises, it will be remedied with less suspicion."

"So let it be done," said they, "and may God direct it; and from now on let us strive to decide what to do with the baby when it is born."

"I'll tell you," said Oriana, "for the maid of Denmark, if she pleases, as a restorer of my anguish and sorrow, will be willing to place her honor in discredit so that mine be helped along with my life."

"Lady," said she, "I have no life or honor except it be by your will. Therefore command, for I will obey unto death."

"My good friend," said she, "such a hope have I in you; and the honor that you now risk for me, I shall have you recover, if I live, increased manyfold."

The maiden knelt and kissed her hands. Oriana said to her:

"Then, my good friend, this is what you shall do: go occasionally to see Balasta, the abbess of my monastery of Miraflores, inasmuch as you go about other matters, and when the time for me to give birth has arrived, you will go to her and tell her that you are pregnant, and beg her that besides keeping it secret for you, she arrange help for what is born, which you will have placed at the door of the church, and that she have it given a good, Christian upbringing; and I know she will do so, because she loves you very much. And in this way what pertains to me will be concealed, and not much is risked in what pertains to you, since it will not be known except by that honorable lady, who will keep it secret."

"Thus it will be done," said the maiden, "and you have taken a very good resolution."

This is enough for now on this subject until the proper time; and let us speak of King Lisuarte. When he found out that the giantess Gromadaza did not want to surrender to him the Boiling Lake and the other castles that we have already mentioned, he gave orders on the advice of Gandandel and Brocadan to have Madasima and her maidens brought before him. And they having come in his presence, he said to them:

"Madasima, you already know that you entered my prison under the agreement that if your mother did not surrender to me the island of Mongaza with the Boiling Lake and the other castles, you and your maidens would be beheaded. And now according to what I have learned from the troops that I have there, she has been remiss in what she promised me; and since that is the way it is, I want your death and that of these maidens to be an object lesson and admonishment to others who may make contracts with me, so that they will not dare to lie to me."

This having been heard by Madasima, her great beauty and high color acquired a yellow hue, and she knelt before the king and said:

"Sire, fear of death makes my heart much weaker than it naturally is, I being a young maiden. So that I remain devoid of good sense, and my tongue knows not what to answer; and if in this court there is some knight who, upholding justice, will speak for me in consideration of the fact that I was placed in this prison entirely against my will, he will be doing what he is obligated to do according to the order of chivalry: to answer for those women who find themselves in such circumstances. And if there not be such a knight, you, sire, who have never failed matron or maiden in tribulation, give orders that I be given a fair hearing, and let not anger and rage overcome reason, which as king you ought to consider."

Gandandel, who was eager in his desire for her to die, thinking thereby to augment the enmity existing between the king and Amadis, said:

"Sire, by no means should these maidens be heard, for they have been condemned to death with no other condition, except that that land be surrendered to you, and therefore justice should be meted out without permitting further delay in the matter."

Don Grumedan, foster father of the queen, who was a very loyal knight and a great authority on all matters involving honor, as one who had had practical experience at arms and with his keen mind had read much on the subject, said:

"That the king will not do, if it please God, nor will such cruelty or excess occur through him; for this maiden, constrained more by the obedience due her mother than by her own will, was involved in this quest, and just as in what is hidden that humility will be thanked by God, so also in what is public the king, as His minister following His teachings, must do so; all the more so because I have learned that within the next three days some knights from the Firm Island will be here who come to plead for the maidens; and if you, Don Gandandel, or your sons, wish to uphold the reason that you here have mentioned, you will find among them those who will answer you."

Gandandel said to him:

"Don Grumedan, if you wish me ill-fortune, I have never deserved it of you; and if you have thus affronted my sons, you well know that they are such as will uphold as knights all that I may say."

"We are close to seeing it," said Don Grumedan, "and for you I do not wish any more evil or good than I see you counselling the king."

The king, although he had wronged Amadis very much against all reason, and might have in his thoughts the intention to annoy him in matters pertaining to him, could not be of such avail that his new passion could overcome that former old virtue of his; and when he heard what Don Grumedan said, he was pleased by it and asked him who the knights were who were coming to free the maidens, and he told them all by name to him.

"There are plenty there," said the king, "of good, smart knights."

When Gandandel heard them named, he was quite frightened and very repentant for what he had said about his sons, for he well saw that their prowess did not equal to any degree that of Don Florestan and Agrajes, and Brian of Monjaste and Gavarte of Valtemeroso; and while the king ordered Madasima and her

maidens returned to the prison, he went to Brocadan, his brother-in-law, with great anguish of heart because things were going very much the opposite of what he had thought at the beginning, and he was receiving the reward that the merits of evil deserve. Here happened what the Gospel says: not to have a thing hidden that be not known; for this Gandandel went with Brocadan to his house in a secluded place to take counsel about the arrival of the knights from the Firm Island, and how before they came they might strive with the king to have Madasima and her maidens killed. Then while Brocadan was there blaming Gandandel very much for the wrong he had done Amadis in alienating the king from him without Amadis's deserving it, and all the other things that had occurred in that wicked business, and showing great concern and sorrow for the wicked counsel that they had taken, fearing to attain quickly the wrath of God and that of the king, while losing their fiefs and their sons, in whose interests they had begun it, it happened that a niece of this Brocadan, being enamored of a young knight, Sarquiles by name, a nephew of Angriote of Estravaus, who, since she was keeping him secluded in a partitioned-off space next to that room where they alone and withdrawn were taking counsel, heard all they were saying and found out all their evil secrets, at which he was quite surprised. And after they left, and night having come, he came forth from there, and arming himself with all his arms in a house outside of the town, where he had left them, he mounted his horse in the morning as if he had come from another direction, and went to the palace of the king, and speaking with him, said:

"Sire, I am a subject of yours and was brought up in your court, and I should like to protect you from all evil and deceit so that you might nor err in your affairs by carrying out the will of others. And it has not yet been three days since I, being in a certain place, heard that some men are seeking to give you bad advice, inimical to your honor and good name; and I tell you not to trust what Gandandel and Brocadan tell you in the matter of Madasima and her maidens, since in your court there are persons who with less deceit will advise you, and what moves me to this you will know and everybody who is here, within twelve days; and if you pay attention to what these

whom I mention will say to you, you can understand immediately that I knew something about it. And, sire, God be with you, for I am going to my uncle Angriote."

"God be with you," said the king, and he remained thinking about what he had told him.

And Sarquiles mounted his horse and by a short cut that he knew, he went as fast as he could to the Firm Island; and with the effort from the journey, his horse arrived weak and exhausted, so that he could no longer carry him. And he found Amadis and Angriote and Don Bruneo of Bonamar, who were riding horseback along the seashore, preparing small boats in order to cross over to Gaul, for Amadis wanted to see his father and mother. And he was well received by them; Angriote said:

"Nephew, what eager desire have you had that you bring your horse in such bad shape?"

"A very great one," said he, "to see you and tell you something it is necessary that you know about."

Then he told how the maiden, whose name was Gandaza, had had him secluded in the house of Brocadan, and all that he had heard from him and Gandandel about the evil deed that they had negotiated with the king with regard to Amadis. Angriote said to Amadis:

"Does it appear to you, sir, that my suspicion was far removed from the truth, although you did not let me bring it to a head? But now, if it please God, neither you nor anything else shall deflect me from causing the great wickedness of those evil men to be made clear; for such great treachery they have done to the king and to you."

Amadis said to him:

"Now, my good friend, you can undertake it with more certainty and reason than formerly, and with that God will help you."

"Then I shall leave here," said Angriote, "at break of day tomorrow, and Sarquiles will go on another horse with me, and you will quickly know about the payment that those evil ones will have for their wickedness."

And they went at once to the dwelling of Amadis, for Angriote was always there with him; and they made ready all

that they needed for the journey. And next day they mounted and went where they knew King Lisuarte was; he was very pensive about the things that Sarquiles had told him, and he waited to see how they could turn out. Then one day Gandandel and Brocadan came to him, and said to him:

"Sire, we are very sorry that you do not think about your own concerns."

"It may well be," said the king, "but why do you say so to me?"

"On account of those knights," said they, "who come from the Firm Island, who are your enemies, and without fear seek to come into your court to rescue these maidens on account of whom you are to have their land; and if you take our advice, before they come these women will be beheaded, and you will send those knights orders not to enter your land. And with this you will be feared, for neither Amadis nor they will dare anger you; because according to the present status of the affair, if out of fear they do not give it up, they will not give it up out of virtue; and this, sire, command to be done at once without more counseling or delay, because things hastily done, like these, cause greatest fright."

The king, who was remembering what Sarquiles said to him, recognized then that he had told the truth in seeing how they were pressing for the death of the maidens, and he did not intend to be carried away by passion; instead he said to them:

"You say two things which are very outrageous and against all reason; one of them being that without any form of justice, I should have the maidens killed. What account would I give to that Lord whose minister I am, if I were to do this? For He put me in his place in order that I might do things justly and in His name as He would do them. And if I were doing wrong and injury in order to put that great fear into people that you talk about, all that, rightly and with reason, would finally be charged to me; because kings who perform cruelties more through desire than through reason, trust more to their own knowledge than to that of God, which is the greatest mistake they can make. Therefore the true and most certain way for any prince to assure himself in this world and in the next is to do things with the

agreement and advice of persons of good intentions, and to think that although at the beginning some delays may arise, in the end, since they are to be guided by the just Judge, the outcome can only be good. The other thing that you tell me, that I send orders that knights not come to my court, would be a very indecent thing in keeping anyone from seeking justice before me, all the more so if it were a question of those quite inimical to me, for it is a great honor to me for it to be in my power to do what they may beg of me, and that they come out of need to submit to my judgment. Therefore I shall do nothing of what you tell me nor do I consider it good advice, and much less what you advise me against Amadis, for which I deserve great sorrow, because never from him or from his lineage did I receive aught but many services; and if they had had anything to the contrary, some others would have known of it or suspected it, but no other proof appears save yours alone. You have advised me very badly, and have done harm to one who never deserved it from you. I, who erred, suffer the penalty and so I believe that you will finally; if you have not adduced the truth, you will not be without the punishment."

And standing up between them, he went away to his knights. Gandandel was very frightened when he saw the king thus and because he knew of nothing whereby he might reinforce what he had said, Brocadan said to him:

"Now is not the time, Gandandel, to turn back, for in an affair so tainted, it would be of little advantage; rather, now with more effort one ought to uphold everything we told the king."

"I do not know how that can be done," said Gandandel, "for a person would not be found who would not say the opposite."

Thus they were turning over in their minds how the mistake they had made might be greater, for this is the nature of evil men.

Next day the king rode forth with a great company after having heard mass; he went out into the country, and it was not long before the knights from the Firm Island arrived, who came for the freeing of Madasima and her maidens. And the king, who saw them coming, moved toward them to receive them, because they deserved it, in accordance with their great excellence

and because he was greatly given to honoring everyone, and they came into his presence with great humility. And their men set up tents in the countryside in which they might lodge, and the king went that far with them; and as he was about to leave, Don Galvanes said:

"Sire, trusting in your virtue and in your good and just ways, we come to ask as a favor that you may be willing to hear Madasima and her maidens, and that they receive justice, and we are here to uphold their rights; and if we are not able to do so with arguments, may it not cause you sorrow, sire, that we uphold it by force of arms, since there is no cause for which they ought to die."

The king said:

"From today on, go and rest in your lodging, for I shall do everything that I rightly should do."

Don Brian of Monjaste said to him:

"Sire, we expect you to do what befits your royal station and your conscience; and if some of it be lacking, it will be on account of a few evil counselors who do not protect your honor and reputation; which fact, if it not irk you, I would make known at once to anyone who might say the contrary."

"Don Brian," said the king, "if you had believed your father, I well know that you would not have left me for another, nor would you come to reason against me."

"Sire," said Brian, "my reasoning is for you, for I don't tell you to act unlawfully, or to give your support to a few individuals — who perchance will not serve you as well as I — who damage your reputation; and as regards your saying to me that if I had believed my father I would not have left you, I did not leave you, because I never was your man, although I am of your lineage; and I came to your court to seek my cousin Amadis, and when you were not pleased that he be your liege man, I went away with him, not erring a jot in my obligation."

This which you hear, Brian of Monjaste experienced. The king went to the town and they stayed in their lodging, where they were visited by many friends. As regards Oriana, I tell you that she never left a window from which she watched those who

had such affection for her lover, meantime praying to God that He give them victory in that quest.

That night Gandandel and Brocadan had anguished hearts because they found no reason calculated to uphold what they had begun, but to let it drop now they found to be a greater danger; therefore they decided to go ahead with it. Next morning the twelve knights went to hear mass with the king; and after mass, the king went with those of his council and with many other nobles to a palace, and gave orders to summon Gandandel and Brocadan, and he said to them:

"The arguments that you have always used with me in the matter of Madasima and her maidens it is necessary now that you uphold and convince these nobles that she and the maidens ought not to be heard."

And he ordered them to be in a place where they might hear them. Ymosil of Burgundy and Ladaderin of Fajarque presented themselves before the king.

"We and these knights who came here ask you as a favor that you order Madasima and her maidens to be heard, because we understand that thus by right you ought to do."

Gandandel said:

"The right, many are those who discuss it and few those who are acquainted with it. You say that by right these maidens ought to be heard, which by right should not be, since without any condition they committed themselves to death, and thus they entered the prison of the king; the agreement was that if Ardan Canileo were overcome and killed, they would surrender freely the whole island of Mongaza, and if not, that they be killed and the knights with them. And the knights after the death of Ardan Canileo gave up the castles that they had, and Gromadaza does not intend to give up what she has, therefore there is not nor can there be any reason to exempt the maidens from death."

Ymosil said:

"Certainly, Gandandel, it ought to be unnecessary for you to argue as you have here, before a good king and such knights, since it is to such a degree contrary to what is right, for more because of malice than for any just cause you have said it; because it is manifest to all those who know anything that no matter

what agreement man or woman may enter into, if it is not a matter of treason or treachery, one ought to be heard and judgment rendered according to the blame one may have; and thus it is done in the lands where there is justice, and anything else would be extreme cruelty. And this is what we ask of the king: that he consider it with these nobles who are here, and render justice."

Gandandel told him that that was so unjust that no more could be said, and that the king should judge it, since he had already heard the contending parties. And thus the matter remained; and with the king and certain knights staying there, all the others left. The king wanted very much for Argamonte, his uncle, a very honorable count of high intelligence to present his opinion on the matter, but he deferred to the king, saying that no one knew the law so fully as he, and so said all the others. When the king saw this, he said:

"Since you leave it to me, I say that the reasoning of Ymosil of Burgundy, that the maidens ought to be heard, seems to me well founded."

"Certainly, sire," said the count and all the others, "you decide what is just, and thus it ought to done."

Then they called the knights and told them of it; and Ymosil and Ladaderin kissed his hands for it, and they said:

"Then, sire, if it be your will, command Madasima and her maidens to come, and we shall save them by valid arguments, or with arms if necessary."

"It pleases me well that it be thus," said the king, "and let the maidens come, and we shall see if they will approve of you."

And then they went for them, and they came before the king with such great fear and so modestly that there was not a man there who did not have great compassion for them. The twelve knights from the Firm Island took them by the hands, and Agrajes and Don Florestan took Madasima. Ymosil and Ladaderin said:

"Lady Madasima, these knights come to save you and your maidens from death. The king wishes to know if you authorize us to be your champions."

"Lords, if the authorization of maidens captive and without fortune, can be granted, we offer it to you, and in God and in you we place our trust."

"Since that is the way it is," said Ymosil, "now let anyone who wishes to speak against you come forward, for if there be anyone, I shall defend you by arguments or by arms; and if as many as twelve come forward, here they will be answered."

And the king looked at Gandandel and Brocadan and saw that they kept their eyes on the ground and in dismay, for they did not respond. He said to the knights of the Firm Island:

"Go you to your lodging until tomorrow, and in the meantime those who may wish to make a reply will take counsel."

Then they went with Madasima as far as the prison and from there to their lodging. And the king took Gandandel and Brocadan aside and said to them:

"Many times you have told me and counseled me that it was just to kill these maidens and that you would defend your position by fair argument; and even, in case of necessity, your sons would defend it by arms. Now it is time for you to do it, for I, because what Ymosil says seems to be fine and just reasoning, shall not command anyone of my court to fight with these knights. Therefore, take measures; if not, the maidens will be free, and I not well advised by you."

And they told him that immediately on the morrow they would come with a message, and they went very sad to their houses. And their decision was to argue stubbornly with good arguments for what they had begun, but not to put their sons into battle because their argument was not valid and they were not as skilled in arms as those knights. But that night came news to the king that Gromadaza the giantess was dead, and that she had ordered the castles to be surrendered to the king in order to set free her daughter and her maidens, and that already Count Latine had the castles in his possession, at which he was greatly pleased. And next day after mass, he sat down where he was to serve as judge, and before him came the twelve knights, and he said to them:

"From today on do not speak about the affair of the maidens, for you are released from it, and Madasima and her maidens are

free from death and from prison, for I already have the castles on account of which I held them prisoners."

Gandandel and Brocadan were very pleased with this, the more so because they were expecting nothing but great dishonor. And the king commanded at once Madasima and her maidens to come, and he said to them:

"You are free and I grant you your quittance. Do whatever you like, for I have the castles for which I was holding you."

And he did not wish to tell her that her mother was dead. Madasima sought to kiss his hands, but the king was unwilling, as one who never gave them to matron or maiden except when he was doing them a favor; and she said to him:

"Sire, since you leave me free, I place myself under the protection of my lord Don Galvanes, who for my sake, together with his friends, has made such a great effort."

Agrajes took her by the hand and said:

"My good lady, you have done what you should do; and although you now be disinherited of your land, you shall have another in which you will be honored until God remedies it."

Ymosil said to the king:

"Sire, if Madasima is given her rights she ought not to be disinherited, for it is known that sons and daughters who are under the control of their parents, although it may irk them, must carry out their orders; but for this they cannot be condemned to be disinherited, since obedience rather than desire renders them obliged to do what their parents wish. And since you, sire, are here to give to each one his rights, you are obliged to do so without reference to yourself in order to offer an example to others."

"Ymosil," said the king, "the maidens you have free; do not speak of the other matter, because concerning that land I have had many annoyances, and now that I have it, I shall defend it; and I cannot take it away from my daughter Leonoreta, to whom I gave it."

Don Galvanes said to him:

"Lord, in that right which is Madasima's to that land which belonged to her grandparents, in that I am involved; and I beg you to remember some services that I have performed for you,

and do not seek to disinherit me, since I am willing to be your vassal and in your good graces, to serve you with it as loyally and as best I am able."

"Don Galvanes," said the king, "Do not speak of that, for already is done what cannot be undone."

"Since that is the way it is," said he, "that neither right nor restraint is of any avail to me, I shall endeavor to have it as best I can, and that it not come under your sovereignty."

"Do what you can," said the king, "for it already has been in the power of others braver than you, and it will be easier to protect it from you than it was to recover it from them."

"You hold it," said Don Galvanes, "because of that person who has a poor reward, who will help me to recover it."

The king said:

"If he helps you, many others will serve me who were not serving out of love for him, for I had him in my court and defended him from them."

Agrajes, who was furious, said:

"Certainly, all those who are here and many others know well, whether Amadis was defended by you, or you by him, although you are king, and he always went about as a knight errant."

Don Florestan who saw Agrajes so angry, put his hand on his shoulder and drew him a little aside and stepped forward and said to the king:

"It seems, sire, that you value more highly the services of those whom you mention than the services of Amadis, for we are close to demonstrating the truth of it."

Don Brian of Monjaste pushed by Florestan and said:

"Although you, sire, hold in low esteem the services of Amadis and of his friends, the services of those who rightly could consign them to oblivion must be of great value."

The king said:

"I well understand, Don Brian, by your appearance that you are one of those friends of his."

"Certainly," said he, "I am indeed, for he is my cousin and I must follow his will completely."

"We shall certainly have here the means to prevent you."

"May everything be needed," said he, "to resist what Amadis will be able to do."

Then knights came from both sides to reply, but the king extended a staff that he held in his hand, and commanded them not to speak any more about that; and they all sat down again. Then came Angriote de Estravaus and with him his nephew Sarquiles, fully armed; and they came up to the king to kiss his hands. The twelve knights were surprised by their arrival, for they did not know the reason for it. But Gandandel and Brocadan were rendered fearful and they looked at each other, as those who knew what Angriote had said about them previously and they thought he came on that account; and although they considered him the best knight in the king's seigniory, they endeavored to formulate a reply to him. And they called their sons to their side, and gave them orders not to say any more than what they might tell them to say. Angriote went before the king and said:

"Sire, order Gandandel and Brocadan to come here, and I shall tell such things about them whereby you and those who are here may know them better than up to now."

The king ordered them to come and everybody drew near to see what that might be. And Angriote said:

"Sire, know you that these men, Gandandel and Brocadan, are disloyal and false to you, that they have counseled you very falsely, not having consideration for you, or for Amadis who gave them so many honors and never wronged them; and they as evil men told you that Amadis was promoting an uprising in the land — Amadis, who never had any thought but to serve you. And they made you lose the best man that a king ever had, and with him many other good knights without deserving it; therefore I, sire, in your presence, tell them that they are evil and false, and that they have committed great treason against you while you were trusting your fortune to them. And if they deny it, I shall fight them both. And if their age excuses them, let them put their sons in the same number in their places, for with the help of God I shall make them recognize the disloyalty of their parents, and have you, good king, so recognize it."

"Sire," said Gandandel, "now you see how Angriote comes to dishonor your court, and this is caused by your permitting to

enter your land those who do not wish your service; and if that had been remedied, the present situation would not have come about. And do not be surprised, sire, if Amadis should come tomorrow to challenge you yourself; and if Angriote had taken me on at the time when I performed great services at arms in a reign other than yours for your brother, King Falangriz, he would not dare say what he said; but now that he sees me old and weak, he makes bold as if to a thing conquered, and this discredit concerns you more than me."

"No, evil sir," said Angriote, "for no longer can your false trouble-making libels, since they are revealed, do any harm; because the situation in which you have placed the king with them should suffice, for I do not come to upset or dishonor his court; rather, from his honor to extract that bad seed that cast the good seed out of here."

Sarquiles said:

"Sire, you well know the words that I have said on this, for not many days have passed, and by them you will know to be true what my lord and uncle Angriote says; which I heard with my own ears — all the evil that these two bad men did to you in making you suspicious of Amadis and his lineage. And if they say it is not so and excuse themselves as aged, let their sons reply, who are strong and young, those three against us two; and God will show the truth, and there it will be seen if they are such as can remove Amadis and his line from your service, as their fathers said."

When the sons saw their father so rightly discredited and that all those of the palace were laughing on seeing him put in such a bad light, they forced their way with great fury through the crowd shoving everyone aside; and when they were in front of the king, they said:

"Sire, Angriote is lying in all that he has said about our father and Brocadan, and we shall fight Angriote for him, and you see here our gage."

And they threw into the king's lap a glove of each of them, and Angriote extended the skirt of his coat of mail, and said:

"Sire, you see here mine, and let them go arm at once; and you, sire, mount and you will see our battle."

The king said:

"Most of the day is already passed, so that there is not time for you to fight; and tomorrow, after mass, be prepared for battle, and we shall put you in the field."

Then there arrived there a knight, Adamas by name, who was son of Brocadan and of the sister of Gandandel; and although he was of huge body and very terrific strength, he was very base in character, so that everyone disliked him, and he said to the king:

"Sire, I say that in what Sarquiles said he has lied, and I shall fight him tomorrow if he dares come on the field with his uncle."

Sarquiles was very happy about this, to find himself in the company of his uncle, and he gave at once his gage to the king, for he wanted the fight. Then the king ordered everyone to go to his lodging; and thus it happened that Angriote and Sarquiles went with the twelve knights, and took with them Madasima and her maidens, who had already said farewell to the queen and to Oriana; and the queen gave orders to give her a luxurious tent in which to stay. The king remained with Don Grumedan and with Giontes, his nephew; and he gave orders to call Gandandel and Brocadan, and he said to them:

"I am very much surprised at your having said so many times that Amadis wanted to commit treason and seize from me the land, and now that proof of it was so necessary, you let it drop thus, and have involved your sons in an affair wherein they do not know what justice they have on their side. You have greatly wronged God and me, and you have done great harm in causing me to lose such a man and such good knights; and you shall not be without punishment, because that just Judge will give it to him who deserves it."

"Sire," said Gandandel, "my sons came forward thinking that the proof would be delayed."

"Certainly," said Don Grumedan, "they thought truly, because there is not, nor will there be, any against Amadis in this matter or in any other in which he is alleged to have wronged the king; and if you suspected it, it was so much against reason that even

the devils in hell would not have been able to think it. And if the king were to cut off your heads a thousand times over, he would not be avenged for the harm that you have done him; but you will remain and God grant that it not be for more evil, and those worried sons of yours will be victims of your guilt."

"Don Grumedan," said they, "although you thus consider it and have wished it, we have hope that our sons will nurture our honor and their own."

"May God not save me," said Grumedan, "if I wished it any more than all the good or bad advice you gave to the king deserves."

Then the king ordered them not to speak any more about it, since it was already useless; and he went to eat, and the others to their houses. That night they prepared their arms and their horses, and Angriote and Sarquiles kept vigil from midnight on in a hermitage of Saint Mary which was near their tents. And at dawn all twelve knights armed themselves, for they feared the king because they beheld him angry with them; and they took with them Madasima and her maidens on their palfreys, each one his own, and Angriote and Sarquiles in front of them, and thus they came through the town and went to the field where the battle was to be, for the king and all his knights and other people were already there, and three judges to judge it. One was King Arban of North Wales and another Giontes, nephew of the king, and the third Quinorante, the good jouster; and they took Angriote and Sarquiles and placed them at one end of the field. And then came Tanarin and Corian, the two brothers, and Adamas, their cousin, and they came on the field very well armed and on beautiful horses, disposed to perform well, if the wickedness of their fathers did not prevent. And each side being arrayed against the other, Giontes sounded a trumpet that he had, and the knights moved at full speed of their horses; and Corian and Tanarin went straight at Angriote, and Adamas at Sarquiles; and Tanarin struck Angriote so hard that his lance flew to pieces. And Angriote struck Corian on the shield so fiercely that he knocked him to the ground over the haunches of the horse; and when he turned to Tanarin, he saw him standing with sword in hand. And as he saw his brother on the ground he went

furiously toward Angriote, and thought to strike him on the helmet; but he delivered the blow too soon, so that he hit the horse hard on the head and cut from it a large piece and the headband of the bridle, so that the bridle fell to its chest. And as he came at headlong speed and Angriote was coming at him likewise, they clashed with their shields so hard that Tanarin went to the ground stunned; and Angriote, who saw his horse thus wounded, jumped from it as quickly as he could, as one who was very agile and brave and had seen himself many times in similar dangers. And when he was on foot he clasped his shield and grasped his sword, with which he had delivered many and great blows at other times, and was going toward the two brothers, who were together, and saw that his nephew Sarquiles was fiercely fighting Adamas a sword battle on horseback; and when he came up to the two brothers, they caught him between them and struck him mighty blows, as knights who were valiant and of great strength. But Angriote defended himself, against one with his shield and against the other with his sword, so that he made them turn about, in such wise that he received no blow squarely that his arms did not deflect to the ground; for, as has been told you, this knight was the best swordsman of all the knights of the king's seigniory, so that in a short while he had them in such condition that their shields were in shreds and their coats of mail rent in many places, from which blood was flowing; but he was not so sound that he did not have many wounds and was losing much blood. Sarquiles, when he saw his uncle thus and that he could not overcome Adamas, sought to risk everything; and he spurred his horse hard and grappled with him, and they struggled thus for a time in tight embrace and each trying to overthrow the other. And as Angriote saw them thus, he came up as quickly as he could against them to help Sarquiles in case he fell underneath, and the two brothers followed him as closely as they could in order to help their cousin. At this point the two knights fell to the ground still in tight embrace, and there you would have seen a great melee: Angriote struggling to help his nephew, and the others, their cousin; but at that time Angriote performed wonders at arms by giving such hard and terrible and sinister blows that however much the two brothers did, they could

not offer enough resistance to enable Adamas to leave the hands of Sarquiles alive.

When Gandandel and Brocadan saw this, for until then they had hope that the strength of their sons would uphold that which with great wickedness they had plotted, they left the window with much pain and anguish of heart. And likewise did the king, for he was grieved about all the good fortune of those who were friends of Amadis, and he did not want to see the overthrow and death of those knights or the victory of Angriote; but all those who were there were quite pleased that in this world those evil men Gandandel and Brocadan should pay something for the blame that they deserved. But the four knights who were on the field thought only of striking each other everywhere mighty blows; however it was not long before Angriote and Sarquiles were tired of so many blows given to the two brothers, who no longer offered any defense, or did anything but retreat while looking for some kind of shelter and not finding it. They would deliver a few blows and again flee, thinking to take an advantage in order to save their own lives. But finally they were overcome, not being able to stand the blows that their foes gave them, and they were killed by their hands, to the great pleasure of the very beautiful Madasima and of the knights of the Firm Island, and even more to that of Oriana and Mabilia, who had never stopped imploring God to give them that victory that they attained. Then Angriote asked the judges if there was anything more to do. They told him he had done enough for the satisfaction of his honor; and withdrawing them from the field, their companions took them, and with Madasima they returned to their tents, where they had their wounds cared for.

Book II of *Amadis* ends

THE THIRD BOOK OF *AMADIS OF GAUL* BEGINS

In which are related some of the great disagreements and discords that there were in the house and court of King Lisuarte because of the bad advice that Gandandel gave the king in order to hurt Amadis and his relatives and friends; at the outset King Lisuarte ordered Angriote and his nephew to leave his court and all his dominions, and he sent a challenge to them, and they returned to him the confirmation of the challenge, as will be told subsequently.

The story relates that the sons of Gandandel and Brocadan having been killed by the hand of Angriote de Estravaus and that of his nephew Sarquiles, as you have heard, the twelve knights with great joy escorted Madasima to their tents. But King Lisuarte had removed himself from the window in order not to see them die, not for any good that he wished them, for now he considered them like their fathers as evil men, but on account of the honor that Amadis obtained from it, along with some discredit to his own court. Some days having passed before he found out that Angriote and his nephew were better from their wounds, so that they could ride horseback, he sent to tell them to leave his kingdom and not to travel any more through it; if not, he would give orders to enforce their banishment. Those knights complained greatly to Don Grumedan and to other knights of the court who were going there to see them and to do honor to them, especially Don Brian de Monjaste and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, saying that since the king, forgetting the great services they had performed for him, thus treated and banished them, from then on he should not be surprised if they, having taken a

contrary attitude, in the future became in large measure more irksome than in the past. And striking their tents, with all their company gathered together, they set out on the way to the Firm Island. And on the third day they found at a hermitage Gandeza, the niece of Brocadan and friend of Sarquiles, the woman who had him secluded where he heard and found out all the evil that her uncle Gandandel had plotted against Amadis, as is already related; who had fled out of the fear she had on account of it. And they took great pleasure with her, especially Sarquiles, who loved her dearly; and taking her with them, they continued on their way.

King Lisuarte, who in order not to see the good fortune of Angriote and his nephew had left the window, as has been said, went on into his palace hall very angry because things were being done which redounded to the honor and glory of Amadis and his friends. And there were Don Grumedan and the other knights who had just gone forth a short way with those who were going to the Firm Island, and they told him all that they had said to them and the complaint that they had of him, which made him much more angry and irritated. And he said:

"Although tolerance is a very precious quality and in the majority of affairs advantageous, sometimes it gives rise to greater mistakes, just as happens to me with these knights; for if as they withdrew from me, I had withdrawn from them, ceasing to show them good will and an attitude of esteem, they not only would not have dared to say what they have said to you, but would not even have dared to come to my court or enter my land. But as I did what reason obliged me to do, so God will consider it good in the end to give me the honor and them the payment for their madness, and I wish to have people go and challenge them for me and with them Amadis, by whom all are commanded, and there will be shown to what extent their pride suffices."

Arban, King of North Wales, who loved the king's service, said: "Sire, you ought to consider carefully this which you say before it is done, as much on account of the great worth of those knights who are so able, as because God has shown so clearly that justice is on their side; for if it were not so, although Angriote is a good knight, he would not have overcome as he did the two sons of Gandandel, who were deemed so valiant and courageous, nor would Sarquiles have overcome Adamas; by which it seems

that the very righteous cause that they upheld gave and granted them that victory. And therefore, sire, I should consider it good that they be taken for your service, for it is not advantageous for any king to battle his own people when he is able to prevent it, because of all the harm that is done on both sides. And the people and property that are lost, the king himself loses without gaining any honor in conquering or overcoming his vassals. And many times from such disagreements great injuries are caused that inspire new thoughts in neighboring kings and great lords who under some constraint are in subjection, to try to emerge from it and to recover in the present much more than what they had lost in the past. And what is most to be avoided is causing vassals to lose the fear and respect for their lords, who by governing them with moderate prudence, holding them in subjection more by love than out of fear, are able to hold and command them as the good shepherd does his flock. But if the shepherd puts on them greater compulsion than they can bear, it often happens that they all jump and flee as the first one does, and by the time the error is recognized, it is difficult to correct. Therefore, sire, now is the time to remedy matters before more anger is enkindled, for Amadis is so humble in matters concerning you that with slight urging you would be able to win him back and with him all those who have left you on account of him."

The king said to him: "You speak well indeed, but I shall not give up what I have given to my daughter Leonoreta, and which they have demanded of me; nor is Amadis's power, although great, of any consequence compared to mine; and do not speak to me any more about this, but prepare arms and horses to serve me. And tomorrow Cendil of Ganota will leave for the Firm Island to challenge them."

"In the name of God," said they, "and may He do what He considers good, and we shall serve you."

Then they went to their quarters, and the king remained in his palace. As for Gandandel and Brocadan, you are apprised that when they saw their sons dead and that they themselves were losers in this world and the next, receiving what in our times many others like them do not receive — God protecting them, either so that by His mercy they reform or through His justice pay for everything together if they don't reform and hence have

no redemption — they decided to go away to a small sparsely populated island owned by Gandandel. And taking their dead sons and their wives and household servants, they boarded two ships that they were holding in order to cross over to the Island of Mongaza in the event that Gromadaza the giantess had not surrendered the castles. And with many tears shed by them all and curses from those who watched them go, they left the port, and arrived where our story makes no further mention of them; but one can reasonably believe that those whom evil deeds accompany until old age, with them end their days unless the mercy of the very high Lord, more through His holy compassion than through their merits, comes to them in time for them to be redeemed.

Then King Lisuarte had all the great lords of his court and the knights of lesser degree assemble in his palace, and complaining to them about the offensive words that Amadis and his friends had spoken about him, he begged them to be concerned with it just as he was in matters that concerned them. They all told him that they would serve him as their lord in whatever he commanded them to do. Then he called Cendil of Ganota and said: "Mount at once and with a letter of accreditation go to the Firm Island and challenge for me Amadis and all those who seek to uphold the cause of Don Galvanes; and tell them to beware of me, for if I can, I shall destroy their bodies and possessions wherever I may find them, and that thus all those of my dominions will do."

Don Cendil, taking a voucher, armed and mounted, set out at once on his journey, as one who wanted to carry out the command of his lord. The king remained there a few days; then he departed for a town of his called Gracedonia, because it was very abundant in all things, at which Oriana and Mabilia were quite pleased on account of its being near Miraflores, and this was because the time was approaching for Oriana to give birth, and she thought that from there better than from any place else they would be able to deal with the matter.

And the twelve knights who were taking Madasima, traveled day by day without any pause until they came within two leagues of the Firm Island. There beside a river they found Amadis, who was waiting for them with close to two thousand three

hundred knights very well armed and mounted, who received them with great pleasure, showing much esteem and respect for Madasima, and Amadis embracing Angriote many times, for through a messenger from his brother Don Florestan he already knew all that had happened to them in the combat. And while they were thus very joyously together, they saw descending by a road down a high hill, Don Cendil of Ganota, knight of King Lisuarte, the one who was coming to challenge them. As soon as he saw so many people so well armed, tears came to his eyes, he reflecting that they all had left the service of the king his lord, to whom he was a very loyal friend and servant, they being knights by whose adherence he had been highly honored and exalted. But drying his eyes, he put on the best countenance he could, and he had a good one, for he was a very handsome knight and very well spoken and vigorous; and he came up to the throng asking for Amadis, and they showed him where he was, in the company of the knights who had arrived from their journey. He went to them, and when they recognized him, they received him very well, and he greeted them with great courtesy and said to them: "Sirs, I come to Amadis and to all of you with a message from the king; and since I find you together, it will be well that you hear it."

Then they all came up to hear what he would say, and Cendil said to Amadis: "Sir, have this letter read."

And when it was read, he said to him: "This is for accreditation; now tell the message."

"Sir Amadis, the king my lord sends word that he is challenging you and as many as are of your lineage, and as many of you as are here, and those who are to strive to go to the Island of Mongaza; and he says to you that from now on endeavor to protect your lands and possessions and bodies, for he intends to destroy everything if he can; and he tells you to avoid going through his land, for he will order killed everyone he takes prisoner."

Don Cuadragante said: "Don Cendil, you have said what you were ordered to say, and thereby you have done right; since your lord threatens our bodies and possessions, these knights may say on their own account whatever they wish. But tell him from me that although he is king and lord of great lands, I love my poor body as much as he loves his rich one, and in nobility I am not his debtor, for I am as directly descended from kings as he

is; and since I am to protect myself, let him and all his land watch out for me."

Amadis would have been pleased if the reply had been more conciliatory, and said to him:

"Sir Cuadragante, permit this knight to be answered by you and all those who are here; and since you have heard his embassy, you will agree that the reply be a joint one, as befits our honor. And you, Don Cendil of Ganota, may tell the king that it will be very difficult for him to do what he says. And go with us to the Firm Island and you shall test yourself in the arch of loyal lovers, because if you complete the test, you will be esteemed more highly by your sweetheart, and you will find her better disposed toward you."

"Since it pleases you," said Don Cendil, "I shall do so, but in the matter of love, I do not want to give out more concerning my affairs than what my heart knows."

Then they all went on to the Firm Island; but when Cendil saw the rock so towering and the strength so great, he was quite surprised, but he was more so after he went inside and saw the land so abundant; so that he recognized that nobody in the world could harm it. Amadis took him to his quarters and paid him great honor because Don Cendil was of very high rank.

Next day all those knights assembled and agreed to send a challenge to King Lisuarte, and decided that it should be by a knight who had come there with Dragonis and Palomir's forces, Sadamon by name, for these two brothers were sons of Grasugis, King of lower Germany, who was married to Saduva, sister of King Perion of Gaul; and so these, like all the others who were of high rank, sons of kings and dukes and counts, had brought there some troops in order to cross with Don Galvanes to the Island of Mongaza. And they gave to this Sadamon a letter of accreditation, signed with all their names, and they said to him: "Tell King Lisuarte, since he challenges and threatens us, to guard himself from us, for we shall do him all the harm we can; and let him know that when we have had time to prepare we shall cross to the Island of Mongaza; and that if he is a mighty lord, we are close to the time when his strength and ours will be known. And if he says anything to you, answer him as a knight that we — please God — shall vouch for everything provided

it be not in the way of peace, because this never will be granted to him until Don Galvanes be reestablished on the Island of Mongaza."

Sadamon said he would carry it out fully, just as they commanded. Amadis spoke with his foster father, Don Gandales, and said to him: "It is important that you go to King Lisuarte on my behalf and tell him, without any fear you may have of him, that I hold his challenge and threats in very low esteem, less even than he thinks; and if I had known that he would be so ungrateful to me for all the services I have rendered him, I would not have subjected myself to such dangers in order to serve him; and that that pride and great rank of his with which he threatens me and my friends and relatives, the blood of my body has upheld for him; and that I trust in God, who knows all things, that this ingratitude will be corrected more through my strength than at his pleasure. And tell him that although I won the island of Mongaza, it will not be through my person that he lose it, nor will I cause trouble in any place that the queen may be, for the sake of her honor, for she is deserving, and tell her so if you see her; and since he wants some manifestation of my gratitude he will have it as long as I live, and in such a manner that the past manifestations that he has had he will not recall."

Agrajes said to him: "Don Gandales, try hard to see the queen, and kiss her hands for me, and tell her to order my sister Mabilia given to me; for since we have arrived at such a situation with the king, it is no longer necessary for her to be in his house."

Amadis was very sorry about what Agrajes had said, because through this princess he exercised all his effectiveness with his lady, and he did not wish to see her separated from her any more than if his own heart were separated from his flesh; but he did not dare contradict him in order not to reveal the secret of his love affair.

This having been done thus, the messengers went in company of Don Cendil of Ganota, and with great pleasure were housed at night in populated places. At the end of the ten days they arrived at the town where King Lisuarte was in his palace with a sufficiency of knights and other nobles. He received them pleasantly, although he already knew from a messenger of Cendil of Ganota that they were coming to challenge him. The messengers

gave him the letter, and the king ordered them to tell all that was entrusted to them. Don Gandales said to him: "Sire, Sadamon will tell you what the high ranking men and knights who are on the Firm Island send to tell you, and afterwards I shall tell you what Amadis sends me for, because I come to you with a mandate and to the queen with a message from Agrajes, if it please you that I see her."

"I am quite pleased," said the king, "and it will be for her a pleasure to see you, who served her daughter Oriana very well all the while she dwelt in your land, for which I thank you."

"Many thanks," said Gandales, "and God knows how pleased I would be to be able to serve you, and how much I regret my present inability."

"Thus I consider it," said the king, "and may you not regret doing what you should, in fulfilling your obligations towards the one whom you reared, for otherwise it would count against you."

Then Sadamon told the king his mission just as it was already related, and finally challenged him and all his kingdom and all his men, as he was charged with doing. And when he told him not to expect to have peace with them if first he had not reestablished Don Galvanes and Madasima on the Island of Mongaza, the king said: "That agreement will be a long time in coming, if they expect that. So help me God, I shall never consider that I am king, if I do not break them of that great madness that they have."

"Sire," said Sadamon, "I have told you what I was commanded to say, and if I tell you anything from here on, it is not included in my mission. And replying to what you said, I tell you, sire, that he who would break the pride of those knights will have to be of great avail and of very great power, and it will be harder for you than anyone may think."

"That may well be true," said the king, "but now it will appear to what extent my might with that of my vassals, or their might, suffices."

Don Gandales told him on behalf of Amadis all that you have heard already, for nothing was left out, in the usual manner of one who was very well-spoken; and when he came to say that Amadis would not go to the Island of Mongaza since he had won it for him, nor to any place where the queen might be, in order not to annoy her, all of them considered it good and very loyal,

and thus they spokc of it among themselves and the king thus considered it. Then he commanded the messengers to disarm and they would dine, for it was time. And thus it was done, for in the hall where he ate, he had them sit down at a table faeing his, where his nephew Giontes and Don Guilan the Pensive and other distinguished knights ate, who on account of their valor went to extremes in paying them over and above all others honor, which eaused their worth to be enhanced, and the others, if of less worth, to try to be their equals, so that they might be considered of equal rank by the king their lord. And if kings had such a style, they would cause their own subjeets to be virtuous, courageous, loyal, fond of their serviee, and to esteem them much more than temporal wealth, while remembering those words of the famous Fabricius, consul of the Romans, spoken to the ambassador from the Samnites, whom he was going to conquer, concerning their bringing him great gifts of gold and silver, and other fine jewels, they having seen him eating on plates of earthenware, thinking thereby to placate him and turn him away from what the senate of Rome had ordered him to earry out against them. But he, exercising his exalted virtue, rejecting that which many in order to aequire, place their lives, their souls in great risk, said: "We Romans do not wish treasures, but to subdue and command those who own them."

Well, one cannot validate such words as these without knights of great prowess and worth, who serve their lords with very great love for the sake of the benefits and honors that they have reeeived from them.

Then, being at that dinner, the king was very animated, telling all the knights who were there that they should prepare themselves as quickly as they could for the trip to the Island of Mongaza and that, if it were necessary, he in person would go with them. And after the tables were cleared, Grumedan took Gandales to the queen, who was willing to see him, at which Oriana and Mabilia were quite pleased, because they would obtain from him news of Amadis, which thcy very mueh wanted to know. And as he entered where she was, she reeeived him very nicely and with great affection, and she had him sit before her beside Oriana; and she said to him: "Don Gandales, friend, do you

know this maiden who is beside you, whom you have served well?"

"Lady," said he, "if I have done her some service, I consider myself fortunate; and so I shall consider myself each time that I can serve you, lady, or her; and thus I would do for the king if it were not against Amadis, reared by me, and my lord."

When the queen heard this from him, she told him that thus he should do.

"But while protecting his honor, you can, my good friend, counsel him and persuade him to make peace better than anyone else would be able to do, and I shall do so as much as I can with the king my lord."

"I shall gladly do that," said Gandales, "as much as I can and my advice may suffice; and in this may God do what He deems good."

The queen said to him: "Then let it be out of love for me, as you have said."

Gandales said to her: "Lady, I came with the message from Amadis to the king; and he commanded me to see you if I could, and to kiss your hands for him as one who regrets being separated from your service. And the same thing I say for Agrajes, who begs of you the favor of ordering his sister Mabilia given to him; for since he and Don Galvanes are not friendly with the king, she no longer has any reason to be in his house."

When Oriana heard this she was greatly grieved, for tears came to her eyes, and she could not restrain herself, not only because she had for her a heart-felt love, but also because without her she would not know what to do when she gave birth, for the time was already approaching. But Mabilia, who saw her thus, was very sorry for her, and said to her: "Ah, madam, what great wrong your father and mother would do me, if they were to separate me from you!"

"Do not weep," said Gandales, "for your situation is very well taken care of, for when you go from here, you will be taken to your aunt Queen Elisena of Gaul; for with the exception of this queen in whose presence we are, there is no other more honorable or better attended; and you will enjoy yourself with your cousin Melicia, who looks forward very much to seeing you."

"Don Gandales," said the queen, "I am very sorry about what Agrajes wishes, and I shall speak to the king about it; and if he takes my advice, this princess will not go from here, except married as befits a person of such high station."

"Then let it be at once," said he, "because I cannot stay any longer."

The queen sent word to call the king; and Oriana perceiving him coming, and that on his will alone her succor depended, went and knelt before him, saying to him: "Sire, you know how much honor I received at the court of the King of Scotland, and how at the time you sent for me, they gave me their daughter Mabilia, and in what a bad light I would be placed if I did not repay her for it; and furthermore she is the entire remedy for my infirmities and ills. Now Agrajes is sending for her, and if you take her away from me, you will inflict on me the greatest cruelty and injustice ever inflicted on anyone, without her first being rewarded for the honors that I received from her father."

Mabilia was kneeling with her and was clasping the king's hands, and weeping was imploring him not to permit her to be taken away; otherwise, in great despair, she would kill herself; and she embraced Oriana. The king, who was very discreet and understanding, said: "Do not think, daughter Mabilia, that because of the discord that exists between me and those of your lineage, I must forget how you have served me or that on that account I would cease to receive and favor all those of your blood who might wish to serve me, for because of some I would not hate the others, much less you to whom we owe so much. Until you have the reward for your merit, you shall not depart from my house."

She sought to kiss his hands, but the king was unwilling; and raising her up he had her and Oriana sit on a dais, and he sat between them. Don Gandales, who saw it all, said: "Ladies, since you have loved each other and have been together for so long, anyone would be unreasonable to separate you. And from you, Oriana, neither at my wish nor on my advice will Mabilia be parted from you, except in the manner that the king and you say; and I have told the king and the queen my mission, and the reply I shall give to Don Galvanes, your uncle, and Agrajes, your brother; and whether they be irked or pleased with it, they will consider good what the king does, and what you, madam, desire."

After this, he said to the king and queen: "Your Majesties, I wish to leave."

The king said to him: "Go with God, and tell Amadis that about this matter that he sent to tell me, namely, that he will not go to the Island of Mongaza since he caused me to have it, I well understand that he is doing it more to further his own interests than to augment my honor, and as I understand it, thus do I thank him for it, and from today on, may each one do what he understands."

And he left the chamber for the palace hall. The queen said: "Don Gandales, my friend, pay no heed to the angry words of the king or those of Amadis; but I still implore you to agree to bring about peace between them, for I shall do so; and give Amadis my regards and tell him that I am grateful for the courtesy of his sending to tell me that he would not cause annoyance anywhere I might be, and that I earnestly beseech him to honor it whenever he sees my command."

"Madam," said he, "I shall do everything in my power as you command."

And he bade her farewell. And she commended him to God that He might protect him and give him grace to restore friendship between the king and Amadis to its former basis. Oriana and Mabilia called him and Oriana said to him: "Don Gandales, my loyal friend, I am very sorry that I cannot reward you for what you have done for me, for time does not offer the opportunity nor do I have the wherewithal to repay properly your very great worthiness, but God will be pleased to have it done as I ought and wish to do it."

When Gandales heard this, he said: "Madam, since my services were small, I consider amply satisfying your great gratitude although there be no other reward; and lady, always command me in whatever I can serve you, since you know I am so devoted to your interests without heeding this enmity that now exists between Amadis and your father. And although he dislikes him, madam, don't you dislike him, for he has always served you ever since his youth when he was the Child of the Sea, and afterwards as a knight in all the encounters in which he has engaged in order to render you service; for in addition to the very important and distinguished services that he has done the king your father,

from which he has received a poor reward, he freed you from the hands of that evil Arcalaus the Enchanter, from which you would not have been able to escape without very great dishonor. Therefore, madam, may it not appear that he is hated by all, since it is very well known that he does not deserve that; and for this reason, madam, my heart feels great sorrow at his receiving such a poor reward in payment for his great services."

Oriana, when she heard this, said with great humility: "Don Gandales, my good friend, in everything you speak the absolute truth, and I am greatly displeased with this enmity because according to the hearts of both, one expects nothing but great trouble and harm, the way the enmity continues to grow each day, if God through His mercy does not remedy it; but I trust in Him that He will halt this evil thing. And give Amadis my best regards, and tell him that I beg him very earnestly that, remembering the things that he experienced in this my father's house, he may temper those of the present and the future, taking the advice and mandate of my father, who appreciates and loves him very much."

Mabilia said to him: "Gandales, as a favor I ask you to give my regards to my cousin and lord Amadis and to my lord brother Agrajes, and to the virtuous lord Don Galvanes my uncle; and tell them not to worry about me or try to separate me from my lady Oriana, because it would be wasted effort, for I would rather lose my life than leave her, though it be their will. And give this letter to Amadis, and tell him he will find in it a complete account of my situation, and I believe he will receive great comfort from the letter."

Gandales, having heard this, bowed to them and left at once. And he, taking with him Sadamon, who had been with the king, they both armed themselves and started on their way. As they were leaving the town, they encountered a large well-armed contingent of the king's men, who were making a great display of preparing to go to the Island of Mongaza, which the king had ordered made in order that Gandales and Sadamon might see so many and such good troops, and might tell those who had sent them there, so as to instill fear in them. And they saw that among them were circulating as commanders, King Arban of North Wales, who was a courageous knight, and

Gasquilan the Arrogant, son of Madarque the fierce giant of the Sad Island and of a sister of Lancino, King of Suesa. This arrogant Gasquilan turned out to be vigorous and so valiant at arms that when his uncle Lancino died without heirs, everybody in the kingdom thought it good to take him for their king and lord. And when this Gasquilan heard of this war between King Lisuarte and Amadis, he left his kingdom, not only to be in the war but also in order to test himself in battle with Amadis, by order of a lady whom he loved very much; all of which in greater detail will be related completely in Book IV, wherein there will be a fuller account of this knight and the battle that he had with Amadis, son of King Perion of Gaul, and for this reason no more will be told here in order to avoid prolixity.

Don Gandales and Sadamon, after they had observed those knights, went on their way, talking and giving their opinion on how good a contingent of men it was, but saying that they would be dealing with men who would not be frightened by them. And they kept traveling each day until they reached the Firm Island, where those who were waiting for them were greatly pleased with them. And when they were disarmed, they went into a beautiful garden where Amadis and all those gentlemen were disporting themselves. And they told them all that had happened to them with the king just as it had occurred, and about the troops that they saw who were about to go to the Island of Mongaza, and how they had those two captains, King Arban of North Wales and Gasquilan, King of Suesa, and the reason why the latter had come from such a distant land, for the principal reason was to fight Amadis and all of them, and that he was valiant and agile, and of very great renown among all those that knew him. Gavarte of the Fearful Valley said: "In order to cure that excessive desire and complaint that he has, here he will find very good and wise masters, Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante; and if they are busy, here am I who will present to him this body of mine, because it would not be right for him to have traveled such a long way in vain."

"Don Gavarte," said Amadis, "I tell you that if I were ailing, I would rather shun physic entirely and place all my trust in God, than to test your medicine or electuary."

Brian de Monjaste said: "Sir, thus you do not proceed with such great care as this one who is seeking us; and it will be well to help him so that he may be able to tell the masters in his land what he found here for such infirmities."

And after they had been talking and laughing for quite a long while with great pleasure, Amadis asked if there was anyone there who knew Gasquilan. Listoran of the White Tower said: "I know him very well, and I know a lot about him."

"Tell us about him," said Amadis.

Then he told them who his father and mother were, and how he had become king because of his great valor, and how he fought very fiercely, and how he had followed the profession of arms for eight years, and that he had done so well with them that his equal was not to be found in all his land or in those bordering it.

"But I tell you he has never encountered those whom he now comes to seek; and I found myself arrayed against him in a tourney that we had in Valtierra, and at the first encounter we fell with our horses to the ground; but the press was so great that we were not able to attack each other any more, and the match was won from the side on which I was through the fault of the knights who did not do what they should have done, and through the great valor of this Gasquilan, who was our mortal enemy; so that he carried off the honors for both sides, and he did not fall that day from his horse except that time that we met."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "you speak of a great man who is coming like a king of great prowess to make known his excellence."

"You speak the truth," said Don Cuadragante, "but meanwhile he made a mistake, for he should have come to us, for we are the lesser and he would have shown in that more vigor, since he could have done so without its affecting his honor."

"In that he did better," said Don Galvanes, "because although he came to those numerically strongest, it was to those who are weakest, for he would not have been able to test his strength if he had not had the best and strongest against him."

While they were speaking about this, the captains of the ships came and said: "Sirs, arm yourselves and prepare what you need

and come on board the ships, for we have the wind very favorable for the voyage you want to make."

Then they all left the garden with great pleasure, and the press and the noise were so great not only of the troops but also of the apparatus of the fleet, that one could hardly hear; and very quickly they were armed and they loaded their horses on the ships, for all the other things that they needed were aboard, and very happily they put out to sea. And Amadis and Don Bruneo of Bonamar, who were going about among them in a boat, found together on one ship Don Florestan and Brian de Monjaste, and Don Cuadragante and Angriote de Estravaus, and they came on board with them. And Amadis embraced them as though a long time had passed since he had seen them, tears coming to his eyes from the very deep love that he had for them, and with the thought of how he would miss them; and he said: "My good sirs, I am glad to see you thus together."

Don Cuadragante said to him: "My lord, thus we shall go on sea and even on land, if perchance we are not separated; and thus we have arranged among us to maintain ourselves on this journey."

And they showed him a very wonderfully beautiful banner that they were bringing along on which were depicted twelve maidens with white flowers in their hands, not because they loved the maidens, but in remembrance of those twelve over whom this dispute began, who underwent such great danger in the prison of King Lisuarte; and to give more honor to Don Galvanes whom they were aiding, and to enable him to see with what love and affection they were undertaking that encounter; because affairs of friends taken on entirely voluntarily elicit complete gratitude; and if to the contrary, they elicit the opposite; and very rightly should the matter be thus viewed, for in proportion to the affection with which aid is given is the reward for the one who receives it. When Amadis saw the banner, he was very happy because they had showed it to him thus. And there he told them to be very careful to act wisely and not to rely more on their great strength than on prudence, because usually such matters as were not dealt with by them with tolerance and wisdom, although they might have had great strength, were lost causes; and for this reason lesser and weaker forces were frequently

winners, achieving victory over more numerous and stronger fighting units; and that they should consider that each one of those who were going there was to be governor and captain of himself, because they were not to be governed by anyone else, but to rule and govern; for there was a great difference between the private battles that up to then they had waged and the general battles of large numbers of troops, because in such one's knowledge is revealed; for in the first mentioned, one's judgment had to concern itself only with what each one ought to do, and in the general battles, with one's own well-being and that of all the others whom the good are to rule; because just as most of the travail falls to them, so also do they achieve most of the honor and glory, and most of the discredit and dishonor when they are careless. He told them this and many other things, with which they were quite content. Then he bade them farewell, and taking with him in the boat Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Gandales, his foster father, he went through the whole fleet talking with all those knights until he went ashore and the fleet went forth behind the ship on which Don Galvanes and Madasima were traveling, which took the lead with such a fanfare of trumpets and Moorish pipes that it was a wonder to behold.

Just as you hear, this great fleet left that port of the Firm Island to go to the castle of the Boiling Lake, where the Island of Mongaza was, Amadis and Don Brunco of Bonamar remaining on the Firm Island in order to cross into Gaul. Then that fleet proceeded over the sea with such good weather that after seven days they arrived one morning before dawn at the castle of the Boiling Lake, which was adjacent to the seaport. And then they all armed and prepared the small boats in order to land, and they placed walkways of planks and hurdles where the horses were to come off, and this they did very quietly so that Count Latine and Galdar of Rascuil, who were in the town with three hundred knights, might not hear them. But immediately they were heard by the watchmen, and they told those masters of theirs that there were armed forces about, but they did not know how many, for the night was very dark. And then the Count and Galdar dressed and went up to the castle, and they heard the bustle of the troops, and it seemed to them a large company, for with the dawn of day many ships were in sight; and Galdar said:

"Truly this is Don Galvanes with his companions and friends who are coming against us, and now may God not save me if out of my power they take the port as easily as they think."

And ordering all his troops to arm, and they themselves likewise, they came out of the town against them. And Galdar went to a port that was next to the town, and Count Latine to another near the castle at which Don Galvanes and Agrajes with all those who were helping were; in the lead of Galvanes' contingent went Gavarte of the Fearful Valley and Orlandin, and Osinan of Burgundy and Madancil of the Silver Bridge; and there went Count Latine with many soldiers both on foot and mounted. And Galdar with another large company came to the other harbor, to which Don Florestan and Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste and Angriote and their other companions came. Then there began a cruel and dangerous battle between them with lances and arrows and stones, so that there were many wounded and killed; and those of the land defended the harbors until the hour of tierce. But Don Florestan, who was on a ship with Brian of Monjaste and Don Cuadragante and Angriote, where they had two companions with each of them and their horses, had Enil, that good knight of whom you have already heard in Book II, and Amorantes of Salvatria who was his cousin; and those with Brian were Coman and Nicoran, and those with Cuadragante, Landin and Orian the Valiant, and those with Angriote, his brother Gradovoy and Sarquiles, his nephew. And Florestan shouted loudly to lower the bridge and they would leave by it on their horses. Angriote said to him: "Why do you want to undertake such great folly? For even if we leave by the bridge, the water is so high before we reach the land that the horses will be swimming.

And so Don Cuadragante told him; but Brian de Monjaste was of the opinion of Don Florestan; and the bridge having been lowered, they both crossed over it. And coming to the end they made their horses jump into the water, which was so high that it touched their saddletrees. And to that place hastened many of their foes, who attacked them with great and deadly blows; and they defended themselves amid great peril, for no longer could they be of avail on account of their enemies being numerous. But then Don Cuadragante and Angriote arrived and joined them

and so did those companions of theirs; but it was so steep a climb from the port and the troops so many who were defending it that they were unable to help. Palomir and Dragonis, who saw them in such danger, had the trumpets and Moorish pipes sound along with a great shouting of their troops, and ordered two galleys sent to land wherever God might direct them, and there went in each of them thirty knights very well armed, and the repulse was so great that all the galleys were shattered. There the noise was so loud and of so much outcry from both factions that it seemed as if everybody in the world was involved in the tumult. Dragonis and Palomir stayed in the water, which came up to their necks, and their knights with them clinging to the planks of the wrecked galleys and pushing each other ahead, going forward with great effort until the water came up to their waists. And although the forces on shore were numerous and well armed and were resisting with great courage, they could not prevent Don Florestan and his companions from landing, and then likewise Dragonis and Palomir with all of their men. When Galdar saw that his men were losing ground, not being able to stand up to their foes on account of their being now very powerful, with great courage and as best he could, he made them retreat in order that all of them might not be lost; for he was very badly wounded at the hands of Don Florestan and Brian de Monjaste, who knocked him from his horse; and he was so shaken up that he could hardly stay on another horse that his men had given him; and going toward the town he saw that Count Latine was coming with all his troops at top speed, and that Don Galvanes and Agrajes and their companions had already taken the harbor, as those on whose behalf the battle was being waged.

And now know you here that the Count had seized Dandasido, son of the old giant, and twenty other men of the town with him, holding them under suspicion that they must be enemies. They were in the castle in a prison that was in the highest tower, and with men who were guarding them; and as the battle continued between the knights, the jailers who held them came out on top of the tower to watch the battle. And when Dandasido saw that they were not guarding them, and that he had an opportunity to free himself, he said to those who were with him: "Help me and let us leave here."

"How will that be?" they asked.

"Let us break the padlock of this chain that holds everyone."

Then they put through the padlocks as quickly as they could some rope of hemp with which their hands and feet were tied at night, and with the great strength of Dandasido and of all the others they broke the lock, although it was quite heavy, and they all issued forth. And very quickly taking the swords of the jailers who were on top of the tower, as you have heard, they went there to them, for they were not paying attention to anything except the battle that was going on at the harbors; and they killed them all and shouted: "To arms, to arms for Madasima, our lady!"

When those of the town saw this, they took its strongest towers and killed all those that they were able to seize. When Count Latine perceived this, he entered by the gate out of which he had come and stopped at a house near it, and Galdar of Rascuil with him; so that they did not dare move forward, expecting death more than continued life. Those of the town were blocking off the streets between them and they were exerting themselves as much as they could with that great succor and were shouting to those outside to bring their lady Madasima there and to take possession of the town. Cuadragante and Angriote came up to a gate to find out the truth, and learning from Dandasido the true situation, they went to tell Don Galvanes. And they all mounted at once and brought Madasima, her beautiful face veiled, mounted on a white palfrey and wearing a cape of gold. And when they came close to the town, the gates were opened and one hundred of the most honorable men came out and kissed her hands, and she said to them: "Kiss the hands of my lord and husband Don Galvanes, for after God he freed me from death, and he has caused me to recover you who are my native-born subjects, and whom most unreasonably I had lost. And take him for your lord if you love me."

Then they all came up to Don Galvanes and kneeling on the ground with very humble words, they kissed his hands and he received them with good will and very affably, thanking them and praising them generously for the great loyalty and the good love that they had maintained for Madasima, their feudal ruler. And then they went into the town, where Dandasido came, who was very highly honored by Madasima and by all those gentlemen.

This having been done thus, Ymosil of Burgundy said: "It would be very good that all our enemies who are still in the town be killed."

Agrajes, who was moved to very great anger, said: "I have ordered the streets cleared and the order will be that all be dispatched without anyone's remaining alive."

"Sir," said Florestan, "do not permit anger and fury to have such mastery over you as to cause you to do a thing to which once it is done, you would prefer a speedy death."

"He talks sense to you," said Don Cuadragante; "it is sufficient that all be placed in the prison of Don Galvanes, your uncle, if it can be managed, because it is more advantageous for the victors to have the conquered alive than dead, considering the rotation of fickle and uncertain fortune; for just as it has shifted for them, it could shift in short order for those now prosperous."

It was agreed then that Angriote de Estravaus and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley should go and take care of the matter. They, on arriving at the place where Count Latine and Galdar of Rascuil were, found all their troops in very bad shape, and themselves badly wounded and greatly dejected because the affair had gone so badly against them; after a few talks held between them, they considered it good to entrust themselves to the will and discretion of Don Galvanes. Then this affair having been concluded, for the town and the castle were completely in the power of Madasima and of her protectors to the great pleasure of them all, the next day they received the news that King Arban of North Wales and Gasquilan, King of Suesa, with three thousand knights had arrived at the harbor of that island, and that they were all landing in great haste and were sending the fleet back to bring food to them. This placed them all in great agitation, knowing as they did the large number of opposing troops, and that their own men were in such bad condition. But, as men who feared shame, recalling what Amadis had told them: to do things in harmony, although the impulse of some was to go out and fight with them, their consensus was not to do so until all had their wounds cared for and their horses and arms in better condition.

So that one and all agreeing on this, the story will tell of Amadis and of Don Bruneo of Bonamar, who had remained on the Firm Island.

CHAPTER LXV

How Amadis asked his foster father Don Gandales for news of his experiences at court, and from there he and his companions left for Gaul; and concerning the things that happened to them as adventures on an island on which they landed, where they defended Don Galaor, the brother of Amadis, from danger of death, and King Cildadan from the giant Madarque.

After the fleet left the Firm Island for the Island of Mongaza, as you have heard, Amadis stayed on the Firm Island and Don Bruneo of Bonamar with him; and with the hurry of departure he had no opportunity to ascertain from his foster father, Don Gandales, the latter's experiences at the court of King Lisuarte. And calling him aside, strolling through a garden where he lodged, he sought to learn what had taken place. Don Gandales told him how he found the queen, and the affection with which she received his message and how much she esteemed him, and how she sent word to him begging for peace with the king. And furthermore he related what took place with Oriana and Mabilia, and what they replied to him; and he gave him the letter he brought from Mabilia, from which he found out how he had increased in family and was given to understand that Oriana was pregnant. Amadis heard it all with much pleasure, although with a great longing for his lady, for his heart found no rest or relief in anything; and thus he was alone in the tower of the garden in deep thought, with tears falling down his cheeks like a man distraught. But recovering his composure, he went to where Don Bruneo was walking about and gave orders to Gandalin to put his arms, and those of Don Bruneo, and the other necessary

things aboard a ship, because come what might, he wanted to leave next day for Gaul. This was done at once; and morning having come, they put out to sea with favorable weather and then at times with the opposite; and in five days they found themselves beside an island that seemed to them very densely forested and apparently a fine land. Don Bruneo said: "Do you see, sir? What a fair land!"

"So it seems to me," said Amadis.

"Then let us stop here, sir," said Don Bruneo, "some two days, and it may be that on it we find some rare adventures."

"So let it be done," said Amadis.

Then they gave orders to the captain to bring the ship inshore, for they wanted to disembark to see that island, which seemed very beautiful to them, and also in order to find some adventures.

"God protect you from it," said the master of the ship.

"Why?" said Amadis.

"To guard you from death," said he, "or from very cruel imprisonment, for know you that this is the Sad Island, where that very fierce giant Madarque is lord, more cruel and harsh than any other that there is in the world. And I tell you that in fifteen years, no knight or matron or maiden ever disembarked on it who was not killed or imprisoned."

When they heard this they marvelled greatly, and with no little fear to undertake such an adventure; but as they were of such courage and since their true function was to rid the world of such evil customs, not fearing the danger to their lives more than the great shame that would accrue to them, should they abandon it, they told the ship's master in any event to bring the ship alongside the land, which was accomplished with great difficulty and almost by force. And taking their arms and mounted on their horses, bringing with them only Gandalin and Lasindo, Don Bruneo's squire, they went inland on the island, and they gave orders to their squires to help them as best they could if they were attacked by other men who were not knights. They said that they would do so. So they went on for a bit until they were on top of a mountain, and they saw near them a castle that seemed to them very strong and beautiful, and they went toward it to find out more about the giant. And coming near, they heard a horn being

blown on the highest tower so raueously that it made all those valleys resound.

"Sir," said Don Bruneo, "according to what the skipper of the ship said, that horn is sounded when the giant goes forth to battle, and this is if his men eannot overeome or kill knights with whom they are fighting; and when he goes forth thus, he is so furious that he kills everybody he finds, and sometimes even his own men."

"Then let us go forward," said Amadis.

And it was not long before they heard a very great noise of many armed men, and of very heavy blows of lances and very keen, sharp swords; and taking up their arms they all went there. And they saw a very large body of men who had two knights and two squires who were on foot, surrounded, for they had killed their horses and they were seeking to kill them; but all four were defending themselves so bravely that it was a wonderful sight to see them. And Amadis saw Ardan, his dwarf, coming toward them; and when he saw the shield of Amadis, he reeognized it at onee, and shouted: "Oh, Sir Amadis, help your brother Don Galaor, for they are killing him, and his friend, King Cildadan!"

When they heard this, they went forward at the top speed of their horses, neek and neck, for Don Bruneo with all his strength would not yield any advantage in such an emergency to him or to any other. And going thus, they saw Madarque, the fierce giant, coming, who was the lord of the island, and he eame on a big horse, and armed with plates of very strong steel and coat of mail of very thiek mesh, and instead of a helmet a thick armored hood as elean and shining as a mirror; and in his hand a very strong javelin so heavy that any other knight or person who might exist could scareely with great effort lift it, and a very large, heavy shield; and he came on shouting: "Get out of the way, you wretched weak people, for you cannot kill two knights, exhausted and as powerless as you are! Get out of the way and leave them to this javelin of mine that it may enjoy their blood!"

Oh, how God takes revenge on the unjust and is displeased with those who seek to follow pride; and this haughty arroganee, how quiekly it is overthrown! And you, reader, observe how exemplified it was seen in that Nimrod who built the Tower of

Babel and others that I could tell about through the medium of the Scriptures, which I omit in order not to occasion prolixity.

Thus it happened to Madarque in this battle. And Amadis, who heard it all, was filled with great fear on seeing him so huge and so terrible; and commending himself to God's mercy, he said: "Now is the time to be helped by you, my good lady Oriana."

And he asked Don Bruneo to strike the other knights, for he wanted to resist the giant. And he grasped the lance under his arm and he spurred his horse against Madarque as hard as he could; and he struck him so hard on the chest that it caused him perforce to bend double over the haunches of the horse. And the giant, who seized the reins in his hand, struck so hard that he made the horse rear up on its hind legs; so that it fell on top of him and he broke a leg, and the horse had one shoulder dislocated, hence neither one of them could get up. Amadis, who saw him thus, grasped his sword and shouted, saying: "At them, brother Galaor, for I am Amadis, who will help you!"

And he went toward them, and saw that Don Bruneo had killed a nephew of the giant with a lance thrust through the neck, and with his sword was accomplishing rare deeds at which people marveled; and he delivered a blow on top of the helmet of another knight, whose helmet did not protect him from being cut clear to his skull, and he knocked him to the ground. Galaor jumped on his horse and did not leave the side of King Cildadan, but Gandalin came up and dismounted from his horse and gave it to the king, and he joined the two squires. When all four were mounted, you could have seen there the wonders they performed in overthrowing and killing as many as stopped before them; and the squires on their part inflicted great harm on the foot soldiers. So that in a short while the majority were dead or wounded, and the others fled to the castle fearful of the fierce blows they saw given to them. And the four knights went after them to kill them, until they reached the gate of the castle, which was closed, and they had no way of opening it until the giant came, for thus it was ordered and forbidden. And as for those who were fleeing, when those of them on horseback saw themselves without recourse, they dismounted, and all together they cast their swords down and went toward Amadis, who was coming forward; and kneeling before the feet of his horse, they begged him for mercy's sake not

to kill them, and they seized the skirt of his coat of mail in order to escape from the others, who were coming at them. Amadis protected them from King Cildadan and Don Galaor, who because of the great harm they had received from them would gladly not have left any of them alive, and he took a guarantee from them that they would do what he commanded. Then they went where the giant was lying very dispossessed of his strength, for his horse lay on top of his broken leg, and it held him so beset that his soul was almost at the point of leaving his body. King Cildadan dismounted from his horse and ordered the squires to help him; and on their turning the horse over, the giant was more free of it, and he let him rest; for although on account of him, he and Don Galaor had reached the point of death, as you have heard, he did not have it in his heart to kill him, not because of him, who was an evil thing and arrogant, but because of his regard for his son Gasquilan, king of Suesa, who was a very good knight whom he loved. And so he begged Amadis not to harm him. Amadis agreed to it, and said to the giant, who was now more conscious: "Madarque, now you see your situation as it is; and if you wish to take my advice, I shall let you live, and if not, death is yours."

The giant said: "Good knight, since you leave death and life to me, I shall do your will in order to live, and I shall give you a guarantee of it."

Amadis said to him: "Then what I ask of you is that you become a Christian and that you and all of your men uphold this doctrine by building in this kingdom churches and monasteries, and that you set free all the prisoners you have and that from now on you do not keep this bad custom that you have had until now."

The giant, who had something else in his heart, said out of fear of death: "I shall do all as you command, for I see indeed, comparing my efforts and those of my men with yours that, except on account of my sins, I could not have been overcome for any other reason, especially by a single blow, as I was. And if you please, have me carried to the castle, and there you will rest; and what you command will be done."

"So let it be done," said Amadis.

Then he ordered his men to call those to whom he had given guarantees and they took the giant and carried him to the castle, where he entered, along with Amadis and his companions. And

as soon as they were disarmed, Amadis and Don Galaor embraced each other many times, weeping from the pleasure they took in seeing each other; and they were all four very happy there until they were told on behalf of the giant, that their dinner was ready, as it was now time. Amadis said that they would not dine until all the prisoners had come there, in order that they might dine in their presence.

"That will be done at once," said the giant's men," for he has already ordered them freed."

Then they had them come in, and they were one hundred persons, among whom were thirty knights and more than forty matrons and maidens. All came with great humility to kiss the hands of Amadis, telling him to command them what to do. He said to them: "Friends, what will please me is that you go to Queen Brisena and tell her how the knight of the Firm Island sent you, and that I have found Don Galaor my brother; and kiss her hands for me."

They told him they would do everything he commanded, not only that but everything else in which they might serve him. Then they sat down to eat and were very well served with many viands. Amadis ordered them to give those prisoners their ships in which to travel, and thus it was done at once; and they all together set out on their way to where Queen Brisena was in order to carry out what was asked of them. Amadis and his companions, after they had dined, went into the chamber of the giant to see him, and they found caring for him a giantess, his sister, called Andandona, the most fierce and harsh woman that there was in the world. She had been born fifteen years before Madarque and had helped to rear him. Her hair was entirely white and so kinky that she could not comb it; she was so very ugly of countenance that she resembled nothing so much as a devil. She was excessively large and swift of foot. There was no horse, however wild it might be, nor any other beast, which she could not mount and tame. She shot with a bow and arrow so hard and so accurately that she killed many bears and lions and boar, and she went about clothed in their skins. Most of the time she dwelt in those forested regions in order to hunt wild animals. She was very hostile to the Christians and did them great harm, and she was much more so from then on, causing her brother Madarque to be more hostile

until in the battle that King Lisuarte had with King Arabigo and the six other kings, King Perion killed him, as will be told later on.

After those knights were a while with the giant, and he had promised them to become a Christian, they went out to their own quarters where they lodged that night. And the next day, embarking in their ships, they went on their way to Gaul by an arm of the sea that on both sides was bordered by great groves of trees, in which that ugly giantess Andandona was waiting to cause them some distress. And when she saw them down below on the water, she descended the slope until she was immediately above them, on a cliff, and without being seen by them she chose the best dart she carried; and when she saw them so close, she brandished the dart, hurled it very powerfully and hit Don Bruneo with it on one leg, which it went through and struck the boat, where it was broken. And because of the great strength that she used and her evident intention to attack them, her feet slipped from the rock, and she landed in the water with such a mighty fall that it seemed as if a tower had fallen. And those who were watching her and saw her so terrible and dressed in black bearskins, really thought that she was some devil, and they began to cross themselves and commend themselves to God. And then they saw her emerge swimming so powerfully that it was a wonder, and they shot at her with bow and arrows; but she swam under water until she came out unhurt on the shore. And when she emerged on land, Amadis and King Cildadan each wounded her with an arrow through the shoulder; but as she came out she began to flee through the dense underbrush; so that King Cildadan who saw her thus with the arrows protruding, could not help laughing. And they came to the rescue of Don Bruneo, stanching his bleeding and laying him on his bed; but in a short while the giantess appeared on top of a hillock and began to shout: "If you think I am a devil, do not believe it; but I am Andandona, who will do you all the harm I can and I shall not stop on account of any hardship or tribulation that may befall me."

And she went running over those crags with such swiftness that there was nothing that could overtake her; at which all were astounded, for they really thought that she would die from her wounds. Then they learned all about her from two men prisoners

— whom Gandalin had put there into the galley in order to take them to Gaul, of whieh they were natives — whereat they were astonished; and if it had not been for Don Bruneo, who very insistently begged them to take him as quickly as possible to some place where he might have that wound eared for, they would have sought to return to the island and seareh it everywhere for that fiendish giantess and have her burned.

So they went, as you hear, until they left that eourse and entered the open sea, and talking of many things as men who sineerely esteemed one another without reservation. And Amadis told them how he was in disagreement with King Lisuarte, as were on his aeeount all his friends and relatives who were in the eourt, and the reason for the disagreement. And he told them of the marriage of Don Galvanes and the very beautiful Madasima and how Don Galvanes had gone with that large fleet to the Island of Mongaza in order to have her win it, sinee it eame to her by inheritanee, telling them all the knights who went with him, and the great desire they had of helping her. When Don Galaor heard this, he was very sad about this news and felt heartsiek, for he well understood the great misfortunes that eould reeur. And he was rendered greatly distressed, because although his brother Amadis whom he loved so deeply, and to whom he owed so mueh reverenee, was on one side, he eould not find it in his heart to refuse to serve King Lisuarte, with whom he lived, as will be told later on. Therefore, thinking about this and remembering how Amadis had departed from him from the Firm Island, he drew him to one end of the ship and said to him: "Sir brother, what grave, important thing eould have happened to you, greater than the relationship and love between us, that you should thus eonceal yourself from me as from a strange person?"

"Good brother," said Amadis, "sinee the cause of it had sueh a strength to break those strong bonds of that relationship and love that you speak of, you can well believe that it would be mueh more dangerous than death itself; and I beg you sineerely not to seek to know about it at this time."

Galaor, changing to a better attitude, for he was somewhat angered, seeing that it still was Amadis's desire to be seeretive, dropped the subject, and they spoke about other things.

So they sailed for four days, at the end of which they put into port at a town in Gaul by the name of Mostrol; and at the time his father, King Perion, and the queen his mother were there, because it was a seaport opposite Great Britain, where they could better find out news of those sons of theirs; and when they saw the ship, they sent a messenger to find out who were the ones who were arriving. And when the messenger arrived, Amadis ordered that he be told to inform the king that King Cildadan was coming with Don Bruneo of Bonamar, for about himself or his brother he did not want them to find out anything at that time. When King Perion heard this, he was very happy, because King Cildadan would tell him news of Don Galaor, for Amadis had made known to him that both were in the house of Urganda. And he ordered all his retinue to mount, and he went forth to welcome them, for he loved Don Bruneo very much because he had been a few times at his court, and he knew that he held his sons in respect.

Amadis and Don Galaor mounted their horses, richly garbed, and went by another route to the palace of the queen; and when they came to her apartment they said to the doorkeeper: "Tell the queen that two knights of her lineage are here, who wish to speak to her."

The queen ordered them to enter; and when she saw them she recognized Amadis and Don Galaor because of the fact that they greatly resembled each other, and she had not seen him since the giant had snatched him away from her, and she cried out: "Oh, Lady Virgin Mary! And how does it happen that I see my sons before me!"

And her speech failing her, she fell on the dais as though insensible. And they knelt and kissed her hands very humbly; and the queen came down from the dais and took them in her arms and drew them to her and kissed them both many times without their being able to speak to each other, until their sister Melicia came in; when the queen released them that they might speak to her, for they were greatly surprised by her great beauty. Who would be able to describe the pleasure of that noble queen on seeing before her those knights, her so very handsome sons, considering the great anguish and grief which was always tormenting her, as she realized the dangers to which Amadis was

exposed, being in suspense as to whether he would live or die, which would mean the same for her, and having lost Don Galaor so unpredictably when the giant carried him away, and seeing everything restored with such honor and fame? Certainly no one could tell about it adequately, if it were not she or someone else who had been in similar circumstances. Amadis said to the queen: "Madam, here we bring Don Bruneo of Bonamar, badly wounded; and ask you to honor him, as one of the finest knights in the world."

"My son," said she, "so it will be done, because you wish it, and because he has served us well; and whenever I can't see to his needs your sister Melicia will."

"Do so, lady sister," said Don Galaor; "Since you are a maiden, you and all the others who are should honor him highly as the one who serves and honors them more than any other knight. And the maiden whom he loves should consider herself very fortunate since without delay he was able to go under the enchanted arch of loyal lovers, which was a sure sign of his never having been unfaithful to her."

When Melicia heard this, her heart trembled, for she well knew that it was for her that that adventure was completed; and she answered as one who was very discreet and said: "Sir, I shall do in the matter the best I can, and God's will be done. This I shall do because you command it, and because I am told that he is a good knight and that he loves you very much."

The queen being with her sons just as you have heard, King Perion and King Cildadan arrived; and when Amadis and Galaor saw King Perion, they went to him, kneeling. Each one kissed his hand and he kissed them, the tears coming to his eyes from the pleasure that he felt. King Cildadan said to them: "Good friends, remember Don Bruneo."

Then, King Cildadan having already spoken to the queen and her daughter, they went together to Don Bruneo, whom knights brought from the galley in their arms by order of King Perion; and they placed him in a very luxurious bed in a chamber of the queen's apartment, one window of which looked out on a garden with many roses and other flowers. There went the queen and her daughter to see him, the queen expressing great regret over his wound, and he considering it a great favor on her part. And

after she had been there a while, she said to him: "Don Bruneo, I shall see you as often as I can; and when something prevents me from doing so, Melicia will be with you and will care for your wound."

He kissed her hands for it, and the queen went away; and Melicia and the maidens who attended her remained there. And she seated herself in front of the bed where he could easily see her beautiful face, which rendered him so happy that if he could have had it so, he would not have wished to be well, because that view was healing and restoring another wound more cruel and more dangerous for his life. She undid the bandages about the wound and saw that it was large, but since it was open on both sides, she had hope of restoring him to health quickly; and she said to him: "Don Bruneo, I think that I shall heal this wound for you, but it is necessary that you in no wise disobey instructions, for if you did so, you could again be in great danger."

"Madam," said Don Bruneo, "may God never grant that I disobey your orders, for I am certain, if I were to do so, that no one could conceive of any remedy for me."

She understood the purport of this speech better than any of the maids who were there. Then she put a certain ointment on his leg, and on the wound, that took away almost all of the swelling and pain that he had, and she fed him with those very beautiful hands of hers, and she said to him: "Rest now, for when it is time, I shall see you."

And on leaving the room she met Lasindo, Don Bruneo's squire, who knew about how they loved each other; and Melicia said to him: "Lasindo, you who are better acquainted here, ask for whatever your master needs."

"Lady," said he, "may it please God to bring him to a time when he may requite this favor that you do him."

And coming closer to her, without being overheard, he said: "Lady, he who wishes to cure someone must have recourse to his most dangerous wound, from which the greatest distress comes to him. In heaven's name, have mercy on him, since he has so much need for it, not because of the pain that he is suffering from the wound, but from what he suffers and endures with so much pain on your account."

When Melicia heard this, she said to him: "Friend, for this which I see I shall provide a remedy if I can, for of the other I know nothing."

"Lady," said he, "you know that the mortal sorrows and pangs that he suffers because of you had such power as to place him before the images of Apolidon and Grimanesa."

"Lasindo," said she, "many times it happens that with the passage of time persons recover from such maladies as this one you say your master has had, without any other remedy being administered to them, and so it may have happened to your master; and therefore it is not necessary to seek a remedy for him from one who cannot give it."

And leaving him, she went to her mother. And although this reply was told by Lasindo to Don Bruneo, he was not disturbed, for he had believed her to hold the opposite to be true; instead, many times he blessed the giantess Andandona because she had wounded him, since with the wound he was enjoying that pleasure without which everything else in the world was to him great vexation and loneliness.

Just as you hear, King Cildadan and Amadis and Galaor were with King Perion of Gaul to the great delight and enjoyment of them all; and Don Bruneo in the care of that lady whom he loved so much. And it happened that one day Galaor, taking aside the king his father, and King Cildadan and his brother Amadis, said to them: "I have believed, sirs, that even though I should try very hard, I would never find three others who would love me and wish for me honor to such a degree as you. And for this reason I want you to give me advice on that which next to one's soul, one ought to consider most important; and this is that you, sir and brother Amadis, put me with King Lisuarte, commanding me with great affection to be his liegeman. And now on seeing you in such a great estrangement from him, without my being dismissed from his house, I certainly find myself greatly distraught; because if I should adhere to your side, my honor would be greatly discredited; and if to him, for me it is deadly havoc to think of being your opponent. Therefore, good sirs, help me in this problem of mine, which is your very own, and seek my honor rather than the satisfaction of your own desires." King Perion said to him: "Son, you cannot do wrong in following your brother

against a king so ungrateful and so intemperate; for if you have remained with him, it was by overlooking the wishes of Amadis; and with just cause you can bid him farewell, since as an enemy he seeks and endeavors to destroy your lineage, which has been of such great service to him."

Don Galaor said: "Sire, I trust in God and in your mercy, in which I place my honor, that never in the world will it be said that in a time of such rupture and when that king has such great need of my service, did I take leave of him, he not having dismissed me previously."

"Good brother," said Amadis, "although we are so obligated to obey the command of our father and lord, knowing his prudence to be such that what he may order will be much better than we would be able to carry out, trusting myself to his mercy, I say that at such a time as this you not be separated from, or dismissed by that king, unless it were with such a reason that it could be done without vituperation from anyone; for in regard to what concerns him and me, there cannot be any knights on his side so strong, no matter how strong they are, that the most high Lord is not more so, who knows the great services that I rendered him, and the bad reward that I had from the king without deserving it. And since He is the judge, I firmly believe that He will give to each one what he deserves."

Note double meaning: the one, refer the matter to God in whom is all the power; the other, since Amadis recognizes the great fondness that his brother has for the service of King Lisuarte, not to consider it important.

It having been decided by all that Galaor should go to King Lisuarte, King Cildadan then said to Amadis and Don Galaor: "Good friends, you know about my battle with King Lisuarte, which through your prowess was won; and you took away from me that great glory that I and my people would have achieved. And you also know, sirs, the agreements and constancy that I have promised, which are that he who was overcome should serve the other in a certain way; and since my bad luck was such that I was conquered by you, I must adhere to them, albeit unwillingly, as long as I live. And from the complaint and the sorrow that my heart has about this, it is always very dispirited; but as we subordinate everything to honor, and honor means negating one's

own desires in order to pursue that to which one is duty bound, I am forced to come to the rescue of that king with the number of knights that I promised him as long as God wishes; and I wish to go with Don Galaor, for today after mass, a letter from the king reached me calling me to come to his aid as I must."

Whereupon they ended their conference by saying their farewells; and next day, having taken leave of the queen and her daughter Melicia, they embarked on a ship to cross over to Great Britain, where they put into port without any delay. And on landing they went directly to where they knew King Lisuarte was; he was very angry about what had happened to his troops on the Island of Mongaza, and about the great havoc that was wrought on them. And he decided not to wait for the many troops that he had ordered drafted, but instead to go with those knights who could be found most quickly. And three days before embarking on the ships, he told the queen to take Oriana his daughter and ladies and maidens-in-waiting, because he wanted to go hunting in the forest and enjoy himself with them. And she did so, for the next day they departed with great joy; and they camped in a meadow with trees that was within the forest. And there the king disported himself that day and obtained a large number of deer and other kinds of game, with which a great feast was made for all those who were there. And certainly, although he was there in the flesh, his heart and thoughts were centered more on the damage his troops had received on the island. And the feast and hunt now being over, he caused the things to be prepared that he needed for his voyage.

CHAPTER LXVI

How king Cildadan and don galaor on their way to the court of king lisuarte met a matron who was bringing a handsome youth accompanied by twelve knights, and they were asked by the matron to beg the king to knight him, which was done; and afterward by the same king he was recognized as his son.

As King Cildadan and Don Galaor were traveling on their way to where King Lisuarte was, they were told that he was preparing to cross to the Island of Mongaza; and for this reason they traveled on faster in order to arrive in time to cross with him. And it happened to them that they, having slept in a forest, at dawn heard a bell being rung for mass, and they went there to hear it. And on entering the hermitage they saw around the altar twelve very beautiful, richly painted shields, with fields of purple and castles of gold thereon, and in their midst was a white, very beautiful shield, trimmed with gold and precious stones. And as soon as they had said their prayers, they asked some squires who were there, whose those shields were; and they told them that they could in nowise tell, but that if they went to the house of King Lisuarte they would find out quickly. And at this juncture they saw coming through the yard the knights who were owners of the shields, each one hand in hand with a maiden; and behind them came the novice knight speaking with a matron, who was not very young; and he was of very good stature and so very handsome and gallant that hardly anyone would be found equally so. King Cildadan and Don Galaor marveled greatly to see a man of such unusual appearance and indeed thought that he came from a distant land, since in that land until then there was

no memory of his having been seen. Thus they passed to the altar where they all heard mass. And after it was said, the matron asked them if they were from the court of King Lisuarte.

"Why do you ask?" said they.

"Because we wanted your company, if you please, for the king is in this forest near here with the Queen and many of their retinue in tents hunting and disporting themselves."

"Then what, please, do you desire of us?" said they.

"We want," said the matron, "as a courtesy that you ask the king and queen and their daughter Oriana to come here and dub this squire a knight, for he is such that he well deserves all the honor that may be done him."

"Lady," said they, "very gladly shall we do as you say; and we believe that the king will do so, as in all things he is courteous and discreet."

Then the matron and her maidens and they mounted at once and all together, and went to station themselves on a hillock that was near the road along which the king was to come. And it was not long before they saw him coming, and the queen and her retinue; and the king came in front, and he saw the maidens and the two armed knights; and thinking that they wanted to joust, he gave orders to Grumedan, who was riding with him along with twenty knights who were guarding him, to go to them and tell them not to seek to joust but to come to him. Don Grumedan went to them, and the king halted; and when King Cildadan and Don Galaor saw that he was halting they came down from the hill with the maidens and went toward him. And when they had gone a short distance, Don Galaor recognized Grumedan, and said to King Cildadan: "Sir, look, there comes one of the best men in the world."

"Who is he?" said the king.

"Don Grumedan," said Galaor, "the one who held the standard of King Lisuarte in the battle against you."

"That you can truly say," said the king, "for I was the one who seized the standard from him, and I never succeeded in taking it out of his hands until the staff broke; and I saw him perform so well at arms against me and my men that in nowise did I wish to break it."

After they took off their helmets so that they could recognize them, Don Grumedan, who was closer, recognized Don Galaor, and said in a loud voice, as was his wont: "Ah, my friend Don Galaor, be you as welcome as the angels of Paradise!"

And he went toward him as fast as he could, and as he came up, Galaor said to him: "My lord Don Grumedan, come and meet King Cildadan."

And he went to kiss his hands, and he received him very well; and he turned at once to Don Galaor, and they embraced many times as men who sincerely loved each other; and Don Grumedan said to them: "My lords, take your time, and I'll make known your arrival to the king."

And leaving them, he went up to the king and said to him: "Sire, I bring you news with which you will be happy, for there comes your vassal and friend Don Galaor, who has never failed you in time of need; and the other is King Cildadan."

"I am very glad," said the king, "of their arrival, for I well knew that if Galaor were in good health and unhampered, he would not fail to come to me, just as I would do in whatever might affect his honor."

At this juncture the knights came up, and the king received them very affectionately; and Don Galaor sought to kiss his hands, but he did not wish it; instead he embraced him in such a way that he really gave those who were watching to understand that he loved him sincerely. Then they told him what the matron and the maidens wanted, and how they had seen that novice who wanted to be a knight, and that he was very handsome and well formed. The king remained thoughtful for a bit, because he was not accustomed to knight anyone, except men of great valor, and he asked whose son he was. The matron said: "That you will not know now, but I swear to you by the faith I owe to God, that on both sides he is a descendant of legitimate kings."

The king said to Don Galaor: "What do you think should be done in this matter?"

"I think, sire, that you ought to do it and not make any excuse, for the novice is extremely graceful and handsome, and cannot fail to be a good knight."

"Since you think so," said the king, "let it be done."

And he gave orders to Don Grumedan to take King Cildadan and Don Galaor to the queen, and to tell her to come with them to that hermitage where he was going. They went there at once; and it is not necessary to tell you how they were received by the queen and by Oriana and all the others, for never were others received better or with more affection. And the queen having learned what the king commanded, they all went after him, until they arrived at the hermitage. And when they saw those shields, and the white one so beautiful and so fine among them, they marveled at it, but much more at the very handsome features of the novice; and they could not think who he might be, since until then they had never heard of him. The novice kissed the hands of the king with great humility, and the queen did not want to give him hers, nor did Oriana, he being a man of high rank. The king dubbed him knight, and said to him: "Take the sword from whomever you prefer."

"If it will please your grace," said he, "I shall take it from Oriana, and with this my wish will be satisfied, and my heart's desire will be fulfilled."

"Let it be done," said the king, "just as you say, since you are pleased."

And calling Oriana, he said: "My dear daughter, if you please, give the sword to this knight, who wishes to take it from your hand rather than from that of anyone else."

Oriana with great shyness, as a lady who considered him quite foreign, taking the sword, gave it to him, and thus his knighting was entirely completed. This having been done just as you have heard, the matron said to the king: "Sire, it is necessary that I leave at once with these maidens, for I am so ordered; and in this matter I cannot do otherwise, for were I free to do so, I should indeed like to stay here a few days. And Norandel, whom you have dubbed a knight, will remain in your service if you so order, and so will the other knights who came with him."

When the king heard this he was quite pleased, for he was quite taken with the novice knight; and he said to her: "Lady, God bless you."

She took leave of the queen and of the very beautiful Oriana, her daughter. And when she was about to take leave of the king she put in his hand a letter, without anyone's seeing her do so,

and said to him in a very quietly whispered aside: "Read this letter without anyone's seeing it, and afterwards do what most pleases you."

With this she went away to her ship. And the king remained thinking about what she had told him, and he told the queen to take with her King Cildadan and Don Galaor, and go to the tents; and if he were late in returning from the hunt, that they should rest and dine. The queen did so. And when the king was by himself, he opened the letter.

Letter from the Princess Celinda to King Lisuarte.

Very exalted Lisuarte, King of Great Britain: I, the Princess Celinda, daughter of King Hegido, kiss your hands in greeting. You will indeed recall, my lord, when at the time that as a knight errant you were seeking great adventures, having finished many of them to your great honor, that chance and good fortune caused you to land in the kingdom of my father — who at the time had departed from this world — where you found me besieged in my castle, which was called Great Rosebush Castle, by Antifon the Fierce; who, on account of having his offer of marriage rejected by me for not being my equal in lineage, was trying to take from me all my land. With whom a battle of your person against his having been arranged, he trusting in his great valor, and you in my being a weak maiden, at great risk to your person you fought; and finally, he was overcome and killed; so that you by winning the glory of such a hard battle, put me at liberty and in all good fortune. Then, you, my lord, entering the castle, either because my beauty had brought it to pass or because fortune willed it, I becoming enamored of you, under that beautiful rosebush, having many roses and flowers over us, I, being deflowered by you, that youth was engendered, and according to his extreme good looks, that sin bore beautiful fruit and will be pardoned by the most powerful Lord. And this ring, which was given me by you with such great love and by me guarded, I send to you as an ever present witness with him. Honor him and love him, my good lord, dubbing him a knight, for he comes from kings on all sides. And taking from your side great courage and from my side the very abundant fire of love that I had for

you, one ought to have great hope that it will be very well employed in him.

The letter having been read, immediately he recalled the time that he went as a knight errant through the kingdom of Denmark, when for his great deeds at arms that he aeeomplished, he was loved by the very beautiful Brisena, princess daughter of that king, and he had her for his wife as has already been related; and how he had found this Princess Celinda besieged and how he had experieneed with her all that she had told him in the letter; and on seeing the ring, he was rendered more certain that it was true. And although the handsome appearanee of the novice gave him great hope of his being an excellent knight, he resolved to conceal it until deeds gave testimony of his virtue. So he went hunting; and taking mueh game on that hunt, he returned highly pleased to the tents, where the queen was. And he went to the tent where he was told that King Cildadan and Don Galaor were, in order to honor them, and he was accompanied by the most honorable and nobly attired knights of his court; and before them all he began to praise highly their great deeds, just as they deserved, and on aecount of the great aid he was expecting from them in that war that he had with the best knights in the world. And with great pleasure he told them about the hunt that he had carried on and said that he would not give them anything from the hunt, laughing and joking in order to please them; and he ordered the game taken to Oriana, his daughter, and the other princesses, and sent word to tell them to share it with King Cildadan and Don Galaor; and he ate there with the knights with much enjoyment. And as soon as the tables were cleared, taking Don Galaor with him, he went under some trees; and putting his arm on his shoulder, he said to him: "My good friend, Don Galaor, how I love and esteem you, God knows, because always from your great courage and your counsel much good has come to me, and I feel great security in confiding in you, so much so that what I would not disclose to you, I would not tell my own heart. And leaving aside the most serious matters that will always be made known to you by me, I wish you to know about one matter that is on my mind at the present time."

Then he gave him the letter to read; and Don Galaor, on seeing that Norandel was his son, was very happy and said to him: "Sire, if you experienced hardship and danger in rescuing that princess, she has well repaid you with such a handsome son; for, so help me God, I believe that he will be so excellent that that concern that you now have to conceal him, will become much greater to reveal him. And if it pleases you, sire, I wish him for a companion all of this year so that some of the desire that I have to serve you may be employed on that person who is so close a blood relative."

"I thank you very much," said the king, "for what you say, because as nothing remains a secret, all the honor that accrues to this youth is mine. But how shall I give you for companion a youngster about whom we don't know yet what he will amount to, when I would consider myself very happy to be your companion. But since you are pleased, so let it be done."

Then they returned to the tent where King Cildadan and Norandel and many other knights of high rank were. And when all were quiet, Galaor stood up and said to the king: "Sire, you well know that the custom of your house and of the whole realm of London is that the first favor that any knight or maiden asks of the novice knight, must be granted by him straightway."

"That is true," said the king, "but why do you say so?"

"Because I am a knight," said Galaor, "and I ask Norandel to grant me a boon that I shall demand of him; and it is that my companionship with him be for a full year, during which we maintain mutual loyalty, and nothing separates us except death or imprisonment, which we cannot help."

When Norandel heard this, he marveled at what Galaor had said, and was very happy, because he already knew about his great fame and saw the signal honor that the king was doing him, out of so many good and valued knights, and knew that after his brother Amadis, there was no one else in the world to surpass him in prowess at arms, and he said: "My lord Don Galaor, according to your great excellence and merit, and the meagerness of mine, it really seems that this boon is requested more because of your great virtue than because I deserve it; but however that may be, I grant it to you, and I thank you for it as the one thing

in the world, outside of the service of my lord the king, that could come to me to render me most happy."

King Cildadan, having noted the way matters were shaping up, said: "According to the age and good looks of you both, with abundant reason the boon could be asked and granted; and may God grant that it be for the best, and so it will be, as is done with things that are requested more because of reason than with desire."

The companionship between Don Galaor and Norandel having been agreed to, just as you have heard, King Lisuarte told them how he had determined to set out on the sea on the third day; because, according to the news that came to him from the Island of Mongaza, his departure was very necessary.

"In the name of God shall it be," said King Cildadan, "and we shall serve you in all that may be to your honor."

And Don Galaor said to him: "Sire, since you have completely the hearts of your men, fear only God."

"That is my opinion," said the king, "for although the strength of you all is great, your love and affection makes me much more secure."

That day they spent there with great enjoyment, and next day, having heard mass, they all mounted to return to the town. And the king told Don Galaor and Grumedan to go with the queen; and taking Don Galaor aside, he gave him permission to tell Oriana the secret of how Norandel was her brother and asked that she deem it confidential. With this he went to his hunters, and they to the queen, who was already mounted. And Don Galaor on coming up to Oriana, took her palfrey by the reins and entered into a conversation with her; much to her pleasure, as much on account of the great love the king her father had for him, as because it seemed to her that since he was the brother of her lover Amadis, his presence gave her great reassurance. Then while thus speaking of many things, they came to talk about Norandel, and Oriana said: "Do you know anything about this knight? For I saw you come in his company. In view of your great worth, this ought not to have been unless you know something about him, for all those who know you do not know any other person who is your equal except your brother Amadis."

"My lady," said Don Galaor, "my equality and eourage are as far removed from Amadis's as earth is from heaven; and it would be very great madness for anyone to think of being his equal, because God made him unsurpassed in fortitude as well as in all the other good qualities that a knight ought to possess."

Oriana, when she heard this, began to think to herself as follows: "Ah, Oriana, what if some day eomes when you find yourself without the love of sueh a man as Amadis and without sueh fame — as mueh at arms as for good looks."

And in order that her mood not be deteeted, she showed herself happy and joyful to have sueh a lover as no other woman eould aehieve.

"And in regard to what you say, lady, of the eompanionship that I have initiated with Norandel, I well believe aeeording to his predisposition and the very honorable aetion that he took, that he will be an exeellent knight. But another thing I found out about him, that will seem very strange, when it is known to everyone, eaused me to do it."

"I believe it to be thus," said Oriana, "for you would not be moved, being the man you are, without good reason to take him as a eompanion; and if it ean be told without any harm to your honor, I should be pleased to know it."

"The thing whieh you, my lady, would be pleased to know from me would have to be very preeious indeed for me not to tell it to you," said he. "What I know of this, I shall tell you; but it is necessary that it not be known by any other person."

"You may be eompletely eertain and assured," said she, "that thus it will be."

"Then know you, madam," said Galaor, "that Norandel is the son of your father."

And he told her how he had seen the letter from Prineess Celinda and the ring, and all the latter had said to the king, Oriana's father.

"Galaor," said Oriana, "you make me very happy with what you have said and I am very grateful to you for it, beeause I could not have found it out from anyone else. Also you render me happy with the great honor that you have given to this knight with whom I have sueh elose relationship; for eertainly if he is disposed to be a good knight, in mueh greater measure he will

be so with you; and if the eontrary be true, your great exeellenee will ause him to be so."

"I am very grateful, madam, for the honor that you do me," said he, "although there may be in me the opposite; but be that as it may, it will always be put at your service and at that of the king, your father, and at that of your mother."

"So I eonsider it, Don Galaor," said she, "and may it please God through His mercy that they and I may be able to reward you for it."

Thus they reached the town, where Oriana remaining with her mother the queen, Galaor went to his lodging, taking with him Norandel his companion.

And next day, immediately after the king had heard mass, he ordered food taken to the ships, for the troops who were crossing with him were already on board with their arms and horses. And he, taking with him King Cildadan and Galaor and Norandel, having said farewell to the queen and his daughter and the ladies and maidens-in-waiting, all of whom were weeping, went to the port of Jafoque, whcre his fleet was. And once on board, he set out for the Island of Mongaza, where with favorable weather for thc most part — though at times contrary — at the end of five days he had reached the port of that town from whieh the island took its name. And he found there at a very strong army eamp King Arban of North Wales with the troops that you have already heard about, and he learned that they had had a great battle with the knights who held the town and that their own men had been routed from the field and all would have been lost if King Arban of North Wales had not taken advantage of somc very precipitous eliffs where they were protected from their enemy; and how that very eourageous Gasquilan, king of Suesa, was badly wounded by Don Florestan, and his men had carried him away by sea to where he might recover from his injuries; and also how they held Brian de Monjaste prisoner, who had plunged among his foes to attaek King Arban of North Wales; and that after this fight they nevcr more dared to leave those cliffs, where King Lisuarte found them; and that although the knights of the Island of Mongaza had attacked them many times, they never succeeded in harming them, because their position was so proteeted. All this having been ascertained by

King Lisuarte, he became greatly enraged at the knights of the island; and he ordered all the troops to leave the ships, with tents and other necessary things, and he set up camp in the countryside until he could find out about his foes.

Oriana was very pleased with the departure of the king her father, because the time was approaching when she had to give birth. And she called Mabilia and told her that according to the fainting spells and the way she was feeling, it could only mean that she was about to be brought to childbed; and commanding the other maidens to leave her, she went to her chamber, and with her Mabilia and the maid of Denmark, who beforehand had already provided all the things that they needed and that were useful for the delivery. Oriana was with labor pains until evening, and with them suffering somewhat from fatigue; but from then on they beset her much more frequently, so that she experienced very great distress and great anxiety, as one who until then knew nothing of such pangs. But the great fear that she had of being discovered in that dangerous situation in which she was, constrained her in such wise that she endured it without complaining; and at midnight the most high Lord, helpful to all, was pleased that she be delivered of a son, a very sprightly baby, leaving her free. He was then wrapped in very fine garments, and Oriana said they should bring him to her in her bed; and taking him in her arms, she kissed him many times. The maid of Denmark said to Mabilia: "Have you seen what this child has on its body?"

"No," said she, "for I am busy and have so much to do in helping it, and its mother to give birth to it, that I did not look otherwise."

"Well certainly," said the maiden, "it has something on its chest that other babies don't have."

Then they lit a candle and unwrapping the baby, they saw that it had under the right nipple some letters as white as snow, and under the left nipple, seven letters as red as live coals; but they were unable to read either set of letters, or what they said, because the white ones were of very obscure Latin, and the red ones in utterly incomprehensible Greek. And after they looked at this, they wrapped the baby up again, and put it beside the mother, and they decided it was to be taken at once to where it would be reared, as they had planned. And so it was done, for

the maid of Denmark left the palace secretly and went around outside to the place where the window was that opened on the room, and her brother Durin with her, both on their palfreys. And Mabilia meanwhile had the child placed in a basket tied with a strip of cloth on top; and suspending the basket on a rope, she lowered it until it was placed in the hands of the maiden; who took it and went with it on the way to Miraflores, where as her own son it was to be brought up secretly. But in a little while, leaving the direct road they took a path that Durin knew that led through a very thick forest of trees, and this they did in order to go more secretly; and Durin went ahead and the maiden followed him. Thus they reached a spring that was in a plain unencumbered with trees. But immediately beyond there was a valley so dense and so forbidding that a person could scarcely enter it, because of the wildness and density of the wooded area, and there lions and other animals flourished. And at the head of this valley there was a little old hermitage in which dwelt Nasciano, a hermit, who was considered a very holy and devout man by all, and revered so highly that it was the opinion of the people of the vicinity that sometimes he was sustained by celestial food. And when he lacked food, he went looking for it through the land, without lions or any other animals harming him, although many of them he continually encountered as he was going about on his donkey; rather it seemed that they paid homage to him. And near this hermitage there was a cave among some rocks where a lioness was rearing her cubs; and often the good man visited and fed them when he had food, without fearing the lioness; instead she, when she saw him with them, drew aside from there until he had gone. With these cubs, after he had said his prayers, he was wont to spend his time, deriving enjoyment from seeing them romp about the cave.

And when the maid of Denmark and her brother came to that spring, she was very thirsty from the effort of the night and from the journey; and she said to her brother: "Let us dismount; and take this child, for I want to drink."

He took the child, wrapped as it was in expensive swaddling clothes, and put it on the trunk of a tree that was there; and as he was about to help his sister to alight, they heard some loud lion roars resound in the heavily wooded valley, so that those

palfreys were so frightened that they began to flee at top speed without the maiden's being able to restrain her own mount; rather, she thought that it would kill her among the trees, and she kept calling on God to help her; and Durin came running after her intending to take her palfrey by the bridle rein and bring it to a halt. And he ran so fast that he went ahead of it and stopped it; and he found his sister so bruised and distraught that she could hardly speak; so he had her dismount and said: "Sister, stay here, and I shall go on this palfrey in search of mine."

"But go for the child," said she, "and bring it to me, lest something happen to it."

"I shall do so," said he, "and hold this palfrey by the reins, for I am afraid, if I took it, that I wouldn't be able to make it approach the spring."

And so he went on foot. But before that a strange occurrence took place; for that lioness that was rearing her offspring as you have heard, and had emitted a roar, was in the habit of coming each day to that spring to pick up the scent of the deer that were accustomed to drink at it. And when she arrived there, she walked all around sniffing from one side to the other; and while thus walking she heard the child crying, who was on the trunk of the tree, and she went for it, and took it by its clothing into her mouth between those very sharp teeth of hers, without touching its flesh, which was because it was God's will; and recognizing it to be food for her offspring, she went away with it; and it was already time for the sun to rise. But that Lord of the world, compassionate with those who seek mercy of Him, and with innocents who do not have the age or sense to ask for it, came to its aid in this way: that saintly Nasciano having sung mass at dawn of day, and going to the spring to refresh himself there, for the night had been very hot, saw that the lioness was carrying the child in her mouth; which was crying in a weak voice, as one just born that night; and he perceived that it was a baby, whence he was very disturbed concerning where she had gotten it; and immediately he raised his hand and made the sign of the cross, saying to the lioness: "Come, bad beast, and put down God's creature, for He did not create it for your sustenance."

And the lioness, her ears twitching as though fawning, came to him very meekly, and placed the infant at his feet, and

immediately went away. Nasciano made over it the sign of the true cross, and afterwards took it in his arms and went with it to the hermitage. And passing near the cave where the lioness was rearing her offspring, he saw her suckling them, and he said to her: "I command you in God's name, in whose power are all things, that taking your teats away from your offspring, you suckle this child, and as you would them, you protect it from all harm."

The lioness came and lay down at his feet and the good man put the child to its teats, and putting some of the milk into its mouth, made it take the teat and suck; and from then on the lioness came very tamely to suckle it every time it was necessary. But the hermit sent at once a youthful servant of his who helped him at mass, and was his nephew, to go very quickly and to call his mother and father to come back immediately with him, but with no other companion, because he needed them badly. The boy went at once to a village where they dwelt, which was at the edge of the forest; but because the father was not there in the village, they were unable to come until ten days had passed, during which time the child was very well sustained by the milk of the lioness and that of a goat, and that of a sheep that had given birth to a lamb. These took care of the needs while the lioness went hunting for food for her offspring.

When Durin left his sister, as you have already heard, he went on foot as quickly as he could to the spring where he had left the child; and when he did not find it, he was quite frightened and looked everywhere, but found only the tracks of the lioness; hence he truly believed she had eaten it, and with very great distress and sadness he returned to his sister. And when he told her about it, she slapped her own face and set up a great wailing, cursing her luck and the hour at which she had been born, that under such circumstances she had lost all she held dear, for she did not know how to appear before her mistress. Durin comforted her weeping, but comfort was of no use, for her violent emotion and her sadness were so excessive that for more than two hours she was as if out of her senses. Durin said to her: "My good sister, what you are doing is of no benefit, and from it much harm might come to your mistress and her lover, for something of their affair might become known."

She saw that he was speaking the truth, and said to him: "Then what shall we do? For I haven't sense enough to know."

"It seems to me," said he, "that since my palfrey is lost, we ought to go to Miraflores, and stay there three or four days to give them to understand that some motive brought you there; and on returning to Oriana not to tell her a thing about this, except that the child is under good care, until she is well; and afterwards you will take counsel with Mabilia as to what should be done."

She said she considered that a good plan; and both mounting her palfrey, they went to Miraflores, and at the end of three days returned to Oriana; and the maiden with a cheerful mien told her how all was done as she had planned.

Then returning to the hermit who was rearing the child, know you that at the end of ten days there came to him his sister and her husband; and he told them how he had found that child under extraordinary circumstances, and that God loved it since thus He had sought to protect it; and he begged them to bring it up in their home until it knew how to talk, and to bring it to him to teach it. They said that they would do as he commanded.

"Then I want to baptize it," said the good man.

And so it was done; but when that matron unwrapped it at the fount, she saw the white letters and the red ones that it had, and showed them to the good man, who was greatly shocked thereby. And on reading them he saw that the white letters said in Latin: "Esplandian," and he thought that that must be his name, and so he gave it to him; but the red ones, although he strove diligently, he was unable to read, nor could he make out what they said. And immediately the baby was baptized with the name of Esplandian, by which he was known in many foreign lands for great events that happened because of him, just as will be related subsequently.

This having been done, the nurse carried him with great pleasure to her house, with the expectation that through him not only she but all her lineage would be protected, and with great diligence she brought him up as one who had her hope concentrated in him. And at the time that the hermit so ordered, they brought him to him, and he was very handsome and well reared, so that all who saw him greatly enjoyed looking at him.

CHAPTER LXVII

IN WHICH IS RELATED THE CRUEL BATTLE OF KING LISUARTE AND HIS TROOPS AGAINST DON GALVANES AND HIS COMPANIONS, AND THE LIBERALITY AND GREATNESS THAT THE KING DISPLAYED AFTER THE VICTORY BY GIVING THE LAND TO DON GALVANES AND MADASIMA, THEY REMAINING AS VASSALS WHILE THEY DWELT IN IT.

As you have heard, King Lisuarte disembarked at the port of the Island of Mongaza, where he found Arban of North Wales and the troops who with him had taken refuge at an army camp located amid some crags — troops whom he ordered to go down at once to the plain and join the forces that he had brought. And he found out how Don Galvanes and his companions, who were at the Boiling Lake, had crossed the mountain range that they had between them, prepared to give them battle. And he moved at once with all his men against them, encouraging them as much as he could, as one who had fought with the best knights in the world; and he went until he came to within a league of them on the bank of a river, and there he stopped that night. And when the dawn of day appeared, they all heard mass and armed themselves, and the king made three divisions of them. Don Galaor had the first, of five hundred knights; and with him went his companion Norandel, and Don Guilan the Pensive and his cousin Ladasin, and Grimeo the Valiant, and Cendil of Ganota, and Nicoran of the Fearful Bridge, the very good jouster. And the second division he gave to King Cildadan with seven hundred knights; and there went with him Ganides of Ganota, and Acedis, the king's nephew, and Gradasonel Fallistre, and Brandoyvas, and Tasian and Filispinel, all of whom were knights of high rank; and in the

middle of this division went Don Grumedan of Norway, and other knights who were going with King Arban of North Wales, who were charged with protecting the king without having anything to do with anything else. Thus they moved through the countryside, and appeared a very handsome and well armed body of soldiers, for so many Moorish trumpets and horns sounded that one could hardly hear; and they took up positions on a level field; and at the king's back went Baladan and Leonis with thirty knights.

The action of King Lisuarte and the troops that he brought, having been ascertained by Don Galvanes and the distinguished nobles who were with him, although there were for each one of them five men, and although the imprisonment of Don Brian de Monjaste and the departure of Agrajes to bring them food that they needed greatly handicapped them, they were not disheartened by this; rather with great vigor they gave encouragement to their men, who were but few for the battle, as those who were renowned for their noble feats at arms, as this story has related; and they agreed to make two divisions of themselves. The one was of one hundred and six knights and the other of one hundred and nine. In the first went Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante, and Angriote of Estravaus and his brother Grovedan and his nephew Sarquiles and his brother-in-law Gasinan, who was carrying the maidens' banner; and near the banner went Branfil and the good Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, and Olivas and Balays of Carsante, and Enil the good knight whom Beltenebros had placed in the battle of King Cildadan. In the other division went Don Galvanes, and with him the two brothers, Palomir and Dragonis, and Listoran of the Tower, and Dandales of Sadoca and Tantalis the Proud, and along with these divisions went some crossbowmen and archers. With this company, so unequal with respect to the large number of the king's troops, they went to enter the level field, where the others were waiting for them.

And Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante summoned Elian the Vigorous, who was one of the most spruce knights and who appeared better armed than the majority were; and they told him to go to King Lisuarte, he and two other knights with him who were his cousins, and to tell him that if he gave orders to remove the crossbowmen and archers from between the divisions of the

knights, they would have one of the finest battles that he had ever seen. These three went at once to carry it out, having moved away from the battalions, appearing so fine that they were scrutinized intensively by everyone. And know you that this Elian the Vigorous was a nephew of Don Cuadragante, son of his sister, and of Count Liquedo, first cousin of King Perion of Gaul. And having reached the first division of Don Galaor they asked for a safe-conduct, for they were coming to the king with a message. Don Galaor gave them assurance and sent with them Cendil of Ganota, so that they would be safe from the others. And having come before the king, they said to him: "Sire, Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante and the other knights who are there to defend the land of Madasima, send us to tell you, if you please, to withdraw the crossbowmen and archers from between you and them, and you will see a fine battle."

"In the name of God," said the king, "remove yours and Cendil of Ganota will withdraw mine."

This was done at once, and those three knights went to their company, and Cendil went to Don Galaor to tell him with what request they had come to the king; and then the divisions moved, some knights against others so close that there was not between them the space of three bow shots. And Don Galaor recognized his brother Don Florestan by the face-guard of his helmet, and Don Cuadragante and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, who were coming in front of their men. And he said to Norandel: "My good friend, see there where three knights are together, the best that could be found; that one with the red armor and white lions is Don Florestan, and the one with the blue armor and flowers of gold and purple lions is Angriote de Estravaus, and that one who has the blue field and flowers of silver is Don Cuadragante, and this one in front of everybody, with green armor is Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, the very fine knight who killed the serpent, whence he acquired this name. Now let us go attack them."

And then they moved forward, their lances lowered, and covered by their shields, and the three opposing knights came to receive them. But Norandel spurred his horse and turned to Gavarte of the Fearful Valley and attacked him so violently that he knocked him from his horse to the ground and the saddle on top of him; this was the first blow that he struck, which was

considered by all a very noble beginning. And Don Galaor joined with Don Cuadragante, and they both attacked each other so fiercely that their horses and they fell to the ground; and Cendil came to grips with Elian the Vigorous, and although they broke their lances, and were wounded, they remained on their horses. At this time the divisions were joined and the noise of the shouts and of the blows was so loud that the Moorish trumpets and horns were not heard. Many knights were killed and wounded, and others knocked off their horses; great anger and fury arose in the hearts of those on both sides.

But the greatest melee was over defending Don Galaor and Don Cuadragante, who were fighting with great celerity at close quarters and striking each other with their swords in order to win, so that they frightened those who were watching them; and already there were from both sides more than one hundred knights dismounted with them in order to help them and give them their horses. But they were so close together and in such haste that they could not be separated; but during that hour what Norandel and Guilan the Pensive did for Don Galaor could not be related to you nor could what Don Florestan and Angriote did for Don Cuadragante; for as the attacking troops were more numerous than theirs, they charged at them; but they were so severely punished by their blows that they gave way and did not dare approach them. But finally so many men intervened between them that Don Galaor and Don Cuadragante had time to take their horses; and like angry lions they rushed into the fray, unhorsing and wounding those who were in their path, each one helping those on his side.

At that hour King Cildadan attacked with his division so fiercely that many knights were unhorsed on both sides; Don Galvanes came immediately to the rescue and entered the press so fiercely attacking his foes, that he gave them clearly to understand that the fight was his, and that battle had been joined for his cause; for he feared neither death nor danger, nor did he deem them of any consequence in comparison with injuring those whom he hated so much and who had come to disinherit him. And those of his division continued to hold steadfast; and since all were very courageous, picked knights, they wreaked much harm on their foes.

Don Florestan, who was very angry, considering Amadis his brother to be the leader in this dispute, although he was not there, and thinking that if it befitted those knights of his side out of their great valor to perform rare feats, it befitted him to accomplish much more, went about like a mad dog, seeking what major harm he could inflict. And he saw King Cildadan, who was fighting fiercely and was doing great harm to his foes, so much so that at that hour he was surpassing his men in fighting well. And he let himself go through the midst of the knights, for they were not able to hinder him with the many blows that they gave him; and he came up to Cildadan in such a rush and so eager to attack him that he could do nothing else but throw his strong arms about him, and the king his around him. And immediately they were aided by many knights who were guarding them. But their horses having swerved apart, they landed on the ground on foot, and grasping their swords they struck each other hard, deadly blows. But Enil the good knight and Angriote of Estravaus, who were protecting Don Florestan, performed so well that they gave him the horse; and when Don Florestan saw himself on horseback, he rushed into the melee performing marvels at arms, remembering what his brother Amadis would have been able to do, if he had been there.

And Norandel, who was wearing badly damaged armor through which blood was flowing in many places, and was using his sword up to the hilt with the many blows that he had struck with it, when he saw King Cildadan on foot, called to Don Galaor, and said: "Don Galaor, you see the situation your friend King Cildadan is in. Let us help him; if we don't he is dead."

"At once, my good friend," said Don Galaor, "may your great excellence appear, and let us give him a horse and stay with him."

Then they went among the troops, attacking and unhorsing as many as they overtook; and with a great effort they put him on a horse, because he was badly wounded from a sword cut that Dragonis had given him on the head, from which much blood was flowing down to his eyes. And at that hour the troops of King Lisuarte could not be of enough avail against the great strength of their foes to avoid being expelled in flight from the field without awaiting a blow, except for Don Galaor and a few other distinguished knights who kept on defending and withdrawing

then until they arrived where King Lisuarte was. He, when he saw them coming thus vanquished, shouted: "Now, my good friends, may your excellence appear, and let us defend the honor of the kingdom of London."

And he spurred his horse, saying "Clarence, Clarence!" which was his surname, and charged at his enemies through the greatest crush; and he saw Don Galvanes, who was fighting fiercely, and he struck him so hard with his lance that it was broken to pieces, and he made him lose his foothold in the stirrups, and he embraced the neck of his horse and the king grasped his sword, and began to strike in all directions; so that there he showed a great deal of his courage and valor, and his men courageously held and kept on exerting themselves along with him. But all was in vain, for Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante and Angriote and Gavarte, who found themselves all together, performed such feats at arms that through their great efforts it seemed that their enemies would be overcome; so that everybody thought that from there onward they would not hold the field against them. King Lisuarte, who saw his troops thus withdrawn and badly off, was quite fearful of being vanquished; and he called Don Guilan the Pensive, who was badly wounded, and he came up to him, and also King Arban of North Wales and Grumedan of Norway, and he said to them: "I see our troops worsted, and I am fearful lest God, whom I have never served as I ought, not give me the honor of this battle. Now let us see to it that I can be said to be a king conquered or dead with honor, but not overcome alive with dishonor."

Then he spurred his horse and rushed among them without any fear for his death, And as he saw Don Cuadragante coming at him, he turned his horse toward him, and they struck each other with their swords on top of their helmets such mighty blows that they had to grasp the necks of their horses. But since the sword of the king was much better, he cut so deep that he made a wound in his head. But they were immediately helped, the king by Don Galaor and by Norandel and by those who were riding with him; and Don Cuadragante by Don Florestan and by Angriote de Estravaus. And the king, who saw the wonders that Don Florestan was performing, went up to him and with his sword struck such a blow on his horse's head that he knocked it down

with him amid the knights. It was not long before he reeeived the payment for it, for Florestan immediately eame out from under his horse and went for the king, although many were proteeting him, and he only reaehed the leg of his horse, and eutting through it eompletely knoeked it with him to the ground. The king eame out from under it so very agilely that Don Florestan was amazed; and he struek Don Florestan two blows with his very good sword, so that the armor did not keep it from eutting his flesh. But Florestan remembering how he had been the king's man, and the honors that he had reeeived from him, refrained from striking him, eovering himself with what little of the shield he had left; but the king, with the great fury he had, did not eease striking him as hard as he eould. And not even on that aeeount did Don Florestan seek to strike him, but seized him in his arms and would not let him mount or withdraw from him. There was a very great melee of both factions to help them, and the king ealled himself by name so that his men would reeognize him; and at these shouts, Don Galaor eame up, and reaehing the king, said: "Sire, make use of this horse of mine."

And already Felispinel and Brandoyvas were with him on foot giving him their horses. And Galaor said to him: "Sire, make use of my horse."

But he, seeing to it that he not dismount, took Felispinel's horse, leaving Don Florestan badly wounded by that good sword of his, for he never delivered a blow that did not eut his armor and flesh, without the other's seeking to strike him, as has been said already. And Don Florestan was plaeed on a horse that Don Cuadragante brought him.

The king, gratuitously exposing his body to every danger, ealling Don Galaor and Norandel and King Cildadan and the others who were following him, rushed into the greatest press of troops, attaeking and wreaking havoe on all that he found in his path, so that he was eredited at that time with the improvement of all those on his side. And Don Florestan and Cuadragante and Gavarte, and other distinguished knights, withstood the king and his men as mueh as they were able, performing wonders at arms; but as they were few and many of them battered and wounded, and their foes a great multitude of men who at the

courage of the king had taken heart and charged so suddenly and so forcefully at them that, not only on account of their many wounds, but also because of the strength of the horses, they routed them from the field to the point of driving them to the foot of the ridge; where Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante and Angriote and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, their arms broken to pieces, receiving many wounds, not only to help those on their side, but also to win back the lost field, their horses dead and they almost dead, remained recumbent on the field in the power of the king and his men; and together with them, likewise taken prisoners in an effort to rescue them, were Palomir and Elian the Haughty, and Branfil and Enil and Sarquiles, and Maratros of Lisanda, cousin of Don Florestan; and there were many dead and wounded on both sides. And Don Galvanes would have been lost many times if Dragonis had not rescued him with his troops. But finally he took him out of the press so badly wounded that he was too weak to stand up, so insensible was he; and he had him taken to the Boiling Lake; and he remained with that small company that had escaped by defending the ridge from the enemy.

Thus one can say with much fairness that because of the fortitude of the king and the great folly of Don Florestan in not wanting to strike or force him when he had him in his power, this battle was won as you hear; for one should compare that mighty Hector when he had the first battle with the Greeks at the time when they wanted to disembark in his great harbor of Troy, who having them almost overcome and fires set at many points in the fleet, where there was no longer resistance, there was by chance in that great melee his cousin Ajax Talamon, son of Ansiona his aunt; and Hector recognizing him and they embracing each other, at Ajax's request he withdrew the Trojans from the fight, taking from their hands that great victory and making them return to the city; which was the reason why, the Greeks having landed, their army camp having experienced so many deaths, so many fires, such great destruction, that very strong people, that very famous city outstanding in the world, was demolished and destroyed in such a way that never from the memory of man will it be dropped as long as the world endures; by which one is given to understand that in such en-

counters, pity and courtesy ought not to operate with friend or relative until victory is obtained and completed, because many times it happens in a way similar to that good luck and fortune that men have prepared by themselves: not knowing how to recognize it or use it as they should, they turn it to the aid of those who are considering it lost, and by taking it away from themselves, cause them to take it.

Then returning to the subject matter, when King Lisuarte saw that his enemies were off the field and taking refuge on the ridge, and that the sun was setting, he ordered that none of his men go ahead from then on, and placed his guards in order to be secure and because Dragonis, who with the troops had taken refuge in the mountain, had won the strongest passes of it. And he ordered his tents removed from where he had them before, and had them located on the bank of a stream that came down at the foot of the mountain. And he said that they should bring King Cildadan and Don Galaor; but he was told that they were immersed in grief over Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante, who were at the point of death. And as he had already dismounted, he asked for his horse, more to console them than with any desire to order help given those knights, because they were his foes; although he was moved somewhat to pity on remembering how Don Florestan in the battle that he had with King Cildadan placed his unprotected head in front of him and received on his shield that mighty blow of the valiant Gadancuriel so that it would not strike the king; and also how that same day he virtuously had stopped striking. And he went to where they were, and consoling them with affectionate words, by causing Florestan and Cuadragante to have medical attention, he left Galaor and Cildadan content. In this he was not so effective as to prevent Don Galaor from first swooning repeatedly over his brother, Don Florestan. But the king ordered them carried to a very good tent, and his physicians to care for them; and taking with him King Cildadan, he gave Don Galaor permission to spend the night with them there. And he took with him to the same tent the seven captive knights you have already heard about, where he had them cared for with the others. Thus as you hear, those wounded, unconscious knights and those who were prisoners were under

the protection of Don Galaor where with the help of God chiefly, and of the physicians, who were very learned, before dawn of day came they had all recovered consciousness, the physicians certifying to Don Galaor that according to the state of their wounds, they would be turned over to him healthy and unimpaired.

Next day, Don Galaor being present, Norandel, his friend and Don Guilan the Pensive with him to keep him company in his great sadness on account of his brother and the others of his lineage, they heard the trumpets and horns sound in the king's tent, which was a signal for the troops to arm. And they bound their wounds very well so that they would not bleed, and arming themselves and mounting their horses, they went there at once, and found the king armed with fresh weapons, and on a rested horse, deciding with King Arban of North Wales and King Cildadan and Don Grumedan what he would do in the attack on the knights that were on the ridge. And the opinions were diverse, for some said that according to the bad state of their own troops, it was not right, until they were in better condition, to attack their enemies. And others said that since for the moment they were all fired with anger, they would be ineffective if they delayed further to engage in the affair, especially if at that time Agrajes should come, who had gone to Little Brittany for food and troops, because with him they would gather great strength. And Don Galaor, when questioned by the king as to what it seemed to him should be done, said: "Sire, if your troops are battered and weary, so too are your opponents; since they are few and we many, it would be better that they be attacked at once."

"So let it be done," said the king.

Then, his troops having been deployed, they attacked the ridge, Don Galaor leading the way, and Norandel his companion following him, and all the others behind them. And although Dragonis, with the troops which he had, defended for some time the passes and ascents of the ridge, so many crossbowmen and archers charged there, wounding many of them, that they made them perforce give way; and when the knights ascended to level ground, there was quite a perilous battle between them. But not

being able finally to withstand the many troops, of necessity they had to withdraw to the town and castle. And immediately the king arrived, and ordering his tents and equipment brought, he laid siege to them and surrounded them; and he ordered his fleet to come and encircle the castle from the sea.

And because the relation of the events occurring then does not greatly concern this story, since it is about Amadis and he was not in this war, this account will stop here. Only let it be known that the king had them surrounded for thirteen months by land and by sea, for they were not afforded a rescue from any quarter, because Agrajes was ailing, and moreover did not have such equipment as to be able to damage the huge fleet of the king. And those inside lacking food, a pact was initiated between them that the king should set free all the prisoners, and that Don Galvanes should do the same with those that he held. And that the town and castle of the Boiling Lake be surrendered to the king, and that they should have a truce for two years. And although this was to the advantage of the king, in view of his great security he would not have been willing to agree if he had not had letters from the Count of Argamonte, his uncle, who had remained in the land, to the effect that all the kings of the islands were rising against him on seeing him engaged in that war, and that they were taking as chief and leader King Aravigo, lord of the islands of Landas, who was the most powerful among them; and that all this Arcalaus the Enchanter had plotted, for he in person had gone through all those islands inciting them to rebel and uniting them by assuring them that they would not encounter any resistance and that they would be able to divide among themselves that kingdom of Great Britain; hence Count Argamonte kept counseling the king to leave everything and return to his kingdom.

This news was the cause of bringing the king to the agreement that he of his own free will would not have desired, for he had wanted to take them all. So the agreement having been made, the king accompanied by many nobles went to the town, whose gates he found open, and from there to the castle. And Don Galvanes came out, and those knights who were with him, and Madasima with tears falling down her beautiful cheeks; and Don Galvanes

came up to the king and gave him the keys and said: "Sire, do with this whatever be your will."

The king took them and gave them to Brandoyvas. Galaor approached him and said to him: "Sire, moderation and mercy, for it is needed; and if I have served you, remember it at this hour."

"Don Galaor," said the king, "if I were to consider the services that you have done me, a suitable reward would not be found, even if I were worth a thousand times more than I am; and what I shall do here will not be counted a part of what I owe you."

Then he said: "Don Galvanes, this which by force against my will you took from me, and by force I have won back again, I desire of my own free will, on account of your worth and the excellence of Madasima, and because of Don Galaor, who insistently begs me, that it be yours, it remaining under my sovereignty and you in my service; and those who be your descendants shall have it as theirs."

"Sire," said Don Galvanes, "since my ill fortune has not afforded me the opportunity to acquire it in the way that my heart desired, as one who has fulfilled his commitments without being in any way remiss, I receive it as a boon, under the condition that as long as I hold it I be your vassal; and if my heart should be otherwise inclined, that by turning it back to you, I be free to do whatever I desire."

Then the knights of the king who were there kissed his hands in token of fealty for what he had done, and Don Galvanes and Madasima as his vassals.

The war having been ended, King Lisuarte decided to return at once to his kingdom, and so he did; for after resting there for two weeks, during which time he, as well as the others who were wounded, were restored to health, taking with him Don Galvanes, and of the others those who wished to go with him, he embarked with his fleet. And sailing over the sea, he made port in his own land, where he found news of those seven kings who were coming against him. And although he considered it a serious matter, he did not let his own men know that; rather, he gave the impression that he deemed it unimportant. And leaving the sea, he went to where the queen was, by whom he was received with that true

love which she had for him. And there, on verifying the news that those kings were coming, while not ceasing to disport and enjoy himself with the queen and his daughter, and with his knights, he prepared the things needed to resist that danger.

CHAPTER LXVIII

IN WHICH IS RELATED HOW, AFTER AMADIS AND DON BRUNEO REMAINED IN GAUL, DON BRUNEO WAS VERY HAPPY AND AMADIS SAD; AND HOW DON BRUNEO DECIDED TO LEAVE AMADIS AND TO GO IN SEARCH OF ADVENTURES. AND AMADIS AND HIS FATHER, KING PERION, AND FLORESTAN DECIDED TO GO AND AID KING LISUARTE.

When King Cildadan and Don Galaor left Gaul, Amadis and Don Bruneo of Bonamar remained there. But although they had a sincere affection for each other, they were very different in their lives, for Don Bruneo, being there where his lady Melicia was and talking with her, had no thought of anything else; but since Amadis was far away from his lady Oriana without any hope of being able to see her, everything at hand produced in him only great sadness and loneliness. And so it happened that one day while riding along the seashore with only Gandalin for company, he climbed to the summit of some crags to ascertain whether from there he would see any ships coming from Great Britain whereby he might obtain news of that land where his lady was. And after he had been there a short while, he saw a boat coming from the desired direction; and when it reached the harbor, he said to Gandalin: "Go and find out news from those who come there, and memorize it carefully, so that you may be able to tell it to me."

And he did this more in order to daydream of his lady, for which Gandalin was always a hindrance, than for any other reason. And when Gandalin left him he dismounted from his horse, and tying it to some tree branches, he seated himself up on a pinnacle in order the better to see Great Britain; and meanwhile, having

all that so far removed and so without hope of recovery, bringing to mind the extreme delights and pleasures that he had had in the presence of his lady in that land where he did everything at her command, he was plunged into such deep sorrow that he never removed his gaze from that land, while shedding copious tears.

Gandalin went to the ship, and watching those who came in it, he saw among them Durin, brother of the maid of Denmark, and he went down quickly and called him aside; and they embraced each other fondly as men who had a deep regard for each other; and taking Durin with him, Gandalin brought him to Amadis. And on coming near where he was, they saw a diabolical figure of gigantic proportions that had its back to them, and was brandishing a javelin and hurled it at Amadis with great force; and it passed over his head, and that blow missed because of the loud shouts that Gandalin uttered. And Amadis, emerging from his daydream, saw that huge devil hurl another javelin; but he, by jumping aside, caused it to miss the mark. And grasping his sword, he went for it to strike it; but saw it go running so swiftly that nothing could overtake it. And it reached Amadis's horse, and on mounting it, cried out: "Ah, Amadis, my enemy! I am Andandona, the giantess of the Sad Island; if this time I did not succeed in what I desired, time will not be lacking in which to avenge myself."

Amadis, who wanted to go after her on Gandalin's horse, when he saw that it was a woman, stopped and said to Gandalin: "Mount this horse, and if you could cut off the head of that she-devil, it would be very good."

Gandalin, on mounting, went as fast as he could go after her; and Amadis, when he saw Durin, went and embraced him with great joy, for he fully believed he was bringing him news of his lady. And taking him to the rock where he had been before, he asked him about his arrival. Durin gave him a missive from Oriana which was a letter of accreditation, and Amadis said to him: "Tell me at once what word they sent by you."

He said to him: "Sir, your beloved is well, and sends you her best regards, and begs you not to worry, but to console yourself as she does until God brings other times. And she wants you to know that she has given birth to a son, which my sister and I took to Dalasta, the abbess of Miraflores, that she might rear it

as the son of my sister," — but he did not tell him how they lost it; — "and she entreats you, because of that great love that she has for you, not to leave this land until you have her command to do so."

Amadis was happy to hear from his lady and about the child, but that command that he remain there did not please him, for his honor would thereby be tarnished because of what people would say about him; but however that might be, he would not disregard her command.

And after being there a while ascertaining news from Durin, he saw Gandalin coming, who had gone after that she-devil, and he was leading Amadis's horse with Andandona's head tied to the breast strap by its long, gray hair, a sight which afforded Amadis and Durin great pleasure. And he asked him how he had killed her, and he said that while he was pursuing her, and she was endeavoring to dismount from the horse on which she was riding, in order to get into a boat that she had concealed under branches, in her haste she caused the horse to rear up, fall over backwards, and pinion her underneath, so that it crushed her.

"And I came up and ran over her, so that she fell outstretched on the ground, and then I cut off her head."

Amadis immediately mounted his horse, went off to the town, and ordered Andandona's head taken to Don Bruneo so that he might see it; and he said to Durin: "My friend, go to my lady and tell her that I kiss her hands for the letter that she sent me and for the message from her that you gave me, and that I beg her as a favor to have pity on my honor by not permitting me to dally here very long, for I must not disregard her command, because those who see me in such idleness, not knowing the cause of it, will attribute it to cowardice and timidity. And since a reputation for valor is achieved with great difficulty, and with slight forgetfulness and a brief interval of time may be damaged, if that great glory and fame (that up till now I have tried to win by remembering her and with her favor), I permitted to be greatly obscured, since all men naturally are more inclined with their evil tongues to injure what is good than to advocate, very quickly I would be in such discredit and dishonor that death itself would not be equal to it."

With this Durin returned to where he had come from.

And Don Bruneo of Bonamar — since he was now well improved from his body wound, and in that of the spirit even more cruelly wounded, as one who was seeing his lady Melicia frequently, which caused his heart to be set aflame with greater suffering on reflecting that his heart's desire could not be obtained without his making a great effort and incurring greater danger by performing such deeds that he be desired and loved for his great valor by a lady of such high degree — decided to withdraw from that great delight in order to pursue what he might achieve of what he most desired. And being ready to bear arms, when out hunting with Amadis, who had no other life but hunting, he said to him: "Sir, my age and the little honor that I have won constrain me to leave this very restful life and to proceed to another wherein with more praise and prestige I may be exalted. And if you are inclined to seek adventure, I shall wait for you; and if not, I ask your leave, for tomorrow I wish to be on my way."

Amadis, on hearing this, was tormented by great anguish, for he very ardently desired to fare forth, and was not able to do so because of the prohibition by his lady; and he said: "Don Bruneo, I should like to be in your company, because great honor could come to me from it; but the command of the king my father forbids my doing so, for he tells me that he needs me in order to take care of a few things in his kingdom; so for the present I cannot do anything but commend you to God's protection."

After they returned to the town that night, Don Bruneo talked with Melicia, and on being assured by her that if it were the wish of the king her father and that of the queen, she would be glad to marry him, he said good-bye to her. And so he took leave of the king and the queen, and assuring them of his deep gratitude for their kindness to him and pledging that he would always be at their service, he went to bed. And at dawn, after hearing mass, armed and mounted, being escorted on his way by the king and Amadis, he bade farewell to them with great humility and went on his journey to wherever fortune guided him; on which journey he performed many and rare feats at arms, which it would take too long to relate. But now no more will be told about him until the proper time.

Amadis remained in Gaul as you hear, where he dwelt thirteen months and a half, (during the period that the eastle of the Boiling Lake was under siege by King Lisuarte,) going hunting for both small and big game, for he was more inelined to this than to anything else; and meanwhile his great fame and prowess beeame so beelouded and so seorned by all while praising the other knights who sought adventures at arms, that they heaped eurses upon him, saying he had abandoned while in his prime what God had bestowed on him so surpassingly over all others. Especially was he eensured by the matrons and maidens who eame to him with grievous and outrageous wrongs for him to provide a remedy; and not finding it as they were aeeustomed to do, they went irately about, proelaiming the diseredit of his honor. And although all or most of this eame to his ears, whenee he eonsidered it his great misfortune, neither on that aeeount nor beeause of anything else more eogent would he dare disregard or break the eommandment of his lady. Thus he was, at this aforementioned time that you hear, defamed and reviled by all, hoping that his lady would eommand him, until King Lisuarte, learning through aeeurate reports that King Aravigo and the other six kings were already with all their troops on Leonida Island for the purpose of erossing over to Great Britain, and Arealaus the Enehanter, who was goading them very zealously, assuring them that beeoming masters of that kingdom was only a matter of going over to it, and many other things in order to induee them not to take any other measures, King Lisuarte — we repeat — readied as many troops as he eould to resist them. And although he, with his stout heart and great prudenee, indieated he had but little eoneern about that attaek, the queen did not do so; instead with great anguish she affirmed to everyone the great loss the king had sustained in losing Amadis and his relatives; for if they were there, she would deem unimportant what that body of men eould do.

But those knights who were routed on the Island of Mongaza, although they did not desire the welfare of the king, on seeing Don Galaor on his side, and Don Brian of Monjaste (who by order of King Ladasan of Spain was eoming with two thousand knights whom he sent to aid Lisuarte — knights of whom Don Brian was to be the leader and was to serve the king), and

Don Galvanes, who was Lisuarte's vassal, agreed to be of assistance to him in that battle, from which great danger at arms was expected. And those who found themselves there were Don Cuadragante and Listoran of the White Tower and Ymosil of Burgundy, and Madancil of the Bridge of Silver, and others, companions of theirs who remained there out of regard for them. All worked zealously to prepare their arms and horses and what else was necessary, expecting that when those kings left that island, King Lisuarte would move out against them.

Mabilia spoke one day with Oriana, saying that it was careless at such a time not to consider what Amadis ought to do; for if by chance he went against her father, the danger for some of them could increase; for if her father's side were vanquished, in addition to the great harm that would come to her by losing the land that was to be hers, in accordance with his courage it was certain that the king would be killed; and similarly if the side on which Amadis was were overcome. Oriana, recognizing that she was speaking the truth, agreed to take the step of writing to Amadis not to go into that battle against her father, but that he could go anywhere else he liked, or stay in Gaul if he pleased. This letter of Oriana's was put in another from Mabilia and carried by a maid who had come to the court with gifts from Queen Elisena to Oriana and Mabilia; which maid having taken leave of them, on crossing over to Gaul, gave the letter to Amadis, who from the message, after having read it, was so happy that certainly he could not be more so, like a man who seemed to be emerging from darkness into the light. But he was placed in great concern by not being able to decide what he would do, for of his own volition he had no desire to be in battle on the side of King Lisuarte, and he could not go against him, because his lady forbade him; thus he was bewildered without knowing what to do. And then he went to the king his father with a more cheerful mien than he had had there until then, and while talking they both sat down in the shade of some elms near the seashore. And there they talked over things, and chiefly the news that they had heard from Great Britain concerning the uprising against King Lisuarte of those kings with such huge companies.

Then, while King Perion and Amadis were occupied as you hear, they saw coming a knight on a weary, exhausted horse, and

his armor, which a squire was carrying, slashed in many places, so that its device did not show whose it was and the coat of mail rent and in bad condition, from which there was little protection. The knight was tall and appeared very well armed. They arose where they were and went to receive him to do him all honor as a knight who was seeking adventures. And being closer, Amadis recognized him, for he was his brother Don Florestan, and he said to the king: "Sire, there you see the best knight that I know with the exception of Don Galaor, and know you that Don Florestan is your son."

The king was very happy, for he had never seen him, and knew about his great fame, and walked faster than before; but Don Florestan, having arrived, dismounted and kneeling, sought to kiss the king's foot, but the king raised him up and gave him his hand, and kissed him on the mouth. Then they took him with them to the palace, and had him disarm and wash his face and hands, and Amadis had him put on some of his own clothes, very fine and well made, that had not been worn until then; and as he was large of body, well formed and handsome of countenance, his appearance was so prepossessing that there were few who looked as gallant as he. So they took him to the queen, and by her and by her daughter Melicia, he was welcomed with as much affection as either of his brothers would have been, for he was held in no less esteem in view of the great feats at arms which he had accomplished, which were known. And while they were speaking with him about some of them, he responded like a discreet and well-bred knight; and they asked him, since he came from Great Britain, about that matter of the kings of the islands and their forces. Don Florestan said to them: "That I know for certain; and believe me, lords and ladies, the strength of those kings is so great and they possess such unusually strong forces that I think that King Lisuarte will not be able to defend himself or his land — an inability which ought not to cause us much sorrow, in view of past events."

"Son Don Florestan," said the king, "I deem King Lisuarte, according to what I am told about him, to be possessed of such courage as well as the other good qualities which a king ought to have that he will emerge from this attack with the honor with which he has emerged from the others; and even though the

opposite were true, it should not give us pleasure, because no king ought to be happy with the destruction of another king, unless he himself should destroy him for legitimate reasons that obliged him to do so."

Thus they remained for a while; then the king retired to his chamber, and Amadis and Don Florestan to theirs. And when they were alone, Florestan said: "Sir, I have come seeking you to tell you a thing I have heard everywhere that I have gone, for which my heart feels great sorrow; and may it not irk you to hear it."

"Brother," said Amadis, "I shall be pleased to hear everything said by you, and if it is such that it ought to be corrected, I shall do so with your counsel."

Don Florestan said: "Believe me, sir, everybody is speaking ill of you, discrediting your honor, thinking that unjustifiably you have ceased to bear arms and abandoned that for which you were born outstandingly good among all."

Amadis said to him laughing: "They are thinking of me what they should not, and from now on it will be done otherwise, and they will speak of it otherwise."

That day they spent with great happiness because of the arrival of that knight, whom many people came to see and to honor. Night having come, they retired to luxurious beds; and Amadis could not sleep, thinking about two things: the one, to do so much that year at arms that what they had said of him would be purged with the opposite; the other: what would he do in that battle that was expected? For according to its magnitude, he could not excuse himself for not being in it without great shame, since his lady prohibited his being against King Lisuarte and reason prohibited his going to his assistance, for the king had been ungrateful to him and had mistreated those of his lineage. But finally he decided to be in the battle in aid of King Lisuarte for two reasons: the one, because his troops were much fewer than the foes'; and the other because if the king were vanquished, the land that was to be his lady Oriana's would be lost.

The next morning Amadis took with him Florestan and went to the chamber of the king his father, and ordering everyone to leave, he said to him: "Sire, I did not sleep last night because I was thinking about this battle that is looming between those

kings of the islands and King Lisuarte; for as this will be an outstanding event, all those who bear arms should be in such a great affair as it will be, on one side or on the other. And since I have been such a long time without exercising my person and thereby I have gained such ill fame as you, brother, are aware, finally because of my concern I have decided to participate in the battle, and on the side of King Lisuarte, not out of any love for him, but for two reasons that you shall now hear: the first, on account of his having fewer troops, for which reason all good men should lend aid; the second, because my thought is to die there, or do more than I would anywhere else I might be. And if I were on the opposite side from King Lisuarte, Galaor is on his side, and Don Cuadragante, and Brian de Monjaste, so that each one of these, according to his excellence, will have this same thought; and not being able to avoid meeting with me, you see that from this can result nothing but their death or mine. But my coming will be so concealed that I will not be recognized if I can help it."

The king said to him: "Son, I am fond of good men, and as I know this king of whom you speak to be one of them, my desire has always been prepared to honor him and help him as best I could; and if I am now withdrawn from it, it has been because of these differences which he has had with you and your friends. And since your intention is such, I also wish to be at his service and to see the things that will be done there. I regret that the business is so immediate that I shall not be able to bring the troops that I would like; but with those that I can raise, we shall go."

This having been heard by Don Florestan, he remained pensive for a while, and then said: "Sirs, on calling to mind the cruelty of that king and how he would have left us to die on the field if it had not been for Don Galaor, and the enmity he has for us without cause, there is no reason in the world why my heart should be disposed to aid him. But two things that occur to me at present cause my intention to be changed. The one is my love for you, sirs, whom I must serve and aid. And the other is that at the time that Don Galvanes made a compact with him, when the Island of Mongaza was turned over to him, we established a truce for two years; therefore, it is necessary that I serve

him unwillingly. And I wish to go in your company, for my spirit would always be in great anguish if such a battle should take place without my being in it on one side or the other."

Amadis was very happy about how everything was being done according to his desire, and he said to the king: "Sire, you alone, and we who will serve you, should be accounted the equivalent of many soldiers. It only remains to plan how we may go secretly, and with distinctive and recognizable arms that may guide us so that we may be able to succor each other; for if you took more troops it would be impossible for our departure to be secret."

"Since that is your opinion," said the king, "let us go to my armory and take from it the most rare and distinctive arms that we find there."

Then, on leaving the chamber, they went into a yard where there were some trees; and while they were seated under them, they saw coming a maiden richly clad on a very beautiful palfrey, and three squires with her, and a pack horse with a pack on it. And she came up to the king after the squires helped her dismount, and she greeted them. And the king received her very well and said to her: "Maiden, do you seek the queen?"

"No," said she, "only you and those two knights, and I come on behalf of the lady of the Undiscovered Island, and I bring you here some gifts that she sends you; therefore order all the people to withdraw and I shall show them to you."

The king ordered them to retire. The maiden had her squires unfasten the pack that the palfrey was carrying, and she took out of it three shields, their fields of silver, with serpents in gold so artfully superimposed on it that they seemed alive, and their borders were of fine gold set with precious stones. And then she took out three knightly devices of the same design as the shields and three helmets, each different, one being white, another purple, and the third golden. The white one with one shield and its device she gave to King Perion, the purple one to Don Florestan, and the golden one with what went with it to Amadis. And she said to him: "Sir Amadis, my lady sends you these arms, and tells you to perform better with them than you have done since you entered this land."

Amadis was fearful that she would disclose the cause of it and said: "Damsel, tell your mistress that I esteem more highly that advice that she gives me than the arms, although they are rich and beautiful, and that I shall do with all my might as she commands."

The maiden said: "Sirs, my lady sends you these arms so that by means of them you may recognize and aid each other wherever it may be necessary."

"How did your lady find out," said the king, "that we would be in the battle, for even we do not know it?"

"I do not know," said the maiden, "except that she told me that at this hour I would find you together in this place, and that here I should give you the arms."

The king ordered that she be dined and received with high honor. The maiden, as soon as she had eaten, left at once for Great Britain, to which she had been ordered to go.

Amadis, when he saw such an equipment of arms, was in a hurry to depart, fearing that the battle would take place without his being in it, and this having been recognized by the king his father, the latter ordered that a ship be prepared secretly at once; in which with the pretext of going hunting, having boarded it at midnight one night, without any delay they crossed over to Great Britain, landing where they had previously found out that the seven kings had put into port. And they went into a forest amid thick underbrush, where their men set up a tent for them, and from there they sent a squire to find out what the seven kings were doing, in what location they were, and to strive to ascertain on what day the battle would take place. And likewise they sent a letter to the armed camp of King Lisuarte for Don Galaor, as though they were sending it to him from Gaul, and instructed this messenger to tell him verbally that all three of them were remaining in Gaul, and that they earnestly besought him to let them know about the condition of his health after he participated in the battle. This they did in order to remain more disguised.

The squire returned late next day, and told them that the troops of the kings were countless and that among them there were obvious foreigners who spoke diverse tongues, and that they had under siege a castle belonging to some maidens, and that although the castle was very strong, the maidens were suf-

fering extreme hardship according to what he had heard; and that going through the army eamp he had seen Arcalaus the Enehanter, who was talking with two kings and saying that it was important to have the battle at the end of six days, because rations would be hard to obtain for so many troops.

So they were very comfortable in that shelter, and with great enjoyment they were killing with bow and arrow the birds that eame to drink at a spring that they had nearby, and even some deer; and on the fourth day, the other messenger arrived, and told them: "Sirs, I leave Don Galaor in good health and very courageous, so much so that all take heart from him. And when I told him your message and that all three of you were staying in Gaul together, the tears came to his eyes, and sighing, he said: 'Oh, Lord, if only it had been your pleasure that they should be together in this battle, on the side of the king as they used to be, I would have lost all fear!' And he told me that if he should eome out of the battle alive, he would let you know at once about himself and about all that had happened."

"May God protect him," said they, "and now tell us about the troops of King Lisuarte."

"Sirs," said he, "he brings a very good eompany, with knights very distinguished and renowned, but compared to that of the enemy, it is said to be very small. And the king will be in sight of his enemies within these next two days in order to suecor the maidens who are besieged."

And so it was, for King Lisuarte came with his troops and took a position on a hill a half league from the meadow where his enemies were, where they could see one another, but the troops of the seven kings were fully twice as many in number. There King Lisuarte remained that night preparing all his arms and horses in order to engage them in battle the next day. Now know you that the six kings and other noble lords paid homage that night to King Aravigo beeause they considered him their leader in that engagement and themselves to be guided by his eommand. And he swore to them not to take a larger share of that kingdom than any of the rest of them, that he wanted only honor for himself. And immediately they had all their troops cross a river that was between them and King Lisuarte; so that they took a position very near to him.

The next morning they all armed, and there stood before King Aravigo such a large number of troops so well armed that they considered their adversaries as nothing. And they said that since the king dared to engage them in battle, Great Britain was theirs. King Aravigo made nine divisions of the troops, each one of a thousand knights, but in his own he had fifteen hundred; and he gave them to the kings and other knights, and stationed them in close formation.

King Lisuarte ordered Don Grumedan and Don Galaor and Don Cuadragante and Angriote de Estravaus to distribute his troops and station them on the field in the formation in which they were to fight, for these men knew a great deal about all types of warfare. And then he came down the slope of the hill to station himself on the plain; and as it was at sunrise the sun was reflected on the armor, and those wearing it appeared so fine and so gallant that those enemies of theirs, who previously had held them in slight esteem, judged them differently. Those knights that I am telling you about made of the troops five divisions. And Don Brian de Monjaste had the first with one thousand knights from Spain who were his guard and whom his father had sent to King Lisuarte. And King Cildadan had the second with his own troops and with others that were given him. Don Galvanes and Agrajes, his nephew, had the third. Agrajes had come there out of love for him, and for his friends who were there, more than to serve the king. In the fourth went Giontes, nephew of the king, with plenty of good knights. King Lisuarte led the fourth, in which there were two thousand knights, and he requested and commanded Don Galaor and Don Cuadragante and Angriote de Estravaus, and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley and Grimon the Valiant to protect and look out for him. And for this reason he did not give them command of troops. Just as you hear, with this disposition they moved on the field very slowly against each other. But at this time there had already arrived on the plain King Perion and his sons Amadis and Florestan on their beautiful horses and with the arms of the serpent device, which flashed brightly in the sun; and they came straight ahead to place themselves between the two armies, brandishing their lances tipped with iron heads so spotless that they shone like stars; and the father was riding between his sons. They were the object of

intense scrutiny by both armies, and gladly would each have had them on its side, but no one knew whom they intended to help, or recognized them. And they when they saw the division of Brian de Monjaste going to engage the enemy, spurred their horses and drew up near Brian's standard. And at once they turned against King Targadan, who was coming toward Brian. Don Brian was happy with their aid, but did not recognize them; and when they saw it was time, they all three went and attacked the division of that King Targadan so harshly that they aroused great fear in everyone. In that encounter King Perion struck that king so hard that he knocked him to the ground and a part of the iron lance head pierced his breast. Amadis struck Abdasian the Fierce, for he didn't lend him any arms, and the lance penetrated him on one side and came out the other, and he fell like a dead man. Don Florestan knocked Carduel down to the feet of his horse and the saddle on top of him. These three, as the most distinguished of that division, had come forward to engage in combat with those of the serpents. And immediately the latter grasped their swords, and passed through that first division, unhorsing as many as they found in front of them; and attacked the opposing second division. And when they saw themselves thus in the midst of both divisions, there you would have seen those great and marvelous deeds of theirs; for with the swords they fought so well that from neither side was there a man who approached them, and they had under their horses' hooves more than ten knights that they had overthrown. But finally, when their foes saw they were only three, at once they were raining mighty blows on them from all sides, so that there was really needed the help of Don Brian de Monjaste, who came up at once with his Spaniards, who were strong troops and well mounted. And they came in among them with such force unhorsing and slaying, and some of them dying themselves and falling to the ground, that those of the serpent device were rescued and their foes so defied that perforce those two divisions gave way until making contact with the third. And there was a very great melee and great danger to all, and many knights from both sides died. But what King Perion and his sons did, words are inadequate to describe. The disorder was so great that King Aravigo feared that his own troops, which had retreated, would cause the others

to flee; and he shouted to Arcalaus to have all the divisions move up, and ordered that they break through in a sudden charge. And thus it was done, for all broke through together, and King Aravigo with them; but it was not long before the same was done by King Lisuarte. So the battalions were all mingled, and the blows were so many, and the shouting and uproar of the knights, that the earth trembled and the valleys kept resounding.

At this time King Perion, who was carrying on very bravely at the front, plunged so brashly among them that he might have lost his life; but immediately he was rescued by his sons, for many of those who were attacking him were killed by them, and the maidens from the tower shouted: "Bravo, knights, for the one with the white helmet fights the best!"

But during this supporting action the horse of Amadis was killed, and it fell with him in the thick of the fight, and those of his father and brother were badly wounded. And as they saw him on foot in such great danger, they dismounted and joined him. There many men charged to kill them, and others to help them; but they were in great danger, for if it had not been for the hard, cruel blows with which they attacked, so that their enemies dared not approach them, they would have been killed. And as King Lisuarte went charging up and down through the battalions with those six companions of his that you have already heard about, he saw those of the serpent device in such great danger, and said to Don Galaor and the others: "Now my good friends, show your prowess: let us rescue those who are helping us so well."

"Now, at them!" said Don Galaor.

Then they spurred their horses and went into the midst of that great press until they reached the standard of King Aravigo, who was shouting encouraging words to his own men. And King Lisuarte was charging so fiercely with that very good sword of his in his hand, and was striking so many and such deadly blows, that all were frightened on seeing him, and his protectors could scarcely keep up with him. And however much they attacked him, they could not resist strongly enough to keep him from reaching the standard and snatching it by force from the hands of the one who was holding it. And throwing it at the feet of

the horses, he shouted: "Clarence, Clarence, I am King Lisuarte!" For this was his surname.

He accomplished so much and endured so long among his enemies that they killed his horse and it fell, from which fall he was quite shaken up, so that those who were protecting him could not lift him up on another horse. But immediately there arrived Angriote and Antimon the Valiant and Landin de Fajarque; and dismounting they put him on Angriote's horse, in spite of his enemies, with the help of those who were protecting him. And although he was badly wounded and shaken up, he did not leave there until Antimon and Landin de Fajarque mounted and brought Angriote another horse from those that the king had ordered circulated in the battle in order to be aided by them.

At the hour that this happened, the whole onus of the battle and the attack was on Don Galaor and Cuadragante, and there they demonstrated very well their great valor in withstanding and striking deadly blows; and know you that if it had not been for them, who with their mighty effort held the troops, King Lisuarte and those who were with him, when they were on foot, would have seen themselves in great danger; and the maidens of the tower were shouting that those two knights of the flowered device were getting the best of it. But not on that account could the troops of King Aravigo be prevented at that time from gaining the upper hand. And they were fast gaining ground; and the principal reason for it was that there entered fresh into the fray two knights of such great prowess at arms and so valiant that with them they believed they would overcome their enemies, because they thought that on the side of King Lisuarte there was no knight who could hold the field against them. One was named Brontaxar de Anfania and the other Argomades of the Deep Island. The latter bore green arms adorned with white doves, and Brontaxar, arms with enamel work of gold and crimson; and when they went into the battle they appeared so tall that their helmets and their shoulders towered above all the others, and as long as their lances lasted, not a knight remained in his saddle; and when they were broken, they grasped their great, massive swords. What shall I say to you? Such blows they delivered with them that already they were finding almost no one to attack, so severely were they dealing out punishment to everyone with them. And so

they went forward, clearing the field of everyone, and the maidens of the tower were saying: "Knights, don't flee, for they are men, not devils."

But their men shouted, saying: "King Lisuarte is defeated."

When the king heard this, he began to encourage his own men, saying: "Here I shall remain either dead or victor, so that the sovereignty of Great Britain be not lost."

The large majority rallied to him, for it was very necessary. Amadis had taken now another very good, fresh horse, and was waiting for his father to mount; and when he heard those loud shouts saying that King Lisuarte was defeated, he said to Don Florestan, who was mounted: "What is this, or why do those contemptible people cry out?"

He said to him: "Don't you perceive those two strongest and most valiant knights ever seen, who lay low and destroy all whom they find before them, and have not even appeared in this battle until now, and with their strength they are succeeding in winning back the field for the troops on their side?"

Amadis turned his head, and saw Brontaxar de Anfania coming towards where he was, attacking and overthrowing knights with his sword; and sometimes he let it hang from a chain with which he had it fastened, and with his arms and hands was seizing the knights that he overtook so that none remained in the saddle and all moved away from him fleeing.

"Holy Mary, save us!" said Amadis. "What can this be?"

Then he took a sturdy lance that the squire who gave him the horse was holding, and remembering Oriana at that hour, and what great harm she would receive if her father should lose, he stood up in his saddle and said to Don Florestan: "Protect our father."

And this time Brontaxar came up closer and saw how Amadis was going straight toward him, and how he had the golden helmet; and because of the reports of the great things that he had been told about him before he himself entered the battle, he went forward with great fury, in a frenzy to meet him. And then he took a very thick lance, and said in a loud voice: "Now you will see a beautiful stroke if that man with the helmet of gold dares to await me."

And he spurred his horse, with his lance under his armpit, and went toward him; and Amadis, who was now in motion, likewise; and they struck each other with their lances on their shields, which were pierced at once and the lances broken; and they collided with each other with their horses' bodies so heavily that it seemed to each one that he had hit a hard rock. And Brontaxar was so dizzy that he could not hold himself on the horse, and he fell to the ground as if he were dead; and that great weight of his caused his whole body to come down on one foot, and he broke his ankle; and he bore a piece of the lance thrust through his shield, although it was strong. The horse of Amadis fell back a good four yards and was about to drop. And Amadis was so befuddled that he could not spur it or grasp his sword to defend himself from those who were attacking him. But King Perion who was already on horseback and saw the tall knight and the very hard clash that Amadis had had with him, was quite frightened and said: "Lord God, protect that knight. Now, son Florestan, let us aid him."

Then they came up so fiercely that it was wonderful to see them, and they plunged into the midst of all, attacking and unhorsing until they reached Amadis; and the king said to him: "What is this, knight? Take courage, take courage, for here am I."

Amadis recognized the voice of his father, although he was not completely conscious, and he grasped his sword and saw that many were attacking his father and his brother, and he began to strike right and left, although not with much force. And here they might have incurred great risk because the opposing troops were very courageous, and those of King Lisuarte had lost much ground and many were attacking to kill them, and very few in their defense. But at that time there hastened thither Agrajes and Don Galvanes and Brian de Monjaste, who were coming in great haste to encounter Brontaxar de Anfania, who was wreaking all the havoc you have already heard about; and they saw the three knights of the serpents in such danger. They came to their assistance as men whose hearts never failed them in any dangerous situation; and with their arrival many of the foe were killed and unhorsed, so that those with the arms of the serpent device were enabled to attack the enemy with less danger to themselves.

Amadis, who was now in full possession of his faculties, looked to the left and saw King Lisuarte accompanied by some knights who were awaiting King Aravigo, who was coming against him with a great force of troops, and Argomades in front of all, and two nephews of King Aravigo, valiant knights, and Aravigo himself shouting, encouraging his men, because he was hearing from the tower: "He of the gold helmet killed the tall devil."

Then he said: "Knights, let us help the king, for it is necessary."

Then they all went together and plunged into the crush of troops until arriving where King Lisuarte was; who when he saw the three knights of the serpent device near him, was so much encouraged, because he saw that he of the golden helmet had killed with one blow that very valiant Brontaxar de Anfania. And then he moved toward King Aravigo, who was coming close to him, and toward Argomades, who was coming with his sword in hand, brandishing it to strike King Lisuarte. He stopped in front of him of the gold helmet and his combat was ended by the first blow: he of the gold helmet, as soon as he saw the huge sword coming at him, raised his shield and received the blow, and his sword came down through the boss a good palm's length, and pierced the helmet to the depth of three fingers so that he narrowly missed killing him. And Amadis struck him on the left shoulder such a blow that he cut the coat of mail that was of thick mesh, and cut flesh and the bones down to the side in such a way that Argomades' arm with part of his shoulder was dangling from his body. This was the mightiest sword blow that was struck in the battle. Argomades began to flee like a paralyzed man who did not know what he was doing, and his horse returned him to where he had come from. And those in the tower were shouting: "He of the golden helmet frightens the doves."

And one of those nephews of King Aravigo, Ancidel by name, charged at Amadis and struck a blow with his sword on the face of his horse that cut it completely across, and the horse fell dead on the ground. Don Florestan when he saw this let himself go at him, as he was preening himself, and struck him on top of the helmet such a blow that he knocked him over on the neck of his horse; and Florestan seized him by the helmet so forcibly that on snatching it from his head he struck him down at Amadis's

feet. And Don Florestan was wounded in the side by the point of Ancidel's sword.

At this hour King Lisuarte and King Aravigo were joined in battle, and their troops with each other, so that there was a hard and cruel battle between them, and they all had much to do to defend themselves from each other and to aid those who were falling dead and wounded.

Durin, Oriana's page, who had come there to bring news of the battle, was on one of the horses that King Lisuarte had ordered brought into the battle for rescuing the knights who needed them; and when he saw him of the gold helmet on the ground, he said to the other pages who were on horseback: "I wish to help that good knight with this horse, for I cannot render the king any better service."

And he plunged at once at great risk into the melee where the fewest troops were, and came up to him and said: "I do not know who you are, but on account of what I have seen, I bring you this horse."

He took it and mounted, and said to him in an undertone: "Ah, friend Durin, this is not the first service you have rendered me!"

Durin seized him by the arm, and said: "I shall not let you go until you tell me who you are."

And he bent down as low as he could, and said to him: "I am Amadis, and do not let anyone know it, except her whom you know."

And at once he went where he saw the greatest melee, performing rare and marvelous feats at arms just as he would have done if his lady had been present; for he considered that she was, since that one was there who would know very well how to tell her about it.

King Lisuarte, who was fighting with King Aravigo, struck him with his good sword three such blows that the latter didn't dare linger with him any longer; for as Lisuarte did not know that his adversary was the head and chief of his enemies, he did not use all his strength in striking him, and King Aravigo withdrew behind his men, cursing Arcalaus the Enchanter, who had caused him to come to that land by encouraging him to believe that he would win it.

Don Galaor exchanged blows with Sarmadan, a valiant knight; and since his arm was tired from the blows that he had given, and his sword was not cutting, he seized him in his very strong embrace, and pulling him from his saddle, knocked him to the ground, and he fell on his neck so that he was killed instantly.

And I say to you concerning Amadis, that remembering at that hour the wasted time when he was in Gaul, and how his honor was so vilified and derogated, and that that situation could only be repaired with the opposite, he performed such deeds that he no longer found anyone who dared face him; and there stood their ground with him his father and Don Florestan, and Agrajes and Don Galvanes, and Brian de Monjaste, and Norandel and Guilan the Pensive; and also King Lisuarte, who showed himself very valiant at that time. So they unhorsed so many of the foe, and so hemmed them in and frightened them, that not being able to stand it and having seen King Aravigo go fleeing wounded, abandoning the battle field, the enemy were put to flight, trying to seek refuge in the ships, and some in the hills which were nearby. But King Lisuarte and his men kept on attacking and killing them very cruelly, and those with the device of the serpent in front of all, for they did not leave them. And the majority took refuge in a ship with King Aravigo and in other ships that they were able to reach. But many died in the water and others were taken prisoners.

At this time when the battle was won, King Lisuarte turned back to the tents of his enemies, and there he lodged that night with great joy for the victory that God had given him. But the knights with the serpent device, when they saw that the field was abandoned, and that no defense remained, turned aside, all three of them, from the road along which they thought the king would return, and went under some trees where they found a spring. And there they dismounted and drank of the water, as did their horses; for they needed it very much in view of their great exertions of that day. And as they were about to mount in order to go away, they saw a squire coming on a hackney; and putting on their helmets so that they might not be recognized, they cautiously called out to him. The squire hesitated, thinking them to be of the enemies; but when he saw the device of the

serpent, he came up to them without hesitation. And Amadis said to him: "Good squire, tell the king our message, if you please."

"Say whatever you please," said he, "for I shall tell it to him."

"Then say to him," said he, "that we knights of the arms with the serpent device, who were in his battle, beg him as a favor not to blame us for not seeing him, for it is necessary for us to travel very far from here to a foreign land, and to place ourselves at the mercy of one who we do not believe will have any mercy on us; and that we beg that the share of the booty that he would give to us, he order given to the maidens of the tower for the harm that was done them. And take to him this horse, that I accepted from a page of his in the battle, for we do not want from him any other reward except this which we mention."

The squire took the horse and left them, and went to the king in order to tell him the message. And they mounted, and traveled until they reached their shelter which they had in the forest; and after being disarmed and their faces and hands cleansed of blood and dust, and after attending to their wounds as best they could, they ate their supper, which they had very well cooked; and they lay down on their beds, in which very restfully they slept that night.

King Lisuarte, when he had returned to the tents of his enemies, the latter being already completely destroyed, asked about the three knights of the device of the serpents, but did not find anyone who could tell him anything except that they saw them going as fast as they could toward the forest. The king said to Don Galaor: "Perchance would that one with the golden helmet be your brother Amadis? For what he did could not have been vouchsafed to anyone except him."

"Believe, sire," said Galaor, "that it is not he, for not four days have passed since I had word from him that he was in Gaul with his father and with Don Florestan, his brother."

"Holy Mary!" said the king, "Who could it be?"

"I do not know," said Don Galaor, "but whoever it may be, may God give him good fortune, for with great effort and danger he won honor and glory above all others."

At this juncture, the squire arrived and told the king everything that they had commanded, and the king was greatly disturbed when he told him that they were going into such danger as you

have already heard; but if Amadis said it jokingly, it turned out to be quite true, as will be related later. Therefore men should always give good predictions and forecasts in their affairs. And the horse that the squire brought fell dead before the king from the severe wounds that it had.

That night Galaor and Agrajes and many others of their friends lodged in the tent of Arcalaus, which was very luxurious and beautiful. On it they found depicted in silk and embroidery the battle that he had had with Amadis and how he had enchanted him, and other things that he had done. Next day the king at once divided the spoils among all of his men, and gave a large share to the maidens of the tower; and granting permission to leave to those who wished to go to their own lands, with the others he went to one of his towns called Gadampa, where the queen and his daughter were. The joy they took in each other's company it is needless to tell, for every woman, in view of what had happened, can imagine what it would be.

CHAPTER LXIX

How the knights of the serpent device embarked for their kingdom of Gaul, and fortune cast them where through deceit they fell, at great danger to their lives, into the hands of Arcalaus the enchanter; and how, once freed from there, they embarked, resuming their journey; and Don Galaor and Norandel came by the same route seeking adventures, and what happened to them.

For a few days King Perion and his sons rested in that forest; and when they saw the weather to be good and favorable, they put out to sea at once in their galley, expecting to be in Gaul shortly. But it turned out otherwise for them, for that wind was quickly changed and caused the sea to become rough, so that they necessarily had to turn back to Great Britain, not to the part where they were before, but to another more remote. And the ship arrived at the end of five days of storm at the foot of a mountain that bordered on the sea; and they had their horses and arms taken off in order to travel through that land until the sea calmed down and a more favorable wind came for them, and their men put fresh water, which they had lacked, on the ship. And after they had eaten, they armed themselves and mounted, and went inland in order to find out where they had landed. And they ordered those on the ship to wait for them, and they took three squires with them; but Gandalin had not gone there because he was very well known.

Just as you hear, they went up through a valley, at the head of which they found a plain, and they had not traversed it very far before they encountered beside a spring a maiden who was

watering her palfrey. She was elegantly dressed, and over her dress wore a cloak of scarlet that was fastened with buckles and grummets of gold; and with her two squires and two maids, who were bringing along her falcons and dogs with which she was hunting. And when she saw them, she recognized them at once by the device of the serpents, and proceeded to demonstrate her great delight at the sight of them; and as she drew near she bowed to them with great humility, making signs that she was mute. They greeted her, and she seemed to them very beautiful and they felt pity that she should be mute. She came up to the one with the golden helmet and embraced him, and sought to kiss his hands; and after an interval of this, she invited them by signs to be her guests that night in her castle. But they did not understand her, and she made signs to her squires to explain it to them, and so they did. They, on seeing that good will and perceiving that it was already very late, went with her trustingly; and they had not gone far before they reached a beautiful castle. Considering the maiden to be very rich, since she was the mistress of the castle, on entering it, they encountered people who received them humbly, and other matrons and maidens, who all regarded the mute maiden as their mistress. Then they took their horses, and they conducted them up to a luxurious room that was probably twenty cubits above the ground floor. And having them disarm, they brought them rich robes to put on; and after they had talked to the mute damsel and with the other maidens, they brought a supper to them and they were very well served. And the maidens went away to their quarters; but it was not long before they returned with many candles, and well-tuned instruments in order to afford them pleasure; and when it was time to sleep, they left them and went away.

In that room there were three very fine beds, that the mute maiden had ordered made up, and they placed their arms beside each bed. They lay down and slept peacefully, as men who were weary and fatigued; and although their spirits were in repose, their lives were not, in view of the dangerous snare in which they were caught, which with good reason can be likened to what goes on in this world; for know you that that room was constructed very deceptively, for all of it was held up by a column of iron made like the worm of a wine-press and enclosed in

another of wood that was in the center of the room; and the room could be lowered and raised from below by cranking an iron bar, for the room did not touch any wall. Therefore, when they awoke in the morning, they were some twenty cubits below where they had been when they went into it.

We can compare this beautiful mute maiden with the world in which we live; which, appearing beautiful to us, flattering us, delighting us without mouth or tongue, lures us with many delights and pleasures; which, while we follow it without mistrust, we embrace; and forgetting the anguish and tribulations that as an asylum are being prepared for us from such delights and pleasures; after we have pursued them and indulged in them, we lie down to sleep lulled by our dreams; and when we awake, already transferred from life to death — although more rightly one ought to say from death to life, it being everlasting — we find ourselves in an abyss so far removed from that great compassion of the very high Lord, that no redemption is left for us. And if these knights had it, it was because they were still in this life; in which no one, however evil and sinful he may be, ought to lose hope of pardon, provided that by giving up evil deeds he pursue those that are in accordance with the service of that Lord who can give pardon to him.

Then, returning to the three knights, when they were awake and did not see any sign of light, and perceived that the people of the castle were walking about overhead, they were greatly surprised, and arose from their beds; and searching gropingly for the door and the windows, they found them; but when they ran their hands over them, they came in contact with the wall of the castle, so that then they knew they were victims of deceit. While they were in great dismay on seeing themselves in such danger, there appeared at a window set high in the room a huge, brawny knight with a terrifying face, and in his beard and on his head more white hair than black. And he was clad in mourning, and on his right hand he wore a glove of white cloth that extended up to his elbow; and he said in a loud voice: "May you who lie in there be poorly lodged; for commensurate with the great distress you have caused me, you will find moderation and mercy, which will be very cruel and bitter deaths; and even with this I shall not be avenged; in view of what I received from you in

the battle with the false King Lisuarte. Know you that I am Arcalaus the Enchanter; if you have never seen me, now know me, for never did anyone cause me distress that I didn't take vengeance upon him, with only one exception, and I still intend to have him where you are, and to cut off his hands for this hand of mine which he cut, if I do not die beforehand."

And the maiden who was beside him said: "Good uncle, that young man who is over there is the one who wore the golden helmet."

And she extended her hand toward Amadis. When they saw that that man was Arcalaus, they were in great fear of death, and they considered it strange to see the mute maiden, who had brought them there, speak. And know you that this maiden was named Dinarda, and she was the daughter of Ardan Canileo, and was very ingenious in evil deeds. And she had come to that land in order by some scheme to have Amadis killed, and for that reason she had pretended to be mute.

Arcalaus said to them: "Knights, I shall have your heads cut off in my presence, and shall have them sent to King Aravigo as a partial recompense for your disservice to him."

And he withdrew from the window and ordered it closed; and the room remained so dark that they could not see one another. King Perion said to them: "My good sons, this situation in which we are shows us the great changes of fortune. Who would have thought that once having escaped from such a battle, where so many of us knights underwent so many dangers with such fame, with so much glory, we should be deceived in such a manner by a weak maiden without tongue and without speech? Certainly, an astonishing thing it would seem to those who put their hope in worldly and perishable things without remembering how little they avail and in what low esteem they should be held. But to us who many times have tested it through experience, it ought not to appear strange or difficult, because, since our principal function is to seek adventures, both good and bad, it is therefore important to take them as they come, and employing our own resources in remedying them, to leave the rest of it, where these resources do not suffice, to that all-highest Lord in whom power is complete. Therefore, my sons, leaving aside the great sorrow that humanity brings to us, to you for me, and to

me even more for you, let us leave to Him how He may be best served, to provide the remedy."

The sons, who had more regard for the piety of their father than for the peril or danger in which they were, when they perceived such great courage in him were very happy; and kneeling down, they kissed his hands, and he blessed them. Just as you hear, they spent that day without eating or drinking. And after Arcalaus had supped and a part of the night already had passed, he came to the window where they were with two lighted torches, and Dinarda and two old men with him, and he ordered it opened, and said: "You knights who lie there, I think you would eat if you had the wherewithal."

"Gladly," said Don Florestan, "if you ordered it to be given to us."

He said: "If I have any desire to give it, may God take it from me; but so that you be not entirely disconsolate, in lieu of the meal I am willing to tell you some news. Know you that just now, after dark, there came to the door of the castle two squires and a dwarf, who were asking for the knights of the arms of the serpent device. And I ordered them seized and cast in a dungeon that you have underneath you. From them I shall find out tomorrow who you are, or I shall have them dismembered."

Know you that what Arcalaus told them was really true, for those in the ship, on seeing that they were late, and that they had favorable weather for sailing, decided that Gandalin and the dwarf and Orfeo, the king's butler, should look for them; and these men they held in the dungeon as stated. The king and his sons were deeply grieved at this news, because it meant great danger. Amadis answered Arcalaus, saying: "I am very certain that after you find out who we are, you will not do us such harm as previously, for since you are a knight and have experienced many engagements, you will not consider bad what we did in helping our friends without any unworthy action, and as we would have done had we been on your side. And if there was some excellence in what we did, for this we should be esteemed more highly and be held in greater honor, which on the contrary we received in the battle; but treating us in such a way by holding us thus prisoners, you do not show courtesy."

"No matter who might engage in a dispute with you over that," said Arcalaus, "the honor that I shall pay you will be what I would pay Amadis of Gaul if I had him there; he is the one man in the world whom I like the least, and the one on whom I should most wish to avenge myself."

Dinarda said: "Uncle, even though you send the heads of these men to King Aravigo, meanwhile do not kill them with hunger; sustain their lives, so that with them they may endure greater punishment."

"Since it seems so to you, niece," said he, "I shall do so."

And then he said to them: "Knights, tell me truly which afflicts you more, hunger or thirst?"

"Since we must tell the truth," they said, "although eating first is more proper, thirst afflicts us very much."

"Then," said Arcalaus to a maiden, "niece, throw them a bacon pie so that they may not say I do not attend to their needs."

And he and all the others left there. That maiden beheld Amadis so elegant, and knowing about the great deeds that he had performed in the battle, she was greatly moved to pity for him and for the others; and immediately she put in a basket a jug of water and another of wine, and the meat pie; and suspending the basket by a cord, she lowered it to him, saying: "Take this and keep it secret for me, for if I can avail, you will not have a bad time."

Amadis thanked her very much for it, and she went away. With that they supped and lay down on their beds, and ordered their squires, who were there with them, to keep the arms in a place where they might find them; for if they were not dying of hunger, in some other way they would sell their lives dearly.

Gandalin and Orfeo and the dwarf were put in the dungeon that was under that overhead room where their masters were, and they found there a lady and two knights; one, who was her husband and already advanced in years, and the other their son, quite young, and they had been there one year. And while they were talking to each other, Gandalin told how, in coming in search of the three knights with the device of the serpent, they had been seized.

"Holy Mary!" said the knight. "Know you that those you speak of were very well received in this castle, and while they

were asleep four men entered here and by cranking this iron lever that you see, they lowered with it this room overhead, so that they have been victims of great treachery."

Gandalin, who was very knowing, understood at once that his lord and the others were there, and the great danger of death in which they were; and he said: "Since that's the way it is, let us try to raise it; otherwise neither they nor we will ever get out of here. And believe that if they escape, we shall go free."

Then the knight and his son on one side and Gandalin and Orfeo on the other began to crank the lever, so that the room began at once to go up. And King Perion who was not sleeping peacefully, more because of worry about his sons than for himself, perceived it immediately and awoke them and said to them: "Do you see how the room is rising? I do not know why."

Amadis said: "Whatever the reason may be, there is a great difference between dying like knights and dying like thieves."

And then they leaped from their beds and had their squires arm them, and they waited for what might happen. But the room was raised, by a great effort on the part of those who were lifting it, as high as was necessary. And King Perion and his sons, who were at the door, saw light through the interstices of the door paneling and recognized that through there they had entered. And they all three laid hands on the door so forcibly that they forced it and came out at the castle wall where the watchmen were, with great impetuosity and ferocity marvelous to behold; and they began to kill and throw from the wall as many as they met, and to say: "Gaul, Gaul, for the castle is ours!"

Arcalaus, who heard it, was quite frightened; and thinking that it was treachery on the part of some of his men which had brought his enemies there, fled naked to a tower, and took up with him the portable ladder; and he had no fear concerning the prisoners, for he thought they were safely confined. And leaning out of a window he saw those with the arms of the serpent device going about the castle in great haste; and although he recognized them, he did not dare leave there or go down to them. But he shouted, telling his men to seize them, that there were only three of them. Some of his men who were lodged down below began to arm; but the three knights who had already cleared the wall of watchmen, came down to them at once, for they had heard them;

and in a short while they disposed of so many, either dead or wounded, that no one appeared to face them. Those who were in the dungeon and who heard what was happening, shouted for them to aid them. Amadis recognized the voice of his dwarf, for he and the matron were most frightened, and they went at once to take them out. And they contrived with great effort to break the eyebolts, and they opened the door, through which the prisoners came out. And on searching through low buildings that opened on the courtyard, the squires found their horses and their lords', and others belonging to Arcalaus, which they gave to the knight and his son, and a palfrey of Dinarda's for the matron; and they took them all out of the castle. And when they were mounted, the king ordered that fire be set to the houses that were inside, and the fire began to burn so fiercely that everything seemed one blaze; the flame that reached the tower was great. The dwarf said in a loud voice: "Sir Arcalaus, receive as patiently that smoke as I did when you hung me by the leg, at the time you were guilty of great treachery to Amadis."

The king derived much satisfaction from the way the dwarf insulted Arcalaus, and they all laughed heartily to see that that was the outcome of their effort. Then they went down the road that went from there to the ship, and on ascending a hill, they saw the great flames from the castle and heard the shouts of the peasants, who were enjoying it. So they traveled until they were on the high hill. Then dawn came and they saw down below their ship on the shore and went to it and embarked, disarming in order to rest.

The matron, when she saw the king disarmed, went and knelt before him, and he recognized her, and lifted her by the hand, embracing her with good will, for he esteemed her greatly. And the matron said to the king: "Sire, which of those men is Amadis?"

He said to her: "That one with the green acton."

Then she went to him, and kneeling, she sought to kiss his foot, but he raised her up and he was embarrassed by her action. The matron made herself known to him, saying she was the one who had cast him into the sea at the time he was born, in order to save the life of his mother, and that she asked his pardon for it. Amadis said to her: "Lady, now I know what I never before had ascertained, for even though I had learned from my

foster father Gandales how he had found me in the sea, he did not know why it was; and I pardon you, for you did not wrong me, since what was done was in the service of that lady whom I must serve all my life."

The king greatly enjoyed talking about that time, and was laughing with them for quite a while; and so they went ahead over the sea, very happy about their adventures, until they arrived at the kingdom of Gaul.

Arcalaus, as you have already heard, was naked in the tower where he had sought refuge; and as the flames were reaching the door he could not come down at all. The smoke and the heat were so excessive that he could not protect or help himself, although he went into a vault; but there the smoke was so dense that it caused him great distress. Thus he remained for two days, for no one could enter the castle, so great was the fire; but on the third they came in without danger, and went up to the tower and found Arcalaus so unconscious that his soul was about to take flight. And by pouring some water into his mouth, they brought him to his senses, but with great effort. And they took him up in their arms in order to carry him to the town; and when he saw the castle burned and everything quite destroyed, he said sighing and with great sorrow in his heart:

"Alas, Amadis of Gaul, how much harm comes to me through you! If I can capture you, I shall wreak on you so many cruelties that my heart may be avenged of all the injuries I have received from you; and on account of you I swear and promise never to spare the life of any knight whom I capture, so that if you should fall into my hands, you may never escape from them, as just now you have done."

He stayed in the town four days in order to recover somewhat; and putting himself on a litter with seven knights to guard him, he departed for his castle of Monte Aldin, and the very beautiful Dinarda and another maiden, with him. That night they slept in the house of a friend of his, and the next day he was to arrive at his castle; and two thirds of the day being already over as he went his way, they saw going along the edge of a grove two knights who had been resting beside a spring that was there, and they were very splendidly armed, and on horseback they cut fine figures. When they saw the litter and the knights, they waited in

order to find out what the trouble was. And while they waited, Dinarda came up to Arcalaus and said: "Good uncle, yonder you see two strange knights."

He raised his head, and when he saw them, he called his men, and said to them: "Take your arms and bring those knights to me, not telling them who I am; and if they resist bring me their heads."

And know you that the knights were Don Galaor and his companion Norandel. And the knights of Arcalaus told them, on approaching them, to lay down their arms and to come at the orders of the one who was coming in the litter.

"In God's name," said Galaor, "And who is he to so order, or what business is it of his whether we go armed or unarmed?"

"We do not know," said they, "but it is required that you do so, or we shall take off your heads."

"We are not yet at such a point," said Norandel, "that you can do so."

"Now you will see," said they.

Then they went and attacked each other, and from the first encounters two of them fell to the ground wounded or slain. But the others broke their lances on them, and did not move them from their saddles; and at once they grasped their swords and there occurred a harsh and cruel combat between them; but at the end, three of them being unhorsed and badly wounded, the two that remained did not dare await those deadly blows, and went away through the forest at the full speed of their horses. The two companions did not follow them; instead, they then went to find out who was traveling in the litter. And when they came up, the rest of the retinue that was with Arcalaus, broke into flight, with the exception of two men, both of them mounted on hackneys. Now Galaor and Norandel lifted the curtain, and said: "Sir knight, whom may God damn, is this the way you treat knights who are going along the highway with assurance? If you were armed, we would make you recognize that you are evil and false to God and to the world. And since you are ailing, we shall send you to Don Grumedan to judge and mete out the punishment that you deserve."

Arcalaus, when he heard this, was quite frightened, for he well knew that if Don Grumedan saw him, his death would be

at hand. And as he was subtle in all matters, assuming a benevolent mien, he answered, saying: "Certainly, sirs, in your sending me to Don Grumedan, my cousin and lord, you do me a great favor, for he knows very well my good and bad qualities; but I consider myself unfortunate to be complaining unreasonably about myself, and my thought is only to serve all the knights errant. And I beg of you, sirs, that out of eourtesy you listen to my misfortunes and afterwards do with me whatever your desire may be."

When they heard him say he was a eousin of Don Grumedan's, whom they loved so dearly, they regretted the diseourteous words they had said to him, and they replied: "Now speak, for we shall gladly listen to you."

He said: "Know you, sirs, that I was riding armed one day through the forest of the Blaek Lake, in whieh I encountered a matron who eomplained to me of a wrong that was being done her; and I went with her and caused her rights to be sustained before Count Gundestra. And as I was returning to my castle, I had not gone far when I met that knight whom you killed yonder, whom may God damn, for he was a very depraved man, and two other knights whom he was bringing with him, and in order to obtain from me that eastle, he attaeked me. And I, when I saw this, leveled my lance and went for them, and did all I could defending myself; but I was overcome and taken prisoner. And he held me in a castle of his for one year; and if he did me any honor, it was to heal me of these wounds."

Then he showed them the sears, for he had many, because he, a valiant knight, already had given and received many.

"And sinee I was desperate, I agreed, in order to get out of his prison, to surrender the castle to him; but I was so weak that he eould not bring me exeept on this litter. And I had intended to go at onee to Don Grumedan, my eousin, and to King Lisuarte, my overlord, and demand the bringing to justice of that traitor who had robbed me — which, sirs, it seems to me, that without my asking for it, you have executed better than I had thought — and if there I did not find help, to seek Amadis of Gaul, or his brother, Don Galaor, and to beg them that, taking pity on me, they provide the remedy that they provide for all the others who receive injury. And the reason why those traitors

attacked you was so that you might not find out from me, the one traveling in this litter, the reason for it that I have told you."

When they heard this, they were entirely convinced that he was speaking the truth; and begging his pardon for the discourteous words that they had said to him, they asked him his name. He said: "My name is Granfiles. I do not know whether you have heard of me."

"Yes, I have," said Don Galaor, "and I know that you greatly honor all knights errant, according to what your cousin has told me."

"Thank God," said he, "that already I am known for that by you. And since you know my name, I beg you earnestly as a courtesy, that you take off your helmets and tell me your names."

Galaor said to him: "Know you that this knight is Norandel, and he is the son of King Lisuarte, and I am Don Galaor, brother of Amadis."

And they took off their helmets.

"Thanks be to God," said Arcalaus, "that I was helped by such knights."

And carefully observing Don Galaor in order to recognize him, that he might do him harm if chance should put him in his power, he said: "I trust in God, sirs, that the time will yet come that fortune may place you in a position where the desire that I have concerning you may be satisfied; and I beg you to tell me what to do."

"Whatever be your desire," said they.

He said: "Then I wish to travel until I reach my castle."

"May God guide you," said they.

So he departed at once at an hour when it was already night, but there was a bright moon; and after he had disappeared over a slope, he left that road and took another more secluded one that he knew. The two knights decided that since their horses were tired and the night had come on, they would rest beside that spring.

"Since that is your opinion," said the squire of Don Galaor, "an even better lodging is being arranged for you than you think."

"How is that?" asked Norandel.

"Know you," said he, "that in that old building amid those brambles, two maidens who were traveling with the knight of the litter have hidden themselves."

Then they dismounted near the spring, and washed their faces and hands, and they went to where the maidens were, and entered through some narrow openings; and Don Galaor said in a loud voice: "Who is hidden here? Let me enter, and I'll make them come out."

Dinarda, when she heard this, was frightened and said: "Oh, sir knight, mercy, for I shall come out."

"Then do so," said he, "and I'll see who you are."

"Help me," said she, "for otherwise I shall not be able to come out."

Galaor approached and she held out her arms, which were visible in the moonlight; and he took her by the hands and removed her from where she was. And he was so greatly attracted by her, for he had never seen any other woman of more attractive appearance, and she was wearing a skirt of scarlet and a cape of white samite. Norandel brought the other maiden out, and they took them to the spring, where they supped with great pleasure on what their squires brought and what they found on a pack horse belonging to Arcalaus.

Dinarda was afraid that Galaor knew that she had put his father and brothers in the dungeon, and she wanted him to become enamored of her and to seek her love, which until then she had not given to anyone; and therefore she kept looking at him lovingly and expressed to her maid her praise for his very handsome appearance — all this with the thought that if he were to seduce her, afterwards it would not be that he would want to do her harm. But Galaor, who in accordance with his habits, in that affair had no other thought but how he could have her of her own free will as a mistress, was not long in reaching the understanding that she was quite willing; so that after supper, leaving Norandel with the maid, he went off chatting with Dinarda into the thicket of the forest. And he embraced her, and she threw her arms around his neck, showing him great affection, although she hated him — just as some women are accustomed to do, more through fear or greed than out of contentedness — whence it came about that that damsel who until then had been wooed

by many, and in order to protect her chastity had cast them aside though she desired them as lovers, by that enemy of hers through the wish of her adverse fortune, though she considered it a boon, was changed by him from a maiden to a matron. Norandel, who stayed with the maid, urged her persistently to give him her love because he was much taken with her; but she said to him: "You can do your will by force, but it will not be of my free will unless my lady Dinarda commands it."

Norandel said: "Is this Dinarda Ardan Canileo's daughter, who is said to have come to this land to take counsel with Arcalaus the Enchanter on how to avenge the death of her father?"

"I do not know the reason for her coming," said she, "but she is the one you are talking about, and believe me that the knight who has obtained her love is fortunate because she is a woman more coveted and wooed by all men than any other; but until now no one has been able to possess her."

At this juncture, Galaor and Dinarda came to them, for they had greatly enjoyed themselves — I should say not both, for her sadness was greater than his pleasure. And Norandel took Don Galaor aside and said to him: "Don't you know who that maiden is?"

"No more than you," said he.

"Know you then that this is Dinarda, the daughter of Ardan Canileo, that one your cousin Mabilia told you had come to this land to accomplish by some trick the death of Amadis."

Don Galaor pondered a while and said: "Of her heart I know nothing, but from all appearances she shows that she loves me, and I would not do her harm for anything in the world, because of all the women I have ever seen she is the one who has made me happiest, and I do not want to put her aside for now. And since we are going to Gaul, I shall contrive through some amends that Amadis may make to her, how he may be forgiven by her."

While they were talking, Dinarda was with her maid, and she found out that she had not been willing to consent to Norandel's request and that she had revealed Dinarda's identity, for which the latter was very sorry; and she said: "Friend, on such occasions discretion in denying our desires is necessary, for otherwise we would be in great danger. I beg of you to do the will of that

knight, and let us show them love until we see an opportunity to be rid of them."

She said that she would do so. Don Galaor and Norandel, after talking a while, returned to the maidens, and for part of the night were pleasurably and laughingly talking and dallying with them. Then, each one taking his own partner, they lay down on beds of grass that the squires had made, and there they slept and dallied all that night. Don Galaor then asked Dinarda the name of that evil knight who had sought to kill them, and he meant the one whom he had killed, and she understood that he meant the one on the litter, and she said to him: "How is it you did not find out when the litter came near that it was Arcalaus? The knights whom you routed were his."

"Is it true," said Don Galaor, "that that was Arcalaus?"

"Yes, very true," said she.

"Oh, Holy Mary," said he, "how subtly he escaped from death!"

When Dinarda heard that they had not killed him, she was the happiest woman in the world, but she did not reveal the fact; and she said: "There was a time today that I would have offered up my life for his; but now that I am loved by you and have your favor and regard, I should like him to die an ignoble death, because I know that he hates you with a passion; and what he wishes for you and for your relatives may it please God that it quickly devolve on him."

And embracing him, she showed him all the love she could. Just as you hear, that night afforded shelter; and day having come, they armed and took their mistresses and their squires, who were carrying their arms for them, and went on their way to Gaul to embark on the sea.

Arcalaus arrived at his castle at midnight, greatly frightened at what had happened to him. And he ordered that the gates be closed and that no person should enter without his order, and he had himself healed with the intention of being worse than before, and of committing crimes more evil than previously, as bad men do; for although God breathes into them, they do not wish or desire to be set free from those strong chains with which the devil has fettered them; rather with them they are

carried down to the bottom of hell, as one must believe that this evil one was.

Don Galaor and Norandel and their mistresses traveled two days toward a harbor in order to cross over to Gaul; and on the third day they arrived at a castle, in which they decided to lodge. And finding the gate open they went inside without meeting anybody. But immediately there came out from the palace a knight who was the lord of the castle; and when he saw them inside, he frowned at his men because they had left the gate open; but showed a good countenance to the knights and received them very well. And he had them shown great courtesy, but against his will, because this knight's name was Ambades, and he was a cousin of Arcalaus the Enchanter and knew Dinarda, who was his niece, and elicited the information from her that they were conducting her against her will, she having been raped. And the mother of this Ambades wept with her secretly and would have liked to have them killed. But Dinarda said to her: "Let not such madness enter into you or my uncle."

Then she told them how they had routed the seven knights of Arcalaus, and all that they had done with him; and she said: "Madam, do them honor, for they are very vigorous knights, and tomorrow I and my maid will remain behind; and as they leave, let down the drawbridge, and thus we shall be out of danger."

This having been thus agreed upon with Ambades and his mother, they gave Don Galaor and Norandel and their squires their supper and good beds on which to sleep; and Ambades didn't sleep all night, so frightened was he at having such men in his castle. And when it was morning, he got up and armed, and went to his guests and said: "Sirs, I wish to accompany you and show you the road, for this function of mine is to go about armed in search of adventures."

"Host," said Don Galaor, "we thank you very much for it."

Then they armed themselves and had their mistresses mount on their palfreys, and they left the castle. But the host and the maidens remained behind; and when they and their squires were outside, they lowered the drawbridge, so that the deceit was effective. Ambades dismounted from his horse with great pleasure

and went up to the battlements and saw the knights, who were waiting for the sight of someone in order to ask them for the maidens; and he said: "Go away, you wicked, false guests; may God confound you and give you as bad a night as you have given me; for the matrons whom you were intending to lay remain with me."

Don Galaor said to him: "Host, what is this you say? You will not be such a man that after having given us such great service and pleasure in this your house, at the end you exhibit such great treachery in taking our ladies from us by force."

"If it were thus," said he, "more pleasure would there be, because your anger would be greater; but I have taken them in accordance with their own free will, because they went with their enemies constrained by force."

"Then let them appear," said Galaor, "and we shall see if it is as you say."

"I shall do so," said he, "not to give you pleasure, but so that you may see how much you are detested by them."

Then Dinarda appeared on the wall, and Don Galaor said to her: "Dinarda, my lady, this knight says that you remain here willingly. I cannot believe it, because of the great love that exists between us."

Dinarda said: "If I showed you love, it was out of the excessive fear that I had; but you knowing me to be daughter of Ardan Canileo and you a brother of Amadis, how could it be that I would love you, especially when you are seeking to take me to Gaul into the power of my enemies? Go, Don Galaor, and if I did something for you, do not be grateful to me or remember me except as an enemy."

"Now remain," said Galaor, "with the bad luck that I hope God may give you, for from such a root as Arcalaus only such a sprout could come."

Norandel, who was very angry, said to his girl friend: "And you, what will you do?"

"The will of my lady," said she.

"May God confound her will," said he, "and that of this evil man who has thus deceived us."

"If I am evil," said Ambades, "still you two are not such that I would deem myself honored by vanquishing such men."

"If you are a knight, as you boast of being," said Norandel, "come out and fight with me, I on foot and you on horseback. And if you kill me, be assured that you will be removing a deadly enemy of Arcalaus; and if I defeat you, give us the maidens."

"How stupid you are!" said Ambades, "I despise you both. Well, what shall I do to you alone on foot, I being on horseback? And as to what you say about Arcalaus, my lord, for some twenty like you or like that other man, your companion, he wouldn't give a hang."

And taking a Turkish bow, he began to shoot arrows at them. They withdrew and returned to the road that they were traveling previously, talking about how the wickedness of Arcalaus extended to all those of his family; and laughing heartily together about Dinarda's reply and that of their host, and at Norandel's great anger, and how the host when out of danger, held him in low esteem. So they traveled for three days, lodging in towns and to their pleasure; and on the fourth day they reached a town that was a seaport called Alfiad, and they found two boats that were crossing to Gaul. And embarking on them, they soon made port where King Perion was, and also Amadis and Florestan. So it happened that Amadis, while in Gaul preparing to leave in search of adventures, in order to make amends and compensate for the very long time that he had remained there in such discredit to his honor — continuing each day to ride along the seashore while gazing at Great Britain, for there were his desires and all his well-being — on going for a ride one day with Don Florestan, saw the boats coming, and went there to find out the news. And on his reaching the shore, Don Galaor and Norandel were already coming ashore in a boat. Amadis recognized his brother and said: "Holy Mary! that is our brother, Don Galaor. May he be very welcome."

And he said to Don Florestan: "Do you recognize the other one who is coming with him?"

"Yes," said he, "that is Norandel, son of King Lisuarte, Don Galaor's boon companion. And know you that he is a very good knight, and showed himself to be such in the battle that we had with his father on the Island of Mongaza; but then he was not known as his son, nor was he until now, when the great battle with the seven kings occurred; at which time the king was pleased

that it be revealed on account of the excellence as a knight that he possesses."

Amadis was very happy with him on account of his being a brother of his ladylove and because he knew that she loved him, as Durin had told him. At this juncture the knights reached the shore, and they disembarked where they encountered Amadis and Florestan on foot; who received them and embraced them repeatedly. And each of them having been given a palfrey, they went to King Perion, who was about to ride forth to receive them. And when they came up to him, they sought to kiss his hands, but the king did not give them to Norandel; instead, he embraced him and paid him great honor and took them to the queen, where they received no less. Amadis, as I have already said to you, had made arrangements to leave there four days later. And the day before his departure he spoke with the king and with his brothers, telling them that he had to leave them, and that the next day he would start out on his way. The king said to him: "My son, God knows the loneliness that I feel on account of it; but not on that account will I be putting obstacles in the way of your going to win honors and glory, as you always have done."

Don Galaor said: "Sir brother, if it were not for one quest in which Norandel and I are engaged and from which we cannot rightly withdraw, we would keep you company; but it is important that we carry it out, or that first a year and a day pass, as is the custom of Great Britain."

The king said to him: "Son, what quest is that? Can it be revealed?"

"Yes, sire," said he, "for we publicly promised it, and it is this: know you, sire, that in the battle that we had with the seven kings of the islands, there were on the side of King Lisuarte three knights with arms of the same device of serpents; but their helmets were different, for the one was white, another scarlet, and the third golden. These performed marvels at arms, to such an extent that all of us were amazed. Especially notable were those of the one who wore a golden helmet, for the prowess of this man I do not believe anyone could equal. Certainly it is believed that if it had not been for this knight, King Lisuarte would not have had the victory that he obtained. And when the

battle was won, all three of them departed from the field so secretly that their identity could not be ascertained; and because of what is being said about them, we have promised to seek them and find out who they are."

The king said: "Here we have been told about those knights, and may God give you good news of them."

Thus they spent that day until night. And Amadis took his father and Don Florestan aside, and said to the former: "Sire, I wish to leave early tomorrow, and it seems to me that after my departure, Don Galaor should be told the truth about this quest in which he is engaged, because his effort would be in vain, for if not from us, he cannot ascertain the truth from anyone; and do show him the arms, for he will easily recognize them."

"You speak well," said the king, "and so it shall be done."

That night they were with the queen and her daughter and with many of her ladies and maidens-in-waiting, enjoying themselves very delightfully; but all felt they would greatly miss Amadis, and were regretting that he should want to go away they knew not where. Then having taken leave of all the ladies, they went to bed. And next day everyone heard mass, and came out to see Amadis off, who was going armed on horseback with Gandalin and the dwarf, without anyone else to keep him company. To Gandalin the queen gave enough money to last his lord for one year. Don Florestan begged him very earnestly to take him with him, but he was unable to comply with his request for two reasons: one, in order to be more free to think about his lady; and the other, if he participated only in the contests involving great danger in which he hoped to engage, by participating in them alone, he alone would achieve death or glory. And when they had traveled one league, Amadis bade them farewell, going on his way; and the king and his sons returned to the town, where he spoke aside with Don Galaor, his son, and with Norandel; and he said to them: "You are engaged in a quest for which you would not find a solution anywhere in the world except here, concerning which I give thanks to God, who has guided you here, for having saved you from great fruitless efforts. Now know you that the three knights of the arms device of the serpents, whom you are seeking, are myself and Amadis and Don Florestan. And I wore the white helmet, Don Florestan the

scarlet, and Amadis the golden; and thus helmeted he performed the great, unparalleled deeds that you saw."

And he told them about the agreement they had made for that expedition and how Urganda had sent them the arms.

"And so that you may believe it completely and consider your adventure concluded, come with me."

And taking them to another room, which was the armory, he showed them the arms with the device of the serpents, pierced through in many places by mighty blows — arms which were very well recognized by them, because they had beheld them frequently in the battle, sometimes it having been their pleasure to come to their assistance, and at other times having great envy of what their owners were performing with them.

Don Galaor said: "Sire, God has been very good to us, as have you, in freeing us from this effort, because our intention was with all our might to look for the knights with these arms, and unless we came upon them in a situation where we could not disassociate ourselves from an offense to them without great shame, to fight with them to the death or die in the effort, and give everyone to understand, although there in general they did more than anyone else, specifically it would be judged otherwise."

"God has done it better," said the king, "through His mercy."

Norandel insistently asked him for those arms, but with much more circumspection they were conceded to him by the king. Then the latter related to them how they had been thrust into Arcalaus's prison, and by what adventure they had escaped from it. Tears came to the eyes of Galaor out of pity because of such great danger, and he told what had happened to him and Norandel with Arcalaus, and how calling himself Granfiles, he had escaped from them, and their whole experience with Dinarda, and how she stayed within the castle, and what had happened to them with Ambades. So they remained relaxing for two weeks; and having bade farewell to the king and queen, they embarked on a ship, taking with them those arms with the device of the serpents; and with good weather they crossed over to Great Britain. And having arrived at the town where King Lisuarte and his queen were, on disarming themselves in their quarters, they went to the palace to show them how they had finished their

quest; and they took with them the arms with the device of the serpents in their cases. Galaor said to the king: "Sire, please have us given an audience with the queen."

"Yes," said he.

And they went at once to her apartments, and everyone with them to see what they were bringing. The queen was pleased with their arrival, and they kissed her hands. Galaor said: "Ladies and lords, you already know how Norandel and I set forth from here in quest of the three knights with the serpent device arms, who were in your battle and service; and God be praised, we have carried it out without effort, as Norandel will demonstrate. Then Norandel took in his hands the white helmet and said: "Sire, do you recognize this helmet?"

"Yes," said he, "for many times I saw it where I wished to see it."

"Well, King Perion, who esteems you greatly, wore this on his head."

And then he took the scarlet one and said: "You see here, this one which Don Florestan wore."

And taking out the golden one, he said: "You see, sire, this one worn by Amadis, who did in your service what no one else would have been able to do. Whether I speak the truth in that matter, or not, you are the best witness, for many times you found yourself among them, they enjoying fame and you, victory."

And he told them how King Perion and his sons had come secretly to the battle, and why they had gone away afterwards without being recognized; and how they had been thrown into Arcalaus's dungeon, and how they came out, burning the castle; and how he and Don Galaor had found Arcalaus in the litter; and how the latter had escaped by calling himself Granfiles, cousin of Don Grumedan, about which they laughed heartily with the latter, who was present there, and he with them, saying that he was very happy to have found such a kinship, of which he did not know. The king asked many questions about King Perion, and Norandel told him: "Do believe, sire, that in the whole world there is no king of a land of the size that he has who is his equal."

"Then nothing will be lost," said Don Grumedan, "through his sons."

The king fell silent in order not to praise Galaor in the latter's presence, nor any of the others, of whom he was very little enamored at that time; but he ordered the arms placed in the glass showcase of his palace, where others of famous men were displayed.

Don Galaor and Norandel talked with Oriana and with Mabilia, and gave them greetings and regards from Queen Elisena and her daughter; and they were received by them with great affection, as from ladies whom they loved very much. And they were very sad about what they told them concerning Amadis's unaccompanied sally to foreign lands of diverse languages to seek surpassingly dangerous adventures. Then they went to their lodgings and the king remained talking with his knights about many things.

CHAPTER LXX

WHICH RELATES CONCERNING ESPLANDIAN HOW HE WAS IN THE COMPANY OF NASCIANO, THE HERMIT; AND HOW AMADIS, HIS FATHER, WENT TO SEEK ADVENTURES WITH HIS NAME CHANGED TO KNIGHT OF THE GREEN SWORD; AND THE GREAT ADVENTURES HE HAD, TOGETHER WITH A RECITAL OF HIS VICTORIES.

When Esplandian was four years old, Nasciano, the hermit, sent word that he be brought to him; and he came well-bred for his age; and Nasciano beheld him so handsome that he was amazed; and blessing him, he drew him into an embrace, and the child embraced him as if he recognized him. Then he had the nurse return home, leaving a son of hers there, on whose milk she had nurtured Esplandian also; and both these youths went frolicking about the hermitage, at which the holy man was very happy, and he gave thanks to God for having been willing to protect such a youngster.

Then it so happened that Esplandian being tired of playing, flung himself down to sleep under a tree, and the lioness that you have already heard about, which came sometimes to the hermit, and he would give it something to eat when he had it, saw the child and went up to it, and circled it for a little while sniffing it, and then stretched out beside it. And the other child went crying to the good man, telling him that a huge dog was about to devour Esplandian. The good man came out and saw the lioness and went there; but she came up to him fawning on him, and he took the child in his arms, who was now awake. And when the child saw the lioness, he said: "Father, this is a beautiful dog; is it ours?"

"No," said the good man, "but it is God's, to whom all things belong."

"I should very much like it to be ours, father."

The hermit was pleased and said to him: "Son, do you wish to feed it?"

"Yes," said he.

Then he brought a leg of venison, which some crossbowmen had given him, and the child gave it to the lioness and went up to her and put his hand on her ears and her mouth. And know you that from then on the lioness always came each day, and watched over him while he was walking outside the hermitage. And when he was older, the hermit gave him a bow made to his measure and another to his foster brother, and they shot with them after having done their reading; and the lioness went with them; for if they wounded some deer, she was accustomed to bring it down, and sometimes some crossbowmen who were friends of the hermit would come there, and they would go hunting with Esplandian out of regard for the lioness, who would retrieve the game for them, and so Esplandian learned how to hunt. Thus his time was spent under the tutelage of that holy man.

And Amadis left Gaul, as we have already related, with the desire to perform such deeds at arms that those who had spoken in derogation of him and had discredited his honor on account of the long stay that by command of his lady he had made there would be given the lie. And with this thought he went into the land of Germany, where in a short while he became very well known; for many men and many women came to him with wrongs and injuries that had been done them, and he helped them obtain their rights, experiencing great confrontations and dangers to his person, fighting in many places with valiant knights, at times with one, at other times with two or three, just as the case might be. What shall I tell you? He did so much that through all of Germany he was known as the best knight that had ever entered that land; and he was known only by the name of the Knight of the Green Sword or the Knight of the Dwarf on account of the dwarf he brought with him. Since he made his sally, four years had gone by without his ever returning to Gaul or to the Firm Island or having news of his lady Oriana, of which the latter fact tormented him most, and he had such heartfelt grief that in

comparison with it, all the other dangers and travail he considered pleasurable. And if he felt any consolation it was only from knowing for certain that his lady, being constant in remembering him, was suffering loneliness similar to his.

Then he traveled thus through that land all summer, and on the arrival of winter, fearing the cold, he decided to go to the kingdom of Bohemia and to spend the winter season with a very good king then reigning there — who was waging war against the Patin [the Fool], who was now emperor of Rome and whom Amadis hated very much on account of that episode involving Oriana his lady of which you have already heard — and this king's name was Tafinor, concerning whose great virtue and good deeds he had had reports; and he went on his way there at once. And it happened that on reaching a river, he saw on the other side many people going along, and they loosed a falcon at a heron, and it came and killed it on the side of the river where the Knight of the Green Sword was. And he dismounted, all armor clad as he was when traveling, and shouted to those on the other side to ask if he should feed it. They told him that he should. Then he fed it there what he saw was requisite, as one who had done so many times. The river was quite deep, and they could not cross there. And know you that King Tafinor of Bohemia was over there; and when he saw the knight and the dwarf with him, he asked whether any of those men recognized him. And there was no one who recognized him.

"Could it be," said the king, "perchance a knight who has been traveling through the land of Germany and has performed marvels at arms, of whom all are speaking as being a wonder, and they call him the Knight of the Green Sword, and the Knight of the Dwarf? I say so because of that dwarf that he is bringing along with him."

There was there a knight named Sadian, and he was the chief of those who were guarding the king; and he said: "That is certainly he, for he has a green sword girded on."

The king hurried to reach a ford of the river, because he of the Green Sword was coming already with the falcon in his hand. And as he came up to him, he said: "My good friend, be you very welcome to this land of mine."

"Are you the king?"

"Yes, I am," said he, "as long as it may please God."

Then Amadis came up with great reverence to kiss his hands; and he said: "Sire, pardon me, although I have not been remiss with you, for not recognizing you; I come to see and to serve you, for I have been told that you have a war with a certain man so powerful that you have indeed need of the service of your own knights and even of foreign ones. And although I be one of the latter, while I am with you, you can account me a native vassal of yours."

"Knight of the Green Sword, my friend, how grateful I am to you for your coming, and what you say to me, that heart of mine knows, and has thereby doubled its courage; and now let us retire to the town."

Thus the king went on talking with him, and by all he was praised for his good looks and for appearing better armed than any other that they had ever seen. When they arrived at the palace, the king gave orders that he be lodged there. And after he was disarmed in a luxurious chamber, he put on a splendid and becoming costume that the dwarf brought him; and he went where the king was, with a presence such as to accredit the great deeds attributed to him. And there he dined with the king, served as one would be at the table of such a good man. And the table having been cleared and everyone being quiet, the king said: "Knight of the Green Sword, my friend, your great renown and honorable bearing move me to ask help of you, although up to now I may not merit it, but God will be pleased that sometime you will be rewarded. Know you, my good friend, that I have a war against my wish with the most powerful man of the Christians, who is the Patin, emperor of Rome, who not only because of his great power but also out of his excessive conceit would like this kingdom, which God gave me independent, I to be subject and tributary to him. But I until now with the backing and strength of my vassals and friends have defended it vigorously against him, and I shall defend it as long as I live. But as it is hard and dangerous work for the few to defend themselves for a long time against the many, my heart is ever tormented in seeking a real remedy, for the present one is, besides God, only the excellence and strength of a few men against others; and because God has made you so supreme in the world in excellence and

fortitude, I have great hope that your high courage, whieh as always strives for glory and honor, will desire to win it with these few. Therefore, good friend, help defend this realm, which will always be at your command."

The Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "Sire, I shall serve you; and may you judge my exeellence aceording to what I accomplish."

Just as you hear, the Knight of the Green Sword remained in the house of King Tafinor of Bohemia, where great honor was done him, and in his company by order of the king, a son of his named Grasandor, and a count, the king's cousin, whose name was Galtines, so that he might be better aeeompanied and honored.

So it came about that one day the king was riding through the countryside with many nobles, and was talking with his son Grasandor and with the Knight of the Green Sword about the war, for the truee was eoming to an end five days later; and while they were thus engaged in conversation, they saw coming along through the countryside twelve knights with their armor paeked on palfreys, and with their squires carrying their helmets and shields and lances. The king recognized among them the shield of Don Garadan, who was a first cousin of the emperor Patin, and was the most highly esteemed knight of the entire dominion of Rome, and he was waging the war against this king of Bohemia; and the latter said to the Knight of the Green Sword, sighing: "Alas, how mueh trouble the one whose shield that is has oecasioned me!"

And he pointed him out to him. And the shield had a field of scarlet and two golden eagles of a size eommensurate with it. The Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "Sire, the more arroganee and audacity you reeeive from your enemy, the more trust you must have in the vengeance that God will give you. And, sire, since thus they are eoming to your land trusting to your moderation, honor them and speak well to them, but don't agree to do anything unless it be to your own honor and advantage."

The king embraeed him and said: "May it please God through his mercy that you be with me always, and that you do with what is mine whatever you like."

And they approached the knights, and Garadan and his companions went before the king, who received them with speech more friendly than was his heart, and bade them enter the town and paid them all honor. Don Garadan said: "I come with two proposals, of which first you shall be apprised, and concerning which you will need only the counsel of your own heart; and answer us at once, because we cannot wait, for the truce expires very soon."

Then he gave him a letter of accreditation that was from the emperor, in which he said that he was officially approving and sanctioning on his word of honor everything that Don Garadan might arrange with him.

"It seems to me," said the king, after having read the letter, "that he has no little faith in you. And now say what you were ordered to tell me."

"King," said Don Garadan, "although the emperor is of a higher lineage and seigniory than you, because he has to concern himself greatly with other matters, he wishes to terminate the war with you in one of two ways, whichever you prefer: the first one, if you wish to have a battle with Salustanquidio, his cousin, prince of Calabria, of a hundred against a hundred up to one thousand; and the second, of twelve knights against twelve, namely myself and these whom I am bringing along; for he will do so on condition that if you win, you and he will be quits forever; and that if you are vanquished, you remain his vassal, just as one discovers in the annals of Rome in times past that this kingdom was a dependency of the Roman empire. Now choose whichever you please; for if you refuse, the emperor serves notice on you that, leaving all other matters, he will come against you in person and will not leave here until he has destroyed you."

"Don Garadan," said the Knight of the Green Sword, "you have said enough arrogant things, not only on behalf of the emperor, but also on your own, for God often thwarts them with but little compassion, and the king will give you whatever reply that he pleases, but I wish to ask this: if he should take either of these battles, how would he be sure that what you say would be carried out with him?"

Don Garadan looked at him and marveled that he should reply without waiting for what the king would say; and he said to him: "Sir knight, I don't know who you are, but from your speech you seem from a foreign land, and I tell you that I deem you a man of little prudence in answering without the king's command; but if he considers good what you say, and agrees to what I ask of him, I shall explain what you are asking about."

"Don Garadan," said the king, "I ratify and authorize all that the Knight of the Green Sword has said."

When Garadan heard mentioned a man of such great deeds at arms, his heart was changed in two ways: one, he regretted that such a knight should be on the side of the king; and the other, he was pleased at fighting with him. And according to his secret feeling, he expected to overcome him or kill him, and win all that honor and glory that his adversary had achieved throughout Germany and the lands where they talked of no other knightly prowess save his; and he said: "Since the king now authorizes you to speak for him, tell me straightway whether he will choose one of these battles."

The Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "That the king will say in accordance with his preference, but I say to you that in whichever of them he may choose, I shall serve him, if he wants to put me in it, and so I shall fight in the war as long as I dwell in his house."

The king put his arm around his neck, and said: "My good friend, these words of yours have infused in me such great courage that I shall not hesitate to take either one of the courses of action offered to me, and I earnestly beg you to choose for me whichever you prefer."

"Certainly, sire, that I shall not do," said he; "rather, take counsel with your nobles concerning it and choose whichever be best; and command me as to whatever way I may serve you; for otherwise, the nobles would rightly be complaining of me, and saying that I was taking charge of what was beyond my capacity for discretion; but, sire, I still say that you ought to see the security that Don Garadan brings to make it a firm commitment."

When Don Garadan heard this, he said: "Although, sir knight, by your speeches you show yourself in favor of prolonging the

war, I wish to show that for which you ask in order to forestall your delaying action."

The Knight of the Dwarf replied to him: "Do not be surprised at that, Don Garadan, because peace is a more delightful thing than engaging in perilous battles; but shame brings and occasions the opposite; and now you scorn me, for you do not know me; but as soon as the king gives you his reply, I trust in God that you will judge me otherwise."

Then Don Garadan, calling a squire who was carrying a coffer, took out of it a letter on which were thirty seals suspended on silken cords, and all were of silver except the one in the middle, which was of gold and was the emperor's, and the others were of the great lords of the empire; and he gave it to the king. And the latter withdrew with his nobles, and on reading it, found that what Garadan had said was true, and that indubitably he could choose either of the battles, and he asked them to advise him. Then as they talked about it, there were some who preferred the battle of one hundred versus one hundred, others that of the twelve against the twelve, saying that in a smaller number the king could better choose his knights. And others said it would be better to continue waging war as they had done until then, and not jeopardize their realm by depending on one battle. Therefore the votes were quite diverse. Then Count Galtines said: "Sire, defer to the opinion of the Knight of the Green Sword, who perchance has seen many events and has a great desire to serve you."

The king and all the rest agreed on this and had him called, for he and Grasandor were talking with Don Garadan and the Knight of the Green Sword was observing him carefully; and as he saw that he was so robust of body and that rightly he must possess great strength, it made him have some doubts about his battle; but on the other hand, he had seen him speak so many vain and arrogant words that they gave him hope that God would bring it about that his arrogance would do him in. And when he heard the command of the king, he went there, and the king said to him: "Knight of the Dwarf, my good friend, I beg you earnestly not to avoid giving us here your advice on what we have been talking about."

Then they told him about the different minds of which they were. Having heard it all, he said: "Sire, the determination of

such a weighty affair is very serious, because the outcome is in the hands of God, and not in the judgment of men; but however that may be, speaking about what I would do, if it were my problem, I say, sire, that if I had a single castle and one hundred knights, and another man inimical to me having ten castles and one thousand knights should wish to take my castle from me, and if God should indicate a way whereby this might be settled by a battle between equal numbers of people I would consider that He was doing me a great favor; and on account of what I say, knights, do not fail to advise the king what may be most in his service, for in whatever way you decide, I must involve my person in it."

And he sought to leave, but the king took him by the border of his mantle and made him sit down beside him; and he said to him: "My good friend, we all agree with your opinion, and I wish the battle of twelve knights; and God, who knows the strength that is given me, will help me, just as he did King Perion of Gaul not long ago, when King Abies of Ireland gained entrance to his land in great strength, and he being about to lose it, everything was remedied by a battle that one single knight had with King Abies himself, who was at the time one of the most valiant and belligerent knights in the world, and the other so young that he was not yet eighteen years old; in which battle the King of Ireland died, and King Perion was completely reestablished in his kingdom. And a few days later by a marvelous coincidence he recognized him as his son. And until then he was called the Child of the Sea, and from there on his name was Amadis of Gaul, and he is the one who throughout the whole world is renowned as the most powerful and valiant knight extant. I do not know whether you know him."

"I have never seen him," said the Knight of the Green Sword, "but I dwelt for some time in those regions, and I often heard of this Amadis of Gaul, and I know two brothers of his who are not worse knights than he."

The king said to him: "Then having trust in God as that King Perion did, I agree to accept the battle of the twelve knights."

"In the name of God," said the Knight of the Green Sword, "that seems to me the best decision because, although the emperor may be greater than you, and may have more troops, so far as

twelve knights are concerned, as good ones will be found at your court as at his. And if you can arrange with Garadan that the battle be with even fewer, I should consider it good, even if it came down to one against one; and if he should wish to participate, I will be the other, for I trust in God, in view of your very just cause and his excessive pride, that I shall afford you vengeance on him, and I shall end the war that you have with his lord."

The king gave him hearty thanks, and they went to where Garadan was complaining because they were delaying so long in answering him. And when they came up to him, the king said: "Don Garadan, I do not know whether it will be to your liking, but I have decided to accept the battle of the twelve knights, and let it be tomorrow without delay."

"So help me God," said Garadan, "you have answered as I wish, and I am very happy with such a reply."

He of the Green Sword said: "Many times men are happy at the outset, but in the end it turns out otherwise for them."

Garadan looked at him malevolently and said to him: "You, sir knight, seek to talk on every pact-making occasion. You indeed seem an outlander, since so outlandish and scant is your circumspection. And if I were to ascertain that you would be one of the twelve I would give you these gloves as my challenge."

He of the Green Sword took them, and said: "I certify to you that I shall be in the battle, and just as I herewith take these gloves from you, so in it I intend to take and carry away your head, for your great arrogance and your lack of restraint offer it to me."

When Garadan heard this, he was so furious that he became as if out of his mind; and he said in a loud voice: "Alas, how unlucky I am! Would that it were tomorrow and we were in the battle, so that all might see, Don Knight of the Dwarf, how your folly would be punished!"

He of the Green Sword said to him: "If you consider it a long interval from now until tomorrow, the day is still long enough for the one of us who may have good fortune to kill the other; and let us arm ourselves, if you wish, and let us begin the battle on condition that the one who remains alive may help his companions tomorrow."

Don Garadan said to him: "Certainly, sir knight, if you dare do as you have stated, I now pardon you for what you have said against me."

And he began to ask for his arms in great haste. The Knight of the Dwarf gave orders to Gandalin to bring his, and thus it was done. And Don Garadan's companions armed him, and the king and his son armed him of the Green Sword, and they withdrew outside, leaving him in the field where they were to fight. Don Garadan mounted a very beautiful, big horse and spurred it hard onto the field, and turning to his companions, said to them: "Have good expectation that once and for all, this king will remain subject to the emperor, and you with great honor without striking a blow. This I say to you because the entire hope of your opponents rests on this knight, whom, if he dares to meet me, I shall overcome immediately; and once this one is dead, they will not dare to come on the field tomorrow against me, or against you."

The Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "What are you doing, Garadan? Why are you so heedless that you let the day pass while you boast? For it will soon be apparent who's who, and boasting will be of no avail."

And spurring his horse, he went for him, and the other came at him, and they struck each other with their lances on their shields, which, although they were very strong, were pierced, with such mighty blows did they strike each other, and the lances were broken; but they collided with each other with shields and helmets with such ferocity that the horse of the Knight of the Green Sword fell back stunned, but it did not fall; and Garadan left his saddle and fell so hard on the ground that he was almost bereft of consciousness. And he of the Green Sword, who saw him writhing on the field in an effort to stand up but not able to do so, tried to go to him but his horse could not move, so tired was it; and he was wounded on the left arm by the lance, which had pierced his shield; so he dismounted at once, like a man who was quite enraged. And grasping his efficacious sword, he went at Garadan, who was quite shaken up, but more conscious, for he now had his sword in his hand brandishing it, and was well protected by his shield, but not so belligerent as before. And they went and struck each other so fiercely such deadly blows that

those who saw it marveled greatly. But he of the Green Sword, since he caught him hurt from the fall, and was very angry, rained on him so many and such heavy blows that the other, not being able to stand it, retreated some distance away, and said: "Certainly, Knight of the Green Sword, now I know you better than before, and more than before I hate you; and although much of your prowess is manifest to me, not for this reason is mine enabled to determine which of us will be the victor. And if it seems to you that we should rest a while, let us do so; if not, come and fight."

He of the Green Sword said to him: "Certainly, Don Garadan, resting would be for me a much better course of action to take than fighting; but for you, in view of your great excellence and lofty prowess at arms, it would be the opposite, according to the words you have spoken today. And so that such a good man as you be not put to shame, I do not wish to leave the battle until it ends."

Don Garadan was very sorry, for he saw himself in very bad shape, and his armor and flesh cut in many places, from which much blood was flowing, and he was very much shaken from his fall. Then he remembered his arrogance, especially toward that one whom he had before him; but showing good courage, he strove to reach the end of his bad fortune by exerting himself to the limit, and at once they attacked each other as at first. But it was not long before the Knight of the Dwarf had him completely dominated so that all those who were there saw that even were he twice as good, it would avail him nothing in view of his weak effort. And as both were thus contending, Garadan fell senseless on the field, hurt by a mighty blow that the Knight of the Dwarf dealt him on top of his helmet — so mighty a blow that he could scarcely withdraw his sword; and he went immediately at him in a rush and removed Garadan's helmet and saw that that blow had split his head so wide open that his brains had been splattered about by it, at which he was greatly pleased on account of the distress of the emperor and the pleasure of the king whom he was desirous of serving. And cleaning his sword and putting it in the scabbard, he knelt and thanked God for that honor and favor that he had done him. The king, who saw him thus, dismounted from his palfrey and with two other knights stood

beside the Knight of the Green Sword and saw his hands stained with blood, both his own and his foe's; and he said to him: "My good friend, how do you feel?"

"Very well," said he, "thanks be to God, for I shall still be with my companions in the battle tomorrow."

And then he had him mount a horse and they took him with very great honor to the town, where he was disarmed in his room and his wounds dressed. The Roman knights carried Garadan, thus slain, to their tents, and there grieved deeply over him, for they loved him dearly. And they considered themselves handicapped in the battle of the next day that they were awaiting, so much so that it made them reflect very seriously, believing that lacking him — and the Knight of the Green Sword remaining in opposition — they were in nowise up to waging it; and while discussing what they should do, they encountered two very grave problems: the first, what you hear, namely that that valiant companion of theirs was dead, and his enemy remained apparently able to fight; the other, that if they should give up the battle, the emperor would be dishonored and they would be risking death. But they were inclined not to engage in the battle, and to excuse themselves before the emperor by citing the arrogance of Garadan, and how against their will, he had undertaken the battle in which he had died. The majority were of this opinion and the others remained silent. There was among them a young knight of high rank, Arquisil by name, who was a direct descendant of the imperial line — so close a descendant that if the Patin were to die without a son, this man would inherit the entire kingdom; and for that reason he was disliked by the emperor, and the latter kept him away from his presence. When Arquisil saw the base agreement of his companions, and although up until then, being so young that he was not over twenty years of age, he had not dared to speak, he said to them: "Certainly, sirs, I am amazed at such good men as you falling into so great an error, for if anyone had advised you to do so, you would have been obliged to consider him as an enemy and not willingly accept such advice; for if you fear death, much greater is what your weakness and loss of royal favor is bringing upon you. What is it that you dread and fear? Is there a great difference between eleven and twelve? If you do so because of the death of Don Garadan, rather it ought

to please you that a man so haughty, so unrestrained, is out of our company, because for his guilt the punishment would have come to us. Then if it is because of that knight whom you fear so much, I take the responsibility for him, for I promise you never to leave him until he is dead. Then with that man engaged for some length of time, reflect on the difference remaining between you and your foes. Therefore, sirs, do not give rise to such great fear in your hearts, since from your own proposals there will ensue for us a perpetually dishonorable death."

These words of this Arquisil had such great force that the intention of his companions was changed. And thanking him very much and praising his advice, they decided with great courage to undertake the battle.

The Knight of the Green Sword, after his wounds were dressed and he was fed, said to the king: "Sire, it will be well that you make known to the knights that they are to be in the battle tomorrow so that they may make arrangements and be here at dawn to hear mass in your chapel in order for us to go onto the field together."

"Thus it shall be done," said the king, "for my son Grasandor will be one, and the others will be such that with God's help and yours, we shall win the victory."

"May it not please God," said he, "that while I am able to bear arms, either you or your son bear them, since the others will be such that they would be able to exempt him and even me."

Grasandor said to him: "Sir Knight of the Green Sword, I shall not be exempt where your person is engaged, in this battle as well as in all others that might be waged in my presence; and if I were so worthy as to be granted a favor by such a knight as you, I would ask that you keep me in your company from now on; therefore in nowise shall I fail to be in this confrontation tomorrow, merely to learn something about your great exploits."

He of the Green Sword did him obeisance very respectfully for the honor that he was paying him, for he deserved it, and he said to him: "My lord, since such is your pleasure, so be it with God's help."

The king said to him: "My good friend, your arms are in such a state that they offer no protection, and I want to give you some which have never been worn, and which I believe will please

you, and a horse such that although you have seen many others, you will find it to be uncxcelled."

And at once he had it brought there bridled and saddled with very rich trappings. When he of the Green Sword saw it so beautiful and so well caparisoned, he sighed, thinking that if he were where he could send it to his loyal friend Angriote de Estravaus, he would do so, for by Angriote it would be put to good use. The arms were very fine and had a field of gold and scarlet lions, and the device likewise; but the sword was the best he had ever seen, with the exception of King Lisuarte's and his own; and after he had examined it, he gave it to Grasandor to use in the battle.

Next morning early they heard mass with the king and all armed themselves; and kissing his hands, they mounted their steeds, accompanied by many knights, and went to the field where the battle was to be. And they saw that the Romans had already come out armed and were mounting, their men blowing a lively air on many trumpets in order to give them courage, and Arquisil among them on a white horse and with green arms, saying to his companions: "Remember what we said, for I shall keep my promise."

Then they went against each other, and Arquisil saw the Knight of the Green Sword coming in front and he went at him, and they met with their lances, which were immediately broken. Arquisil left the saddle thrust back onto the haunches of his horse; but it so happened that he clutched the saddletree; and as he was vigorous and agile, he recovered his seat. He of the Green Sword passed on by him, and with a piece of the lance that he had left he struck the first man he encountered on his helmet and knocked it off his head and would have unhorsed him had not two knights struck him, one on his shield, the other on his leg, where on passing through the skirt of his coat of mail, the iron tip of the lance made a wound from which he felt considerable pain, and it made him more angry than he was before. And grasping his sword, he struck a knight, and the blow was glancing, and coming down on the horse's neck it sliced it completely, so that the animal went down to the ground and fell on its rider's leg, breaking it. Arquisil, who was already sitting erect in his saddle, quickly seized his sword, and went and struck the Knight

of the Dwarf with all his might on top of his helmet, so that sparks flew from it and from the sword, causing him to bend his head somewhat. But he was not long in obtaining his reward, for Amadis struck him on his shoulder, and cut both his armor and his flesh, so that Arquisil thought that he had lost his arm. He of the Green Sword when he saw him thus, went on past him to attack the others, whom Grasandor and his men had in bad shape. But Arquisil followed him, and everywhere kept striking him, but not with as much force as at the beginning. He of the Green Sword turned toward him and struck him, but immediately went to attack the others, and was not desirous of attacking him because he esteemed him more highly than all those of his side, for he had seen him go ahead of his men in order to encounter him. But Arquisil was not heeding the blows administered to him; instead he plunged into their midst and attacked the Knight of the Green Sword as best he could. And at this time those of his side were already annihilated: some of them killed, others wounded, and the rest too exhausted to offer any defense. And as he of the Green Sword saw that Arquisil kept following him without fearing his blows, he said: "Is there no one who will defend me against this knight?"

Grasandor, who heard him, went with two other knights, and together they attacked him, and as they caught him weak and tired, they jerked him by force from his saddle and threw him on the ground, when at once they went at him to kill him. But the Knight of the Dwarf rescued him, and said: "Sirs, since I have received more harm from this man than from the rest, let me punish him."

Then they all withdrew, and he came up and said: "Knight, surrender if you don't seek to die at the hands of those who greatly wish your death."

Arquisil, who expected nothing short of death, was very happy and said: "Sir, since my fortune decrees that I not be able to do any more, I surrender to you, and I thank you for the life that you give me."

And he took his sword and gave it to him at once, guaranteeing him that he would do whatever he might command. He of the Green Sword dismounted and remained with him, and having him mount a horse that he ordered brought for him, and he

mounting his own, they went to the king, who was waiting for them with great joy at seeing his dangerous war ended; and taking them with him, he went to his palace. There he in his own chamber lodged the Knight of the Green Sword, and the latter had his prisoner stay with him in order to do him high honor, because he deserved it, for he was a good knight of noble blood, as you have heard. But Arquisil said to him: "Sir Knight of the Green Sword, I beg you that out of courtesy — I remaining your prisoner to hasten to you whenever you call me and to be held in prison wherever it be so indicated to me by you — you give me permission to go and aid those surviving companions of mine and have the dead taken away."

The Knight of the Green Sword said: "I authorize you to do so; and remember the guarantee that you have given me."

And embracing him, he dismissed him, and Arquisil went to his companions, whom he found in such state as you can well understand. And immediately they arranged to bear away Garadan and the other dead men, and they started on their way. Therefore for the present no more will be told about this knight Arquisil until it be time to relate how high by his great worth he rose.

He of the Green Sword remained there with King Tafinor until he was healed of his wounds. And as he saw that the king's war was over, he thought that the worries and the mortal desires that his lady Oriana caused him, by which at that time he was greatly beset, he would better endure by traveling and in hardship than in that great luxury and ease in which he was living; so he spoke with the king, saying to him: "Sire, since your war is now ended, and the time has come when my luck does not permit me to be at ease, it is fitting that, denying my desire, I follow my fortune; hence I wish to leave tomorrow, and may God through His mercy bring me closer to the time when I may requite somewhat the honors and favors that I have received from you."

When the king heard this, he was disturbed and said: "Oh, Knight of the Green Sword, my true friend, take of my kingdom what you will, not only of its rule but also of its resources, but may I not see you depart from my company!"

"Sire," said he, "I have believed that by recognizing the desire I have to serve you, you would thus show me honor and favor;

but I have no longer the capacity, nor can I rest until my heart be where always my thought is."

The king, on seeing his firm desire, and considering him so self-assured and determined in his affairs that in nowise would he be deflected from his intention, said to him with a very sad countenance: "My loyal friend, since that is the way it is, two things I beg of you: one, that in case of need, should you be in any, you always remember me and this my kingdom; and the other, that tomorrow you hear mass with me, for I wish to speak with you then."

"Sire," said he, "this pledge that you give me I receive so that I may recall it if the occasion should present itself, and tomorrow armed and ready for travel, I shall be with you at mass."

That night the Knight of the Green Sword gave orders to Gandalin to prepare all that was needed, for he wanted to depart early the next morning, and Gandalin did so. That night he of the Green Sword could not sleep, because just as bodily travail had been suspended for him, so mental travail, on finding freer access for the great yearning and mortal desires for his lady which came over him, was fatiguing him all the more. And morning having come, after he had wept a great deal, he arose, and after arming himself, he mounted his horse — with Gandalin and the dwarf on their palfreys carrying what was necessary for the journey — and went to the king's chapel, where he found him awaiting him. Then, mass having been heard there, the king, after ordering all the others to go outside, leaving him alone with him, said: "My great friend, I ask you to grant me a boon, which will not be to the detriment of your journey or your honor."

"I consider it not to be detrimental," said he, "for you, sire, will ask strictly in accordance with your great virtue; and I grant the boon to you."

"Well, my good friend," said the king, "I ask you to tell me your name and whose son you are, and believe me that it will be kept a secret by me until it be divulged by you."

The Knight of the Green Sword stood a while without speaking, thinking about what he had promised; then he said: "Sire, would that your Grace be pleased to desist from this question, since it is not to your advantage."

"My good friend," said he, "do not hesitate to tell me, for it will be kept just as secret by me as by you."

He said to him: "Since such is your pleasure, although it be told not willingly, know you that I am that Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, of whom you spoke the other day during the arrangements for the battle."

The king said to him: "Ah, fortunate knight, of very noble lineage, blessed be the hour in which you were engendered, for so much high honor and benefit your father and mother and all your lineage have had through you, and subsequently those of us who are unrelated! And you have made me very happy by telling me, and I trust in God that it will be to your interest and advantage if I repay a portion of the great debt I owe you."

And although this king said that more out of good will than for any other need that he knew that knight to possess, it was fulfilled later on in two ways: one, that he caused to be set down in writing all the experiences at arms that he of the Green Sword had undergone in those lands; and the other, that he rendered very good assistance with his son and the troops of his kingdom in a great emergency in which Amadis found himself, as later on will be told in the Fourth Book.

After this, the Knight of the Green Sword mounted and took leave of the king, bidding him stay behind, though he wanted to ride forth to see him off. With Grasandor and Count Galtines and many other nobles riding forth with him, he set out on his way with the intention of going to the Islands of Romania and testing himself in the adventures that he might find in them; and when a half league from the town, those knights turned back commending him to God, and he continued on his way.

CHAPTER LXXI

How king lisuarte went out hunting with the queen and their daughters, well accompanied by knights; and he went to the hills in which that holy man nasciano had a monastery, where in a rare adventure he encountered a good-looking youth who was the son of oriana and amadis, and this youth was very well treated by him without his knowing who he was.

In order to afford himself relaxation and pleasure to his knights, King Lisuarte decided to go hunting in the forest and to take with him the queen and their daughters, and all the ladies and maidens-in-waiting. And he commanded that tents be set up at the spring of the Seven Beech Trees, which was a delightful place. And know you that this was the forest in which the hermit Nasciano lived, and where he was rearing Esplandian, whom he had with him. Well, the king and the queen with their retinue having arrived there, while the queen remained at the tents, the king plunged with his hunters into the densest area of the forest, and as the land was protected, they secured a large bag of game. And it so happened that while the king was with his beaters, he saw a very tired deer coming; and intending to kill it, he went after it on horseback until it entered a valley. There a strange thing occurred, for he saw a youth of about five or six years of age, the most handsome he had ever seen, coming down the opposite slope conducting a lioness on a leash; and when the youth saw the deer he turned her loose against it, shouting for her to take it. The lioness went as fast as she could, and seizing it, threw it to the ground and began to drink its blood. And the youth came up very happy, as did immediately another boy a little older

who was following him. When they reached the deer, they evinced great joy, and taking out their knives, they cut off the part the lioness was eating. The king remained among some bushes marveling at what he saw; but his horse became frightened at the lioness, so he was not able to approach them. And the handsome youth sounded a little horn that he was carrying suspended from his neck, whereupon two beagles came running, the one yellow and the other black, and the youth fleshed them on the deer. And when the lioness had eaten, they put her on the leash, and the older youth went away with her over the hills, and the other one behind him. But the king, who was now on foot and had tied his horse to a tree, sallied forth and called out to the handsome youth, who was bringing up the rear, to wait for him. The youth stopped, and when the king approached he beheld him so handsome that he was amazed; and he said to him: "Good youth, may God bless you and keep you in His service. Tell me where you have been reared and whose son you are."

And the youth replied, saying to him: "Sir, the holy man Nasciano, a hermit, has brought me up, and I consider him my father."

The king stood a long time, pondering how it was that a man so saintly and so old had a son so young and handsome, and finally he did not believe it. The youth sought to leave, but the king asked him in which direction the hermit's house was.

"Up this way," said he, "is the house in which we dwell."

And pointing out to him a little path not well trodden, he said to him: "That is the way you go to it, and good-by, for I want to go after that boy, who is taking the lioness to the spring where we have our game."

And he did so. The king returned to his horse, and mounting it, went along the path; and he had not gone far when he saw the hermitage located among some beech trees and very thick brambles. And on approaching it, he did not see anybody of whom to make inquiry; so he dismounted from his horse, and tying it beneath a portico, he went into the house and saw a man kneeling, praying from a book and dressed in monastic garb, his head quite hoary, and he himself said a prayer. The good man, having finished reading from his book, came to the king, who knelt before him, asking him to give him his blessing.

The good man gave it to him, asking him what he was seeking. The king said: "Good friend, I have found in these hills a very handsome youth hunting with a lioness, and he told me that you have reared him. And because he seemed to me very unusual in his good looks and bearing, and in leading that lioness, I come to ask you to tell me about him, for I promise you as a king that no harm will come from it to you or to him."

When the good man heard that, he observed him more closely than before and recognized him, for he had seen him at other times, and he knelt before him to kiss his hands. But the king lifted him up and embraced him and said to him: "My friend Nasciano, I come with a great desire to know the answer to what I ask you, and do not hesitate to tell me."

The good man took him out of the hermitage to the portico where his horse was, and seated on a bench, he said to him: "Sire, I certainly hold to be true what you tell me, that as a king you will protect this child, since God wishes to protect him. And since you would like so much to know about him, I tell you that through a very strange adventure I found him and reared him."

Then he told him how he had taken him from the mouth of the lioness wrapped in those fine swaddling clothes, and how he had nourished him on her milk and on that of a ewe until he acquired a real nurse, who was wife of a brother of his, whose name was Sargil.

"And this is the name of the other boy whom you saw with him."

And he said: "Certainly, sire, I believe that the child is of high rank, and I want you to know that he has the strangest thing that was ever seen, for when I baptized him, I found on the right side of his chest an obscure Latin inscription in white letters that read: 'Esplandian,' and so I gave him that name; and on the left side right over his heart he has seven more livid letters as red as a fine ruby, but I could not read them, for they are not in Latin, nor in our language."

The king said to him: "You tell me marvelous things, father, of which I have never heard, and I really think, since the lioness brought him as small as you say, that she could not have seized him except near here."

"I do not know about that," said the hermit, "nor let us concern ourselves to find out more about him than what pleases our Lord God."

"Well, I earnestly beg you," said the king, "to be tomorrow here in this forest at the Spring of the Seven Beeches to dine with me, and I shall bring there the queen and her daughters, and many others of our household. And bring Esplandian with the lioness just as I found him, and the other boy, your nephew, for I must be kind to him for the sake of his father Sargil, who was a good knight and served the king my brother well."

When the holy man Nasciano heard this, he said: "I shall do as you, sire, command, and may it please God through His mercy that it be in His service."

The king, mounting his horse, returned by the path along which he had come there, and he covered so much ground that he reached the tents two hours after noon. And he found there Don Galaor and Norandel and Guilan the Pensive, who were just then arriving with two very large deer that they had killed. With these knights he relaxed and laughed a great deal, but he did not tell them anything about his adventure. And when he asked that the tables be set for dinner, Don Grumedan came up to him and said: "Sire, the queen has not dined, and she asks you as a favor that before you eat, you speak with her, for it is important."

He got up at once and went thither, and the queen showed him a letter, sealed with a very beautiful emerald, and some cords of gold passed through it, and it had an encircling inscription that read: "This is the seal of Urganda the Unknown." And the queen said: "Know you, sire, that when I was coming along the road, there appeared there a maiden very richly dressed and mounted on a palfrey, and with her a dwarf on a beautiful roan horse; and although those who were riding ahead of me reached her first, she would not tell them who she was, nor would she tell Oriana and the princesses who were accompanying her. And when I came along, she approached me and said: 'Queen, take this letter and read it with the king today before you dine.' And departing from me at once with the dwarf following her, by spurring her palfrey she left me so far behind so quickly that I had no opportunity to ask her anything."

The king opened the letter and read it, and it read as follows: "To the most high and very honorable King Lisuarte: I, Urganda the Unknown, who do greatly esteem you, advise you for your own good, that at the time that the handsome youth reared by the three different kinds of nurses appears, you love and protect him well, for he will yet become a great joy to you, and will free you from the greatest danger that you have ever experienced. He is of noble lineage; and know you, oh king, that from the milk of his first nurse he will be so strong and so brave of heart that by his deeds at arms he will greatly overshadow all the valiant men of his time; and from the sustenance of his second nurse he will be mild, circumspect, humble, of very good will and more patient than any other man in the world. And from the rearing of his third nurse he will be to a high degree prudent, of great intelligence, a very orthodox Christian, and well-spoken. And in all his activities he will excel and be outstanding, and so highly esteemed and loved by good knights that no one of them will be his equal. And his great deeds at arms will be employed in the service of the most high God, he scorning what the knights of the present time pursue more for the sake of honor with mundane vainglory than with good conscience; and he will always keep himself on the right and his lady on the left; that is, his lady will not dominate him. And even more I say to you, good king: this youth will be the cause of bringing about an enduring peace in your lifetime between you and Amadis and his family, something not vouchsafed to anyone else."

The king, having finished reading the letter, made the sign of the Cross on seeing such words, saying: "The wisdom of this woman cannot be imagined or set down in writing," and he said to the queen: "know you that today I have found this same youth that Urganda mentions."

And he related under what circumstances he saw him with the lioness and how he went to the hermit and what he found out from him, and how the latter was to be with them the next day to dine and that he would bring that boy. The queen was very happy to hear it because she wanted to see the rare youth and to speak with that holy man about some things on her conscience. And the king on departing from her and telling her not to say anything about that, went to his tent to dine, where

he found many knights waiting for him. And there he talked with them about the hunt which they had made and told them that next day no one should go hunting because he wanted to read to them a letter that Urganda the Unknown had sent him. And he ordered the beaters to take all the beasts that were there to a secluded valley, where they would be out of sight the whole day. He did this so that they would not be frightened by the lioness.

Just as you hear, they spent that day relaxing in that meadow that was covered with flowers and very fresh, green grass. The next day they all came to the tent of the king, and there they heard mass; and at once the king took them all with him and went to the queen's tent, which was set up near a spring in the meadow, which was very verdant for the season, for it was in the month of May, and that tent had its sidewalls raised so that all the ladies and princesses and other maidens-in-waiting of high rank appeared as if they were in their drawing-rooms. And there the knights of high standing came to speak to them. And all being assembled thus, the king ordered Urganda's letter, which you have already heard, to be read aloud, to which they listened in wonder as to the identity of that very fortunate youth. But Oriana, who had reflected on it more than the others, sighed for her son whom she had lost, thinking that perchance it might be he. The king said to them: "What do you think of this letter?"

"Certainly, sire," said Don Galaor, "I do not doubt that it will come about just as she says, for many other things foretold by Urganda have turned out to be so true; and although perchance many may be pleased with the arrival of this youth when God considers it good to show him to us, it should rightly please me more than all others, since it will be the cause of effecting the thing I most desire, which is to see my brother Amadis esteemed by you and in your service, with all his relatives likewise as they were previously."

The king said to him: "All is in the hand of God; He will do his will, and with that we shall be content."

Then while they were talking thus about these matters, as you hear, they saw the hermit coming, and his wards with him. Esplandian was coming in front, and Sargil his foster-brother behind him, and the latter was leading the lioness which was

quite lean, on a leash. And behind them eame two archers, the ones who had helped rear Esplandian in the wooded highlands; and they were bringing the stag that the king had seen killed, loaded on a beast of burden and on another two roe deer, and hares and rabbits that Esplandian and they had slain with their bows and arrows. And Esplandian was leading the two beagles on a leash, and behind them came the holy man Nasciano. And when those at the tents saw such a company, and the lioness so large and formidable, they stood up hastily and started to place themselves in front of the king. But he held out a scepter and made them stay in their places, saying: "He who has the power to lead the lioness will proteet you from her."

Don Galaor said: "That may well be, but in my opinion we have weak defense in the huntsman who is leading her if she becomes angry, and this seems a sight to marvel at."

The boys and the archers waited for the good man to advance; and when he was already near at hand, the king said to his courtiers: "Friends, know you that this is the holy man Nasciano who dwells in these highlands. Let us go to him that he may give us his blessing."

Then they went and knelt before him, and the king said to him: "Fortunate servant of God, give us your blessing."

He raised his hand and said: "In His name receive it, as from a sinful man."

And then the king took him and went with him to the queen; but when the women saw the very fierce lioness who was rolling her eyes from side to side as she gazed at them and was holding her red tongue between her lips and showing her very strong, sharp teeth, they were quite frightened to see her. The queen and her daughter and all the ladies received Nasciano very well, and all were greatly amazed at how handsome the youth was. And he came before the queen with his game, and said: "Lady, we bring you here this game."

And the king himself eame up to him and said: "Good youth, portion it out as you wish."

He said this to see what he would do about it. The youth said: "The game is yours, and you give it to whomever you wish."

"Still," said the king, "I want you to divide it up."

The youth became embarrassed, and a rosy blush suffused his face, which rendered him much more handsome; and he said: "Sire, you take the stag for yourself and companions."

And he went to the queen, who was talking with his foster father Nasciano; and kneeling he kissed her hands and gave her the roe deer. Then he looked to his right, and it seemed to him that next to the queen there was no one more worthy of being honored, according to her bearing, than Oriana, his mother, who did not recognize him. So he came up to her, knelt and said to her: "Lady, we do not hunt with our bows and arrows any other game except this."

Oriana said to him: "Fair youth, may God prosper you in your hunting and in all other things."

The king called him, and Galaor and Norandel, who were closer to him, took and embraced him many times, as if the kinship that they had with him attracted them to him. Then the king ordered them all to be silent, and he said to the good man: "Father, friend of God, now tell in the presence of everyone the story of this youth as you told it to me."

The good man there told them how, on leaving his hermitage, he had seen that a fierce lioness was carrying in its mouth that child, wrapped in swaddling clothes, for the sustenance of its offspring, and how by the grace of God she had placed it at his feet, and how she had given it some of her milk — not only she, but also a ewe with newborn lambs that he had, until he entrusted the baby to a nurse to rear. And he related to them all the things that had happened to the child in its rearing, for nothing was omitted, just as the book has related it. When Oriana and Mabilia and the maid of Denmark heard this, they looked at one another and their flesh trembled with pleasure knowing for certain that child to be the son of Amadis and Oriana, the one that the maid of Denmark had lost just as you have heard. But when the hermit came to tell of the white letters and the red ones that he had found on its chest, which he had all those ladies look at then and there, they absolutely believed their suspicion to be true, from which there was such great happiness in their hearts as to be indescribable. Especially happy was the very beautiful Oriana when she completely recognized that that was her son, whom she had considered lost.

The king asked the holy man very insistently for the youths so that he might have them reared. Nasciano perceiving that God destined them for that more than for the life he was affording them, although he would feel very lonely, yielded them up to him, but with great sorrow in his heart because he loved Esplandian very much. And when the king had them under his control, he gave Esplandian to the queen to serve in her presence; and a short time later she gave him to her daughter Oriana; who, as the one who had borne him, took great pleasure with him. Just as you hear, this child was under the care of his mother, she out of great fear having lost him during the flight with him as you have already heard, he having been snatched from the mouth of that very fierce lioness, then nourished on her milk.

These are wonders of that very powerful God, the protector of us all, which He performs when it is His will; and other sons of kings and of noble lords He causes to be reared wearing rich silks and very soft and delicate garments; and with so much love on the part of those who rear them, with such great regalement and care, without those who have them in charge sleeping or relaxing, then with a slight indisposition and a mild illness they have left this world. God being just in everything decrees that it happen thus, and so as a just thing it should be received by their fathers and mothers by thanking Him because He has sought to do His will, which can do no wrong, though we can.

The queen made confession, and Oriana likewise, to that holy man; to whom the latter had to reveal all of hers and Amadis's secret, and how that child was their son and by what accident she had lost it — which until then she had not mentioned to anyone in the world except to those who knew about it — begging him to remember him in his prayers. The good man was quite surprised at such love in a person of such high rank, who more than others was obliged to set a good example herself, and he rebuked her very severely, telling her to abstain from such great error, otherwise he would not absolve her and her soul would be placed in danger. But she told him weeping how, at the time that Amadis had freed her from Arcalaus the Enchanter, where first he had carnal knowledge of her, she had from him the kind of marital pledge one could and should obtain. The hermit was

very happy about this, and it was the cause of much benefit for many people who were saved from cruel deaths that they were expecting, as the Fourth Book will relate at greater length. Then he absolved her and imposed the proper penance. And then he went to the king, and taking Esplandian with him, embracing him weeping, he said to him: "Child of God, by Him given to me to rear, may He protect and defend you and make you a good man in His holy service."

And kissing him, the hermit blessed him and surrendered him to the king; and having taken leave of him and the queen and all the others, bringing away with him the lioness and the archers, he returned to his hermitage, where our story will make ample mention of him later on. The king returned with his retinue to the town.

CHAPTER LXXII

CONCERNING HOW THE KNIGHT OF THE GREEN SWORD, AFTER DEPARTING FROM KING TAFINOR OF BOHEMIA FOR THE ISLANDS OF ROMANIA, SAW COMING A CROWD OF ATTENDANTS IN THE MIDST OF WHOM WAS GRASINDA; AND HOW A KNIGHT OF HERS NAMED BRADANSIDEL SOUGHT BY FORCE TO MAKE THE KNIGHT OF THE GREEN SWORD COME BEFORE HIS LADY GRASINDA; AND HOW HE OF THE GREEN SWORD FOUGHT AND VANQUISHED HIM.

We have already related to you how the Knight of the Green Sword, at the time he departed from King Tafinor of Bohemia, was desirous of visiting the islands of Romania, having heard that bellicose folk dwelt there; and so he did, not by the main route, but by traveling hither and yon righting and correcting many wrongs and injuries that were being done to weak persons, men as well as women, by arrogant knights; in which occupation he was wounded many times and at other times ailing, so that on occasion it was necessary for him, though against his will, to rest. But while he was in parts of Romania, he underwent there mortal dangers in combat with strong knights and fierce giants, over all of whom, though it was with great risk to his life, God willed to grant him victory, he winning so much glory, so much honor, that he was regarded by all as a marvel. But not on this account were these great encounters and efforts strong enough to remove from his heart those burning flames and mortal concerns and desires that came to him for his lady Oriana. And you can certainly believe that if it had not been for the counsel of Gandalin, who always gave him courage, he would not have had sufficient strength

to keep his sad and afflicted heart from being dissolved in tears.

Then, traveling thus through those lands and living as you hear, journeying through all the regions that he could without surcease of body or mind, he arrived at a seaport town opposite Greece situated in a beautiful location and full of great towers and gardens as far as land's end, and it had the name of Sadiana. And because it was early in the day, he did not seek to enter it, but continued gazing at it, for it seemed beautiful to him, and he was pleased to behold the sea, which he had not seen since he had left Gaul, which had been more than two years before. And proceeding thus, he saw coming along the shore of the sea toward the town a large company of knights, ladies and maidens, and among them a lady dressed in very fine apparel over whom they held a beautiful canopy supported on four staffs to protect her from the sun. The Knight of the Green Sword, who did not derive pleasure from seeing people, but from traveling alone thinking about his lady, left the highway because he had no reason to meet them. And he had not withdrawn very far from them when he saw coming toward him a knight on a big horse and well armed, brandishing in his hand a lance, which he seemed to want to break. The knight was of excellent build, very burly and a good horseman, so that he appeared to possess great strength; and a maiden from the lady's entourage, richly dressed, was with him. And as the Knight of the Green Sword saw they were coming toward him, he stood still. The maiden came ahead and said: "Sir knight, that matron my lady who is yonder, gives orders to tell you to go at once to her at her request: this she tells you for your own good."

The Knight of the Dwarf, although the language of the maiden was German, understood her immediately very well, because he always had tried to learn the languages where he was traveling; and he replied to her: "Lady maiden, may God honor your lady and you. But tell me about that knight, what is it that he is seeking?"

"That has no relevancy for you," said she, "but do what I tell you."

"I shall not go with you under any condition if you do not tell me."

To this she replied saying: "Since that is the way it is, I shall do so, although not willingly. Know you, sir knight, that my lady saw you, and saw that dwarf who is with you, and because she has been told about a strange knight who is traveling thus through these lands performing wonders at arms, the like of which has never been seen, thinking that it is you, she wishes to honor you highly and reveal to you a secret that she has in her heart, which until now no one has learned from her. And since this knight understood her wish, he said he would have you come at her request even if you were unwilling to do so; which he can well accomplish, for he is more powerful at arms than anyone in these lands; and therefore I advise you that yielding to him, you come with me."

"Maiden," said he. "I am quite embarrassed not to accede to the request of your lady, but I wish you to see whether he will do what he has said."

"I am very sorry," said she, "for I am quite pleased with your speech and politeness."

Then she left him, and the Knight of the Green Sword continued on his way as before. When the other knight saw this, he said in a loud voice: "You, Sir Stubborn Knight, who would not go with the maiden, get off your horse at once and mount backward, taking the tail in your hand for a rein and with your shield upside down, and present yourself thus before that lady if you don't want to lose your head. Choose whichever you wish."

"Surely, knight," said he, "I do not have it now in my heart to choose either of these alternatives; rather I want them to be for you."

"Well now you will see," said he, "how I shall make you take one of them."

And he put the spurs to his horse with the expectation that at the first encounter he would hurl him from his saddle just as he had done to many others, because he was the best jouster that there was in those parts. The Knight of the Dwarf, who had already taken up his arms, went at him well protected by his shield, and that joust was decided by the first encounter, for their lances were shattered and the threat-making knight fell out of his saddle, and he of the Green Sword had his shield and coat of mail pierced, and the tip of the lance made a wound

in his throat, from which he would suffer pain. And he passed by him, and removing the piece of the lance that was thrust through his shield, he turned toward Bradansidel, for that was the knight's name, and saw him stretched out on the field as though dead; and he said to Gandalin: "Dismount and take off the shield and the helmet from that knight, and see if he is dead."

And he did so; and the knight caught his breath and now stirred a bit, but not in such wise as to regain his senses. And he of the Green Sword put the point of his sword to the knight's face scratching it a little, and said: "You, knight who threatens and scorns those whom you do not know, have to lose your head or submit to the conditions that you specified."

He, with the fear of death, became somewhat more conscious and nodded his head. And he of the Green Sword said: "Won't you talk? I shall cut off your head."

Then the other said: "Alas, knight, for God's sake have mercy! for I shall carry out your command rather than die at a time when I would lose my soul, according to the state in which I now am."

"Well then, let it be done without more delay."

Bradansidel called his squires whom he had there; and at his command they put him on the horse backward, and they put the tail in his hand and hung the shield upside down from his neck, and thus they took him before the beautiful lady and through the center of the town, that all might see him and that he might be an example for those who out of great pride might wish to humble and scorn those they know not, and even God if they could reach Him, not thinking about the misfortunes that in this world and afterwards in the other are being prepared for them. And though the lady and her company and the people of the town greatly marveled at the misfortune which had overtaken that man whom they considered such a strong knight, as much and more did they extol and praise the fortitude of the one who had overcome him, affirming the truth of the great things that up to then they had heard concerning him.

Then this having been done as described, the Knight of the Green Sword saw the maiden who had called him, and who had seen the battle and heard all the words that they had exchanged previously; and going to her, he said:

"My lady maid, now I will go at the command of your lady, if you please."

"I am quite pleased," said she, "and so my lady Grasinda will be." For that was the lady's name.

So they went together; and when they arrived, he of the Green Sword beheld the lady so beautiful and so gay that since departing from his sister Melicia, he had not seen any other lady who was equally so. And likewise he seemed to her the most elegant and handsome knight, and of the most pleasing appearance when armed, of all those she had ever seen; and she said to him: "Sir, I have heard of many rare exploits at arms that you have performed since you entered this land. Now that I see you in person, I am quite sure they are to be believed. And also I have been told that you were at the court of King Tafinor of Bohemia, and of the honor and benefit that accrued to him through you; and I have been informed that you are called the Knight of the Green Sword or of the Dwarf. Because with you I see it all verified, thus I shall call you. But I entreat you earnestly for your own sake, for I see you wounded, that you be my guest in this town of mine, and you shall have your wounds treated; for such facilities for this you will not find elsewhere in the whole region."

He said to her: "My lady, after seeing the good will of your request, if there were anything in which I might risk danger and travail in order to serve you, I would do so — all the more since treatment of my wounds is what I so greatly need."

The lady, taking him with her, departed for the town. And an old knight who was leading her horse by the bridle rein, held out his hand and gave the rein to the Knight of the Green Sword; and he himself went on to the town to arrange for the knight's lodging, for he was the lady's majordomo. The Knight of the Dwarf conducted the lady, chatting with her on several topics; and if previously she had esteemed him highly for his great fame, even more highly did she now esteem him on observing his great discretion and elegant speech; and likewise he was impressed by her, for she was very beautiful, and very witty in all that she said. As they entered the town, all the people came to their doors and windows to see their lady, for she was very much loved by all, as was the knight, whom they held in high

regard for his great deeds, and he seemed to them the most handsome and gallant person that they had ever seen; moreover they were thinking that he had accomplished no better exploit at arms than to have overcome Bradansidel, because he was feared by everyone.

So they reached the lady's palace, and there she had him quartered in a very luxurious chamber, furnished as befitted the house of such a noble lady, and she had him disarmed and his hands and face cleansed of the dust of travel, and he was given a rose-red cloak to put on. When Grasinda saw him thus, she was amazed at how handsome he was, for she hadn't thought that a male human being could be so good-looking, and she had a specialist of hers in wound healing, the best and most learned to be found in all those parts, come there at once to care for his wounds. This man examined his throat and said to him: "Knight, you are wounded in a dangerous place, and it is necessary to rest; if you didn't, you would find yourself in great trouble."

"Doctor," said he, "I beg of you, by the faith that you owe to God and to your lady who is here, that as soon as I am able to ride horseback, you tell me so; because it is important that I have no rest or repose until God through His mercy brings me to that region of my heart's desire."

And on saying this, his concern became so augmented that he could not prevent the tears from coming to his eyes, at which he was very greatly embarrassed; and wiping them away quickly, he assumed a cheerful mien. The physician treated the wound and fed him what was necessary; and Grasinda said to him: "Sir, rest and sleep, and we shall go dine; then at the proper time we shall see you; and tell your squire to ask uninhibitedly for everything you may need."

Whereupon she took her leave. And he, when in his bed thinking very intently of his lady Oriana — for in her all his joy, all his happiness were mingled with torments and with passions that were continually battling with each other — already tired fell asleep.

Concerning Grasinda I tell you that after she had dined, she retired to her chamber, and recumbent on her bed, she began to think about how handsome the Knight of the Green Sword was and about the great things that she had been told concerning

him. And although she was so beautiful and rich, and of such high rank as to be the niece of King Tafinor of Bohemia and had been married to a knight of high degree who had lived only one year and without issue, she decided to have the Knight of the Green Sword for a husband, although she regarded him as only a knight errant. And on considering how she might make her intention known to him, she remembered that she had seen him weeping, and she thought that would only be out of love for some woman with whom he was enamored, but could not have. This made her pause until she could find out more about him. And when she ascertained that he was awake, taking with her her ladies and maidens-in-waiting she went to his room to pay her respects to him and for the sake of the great pleasure and delight that she experienced in seeing him and talking with him. And no less did he have; but his thought was far removed from what she was thinking. Thus that lady was keeping him company, affording him all the pleasure that could be given him. But one day, not being able to endure any longer, on taking Gandalin aside, she said to him: "Good squire, so help you God and give you good fortune, tell me one thing if you know it, which I wish to ask you, and I promise you that it will never be revealed by me. And it is this: whether you are aware of any woman with whom your lord is greatly and steadfastly in love."

"Lady," said Gandalin. "This dwarf and I have lived with him only a short time, for because of the great things that we learned about him, we agreed to serve him; and he told us not to ask about his name or his affairs; otherwise we should leave at once and good luck to us. And since we have been with him, we have seen so much of his prowess and valor that he has greatly astonished us, for he is one whom, my lady, you can unhesitatingly believe to be the best knight there is in the world; and of his affairs, I know nothing more."

The lady held her head bowed, and her gaze lowered, for she was absorbed in thought. Gandalin, who saw her thus, believed that she was in love with his lord; hence he wanted to deflect her from what she could in nowise achieve; so he said: "Lady, I see him frequently weeping, and with such anguish of heart that I wonder how he can keep on living. And this, in view of his great courage that belittles everything ferocious and fearful, I believe

comes upon him only because of some overflowing, steadfast love that he has for some woman, because this is the kind of ailment for whose remedy neither courage nor discretion suffices."

"So help me God!" said she, "I believe what you tell me, and I am very grateful to you. Go to him, and may God give him relief in his distress."

And she went along to her attendants, disposed not to strive henceforth for what she had been planning, for on account of seeing him so calm in word and deed she believed he would not change his mind.

Just as you hear, the Knight of the Green Sword was in the house of that great lady, the beautiful and rich Grasinda, being healed of his wounds — a house where he received as much honor, and as much pleasure as if, instead of the poor knight errant that he seemed, it had been made known to her that he was the son of such a noble king, as his father, King Perion of Gaul, was. And when he saw himself in such a state of health as to be able to bear arms, he gave orders to Gandalin to make ready the things needed for travel. The latter told him that everything was prepared. And at this juncture, as they were talking, Grasinda entered, and with her four maidens of hers; and he, approaching her and taking her by the hand as she seated herself on a dais which was draped with a silken cloth embroidered in gold, said to her: "My lady, I am ready to go on my way, and the honor that I have received from you causes me great concern as to how I shall be able to requite it. Therefore, my lady, if in any way my service can procure you any pleasure, it will be done quite willingly."

She replied: "Certainly, Sir Knight of the Green Sword, I believe implicitly what you say; and when I ask satisfaction for the pleasure and service that you have found here, if there was any, then without any hesitation or embarrassment there will be revealed to you what no one until now has ascertained from me. But I very greatly entreat you to tell me to what region your desire is most inclined to go."

"To Greece," said he, "if God should so direct, in order to see the life of the Greeks and their emperor, of whom I have heard good reports."

"Then I wish," said she, "to be of assistance for that voyage, and this will consist in my giving you a very good ship provided with sailors who will be assigned to you, and with food to suffice for a year; and I shall give you the physician who healed you, whose name is Elisabad, for another such man of his profession would be hard to find anywhere — all this on condition that if you are free to do so, you be back in this town with me within a year."

The knight was very happy about that help, for he had great need of it and had been greatly worried about where he might obtain it; so he said to her: "My lady, if I didn't requite you for these favors that you do me, I would consider myself the most unfortunate knight in the world; and such would I deem myself if I learned that you, through shyness or embarrassment, were failing to ask it."

"My dear sir," said she, "when God brings you back from this voyage, I shall ask of you what my heart has desired for a long time and which will promote your honor, although some danger is risked."

"So be it," said he, "and I trust in your great circumspection that you will not ask of me anything other than what I ought rightly to grant."

"Then you will relax here," said Grasinda, "these next five days, while the things needed for the journey are being prepared."

He agreed to do so, although he had wished to leave there the next day. In the space of time specified the ship was provided with all necessary supplies. And the Knight of the Green Sword with the physician Elisabad, in whom he, next to God, had great confidence for the maintenance of his health, boarded it. And having said farewell to that beautiful lady, and the sails having been unfurled, using the oars they undertook their voyage, not directly to Constantinople, where the emperor was, but to the islands of Romania, which they had not yet traversed, and to others under the rule of Greece, through which the Knight of the Green Sword went quite opportunely, performing great deeds at arms fighting with foreigners, some impelling him to chastise their arrogance with great reason; and combatting others who because of his great fame had come to pit their strength against his. Therefore he experienced many encounters and dangers and had many wounds, which, once he had achieved victory and honor,

were considered glorifying by everyone, and of them he was healed by that great physician whom he brought with him.

Then while he was engaged in this great and constantly shifting voyage, sailing to many islands, one after another, the sailors, resenting it on account of great fatigue, complained to the captain. And when he told the Knight of the Dwarf, it was agreed that although it was the latter's desire to finish seeing all those lands, since the tired sailors resented it, they should turn the ship directly toward Constantinople; so that from that round trip, if God did not disturb it, he would return at the end of a year's time just as he had promised Grasinda. With this agreement, to the joy of all the men of the ship, they made the voyage to Constantinople with a good and favorable wind.

In the second Book we told you that the Patin, being a knight without any state — only hoping to have one after the death of Sidon his brother who was emperor, on account of the latter's not having a son to inherit the empire — on hearing of the great fame of the knights who at that time were in Great Britain in the service of King Lisuarte, decided to come and test himself with them. And although at the time he was very much in love with Queen Sardamira of Sardinia, and to serve her undertook that journey, on arriving at King Lisuarte's court — where he was received with great honor in accordance with his noble lineage — and seeing the very beautiful Oriana, Lisuarte's daughter, who had no equal in beauty in the world, he became so enamored of her that forgetting his old love in his pursuit of that new one, he asked her father for her in marriage. And although the reply was such as to arouse some just hope, the desire of the king was very far removed from such a union. But Patin, considering that he had obtained what he desired, wishing to demonstrate his strength, thinking that thereby he would be loved more by that lady, went through those lands to look for knights errant in order to fight with them. And his ill-luck, that guided him thus, was to appear in the forest where at that time Amadis, despairing of his lady, was weeping very bitterly. And there, after each had said his say, the Patin in praise of love, and Amadis complaining of it, they had their battle in which the Patin fell to the ground from their jousting; and afterwards, on recovering his horse, by a single blow of the sword he was so badly wounded on the head

that he came many times to the point of death; for which reason, leaving undecided his marriage to Oriana, he returned to Rome; where a short time later, the emperor his brother having died, he was chosen emperor. And not forgetting that passion which Oriana had aroused in his heart, believing that with the higher rank in which he was placed he would win her more easily, he decided to ask King Lisuarte again for her hand in marriage; a task which he entrusted to a cousin of his named Salustanquidio, prince of Calabria, a knight famous at arms, and along with him to Brondajel of Roca, his chief steward, and to the archbishop of Talancia; and with them were to go as many as three hundred men, and the beautiful Queen Sardamira with many ladies and maidens-in-waiting to escort Oriana when they brought her back with them. They, seeing that to be the wish of the emperor, began to prepare the things needed for the journey, which will be described in more detail later on.

CHAPTER LXXIII

How the noble knight of the green sword after leaving grasinda to go to constantinople was so constrained by ill fortune while at sea as to be carried to the island of the devil, where he found a fierce beast called the endriago, and finally achieved victory over it.

The Knight of the Green Sword was sailing over the sea with his company on his way to Constantinople, as you have heard, with a very good wind, when it suddenly changed to the opposite, as often happens, and the sea became so rough, so violently so, that neither the strength of the ship, which was great, nor the knowledge of the sailors was able to cope with it sufficiently to keep it from being frequently in danger of being sunk. The rain was so heavy, the wind so powerful and the sky so dark, that the sailors greatly despaired of their lives being saved by any means, just as the physician Elisabad and all the others might have done, if it had not been for the great mercy of the most high Lord. Many times, both by day and by night the ship was so filled with water that they were not able to relax, nor eat or sleep, without their experiencing fright, for there was no peace aboard except what fortune was pleased to let them have.

Thus they traveled for a week, not knowing or guessing to what part of the sea they were going, without the storm's abating a jot for one moment; at the end of which time with the great force of the winds, one night before dawn the ship was grounded so violently that they were not able to dislodge it by any means whatever. This gave as great comfort to everyone as if they had been brought back from death to life. But morning having come,

the sailors on recognizing the place where they were, namely, the island that is called Devil's Isle, which a fierce beast had depopulated entirely, the anguish and the sorrow of their hearts were doubled, for they deemed their danger much greater than that which they had expected at sea. And beating their faces with their hands, weeping copiously, they came to the Knight of the Green Sword, without saying a word to him. He, greatly surprised that their joy was thus changed to such great sadness and not knowing the cause of it, was quite nonplussed, and asked them what sudden brief circumstance had changed so quickly their pleasure to great weeping.

"Oh, knight!" said they, "our tribulation is so great that our strength is not sufficient to relate it, but let that physician Elisabad tell about it because he well knows for what reason this Devil's Isle has its name."

The physician, who was no less disturbed than they, encouraged by the Knight of the Dwarf, but with his flesh trembling and his speech troubled, told the knight with great seriousness and fear what he wanted to know, speaking thus: "Sir Knight of the Dwarf, know you that of this island on which we have landed, a giant named Bandaguido was lord, who with his great ferocity and harshness made most of the other giants living nearby his vassals. He was married to a gentle giantess of good family; and for all the molestation and cruelty that the husband with his wickedness perpetrated on the Christians by killing and destroying them, she out of pity made amends every time she could. By this matron Bandaguido had a daughter whom, after she was a grown-up maiden, nature had so adorned and enhanced in beauty that throughout a large part of the world one could not find another woman of her rank and lineage to equal her. But since great beauty is soon combined with vainglory, and vainglory with sin, this maiden, on seeing herself so attractive and graceful, and so elegant and worthy of being loved by everybody, and perceiving that no one, because of the ferocity of her father, had dared importune her, as a last resort took to loving her father with a gross and very disloyal love; so that many times, when the mother had risen from bed beside her husband, the daughter on coming there, would embrace and kiss him showing him much love, while joking and laughing with him. The father, at first received that

with the love that is due a daughter from her father; but its very long continuance, her great overwhelming beauty and the very slight conscience and virtue of the father caused that evil, ugly desire of hers to be effective. From which we ought to draw the moral lesson that no man in this life should have such confidence in himself as to cease to avoid and elude improper conversation and familiarity, not only of sisters and other women relatives, but also of his own daughters; because from this evil passion, if it comes at the height of his natural ardor, seldom are judgment, conscience, and fear sufficient to impose on him a check adequate for withdrawing. From this very ugly sin and very great error there resulted immediately another and greater one, as often happens to those who, forgetful of God's pity and doing the Devil's will, seek with one great evil deed to remedy another, not recognizing that the true medicine for sin is genuine repentance and penance, which cause a man to be pardoned by that noble Lord who on account of similar errors placed himself after many torments on the Cross, where He died as a true man and was resurrected as the true God. For this wretched father, being fired with love for his daughter and she likewise for him, in order that they might enjoy their evil desire more uninhibitedly plotted to kill that noble matron, who was his wife and her mother, the giant having been informed by his false idols, whom he worshiped, that if he married his daughter, there would be engendered in her the fiercest and strongest thing to be found in the whole world. And putting their plan into execution, that wretched daughter whom her mother loved more than herself, on walking through a garden talking with the mother, under the pretense of seeing something unusual in a well brought her to look at it, then gave her a push, casting her into its depths so that in a short while she was drowned. The daughter made an outcry, saying that her mother had fallen into the well. All the men hastened there including the giant, who was a party to the deception; and when the men saw that the lady, who was greatly beloved by all of them, was dead, they wept bitterly. But the giant said to them: 'Do not grieve, for the gods have desired this; and I shall take a wife in whom will be engendered an individual such that through him we shall all be feared and shall dominate those who wish us ill.' Everybody fell silent out of fear of the giant, and did not dare

take any action. And then that day, publicly before everyone, he took as his wife his daughter Bandaguida, in whom on that unfortunate night, by order of the devils in whom she and her father and husband believed, was engendered an animal in the form that you shall now hear. It had its body and face covered with hair, and all over its body it had overlapping horny scales so resistant that no weapon could pierce them, and its legs and feet were very big and strong. And on its shoulders it had wings so large that they covered it down to the feet, and they were not feathered, but with a gleaming, hairy, leatherlike hide as black as pitch, so impenetrable that no weapons could hurt it. With those wings it covered itself as a man does with a shield. And from under them there extended very strong arms just like a lion's paws, all covered with horny scales smaller than those of its torso; and each of its hands had the shape of an eagle's with the claws of its five fingers so strong and so large that nowhere could there be anything strong enough, once within its grasp, to escape from being crushed immediately. It had two teeth in each one of its jaws so strong and so long that they protruded from its mouth a cubit's length; and its eyes were big and round, very red like live coals, so that from a long distance, when it was dark, they were visible and all the people fled from it. It jumped and ran so nimbly that there was no deer that could outrun it; it seldom ate and drank, and during certain periods not at all, for it did not suffer thereby. Its entire enjoyment was killing men and other living creatures; and when it found lions and bear that defended themselves somewhat, it became very angry and emitted through its nostrils a vapor so frightful as to seem a fiery flame; and it would make a raucous outcry terrible to hear, so that all living things fled from its approach as from that of death. It stank so that there was nothing it did not infect; it was so frightful when it rattled its scales together and ground its teeth and made its wings clatter, that it seemed to be making the earth tremble. Such is this beast called the Endriago" — said the physician Elisabad — "and even more I tell you: the great force of the sin of the giant and his daughter caused the Devil to enter into it, so that it increased mightily in strength and harshness."

The Knight of the Green Sword was greatly amazed by what the physician told him concerning that devil called the Endriago,

born of man and woman; and the other people were quite frightened; but the knight said to him: "Master, then how could a thing so terrible be born of woman?"

"I will tell you," said the master, "according to what is set forth in a book that the emperor of Constantinople has, whose island this was, and he lost it because his resources were not great enough to kill this devil. Know you," said the master physician, "that when she felt herself pregnant, Bandaguida told the giant about it; and he was very pleased, because he saw to be true what his gods had told him, and so he believed that the rest of it would be. And he said that three or four nurses were needed for what she would bear, since it was to be the strongest thing in the world. Then as that evil creature grew larger in the womb of its mother, since it was the creation and work of the devil, it made her fall sick many times, and the color of her face and eyes became yellow like the color of poison; but she considered it all good, believing that according to what the gods had said, her son would be the strongest and fiercest ever seen, and that if it were such, she would seek some way to kill its father, and would marry the son, for this is the greatest danger for evil people: to become so corrupt and to take such delight in sin that although the grace of the most high Lord breathes on them, not only do they fail to feel it and recognize it, but also they abhor and reject it as an irksome thing foreign to them, being in thought and deed ever intent on extending their evil acts because they are subjugated and conquered by them. Well then, her time having come, she gave birth to a son, and not under much stress, because evil things always until the end appear agreeable. When the nurses who were provided to care for it saw an infant so unlike any other, they were quite frightened; but being very much afraid of the giant they remained silent and wrapped it in the clothes they had for it; and one of them, venturing more than the others, gave it her teat, and it took it, and sucked so forcibly that it made her cry out loudly. And when they took it away from her, she fell dead from the large amount of poison that had penetrated her. This was at once reported to the giant, and on seeing that son of his, he marveled at such a grotesque creature; and he decided to ask the gods why they had given him such a son. He went to the temple where he kept them, and they were

three, one having the figure of man, the second that of a lion, and the third, that of a griffon. And after making his sacrifices, he asked them why they had given him such a son. The idol who was in the shape of a man said to him: 'It is fitting that it be such, because just as its deeds will be rare and marvelous, so it is proper that it be so, especially for destroying the Christians, who are trying to destroy us; and for this reason I gave it some resemblance to me by making it in accord with men's free will, which all beasts lack.' The second idol said: 'Well, I sought to endow it with great ferocity and fortitude such as we lions have.' The other one said: 'I gave it wings and claws, and agility over and above that of all animals there will ever be on earth.' The giant, having heard this, said to them: 'How shall I rear it, since the nurse was killed as soon as she suckled it?' They told him: 'Have the other two nurses suckle it, and these also will die; but let the one who remains nourish it with milk from your herds for one year, and by that time it will be as tall and as handsome as we are, who have been the cause of its being engendered. And take note that we forbid you or your wife or any other person to see it during this entire year, except that woman whom we told you to have take care of it.' The giant ordered that it be done just as his idols had told him; and in this way that evil beast was reared just as you hear. At the end of a year when the giant found out from the nurse that it had grown very large, and they heard it utter frightful raucous cries, he decided with his daughter, whom he had as wife, to go and see it; and immediately they came into the room where it was, and they saw it running and jumping about. And when the Endriago saw his mother he came toward them, and leaping up thrust his claws in her face and split her nose open and destroyed her eyes. And before she could escape from its hands, she was dead. When the giant saw that, he grasped his sword to kill it, but gave himself such a blow on one leg that he cut it entirely off, so that he fell to the ground and very shortly was dead. The Endriago leaped over him; and going out of the room, leaving all the people of the castle infected, it went away to the mountains. And not much time passed before the island was depopulated because of the people the monster slew and because those who could obtain boats and ships fled by sea; and thus depopulated it has remained

for the past forty years. This is what I know about this evil, devilish beast," said the physician.

"Master, you have told me extraordinary things, and God our Lord is very patient with those who fail in their obligations to him; but finally if they do not reform, He gives them punishment as great as has been their wickedness. And now I beg you, master, to say mass tomorrow, because I wish to see this island, and if He directs me, to return it to His holy service."

That night they spent in great fright not only concerning the sea, which was very rough, but also because of the fear they had of the Endriago, thinking that it might come at them from a castle near there that it held, where it often dwelt. And dawn having come, the master physician said mass and the Knight of the Green Sword heard it with great humility, beseeching God to help him in that danger in which he intended to put himself for His service, and if it were His will that his death should come about there, praying that He through His pity, have mercy on his soul. And then he armed himself and had his horse brought on land, and Gandalin with his; and he said to those of the ship: "Friends, I intend to enter that castle, and if I find the Endriago there, to fight with it; and if I do not find it, I shall examine the castle to see whether it is in such condition that you may be lodged there until the sea becomes calm. And I shall search for this beast through these forest areas; and if I escape from it, I shall return to you, but if not, do what you consider best."

When they heard this they were very much more frightened than they had been before, because even out there on the sea all their courage was not enough for them to endure their fear of the Endriago, and they considered it a greater peril and danger than the great wildness of the sea, and greater than the courage of that knight might forestall by going of his own free will to look for it in order to fight with it. And certainly all the other great things that they had heard about him and had seen that he had done at arms rated as nothing in comparison with this. And master Elisabad, though he was a man of learning and a cleric, was greatly astounded, and was constrained to remind him that since such things were not within the nature of man, they were to be avoided in order not to commit the unforgivable sin of suicide. But the Knight of the Green Sword answered that if he were to

keep in mind that obstacle of which he spoke, he would be prevented from leaving his land in quest of dangerous adventures; and though some had been surmounted by him, were it known that he abandoned this one, all of them by themselves would count for nothing; therefore it was important for him to kill that evil, grotesque beast or to die, as those men were formerly obliged to do, who, leaving their own country, were wont to go to a foreign one in order to win glory and honor. Then he looked at Gandalin; who, while the knight was talking with the physician and with those of the ship, in order to help him had armed himself with the arms that he found there; and when he saw him on his horse, weeping profusely, he said to him: "Who has put you up to such a thing? Disarm yourself, for if you are doing it to serve me and help me, you already know that it is not to be by your losing your life, but by staying alive so that you can relate the manner of my death there where exists the principal reason and reminder on account of which I receive it."

And forcibly making him disarm, he went away with him to the castle, and on entering it they found it deserted, except for birds; and they saw that there were good buildings inside, although there were some in ruins; that the main gates were very strong, and there were heavy padlocks with which to lock them; all of which greatly pleased him. And he ordered Gandalin to go summon all those of the ship and to tell them of the good facilities they had in the castle; and he did so. All disembarked immediately, although with great fear of the Endriago, but the storm at sea was continuing, so they entered the castle, and the Knight of the Green Sword said to them: "My good friends, I intend to go and search through this island for the Endriago, and if it goes well with me, Gandalin will sound this horn, and then you may believe that the Endriago is dead and I alive; and if it goes ill with me, it will not be necessary to make any signal to you. And in the meantime close these gates and bring some provisions from the ship, so that you may remain here until the weather is more propitious for sailing."

Then the Knight of the Green Sword left all of them weeping. But the demonstrations of weeping and bitterness that Ardian his dwarf made were indescribable, for he tore his hair and slapped his face, and beat his head against the wall, calling himself

wretched because his bad fortune had brought him to serve such a man, for a thousand times he had been about to die watching the extraordinary things that he had seen him undertake, and lastly this one which the emperor of Constantinople with all his great seigniory had not dared or was not able to correct. And when he saw that his lord already was going through the countryside, he went up a stairway of stone to the top of the wall almost swooning because of his deep grief for his lord. And master Elisabad ordered an altar set up with the holy relics that he had brought along in order to say mass; and he had everybody take lighted tapers; and kneeling they prayed God to protect that knight who for His service and to preserve their lives was deliberately exposing himself to death.

The Knight of the Green Sword was going along, just as you hear, with that courage and bearing that his brave heart vouchsafed him, and Gandalin behind him weeping bitterly, believing that the days of his lord would come to an end with the end of that day. The knight turned to him, and said to him laughing: "My good brother, don't have such faint hope in the mercy of God, or in the sight of my lady Oriana, as to be in such despair, for I have before me not only my delightful memory of her, but her in the flesh; and my eyes behold her, and she is telling me to protect her from this evil beast. Then what do you think, my true friend, that I ought to do? Don't you know that on her life or death my own depends? Will you counsel me to permit her to be killed, and that I die before your eyes? May it not please God that you should think so. And if you do not see her, I do, for she is before me. Then if only my memory of her has caused me to undergo to my great honor the things that you know about, how much more ought her very own presence to avail."

And on saying this his courage waxed so great that he yearned to find the Endriago. And on entering a wild mountain valley with many hollowed out rocks, he said: "Shout, Gandalin, because thereby it may be that the Endriago will hasten to us; and I beg of you that if I die here, you try to take to my lady Oriana that which is entirely hers, namely, my heart. And tell her that I am sending it to her in order not to give an accounting before God of why I was carrying with me what did not belong to me."

When Gandalin heard this, he not only shouted, but tearing his hair and weeping, he uttered loud cries out of his desire for his own death before seeing that of his lord whom he loved so much. And it was not long before they saw the Endriago coming out from among the rocks much fiercer and stronger than it ever had been, the cause of which was that as the devils saw that this knight was relying more on his mistress Oriana than on God, they had an opportunity to enter into it more powerfully and to render it more furious. And they were saying: "If we save him from this man, there is no other in the world so daring or so strong as to venture to attack such a creature."

The Endriago was approaching so enraged spewing from its mouth fumes mingled with jets of fire, and gnashing its teeth, frothing greatly at the mouth and causing its horny scales and its wings to make such a clatter that it was frightful to behold. And the Knight of the Green Sword was frightened, especially on hearing the hissing and horrible raucous cries that it made; and although it might be described in words, that would be nothing in comparison with seeing it. And when the Endriago saw him, it began to make great leaps and outcries, as one for whom a long time had passed without its having seen any man; and then it came at them. When the Knight of the Green Sword's horse and that of Gandalin saw it, they began to run away, so frightened that their riders could scarcely hold them, and emitting very loud snorts. And when he of the Green Sword saw that it was not possible to approach it on horseback, he dismounted very quickly, and said to Gandalin: "Brother, withdraw to one side with that horse so that we not lose both horses; and witness the fortune that God may be willing to grant me against this very frightful devil; and beg Him out of pity to direct me as to how I may remove it from here so that this land may be restored to His service; and if I have to die here, pray that He have mercy on my soul. And in the other matter do as I have told you."

Gandalin could not answer him, for he was weeping so loudly because he saw his lord's death so certain, unless God miraculously should save him. The Knight of the Green Sword took his lance and covered himself with his shield. As a man who already had accepted death, he lost all his fear; and with all his strength, and on foot just as he was, he went at the Endriago.

The devil, when he saw him, came at him at once, and spewed fire from his mouth with a smoke so black that they could hardly see each other. And he of the Green Sword rushed forward through the smoke, and coming up close to it, through very good luck, struck it with the lance in the eye, so that he crushed it. And the Endriago grasped the lance in its claws, receiving it in its mouth and grinding it to pieces with the iron head and a little of the shaft thrust through its tongue and gills, for it had charged so hard that it had impaled itself on it. And it gave a leap in order to seize him, but with the handicap of the crushed eye it could not; being inhibited also because the knight protected himself with great strength and keenness of heart, as one who saw himself at death's door. And he grasped his very good sword and attacked the monster, which appeared groggy, not only because of its crushed eye but also because of the great amount of blood flowing from its mouth. And because of its loud snorting and panting most of the blood was going down its throat and almost choking it; and it could not close its mouth or bite with it. And he came up to it from the side and struck it such a heavy blow on its scales that it seemed to him that he had merely struck a hard rock, for he cut nothing. As the Endriago saw him so close, it thought to seize him in its claws, but it only reached his shield and jerked it away from him with such force that it caused him to fall on his hands. And while the devil tore it to pieces with his very strong claws, the Knight of the Green Sword had the opportunity to get up; and when he saw himself without a shield, and that his sword was not cutting anything, he well realized that his action counted for nothing unless God should enable him to destroy the other eye, for it availed him nothing to try to strike it anywhere else. And like a furious lion, with all fear laid aside, he went toward the Endriago, which was very faint and weak, both from the quantity of blood it was losing and from the crushed eye. And as things which have taken place in the service of the Devil fail and perish, and our Lord, already angered that the Devil had had such power and had done such harm to those who, although sinners, believed in His holy Catholic faith, sought to give strength and special grace — for without it no one would be able to undergo or dare hope to await such great danger — to this knight so that he might put an end, in

defiance of all natural laws, to that thing which had put an end to many, among whom were those unfortunates, his father and mother; and intending to strike it in the other eye with his sword, God sought to guide him so that he thrust it through one of the nostrils of its nose, for it had very wide ones. And with the tremendous force that he expended and that which the Endriago was bringing to bear, the sword pierced through to its brain. But the Endriago, when it saw him so close, embraced him with his very strong and sharp claws and tore all the armor from his back and the flesh and bones as far as his vital organs. And as the monster was suffocated by the large amount of blood that it was imbibing and on account of the sword thrust that had penetrated to its brain — and especially the sentence that had been given it by God and which could not be revoked — being unable to sustain itself any longer, it opened its arms and fell senseless to one side as if dead. The knight, when he saw it thus, drew his sword and thrust it through its mouth as far as he could so many times that he finished killing it. But I want you to know that before dawn broke, the Devil came out of its mouth, and went through the air with a very great thunderclap, so that those who were in the castle heard it as clearly as if it had been beside them. Thereby they were quite frightened, recognizing that the knight was already in battle. And although they were locked up in such a stronghold and with such crossbars and padlocks, they were not very sure of their lives. And if the sea had not been still very wild, they would not have dared to delay in going out to it. But they turned to God with many prayers to deliver them from that danger and to protect that knight who for His service was undertaking such an extraordinary exploit.

Then, since the Endriago was killed, the knight withdrew, and on going toward Gandalin, who was already coming toward him, he could not hold himself upright and fell in a faint beside a stream of water that flowed nearby. Gandalin, when he arrived and saw his very frightful wounds, thought he was dead, and letting himself fall from his horse, began to shout loudly while tearing his hair. Then the knight came to his senses somewhat and said to him: "Ah, my good brother and true friend! Already you see that I am dying. I beg you in the name of the rearing I had from your father and mother and the great love that I have

always had for you, that you be as good to me after my death as you have been during my lifetime, and when I am dead that you take my heart and carry it to my lady Oriana. And tell her that since it always was hers and she has had it in her possession since that first day that I saw her, and as long as it was enclosed in this troubled body, and never for a moment was it displeased to serve her, to keep it with her in remembrance of the one whose it was, although as another's property he held it, because from this memory wherever my soul may be, the latter will receive rest and peace."

And he could not speak any longer. Gandalin, when he saw him thus, did not try to answer. Instead, he mounted his horse very quickly, and climbing up on a hillock, sounded the horn as loudly as he could as a signal that the Endriago was dead. Ardian the dwarf, who was in the tower, heard it, and shouted to master Elisabad to hasten to his lord, that the Endriago was dead; and he, since he was prepared, mounted with all the equipment that was needed, and went as quickly as he could in the direction that the dwarf indicated to him. And he had not gone far when he saw Gandalin on top of the hill; the latter when he saw the physician, came running to him, and said: "Alas, sir, for God's and mercy's sake succor my lord, for it is very necessary, and the Endriago is dead!"

The physician, when he heard this, was quite pleased with that good news that Gandalin was announcing, not knowing how badly the knight was injured; and he hastened as fast as he could with Gandalin guiding him, until they came to where the Knight of the Green Sword was. And they found him quite irrational and out of his head, uttering very loud groans. The physician went to him and said: "What is this, sir knight? Where has your great courage gone at the hour and time that you have greatest need of it? Do not fear dying, for here is your good friend and loyal servant master Elisabad, who will help you."

When the Knight of the Green Sword heard master Elisabad, although he was completely bereft of his senses, he recognized him and opened his eyes, and tried to raise his head, but could not; so he lifted up his arms as if he were seeking to embrace him. Master Elisabad then took off his cloak and spread it on the ground; and he and Gandalin having lifted him and placed

him on it, they disarmed him as gently as they could. When the physician saw the wounds, although he was one of the best in the world of that profession, and had seen many deep wounds, he was quite frightened and was despairing of his life; but as one who loved him and eonsidered him the best knight in the world, he intended to exert all his effort to save him. And on examining the wounds he saw that the whole injury was in the flesh and in the bones, and that it had not touched the vital organs. He then cherished greater hope of healing him, and he set his bones and ribs, sewed up his flesh, applying such medieation and bandaging his whole body all around so well that he stopped the bleeding and the air that was eseaping through his wounds. And then there came to the knight greater consciousness and strength, so that he was able to talk; and opening his eyes, he said: "Oh, Lord God all powerful, who through thy great eompassion didst will to come into the world and take human form within the Virgin Mary; and in order to open the gates of Paradise that were kept closed, thou didst will to suffer many injuries, and finally death at the hands of that corrupt and wretched folk! As one of the greatest of sinners, I beg of you, Lord, to have merey on my soul, for my body is condemned to earth."

And he fell silent and said no more. The physician said to him: "Sir knight, I am quite pleased to see you so diseerning, beeause from That One whom you ask for merey will come to you the true medicine, and after Him from me as His servant; for I shall wager my life on yours, and with His help I shall heal you. And do not be fearful of dying this time; just be heartened enough to expect to live instead of expecting to die."

Then he took a sponge medieated against the poison, and put it to his nose in sueh wise that it greatly stimulated him. Gandalin kissed the hands of the physieian, kneeling before him, begging him to have pity on his lord. The physieian ordered him to mount and go quickly to the eastle, and bring some men so that they might transfer the knight on a litter before night fell. Gandalin did so; and the men having eome, made a litter as best they could out of wood from that forest. And putting the Knight of the Green Sword on it, they bore him on their shoulders to the eastle; and the best chamber that there was there having

been prepared with fine bed-linen that Grasinda had ordered placed on board the ship, they put him to bed so nearly unconscious that he did not feel it; and he remained all night in this state, for he never spoke, groaning piteously as one who was badly wounded, and trying to speak, but not being able to do so.

The physician ordered his own bed to be made there, and remained with him to comfort him, applying to him such medication as was calculated to draw out that very bad poison that he had absorbed from the Endriago, so that by dawn such very efficacious remedies he had applied to him that he put him into a very restful sleep. And then he ordered all to withdraw so as not to awaken him, because he knew that that sleep was very good for him. And his sleep having come to an end after a long interval, he began to shout with great urgency, saying: "Gandalin, Gandalin, protect yourself from this very cruel, evil devil so that it not kill you!"

The physician, who heard him, went to him laughing more light-heartedly than he really felt, for he still feared for the knight's life; and said: "If you had protected yourself as he has, your fame would not be so widespread through the world."

He raised his head and saw the physician and said to him: "Master, where are we?"

He came up to him and took him by the hands, and saw that he was still delirious; so he ordered food brought to him, and he fed him what he perceived was needed to give him strength. And the knight ate like a man out of his senses. The physician remained with him administering to him such restoratives as one would administer who in that profession was talented to the highest degree to be found anywhere; and before the hour of vespers he was again completely conscious, so that he recognized everybody and was talking to them. And the physician never left him, caring for him and applying to him so many remedies needed for that illness that not only with them but principally by the will of God, who desired it, he saw clearly from the appearance of his wounds that he would be able to bring him back to health; and at once he said so to all those who were there, who were very happy, thanking that sovereign God because He had freed them from the storm of the sea and from the danger of that devil. But

greater than the joy of all others was that of Gandalin his loyal squire and that of the dwarf as the ones who had for him a heartfelt love, for they returned from death to life. And then they all gathered around the bed of the Knight of the Green Sword with great pleasure, comforting him, telling him to disregard the illness he had, in view of the honor and good fortune that God had given him, for so far in feats at arms and of courage He had never permitted any man on earth to be his equal. And they insistently begged Gandalin to try to tell them the whole affair just as it had happened, since he had seen it with his own eyes, so that they might be able to give an account of such great knightly prowess. And he told them he would gladly do so on condition that the physician administer to him an oath on the holy Gospels, so that they might believe his account and with truth put it in writing, in order that a thing so outstanding and so mighty an exploit might not be forgotten by people. Master Elisabad administered the oath in order to be more certain concerning such a great deed. And Gandalin told it all completely just as the story has related it. And when they heard it, they were astounded at it as a story of the greatest deed of which they had ever heard. And although none of them had ever seen the Endriago, because its body had fallen among some bushes, on account of succoring the knight they had not been able to heed anything else.

Then they all said that they would like to go and see the Endriago. And the physician told them to go and he gave them many medications to combat the poison. When they beheld a thing so fearful and so unlike all the other living creatures that they had seen up to that time, they were much more amazed than before and were not able to believe that there had been in the world a heart so bold as to dare attack such great deviltry. And although they knew for certain that the Knight of the Green Sword had killed it, it seemed to them only that they had dreamed it. After they had looked at it for quite a while, they returned to the castle, meanwhile discussing how that Knight of the Green Sword had been able to accomplish such a great deed. What shall I say to you? Know you that they remained there more than three weeks before the Knight of the Green Sword showed sufficient improvement for them to dare lift him up from the

bed where he was. But since his return to health was permitted by God and the great diligence of that physician Elisabad was improving it, he became meanwhile so much improved that he would have been able to set out over the sea without any danger. And when the master saw him in such a good state of health, he spoke with him one day and said to him: "My lord, now through the goodness of God, who has willed it — since no one else would have been sufficiently powerful — you have reached such a point that I dare with His help and your good effort to allow you to fare forth on the sea, to go wherever you please. And because we lack some very necessary things, not only what relates to your health but also to the sustenance of the other people, it is necessary that provision be made for remedying the situation, because the longer we stay here, the more we shall be lacking."

The Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "My dear sir and true friend, I give many thanks and acknowledgments to God because thus He has willed to protect me from such danger, more out of His Holy pity than because of my merit; and nothing can be compared with His great power, because all is permitted and directed by His will, and to Him one must attribute all the good things that occur in this world. And aside from what is His, you, sir, I have to thank for my life, for I certainly believe that today no one else born into this world would have been competent to minister to me as you have. And although God has shown me such great mercy, fortune is very adverse to me, for the reward for such a great benefit as I have received from you I cannot satisfy except as a poor knight who possesses nothing but a horse, and armor rent asunder just as you see."

The physician said to him: "Sir, I need no satisfaction other than the glory that I possesss, which is to have preserved from death, after God, the best knight ever to bear arms; and this I dare to say in your presence because of what you have accomplished in mine. And the reward that I expect from you is much greater than what any king or noble lord would be able to give me, for it is the assistance that many troubled men and women who will have need of your help will find in you, for you will aid them; and it will be for me a greater reward than any other to have been the cause, after God, of restoring them."

The Knight of the Green Sword was embarrassed to hear himself praised, and said: "My lord, leaving this matter about which we are speaking, I wish you to know upon what my will is most determined. I had wanted to traverse all the islands of Romania, but because of what you said to me about the fatigue of the sailors I changed my intention and we turned back with Constantinople as our destination, a project which the very unfortunate weather, as you have seen, prevented us from carrying out. But since the weather is now favorable I still have a desire to revert to it and see that great emperor, so that, if God brings me back to where my heart yearns to be, I may be able to describe some rare things that seldom can be seen except under such circumstances. Master Elisabad, in the name of the regard that you have for me, I beg you not to be annoyed because of this, for some day you will be rewarded by me; and from Constantinople we may return, if it please Almighty God, to the rendezvous within the deadline which that very noble lady Grasinda set for me; because it is necessary to keep it, as you well know, in order that if I can, in accordance with my desire I be enabled to requite some of the great favors that I have undeservedly received from her."

CHAPTER LXXIV

How the knight of the green sword wrote to the emperor of Constantinople, whose island that was, concerning how he had killed that wild beast, and his need of supplies. These the emperor provided very promptly, and he repaid the knight with great honor and high regard for the honor and service that he had done him in freeing for him that island which for such a long time he had considered lost.

"Since this is your wish, sir," said Master Elisabad, "you must write to the emperor about what has happened to you; and there will be brought from there some things that we lack for the journey."

"Master," said he, "I have never seen him, nor do I know him, and therefore I refer it all to you to do whatever seems best to you, and in this matter you will be doing me a very great favor."

Master Elisabad in order to please him wrote at once a letter informing the emperor of everything that had happened to the foreign knight, called the Knight of the Green Sword, since he departed from Grasinda, Elisabad's suzerain; and how having accomplished many great deeds at arms in the islands of Romania — deeds which no other knight could have done — he was pursuing his way from where he had been; and how the great storm at sea had cast him upon the Island of the Devil, where the Endriago was; and how that Knight of the Green Sword out of his own desire, and against the wishes of them all had sought out the Endriago and in combat had killed it. And he wrote to him in detail how the battle had occurred and the

wounds with which the Knight of the Green Sword had emerged, so that there was nothing of which he did not inform him; adding that since that island was now free of that devil and was under his sovereignty, he should give orders that steps be taken to repopulate it; and that the Knight of the Green Sword was petitioning him as a favor to order the island named the Island of Holy Mary.

This letter, written as you have heard, he gave to a squire, a relative of his, whom he had there with him, and he ordered the squire to go in that ship, taking along the sailors that were needed, and give the letter to the emperor, and to bring back from there the provisions that they lacked. The squire immediately put out to sea with his company, for now the weather was very favorable, and on the third day the ship reached port. Then leaving it, he went to the palace of the emperor; whom he found with many nobles, as befitted such a noble lord; and kneeling he said to him: "Your servant, Master Elisabad, does obeisance to you and sends you this letter, from which you will receive very great pleasure."

The emperor took it, and on reading it, was greatly astonished at its contents, and he said in a loud voice so that everybody heard him: "Knights, some news has come to me so extraordinary that its like has never been heard."

Then there came up to him Gastiles, his nephew, son of his sister the Duchess of Gajaste, who was a good young knight; and Count Saluder, brother of Grasinda, the lady who had bestowed such great honor on the Knight of the Green Sword; and many others with them. The emperor said to them: "Know you that he of the Green Sword, whose great deeds at arms accomplished in the islands of Romania have been reported to us, of his own free will has fought with the Endriago and has killed it. And if at such a deed as this everyone did not marvel, what could come about that would inspire awe?"

And he showed them Elisabad's letter, ordering the messenger to tell them verbally how it had occurred; the latter told it in full as if it had all taken place in his presence. Then Gastiles said: "Certainly, sire, this thing is very miraculous, for I have never heard of any mortal man's fighting with the Devil, with the possible exception of those saints with their spiritual arms, because

such as they indeed eould have done so with the aid of their saintliness. And since such a man as this has come into our land with a great desire to serve you, it would be wrong not to do him great honor."

"Nephew," said he, "you speak well; and you and Count Saluder prepare some ships and bring him to me, for we should regard him as something never before seen. And take with you master painters to paint and bring back to me an exact likeness of the Endriago, because I shall order a representation cast in metal which will include the knight who fought with him and be of their respective size and appearanee. And I shall have these figures placed in the very same plaee where the battle took place, and on a large copper plaque I shall eause a description of the battle to be inseribed, together with the name of the knight. And I shall order a monastery established there in which friars may live in order to restore that island to the service of God; for the people of that land were very much harmed with the evil apparition of that devil."

All were very happy about what the emperor said, and more than anyone else were Gastiles and the marquis beeause the emperor was ordering them to go on such a journey, where they would be able to see the Endriago and the man who had slain him. And after readying the ships, they set out on the sea and crossed over to the Island of Holy Mary, for thus the emperor ordered it to be called henceforth. And when the Knight of the Green Sword learned of their eoming, he eommanded that his quarters be adorned with the best and richest materials that Grasinda had ordered placed on his ship; and he was already so improved in health that sometimes he would walk about in his room. And they eame to the castle richly elothed and aeeompanied by noble gentry, and the Knight of the Green Sword came for some distanee out of his room to reeeivè them. There they talked together very courteously, and he had them sit down on the daises that he had ordered constructed for them. As he had already aseertained from Master Elisabad that the marquis was a brother of Elisabad's liege lady Grasinda, on that oeeasion he gave him many thanks for what his sister had done for him — that is to say, the honors and favors that he had reeeived from her, and how after God she had saved his life by giving him that

physician who had successfully treated him and rescued him from death. The Greeks who had come there kept scrutinizing the Knight of the Green Sword; and although on account of his weakness his appearance had greatly suffered, they said they had never seen a knight so handsome and well-spoken. Gastiles, who was greatly enjoying himself, said to him: "Good sir, my uncle the emperor wishes to see you, and through us he begs you to go to him so that he may order that honor shown to you which he is under obligation to render because of your service to him in winning back this island that he had deemed lost, which is honor you deserve."

"My lord," said the Knight of the Dwarf, "I shall do what the emperor commands, for my desire is to see him and to serve him to the degree that a poor foreign knight, such as I am, can."

"Then, let us view the Endriago," said Gastiles, "and the masters that the emperor sent will see it in order to sketch it very accurately in accordance with its form and appearance."

The physician said to him: "Sir, it is necessary that you go well equipped against the poison; if not, you might greatly endanger your lives."

Gastiles replied: "Good friend, that is your responsibility."

"And I shall assume it," said he.

Then he gave them some small boxes of medication to apply to their nostrils while they were looking at the monster. Immediately they mounted, and Gandalin went with them in order to direct them to it, and on the way was engaged in relating to them what had happened to his lord and himself in those places they were traversing, how that battle had come about, and how at his shouts, while he was tearing his hair on seeing his lord so close to death, that devil had emerged, and the good fortune that came to them, and all that had happened to them, just as you have heard. At this moment they reached the stream where his lord had fallen in a faint, and from there he conducted them through the thicket near the rocks, and they found the Endriago dead, which caused them great fear, so much so that they did not think that either in this world or in hell was there another beast so grotesque and fearful. And if until then they had esteemed highly what that knight had done, on seeing that devil they esteemed him still more; for although they knew the Endriago to be dead, they did

not dare scrutinize it or approach it. And Gastiles said that such courage as to dare to attack that beast ought to be disregarded, for it was so great that it ought not to be attributed to any mortal man, but to God, for to Him, and none other, it was owing. The masters scrutinized and measured it completely in order to copy it just as it was, and so they did, because they were wonderfully excellent in that craft.

Then they returned to the castle, and found that the Knight of the Dwarf was waiting for them in order to dine; and they were served there, allowing for the place where they were, to their great pleasure and joy. Thus they all took their ease at the castle for three days while viewing that land, which was very beautiful, and the garden and the well into which the wretched daughter had pushed her mother. Then, on the fourth day they all put out to sea, and in a short while they made port at Constantinople, landing below the palace of the emperor. The people came to their windows to gaze at the Knight of the Green Sword, for they were quite desirous of seeing him. And the emperor gave orders to bring them some steeds to ride. At that time the Knight of the Green Sword, already much more improved in health and appearance, was clad in very handsome, luxurious garments that the King of Bohemia had had him accept when he took leave of him. Suspended from his neck was that rare and precious green sword that he had won by virtue of the abundant love he had for his lady; and on seeing it and recalling the time when he won it and the delightful life he was then leading in Miraflores with that lady whom he loved so much and who was so far away, he shed many tears as anguishing as they were delightful, after the manner of those who are subject to, and tormented by, such passion and joy.

Then, after debarking and mounting those fine, richly caparisoned palfreys which had been brought to them, they went their way to the emperor, who was already coming to meet them well accompanied by grandees sumptuously attired. And all the others stood aside as the Knight of the Green Sword came up and sought to dismount in order to kiss his hands. But the emperor, when he saw this, did not permit him to do so; instead he went up to him and threw his arms around him, showing very great regard for him, for such was his feeling; and he said: "By heaven, Knight

of the Green Sword, my good friend, although God has made me of such high estate and I am a descendant of those who have held this very great sovereignty, you deserve honor more than I do, for you have won it through your own great courage by undergoing such terrible dangers, which no one else has undergone; whereas I have the honor that came to me while I was asleep and without my deserving it."

The Knight of the Dwarf said to him: "Sire, one can satisfy measurable things but not this, for God through his great power has caused me to be so greatly praised; and therefore, sire, it will remain for my person to serve Him until death in whatever things He may command me to do."

While they were speaking thus, the emperor returned with him to his palace; and he of the Green Sword kept observing that great city and the rare and marvelous things that he saw in it, and the many people who came out to see him. He humbly and earnestly gave thanks to God because He had guided him to such a place as this, where he was receiving such honor from the greatest man of the Christians, and all that he had seen in other places seemed to him nothing in comparison with that. But he was even more amazed when he entered the great palace, for there it seemed to him that all the wealth of the world was brought together. In it was an apartment where the emperor was wont to lodge the noble lords who came to him, and this was the most beautiful and delightful one to be found anywhere in the world, not only for its luxurious rooms but for its fountains and very exotic trees; and there he gave orders for the Knight of the Green Sword to stay, and also Master Elisabad to care for his health, and Gastiles and Marquis Saluder to keep him company. Then leaving him to rest, he went away with his nobles to his own quarters. All the people of the city who had seen the Knight of the Green Sword spoke highly of his very good looks and much more of that great courage of his, which was superior to that of any other knight. If he had been greatly surprised to see such a city as that one and such a large number of people, much more were they astonished at the mere sight of him; hence by all he was praised and honored more than any king, grandee or other knight who had come there from abroad.

The emperor said to his wife the empress: "Madam, the Knight of the Green Sword, the one about whose many famous deeds we have heard, is here; and not only because of his great valor but also on account of the service he has rendered us in winning back for us that island which was in the power of that evil parricide for such a long time — in short, since he has performed such an exploit as this, it is right to do him great honor. Therefore order your apartment to be very well adorned in such wise and manner that wherever he may go, he be enabled to praise it with justice and to speak of it as I used to speak to you about other palaces that I have seen in a few places. And I wish your ladies and maidens-in-waiting to be attired and adorned in a manner befitting persons who serve such a noble lady as you."

And in consideration of all that he was saying, she replied: "In the name of God, all will be done as you command."

Next morning the Knight of the Green Sword arose and donned luxurious and handsome garments, such as he was wont to wear, and he and the marquis and Gastiles and Master Elisabad all went together to attend mass with the emperor in his chapel, where he was waiting for them; and then they went to see the empress. But before they reached her, they encountered many ladies and maidens-in-waiting lavishly arrayed in sumptuous costumes, who after greeting them decorously, made room for them to pass. The apartment was so luxurious and so well decorated that with the exception of the opulent forbidden chamber of the Firm Island, the Knight of the Green Sword had never seen another such; and his eyes became weary looking at so many beautiful women and the other fine sights that he was seeing. And on coming into the presence of the empress, who was on her dais, he knelt before her with great humility, saying: "Madam, I give great thanks to God for bringing me where I might behold your highness and your superiority over all other ladies in the world, and your house occupied and adorned by so many ladies and maidens-in-waiting of such high rank; and I am very grateful to you, madam, for having been willing to see me. May it please God through His mercy to bring me to a time when I may be able to requite Him somewhat for these great favors. And if I, madam, do not succeed in expressing properly those things that my will and my tongue would like to say, since this language is

foreign to me, I ask you to pardon me, for I learned it only a short time ago from Master Elisabad."

The empress took him by the hands and told him not to remain kneeling, and had him seat himself near her; and she remained talking with him a long while about those subjects that such a noble lady might properly discuss with a foreign knight with whom she was not well acquainted. He responded with such prudent consideration and grace that the empress, who was very discerning, and was observing him closely, said to herself that his courage could not be so great as to exceed his courtesy and discretion. At this time the emperor was seated in his chair, talking and laughing with the ladies and maidens-in-waiting as one who because he did them many favors and arranged fine marriages for them was dearly beloved by them all. And he said to them in a loud voice so that all the ladies heard him: "Honorable ladies and maidens, you behold here the Knight of the Green Sword, your loyal servant. Honor him and love him, for thus does he all of you in the world; for by exposing himself to very great risks in order to have you obtain justice, many times he has been at the point of death, according to what I have heard about him from those who are familiar with his great deeds."

The duchess, mother of Gastiles, said: "Sire, may God honor and love him and reward him for the help he gives us."

The emperor had two princesses stand up, who were daughters of King Garandel, at that time king of Hungary; and he said to them: "Go for my daughter Leonorina, and let no one except you two escort her."

They obeyed; and in a short while they came back escorting her arm in arm. And although she came very well arrayed, it all seemed as nothing compared with the naturalness of her great beauty: for there was not a man in the world who saw her who did not marvel and rejoice to behold her. She was a girl not yet nine years old; and coming up to where her mother, the empress, was, she kissed her hand with a humble curtsy and sat down on the dais below where she was. The Knight of the Green Sword gazed at her with delight, marveling greatly at her beauty, for she seemed to him more beautiful than any girls he had seen in the regions through which he had traveled. And he recalled then the very beautiful Oriana, his lady, whom he loved more

than himself, and the time when he began to love her, for she was probably of that same age, and how the love that he had devoted to her then had grown and never decreased; and he remembered the good times with their many great delights that he had had with her, and the adverse times with their many cares and heartfelt sorrows that he had endured because of her, and about how he was not expecting to see her for a long time; so that in this reverie he remained for quite a while. He was so stirred by these memories that tears came to his eyes as if he were out of his senses; so that all saw him weeping, for because of his great excellence, they all were focusing their attention on him. But he, coming to his senses and being greatly embarrassed, wiped his eyes and assumed a cheerful mien. However the emperor, who was closest to him and had seen him in such tears, paid close attention in order to perceive anything that might have caused it. But not seeing any more signs of emotion in him, he was very desirous of finding out why a knight so strong, so discreet, had shown such great weakness in his presence and that of the empress and so many other people, that even on the part of a woman would have been deemed bad in such a place if she had been as animated as the knight had been with him. But he really thought that he would not have wept had there not been some great mystery involved. Gastiles, who was beside him, said: "How can it be that such a man as this should weep in this fashion in such a place?"

"I would not ask him about it," said the emperor, "but I think that he was constrained by love to do so."

"Well sire, if you wish to find out why, there is no one who would know except Master Elisabad, whom he greatly trusts and who speaks with him often in private."

Then he ordered Elisabad summoned and had him sit down beside him; and commanding that everyone else withdraw, he said to him: "Master, I want you to tell me a fact if you know it; and I promise you as emperor that no harm will come thereby to you or anyone else."

The master said to him: "Sire, I have such confidence that your virtuous Highness will do so and always favor me, even if I do not deserve it, that if I know the fact in question, I shall tell it to you very willingly."

"Why did the Knight of the Green Sword weep just now?" said the emperor. "Tell me, for on seeing it I am startled; and if he has any need of my help, I shall provide it for him so fully that he will be well satisfied."

When the physician heard this, he said: "Sire, I would be unable to say, because he is the one man in the world who best conceals what he wishes not to be known, because he is the most discreet knight you have ever beheld. But I often see him crying and grieving so bitterly that he seems to have lost his senses, and he sighs with very great yearning, as if his heart were breaking. And certainly, sire, in my opinion it is the great power of love that torments him as he longs for the woman he loves; for if it were any other kind of suffering, I am sure that it would be disclosed to me before being revealed to anyone else."

"Certainly," said the emperor, "I concur in what you say; and if he loves some woman, would to God that she might turn out to be in my dominions, for I would give him so much wealth and rank that there would be no king or prince who would not be pleased to give me his daughter as a wife for him. And I would take this action very gladly in order to keep him with me as a vassal; for regardless of how much I might do for him, his service to me, in view of his great valor, would be superior. And I greatly entreat you, master, to encourage him to stay with me, for all that he may demand will be granted him." And he remained in thought for a bit, for he fell silent, and then he said, "Master, go to the empress and tell her privately to beg the knight to stay with me; and do you so advise him out of regard for me, and in the meantime I shall arrange something that has come to mind."

The physician went to the empress and to the Knight of the Dwarf; and the emperor called the beautiful Leonorina his daughter and the two princesses who were in attendance upon her, and spoke with them for a long while very earnestly, but nothing of what he said to them was overheard by anyone. And he having now finished his conversation, Leonorina kissed his hands and went with the princesses to her room, and he remained talking with his nobles. The empress spoke with the Knight of the Green Sword in favor of his staying with the emperor, and the master urged him and counseled him to do so. And although that would be the best and most honorific opportunity that could come

to him during the life of King Perion his father, he could not find it in his heart to aceept it, for he eneountered no rest or repose except in thinking about being back in that land where his greatly beloved lady Oriana was; so that neither pleading nor advice was able to influence him or cause him to renounce that desire that he had. And the empress indieated by signs to the emperor that the knight was not yielding to her entreaties. The emperor arose and going to them said: "Knight of the Green Sword, would it be in any way possible for you to remain with me? To this end there is nothing to be asked that I would not grant, were it in my power to do so."

"Sire," said he, "so great is your virtue and eminence that I would not dare, nor would I know how, to ask for sueh a boon as it would grant me, but there is not in me strength enough for my heart to permit it. And sire, do not blame me for not complying with your mandate; for if I were to do so, death would not leave me in your service for very long."

The emperor truly believed that his emotion was caused only by a great exeess of love, and everyone else thought so. Then at this juneture that beautiful Leonorina entered the palaee with her radiant mien, whieh annulled all the beauty of other women, and the two princesses with her. And she wore on her head a very fine coronet and another even finer she carried in her hand, and she went directly to the Knight of the Green Sword and said to him: "Sir Knight of the Green Sword, I have never reached a time when I ask any boon exeept from my father, but now I wish to ask one of you. Tell me what you will do?"

And he knelt before her, and said: "My good lady, who would be of so little understanding as to fail to carry out your command if he were able to fulfill it? And I would be very foolish not to do your will; and now, my lady, demand what you please, for unto death it will be fulfilled."

"You make me very happy," said she, "and I thank you very mueh, and I wish to ask of you three boons."

And taking the beautiful eoronet from her head, she said: "Let this be one: that you give this coronet to the most beautiful maiden you know, and greeting her on my behalf, you tell her to send me her command by letter or messenger, and that I send

her this coronet, for such are the gifts that we have in this land, although I do not know her."

And then she took the other coronet, in which there set were many pearls and precious stones of great value, especially three that would illuminate a room completely, however dark it might be; and giving the coronet to the knight, she said: "Give this to the most beautiful matron you know. And tell her that I am sending it to her in order to make her acquaintance, and that I greatly entreat her to make herself known to me by her command; this is the other boon. And before I ask the third one of you, I wish to know what you will do with the coronets."

"What I shall do," said the knight, "will be to grant at once the first boon and free myself of it."

Then he took the first coronet, and placing it on her head, said: "I place this crown on the head of the most beautiful maiden that I now know; and if there be anyone to contradict, by force of arms I shall make him recognize it."

All were quite pleased with what he did, and Leonorina no less, although she was embarrassed to see herself praised; and they said that with justice he had granted the boon. And the empress said to him: "Certainly, Knight of the Green Sword, I would prefer for myself those men whom you might conquer by armed might to those ladies whom my daughter might overcome with her beauty."

He was embarrassed to hear himself praised by such a noble lady; and without making any reply, he turned to Leonorina, and said: "My lady, do you wish to ask of me the other boon?"

"Yes," said she, "and I beg you to tell me the reason why you wept, and who the lady is who has such great dominance over you and over your heart."

The knight changed color and lost his previous good countenance, so that all recognized that he was disturbed by that demand; and he said: "Lady, please desist from this demand and make another that may be more to your advantage."

And she said: "This is what I demand, and I wish nothing more."

He bowed his head and was hesitating for a bit so that his having to tell seemed to everyone to be very difficult for him. And it was not long before he lifted his head with a happy

mien and gazed at Leonorina, who was in front of him; and he said: "My lady, since I cannot otherwise free myself from my promise, I say that when you first entered here and I looked at you, I bethought myself of the age and the period at which you now are, and there came into my heart the remembrance of such a period when already it was so good and delightful that since I had already experienced it, it made me weep as you have seen."

And she said: "Well, tell me now who the lady is by whom your heart is commanded."

"Your great courtesy," said he, "that has never been remiss to anyone is against me. This constitutes my great misfortune; and since I cannot help it, I must speak contrary to my pleasure. Know you, lady, that the one whom I love the most is the same one to whom you are sending the crown, who in my opinion is the most beautiful matron of any I have ever seen, and even, I believe, of any that there are in the world. And by Heaven, madam, do not seek to learn more from me, for I am freed of my promise."

"You are free," said the emperor, "but in such wise that we don't know any more than before."

"Well it seems to me," said he, "that I have told more than ever before issued from my mouth, and this has been caused by the desire that I have to serve this beautiful lady."

"So help me God," said the emperor, "you must be very guarded and secretive in your love affair since you attach such importance to its having been revealed. And since my daughter was the cause of it, it is necessary that she ask your pardon."

"This mistake," said he, "many others have made, and never did they find out so much about me; so that although about them I might have complained, what has to do with your very beautiful daughter I consider a favor, because she, being so noble and so outstanding in the world, has sought so carefully to learn about the affairs of a knight errant such as I. But you, sire, I shall not pardon so easily, for according to the long and secret conversation you had with her previously, it is quite evident that she did it more because of your desire than hers."

The emperor laughed exceedingly, and said: "In everything God has made you accomplished. Know you that it is just as you say; therefore I wish to set straight what pertains to her and to me."

He of the Green Sword knelt to kiss his hands, but he was unwilling, and the knight said: "Sire, I receive these amends in order to take advantage of them when perchance you are more unconcerned about it."

"That cannot be," said the emperor, "for my memory of you will never falter, nor those amends be lacking whenever you desire them."

These words were exchanged between that emperor and the Knight of the Green Sword almost facetiously; but there came a time when the effect of them resulted in a great deed, as will be related in the fourth Book of this story.

The beautiful Leonorina said: "Sir Knight of the Green Sword, although you have no complaint against me, I am not on that account free of all blame for importuning you so insistently against your will; and as amends for it I wish you to have this ring."

He said: "Madam, you will give the hand that wears it to me to kiss as your servant, for the ring cannot be worn on any other hand without its complaining of me."

"Still," said she, "I wish it to be yours, so that it may remind you of that concealed snare that I set for you, and how with such great subtlety you escaped from it."

Then she took off the ring and threw it onto the dais in front of the knight, saying: "Another such remains with me in this coronet which I do not know whether you gave me rightly."

"Those beautiful eyes and wonderful hair are great and good witnesses, along with everything else that through His special grace God has given you."

And taking the ring, he saw that it was the most beautiful and rarest that he had ever beheld, nor in the world was there any other precious stone like the one set in it except the one that remained in the coronet. And while the Knight of the Green Sword was thus scrutinizing it, the emperor said: "I want you to know where this stone came from. You see already that the half of it is the finest and most resplendent ruby that has ever been seen, and the other half is a white ruby, which perchance you have never seen, for it is much more beautiful and more valuable than the red one; and the ring with an emerald such that one like it would be hard to find anywhere. Now know you that Apolidon,

who is so famous throughout the world, was my grandfather; I do not know whether you have heard so."

"I know that very well," said he of the Green Sword, "because, being a long time in Great Britain, I saw the Island called Firm, where there are great marvels that he left, and that island, according to what the people remember, he won in a way greatly to his honor; for while carrying off the daughter of the emperor of Rome, he landed on that island amid a great storm, and according to its custom, he was forced to fight with a giant who at the time ruled over it; whom by slaying very courageously, he remained as lord of the island, where he dwelt a long while with his mistress Grimanesa. And according to records he left behind there, more than a hundred years went by during which no knight excelling him in prowess at arms put into port there. I have already been there, and I tell you, sire, that you appear to be of that lineage according to your appearance and that of their effigies that he left under the arch of loyal lovers, which appear truly alive."

"You make me very happy," said the emperor, "by reminding me of facts concerning that man, who in his own time had no equal in excellence; and I beg you to tell me the name of the knight who by demonstrating more valor and strength than he, won the Firm Island."

The knight said: "His name was Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, whose so very many extraordinarily great exploits are bruited about everywhere, the one who was found on the sea as a newborn babe, enclosed in a chest. And under the name of Child of the Sea, he killed in single combat the mighty King Abies of Ireland, and then was recognized by his father and mother."

"Now I am happier than before, because, according to the astounding reports concerning him, I do not deem it a discredit that he has excelled my grandfather in excellence, since he surpasses all those now living. And if I thought that he, being the son of such a king and such a noble lord, would venture so far from his own land, I would certainly think you were he; but what I am saying makes me doubt it; and moreover, if you were he, you would not be so rude as to fail to tell me so."

He of the Green Sword was greatly disconcerted by this speech, but he still sought to conceal his identity; and not answer-

ing this at all, he said: "If it may please your Majesty, tell me how the stone was divided."

"I will tell you that," said he, "gladly. Well, Felipanos, who at the time was King of Judea, sent to Apolidon, my grandfather, about whom I'm telling you, when he was ruler of this empire, twelve very fine coronets of great value; and although large pearls and precious stones came in all of them, in that one that you gave to my daughter there was this stone that was entirely whole. Then Apolidon, on seeing that this crown was the most beautiful on account of the stone, gave it to Grimanesa, my grandmother; and she, in order that Apolidon might have his share of it, ordered a master craftsman to divide it and make that ring with half of it; and after she gave it to Apolidon, the other half remained in that coronet just as you see; so that ring was divided because of love and because of it was given away. Hence I believe that my daughter gave it to you out of good love, and it will be possible that out of another, greater love it will be given away by you."

Thus it came about later just as the emperor said, and finally it was returned to the hand of that lady from whom it had come by that man who, during three years which elapsed without his seeing her, performed many feats at arms and endured many great cares and sufferings out of love for her, as is related in a continuation of this story which is called *Las Sergas de Esplandián*, which means *The Exploits of Esplandian.*

Just as you hear, the Knight of the Green Sword relaxed for six days at the court of the emperor, being so honored by him, and by the empress, and by that beautiful Leonorina, that he could not have been more so. And remembering that he had promised Grasinda to be with her within a year, and that the deadline was approaching, he spoke with the emperor, telling him that he had to leave there. And then he asked him as a favor to command him to serve him wherever he might be; saying that he would not be in any place with so much honor or pleasure or need, that he would not leave it all to serve him; and that if he should become aware of his having need of him for his service, he would not wait for his command, but without it would be constrained to hasten to him from wherever he was.

The emperor said to him: "My good friend, this very sudden departure you will not be taking without my displeasure, if it can be avoided without your breaking your word."

"Sire," said he, "it cannot be avoided without my honor and veracity incurring great discredit, as Master Elisabad knows, for I have to be at a place where I have promised to appear within a specified time."

"Well, since that is the way it is," said he, "I beg you to enjoy yourself here for three days."

He said he would do so, since that was his command. At this time he was in the presence of beautiful Leonorina, and taking him by the cloak, she said to him: "My good friend, since at the request of my father you are remaining three days longer, I wish that at my request you remain two more, and during these days that you be my guest and that of my maidens where they and I dwell, because we wish to speak with you without anyone's disturbing you, unless it would be the two knights who would be most pleasing to you as companions at meals and during the night. And this boon I ask you to grant willingly; if not, I shall have these maidens of mine seize you, and there won't be anything for me to thank you for."

Then more than twenty very beautiful and splendidly garbed maidens surrounded him; and Leonorina, laughing heartily with much enjoyment said: "Let him be until we see what he will say."

He was very happy with what that beautiful little lady was doing, considering it the greatest honor that had been done him there; and he said to her: "Blessed and beautiful lady, who would make bold to refuse to do your will, if he had the expectation, should he not do it, of such harsh confinement? And I agree to what you command, both to this and to everything else that may be of service to you and to your father and mother. And may it please God out of His mercy, my good lady, that the honors and favors that I receive from you and from them may come to me at a time when they may be requited and repaid in service by me and by my family."

This was carried out very completely, not by this Knight of the Green Sword but by that son of his, Esplandian, who gave aid to this emperor at a time and period when he had great need of it, just as Urganda the Unknown had prophesied in the fourth

Book, in a prophecy which will be told later in due time. The maidens said to him: "You have made a good decision; otherwise you would not have been able to escape from a greater danger than was that of the Endriago."

"That's what I think, ladies," said he, "for greater harm could come by angering angels than the Devil, which the Endriago was."

The emperor and the empress and all the nobles who were there took great pleasure in these verbal exchanges; and the witty replies that the Knight of the Green Sword gave to all that was said to him seemed to them very fine; therefore this even more than his great courage caused them to believe him to be a man of high rank, because courage and valor often thrive in persons of low fortune and coarse mind, and seldom do modest courtesy and a polished upbringing, because this is committed to those who come from pure, noble blood. I do not affirm that all attain it, but I do say that as a thing to which they are so constrained and obligated they ought to attain it, just as this Knight of the Green Sword did; for by encircling the bravery of his strong heart with a border of great tolerance and a pleasant manner with others, he prevented pride and anger from finding an opportunity whereby they could harm his great integrity.

Hence the Knight of the Green Sword remained there for three days with the emperor, having Gastiles, the latter's nephew, and the Marquis Saluder take him about that city and show him the rare things that were in it, since it was the capital and most important place of all Christendom; and staying afterwards in the palace — most of the time in the chamber of the empress talking with her and with other great ladies by whom she was attended and accompanied. And then he moved to the apartment of the beautiful Leonorina, where he met many daughters of kings and dukes and counts and other noblemen, in whose company he lived more honored and more graciously than anywhere save in the presence of Oriana, his lady; they asking him very earnestly to tell them about the marvels of the Firm Island, since he had been on it — especially about the Arch of Faithful Lovers and the Forbidden Chamber, and who and how many had been able to see the beautiful images of Apolidon and Grimanesa — likewise asking him to tell them about the manners of the ladies and maidens of King Lisuarte's court, and the names of the most

beautiful. He answered everything for them very discreetly and humbly with what he knew about it as one who so many times had seen and frequented that court, just as the story has related.

And thus it happened that while gazing at the great and abundant beauty of that princess and her maidens, he began to think about his lady Oriana, reflecting that if she were there, all the beauty in the world would be united. And he recalled how remote and far away from him she was without his having hope of being able to see her, and he became so dismayed that he was almost out of his senses; so that those ladies knew that nothing of what they were saying to him was being heard by him. And thus he remained for a long interval, until Queen Menoresa, who was suzerain of the great island called Gabasta and was after Leonorina the most beautiful woman of all Greece, took him by the hand and by drawing him to her made him emerge from that profound absorption: from which he came forth groaning and sighing like a man who felt great sorrow. But as soon as he was conscious, he became very much embarrassed, for he well knew that he would be called to account by all of them; and he said: "Ladies, do not consider it strange or extraordinary that he who sees your great beauty and grace that God has bestowed on you should be reminded of some good fortune, if he had seen it previously and with great honor had experienced delights, and undeservedly had lost it in such wise that I do not know when I can recover it through any zeal or effort that I might be able to muster."

He said this to them with that sadness which his tormented heart transmitted to his countenance; so that those maidens were moved to great pity for him. But he, with considerable effort restraining the tears that came from his heart to his eyes, strove to restore to himself and to those damsels their lost cheerfulness. In these and other like activities, the Knight of the Green Sword spent there the time promised. And now as he was about to take leave of them, those ladies were presenting him gifts of great value. But he would accept only six swords that Queen Menoresa gave him, which were some of the handsomest and most finely ornamented ones to be found anywhere. And she said that she was giving them to him only in order that when he gave them away to his friends, he might be reminded of her and of those

ladies who had such affection for him. The beautiful Leonorina said to him: "Sir Knight of the Dwarf, I beg you as a courtesy that if it be possible you come back soon to see and stay with my father, who greatly esteems you. And I know that you will afford him and all the noblemen of his court great pleasure and us ladies much more, because we shall be under your protection and defense if anyone should disturb us. And if this cannot be, I, along with all these ladies, beg you to send us a knight of your lineage, whom you may deem fit to serve us wherever he be needed by us, and with whom we may speak in remembrance of you and thus dispel some of the loneliness in which your departure leaves us; for indeed we believe, judging from your own qualities, that you have relatives who can substitute for you without occasioning you much embarrassment."

"Madam," said he, "that can be said very truthfully, for there are in my family such knights that compared with their excellence mine would be considered as nothing at all; and among them there is one whom I trust that if out of God's mercy he can come to serve you, those great honors and favors that I have received from your father and from you without my deserving them, he will repay with such services that, wherever I may be, I may believe myself to be already relieved of this very great debt."

He said this with reference to his brother Galaor, for he was thinking of having him come there where there would be so much honor for him, and where also his very great excellence would be esteemed to the proper degree. But this was not carried out as the Knight of the Green Sword had thought; rather instead of his brother Don Galaor, there came there another knight of his line at such a juncture and time that he made that beautiful lady suffer so many anxieties and such worry as would be hard to describe; because he underwent both by sea and by land such rare and dangerous adventures, that no other in his time, nor for long afterwards, was known to be his equal, as will be recounted in a sequel proceeding from these Books, entitled *The Exploits of Esplandian,* as has already been told you.

Then, with that lady Leonorina very earnestly begging him to come back or send them that knight about whom he was talking, and he promising her to do so, and she giving him permis-

sion to depart, all the ladies went up to the palace windows, which they did not leave until they lost sight of him as he went sailing away over the sea in his galley.

You have previously been told how the Patin sent Salustanquidio, his cousin, with a great retinue of knights, and Queen Sardamira with many ladies and maidens-in-waiting, to King Lisuarte to ask for the hand of his daughter Oriana in marriage. Now know you that these messengers, wherever they went, gave letters from the emperor to the princes and grandees whom they met on their way, in which he begged them to honor and serve the empress Oriana, daughter of King Lisuarte, whom he already considered his wife. Although they by their words showed a willingness to do so, among themselves they prayed God that such a good lady, daughter of such a king, might not come to a man so scorned and hated by all the people who knew him and very rightly so, because his rudeness and arrogance were so excessive that to no one, no matter how great he might be, of those of his empire and of the other realms that he was able to bring under his sway, did he do honor; rather, he scorned and vilified them, as if thereby he believed his status to be rendered more enhanced and secure.

Oh such a mad thought for any prince to entertain: that when he is justifiably hated by his own people, he could be beloved of God! Then if he is hated by God, what can he hope for in this world and in the next? Certainly, nothing else but to be dishonored and destroyed in both, and to have his soul forever in Hell.

So those emissaries reached a port opposite Great Britain called Zamando, and there they waited until they found boats in which to cross; and meanwhile they sent word to King Lisuarte that they were coming to him with a message from the emperor, their lord, with which he would be quite pleased.

CHAPTER LXXV

How the knight of the green sword left Constantinople in order to carry out the promise made by him to the very beautiful Grasinda; and how, being determined to set out with this lady to great britain in order to carry out her command, it happened while he was out hunting that he found don bruneo de bonamar badly wounded. and also herein is related the adventure whereby angriote de estravaus encountered them, and together they all came to the house of beautiful grasinda.

The Knight of the Green Sword having set out from the port of Constantinople, the weather became good and favorable for his voyage, which was undertaken with the thought that he might [ultimately] be going to that land where his lady Oriana was. This caused him to be very happy, although at that time he had been more worried and tormented on her account than he had ever been before, because he had sojourned three years in Germany and two in Romania and in Greece, and meanwhile not only had he failed to receive any message from her, but also had had no news concerning her. Well, things turned out so favorably for him that in three weeks he made port at that town where Grasinda was. And when she learned this, she was very happy, for she already knew that he had killed the Endriago and knew about the mighty giants which on the islands of Romania he had overcome and slain. And she donned her finest garb, as the rich and noble lady that she was, in order to receive him; and she gave orders to bring horses for him and for Master Elisabad on which to ride away from the ship. And he of the Green Sword dressed himself in rich apparel, and he on a beautiful

horse and the physician on a palfrey went to the town, where his rare and famous exploits already having become known to everyone, he was regarded and honored as a wonder by them all, as likewise was the master, who had important family connections and was very influential there. Grasinda came out with all her ladies and maidens-in-waiting to receive him in the courtyard. And he, on dismounting, made a low bow to her and she to him, as persons who had an honest affection for each other. Grasinda said to him: "Sir Knight of the Green Sword, in everything God has made you punctilious, for after you experienced so many dangers, so many rare adventures, your good fortune, which has willed it thus, has brought you to carry out and redeem the pledge that you left with me, because five days from today the year's time limit promised by you expires, and may it please Him to dispose your heart to fulfill as completely the other boon that is still to be asked."

"Madam," said he, "never shall I, God willing, be remiss in what is promised by me, especially to such an excellent lady as you are, who has been so good to me; for if I put my life at your service, one ought not to thank me, since because of your giving me the physician Elisabad I am still alive."

"May the service be well employed," said she, "since it is so greatly appreciated. And now come and dine, for I cannot willingly ask you to do anything — no matter how much — without your great energy causing you to do more."

Then they conducted him to the patio with the beautiful trees, where once he had been healed of the wound, as has been told you. And there he was served, and Master Elisabad likewise, in the way they would be in the house of a lady who had such affection for them; and in a chamber that was adjacent to that courtyard the Knight of the Green Sword lodged that night. Before he went to sleep he talked a very long while with Gandalin, telling how happy at heart he would be to be going to where his lady love was, if the boon promised that lady Grasinda did not prevent it. Gandalin said to him: "Sir, take happiness when it comes, and leave the rest to God our Lord, for it may be that the boon promised the lady will help to augment your pleasure."

So he slept that night somewhat more peacefully; and in the morning he arose and went to Grasinda's chapel to hear mass with her, she being attended by her ladies and maidens-in-waiting. After it was over, she commanded everyone to retire, and taking him by the hand, there on a stone bench she sat down with him, and addressing him she said: "Knight of the Green Sword, you should be informed that a year before you came here, all the matrons who were extremely beautiful over and above all others were together at a wedding for which invitations had been issued by the Duke of Vaselia, at which wedding my escort was my brother the Marquis Saluder, whom you know. And all the ladies being together, and I with them, there entered there all the nobles who had come to those festivities; and my brother the marquis, I know not whether out of affection or folly, said in a loud voice, so that all heard it, that my beauty was so great that I excelled all the matrons who were there, and that if anyone should deny it, he by force of arms would make him admit it. And I do not know whether on account of his valor or because it seemed to the others just as it did to him, suffice it to say that because no one responded to his challenge, I remained adjudged the most beautiful of all the beautiful matrons of Romania — which is large, as you know — so that therefore my heart is ever quite proud and happy. And it would be much more so and at a much higher level if through you I might obtain what my heart so greatly desires; and I would not spare personal effort, nor the expense for attendants, however great that may be."

"My lady," said he, "demand whatever will give you most pleasure, and may it be something that I can carry out, because it definitely will be put into execution at once."

"My lord," said she, "then what I ask you as a favor is since I know for certain that there are at the court of King Lisuarte of Great Britain, the most beautiful women in the whole world, that you take me there, and that by force of arms if it cannot be otherwise, you cause me to win that great distinction for beauty over all the maidens who may be there — which here in these parts I won over the matrons, as I have already told you — by declaring that in Lisuarte's court there are no maidens so beautiful as is a matron that you are escorting. And if anyone should deny it, that you make him recognize it by force of arms. I shall wear

a fine coronet that you shall wager on my behalf; and likewise have the knight who fights with you wager another, so that the victor may carry off both in token of having the most beautiful woman on his side. And if God causes us to leave there with honor, you shall take me from there to the island called Firm, where they tell me there is an enchanted chamber which no woman, either matron or maiden, can enter except the one who surpasses in beauty the very beautiful Grimanesa, who in her time had no peer. And this is the boon that I ask of you."

When this was heard by the Knight of the Green Sword, he was completely unmanned, and said with a very sad countenance: "Alas, lady, you have slain me! And if you have done me great favors you have transformed them for me into greater harm."

And he was so stricken as to be at his wits' end. He was thinking that if with such a purpose he were to go to the court of King Lisuarte, he would be ruined with his lady Oriana, for he feared her more than death; and he well knew that in the court there were very good knights who would undertake the enterprise on her behalf, since they would have justice and reason on their side so completely; and that in view of the very great difference between Oriana's beauty and that of all other women in the world, he could not emerge from the said quest that he would be undertaking except dishonored or dead. And on the other hand he thought that if he failed to keep his word to that lady, from whom without her knowing his identity he had received so many honors and favors, it would be a very great degradation of his fame and honor; so that he was in the greatest danger that he had experienced since he had left Gaul. And he cursed himself and his ill fortune, and the hour he was born and his having come to those lands of Romania. But immediately he suddenly bethought himself of a great remedy: he remembered that Oriana was not a maiden and that he who would enter into combat on her behalf would be doing so mistakenly; therefore when afterwards he would be able to see her, he would make her understand the reason why that was taking place. And this remedy having been found, he abandoned his great worry, which had tormented him greatly by placing him in the greatest possible predicament — one in which he never had expected to find himself — and at once he became again very happy and of good

countenance, as if nothing had hapened on his account; and he said to Grasinda: "My good lady, I ask your pardon for the annoyance I have caused you, for I am willing to carry out all that you ask of me, if it be the will of God. And if I hesitated somewhat, it was not of my own will, but because of my heart's desire which I cannot resist, for it was directing its journey to another region; and that was the cause of the words that I spoke, it being what in all respects has me subjugated. But the great honors that I have received from you have such cogency that overcoming my secret desire, they leave me free so that without any delay I am enabled to carry out what is so greatly to your liking."

Grasinda said to him: "Certainly, my good sir, I believe quite implicitly what you tell me. But I say to you that I was very greatly disturbed when I saw you thus."

And extending her very beautiful arms and placing them on his shoulders, she pardoned him for what had occurred, saying: "My lord, I long to see the day when your great prowess at arms will enable me to wear on my head that coronet which will be won through you from the most beautiful maidens of Great Britain, I returning to my land with that great distinction with which I, out of all the matrons of Romania, departed from it."

And he said to her: "My lady, she who is to go on such a journey must not cease to worry, for you are to pass through very strange lands and among people of diverse languages, where great hardship and danger are presented; and if I had not promised the boon, and if my advice had been asked, it would have been that a person of such high honor and station as you are ought not to risk such danger in order to win that without which she can get along very well and with great distinction, being possessed of so much beauty and loveliness."

"My lord," said she, "I am more pleased with the good effort that you have mustered for the journey than with the advice that you would give me; for since I have such a helper as you, without any misgivings I expect to satisfy my desire, which has been striving for so long to attain satisfaction. And these strange lands and people that you mention can very easily be avoided, since by sea better than by land our journey can be made, as I am informed by many who know about it."

"My lady," said he, "I am to protect and serve you; command whatever best satisfies your desire, for that will be carried out by me."

"I thank you very much," said she, "and do believe that I shall bring the kind of adornment and retinue that such a leader as you deserves."

"In God's name," said he, "may it all be."

Thus their conversation ended for the time being. After the Knight of the Green Sword had been there two days, he had a desire to go hunting, being a man who, when he had no cause to take up arms, was accustomed to pass the time in other pursuits. And taking with him some knights who were there, and beaters skilled in their task, he went to a very dense forest two leagues from the town, where there were many deer. And they set him up with two very beautiful dogs in a line of beaters between the thickly wooded mountain and a forest that was not very far from it, where the game was accustomed to appear most frequently. It was not long before he killed two very large deer, and the beaters killed another; and it being now nearly night, the huntsmen sounded the horn. But the Knight of the Green Sword, as he was about to go to them, saw a marvelously beautiful deer coming out of a thicket; and when he set the dogs on it, the deer, on seeing itself hard pressed, plunged into a large lake, thinking to seek refuge there; but the dogs went in, for they were very eager for the game, and they took it; and the Knight of the Green Sword on coming up, killed it. Gandalin — who was with him, for in his companionship he took great delight and had talked with him a great deal on that expedition about how he was intending to go quickly to the land where his lady was, taking great comfort in talking about it (as one who had not seen her for a long time, as you have heard) — dismounted very quickly and fleshed the dogs, who were very good, being a person who had demonstrated that skill many times.

This having taken time, it was already nightfall, so that they could scarcely see. And putting the deer very quickly into a thicket and scattering over it some green boughs, they mounted their horses. On account of the great density of the thickets they quickly lost their sense of direction as to which way they should go. They did not know what to do; and without knowing where

they were going, they traveled a while through the wooded hilly area, thinking to encounter some road or some member of their company; but not finding any, by chance they happened upon a spring. And there their horses drank, and already without hope of obtaining any other shelter, they dismounted. Taking off the saddles and bridles, they let the horses graze on the green grass that was nearby. But he of the Green Sword, bidding Gandalin to watch over them, went toward some large trees that were near there, so that by being alone he might better think about his affairs and his lady. And on coming close to the trees he saw a dead white horse, gashed by mighty blows; and he heard among the trees a very pitiful groaning, but could not see from whom it came, for the night was dark and the trees had a very thick growth. And seating himself under a tree, he remained listening in an attempt to learn who that could be; and it was not long before he heard him say with great anguish and pain: "Alas, miserable hapless wretch, Bruneo de Bonamar, now it is fitting that your earthly desires, by which you have always been so tormented, should come to an end and die with you! Now you will not see that noble friend of yours, Amadis of Gaul, on account of whom you have endured such anxiety and travail throughout foreign lands, — Amadis, who was so esteemed and loved by you above all others in the world; for without him and without relative or friend to grieve over you, you must pass from this life to cruel death, which is already drawing near!"

And afterwards he said: "Oh my lady Melicia, flower and paragon more than all other women in the world, never more will you be seen or served by your loyal vassal Bruneo de Bonamar, the one who neither in word nor deed has ever ceased to love you more than himself! My lady, you lose what you can never recover, for certainly, my lady, there will never be another who will love you as faithfully as I. You were the one by whom I was sustained and made happy because of my delectable memories of you, whence came to me knightly courage and ardor, without my being able to requite this by serving you; and now that I was doing so by undertaking to find this brother whom you love so much, from whose quest I never would have departed without finding him, nor have dared to appear before you, my bad luck, not affording me any opportunity to render you this

service, has brought me to the point of death, which I always have feared would come to me on your account."

And then he said: "Ah, my good friend Angriote de Estravaus! Where are you now, for so long we remained firm in this quest? And to think that at the end of my days I cannot have aid or succor! Cruel was my fortune to me when last night it willed that the two of us be separated; harsh and painful was that parting, for now as long as the world endures we shall never more see each other; but may God receive my soul, and may He protect your great loyalty as it deserves."

Then ceasing to speak, he groaned and sighed very pitifully. The Knight of the Green Sword, who had heard it all, was weeping very bitterly; and when he saw him quieted down, he went to him and said: "Oh, my lord and good friend Don Bruneo de Bonamar! Do not grieve, and have hope in that very merciful God, for He has willed at such a time for you to be found in order to help you with what you really need, which will be medication for the illness on account of which you suffer pain. And do believe, my lord Don Bruneo, that if one can be remedied and restored to health through the knowledge of mortal man, you shall be with the help of our Lord God."

Don Bruneo thought because he saw him weeping so bitterly that it was his squire Lasindo, whom he had sent to look for some priest to hear his confession; and he said: "My friend Lasindo, you are very late, for my death is approaching. Now I beg of you that as soon as you take me from here, you go directly to Gaul and pay my respects to the princess, and give her this part of a sleeve from my shirt on which seven letters are written with a stick dipped in my blood, for my strength was not sufficient for more. And I trust that out of her great courtesy that pity which she did not have for me by sustaining my life, on seeing the letters with some feeling of grief, she will have for my death, considering that I have received it in her service while seeking with so much danger and travail that brother whom she loves so much."

The Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "My friend Don Bruneo, I am not Lasindo, but the one on account of whom you have received so much harm. I am your friend Amadis of Gaul, who regrets your perilous situation as much as you do.

Do not fear, for God will help you, and I shall with a physician such that with His help he will restore you to health as long as your soul be not departed from your flesh."

Don Bruneo, although he was very befuddled and weak from the great amount of blood that he had lost, recognized him by his speech, and holding out his arms to him, took and embraced him, the tears falling down his cheeks in great abundance. But he of the Green Sword likewise weeping and holding him embraced, shouted to Gandalin to come to him quickly; and when he arrived he said to him: "Alas, Gandalin! You see here my lord and faithful friend Don Bruneo, who on account of searching for me has undergone great hardship and now is at the point of death. Help me disarm him."

Then they both took him and very gently they disarmed him and laid him on a tabard of Gandalin's and they covered him with another belonging to the Knight of the Green Sword. And Amadis ordered Gandalin to climb up on some knoll as quickly as he could and wait until morning; and then to go to the physician Elisabad in town, and tell him on his behalf that in the name of the great trust that he had in him to come at once to him bringing everything needed to heal a knight who was badly wounded, and to believe that this knight was one of the best friends he had; and to beg Grasinda as a favor to order brought there, in order to carry him to the town, such equipment as befitted a knight of such noble lineage and of such great prowess at arms as he was. And while he of the Green Sword remained there with Don Bruneo, holding his head on his knees and comforting him, Gandalin went at once with that message; and going up on a high hill of the forest, day having come, he saw the town immediately; and spurring his horse, he went toward it. And so with that haste that he made, he entered the town without answering anything to those who questioned him, in order not to stop, and everybody thought some accident had happened to his lord. And he arrived at the house of the physician Elisabad, who, after hearing the message from the Knight of the Green Sword and remarking Gandalin's great haste, believed the matter was very serious, took everything that was necessary for such an emergency and mounting his palfrey awaited the guidance of Gandalin, who was relating to Grasinda what had

happened to his lord and what he was asking her as a favor. And leaving her, they took the road to the mountainous region, whence in a short space of time they arrived at the place where the knights were. And when the physician Elisabad saw that the Knight of the Green Sword, his faithful friend, was holding the head of the other knight on his lap and was weeping profusely, he really thought that he loved him dearly; and he came up laughing and said: "My lords, do not fear, for God will quickly provide counsel whereby you will be happy."

With this, he went up to Don Bruneo and examined his wounds, and found them swollen and inflamed with the cold of the night. But he put on them such medication that his pain was relieved immediately, so that sleep came to him, which was a great benefit and relief to him. And when he of the Green Sword saw that, and that the physician considered Don Bruneo in very little danger, he was very happy, and embracing him, said: "Ah, Master Elisabad, my good lord and my friend, how lucky for me has been your companionship, from which so much good and so much benefit has resulted! I ask God for mercy's sake that at some time I may be able to reward you for it, for although now you see me as a poor knight, it may be that before much time passes, you will judge me otherwise."

"So help me God, Knight of the Green Sword," said he, "I find it more satisfying and agreeable to serve and to help you than you would by giving me a reward; for I am quite certain that I shall never lack your generous gratitude; and about this matter let us not speak any more, but go eat dinner, for it is time."

And so they did, for Grasinda had ordered it brought to them very well prepared, as one who besides being such a noble lady, took great pains to please the Knight of the Green Sword at every opportunity. After they had eaten, they were talking about how beautiful those beech trees were that they saw there, and how in their opinion they were the tallest trees that they had ever seen anywhere.

And while they were looking at them, they saw a man on horseback coming, and he was carrying two heads of knights hanging from his horse's breast band, and in his hands a battle axe all red with blood. And when he saw that group of people

by the trees, he stopped and was of a mind to go away. But the Knight of the Green Sword and Gandalin recognized him, for he was Lasindo, Don Bruneo's squire; and fearing that if he came up to them, in all innocence he would reveal their identity, he of the Green Sword said: "All of you remain quiet, and I shall see who that man is who is fearful of us, and for what reason he is carrying those heads in that manner."

Then mounting a horse and with a lance, he went toward him, and told Gandalin to follow him.

"And if that man does not await me, you will pursue him."

The squire, when he saw that they were coming toward him, kept retreating into the forest out of the fear that he had, and he of the Green Sword kept following him. But on reaching a valley, where the others could not hear or see them, he began to call out to him, saying: "Wait for me, Lasindo; do not fear me."

When he heard this, he turned his head and recognized that it was Amadis; and with great pleasure came to him and kissed his hand saying to him: "Alas, sir! You do not know the misfortunes and bad news about my lord Bruneo, who has participated in so many dangerous exploits while looking for you through foreign lands."

And he began to grieve sorely, saying: "Sir, these two knights told Angriote that they left Don Bruneo dead here in this forest, whereupon he cut off their heads and told me to put them beside him if Don Bruneo was dead, and if alive, to present them to him on his behalf."

"Oh, God!" said the Knight of the Green Sword. "What is this you are telling me? For I found Don Bruneo, but not in such a state of health as to be able to tell me anything. And now stop a moment, and Gandalin with you as if he had caught up with you and told you the news about your lord; and when you are in my presence, call me the Knight of the Green Sword."

"Already concerning this," said Lasindo, "I had been warned that I was to do so."

"And yonder you will tell us the news you know."

And immediately he returned to his company and told how Gandalin had gone after the squire; and in a little while they saw them both coming. And when Lasindo came up and saw the Knight of the Green Sword, he dismounted quickly and went

and knelt before him, and said: "Blessed be God who brought you to this place, in order that you might be the restorer of the life of my lord Don Bruneo whom you love so dearly."

And Amadis raised him up by the hand and said: "My friend Lasindo, be you welcome, and you will find your lord in good condition. But now tell us why you bring those human heads with you."

"Sir," said he, "put me before Don Bruneo and there I shall tell you, for I have been ordered thus to do so."

Then they went to him where he was in a tent that Grasinda had ordered brought there with the other things. And Lasindo knelt before him and said: "My lord, you see here the heads of the knights who did you such great wrong, and your loyal friend Angriote de Estravaus sends them to you. When he ascertained the treachery they had perpetrated on you, he fought them both and killed them. And he will be here with you in a short while, for he has stopped at a convent which is at the edge of this forest to have a wound treated that he has in the leg; and when the bleeding is arrested, he will come at once."

"God help him!" said Don Bruneo, "and how will he contrive to come here?"

"He told me to come to the highest trees of this forest, where I would find you dead, for he thought so because of what one of these traitors told him before he killed him; and his mourning for you beggars description."

"Oh, God," said the Knight of the Green Sword, "protect him from harm and from danger. Tell me," he said to Lasindo, "shall you be able to guide me to that monastery?"

"I shall," said he.

Then he told Master Elisabad to have Don Bruneo carried on a litter to the town. And arming himself with Don Bruneo's arms, he mounted his horse and plunged into the forest, and with him Lasindo, who was carrying his shield and helmet and lance. And on arriving where the night before he had left the deer under the tree, they saw Angriote coming on his horse, his head bowed because he was mourning, whereat he of the Green Sword was greatly pleased. And immediately he saw coming behind Angriote four knights very well armed who were calling out to him in loud voices: "Wait, Sir false knight; you must lose your

head in exchange for those that you cut off from those men who were worth much more than you."

Angriote turned his horse toward them, grasped his shield and prepared to defend himself against them without seeing him of the Green Sword; who had already taken up arms, and going as fast as his horse eould earry him, overtook Angriote before the others arrived, and said: "Good friend, do not fear, for God will be on your side."

Angriote thought, aeeording to his arms, that he was Don Bruneo, so that he was happy beyond eomparison. But the knight of the Green Sword attacked the first one who came in front of the others. He was Bradansidel, the man with whom he had already jousted and forced to grasp the horse's tail in his hand while riding backwards, as you have already heard; and he was one of the most valiant at arms to be found in all that region. And he of the Green Sword struck him above his shield on the chest under his helmet flap so hard that he hurled him from the saddle to the ground unable to move hand or foot. And the three attaeked Angriote and he them as one who was very valiant. But he of the Green Sword grasped his sword and rushed in with sueh fury among them dealing them such mighty blows that from a slash that he dealt one of them on top of the shoulder his armor was not able to prevent his being eut to the flesh and bone, so that he fell at the feet of Angriote, who marveled exeeedingly at sueh strokes, for he could not believe that there was sueh prowess in Don Bruneo, because the knight had already overthrown another man. The remaining one saw him of the Green Sword coming at him, and not daring to await him, began to flee as fast as his horse eould run. He of the Green Sword went after him to attack him, and the other out of his great fear missed the ford of a river and fell into deep water; so that, though his horse reached shore, the knight because of the weight of his arms was drowned. Then, giving his shield and helmet to Lasindo, the Knight of the Green Sword returned to Angriote, who was amazed at his great valor, thinking that he was Don Brunco, as I already have told you. But on eoming up close he reeognized that it was Amadis, and he went to him with arms outstretched, thanking God for having enabled him to find him. And he of the Green Sword likewise went and embraced him, with tears of

good will coming to the eyes of both, for they loved each other dearly. And he of the Green Sword said to him: "Now there becomes apparent, my lord, that faithful and true love you have for me in seeking me for such a long time through lands fraught with so many dangers."

"My lord, I cannot do so much, nor strive so hard to honor and serve you as not to be all the more under obligation to you, since you enabled me to possess that lady without whom I would not have been able to sustain life; and let us drop this matter, since the debt is so great that it can hardly be repaid. But tell me whether you know the unfortunate news about your great friend Don Bruneo de Bonamar."

"I already know the reports," said he of the Green Sword, "and they are auspicious, since God out of His mercy willed that I should find him at such a time."

Then he told him how he had found him, and how he left him in the care of the best physician that there was in the world, with the assurance that he would live. Angriote raised his hands to heaven thanking God for having thus restored him. Then they prepared to leave, and on passing by the knights that they had overcome, they found one of them alive. He of the Green Sword stopped, and leaning down, said to him: "Evil knight whom may God damn, tell me why, thus predisposed, you wish to kill knights errant. Tell it at once; if not, I shall cut off your head; and tell whether you were implicated in the misfortunes of the knight who bore these arms that I have."

"That he cannot deny," said Angriote, "for I left him with Don Bruneo and with two others in his company, and afterwards I found the two boasting that they had killed Don Bruneo; whom, by telling him that an attempt was being made to burn a sister of theirs, they were bringing along to help them; so that all of them must have been involved in the treachery, because Don Bruneo went with them under a pledge of safe-conduct in order to rescue the maiden so that she might not suffer, and I went away with an old knight who that night had lodged us, in order to force the return to him of a son of his who was being held prisoner at some tents down here on a river bank; and it turned out so well for me that I forced his return to him and I put into his own prison the one who had him imprisoned; and in this

manner we parted from each other. Now let this man tell why they were guilty of such great treachery toward Bruneo."

He of the Green Sword said to Lasindo: "Dismount and cut off his head, for he is a traitor."

The knight was quite frightened and said: "Sir, for God's sake, have mercy, for I shall tell you the truth about what happened. Know you, sir knight, that we found out that these two knights were looking for the Knight of the Green Sword, for whom we have a mortal hatred; and on learning that they were his friends, we decided to kill them. Then thinking we could not accomplish it by taking them on together, we used those stories that this knight has related. And while going on our way on the pretext of setting the maiden free, talking, with our heads and hands disarmed, we arrived at that spring of the Tall Beeches; there, while the knight was watering his horse, we took up our lances, and I, who was next to him, snatched his sword from the scabbard; and before he could defend himself, we knocked him off his horse and gave him so many wounds that we left him for dead, as I think he will be."

He of the Green Sword said to him: "Why do you so hate me, as to commit such treachery?"

"What!" said he, "Are you the Knight of the Green Sword?"

"Yes, I am," said he, "and here you see that I am carrying it."

"Well, now I shall tell you what you ask. You will certainly recall how a year ago you passed through this land and that knight who lies dead there fought with you" — and he pointed to Bradansidel — "and he was the most vigorous and the strongest knight in this whole land, and the battle was in the presence of beautiful Grasinda. And Bradansidel with great arrogance imposed the condition that the one defeated was to observe, which was that while riding backwards on his horse, his shield upside down and the tail of the horse in his hand as rein, he should pass before that beautiful lady through the center of her town; which Bradansidel as the one defeated had to carry out to his great dishonor and discredit. And for this dishonor that you inflicted on him, he hated you implacably, as did all of us who are his relatives and friends; hence we fell into that error that you have seen. Now order me killed or let me live, for I have told you what you wanted to know."

"I shall not kill you," said he of the Green Sword, "because wicked men while living die many times and pay for what their evil deeds deserve, for in view of your vices that will be carried out just as I say."

And in order to carry the deer he ordered Lasindo to take a horse from among those that were running loose; then unbridling the remaining horses and running them through the forest, they went toward the town, where they expected to find Don Bruneo; and they brought along in front of them the deer on the horse.

The Knight of the Green Sword was moved to ask Angriote for news about Great Britain; hence the latter told him what he knew, although it had been a year and a half since he and Don Bruneo had left there on their expedition. Among other things, Angriote said to him: "Know you, my lord, that in the house of King Lisuarte there is a youth, the rarest and handsomest ever seen, concerning whom Urganda the Unknown has made known by her letter to the king and queen the great things in which if he lives he is to excel."

And he related how the hermit had brought him up, after snatching him from the mouth of a lioness, and the way King Lisuarte found him, and he told of the white and red letters that he had on his chest, and of how the king was rearing him very honorably because of what Urganda had said; and he said that in addition to the youth's being so handsome and graceful, he was also very well-mannered in all respects.

"God protect him!" said the Knight of the Green Sword. "You describe to me a very rare youth. Now tell me, about how old is he?"

"He may be about twelve years old," said Angriote, "and he and Ambor de Gadel, my son, serve Oriana, who shows them much favor, so good is their service — to such a degree, that in that house of the king there are no others so honored nor so admired as they. But they are very different in appearance, for one is the most handsome to be found anywhere and much the better mannered, whereas Ambor seems to me very lazy."

"Oh, Angriote," said the Knight of the Green Sword, "do not pass judgment on your son at a time when he is too young to succeed in being at all self-disciplined. And I tell you, my good friend, that if he were a little older and Oriana should wish to

give him up, I would take him with me, and I would make Gandalin a knight, for he has served me and taken care of me for such a long time."

"So help me God," said Angriote, "he deserves that very well indeed, and I believe that knighthood will be very properly conferred on him, since he is one of the best squires in the world. And if he were a knight and my son were to come in to serve you in his place, then I would lose the suspicion that I have, and I would become very hopeful that from accompanying you he would emerge such a man that he would do great honor to his lineage. And now let us drop the matter until the proper time, for God will decide it." And then he said to him: "Know you, sir, that Don Bruneo and I have traveled through all the regions of these islands of Romania, where we learned of the great feats that you have accomplished at arms, not only against very arrogant knights, but also against powerful and evil giants; for all the people who know about this are still amazed at having seen how one man alone could withstand such confrontations and dangers. And there we found out about the death of the fearful and mighty Endriago, whence you have caused us to wonder greatly how you dared to attack the Devil himself, for we were told that Endriago was his embodiment and that devils engendered it and brought it up, although it was the son of that giant and his daughter. I beg you, my lord, to tell me how you dealt with it so that I may hear about the most rare and terrifying thing that has come about through the effort of mortal man."

And the Knight of the Green Sword said to him: "Of the matter that you ask about, Gandalin and the physician who healed Don Bruneo are better witnesses than I, and they will tell you about it."

While talking just as you hear, they reached the town, where they were received by Grasinda, Angriote having been already warned that Amadis was not to be called by any name other than Knight of the Green Sword; and they met a number of armed knights, who by order of Grasinda were about to go look for them. And taking the latter with her, she brought them to the chamber of the Knight of the Green Sword, where Don Bruneo de Bonamar had been put to bed. When they went in and found him in good condition, who could tell you of the pleasure they

experienced as all three beheld themselves together? And likewise that very beautiful lady was pleased, considering herself very highly honored by being in her house under the protection of such distinguished knights — a house in which they had found the shelter and aid that with difficulty they would have been able to encounter anywhere else. Then Angriote was given medical attention for his leg wound, which was much inflamed on account of travel and the effort he had put forth in the battle with the knights. And on another bed close to Don Brunco's he was placed; and when these wounded men had eaten what the physician ordered, the others came out in order to let them rest. And the Knight of the Green Sword was fed in another room, and there he kept telling Grasinda about the prowess and great valor of those very faithful friends of his. After he had eaten, she went away to her ladies and maidens-in-waiting, and he of the Green Sword to his companions, for he loved them dearly; and he found them awake and talking. He ordered his bed placed next to theirs, and there they relaxed with much enjoyment, talking about many things they had experienced. The Knight of the Green Sword told them about the boon he had promised the lady and what she was asking of him, and how she was preparing to go by sea to Great Britain, which pleased Don Bruneo and Angriote very much because already, having found what they were seeking, they were desirous of returning to that land.

So he of the Green Sword, and Don Brunco de Bonamar and Angriote de Estravaus were staying, just as the story relates, in the house of that beautiful lady Grasinda with much regalement and pleasure. And when they were in condition to set out by sea without endangering their health, the fleet of ships was already prepared, being equipped with food for a year, and with seamen and fighting men to the extent needed. And one Sunday morning in the month of May they embarked in the ships, and with favorable weather began to sail on their way to Great Britain.

CHAPTER LXXVI

CONCERNING HOW QUEEN SARDAMIRA WITH THE OTHER EMISSARIES WHOM THE EMPEROR OF ROME WAS SENDING TO BRING ORIANA, DAUGHTER OF KING LISUARTE, TO HIM, ARRIVED IN GREAT BRITAIN; WHAT HAPPENED TO THEM IN A FOREST, TO WHICH THEY HAD REPAIRED TO TAKE RECREATION, WITH A KNIGHT ERRANT WHOM THE EMISSARIES HAD INSULTED; AND THE PAYMENT THAT HE GAVE THEM FOR THE RUDE THINGS THEY HAD SAID TO HIM.

The emissaries of the emperor Patin on arriving in Lombardy obtained ships and crossed to Great Britain; and they put into port at Fenusa, where King Lisuarte was, by whom they were received with great honor; and he ordered good lodgings, with all the other things that they needed, to be given to them in great abundance. At this time many nobles were with the king, who was awaiting others for whom he had sent in order to take counsel with them concerning what he should do about the marriage of his daughter Oriana; hence he set a time limit of one month for giving the emissaries his answer, thus arousing great hope in them that it would be such as to render them happy. And he decided that Queen Sardamira — whom the emperor had sent there with twenty ladies and maidens in order to provide company for Oriana and to serve her on the return voyage across the sea — should go to Miraflores, where Oriana was, and expound to her the greatness of Rome and the high station that she would occupy through that marriage by having at her command so many kings and princes and numerous other noble lords. King Lisuarte was doing this because he knew that his daughter was greatly opposed to that marriage, and so that this queen, who was very

clever, might incline her to it. But at that time Oriana was so troubled and with such great anguish that she was at her wits' end and unable to talk, because she thought that her father would hand her over to the Romans against her will, whence death would ensue for her and her lover Amadis.

So Queen Sardamira left for Miraflores, and Don Grumedan with her by command of the king in order to wait on her; and to protect her went knights of Rome, and of Sardinia, where she was queen. Thus it happened that while they were on a riverbank — which was verdant and adorned with beautiful flowers — waiting for the heat of the day to pass, her knights, who were boastful at arms, put their shields outside their tents, and they were five; whereupon Don Grumedan said to them: "Lords, have your shields put inside the tents, unless you wish to uphold the custom of the land, which is that any knight who places his shield or lance outside of his tent or house or hut where he is lodged, must engage in a joust with any knights who may demand it of him."

"We well understand that custom, and for that reason we are putting them outside," said they; "may God ordain that before we go from here, a joust be demanded by someone."

"In the name of God," said Don Grumedan, "since a few knights are accustomed to pass along here, and if they come, let us see how you fight."

And they being there, just as you hear, it was not long before there came that esteemed and valiant Don Florestan, who had traversed many lands looking for his brother Amadis, but had never found out anything about him; and he was going along greatly afflicted and very sad. And because he had learned that people from Rome and from other regions who had crossed the sea had come to the court of King Lisuarte, he came there to ascertain from them some news about his brother. When he saw the tents near the road along which he was going, he went thither to find out who was there; and coming up to the tent of Queen Sardamira, he saw her seated on a dais. She was one of the beautiful women of the world, and the tent had the flaps raised, so that all her ladies and maidens-in-waiting were in view. And in order better to observe the queen, who seemed to him so attractive and so elegant, thus mounted on horseback he went up between the ropes of the tent to see her better, and remained

there for a time gazing at her. And while he was doing so, a maiden approached him saying: "Sir knight, you are not very polite to be on horseback so near such a good queen and the other ladies of noble rank who are there; it would be better to look at those shields yonder, which challenge you, as do their owners."

"Certainly, very good lady," said Don Florestan, "you speak quite truly; but perforce my eyes, out of their desire to see the very beautiful queen, caused me to fall into such a great error; and begging pardon of the good lady and of all of you other ladies, I shall make whatever amends may be decreed by her."

"You speak well," said the maiden, "but it is necessary that the amends be made before the pardon."

"Good maiden," said Florestan, "to that I shall attend at once if it can be done by me, provided that it be not demanded of me that I desist from doing what I must do against those shields; or else do order them placed inside the tent."

"Sir knight," said she, "do not believe that the shields were placed there so thoughtlessly; for before they are taken away, they will have triumphed by the great effort of their owners over all the others who pass by here desiring to defend themselves against them, in order to take their shields back to Rome with the names of the knights their owners inscribed on their bosses as evidence of the superiority that the Romans have over the knights of other lands. And if you want to protect yourself from incurring shame, return to where you came from, and your shield and name will not be carried where with public announcement your honor will be discredited."

"Maiden," said he, "if it please God, I shall protect myself from these shames that you tell me about; and I don't trust so much in your esteem for me as to rely on any of these counsels of yours; rather I intend to carry these shields to Firm Island."

Then he said to the queen: "Madam, may you be commended to God, and may He, who made you so beautiful, give you much joy and pleasure."

And he moved toward the shields; and Don Grumedan, who had heard clearly all that had been exchanged in conversation with the maiden, esteemed him highly, and even more so when he heard him speak of the Firm Island, for at once he thought

that he was probably of the lineage of that very powerful Amadis, and he well believed that he would do what he had told the maiden concerning carrying the shields to the Firm Island; hence he was quite pleased with the opportunity to see how the Roman knights were at arms. Though he did not recognize Don Florestan, the latter seemed to him very marvelously well armed and a very fine rider, and so he was; and he considered him very courageous in undertaking such a great project; hence he had for him every good wish, and this to an even greater extent if he had known he was Don Florestan, whom he greatly esteemed and honored. And as for Don Florestan, who saw himself before him, and knew that there was not in the entire court a knight who had such an understanding of affairs at arms as he did, his courage and ardor grew in him so that he did not feel a jot of cowardice. So he went up to the shields and put the tip of his lance against the first and second, and the third and fourth and fifth; doing this because in this sequence they were to go to their jousts, one after the other according as the shields were touched. This done, he withdrew a bowshot's distance into the field, hung his shield on his neck, took a good thick lance and seating himself erectly in the saddle, remained waiting. And Don Florestan always had with him, whenever he could, two or three squires in order to be better served and so that they might carry for him lances and battle axes, which he knew very well how to use, for in many lands there would not be found any other knight who jousted as well as he. And since the Romans were likewise waiting, for wearing their armor they were in a tent, they rushed to mount quickly and go to him. But Don Florestan said to them: "What is the meaning of this, sirs? Do you want to come all together against one? You are violating the custom of this land."

Gradamor, a Roman knight, by whom the others were commanded, asked Don Grumedan to tell them how they should proceed, since he knew how better than anyone else. Don Grumedan said to him: "Just as the shields were touched one after the other, so in that order the knights are to go to their jousts. And if you believe me, do not go recklessly, for according to the appearance of that knight, he will not want any shame for himself."

"Don Grumedan," said Gradamor, "the Romans are not like you people who speak highly of yourselves before the fact is established; and as for us, even what we do accomplish we allow to be forgotten. And therefore there are no men who are our equals, and may it please God that our battle with that knight be over this proposition, even if my companions should not lend a hand in it."

Don Grumedan said to him: "Sir, may you experience now with that knight whatever pleases God; and if he emerges safe and sound from these jousts, I shall bring it about that over this proposition that you set forth, he fight with you. And if perchance there be such an impediment that he cannot do it, I shall take upon myself the battle in God's name. And go now to your joust, and if you come out of it successfully we shall remain in the presence of this noble queen, so that we not be able to withdraw."

Gradamor laughed as it were in scorn and said: "Now would that we might have that battle of which you speak as close at hand as the joust with that foolish knight who dares await us."

And he said to the knight of the first shield that was touched: "Go now and carry on in such wise as to exempt us from the scant prestige that would be won by overcoming that knight."

"Now be at ease," said the knight, "for I shall deal with him for you entirely according to your wish; and deal with the shield and with his name as you are commanded by the emperor to do. The horse, which seems to be a good one, shall be mine."

Then on horseback he crossed the river and went forward adjusting his weapons against Don Florestan; who, when he perceived him coming thus and saw that he had crossed the water, spurred his horse and went at him, and the Roman likewise. They collided with horses and shields in such wise that they missed their mark with their lances; and the Roman, who was the poorer horseman, went to the ground without delay. His fall was so heavy that he had his right arm broken, and he was badly stunned, so that to those who were watching it appeared that he was dead, for so he seemed to them. And Don Florestan ordered one of his squires to dismount and to take his shield and put it in a tree, and likewise he had him take the horse. And he returned to the place where he was before, giving indications that he was blaming himself because he had missed in the encounter; and he

placed the tip of his lance on the ground while waiting. Then he saw another knight coming toward him, and he went for him as fast as his horse could carry him, but that time he did not make a mistake with his blows; rather, he struck so hard on the shield that he pierced it with so mighty a thrust that he hurled him from the horse, and the saddle on top of him on the ground, with the lance having been thrust through the shield and through the flesh, so that it penetrated to the other side. And Don Florestan passed by him very jauntily riding well, and then he turned toward him and said to him: "Sir Roman knight, the saddle that you took with you is yours, and the horse mine; and if you should wish to tell about these efforts in Rome, I grant you permission to do so."

And he was saying this in a loud voice so that the queen and her ladies and maidens-in-waiting heard it plainly. I tell you that Don Grumedan was extremely happy when he perceived what the knight from Great Britain was saying and doing to the one from Rome; and he said to Gradamor: "Sir, if you and your companions do not show yourselves to be better, there is no reason to tear down the walls of Rome to enter when you arrive there."

Gradamor said to him: "You consider very important what has happened; well, if my companions should finish their jousts, I shall make you say something else, and not with such conceit as you now have."

"We are close to seeing it," said Don Grumedan, "for the way it seems to me, that knight of the Firm Island defends his wearing apparel well; and I trust completely in him to render unnecessary the battle that I have scheduled with you."

Gradamor began to laugh without relish, and said: "When the accomplished fact comes to my knowledge, I shall grant you all that you say."

"In the name of God," said Don Grumedan, "and I shall have my horse and my arms ready in order to carry out what I have said, for according to your opinion, that knight will last but a short time on the field; although I believe that his thought is very different from yours."

And it caused the queen much sorrow to hear the foolish remarks of Gradamor and the other Romans. But Don Florestan had the shield and the horse taken from the knight who was on

the ground as though dead and lacking any feeling; and when they extracted from him the lance fragment, the knight cried out in a pitiful voice, demanding confession.

Don Florestan, taking a lance, returned to the same place where he had been before. And it was not long before he saw another knight coming on a big beautiful horse, but not with as much vigor as the first knight; and he rode as hard as he could against Don Florestan, but the encounter was oblique, so that the lance missed its mark and the shock was deflected. And Don Florestan struck him on the helmet and, breaking its straps, knocked it off his head and sent it rolling over the field; and he made him clutch the horse's neck, but without his falling. Then Don Florestan raised his lance on high and came toward him very angry; and the knight who saw him coming thus, raised his shield; and Don Florestan struck such a blow on it that he jammed it into his face, so that stunned he dropped the reins from his hand. And when he saw him so befuddled, Don Florestan dropped his lance and jerked the shield so hard that he pulled it off his neck; and he struck him on top of the head two such heavy blows that he caused him to fall from his horse so bereft of his senses that all he did was to roll over and over on the field. And Florestan ordered that the horse be taken and that he be given his lance, and he went to the Roman, and said to him: "From now on, if you are able, you can go to Rome to shed tears over the knights of Great Britain."

And settling himself in his saddle, he went toward the fourth knight, whom he saw coming against him. But the latter's joust was ended at the first encounter, for Don Florestan met him with such force that he and his horse fell to the ground and the knight had his leg broken near his foot; and when the horse got up, the knight remained on the ground without being able to rise. Don Florestan had the shield and the horse taken as the others had been.

Then he took a very good lance from his squires and saw that Gradamor was coming at him with some very beautiful, fresh arms, and on a blossom-colored horse, big and handsome; and he was brandishing his lance as if he wanted to break it. Don Florestan was very furious with this man because he had threatened him. And Gradamor said in a loud voice: "Don Grumedan, do

not fail to arm yourself, for before you are on your horse, I shall bring it to pass that this knight who is waiting for me will have need of you to aid him."

"Now we shall see," said Don Grumedan, "but on account of your boasting, I do not want to put myself in that struggle until I see how you come out."

Gradamor, who had already crossed the water, saw Don Florestan coming at him as fast as his horse could run and very well protected by his shield; and he lowered his lance in order to attack him, riding against him at full speed. Both the knights were strong and valiant; as they met with their lances, Gradamor pierced his shield, putting through it a good palm's-length of the staff of the lance, and there it broke. And Don Florestan pierced his shield right through to his left side, shattering the armor plate with the force of his blow, which was great, and hurling him out of the saddle into a depression that was there full of mud and water; then he passed by him, and ordered his squire to take his horse. And Don Grumedan, who saw this, said to the queen: "Madam, it seems to be that now I shall be able to relax a bit, while Gradamor wipes off his arms and looks for another knight to fight."

The queen said: "Cursed be their follies and arrogance, which cause everyone to be enraged against them, and then they experience ignominy."

Gradamor lay thrashing around a while in the mud and water; and when he emerged, he was greatly distressed by what had happened to him. And he took his helmet off and with his hand he wiped away the water and mud that he had in his eyes and on his face, shaking it off as best he could; then he laced the helmet on his head. And Don Florestan, who saw him thus, went up to him and said to him: "Sir knight threatener, I tell you that if you do not use the sword better than the lance, neither my shield nor my name will be taken to Rome by you."

Gradamor said to him: "I am sorry about the test with lances, but I bear this sword only to avenge myself, and at once I shall have you see whether you dare uphold the custom of this land."

And Don Florestan, who understood it much better than he, said to him: "And what custom is this that you speak of?"

"That you give me my horse," said he, "or that you dismount from yours and on foot we test ourselves at sword play; and the game will be regular, and let the one who plays most poorly remain without receiving any courtesy or mercy."

Don Florestan said to him: "I well believe that you would not maintain this custom if you were the victor; but I intend to dismount from my horse because it is not right that a Roman knight as handsome as you are should mount a horse only to be knocked off by someone else."

Then he dismounted, gave his horse to his squires and grasped his sword. Then covering himself very well with his shield, he went quickly toward him with great fury, and they attacked each other very fiercely with their swords, so that the battle was quite savage and it seemed to all very dangerous because of the anger that there was between them. But it was not long before Don Florestan, who was more vigorous and stronger in skill at arms, seeing that the queen and her women were watching him — as was Don Grumedan, who much better than they knew about such activities — exerted all his strength, giving him such great and mighty blows that Gradamor, although he was very valiant, could not stand it and kept retreating from the field and withdrawing toward the tent of the queen, trusting that Don Florestan out of respect for her would forego pursuit. But Don Florestan stopped in front of him, and made him return immediately to where he had come from; and he wearied him so greatly that Gradamor fell outstretched to the ground, bereft of all his strength. His sword dropped from his hand, and Don Florestan took his shield and gave it to his squires; then he seized him by his helmet and jerked it off so forcibly from his head that he dragged him for a bit over the field, and he threw the helmet into the mud hole that you have already heard about. Then he returned to him, and seizing him by one leg, sought to throw him in along with his helmet; and Gradamor began to cry out for him in Heaven's name to have pity. And the queen, who saw him, said: "That wretch bartered poorly when he stipulated that the victor should not show any courtesy to, or have any mercy on the vanquished."

And Don Florestan said to Gradamor: "A stipulation that such an honorable knight as you made, it is not right to break, and I shall hold you to it very fully, as you will now see."

He, when he heard this, said: "Alas, wretch that I am, for I am as good as dead!"

"That is so," said Don Florestan, "unless you carry out my command in two matters."

"Tell me what they are," said he, "for I shall take care of them."

"One is," said Don Florestan, "that in your own handwriting and with your blood and that of your companions, you write your name and theirs on the bosses of the shields; and when this is done, I shall tell you the other thing that I wish you to do."

And while saying this he held over him his sword, which he was brandishing, and underneath it Gradamor was trembling with great fear. And he had a scribe of his called, and ordered him to take the ink out of his inkwell, fill it with Gradamor's blood and write his name on the shield, since he was not able to do so, and all the names of his companions on the other shields, and to do it quickly so that he not lose his head. This was immediately done thus, whereupon Don Florestan cleaned his sword and put it in the scabbard, and mounted his horse; and he mounted it with such agility that it seemed he had not labored at anything that day. He gave his shield to the squire, but in order that Grumedan might not recognize him he did not take off his helmet. The horse he was on was big and beautiful, and of a rare color, and the knight was of a size and stature so impressive that few would be found of such attractive appearance as he was when armed. And he took in his hand a lance with a fine, handsome pennon and he confronted Gradamor, who had already risen to his feet; and brandishing the lance, he said to him: "Your life depends solely on Don Grumedan's asking me on your behalf that I not kill you in his presence."

He began to shout, calling on Don Grumedan for God's sake to help him, since on him depended his life or his death. Then Don Grumedan came on foot just as he was, and said: "Surely, Gradamor, if mercy or pity are not available to you, this is with great justice, because out of your arrogance that is the way you asked for it from this gentleman; but I beg him to let you live, because I shall be very grateful and much obliged to him for it."

"That I shall gladly do," said Don Florestan, "for you, and everything else that may be to your honor and pleasure."

And then he said: "You, Sir Roman Knight, from today on whenever you please, you will be able to tell at the judicial hearing in Rome, if you go there, of the very arrogant statements and great threats that you have made against the knights of Great Britain, and how you resisted them, and the great glory and honor that you won from them in the very short period of one day; and tell it thus to your emperor and to the potentates so that they may have pleasure from it. And I shall make known on Firm Island how the knights of Rome are so liberal and generous that they give freely their horses and arms to those whom they do not know. But as regards this gift that you have made me I do not have to thank you for it, and for it I am grateful to God, who wished to give it to me against your will."

As for Gradamor, who was so battered and close to death, when he heard these words, they were for him more devastating than his wounds. And Don Florestan said to him: "Sir knight, you shall carry back to Rome all the arrogance that you brought from there, since they love and value it; for the knights of this land will have none of it, and they only recognize what you abhor, which is courtesy and good will. And if you, my lord, are as enamored as you are valiant at arms, and wish that I take you to Firm Island, you may test the enchanted arch of faithful lovers who go there with the fidelity of their lady loves. And with this glory and honor that you bring from Great Britain your own lady love will esteem you much more; and if she is of good understanding, she will not exchange you for anyone else."

I say to you about Don Grumedan that he was delighted to hear those words, and laughed heartily to see the haughtiness of the Romans humbled. But Gradamor did not do so; rather he heard the words with great heartbreak, and said to Don Grumedan: "Good sir, for God's sake, order me to be taken to the tents, for I am in dire straits."

"That is quite apparent from your appearance and that of your arms," said he, "and it is your own fault."

Then he had the squires pick him up to carry him away. And Don Grumedan said to Don Florestan: "Sir, if you please, tell me your name, for such a fine man as you should not conceal it."

And he said to him: "My lord Don Grumedan, I beg you not to be vexed that I not tell you, for in view of the discourtesy that

I exhibited to that very beautiful queen, in nowise would I want her to learn it, for I feel very guilty; although she and her maidens are more so, for their great beauty was the occasion for my doing wrong, since they deprived me of my understanding. And I beg you, my lord Don Grumedan, to arrange with them that by taking from me whatever amends I may be able to make, they pardon me; and that you send me their reply to the round hermitage that is near here, for there I shall lodge today."

Don Grumedan said to him: "I shall do what you wish to the full extent of my ability, and with the message that I obtain I shall send to you my squire, and if to my liking, the message that he will bring to you will be good, just as you deserve."

The Knight from the Firm Island said to him: "I beg you, my lord Don Grumedan, that if you know any news about Amadis, you tell me."

And as for Don Grumedan, who loved very much the one he was asking about, tears came to his eyes out of his longing for him, and he said: "So help me God, good knight, since the time he departed from Gaul, from the house of his father King Perion, I have had no news whatever of him; and I would be very happy to hear some and to impart it to you and to all his friends."

"I well believe that," said Don Florestan, "in view of your good will and the great loyalty that dwells in you, sir; for if all men were such, disloyalty and lack of restraint would not find a dwelling place anywhere in which to lodge, and would perforce be expelled from the world. And God be with you, for I am going to the hermitage that I told you about, to wait for your squire."

"God be with you," said Don Grumedan.

And he went away to the tents, and Don Florestan to where his squires were. And he ordered that the horses he had won be taken to the tents, and that the blossom-colored horse be given on his behalf to Don Grumedan because it seemed to him a good one, and that the other four be given to the maiden who had talked with him, to do with them whatever she wished, and to tell her that Don Florestan sent them. Don Grumedan was very happy with the horse on account of its having belonged to the Romans and much more on learning that that man was Don Florestan, whom he greatly loved and esteemed. And the squires

gave the other horses to the maiden, saying to her: "Lady Maiden, that knight whom you rebuffed today with your words in praise of your Romans sends you these horses to give to whomsoever you please, and asks that you take them as a token of verification of the words that he spoke."

"I thank him very much for them," said she, "and he certainly won them with great prowess and high excellence; but it would have pleased me more than to receive these four if he had left here only his own horse."

"That may well be," said one of the squires, "but whoever is to win his horse will need better knights than these who were seeking it of him."

The maiden said: "Do not wonder that I wish the honor of these more than his, for with him I am not acquainted nor do I know who he is. But however that may be, he has sent me a fine gift, and I regret having said to such a good man anything that might anger him; hence I shall make it up to him in whatever way he may command."

Thereupon they returned to their lord who was awaiting them, and they told him what had occurred, at which he was pleased. After commanding his squires to take the shields of the Romans, he went to the round hermitage to await Don Grumedan's message and because that was on the direct road to Firm Island; for he had no desire to enter the court of King Lisuarte and he would like to speak to Don Gandales, who had the Island in charge, in order to ask him whether he knew any news concerning his brother, and to place there the shields that he was bringing.

But I tell you that Don Grumedan went at once before Queen Sardamira and very humbly told her what Don Florestan had charged him to say, and he told her Don Florestan's name. The queen listened very attentively and said: "Could this possibly be Don Florestan, son of King Perion and of the Countess of Selandia?"

"He is the same one you mention, madam; and do believe that he is one of the most courageous and courteous knights in the world."

"I do not know how things have gone for him hereabouts," said she, "but I tell you, Don Grumedan, that the sons of the

Marquis of Ancona speak in rare terms of him, of his great prowess at arms and his high accomplishments, and of how intelligent and prudent he is; and this is to be given credence because these men were his companions in the great wars in which he participated in Rome, where he dwelt for three years when he was a young knight. But they did not dare to mention his excellence in the presence of the emperor, who does not like him, nor does he wish to hear him praised."

"Do you know," said Don Grumedan, "why the emperor does not like him?"

"Yes," said the queen, "because of his brother Amadis, against whom the emperor holds a deep-seated grudge because Amadis overcame the perils of Firm Island that the emperor was going to conquer, and went there before him; and for this reason he hates him very much for having taken away from him the honor and the prestige that he would have obtained by winning that Island."

Don Grumedan smiled at this and said: "Certainly, my lady, his complaint is unreasonable; instead I understand that for this alone he ought to have esteemed him, since he prevented him from obtaining there the greatest dishonor that perchance had ever befallen him, for there were many other knights of great excellence at arms who attempted it, and only that one, whom God made supremely great over all those in the world in strength and in all the other qualities that a good knight should have, succeeded in winning the Island. And do believe, my lady, that another adventure was the cause of the emperor's hating him."

The queen said: "By the faith that you owe to God, Don Grumedan, tell me about it."

"Lady," said he, "I shall tell it to you, and do not become angry about it."

And laughing she said to him: "Whatever it may be, I wish to know about it."

"In God's name," said he.

Then he told her all that had happened to the emperor with Amadis in the forest on the night when he was boasting about love and Amadis was lamenting, and all the words that passed between them, and how the battle went, just as you have already

heard in the Second Book. The queen derived great satisfaction from hearing about it; and made him tell it to her three times, saying: "So help me God, Don Grumedan, according to what you tell me, that knight really made it plain that one can serve love when content with it, and do the opposite when love has been contrary to him. But in my opinion, that was small cause for occasioning hatred between the emperor and Amadis."

CHAPTER LXXVII

How queen sardamira sent her message to don florestan, begging him, since he had overcome the knights, injuring them seriously, to be willing to be her protector as far as the castle of miraflores, where she was going to talk with oriana; and how they got along there.

While Queen Sardamira and Don Grumedan were talking thus concerning this matter about which you have heard, she listened happily to what he had to say because that journey that the emperor had made under the name of the Patin had been because of his love of her, for he had loved her dearly; and while intending to win her, he had come to Great Britain to test himself with the good knights who were there. Concerning what had happened to him with Amadis, he had said nothing to her; hence inwardly she was highly amused at his having concealed it from her. Don Grumedan said to her: "Lady, give me whatever message you please for me to transmit to Don Florestan."

She reflected for a bit; then she said: "Don Grumedan, you see my knights so disabled that they cannot protect either me or themselves, and it is necessary that they stay behind for their own well-being; therefore I should like, since the knights of this land are what they are, for Don Florestan to be my escort along with you."

He said: "I say to you, my lady, that Don Florestan is so courteous that there is nothing that a matron or maiden might ask of him that he would not do, especially for you, who are such a great lady and to whom he is to make amends for the mistake he made."

"I am quite pleased," said she, "with what you say to me; and now give me someone to guide that maiden, and I shall send my message to him."

He gave her four squires, and the queen sent with a letter of accreditation the maiden who had acquired the horses, and told her privately what to say. Mounting her palfrey and accompained by the squires, the maiden made her trip in great haste; so that on reaching the round hermitage she found Don Florestan, who was talking with the hermit, and she had herself dismounted from the palfrey. And as she was not veiled, Don Florestan recognized her at once and received her very well. She said to him: "Sir, there was a time today when I did not think I would be looking for you, because my thought was that the affair between you and our knights would turn out differently."

"Good lady," said he, "they were to blame, for they demanded of me what I could not excuse without being disgraced. But just tell me whether the queen your lady will lodge tonight there where I left her."

The maiden said to him: "My lord, the queen sends greetings to you; and take this letter that I bring from her."

He looked at it and said: "Lady, tell me the message entrusted to you, and I shall do its bidding."

"It is not unreasonable," said she, "that you do so, rather it involves your good knightly honor and courtesy; and I say to you that she ordered me to tell you that the knights who were protecting her you left so disabled that she cannot make use of them; and since this inconvenience came to her from you, she wishes you to be her protector until you bring her to Miraflores, where she goes to see Oriana."

"I thank your lady very much for what she sends word to me to do, and I consider it a great honor and favor to serve her. Now let us leave here at an hour that will enable us to be at her tent by dawn."

"In the name of God," said the lady, "and now I tell you that you are well known to Don Grumedan, for he told the queen that such a reply as you are giving would be elicited from you."

The maiden was greatly pleased by the fair speech and great courtesy of Don Florestan, and by the fact that he was handsome and charming. In all respects he seemed to her a man of high

rank, as indeed he was. Then they supped there together and remained talking about many things for most of the evening. And when it was time to go to sleep, arrangements were made for the maiden to be housed in the hermitage, and Don Florestan remained with the squires under the trees, where he slept that night very peacefully after the day's exertion. But when it was time, the squires woke him, and arming himself, he took with him the maiden and the rest of the company, and went along the way to the tents, which they reached in the early morning. The maiden went to the queen and Don Florestan to the tent of Don Grumedan, who was already up and was talking with his knights, being about to hear mass. When he saw Don Florestan he was extremely happy; and they embraced each other with great pleasure, going at once to the tent of the queen. Don Grumedan said to him: "Sir, this queen wishes you to escort her; it is good that you do so, for she is a very noble lady. And it seems to me she does not barter badly in gaining you and losing her knights."

He said this to him laughing.

"So help me God," said Don Florestan, "I should like very much to be able to serve her in any way pleasing to her, especially since I am going in company with you, for it has been a long time since I saw you."

"Sir, how pleased I am to see you," said he, "God knows. And tell me, what did you do with the shields that you took from here?"

"I sent them last night by one of my squires to your friend Don Gandales on Firm Island so that he may put them in a place where they may be seen by all who come there and so that those from Rome may know of it, if they wish to come in quest of them."

"If they do that," said Don Grumedan, "Firm Island will be well provided with their shields and arms."

While thus chatting, they arrived in the presence of the queen who already knew about their coming. Don Florestan went before her and sought to kiss her hands, but she did not wish it, placing her hand on the sleeve of his coat of mail as a sign of sincere welcome and saying to him: "Don Florestan, I am greatly pleased with your arrival and the effort that you are willing to put

forth in my service. Since you have thus made amends for the harm you did to my knights, it is right that you be pardoned for it."

"My good lady," said he, "I regret no effort or toil in serving you; rather I should regret it if I had left you vexed; and in this matter I receive honor and great favor; in whatever else there may be, I beg you, madam, to command me as your knight and servant, and with complete devotion your commands will be carried out by me."

The queen asked Don Grumedan if he was ready for the journey. Having heard what she was saying, he said: "Lady, when you please, you can go, and these wounded knights I shall have taken to a town that is near here, where they will be given medical attention for their wounds until they are healed; because in view of their wounds, they could not go with us until they are well."

"So let it be done," said she.

Then they brought to the queen a palfrey as white as snow, and it came saddled with a saddle all trimmed with gold, wondrously well wrought, and likewise the bridle; and she dressed in very fine apparel, wearing around her neck strands of pearls and precious stones of great value, which enhanced her beauty exceedingly. Immediately her lavishly adorned matrons and maidens mounted their horses; and with Don Florestan taking the queen's horse by the rein, they started out on the journey to Miraflores.

I am telling you that Oriana already knew about their coming, which greatly distressed her, for there was nothing in the world that was more irksome to her than to hear the emperor of Rome discussed; and she knew for certain that this queen was not coming for any other purpose. But she was quite pleased with the coming of Don Florestan, when she found out he was accompanying the queen, because she wished to ask him for news of Amadis and to complain to him about the king her father. But although her agitation was great, she thought it well to order the house embellished with beautiful and luxurious daises in order to receive them, and she dressed herself in the best garb she had, and so did Mabilia and her other maidens.

And when Queen Sardamira entered the palace where Oriana was, Don Florestan and Grumedan were escorting her. When

Oriana saw her coming, she was very well impressed by her; and she thought that if her errand were not such as it was, she would take great pleasure in being with her. When the queen drew near, she bowed before Oriana and sought to kiss her hands, but she drew them back and said to her that she was a queen and a lady; whereas she, Oriana, was a poor maiden on whom her sins were seeking to wreak harm. Then Mabilia and the other damsels greeted her, showing very great pleasure for the sake of affording it to the queen. But that Oriana did not exhibit, for she had never had any since the Romans had been at her father's court. But I tell you that with Don Florestan and Don Grumedan she took great delight, for her heart found some repose with them. They all sat down on a dais, and Oriana had Don Florestan and Don Grumedan sat facing her; and after she had chatted a while with the queen, she turned to Don Florestan and said to him: "Good friend, it has been a long time since I last saw you, and I regret it, as I am very fond of you, as are all those who know you. And great is the loss that you and Amadis and your friends cause in being out of Great Britain, in view of the great wrongs and injuries in it that you used to set right. And cursed be those who were the cause of alienating you from my father, for if you were together here right now, as was your wont, a certain ill-starred woman who now awaits her misfortune in being disinherited and brought to the point of death, could have had hope of some remedy. And if you had been here, you would have argued in her behalf and you would have defended her just as you always have, for you never left unprotected those in trouble who needed you. But such has been the ill-fortune of this woman I mention that everything fails her but death."

And when she said this, she wept bitterly, and this for two reasons: first, because if her father should hand her over to the Romans, she expected to throw herself into the sea; and second, because of her longing for Amadis, of whom Don Florestan, whom she had before her and who greatly resembled him, reminded her. And Don Florestan, who was very understanding, readily recognized that she was speaking of herself, and said: "My good lady, God succors great distress with His pity, and do have hope in Him, my lady, for He will give you counsel concerning your problems. And regarding what you say about Amadis my

lord brother, whom I so greatly desire to see, just as in some places his help is lacking, so in others those who need it, find it; and do believe, my good lady, that he is in good health and uninhibited in strength, and is going through foreign lands performing miracles at arms and helping those who receive wrongs, as the one whom God made the most excellent in this world, surpassing all others whom He has caused to be born in it."

Queen Sardamira, who was near them and heard all the conversation, said: "Ah, may God protect Amadis from falling into the hands of the emperor, who mortally hates him; and I should regret the emperor's anger on account of Amadis's being so highly esteemed, and on your account, Don Florestan, for he is your brother."

"Madam," said he, "many others esteem him and desire his well-being and honor."

"I say to you," said the queen, "that according to what I have learned, there is no man whom the emperor hates as much as he does him, unless it be a knight who dwelt for a time at the court of King Tafinor of Bohemia, at a period when the emperor's men were warring against the king; and that knight about whom I'm telling you killed in combat Don Garadan, who was the best knight there was among all the relatives of the emperor and in all the dominion of Rome, unless it be Salustanquidio, this very honorable prince who has come to your father with a mandate from the emperor concerning your marriage. And that knight about whom I am telling you, the day after he killed Don Garadan, through his great prowess at arms vanquished eleven other knights of the emperor, who were among the best that there were in Rome. And by these two battles about which I am telling you, that knight freed the King of Bohemia from the war that he was having with the emperor, from which war he had not expected any relief except by losing his whole kingdom; so that on an auspicious day such a noble knight entered his court to remedy his troubles."

Then Queen Sardamira told them in great detail the reason for the battles and how the war was concluded so greatly to the honor and advantage of King Tafinor, just as this Book has recounted to you. And after she had ceased speaking, Don Flo-

restan said: "My good lady, do you know the name of that knight who participated to his honor in all those events?"

"Yes," said she, "for he is ealled the Knight of the Green Sword or the Knight of the Dwarf, and to each of those names he answers when called; though everyone holds the belief that he is concealing his real name. But because they say he bears a large sword ornamented in green and is accompanied by a dwarf, he is called by these names, and even though he takes another squire with him, the dwarf is never separated from him."

When Don Florestan heard this, he was very happy, and truly believed that it was probably Amadis, his brother; in view of the description of him he was hearing. And Oriana and Mabilia thought so too. Don Florcstan, after some refleetion dceided that as soon as King Lisuarte's eonvocation of nobles was over he would go in seareh of him. And Oriana, who was dying to speak with Mabilia, said to the queen: "Good lady, you have come from afar, and need to relax. It will be well for you to rest in the good quarters you have."

"So be it," said she, "sinee you, madam, so order it."

Then they all went together to the queen's living quarters, which were very delightful, not only with their trees and fountains but also with very luxurious apartments. And leaving her there with her matrons and maidens-in-waiting and with Don Grumedan, who was seeing to their service, Oriana returned to her own ehamber; and taking Mabilia and thc maid of Denmark aside, she told them that she truly believed that that knight of whom Queen Sardamira had spoken was probably Amadis. And they said that they likewise thought so; and Mabilia added: "Madam, now a dream is explained that I had last night, which is that it seemed to me that we were plaeed in a room eompletely closed and we heard outside a very loud noise, so that we were frightened; and your knight was breaking down the door and asking for you in a loud voiee. I pointed you out, for you were lying on a dais; then taking you by the hand, he led us all out of there and put us in a marvelously high tower, and said, 'You stay in this tower and do not fear anyone.' And at this moment I awoke. For this reason, madam, I am greatly heartened, for Amadis will come to your reseue."

When Oriana heard this, she was very happy and embraced her, weeping, for the tears were streaming down her very beautiful cheeks; and she said to her: "Oh, Mabilia, my good lady and true friend, how well you come to my rescue with your courage and good words! And may God decree out of His mercy that your dream turn out just as you say; but if this be not His will, that He bring it to pass that after Amadis comes, we both die and neither of us remains alive."

"Stop this," said Mabilia, "for God, who made him so fortunate in matters involving others will not forsake him in his own affairs. And speak with Don Florestan, showing him great affection, and beg him that he and his friends strive as hard as they can to prevent your being carried away from this land, and that he tell Don Galaor so on your behalf and his own."

But I say to you that Don Galaor, without being told was already involved in this concern, because of counseling the king about it the way he did, and we shall tell you how it came about. Know you that King Lisuarte had gone hunting, and with him Don Galaor; and after they had hunted, the king on going through a valley, drew rein on his palfrey and after all the others had gone on ahead, he called Don Galaor and said to him: "My good friend and loyal servant, never on any matter have I asked of you advice from which I did not derive benefit. Already you know about the great power and high standing of the emperor of Rome, who has sent to ask for my daughter as his empress. And I know of two aspects of this that are greatly to my advantage: first, if I marry my daughter so honorably, she becomes mistress of such a mighty power, and I have that emperor to help me every time that it be necessary; and second, that my daughter Leonoreta will be mistress of, and heiress to, the throne of Great Britain. And of this I intend to speak with my nobles, for whom I have sent, in order to see what they will advise me concerning this marriage. And in the meantime, if you please, tell me here where we have privacy, what you think of this; for since you are quite familiar with it, I consider that you will counsel me in the matter in every way that will greatly redound to my honor."

Don Galaor, when he heard this, remained in thought for a bit; then he said: "Sire, I am not of such great mentality, nor have I had enough experience with things of this kind to know

how to cope with a matter of such great importance as this is. And therefore, sire, may I be excused from it, if you please, because those nobles of whom you speak, with whom it is to be discussed, will tell you much better what may be to your honor and in your service, because they will determine it much better than I."

"Don Galaor," said the king, "I still want you to tell me your opinion; otherwise I would experience the greatest distress imaginable, especially since until today I have never received from you anything but much pleasure and help."

"God forbid that I offend you," said Don Galaor; "since you are still pleased to test my stupidity, I will do so. And I say that as for your stating that you will marry your daughter very honorably and with great dominion, this seems to me much the opposite, because she being your hereditary successor to this realm after you die, you could not do her greater harm than by taking it from her and putting her under the domination of a foreigner over whom she will have neither command nor power. And in the event that she achieve the objective of such ladies, which is offspring, and these in due course she sees married, then she will be placed under greater subjection and in more poverty than before, on seeing another empress giving orders. As for your statement that you would be helped by the emperor, surely, sire, in view of your own great worth and that of your knights and friends who are so effective, whereby you have improved your dominions and enhanced your great fame throughout the world, rather it would discredit you to think and believe that that man would afford you relief in case of necessity; for in view of the arrogant ways that everyone says he has, for you it would turn out to be quite the opposite, because on account of him you would always be having affronts and very fruitless expenses. And what would be worse than this is that it would be adjudged a service that you were rendering him, and in such a role you would be perpetually recorded in his books and chronicles. Therefore, sire, this which you deem a great honor, I consider the greatest dishonor that could come to you. And as for what you say about bequeathing the British crown to your daughter Leonoreta, this is a much greater error, for thus it happens that from one mistake there come many unless good discretion stands in

the way. To take away, sire, this dominion from a daughter so outstanding in the world, when it eomes to her rightfully, and to give it to one who ought not to have it, may it never please God that I should give sueh adviee; and I do not mean merely with referenee to your daughter, but from the poorest woman in the world I should be averse to her own possessions being taken away. This I have said on aeeount of the fidelity that I owe to God and to you, and to my soul and your daughter, for beeause I am your vassal, I eonsider her my lady suzerain. And please God, I am going away tomorrow, bound for Gaul; for the king my father, I know not for what reason, has summoned me. And if you please, I shall leave a written statement in my own handwriting, whieh you may show to all your nobles, embodying what I have said to you; and if there be a knight who says the opposite beeause of deeming it better, I shall fight him and make him reeognize that all that I have said is the truth."

The king, when he heard this from him, was displeased with his reasoning, although he did not reveal the faet; and he said to him: "Don Galaor, my friend, sinee you wish to go, leave me the written statement."

But he was not asking for it in order to show it, unless it beeame very neeessary.

Just as you have heard, King Lisuarte went along with Don Galaor until they eame to his palaee; and that night they took their ease with great pleasure and with everyone talking about this marriage — but the king more than anyone, for he was very desirous of it. And next morning Don Galaor gave to him the written statement, bade him and the nobles farewell, and left for Gaul. And know you that the purpose of Don Galaor in this aetion was to hinder that marriage beeause he did not feel it to be to the advantage of the king, and also beeause he suspected an affair between Amadis and Oriana, daughter of King Lisuarte, although no one had told him about it, and he wished to go away to where he eould no longer talk about the marriage, knowing already the king to be entirely determined to earry it out. And Oriana knew nothing of this, and therefore she begged Don Florestan, as you have heard, to speak on her behalf to Don Galaor.

So just as you hear they spent that day at Miraflores, Queen Sardamira being greatly astounded by the great beauty of Oriana, for she could not have believed that any mortal would be so beautiful, although Oriana was very much less so than she was wont to be, on account of the great anguish and the tribulation of her heart, which were very deep-seated emotions, for she feared that marriage with the emperor and had no news of her beloved Amadis of Gaul. For the time being the queen did not seek to speak to her about the matter of the emperor, but on other matters involving news and pleasure. But the next day when she did speak to her about it, she had such a response from Oriana, although it was decorous and courteous, that never again did she dare talk with her about it.

Then Oriana, knowing that Don Florestan wanted to leave, took him with her and brought him under some trees that were there, where there was a very fine dais; and having him seat himself opposite her, she told him openly her whole wish and the great pressure that her father was putting on her by seeking to disinherit her and send her to foreign lands, asking Florestan to feel sorry for her since she expected only death; and telling him that not only to him whom she loved so much and in whom she had such great hope and trust, but also to all the grandees of that kingdom and to all the knights errant, she intended to complain, that they might have commiseration and great pity for her and beg her father to change his mind.

"And, my good lord and friend Don Florestan," said she, "do thus beseech him to this end and counsel him to do so, making him understand the great sin which he is committing because of this very great cruelty and wrong that he seeks to perpetrate on me."

Don Florestan said to her: "My good lady, without any doubt you can well believe that I must serve you, in all that I be commanded by you, with as much willingness and humility as I would serve my lord King Perion my father. But this which you tell me to beg of your father, I cannot in any wise do because I am not his vassal, nor will he take me into his counsel knowing that I hate him for the harm that he has done me and my family. And if he has had some service from me, there is no reason for him to be grateful to me for it, because I did it by command of my

brother and lord Amadis, whom I could not, nor ought not contradict. Amadis, not for the king your father's sake but because if this land were lost, you would lose it, arranged to be in that battle of the seven kings and to bring with him King Perion and me, as you already know. Because he considers you one of the best princesses in the world, if now he were to find out about this outrage and wrong that is being done you so greatly against your will, do believe, my lady, that with all his forces and friends he would set about remedying it; and I do not mean merely for you who are such a noble lady, would he do it, but for the poorest woman in all the world. And do you, my good lady, have genuine hope, for there will still be time to be able to help you if it pleases God, for I shall not stop until I am on the Firm Island, where the knight Agrajes is, who very greatly wishes to serve you on account of that rearing that his father and mother gave you, and because of the great love that you have for his sister Mabilia. And there we shall take counsel on what can be done."

"Do you know for certain," said Oriana, "that Agrajes is there?"

"I know it," said he, "for Don Grumedan told me so, and he found it out through a squire of his whom he sent to him."

"Thank God!" said she, "May He guide him; and please greet him warmly for me. Tell him that in him I have that genuine hope that I rightly must have. And if in the meantime you should learn any news of your brother Amadis, let me know so that I may tell his cousin Mabilia, who is yearning to see him and may God contrive that you and Agrajes come to some good understanding about my situation."

Don Florestan, kissing the hands of Oriana, bade her farewell; and taking with him Don Grumedan, he went to Queen Sardamira, and said to her: "Madam, I wish to set forth, and wherever I may go I am your knight and servant; as such I beg you to consider me and to command me in whatever I may be of service to you."

The queen said to him: "She who would not wish for service and honor from a man of such great valor as you, Don Florestan, are, would be very much lacking in understanding, and if it be God's will, into such an error I shall not fall; rather I receive

your kind courtesy and give you heart-felt thanks, and always I shall remember to ask of you whatever you may be able to do for me."

Don Florestan, who was observing her closely, said: "May God, who made you so beautiful, requite you for that reply to me, since for the present I cannot except with words and good will."

And with this he took leave of her, and of Mabilia and all the other ladies who were there. And begging Don Grumedan that if he should ascertain any news of Amadis, he let him know at the Firm Island, he went to his lodging, armed himself and mounted his horse, and with his squires started out on the direct road to the Firm Island, where he wanted to go with the intention of speaking with Agrajes and planning how with the aid of his friends, Oriana might be rescued, if her father gave her to the Romans.

CHAPTER LXXVIII

How the Knight of the Green Sword, who afterwards was called the Greek Knight, and Don Bruneo de Bonamar and Angriote de Estravaus together came by sea accompanying that very beautiful Grasinda, to the court of King Lisuarte, who was resolved to send his daughter Oriana to the Emperor of Rome to be the latter's wife; and concerning the things that occurred when he of the Green Sword announced his quest.

With Grasinda there went sailing over the sea the Knight of the Green Sword, Don Bruneo de Bonamar and Angriote de Estravaus, at times with favorable weather and at other times with the opposite, according as God ordained it, until they reached the ocean which is aligned with the coast of Spain. And when the Knight of the Green Sword saw himself so close to Great Britain, he sincerely thanked God for it because, having survived all the many dangers and storms he had experienced on the sea, He had brought him to where he could see that land where his lady was; so very great joy filled his heart. Then with great delight he had all the ships draw close together, and he begged all the men who were in them not to call him by any name other than the Greek Knight, and he ordered them to strive to reach Great Britain. Then he sat down with Grasinda on her dais; and said to her: "Beautiful lady, now the time desired by you is drawing near, at which time, if it pleases God, what your heart so greatly has desired and still does will be carried out. And with certainty believe, madam, that on account of toilsome fatigue or danger to my person, I shall not fail to repay you somewhat for the favors that you have done me."

"Greek Knight, my friend," said she, "I have faith that God will so ordain it, for if His will had been otherwise, He would not have given me such a knight as you as protector; and I thank you very much for what you say to me, since on being so close to such an encounter my heart seems to double its ardor."

The Greek Knight commanded Gandalin to bring the six swords that Queen Menoresa had given him in Constantinople. Gandalin brought them and placed them before him. And he gave two of them to Don Bruneo and Angriote, who were amazed to see the richness of their ornamentation. Then the Greek Knight took another for himself, ordering Gandalin to put it with his arms, and meanwhile to stow away his green one where it would not be seen. He did this so that in the court of King Lisuarte, where he was going and where he wished to conceal his identity, it might not be revealed by the green sword. And while they were thus engaged in this matter, just as you hear, it being between nones and vespers, Grasinda, who was quite seasick, arranged with the Greek Knight and with Don Bruneo and Angriote for her to be taken on deck so that by the sight of land, she might experience some relief. And all four being there talking about whatever pleased them most, as they continued on their way, at the hour that the sun was about to set they saw a ship that was becalmed on the sea, and the Greek Knight gave orders to the sailors to go straight toward it. On coming within earshot of it, the Greek Knight told Angriote to ask those on the ship for news. And Angriote hailed them very courteously and said: "Whose is this ship and who goes in it?"

They when they heard this question said to him: "The ship is from the Firm Island and two knights are traveling in it who will tell you whatever you please."

When the Greek Knight heard them mention the Firm Island his heart was made happy, as were his companions', because they wanted to hear them speak concerning what they wished to know. And Angriote said: "Friends, I beg you as a courtesy that you tell those knights to come here, and we shall ask them for news that we were desirous of having; and if you please, tell us who they are."

"That we shall not do, but we shall tell them your request."

And having been summoned, the two knights stationed themselves there beside their men. Then Angriote said: "Sirs, we should like to learn from you in what place King Lisuarte is, if perchance you know."

"All that we know," said they, "will be told you. But beforehand, we should like to know one thing on account of which in order to acquire definite information about it, we have suffered great travail and expect to suffer even more before we ascertain it."

"Say what you please," said Angriote, "for if I know the answer, you shall know it."

They said: "Friend, what we want is to find out news of a knight named Amadis of Gaul, the one whom all his friends, by traversing foreign lands, are suffering and dying to find."

When the Greek Knight heard this, tears came to his eyes very quickly out of the great pleasure that his heart felt when he saw how loyal all his relatives and friends were; but he remained silent. And Angriote said to them: "Now tell me who you are, and I shall tell you whatever I know about that."

One of them said: "Know you that my name is Dragonis and this companion of mine is Enil, and we intend to traverse the Mediterranean from one end to the other and to search its ports in order to find out news of this man about whom we are asking."

"Sirs," said Angriote, "may God give you good news of him. And in these ships come people from many regions. I shall ask whether they know something about the matter, and I shall gladly tell you."

He made this statement by order of the Greek Knight; then he said to them: "Now I beg you to tell me where King Lisuarte is, and what news you know of him and of Queen Brisena his wife, and of their court."

"I shall tell you that," said Dragonis; "know you that he is in one of his towns that is called Tagades, which is a large seaport opposite Normandy; and he has convoked his assembly of noblemen, at which are all his nobles, in order to take counsel with them as to whether he will give his daughter Oriana to the emperor of Rome, who is asking for her as his wife. Also at his court are many Romans in order to escort her, among whom the

leader is Salustanquidio, prince of Calabria, and many others whom he commands, who are knights of high degree. And they have with them a queen, Sardamira by name, to accompany Oriana, whom the emperor is already calling empress of Rome."

When the Greek Knight heard this his heart trembled and for a time he was in utter dismay. But when Dragonis came to tell of Oriana's grief and tears and of how she had sent a complaint to all the grandees of Great Britain, his heart became at ease and he regained courage, thinking that since it grieved her, the Romans would not be so many or so strong as to prevent him from rescuing her either by land or by sea; and that deed he would perform for the most lowly maiden in the world, not to mention her, on account of whom, were he to lose hope of having her, he would not be able to live for a single moment. And he gave many thanks to God because he had arrived in that land at a time when he could repay his lady in some degree for the great favors she had done him, and because by rescuing her, he would have her as he desired without its being her fault. And with this he became as happy and cheerful as if he had the rescue already carried out and concluded. Then in an undertone he told Angriote to ask Dragonis where he had found out that news. And on being asked by him, Dragonis replied: "Four days ago there arrived at the Firm Island, from which we departed, Don Cuadragante and his nephew Landin, and Gavarte of the Fearful Island and Madancian of the Bridge of Silver, and Helian the Lighthearted. These five came to take counsel with Don Florestan and Agrajes, who are there, concerning their opinion as to how they should enter upon the search for Amadis, the one we are seeking. Don Cuadragante wanted to send to the court of King Lisuarte in order to learn from those foreign people who are there some news of that very courageous Amadis, but Don Florestan told them not to do so, that he had come from there and they did not know any news; and his squires have told of a fight which Don Florestan had with the Romans, whence his great prowess will be praised as long as the world endures."

When Angriote heard this, he said: "Sir knight, tell us what man that is, and what deeds he performed that are praised so highly."

"He is," said Dragonis, "a son of King Perion of Gaul, and in his great excellence he much resembles his brothers."

And he told them all that had happened to the Roman knights in the presence of Queen Sardamira, and how he had brought their shields to the Firm Island, and the names of the owners of the inscriptions written with their blood.

"And this Don Florestan related there the news that we are telling you, and how the knights of Queen Sardamira were so disabled that at her request Don Florestan escorted her until he left her at Miraflores, where she was going to see Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte."

The Greek Knight and his companions were very happy about that good fortune of Don Florestan. And when the Greek Knight heard Miraflores mentioned, his heart leaped, for he could not calm it as he recalled the delightful time he spent there with that lady who was its mistress; and leaving Grasinda and the other knights, he drew Gandalin aside and said to him: "My true friend, you have already heard the news about Oriana, for if it should come to pass thus, she and I would suffer death. I beg you to be very careful about what I shall command you, which is this: that you and Ardian the dwarf take leave of me and of Grasinda, saying that you wish to go with those of the ship in search of Amadis. And tell my cousin Dragonis and Enil the news about me, bidding them to return immediately to the Firm Island. And when you arrive there you will tell Don Cuadragante and Agrajes that I earnestly entreat them not to leave there, that I shall be with them within two weeks and that they detain with them all those knights our friends who are there, sending for more if they know of any. And tell Don Florestan and your father Don Gandales to have all the ships that are there supplied with food and arms, because I must go with them to a place to which I am committed to go, about which they will be informed by me when I see them. In this matter exercise great care, for you already know what is at stake in it for me."

Then he called the dwarf and said to him: "Ardian, go with Gandalin and do whatever he commands."

Gandalin, who was eager to carry out the order of his lord, went to Grasinda and said to her: "Madam, we intend to leave the Greek Knight in order to enter upon the quest with those

knights who go searching for Amadis in that ship; and may God reward you for the favors that we have received from you, madam."

And in like manner they took leave of the Greek Knight and of Don Bruneo and Angriote, and commending them to God they went on board the ship. Angriote said to Dragonis and Enil: "Lords, here are a squire and a dwarf who are joining the quest that you are pursuing."

But when they saw that it was Gandalin and the dwarf they were very happy. And when they learned from them the definitive news, they departed from the fleet with their galley and set out for the Firm Island.

The Greek Knight and Grasinda with her retinue continued sailing over the sea toward Tagades, where King Lisuarte was. King Lisuarte was there, in that town of his, and there were assembled with him many grandees and other nobles of his kingdom, whom he had convoked in order to take eounsel with them coneerning what he should do about the marriage of Oriana his daughter, for whom the emperor of Rome in order to wed her, by means of emissaries was asking very insistently of him. And all the nobles were telling him not to aecede to this, for it was a thing in whieh he would be erring greatly against God by depriving his daughter of that dominion whieh she was to inherit and by putting her in the power of a foreigner of lewd and very ineonstant charaeter — so ineonstant that just as for the present he was very desirous of that marriage, so in a short spaee of time he would take some other notion into his head; for it is very certain that this is the way of men. But the king, being irked by this aforementioned adviee, remained ever firm in his resolve, God permitting it, eoncerning that Amadis who had made seeure his kingdom and his life so many times by rendering him sueh outstanding serviees, by elevating him to the greatest fame, to the greatest height that any king of his time had attained, while obtaining undeservedly such poor thanks for it that the king's grandeur and great honor would be discredited and humbled, as will be told in the fourth Book. But even this King Lisuarte, not in order to turn away from his purpose but with the result that his stubbornness and severity be more elearly manifest to all, deemed it well that Count Argamonte, his uncle, who was very

old and suffering from gout, be summoned to the same council. The count purposely was certainly unwilling to leave home, for he, since he recognized the wrong desire that the king had in that matter, would be contradicting him completely; but when he saw the king's mandate, he went there at once. When he reached the palace gate, the king came out to receive him, and taking him by the hand went with him to his dais and had him sit beside him, saying to him: "Good uncle, I had you summoned, and these nobles whom you see here, in order to obtain advice about what I ought to do concerning this marriage of my daughter with the emperor of Rome, and I earnestly beg you to tell me your opinion, and that they do likewise."

"My lord," said he, "it seems to me a very difficult thing to advise on this matter as you command, because here there are two things to consider: one is the wish to follow your will, and the other is the wish to contradict it; for if we contradict it, you will take offense as most kings do, because with their great power they want to content and satisfy their own opinions while not being chided or opposed by those whom they can command. If we agree with the other alternative, you put us all in a fine situation with God and His justice, and in great disloyalty and treachery to the world if by us it be agreed that your daughter, being the heiress to this realm after your death, should lose it; because she has that same right to it — and even a stronger one — as you had to receive it from the king your brother. Then consider well, sire, that you would have felt just the same at the time that your brother died, if, shutting you out from what by right you ought to have, it had been given to someone else to whom it did not belong. And if perchance it is your intention that by making Oriana an empress and Leonoreta mistress of this kingdom of yours, you leave them both as very great and very honored ladies, and if you regard everything in the light of reason, it may turn out to the contrary; for since you are not rightfully able to disturb or upset the order of your ancestors, who were lords of this realm, by taking away or by increasing, the emperor by having Oriana your daughter for his wife, will obtain for himself the right to inherit it through her. And as he is powerful, if you were deceased, with little effort he would be able to take possession of it, so that both ladies being disinherited, this land so

honored and distinguished in the world, would become subject to the emperors of Rome, without Oriana's having any more command over it than might be granted to her by the emperor, so that instead of her being a suzerain you would leave her a dependent. And for this reason, my lord, if God wishes, I shall excuse myself from giving advice to one who much better than I knows what he ought to do."

"Uncle," said the king, "I well understand what you are saying to me; but it would have pleased me more if you and they had spoken favorably to me of what I have said and promised to the Romans, since in nowise can I withdraw from it."

"On that account do not stop," said the count, "for everything depends on how it is to be done and guaranteed; and there by maintaining your dignity and word of honor decorously, you can deflect or promote according to what is best for you."

"You speak well," said the king, "and for now let no more be said."

Thus that convocation of nobles was brought to an end and they went to their abodes.

And the sailors who were coming in the ships of beautiful Grasinda — in which were the Greek Knight, Don Bruneo de Bonamar and Angriote de Estravaus, who were sailing over the sea as you have already heard — espied one morning the mountain that had the name Tagades, from which was named the town where King Lisuarte was, which was at the foot of the mountain; and they went to where their lady was talking with the Greek Knight and with his companions, and they said to them: "Lady and lords, give us a reward for good news, for if this wind does not change, within one hour you will be putting into port at the harbor of Tagades, to which you wish to go."

Grasinda was very happy, and the Greek Knight likewise, and they all went to the ship's rail, gazing with great joy at that land they had wanted so much to see; and Grasinda gave many thanks to God for having thus guided her, and with great humility she implored Him to direct her affairs and to have her leave there with the honor that she desired. But as for the Greek Knight I tell you that his eyes took great delight in seeing that land where his lady was, from whom he had been so far away for such a long time. And he could not keep the tears from coming, and he

turned his face away from Grasinda so that she might not see them; wiping them away as secretly as he could. And putting on a fair eountenance, he turned to her, saying: "My lady, have hope that you will go from this land with the honor that you desire, for I am very reassured on seeing your great beauty, whieh makes me certain of having right and justice on my side; and sinee God is the judge, it will be His will that the honor be yours."

Grasinda, who had been fearful, as one who had now arrived at the erucial moment, was much encouraged, and said to him: "Greek Knight, my lord, I have much more confidenee in your good fortune and good luck than in the beauty that you mention; and if you keep that in mind, it will eause your good reputation to be enhaneed as in all the other great undertakings that you have with such good fortune carried out, and it will render me the happiest woman alive."

"Let us leave it to God"; said he, "and let us talk about what must be done."

Then they called Grinfesa, an unmarried daughter of the majordomo, who was good, intelligent, and somewhat familiar with the Freneh language, which King Lisuarte understood; and they gave her a letter in Latin that they had written previously, to give to King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena; commanding her not to speak or answer except in the French language as long as she was among them, and after receiving the replies to return to the ships. The maiden, taking the letter, went to the chamber of her lady and dressed herself in very costly and beautiful garments; and as she was in the bloom of youth and quite beautiful, her appearance was such that she made a fine impression on those who beheld her. Her father the majordomo ordered splendidly eaparisoned palfreys and war horses taken off the ship, and the sailors launehed a small boat in which they took the maiden and two of her brothers — both good knights — and two squires bearing the arms, and landed them quickly opposite the town. The Greek Knight ordered Lasindo, Don Bruneo's squire, landed in another boat and told him to go by another route to the town and ask for news of his lord, saying that he had been ailing in his own land at the time that Don Bruneo set out on the seareh for Amadis; and with this pretext he bade him make a great effort to find out what assurance of safe-eonduct was being

given to his maiden, and in any case to return to him in the morning, for he would have people waiting for him with a boat. Lasindo left him and went to carry out his order.

And as for the maiden, I tell you that when she entered the town everyone beheld her with pleasure, and they said that she came wondrously well attired and accompanied by those two knights. And she kept inquiring where the king's palace was. Thus it happened that the handsome youth Esplandian and Ambor de Gadel, son of Angriote, who by order of the queen were there to serve her as long as the foreigners remained, were both coming out to hunt with goshawks, and they encountered the maiden. As they saw that she was asking for the palace of the king, Esplandian gave his falcon to Sargil and went to her, for he saw that she was wearing foreign garb; and he said to her in the French language: "My good lady, I shall guide you, if you please, and I shall point out the king to you if you do not know him."

The maiden regarded him intently and was greatly impressed by his good looks and charm, so much so that in her opinion she had never seen in her life a man or woman so handsome; and she said: "Gentle youth, whom God made as well favored as handsome, I thank you very much for what you say to me, and thank God that I find myself with such a good escort."

Then her brother gave the rein to the youth, and taking it, he went with them until they arrived at the palace. At this time the king was in the courtyard under a finely wrought portico, and with him many nobles and all those men from Rome. He had just then promised them his daughter Oriana to take to the emperor, and they had just accepted her as their lady. The maiden, having already dismounted from her palfrey, entered the gate escorted by Esplandian, and her brothers with her; and as she came up to the king she knelt and sought to kiss his hands, but he did not yield them, because he was not accustomed to doing so except when conferring a signal favor on some maiden. Then giving him the letter, she said to him: "Sire, it is necessary that the queen and all her maidens hear it read; and if perchance the maidens are annoyed by hearing its contents let them try to have some good knight represent them, as has my lady, by whose order I come here."

The king ordered King Arban of North Wales and his uncle, Count Argamon, to go for the queen and to bring with her all the princesses and maidens that were in the palace. This was carried out, so that the queen came with such a retinue of ladies, both beautiful and richly adorned, as would be hard to find in all the world; and she seated herself near the king with the princesses and all the other ladies around her. The maiden message-bearer went and kissed the hands of the queen, saying to her: "Lady, if my quest appears strange to you, do not wonder, since for such things God made your court the finest of all those in the world, and the king's and your own great excellence are the cause of this. And since here is to be found the remedy that elsewhere is lacking, hear this letter and grant what is requested of you in it, and there will come to your court a beautiful matron and the valiant Greek Knight who attends her."

The king ordered it read, and it was as follows: "To the very noble and honorable Lisuarte, King of Great Britain: I, Grasinda, beauty queen of all the matrons of Romania, give orders that homage be done you; and I make known to you, my lord, that I have come to your land under the protection of the Greek Knight. The purpose of my coming is that, just as I was adjudged the most beautiful matron of all those of Romania, so pursuant to that distinction, which rendered my heart so happy, I want to be declared more beautiful than any of the maidens at your court, in order that with the victory in both categories I may be able to remain in that state of enjoyment that I so greatly desire. If there be a knight who on behalf of any one of your maidens may wish to dispute this, let him make ready for two things: first, to do battle with the Greek Knight; and the other, to display on the field a rich coronet, like the one I wear, in order that the victor may be able to give them both to the lady for whom he is fighting as a token of his having won that victory. And very noble king, if this for which I come you are pleased to permit to take place, order me and all my attendants, and the Greek Knight, to be given assurance of safe-conduct; if not, only from those who wish to do battle with him. And if the knight who fights on behalf of the maidens be conquered, let a second knight come forth, and likewise a third, for the Greek Knight out of his great excellence will hold the field against all comers."

The letter having been read, the king said: "So help me God, I believe that the matron is very beautiful, and the knight esteems himself no little at arms; but however that may be, they have initiated a great fantasy which without injury they could have avoided. However, people's desires are diverse, and on them they set their hearts and do not fear the risks that can come to them. And you, maiden, may retire, and I shall give orders that the assurance of safe-conduct be proclaimed publicly just as your lady requests, so that she will be able to come whenever she likes; and if she finds no one to dispute her claim, she will have satisfied her desire."

"My lord," said she, "you respond just as we expected, for from your court no one can rightly go away with any complaint. And because the Greek Knight brings with him two companions who will request jousts, it is necessary that they have the same assurance of safe-conduct."

"So be it," said the king.

"In the name of God," said the maiden. "Then tomorrow you will see them in your court. And you, my lady," said she to the queen, "give orders to your maidens to be where they may see how their honor is advanced or lessened by their champions, for my lady will do so; and God be with you."

Then she took leave of them and went away to the ships, where she was received with great pleasure. After she told them how she had delivered her message, they at once ordered their arms and horses taken off the ships, and they had a very luxurious tent and two small tents set up on the seashore; but that night only the majordomo with some servants came on land to guard it.

And now know you that at the time that the maiden messenger from Grasinda left King Lisuarte and the queen with the message that you have already heard, Salustanquidio, cousin of the emperor of Rome, who was present, stood up, and a good one hundred Roman knights with him; and he said to the king in a loud voice, so that all heard him: "My lord, I and these nobles of Rome who are here before you wish to ask a boon of you that will be to your advantage and to our honor."

"I am quite pleased to grant whatever boon you may ask," said the king, "especially the kind you mention."

"Then permit us," said Salustanquidio, "to undertake the quest on behalf of the maidens, for we shall give much better returns for it than the knights of this land of yours, because we and the Greeks know one another well, and the latter fear us merely on account of the name 'Romans' more than they will on account of the actual accomplishments of those from here."

Don Grumedan, who was there, stood up, and went before the king and said: "Sire, although it may be a great honor to princes for daring quests by foreigners to be made at their courts, and however much they may augment their honor and royal status, very quickly these daring quests might turn out to be dishonor and discredit if they are not received and regulated with good discretion. And this I say, sire, because of this Greek Knight who has just come on such a quest; and if his great arrogance should bring it about that those who in your court might seek to contradict him be vanquished by him, although the danger and harm would be theirs, the publicity and discredit would be yours. Therefore, sire, it seems to me that it would be well, before anything is decided by you, that you wait for Don Galaor and Norandel, your son, who according to what I have learned, will be here within five days; and by that time Don Guilan the Pensive will be improved and will be able to take up arms. And these will undertake the enterprise in such fashion that your honor and theirs be protected."

"That cannot be," said the king. "Already I have granted them the boon; and they are such that they will provide a favorable outcome, even for a greater action than this one."

"It can well be," said Don Grumedan, "but I shall bring it about that the maidens whom this concerns not authorize it."

"Desist from that," said the king, "for all that I do for the maidens of my household is done and completed; including this which is demanded of me."

Salustanquidio went and kissed the hands of the king and said to Don Grumedan: "I shall finish this battle to my honor and that of the maidens; and since you, Don Grumedan, esteem so highly those knights that you mention and yourself as well, thinking that they would conclude it better than we, if I emerge from the battle in such condition as to be able to bear arms, I shall take two companions and I shall fight with those knights you mention and

with you; and if I am not able to fight, I shall supply another in my plaee who easily will be able to exeuse me from doing so."

"In the name of God," said Don Grumedan, "I aeeept this battle for myself and for those who may wish to enter with me."

And taking a ring from his finger, he held it out to the king, saying to him: "Sire, you see here my gage on my own behalf and on that of those who may enter the battle with me. And sinee this was demanded by them, you eannot justly refuse it if they do not eoneede their own defeat."

Salustanquidio said: "The seas will be dry before a Roman goes baek on his word, exeept to his honor. And if your old age has done away with your brains, your body will pay for it, should you put it into the battle."

"Certainly," said Don Grumedan, "I am not so young as not to be full of days; and what you think will be for me a disability, I eonsider a major help, for during my life I have witnessed many things, among whieh the faet that arroganee never has had a good outeome; and thus I expeet it to happen in your ease, sinee aeeording to your boasting you are the very epitome of it."

King Arban of North Wales stood up to answer the Romans as did a good thirty knights who were seeking to partieipate in the battle along with him, and more than one hundred others. But the king, who knew him well, extended his seepter and ordered them not to speak on that subjeet, and he gave the same order to Don Grumedan. Count Argamon said to the king: "Sire, eommand one and all to go to their quarters, for it is to your diseredit for sueh speeehes to be made in your presenee."

The king did so; and the eount said to him: "What do you think, sire, of the folly of these Romans, who thus belittle those of your eourt while not showing any respeet for you? Then what will they do, when they are in their own land, or how will your daughter be treated? For they tell me, sire, that you have already promised her to them. I do not know what deeeit this betokens: that as a man so disereet and who has had sueh good fortune through God's will and your own good sense, instead of giving thanks to Him for it, you wish to try His patienee and vex Him. Look out, for very quiekly He could bring it about that fortune turn its wheel; and when He is thus angered by those on whom He has eonferred many favors, not with merely one lash, but with

many very cruel ones He chastises them. And if the things of this world are transitory and perishable, their glory and fame lasts no longer than while they are visible; nor is each one judged except as he is seen at present, for all that good fortune you have and that lofty elevation at which you now are would be consigned to oblivion, sunken underground, if fortune were hostile to you; and if some recollection of it be had, it would be only to discredit you in the present by blaming you for the past. Remember, sire, the very great mistake that you made without justification in separating from your court such an honorable body of knights as were Amadis of Gaul and his brothers and those others of his family, and many other knights who left you on their account whereby formerly you had been so honored and feared by everyone. And having now scarcely recovered from that mistake, do you seek to initiate another which is worse? Well, this comes to you only because of your large amount of arrogance; for if it were not so, you would have feared God and taken counsel with those who will serve you loyally. I, sire, herewith acquit myself of that fidelity and vassalage that I owe you, and I desire to go away to my lands; for if it be God's will, I shall not see the weeping and bitterness in which your daughter Oriana will indulge at the time that you hand her over, for I have been told that you are ordering her to come from Miraflores."

"Uncle," said the king, "speak no more of this matter, for it is done, and it cannot be undone. And I beg you to stay for three days in order to see how these combats will come out that are scheduled, and to be judge of them along with whatever other knights you wish. This do because owing to the time that you dwelt in Greece you understand the Greek language better than any other man in my land."

Argamon said to him: "Since it so pleases you, I shall do so; but when the battles are over, I shall not tarry any longer, for I would not be able to stand it."

The conversation being over, the count went to his lodging, and the king remained in his palace.

Lasindo, Don Bruneo's squire, who by order of the Greek Knight had come there, well ascertained all that had happened in the king's presence after the maiden had left there. And he went at once to the ships and related how the Romans had asked

the king for permission to participate in the combats and the latter had granted it to them, the words that Don Grumedan had exchanged with Salustanquidio, and how they had set the time for their combat, and all the other things taking place there about which you have already heard. And furthermore, he told how the king had sent for his daughter Oriana in order to hand her over to the Romans as soon as the battles had taken place. When the Greek Knight heard that the Romans were to engage in the combats and fight on behalf of the maidens, he was very happy; because what he had dreaded most about that confrontation was the thought that his brother Don Galaor might take on that battle on behalf of the maidens, for this he would consider more serious than any other challenge that might come to him, because Don Galaor was the knight who had put him in more dire straits than any other knight with whom he had fought, giants not excepted, as the first Book of this story relates. For he firmly believed that if Galaor had been at the court, as the most highly esteemed at arms of all those who were there, he would have taken up this challenge; from which only one of two things could have resulted; either the death of Amadis or his killing his brother Don Galaor, who would have suffered death rather than anything that would reflect discredit upon him. And therefore he was happy to learn that Galaor was not at court; and besides this, that he would not be fighting any of his friends who were at the court. And he said to Grasinda: "Lady, in the morning let us hear mass in that tent; and prepare yourself very elegantly, and bring well adorned whatever maidens you like; and we shall go and conclude this affair in which we are engaged, for I trust in God that you will obtain that honor so much desired by you and for which you have come to this land."

Whereupon Grasinda withdrew to her stateroom, and the Greek Knight and his companions to their own ship.

CHAPTER LXXIX

How the Greek knight and his companions took Grasinda from the sea and escorted her with her retinue to the lists, where her knight was to defend her cause by fulfilling her quest.

They landed Grasinda with four maidens, and went to hear mass at the tent; and from there all three knights rode forth armed on their war horses, and Grasinda on her richly caparisoned palfrey so elegantly decked out in cloth of gold and silks, with precious stones and pearls so valuable that the greatest empress in the world could not have worn more of them; because she, always anticipating that day which she had now reached, long beforehand had prepared to have for it the most beautiful and finest things that she could come by as the noble lady that she was; for not having husband or children or family, and being abundantly provided with great lands and income, she did not think of spending the latter on anything except what you hear; and her maidens likewise were dressed in exquisite garb. And since Grasinda was naturally beautiful, those artificial enhancements increased her beauty so greatly that all those who looked at her considered it a wonder, and her appearance gave great courage to the man who was to fight on her behalf. She wore on her head only the coronet that she had won as a token of being the most beautiful of all the matrons of Romania, as you have already heard. The Greek Knight led her horse by the rein, and was clad in armor that Grasinda had ordered made for him, and his coat of mail was as white as moonlight, his heraldic device was of the same designs and colors as Grasinda was wearing, and it was fastened together with cords woven in gold;

also on the helmet and the shield were painted the same insignia that the visor of his helmet bore. And Don Bruneo wore green armor, and on his shield there was depicted a maiden and before her an armed knight, both portrayed in curlicues of gold and scarlet; and the knight seemed to be begging a favor from her. And Angriote de Estravaus was riding a sturdy, agile horse, and bore arms of vair in silver and gold. He led by the rein the horse of the maiden of whom you have already heard, who had gone to the king with the message. And Don Bruneo was escorting another maiden, her sister. All the knights wore their helmets laced, and the majordomo and his sons were with them. With such a company they arrived at the lists at the edge of the town where the combats were usually held. In the center of the lists there was a pillar of marble as high as a man's stature, and those who came there in quest of jousts and combats were accustomed to put on it a shield or helmet, or a bouquet of flowers or a glove, as a gage. The Greek Knight and his companions having arrived there, they saw the king at one end of the field, and at the other end the Romans, and among them Salustanquidio with black armor bearing a device of gold and silver serpents. He was so tall that he seemed a giant, and he was mounted on an extraordinarily big horse. The queen was at her windows and the princesses beside her, as was Olinda the beautiful, who among her lavish adornments wore on her beautiful hair a splendid coronet.

When the Greek Knight arrived on the field, he saw the queen and the princesses and other matrons and maidens of high rank; and as he did not perceive his lady Oriana, whom he was wont to see among them, his heart trembled with longing for her. And when he saw Salustanquidio standing so strong and fierce in appearance, he turned his face toward Grasinda and saw her already somewhat dismayed, so he said to her: "My lady, do not be frightened on seeing a man so huge of body, for God will be for you, and I shall cause you to win what will give pleasure to your heart."

"May it thus please Him through His compassion," said she.

Then he took from her the splendid coronet that she had on her head, and went slowly forward on his horse and placed it on top of the marble pillar; then he returned at once to where his squires were, who were holding for him three very strong

lances with ornate pennants of various colors. Taking the one that seemed to him the best, he hung his shield from his neck and went to where the king was, and having bowed to him, said in the Greek language: "God save you, king. I am a foreign knight who has come from the kingdom of Greece with the intention of testing myself with your knights who are very good; and not independently, but because of the desire of the lady who in this matter can command me. And now, since my luck decrees it, it seems to me that the duel will be between me and the Romans. Give orders to them to place on the pillar the maidens' coronet in accordance with what my maiden stipulated with you."

Then he brandished his lance vigorously and spurred his horse forward as hard as he could, and placed himself at one end of the field. The king did not understand what he said to him, for he did not know the Greek language; but he said to Argamon, who was beside him: "It seems to me, uncle, that according to his appearance that knight will not want the discredit for himself."

"Certainly, sire," said the count, "although you have suffered some embarrassment because of these people from Rome being at your court, I would be very glad to have some of their arrogance suppressed."

"I do not know what will happen," said the king, "but I believe that a beautiful joust is in the making."

The knights and the other people of the king's household, who saw what the Greek Knight had done, marveled and were saying that they had never seen so elegant and handsome an armed knight except Amadis. Salustanquidio, who was near and saw how all the people had their eyes on the Greek Knight and were praising him, said very angrily: "What is this, people of Great Britain? Why do you marvel on seeing a crazy Greek knight who only knows how to prance about the field? It really seems that you do not know them as we do, for they fear the name 'Roman' as they do fire. What a sign of your not having seen or experienced great deeds at arms when you marvel at such a petty one as this will be. Well, now you will see how that man, who armed and on horseback seems so handsome to you, will look when he lies cold and dishonored on the ground."

Then he went to the vicinity of where the queen was and said to Olinda: "My lady, give me that coronet of yours, for you

are the one whom I love and esteem above all other ladies; give it to me, my lady, and do not fear, for I shall return it at once together with that one which is on the pillar, and with it you will enter Rome, for the king and the queen will be glad to have me take you with Oriana, and make you my lady and mistress of my land."

Olinda, who heard this, had no liking for his crazy talk, and her heart and flesh trembled, and her face turned red, but she did not give him the coronet. Salustanquidio, who saw her thus, said: "Do not be afraid, my lady, to give me the coronet, for I shall bring it about that with your winning this honor, that crazy matron, who has sought to stake it on the strength of that Greek coward, will go from here without it."

But in spite of all this, Olinda would not give it to him at all, until the queen removed it from her head and sent it to him. And taking it in his hand he went and placed it on the pillar beside the other one. Then in great haste he asked for his arms, and three Roman knights quickly gave them to him; and he took his shield and hung it from his neck, put the helmet on his head, and taking a lance thicker than any other, with a long, sharp tip, he settled himself on his horse. And when he saw himself so huge and so well armed, and saw that everybody was looking at him, his courage and arrogance increased, and he said to the king: "Now I want your knights to see the difference between them and the Romans, for I shall overcome that Greek; and if he said that after conquering me he would fight with two, I shall fight with the two best that he brings; then if they lack the courage, let the third come on."

Don Grumedan, who was boiling with anger on hearing that and on seeing the patience of the king, said to him: "Salustanquidio, you have forgotten the battle that you are to have with me if you escape from this one, and you demand another!"

"That is easy to carry out," said Salustanquidio.

And the Greek Knight said in a loud voice: "Misshapen evil beast, what are you talking about? Why do you let the day go by? Pay attention to what you are to do."

When he heard this, he turned his horse toward him, and they moved toward each other with their horses on the run, their lances lowered and they themselves protected by their shields.

Their horses were nimble and swift, and the knights strong and angry; so they both collided in the middle of the lists and neither missed his blow. And the Greek Knight struck him below the boss of the shield, piereing it, and the lance hit some strong metal plates and could not pass through them. But he had thrust at him so hard that he hurled him out of his saddle, so that everybody was amazed; and he passed by him looking very gallant bearing Salustanquidio's lance thrust through his shield and through the sleeve of his coat of mail, so that everybody thought he was wounded, but it was not so. And pulling the lance from his shield he flourished it aloft and went to where Salustanquidio was, and saw that he was not stirring and was lying as if dead. And it was no wonder, for he was big and heavy and had fallen from his horse, which was tall, and his armor heavy and the field very hard; so that everything together was the cause of bringing him as close to death as he was. And above all he had broken his left arm on whieh he had fallen, near the hand, and most of his ribs were dislocated. The Greek Knight still mounted, who had thought that Salustanquidio was more vigorous, stopped and bent over him, placing the tip of his lance on his face, for his helmet had fallen from his head with the force of the fall; and he said to him: "Knight, do not be so ill-disposed as not to confer the maidens' coronet on that beautiful matron, for she deserves it."

Salustanquidio did not answer, and leaving him there, the Greek Knight went to the king, and said in his own language: "Good king, that knight, although now he is without arrogance, is not willing to grant the coronet to that lady who is waiting for it, nor is he disposed to defend it or make answer. Grant it to her in judgment, as is right; otherwise I shall cut off his head and the coronet will be conferred."

Then he returned to where the knight was, and the king asked what he had said. And the count his uncle made him understand it, and said to him: "Yours is the blame, if you let that knight die in your presence. Since he cannot defend himself, by right you can render judgment concerning the coronets in favor of the Greek Knight."

"Sire," said Don Grumedan, "let the knight do what he wishes, for in the Romans there are more tricks than in a fox; because if Salustanquidio lives, he will say that he would still be capable

of eontinuing the battle, if you had not been so hard pressed regarding a judgment."

Everybody was laughing at what Don Grumedan said, and they were breaking the Romans' hearts. And the king, who saw the Green Knight dismount from his horse and be about to cut off Salustanquidio's head, said to Argamon: "Unele, hasten and tell him to forbear killing him, and to take the coronets, for I grant them to him, and let him bestow them where he should."

Argamon went toward him, shouting to him to hear the king's eommand. The Greek Knight drew baek and shouldered his sword. At this moment the eount eame up and said to him: "Knight, the king begs you for his sake to forbear killing that knight, and he eommands you to take the eoronets."

"I am pleased," said he, "and know you that if I fought with some vassal of the king, I would not kill him if what I had begun I eould finish in any other way. But as for the Romans, kill them and dishonor them as the evil men they are in imitation of the deeeitful ways of that arrogant emperor, their lord, from whom all of them learn to be arrogant, and in the end eowards."

The eount returned to the king and told him what the knight had said. And the knight mounted his horse and taking both eoronets from the pillar carried them to Grasinda. And he plaeed on her head the maidens' eoronet, and gave the other to one of her damsels to keep safe.

The Greek Knight said to Grasinda: "My lady, your affair is in the state that you have desired, and I through the mercy of God quit of the boon that I promised you. Go you, if you please, to the tents and take your ease, and I shall wait to see whether the Romans with this grief that they have had will eome out on the field."

"My lord," said she, "I shall in nowise leave you, for I can have no greater rest or enjoyment in anything than in seeing your great deeds of chivalry."

"Do," said he, "what you wish."

Then he spurred his horse and found it strong and rested, for it had exerted little effort that day; and he hung his shield from his neck and took up a lance with a very beautiful pennant. And he summoned the maiden who had eome there with Grasinda's message, and he said to her: "Friend, go to the king and tell him

that he already knows that he agreed that if I remained after the first battle, I would maintain the field against any two knights who together might oppose me. And now it behooves me to comply with that piece of folly and I beg him as a favor that he not command any of his own knights to fight with me, because they are such that they would not win any honor with me in overcoming me; but that he let me fight with the Romans, who have begun their battles, and he will see whether I, being a Greek, will fear them."

The damsel went to the king, and in the French language told him what the Greek Knight had ordered her to say to him.

"Madam," said the king, "I am displeased that no one from my court or my realm is fighting with him. He has carried on today to his honor and I esteem him highly; and if he were pleased to remain with me, I would make it worth his while. I forbid that those of my court and demesne be permitted to fight him, for I have other matters to attend to; but let those of Rome, who are on their own, do as they please."

The king said this because he had much to do in connection with the departure of his daughter Oriana, and because he did not have in his court at that time any of his highly esteemed knights, who in order not to behold the cruelty and injustice that he was inflicting on his daughter, had departed from there. There were in the court only Guilan the Pensive, who was ailing, and Cendil de Ganota, who had had his legs pierced by an arrow with which Brondajel de Roca, a Roman, had wounded him in a forest that the king was scouring in an effort to shoot a deer.

The reply that the king gave her having been heard by the maiden, she said to him: "Sire, many thanks for the kindness and favor that you show the Greek knight, and be assured that if he had wished to remain in Greece with the emperor, all that he might have asked would have been granted him; but his only desire is to travel freely through the world helping matrons and maidens who receive wrongs, and many others who rightly ask him for aid. And in these matters which are constantly coming to his notice, he has done so much that it will not be slow in coming to your attention, whence by you, and by the others who do not know him, he will be more highly considered and appreciated."

"So help you God, maiden, tell me to whom that knight probably owes allegiance."

"Certainly, sire, I do not know; but if his mighty heart is subjugated by anything, I believe it is probably only by some lady with whom he is desperately in love, and that he is placed under her sway. Now God be with you, for I am returning to the Greek Knight with this reply; and whoever seeks him, yonder on this field he will find him until noon."

The reply having been heard, the Greek Knight proceeded slowly to where Grasinda was, giving to one of the sons of the majordomo his shield and to the other his lance, and in order not to be recognized he did not remove his helmet. He told the one who had received the shield from him to go and place it on top of the pillar, and to say that the Greek Knight had ordered it so placed as a challenge to the Roman knights in order to abide by what he had promised. And he took Grasinda's horse by the rein and remained talking with her.

There was among the Romans a knight, Maganil by name, who next to Salustanquidio was considered to have the greatest prowess at arms, and they really thought that two knights of that land would not hold the field against him; and he had brought two brothers with him, likewise good knights. So when the shield was placed on the pillar, the Romans looked to this Maganil as if they expected from him honor and vengeance. But he said to them: "Friends, do not look at me, for I cannot do anything about that matter, because I have promised Prince Salustanquidio, if he should emerge from his battle in such condition that he could not fight, that I will assume the responsibility for the battle with Don Grumedan, and my brothers with me. And if he does not dare fight with us, and his companions don't dare either, since because of him I was to undertake it, then for you I shall take vengeance on the knight."

And while they were talking thus, there came two knights of their company, Romans, well armed with splendid armor and on beautiful horses. The one was called Gradamor and the other, Lasanor, and they were brothers, nephews of Brondajel de Roca, being sons of his sister, who was belligerent and haughty, as likewise were the husband and the sons; for which reason and on account of their being nephews of Brondajel, who was chief

majordomo of the emperor, they were very much feared by their own men. And these men having arrived on the field, just as you hear, without speaking or bowing to the king they went up to the pillar and one of them took the shield of the Greek Knight and struck with it such a blow on the pillar that he broke the shield into pieces, and he said in a loud voice: "Damn anybody who permits a Greek shield to be placed before Romans as a challenge to them."

The Greek Knight, when he saw his shield shattered, was so furious that his heart was burning with anger. And leaving Grasinda, he went and took up the lance that his squire was holding for him; not looking for a shield, although Angriote told him to take his; and he charged at the knights of Rome and they at him. And the one who had broken his shield he struck with his lance so hard that he hurled him from the saddle and in the fall his helmet was knocked from his head so that he remained stunned without being able to rise, and everybody thought he was dead. And there the Greek Knight had lost his lance, so he put hand to sword and turned to Lasanor, who was dealing him mighty blows, and he struck Lasanor on top of the shoulder and cut through his armor and his flesh to the bone, causing the lance to fall from his hand; and the Greek Knight gave him another blow on top of the helmet so that Lasanor on losing his stirrups was forced to embrace his horse's neck. And as he saw him thus, he quickly transferred his sword to his left hand and seizing the shield from him, jerked it from his neck, so that the knight fell to the ground, but got up at once out of fear of death. And he saw his brother on foot with sword in hand, and he went to join him. The Greek Knight, fearing that he would kill his horse, dismounted from it, taking on his arm the shield he had seized, and with drawn sword went toward them and attacked them so violently that the brothers could not endure it or hold the field; so that those who were watching him were amazed to see him so valiant as to hold them in low esteem. Thus he made the Romans acknowledge his prowess and their own weakness. He then struck Lasanor a blow on the left leg in such wise he was unable to remain standing and begged him for mercy; but he pretended not to understand him, kicking him in the chest and knocking him flat on the ground. Then he turned

to the other one, who had broken the shield, but the latter did not dare wait, for he very much feared death, which was approaching; and he went to where the king was, in a loud voice imploring him as a favor not to allow him to kill him. But the Greek Knight, who was following him, stopped in front of him, and by dint of the mighty blows that he dealt him, made him return to the pillar. When he came up to it he circled around it to protect himself from the blows. The Greek Knight, who was very angry, was trying to strike him, and at times was striking the pillar, which was of very hard stone, causing sparks of fire to flash from it and from the sword. And when he saw him too tired to move, he took him in his arms and squeezed him so hard that he deprived him of all his strength; after which he let him fall to the ground. Then he took the shield and struck him with it such a blow on the head that the shield was broken to pieces and the Roman appeared to be dead. And he put the tip of his sword at his face and pushed it a little, and Gradamor trembled, hiding his face out of great fear; and putting his arms over his head in dread of the sword, he began to exclaim: "Ah, good Greek, sir! Do not kill me, and command me what to do."

But the Greek Knight indicated that he did not understand him; and as he perceived him to be conscious he took him by the hand and striking him on the head with the flat of his sword forced him unwillingly to stand, and made signs to him to climb up on the pillar. But he was so weak that he was not able to do so, so the Greek Knight helped him; and while he was thus standing at ease, he pushed him so hard that he made him fall outstretched. And as he was big and heavy, and had fallen from an erect position, he remained so crushed that he did not stir; and the Greek placed the fragments of the shield on his chest, and going to Lasanor, took him by the leg and dragged him to his brother's side. And everybody thought that he intended to behead them; and Don Grumedan, who was watching him with pleasure, said: "It seems to me that the Greek has well avenged his shield."

The youth Esplandian, who was watching the combat, thinking that the Greek Knight intended to kill the two knights whom he had overcome, and being sorry for them, spurred his palfrey,

calling to Ambor his companion, and went to where the knights were. The Greek Knight who saw him coming thus, waited for him to see what he wanted; and as he came closer, he seemed to him the most handsome youth of any he had ever seen in his life. Esplandian came up to him and said: "Sir, since these knights are in such a state that they cannot defend themselves and your prowess is well known, free them as a favor to me, since to you all the honor accrues."

He gave him to understand that he did not comprehend him. And Esplandian began to call in a loud voice to Count Argamon to come over there, because the Greek Knight did not understand his language. The count came at once, and the Greek asked him what the youth wanted. He replied: "He asks you for those knights, begging that you give them to him."

"I should like to kill them," said he, "but I hand them over to him."

And he said to the count: "Sir, who is this very handsome youth, and whose son is he?"

The count said to him: "Certainly, knight, I shall not tell you that, for I do not know it, nor does anyone who is in this land."

And he related the manner of his rearing. "I have already heard of this youth in Romania, and I think he is called Esplandian. And I was told that he had some letters on his chest."

"It is true," said the count, "and indeed you may see them if you wish."

"I shall be very grateful to you for it, and to him for showing them to me, for it is a strange thing to hear and even more so to see."

The count asked Esplandian to show them to him. And he came up closer and he was wearing a jerkin and French hood embroidered with lions of gold and a narrow, close-fitting belt, and his gold tunic and hood were fastened with gold buttons. Unbuttoning some of the buttons he showed the Greek Knight the letters, at which the latter was amazed, considering it the strangest thing he had ever heard of. And the white letters said "Esplandian," but the red ones he could not decipher, although they were well delineated and formed. He said to Esplandian: "Fair youth, God bless you."

Then he took leave of the count and mounted his horse, which his squire was holding there for him; and going to where Grasinda was, he said to her: "My lady, you have been bored awaiting [the outcome of] my mad actions, but put the blame on the arrogance of the Romans who have caused them."

"So help me God," said she, "on the contrary, your good fortune makes me very happy."

Then they moved on from there toward the ships, and Grasinda with great exultation and joy in her heart, and the Greek Knight with no less in having thus disposed of the Romans, for which he gave many thanks to God. Then having arrived at the ships, and having the tents put aboard, they set out at once on their way to the Firm Island.

But I tell you concerning Angriote de Estravaus and Don Brunco that they remained on a galley by command of the Greek Knight in order secretly to help Don Grumedan in the combat that he had scheduled with the Romans, the Greek Knight having begged them that after undergoing that confrontation in whatever manner might please God, they try to find out some news concerning Oriana and proceed at once to the Firm Island.

The good youth Esplandian was profusely thanked by the Roman knights for what he had done in freeing them from the death to which they were so close.

CHAPTER LXXX

How king Lisuarte sent for Oriana in order to hand her over to the Romans, and concerning what happened to him with a knight from the Firm Island, and the battle that took place between Don Grumedan and the companions of the Greek knight against the three Roman challengers; and how, after the Romans were defeated, the companions of the Greek knight went to the Firm Island, and what they did there.

You have heard that Oriana was at Miraflores, and with her Queen Sardamira, who by order of King Lisuarte went to see her in order to tell her about the greatness of Rome and the vastly increased dominion in prospect for her through that marriage to the emperor. Now know you that the king, her father, having already promised her to the Romans, decided to send for her in order to arrange for her transportation. And he commanded Giontes, his nephew, to take with him two other knights and some servants and to bring her, and not to permit any knight to speak with her. Giontes took Ganjel de Sadoca and Lasanor, with others as servants, and went to where Oriana was; then taking her in a litter — for otherwise she could not come, as she was faint from much weeping — and her maidens, and Queen Sardamira with her own retinue, they left Miraflores and were advancing along the road to Tagades, where the king was.

And on the second day there happened what you shall now hear. For near the highway, under some trees, beside a spring was a knight on a brown horse. He was very well armed; and over his coat of mail he wore a green armorial device that was secured at both ends with green cords in gold buttonholes, so that

he seemed to them extremely handsome. And he took a shield and slung it from his neck, and took a lance with a green pennant and brandished it a little; then he said to his squire: "Go and tell those protectors of Oriana that I beg them to give me an opportunity to speak with her, that it will not be to their harm or to hers; and that if they do so, I shall be grateful to them for it; and if not, it will grieve me, but it will be necessary to attempt what I can."

The squire went up to them and told them the message; and when he said to them that he would use force in order to speak with her, they laughed and said to him: "Tell your lord that we shall not let him see her, and that when he tests his strength, he will have accomplished nothing."

But Oriana, who heard him, said: "What matters it to you if the knight should speak to me? Perhaps he brings me some pleasing news."

"Lady," said Giontes, "the king your father commanded us not to permit anyone to come up to you or speak with you."

The squire went away with this reply, and Giontes made preparations for the combat. And when the knight in green heard her, he went at him at once, and they struck each other mighty blows on their shields, so that their lances were shattered; but Giontes's horse from the great force of the collision had one leg dislocated, so that it fell with its master, and on account of its pinning one of his feet underneath along with the stirrup in which he had it, he could not rise. The knight in green passed by him, riding in fine style, and returned at once, saying: "Knight, I beg you to let me speak with Oriana."

He said to him: "Because of my protection you will no longer be deprived of it, although my horse has the blame."

Then Ganjel de Sadoca shouted to him to protect himself and not lay hands on the knight, for he would die for it.

"Would that I had you in such a state," said he.

And he went against him as fast as his horse could carry him with another lance that his squire gave him, and he missed the encounter; and Ganjel de Sadoca struck him on the shield, whereby he broke his lance, but he did him no other harm. And the knight returned to him, for he saw him with sword in hand, and he struck him so hard that the lance went to pieces, and Ganjel went out

of his saddle and had a hard fall. Then Lasanor came up; but the knight, who was very skillful in that profession, protected himself so well that he caused him to miss his lance thrust so that Lasanor lost the lance from his hand, and they collided so violently that their shields were broken and Lasanor had the arm broken with which he was holding it; and he of the green arms, who had returned to him with sword in hand, saw that he was in a state of shock, so did not seek to attack him; but he unbridled Lasanor's horse and hit it on the head with the flat of his sword, causing it to go fleeing over the field with its master. And when he saw it go thus, he could not help laughing.

Then he took a letter that he was carrying and went to the litter where Oriana was. And she, who thus saw him overcome those three knights so well at arms, thought that he was Amadis, and her heart trembled. But the knight came up to her with great humility and held out the letter saying: "Lady, Agrajes and Don Florestan have sent you this letter, in which you will find news that will give you pleasure. And God be with you, madam, for I am returning to those who sent me to you; for I know for certain that they will have need of me, although I be of slight valor."

"You seem to me the opposite," said Oriana, "according to what I have seen; and I beg you to tell me your name, for such great effort you have put forth in order to give me pleasure."

"Madam," said he, "I am Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, who am much grieved by what the king your father is doing to you. But I trust in God that it will be very difficult to bring it to a conclusion; instead, so many of your subjects and others will die that it will be known everywhere."

"Oh, Don Gavarte, my good friend, may it please God through His mercy to bring me to a time when this great loyalty of yours to me may be rewarded!"

"Madam," said he, "my desire has always been to serve you in everything as my legitimate suzerain, and in this matter much more, since I know the great injustice that is being done you; and I shall come to your aid with all those who seek to serve their suzerain."

"My friend," said she, "I beg you earnestly thus to set it forth wherever you may be."

"I shall do so," said he, "since I can in good faith."

Then he took leave of her. And Oriana went to Mabilia, who was with Queen Sardamira, and the queen said to her: "It seems to me, my lady, that we have been on a par as regards our escorts. I do not know whether their weakness has brought it about, or the misfortune attendant upon this journey, that here where yours have been defeated and maltreated, mine likewise should have been."

They all laughed heartily at what the queen said, but the knights were so ashamed and abashed that they did not dare appear in their presence. Oriana remained there for a time, while the knights were caring for themselves, for the horse that carried Lasanor could not bring him back for a long while. She withdrew with Mabilia, and they read the letter, in which they discovered that Agrajes and Don Florestan and Don Gandales were informing her that Gandalin and Ardian the dwarf were already on the Firm Island, that Amadis would be with them within a week; and that by them he had sent word to have a large fleet made ready — for it was needed in order to go to a very well-known place — that they had the fleet thus readied; and that she was to take pleasure and have hope that God would be on her side. They were happy beyond compare with that news, as persons who through it were hoping to live, because they considered themselves dead if that marriage should take place. And Mabilia comforted Oriana and begged her to eat, but she up to that time on account of her great sadness would not and could not eat, nor now out of great joy.

So they went along their way until they reached the town where the king was; but first he and the Romans came out to meet them, along with many other people. When Oriana saw them, she began to weep copiously and had herself helped down from the litter and all her maidens with her; who when they saw her weeping so piteously, wept, tore their hair, and kissed her hands and clothing as if they had her dead before them, so that they produced great sorrow in everyone. The king, who saw them thus, was greatly disturbed and said to King Arban of North Wales: "Go to Oriana and tell her that I feel the greatest distress in the world at what she is doing, and that I am sending word to order her to get back into her litter and

her maidens likewise, and putting on a better countenance to go to her mother; for I shall tell her news at which she will be happy."

King Arban told her so, just as he was ordered to do, but Oriana answered: "Oh, King of North Wales, my good cousin! since my great lack of fortune has been so cruel to me, you and those who have undergone many perils in order to help sad and troubled maidens, can you not help me with arms? At least help me with your words; advise the king my father not to do me so much ill, and not to wish to tempt God, so that his good fortune that until now He has given him, He may not change to the contrary; and strive, cousin, to have him come to me here, and to have Count Argamon and Don Grumedan come with him, for by no means shall I depart from here until this is done."

King Arban in this whole affair did nothing but weep bitterly, and not being able to reply to her, returned to the king and told him Oriana's message; but to him it became a serious matter to meet her publicly in that confrontation because the more her grief and anguish became known to everybody, the more his own guilt was augmented. Count Argamon on seeing him hesitate, begged him insistently to do so, and so forcefully did he urge him that Don Grumedan having come, the king with those three went to his daughter. And when she saw him, she went toward him on her knees as she was, and her maidens with her; but the king dismounted at once and raising her by the hand, embraced her. And she said to him: "My father, my lord, have pity on this daughter who inopportunely was engendered by you, and hear me in the presence of these nobles."

"Daughter," said the king, "say what you please, for with the fatherly love that I owe you, I shall hear you."

She let herself fall to the ground to kiss his feet. And he drew aside, and lifted her up. She said: "My lord, your wish is to send me to the emperor of Rome and separate me from you, from the queen my mother and from this land of which God made me a native. And because of this departure, I hope only for death, either that it come to me, or that I give it to myself; therefore in nowise can one comply with your desire, from which there results for you a great sin in two ways: the one, for me to be disobedient to your command, and the other to die because of

you. And so that all of this may be avoided and God be served by you, I wish to enter a convent and live there, leaving you free to dispose of your kingdom and realm at your will; and I shall renounce all the rights that God gave me to it to Leonoreta my sister, or to someone else, according to your desire. And sire, you will be better served by the one who marries her than by the Romans, who on account of me, when they have me there, will become immediately your enemies; so that by this means that you think to win them, in the selfsame way you not only lose them, but as I have said, you make them your mortal enemies, who will never think of anything except how they will come into possession of this land."

"My daughter," said the king, "I well understand what you are saying to me, and I shall give you the reply in your mother's presence. Get back into your litter and go to her."

Then those gentlemen placed her in the litter and carried her to the queen, her mother; and Oriana having come to her, the latter received her with much affection, but weeping, for that marriage was being made much against her will.

But neither she nor all the grandees of the realm nor the other lesser nobles were able to deflect the king from his purpose. And this brought it about that Fortune, already angered and weary from having elevated him so high and placed him in such prosperity — because of which much more than was his wont he was becoming subject to wrath and arrogance — should seek, more for the sake of restoring his soul than his honor, to change it for him to the opposite, as in the Fourth Book of this great story will be related to you, for there it will be set forth in greater detail.

But the queen with the great pity that she had was consoling her daughter; and the daughter with many tears, kneeling with great humility, was begging her for mercy, saying that since she was outstanding in the world for seeking help for those in tribulation, who more than, or as much as, she, could be found engaged in this and other matters involving great compassion? To those who saw them, the mother and daughter were in an embrace, blending with the great delights of the past the anguish and great sorrow that many times come to people without anyone's being able to escape them however great or prudent he may be.

Count Argamon, King Arban of North Wales and Don Grumedan took the king aside under some trees, and the count said to him: "Sire, I was maintaining the deliberate intention of not speaking to you any more on this matter because, your great discretion being so extreme among all men through your knowing best what is good and the opposite, I might properly and honestly be excused. But since I am of your blood and am your vassal, I am not happy or satisfied with what has been said, because I see, sire, that just as sane men many times do what is right, so when they err just once, their error is greater than that of any madman, for making bold because of their knowledge and not taking advice, with love, hatred, cupidity or pride blinding them, they fall so low that they can rise only with great difficulty. Beware, sire, for you are committing great cruelty and a great sin, and very quickly you could receive such a lashing from the Lord on high that your great brilliance and fame might be greatly obscured. Accept advice this time, considering how many prudent men, casting aside their own counsel, suppressing their own desires have followed your advice and complied with your wishes; because if trouble comes to you from so doing, you can blame them more than yourself, for this is the great help and relief of those who err."

"Good uncle," said the king, "I well remember all that you have said to me before, but I cannot do anything more than carry out what I have promised these men."

"Then, sire," said the count, "I ask of you permission to leave for my own estate."

"God be with you," said the king.

Thus they abandoned that conversation, and the king went off to dine. And the tables having been cleared, he ordered Brondajel de Roca called, and said to him: "My friend, now you see how much against the will of my daughter and all my vassals, who greatly love her, this marriage is being made. But recognizing that I am giving her to so honorable a man and placing her among you, I shall not withdraw from what I have promised you. Therefore prepare the ships, for within three days I shall hand over Oriana to you with all her matrons and maidens of honor. And take the precaution, in order that no disaster may occur, that she not leave her stateroom."

Brondajel said to him: "All will be done, sire, as you command; and although now it is becoming hard for the empress, my mistress, to leave her own land where she knows everyone, when she sees the grandeur of Rome and its great dominion, and how kings and princes will bow before her to serve her, it will not be long before her will is very contentedly satisfied; and shortly such reports will be written to you, sire."

The king embraced him laughing and said to him: "So help me God, Brondajel, my friend, I think that you Romans are such that you will know quite well how to bring it about that she be restored to happiness."

And Salustanquidio, who already had risen from his bed, begged him as a favor to command Olinda to go with his daughter and promised him that when he should be a king, as the emperor had promised him on his arrival with Oriana, he would take her for his wife. The king was pleased with this, and highly praised her to him at great length, saying that in view of her discretion and modesty and great beauty, she very well deserved to be queen and mistress of a great land. Just as you hear, they spent that evening, and next day they loaded on the ships all that they were to carry. And Maganil and his brothers appeared before the king, and very haughtily said to Don Grumedan: "Now you see how the day of your shame is approaching, for tomorrow the time limit expires for the battle to take place which you stupidly sought. Do not think that the departure or anything else will prevent it, for it is necessary, unless you acknowledge yourself vanquished and as a man of much more age than brains or prudence you pay for the nonsense that you uttered."

Don Grumedan, who was almost out of his mind on hearing that, rose to answer. But the king, who knew him to be very sensitive in matters of honor, had misgivings about him and said: "Don Grumedan, I beg you as a favor not to speak about this matter. And prepare yourself for the battle, since you better than anyone else know that such trials of disputes consist more in deeds than in words."

"Sire," said he, "out of respect for you I shall do what you command, and tomorrow I shall be on the field with my companions. And on it there will be demonstrated the excellence or shortcomings of each one of us."

The Romans went to their lodgings. And the king called Don Grumedan aside and said to him: "Whom do you have to help you against these knights? They seem to me strong and valiant."

"Sire," said he, "I have on my side God, and this body and courage and hands that He gave me; and if Don Galaor comes tomorrow before the hour of tierce, I shall have him, for I am certain that he will uphold my cause, and I would not worry then about a third knight. And if he does not come, I shall fight with them, one by one if it can be done by rights."

"Don't you see," said the king, "that the battle was sought as of three against three? And thus you agreed to it, and they will not want to change it, because thus in the hands of Salustanquidio they have it set up and sworn to. And Don Grumedan," said the king, "so help me God, I have very great sorrow in my heart because I see you lacking such companions as you need in such an encounter; and I have great misgivings as to how this affair of yours will turn out."

"Sire, do not fear," said he; "in a small space of time God renders great mercy and assistance to anyone He pleases, and I have gone against arrogance with restraint and good will; and that fact, which conforms to God's will, will help me. And if Don Galaor does not come, nor any other of the good knights of your court, I shall put in with myself the two that I deem best from among these knights of mine."

"That is nothing," said the king, "for you have the fight with strong men skilled in such a calling; and such companions do not suffice for you. But, my friend Don Grumedan, I shall give you better counsel. I wish secretly to place my own person with you in this battle, for many times you have risked yours in my service; and, my loyal friend, I would be very ungrateful if at such a time I did not stake my life and my honor on your behalf in payment for the many times that you have put your life at the point and on the verge of death in order to serve me."

During all this the king held him embraced, with tears falling from his eyes. Don Grumedan kissed his hands and said to him: "May it not please God that such a loyal king as you are should fall into such an error for the sake of one who will be always concerned with enhancing your fame and honor; and although, sire, I may consider this as one of the most outstanding favors

that I have ever received from you, and my services cannot suffice to repay you for it, it will not be accepted by me because you are a king and judge who must sit in judgment on foreigners with as much justice as on your own people."

Fortunate are the vassals to whom God gives such kings, who considering more important the love that they owe to them than the services that the latter render, oblivious to their own lives and grandeur, wish to expose their bodies to death for them as did this king on behalf of a poor knight, although he himself was very rich and abounding in virtues.

"Well, since that is the way it is," said the king, "I cannot do anything else except pray God to help you."

Don Grumedan went to his abode and gave orders to two knights of his to make preparations to be with him in the combat the next day. But I say to you that although he was very courageous and strong, and skilled in arms, he was brokenhearted, because those whom he was putting into the battle with him were not such as he needed in such a great emergency; for he was of such high and strong courage that he would rather suffer death than do or say anything that might bring shame upon him. But he did not show this; rather, quite the opposite. That night he spent in St. Mary's chapel, and in the morning they heard mass with great devotion, and with Don Grumedan praying God to let him conclude that combat to his honor, and if it were to be His wish that there his life come to an end, to have mercy on his soul.

And then with great courage he demanded his arms; and after he had donned his strong and very white coat of mail, he put on a device exhibiting his colors, for it was scarlet with white swans. And he had not yet finished arming himself when there entered through the door the beautiful maiden who previously had come with a message from Grasinda and the Greek Knight. And with her came two maidens and two squires; and she carried in her hand a very beautiful and richly ornamented sword. She asked for Don Grumedan, and they pointed him out to her at once. She said to him in the French language: "Sir Don Grumedan, the Greek Knight, who has great affection for you on account of the reports that he has had of you since he came to this land and because he has learned about a battle that you have scheduled with the Romans, leaves you two very good knights whom you

have seen as his escort. And he sends word to you not to seek any others for this battle and on his word of honor to accept them without any fear; and he sends you this beautiful sword which already has been proven to be very good, as you have seen, by the mighty blows that he delivered with it on the pillar of stone when the knight went fleeing from him."

Don Grumedan was very happy when he heard this, considering the straits in which he was situated, and that in company with such a man as the Greek Knight only those of great worth could go.

"Maiden, may good fortune attend the good Greek Knight who is so courteous to one he does not know; and his great circumspection causes this. May it please God that for me may come a time when I may be able to repay him for it."

"Sir," said she, "you would appreciate him greatly if you knew him, and thus you will these companions of his as soon as you have tested them. And now mount your horse, for at the entrance to the field where you are to fight, they are waiting for you."

Don Grumedan unsheathed the sword and saw how very clean it was and that there did not appear on it any sign of the blows that it had struck on the pillar; and making the sign of the cross over it, he girded it on and left his own behind. And mounting the horse that Don Florestan had given him when he won it from the Romans, as you have already heard, appearing thus mounted a handsome and valiant old man, he went to the knights who were awaiting him; and all three greeted one another very serenely, but Don Grumedan was unable to recognize either one of the others. Thus they entered the field so well appointed that those who loved Don Grumedan took great pleasure. The king, who had already come, was astounded that those knights, without any reason and not knowing Don Grumedan, should want to risk such great danger; and when he saw the maiden, he ordered her summoned. She came before him, and he said to her: "Maiden, for what reason have these two knights of your company wished to participate in such a dangerous fight, not knowing the one for whom they do so?"

"Sire," said she, "the good as well as the bad are known by their reputations; and the Greek Knight, on hearing about Don Grumedan's great skill and the combat that he had scheduled;

and knowing that at this time, very few of your good knights are here, saw fit to leave these two companions of his to help him; for they are of such great excellence and prowess at arms that before noon has passed, the great arrogance of the Romans will be crushed even more, and the honor of your men well sustained. And he did not want Don Grumedan to know about it until he found them on the field, as you, sire, have seen."

The king was very happy with such aid, for he had been brokenhearted, out of fear that some misfortune might happen to Don Grumedan through his own failure to help him in that combat; and he was very grateful to the Greek Knight, although he did not show it to the degree that he felt it.

The three knights, with Don Grumedan between the other two, placed themselves at one end of the lists and awaited their foes. And immediately there entered on the field King Arban of North Wales and the Count of Clare on their side to judge them, and on the side of the Romans were Salustanquidio and Brondajel de Roca, all by order of the king. Very shortly the Romans who were to fight arrived, mounted on beautiful horses and wearing fine new armor; and as they were tall and sturdy, it seemed very likely that they must have great strength and valor. They brought with them bagpipes and trumpets and other instruments that made a great clamor, and were accompanied by all the knights from Rome. Thus they came before the king, and they said to him: "Sire, we want to take the heads of those Greek knights to Rome, and may it not irk you for us to do so with Don Grumedan's, for we should be sorry to distress you; or else order him to retract what he has said, and to concede the Romans to be the best knights to be found in any land."

The king did not respond to what they were saying, but said: "Go and fight your battle, and let those who win the heads of the others do with them whatever they think best."

They entered the field, and Salustanquidio and Brondajel took their places on one side of the lists, and King Arban and the Count of Clare placed Don Grumedan and his companions on the other. Then the queen came with her matrons and maidens-in-waiting to the windows to see the combat; and she ordered Don Guilan the Pensive, who was weak from his illness, to come there, and Don Cendil de Ganota, who had not yet fully recovered

from his wound; and she said to Don Guilan: "My friend, how do you think this affair in which my father Don Grumedan is involved will come out" — for the queen always used to call him father because he had reared her — "for I see those devils so big and so valiant that they greatly frighten me?"

"My lady," said he, "all deeds at arms are in God's hands, and depend on the justification that men take on their own behalf being in accordance with Him, for they are not dependent on great valor. And lady, since I know Don Grumedan to be a very wise knight, God-fearing and a defender of justice, and the Romans to be so intemperate, so arrogant, motivated only by caprice, I say that if I were where Grumedan is with those two companions, I would not fear those three Romans, even though a fourth were to join them."

The queen was greatly comforted and encouraged by what Don Guilan said to her and she earnestly besought God to help her foster father and deliver him with honor from that danger. The knights who were on the field spurred their horses toward each other, going forward at full speed; and as they were very skillful at arms and in their saddles, they collided very violently with their shields, for none missed in the encounter, so that their lances were broken. Then there happened what had never been seen by anyone in any battle at the king's court, out of all those fought by so many against so many: all three Romans were hurled from their saddles onto the field, and Don Grumedan and his companions went on by in fine style without being unhorsed by them. Then they turned their horses at once toward them, and saw how they were trying to rise and join each other. Don Bruneo had a wound, not serious, in his left side from the lance of the one with whom he had jousted. Very great was the distress that the Romans felt from that jousting, and great the pleasure of the other people, who hated them and loved Don Grumedan. The knight in green said to Don Grumedan: "Since you have shown them that you know how to joust, it is not right for us to attack them on horseback, when they are on foot."

Don Grumedan and the other knight said that he was right. So they dismounted, giving their horses to someone to hold; and all three of them went together toward the Romans, who were no longer as gallant in appearance as before; and he of the green

arms said: "Sir knights of Rome, you have left your horses; this must be only because you hold us in slight esteem, since although we may not be so renowned as you, we did not want you to take this honor from us, and for that reason we dismounted from ours."

The Romans, who previously had been very reckless, were frightened on seeing themselves so quickly unhorsed, made no reply and held their swords in their hands and their shields before them. At once the knights attacked each other very fiercely and delivered many hard, telling blows, until all who were watching them marveled; and in a short while their valor and fury were evidenced on their armor, for in many places it was rent open and blood was issuing forth, and likewise their helmets and shields were badly damaged. But Don Grumedan, who because of the great hatred and fury that possessed him, was hastening ahead of his companions, on account of receiving more blows was badly wounded. And his companions, who were those whom you know, and who feared shame more than death, on seeing that the Romans were defending themselves, displayed their strength and began to belabor them with mighty blows from which up to then they had abstained; so that the Romans were frightened, thinking that their strength was doubling. And they were so beset and driven back that they no longer thought about anything except defending themselves, and they were retreating so dazed that they were not up to making a united stand. But the others, who had them beaten, did not let them ease up or rest, for at that time those enemies of theirs were doing wonders just as if during the whole day they had not previously struck a blow. Maganil, who was the best of the brothers, the most valiant, and the one who during the whole day had given much evidence of the fact — on seeing his shield broken to bits and his helmet cut and dented in many places, and that he had no protection from his coat of mail — went as fast as he could toward the queen's window, while he of the vair colored arms, who was following him, gave him no respite. Then Maganil cried out: "Lady, have mercy for God's sake; don't let me be killed, for I grant to be true all that Don Grumedan said."

"Damn you," said he of the vair, "for that is well-known."

And taking him by the helmet he pulled it off his head and feigned that he intended to decapitate him. And the queen, who

saw it, withdrew from the window. Don Guilan, who was there at the queen's windows, as you have heard, said to him: "Sir Knight from Greeee, do not be eovetous to take to your land a head so arrogant as that. Let him, if you please, return to Rome, where his qualities are appraised, and there they will be detested."

"I shall do so," said he, "beeause he asked for pity from her ladyship the queen and beeause you wish it, although I do not know you. I leave him to you; order his wounds cared for, beeause he is cured of folly."

And on returning to his companions he saw that Don Grumedan had one of the Romans on his back on the ground, and he had his knees on his chest, meanwhile dealing him heavy blows on the face with his sword hilt, and the Roman was yelling: "Alas, Sir Don Grumedan! don't kill me, for I aeknowledge to be true all that you said in praise of the knights of Great Britain, and what I said to be a lie."

The knight of the vair colored arms, who was quite pleased with Don Grumedan's situation, ealled the judges to witness what the knight was saying and how he of the green arms had chased the other one from the field, for the latter had already fled from him. But Salustanquidio and Brondajel were so sad and so crushed on seeing that very (for them) degrading victory that without saying a word to the king they left the field and went to their lodgings, giving orders to bring to them those knights who had made retraetion, since their luck had gone so greatly against them. Don Grumedan, on seeing that there remained nothing more to do, with permission of the judges mounted along with his eompanions, and they went to pay their respects to the king. And he of the green arms said: "Sire, God be with you, for we are going to the Greek Knight in whose company we are very honored and fortunate."

"May God direct you," said the king, "for well have you and he demonstrated to us that you are highly skilled at arms."

So they took leave of him. And the maiden who had come there with them, eame up to the king and said: "My lord, hear me in private, if you please, before I go away."

The king made everybody leave, and said to her: "Now say whatever you wish."

"Sire," said she, "you have been until now the most highly esteemed king among Christians, and you always have enhanced your reputation, and one of your good qualities is that you have always kept in mind the concerns of maidens, by doing them favors and helping them in accordance with law, being very cruel to those who were doing them wrong. And now that great hope they had in you having been lost, they all consider themselves abandoned by you, in view of what you are doing to your daughter Oriana, by desiring her so without cause or reason to be disinherited of what God made her heiress. They are greatly terrified and frightened at that noble nature of yours being in this respect so reversed, for they will have very little trust in its remedies when so against God, against your daughter and all your subjects you exhibit such cruelty, when more than anyone else you are obligated not as a king, who must protect the rights of everyone, but as a father; for even if by everyone she were forsaken, by you, she ought to be received and comforted with great love. And not only is it a bad example to the world, but to God her lament, her tears will cry out. Take heed, sire, and bring the end of your days into conformity with their beginning, since more glory and fame have they given to you than to anyone else living today. And, my lord, God be with you, for I am going to those knights who are awaiting me."

"Good-by," said the king, "for so help me God, I consider you a good woman and of good understanding."

She joined her protectors, and escorting her, they went to the ship, for the weather was becoming favorable for their journey. Then they immediately left the port; and as they knew that King Lisuarte was to hand over his daughter Oriana to the Romans, and on what day it was to be, they were eager to proceed so that the Greek Knight might learn of it; thus in two days and two nights they caught up with him, because he was waiting for them. They were received very properly and with great pleasure for thus having concluded those adventures so greatly to their honor. The maiden told them how the battle had gone and what had been done in aid of Don Grumedan and the very great need he had had through lack of companions, and the pleasure that he took with her and the thanks that he sent the Greek Knight for such help; she told it all, for nothing was left out.

Grasinda said to her: "Did you find out what the king is ordering done with his daughter?"

"Yes, madam," said the maiden, "Four days after you left there they are to embark her to be carried away in the custody of the Romans. But the spectacle, madam, of the tears that she and her maidens and all those of the kingdom are shedding no one can adequately describe."

Tears came to the eyes of Grasinda and she prayed God that, showing His infinite mercy in the case of this great injustice, He send Oriana some relief. But the Greek Knight was very happy about that news because he already had it in his heart to seize her, and he was longing to come to grips with the Romans; and once this was done, he would take delight with his lady to the relief of his sad heart — a relief attainable in no other way; for of the opposition of King Lisuarte and that of the emperor he did not entertain a very high opinion because he fully intended to give them plenty to do. And what afforded him most happiness was to think that this would be done without any blame's being attached to his lady.

So thus talking and idling just as you hear, they reached one day at the hour of tierce the great port of the Firm Island. And those of the island, who already knew the time of their arrival through Gandalin, saw the ships when they were still a great distance away and recognized from their appearance that Amadis was coming. The joy of everyone was very great, for they loved him very much, and they hastened with great speed to the shore, and with them all the nobles of his lineage and from among his friends who were expecting him. And when Grasinda reached the port and saw so many people and the joy that everywhere they were manifesting, she greatly marveled, and even more when she heard many say: "Welcome to our lord who has been away from us for so long." And she said to the Greek Knight: "Sir, why do these people show you such great reverence and honor, saying 'Welcome to our lord'?"

He said to her: "Lady, I ask pardon of you for concealing my identity from you for such a long time, but I could do no less without great risk to my self-respect; and so I have done throughout all the foreign lands that I have traversed, for no one has been able to find out my name. And now I want you to know

that I am the lord of this island, and I am that Amadis of Gaul of whom you probably have heard now and then; and those knights that you see there are relatives and friends, and the other people are my vassals. And it would be difficult to find elsewhere the same number of knights who would equal them in great valor."

"Though I, sir," said Grasinda, "am pleased to know your name, likewise my heart is sad for not having rendered you the homage that a man so noble and of such lineage deserved; and for having treated you as a poor knight errant I consider myself as very unfortunate. If anything consoles me it is only that the honor that in my land was done you, if any of it was pleasing to you, can be attributed only to your worth as an individual, without conceding any portion of it to your high estate and royal lineage, or to these knights whom you praise so highly to me."

Amadis said to her: "Madam, let this matter not be discussed further, for the honors and favors that I have received from you have been so many and so great and at a time that neither by me nor by those whom you see there, who are worth more than I, could they be repaid."

Then they reached the port, where everyone was awaiting them; and there was Don Gandales with twenty palfreys on which the women were to go up to the castle. But for Grasinda they disembarked a very beautiful palfrey with trappings studded with gold and silver, and she was dressed in wondrously fine apparel. And from the boat from which she and Amadis were issuing a very strong gangplank on which they might disembark was run to the sandy beach. On shore there awaited them Agrajes and Don Cuadragante and Don Florestan and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, and the good Don Dragonis, and Orlandin and Ganjel de Sadoca, and Argamon the Valiant, and Sardonan, brother of Angriote de Estravaus, and their nephews Pinores and Sarquiles, Madansil of the Silver Bridge, and many other nobles who were seeking adventure — altogether more than thirty knights. And Enil, that wise, good knight, was already on the boat talking with Amadis, and Ardian the dwarf and Gandalin were with Grasinda's maidens. Then Amadis took Grasinda by the arm and brought her from the boat to the shore, where with great circumspection and courtesy she was received by all those lords, and he gave her into the keeping of Agrajes and Florestan, who

placed her on the palfrey. All were very much pleased with her great beauty and fine dress. So they brought her, just as you hear, and her matrons and maidens likewise, to the Island, where they lodged her in the beautiful apartments where Amadis and his brothers had dwelt when the island was won. There in order to do her more honor, most of those knights dined with her, for Don Gandales had provided very fittingly for the occasion, with Ardian the dwarf, who was beside himself with pleasure, serving as butler, saying many things to make them laugh. But Amadis amid all this merrymaking never let Master Elisabad leave him; instead, he took him by the hand and introducing him to everybody, told them that God and he had enabled him to keep alive, and at table he had him sit between him and Don Gavarte of the Fearful Valley. But all these pleasures and the sight of those knights, whom Amadis loved so much, could not keep his heart from being in great suspense as he reflected that the Romans might be able to cross the sea with Oriana before he encountered them; and he could not calm down or be at ease by concerning himself with any other matter because in comparison with her, whom he loved so much, everything else produced in him great longing.

So all having dined with great enjoyment, and the tables being cleared, Amadis begged them not to leave their seats, for he wanted to speak to them, and they acceded to his request. Then Amadis, when he saw that those knights who were at table were quietly awaiting what he might say to them, spoke to them in this wise: "My noble lords, since you saw me last I have traversed many foreign lands, and many great adventures have been experienced by me which it would take too long to recount; but the ones which gave me most concern and entailed for me the greatest danger involved the rescue of matrons and maidens from many wrongs and injuries being done them, because just as they were born with weak hearts to obey and their strongest weapons are tears and sighs, so those of strong courage urgently ought among other matters to take up their own arms to help them and to defend them against those who with scant virtue mistreat and dishonor them, just as the Greeks and the Romans did in ancient times by crossing the seas, laying waste the lands, winning battles, killing kings and casting them out of their realms, merely to obtain satisfaction for the rapes and injuries committed against

women; whence so much fame and glory has remained for them in their histories, and will last as long as the world endures. So what occurs in our own times, who knows better than you, my good lords? For you are witnesses who can testify that many outrages and perils on this account occur each day. I am not making to you a very lengthy speech setting before you authentic examples from antiquity with intent through them to rally your hearts, for they are in themselves so strong that if their excess strength could be divulged throughout the world, no coward would remain in it. But because you remember past good deeds, with greater concern and with greater desire present good deeds are striven for and undertaken. So coming to the point, I have found out since I came to this land about the great wrong and offense that King Lisuarte seeks to do his daughter Oriana, for though she is the legitimate successor to his realm, excluding her from it in violation of all law, he is sending her to the emperor of Rome for his wife, and according to what I am told, much against the wish of all of Lisuarte's subjects, and moreover, against her own wishes; for she, uttering great laments and great complaints to God and to the world, very compellingly is protesting. So if it is true that this King Lisuarte without fear of God or of the people, is perpetrating such cruelty, I say to you that we were born here below at a bad time if it be not remedied by us; because were we to allow it to go on, the dangers and travail that up to now we have braved to win honor and glory have slipped by and have been forgotten. Now let each one of you, if you please, state his opinion, for I already have made mine manifest to you."

Then Agrajes, by request of all those knights, made answer and said: "Although your presence, my lord and good cousin, has doubled our strength, and the things that previously we greatly feared, with it now seem frivolous and insubstantial, we, with little hope of your coming, having found out about what King Lisuarte seeks to do, had resolved to go to the aid and relief of the situation, not allowing such great constraint to take place; preferring that either they or we be transmitted from life to death. And since we are all in agreement in our desire, let us be so in the deed, and as speedily as that glory that we desire can be obtained without its being lost through our negligence."

Agrajes's reply having been heard by those knights, all of them unanimously considering it good, said that the rescue of Oriana should be accomplished without delay; for if it was true that they were wont to risk their lives for many trivial things, with greater will they should do so in this very outstanding matter, which would yield them perpetual fame in this world.

When Grasinda beheld their unanimity, embracing Amadis, she said: "Oh, Amadis, my lord! Now your great valor is clearly apparent and that of your friends and relatives, in carrying out the greatest rescue operation that knights ever accomplished; for not only for this good lady, but also for all the matrons and maidens of the world it is being done; because the good and courageous knights of other lands, following your example in this matter, with greater concern and boldness will intervene in what they ought rightly to do for ladies; and the intemperate and those devoid of virtue out of fear of being so harshly constrained will refrain from committing wrongs and offenses against them. And, my lord, go forth with God's blessing, and may He guide and direct you. I shall wait for you here until I see the outcome, and afterwards I shall do whatever you ask."

Amadis thanked her very much, and left her under the protection of Ysanjo, the governor of the Island, so that he might serve her and show her all the delightful things that were on that island, and do great honor to her great friend, Master Elisabad. But the master said to him: "Good sir, if I can serve you in my way, it is only in such causes as these on which you are setting forth, for from bearing arms, in conformity with my obligation as a priest you will have exempted me, so that I shall not remain behind under any circumstances; rather, if you please, sir, I wish to be of assistance to you with this skill that God gave me; for I well know, according to the great folly of the Romans and your own persistence, that you will be well served and aided by me."

Amadis embraced him saying: "Ah, master, my true friend! may it please God out of His mercy that what you have done and are doing for me may be repaid to you by me. And since you are pleased to go, let us embark at once with God's help."

When the fleet was equipped with all that was necessary for the voyage and the crew was on board, shortly after dark, with Amadis giving orders that all other journeys be deflected so that

no information of themselves be ascertained, they all went on board the ships, and without making any sounds or noise they began to sail toward that area which the Romans would traverse (according to the route that it would be proper for them to take), in order that they might intercept them.

CHAPTER LXXXI

How king Lisuarte delivered up his daughter very much against her will, and concerning the rescue of the very beautiful Oriana that Amadis with all the other knights of the firm island effected; and how they took her to the firm island.

As King Lisuarte was determined to hand over his daughter Oriana to the Romans, with so firm an intention to do so that nothing of what you have heard could shake it, the appointed time promised by him having arrived, he spoke with her, trying in many ways to induce her to accept voluntarily that journey that was so agreeable to him; but in no way could he lessen her lamenting and grief; therefore very angrily he left her and went to the queen, telling her to quiet their daughter, since what he had done was to little avail, and he could not avoid what he had promised. The queen, who had spoken with him many times about the matter in an effort to find some impediment, but always had found him adamant in his intention, without further parley sought only to carry out his orders, although her heart felt a surfeit of anguish; and she commanded all the princesses and other maidens who were to go with Oriana, to board the boats at once. She left with Oriana only Mabilia, Olinda and the maid of Denmark; and she ordered all the clothes and fine adornments that she was giving her daughter to be taken to the ships. But Oriana, when she saw her mother and her sister, went to them manifesting very great sorrow, and seizing her mother by the hand began to kiss it; and the queen said to her: "Good daughter, I beg you now to be content with this which the king orders you to do, for I trust

in the mercy of God that it will be for your good and that He will not wish to abandon you and me."

Oriana said to her: "Madam, I believe that this separation of you and me will be forever because my death is very near at hand."

And saying this she fell in a faint and the queen likewise, so that they were quite unconscious. But the king, who immediately intervened there, had Oriana picked up just as she was and carried to the ships, and with her Olinda; who, kneeling with many tears, was begging him as a favor to let her go to her father's court, and not to order her to go to Rome. But he was so angry that he would not listen, and had her borne away behind Oriana and commanded Mabilia and the maid of Denmark to go likewise at once. Then all the women having been put aboard with the Romans, just as you hear, King Lisuarte mounted and went to the port where the fleet was, and there he comforted his daughter with paternal kindliness, but not in such a way as to give her hope that his purpose was changed. And as he saw that this was ineffective in relieving her distress, he felt a degree of pity, so that tears came to his eyes; and leaving her, he spoke with Salustanquidio, and with Brondajel de Roca and the Archbishop of Talancia, enjoining them to protect her and serve her, for there he was handing her over as he had promised. And he returned to his palace, leaving on the ships such weeping and distress on the part of the ladies and maidens-in-waiting when they saw him go, as to defy all description.

Salustanquidio and Brondajel de Roca, after King Lisuarte had left them, now having Oriana and all of her maidens in their power aboard the ships, decided to put her in a room that was very lavishly decorated for her; and she having been placed in it and with her Mabilia, for they knew the latter to be the maiden whom she loved most in the world, they locked the door with strong padlocks. And they left on the ship Queen Sardamira with her retinue and many others of Oriana's ladies and maidens-in-waiting. Salustanquidio, who was yearning to win Olinda's love, had her taken to his ship together with another group of maidens, not without their lamenting loudly on seeing themselves separated from Oriana their lady; who on hearing in the room where she was what they were doing, and how they came to the

door of the room clutching at it and calling on her to help them, repeatedly swooned in Mabilia's arms.

Then everything having been thus arranged, the Romans set sail and went their way well pleased to have brought to a conclusion what the emperor their lord so greatly desired. And they had a very large imperial banner hoisted to the top of the mast of the ship in which Oriana was traveling, and had all the other ships doing guard duty in circular fashion around it. And as they were thus proceeding very proudly and happily they glanced to their left and saw Amadis's fleet, which was greatly outstripping them by coming between them and the land from which they were endeavoring to depart; and that was the situation because Agrajes and Don Cuadragante and Dragonis and Listoran of the White Tower had arranged among themselves that before Amadis arrived, they would engage the Romans in battle and endeavor to rescue Oriana, and for that reason they were placing themselves between the Roman fleet and the land.

But Don Florestan and the good Don Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, and Orlandin and Imosil of Burgundy likewise had planned with their friends and vassals to be the first at the rescue, and they were going at top speed between the Roman fleet and Agrajes's ships. And Amadis with his ships well supplied with people, including not only his friends, but also those natives of the Firm Island, was coming at greater speed in order that he might be the first to effect the rescue. Concerning the Romans I tell you that when they saw the fleet from a distance, they thought that it was probably non-belligerents traversing the sea; but on seeing that they were divided into three groups and that two of them were cutting them off on the landward side, and the other was following them, they were quite frightened, and immediately there was a great hubbub among them, with voices crying out: "To arms, to arms, for a foreign force is coming."

And then they armed themselves very quickly and they placed the crossbowmen, for they were bringing along very good ones, at their proper stations, as they did the other forces. And Brondajel de Roca with many good knights of the emperor's household, was on the ship where Oriana was, and where they had placed the banner of the emperor that you have already heard about. At this time the battle was joined; and Agrajes and Don Cuadragante

engaged Salustanquidio's ship, where they were carrying beautiful Oriana, and they began to attack each other very fiercely. Don Florestan and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, who went into the middle of the fleet, were attacking the ships on which were traveling the Duke of Ancona and the Archbishop of Talancia, who had a considerable force of their vassals, very well armed and strong, so that the fighting was intense between them. And Amadis caused his ship to be sent against the one which carried the banner of the emperor, and gave orders to his men to stand by; and putting his hand on the shoulder of Angriote, spoke thus: "Sir Angriote, my good friend, remember the great loyalty that you have always had and do maintain for your friends; try to afford me vigorous aid in this affair. And if God wills that I finish it well, here all my honor and all of my good fortune will reach their zenith; and do not remain apart from me any more than you can help."

He said to him: "My lord, I can do no more than lose my life on your behalf and in aid of you so that your honor be protected; and may God be for you."

Immediately the ships came together. Great on the part of both sides was the attack with arrows and stones and lances, for it seemed it was raining, so thickly were they being discharged and hurled. And Amadis along with his men was concerned only with bringing his ship into contact with that of the foe; but they were not able to do so, for the enemy, although there were many more of them, did not dare to draw near, in view of how fiercely they were being attacked; and they were defending themselves with great iron hooks and many other arms of various kinds. Then Tantiles of Sobradisa, Queen Briolanja's majordomo, who was in the forecastle, when he saw that the will of Amadis could have no effect, ordered a very thick, heavy anchor brought, which was fastened to a very strong chain; and from the forecastle they hurled it onto the enemies' ship, and he and many others who were helping him pulled on it so hard that by main strength they brought the ships together in such fashion that they could in nowise be separated unless the chain broke. When Amadis saw this, he went forward, with great effort forcing a passage through the crowd of people who were huddled very closely together; and following in his wake came Angriote and Don Bruneo; and when

he reached those in front, he put one foot on the gunwale of his ship and jumped to the other vessel, an action which none of his foes could prevent or hinder. And as the leap was great and he was proceeding with great fury, he fell to his knees and there they struck him many blows; but he got up much against the will of those who were attacking him so heavily and drew his good, gleaming sword. Then he saw that Angriote and Don Bruneo had come on board with him and were attacking the enemy with very strong, hard blows, and shouting: "Gaul, Gaul, for here is Amadis," for this he had asked them to say if they succeeded in boarding the ship.

Mabilia, who was locked in the room with Oriana, on hearing the noise and the voices and then that name, took Oriana by the arms, more dead than alive, and said to her: "Have courage, lady, for you are being rescued by that fortunate knight, your vassal and faithful friend."

And Oriana arose asking what could be the matter, for she was so faint from weeping that she heard nothing, and was almost sightless.

And after Amadis had gotten to his feet and grasped his sword, and had seen the marvelous deeds that Angriote and Don Bruneo were performing, and how the others from his ship quickly joined forces with them, he went with his sword in hand toward Brondajel de Roca, whom he found confronting him, and gave him on top of his helmet such a mighty blow that he struck him down prone; and if his helmet had not been so resistant he would have split his head in two. And he did not go forward because he perceived that his enemies were subdued and were asking for mercy. And when he saw the very fine armor that Brondajel was wearing, he was certain that he was the one whom the others were protecting; and taking off his helmet he struck him on the face with his sword hilt, asking him where Oriana was. And Brondajel pointed out the room with the padlocks, saying that he would find her there. Amadis went there quickly and called Angriote and Don Bruneo; and with the great strength that together they exerted, they broke down the door and went inside, where they saw Oriana and Mabilia. And Amadis went and knelt before Oriana to kiss her hands, but she embraced him and took

him by the sleeve of his coat of mail, which was completely stained with the blood of his enemies.

"Oh, Amadis!" said she, "beacon light for all women in distress, now your great excellence is evinced by your having rescued me and these princesses, who have been plunged into such great sorrow and tribulation. Throughout all the lands of the world praise for you will be known and exalted."

Mabilia knelt before him and took him by the skirt of his coat of mail, for since he had his gaze fixed on his lady, he had not seen her; but when he perceived her, he raised her up, and embracing her with much love, said to her: "My lady cousin, I have greatly missed you."

And he sought to leave them in order to see what was to be done, but Oriana took him by the hand and said: "In God's name, sir, do not forsake me."

"My lady," said he, "do not fear, for on board this ship are Angriote de Estravaus and Don Bruneo and Gandales with thirty knights who will protect you; and I shall go to help our men, who are having a very great battle."

Then Amadis went out of the room; and he saw Landin de Fajarque, who had fought those who were in the forecastle, and they had surrendered to him; and Amadis ordered, since they were giving themselves up as prisoners, that none be killed. And then he went on board a very beautiful galley in which were Enil and Gandalin with some forty knights from the Firm Island; and he gave orders to guide it toward that area where he had heard the battle cry of Agrajes, who was fighting with those of Salustanquidio's big ship. And when he arrived, he saw that they had already boarded it; and he came alongside with his galley in order to board the ship, and the one who helped him was Don Cuadragante, who was already on board. And the press and noise were very great, for Agrajes and those of his company were going about attacking and killing very cruelly. But after they saw Amadis, the Romans jumped overboard, some into their lifeboats and others into the water. Some of them died and others reached the other ships not yet surrendered. But Amadis still pressed forward through the crowd of people asking for Agrajes his cousin. When he found him he saw that he had Salustanquidio at his feet, for he had given him a severe wound on the arm, and the

latter was begging him for mercy. But Agrajes, who previously had found out how he loved Olinda, did not cease to strike him and bring him to the point of death, as one whom he greatly hated. And Don Cuadragante was telling him not to kill him, for he would have in him a valuable prisoner. But Amadis said to him laughing:

"Sir Don Cuadragante, let Agrajes carry out his desire, for if we take him away from him, as many of us as he finds are dead men, for he will not leave a single man alive."

At this speech the head of Salustanquidio was cut off, the ship entirely delivered, and the banners of Agrajes and of Don Cuadragante placed on top of the forecastle and the quarterdeck house, both very well guarded by many good, very vigorous knights. This done, Agrajes went at once to the room where they told him that Olinda, his lady, was, who was asking for him.

Amadis and Don Cuadragante, and Landin and Listoran of the White Tower, all together went to see how it was going for Florestan and those who were protecting him; and at once they boarded the galley that Amadis had brought there, and immediately they met another of Don Florestan's galleys on which was a knight, his maternal relative, whose name was Ysanes, who said to them: "Lords, Don Florestan and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley report to you that they have killed or imprisoned all the men of those ships, and they hold the Duke of Ancona and the Archbishop of Talancia."

Amadis, who took great pleasure from this, sent to tell them to join their galley with the one that he had taken, on which Oriana was, for there they would hold a council on what to do. Then they gazed in all directions and saw that the fleet of the Romans was destroyed, that none of them had been able to escape, although they had attempted it in a few lifeboats; but they were overtaken and seized, so that there remained no one who could carry the tidings [to Rome]. And they went directly to Oriana's ship and on it Brondajel de Roca was a prisoner. After coming on board they removed the armor from their heads and hands and washed off the blood and sweat; and Amadis asked for Don Florestan, for he did not see him there. Landin de Fajarque said to him: "He is with Queen Sardamira in her stateroom, for she was loudly calling for him, saying that he

should be summoned quickly, for he would be her protector; and she is at the feet of Oriana begging her to have mercy, and not to allow her to be killed or dishonored."

Amadis went there and asked for Queen Sardamira, and Mabilia identified her to him as being the one in her embrace, and Don Florestan was holding her hand. Amadis went before her very humbly and sought to kiss her hands, but she withdrew them; and he said to her: "Good lady, do not fear anything, for, by having Don Florestan, whom we all respect and follow, at your service and command, you have everything as you wish, not to mention our desire, which is to serve and honor all women, each according to her merit. And since you, good lady, are among them all very distinguished and outstanding, thus it is eminently right that much attention be given to rendering you content."

The queen said to Don Florestan: "Tell me, good lord, who is this very courteous knight who is such a friend of yours?"

"Lady," said he, "he is Amadis, my lord and brother, with whom we are all here for this rescue of Oriana".

When she heard this, with great pleasure she stood up before him and said: "Good Sir Amadis, if I did not receive you as I should, do not blame me, for my not being acquainted with you was the cause. And I give many thanks to God that in this very great tribulation, He has made me a beneficiary of your courtesy and placed me under the protection and guardianship of Don Florestan."

Amadis took her by the hand, led her to Oriana's dais and there had her seat herself; and he sat down with Mabilia, his cousin, for he very much desired to speak to her. But in all this Queen Sardamira, although she knew the fleet of the Romans to be defeated and destroyed, and many of the men killed and others prisoners, there had not yet come to her notice the death of Prince Salustanquidio, whom she with good and faithful affection loved very much and considered the noblest and greatest of all those under the suzerainty of Rome; nor did she find out about his death until quite a bit later. While they were all seated just as you hear, Oriana said to Queen Sardamira: "Your Majesty, until now I have been vexed by the words that you said to me at the outset, because they were spoken about a matter that I considered so repugnant; but recognizing how you have abstained

from them, and your prudence and courtesy in everything else involving you, I tell you that I shall always love you and shall honor you with all my heart, because what irked me you were forced to do without being able to do anything else, and what gave me happiness flowed and proceeded from your noble nature and inherent virtue."

"Lady," said she, "since such is your understanding, it will be unnecessary for me to make any more excuses for it."

While they were talking about this, Agrajes arrived with Olinda and the maidens who had been segregated with her. When Oriana saw her, she rose to meet her and embraced her as if much time had passed since she had last seen her, and she kissed her hands. And turning to Agrajes, she embraced him with great affection; and thus she received all the knights who came with him; and she said to Gavarte of the Fearful Valley: "My friend Gavarte, you have acquitted yourself well of the promise that you gave me, and how much I thank you for it, and the desire I have to reward you, the Lord of the world knows."

"Lady," said he, "I have done what I should as your vassal. And you, madam, as my rightful suzerain, when the time comes, do remember me, for always I shall be at your service."

At this time there were gathered together there all the most honorable knights of that company, who withdrew to one end of the ship to speak about what course of action they would take. And Oriana called Amadis to one side of the dais, and said to him in a whisper: "My true friend, I beg and command you, in the name of that true love that you have for me, that now more than ever the secret of our love affair be maintained; and do not speak to me when we are alone but in the presence of everyone; and what you are pleased to tell me confidentially, convey it by speaking with Mabilia. And endeavor to take us from here to the Firm Island, because if I am in a safe place God will resolve my problems, for He knows that I am in the right."

"Madam," said Amadis, "I live only in the hope of serving you, for if this hope were to fail me, life itself would be wanting; and as you command, it shall be done. And about going to the Island, it will be well that by Mabilia you send word to that effect to these knights, so that it may seem to proceed more from your desire and will than from mine."

"That is the way I shall do it," said she, "and to me it seems a good idea. Now go," said she, "to those knights."

Amadis did so, and they talked about what should be done from then on; but as they were many, their opinions were diverse, for to some it seemed that they ought to take Oriana to the Firm Island, others to Gaul, and still others to Scotland, Agrajes's home land, so that they were not coming to any agreement. At this juncture, Princess Mabilia arrived with four maidens. Everybody welcomed her very cordially, and they seated her in their midst. And she said to them: "Lords, Oriana begs you, out of your kindness and the affection that you have shown for her by this rescue, that you take her to the Firm Island; for there she wishes to remain until she is on amicable terms with her father and mother; and she begs you, lords, that to such a good beginning you add a good ending by considering her great misfortune and the coercion applied to her, and that you do for her what you are accustomed to do for other maidens who are not of such high degree."

"My good lady," said Don Cuadragante, "the good and very courageous Amadis and all we knights who have participated in her rescue are desirous of serving her until death, not only personally but also through our relatives and friends, for they can do much and they will be many; and all of us will be together in her defense against her father and against the emperor of Rome, if they do not achieve reason and justice concerning her. And tell her that if God wishes, it will be done without fail just as I have said, and that she keep that firmly in mind, for if God helps us it will not fail because of us. And if with deliberation and courage this service has been rendered her, that in the same manner with another greater effort and a greater accord she will be aided by us until her safety and our honor are assured."

All those knights approved what Don Cuadragante replied, and with much courage they voted that they would never abandon this undertaking until Oriana was restored to freedom and sovereignty, being assured and certain of having them if she should outlive her father and mother. Princess Mabilia took leave of them and went to Oriana; and the reply and assurances that she brought back from her mission having been ascertained by

Oriana, the latter was greatly comforted, believing that the permission of the just Judge would guide matters in such a way that the outcome would be what she desired. With this agreement those knights went to their ships to give orders concerning the disposition of booty and of the prisoners, who were numerous. They left with Oriana all her maidens and Queen Sardamira with hers, and Don Bruneo de Bonamar and Landin de Fajarque and Don Gordan, brother of Angriote de Estravaus, and Sarquiles their nephew and Orlandin, son of the Count of Urlanda, and Enil, who was wounded by three wounds, which he was concealing as a man who was courageous and inured to great exertion. To these knights was entrusted the protection of Oriana and of those ladies of high degree who were with her, and they were enjoined not to leave the ladies until they were landed on the Firm Island, to which they had agreed to take them.

HERE ENDS THE THIRD BOOK OF THE NOBLE AND VIRTUOUS KNIGHT AMADIS OF GAUL

HERE BEGINS THE FOURTH BOOK of the noble and virtuous Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion and Queen Elisena, which deals with his exploits and the great feats at arms accomplished by him and other knights of his lineage.

CHAPTER LXXXII

CONCERNING THE GREAT LAMENTATION THAT QUEEN SARDAMIRA MADE OVER THE DEATH OF PRINCE SALUSTANQUIDIO.

At the end and termination of the Third Book of this great story you were told how King Lisuarte, against the wish of all his subjects, of both high and low degree, and of many others who desired to be of service to him, handed over to the Romans his daughter Oriana in order to marry her to the Patin, Emperor of Rome; and how Prince Salustanquidio was taken at sea and killed by Amadis and his companions, who had been together on the Firm Island, and by them were taken prisoner Brondajel de Roea, chief majordomo of the Emperor, and the Duke of Aneona and the Archbishop of Talancia; and many of their men killed or captured, and the whole fleet in which they were transporting Oriana destroyed. And now we shall tell you what happened as a result of this.

Know you that this great battle having been won, Amadis with other knights of his party, leaving on their ship Oriana and Queen Sardamira and all of the other matrons and maidens who were with her, and certain knights to protect them, boarded another ship and went to order security measures taken with the fleet of the Romans and with the spoils, which were very great, and with the prisoners, who besides being many, were for the most part of great substance, for such it was fitting to send on such a mission. And on coming to the ship in which Prince Salustanquidio lay dead, they heard great outcries and lamentations. And the cause of it as ascertained was that his companions, both knights and others who had gathered around him, were engaged in the

most tremendous mourning in the world, extolling his achievements and greatness; so that Agrajes's men who had the ship in their possession were unable to remove or dislodge them from there. Amadis ordered them transferred to another ship in order to stop their lamenting, and he ordered the body of Salustanquidio placed in a coffin in order to have him given the interment that befitted such a lord, although he was an enemy, since he had died like a man in the service of his master. And this was the reason that they had pity for him as well as for the others who remained alive, giving express orders that life be given to them; which to virtuous knights ought to happen so that wrath and rage having been put aside, reason by remaining free may inform judgment in order that it may pursue virtue.

The noise of this weeping was so great that the report reached the ship where Oriana was, to the effect that those people were mourning for that prince, so that it was ascertained by Queen Sardamira. Although until then she had known, and with her own eyes had seen the whole fleet of his side destroyed, and many killed and taken prisoner, she had not been apprised of the death of that knight. And when she heard it, out of her great sorrow she was beside herself, and forgetting the fear and great foreboding that she had had up to then, desiring death more than life, wringing her hands very passionately and in great perturbation, she fell to the floor, saying these words: "Oh, generous prince, of very high lineage, leading light and model for the whole Roman Empire! What grief and sorrow your death will be for many men and women who have loved and served you, and were expecting from you great benefits and favors! Oh, what sad news it will be for them when they learn of your unfortunate and disastrous end! Oh, great emperor of Rome, what anguish and sorrow you will have on learning of the death of this prince, your cousin, whom you loved so greatly and regarded as a strong pillar or shield of your empire; and of the destruction of your fleet, with the very inglorious deaths of your noble knights! And above all, to have taken from you by force of arms with such great dishonor to you, the thing that you loved and desired most in the world! You may well say that if the fortune of a knight errant who followed adventure, and from such a petty status elevated you so high as to place you on such a pinnacle

as is the imperial throne, sceptre and crown, with a hard blow it has sought to degrade your honor to the point of placing it in the abyss of hell, center of the earth; that from such a blow can ensue for you only one of two extremes: either to hide it by remaining the most dishonored prince in the world; or to avenge it by placing your person and great estate in much anguish and weariness of spirit, and at the end having from it all a very doubtful outcome; for certainly in what I have seen since my disastrous fortune brought me to Great Britain, there is not in the world an emperor or king of such high estate that these knights and those of their lineage, who are many and powerful, will not wage war and battle against him; and I consider them to be the flower of all the chivalry of the world, although from them so much evil and sorrow has come to me. And now my afflicted heart weeps more for the living and for the misfortune that one may expect in the future from this mishap than for the dead, who have already paid their debt."

Oriana, who saw her thus, had great pity for her, because she considered her very sensible and well meaning; except for the first time that she spoke to her about the Emperor's suit, which rendered her very angry, and she begged her not to talk to her about it any more. She always found her to be very courteous and a person of great discretion in never again angering her, preferably saying to her things that would give her pleasure. And she called Mabilia and said to her: "My friend, try to stop the Queen's weeping and comfort her as you know how to do; and do not heed anything she may say or do, because, as you see, she is almost out of her mind, having much reason to complain. But what I am obliged to do is what the victor must do to the vanquished when he has him in his power."

Mabilia, who was very kindly, went to the Queen, and kneeling, while taking her by the hand, said to her: "Noble Queen and lady, it is not fitting that a person of such high degree as you should be thus overcome and subjugated by fortune; for although all of us women are by nature weak in physique and courage, there is much benefit to be derived from the old stories about those women who stout-heartedly sought to repay their debt to their ancestors by displaying in adversity the nobility of lineage and blood from which they are descended. And although

now you suffer from this great blow from your adverse fortune, remember that that self-same Fortune highly honored and elevated you, but not that you might be able to enjoy it any longer than her fickle will might permit and that you have lost it more through her fault than yours, because it always has pleased her, and still does, to turn things upside down and to try such games as these. And therefore you must consider that you are in the power of this noble princess, who with the great love and good will that she has for you, has compassion for your grief, remembering to provide you with that companionship and show you that courtesy that your virtue and royal estate command."

The Queen said to her: "Oh, most noble and gracious princess! Although the discretion of your words has such virtue that they could comfort every grief, however great it might be, my fortune is ill-starred to such a degree that my weak, tormented spirit cannot endure it. And if some hope for this great despair comes to mind, it is none other than to see myself, as you say, in the power of this very high and noble lady, who out of her great goodness will not permit my standing and reputation to be discredited, because this is the greatest treasure that every woman ought to guard most carefully and fear to lose."

Then Princess Mabilia with great promises assured her that Oriana would order carried out exactly what she desired. And lifting her up by the hands, she had her sit down on a dais, where many of those ladies who were there came to keep her company.

CHAPTER LXXXIII

How at the assent and command of princess oriana, those knights brought her to the firm island.

After Amadis and those knights departed from Salustanquidio's ship and saw that the entire fleet of the Romans was in the possession of his own men without any opposition, they all gathered together on Don Florestan's ship and reached the agreement that, since Oriana's wish and their own inclination was to go to the Firm Island, it would be well to carry this out. And they ordered all the prisoners put in one ship, with Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, and Landin, nephew of Don Cuadragante, together with a lot of the other knights to guard and hold them securely. And in another ship they ordered the booty, which was very great, to be placed, with Don Gandales, foster father of Amadis, and Sadamon, who were two very prudent and faithful knights, to guard it. And to all the other ships they assigned men-at-arms and sailors to pilot them, and each one of them remained in his own ship, just as he had departed from the Firm Island.

These preparations having been made, they requested Don Bruneo de Bonamar and Angriote de Estravaus to inform Oriana, and to bring back to them her wishes concerning what she would command, so that thus they might be carried out. These two knights went into her stateroom, knelt before her and said to her: "Good lady, all of the knights who are here gathered to aid you, in order to continue in your service inform you that the entire fleet is made ready and is prepared to move from here. They wish to know your wish, because they will carry it out with complete devotion."

Oriana said to them: "My great friends, if for this love that you all show for me and what you have involved yourselves in for my sake, I should never have the opportunity to reward you, from now on I would despair of my life. But I have faith in our Lord that out of His mercy He will be willing that just as I have it in mind, I may be enabled to carry it out. And tell those noble knights that the decision that was taken in this matter, which is to go to the Firm Island, should be put into effect; and after having arrived there, counsel shall be taken on what ought to be done; for I have hope in God, who is the just judge and knows all things, that this situation which now seems in such open rupture, He will guide and convert into great honor and pleasure; because as concerns just and true causes, as this is, even though at the beginning they appear harsh and arduous, as apparently now, from the outcome one must expect only good fruit; and from things that are the opposite, that which falsehood and disloyalty are wont to produce."

With this reply these two knights returned. And it having been made known to those who were awaiting it, they ordered the trumpets sounded, with which the fleet was very well equipped; and with much joy, and amid great shouting on the part of the lowliest, they set sail from there. All those great lords and knights set forth very happy and in high spirits, and firm in their determination not to part from one another nor from that princess until they had achieved the end and good outcome of what they had begun. And as all were of noble blood and of great feats at arms, their vigor and courage increased because they knew the great justice that they had on their side, and saw themselves in disagreement with two such eminent princes, whence they expected only to gain much honor, no matter whether favorable or adverse things should happen to them, and that they would perform in this undertaking, if it should end in rupture, great deeds for which they would be forever praised, and in the world a perpetual memory of them would remain. And as they were setting out all armor-clad, with very fine arms, and they were many, even to those who had no knowledge of their prowess, they would have appeared a company belonging to a great emperor; and certainly they did so appear, for it would be hard to find at the court of any prince, however great he

might be, so many knights of such lineage and valor gathered together.

Therefore, what can one say here, except that you, King Lisuarte, ought to have reflected how, when you were a prince without an inheritance, chance had put you over such a great realm and such suzerainties, giving you brains, vigor, virtue, moderation, and precious generosity, more completely than to any of the mortal men of your time; and by putting on the diadem or precious crown, to become overlord of such an aggregation of knights as to be respected and held in great esteem in all parts of the world? And it is not known whether through the same chance's being transformed into mischance or by your own poor understanding you have lost it, receiving such great reverses in the high esteem in which you had been held and in your honored fame, that the satisfying of this situation is in the hand of God to give to you or to take away; but, upon my word of honor, rather do I understand that it is in order that you live with your mischance wounded and brought low from that height at which you were placed, which you will regret all the more to the same degree that you had prosperous times without any reverses to distress you greatly. And if you complain of such as this, complain of yourself, for you sought to lend an ear to men of little virtue and less probity, believing what you heard from them rather than what you with your own eyes saw; and together with this, without any pity or conscience you gave such latitude to your free will that not heeding the many warnings by many people, nor the sorrowful weeping of your daughter, you sought to place her in exile and in complete affliction, God having adorned her with so much beauty, with so much nobility and virtue, over and above all those women of her time. And if her honor to some degree can be impugned, in view of her excellence and her sound thinking, and the outcome that resulted from it all, one should attribute it to the consent of God, who wished it and it was His will, rather than to any other error or sin, so that, if Fortune by turning its wheel is unfavorable to you, you released that wheel from its fastenings.

Resuming then our narrative: just as you hear, the fleet was sailing over the sea, and in seven days they arrived at daybreak at the port of the Firm Island, where, in joyous celebration,

there were fired many shots from lombards. When those on the island saw so many ships arriving there, they marvelled, and armed, they all hastened to the marina; but as soon as they arrived they recognized the ships as those of their lord Amadis, by the pennants and devices that they carried on their main top-sails, which were the same as they had borne on leaving there. And at once launching their small craft, men went out, and Don Gandales with them in order to arrange for lodging as well as for the purpose of making a bridge of small craft from land to the ships to enable Oriana and those lords to disembark.

CHAPTER LXXXIV

How princess grasinda, on learning of the victory that amadis had achieved, accompanied by many knights and ladies, adorned herself in order to go to receive oriana.

From these whom I mention to you, the very beautiful Grasinda, who had remained there, ascertained the arrival and everything that took place; and at once with great diligence made ready to receive Oriana, whom on account of the good publicity given to her everywhere she was more eager to see than she was anyone else in the world. And so, as a lady of high degree and very rich, she wanted to show herself; for at once she donned a skirt and jacket overlaid with rare skill with a scattering of golden roses; these being set off and encircled with pearls and precious stones of great value, a costume which up until then she had not worn or shown to anyone, because she was keeping it to wear when she tested herself in the Forbidden Chamber as she later did. And on her beautiful hair it was her will to place only the coronet, a very fine one, which with her beauty and the excellence of the Greek Knight she had won from all the maidens who at that time were at the court of King Lisuarte, with great acclaim for them both. And she mounted a white palfrey equipped with saddle and bridle and the other trimmings all covered with gold enameled with designs wrought with great skill, for she was keeping this so that if Fortune should permit her to accomplish that venture of the Forbidden Chamber, she might return by way of King Lisuarte's court with these fine, imposing adornments, and make herself known to Queen Brisena and to Oriana, her daughter, and to the other princesses and ladies and

maidens, and return to her native land with great glory. But this she had, and it was very far from being accomplished as she planned, because although she was very well adorned and beautiful in the opinion of many, and much more so in her own, she fell far short of equalling the very beautiful Queen Briolanja, who had already tried that adventure without being able to succeed in it.

Well, with this imposing finery that you hear that this lady Grasinda was wearing, she started on her way, and with her, her matrons and maidens splendidly dressed, and ten knights of hers on foot, who led her palfrey by the reins, without anyone else approaching her. And thus she went to the seacoast, where with haste the bridge had just been finished, of which you have already heard, as far as the ship on which Oriana was arriving; and having arrived there, she stood at the entrance to the bridge, awaiting Oriana's sally, who was already prepared to land, all those knights having gone to her ship in order to accompany her. And dressed more in keeping with her ill-fortune and the modesty befitting her, than to the enhancement of her beauty, she saw this lady and asked Don Bruneo if that was the one who had come to the court of the king, her father, and had won the coronet from the maidens. Don Bruneo told her that it was she, and to honor and welcome her, for she was one of the good ladies of her rank in the world. And he told her a great deal about her and of the great honors that Amadis and Angriote and he had received from her. Oriana said to him: "It is quite right that you and your friends should greatly honor her and esteem her, and I shall do so."

Then Don Cuadragante and Agrajes locked arms with her, and Don Florestan and Angriote with Queen Sardamira, and Amadis alone with Mabilia, and Don Bruneo and Dragonis with Olinda, and other knights with the other princesses and matrons; and all the knights were wearing armor and laughing very animatedly in order to encourage and afford them pleasure. As Oriana approached land, Grasinda dismounted from the palfrey and knelt at the end of the bridge, and took her by her hands in order to kiss them; but Oriana withdrew her hands, and did not wish to give them to her; instead she embraced her with great affection, as a woman accustomed to being very humble

and gracious toward those with whom she ought to be. Grasinda, as she saw her so close and beheld her great beauty, was greatly astounded, although it had been highly praised to her. According to the difference she found on seeing her, she would not have been able to believe that any mortal person could attain such great beauty; and kneeling just as she was, for Oriana had never been able to make her rise, she said to Oriana: "Now, my good lady, very rightly must I thank our Lord and render Him service for the great favor He did me in your not being at the court of the king your father at the time that I came there; because surely, although to guard and protect me I brought the best knight in the world, in view of the fact that my claim was by reason of beauty, I declare that he could have seen himself in great danger if at arms God aids the right, as they say, and I would have been thwarted in winning the honor that I won, which in view of the great superiority and advantage that your beauty has over mine, I would not have esteemed very highly, even if the knight who had fought for you had been very weak, for my claim would not have attained the goal that it did."

Then she looked toward Amadis and said to him: "Sir, if from what I have said you take offense, pardon me, because my eyes never have seen the like of what they have before them."

Amadis, who was very happy because his lady was being praised thus, said: "My lady, I would be very wrong to consider bad what you have said to this noble lady, for if I should complain of it, it would be against the greatest truth that one could ever utter."

Oriana, who was somewhat embarrassed to hear herself thus praised, and more so with the thought of the ill fortune she had at the time than of being so esteemed for her beauty, answered: "My lady, I do not wish to respond to what you have said of me, because if I were to contradict it, I would offend a person of such good understanding, and if I should affirm it, it would be a great embarrassment and affront for me. I only want you to know that such as I am, I shall be very happy to enhance your honor as much as I can as a poor, disinherited maiden."

Then she asked Agrajes to escort Grasinda and place her beside Olinda and accompany her, and she remained with Don Cuadragante, and he did so likewise. And all having left the bridge,

they placed Oriana on a palfrey, the most richly caparisoned ever seen, which her mother, Queen Brisena, had given her for when she should enter Rome; and Queen Sardamira on another, and likewise all the other ladies, and Grasinda on her own. And however much Oriana insisted, she could not prevent or deter all those lords and knights from accompanying her on foot, from which she suffered much embarrassment; but they thought that all the honor and service they did her would redound to their own enhancement.

Just as you hear, they entered the island through the castle, and brought those ladies with Oriana to the tower with the garden, where Don Gandales had had lodging made ready for them. The tower was the outstanding feature of the entire island, for although in many parts of it there were luxurious houses of elaborate design where Apolidon had left the enchantments, concerning which a more extensive account is given in Book II, his principal residence, where he stayed longest, was that tower. And for this reason he constructed in it so many things of such opulence that the greatest emperor in the world would not have dared or have undertaken to build another like it. There were in it nine apartments arranged three to a floor, some being above others, each one distinctive in style; and although some of them had been built through the ingenuity of men who knew a great deal, everything else was, by Apolidon's art and great knowledge, wrought so wonderfully that no one in the world would be capable of knowing how to estimate, and much less, to understand, its great subtlety. And because it would be an immense task to tell about it all in detail, it will only be said that this tower was located in the middle of a garden that was surrounded by a high wall of very handsome masonry, and with respect to its trees and plants of every variety, and its fountains of very fresh water, the most beautiful ever seen. There were many trees that bore fruit the whole year, others that had beautiful flowers. This garden had on the inside fastened to the wall elaborate arcades shut off with gilded gratings, from which that greenery was visible; and along them one could walk all the way around without being able to go out except through some gates. The floor was paved with stones, some crystal white, others red and transparent like rubies, and still others of diverse appearance, which Apolidon

had ordered brought from some islands that are located in that part of the Orient where precious stones are produced, and in those islands are found much gold and other things that appear here in other lands, and which are created by the great heat of the sun, which there beats down continually; but the islands are not populated except by wild beasts, so that until the period of this great sage Apolidon — who out of his genius made contrivances whereby his men, without fear of losing their lives, were enabled to reach them, from which the neighboring peoples profited — no one previously had gone to them; so that from that time on the world was stocked with many things of a kind that until then had never been seen, and from there Apolidon obtained great wealth.

On the four sides of this tower there came from a high mountain range four springs that encircled it, brought in metal pipes, and the water from them gushed so high out of some gilded basins of copper and from the mouths of animals that from the first floor windows they could indeed take the water, which was collected in some round stone receptacles which were set in the pillars themselves. From these four fountains the whole garden was irrigated.

Well, in this tower about which you are hearing were lodged Princess Oriana and those ladies of whom you have heard, each one in the lodging she merited and as Princess Mabilia had ordered them allotted. Here they were served by matrons and maidens, with everything, and abundantly, that Amadis had ordered given them. And no knight entered the garden or where they dwelt, for such an arrangement was pleasing to Oriana, and so she sent to request all of those lords to approve it, inasmuch as she wanted to be as if cloistered until some basis of agreement and peace was established with the king her father. All of them considered it very virtuous on her part, and they praised her good motive, and sent word to tell her that in that, just as in everything else that might be to her service, they would do nothing but carry out her wishes.

Amadis, although his anguished heart found no stability or remedy anywhere, except when he was in the presence of his lady, because being with her was his whole objective for repose, and without it, great anguish and mortal desires tormented him

continually, as you have heard many times in this great story; seeking more her contentment and fearing a hundred thousand times more the loss of her honor than his own death, more than anyone displayed satisfaction and pleasure at what that lady considered good and decorous, taking as a remedy for his sufferings and cares the fact that he now had her in his power in a place where he did not fear the rest of the world, and where rather than lose her, he would lose his life, whereupon those great flames that continually burned his sad heart would cease and become cold.

All those lords and knights and those of lower rank were lodged appropriately in those places on the island that were most in keeping with their rank and quality, where in great abundance they were given the things necessary for good and pleasant living; for although Amadis had always gone about as a poor knight, he found on that island great treasures acquired out of the income from it, and many other jewels of great value that the queen his mother and other great ladies had given him; which, on account of his not having any need of them, had been sent there. And besides this, all the inhabitants and dwellers on the island, who were quite rich and reserved, were very happy to provide him with large provisions of bread and meat and wines, and the other things that they were able to give him. So just as you hear, Princess Oriana was brought to the Firm Island with those ladies and lodged there, as were all the knights engaged in her service and aid.

CHAPTER LXXXV

How amadis had those lords assemble, and the speech that he made to them, and what they agreed to do in the matter.

Amadis, however much he might show great courage, since he had it, thought a great deal about the outcome that might result from this great affair, as the one on whom all responsibility fell, although there were there many princes and noble lords and knights of high degree; and he already had his life condemned to death if he didn't succeed in that great undertaking which was threatening and imperilling his honor. And when all were sleeping he was awake thinking about the remedy that must be applied; and with this preoccupation, with the approval and on the advice of Don Cuadragante and that of his cousin Agrajes, he had all those lords summoned to assemble at Don Cuadragante's quarters in a great hall therein, which was one of the finest in the whole island. And all having come there, for no one was missing, Amadis stood up, holding by the hand Master Elisabad, to whom he always paid much honor, and spoke to them in this wise: "Noble princes and knights, I have had you assemble here in order to remind you that through all parts of the world where your fame extends, the great lineages and estates from which you come are known, and that each one of you in your own lands could live with many luxuries and pleasures, having many servants, with other great facilities that one is accustomed to obtain and possess for the recreation of a life of enjoyment and ease while accumulating wealth. But you, having considered that there is as great a difference between the pursuit of arms and that of pleasures and the acquisition of worldly goods as there is between the

judgment of men and that of ignorant beasts, have renounced that for which many men become lost souls; wishing to pass up large fortunes in order to bequeath laudable fame by pursuing this military occupation of arms, for since the beginning of the world down to our own time no good fortune of worldly men could, or can, equal its conquest and glory; whereby up to now you have gathered neither profit nor dominions, but rather, the engagement of your bodies, covered with wounds, in great and dangerous undertakings, until arriving a thousand times at the point and threshold of death, while hoping for and desiring glory and fame more than any other gain that might come from it; in reward for which, if you wish to know, prosperous and favorable Fortune has been willing to place in your hands such a great victory as at the present time you have. And I do not say this to you with reference to the vanquishment of the Romans, which, in accordance with the difference between your strength and theirs, ought not to be rated very highly, but on account of this very noble and excellent princess's having been rescued and aided by you in order that she might not receive the greatest injury and wrong that any person of such high station has received for a long time; because of which besides having increased greatly in your fame, you have performed a great service to God, making use of that for which you were born, which is to help the persecuted by putting a stop to the injuries and outrages that are done them. And what one should esteem most and should give us the greatest contentment is to have displeased and angered two such high and mighty princes as the Emperor of Rome and King Lisuarte; with whom, if they are unwilling to become just and reasonable, it will be in order for us to have great combats and wars. Well, henceforth, noble lords, what can be expected? Certainly, nothing except that we, as men who uphold reason and truth to the shame and discredit of those who reject and scorn it, shall win very great victories, which will resound throughout the whole world. And if from the high station of our foes something may be feared, well, we are not so lacking in the support of many other great lords, both relatives and friends, that we cannot easily fill these fields with knights and foot soldiers in such great numbers that no adversaries, however many they may be, can see after one day's battle the Firm Island; therefore, good lords, on this matter,

let each one speak his opinion — not about what he wishes, for much better than I, you know and love virtue and know what you are in duty bound to do — but about what one ought to do in order to support this cause and carry it forward with that courage and prudence of yours."

With much good will that graceful, forceful talk which was made by Amadis was heard by all those lords: who, considering that they had among them so many who would know how to answer very well in accordance with their great discretion and courage, for a while were all silent, bidding one another to speak. Then Don Cuadragante said: "My lords, if you consider it good, since you all remain silent, I shall speak what my judgment enables me to know and respond."

Agrajes said to him: "Sir Don Cuadragante, we all beg you to do so, because in view of your being the man you are and the great deeds undertaken by you and with such great honor accomplished, it is more fitting for you to reply than for any of us to do so."

Don Cuadragante thanked him for the honor he was accorded and said to Amadis: "Noble knight, your great discretion and good moderation have satisfied our wishes so completely, and you have said what should be done in such wise that to have to reply to it all would be a matter of great prolixity and annoyance to anyone listening. I shall say only what ought to be remedied at the present time, which is that since your will in the past has been not to pursue passion or hatred but only to serve God and adhere to your oath as knights, which is to suppress violence, especially that done to matrons and maidens who have neither strength nor assistance except from God and you, this be made manifest by your messengers to King Lisuarte and he be requested by you to recognize his past error and deal justly and reasonably with this princess, his daughter, by relaxing the great coercion that he is applying to her, giving such guarantees that with good reason and the certainty that our honor will not be discredited we may be able and obligated to restore her to him; and that of what pertains to us concerning him not to make any mention, because once this present crisis is resolved, if resolving it is possible, I trust so much in your virtue and great courage that even he will sue us for peace, and he will consider himself quite

satisfied if it is granted by you. And while our emissaries are on their journey, inasmuch as we do not know how things will turn out, let anyone who may wish to seek us out, find us, not as knights errant, but as princes and noble lords; and it would be well that our friends and relatives, who are many, by us be notified, so that when it is time for them to be called they may be able to come in time for their effort to have the effect that it should."

CHAPTER LXXXVI

How all the knights were very content with all that Don Cuadragante proposed.

Those knights were very content with Don Cuadragante's reply, because in their opinion there remained nothing more to say. And it was immediately agreed that Amadis should inform King Perion, his father, asking for all help and favor, from him and from all his knights as well as from any others who were his friends and vassals, when he should be called upon; likewise that he should send word to all the others who he knew would be able and willing to lend support, for there were many for whom with great danger to his person he had done great things on behalf of their honor and to their benefit; and that Agrajes should send an emissary or should go to the King of Scotland, his father, with a similar message; and that Don Bruneo should send word to the Marquis, his father, by Branfil, his brother, that the former make ready with great diligence as many fighting men as he could, and that they should not leave there until they had his order; and that all the other knights who were there on the Firm Island and who had estates and friends should do likewise.

Don Cuadragante said that he would send Landin, his nephew, to the Queen of Ireland, and that he believed that if King Cildadan, her husband, supported King Lisuarte with the number of men at arms that he was obligated to send, she would afford to all those of her kingdom who might wish it, an opportunity to come and serve, and that of those as well as of his own vassals and other friends of his a good force would arrive.

This having been decided thus, they asked Agrajes and Don Florestan to inform Princess Oriana, so that concerning everything she might order what would be most helpful to her. And all thus united, they left the meeting in high spirits, especially those who were of lower rank, who to some degree had been considering this business as very perilous, fearing the outcome of it more than they revealed; and as they now had seen the great care and foresight exhibited by the grandees, and that by reason of it great assistance was expected, their courage mounted and they lost all fear.

And on arriving at the castle gate, which commanded a view of the whole island, they saw coming up the hill an armed knight on horseback and five squires with him, who carried his arms and other personal effects. All stood still until they found out who he might be; and as they saw him closer at hand, they recognized that he was Don Brian de Monjaste, whence very great pleasure ensued for them, because he was loved by all and deemed a good knight. And certainly he was, for aside from his being of such an exalted station, as son of Ladasan, King of Spain, he, in his own right, was of high repute for prudence and courage everywhere he was known; and in addition to this he was a knight who more than anyone else in the world loved his friends, and was always joking and having fun when with them as one who was very discreet and well-bred. And so they loved him and took great pleasure with him. And all together they came down the hill on foot just as they were; and he, when he saw them, was greatly surprised and could not imagine what adventure had brought them together, although he had been told something after he landed. And he dismounted and went toward them with outstretched arms and said: "I want to embrace you all together, since I consider you all as one."

Then those who were coming in front arrived, and behind them Amadis. And when Don Brian saw him, whether he was greatly pleased thereby, it is unnecessary to state; because, besides the close kinship that he had with him, in that they were sons of brother and sister (for the mother of this Don Brian, wife of the King of Spain, was the sister of King Perion), he was the knight whom he loved most in the whole world. And he said to him, laughing: "Are you here? Well, I was coming in search of you,

for even if we completely lacked adventures we would have plenty to do looking for you, the way you hide."

Amadis embraced him and said: "Say what you will, you have arrived in a place where I shall quickly exact amends for it. And these lords command you to mount your horse and get on this island, where a dungeon is being readied for the likes of you."

Then all the others came up to embrace him; and although against his will, they made him mount his horse, and they went with him on foot up the hill until they arrived at Amadis's quarters, where he dismounted, and his cousins Agrajes and Don Florestan disarmed him and ordered a scarlet robe brought for him to wear. And when his armor was removed, and he saw about him so many and such noble knights with whose excellence and prowess he was familiar, he said to them: "A company of so many excellent knights could not have been brought together here except for some very important secret business and reason. Tell me what it is, my lords, for I want very much to know, because I heard something of it after I came to this land."

All begged Agrajes to give the account of it, as the one who had been present at everything that had transpired. And so that in it and in what was still to come Don Brian might have a great desire to further and favor it, he told him everything just as our story has related it, blaming King Lisuarte and praising and approving very earnestly what those knights had done and were about to do in the future. When Brian de Monjaste heard this, he deemed it excessive, as a person of great discretion who considers the outcome rather than the beginning. And if it had been about to be done, without his knowing the secret of Amadis's love affair, it might have been possible for his advice to be negative, or at least that the action should be toned down by going through other more legitimate channels without its reaching such extremes as it had at present; for according to the knowledge he had of King Lisuarte's being so sensitive and protective regarding his honor, the offense having become so great, he indeed thought that an equally great vengeance would be sought. But seeing that the affair had reached such a state that more aid than advice was required, especially since Amadis was at the head of it, very earnestly he approved what had been done, speaking highly of the great propriety with which they had proceeded in dealing

with Oriana, and promising them to safeguard her person with as many of his father's fighting men as he could obtain. He told them that he wanted to see Princess Oriana so that she might ascertain from him how wholeheartedly he would serve her. Amadis said to him: "Sir cousin, you have just come from the road and these lords have not dined; do rest and dine while word is being sent to them of your arrival, and in the afternoon the call on Oriana can be better made."

Don Brian approved of this; and therefore those lords, having taken leave of him, went to their lodging. And afternoon having come, Agrajes and Don Florestan, who were chosen by them to speak with Oriana, as stated, took Don Brian with them, and all three went, elegantly attired, to where Oriana was, and they found her waiting for them in Queen Sardamira's apartment, accompanied by all those ladies that you have heard about and of whom the story has given you an account. Then having arrived there, Don Brian went to Oriana and knelt to kiss her hands, but she drew him to her and would not yield them to him; instead she embraced him and received him with the great courtesy characteristic of a lady in whom was to be found all the nobility in the world. And she said to him: "My lord Don Brian, be you very welcome, for although, in view of your nobility and integrity, at any time you would deserve to be well received, at this present time you should have a much better reception. And because I believe that those noble knights, who are friends of yours, have related to you everything that has happened referring to them, it will not be necessary for me to say anything, or remind you either of what you ought to do; because in view of the way you have used advice and made it familiar, your discretion is better qualified to give it than to seek it."

Don Brian said to her: "My lady, the reason for my coming has been that it has been a long time since I left the battle that the king your father had with the seven kings of the islands, and since I went to my father in Spain; while I was involved in a dispute that he was having with the Africans, I learned that my cousin and lord Amadis had gone to foreign lands, where no news of him was being ascertained; and as he is the flower and model of my whole family, and the one whom I most hold in high esteem and love, his absence produced so much grief in my heart that I

strove for some settlement to be made in order to set forth in quest of him. And reflecting that in this island of his rather than anywhere else I would be able to find some news of my cousin, I came here whither my good fortune and luck have guided me, not only to find him, but to come at a time that the desire that I always have had to serve you may be evinced by action. And as you, my lady, have said, I already know what has happened, and am even somewhat preoccupied with what may result from it, in view of the harsh nature of your father the king. In whatever manner it may come and chance direct it and be able to involve me personally, I offer myself and prepare with utmost willingness to provide a remedy."

Oriana gave him many thanks.

CHAPTER LXXXVII

How all the knights had a great desire to serve and honor princess oriana.

It is quite right that it be known and not remain forgotten for what reason these knights and many others who will be mentioned later desired to serve this lady with so much love and good will, exposing themselves in the greatest degree, as they were, to confrontations with such high-ranking princes. Could it be perchance on account of the favors that they had received from her, or because they knew about the secret and circumstances of her love affair with Amadis and on that account were favorably disposed toward it? Certainly I say that neither thing caused their wills to be impelled to do so, because although she was of such high estate, time had not given her an opportunity to be able to do a favor to anyone; since she did not possess anything more than a poor maiden would. Then with regard to what has to do with her love affair with Amadis, already this great story, if you have read it, gives you testimony of how secret it was. Since it is probably for some reason, do you know what it was? Because this princess was always the most gentle, well-bred and courteous — especially with serene humility — to be found in her time, remembering to honor and treat each one well, according to his merit; for this is a snare and a net in which the grandees who do so catch many of those who have little obligation to serve them, as we see every day; for without any other self-interest, they are praised by them orally, out of their good will much beloved, obligated to serve them, as these lords were doing for that noble princess.

Well, what shall be said here of the grandees who exhibit great seorn and excessive presumption to those to whom they ought not to exhibit it? I shall tell you: seeking to involve themsclves with lower-class people in harsh retorts, with enraged gestures, depreciative of their courtesies and favors, they arc held in less esteem, less respected, verbally abused with the desire that some reverse come to thcm to do them an ill turn and anger them. Oh what a great mistake! And what little understanding: for lack of a favor so small as giving a gracious reply, a friendly glance, that costs so little, to lose being loved, esteemed and served by those to whom they have never granted a boon or rendered help! Do you want to know what often happens to these disdainful scorners? I will tell you: like those who squander and waste their own wealth, having no regard for place or time, giving it where they should not, they are eonsidered, instead of generous and liberal, as stupid and foolish; so those, likewise, by failing to honor those whose honoring would be deemed a virtue, by humbling and subjugating themselves to others who arc their superiors or perchance their cquals, whieh is eonsidered service with slight effort rather than a virtue.

Well, returning to the subject at hand, the eonversation of Brian de Monjaste having been finished, and reverence paid to Queen Sardamira and those prineesses along with Grasinda, Agrajes and Don Florestan came to Oriana, and with great respeet told her everything that those knights had commissioned them to tell; having considered it a good deeision, she transmitted to them and left them the responsibility for what ought to be done, sinee the doing and purpose of it pertained more to knights than to maidens; sending word to beg them earnestly always to remember, in compliance with their honor, to seek and solieit peaee with the king her father eoncerning what related to her and her reputation. This done, Oriana, leaving Don Florestan and Brian de Monjaste with Queen Sardamira and those ladies, took Agrajes by the hand, and went to seat herself with him at one side of the room. And she spoke to him thus: "My good lord and veritable brother Agrajes, although the confidence and hope that I have in your cousin Amadis and in those noble knights is very great, for they most carefully and with great diligence with due regard for their honor will support eompletely what relates to me, I have mueh

more confidence in you, since it is a fact that I was reared for a long time at the court of the king your father, where from him as well as from the queen your mother I received many honors and had many good times; and especially by their having given to me Princess Mabilia, your sister; of whom I can well say that if God our Lord was the first to give me life, so, after Him, this lady has given it to me many times; for if it had not been for her great prudence and comfort, in view of my sufferings and above all, my adverse fortune, which since the Romans came to my father's court has harassed me, without her help it would have been impossible for me to endure life. And so on this account as well as for many other reasons that I could mention, for which if God would only give me an opportunity to pay in full, I am so obligated; and believing that just as I have it on my mind, you recognize that when the time comes, I would carry it out just as I have said, it affords me a reason why the secrets of my suffering heart be told you rather than anyone else; and so I shall do, for what will be concealed from everyone to you alone will be made manifest. And for the present I only urge you as earnestly as I can that, laying aside the anger and vexation that you may have with respect to my father, complete peace and harmony be established by you and on your advice between him and your cousin Amadis; because, in view of his great courage, and the enmity for so long a time so obdurate, my only fear is that any argument put forth out of sincere affection will not be able to satisfy him; and if by you, my veritable brother and friend, some remedy can be applied in this matter, not only will many people be kept and protected from suffering brutal deaths, but also my honor and reputation, which perchance is in disrepute in many places, will be cleared with that assistance that befits its uprightness."

This having been heard by Agrajes, with much courtesy and humility he answered thus: "With much justice one can and ought to agree with all that you, madam, have said, for according to what I have learned from the king my father and from my mother, their desire is to be able to help as much as possible to increase your honor and high standing as presently will be demonstrated; for as regards my sister and me it will not be necessary to declare it, because our actions afford evidence of very wholeheartedly seeking and desiring to serve you. And coming to what you ask

of me, I tell you the truth is, madam, that more than anyone else I am at outs with the king your father; for, just as I am a witness of the great and outstanding services that Amadis my cousin and all of us of his lineage have rendered him, as is well-known to everyone, so I am of his great ingratitude and poor return for service received; for by us no favor was ever asked of him, except the island of Mongaza for my uncle Don Galvanes, which was won to the greatest honor of his court, and by the one who won it at the greatest danger to his life, just as you, my good lady, have seen with your own eyes; and to think that all of us did not suffice, nor the excellence and great worthiness of my uncle, to enable his obtaining such a small thing by remaining his vassal and under his suzerainty; instead, rejecting us, casting aside our supplication with as much discourtesy as if, instead of being — as we were — men in his service, we had become enemies to him. And for this reason I cannot deny that insofar as I was concerned I was taking great pleasure in helping to put him in such straits and need, that repenting of what he had done he would give everyone to understand the great loss that he sustained in us, realizing the honor that our services were rendering him. But just as man by denying and suppressing his own will gains more merit in the sight of God by doing it in His service, so I, madam, complying with yours am willing to deny and suppress my anger, in order that in this matter, which is so serious to me, I may be able to recognize other things which my anger has me so obligated to serve it; but this will be with much moderation, because as I am among these lords regarded as a chief enhancer of your honor, it would be a major cause of contributing weakness to many of them if they perceived it in me."

"So I ask it, my good friend," said Oriana; "for well I know, in view of the seriousness of what has happened and the one with whom this great dispute is, that it is necessary not only to render strong aid but with much care to render strong the very weak. And because much better than I would know how to plead for it, you know what is proper and at what time it can be advantageous or harmful to you, I leave it to you with that true affection that exists between us."

Thus they finished their conversation and returned to where those ladies and knights were. Agrajes could not take his eyes

away from his lady Olinda, as the woman who was much loved by him with great ardor, which one must believe to be true, since on account of it she was worthy to pass under the enchanted arch of loyal lovers, as the second Book of this story has related; but as he was of noble blood and upbringing, for such are obligated without much coercion, rejecting passion and ardor, to serve virtue; and knowing the chaste life that Oriana was pleased to lead, he was determined to suppress his own desire, even though he might feel greatly annoyed in so doing, until he saw how the initiated negotiations came out.

So they kept on talking for a while about many things, and those knights, as very courageous men, were encouraging their adherence by dispelling the fear that women are accustomed to have in situations so unusual for them as the one in which they were. Then having taken leave of the ladies, and given the reply of Oriana to those who had sent them to her, they began with great diligence to put into effect what they had agreed upon, and to dispatch the emissaries who were going to King Lisuarte, a mission which was unanimously assigned to Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste, for they were such as to be suitable for such an embassy.

CHAPTER LXXXVIII

How amadis spoke with grasinda, and what she replied.

Amadis went to the lodging of Grasinda, whom he loved and esteemed very much, not only for herself but also for the numerous honors that he had received, and which he did not think had been repaid, although he had done for her what our story has related, considering that there are very great differences between those who perform feats of prowess because of their courage while not having much acquaintance with those who benefit from them, and those who, after they have so benefited, requite and repay them; because the first is out of a generous heart, and the second, although it may involve good acquaintanceship and gratitude, nevertheless is a recognized debt that is being repaid. And seated with her on a dais, he spoke to her thus: "My lady, if the service and pleasure that your virtue deserves are not being rendered you by me as I desire and would wish, may I be pardoned, because what you see going on is to be blamed for it; and in order that your noble nature might so adjudge it, leaving this aside I have decided to speak to you and to ask that as a favor you tell me the goal of your desire and will — because it has been a long time since you left your land, and I do not know whether from that fact your heart receives any distress — in order that as soon as your command is known, it may be carried out."

Grasinda said to him: "My lord, if I had not held the belief that from your companionship and friendship the greatest honor had accrued to me that could come to me from anything, and that all the service and entertainment provided for you in my house — if there was any that afforded you contentment — had

been repaid and requited, it would be discernible by the person of poorest knowledge in the world. And because this is very certain and known to all, I wish, my lord, that my whole desire, exactly as I have it, be made manifest to you. I see that although here are gathered so many princes and knights of great valor for the rescue of this princess, you, my good lord, are the one to whom all look and defer, so that on your brains and courage depend all the hope and good fortune that they expect; and in view of your great courage and nature, you cannot avoid taking complete charge of everything, because it devolves on no one else as justly or as rightfully as on you; whence it will be necessary that your friends and defenders come to your aid and try to support your honor and high estate. And because chiefly out of my desire I consider myself one of them, I wish that my desire may so appear in its execution; and I have decided that Master Elisabad should go to my land, and very carefully have all of my vassals and friends provided and fitted out with a great fleet against the time when it may be necessary for them to come, sir, and serve you according to your commands. And meanwhile I shall remain in the company and service of this lady, along with the others that she has with her, and I shall not part from her, nor from you, until the conclusion of this business tells me what I should do."

When Amadis heard this from her he embraced her laughing and said: "I believe that if all the rest of the virtue and nobility that there is in the world were lost, in you, my good lady, it could be recovered; and since it pleases you thus, so let it be done. It is necessary that in your service and at my request, Master Elisabad, although it may work a hardship on him thereby, go to the Emperor of Constantinople with a message from me to the effect that in view of the gracious offer that was given to me by the emperor, and the dissatisfaction, of which many told me when I went to those regions, that he has with the Emperor of Rome, and knowing that the dispute is chiefly with him, I am sure that displaying his usual great virtue, he will give orders that I be aided just as if I had done him great service."

Grasinda said that she considered it a good decision and that in view of the great affection that the master had for him, her order for what might be serving her was unnecessary, and that

such a journey with a message from such a person the latter would consider honor and relief rather than toil. Amadis said to her: "My lady, since your desire is to remain with Oriana, it will be right that just as the other princesses and great ladies, like you, are with her and in her apartment, you be there also and from her receive that honor and courtesy that your great virtue deserves."

And then he gave orders to summon his foster father Don Gandales, and he asked him to go to Oriana and tell her the great desire that that lady had to serve her, and how she was putting it into execution, and to beg Oriana on his behalf to take her with her and to render her that same honor that she was rendering those ladies of highest degree in her company; which was done thus, for Oriana received her with that affection and good will with which she was accustomed to welcome and receive such persons, but not so much for the present service as for the past that she had rendered Amadis in giving him such equipment in order that he might go to Greece; and especially in giving him Master Elisabad, who, after God, as the story has related in the third book, gave life to him and to her, for she would not have been able to live one day after his death, and this was when he healed him of the deep wounds that he acquired when he killed the Endriago.

This having been done thus, after Grasinda gave all the credentials necessary to Master Elisabad in order that he might carry out what is set forth above, and begged and commanded him that knowing what Amadis wanted him to do for him, he execute it in the way a thing of such great importance ought to be executed, the master replied to her that on account of any failure to expose his person to every peril and hardship, he would not fail to carry out what he was commanded to do. Amadis thanked him very heartily for it and at once resolved to write a letter to the Emperor, which read thus:

Letter from Amadis to the Emperor of Constantinople.

Very exalted Emperor: I, that Knight of the Green Sword, who is known by his own name as Amadis of Gaul, am writing to convey to Your Majesty my respects and to recall to Your Majesty's memory that offer that more because of his great virtue

and nobility than on account of my services, he was pleased to make to me; and because now has come the time in which I need chiefly Your Majesty, and all my friends and defenders who may wish to pursue justice and reason, as Master Elisabad will tell Your Majesty in more detail, I beg that credence be given him and that his mission have that effect of help that I with my person and all those who are to protect and follow would place at your service.

The letter having been finished and the detailed accreditation given to the master, as will be evident later, taking leave of Amadis and of his lady Grasinda, he put out to sea to make his journey, which had such a perfect outcome as will be told in due time.

CHAPTER LXXXIX

How amadis sent another message to queen briolanja.

The story says that after Amadis had sent Master Elisabad on his way and housed Grasinda with Princess Oriana, he gave orders to summon Tantiles, the majordomo of the beautiful Queen Briolanja, and said to him: "My good friend, I was wishing that you would take the trouble and care on my behalf that I would take in matters that concerned you, and that is, that considering the point at which my honor is, and how much it can be enhanced with good precaution and preparation, and how it could be discredited by the contrary, you go to your lady, and as one who has seen the whole situation, tell her what is fitting, striving hard to have her order all her soldiery and friends to be prepared for an emergency. And tell her that she knows already that what relates to me is her concern, since if I lose, it is a loss to her service."

Tantiles answered thus: "Sir, just as you command I shall do at once; and you can indeed be certain that nothing could come about in which the queen my lady could take so much pleasure as in the coming of a time when you may recognize the great love and good will that she has to carry out all that you might wish to command involving her and her whole kingdom. And with regard to this, do not worry, for I shall come when it is necessary with that equipment and those requisites that a great lady such as this one should send to the man who, after God, gave her whole kingdom to her."

Amadis thanked him heartily for this, and gave him a letter of accreditation that was sufficient for him as a person who

governed his whole state. He then set out over the sea in a ship that had come there, and did what will be told later. This having been done, Amadis withdrew with Gandalin, and said to him: "My friend Gandalin, you see whether I have need of friends and relatives in this emergent situation in which I have put myself without being able to avoid it; and although I feel great distress at seeing you sent far away from me, reason obliges me to do so. Already you see how it is agreed upon by all these knights that all of our friends be solicited and forewarned so that they can come in time to uphold our honor. And although I am very hopeful that many persons for whom I have done much, as you know, will want to repay the debt to me which they owe, much more hope do I have that King Perion, my father, rightly or wrongly, will support what concerns me. And because you, better than anyone else and most uninhibitedly will tell him that this concerns me so much, and how by wish and intent of everyone, although here there are so many famous knights of high lineage, to me alone do they look as their leader, it will be well that you leave at once to go to him, and that you tell him what you have seen and know to be relevant to the emergent need in which you leave me. And besides the other things, you will tell him how I do not fear any armed force from anywhere in the world, in view of this force of ours, but that it would be unduly hard on him if I, who am his son and the eldest, should not be able to respond to these two princes, were they to come against me, in the same form and manner that they call me to account. And because I understand that you are thoroughly familiar with everything, it will not be necessary for me to tell you more except that before you leave, go and speak with my cousin Mabilia to see whether she has some message for her aunt and Melicia, my sister; and you will see how my lady Oriana is, because although she is reticent with other people, to you alone she will disclose her desires and wishes. And this having been done, you will leave at once with this written letter of accreditation that I give you.

You will say to the king, my lord, that His Highness already knows that since God willed that I be knighted by his hand, my thought has never been to assume any status other than that of knight errant, and as best I could to right the wrongs and injustices done to the many who receive them, especially matrons

and maidens, who ahead of all others should be succored. And for this reason, I have subjected my person to many trials and dangers, without expecting any other recompense for it than serving God and winning glory and fame from the people; and with this wish, when I left his kingdom, I endeavored to travel through foreign lands looking for those who needed my help and defense, seeing what I had not seen before, where I experienced many adventures, as you can certainly tell him if he wishes to find out about it; and that after a long time, on coming to this island I learned that King Lisuarte, not paying any attention to the fear of God, nor to the advice of his subjects, nor to others who, though not his subjects, were solicitous of his honor and desired to serve him; rather with complete cruelty and great discredit to his fame, sought to disinherit Princess Oriana, his daughter, who after he passes away is to be mistress of his dominions, in order to give the inheritance to another, younger daughter, who had no right to have it come to her, by giving Oriana to the Roman emperor as his wife. And since this princess complained to all those who saw her and to the others through her messengers, with much weeping and manifestations of anguish on her part, so that they might take pity on her and not consent to her being disinherited so very unjustly, that just Judge, the Emperor of all things, heard her, and through His willingness and permission many princes and great knights were assembled on this island in order to help her, where I found them when I came, and from them I learned of this very great act of violence that was taking place; and with their assent and counsel it was decided that, since in cases of this kind more than in any others, knights have the obligation to intervene, in this particular case, which was so flagrant, a remedy should be applied, so that what until now with much danger and with great effort on our part we had won, must not be lost in one single case, for reason did not dictate it; because, in view of the magnitude of the case, failure to intervene would be attributed more to cowardice and scant courage than to any other cause. And so it came about that the fleet of the Romans having been destroyed and many persons slain and the rest taken prisoner, this princess, with all her matrons and maidens, was seized by us and rescued. Moreover we have decided to send Don Cuadragante of Ireland and my cousin Brian

de Monjaste to King Lisuarte to persuade him on our behalf to be willing to be reasonable; and that if it be the case that he is not willing to be so, but on the contrary, wishes to be harsh, there will be need of my father's assistance primarily — and afterwards that of all those who are our friends — an assistance which I beg him to have ready with as many troops as can be obtained, for when they are called for. And pay my respects to my lady the queen, and ask her to order my sister Melicia sent here so that she may keep Oriana company, and so that her nobility and great beauty be to many as well known by sight, as they are by reputation."

This done, he said to him: "Prepare to go in whatever one of those ships that you find best equipped, and take along someone to guide you, and speak with my cousin Mabilia before you leave, as I said."

Gandalin told him that he would do so.

Agrajes spoke with Gandales, foster father of Amadis, telling him to leave for Scotland and go to the king, his father, and with the latter the task of writing could indeed be avoided, because Gandales was so faithful to him and had been for so long, and was so trustworthy in all matters, that he was considered now more as a relative and counsellor than as a vassal; therefore it is to be believed that this knight with complete dedication and diligence would accomplish the purpose of this trip so vital to his former ward Amadis, who was the thing that he loved most in the world; and how he did it will be told later.

CHAPTER XC

How Don Cuadragante talked with his nephew Landin, and told him to go to Ireland and speak with the queen, the former's niece, so that she might afford an opportunity to some of her vassals to come and serve him.

Don Cuadragante spoke with Landin, his nephew, who was a very good knight, and he said to him: "Beloved nephew, it is necessary that as speedily as possible you leave here and reach Ireland, and speak with the queen, my niece, without King Cildadan's knowing anything about it; because, in view of what he has sworn and has promised King Lisuarte, it would not be right that he be told anything about this. And tell her the situation in which I am placed, and that although here there are many knights of high degree, from me because of who I am and of the lineage from which I come, much is expected and counted on, as you, nephew, see. And tell her Majesty that I earnestly beg her to afford to those of her vassals who want to come and serve me an opportunity to do so; and that she believe that the revolt is here so great that from such situations it often results that states and seigniories are overthrown, so that vassals are left as lords and lords as vassals; and for this reason may she not hesitate to order this which I beg of her, and thus with those of the latter category whom you may be able to recruit, as well as those from among my vassals and friends, make ready a fleet — the largest possible — and with it you will stand ready for when you see my summons."

Landin responded to him that with the help of God he would employ such care that he would be satisfied, and that much of Don Cuadragante's valor and greatness would be made manifest.

With this he bade him farewell, and in one of those ships that they took from the Romans he put out to sea, and what he achieved from this journey will be told later.

Don Bruneo of Bonamar spoke with Lasindo, his squire, directing him to leave at once and go to his father the Marquis and Branfil, his brother, with his letter, and that he should speak very earnestly with his brother, and on his behalf beg him that without involving himself in any other matter he should endeavor to gather together as many fighting men as he could, and ships for them, and that he not leave there until he saw his order. And furthermore, he said to him: "Lasindo, my good friend, although you see here so many knights of high repute, you must really believe that most of this action belongs to Amadis; therefore whether I have reason to help him, laying aside the great affection that he has for me, which greatly obligates me to give him help, you already know, for he is a brother of my lady Melicia and he is the one whom she loves and esteems more than anyone else in her family. Well, if he were my enemy I would have no recourse but to be obedient to his will and mandate because this would be in obedience to her service and will; then the opposite being true, in that he is the man whom I love most in the world, with even more dedication and volition I must prepare to support his honor and status, especially in this matter, in which no one is more involved than I, or more concerned. All of this, my good friend, leaving aside the matter of my lady, you can discuss with my father and with my brother, because it will constrain them to fulfill what very rightly ought to be fulfilled as an obligation to my honor; although as far as Branfil, my brother, is concerned, I am sure that he would rather be here and have participated in what has happened than win a great dominion, because by temperament and desire he is more inclined to win knightly glory and fame than to other things of the kind that other men who look to worldly pleasures more than to virtue desire."

Lasindo said to him: "Sir, as far as I am concerned, it is not necessary to tell me more than what I know is necessary. I trust in God that from there we shall bring you equipment such that your lady may be very well served and your status much more greatly honored."

Whereupon he left in another ship, and what he did the story will relate when it is time; for this Lasindo was a very good squire and of great lineage, and he was going forth with complete dedication and good will; and he so carried out his mission that much to his own honor in the negotiation he greatly increased the aid to Amadis.

CHAPTER XCI

How Amadis sent a message to the king of Bohemia.

As for Amadis, as the one who had such a great responsibility on his shoulders, especially with reference to his lady, his thoughts were ever intent on providing what was needed; hence he resolved to send Isanjo, a very honorable knight of very great discretion, whom he found to be governor on the Firm Island at the time that he won it, an office which had come down to him from his ancestors, as the second Book of this story relates in greater detail. And withdrawing with him, he said: "My good lord and noble friend, knowing your virtue and good sense, and the desire you always have had ever since you knew me to protect my honor, and that which I have to reward you for it when the opportunity should arise, I have decided to involve you in a little toil, because in view of the one to whom I am sending you, only a messenger such as you is requisite; and this task is that you are to go at once to King Tafinor of Bohemia with a letter of mine, plus the letter of acceditation that will be sent to you — whereby in full detail you will inform him about this situation that is shaping up, and how much trust and hope I have in his favor. And I trust in God that from your embassy great benefit will accrue to us because he is a very noble king, and with great love and affection he put himself at my disposal at the time that I left his court."

Isanjo responded and said: "Sir, for much more than what may constitute serving you my will is ready, for I consider this journey an honor rather than as hardship or toil. And insofar as I am concerned, you can be sure, my lord, that in this matter as in everything else that may be an enhancement of your status,

I must involve myself even to the point of death. And therefore, lord, it is only necessary that the requisite documents be prepared, for my departure will be whenever you consider it good."

Amadis thanked him for it with great affection, recognizing from the willingness with which he answered him that good will should not be less appreciated than good deeds, because the latter derive from the former, which is their foundation. Then with this agreement Amadis wrote a letter to the king, which read as follows: "Noble King Tafinor of Bohemia, if at the time that I was at your court as a knight errant, I rendered you any service, I consider myself very well repaid for it, in view of the honors and benefits that I have received not only from you but from all your people. And if I now send a message to presume upon your kindness by asking for help in my need, it is while having in mind only your noble desires and great virtue which in that short time that I was at your court, I saw ready to pursue every just cause consistent with complete virtue and good conscience; and as for this knight who on my behalf will set forth in greater detail the situation which is developing, I ask for him, after sending word that credence be given him, that his mission have that effect which one sent to me on your behalf would have."

The letter having been finished and the credential dictated, Isanjo had a ship made ready, and departed at once as he was ordered; and one can very well say that his journey was well worth while in view of the troops that this good king sent to Amadis, as will be told later.

CHAPTER XCII

About how Gandalin talked with Mabilia and with Oriana, and what they directed him to tell Amadis.

The story relates that these messengers having left, as you have heard, Gandalin was in great distress because of his eagerness to go where his lord had commanded him, because he had ordered him not to leave until he had seen Amadis's cousin Mabilia. He went at once to Oriana's apartments, where no man could enter without her special command, and they were in that tower that you have already heard about, which was guarded and kept safe only by matrons and maidens. And on reaching the garden gate he told them to tell Mabilia that Gandalin was there, that he was leaving for Gaul and that he wanted to see her before departing. This having been made known to Mabilia, she told Oriana, and when she heard it she was quite pleased, and gave orders that he enter. And when he arrived where Oriana was, he knelt before her and kissed her hands. And then he went to Mabilia to tell her what his lord had commanded him. Mabilia said to Oriana so audibly that everybody heard it: "Lady, Gandalin is leaving for Gaul. See whether you have any messages for him to transmit to the queen and to my cousin Melicia."

Oriana told her that she was pleased to send word by him, and she came to where they were, apart from all the others, and said to him: "Alas, friend Gandalin! What do you think of my ill fortune? For the thing that I most desired in the world was to be in a place where I could never have your lord out of my sight; and to think that my luck should have placed me in his power under circumstances of such a nature, that I dare

not see him without his honor and mine being greatly discredited! You may well believe that my wretched heart thereby suffers such great agitation that if you experienced it, you would have great pity for me. And in order that he may become aware of this, not only for his consolation but also in order to absolve me from blame, you will tell him to devise a way whereby he and all those knights may come to see me; and he will seek a means by which I may be able to talk with him in the presence of everyone without anyone's hearing what is going on. And this will be with your departure as a pretext."

Gandalin said to her: "Oh, lady! How right you are to keep in mind the remedy that this knight needs, for on this trip that we took I have had such a hard time in order to keep him alive! If I were able to tell it, much greater sorrow and anguish would your heart suffer than what it actually does; for it is certain, my lady, that the great exploits at arms that in those foreign lands he achieved and took part in, which were so great and so many as not only to be impossible for anyone else to imagine, let alone perform, did not put his life in one one-thousandth as much jeopardy as his memory of you and his being away from you placed him. And because speaking about this is quite futile since it is unending, there only remains to be said to you, lady, to have pity on him and comfort him; since according to what I have seen and truly believe, your life rests on his."

Oriana said to him: "My good friend, you may say that with great truth; for without him I would not be able or willing to live, for life to me would be much more painful and grievous than death. And let us not speak any more of this; but go at once to him and tell him my message."

"Thus it will be done and carried out, my lady."

With this he took leave of them and went to his lord. But before he did so Oriana commanded him in the presence of those ladies who were there not to leave until she had him given a letter for Queen Elisena and another for her daughter Melicia; and he said that he would obey, and he begged her to send him promptly on his way, because all the other messengers had already gone, and only he remained.

So he took his leave and went to Amadis, and told him everything that Oriana had said to him, and his reply, and how

she sent a message to order him and all those lords to go and see her under some pretext, because she wished to speak to him. Amadis, when he heard this, remained for a while in thought, and then said to him: "Do you know how that can best be done? Speak with my cousin Agrajes and tell him that while you were speaking with Mabilia to ascertain whether she had some message to send to Gaul, she told you that it seemed to her that it would be well for him to contrive some way with all these lords who are here as to how they might go to see and encourage Oriana, because in view of the seriousness of the situation in which she was — so unusual for her — her seeing them and their encouragement were necessary for her, and besides whatever you may see that it will be necessary to tell her, and by this means what she commands will be done much better."

And then he said to him: "Tell me, how did my lady appear to you? Is she sad at seeing herself in this situation?"

Gandalin said to him: "Already, sir, you know her great good sense, and how in her can appear only the virtue of her noble heart; but certainly it seems to me that her appearance indicates sadness rather than happiness."

Amadis lifted his hands heavenward and said: "Oh, very powerful Lord! May it please you to give me an opportunity to be able to afford a remedy befitting the honor and service of this lady, and may my death or my life ensue as Fortune may direct."

Gandalin said to him: "Lord, do not be dismayed; for just as in other things, God has always done more for you and has furthered your honor more than that of any other knight, so in this which you have undertaken so rightly and justly He will do so."

So Gandalin left Amadis, and went to Agrajes and told him all that his lord commanded and what he saw was most befitting. Agrajes said to him: "My friend Gandalin, it is quite right that it be done just as my sister orders, and it will be carried out at once; for if until now it has not been done, the only reason is the knowledge of these knights that Oriana is disposed to live the most chaste life she can; and it will be well that we go and tell Amadis, my cousin."

And taking him with him, he went to Amadis's quarters and told him what Mabilia his sister had communicated to him, by

Gandalin. He answered, as if he had known nothing, that he would defer to her opinion. Then Agrajes talked with those knights and took measures so that without their knowing that Oriana wanted it, they should go to see and comfort her; he telling them that under such circumstances even the most courageous had need of consolation; which to a greater degree should be given to weak womankind. Everybody considered it a good idea and they were quite pleased with it, and they decided to see her the next afternoon. And so they did; for dressed in very elegant uniforms, and on their well-caparisoned palfreys, and with their swords all adorned with gold plating, they arrived at the apartment where Oriana was; and as all were young and handsome, they presented such a fine appearance that it was wondrous to behold. And Agrajes had already sent word to Oriana that he wished to see her, and she sent for Queen Sardamira and for Grasinda, and for all the princesses and matrons and maidens of high degree who were with her, so that they all might be assembled with her to receive them.

CHAPTER XCIII

How Amadis and Agrajes and all those knights of high rank who were with him went to see and comfort Oriana and those ladies who were with her, and concerning the things that happened.

Those knights, on arriving where Oriana was, all greeted her with great reverence and respect. And afterwards all the other ladies. And she received them with very good will as a lady who was of very noble quality and upbringing. Amadis told Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste to go to Oriana, and he went to Mabilia, and Agrajes to where Olinda was with other ladies, who were matrons, and Don Florestan to Queen Sardamira, and Don Bruneo and Angriote to Grasinda, whom they greatly loved and esteemed, and the other knights to other matrons and maidens, each one to the lady he liked best and from whom he hoped to receive most honor and favor. Thus they were all talking with great enjoyment about matters most agreeable to them.

Then Mabilia took her cousin Amadis by the hand and went to one side of the room with him and said to him, so that all heard it: "Sir, have Gandalin summoned so that in your presence I may tell him what to say to the queen, my aunt, and to Melicia, my cousin, and for that you commission him, since with your message he is going to King Perion in Gaul."

Oriana, when she heard this, said: "Then I also wish him to take my messages to the queen and to her daughter along with yours."

Amadis had Gandalin summoned, who was in the garden with the others who were to travel, for he well knew that they were to

call him. And as soon as he had come he went to the part of the room where Amadis and Mabilia were, and they talked with him a long while. And Mabilia said to Oriana: "Lady, I have concluded my business with Gandalin; see whether you have any word to send by him."

Oriana turned to Queen Sardamira and said to her: "Madam, entertain Don Cuadragante while I go send a message by that squire."

And taking Don Brian de Monjaste by the hand, she went where Mabilia was. And as she reached her, Don Brian de Monjaste said to her, as a man who was very gracious and courteous in everything befitting a knight: "Since I am chosen to be an emissary to your father, I do not wish to be present at a mission dispatched by maidens, for I fear, in view of how artful you ladies are and the wit that you display concerning everything that you desire, that you will involve me in more courtesy than befits what these knights have bidden me to say."

Oriana said to him, laughing very charmingly: "My Lord Don Brian, on that account I brought you here with me, in order that on seeing ours, you may temper somewhat your anger at my father; but I am afraid that your heart is not so subjugated by, or so fond of, the ways of women as to enable them in any wise to deflect or hinder your purpose."

That very beautiful princess said this to him in jest with such wonderful grace because Don Brian, although he was a young man and very handsome, was more given over to arms and palace matters involving knights than to achieving the amorous conquest or the captivation of any woman; although in matters in which women needed his defense and help he was wont to expose his person to every affront and danger in order to enable them to obtain their rights; and he loved them all, and he was very much loved by them all, but he loved no one woman in particular. Don Brian said to her: "My lady, just on that account I wish to betake myself away from you and your flattery, in order not to lose in a short time what I have won during a long period."

And so with everybody laughing, he left Oriana, and returned to where Grasinda was, whom he very much desired to know on account of what he had been told about her.

When Amadis saw himself before his lady, whom he loved so deeply, and whom he had not seen for such a long time, for he did not count seeing her at sea because it had been amid such great confusion and with so many people about, as the third Book has related, his whole flesh and his heart trembled with pleasure on beholding her great beauty, and in his opinion she was more animated than he had expected to find her; and he was so beside himself that he could not say or speak a word, so that Oriana, who did not take her eyes off him, recognized it at once, and went up to him, and took him by the hands under his mantle and squeezed them as a token of great love, just as if she had embraced him. And she said to him: "My true friend above all others, although my fortune has brought me the thing that I desired most in the world, which is to be in your possession, where my eyes as well as my heart might never be separated from you, my great misfortune has willed that it be in such wise that now more than ever it behooves me to avoid contacts with you, in order that this case, so outstanding and so publicized as it will be throughout the world, may be made known to all with that fame that is owed the eminence of my station and the virtue which this eminence obliges me to maintain; and that it may appear that you, my beloved friend, more for the sake of pursuing that nobility for which you always have striven in succoring the distressed and needy who lack help, always upholding right and justice; than that for any other reason you entered upon such a great and outstanding undertaking as this appears at present; because if the principal motive of our love affair were made public, both by those on your side and by your opponents, our love would be judged in diverse ways. And for this reason it is necessary that what with much anxiety and great effort up to now we have concealed, henceforth with those same efforts and even though they might be greater, we maintain. And let us consider our being free as a remedy, taking at any time we prefer what can best satisfy that for which our desires yearn; but let this be for when no other remedy can be found; and so let us endure until it pleases God to bring it to that end that we desire."

Amadis said to her: "Alas, lady, in Heaven's name, let no accounting or excuse be made to me for what concerns my serving you; for I was born into this world only to be yours and to serve

you as long as I have this soul in my body; for in me there is no other desire or other good fortune foretold except to carry out whatever your wish may be. And what I, madam, beg as a reward for my deadly suffering and desires is only that there never be absent from your memory the concern to command me in whatever I may be of service to you; for this will be a large share of the remedy and relief that befits my impassioned heart."

And when Amadis was saying this, Oriana was watching him, and she saw the tears fall from his eyes, so that they were wetting his whole face; and she said to him: "My good friend, I agree with what you say; and it is not new for me to believe that in everything you would do my will, so how I would like to embrace and satisfy yours, that Lord knows from whom nothing is hidden; but it is necessary, as I have said, that for the present restraint be exercised. And in the meantime while He is remedying it, if you desire my love with that insistence with which you have always wanted it, I beg of you that the anxieties and fatigues of your heart be put aside by you; for there can no longer be much delay before in one way or another our secret becomes known, and with peace or with war we are united in the way that we have desired for such a long time. And because we have talked a long while, I wish to return to those knights so that they may not have any suspicion. And you, sir, dry those tears from your eyes as secretly as possible, and stay with Mabilia, for she will tell you some things that you, my lord, do not know — nor until now have I had the opportunity to tell you them — with which your heart will experience much pleasure and happiness."

Then she ordered Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste summoned, and with them she returned to where she had been previously. Amadis remained with Mabilia, and there she told him all about Esplandian, how he was his and Oriana's son and all the things that had happened at his birth as well as during his rearing, and how the maid of Denmark and Durin, her brother, while carrying him to be reared at Miraflores, lost him, and the lioness seized him, and the rearing that the hermit gave him. She related it all to him in great detail, leaving out nothing, just as the third Book of this great story narrates it. When Amadis heard this, he was very happy over it, for he could not have been

more so; and after that great thrill of joy that his heart felt was over, he said to her: "My lady and good cousin, know you that when I was with this very noble matron Grasinda at the time when those knights Angriote de Estravaus and Don Bruneo arrived there by chance, Angriote told me about Esplandian; but he was not able to tell me whose son he was; and then I remembered the letter that you sent to me on this island by my foster father Gandales, in which you informed me that I had increased in family, and I thought, in view of the time that you wrote me, which was the time Angriote mentioned to me, and since it was not known from where or whose son that youth was, that it could be my and Oriana's son; but this was conjecture, and not with any other assurance. But now that I know it for certain, do believe, lady and beloved cousin, that I am happier about it than if I had been made lord of half the world. And this I do not say on account of the youth's being to such an extent so extraordinary, but because he is the son of such a mother; for just as God distinguished her and set her apart in beauty, as well as in all the other fine qualities that a good lady ought to have, from all other women born into this world, so He willed that the things that proceed from her both of sweetness and of bitterness be superlative and set apart from others; for I, as one who tests and senses it through experience, can very well say so. Oh lady cousin, if only I were able to tell you the anguish and great affliction that my wretched heart has undergone during this time that you have not seen me! For without doubt you can believe that in comparison with them, all the dangers and affronts that I experienced in those foreign lands, must be deemed only the fear and fright that one has in dreams, or that which happens in fact and in truth! And God being willing to have pity on me, sought to bring me to the time when I might save her from a great affront and myself from the most grievous death that ever a knight died; whence already my heart, which nowhere up to this hour was finding rest or repose, is secure because the outcome of this business can be only to win her completely to the satisfaction of her desires and mine, or lose my life, whereby all temporal things come to an end for me. And since my good fortune has wished to aid and bring relief to my anxieties, it is quite right that all of us be engaged in remedying hers, for as a person

who has never seen herself in such straits, nor realized what is befalling her, she will not, as I see it, be exempt from very great anxieties; and you, my lady, who in times past have been the greatest protector of her life, at this time counsel her and give her courage, setting forth to her that neither in the sight of God nor that of her father is she responsible for what has happened nor can she rightly be blamed by any person in the world. Then if she fears the great power of her father together with that of the Emperor of Rome, you may, my lady, tell her how so many of us and of such competence are in her service that if I did not fear her anger, I would seek them out in their own realms; and this she may very well be able to see as soon as Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste come back from this trip that they are taking to see her father, from which we shall ascertain whether he wishes peace or we have war. And meanwhile, keep me advised concerning what she enjoys most and is most helpful to her, so that it may be carried out according to her wishes."

Mabilia said to him: "My lord, if I tried to tell you what I have endured since you left this land, in order to comfort and relieve her anguish and sorrows, especially after the Romans came to her father's court, I would never be through. And therefore, and because you understand completely the great love she has for you, I shall cease talking to you about it. And what you, my lord, command, I continue to carry out, although she has become so much more discreet that not only in matters familiar to her because of her upbringing — conditioned by the nature and weakness of women — but also of all the other things that to us women are very new and strange, she is cognizant and perceptive with that spirit and courage necessary to her royal rank; and if it is not so with what pertains to you, for that renders her beside herself, in everything else she has what it takes to console the whole world. And of the things in which she will take pleasure, you will be kept informed by me."

With this they concluded their conversation, and returned to where Oriana was. Gandalin bade them farewell, and went and put out to sea in order to go to Gaul. We shall tell about him in due course. After these knights had remained quite a while with Princess Oriana and those ladies who were with her talking

about many very pleasant subjects, and giving them great encouragement as a group, they took leave of them and returned to their own quarters, where very pleasurably and happily they were dwelling, having in great abundance everything they needed, and seeing all the marvels of that island — the like of which could not have been seen in any other part of the world — designed and set up by that great sage Apolidon, who had left them there while he was its lord.

But now the story will cease to speak of them in order to tell about King Lisuarte, who knew nothing of all this.

CHAPTER XCIV

How the news of this annihilation of the Romans and the rescue of Oriana reached King Lisuarte, and what he did about it.

On the day that he handed his daughter over to the Romans, King Lisuarte accompanied her for a short distance out of town, and with much paternal eommiseration offering her consolation to some extent, and at other times with excessive passion dashing her hopes that his resolve could be altered in any way; but the two approaches afforded scant comfort and help, and her sobs and laments were so great that there was not a man in the world that she would not have moved to pity for her. And although the king her father had been in that affair very harsh and very cruel, he could not deny that paternal love that he owed to his very exhausted daughter, and involuntarily the tears came to his eyes; and without saying any more to her, he turned away much sadder than his face revealed; and first he spoke with Salustanquidio and with Brondajel de Roca, insistently charging them to take good care of her. And he returned to his palace, where he found great weeping by men as well as women on account of Oriana's departure, for which the very peremptory order that was given by him to them did not suffice as a remedy, because this princess was more eherished and more beloved by everyone than was any other person in Great Britain.

The king glanced about the palace and did not see any knight he was wont to see, except Brandoyvas, who told him that the queen was in her chamber weeping with great sorrow. He went to her, and did not find in her apartment any of the ladies and

princesses and other maidens by whom she was usually very well attended. And as he saw everything so deserted and changed from what it usually was with respect to knights as well as women, and those who were there with such great sadness, he had such great concern that his heart was shrouded in darkest gloom, so that for a while he did not speak. And he entered the room where the queen was, and when she saw him enter, senseless she fell in a faint on a dais. The king lifted her up and embraced her, holding her in his arms until she revived, and as he saw her now in better condition and more composed, he said to her: "Lady, it does not befit your prudence and virtue to show such weakness on account of any adversity, much less for this situation in which so much honor and advantage is received; and if you wish to hold my love and favor, let it cease so that this be the last of it, for your daughter is not going so bereft that she cannot be deemed the greatest princess that there ever was in her family."

The queen could not make any reply to him, but just as she was, she let herself fall face downward on a bed, sighing out of the great anguish of her heart.

The king left her and returned to his palace, where he found no one with whom to talk except King Arban of North Wales and Don Grumedan, who showed in their gestures and faces the sadness that they had in their hearts; and although the king was very discreet and patient, and knew how to conceal everything better than anyone else, he could not control himself so well as not to reveal clearly in his gestures and speech the grief that he had in secret. And immediately he thought that it would be a good idea to betake himself away to the forest with his huntsmen until time had a chance to heal what for the present had no good remedy. And he gave orders to King Arban to have tents brought to the forest and all the equipment needed for the chase, because he wanted to go hunting the next morning without delay. And thus it was done; for that night he did not seek to sleep in the queen's chamber so as not to occasion more suffering for her than she had endured already. And next day after hearing mass, he went on his hunt, on which, since he found himself alone, his sadness and meditation rendered him much more disturbed, so that nowhere did he find rest; for as this man was a king so noble, so gracious, desirous of possessing the best knights that he could

have, as already he had had them, and with them had come to him all the honors and good fortune and luck commensurate with his desires, and now in such a short space of time to see everything changed and so much to the contrary of that to which he was accustomed and which his nature desired, his discretion and strong heart did not have enough strength to prevent his being subjected many times to great anguish. But as often happens, when Fortune begins to order her changes, she is not content with the anger that men feel of their own volition, but she with great cruelty desiring to augment and increase it, pursuant to her habit, which is not to be consistent in anything, there where this king was, sought to demonstrate it; so that forgetting that sorrow, which in her opinion he had acquired for such slight cause and so willingly, he might suffer from another harsher blow of which he was unaware; for some of the Romans who had fled from the Firm Island having come, and knowing that the king was there, they went to him and told him all that had happened to them — just as the story has related it, for nothing was omitted — as men who had been present at all of it.

When the king heard this, although his grief was very great, since it was for a happening to which he was so unaccustomed and which concerned him so much, with a good countenance, not showing any sorrow, after the manner of kings, he said to them: "Friends, I am very sorry about the death of Salustanquidio and your loss, for with regard to what concerns me, I am accustomed to receiving affronts and giving them to others. And do not depart from my court, for I shall order that you be given help concerning everything that you need."

They kissed his hands and asked him as a boon to remember the other men, their companions, and those lords who were taken prisoner with them. He said to them: "Friends, I wish you to have no fear, for the situation will be remedied as befits your lord's honor and my own."

And he ordered them to go to the town, where the queen was, and that they should say nothing about that matter until he came; and they did as he bade them. The king went hunting for three days, filled with an anxiety that you can understand; and then he returned to where the queen was, and in the opinion of everybody with a happy countenance, although at heart he

felt as he should feel in such a situation. And after dismounting he went to the queen's chamber. And as she was one of the noble and wise women of the world, in order not to incite him to more outbursts of anger, seeing that thereby her desire was furthered but little, she pretended to him that her grief was greatly alleviated. So the king on his arrival gave orders for everyone to leave the room, and sitting down with her on her dais, he said to her: "In matters of little importance that come by chance, people have some right and freedom to display anger and melancholy, because just as they arise from a trivial cause, so with a small remedy they can be easily obviated. But in those very grave situations that are quite distressing, especially in matters of honor, it is quite the contrary, because for situations of this kind the gravity will be slight and will so appear, and the harsh measures and vengeance very great. And, to be specific, you, queen, have greatly missed your daughter, as is the way of mothers, and in this matter you have displayed much sorrow, just as over such marriages many other people are wont to do. But I am on record as saying that in a short time it would have been forgotten; but what ensues from this is such that without excessive anger being evinced, with great diligence and courage amends for the situation are to be sought. Know you then that the Romans who carried away your daughter, with all their fleet have been crushingly defeated and taken prisoner, and many of them killed along with their prince Salustanquidio, and she with all her ladies and maidens in waiting taken by Amadis and the knights who are on the Firm Island, where they hold her very victoriously and with great pleasure; so that it may well be said that such a stupendous thing as this has never before happened within the memory of man. And therefore it is necessary that you with great discretion, as a woman, and I with great courage as a king and knight, apply the remedy that rather by action than by superfluous regrets befits your decorum and my honor."

This having been heard by the queen, she remained silent a while without making any reply. And as she was one of the matrons who, more than anyone else in the world, loved her husband, she thought to herself that in a matter such as this, and with such men, it was more necessary to impose harmony than to enkindle discord; and she said: "Sire, although you take

deeply to heart what has happened and what you know concerning your daughter, if you judge it by harking back to that time when you were a knight errant, you will think, in view of the lamentations and grief of Oriana and all her maidens, and the great length of time that they persisted in it, whence cause was given for its being widely publicized, that since it was a subject of conversation for everyone, although it wasn't a very great act of violence, one should not be surprised that those knights, as men who have no other life style except to succor matrons and maidens when they receive some wrong and injury, should have dared to do what they have done. And although, sire, she was your daughter, you already have handed her over to those who on behalf of the Emperor came for her; and the violence or injury concerns him more than you, and now at the outset it ought to be taken with the kind of moderation whereby you may not seem to be the object of this affront, for if it is done otherwise, it will be hard to conceal the fact."

The king said to her: "Now, lady, remember, as I have said, what befits your own decorum, for in what concerns me, with the help of God the amends will be taken that He requires for the eminence of your status and mine."

Thereupon he left her and went away to his palace. And he ordered King Arban of North Wales summoned and Don Grumedan, and Guilan the Pensive, who was already recovering from his illness. And withdrawing with them, he told them the whole business about his daughter, and about his interview with the queen, because these three were the knights, out of all those of his kingdom, in whom he had most trust. And he begged and commanded them to think earnestly about it and to tell him their opinions, so that he might take measures most befitting his honor, and that for the moment, without more deliberation, he did not wish them to make any reply to him.

Thus the king remained deliberating for several days concerning what he ought to do. The queen remained greatly concerned and distressed on seeing the intransigency of the king her husband and his maintenance of it against those who she knew would rather lose their lives than one jot of their honor, which likewise she expected of the king. So that no affronts that might have come to him, however great they were, as this story

has told you, did she consider as amounting to anything in comparison with this one.

Then while she was in her chamber mentally reviewing many endless schemes for achieving a remedy for such a rupture, a maiden entered who told her that Durin, the brother of the maid of Denmark, had arrived there from the Firm Island, and that he wished to speak with her. The queen gave orders for him to enter, and he knelt and kissed her hands, and gave her a letter from Oriana, her daughter, for it appeared that when Oriana saw the determination of the knights of the Firm Island, which was to send Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste to the king her father with the message that you have already heard, she decided that it would be well, in order to facilitate their mission, that before they had arrived at the court of the king her father, to write and send a letter to the queen her mother by this Durin; and so she did. Then when the queen received the letter, tears came to her eyes out of longing for her daughter, and because she could not recover her unless God through His mercy should help, without great danger and affront to the king her lord. And so she remained silent for a while, for she could not say anything to Durin, and before she questioned him further, she opened the letter to read it, and it read as follows:

CHAPTER XCV

CONCERNING THE LETTER THAT PRINCESS ORIANA SENT TO QUEEN BRISENA, HER MOTHER, FROM THE FIRM ISLAND, WHERE SHE WAS.

"Most mighty Queen Brisena, my lady mother, I, sad and unfortunate Oriana, your daughter, with great humility, beg to kiss your feet and hands. My good lady, you already know how my adverse fortune, wishing to be more adverse and inimical to me than to any other woman there ever was or ever will be, without my deserving it brought it about that I was banished from your presence and dominion with such great cruelty by the king, my lord and father, and with so much pain and anguish for my sad heart that I myself wonder how it can maintain life for a single day. For my great ill fortune not content with what happened first, on seeing how I was disposed to fulfill in cruel death the obedience that rightly or otherwise I owe to the king, my father, rather than disobey his command, has sought to give me a remedy much more cruel for me than the suffering and sad life that in the first instance I expected to have; because if I died, it would be merely the death of a sad maiden, for whom in view of her great misfortune, death would be much more befitting and pleasant than life. But from what is now expected, if, after God, you, lady, taking pity on me, do not achieve a remedy, not only I but also many other people who have no guilt, with very cruel and harsh deaths will end their lives. And the cause of it is that, either by permission of God, who knows the great injustice and injury that is being done me, or because my ill fortune, as I have said, has willed it, the knights who were on the Firm Island destroyed the fleet of the Romans with wholesale death and imprisonment for

those who sought to defend themselves. I was taken with all my matrons and maidens and carried to that same island, where they hold me, and I am treated with as much reverence and decorum as if I were in your royal court. And because they are sending to the king, my lord and father, certain knights with peace as an objective if some way for it were proposed in what relates to me, I decided that before they arrived there to write this letter, by means of which and on account of the many tears that with it were shed, and without it, are being shed, I beg your great nobility and virtue to ask the king my father to have pity and compassion for me, by having higher regard for the service of God than for the perishable glory and honor of this world, and that he not seek to put in jeopardy the high estate in which, with great favor until now, fickle Fortune has placed him here; for he, better than anyone else, knows the great violence and injustice that, without my deserving it, has been done me."

Having finished reading the letter, the queen gave orders to Durin not to leave without her reply, because it was necessary to speak first with the king. And he said that he would do just as she commanded, and he told her that all the princesses and ladies and maidens who were with their lady sent their respectful regards to her. The queen sent to request the king to come alone to her chamber because she wanted to speak with him; and he did so. And when they were alone in the room, the queen knelt before him weeping, and said to him: "Lord, read this letter that your daughter Oriana has sent to me, and have pity on her and on me."

The king raised her by the hands, and took the letter and read it, and in order to give her some satisfaction said to her: "Queen, since Oriana writes here that those knights are being sent to me, it may possibly be a mission such that with it the dishonor received may receive amends; and if it be not so, consider that it is better that my honor be upheld with some danger than that my reputation be discredited without it."

And begging her earnestly that, leaving everything to God, in whose hand and according to whose will it was, she cease to agonize, he left her forthwith and returned to his palace. The queen ordered Durin summoned and said to him: "Friend Durin, go and tell my daughter that until those knights come, as she

writes in her letter, and the mission that they bring be known, there is nothing that I can reply to her, nor is the king her father able to make up his mind; and that once they have arrived, if a way to harmony can be found, I shall strive for it with all my might. And give her my love, and the same to all her ladies and maidens, and tell her that it is now time for her to show of what stuff she is made, the most important element in her reputation, for without this, she would have nothing valuable or estimable left; and the other element by enduring the anguish and sorrows as a person of such high degree; for just as God gives estates and great dominions to people, so their anguish and cares are very different in degree from those of persons who are of lowest social status; and that I entrust her to God, that He may protect her and bring her back with great honor into my keeping."

Durin kissed her hands and started out on his return trip; of which no more will be said, because from this journey he brought back no word of agreement, nor did Oriana as a result of the reply of the queen, her mother, remain hopeful of what she desired.

The story relates that when King Lisuarte one day was in his palace about to dine with his nobles, a squire entered the door and gave the king a letter, which was one of accreditation; and the king took it, and on reading it said to him: "Friend, what do you want and whose man are you?"

"Sire," said he, "I am from Don Cuadragante of Ireland, for I come to you with his message."

"Then say what you wish," said the king, "for I shall listen to you gladly."

The squire said: "Sire, Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste have arrived in your kingdom from the Firm Island with a message from Amadis of Gaul and the princes and knights who are with him. And before they entered your court they wished you to know about it; because, if they can come before you under a safe conduct, they will state to you their mission; and if not, they will proclaim it broadcast through the land and return to where they came from. Therefore, sire, give me your reply as to what your pleasure will be, so that they not tarry."

This having been heard by the king, he remained for a while without saying anything, which every great lord ought to do in order to afford himself an opportunity for reflection. And consider-

ing that from enemy missions there always results more advantage than disadvantage, beeause if what they bring is helpful, great lords accept it; and if to the eontrary, they derive important information. And also because to refuse to hear one's opponents shows seant tolerance, he said to the squire: "Friend, tell those knights that with eomplete security while they are in my kingdom, they can come to my court, and that I will listen to all that they wish to say to me."

With this the messenger returned. The king's reply now having been aseertained, Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste left the ship, clad in very splendid armor, and on the third day they reached the town when the king had just finished dining. And as they went through the streets, all observed them elosely, for they were well known; and people said to one another: "Cursed be the traitors who with their false meddling caused our lord, the king, to lose sueh knights and many others of great valor!"

But others, who knew more about how it had all happened, attributed all the blame to the king, who chose to subordinate his prudence to envious scandalmongers. Thus they went through the town until they arrived at the palaee; and having entered the courtyard, they dismounted from their horses and entered where the king was, and they greeted him very courteously, and he received them with good will. And Don Cuadragante said to him: "It is fitting that great princes hear with all passion renouneed and put aside the messengers who come to them beeause if the mission that they bring to them satisfies them they ought to be very glad to have received it graeiously; and if to the contrary, they ought to apply the remedy with strong wills and stout hearts rather than with peevish responses. And it is required of messengers to say with deeorum what is entrusted to them, without fear of any danger that may eome to them from so doing. Our coming to you, King Lisuarte, is by order and request of Amadis of Gaul and many other great knights who are on the Firm Island, who make known to you that while traveling through foreign lands seeking dangerous adventures, taking the just ones upon themselves and punishing the unjust, just as the greatness of their virtue and strong hearts require, they learned from many people how you, more for the sake of following your own whim

rather than reason and justice, not heeding the great admonishments of the grandees of your realm or the many tears of humbler folk, or remembering in good conscience what is owed to God, sought to disinherit your daughter Oriana, successor to your realm after your life is over, in favor of your younger daughter; and Oriana amid much weeping and very disconsolate grief, without any pity you handed over to the Romans, giving her as wife to the Emperor of Rome against all right and without consent, not only without hers but that of all your subjects. And as such matters as these stand out in the sight of God, and He is the one to remedy them, He has been willing to permit, this matter having become known to us, that we should apply the remedy to a situation in which such great wrong was being done to His service. And so our action was taken, not with the wish or intention to do harm, but to do away with great unjust violence, from which intention we could not desist without great shame, for the Romans who were carrying her off having been overcome, she was taken by us and carried, with the great respect and reverence that befitted her nobility and high estate, to the Firm Island, where we have left her accompanied by many noble ladies and great knights. And because our purpose was only to serve God and uphold the right, those lords and great knights decided to request of you that in what relates to that noble princess, you be willing to provide some way whereby, stopping the great injury and well-recognized violence, she may be reinstated in your affection with the firmness that is necessary to truth and good conscience. And if perchance you, king, feel some resentment at us, let it await the proper time, for it would not be right to associate what is true concerning that princess with what is doubtful with regard to us."

The king, after Don Cuadragante had finished his speech, replied in this wise: "Knights, because excessive words and harsh replies do not entail virtue, or make weak hearts strong, my reply will be brief and with more patience than your quest deserves. You have carried out what, in your judgment, is most satisfying to your honor, with more excessive arrogance than extraordinary force, because it ought not to be accounted great glory to waylay and conquer those who are traveling unsuspectingly in complete security, not bearing in mind that since I am God's lieutenant, to

Him and to no one else, am I obliged to give an accounting of what is done by me. And after the satisfaction for this is exacted, one will be able to speak about the action that is requested by you; and because everything else will be fruitless, any argument is unnecessary."

Don Brian de Monjaste said to him: "Nor for us is anything else necessary except that, since now we know your will and the accounting that we owe to God for what has taken place, both the parties to the dispute put into execution what most befits their honor."

And having been dismissed by the king, they mounted their horses and rode away from the palace; and Don Grumedan with them, whom the king ordered to guard them until they left the town. When Don Grumedan saw himself with them away from the presence of the king, he said to them: "My good lords, I regret very much what I see, for I, knowing the great prudence of the king and the nobility of Amadis and of all of you, and the many friends that you have here, had great hope that this irksome matter would have some good outcome; and it seems to me that since quite the contrary is true, now more than ever I see it endangered, until our Lord be pleased to impose that harmony that is needed. Therefore I earnestly beg you to tell me how Amadis fares at such a time on the Firm Island, for it has been a long while since any news of him has been had, although many of his friends have searched for him with great zeal through foreign lands."

Don Brian de Monjaste said to him: "My lord Don Grumedan, about what you say of the king and of us, since you deem him so wise, it will not be necessary to give you a very long commentary, except that the great violence that the king did his daughter is well known, as is the reason why we were obliged to take her; and certainly, leaving aside his anger and ours, we would have been pleased if some compromise had been arrived at in what concerns Princess Oriana and him. But since he is still pleased to proceed against us with great severity, more so than with a just cause, he will see that extricating himself from the situation will be harder for him than his initial involvement appears to him to be. And as for what, my good lord, you ask concerning Amadis, you shall learn that until he went forth from

this court, calling himself the Greek Knight — and took with him that matron on account of whom the Romans were defeated and the maidens' coronet won — none of us had ever learned any news about him."

"Holy Mary, save us!" said Don Grumedan. "What are you telling me? Is it true that the Greek Knight who came here was Amadis?"

"It is true beyond any doubt," said Don Brian.

"Now I tell you," said Don Grumedan, "that I consider myself a man of poor discernment, for I really should have thought that a knight who performed such rare deeds at arms against all the others must have been none other than he. Now I ask you, the two knights whom he left here to help me in the battle that I had scheduled with the Romans, who were they?"

Don Brian said to him, laughing: "Your friends Angriote de Estravaus and Don Bruneo de Bonamar."

"Thank God," said he, "for if I had recognized them I would not have been so fearful concerning my combat as I was; and now I know that I won in it very little glory, since with such helpers I would not have rated very highly the defeat of twice their number."

"So help me God!" said Don Cuadragante, "I believe that if it had been judged by your courage, you alone would have been enough for them."

"Sir," said Don Grumedan, "whatever I may be, I have a great deal of esteem and good will for you all, if only it should please God to give some good ending for this matter about which you come."

Thus they continued to talk until they left the town and for a bit beyond. And when Don Grumedan was about to bid them farewell, they saw coming from hunting the handsome youth Esplandian and Ambor, son of Angriote de Estravaus, with him; and Esplandian was carrying a hawk, and was riding a very beautiful and richly caparisoned palfrey that Queen Brisena had given him. And he was wearing fine garb, for on account of his very unusual good looks as well as because of what Urganda the Unknown had written about him to King Lisuarte, as the third Book of this story relates in greater detail, the king and the queen ordered him to be completely provided with whatever he needed.

And when he eame up to where they were, he greeted them, and they him. And Brian de Monjaste asked Don Grumedan who that very handsome youth was, and he said to him: "My lord, he is ealled Esplandian, and was reared under extraordinary circumstanees, and very great things concerning his future Urganda predieted to the king in a letter."

"So help me God," said Don Cuadragante. "There on the Firm Island we have heard mueh about this youth; and it will be well for you to call him, and we shall listen to what he says."

Then Don Grumedan ealled him, for he had already passed by, and said: "Good youth, turn baek, and you shall send regards to the Greek Knight, who treated you so courteously in giving you the Romans that he was about to kill."

Then Esplandian returned and said: "My lord, I would be very happy to know where I eould send them to that very noble knight, as you request and he deserves."

"These knights are going to where he is," said Don Grumedan.

"He tells you the truth," said Don Cuadragante; "for we shall bear your message to the one who used to eall himself the Greek Knight, and who now is called Amadis."

"What, sirs! Is this the Amadis of whose great deeds of ehivalry everyone speaks so highly and who is so outstanding among all?"

"Yes, eertainly," said Don Cuadragante, "this is he."

"I tell you truly," said Esplandian, "one ought to value highly his great valor, since so famous is he among so many good knights. And the envy people have of him does not embolden many to beeome his equal; since no less ought he to be praised for his great eircumspection and eourtesy; for although I eaught him in great fury and anger, he did not fail because of this to do me great honor, for he gave me those knights whom he had overeome, from whom he had received great provocation, for which I am very grateful to him. And may it please God to bring me to a time that with as mueh honor as he did me, I may repay him for it to that same extent."

Those knights were very happy with what they heard him say, and they eonsidered his very handsome looks quite unusual, as well as what Don Grumedan had told them about him, and espeeially, the graee and diseretion with whieh he spoke with

them. And Don Brian de Monjaste said to him: "Good youth, may God make you a good man just as he has made you handsome."

"Many thanks," said he, "for what you say to me; but if He has some blessing in store for me, I should like it now in order to serve the king, my lord, who has so great a need of the service of his subjects. And, sirs, God be with you; for it has been quite a while since I left the town."

And Don Grumedan took leave of them, and went with him, and the other two went and boarded their ship to return to the Firm Island. But now the story ceases to speak of them, and returns to King Lisuarte.

CHAPTER XCVI

ABOUT HOW KING LISUARTE ASKED KING ARBAN OF NORTH WALES AND GUILAN THE PENSIVE FOR ADVICE, AND WHAT THEY REPLIED TO HIM.

After those knights left King Lisuarte he gave orders to summon King Arban of North Wales, and Don Grumedan and Guilan the Pensive, and he said to them: "Friends, you already know the situation in whieh I am placed by these knights from the Firm Island, and the great discredit that I have receivcd from them; and certainly, if I did not obtain satisfaetion in such a way that that great pride that they have might be broken, I would not eonsider myself a king, nor would I think that anyone else would consider me as sueh. And in order to give that aceounting of myself that prudent men should give, which is to conduet their affairs with much counseling and deliberation, I wish, as I had said to you, that you tell me your opinion, so that coneerning the matter I may decide what best serves my interest."

King Arban, who was a good knight and very prudent, and who was a great supporter of the king's honor, said to him: "Lord, these knights and I have refleeted and discussed a great deal, as you have eommanded us to do, in order to give you the best adviee that our judgment may aehieve; and we find that, since it is your will not to come to any agreement with those knights, one should seek with great diligence and mueh discretion the preparation by whieh they may be brought to book and their madness restrained; for we, sire, on the one hand, see that the knights who are on the Firm Island are many and very powerful at arms, as you know, beeause already, through the goodness of God, all of them were in your service for a long time. And besides their own

strength and valor, we are assured that they have sent to many places for great assistance, which we believe they will find, because they are of noble lineage, being sons and brothers of kings and of other great men, and by their own efforts they have won many other friends. And so when forces from many places come, a great host is quickly assembled. And on the other hand, sire, we see your house and court greatly stripped of knights, more than at any time that we remember, and the greatness of your estate has led to involving you in many enmities which now will reveal their ill-will towards you, for many infamies of this kind are wont to be revealed by emergencies that in prosperity are suspended and silenced. And for these reasons as well as for many others that could be mentioned, it would be well that your servants and friends be called upon and that it be ascertained of what value they are to you; and especially the Emperor of Rome, whom this concerns more than you, as the queen has said to you. And once the strength available to you has been determined, sire, you can be accordingly harsh, or take the course it affords you."

The king considered himself well advised and said that was the way he wished to do it. And he ordered Don Guilan to assume the responsibility of being his messenger to the emperor, for such a mission befitted such a knight as he. He answered: "Sire, in this and much more my will stands ready to serve you. And may it please God through His mercy that just as I desire, it may be carried out to the enhancement of your honor and high estate; and may its dispatch be quick, for your order will be executed at once."

The king said to him: "With you, only a message of accreditation will be necessary, and it is this: that you tell the emperor that he of his own free will sent to me Salustanquidio and Brondajel of Roca, his chief majordomo, along with a sufficiency of other knights, to ask for my daughter Oriana's hand in marriage; that in order to satisfy him and to acquire him as a relative, against the wishes of all of my subjects, who considered her their future liege lady in the event of my death, I arranged to send her to him; although with great pity on my part, and much grief and anguish on her mother's at seeing her taken away from us into lands so foreign; and that she having been received by your men along with her ladies and maidens, and they having sailed on the

sea beyond the limits of my kingdom, Amadis of Gaul with other knights his friends sallied forth with another fleet from the Firm Island, and that all the emperor's forces having been annihilated and Salustanquidio killed, my daughter was taken by them along with all those men who remained alive, and carried away to the same island, where they hold her, and that they have sent their messengers to me, by whom they offer me some agreements; but that I, recognizing that this affair concerns him more than me, have not wanted to come to any agreement with them until I inform him concerning what has happened; and that he be advised that what I would be most satisfied with, is that there where they hold her they be besieged by us in such fashion that we give the whole world to understand that we as great princes have punished them as thieves and pirates for this very great insult that concerns us so greatly. And beyond this, tell him whatever you think best in this matter; and if he is in agreement, tell him to take action at once, because injuries always grow when the amends that should be made for them are delayed."

Don Guilan said to him: "Sire, all will be done as you command, and may it please God that my journey have the effect embodied in my desire to serve you."

And taking a letter certifying to his credibility, he departed and put out to sea; and what he accomplished the story will tell later.

This done, the king ordered Brandoyvas summoned and commanded him to go to Don Galvanes in the Island of Mongaza so that the latter might come to him at once with all the forces of the island; and he commanded Brandoyvas to go from there to King Cildadan in Ireland and tell him likewise, and to contrive that he come with the largest war-waging force that he could assemble to wherever he ascertained King Lisuarte to be. And likewise he commanded Filispinel to go to Gasquilan, King of Suesa, and tell him the situation in which he was; and that since he was such a famous knight and took such delight in striving to accomplish heroic feats, now he had the opportunity to demonstrate the strength and daring of his heart. And thus he sent word to many others of his friends, allies and servants, and to his entire realm to be prepared for action by the time that these messengers

returned. And he gave orders to look everywhere for many horses and arms in order to put as many troops on horseback as he could.

But now we shall drop this subject, for nothing more will be said about it until the proper time, in order to tell what Arcalaus the Enchanter did. The story relates that when Arcalaus the Enchanter was in his castle, hoping always to perform some evil deed, according to his custom and that of evil men, there came to him the sensational news of the discord and open rupture that existed between King Lisuarte and Amadis; and whether from it he took pleasure, it is needless to say, for these were the two men whom he hated most in the world, and never from his thoughts and concern did he exclude reflection on how he might be the cause of their destruction. And he thought that in such a situation as this he might be able to bring it about that he could do them harm, for he could not find it in his heart to aid either one of them. And as in all misdeeds he was very subtle, he decided to try to assemble another, third army, not only of the enemies of King Lisuarte, but also of Amadis's, and to place them in a location such that if the adversaries had a battle, very easily those on his side would be able to overcome and destroy those who survived. And with this resolve and desire he mounted his horse, taking with him the servants he needed, and went his way, both by land and by sea, to King Arabigo, who had emerged so battered from the battle that he and the other six kings his companions had with King Lisuarte, as the third Book of this story relates, because of the great harm and disgrace that he had received from Amadis and his relatives. And when Arcalaus arrived, he said to him: "Oh, King Arabigo! if you have that courage and strength that is requisite for the greatness of your royal estate, and that discretion which you must have to govern it, that contrary Fortune which in times past was so unfriendly to you, with much repentance for it wishes to make such amends that with a double victory, the great discrediting of your honor may be expunged, a victory for which, if you are wise, you will recognize that the means is in your hands. You, King, shall know that while I was in my castle greatly preoccupied in pondering your defeat and in seeking a way whereby it might be offset — because from the enhancement of your royal estate there accrues to me, as your servant, a very great benefit — I learned

through a very reliable report that your great enemies and mine, King Lisuarte and Amadis of Gaul, are arrayed against each other in complete and extreme rupture, and for a reason of such nature that no remedy or solution is expected nor can there be any, except great battling and strife culminating in the utter defeat of one of them, and perchance of both. And if you are willing to take my advice, it is certain that not only will it be a reparation for the defeat that you had in the past because of me, but also your estate will be enhanced by many more seigniories, and afterwards by all those of us who wish to serve you."

King Arabigo, when he heard this, and saw Arcalaus arriving from such distant lands and in such haste, said: "Friend Arcalaus, the great length of your journey and the fatigue of your person impel me to consider your coming important and to believe all that you may say to me; and I wish that what you are saying be explained to me in detail because never on account of adverse times will my wish cease to be attentive to what befits my high rank."

Then Arcalaus said to him: "You shall know, King, that the Emperor of Rome, being desirous of taking a wife, sent word to King Lisuarte that he should give him his daughter Oriana; and the king on beholding his high rank, although this princess is his rightful heiress to Great Britain, was disposed to give her to him, and handed her over to a first cousin of that same emperor, called Salustanquidio, a very powerful prince. And as he was transporting her by sea with a great company of Romans, Amadis of Gaul with many knights who are his friends intercepted them. And this prince having been killed and his entire fleet destroyed, and many others of those whom they found in it taken prisoner or killed, Oriana was abducted, and taken in charge and carried to the Firm Island, where they hold her. The discredit that comes from this to King Lisuarte and to the emperor you can already recognize. And I want you to know that this Amadis of whom I speak is one of the knights wearing the serpent device who opposed you and the other six kings who were with you in the great battle that you had with King Lisuarte. And this man was the one who wore the golden helmet; and that by virtue of his great prowess and courage, victory was snatched from your hands. So that on account of what I am telling you about, King Lisuarte

on the one hand and Amadis on the other are summoning as many troops as they can; whence rightly it can and should be adduced that the emperor himself, in order to avenge the great grief of his heart and the derogation of his honor, will come in person; so thereby you can judge if there is a battle, what harm from it can befall them. And if you wish to call your companies, I shall give you as a helper Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, son of the other Barsinan whom King Lisuarte caused to be executed in London; and I shall give you moreover the whole great group of relatives of the good knight Dardan the Haughty, whom Amadis slew at Windsor, which will be a great company of very good knights. And likewise I shall have the King of the Deep Island come, who with you escaped from the battle. And with all this armed force we shall be able to put ourselves in such a location, to which I shall be the guide, that a battle between them having taken place, you will have both the victors and the vanquished at your mercy without any danger to your own troops. Then, what can result from this except that, besides your winning such a great victory, all Great Britain will be under your rule, and your royal estate placed at a higher pinnacle than that of any emperor in the world? Now, consider, mighty king, whether for such small effort and danger you wish to lose such great glory and dominion."

When King Arabigo heard this, he was very happy and said to him: "My friend Arcalaus, this is a great affair that you have told me about, and however unwilling I am to tempt Fortune further, it would be great madness to forego things that very reasonably bid fair to yield great honor and profit; because if they come out as one expects, and reason itself guides them, men receive that fruit that their effort deserves. And if it comes out for them to the contrary, they do that to which out of virtue they are obligated, by giving the accounting of their honor that ought to be given, not considering their past misfortunes so important that they fail to attempt their remedy when the opportunity presents itself, without those past misfortunes keeping them overwhelmed, downcast, and dishonored all the days of their lives. And since that is the way it is, do not worry about what my responsibility will be concerning my troops and friends; for the rest of it make provision with that dedication and diligence that you see necessary for such an action."

Arcalaus, having obtained the king's promise, left for Sansuenia, and spoke with Barsinan, reminding him of the death of his father and that of his brother Gandalod, the one whom Don Guilan the Pensive had overcome and brought as a prisoner to King Lisuarte, who ordered him flung down from a tower, at the foot of which his father had been burned to death. And furthermore he told him how at that time he had had plans made for his father to be King of Great Britain, that he had been holding King Lisuarte and his daughter prisoners, and how by that traitorous Amadis he had been completely thwarted; that now he had the opportunity not only to take vengeance at will upon his enemies, but also that great realm that his father had failed to obtain he now had the opportunity to acquire; and that he should take courage, for without it, great things can seldom be achieved, and that if Fortune had been so adverse to his father, repenting of it, she would be willing to requite him for injury received. And furthermore he told him that King Arabigo was making ready with all his resources because he saw the enterprise so certain of victory that it could in no wise fail, and he told him about all the other assistance of which he had assurance for this affair, and many other things as a man who always had carried on such activities and had become a past master of evil deeds.

As Barsinan was a very haughty young man, and in wickedness resembled his father, with but slight pressure and effort he induced him to comply with everything he sought; and very belligerently and with excessive conceit Barsinan replied that with complete dedication and willingness he would take part in this expedition, taking with him most of the fighting men from within his realm and all those from without who might wish to follow him. Arcalaus, when he heard these statements, was happy at the way he was encountering support for the fulfillment of his desires; and he told him that everything should be made ready immediately in expectation of his summons, for it was quite necessary to attend to this matter with diligence.

And from there he went very speedily and with a joyful heart to the king of Deep Island, and had a very long talk with him. And so much did he tell him and such arguments did he present to him that the same as he had the others, he caused him to be

persuaded to make ready all his troops very methodically, as a man who was under such necessity to do so.

This having been done, he returned to his own land and spoke with the relatives of Dardan the Haughty, inasmuch as he believed that great advantage would come from such talking to everyone; and as secretly as he could he made compacts with them, telling them of the great preparations he had under way. So he awaited the proper time to carry out the plan about which you have heard.

But now the story speaks no more of him until it is time, and it returns to the narration of what happened to Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste after they left the court of King Lisuarte.

CHAPTER XCVII

How Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste with ill fortune lost their way at sea; and how by chance they encountered Queen Briolanja, and what happened to them while in her company.

Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste after they left Don Grumedan, as the story has related, went their way until they reached the port where they had their ship, which they boarded to go to the Firm Island with the reply that they were bringing from King Lisuarte. And all that day the sea was very tranquil with a fair wind for their voyage; but night having come, the sea began to swell so unfortunately and so violently that they thought they would be completely wrecked and drowned. And the storm was so great that the sailors lost their bearings, until then maintained, amid such confusion that the ship was proceeding out of control over the sea; and thus quite fearful they traveled all night, for in such a situation neither arms nor stout hearts suffice. And when the dawn of day appeared, and the sailors were able to get their bearings better, they found that they were very near the kingdom of Sobradisa, where the very beautiful Queen Briolanja was the sovereign. And at that hour the sea began to be becalmed, and as they were endeavoring to resume their proper course, although they would be turning back for a very great distance, they saw coming on their left an extraordinarily large ship. And as their own vessel was very swift, so that it could not receive any harm from the other, even if it were that of an enemy, they decided to wait for it; and as they came closer and viewed it more at will, it seemed to them the most beautiful they

had ever seen, in size as well as in luxurious equipment, for the sails and ropes were all of silk, and it was decorated, all that was visible of it, with very costly hangings. And at its rail they saw very splendidly attired knights and maidens chatting. Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste were greatly amazed to see it, and could not imagine what might be on board. And at once they ordered one of their squires to go in a small boat and find out whose large ship that was, and who was aboard it. The squire did so, and on asking those knights to be kind enough to tell him, they answered that Queen Briolanja was on board, that she was going to the Firm Island.

"Thank God," said the squire, "with such good news, those who sent me here will be greatly pleased."

"Good squire," said the maidens, "tell us, if you please, who are these men you mention?"

"Ladies," said he, "they are two knights who are pursuing the same course as you, and the hazards of navigation have brought them hither; where, in view of what they are encountering, it will be a great respite for their travail. And because they will reveal their identity to you as soon as I return, it is not necessary to ascertain anything from me."

With what you hear he returned and said to them: "Sirs, you should be greatly pleased with the news that I bring, and the recent storm and the roundabout course should be deemed well worthwhile, since you have such company for going to your destination. Be advised that on the ship is Queen Briolanja, who is going to the Firm Island."

Those two knights were greatly overjoyed at what the squire told them, and immediately gave orders to steer their own craft to the ship. And when they were nearer, the maidens recognized them, for once before they had seen them at the court of King Lisuarte, when the queen, their lady, was there for some time; and they went very happily to tell their lady that two knights, good friends of Amadis, were there and that one was Don Cuadragante and the other Don Brian de Monjaste. The queen, when she heard this was very happy, and with the matrons she had with her came out of her stateroom in order to receive them; for Tantiles, her majordomo, had told her how he had left them on the Firm Island as they were departing to go to King

Lisuarte. And when she came out, they were already on board the ship, and they went to kiss her hands, but she did not wish it; instead she put an arm around each one and thus with great pleasure held them briefly in her embrace; and as soon as they arose, she embraced them again and said to them: "My good lords and friends, I am very thankful to God because I have encountered you, for nothing could have happened to me at this time to afford me more pleasure, unless it were to see Amadís of Gaúl, the man whom so rightly and logically I should esteem, as you know."

"My good lady," said Don Cuadragante, "it would be a great injustice were it not as you say; and for the pleasure that you have with us, may God thank you, and we shall serve you in whatever you command."

"Many thanks," said she. "Now tell me how it is that you have come close to this land."

They told her how they had left the Firm Island with a message from those lords who were there for King Lisuarte, and all that they had experienced with him, and how they remained in complete rupture without any agreement, for nothing was omitted; and that when they sought to return, the great storm of the previous night had thrown them off course to that place where they considered their fatigue and travail well worthwhile since on that course they were being enabled to serve and protect her until they escorted her to her destination. The queen said to them: "Indeed I have not been very secure, nor have I been without great fear of the storm you mention, for I certainly never thought that we would be able to weather it; but as this ship of mine is very heavy and large, and its anchors and ropes very stout, it pleased the will of God that ill-fortune was never able to break or dislodge them. And in this matter of King Lisuarte that you mention to me, I learned from my majordomo Tantiles that you were going to him on this mission, and indeed I said to myself that since this man is so strong a king whom Fortune has favored and exalted so completely in all respects, deeming very serious what happened to Oriana, he will seek to test and prove his might rather than arrange for any peace treaty. And for this reason I agreed to call together my whole kingdom and all my friends who are outside of it; and with much insistence to

beg and command them to be ready and equipped for war against the time they see my letter. And I am leaving everyone with great good will to serve me, and my majordomo with them to direct and bring them. And meanwhile I thought that it would be well for me to go to the Firm Island to be with Princess Oriana and experience with her whatever danger God may have in store for her. This is the reason why you find me here, and I am very happy that we shall be going together."

"My lady," said Don Brian de Monjaste, "from such a lady and one so beautiful as you, one expects only complete virtue and nobility, just as you exemplify."

The queen asked them to have their ship come alongside hers and requested that they travel with her; and so it was done, for they were lodged in a very elegant stateroom, and they regularly ate with her at her table, while conversing on topics they preferred.

So just as I am telling, they went their way over the sea toward the Firm Island. Now at this juncture be advised that at the time that Abiseos, uncle of this queen, was killed together with his two sons — in revenge for his having slain his brother the king, Briolanja's father, whose kingdom he had seized — by Amadis and Agrajes, as the first Book of this story relates in more detail, there remained another younger son of his, whom a knight, who was his faithful subject, was rearing. This youth was now a very robust and strong knight in view of his showing in the great confrontations in which he had been involved. And as until then he had been very young, he thought only — nor did discretion afford him opportunity to do otherwise — of having recourse to arms, rather than of striving for what was worthwhile. And as he was now of age he had some of his father's vassals who had fled, who reminded him of the death of his father and his brothers; and alleging that that kingdom of Sobradisa by right was his, and that that queen was keeping it from him by force; and that if he was as courageous for the correction of a matter so incumbent upon him to correct as for other things, with but little effort he would be able to recoup that great loss and be a great lord, by returning now to the kingdom, or desiring such advantage as honorably, being the son of a king, he might be able to utilize. So this knight, whose name was Trion, since

he was desirous of ruling, kept thinking about these things that those vassals of his father were telling him, and awaiting a suitable opportunity for the realization of his desire. And as he now learned about this very great discord that existed between King Lisuarte and Amadis, he thought that Amadis would have so much to do in that situation that he would have no memory of the other. And that even if he did recall it, in view of his embroilment with such grandees, his forces would not suffice for wholesale rescue operations; for this knight was the major obstacle that he was encountering, since he knew of the departure of Queen Briolanja and how poorly escorted she was, for in her whole ship she carried less than twenty men at arms, none of them very effective.

Immediately he sallied forth from a castle left to him by his father Abiseos, the only possession of which Abiseos was lord when he killed the king, his brother, and he went to a house of his friends; and not telling them the occasion for it, he gathered some fifty men well armed and some crossbowmen and archers. And equipping two ships, he put out to sea, his intention being to seize the queen and to profit greatly thereby, and if he saw an opportunity, to take the whole kingdom from her. And knowing the course she was taking, one afternoon he came into view ahead of her without any suspicion concerning him having been conceived; and as from afar those on the ship saw those two vessels, they spoke about it to the queen, and Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste came out at once to the ship's rail; and these men who were present saw that they were coming directly toward them, and they armed themselves and they gave heed only to maintaining their course, and so the others, who were approaching, came so near that they could easily hear each other, whatever they might be saying.

Then Trion said in a loud voice: "Knights who travel in that ship, tell Queen Briolanja that Trion her cousin is here, who wishes to speak to her, and that he orders her men not to defend themselves; otherwise, not one of them will escape being killed."

When the queen heard this, she became very fearful and terrified, and said: "Sirs, this is the greatest enemy that I have; and since now he ventures to do this, it is not without great incitement and a heavy force."

Don Cuadragante said to her: "My good lady, do not be afraid, for please God very quickly he will be punished for his madness."

Then he ordered a man to tell him that if he was willing to enter alone the queen's presence she would gladly receive him. And he said: "Since that is the way it is, I will see her, in spite of her and of all of you."

Then he ordered a knight, a ward of his father's, with the one vessel to attack the ship on the other side and to try to board it, and he did so. When Don Brian de Monjaste saw them withdraw, he told Don Cuadragante to take what he pleased of their forces and guard one side, and that he with the remainder would defend the other, and so they did; for Don Cuadragante remained at the side where Trion wanted to fight, and Brian de Monjaste at that of the other knight. Don Cuadragante ordered his men to stay in front and he remained as concealed as he could behind them; and he told them that if Trion should try to come on board, not to stop him.

The affair being at this point, the ship was attacked from both sides very strongly, because those who were fighting were quite convinced that she had no defense or danger for them; for they knew nothing about the two knights from the Firm Island. And when they arrived, Trion, out of his great arrogance and his desire to finish his project, on arriving leaped unsuspectingly onto the ship, and the queen's forces began to retreat in accordance with their orders. Don Cuadragante, when he saw him on board, advanced through the midst of his men; and since he was very large of body, as the story has told you in Book II, when Trion saw him, he well recognized that he was not of those whom he knew about; but on that account he did not lose courage; instead he went at him with great daring, and they gave each other such mighty blows on top of their helmets that sparks flew from them and from the swords. But as Don Cuadragante was of greater strength and was striking him at will, Trion was so overwhelmed by the blows that his sword fell from his hand, and he went to his knees on the deck, and Don Cuadragante looked around and saw that his adversaries were boarding the ship as fast as they could, and he said to his men: "Take this knight."

Then he went over to the others, and he gave the first one that he found in front of him such a heavy blow on top of the head that he was too far gone for medical help. The others when they saw their lord taken prisoner and that knight killed, and the strong blows that Don Cuadragante was giving to one and all, tried as hard as they could to return to their ship. And with the pressure that Don Cuadragante and his men were putting on them, some saved themselves, and others died in the water; so that in a short time they were all overcome and ejected from their vessel, which Don Cuadragante's forces now held as their own. Then he glanced at the other side where Brian was fighting and saw that he was aboard the other vessel with his foes, and that he was wreaking great havoc on them; and he dispatched some of the men he had that they might go and help him, and he remained with the others awaiting his enemies, should they wish to attack. And with this help that reached Brian and with those men he had, very quickly they were all overcome; because that knight, their captain, was killed there and they saw that Trion's ship was withdrawing as conquered. Then those who were alive were asking for mercy; and Don Brian gave orders that none was to be killed, since they were not resisting. And so it came about that they took them prisoners and seized the vessel.

Queen Briolanja during all of the confusion remained within her stateroom with all her ladies and maidens, all of them praying to God on bended knees to protect them from that danger, and to protect those knights who were helping and defending her. While they were thus engaged, one of her men came and said: "Lady, come outside and you will see that Trion is taken prisoner and all his company battered and disrupted, for these knights from the Firm Island have performed great wonders at arms, which no one else would have been able to do."

When the queen heard this, she was as happy as you can well imagine; and she raised her hands and said: "Almighty Lord God, bless you that at such a time and by such good fortune you brought to me these knights, for from Amadis and his friends only good luck can come to me."

And having left her room, she saw that her men were holding Trion prisoner and that Don Cuadragante was on guard lest the

foes approach to fight; and she saw that Don Brian de Monjaste's men were in possession of the vessel that he had won. And she came up to Don Cuadragante and said to him: "My lord, I give great thanks to God and to you for what you have done for me, for I was indeed in great danger with regard to my person and my kingdom."

He said to her: "My good lady, you see your enemy here; give orders that punishment be meted out to him."

Trion, when he heard this, was not sure of his life; and knelt before the queen and said: "Lady, I ask you for mercy that I may not die; keep in mind your great self-restraint and that I am of your blood; and if I have vexed you at any time, I shall be able to compensate by serving you."

As the queen was very noble, she took pity on him and said: "Trion, not for what you deserve, but more on account of what pertains to me, I assure you of your life until with these knights I look into the matter further. And I order that he be put into his room under guard."

At this juncture, Don Brian de Monjaste came to the queen and she went and embraced him; and she said to him: "My good lord, how are you?"

He said to her: "Lady, very well and very happy to have had such good fortune as to be able to be of some service to you. I have a wound, but thank God, it is not dangerous."

Then he showed his shield, and they saw that an arrow had penetrated it and part of the arm on which he was holding it. The queen with her own beautiful hands removed it as gently as she could, and she helped him to disarm, and his wound was given treatment as many other times his more serious wounds had been treated; for his squires, as well as those of all other knights errant, always went well supplied with the things that were urgently needed for wounds. All were very happy about that good fortune that had come about for them; and when they sought to go after Trion's vessel, they saw that it was far away, and they gave up their attempt. And they hoisted their sails and went their way straight to the Firm Island without any obstacle arising for them.

It happened then that at the hour that they reached the port, Amadis and most of the lords were disporting themselves by

riding their palfreys about over a fertile plain that lay at the foot of the slope leading up to the castle, as they were frequently accustomed to do. And when they saw those ships arriving in the harbor, they went down there to find out whose they were; and on reaching the sea, they found the squires of Don Cuadragante and those of Don Brian de Monjaste, who were coming ashore in a small boat and were going to notify them of their arrival and that of Queen Briolanja, so that they might come out to meet them. And when they saw Amadis and those knights, they told them the message of their lords, with which they were very happy; and everyone reached the shore as did the others from the ship; they greeted each other with much laughter and great joy. And Don Brian de Monjaste said to them: "What do you think about our coming back here richer than when we left? You have not done so; all you have done is to stay locked up like wastrels."

Everybody began to laugh and they told him that, since he came so proud, to show them the profit he had made. Then they lowered a rather large boat, and the queen and both of them got into it in addition to other men who rowed them to shore. And all those knights dismounted from their palfreys and went to kiss the queen's hands, but she did not want to yield them; instead she embraced them very affectionately. Amadis came up to her and sought to kiss her hands; but when she saw him she enfolded him in her very beautiful arms and held him so for a while, for she would not let him go, and the tears came into her eyes and rolled down her very beautiful cheeks out of the pleasure that she experienced in seeing him; because since the battle that King Lisuarte had had with King Cildadan, when she saw him at Fenusa, that town where the king was, she had not seen him. And although now she was no longer thinking of marrying him, and entertained no hope of it, he was the knight that she loved most in the world, and for whom she would rather put herself and her realm in danger than do him any injury. And when she released him she could not speak, so moved was she by great joy.

Amadis said to her: "Lady, I give many thanks to God, who has brought me to where I could see you, for I have greatly desired to do so, and now more than at any other time, because at the sight of you these knights will be afforded great joy, and

much more you will afford your good friend Princess Oriana, for I believe that no person could have come to her who would give her as much happiness as you, my good lady."

She responded, saying: "My good lord, on that account I left my kingdom, principally to see you, which was the thing I most desired in the world to do; and God knows the anxiety that until now I have had in spending so long a time without being able to ascertain any news of you, although I have tried hard. And now when my majordomo told me of your arrival and gave me your letter, at once I decided, leaving everything for which you asked in readiness, to come to you and to this lady you mention, because now is the time that her friends and servants should demonstrate the desire and love that they have for her. But if it had not been for God and these knights, who by great luck joined me, I could have experienced great danger to my person on this voyage; which they as the ones who saved the situation by their great efforts, will tell about; and let it be for when there is more time."

After the queen came ashore, all her ladies and maidens and knights followed, and the beasts that they had on board were brought off, and for the queen a palfrey, very well caparisoned, as befitted such a lady. And all mounted and went on to the castle where Oriana was; who, when she learned of their arrival, manifested such pleasure as was wondrous to behold; and she requested Mabilia and Grasinda and the other princesses to go out to the entrance to the garden to receive her, and she remained with Queen Sardamira in the tower. When Queen Sardamira saw the pleasure that all were evincing at the news that was brought to them, she said to Oriana: "My lady, who is this woman who is coming, who has given so much pleasure to everyone?"

Oriana said to her: "She is a queen, the most beautiful one, not only in appearance but also by reputation, that I know of in the world, as now you will see for yourself."

When Queen Briolanja reached the garden gate and saw so many well attired ladies, she was quite astonished, and she experienced the greatest delight in the world at having come there. And turning to those knights, she said to them: "My good

lords, God be with you, for those ladies free me from wanting your company any longer."

And laughing very engagingly, she had herself helped to dismount and joined them, and at once the gate was closed. They all came to her and greeted her with much courtesy. And Grasinda marvelled greatly at her beauty and consummate grace. And if she had not seen Oriana, for the latter had no equal, she certainly would have believed that there was no woman in the world so good looking as she. Then they took her to the tower where Oriana was, and when they saw one another they went toward each other with outstretched arms and embraced very lovingly. Oriana took her by the hand and brought her to Queen Sardamira, and said to her: "My lady queen, speak to Queen Sardamira and do her great honor, for she well deserves it."

And she did so, for with great courtesy they greeted each other, each one of them respecting the royal prerogatives of the other; and taking Oriana between them, they seated themselves on her dais with all the other ladies surrounding them. Oriana said to Queen Briolanja: "My good lady, it is very courteous of you to come to see me from such a distant land, and I thank you for it very much, because such a journey could only have been made out of superabundant love."

"My lady," said the queen, "with great ignorance and a great deficiency in politeness I should be charged if at this period in which you are, I did not make known to the whole world the good wishes I have for your honor and for the improvement of your situation; especially since this is the main responsibility of Amadis of Gaul, whom I esteem and to whom I owe so much, as you, my lady, know. And when I ascertained from Tantiles that he was here, I immediately ordered my whole kingdom made ready to come for whatever he may command; and it seemed to me that meanwhile I ought to make this journey in order to bear you company or see him, whom I greatly desired to see more than any other person in this world, and to be, my lady, with you until your problem is settled, and may it please our Lord that it be according to your desires."

"So may it please Him," said Oriana, "out of His holy pity; and I have hope that Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de

Monjaste will be bringing back some agreement made with my father."

Briolanja, who knew the fact that they were not bringing any, did not wish to tell her so. So they remained conversing for a long while about matters that afforded them most pleasure. And when it was the supper hour, the maid of Denmark said to Oriana: "Remember, lady, that the queen has been traveling and will wish to sup and rest, and it is already time for you to go to your apartment; and take her with you, since she is your guest."

Oriana asked her if all was in readiness. She said that it was. Then Oriana took Queen Briolanja by the hand and took leave of Queen Sardamira and Grasinda, who went to their apartments, and she went with her to her chamber, showing her great affection. And as soon as they arrived there, Briolanja asked who that very well dressed, beautiful matron was who was beside Queen Sardamira. Mabilia told her that her name was Grasinda and that she was very noble and very rich, and she told her the reason why she had come to the court of King Lisuarte, and the great honor that there Amadis had caused her to win, and the honor that she had done him when she was unaware of his identity. And she related in great detail all that Grasinda had experienced with Amadis, for whom she had such great affection, when he was calling himself the Knight of the Green Sword, and how he was on the verge of death when he killed the Endriago, and a physician whom this matron had given him, the best physician that could be found far and wide, restored him to health; all this she told her with nothing left out.

When the queen heard this, she said: "Wretched woman that I am, why did I not know of it before, for she came up to speak to me, and I passed her by very rudely. But amends will be made; for even if her merit had not deserved it, only for having done so much honor with such benefit, I am greatly obligated to honor her and afford her pleasure all the days of my life; because, after God, I have no other help for my troubles, nor for the contentment of my heart except this knight; and after supper have her summoned because I wish her to make my acquaintance."

Oriana said: "Queen, my friend, you are not the only one who ought to honor her for this reason, for here you see me who, if it had not been for that knight you have mentioned, would be today

the most distracted and hapless woman ever born, because having been rejected as heiress to the realm of which God had made me suzerain, I would be in a foreign land with such loneliness that there would have been nothing left for me but death. And as you probably have ascertained, this noble knight, helper and benefactor of the persecuted, without his being motivated by anything except his splendid virtue, has involved himself in what you are witnessing in order that my rights may be protected."

"My lady and friend," said the queen, "let us not talk about Amadis, because he was born only for such things; for just as God distinguished him and set him apart from everyone else in the world for his great strength, likewise did He will that he be so in all the other good qualities and virtues."

Then seated at the table they were served many and diverse viands, as befitted such distinguished princesses, and they talked of many things that were to their liking. And after they had dined, they told the maid of Denmark to go for Grasinda and tell her that the queen wished to speak with her. The maiden did so, and Grasinda came with her at once; and when she entered where they were, Queen Briolanja went and embraced her, and said to her: "My good friend, pardon me, for I did not know who you were when I came here; for if I had known, I would have received you with greater love and affection, because your virtue deserves it; and for the great honor and good help that Amadis received from you, we his friends are greatly obligated to thank you for it, and on my own behalf I say to you that never shall I be in a position to repay you for it that I do not do so, because even if I give it out of my own resources, I give you what is his; for all that I have is his, and as his I consider it."

"My good lady," said Grasinda, "if in any way I did honor to this knight whom you mention, I am as well satisfied and happy about it as ever was any person concerning some one to whom he had afforded pleasure; and for what you say to me, I give greater thanks to your own virtue than to any debt that he may be owing me, for would that it might please God to afford me an opportunity to be of service to him for the excessive repayment he has made me for what he received from me."

Then Mabilia said to her: "My good lady, tell us if you please how you became acquainted with Amadis and for what reason he met with such a good welcome from you, since you did not recognize or know his name."

She told them everything, just as the third Book of this story relates it in more detail. And they laughed a great deal about Brandasidel, the one whom he forced to ride horseback mounted backward, with the tail in his hand. And she told them how she had entertained him in her house for some days, badly wounded, and how before he came to that land she had heard of the very great and rare exploits at arms that he had performed throughout all the islands of Romania and of Germany, where all those who knew about them were astonished at how such very dangerous deeds had been accomplished by a single knight, and of the wrongs and great injuries that he had righted for many matrons and maidens and other persons who had had need of his aid and succor; and how she had recognized him by the dwarf and by the green sword that he carried, distinguishing marks which had provided him with names. And likewise she described to them the whole battle that he had with Don Garadan, and the one he waged subsequently with the other eleven knights, and how on account of overcoming them, he saved the King of Bohemia from a very cruel war with the Emperor of Rome; and many other things she related to them that she had found out about him in those regions, which would take too long to recount; and then she said to them: "On account of these things that I heard about him, and because of what I saw of him in person, I wish you to know, ladies, what happened to me personally. I was so pleased with him and with his great deeds, and as I was for that land quite a great lady and highborn and he was going about in the guise of a poor knight, without my having had any more information concerning him than what I have stated, I considered it a good idea to take him in marriage; and I had thought that if I had him, no queen in the whole world would be my equal. And as I saw him so reserved, and so very pensive and distraught, and knowing the fortitude of his heart, I suspected that that depression came over him only because of some woman whom he loved. And to render myself more certain of it, I spoke with Gandalin, who seemed to me a very sensible

squire, and I asked him about it; and he, recognizing what I was aiming at, on the one hand denied it, and on the other hand gave me to understand that his grief probably was not on account of anything except some woman whom he loved; and I saw indeed that he had told me that in order that I might rid myself of that thought and not proceed further, since it would be fruitless. I was very grateful to him for it, and from that time on I have refrained from thinking any more about it."

Briolanja, when she heard this, glanced laughingly at Oriana, and said to her: "My lady, it seems to me that this knight, through more regions than I thought, goes about disseminating this ailment; and remember what I had said to you on this subject in the castle of Miraflores."

"I well remember it," said Oriana.

This was that Queen Briolanja on going to see Oriana at this castle of Miraflores, as the second Book relates, told her that almost the same thing had happened to her with Amadis.

So about that as of other matters they remained talking until it was bedtime; and Grasinda took leave of them and returned to her own chamber, and they remained in theirs. And for Queen Briolanja they set up in Oriana's room a bed beside hers, because she and Mabilia slept together; and there they lay down to sleep, where that night they lay in repose.

CHAPTER XCVIII

Concerning the message that Don Quadragante and Brian de Monjaste brought from King Lisuarte, and what all the knights and lords who were there decided about it.

The next morning all those noble lords and knights gathered to hear mass and the message that Don Quadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste were bearing from King Lisuarte. And the mass having been heard, all being together there, Don Cuadragante said to them: "Good lords, our message and his reply were so brief that we cannot tell you anything but that you ought to thank God because with much justice and reason, and while winning great glory and fame, you can test the courage of your noble hearts, for King Lisuarte does not wish any measure other than severity."

Whereupon he told them all that had transpired with him, and how they knew for certain that he was sending for aid to the Emperor of Rome and to other friends of his. Agrajes, in whom none of this occasioned regret, although by the mandate and request of Oriana, until then he had become quite moderate, said: "For certain, good lords, I have believed that, according to the state in which this affair rests, it would be very much more difficult to seek security for this princess and for the repute of our honor than aid for this war; and up until now because she begged and implored me very insistently that insofar as I could I cool your anger and my own, I have avoided talking as much as my heart desired. But now that the termination of her hope is known, which was to imagine that measures could be taken for dealing with the king her father, and they are not to be

found, I am free from what I had promised her more for the sake of serving her than of my own volition; and I say, my lords, that insofar as my desire and wish are concerned, I am much happier about what you bring back than if King Lisuarte had agreed to what you asked him on our behalf, because it might have been that, under the pretext of peace and harmony, he might have entered into cunning contracts with us whereby we could have been victims of some deception, because King Lisuarte and the emperor, as powerful men, with little trouble could very quickly have gathered togcther their forces, which we would not have been able to do, inasmuch as our forces have to come from many regions and very distant lands. And although the danger to our persons, because of our being in this very strong fortress, would have been forestalled and rendered nil, while affording us some advantage, the danger to our honor would not have been offset. And for this reason, lords, I consider a declared war better than parleys and a simulated peace, since through the latter, as I have said, more harm could come to us than to them."

They all said that he spoke the truth, and that immediately one ought to take precautions regarding the coming of troops, and to wage battle against them within their own land. Amadis, who was very mistrustful and very fearful lest harmony by some means could be brought about and he would have to hand over his lady; even if her honor and that of all of them were completely assured and protccted, for the desire of his tortured heart would remain in such dire straits out of grief and sadness by reason of his putting her where he would not be able to see her, that it would now be impossible to endure life; when he heard what the messengers were reporting and what his cousin Agrajes said, even if it had made him lord of the whole world it would not have pleased him so much, because no affront or war or travail did he consider as anything in comparison with keeping his lady as he had her; and he said: "Sir cousin, your actions have always been those of a knight, and thus all those who know you deem them; and we who are your blood relatives ought greatly to thank God for having cast among us a knight who in affronts is so careful of his honor, and in matters of advice fosters it with such discretion. And since you, as well as these lords, have

decided on the better course, it will be useless for me to do anything but follow whatever your wish and theirs may be."

Angriote de Estravaus, who was a wise and very valiant knight, and who loved Amadis very faithfully, well recognized that although he did not come forward to speak and was deferring to the will of everyone else, he was well pleased by the rupture; and Angriote attributed this more to his great valor's not being satisfied except by such dangerous confrontations as that was, than to anything else that he knew about him; and he said: "Lords, you should all be pleased with what your messengers have brought back and with what Agrajes has said, because that is what is certain and sure. But aside from what the former and the latter have set forth, I say, sirs, that war is for us much more honorable than peace; and because there are so many things that could be said in favor of this, that saying them would cause you much annoyance, I wish only to remind you that ever since you have been knights, your ambition always has been to seek what was dangerous and of major risk in order that your courage, separately from that of other men, might be inured to it and win that glory desired by many and achieved by very few. Then if this by reason of great insistence and distress of mind is achieved, when at any time in the past have you attained it so completely as at present? For certainly, although in furthering this ambition of yours you may have succored many matrons and maidens, one does not recall that so lofty an ambition of this kind has ever been attained by you or by your forebears, nor even in the future will it be attained until much time has elapsed. And since Fortune has satisfied our desire so completely, bringing it about that, just as our souls in the next world are immortal, our fame may be likewise in this one in which we live, let care be taken that what she offers for us to win, be not lost through our fault and negligence."

Having approved all that these knights had said, and putting into execution their opinion, they decided to send messages at once summoning all the forces on their side, and thereupon they left to dine. And for the moment the story ceases to speak of them and returns to the messengers that they had sent, as has been mentioned and the story has related.

CHAPTER XCIX

How the physician Elisabad arrived in Grasinda's land and from there went to the emperor of Constantinople with Amadis's message, and what he obtained from him.

The story says that Master Elisabad traveled far over the sea until he came to the land of Grasinda, his lady. And there he ordered all the leading grandees of the seigniory summoned, and he showed them the credentials and command that he bore from her, and asked them very insistently to carry out her order at once. And they with great good will replied to him that all of them were ready to put it into execution far better than if she were present. And at once they gave orders that troops of cavalry and crossbowmen and archers and other men of war be recruited, and that many ships should be made ready, and other new ones built. And when the physician saw the good preparation, he left the care of it to a knight, his nephew, a young man named Libeo; and begging him to proceed in the matter with much care, he put out to sea and went to the Emperor of Constantinople. And when he arrived, he went to the palace, and was told that the emperor was conferring with his nobles. The physician entered the room and came up to kiss his hands, kneeling to the floor; and the emperor received him graciously, because he knew him of old and considered him a good man. The physician gave him the letter from Amadis, and as the emperor read it, he was greatly astonished that the Knight of the Green Sword was Amadis, whose acquaintance he had for a long time been desirous of making on account of the extraordinary things that many of those who had seen him had told the emperor concerning him;

and he said to him: "Master, I am quite vexed at you if you knew the name of this knight and did not tell me; because I am ashamed that a man of such high estate and lineage and so famous throughout the whole world should have come to my court and not have received in it the honor that he deserved except only as a knight errant."

The physician said to him: "Sire, I swear by the holy orders I have taken that until he ceased to call himself the Greek Knight and made himself known to my lady Grasinda, and to us all, I never knew that he was Amadis."

"What!" said the emperor. "He called himself the Greek Knight after he was here?"

The physician said: "Then, sire, has not the news reached your court of what he accomplished while calling himself the Greek Knight?"

"Certainly," said the emperor, "I have never heard about it until now."

"Then you will hear great things," said he, "if it please your Grace that they be told."

"I greatly approve of your telling them," said the emperor.

Then the physician related to him how after they had left there, they arrived where his lady Grasinda was, and how on account of the boon that the Knight of the Green Sword had promised her, he escorted her over the sea to Great Britain; and for what reason and how before he arrived there, he ordered that he be called nothing but the Greek Knight; and the battles that he had in the court of King Lisuarte with Salustanquidio and the two other Roman knights who had entered the fight against him on behalf of the maidens, and how he overcame them so easily; and he related the highly insulting remarks that the Romans were making before they entered the battle, and how they told King Lisuarte that he should assign to them that difficult action against the Greek Knight, for after learning that he had to fight with them, he would not dare to await them, because the Greeks feared the Romans like fire. He told him everything, not omitting anything, as one who had witnessed it all. All who were there were greatly astounded at such knightly excellence and very happy about how he had broken the great pride of the Romans to their very great dishonor. The emperor spoke at

length in high praise of him and then said: "Master, now tell me your accreditation, for I shall hear you."

The physician told him all about the matter of King Lisuarte and his daughter, and why she was taken at sea by Amadis and those knights, and the things that the natives of the kingdom had undergone with the king, and of how Oriana had sent everywhere messages of complaint of that great injustice that the king her father had done her with such cruelty by disinheriting her without reason from a kingdom so great and so honored, of which God had made her the heiress; and how not heeding his conscience or exercising any pity, desiring that another younger daughter inherit his realm, he handed her over to the Romans to the accompaniment of great lamenting and sorrow not only by her but by all who saw her; and how at these complaints and great lamentations of that princess there banded together many knights errant of distinguished lineage and of very high exploits at arms, of whom he gave in full the names of the majority; and how they had found Amadis, who had not known anything about this, there on the Firm Island. And there he with them had taken counsel on how this princess might be rescued, and how such a great outrage as that should not take place before their eyes; for if it was true that they were obligated to remedy the outrages perpetrated against matrons and maidens, and for them they had endured up to that time many hardships and dangers, they were obligated even more by that very notorious outrage so obvious to the whole world, and that if they did not aid that lady, not only would they lose the memory of the help and protection that they had given to others, but also they would remain dishonored forever, and it would not be fitting for them to appear where men of integrity were. And he told him how the fleet put out to sea and the great fight they had with the Romans, and how finally the latter were overcome, and Salustanquidio, the emperor's cousin, killed, and Brondajel de Roca and the Duke of Ancona and the Archbishop of Talancia taken prisoner, and the others prisoners or slain; and how they brought that princess with all her ladies and maidens, and also Queen Sardamira, to the Firm Island; and from there they had sent messengers to King Lisuarte requesting and begging him that, ceasing to wreak such great cruelty and injustice upon his daughter, he be willing to return

her to her kingdom without any reprisals; and that under such security measures as in such a situation were proper in the view of other kings, they would send her to him at once with all the spoils and prisoners they had taken. And that what he, Elisabad, on behalf of Amadis was asking of him, the Emperor of Constantinople, was that if it should turn out that King Lisuarte should not be willing to make a just settlement — still persisting in his evil intention and not disposed to withdraw from it, and the Emperor of Rome helping him against them with a great aggregation of troops — for his Grace as one of the chief representatives of God on earth having been left to maintain justice, all the more so since the very great outrage being done this very virtuous princess was so notorious, it would be a very good reason to help her; and beyond this, giving some aid to that noble knight Amadis in order to harass those who might not wish justice would help prevent such great violence and wrong as was being done in that affair; and besides his serving God in the matter and doing what he should, Amadis and all of his family and friends would be obligated to serve him all the days of their lives.

When the emperor had heard all of this, he saw indeed that the situation was grave and one involving great action, not only because of its character, but also because he knew the great excellence of King Lisuarte, and how highly the latter had always regarded his own honor and fame; and also because he was acquainted with the arrogance of the Emperor of Rome, who was more accustomed to pursue his desires than to follow prudence or reason. And he indeed believed that this could not be cured except by a mighty onslaught, and it gave him grave concern; but on considering the great justice that those knights had on their side and how Amadis had come from such a distant land to see him, and he had given him his word, although it had been lightly given and not said in the sense that Amadis took it, he endeavored to consider his own greatness, remembering some arrogant acts that the Emperor of Rome had committed against him in times past; and he answered Master Elisabad, and said to him: "Master, you have told me of great events, and coming from such a good man as you are, what you say can and should be believed; and since mighty Amadis has need of my help, I shall extend it to him so fully that that promise he extracted from

me, although it might seem to some degree lightly given, he may find to be very true and completely fulfilled, as the word of such a highly placed man as I am, and given to such an honorable knight as he is; because never have I made an offer in any matter that in the end I did not make good."

And all those who were there were quite pleased with what the emperor replied, and especially Gastiles, his nephew, the one who, as you have already heard, went with Amadis when he called himself the Knight of the Green Sword, at the time he slew the Endriago. And he immediately knelt before the emperor, his uncle, and said: "Sire, if it may please your Grace and my services should merit it, do me this signal favor: that I be sent in aid of that noble and virtuous knight, who has honored so highly the crown of your empire."

The emperor, when he heard this, said to him: "Good nephew, I grant it to you, and I am pleased that it be so, and from now on I command you and Marquis Saluder to take charge of outfitting a fleet that is such and as excellent as the greatness of my estate requires; because otherwise honor could not accrue to me thereby. And if it is necessary, you and he shall go in it and you will be able to give battle to the Emperor of Rome, as is fitting."

Gastiles kissed his hands and considered it a very great favor on his part. And just as he commanded, so did he and the Marquis carry out his order. When Master Elisabad saw this, you can well imagine the pleasure that he felt. And he said to the emperor: "Sire, for what you have said to me I kiss your hands on behalf of that Knight; and for my being the one who carries back such a message, I kiss your feet; and because for the present I have much left to do, may you be so kind as to give me permission to leave. And if the Emperor of Rome musters his troops for action, for he is a very impetuous man in such matters, and — I repeat — if he does muster them, likewise as a consequence may you order yours summoned so that they may reach at the same time those who expect them."

The emperor said to him: "Master, go you with God, and leave that to me, for if there be an emergency, there you will see who I am and how highly I value Amadis."

So the physician took leave of the emperor and returned to the land of his lady Grasinda.

CHAPTER C

How Gandalin arrived in Gaul and told King Perion what his lord had directed him to say; and the reply that he received.

Know you that Gandalin arrived in Gaul, where with much pleasure he was received on account of the good news that he brought concerning Amadis, of whom they had not had any news for a long time. And immediately he took the king aside and told him all that his lord had directed him to say, just as you have heard. And as this was a king so courageous that he feared no danger, no matter how great it might be, especially if it related to that son who was a shining mirror in all the world, and whom he loved so deeply, he said: "Gandalin, what you tell me on behalf of your lord will be done at once; and if you see him before I do, tell him that I would not consider him a knight if he had allowed that outrage to take place, because to great hearts is vouchsafed such enterprises. And I tell you that if King Lisuarte is not willing to listen to reason, it will be to his own detriment. And bear in mind that I ask you not to say anything about this to my son Galaor, whom I have here very ill, so much so, that many times I have considered him more dead than alive, and even now he is in great danger; nor to his companion Norandel, who has come here to see him, for I shall tell him about it."

Gandalin said to him: "Sire, it shall be done as you command, and I am quite pleased to be warned about him, for I had not given thought to it and might have erred."

"Then go and see him," said the king, "and tell him news of his brother, and be careful that he not perceive at all what you come for."

Gandalin went to the room where Galaor was in such a weak condition and so ill that he was astonished to see him. And when he came in, he knelt to kiss his hands, and Galaor gazed at him and recognized that it was Gandalin, and the tears came to his eyes because of his pleasure, and he said: "My friend Gandalin, be you indeed welcome. What do you tell me of my lord and brother Amadis?"

Gandalin said to him: "Sir, he is healthy and well on the Firm Island, and with a great desire to see you; and he does not know, sir, of your illness, nor did I know about it until my lord the king told me about it, for I came here with Amadis's mandate to inform him and the queen about his arrival there. And when he finds out about the state of your health, he will be very sorry about it, since it concerns the one whom he loves and esteems more highly than anyone else of his lineage."

Norandel, who was there, embraced him and asked him about Amadis, and how he was; and he told him what he had told Don Galaor, and he related to them some of the things that had happened to them on the islands of Romania and in those foreign lands. Norandel said to Don Galaor: "Sir, it is right that with such news as this you take courage and throw off your illness, because we are going to see that knight; for so help me God, he is such that even though it were for nothing except to see him, all those who are worth anything ought to deem of small concern the exertions of their journey, even if it were very long."

While thus they were chatting and Galaor was questioning Gandalin about many things, the king entered, and took Norandel by the hand; and while the others were talking of other things, he took him out of the room. And when they were where Don Galaor could not hear them, the king said to him: "My good friend, it is important for you to go at once to your father the king, because, according to what I have found out, he will need you, and all his vassals. And do not bother with other quests, because I know for certain that he will be very well served by your coming. And of this do not say anything to your friend Don Galaor, because it would cause him to be greatly disturbed, from which much harm might come to him, because of his weakened state."

Norandel said to him: "My lord, from such a good man as you are one ought to take advice without further questioning of its

motive, because I am sure that it will be just as you say; and I shall take leave tonight of Don Galaor, and tomorrow I shall put out to sea, for I have my ship there awaiting me every day."

The king did this in order that Norandel might discharge his obligation to his father, and also that he might not perceive that he was giving orders to prepare his troops and summon his friends.

So that day they were more cheerful concerning Don Galaor because he was happy with the news of his brother. Gandalin told the queen what Amadis begged her to do, and she told him that all would be done in accordance with his message.

"But, Gandalin, my friend," said the queen, "I am very much disturbed at this news, because I understand that my son will be in great anxiety and afterwards in great danger to his person."

"Lady," said Gandalin, "do not fear, for he will have so many troops that neither King Lisuarte nor the Emperor of Rome will dare attack him."

"So may it please God," said the queen.

Night having come, Norandel said to Don Galaor: "My lord, I am resolved to go away, because I see that your illness is a long one, and in order not to take advantage of it, it will probably be better that I devote myself to other matters, because as you know, I have been a knight only a short while, and have not won as much honor as I would need in order to be considered among good knights as a man of some valor, and what I learned about your illness deflected me from a journey on which I had started when I left the court of my father the king, and now I must go to another region, where my presence is needed, and God knows the pain that I feel in my heart at not being able to continue in your company. But, God willing, in this intervening time while I accomplish what I cannot avoid doing, you will have improved in health, and I shall have the obligation to come to you, and we shall go together in quest of a few adventures."

Don Galaor, when he heard this, sighed with great anguish and said to him: "The sorrow that I, my good friend, feel in not being able to go with you, I do not know how to express; but since thus it pleases God, one cannot do anything else. And His will must be done just as He wishes. And may you go commended to God, and in the event that you see the king your father and

lord, kiss his hands for me, and tell him I remain in his service, although more dead than alive, as you, sir, perceive."

Norandel went away to his room, and was very sad on account of the illness of Don Galaor, his faithful friend. And next morning early he heard mass with King Perion, and took leave of the queen and her daughter and of all the ladies and maidens-in-waiting; and the queen commended him to God, as did her daughter and all the other ladies and maidens, as women who loved him deeply; and so he embarked at once on the sea. And here the account merely states that without incident and with good weather he reached Great Britain and went on to where the king his father was, and was by him as well as by everyone else well received, as the good knight that he was.

CHAPTER CI

How lasindo, squire of don bruneo de bonamar, came with the request of his lord to the marquis and to branfil, and what he arranged with them.

Lasindo, squire of Don Bruneo of Bonamar, arrived where the Marquis was, and when he told the request of his lord to him and to Branfil, the latter was so distressed at not having participated with those knights in what had taken place and at not having been a participant in taking possession of Oriana, that he wanted to kill himself. And he knelt before his father and very humbly begged him as a boon to order put into execution what his brother had sent word to ask. The Marquis, since he was a good knight and knew about the great friendship that his sons had with Amadis and with all of his lineage, from which great honor and esteem was accruing to them, said to him: "Son, do not be distressed; for I shall carry it out so completely and I shall send you, if necessary, with such a good company, that it will not be the poorest one there."

Branfil kissed his hands; and immediately orders were given to prepare the fleet and the crews for it, for this Marquis was a very great lord and very wealthy, and had in his realm many good knights and many other well armed men of war.

CHAPTER CII

How Isanjo came with the message of Amadis to the good King of Bohemia, and the great reassurance that he received from him.

Isanjo, the knight from the Firm Island, arrived in the kingdom of Bohemia and gave the letter from Amadis and the letter of accreditation to King Tafinor. No man would be able to describe how pleased the king was when he saw him; and he said: "Knight, may you be welcome, and I am very grateful to God for this message that you bring to me; and from what will be done, you will be able to see with what good will it is received and whether your journey is well employed."

And calling his son Grasandor, he said to him: "Son Grasandor, whether I am obliged to take cognizance of the great assistance and benefits that the Knight of the Green Sword rendered me while he was in my kingdom, you well know; for besides my having been protected by him and the honor of my royal crown enhanced, he freed me from the most cruel and dangerous war that ever a king had, both on account of my having it with a man so powerful as the Emperor of Rome, and because he was inherently so haughty and unreasonable, whence the only outcome to be expected was that you and I would be ruined and destroyed, and perchance finally slain. And that noble knight whom God brought to my court for my well-being restored everything to my honor and that of my kingdom, as you have seen. And so, as a witness of it, I ask you to see this letter that he sends to me, and what this knight has told me on his behalf; and with all diligence to make preparations so that that great benefit that we received from that knight may be requited by us. And know you that this

knight's name is Amadis of Gaul, the one whose very famous exploits are recounted throughout the world. And in order not to be recognized he called himself the Knight of the Green Sword."

Grasandor took the letter and listened to what Isanjo told him, and answered his father, saying: "Oh, my lord, what very great relief my heart receives from the fact that that noble knight should need the favor and help of your royal estate, and on seeing the recognition and gratitude that you have, sire, for the past things done by him! For my will to be satisfied there remains that your Grace be pleased, while Count Galtines remains behind to bring the troops if necessary, to grant me permission, along with twenty knights, to go at once to the Firm Island; because although in this dispute some way out may be vouchsafed, it will be a great honor for me to be in the company of such chivalry as is assembled there."

The king said to him: "Son, I would have deemed it good if you had waited to see the outcome of this, and you might have brought that equipment that it befitted my honor and yours to take; but since you are pleased with this, let what you ask be done, and choose whatever knights you please, and I shall order that a ship in which you may travel be made ready at once. And may it please God to give you a good journey so greatly to the honor of that noble knight that with our whole estate we may repay to him the debt that he singlehandedly left us."

This was done at once. And this Grasandor, prince and heir of this King Talinor of Bohemia, took with him the twenty knights most to his liking and put out to sea, and went his way bound for the Firm Island.

CHAPTER CIII

How Landin, nephew of Don Cuadragante, arrived in Ireland and what he obtained from the queen.

Landin, nephew of Don Cuadragante, arrived in Ireland with the message from his lord and secretly talked with the queen and told her his lord's request. And when she heard about such great and dangerous strife, although she knew that her father, King Abies of Ireland, had been killed by the hand of Amadis, as the first Book of this story relates, and she always had for him in her heart that harshness and enmity that in such a case one is accustomed to have, she reflected that it would be much better to help and remedy the present injuries than those past ones, which were almost forgotten. And she spoke with a few men whom she trusted, and with them she found a way whereby without the knowledge of the king her husband, Don Cuadragante, her uncle, was greatly helped, she having in mind that by augmenting Amadis's forces King Lisuarte would be destroyed and her husband, King Cildadan, along with his kingdom would be free from being bound and in vassalage to him.

Therefore, just as we have told you, all these troops were forthcoming with that good will and desire victors are required to have. But now the story ceases to speak of them in order to relate what the messengers of King Lisuarte did.

CHAPTER CIV

How don guilan the pensive arrived in rome with the message of king lisuarte, his lord, and concerning what he did on his mission to the emperor patin.

Don Guilan the Pensive traveled so far on his day-by-day journeying that twenty days after he left Great Britain he was in Rome with the Emperor Patin, whom he found with many people and great preparations for receiving Oriana, whom he expected each day, because Salustanquidio, his cousin, and Bronjadel de Roca had written him that they already had matters settled and that in complete security they would soon be with him, and he was greatly astonished at how late they were. And Don Guilan, wearing armor just as he did on the journey, except on his hands and head, entered the palace and went to where the emperor was, and knelt and kissed his hands, and gave the letter to him that he was carrying. And the emperor recognized him without difficulty, for frequently he had seen him at King Lisuarte's court at the time that he was there, when he returned very badly wounded from the blow that Amadis had struck him at night in the forest, as the second Book of this story relates; and he said to him: "Don Guilan, be you very welcome; I understand that you come with Oriana, your lady; tell me where she is, and my men who are bringing her."

"Sir," said he, "Oriana and your men remain in a place not proper for you or them."

"How is that?" said the emperor.

He said to him: "Sire, read that letter, and whenever you please, I shall tell you why I come, for there is much more to it than you can imagine."

The emperor read the letter, and saw that it was accredited; and as in all things he was very unpredictable and unrestrained, without considering any other proccdure he said to him: "Tell me now the contents of this accredited letter in the presence of all these who are here, for I would not be able to restrain myself longer."

Don Guilan said to him: "Sire, since it pleases you, so be it. King Lisuarte, my lord, informs you that Salustanquidio and Bronjadel de Roca, and many other knights with them, arrived in his kingdom, and on your behalf asked of him his daughter Oriana to be your wife; and he, knowing your excellence and greatness, although this princess was his rightful heiress and what he and the queen his wife loved most in the world, in order to take you as a son and to win your esteem, against the will of all those of his kingdom, he gave her up to them together with that retinue and those adornments that befitted the greatness of your state and his own; and that they having set out over thc sea, when outside the boundaries of Great Britain, Amadis of Gaul accompanied by many other knights sallied forth with another fleet, and your men having been put to rout, and many killed, including Prince Salustanquidio; and Brondajel de Roca and the Archbishop of Talancia and the Duke of Ancona taken prisoner, and many others with them, Oriana was seized, with all her ladies and maidens and Queen Sardamira; and all the prisoners and spoils were carried away to the Firm Island where they are holding her; and that from there they have scnt messengers with a few proposals for negotiation, but that he has not been willing to entertain them until you, sire, whom this act so greatly concerns, know of it and see how you feel about it, notifying him that if it appears to you as it does to him that they ought to be punished, it be shortly, so that a long interval may not render the injury greater."

When the emperor heard this, he was quite astounded, and said with grcat sadness of heart: "Oh, wretched Emperor of Rome, if you do not punish this, it does not bcfit you to live a single hour in this world!"

And he turned and said: "Is it certain that Oriana is seized and my cousin dead?"

"Certain, without any doubt," said Don Guilan, "for everything has occurred just as I have told you."

"Then, knight, go back now," said the emperor, "and tell the king, your lord, that for this injury and revenge for it, I take the responsibility, and that he concern himself only with watching what I shall do; for if I seek to be his relative, it is not in order to cause him travail or anxicty, but to avenge him on anyone who harasses him."

"Sire," said Don Guilan, "you respond like the great lord that you are and as a knight of great courage; but I am aware that you are contending with men of such caliber that the resources there as well as thosc from here will be needed. And the king, my lord, until now has obtained complete satisfaction from all those who have offended him, and so he will from now on. And since I find in you, sire, such good security, I shall leave; and give orders to put into execution what is suitable, and very quickly, with such equipment as is needed to take vengeance without the eontrary action's being received."

Whereupon Don Guilan took leave of the emperor, and not very content, for since this was a very noble knight and very prudent and brave, and he had seen that emperor speaking with such little authority and so heedlessly, he carried great concern in his heart to see the king, his lord, in the company of a man so impetuous, from which, unless by very good luck, nothing could come to him except complete discredit and dishonor. And so he made the return trip, lamenting frequently the great loss that the king, his lord, through his own serious fault, had sustained in losing Amadis and all his relatives, and many others of worth, who on account of him used to be in the king's service, and now they were such great enemies of his. Then with great effort he reached Great Britain, and was well received by the king and by all those of his court. And he spoke immediately with the king and told him all that he had observed in the emperor, and how he was preparing to come in great haste; and moreover he said to him: "May it be God's will, sire, that from your relationship with this man honor may come to you; for, so help me God, with very slight contentment do I come from where he holds sway,

and I cannot believe that troops with such a leader will accomplish anything good."

The king said to him: "Don Guilan, I am very happy to see you come back safely in good health, and since I have you and others like you who will serve me, we shall need only the troops of the emperor; for even though he does not command or lead them, you knights suffice to govern him and me; and since he accepts it thus, it is necessary that he find us here so well safeguarded that on seeing it he will not rate his own strength so highly as he now does."

Thus was the king making ready very diligently everything necessary; for well he knew that his opponents were not failing to summon all the troops they could obtain, because he had learned that the Emperor of Constantinople and the King of Bohemia and King Perion and many others were summoning their forces in order to send them to the Firm Island; and he was of the opinion, in view of the excellence of Amadis and of all those knights who were with him, that when they saw themselves with those very great forces, they could not refrain from seeking him inside his kingdom. And for this reason he was not ceasing to look for help from everywhere, since he saw that it would be needed; and also he learned that King Arabigo and Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, and many others with them, were preparing a great fleet, and he could not imagine what their destination was. At this juncture, Brandoyvas arrived, and told him that King Cildadan was preparing to carry out his mandate, and that Don Galvanes was imploring him not to order him to be against Amadis and Agrajes, his nephew; and that if he was not happy about this, he would leave to him free and unrestricted the Island of Mongaza, as he had agreed at the time that he received it from him that while he held it, he should be his vassal, and when he did not wish to be so, that by leaving the island to him he would be free. The king, as he was very sensible, although his need was great, saw clearly that Don Galvanes was right, and he sent word to tell him to remain, that even if in that military expedition he did not serve him, a time would come there when he could make amends for it.

Then a few days later Filispinel came back from King Gasquilan of Suesa, and told the king that he had received him very

well, and very willingly would come to his aid, and to fight Amadis, in order to fulfill what he so greatly desired.

The king on learning the great resources that he had, decided not to delay, and ordered his nephew Giontes summoned, and said to him: "Nephew, it is necessary that you go at once as quickly as can be to the Patin, Emperor of Rome, and tell him that I am satisfied with what Don Guilan told me on his behalf, and that I am going to my town of Windsor, because it is near the harbor where he is to disembark, and that there I shall bring together all my companies; and I will be encamped in the field awaiting his arrival, that I entreat him earnestly that it be as quickly as he is able; because, in view of his great strength and mine, if immediately at the outset we surpass our opponents in troops, they will lack much of the help from those who would be coming tardily; and you, nephew, do not leave him until you come in his company, for your arrival will give him a greater desire and concern to come himself."

Giontes said to him: "Sire, what you command will not fail to be carried out by me."

The king left then for Windsor, and gave orders to summon all his troops. And Giontes put out to sea in a ship equipped and made ready with what was needed in the way of sailors as well as provisions for such a voyage to Rome.

CHAPTER CV

How Grasandor, son of the King of Bohemia, met Giontes and what happened between them.

We have told you that Grasandor left the court of his father, the King of Bohemia, in a ship with twenty knights in order to go to the Firm Island. While sailing over the sea, guided by chance, one night he happened upon Giontes, nephew of King Lisuarte, who with his message was going to Rome to the emperor, as you have already heard. And as they saw themselves close to each other, Grasandor gave orders to his sailors to steer toward that ship in order to seize it. And Giontes, as he was carrying only the company needed to sail the ship, and a few other servants, and was traveling on a business that was so important for the king his lord, thought only to avoid all confrontations and complete his journey as he had been ordered to do. But he was not able to withdraw sufficiently to keep from being captured and brought armed just as he was before Grasandor, and he asked him who he was. And he told him he was a knight of King Lisuarte who was going with the latter's message to the Emperor of Rome, and that if he out of courtesy would order him to be set free that he might continue his journey, he would thank him very much for it, since he had no motive or reason to detain him.

Grasandor said to him: "Knight, although I expect very quickly to be arrayed in aid of Amadis of Gaul against that king that you mention, and therefore not to be obliged to treat well any of his men, I am willing to grant you complete clemency and let you go, provided that you tell me your name and the message that you are taking to the Emperor."

Giontes said to him: "If by not telling you my name and for what I am going, I gained more honor and the king were better served, it would be futile for you to ask me, for it would be in vain. But because my mission is public, and in telling it, as well as who I am, I comply better with my obligation, I shall do as you ask. Know you that my name is Giontes, and I am a nephew of King Lisuarte's and the message that I bear is to bring the emperor with all his forces as quickly as I can in order that he join the king, my uncle, and go against those who captured Princess Oriana at sea, as I believe you have learned, because such an important event can not avoid being made public in many regions. Now I have told you what you want to know, let me go, if you please, on my way."

Grasandor said to him: "You have spoken like a knight. I set you free to go wherever you wish, and come back quickly with the one you mention, for you will find ready those for whom you are looking."

So Giontes went his way, and Grasandor gave orders to one of those knights who were going with him, that in a small boat that they had on board, he return to his father and tell him that news, and that since the affair was at such a stage, he asked him as a favor to notify him when the emperor and his troops were starting out to go to King Lisuarte, and that without any other notice being sent to him to dispatch all his troops to the Firm Island with Count Galtines, because if his reinforcements were the first, they would be much more highly appreciated. And thus it was done, for this King of Bohemia, when he learned this news, at once ordered his fleet to leave with many troops well armed, as one who was imbued with great affection and love with regard to augmenting the honor and advantage of Amadis.

Grasandor followed a straight course over the sea, and without any delay reached the harbor of the Firm Island; and when some of those on the island saw them, they told Amadis and he gave orders to go and find out who was arriving on the ship, and so they did. And when he was told that it was Grasandor, son of the King of Bohemia, he was greatly pleased, and mounting a horse he went to the lodging of Don Cuadragante; and they took Agrajes with them, and went to welcome him. And when they arrived at the harbor, Grasandor and his knights had already disembarked

and were all on horseback; and when he saw Amadis coming toward him, he went ahead of his men and advanced to embrace him, and Amadis likewise, saying to him: "My lord Grasandor, be you very welcome, and I am greatly pleased to see you."

"My good lord," said he, "may it please God out of His mercy that you may always be pleased with me, and that your pleasure may be as augmented as mine is in knowing that the king my father and I can repay some of that great debt in which you left us; and it will be well for you to know some news that I discovered during the journey I have just made, and that you apply in time the proper remedy."

Then he related to them all that he had ascertained from Giontes, just as you have heard that he received it, and how from there he sent word to his father in order that after the latter learned that the troops of the emperor were moving, he, without receiving any further call, might send at once all his troops; concerning which he should have no doubt but that they would come before those of the enemy, and that from then on he should not worry about the call.

Don Cuadragante said to him: "If all of our friends help us with such good will as this lord, we shall have little fear from this attack."

So they went to the castle, and Amadis took Grasandor to his own quarters and had his men lodged and gave orders to provide them with everything they needed; and he sent word to all those lords to come and see that very honorable prince who had come to them; and so they did, for at once they all came to Amadis's quarters, expensively clad in fighting garb, as was always their habit in places where they were off duty. And when Grasandor saw them, and saw so many knights whose fame was so bruited about through all parts of the world, he was astonished and considered himself highly honored to be in the company of such men. All came up with great courtesy to embrace him and he, them, and they showed him great esteem. Amadis said to them: "Good lords, it will be well for you to know what this knight has told us concerning what he found out about King Lisuarte."

Then he related everything to them as you have already heard it, and everyone said that it would be well that other messengers

be dispatched to call together the troops that were in readiness. And so it was done. And because this writing would be very long and tedious if there were told in detail the things that occurred on these journeys, we shall only tell you that when these messengers arrived at their destinations, the troops were called together by their lords, and having put out to sea they all traveled to the Firm Island, each ship with those who will be mentioned here: King Perion brought three thousand knights from among his vassals and friends. King Tafinor of Bohemia sent fifteen hundred knights with Count Galtines. Tantiles, majordomo of Queen Briolanja, brought twelve hundred knights. Branfil, brother of Don Bruneo, brought six hundred knights. Landin, nephew of Don Cuadragante, brought from Ireland six hundred knights. King Ladasan sent from Spain two thousand knights to his son Don Brian de Monjaste. Don Gandales brought from King Languines of Scotland, father of Agrajes, fifteen hundred knights. The troops of the Emperor of Constantinople that Gastiles, his nephew, brought, numbered eight thousand knights. All these troops that the story lists, arrived at the Firm Island. And the first one who came there was King Perion of Gaul, because of his having made haste, and because his land was closer than any of the others; and whether he was cordially welcomed by his sons and by all those lords, it is not necessary to say, and likewise the great pleasure that he had with them; and by him it was decided that all the troops of the Firm Island were to go forth with their tents and gear to a plain that was below the slope leading up to the castle — a very level and very beautiful plain surrounded by many groves and in which there were many fountains, and so it was done, for from then on all were encamped in the field; and as additional troops arrived, they were immediately billeted there. And as soon as all were assembled, who would be able to describe to you what knights, horses, and arms were there? Certainly you can believe that within the memory of man there were never such well chosen and so many troops as these at any time brought together in aid of any prince.

Oriana, whom this rupture grieved deeply, did nothing but weep and curse her ill-fortune, since it had brought her to the point that such a great loss of troops — unless God remedied the situation — would occur because of her. But those ladies who

were with her comforted her with much love and compassion, saying that neither she nor those who were in her service were at fault in any of this, in the sight of God or that of the world; and although she was unwilling, they had her climb up to the highest point in the tower, from where the entire meadow and all the troops were visible. And when she saw all that field covered with troops, and so much armor gleaming, and so many tents, she could only think that the whole world was there assembled; and while all the ladies were gazing, for they were not paying heed to anything else, Mabilia went up to Oriana and said to her very quietly: "How does it seem to you, lady? Is there anyone else in the world who has such a servitor and lover as you have?"

Oriana said: "Oh, my lady and true friend! What shall I do? For my heart can in nowise endure what I see; for from this only great misfortune can come to me, because on one side is this man of whom you speak, who is the light of my eyes and the consolation of my sad heart, without whom it would be impossible for me to be able to live; and on the other is my father from whom, although I have found him very cruel, I cannot withhold that true love that as his daughter I owe him. Then, wretched woman that I am, what shall I do? For no matter which one of these men is destroyed, I shall always be all the days of my life the saddest and most unfortunate woman that ever was."

And wringing her hands, she began to weep. Mabilia took them in her clasp and said to her: "Lady, for God's sake I beg you to lay aside this anguish and have hope in Him, who many times to show His great power brings on such frightening things that offer very little hope for their being remedied; and subsequently with well considered counsel He brings them to an end in a way contrary to what men expect. And thus, lady, it can happen in this case, if it so pleases Him. And even assuming that the rupture be permitted by Him, you must consider that violent action as great as the one that was perpetrated against you cannot be remedied without another greater one. Then thank God that it is not your responsibility, as these lords have told you."

Oriana, who was very sensible, well understood that she was speaking the truth, and was somewhat comforted. Then they

remained viewing the scene for a long while, and afterwards they withdrew to their apartment.

King Perion, after he saw all the troops billeted, took with him Grasandor, son of the King of Bohemia, and Agrajes, and said that he wanted to see Oriana; and so he went with them to the castle, and ordered Amadis and Don Florestan to remain with the troops. Oriana, when she learned of the coming of the king, was quite pleased because she had not seen him since he at her request had knighted Amadis of Gaul when he was called the Child of the Sea, at the time he was at the court of King Languines of Scotland, father of Agrajes, just as the first Book of this story relates; and she assembled with her all those ladies to welcome him. Then the king and those knights having arrived at her apartment, they entered Oriana's presence, and the king greeted her with great courtesy, and she greeted him very humbly, and afterwards he greeted Queen Briolanja and Queen Sardamira and all the other princesses and ladies. And Mabilia came to him and knelt seeking to kiss his hands, but he withdrew them and embraced her with great love, and said to her: "My good niece, from the queen, your aunt, and from your cousin Melicia I bring many messages and best regards to you as one whom they love and esteem, and Gandalin will bring to you a communication from them, for he remained behind in order to accompany Melicia, who will be here with you shortly, and will keep this lady company, for she so well deserves it."

Mabilia said to him: "May God thank them on my behalf for what, sire, you tell me, and I shall requite them for it in whatever way I can; and I am very happy about the coming of my cousin, and so this princess will be because for a long time she has desired to see her on account of the fine things that she has heard about her."

The king turned to Oriana and said to her: "My good lady, the same reason that has caused me to be regretful and deeply moved concerning your trials constrains me to find a remedy for them — which I greatly desire to do — and therefore I have come here, where may our Lord be pleased to give me an opportunity whereby service to you and your honor may be enhanced as both you and I, my good lady, desire. And I am very much surprised that the king, your father, so sensible and so

punctilious in all the good ways of life that a king ought to possess, in this affair, which so greatly concerns his honor and reputation, has behaved so cruelly and pusillanimously; and since in the first instance he had been so mistaken, he ought to have made amends in the second; for these knights tell me that they besought him with great courtesy, and he would not listen to them. If in his own defense he has any excuse, it is only that great mistakes have this malady: people don't know how to turn their backs on them in order to return to a good understanding; instead, by being inflexible in their obstinacy they think that with more mistakes and greater insults they can remedy the original errors. Since the benefit and honor that from this affair is being prepared for him, only God knows, for He is the all-knowing Judge of the great injustice that he does you, so that in this very notorious affair He will show very strikingly His power. And you, my lady, in Him have great hope that He will help you and restore to you that high standing that your rights and great virtue deserve."

Oriana, as she was very intelligent and understood everything better than any other woman, gazed fixedly at the king, and he seemed to her so fine not only in his person but also in his speech, that she had never seen anyone else who to her seemed so to such an extent. And well she recognized that that man deserved to be the father of such sons, and with much justice was praised and his fame widespread throughout the world as one of the best knights that there were in it; and she was so comforted on seeing him, that if the love that she had for her own father, who was keeping her in very severe anguish and worry, had not been so great, she would not have cared had the whole world been against her, as long as she had on her side such a leader and the troops that he expected to command; and she said to him: "My lord, what thanks for what you have said to me can a poor wretched, disinherited maiden such as I am give to you? Certainly only those thanks that you have been given by all those women whom up to now with great danger to yourself you have succored, which are to serve God in return and win that great fame and distinction that you have won among peoples. One thing I ask be done for me in addition to the great benefits that I am receiving from you, my good lord, and that is that in

everything in which agreement may be reached, it be achieved with the king my father; because not only our Lord will be served by avoiding the deaths of so many troops, but I would consider myself the most fortunate woman in the world if the rupture could be ended."

The king said to her: "Matters have reached such a state that it would be very difficult for agreement of the two parties to be reached; but often it happens that at the height of a rupture harmony is achieved, which could not be found with great effort up till then, and thus in this matter it may happen. And if such an agreement is found, you may be certain, my good lady, that not only in the service of God but also in yours, with complete devotion, it will be approved very willingly by me, as one who desires greatly to serve you."

Oriana thanked him with deep humility, as one in whom complete virtue reigned more than in any other woman.

While King Perion was talking with Oriana, Agrajes and Grasandor were conversing with Queen Briolanja, Queen Sardamira, and Olinda and other ladies. And when Grasandor saw Oriana and those other ladies so more extremely beautiful and gracious than all those he had ever seen or heard, he was so astonished that he did not know what to say, and he could only believe that God with His own hand had fashioned them. And although no other lady could equal Oriana and Queen Briolanja and Olinda in beauty, unless it were Melicia, who was about to arrive, he liked so well the charm and grace and elegance of Princess Mabilia, and her modesty, that from that hour on he agreed in his heart not to serve or love any other woman except her. And thus was his heart made a prisoner, for the longer he gazed at her the more affection she aroused in him, as at times and in such acts usually happens.

Then, while he was so well-nigh distraught, as a young knight who had never before left his father's kingdom, he asked Agrajes if he would be willing out of courtesy to tell him the names of those ladies who were there with Oriana. Agrajes told him who they were and the eminence of their rank; and as Mabilia was still with King Perion and Oriana, he asked him about her also. And Agrajes told him that she was his sister, and that he believed there was not a woman in the world of a better disposition

or more beloved by all who knew her. Grasandor kept silent for he said nothing, and in his heart he was sure that Agrajes was speaking the truth; and so he was, for all who knew this Prineess Mabilia loved her for the great humility and grace she possessed.

While they were having such enjoyment in order to afford it to Oriana, who was not able to be eheerful, Queen Briolanja said to Agrajes: "My good lord and great friend, I must speak with Don Cuadragante and Brian de Monjaste in your presence on a eertain matter, and I beg you to have them come before you leave."

Agrajes said to her: "Lady, that will be done at onee."

And he directed one of his men to eall them, and they eame. And the queen drew them aside with Agrajes, and said to them: "My lords, you already know about the danger in whieh I saw myself, from which, after God, your prowess delivered me; and how you put Trion, that eousin of mine, whom I hold a prisoner, in my eustody. And while pondering what I shall do with him, on the one hand I see him to be the son of Abiseos, my uncle, who killed my father so wrongly and treasonably, and that the seed of such a wicked man ought to perish, in order that, if it is sown elsewhere, sueh treason might not spring up from it; and on the other hand beeause the elose kinship that I have with him eonstrains me, and that often it happens that sons arc very different from their parents, and that the assault that this one made was the aet of a youth motivated by a few evil advisers, as I have learned, I am unable to make up my mind what to do. And therefore I have had you summoned, so that, as persons whose great discretion in this matter and in everything has insight as to what one should do, you may tell me your opinion."

Don Brian de Monjaste said to her: "My good lady, your good sense has so well eneompassed what might be said about this matter, that there remains nothing to advise, exeept to remind you that one of the reasons why princes and grandees are praised and their estate and persons seeure, is clemeney, because with this they follow the teaehing of that One whose ministers they are; to whom, when people do what they should, everything else ought to be left. And it would be well, in order to clarify your

hesitation in determining whieh one of the two courses of aetion that you, my lady, have mentioned, you should follow, that you order him to come here and for thc most part by speaking with him, one could to some extent form a judgment eoneerning what, in his absence, could neither be seen nor finally divined."

They all considered this a good idea, and thus it was done, for the queen asked King Perion to tarry a while until she reached a decision with those knights about a matter of great importance to her. Trion having arrived, he appeared before the queen with grcat humility, and with sueh a bearing that he made quite clear the great lineage from which he had sprung. The queen said to him: "Trion, I have reason to pardon you or to order vengeanee exacted for the transgression that you eommitted against me. You know that, sinee what your father did to mine is also well known to you. But no matter what events have taken place, recognizing that the closest relative that I have in this world is you, I am moved, not only to have pity for your youth, if there is in you the acquaintanceship with reason that you ought to have, but to hold you in that rank and honor that I would if instead of the enemy that you have been to me, you had been my friend and adherent. Now in the presence of these knights I want you to tell me how you feel about it, and may your statement be so frank that whether good or the opposite, there issue fearlessly from your mouth the truth that a man of such high station ought to speak."

Trion, who was expeeting some other worse news, said: "Lady, in what relates to my father I do not know how to answer, because the tender age at which I was excuses me; in regard to my own actions, it is true that, by my own desire and will, as well as by that of many others who counseled me, I had sought to put you in such straits, and so free myself that I would be able to attain the rank that the greatness of my lineage demands. But, since Fortune, both in the first instanee involving my father and brothers and in this seeond one has chosen to be so adverse to me, there remains for me no defense except by reeognizing you to be the true heiress to that kingdom that was left by our grandparents; and that I attain with many serviees the great compassion and mercy that you show me, and by your will what by foree my heart was desirous of attaining."

"Then if you, Trion," said the queen, "do so and are a loyal vassal to me, I shall be to you not merely a cousin but a true sister, and from me you will obtain those favors with which your honor may be satisfied and your rank content."

Then Trion knelt and kissed her hands. And from then on, this Trion was to this queen so loyal in all things that he governed the entire kingdom exactly as she commanded; from which grandees ought to learn to be inclined to clemency and compassion in many instances requiring them to exercise it with everyone, and especially with their relatives, giving thanks to God that, they being of the same blood and ancestry, He made them lords over them, and the latter their vassals; and although sometimes these err, to tolerate the vexation of it in view of the great domination they exercise over them.

The queen said to him: "Then letting bygones be bygones, and setting you free, I wish that, taking charge of governing and commanding these troops of mine, you do whatever be Amadis's will."

Those knights praised highly what this very beautiful and generous queen did, and from then on this knight was by them much sought after and honored, as will be told later in more detail, and by all the others acquainted with his excellence and great courage.

King Perion took leave of Oriana and of those ladies, and with those knights he returned to the encampment. And Queen Briolanja highly recommended to Agrajes that he introduce Trion, her cousin, to Amadis, and tell him all that had happened with him, and thus it was done; for he told him everything in detail.

Then King Perion having arrived at the encampment, he found that at that time Balais de Carsante was arriving there with twenty knights of his lineage, who were very good and very well armed and equipped, to serve and aid Amadis. And I want you to know that this knight was one of those whom Amadis had released along with many others from the cruel dungeon of Arcalaus the Enchanter, and the one who had cut off the head of the maiden who brought Amadis and his brother Don Galaor together in order that they might slay each other. And certainly if it had not been for him, one of them, or both, would have had to die, as the first Book of this story relates. Balais told the

king and those knights that King Lisuarte was encamped near Windsor, and that, according to what he had been told, the king might have as many as six thousand mounted men and other troops on foot, and that the Emperor of Rome had arrived at the port with a great fleet, and all the troops were disembarking and establishing their encampment near King Lisuarte's; and that furthermore, Gasquilan, King of Suesa, had come, and that he brought eight hundred knights, good fighting men; and King Cildadan had already come there with two hundred knights, and that he thought that for two weeks they would not move from there, because the troops were arriving very worn out from their voyages. This information this Balais de Carsante was enabled to ascertain thoroughly because a very good castle that he had was within King Lisuarte's realm, being located at a place where without much effort he could obtain news concerning the troops.

So they spent that day at ease in the field, preparing all their weapons, armor, and horses for the battle, although their armor was all newly made, fine and resplendent, as will be described later on.

Next day very early Master Elisabad arrived at the harbor with Grasinda's troops, in whose fleet came five hundred knights and archers. And when Amadis found out about it, he took Angriote and Don Bruneo and went to welcome him with that good will and love that reason made obligatory. And they had all the troops disembark and they lodged in the encampment with the others, and Libeo, the master's nephew, with them as their captain. And they took the master between them and with great pleasure brought him to King Perion; and Amadis told him who he was, and what he had done for him, as the third Book of this story relates, when the Endriago was slain, and how there could not have come to them at such a time anyone else who would have helped them so much. The king received him well and with good grace and said to him: "My good friend, let the argument remain until after the battle, if we should come out alive, as to whom my son Amadis should be most grateful: to me, who after God, created him from nothing; or to you, who returned him alive from death."

The master kissed his hands and quite pleased said to him: "Sire, let it be as you direct; for until further investigation is

made I do not want to yield to you any advantage as to whom he is most obligated."

All derived great pleasure from what the king said and the reply of Master Elisabad. And he said at once to the king: "My lord, I bring you two pieces of news that you need to know; and they are: that the Emperor of Rome has already left with his fleet, in which according to what I have been assured by persons whom I sent there, he carries ten thousand mounted men; and furthermore there came to me a message from Gastiles, nephew of the Emperor of Constantinople, that he was already at sea with eight thousand horses which his uncle was sending in aid of Amadis, and that in his opinion, three days hence he would arrive in port."

All those who heard it were very happy and very much encouraged with such reports, especially the troops of lowest rank. So just as you hear, King Perion was with all that company, looking after the arriving troops and making ready the things needed for the battle.

CHAPTER CVI

How the emperor of Rome arrived in Great Britain with his fleet and what he and King Lisuarte did.

The story says that Giontes, nephew of King Lisuarte, after he left Grasandor, as you have heard, went directly to Rome, and not only because of his haste but also on account of the emperor's, very quickly the great fleet was armed and equipped with those ten thousand knights about whom we have already told you; and at once the emperor put out to sea, and without encountering any obstacle on the way he arrived in Great Britain at that port of the town of Windsor, where he knew King Lisuarte was. And when the latter learned of it, he mounted, along with many nobles and those two kings, Cildadan and Gasquilan, and went to welcome him. And when he arrived, the majority of the troops had already disembarked, and the emperor with them. And when they saw one another they went to embrace each other, and they greeted each other with much pleasure. The emperor said to him: "If you have received any discredit or vexation because of me, I am here, so that your honor will be satisfied with a double victory; and since I alone was the cause of it, I should like for you to give me the opportunity to take vengeance with my own men alone, so that it may be for everybody a lesson and an admonishment that no one should dare to anger such a great man as I am."

The king said to him: "My good friend and lord, you and your troops arrive seasick as a result of your long voyage; order them to disembark and set up camp, and they will be refreshed from the ordeal they have suffered. And meanwhile we shall

have word concerning our enemies; and once it is known, you will be able to take the position and counsel that you prefer."

The emperor wanted the departure to be immediate; but the king, who knew better than he what was needed and with whom they were in contention, restrained him until the proper time; for he well perceived that his whole cause depended on that battle. So they were in that camp for a good week, marshalling the troops that each day came to the king.

Then it so happened that while the emperor and the king and many other knights were riding one day through those meadows and fields surrounding the camp, they saw an armed knight on horseback coming and a squire with him who was carrying his armor; and if someone were to ask me who it was, I would tell him that it was Enil, the good knight, nephew of Don Gandales. And when he reached the camp, he asked if Arquisil, a relative of the Emperor Patin was there, and he was told that he was, and that he was riding with the emperor. When he heard this, he was very glad, and went to where he saw men riding, for he was sure that Arquisil would be there; and when he came up to them he found that the emperor and those kings were conversing in a field near a riverbank about matters pertaining to the battle. And Enil found out that Arquisil was with them, and he went toward them and greeted them very humbly, and they told him he was very welcome, and asked what he wanted. Enil, when he heard this, said: "Sirs, I come from the Firm Island with a message from that noble knight, my lord Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, for a knight called Arquisil."

When Arquisil heard that he was asking for him, he said: "Knight, I am the one you seek; say whatever you wish, for it will be heard."

Enil said to him: "Arquisil, Amadis of Gaul informs you that when he was calling himself the Knight of the Green Sword, while he was at the court of King Tafinor of Bohemia, there arrived there a knight named Don Garadan with eleven other knights accompanying him, of whom you were one; and that he had a battle with the said Don Garadan, in which the latter was overcome and killed, as you saw; and that immediately next day he had one with you and with your companions — he and eleven other knights — as had been agreed upon; and that you and they

being overcome, he took you prisoner, from which situation at your request, he set you free; and that you promised as a loyal knight, that any time that you were called upon, you would again submit to him. And now through me he calls upon you to fulfill what a man of such high rank and such a noble knight as you are, ought to fulfill."

Arquisil said: "Certainly, knight, in all that you have said, you have spoken the truth; for it happened just as you say. There remains only the question of whether that knight who called himself the Knight of the Green Sword is really Amadis of Gaul."

Some of those knights who were there told him that he could believe without doubt that he was. Then Arquisil said to the emperor: "You have heard, sire, what this knight asks of me, from which I cannot be excused without fulfilling what I am obligated to do, because you may believe that he saved my life and prevented from killing me those who had a great desire to do so. And therefore, sire, I beg you not to be irked at my departure; for if under such circumstances I were to forego it, it would not be right that a man so powerful and of such high lineage as you should consider me his relative or keep me in his company."

The emperor, as he was very violent and usually gave more heed to the satisfaction of his feelings or preferences than to the integrity of his high rank, said: "You, knight, who have come on behalf of Amadis, tell him that he ought to be sated with occasioning me the annoyances that petty men are wont to occasion great ones, for otherwise he is set well apart from them, and that the time will come when he will find out who I am and what I can do, and that he shall not escape anywhere, not even in that cave of thieves in which he is taking refuge, from paying sevenfold, to my full satisfaction for what he has done to me. And you, Arquisil, carry out what is asked of you, for it will not be long before I put into your hands this person of whom you are a prisoner, so that you may do with him whatever you please."

Enil, when he heard this, was furious, and with all fear suppressed, he said: "I well believe, sire, that Amadis knows you, for he has already seen you another time, more as a knight errant than as a mighty lord, and likewise you have seen him when you did not leave his presence so easily. Well, in the present situation,

just as you come in another guise, so he is coming to look for you. Let him who knows what is past form his own judgment, and let God judge the future, for that is granted only to Him."

When King Lisuarte saw that, he was afraid that that knight might receive some injury by command of the emperor, from which he would feel great sorrow, and this he had deduced from all that he had heard him say, because it was quite foreign to his nature to be anything as king but reasonable in speech and severe in action. And before the emperor said anything, he took him by the hand and said to him: "Let us go to our tents, for it is time to sup, and may this knight enjoy the liberty that messengers are wont and entitled to have."

Thus the emperor went away as angry as if his vexation had been with someone of as high rank as he. Arquisil took Enil to his tent, and paid him high honor; and then armed himself, and mounting his horse went with him.

Then here the story does not tell a thing about what happened to him, except that they arrived at the Firm Island in peace and harmony; and when they were near the encampment, and Arquisil saw so many troops, for now those of the Emperor of Constantinople had arrived, he was greatly astonished to see them; and he fell silent, for he said nothing; instead he pretended not to be looking. And Enil took him to the tent of Amadis, where not only by him but by many other noble knights he was very well received.

So Arquisil was there four days during which Amadis took him about with him and showed him all the troops and the distinguished knights, and he told him their names, which were very well known through all parts of the world for the prowess and great feats of arms of those who bore them. He marveled greatly on seeing such knighthood, especially that of those very famous knights; for he indeed believed that if the emperor were to meet with some reverse it would be only through these men, for concerning the other troops he had little fear, nor would he have paid any heed to the matter if they had not had such leaders, for the strength of the latter would suffice to strengthen all those on their side. And he saw clearly that the emperor his lord had need of great resources to do battle with them, and he considered himself unlucky to be a prisoner at such a time; for if he had been very far away, on hearing of an affair so outstanding and

great as that was, he would have come in order to be in it. Then, since he was present and yet not able to participate, he considered himself the most unlucky man in the world; and he became so immersed in meditation that without feeling or desiring it, the tears fell down his cheeks. And in this state of great anguish he decided to test Amadis's virtue and nobility. Thus it came about that while the valiant Amadis and many other great lords and brave knights were in King Perion's tent, and Arquisil with them because he had not yet been told where he was to be held prisoner, he stood up where he was and said to the king: "Sire, may it please your Grace to hear me with Amadis of Gaul in the presence of these knights."

The king told him he would gladly hear all that he might care to say. Then Arquisil related there all that had happened to him in the battle that Don Garadan and he and his other companions had had with Amadis and the knights of the King of Bohemia, and how they had been overcome and battered, and Don Garadan slain and how Amadis with great courtesy had freed him from the hands of those who had the great desire and intent to kill him, and how at his request and petition Amadis had set him free and allowed him to go so that he could give some help to his badly wounded companions, leaving him as a pledge his faith and promise as his prisoner to hasten to him whenever summoned, as in more detail the third Book of this story relates, and that now he had been summoned by Amadis, and had come, as they saw, to keep his word and be at the place appointed according to his order; but that if Amadis, using with him that liberality that out of his great courtesy and virtue he was accustomed to exercise with all those in need of his favor and aid, were to give him permission to serve as he ought his lord the emperor in that battle which was expected to be waged as an event so outstanding in the world, he promised as a good and faithful knight that in his presence and that of all others there, if he remained alive, to complete his term as prisoner. Amadis, who at the time was on his feet with him in order to honor him, responded: "Arquisil, my noble lord, if I were to pay heed to the arrogance and the rude speech of the emperor your lord, I would treat everything connected with him with great severity and cruelty, without fearing thereby to have gone too far; but as you are without fault, and

the times have brought us to such a pass that the worth of each one of us shall be made manifest, I am disposed to agree to what you have asked, and I grant you leave so that you can be in this battle; from which, if you emerge unharmed, be back in this island within ten days to carry out whatever by me and by those on my side you may be ordered to do."

Arquisil thanked him profusely and so promised.

Some may ask for what reason so much mention is made in this great story of a knight of such slight renown as this one is. I say that the reason for it is this: because in the past this man with much courage dealt with all the confrontations that came his way, as you shall hear subsequently, by reason of his great lineage and noble rank he became Emperor of Rome; and he always considered Amadis, who was the chief cause of his obtaining such great sovereignty, as a true brother, as will be related in more detail at the proper time.

Well, those lords having left there and retired to their tents and quarters, Arquisil armed himself, and mounting his horse took leave of Amadis and all those who were with him, and returned by the way he had come. And the story does not tell of anything that happened to him, except that he reached the place where the emperor's army was, where all were greatly pleased at his arrival. And although they asked him many questions, he was willing to tell only about the great courtesy that he had received from that very noble knight Amadis; for you may well believe that his courtesies were of such nature and so many that they would hardly be found at that time in any other knight.

And I want you to know that the reason why these knights traveled so far without finding any adventure as in times past, was because they all paid heed only to providing and making ready the things needed for the battle; for it seemed to them that in view of the magnitude of the confrontation, to engage in other quests that would interfere with this one would be degrading.

Arquisil, having arrived at the camp, spoke with the emperor in private, and told him the truth about everything: about the large body of troops of their adversaries, as well as about the famous knights who were there, giving him the names of most of them, and how Amadis of Gaul had granted him permission to be in that battle and was not much concerned about it;

and that what he had found out was that Amadis, on learning that the emperor was moving forward with his army, would move at once against him without any fear; and that he was informing him concerning everything so that he might do what best served his purpose. The emperor, when he heard this — although he was very haughty and unreasonable, as you have heard, and he certainly was in everything that he did, recognizing the integrity of this knight (on account of which he had no great love for him) and that he would say nothing but the truth — was dismayed just as all those are wont to be who expend their efforts more on words than on deeds; and he would have liked not to be engaged in that quest, for he well recognized the great difference between the one body of troops and the other, and he had never thought in view of his own great force when joined with that of King Lisuarte, that Amadis would have had the ability or equipment to leave the Firm Island, believing that there they would have surrounded him both by land and by sea, so that through starvation by siege or by some other means he would have been able to recover Oriana and redress the blemish and discredit to his honor. And from then on, exhibiting more hope and determination than he privately felt, he tried to conform to the will of King Lisuarte and those nobles.

So they remained two weeks in that camp, mustering the troops and receiving the knights, who each day were coming to join them; so that they discovered that they were, in all, the following: the emperor brought ten thousand horses; King Lisuarte six thousand five hundred; Gasquilan, King of Suesa, eight hundred; King Cildadan, two hundred.

Then everything having been made ready, the emperor and the king gave orders to break camp, and that the troops be drawn up in that great meadow over which they were to travel. And thus it was done, for all having been placed with their respective battalions, the emperor made three brigades of his body of troops. The first he gave to Floyan, brother of Prince Salustanquidio with two thousand five hundred knights. The second he gave to Arquisil with a like number, and he was left with five thousand to serve them as rear guard. And he asked King Lisuarte to approve of his leading the vanguard, and thus it was done; although the latter would have preferred to take over that function himself,

because he did not rate those troops very highly, and was afraid that from their lack of discipline some great reverse might come to them; but he agreed to give him that honor, which in such cases is viewed as bad, for with all zeal laid aside, one ought to follow what reason dictates.

King Lisuarte made of his troops two brigades; in the one he put King Arban of North Wales with three thousand knights, and ordered that with him should be his own son Norandel, Don Guilan the Pensive, Don Cendil of Ganota, and Brandoyvas. And he gave from his own troops one thousand knights to King Cildadan and Gasquilan, which with the other one thousand that they had, would make another brigade. And the others he took with him, and he gave his standard to the good Don Grumedan, who with much sorrow and anguish of heart regarded that very bad exchange that King Lisuarte had made in appointing the troops he considered unfit to lead the vanguard. Then this having been done, and the brigades organized, they moved across the field behind the supply train, which was going with the billeters to set up camp. Who could describe to you the horses and the very fine, glittering armor of every description worn by the riders? Certainly it would be a very heavy task to tell it; mention will be made only of what the emperor and the kings and a few other outstanding knights wore. But this will be when on the day of the battle they arm themselves to participate in it. But we shall not speak of them until the proper time; and now there is to be related what King Perion and those lords who were with him in the camp by the Firm Island did.

CHAPTER CVII

How king perion moved the troops from the camp against his enemies, and how he distributed the brigades for the battle.

The story tells that this King Perion, as he was a very intelligent knight and of great valor, and until then Fortune had always exalted him by protecting and defending his honor, and as he saw himself in such an outstanding confrontation in which his person and sons and most of his relatives were to be involved, and as he knew King Lisuarte to be so vigorous and such an avenger of injuries done him — for knowing about the emperor's temperament, neither for him nor his troops did he have the slightest respect — was always thinking about what was needed, for he held the opinion that if Fortune were against them, that king, like a mad dog, would not satisfy his desire with the first vanquishment; rather, very diligently and harshly, not considering any amount of effort too great, he would seek them out wherever they might be, as had been his intention all the while, if he won. And besides the other things that it was necessary to provide, King Perion always kept people in strategic places from whom he might find out what his enemies were doing, and by whom he was immediately informed as to how the troops were coming against them, and in what formation.

So this having been ascertained, early the next morning he arose promptly and gave orders to summon all the captains and knights of noble lineage; and he told them about it, and that in his opinion the camp should be broken, and that the troops having been assembled in those fields, a distribution of the brigades should be made so that all would know to which captain and

standard they were to rally, and that this having been done, they should move against their enemies with great force and a good expectation of overcoming them because of the just quest in which they were engaged. They all approved this, and therefore very insistently they begged him that because of his royal dignity and great valor and prudence he take charge of commanding and governing them on that expedition, and that they would all be obedient to him. He agreed to it; for he well recognized that they were asking for what was right and he could not rightly be excused from it. Then when he ordered his plans carried out, the camp was broken, and the troops, all armed and mounted on horseback were stationed on that great plain. The noble king stationed himself in the very center on a very beautiful big horse, and clad in fine armor; and ten pages on ten horses, all bearing the same device, who were to go about during the battle and with them rescue the knights who needed horses. And as he was already of such an age that most of his head and beard was white, and his face ruddy with the heat of his armor and the pride in his heart, and as all knew about his great courage, he appeared so handsome, and such encouragement did he give to the troops who were gazing at him that he caused them to lose all fear, for they really thought that, after God, that leader would be the cause of giving them the glory of the battle. While he was thus stationary, he looked at Don Cuadragante and said to him: "Brave knight, I entrust the vanguard to you; and you, my son Amadis, and Angriote de Estravaus, and Don Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, and Enil, and Balais de Carsante, and Landin, accompany him with the five hundred knights from Ireland and the fifteen hundred of those that I brought. And you, very noble nephew Agrajes, take the second brigade; and let Don Bruneo de Bonamar and Branfil, his brother, accompany you with their troops and with yours, whereby you will be sixteen hundred knights in number. And you, honorable knight Grasandor, take the third brigade. And you, my son Don Florestan and Dragonis, and Landin de Fajarque, and Elian the Brave, with the troops of Grasandor's father the king, and with Trion and the troops of Queen Briolanja, so that you will be two thousand seven hundred knights in all, accompany him."

And he said to Don Brian de Monjaste: "And you, honorable knight, my nephew, take the fourth brigade with your troops and with three thousand of the knights of the Emperor of Constantinople, so that you will have five thousand knights; and let Mancian of the Bridge of Silver, and Sadamon, and Urlandin, son of the count of Urlanda go with you."

And he ordered Don Gandales to take a thousand knights of his own and render aid in the major melees. And the king took with him Gastiles with the emperor's remaining troops, and he placed himself under his own banner; and he requested all to look for it just as if the emperor himself were there in person.

The brigades having been organized as you have heard, everyone advanced in order over that field, playing many trumpets and many other instruments used in war. Oriana and the queens, and the princesses and ladies and maidens were gazing at them, and they earnestly besought God to help them, and if it should be His will, to put them at peace.

But now the story ceases to speak about these men, who were going to mass against their enemies, as you have heard; and returns to Arcalaus the Enchanter.

CHAPTER CVIII

How, when Arcalaus the Enchanter learned that these troops were preparing to fight, he sent word posthaste to summon King Arabigo and his companies.

Arcalaus the Enchanter, as you have heard, was keeping on the alert King Arabigo and Barsinan, Lord of Sansuenia, and the King of the Deep Island, who had escaped from the battle of the Seven Kings, and all the relatives of Dardan the Haughty; and when he found out that the troops had come to King Lisuarte and Amadis, in great haste he sent a knight, his relative, whose name was Garin, son of Grumen, whom Amadis had killed when from him and three other knights accompanying Arcalaus the Enchanter he took Oriana, as the first Book of this story relates. And he ordered him not to rest day or night until he had notified all these kings and knights, and that he should urge them to make haste in coming. And he remained in his castle, summoning his friends and those of the lineage of Dardan, and gathering as many fighting men as he could.

Then this Garin reached King Arabigo, whom he found in his great city of Arabiga, which was the metropolis of his whole kingdom, from which city all the kings of the country took the name Arabigo, and because his kingdom included a large share of the land of Arabia; and he told him all of what Arcalaus had apprised him, and all the others who were holding their troops on the alert; and that news having been learned by them, at once without further delay they summoned them; and they were all assembled together near a very good town of the kingdom of

Sansuenia, which had the name of Califan. And they set up their tents in those fields, and in all they probably numbered as many as twelve thousand knights. And there they fitted out their entire fleet, which was quite large and carrying a good personnel, with as many provisions as they could get, as people who were going to a forcign kingdom. And with much pleasure and favorable weather they went forth on their voyage, and in a week landed in Great Britain at a place which was a seaport, where Arcalaus had a very strong castle. Arcalaus already had with him six hundred very fine knights, most of whom greatly hated King Lisuarte and Amadis because they had always harassed them as malefactors and had slain many of their relatives, and they themselves were nearly all fugitives.

When that fleet made port thcrc, I could not begin to describe the great pleasure they had with each other; and it having been ascertained by Arcalaus's spies that the troops of King Lisuarte and those of Amadis werc already advancing toward each other, and the route they were taking, they moved at once with their whole company. The vanguard was led by Barsinan, who was a young and vigorous knight very eager to avenge the death of his father and his brother Gandalod, and to demonstrate the strength and ardor of his heart, with two thousand knights and somc archers and crossbowmen. Arcalaus had the second division, and you may believe that he was not inferior to Barsinan in strength and great valor; rather, although he had lost half of his right hand, in many lands there would not be found a better knight at arms than he was, nor a more valiant one, exccpt that his evil deeds and his deceits took away from him all the glory that his courage won. He brought six hundred knights, and King Arabigo gave him two thousand four hundred of his own. King Arabigo and the other king, he of the Deep Island, had the third brigade with all the other troops, and the former brought with him six relatives of Brontajar d'Anfania, whom Amadis had killed in thc Battle of the Seven Kings when he wore the golden helmet, as the third Book of this story relates. And this Brontajar d'Anfania was so valiant both in body and determination, that with him those on his sidc hoped to win; and thus it certainly would have been, except that Amadis saw the great havoc that he was

wreaking on the troops of King Lisuarte, and that if it lasted very long it would be sufficient to give the honor of the battle to those on Brontajar's side; and he went at him and with one blow he crippled him so that he fell to the ground, where he died.

These six knights that I am telling you about came from Centaur Island, where it is said that originally the centaurs dwelt, and they were as huge in body and strength as those centaurs, for they were direct descendants of the mightiest and most valiant giants that there were in the world.

Well, these knights had found out about this great battle that was imminent, and they made up their minds to be in it, both to avenge the death of that Brontajar, who was the outstanding man of their family, and to prove themselves with those knights of whom they had heard such great reports. And for this reason they came to King Arabigo, who was greatly pleased with them, and asked them to be in his battalion, and so they unwillingly agreed to it, for they would have preferred that he order them placed in the vanguard.

In the meantime there arrived there the Duke of Bristol, who, although he had been approached by Arcalaus, had not ventured to show himself, considering what he had told him to be of slight importance; but when he saw the great gathering of troops that had assembled, he decided that it would be well for him to join them, on the chance that he might be able to avenge the death of his father — whom Don Galvanes, Agrajes, and Olivas had killed, as the first Book of this story relates — and recover his land, which King Lisuarte had taken from him, saying that his father had died as a traitor; and he reflected that if things were to go badly for King Lisuarte, he would be able to be reestablished in his own possessions, and if badly for Amadis, he would be avenged on those who had done him so much harm. And when he arrived, and King Arabigo and those lords saw him and were told who he was, they took great pleasure with him, and they were greatly encouraged by his arrival, because they valued him more — since he was a native of the land and had in it some towns and castles about which he was concerned — than someone else who was a foreigner with many more. With his men and with five hundred knights that King Arabigo gave him, this duke was outstanding.

Thus with such troops as you hear and in such order, those companies left by a shortcut with the best guards that they were able to station, having decided to place themselves in a position where they would be secure and from which they might sally forth when it was time to fall upon their enemies.

CHAPTER CIX

How the emperor of Rome and king Lisuarte went with their entire company toward the firm island to look for their enemies.

The story states that the Emperor of Rome and King Lisuarte, with those companies that we have told you about, left the camp they had near Windsor and decided to travel very slowly so that the troops and horses might remain fresh, and that day they only traveled about three leagues; and they set up their camp on a large plain near a forest, and they rested there that night. And next day at dawn they departed in their formation, as we told you, and thus they continued on their way until they learned from some local people that King Perion and his companies were coming toward them, and that they had left them a two days' journey from where they themselves were. And immediately King Lisuarte gave orders to make the provision that Ladasin the Fencer, as he was called, first cousin of Don Guilan, with fifty knights go reconnoitering the land, always keeping three leagues ahead of the army; and on the third day they encountered the guards of King Perion, which he likewise had provided with Enil and forty knights with him. And there both groups of scouts halted, and each one informed his own side, and they did not venture to fight, because they were under orders not to do so; and the armies came from both directions so close to each other in a great and very level field that there was only a space of half a league between them. In these armies came many knights highly experienced in warfare, so that very little advantage could be had by either side over the other; and it appeared that almost

by mutual agreement of the two sides both caused their camps to be fortified with many dugouts and other defenses, in order to take refuge there if things went badly for them.

These armies being situated just as you hear, Gandalin, Amadis's squire, arrived, who with Melicia had come from Gaul to the Firm Island, and he had tried very hard to arrive before the battle began, and the reason for it was this: You already know that Gandalin was the son of that good knight Don Gandales, who reared Amadis, and he was his foster brother; and since the day that Amadis became a knight, calling himself Child of the Sea, he knew that he was not his brother, for until then they had considered themselves brothers. And from that hour on, Gandalin had always attended him as his squire; and although Amadis had been urged many times by Gandalin to dub him a knight, he did not dare to do so, because Gandalin was the greatest confidant of his love affair. He was the one who many times saved him from death, for in view of the anguish and mortal desires he experienced for his lady Oriana, which were continually tormenting and afflicting his heart, if in this Gandalin he had not invariably found comfort, he would have died a thousand times over; for, as the latter was his confidant for everything, and with no one else could he speak, if in any way he parted with him, it would be the same as parting with life. And as he knew that if he made him a knight they could not be together, because then Gandalin would have to go in search of adventures whereby he might win honor although logically Amadis was under great obligation to knight him, as this great story has set forth, both because of Gandalin's father who had brought him up after rescuing him from the sea, and on account of Gandalin himself, who had served him better than any other knight was ever served by his squire, he did not dare to part with him. And since Gandalin understood this, for he was very intelligent, because of the abundant love that he had for him, although he greatly desired to be a knight in order to show himself the son of the good knight Gandales and reared by such a man, on account of seeing Amadis in such great need of him, he had not dared to pressure him in the matter. But now, on seeing how he already had his lady Oriana in his possession, and that willingly or by force he would not part from her except in death, he decided that with much

justice he could ask for knighthood, and especially in view of a thing as great and outstanding as that battle would be. And with this thought, after having delivered the greetings from the queen, Amadis's mother, and having told Amadis of the coming of his sister Melicia and of how delighted Oriana and Mabilia and all those ladies had been with her and how it was the most beautiful sight in the world to see her together with Oriana and Queen Briolanja, in which three ladies all the beauty of the world was embodied; and likewise that Don Galaor his brother was somewhat better, and the greetings he brought from him, he took him one day through that field, where no one could overhear them, and said to him: "Sir, the reason why I ceased to ask you with that insistence and volition befitting me that you dub me a knight, so that I might fulfill the honor and great debt that I owe to my father and to my lineage, you know; for that desire that I have always had to serve you, and the understanding of the need that you have always had for my service, have brought it about that, although my honor up till now may have been tarnished, I aided your interests rather than my own, which were so repressed. Now that it can be avoided — for I see in your possession that lady who used to occasion us so much anguish — neither for myself nor even less for any others would I be able to find any honest excuse for my failing to follow the order of knighthood. Wherefore I beg of you, sir, to be pleased as a favor to me to grant it to me, for you know how much dishonor, if I do not have it, henceforth will accrue to me; for however and wherever I may go, I am yours to serve you with the love and good will on my part that you have always known."

When Amadis heard this he was so disturbed that for a while he could not speak; then he said to him: "Oh my true friend and brother, how very grievous it is for me to comply with what you request! For certainly I would not suffer from it in any less degree if my heart were torn from my flesh; and if in some reasonable way I could desist from doing it, with all my strength I would so desist. But I see that your petition is so just that it can in nowise be refused; and more pursuant to my obligation than my desire, I am determined that it be done just as you request. My only regret is not having found out about it previously, so

that with those arms and a horse that your honor deserves this distinction that you wish to receive might be realized."

Gandalin knelt to kiss his hands; but Amadis raised him up and held him in his embrace, tears coming to his eyes because of the great love that he had for him, for he was already imagining the great loneliness and sadness in which he would find himself when he did not have him with him; and Gandalin said to him: "Sir, don't worry about that, for Don Galaor, out of his kindness and courtesy, when I told him how I would like to be a knight, ordered that I be given his horse and all his arms, since they were of little benefit to him, with his illness. And I considered it as a boon and I told him I would take the horse, because it was very good, and the cuirass and the helmet; but that the other arms were to be white as is fitting for a novice knight. He was going to give me his sword, but I, sir, told him that you would give me one of those that Queen Menoresa had given you in Greece. And while I was there I had all the other arms made that are necessary, together with their device, and here I have everything."

"Well, since that is the way it is," said Amadis, "it will be well that the eve of the day we are to have the battle, you, clad in armor, keep vigil in the chapel of the tent of the king, my father, and the next day, mount your horse thus armed, and when we are about to charge against our enemies, the king will dub you knight; for you already know that in the whole world one could not find a better man, nor one from whom you may receive more honor in this act."

Gandalin said to him: "Sir, everything you say is true, and I would be hard put to it to find another man as chivalrous as the king, but I shall not be a knight except by your hand."

"Since you wish that," said Amadis, "so be it, and do what I tell you."

"All will be done as you command," said he, "for Lasindo, Don Bruneo's squire, told me just now, when I arrived, that already he had his lord's promise to dub him knight; and he and I shall keep vigil together. And may God through His compassion guide me so that I may carry out the things in His service and those to my honor just as the order of chivalry commands,

and that in me may appear the training that I have received from you."

Amadis did not say any more, because he felt great emotion on hearing that from him, all the greater when he reflected that what Gandalin said would be carried out. So Amadis went to where the king his father was engaged in causing the camp to be fortified and preparing the things necessary for the battle, just as his enemies were doing. Thus the armies remained for two days, for they were concerned only with making ready all the troops, each one for his own duty, that they might be quite prepared for the battle. And in the afternoon of the second day the spies of King Arabigo arrived high up on the mountain that was near there, and in accordance with their orders they did not seek to show themselves; and they saw the rival camps as near each other as we have told you, and immediately they informed King Arabigo; who with all those knights decided that the sentinels should go back to where they could observe well what was going on, and that they should remain hidden as best they could and where, although those troops should join and seek to challenge them, they would not be afraid, and that by crossing the mountain ridge they might take refuge in their ships if they were in such straits as to need to do so; and that if they fought, they should come forth from there unsuspected and attack in safety whomsoever they pleased. And so they did, and they placed themselves in a very rugged location, which moreover was strong, and they commanded all the passes and approaches of the mountain, and King Arabigo fortified everything so that it was as secure as a fortress, and there they awaited the warning of their sentinels. But they were unable to conceal themselves well enough before they arrived there to prevent King Lisuarte from being informed concerning how they had landed in his country and the troops that were coming. And for this reason he gave orders to remove all the food supplies of cattle, as well as of everything else, to the vicinity of that town, and that the people of the villages and weak settlements should take refuge in the cities and towns, and watch and patrol them, and not leave there until the battle was over. And he left in them some of his knights, whom he sorely needed for the situation in which he

was; but he did not aseertain any more about what the intruders had done or where they had stopped.

King Perion also found out about those troops, and distrusted them but did not know where they were located, so that thcy instilled fear on both sides.

Then matters being at this stage, as you hear, at the end of three days after the camps had been set up, the Emperor Patin was impatient for the battle to begin, for whether eonquered or a eonqueror, he longed to be back in his own land; for thus it often happens to eapricious men who takc hasty action, to detest as quiekly what they have done, as this man was doing out of fiekleness. Amadis and Agrajes and Don Cuadragante and all the other knights likewise were complaining very much to King Perion that the battle should be begun, and let God be judge of the truth. Well, the king did not wish for it any less than all the others, but he had restrained them until things were properly made ready; and then the order was proclaimed that everyone at daybreak should attend mass and arm himself, and eaeh body of troops should report to its captain beeause the battle would be waged immediately. And the same thing was done by the enemy, who found out about it at onee.

Then dawn having come, they sounded the trumpets, and the trumpeters on both sides heard each other as elearly as if they had been together. The troops began to arm themselves and saddle their horses, and in all the tents to hear mass, and all to mount and repair to their respeetive standards. Who would be of such perception and memory, assuming that he had seen this and concentrated upon it, as to be able to tell or write of the armor and horses with their devices and riders who were massed there? Certainly the man who would think that he could take upon himself that projcet would be quite mad and bereft of all understanding. And therefore, omitting generalities, some of the details will be told here, and we shall begin with the Emperor of Rome, who was brave physieally and in spirit, and would have been a very good knight, if his great pride and slight diseretion had not been a drawback.

He armed himself in armor that was sable, including his helmet as well as his shield and his deviee, cxeept that on the shield he bore depicted a maiden resembling Oriana from the waist up,

done in gold, very skilfully embroidered and adorned with many precious stones and pearls of great value, attached to the shield with golden nails; and over the back of his helmet's visor he wore woven chains very richly embroidered, which he took as a device and swore never to forego them until he took Amadis prisoner in chains and all those who were a party to taking Oriana away from him. And he rode a beautiful big horse with lance in hand; thus he came out of the camp and went where it had been agreed that his troops should assemble. Then behind him came Floyan, brother of Prince Salustanquidio, armed in yellow and sable quartered armor, and there was nothing else noteworthy about it, except that among his men he appeared strikingly conspicuous. Behind him came Arquisil; he wore blue and white armor of a white verging on silver, and dotted all over with golden roses, so that he was a very striking figure. King Lisuarte wore black armor with white eagles depicted on it, and an eagle on his shield, without any other adornment; but finally they certainly turned out to be of great significance, in view of what their owner accomplished in that battle. King Cildadan wore armor totally black, for after he had been defeated in the battle of the one hundred against one hundred, fought with King Lisuarte, whence he became his tributary, he never wore any other kind. As for Gasquilan, King of Suesa, nothing will be told about the armor that he wore until the proper time later on, when you shall hear about it. King Arban of North Wales, Don Guilan the Pensive and Don Grumedan chose to wear armor more utilitarian than showy, as an indication of the sadness they felt on seeing the king their lord placed in a great dangerous confrontation with those who previously had been at his court and in his service, and who had given him such honor.

Now we shall tell you about the armor worn by King Perion and Amadis and some of those great lords who were on their side. Of the armor of King Perion, the helmet and the shield were undecorated and of very good bright steel, and his device was of very bright red silk and he rode a big horse that his nephew Don Brian de Monjaste had given him, for Don Brian's father, the King of Spain, had sent his son twenty very beautiful horses, which he distributed among those knights; and thus King Perion himself came forth with the banner of the Emperor of

Constantinople. Amadis was armed in green armor — such as he wore at the time that he killed Famongomadan and Basagante, his son, who were the two strongest giants that were to be found in the world — very beautifully adorned all over with lions in gold. And he was very fond of this armor, because he had adopted it when he came from the Poor Cliff, and had worn it when he went to see his lady at the castle of Miraflores, as the second Book of this story relates. Don Cuadragante appeared wearing brown armor decorated with silver flowers, and mounted on one of the horses from Spain. Don Brunco de Bonamar did not want to change his arms, as his shield had a maiden depicted upon it with a knight kneeling before her, who seemed to be asking mercy of her. Don Florestan, the great and good jouster, wore red armor adorned with gold flowers, and rode one of the big horses from Spain. As for Agrajes, his armor was of a fine rose color, and on his shield appeared a maiden's hand, which had a heart in its clasp. The good Angriote did not want to alter his arms of blue enamel and silver. And all the others, of whom no mention is made in order not to bore those who may read about it, wore very fine armor of the colors that they liked best; and thus they all came forth on the field in good order.

Then the troops being all assembled, each man with his own captain, as you have heard, they moved very slowly over the field at the hour that the sun was rising, which was reflected on the armor, and as it was all new and fresh and shining, it was so resplendent that it was simply marvelous to behold.

Then at this hour there arrived Gandalin and Lasindo, squire of Don Bruneo, both wearing white armor, as befitted novice knights. Gandalin went to where his lord Amadis was, and Lasindo to Don Bruneo. When Amadis saw him coming thus, he left his battalion to go to him, and he asked Don Cuadragante to detain the troops until he dubbed his squire a knight. And he took him with him, and went to where King Perion, his father, was, and on the way said to him: "My true friend, I beg you sincerely today in this battle to try to watch your step, and not to become separated from me, so that in case of need I may be able to aid you; for although you have seen many battles and great confrontations, and hold the opinion that you will know how to do what is essential, and that all that is needed for it is courage, don't

believe it; for there is a very great differenee between observing and execution, because each one thinks when he watches things that if he were a participant, he would achieve better results than the one who is dealing with them; and after he sees himself involved, he faces many obstaeles that are irksome to him because of being unfamiliar, and great variations are encountered that had not been anticipated. And this is because everything consists in execution, although something can be learned by observation. And since your initiation is in such a great contest at arms as the one we now face, and you must protect yourself from so many, it is necessary in order to safeguard your life as well as your honor, which is more precious and must be more cherished, that with mueh discretion and good understanding, not giving such free rein to your eourage as to inhibit your good sense, you conduct yourself and attack our enemies; and I shall take great care to watch out for you as mueh as I can, and you do the same for me every time you see that it is necessary.

Gandalin, when he heard this, said: "My lord, all shall be done as you command to the extent that I am able and my knowledge permits me, and may it please God that it be so; for it will be overwhelming for me to place myself in those situations where I may need your aid."

Thus they came up to where King Perion was, and Amadis said to him: "Sir, Gandalin wants to be a knight, and it would have pleased me greatly had it been by your hand; but since he would like it to be by mine, I eome to beg you that he receive the sword from your hand, so that when he has need of it, he may remember this great honor that he is rceeiving and who gave it to him."

The king looked at Gandalin and recognized his son Galaor's horse, and the tears eame to his eyes, and he said: "Friend Gandalin, how did you leave Don Galaor when you parted from him?"

And he said to him: "Sire, much improved in his illness, but with great sorrow and distress at heart, for no matter how much your departure was coneealed from him, he indeed found out about it, although not the reason for it, and he entreated me to tell him the truth if I knew it, and I said to him, 'Sir, that from what I had learned about it, you were going to go to the aid of the King of Seotland, father of Agrajes, who had a dispute

with some neighbors of his.' And I did not want to tell him the truth, because in such a situation and he being in such a precarious state of health, as he is, I thought that was best."

Then king sighed very deeply as for one whom he loved and to whom he was closely attached; and thought that except for Amadis there was not a better knight than he in the world, not only in courage but in all the other traits that a good knight should have, and he said: "Oh my good son! May it please our Lord that I not behold your death, and that you may see yourself honorably free from this very great fondness that you have for King Lisuarte, so that, once free, you may freely aid your brothers and your lineage."

Then Amadis took a sword brought to him by Durin, the maid of Denmark's brother, whom he had ordered to attend him, and gave it to the king; and he dubbed Gandalin a knight, kissing him and placing on him the spur for his right foot, and the king girded on him the sword; and thus his knighting was carried out by the two best knights who ever bore arms. And taking him with him he returned to Don Cuadragante; and when they came up to him, he advanced to embrace Gandalin in order to honor him, and he said: "My friend, may it please God that your knighthood be by you as well employed as up until now have been the virtue and good habits that a good squire should have; and I believe that it will be, because a good beginning usually assures a good outcome."

Gandalin bowed, deeming the honor that was being paid him a favor.

Lasindo was knighted by the hand of his lord, and Agrajes gave him the sword. And you can believe that these two novices did so well at arms in this their first battle, and in it experienced so many dangers and trials, that they won honor and great glory for all the days of their lives, as the story will relate to you in more detail later on.

With the battalions moving ahead as I say, it was not long before they saw their opponents coming toward them in the order that you have already heard about. And when they were close together, Amadis observed that the standard of the Emperor of Rome was being carried in front, and he was very pleased that the first blows were to be with those men, for although

he had no love for King Lisuarte, he kept remembering that he had been at his court, and the great honors that he had received from him; and what above all he had on his mind and was perplexing him was that Lisuarte was the father of his lady, whom he so dreaded to distress. And in his heart he was resolved, if he could do so without much danger to himself, to withdraw from King Lisuarte's vicinity in order not to encounter him or afford an opportunity to molest him, although he well knew, in view of past events, that he would not expect that courtesy from the king, but that as a mortal enemy he would seek his death.

But as for Agrajes, I say to you that his thought was very far removed from that of Amadis, for his only prayer to God was that He guide him so that he might be able to bring death to King Lisuarte and destroy all his men, for he always had before his eyes the discourtesy and scant gratitude that he had shown them in the matter of the Island of Mongaza, and what he had done to his uncle Don Galvanes and those on his side; for although he had given him this island itself, he considered it more of a dishonor than an honor, since it was after they were conquered, whence all the honor remained with the king. And if he at that time had been there, he would not have consented to his uncle's taking it; rather, he would have given him one like it in his father's kingdom. And with this great rage that he had, many times he would have been lost in that battle by entering the greatest crushes in order to kill or seize King Lisuarte; but as the latter was strong and experienced in fighting, he did not greatly concern himself with him, nor did he stop fighting everywhere else where it was necessary, as will be told later.

The battalions being about to charge at each other, only waiting for the sound of the bugles, and Moorish trumpets, Amadis, who was in the vanguard, saw a squire on horseback coming as fast as he could from the enemy's side, and in a loud voice asking if Amadis of Gaul was there. Amadis motioned to him to approach. The squire did so, and when he reached him, Amadis said: "Squire, what do you want, for I am the one for whom you are asking?"

The squire looked at him, and in his opinion he had never seen a knight in his whole life so impressive when armed and

mounted; and he said to him: "Noble lord, I well believe what you tell me, for your bearing affords testimony of your great fame."

"Then tell me now what you want of me," said Amadis.

The squire said to him: "Sir, my lord Gasquilan, King of Suesa, informs you that on an occasion now past, when King Lisuarte was at war with you and with Don Galvanes, together with many other knights on your side and his, over the Island of Mongaza, he joined King Lisuarte's side with the intention and desire to fight with you, not out of any enmity that he bears you, but on account of the great reports that he had heard concerning your great knightly exploits; in which war he remained until badly wounded he returned to his own land, on ascertaining that you were not where his desire could be carried out; and that now King Lisuarte has informed him of this war in which you are engaged, where in view of its cause, a great fight or battle cannot be avoided; and that he has come to it with that same desire, and he says to you: Sir, that before the battalions engage in combat, you break two or three lances with him, for he will gladly do so, because once the battalions come to grips, he will not be able to encounter you at will; for he will be hindered by many other knights."

Amadis said to him: "Good squire, tell the king your lord that all that he sent you to tell me I learned at that time when I was unable to participate, and that what he wishes, I attribute to greatness of courage rather than to any enmity or ill-will, and although my deeds are not as great as reported, I feel very happy that a man of such high rank and of such renown should hold me in sueh high regard and that, since this quest is more voluntary than exigent, I should like, if he pleased, for him to test my excellence or insufficiency in a way more to his honor and advantage. But if he prefers what he sends word to tell me, I shall do for him what he asks."

The squire said: "Sir, the king my lord knows well what happened to you with his father Madarque, the giant of the Sad Island, and how you overcame him in order to rescue King Cildadan and Don Galaor, your brother; and although this concerned him as an affair involving his father, to whom he is so closely related, since he knew about the great courtesy that you

exercised with him, you deserve thanks rather than punishment; and that if he has a desire to test himself with you, it is only because of the considerable envy he has of your great excellence, for he realizes that if he vanquishes you it will mean praise and fame for him over and above that of all the knights in the world, and that if he be defeated it will not be for him a great disgrace or shame to meet defeat at the hands of one who has overcome so many knights, and giants and other unnatural foes."

"Since that is the way it is," said Amadis, "tell him that if, as I have said, this which he asks for satisfies him most, I am ready to do it."

CHAPTER CX

Why this Gasquilan, king of Suesa, sent his squire to Amadis with the request that you have heard.

The story tells why this knight came twice to look for Amadis in order to fight with him; for it would be unreasonable that such a great prince as he was should have come with such an intention from a land so distant as his kingdom was without his desire having been ascertained and publicized. Book III has already told you that this Gasquilan was the son of Madarque, the giant of the Sad Island, and of the sister of Lancino, King of Suesa, on whose account he was accepted there as king, because Lancino died without heirs. And as Gasquilan was physically of great avail, being the son of a giant, and of great strength, in the many armed conflicts in which he engaged he acquitted himself so completely to his honor that in that whole part of the world no knightly excellence was so talked about as was his, although he was a youth. He was greatly enamored of a very lovely princess, called Pinela the Beautiful, who after the death of the king her father, succeeded him as suzerain of the Strong Island, which bordered on the kingdom of Suesa, and out of love for her he undertook great enterprises and challenges, and underwent many risks to his person in order to induce her to love him. But she, knowing him to be of the lineage of giants and very boastful and arrogant, had never been willing to give him any hope of achieving his desires. But some of the grandees of her seignory on noting that he had no remedy for his love and fearing his eminence and haughtiness, and that this great love might turn into hatred and enmity, as sometimes happens,

and that their peaceful situation might be converted into cruel war, deemed it well to advise her not to spurn his proposals so harshly, and with some feigned encouragement to keep him a suitor as long as possible. So with this decision, when this lady saw herself greatly beset by him, she sent word to him that since God had made her the mistress of such a great landholding, her intention was, and so she had promised her father at the time of his death, not to marry except with the best knight that could be found in the world, even though he not be of high rank; and that she had tried hard to find out who was the best by sending her messengers to many foreign lands, and the latter had brought back to her reports concerning one named Amadis of Gaul, to the effect that he was unsurpassed among all those in the world as the most powerful and valiant knight by reason of undertaking and carrying out dangerous enterprises that others did not dare to undertake; and that if he, Gasquilan, was so valiant and courageous, he should fight with this Amadis and overcome him; whereupon she, in fulfillment of his desires and the promise that she had made to her father, would give him her love and would make him lord and master of her and her realm, for she would indeed believe that after him, no equal in excellence would be left. This beautiful princess answered this in order to free herself from his importunities, and also because from her own men who had seen Amadis and had heard of his great deeds, she found out that the excellence of Gasquilan was far from being the equal of Amadis's.

When this was told to Gasquilan, not only because of the great love he had for this princess, but also because of his presumption and pride, he was impelled to seek a way whereby what was enjoined upon him could be effected. And for this reason that you hear, he came from his kingdom on these two occasions to seek Amadis: on the first one, to the war over the Island of Mongaza, whence he returned wounded by a mighty blow that Don Florestan gave him in the battle they had with him and King Arban of North Wales; on the second, in this present dispute with King Lisuarte, because until then he had never been able to ascertain any news about Amadis, because the latter traveled incognito, calling himself the Knight of the

Green Sword, through the islands of Romania, and through Germany and Constantinople where he performed rare deeds at arms that the third Book of this story relates.

The squire of this Gasquilan returned to him with Amadis's reply just as you have heard, and when he gave it to him, he replied: "Friend, now you bring what I have greatly desired, and everything is coming out as I wish; and today I intend to win the love of my lady, if I am that Gasquilan you know."

Then he called for his arms and armor, which were decorated in this wise: the field on the device and that of the visor of the helmet brown adorned with golden griffons; the helmet and shield shone like a bright mirror; and on the middle of the shield, pegged with gold nails was a griffon adorned with many precious stones and pearls of great valuc, which had in its claws a heart that was completely pierced by them, giving to undertand by means of the griffon and its great ferocity, the harshness and extreme cruelty of his lady, and that just as it held that heart pierced by its claws, so his own was by the great worry and the mortal desires that continually came to him from her; and these arms he intended to bear until he had his lady; and also because, when he reflected that he bore them in remembrance of her, they gave him strength and great relief from his worries.

Then armed just as you hear, he took in his hand a heavy lance with a large bright point, and went where the emperor was, and begged him as a favor not to command the troops to charge until he had a joust that he had arranged with Amadis, and that he not consider him a real knight if at the first encounter he did not eliminate Amadis for him. The emperor, who knew Amadis better than he did, and had tested him, although he did not reveal his thought, was quite convinced that that would be more difficult to accomplish than he thought. Then Gasquilan left him and went on past the battalions. All were standing still to watch the battle of two such famous and outstanding knights. Thus Gasquilan arrived at the place where Amadis was ready to receive him, and although he knew that Gasquilan was a valiant knight, he considered him so conceited and proud that he did not greatly fear his valor, because God breaks the excessive pridc of such men at the time when they expect to do the most and have the most need of Him, so that their fellowmen

may learn a lesson. And when Amadis saw him coming, he faced his horse in his direction and covered himself with his shield as best he knew how, and applying his spurs he went at him as hard as he could. And Gasquilan likewise went very impetuously as fast as his horse could carry him. And they struck each other on their shields in such a way that the lances went flying through the air in pieces, and when they struck each other the shock was so severe that everybody thought that both were shattered to bits; and Gasquilan fell out of his saddle, and as he was robust of body and the blow was very heavy, he fell so forcibly to the hard ground that he was so stunned that he couldn't rise, and he had his left arm broken on which he had fallen; and so he remained on the field stretched out as if dead. Amadis's horse sustained a broken shoulder, so that it could not remain on its feet, and Amadis was somewhat dazed, but not so much as not to be able to leave his horse before it could fall with him. And so he went on foot to where Gasquilan lay, to see if he was dead. The Emperor of Rome, who was watching the combat, as he saw him dead — for so he, like all the others, thought — and Amadis on foot, shouted to Floyan, who was leading the vanguard, to render aid with his battalion, and so he did. And when Don Cuadragante saw this, he spurred his horse and said to his men: "Strike them, men, and don't leave any alive!"

Then they went after one another and joined in combat; but Gandalin, when he saw his lord Amadis on foot, and that the brigades were charging, was very fearful for his safety, and went forward a bit to rescue him. And he saw Floyan coming in front of all his men, and went toward him, and they both clashed with mighty blows; and Floyan fell from his horse, and Gandalin lost both stirrups, but did not fall. Then many Romans came up to rescue Floyan, and Don Cuadragante to do the same for Amadis; and each one placed his own man on horseback, for they were not concerned with anything else. But, as the Romans arrived in large numbers and very quickly rescued Gasquilan, who had revived somewhat more, they extricated him from the melee with great effort. When Don Cuadragante came on the scene, before losing his lance he knocked four knights to the ground, and from the first that he overthrew, the horse

was taken by Angriote de Estravaus, and he brought it quickly to Amadis; and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley and Landin followed Don Cuadragante's lead and inflicted great damage on the enemy, as men versed in such an occupation.

These men about whom I am telling you came ahead of their brigade; but when both battalions joined in conflict, the noise and the shouts were so great as to be deafening. And there you would have seen horses without riders and some knights dead and others wounded, and those who were strongest trampled them. And Floyan, as he was brave and desirous of gaining honor and of avenging the death of his brother Salustanquidio, when he saw himself again on horseback, took a lance and went for Angriote, whom he saw performing rare feats at arms; and struck him in the side so hard that he almost knocked him off his horse and he broke his lance; and he grasped his sword and went and attacked Enil, whom he encountered in front of him, and he struck him on top of his helmet such a mighty blow that the sparks flew from it. And he passed so quickly by both through the battalions that neither of them was able to wound him, so that they marveled at his undaunted courage and great prowess. And before he reached his own men he happened upon a knight from Ireland, a ward of Don Cuadragante's, and gave him such a blow on his shoulder that he cut through to his flesh and bones and the Irishman was so badly wounded that it was necessary for him to leave the battle.

Amadis at this time took with him Balais de Carsante and Gandalin, and with great fury, on seeing that the Romans were defending themselves so well, entered as quickly as he could a flank of the brigade, as did those who followed him, and he delivered such great blows with his sword that there was not a man who saw them who was not terrified; and much more were those who awaited him, for he frightened them so greatly that none of them dared to wait for him; instead they took refuge among the others, as cattle do when they are attacked by wolves.

And as he was going ahead without encountering any resistance, there came forth to meet him a bastard brother of Queen Sardamira, who had the name Flamineo, a very fine knight at arms. And when he saw Amadis performing such

wonders, and that no one dared to await him, he went at him, and struck him on the shield with his lance, which penetrated it, and the lance was broken to pieces; and when he passed him, Amadis thought he would strike him on the helmet, but as Flamineo passed with such impetus, he could not; and he struck his horse on the back near the saddle, and cut through most of its body and guts, and it fell to the ground with him in such a hard fall that he thought that he had split his back open. Don Cuadragánte and the other knights who were fighting in another area pressed their enemies so hard that if it had not been for the fact that Arquisil came to their aid with the second brigade, all would have been cut to pieces. But when he arrived, everyone was invigorated and they plucked up their courage to a great extent. And because of his arrival more than a thousand knights from both sides were unhorsed.

This Arquisil met with Landin, nephew of Don Cuadragante, and they gave each other such mighty lance thrusts and their horses collided with such force, that both fell to the ground. Floyan, who was going about everywhere with fifty knights, had come to the aid of Flamineo, who was on foot, and they gave him a horse; for Amadis after he had unhorsed him, paid him no heed, because he saw the second brigade coming; and in order to be the first to receive them, he left him in the hands of Gandalin and Balais, who thought that he was dead, and they went and attacked Arquisil's brigade in order that their own men on arriving might not receive any injury, for they were coming on the scene quite fresh. And as Floyan saw the unhorsed Arquisil, who was fighting with Landin, he shouted saying: "Oh knights of Rome, aid your captain!"

Then he launched a violent attack, accompanied by more than fifty men; and if it had not been for Angriote and Enil and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, who saw him and shouted to Don Cuadragante, for they were bringing aid in great haste and many of their knights were with them, Landin would have been slain or a prisoner at that hour. But when they came up, they attacked with such force that it was a marvelous sight to see. Flamineo, who, as has been said, was already on horseback, rescued as many as he could and aided his men like a good knight.

What shall I tell you? The press of battle was so great there and so many knights killed and unhorsed that the whole field where they were fighting was occupied by the dead and wounded. But the Romans, as they were numerous, rescued Arquisil in spite of his foes, and Don Cuadragante and his companions rescued Landin, and thus each one saved his own man, and they mounted each one on a horse, for there were many there without riders.

Amadis was going about in the other sector performing marvels at arms; and as they now recognized him, most of them yielded free passage to him wherever he wanted to go. But everything was in dire straits, for as the Romans greatly outnumbered their opponents, if it hadn't been for the outstanding knights on the other side, they would have dominated them. But Agrajes and Don Bruneo of Bonamar came immediately to render aid with their brigade. And they came on so hard and in such close formation that, since all the Romans were going about disorganized, they very quickly split their ranks in two, so that they would have had no recourse, if the Emperor with his battalion, in which he brought up five thousand knights, had not come to their aid. This body of troops, as it was large, gave such great encouragement to his men that they very quickly made up for what they had lost.

The emperor came up on his big horse, armed as has been told, and as he was large of body, and came at the head of his men, he seemed so fine to all those who saw him that it was a wonder, and he attracted much attention. And the first man he encountered was Balais de Carsante, and he struck him on his shield so hard that he broke his lance, and he crashed into him with his horse, which was quite fresh; and as Balais's horse was weary, it could not withstand the hard blow and fell with its rider in such a way that he was badly shaken up. The emperor, after accomplishing this feat, took great pride in himself, and he grasped his sword and began to shout: "Rome, Rome, at them, my knights; do not let any escape!"

And then he thrust himself into the melee after the manner of a good knight, meting out very great and powerful blows to all those whom he encountered in his path. And while he was thus wreaking great havoc, he met up with Don Cuadragante,

who likewise was going about sword in hand striking and unhorsing all those whom he overtook. And when they saw each other, they charged one another very violently with their swords held high in their hands, and gave each other such blows on top of their helmets that sparks flew from them and from their swords; but as Don Cuadragante was the stronger, the emperor was so overwhelmed with blows that he lost his stirrups and had to clutch his horse's neck, and was left somewhat dazed. At that time Constancio, brother of Brondajel de Roca, and a good young knight, happened to be there; and as he saw the emperor his lord in such straits, spurred his horse and went at Don Cuadragante with lance held high, and struck him a mighty blow on the shield, which pierced it and wounded him slightly in the arm; and while Don Cuadragante turned to strike him with his sword, the emperor had time to betake himself to where his men were.

Constancio, when he saw that he was safe, did not stop, but rather, since he was coming on rested and riding a fresh horse, he made a very quick sally where Amadis was; and when he saw the rare deeds he was doing, and the knights he was leaving on the ground wherever he went, he was so frightened that he could only think that it was some devil who had come there to destroy them. And while he was watching him, he saw approaching him a knight who was governor of the principality of Calabria for Salustanquidio, and he attacked Amadis with his sword striking the neck of his horse. And Amadis struck him on top of his helmet such a blow that not only his helmet but his head was split in two, and immediately he fell to the ground dead; whence Constancio felt great sorrow, as he was a good knight; and then he called out to Floyan in a loud voice and said: "Have at this man, attack and kill him; for he is the one who is destroying us without any pity!"

Then both came at him together, and they gave him mighty blows with their swords. But Amadis struck Constancio, whom he encountered in front of him, such a blow on the boss of his shield that he broke it in two, and the sword did not stop there; instead it reached his helmet, and the blow was so great that Constancio was stunned and fell from his horse. When the Romans who were guarding Floyan saw him with Amadis, and

saw Constancio on the ground, more than twenty knights banded together and fell upon him, but they could not unhorse him and they didn't dare tarry with him, because he needed only one blow for anyone within his range.

The battle thus being at a stage where the Romans, since they were greatly superior in numbers, had somewhat the advantage, Grasandor and mighty Don Florestan came in aid, and they arrived at a time when the Romans had Agrajes and Don Bruneo and Angriote surrounded; for they had killed their horses; and Lasindo and Gandalin, and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley and Branfil, who by chance found themselves together, had rescued them; but the horde of troops attacking them was so great that these men I mention, although they unhorsed and killed many knights, and braved much danger, could not reach them. And when Don Florestan came up, and saw there such a great melee, he indeed thought that it probably wasn't without good reason; and when he arrived he recognized those knights who were rescuing Agrajes and his companions; and when Landin saw him, he said: "Oh, Sir Don Florestan, help us here! If you don't, your friends are lost."

When he heard this, he said: "Then draw near to me and let us attack those who will not dare await us."

Then he entered the thick of the fight, unhorsing and killing everyone he overtook, until his lance broke. And he grasped his sword and struck such powerful blows with it that he infused fear in all those who were there. And those knights that I have mentioned continued to keep pace with him until they reached where Agrajes and his companions were on foot, as you have heard. Who could tell you what they experienced there in that rescue and what those who were surrounded had accomplished! Certainly it cannot be adequately recounted that so few as they were should be able to defend themselves against so many who sought to kill them. But withal, they all would have been in great danger of losing their lives, if chance had not brought Amadis there, whom Floyan and his men had left, because out of the twenty knights who I told you had helped Constancio, he had unhorsed and killed six; and when he saw that they were leaving and withdrawing from him, and heard the loud shouts that were being uttered in that melee, he hastened there. And

when he arrived, he immediately reeognized them from their arms, and began to eall his own men, and there joined him morc than four hundred knights. And as there was the greatest press that there had been in the whole day, there hastened also from the Romans' side, Floyan and Arquisil and Flamineo, with as many troops as eould; and there began the fiercest and most dangerous battle ever seen. There you would have secn Amadis performing miracles the like of whieh aeeomplished by a knight never had beeir seen or heard of; so that he caused the enemy as well as his own men to marvel greatly, not only at those that he killed but also at those that he unhorsed. And as the shouts were many and the noise very loud, not only the emperor, but also most of those who were in the battle, hastened there. Don Cuadragante, who was going about in another area of the battlefield, was told by a mounted erossbowman how things were going, and at once in great haste gathered together more than a thousand knights of his brigade who were guarding him, and said to them: "Now, sirs, let your exeellenee be demonstrated and follow me, for our aid is greatly needed."

All went with him, and he ahead; and when they reached the melee, there were so many troops from both sides that they could scarcely reach their enemies. And when he saw this, with his troop in the elose formation in which he was bringing it — and which was very effective, being made up of good knights — he made such a strong flank attaek that at his arrival more than two hundred knights went to the ground, and I tell you truly that those whom he reached with a direct blow were beyond the help of a physieian.

Amadis, when he saw what Don Cuadragante and his troop were doing, was quite astounded, and plunged so violently into the enemy's ranks, dealing so many and such heavy blows, that he left no man in his saddle. But at that hour Arquisil and Floyan and Flamineo, and many others with them, fought so fiercely that few there were who eould have done better; and they tried as hard as they could to bring death to Agrajes and the companions who were with him on foot, and to Don Florestan and the others we mentioned to you who were near them to proteet them; for after they went through the great press of the troops and reaehed them, never, by any forees that had comc nor by blows that they

struck, could they dislodge them from there. And as they saw what their own men were doing and such great injury to the enemy, they pressed the Romans so powerfully, both on the part of Don Cuadragante and that of Amadis and of Don Gandales, who came up with as many as eight hundred of the knights of whom he had charge, that in spite of themselves, although the emperor shouted very loudly — who after Don Cuadragante had struck him that mighty blow with his sword paid more heed to directing his troops than to fighting — they forced them to evacuate the field, so that Agrajes and Angriote and Don Bruneo, who had suffered great distress and danger, were able to acquire horses on which to mount; and at once they entered the fray against the Romans, who were losing, and thus they held them until the latter reached the battalion of King Arban of North Wales, at a time when the sun had already set. And for this reason King Arban took them with him and did not seek to charge, for such were the orders of King Lisuarte to him on account of the time of day and because of his enemies there remained many to enter into the fray, and he was afraid of receiving from them some reverse; for he really had thought that against his first opponents the emperor and his men would have sufficed. And so on this account and because night had come, which was the chief reason, they withdrew the Romans, and the enemy halted, for they did not pursue them any further, so that the battle ceased with great losses on both sides, although the Romans received the greater share.

Amadis and those on his side, as the battlefield was under their control, had all their own wounded removed and their forces despoiled all the others, and there remained on the field the wounded and dead of the Romans, whom they had not sought to kill, of whom many died from lack of succor.

Then the troops of both sides having returned to their camps, there were some men in holy orders, who were wont to come to battles to minister to the souls of those who needed it; and who, when they saw such great destruction and heard the cries that the wounded uttered in asking for pity and mercy, decided, with regard to both sides, to devote themselves to God's service in trying to bring about some truce in which the wounded might be cared for and the dead be buried. And thus they did, for these

men spoke with King Lisuarte and with the emperor, and the others with King Perion, and they all considered it good that a truce be established for the following day. That night they spent with many men on guard, and they cared for the wounded, and the others rested from the great effort that they had expended. Morning having come, many went out to look for their relatives and others for their lords; and there you would have seen the very great lamenting of both sides, which when heard causes great sorrow and even more when seen. They carried all the living to the encampment of the emperor, and the dead were buried, so that the field was cleared.

So they spent that day making ready their arms and taking care of their horses. And they treated Don Cuadragante's wound in the arm and they saw that it was slight; but although any other knight would have considered it such that he would not be able to arm or exert himself, he did not seek on account of this to refrain from aiding his comrades in the ensuing battle.

Night having come, they all retired to their tents, and at daybreak they got up at the sound of the bugles and heard mass; and immediately all the troops were armed and mounted, and each captain assembled his own men. And on both sides it was decided that the battalions that had not fought should be in the vanguard, and thus it was carried out.

CHAPTER CXI

What happened to each side in the second battle, and for what reason the battle was halted.

King Lisuarte placed in the vanguard King Arban of North Wales, and Norandel and Don Guilan the Pensive, and the other knights you have heard about. And he with his battalion and King Cildadan were stationed behind them, and back of them the emperor and his men, each one in his own brigade with its captains, according to, and in, the order established.

King Perion gave over the vanguard to his nephew Don Brian de Monjaste, and he and Gastiles, with the standard of the Emperor of Constantinople, were stationed behind them, and all the other battalions in their predetermined arrangement; so that those who on the first day they fought were farthest removed from the front were now nearest.

In this order they all moved ahead, and when they were close together, the bugles sounded from all sides, and the brigades of Brian de Monjaste and King Arban of North Wales joined in battle so fiercely that from the first engagement more than five hundred knights went to the ground and their horses ran loose over the field. Don Brian found himself with King Arban, and they engaged in very great clashes, so that their lances were broken, but they did no other harm to each other. And they took their swords in hand and began to strike each other everywhere that they could do most injury, as men who had frequently carried on and experienced such activity. Norandel and Don Guilan attacked together the troops of their opponents; and as they were very valiant and courageous, they inflicted much harm;

and they would have done more had it not been for a knight named Fileno, a relative of Don Brian, who had come with the troops from Spain, and who took with him many of the Spaniards, who were good warriors, and attacked so fiercely that area where Don Guilan and Norandel were operating that not only them but all those that they caught in front of them, they thrust back for some distance on the field; but there Norandel and Don Guilan performed rare deeds in order to bring relief to their own men. King Arban and Don Brian were cut off from their battalions, both of them, on account of the great melee that there was on the other side; and each one of them began to encourage his own men by attacking and unhorsing the enemy. But as the troops from Spain were more numerous and better mounted, they had such a great advantage that if King Lisuarte and King Cildadan had not brought aid with their brigades, they would not have held the field against them, and all would have been lost; but with the arrival of these kings all was restored. King Perion, when he saw the standard of King Lisuarte, said to Gastiles: "Now, my good lord, let us move forward, and always watch for this standard, for I shall do likewise."

Then they charged headlong against their enemies. King Lisuarte received them like one who never lacked courage and strength, for certainly you can believe that in his time there never was a king who risked his life more admirably or more gratuitously in matters relating to his honor, as in this great story you can see in all the battles and attacks in which he participated.

So these troops having thus come back so augmented in numbers, who would be able to relate the deeds of chivalry that were accomplished there! It would be impossible for anyone who sought to tell the truth, for so many good knights were there killed and wounded that the horses could scarcely move forward without trampling them. Concerning King Lisuarte I tell you that as a man whose honor had been impugned and who cared not a whit whether he lived or died, he attacked his foes so fiercely that few did he encounter who dared await him. King Perion, while he was going about in another battle sector performing prodigious feats, by chance encountered King Cildadan; and when they recognized each other, they were unwilling to engage in combat; instead they passed each other by, and went on to attack

those whom they encountered in their path; and they unhorsed many knights whom they left lying dead or wounded.

When the emperor saw such a great fray, and it seemed to him that those on his side were in grave danger, he gave orders to his captains that with all their brigades they should charge as boldly as possible, and that he would do likewise; which was done, for all the battalions in concert with the emperor attacked their foes. But before they came up, the brigades on the opposite side, when they saw them coming, likewise all together charged across the field; so that all were jumbled together in such wise that they could not achieve any concerted action, nor could anyone protect his captain. But they were so intermingled and at such close quarters that they could not even attack with their swords, and they were tugging at, and unhorsing, each other, and there were more who died under the horses' feet than from the wounds that they were inflicting on each other. The confusion and the noise were so great, not only from the shouting but also from the clash of arms, that it seemed as if everyone in the world had assembled there; and certainly you can believe that, not the whole world, but most of Christendom and its flower were there, where so much injury to it was received that day, that for many a long period it could not be repaired. So this may be presented as an object lesson to kings and great lords in order that before they do things, they consider them and think them over first very conscientiously, observing fully the difficulties that may result from their action, so that not through their fault and errors and zeal, those who are blameless suffer and die, as frequently happens, though it may be that the innocence of these said people will bring their souls to a good place. So, although at present they are still alive, major and much more perilous loss of lives can be charged to those causing havoc such as this which was occasioned by this King Lisuarte, although he was wont to be very discreet and knowledgeable about everything; but this catastrophe was brought about by his unwillingness to follow the advice of anyone else.

Then putting all this aside, for in view of the great haughtiness and anger with which we are dominated to the point of involving ourselves in great suffering and great tribulations, concerning which I believe that admonishments are futile, we shall return

to the matter at hand, and I say to you that as the battalions were going about thus, and many people were dying, the press was so great, that neither side could prevail, for all were busy and were facing opponents with whom to fight. Agrajes was constantly preoccupied with looking for King Lisuarte, and he had not seen him because of the great melee and the multitude of troops; and while he was going about through the battalions, he saw that the king had just unhorsed Dragonis in an encounter in which he broke his lance, and that he had his sword in hand ready to strike him. And Agrajes went toward him with his sword and said to him: "Attack me, King Lisuarte, for I am the one who hates you the most."

He, when he heard him, turned his head and went for him, and Agrajes at him, and they both came at one another so hard that they could not strike each other; and Agrajes unfastened his sword from the chain on which he carried it suspended, and seized him in his arms; for, as is already stated elsewhere in this story, this Agrajes was the most aggressive and stout-hearted knight that there was in his time; and if strength as well as courage had helped him, there would have been no better knight than he in the world; and as it was, he was one of the few excellent ones to be found, were one to search far and wide.

Then, as they gripped each other with each trying as hard as he could to unhorse the other, Agrajes would have found himself in great danger because the king was the stronger of body and spirit, if it had not been for good King Perion, who intervened; and with him came Don Florestan and Landin and Enil, and many other knights. And when he saw Agrajes thus, King Perion endeavored to aid him; and from the other side, Don Guilan the Pensive hastened to the scene, and also Norandel, and Brandoyvas, and Giontes, King Lisuarte's nephew, for the latter, although they on other parts of the field were executing their assaults and performing great knightly deeds, always kept an eye on the king, because it was their responsibility to watch over him. So when they came up, they attacked with their swords — for their lances were broken — all of them striking so fiercely that it was a rare thing to see, and the knights were coming from both sides, each to rescue his own. But the king and Agrajes were gripping each other so tightly that they could not be

separated, nor could either one unhorse the other because those on the side of each were holding them in the middle and supporting them so that they would not fall. As here was the greatest press of the battle and the loudest din of loud shouts, many knights from each side hastened there, among whom came Don Cuadragante. And as he came up, and saw the melee, and the king and Agrajes locked in an embrace, he plunged very ruthlessly through the crowd and seized the king so violently that he nearly unhorsed both of them; but he did not dare strike the king lest he hit Agrajes; but in spite of the fact that those who were defending the king struck him many blows, he did not ever loosen his grip on him. King Arban of North Wales, who was accompanying the Emperor of Rome and who had not seen the king for a while, arrived there; and when he saw him in such great danger, he was beside himself with excitement, and seized Don Cuadragante very tightly. Thus all four were locked in close embrace, and around them King Perion and his men, and from the other side Norandel and Don Guilan and their men, who never stopped fighting each other.

Then while the situation was so confused and dangerous, the emperor and King Cildadan intervened on behalf of King Lisuarte with more than three thousand knights, and from the other side Gastiles and Grasandor with many other companies; and they all charged into the fray with such violence and clamor that perforce they scattered those who were fighting each other, and those who were gripping each other found it well to let go; and all four remained on horseback, but so very tired that they almost fell out of their saddles. And so many were the troops of King Lisuarte's side who charged, that the affair was close to being lost, if it had not been for the great prowess of King Perion and of Don Cuadragante and Don Florestan, and others who were friends of theirs, who as vigorous knights endured so much that it was a great marvel.

While they were in this melee, just as you hear, there came up that very valiant knight Amadis, who had gone to the right sector of the battle, and had killed Constancio with a single blow and laid low most of that sector; and he bore in his hand his good sword stained with blood up to the hilt. And there came with him Count Galtines and Gandalin and Trion. And when he

saw so many people attacking his father, and the emperor ahead attacking his own men and fighting as if in a battle he considered already won, he spurred his horse, which he had just taken from one of his father's pages, and which was fresh, and rode forward so hard and so boldly through the troops that it was a marvel to see. Floyan, who recognized him by his device, was afraid that if he reached the emperor all of them together would not be strong enough to defend or protect the latter against him; and as quickly as he could he put himself in front, risking his life to save the emperor's. Don Florestan, who happened to be thereabouts, charged forward along with Amadis; and when he saw Floyan, he went at him as quickly as he could, and they struck each other with their swords very mighty blows on top of their helmets. But Floyan was dazed so that he could not stay on his horse, and he fell to the ground and there was killed, not only by the great blow but also by the many riders who trampled him.

Amadis did not heed this battle; rather, since he was keeping his gaze fixed on the emperor, and even more in his heart the intention to kill him if he could, because the emperor was already among his own men, he dashed in among them with great fury to attack him; and although from all sides great blows were given him in order to defend the emperor against him, the foes were never able to prevent him from coming to grips with him. And when he reached him, he lifted his sword and struck him with all his might, and gave him such a powerful blow on top of his helmet that he robbed him of all his strength, and his sword fell from his hand. And when Amadis saw that he was going to fall from his horse, he struck him very quickly another blow on his shoulder, which cut through all the armor and flesh to his armpit, so that all that section, along with his arm, was dangling and he fell from his horse in such condition that shortly afterwards he was dead.

When the Romans who were very close to him saw it, they shouted loudly so that many came up and the battle again intensified; for very quickly Arquisil and Flamineo hastened there, and they arrived with many other knights where Amadis and Don Florestan were, and they struck them very great and hard blows from all sides. But Count Galtines and Gandalin and Trion called to Don Bruneo and Angriote to join with them

to aid them. And all five in spite of everyone came to their aid, inflicting much havoc.

King Perion was with Don Cuadragante and Agrajes and many other knights in the area where King Lisuarte and King Cildadan with many others were; and they were fighting each other very vigorously; so that right there was the fiercest battle that there had been all day, and a greater mortality of troops. But at this time Don Brian de Monjaste and Don Gandales intervened, who had gathered together out of their own forces close to six hundred knights; and they attacked the enemy so fiercely in the sector where Amadis and his companions were that despite their resistance they forced them back quite a distance. At the loud shouts that were then being given, Arban, King of North Wales, turned his head and saw that the Romans were losing the field, and he said to King Lisuarte: "Sir, let us withdraw; otherwise you will lose."

When the king heard this, he looked, and well recognized that he was speaking the truth. Then he said to King Cildadan that he should help him withdraw his men so that they not be lost; and so they did, for facing their foes all the while, and exchanging very hard blows with them, they withdrew until they were even with the Romans, and there they all halted, because Norandel and Don Guilan, and Cendil of Ganota, and Landasin, and many others with them, went over to the side where the Romans were, which was weakest, in order to reinforce them; but all was in vain; for already the struggle was hopeless.

The battle being at such a stage as you hear, Amadis saw that King Lisuarte's cause was irrevocably lost and that if the affair continued, it would not be in his power to save him, nor those great friends of his own who were with the king. And above all, he remembered that this man was the father of his lady Oriana, the one whom he loved and feared more than anything in the world, and the great honors that he and his relatives in times past had received from him, which should take precedence over these harassments, and that everything that might be done in such a situation would be to his own great glory and would be accounted abundant virtue rather than scant effort. And he saw that many of the Romans were carrying their lord away while uttering great laments and that the troops were

dispersing. And because night was coming on, he decided, although he might experience the ignominy of some embarrassment, to try to see whether he could serve his lady in such a publicized affair, and he took with him Count Galtines, whom he had near at hand, and went as fast as he could between both the battalions, though with great difficulty because the troops were many and the press great; for those on his side, since they were recognizing their advantage, were pressing their enemies very hard and in these others there was no longer scarcely any defense, except on the part of King Lisuarte and King Cildadan and the other outstanding knights. And he and the count came up to King Perion his father, and he said to him: "Sire, night is coming on, so that in a short time we would not be able to recognize one another; and if the conflict were to last much longer it would be very dangerous in view of the multitude of troops, for we might kill friends as well as foes, and they, us. It seems to me that it would be well to withdraw the troops, for according to the damage that our enemies have received, I certainly believe that tomorrow they will not dare to make a stand against us."

The king, who had great sorrow in his heart on seeing so many men dying without any fault of their own, said to him: "Son, let what seems best to you be done, not only on account of what you say but also so that no more people die; for that Lord who knows all things, perceives clearly that this is being stopped more out of service to Him than for any other reason; for we can bring about their total destruction since they are defeated."

Agrajes was near the king, and Amadis had not seen him, and he heard all that they had said; and he came with great fury to Amadis and said: "What, lord cousin, now that you have your enemies conquered and laid low, and you are enabled to become the most honored prince in the world, do you want to save them?"

"Lord cousin," said Amadis, "I would like to save our men so that with the coming of night they may not kill one another; for I consider our enemies conquered, because they have no resistance left."

Agrajes, as he was very intelligent, well recognized Amadis's desire, and said to him: "Since you don't want to conquer, you don't want to rule; for you will always be a knight errant, since

at such a juncture compassion overcomes and subdues you; but do as you think best."

Then King Perion and Don Cuadragante — in whom this did not cause regret, on account of King Cildadan, with whom he had so close a kinship and whom he loved so much — on the one side, and Amadis and Gastiles on the other, began to withdraw the troops, and they did so with ease, for already nightfall was dispersing them.

King Lisuarte, who had no hope of being able to recoup his loss, and was determined to die rather than be conquered, when he saw that those knights were withdrawing the troops, was greatly astonished and really thought that it was being done only as some great ruse. And he stood there waiting to see what might come of it. And when King Cildadan saw what the enemies were doing, he said to the king: "It seems to me that that body of troops will not pursue us and is doing us honor; and since that is the way it is, let us gather our own and go rest, for it is high time."

Thus it was done, for King Arban of North Wales and Don Guilan the Pensive, and Arquisil and Flamineo with the Romans, withdrew all their troops. Thus this battle was brought to a close as you hear; and inasmuch as the beginning of this entire great story was based on that notable love affair that King Perion had with Queen Elisena, which was the cause of this knight Amadis their son's being engendered, from which amour and from the one that he has with his lady Oriana, has proceeded and is proceeding such a great and extensive written account, although some of it may seem to be irrelevant, it is right not only in exculpation of these people who loved so unconventionally, but also in that of others who love in the same way that there be set forth what a great force love is, over and above all others; for in an event so transcendent and so outstanding as this was throughout the world, in which so many people of high rank were involved and there were so many deaths and such very great honor accruing to the victors, putting everything aside there in the midst of the anger and fury and great pride, along with enmity of such long standing — and the least of these emotions sufficing to blind and disturb anyone, no matter how very discreet and valiant he may be — the love that this knight had for his

lady exerted such force that forgetful of the greatest glory that can be attained in this world, which is to conquer, he set up an impediment whereby his enemies would receive the benefit that you have heard; for most certainly you can believe that in the hands and will of Amadis and of those on his side rested the complete destruction of King Lisuarte and his men, without their being able to defend themselves.

But there is no reason to attribute it to anyone except to that Lord who is the restorer of all things; for one can well believe that by Him it was permitted to be done in view of the peace and harmony that resulted from this very great enmity, as we shall relate to you subsequently.

Then the troops having been withdrawn and returned to their camps, a truce of two days was established because the dead were many; and it was agreed that each side might carry away in safety its own slain. The labor expended in burying them and the lamenting carried on for them it will be unnecessary to state, because the death of the emperor, in view of the mourning it occasioned, caused all else to be forgotten. But an account of both matters will be omitted, not only because it would be prolix and tedious, but also in order not to digress from the main narrative.

CHAPTER CXII

How king lisuarte had the body of the emperor of rome carried to a monastery, and how he spoke with the romans about that situation in which he was, and the reply that they gave him.

King Lisuarte arrived at his tent and asked King Cildadan to dismount there and disarm in order that before they rested they might plan how the body of the emperor might be placed where it was fitting for it to be. And when they were disarmed, although they were quite bruised and weary, they went together to the tent of the emperor where he lay dead, and they found all his top-ranking knights gathered around his body mourning deeply; for although this emperor by nature was haughty and gruff, whence those with such mannerisms should be disliked, he was very free and generous in bestowing on his own men so many good benefits and favors that thereby he concealed many defects, although everyone naturally is quite content with those who receive with grace and courtesy people who come to them, they are much more content with those who, although with some harshness, carry out requests made to them, because the real effect consists in practicing virtue, and not merely in talking it.

These two kings having arrived there, they stopped those knights from mourning, and asked them to go to their tents and disarm and care for their wounds, for they would not leave there until that body was placed where such a great prince ought to be. Then all having gone, so that only the functionaries in charge of the tent remained, King Lisuarte gave orders to make ready the emperor so that they could travel with him at once and bear

him to a monastery which was one day's journey from there near one of his towns, which was called Lubayna, in order that with greater ease it might be transported from there to the chapel of the emperor in Rome.

This having been thus arranged, the kings returned to the tent they had left, and there supper was being held in readiness for them; and they supped, and in the opinion of those who were there, with good countenances; but a certain man was there who inwardly was not cheerful; rather, at heart he was greatly distressed and preoccupied, and this man was King Lisuarte; because once the truce expired, he expected no remedy for his situation, for in view of the advantage that his foes had had over him in the two past battles, and the great weakness that he recognized in his troops, especially in the Romans, which was preponderant, and having a knowledge of the great strength of his adversaries, he deemed it a foregone conclusion that he was not up to sustaining the third battle, and in it he expected only to be dishonored and conquered, although the most certain thing was that he would be killed, because he did not desire life any longer than he could maintain his honor. And when King Cildadan had supped, he went to his tent, and King Lisuarte remained in his own.

Thus they spent the night, placing heavy guards around their camp; and morning having come, the king arose; and after he had heard mass, he took King Cildadan with him and went to the tent of the emperor, whom they had already taken away, and Floyan with him, to the monastery that I told you about; and he had Arquisil and Flamineo summoned, and all the other great lords who were there in their company; and they having come before him, he spoke to them in this wise: "My good friends, the great sorrow and regret I have on account of the death of the emperor and the desire and will to avenge it, only God knows. But, as these be things very common in the world, and they cannot be avoided, as each one of you will have seen and heard, there remains no recourse except that, putting aside the matter of the dead, the living who remain apply such a remedy to their honor as to show that from the literal demise of those who have died no pseudo death is resulting for those who are surviving. The past is irreparable; for the present and future, through the

goodness of God so many of us remain that if with that love and good will to which good men are found and obligated we help ourselves, I trust in Him that with much glory and benefit we shall recover that which up to now has been lost. And I want you to know that as for me, if I had everyone against me, and those who are with me should leave me, I shall not leave this place except as a victor or dead. So, my good friends, consider who you are and the lineage from which you come, and act in this affair in such wise as to make known to everyone that the death of the lord does not mean the death of all his men."

King Lisuarte having finished his talk, as Arquisil outranked all the Romans both in strength and in lineage, because, as you frequently have been told, on him rightfully devolved the succession to the throne of the empire, he stood up where he was, and answered the king, saying: "Ever since Rome was founded, the great deeds and exploits that the Romans in times past have achieved to their honor have been known to everyone; of these the histories are full and in them are noted their achievements as outstanding among all those in the world as is the morning star among the stars. And since we come from such excellent stock, don't believe otherwise, good Sir King Lisuarte, than that now better than at first and with more effort and concern, leaving behind all the danger and fear that might come upon us, we shall pursue what our famous ancestors pursued, whereby they left in this world a fame so eulogized by perpetual memories of it. And since the virtuous ought to pursue it, do not let yourself falter, or become faint-hearted, because on behalf of all these lords and for the others whom they and I have been charged with governing and commanding, I promise that after the expiration of the truce, we shall take the lead in the battle, and with greater effort and courage we shall resist and press our foes just as if the emperor our lord were our leader."

What this knight said seemed very good to all those who were there, especially to King Lisuarte; and it made very clear that quite rightfully he deserved the honor and great domination that God gave him, as will be told later on. With this reply King Lisuarte went away very happy, and he said to King Cildadan: "My good lord, since we find such assurance in the Romans, and that they are helping us with such good will as I

had not believed possible, and since they have so good and vigorous a knight for a leader as is this Arquisil, it is quite right and very just that we, ignoring all danger, undertake this business as reason obliges us to do. And for my part, I say to you that, once the truce has expired, there will be nothing except immediately the battle, in which if God does not give me victory, I do not want Him to give me life, for death will be for me a greater honor."

King Cildadan, as he was a very good knight and of great courage, although in his heart he always lamented that very great shame weighing on it at seeing himself a vassal of that king, heeding more that to which he was in duty bound by this promise and oath than the satisfaction of his will or desire, said to him: "My lord, I am very happy about what is discovered in the Romans, and much more in having become acquainted with the strength of your heart; for things like this that are past, and the present ones that are hoped for are the touchstone in which it is of import to reveal its virtue. And with regard to what concerns me, rest assured that where you are, whether I am alive or dead, there this body of mine will be."

When the king heard this, he thanked him profusely, and he esteemed him so highly that from that hour on, according to what was ascertained later by Cildadan, the king was resolved, however prosperous or adverse his fortunes might become, to set him free from the sovereignty which he exercised over him; which was so carried out, as later you will hear.

It is an impressive thing, one to be carefully noted by anyone who reads about it: that King Lisuarte merely by becoming cognizant of the great zeal with which this king offered to die in his service, although it did not come to this, saw fit to set him free from the vassalage in which he was holding him; from which one is given to understand that true good will, not only in spiritual matters but also in what is temporal, deserves as great a reward as if the deed itself were performed, because from it is derived the effect of what is good, and from the opposite, what is evil.

These kings having reached their tents, dined and rested, taking care of what was essential to putting an end to this very

great and outstanding affront that they were sustaining to their honor and lives.

But now we shall leave both sides in their encampments, as you have heard, each hoping that in the third battle glory and conquest would be for itself, although the certainty of it for one side might have been very clearly recognized; and we shall relate to you what occurred in the meantime; whereby you will recognize that pride and great anger, and the danger so close and imminent in which these troops were from each other, could not prevent what God, powerful in all things, was pledged to bring about.

CHAPTER CXIII

How the saintly hermit Nasciano, who had reared the handsome youth Esplandian, having learned of the great rupture existing between these kings, took steps to reconcile them, and what he accomplished in the matter.

The story relates that that saintly man Nasciano, who had brought up Esplandian, as the third Book of this story records, having occupied his hermitage, in that great forest you have already heard about, for more than forty years — and since it was a very forbidding, remote place, seldom did anyone go there, whence he always maintained supplies sufficient for a long time; and it is not known whether by the grace of God or by means of reports that he was able to hear about the matter — found out that these kings and great lords were in such peril and danger, not only to their own persons but to all those who were engaged in their service; whereat he was greatly grieved and sad of heart. And because at the time he was so ailing that he could not walk or even rise, he prayed to God to grant him health and strength so that he could be an instrument for peace to those men who were of His holy faith; because, since he had heard confession from Oriana, and from her had learned the whole secret concerning Amadis and that Esplandian was their son, he clearly recognized the great danger that was being incurred in having her marry another person. And apropos of this, he thought that since Oriana was in a place where she could not fear the anger of her father, it would be well, although he was very old and weary, to set forth and go to the Firm Island, so that with her permission, for otherwise it could not be, he might set the

king right concerning what he did not know, and might take such steps, by imposing peace and harmony, as to bring about marriage with Amadis.

With this thought and desire, when he felt somewhat improved in health, he took with him two men from that village where his sister lived — who was the mother of Sargil, the one who went about with Esplandian — and on his ass he took to the road although with great weakness; and with short day's journeys and great effort he traveled until he reaehed the Firm Island at the time that King Perion and all the troops had already left for the battle, at which he was very sad. Then having arrived there, he informed Oriana of his arrival. When she learned this, she was very happy for two reasons: the first, because this saintly hermit had reared and, after God, had given life to her son Esplandian; and the other, to take counsel with him eoneerning the welfare of her soul and conscience. And at once she gave orders to the maid of Denmark to go out to him and bring him to where she was, and so she did. When Oriana saw him enter the door, she went to him and knelt before him, and began to weep very grievously; and she said to him: "Oh, saintly man! Give your blessing to this unfortunate and very sinful woman, who was born into this world to her own misfortune and that of many others!"

Tears came to the eyes of the hermit out of the compassion he felt for her, and he raised his hand and blessed her, and said to her: "May that Lord who is the restorer and is all-powerful bless you, and may He be the guardian and repairer of all your affairs."

Then he took her by the hand and lifted her up and said to her: "My good lady and beloved daughter, with much fatigue and great effort I have come to speak with you; and when it pleases you, command that I be heard, beeause I cannot tarry, nor do my way of life and my clerieal garb permit me to do so."

Oriana, still weeping, took him by the hand, without making any reply to him, for her great sobbing did not permit it; and went into her chamber with him and gave orders to leave them there alone. Thus it was done. When the hermit saw that he could say whatever he wished without fear, he said: "My good lady, while I was in that hermitage where for sueh a long time

I have besought God our Lord to take pity on my soul, and have been laying aside all worldly things so as not to receive any setback to my purpose, I learned that the king your father and the Emperor of Rome with many troops have come against Amadis of Gaul; and likewise he with his father and other princes and knights of high rank are going to give battle to them. What can result from this anyone will recognize; for certainly, in view of the multitude of troops and the great rigor with which they are challenging and seeking out each other, there can only result from it a great loss of life to them and a great offense to God our Lord. And because the cause, according to what I am told, is the marriage by which your father wishes to unite you with the Emperor of Rome, I, lady, undertook to make the present journey as a person who knows the secret of how your conscience is in this matter and the great danger to your person and reputation if what the king your father wishes were to be carried out. And because from you, my dear daughter, I ascertained it in confession, I have not been free to apply to it that remedy which befitted such a great wrong as that which is in prospect. Now that I see the state in which matters are, it will be more sinful to remain silent than to tell it. I come, beloved daughter, so that you may consider it better for your father to know the past, and that he cannot give you any husband except the one you have; than that, not knowing it, thinking that what he wishes can rightly be carried out, his stubbornness be such that with great destruction of his own men and of the others, he pursue his intention and at the end it be made public, just as the Gospel says that nothing can be so hidden as not to be ascertained."

Oriana, whose frame of mind was somewhat calmer, took him by the hands and kissed them many times against his will, and said to him: "Oh, very saintly man and servant of God! In your desire and will I place and leave all my trouble and anxieties for you to do that which is best for my soul; and may it please that God whom you serve, and whom I have offended so deeply, out of His holy compassion to show the way, not as I as a great sinner deserve, but as He through His infinite goodness is accustomed to do with those who have greatly sinned against Him, if wholeheartedly, as I now do, they beg Him for mercy."

The good man answered her with great pleasure: "Then, beloved daughter, in this Lord who you say fails no one in urgent need if with true sincerity and contrition He is besought, have great faith; and it is incumbent on me, as one who with most propriety can and should do so, to apply whatever remedy be in His service, to the end that your honor be protected with that security that is essential to your soul's conscience. And because from delay much harm and evil can ensue, it is fitting that by you, my good lady, I be given leave to depart at once, so that the effort of my person may obtain, if possible, some of the fruits that I desire."

Oriana said to him: "Sir Nasciano, that youth to whom after God, you have given life, I entrust to you so that you may pray to Him on his behalf; and if you return here, strive hard to bring him with you; and may you go committed to God that He may guide you on your way, so that your good desire may be fulfilled to His holy service."

Thus the saintly hermit took his leave, and with great weariness of natural forces and great hope of carrying out his good desire started on his way to where he knew the troops were on the move. But as he was so old, just as the story relates, and he could travel only on his donkey, his progress was so slow that he was unable to arrive until the two battles had already taken place as related, so that while the armies were occupied under truce in burying the dead and caring for the wounded, this very saintly man arrived at the camp of King Lisuarte; and when he saw so many people dead and many others wounded with diverse wounds, on account of which they were making loud laments everywhere, he was greatly shocked; and he lifted his hands to the heavens, weeping out of great pity, and said: "Oh, Lord of the world! may it please you out of your holy compassion and the suffering that you underwent for the sake of us sinners, that without paying heed to our very great errors and sins, you give me divine grace whereby I may be enabled to forestall such great evil and harm as is in store for these servants of yours."

Then on entering the encampment, he asked how to reach the tents of King Lisuarte, to which he went without resting anywhere. And when he arrived there, he dismounted from his donkey, and went to where the king was. When the king saw

him, he recognized him at once, and was greatly surprised at his coming because in view of his great age he had the definite impression that he would not even have been able to leave his hermitage. And he at once suspected that such a man as he, so weighted down with afflictions and of such a saintly life, would not have come except for some all-important reason, and he went to him to welcome him; and when he came up to him, he knelt and said: "Father Nasciano, friend and servant of God, give me your blessing."

The hermit raised his hand and said: "May that Lord, whom I serve and whom all the world is obligated to serve, protect you, and give you such understanding that by not esteeming highly the perishable things in it, but rather by rejecting them, you may perform such good works that thereby your soul may have and attain that glory and repose for which it was created, if you do not lose it through your own fault."

Then he gave him his benediction and raised him by his hands and knelt to kiss them, but the king embraced him and did not permit it; and taking him by the hand, he had him sit beside him. And he gave orders that food should be brought to him immediately, and this was done; and after he had eaten, the king retired with him into a private room of the tent, and asked him the reason for his coming, saying to him that he was greatly surprised in view of his age and great seclusion, that he was able to have come to a locality at such a distance from his dwelling place. The hermit responded to him saying: "Sire, very logically one should believe all that you say; for certainly in view of my great age, of body as well as of will-power and condition, I am no longer in a position to do more than go from my cell to the altar. But it is incumbent on those who wish to serve our Lord Jesus Christ and desire to follow His holy teachings and in His footsteps, that at no season of their age, on account of any travail or fatigue that may come to them, should they weaken for a single moment; for remembering how God, being the true creator of all things, without anything compelling Him except only His holy compassion and mercy, made the effort to come in order to give to us Paradise, which we had closed to us in this world, where with so many insults and acts of irreverence from such dishonorable people, he received death

after very cruel suffering, what can we do, however much we may serve Him, that would reach as high as his shoe latchet as that great friend and servant of His [St. John the Evangelist] said to him? And considering this, putting aside the fear and danger to my petty life, thinking that here I could function better in His service than where I was, I resolved with much hardship to my body and extreme willingness as regards desire, to make this journey, during which may it please Him to guide me, and you, my lord, to receive my message, putting aside all anger and passion and above all, wicked pride, enemy of all virtue and conscience, so that by continuing in God's service, those things be forgotten that in this world are of value in the opinion of many and in the next world, which is the more real one, are abhorred. And coming to the point, my lord, I say to you that while I was in that hermitage to which chance guided you — a hermitage hidden away in that thickly wooded, rugged mountain — where you talked with me concerning everything pertaining to that very handsome and well-reared youth Esplandian, I learned of this very great confrontation and cruel war in which I find you, and also the reason and cause of its being waged. And because I know very definitely that what you, my good lord, were seeking, which is to marry your daughter to the Emperor of Rome, on account of whom so much trouble and harm has come about, could not be done, not only on account of what many grandees and other lesser men of your kingdom many times told you, saying that this princess was your legitimate heiress and successor after the end of your days, which was and is a very legitimate reason for desisting with much reason and good conscience; but also for another reason that is concealed from you and others, and made known to me; which with more cogency, according to divine and human law, averts it, so that in nowise can it be done; and this is because your daughter is joined in matrimony with the husband that our Lord Jesus Christ considered good and it is in His service that she be married."

The king, when he heard this from him, thought, since this good man was already of very advanced age, that he was losing his mind, or that someone had coached him very well on what he had said; and he responded, saying: "Nasciano, my good friend, my daughter Oriana never has had a husband nor does

she have one now, except that emperor to whom I gave her, because with him, although she was removed from my kingdom, I was affording her much greater honor and a higher status. And God is my witness that my intention never was to disinherit her in order to make my other daughter my heiress, as some say, but because I reckoned that this kingdom of mine if joined by ties of affection with the empire of Rome, His holy Catholic faith would be greatly exalted; for if I had known or imagined the enormity of the events that have resulted from all this, with very little urging my desire and will would have changed into willingness to take other advice. But, since my intention was just and good, I conclude that neither what has happened nor what is in the future can or ought to be deemed my fault."

The good man said to him: "My lord, just for that reason I said to you that what to you was concealed, to me is made known. And putting aside what you tell me of your sincere and noble intention, for in view of your great discretion and the very high honor God has conferred upon you, it should and can be believed, I want you to know from me what you could hardly find out from anyone else, and I tell you that the day I arrived by your command at the tents in the forest where the queen and her daughter Oriana were with many matrons and maidens, and you were there with many knights, when I brought with me that lucky youth Esplandian, who was conducting the lioness on a leash — Esplandian to whom the Lord has promised so much good fortune, as you, my good lord, have heard — the queen and Oriana told me all the secrets on their consciences, so that in the name of the One who created them I might impose on them the penance that was indicated for the salvation of their souls. I found out from your daughter Oriana that after the day that Amadis of Gaul took her from Arcalaus the Enchanter and the four knights who with him were carrying her off as a prisoner, at the time that you were deceived by the maiden who lured you out of London on account of the boon that you promised her, and you were seized and in great danger of losing your life and your whole dominion — from which situation Don Galaor, his brother, set you free at the great risk of his own life — not only for that great service that Amadis rendered her but also even more on account of that which his brother performed for

you, as a reward she promised marriage to that noble knight, restorer of many distressed people, flower and mirror of all the knights in the world, in lineage as well as in strength and all the other good qualities that a knight ought to have; whence it followed that by the grace and will of God, there was engendered that Esplandian whom He willed to make so superlative and outstanding over and above all others living, for truthfully we can say that in many long periods of the past — and the same will be said in the future — no mortal has been known by man to have been reared so miraculously; then what concerning his deeds that great woman sage Urganda the Unknown publicly reveals, you, Sire, know much better than I; so that we can say that although that came about by chance, according to all appearances, it was naught else but a mystery of God that He was pleased to have take place as it did. And since it pleases Him so greatly, it should not trouble you, my good lord; rather, considering this to be His will, and the nobility and great value of this knight, deem it well to accept him, along with all his great lineage, as servant and son, giving the order, as it can be given, that your honor having been protected, the present danger be removed, and in the future such procedure be followed as persons of good conscience may determine to be in the service of that Lord whom we are born into this world to serve; and you, in subordination to Him, are His minister in temporal matters. And now, noble King Lisuarte, I wish to see whether that great discretion is well employed with which God has willed to adorn you, and likewise the augmented high estate in which more out of His infinite goodness than because of your own merit, He has placed you. And since He has done for you more than you deserve, do not consider it excessive to follow somewhat what His holy doctrines teach."

When this was heard by the king, he was greatly astonished and said: "Oh, Father Nasciano! Is it true that my daughter is married to Amadis?"

"Certainly it is true," said he, "for he is the husband of your daughter, and the youth Esplandian is your grandson."

"Oh, Holy Mary help us," said the king. "What a bad precaution to keep it a secret from me for so long! For if I had known or imagined it, there would not have been killed and lost

so many wretched men as there have been without their deserving it. And I wish that you, my good friend, had informed me of it in time for the situation to have been remedied."

"That could not have been possible," said the good man, "because what is told in confession must not be revealed; and if now it has been, it is by permission of that princess from whom I now come, for she has been pleased to let it be told; and I trust in the Savior of the world, that if in the present situation such a remedy is given, it may be in His service, so with slight penance He will pardon what is past, since the deed, more than the intention, seems to be wicked."

The king remained in thought for quite an interval without saying anything, while he recalled the great valor of Amadis, and how he deserved to be the lord of great lands, just as he was, and to be the husband of a person who might be mistress of the world; and furthermore the great love he had for his daughter Oriana, and how he would be using virtue and good conscience in leaving her as his heiress, since by right it was coming to her, and the love that he always had had for Galaor and the services that he and his entire family had rendered him, and how many times, after God, he was helped by them at a time when he expected nothing but death and the destruction of his whole state, and especially that that very handsome youth Esplandian was his grandson, in whom he had such great expectations; for if God protected him and he became a knight, according to what Urganda wrote to him, he would have no equal in excellence in the world; and likewise how in the same letter she wrote to him that this youth would bring about peace between him and Amadis; and he also remembered that the emperor was dead, and that if through him and by becoming a relative of his was winning honor, much more he would have by being related to Amadis, as in his experience he had seen many times; and with this, besides achieving peace, not only for himself but also for his kingdom, he would so increase in honor that no one in the world would be his equal; and after he reached a conclusion regarding his concern, he said: "Father Nasciano, friend of God, although my heart and will may have been conquered by pride and not desirous of anything but to receive death or give it to many others so that my honor might be

satisfied, your saintly words have had such virtue that I am determined to curb my will in such a fashion that if peace and harmony should not come into effect, you may be my witness before God that the blame and fault are not mine. Therefore do not fail to speak with Amadis, and do not reveal anything about my resolve; ascertain his opinion about what he wishes in this affair, and report it to me. And if it is such as to be in conformity with mine, there can be arranged a way whereby present and future events may be forestalled in a manner that comports with the interests and honor of both sides."

Nasciano knelt before him weeping out of the great joy he felt; and he said to him: "Oh, fortunate king! May that Lord who came to save us, reward you for what you say to me, since I cannot."

The king lifted him to his feet and said to him: "Father, what I have said to you I hold as a resolution, without any ulterior motive."

"Then," said the good man, "I must leave at once, and before the truce expires strive for a conclusion to be reached in this matter whereby our Lord will be so greatly served."

So the king and he came out to the big tent, where many knights and other people were, and as the hermit was on the point of taking leave of him, there entered the door that handsome youth, his own ward Esplandian, and Sargil his foster-brother with him, for Queen Brisena was sending them to ascertain news of the king her lord. When the saintly man saw him so grown up, already having the stature of a man, who could tell you the joy he experienced? Certainly it would be impossible. Then just as he was in company of the king, he went up to him as quickly as he could to embrace him. The youth, although it had been a very long time since he had seen him, recognized him at once, and went to kneel before him and began to kiss his hands. And the saintly man took him in his arms, and kissed him many times with such great joy that he was almost completely out of his senses; and so in this way he held him for a long interval, for he was not able to withdraw from him, in this wise speaking to him: "Oh my good son! blessed be the hour in which you were born, and blessed and praised be that Lord who through such a great miracle willed to give you life

and raise you to such a high estate, the one at which my eyes now behold you!"

And while he was engaged in this, everybody was observing what the good man was doing and saying, and the great pleasure that the sight of that ward of his was affording him. And their hearts were moved to tenderness on seeing such love.

But greater than that of anyone else, although he did not show it, was the pleasure that King Lisuarte experienced; for although previously he had esteemed him highly and loved him for what he expected of him and for his very handsome appearance, it was nothing in comparison with his knowing for certain that he was his grandson, and he could not remove his gaze from him; for so great was the love that suddenly came over him that all that passion and anger that until then he had had about the past events was thereby removed and changed into the feelings he had at the time when he entertained the greatest love for Amadis. And then he recognized as a great truth what Urganda the Unknown had written to him, namely that this youth would effect peace between him and Amadis; and so he believed implicitly that everything else would come true.

After the good man held him embraced with such love, he released him from his embrace in which he had been holding him; and the youth went to kneel before the king and gave him a letter from the queen in which she begged him earnestly for peace and harmony if it could be done with honor, and many other things unnecessary to mention. The good man said to the king: "My lord, I shall receive great favor and great consolation of my spirit, if you would give Esplandian permission to accompany me while I go about here, so that I may have an opportunity to look at him and talk with him."

"So be it done," said the king, "and I order him not to leave you as long as such be your desire."

The good man thanked him profusely and said: "My good and fortunate son, come with me, since the king commands it."

The youth said to him: "My good sir and true father, I am very happy to do so because for a long time I had wanted to see you."

Then he left the tent with those two youths, Esplandian and Sargil his nephew, and he mounted his donkey, and they their

palfreys; and he went on his way to where Amadis had his camp, talking with them about many things to his liking, and all the while praying God to give him divine grace so that he might be able to bring to such a conclusion the mission on which he was engaged that it might be in His holy service.

So accompanied just as you hear, that saintly man arrived at the camp and went directly to the tent of Amadis, where he found so many knights and they so well garbed that he was greatly astounded. Amadis did not recognize him, for he had never seen him and could not imagine what a man so old and feeble was seeking. And he looked at Esplandian and beheld him so handsome that he could not believe that any living being could be so to such a degree. And he didn't recognize him either; for although he had spoken with him when he asked him for the Romans that he had overcome, and he gave them to him as this story has related, that sight of him was so brief that he had forgotten how he looked. But Don Cuadragante, who was there, recognized him at once, and went toward him and said to him:

"My good friend, I want to embrace you, and do you remember that when Don Brian de Monjaste and I encountered you, you sent regards by us to the Greek Knight? I gave them to him on your behalf."

Then he said to Amadis: "My good lord, you see here the handsome youth Esplandian, from whom Don Brian de Monjaste and I delivered regards to you."

When Amadis heard Esplandian mentioned by name he recognized him at once, and that he was pleased to see him, there is no need to tell, for he was so overwhelmed by the great joy he experienced that he could hardly answer or collect his wits. And if anyone had paid attention to it, he would have seen very clearly his perturbation, but there was no suspicion of any such thing; rather, everybody had the idea that no one except Urganda knew who his father was. Then with Don Cuadragante holding him by the hand, Amadis sought to embrace him, but Esplandian said to him: "Good sir, rather do honor to the saintly man Nasciano, who is seeking you."

And when everybody heard him say that was Nasciano, concerning whose sanctity and austere life so much fame everywhere was diffused, they came up to him with deep humility, and

kneeling on the ground they begged him to bless them. The hermit said: "I pray my Lord Jesus Christ that if a blessing from such a sinner as I am can be of benefit, this one of mine may diminish the great anger and pride that is in your hearts, and put you in such an understanding of His serviee, that forgetting the vain things of this world, you may follow the true things of the One who is true."

Then he raised his hand and blessed them. Amadis turned to Esplandian and embraced him. And Esplandian paid him respeet and reverenee, not as to his father, for he did not know that he was, but as to the best knight of whom he had ever heard. And for this reason he esteemed him so highly and was so happy to see him, that he could not remove his gaze from him; and sinee the day that he saw him vanquish the Romans, his desire always had been to travel in his company and in his serviee in order to observe his magnificent deeds of ehivalry and to learn for the future. And now that he saw himself older and elose to being a knight, he desired that mueh more; and if it had not been for the great quarrel that the king his lord had with Amadis, he would have already asked permission of him to join him; but this situation had inhibited him up to that time.

Amadis, who eould hardly take his eyes from him, saw that the youth was gazing at him so earnestly, and he suspected that he must have been aware of something. But the good hermit, who knew the truth, was gazing at father and son; and as he saw them together and both so handsome, he was as happy as if he had been in Paradise. And inwardly he prayed to God for them and that He be pleased to afford him the opportunity to be enabled to establish between all these knights, who were the flower of the world, a great deal of love and harmony. Then while everybody was eongregated around the holy man, he said to Don Cuadragante: "My lord, I must speak about some matters with Amadis; take this youth with you, since you have known and talked with him more than any of these lords."

Then he took Amadis by the hand and withdrew with him well away from them, and said: "My son, before the prineipal motive of my coming is made manifest to you, I wish to recall to your memory the very great responsibility, more than anyone else of those who are living today, which you have to God our

Lord; for at the hour you were born, you were cast into the sea enclosed in an ark without any protection; and that Redeemer of the world, having pity on you, miraculously brought you in sight of one who reared you so well. This Lord whom I mention to you has made you the most handsome, the strongest, and the most beloved and honored of all those known in the world. By you have been vanquished many valiant knights, and giants and many other fierce and unsightly creatures, which in this world do very great harm. You are today in the world outstanding among all those who are in it. So then since He has done so much for you, what should you rightfully do for Him? Certainly, if the Evil One were deceiving you, with more humility and patience than anyone else you ought to attend to serving Him; and if you do not do so, all the benefits and favors that you have received from God will be to the detriment and discredit of your honor, because just as His holy pity is great in those who obey and recognize Him, so his justice is more severe for those who have received the greatest benefits from Him without having any recognition of, or gratitude for them. And now, my good son, you shall know why, while exposing this tired and old body of mine to all the dangers to its well-being and seeking to pursue that purpose on account of which I willed to abandon the things of this perishable world, I have come with great effort and anxiety of mind, with the aid of that One, without whose aid nothing can be done that is good, to establish peace and love where so much rupture and misfortune exist according to present indications. And because I have spoken with King Lisuarte, and in him I find what every good king as a minister of God ought to obey, I have sought to find out from you, my good lord, whether you will have a better recognition of that One who created you than of the vainglory of this world, and in order that you may speak with me without any misgiving or fear, I inform you that before I came here, I went to the Firm Island; and with the permission of Princess Oriana, from whom I know in confession all her heart and her deep secrets, I have undertaken this negotiation in which you see me involved."

Amadis, when he heard him say this, fully believed that he was speaking the truth, because this was a saintly man and under no condition would he say anything except what was

true, and he answered him in this manner: "Friend of God and holy hermit, if the recognition that I have of the benefits and favors that I have received from my Lord Jesus Christ would fulfill the services that I owe Him, I would be the most fortunate knight ever born, but by receiving from Him all and much more than you have said, and not only by not recognizing or repaying Him, but offending Him each day in many respects, I consider myself very sinful and erring against His commandments. And if now by your coming I can make amends somewhat for the past, I shall be very happy and contented that it be done. Therefore say what is in my power; for that with complete dedication shall be fulfilled."

"Oh, my fortunate son!" said the good man, "How much you have gladdened this very sinful soul of mine and comforted my grief at seeing so much evil; and may that Lord who will save you give you on my behalf the reward for it! And now I without any fear want you to know what I know after coming to this land."

Then he related to him how he had spoken with Oriana and how by her request he had come to the king her father, and all the things that he had talked about with him, and how he had told him outright that Oriana was married to Amadis and that the youth Esplandian was his grandson, and how the king had accepted it with great forbearance, and that he was brought to the verge of peace; and that since he, Nasciano, with the help of God, had put him in such a frame of mind, he, Amadis, should facilitate a way, since he was married to that princess, whereby peace might be arranged between him and the king. When Amadis heard this, his heart and flesh trembled with the great joy that he felt in knowing that by his lady's own wish the secret of their love affair was revealed, and having her in his power without any risk of danger; and he said to the hermit: "My good sir, if King Lisuarte is of this mind and wishes me for his son, I will take him for lord and father, to serve him in all that may be to his honor."

"Since that is the way it is," said the good man, "how does it seem to you that these two wills can be united completely without more trouble ensuing?"

Amadis answered: "It seems to me, father, that you ought to speak with King Perion, my father, and tell him the motive and desire of your coming, and ask him whether he will approve, if King Lisuarte agrees to what Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste on our behalf will ask of him concerning the matter of Oriana, of making peace with the king; and I have such firm trust in his virtue that you will find all the assurance you desire. And tell him that you talked over some of it with me, but that I leave everything up to him."

The holy man considered good what he said, and proceeded accordingly; for he at once left the tent of Amadis with his young men and other companions, and went to that of King Perion, by whom, when informed who he was, he was welcomed with great affection and good will. The king gazed at Esplandian, whom he had never seen, and was greatly astounded on seeing a boy so handsome and so gracious, and he asked the holy man who he was. The saintly man told him that he was his ward, whom God had given to him very miraculously. King Perion said to him: "All the more so, father, if he is the youth who was bringing on leash the lioness with which he hunted, and whom you reared in the forest where you dwell, and of whom the great sage Urganda the Unknown has sent to tell us many extraordinary things that will come about for him, if God lets him live. And it seems to me, that when they told me about it, they said that she sent a letter to tell King Lisuarte that this youth would bring about a great deal of peace and harmony between him and my son Amadis; and if that is so, we all ought to love and honor him greatly, since as you, father, see, because of him so much that is good can come about."

The holy man, good Nasciano, said to him: "My lord, he is truly the one of whom you speak; and if now you are right in loving him, much more reason to do so will you have later on, when you learn more about him."

Then he said to Esplandian: "Son, kiss the hands of the king; for he well deserves it."

The youth knelt to kiss his hands, but the king embraced him and said: "My boy, you ought to be very grateful to God for the favor he did you in giving you such good looks and good grace, for without their becoming acquainted with you, you cause

everyone to love you and esteem you. And since He has been pleased to endow you with such grace and good looks, if you are obedient to Him, He has much more in store for you."

The youth did not make any reply; rather with great embarrassment on hearing himself praised by such a prince, he blushed, which seemed very good to everyone, as they beheld him possessed of all the modesty that his age required; and they greatly marveled at a person so outstanding, who did not know the identity of his father or mother. The king asked the saintly man Nasciano whether he knew whose son he was. The good man said: "He is the son of God, who creates all things, although of mortal man and woman he was born and engendered. But in view of his beginning and the care that He took in protecting and rearing him, He appears to love him as a son; and will be pleased, out of His holy clemency and mercy for you to know more about him before long."

Then he took him by the hand and drew him to one side, and said to him: "King, fortunate in all the things of this world and in the next if you fear God and have regard for all the things that be in His service, I have come to these parts with this body of mine so weak and weary from extreme old age, with the resolve that God my Lord will give me divine grace that I may be able to serve Him by obviating all the harm that is in preparation, and my sufferings and great fatigue have not permitted me to come sooner; and I have spoken with King Lisuarte, who as a servant of God, will be willing to conclude peace if it can be made honorably for both sides. And from him I have come to your son Amadis, and by referring me to you and that I follow your orders, he excused himself from making a reply to what I said to him; so that, my lord, peace or war depends on you, since everyone knows how greatly you are obligated to avoid things contrary to the service of that very high Lord, in view of the blessings of this world, not only of a wife but also of children and a kingdom, that He has provided for you. And now it is time that He know to what extent you are grateful to Him for them and wish to do Him service in return."

The king, as he had always been inclined to peace and tranquillity, on account of the harm that could ensue from the war, as well as the fact that he had there Amadis, who was

the light of his eyes, and Don Florestan and Agrajes and many other knights who were relatives, replied and said: "Father Nasciano, God is a witness of the good will that I have had in this great rupture, and that I would have avoided it if a way could be found to do so; but King Lisuarte has not given any opportunity for means to be found to that end, because much against God and his conscience he sought to disinherit his daughter Oriana, as everybody knows, who as you have found out, has been rescued. And even afterwards, he has been admonished and besought to be willing to agree to whatever is just, and told that everything would be done at his command; but he, as a powerful prince, and in this affair, more haughty than reasonable, thinking that because he had as ally the Emperor of Rome, the whole world would be subject to him, never wanted either to submit to justice or to hear of it; then from this course what has ensued and has been won for him, God knows and everyone beholds. But if he now is willing to have the insight that until the present he has not had, I trust completely these knights who are on my side to carry out and follow my counsel, which is that these bad actions be checked. And in order that you, father, may see on how little his stubbornness is based, if only in the matter of Oriana, his daughter, a solution were proposed, it would be the remedy for everything."

The good man said: "My good lord, God will grant it, and I in His place; therefore, speak with your knights and nominate persons who seek what is good; for it will be done thus by King Lisuarte; and I shall be with them, as a servant of Jesus Christ, to mend and repair what has been broken."

King Perion considered it good, and said to him: "That will be done at once; for I shall offer two knights who with all love and good will, may reach a just solution."

The holy man with this returned very happy and satisfied to the camp of King Lisuarte.

King Perion ordered all the principal knights summoned to his tent; and when they were assembled, he said to them: "Noble princes and knights, just as we are all greatly obligated in the defense of our honor and standing to expose our persons to every danger in order to defend them and maintain justice, so we are under the obligation to turn about and have recourse to reason

entirely without anger and pride when it is made clear to us; because although at the beginning, with fair justice, without offense to God, matters can be dealt with; but while going ahead with the point at issue, if through presumption and poor discernment we did not reach a reasonable solution, what was just at the outset and what ultimately is unjust would cancel each other out; so that it is necessary that honor and esteem, being for the most part at their perfection, if a way to harmony be discovered, as now there seems to be by putting aside things of the past, let it be taken for the service of the most high Lord and as a remedy for our souls, for which we are so responsible. Now you shall know that this holy hermit, friend and servant of God, has come to me; and according to what he says, our foes would like peace more in conformity with good conscience than with points of honor, if we so desire. In order to put it into effect, he asks only that persons from both sides be named to decide it with good will, putting aside unjust passion. It seems to be quite fitting that you know about it and vote as seems best to you, so that your decision may be carried out."

All were silent for a long while. Angriote de Estravaus rose and said: "Since everybody is silent, I shall voice my opinion." And he said to the king: "Sire, both because of your royal dignity and great personal integrity, and even more on account of the very great love that these princes and knights have for you, they have deemed it wise on this occasion to take you as their leader, so that the matters of war and peace may be guided by your counsel, for they recognize that neither fear nor partizanship will be able to sway you. And on account of the excellence of your counsel I have faith that whatever is decided by you would not be contradicted by any one of them, so that for both matters your capability suffices; but since your Grace is pleased to hear what each one will wish to say, I want you to know my opinion; which is that since Princess Oriana is held by us along with all that was acquired with her, it would be a great injustice, since our enemies desire peace, and our honor is so greatly increased, to refuse to grant it to them, it being a request in which we risk so little. And since at the beginning Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste were designated, so now they should be; for their discretion and virtue are so heightened that

at the hour that they presently undertake the task, then and even more completely they will leave it with peace concluded or the outbreak of war."

Just as this knight suggested, it was decided by the king and by those lords that these two knights, with the agreement and counsel of the king, should determine what they were to do thereafter.

CHAPTER CXIV

How the saintly man Nasciano returned to King Lisuarte with King Perion's answer, and what was agreed upon.

The good man Nasciano returned to King Lisuarte as you have heard, and told him what he had discussed with King Perion, and that since everyone was under the latter's command, it seemed to him that he ought to pursue and further the project with the very fine words that he had used with him. As the king was already resolved and very eager not to grant any longer to the Devil any of the participation that the latter had had up to then, from which great harm had resulted, he said to him: "Father, then it will not be thwarted by me, as you shall see; stay here with your companies in this tent, and I shall go and talk with these kings, who have received such great harm and danger in order to maintain my honor."

Then he went to the tent of Gasquilan, King of Suesa, who was still in bed on account of the fight he had with Amadis, as you have already heard; and he had King Cildadan and all the principal knights summoned, both his own and the Romans; and he told them what that good man the hermit had told him, both when he first came and now the reply that he brought from King Perion, but concealing what concerned Amadis and his daughter, for he did not want it to be known then; and earnestly begged them to tell him their opinion in order that, whether the outcome of that agreement was good or the opposite, he might obtain the participation of everyone. Especially did he want to find out the opinion of the Romans, because, in view of the great loss that they had sustained in losing their lord, it greatly obligated

him with disregard for his own desire to follow theirs. King Cildadan said to him: "My lord, it is quite right that the participation you mention and consider good be afforded them; and your fine courtesy obligates them finally to follow whatever your wish may be, just as I and all the others who are obedient to you will do, together with this noble King of Suesa, because in this matter his desire will not be different from ours; and now let them state what they wish."

Then that good knight Arquisil rose and said: "If the emperor, my lord, were alive, not only because of his greatness but also because this strife has been on his account, it would be incumbent on him to choose peace or make war according to his desire and will; but since he is dead, it can be said that his obligation died with him; for we who are of his blood and all his vassals, whom we have under our command and rule, are no longer an aggrieved party in the participation that you, my good lord King Lisuarte, as his equal in the same cause, may wish to have; concerning which you have already been told, and now it is reiterated to you that as long as one of us remains alive, we shall never cease to follow whatever be your will, so that, to you, as the leader and the one whom this present matter concerns more than anyone else, we relinquish the responsibility for what should be done regarding peace or war."

The king was greatly pleased with this knight as were all those who were there, because his reply was quite in keeping with complete discretion accompanied by great valor, which seldom go together; and he said to him: "Since you leave it to me, I assume it; and if any mistakes are made, let me be held mainly responsible; just as, if I am successful, I'll receive most of the honor."

Whereupon he went away to his tent; and he directed King Arban of North Wales and Don Guilan the Pensive to take charge of speaking with those persons that King Perion might name, so that with their advice arrangements might be made for the final decision. And then he said to the hermit: "Father, it seems to me, since the matter has reached such a stage, that it will be well for you to return to King Perion and tell him that I have these two knights appointed to negotiate with his men; and that it will be well — because such matters always entail delay, and

while the wounded are in these camps, they cannot be given medical eare nor can provisions be had for the troops and animals — that the camps be broken simultaneously and he with all of his men retire for the distance of a day's journey towards where he came from, and I likewise, which will be to my town of Luvayna, in ordcr to arrange for the rehabilitation of these troops, who are so battered, and to have the emperor transported to his own land, and that our messengers may discuss what ought to be done — and probably he and I will come — and that he communicate his will to his mcn. I shall do likewise to minc, and you will be an intermediary to serve as a witness to anyone's not being reasonable; and that if it be necessary, he and I with fewer people can see you wherever you like."

The hermit was greatly pleased with this, because he saw clearly that even if agreement were not achieved, the danger would be more remote with the troops farther apart; for although this saintly man was in holy orders and leading such an austere life in so rugged a region, he had been originally a knight very good at arms at the royal court of King Lisuarte's father, and after him at that of his brother King Falangris; so that just as in divine matters he was so faultless, he did not therefore fail to have a good understanding of worldly affairs, in which he had had much experience. And he said to the king: "My good lord, what you say appears to me to be good. It only remains that on a day appointed, your messengers and theirs be here at this place, which is a half-way point; and it may be, with the help of that Lord without whom nothing can be furthercd, that such arrangements will be made between them that you and King Perion may see each other as you have said, and the delays that are wont to occur between the third parties may be obviated. And I shall go back immediately and shall send word to you as to the period and hour that you may order your camp broken, so that at the saine time the other may be dismantled."

So the good man returned to King Perion and told him all about the agreement, with nothing omitted. The king was pleased with it, since it was to his very great advantage that the camps be broken; and with the approval of Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste he gave orders to proclaim that very early the next morning everybody was to be ready to strike his tent

and other equipment in order to break camp there. The good man sent word of this to King Lisuarte, and that he would be with him as quickly as he could.

Then morning having come, the bugles were sounded throughout the camps, and the tents dismantled; and with great pleasure on both sides, the camps were moved, each one on its way to where it was to go. But now we shall allow them to go on their separate ways, and we shall tell you about King Arabigo, who was on the mountain, as you have already heard.

CHAPTER CXV

How king arabigo, having learned of the departure of these troops, decided to fight with king lisuarte.

We have already told you that King Arabigo and Barsinan, Lord of Sansuenia, and Arcalaus the Enchanter and their companies were hidden away in the wildest and most easily defended area of the mountain while awaiting word from the scouts that they continuously and very secretly were maintaining to spy on the encampments; who witnessed very completely the battles that had taken place, and likewise the fortifying of the camps, whence neither side could receive any harm by night. And as up to that time there had not been any defeat inflicted there; rather, the camps always seemed to be unharmed, King Arabigo did not venture to come forth from there since he had no means of satisfying his desire, and always his intention was to wait until the very end, for he indeed thought that although for a while each side would be held at bay by the other, in the end one side would be conquered, and he was inwardly quite pleased because from the first battle no victory was evident; for the longer the struggle continued, the more the havoc was increased; so that at the end they would be left in such shape that with but little effort and less danger he would dispatch those who remained and would be lord of the whole land without there being anyone in it to gainsay him. So with great enjoyment he repeatedly embraced Arcalaus, praising and thanking him for what he had devised, and promising him great favor, telling him that there could no longer be any mistake about their being compensated for past injuries with much more than what had

been lost. Then while they were thus taking great pleasure and delight, the scouts came and told the king that the troops had broken camp, and armed were returning along the respective ways they had traversed to come there; so that they could not imagine what had happened. King Arabigo having heard this, at once thought that they might have separated under some agreement. He decided to attack King Lisuarte rather than Amadis, because if the former were killed or taken prisoner, Amadis would have little concern for the welfare of, or harm to, the kingdom, and thus he, King Arabigo, would be able to win it completely. But he said it would not be well to attack them until nightfall, because then they would catch them more unawares and more easily; and he gave orders to his nephew, who had the name of Esclavor, a man very well versed in warfare, to follow their progress very surreptitiously with ten mounted men, and note well where they set up camp; and he obeyed the order, so that he went through the most concealed part of the sierra, keeping watch over the troops who were moving along over the plain below.

King Lisuarte, who was proceeding on his way, had continued misgivings about that band, although he did not know exactly where it was; but some of those who lived in the countryside had told him that they had kept seeing people on that mountain on the side facing the sea, but that none of the observers dared to approach them; nor did the king have time to provide what was needed in the situation, for he was so occupied with what he had confronting him. And now being on his way as stated, he was warned by some people of the district that they had seen mounted men going stealthily along the hill tops of that mountain range. The king, as he was very perceptive and quick-witted, realized at once what had come about: that he would not be able to get away from those troops, if they should attack his side, without a great battle; which he feared at that time on account of seeing his own forces so battered by the past battles. But with a stout heart he did not delay in applying the necessary remedy; and summoning King Cildadan and all the captains, he told them the information he had acquired concerning those troops, and that he was asking them to have all their own troops armed and in good order so that if it were necessary they might find them with

the safeguards befitting knights. They all answered that just as he eommanded, his orders would be carried out by them, and that he should believe that rather than reeeive any discredit or harm they would lay down their lives. There were some who told him privately that he ought to inform King Perion, beeause those troops were many in number and fresh, and his were just the opposite, and they were afraid that he would not be able to escape from them without great danger; that it should be recognized that they were all his enemies; that if Fortune were against him, she would have no mercy on them, nor would his enemies fail to do all the harm they could. These counselors were Don Grumedan and Brandoyvas, who reckoned that if this were done, the king their lord would not have anyone to fear, and that in this way, peaee between them would be aceelerated and hastened.

But the king, who, as we have told you frequently, always feared more the loss of his honor than that of his life, answered that things were not in suffieiently bad shape for him to be willing to eommit himself to his enemies; for it might be that what now his counselors imagined a great danger would finally turn out to be the opposite; and that they should think only about attacking the enemy with great force if the latter should come, as King Lisuarte and his men always had done in instances of dangers in which they had found themselves which were greater than that one was. And then he ordered Filispinel with twenty knights to skirt the mountain, and as prudently as could be, so that they would not lose their lives, to get some information; and he did just as he was ordered. Meanwhile he had his troops halt, for they had already traveled some four leagues, in order that they and the animals might rest, so that, if it were possible, they might reaeh Luvayna without any additional halt; because he was more afraid of being attaeked by night than by day, and if the troops halted again, in view of their fatigue, he would not be able to prevent them from disarming and sleeping, so that a very small foree would be able to put them to rout. And as soon as they had rested a bit, he ordered them to mount, and he put his whole pack train and the wounded at the head of the eolumn, although during the days of the truce he had sent most of the latter to that town. Filispinel went direetly to the mountain, and because of the great precaution that he exercised, he immediately

became aware of the scouts and Esclavor's troop; and while most of those whom he had in his eompany remained with him, he sent a warning to the king, informing him that he had found those few knights who kept going about spying and that he believed the other troops were probably not very far away. The king's only aetion was to continue on his way in great haste so that the attack, if it should come, would find him near that town of his, for he realized that even if he were not completely eneireled, hc would be bctter able to protect himself in it than in the field. So in a short time he withdrew quite a distance away from the mountain.

Esclavor, nephew of King Arabigo, as he saw that they had discovered him, sent word to inform his uncle of the fact, and to tell him that in his opinion without any delay the latter should deseend from the mountain to the plain; for since they were diseovered, King Lisuarte would be willing to halt only where it might be to his advantage.

When this message arrived, King Arabigo and all his troops were at ease preparing for the night, without any intention of attaeking their enemy by day, and they were not able to arm and ride forth quiekly enough, for they were many, to avoid considerable delay — and what hampered them most were the difficult mountain passes; for just as they had chosen the roughest and rockicst area as best for defense, so they found it quite the opposite for offense.

Then, just as you hear, these troops began to follow King Lisuarte; but before they had eome down from the mountain, he had already gone such a long distanee that after they descended to the plain, however much they spurred ahead in his pursuit, they were not able to overtake him until quite near the town. But Arcalaus, sinee he was familiar with the region, kept telling King Arabigo not to hurry and weary his troops, for sinee they had them in view it was not possible for them to get away, and not to consider it important that they take refuge in the town, for he knew it very well, and that in view of their small foree, it would be more dangerous for them in it than in the field.

Meanwhile it happened by the will of God in order that those wicked peoplc might not be enabled to carry out their evil desire, that the good holy hermit sent Esplandian his ward and Sargil

his nephew to King Lisuarte to inform him that the negotiations were going well and that as quickly as he could he should be with him in Luvayna in order to arrange the meeting of the four knights representing the two sides.

When these two youths arrived at the camp of the king, they found that it had moved on quite a while before, and they followed the route it had taken and traveled until they reached the place where the king had rested; and there they found out that he was proceeding distrustfully and in great haste, and they hastened their own pace in order to overtake him. And before they saw the king's army they beheld the troops coming down off the mountain in a great hurry, and they at once thought that they belonged to King Arabigo; for while they were with Queen Brisena, they had heard about those troops and had seen that the queen was sending forces from some towns to others in the region where those companies were said to be. And when they saw King Arabigo's army proceeding in such great force and the king their lord with such inferior strength, and his troops so fatigued that they would not be able to withstand their foes and would be in great danger, Esplandian was very sad and troubled and said to Sargil: "Brother, follow me and let us not rest until, if it be possible, the king our lord is rescued, so that that evil band of troops may not be able to harm him."

Then they drew rein on their palfreys and as fast as they could rode back along the road over which they had come during all that remained of the day and all night, for they never stopped; and next day at dawn they reached the camp of King Perion, who that day had not gone farther than four leagues and had found his camp set up on a riverbank with many trees and gardens. And he was maintaining on the side nearest the mountain his guard of many knights, because he also had a report from some shepherds about that body of troops; and as they were moving from the place where they were, he was distrustful of them and for this reason he ordered a strong guard posted. And when they arrived there, Esplandian went directly to the tent of Amadis, and found the good hermit, who was arising and about to set forth. And when he saw the youth in such a hurry, he said to him: "My good son, what hasty arrival is this?"

He said to him: "My father, it is so urgent that I cannot tell you about it until I have spoken with Amadis."

Then he dismounted and approached the bed where Amadis lay armed, for all night he had been guarding the field and at dawn had come to sleep and rest; and awakening him, Esplandian said: "Oh good sir! If at any time your noble heart has wished for great deeds, the hour has come when it can demonstrate its greatness; for although, good sir, up until now you may have experienced many and very dangerous great affronts, none could ever be so outstanding as this one. You shall know, good sir, that the troops that were said to be on the mountain with King Arabigo are going as fast as they can against my lord King Lisuarte. And I believe, sir, in view of their vast numbers and the few and ill-conditioned troops of the king, great danger to him cannot be avoided. So, besides God, the only help for him is yours."

Amadis, when he heard this, got up very quickly and said: "Good youth, wait for me here, for if I can be of avail, your labor shall not be in vain."

Then he went at once to the tent of King Perion his father, and relating to him that report, begged him earnestly to give him permission to effect that rescue, from which he could receive much honor and great prestige, and would be highly praised wherever it was known; and this Amadis begged on bended knees, for he would not rise until the king, as he was given over to every virtuous action and spent his time only on such matters as involved great fame, said to him: "Son, let it be done as you wish, and take the lead with all the troops you please, for I shall follow you; because if we are to have peace with this King Lisuarte, this will render him more firmly established; and if war, it is better that he be destroyed by us than by others, for perchance they would be more inimical to us than he is at present."

And then he gave orders to sound the bugles and the trumpets; as the troops were all armed and expecting an alarm, they immediately mounted their horses, each one with his own captain. King Perion and Amadis had Gastiles, the nephew of the Emperor of Constantinople, mount and they left the camp bearing his standard, behind which all the others sallied forth. And when all

were on the field, the king told them the news he had learned, and he begged them earnestly that without heeding what was past, they be willing to show their excellence in rescuing that king who was in such dire straits with such evil people. All of them considered it good, and said that it would be done according to his command.

Then Amadis took with him Don Cuadragante and Don Florestan his brother, and Angriote de Estravaus and Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, and Gandalin and Enil, and four thousand knights, and the physician Elisabad; who on this day as well as in the past battles, had accomplished marvels in his profession, saving the lives of many of those who would not have been able to retain them except through God's help and his.

With this company he took to the road, and with the king his father and all the others in their respective battalions behind him.

But now the narrative ceases to speak of them, as they traveled at top speed, and returns to the relation of what the kings did in the meantime.

CHAPTER CXVI

CONCERNING THE BATTLE THAT KING LISUARTE HAD WITH KING ARABIGO AND HIS COMPANIES, AND HOW KING LISUARTE WAS OVERCOME; AND THEN WAS RESCUED BY AMADIS OF GAUL, THAT MAN WHO NEVER FAILED TO SUCCOR THOSE IN NEED.

We have related to you how King Lisuarte was warned by the knights whom he had dispatched to the mountain that they had seen already the scouts of King Arabigo's troops, and how King Lisuarte was proceeding in great haste in order to reach his town of Lubayna so that if an attack should come, he could take refuge there; for in view of the fact that he was bringing away his troops in bad shape from the past battles of which you have already heard, he had the firm belief that he would not be able to withstand the great strength of his enemies. So it was that while he was pursuing his way, the companies of King Arabigo followed him until it was night, and they kept always with them Esclavor with the ten mounted men and some forty others that the king his uncle had sent to him when he dispatched him. According to the way the troop from the mountain traveled after they came down to the plain, they might have been able to overtake King Lisuarte. But the night was becoming so dark that they could not see one another; and for this reason and also because of what Arcalaus had said about the weak defenses of the town, on which they were pinning their hopes, they did not care to fight with them, but went on right behind them and with their scouts almost in contact with those of King Lisuarte. Thus they traveled until dawn, when they beheld each other very close together, and at a short distance from the town.

Then King Lisuarte, as a courageous prince, halted with all his men and made two brigades of his forces. The first he entrusted to King Cildadan, and with him Norandel, his son, and King Arban of North Wales and Don Guilan the Pensive and Cendil de Ganota, and with them close to two thousand knights. In the second were the Romans, Arquisil and Flameneo, and Giontes, the king's nephew, and Brandoyvas, and many other knights of his household, and with them about six thousand knights; for if these two battalions had been provided with fresh arms, armor and horses, they would not have had much to fear from their enemies; but their situation was quite the opposite, for from the past battles their armor was completely rent in many places, and their horses were very weak and tired, not only from their great past efforts, but also from the present one, because during all that day and that night they had not stopped except a very short while; from all of which great harm came to them, as you will hear subsequently.

King Arabigo had Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, in the vanguard; who, as has been said, was a strong young knight, eager to win honor and to avenge the death of his father and that of Gandalod his brother, the one whom Guilan overcame and brought as a prisoner to King Lisuarte, and the latter ordered him in London to be flung down from a tower, at the foot of which his father had been burned to death, as the first Book of this story relates; and he brought with him two thousand knights, and the other battalions at his rear as has been stated.

Then, since it was bright daylight and they saw each other close together, they went forward to attack each other stoutly, so that from the first encounters many horses were without riders; and Barsinan broke his lance and grasped his sword, and struck mighty blows with it, as one who was valiant and in a great fury.

Norandel, who was coming in front of his men, encountered an uncle of this Barsinan, brother of his mother, who had been governor of the land after his father, Barsinan the Elder, was killed until this nephew of his reached an age at which he was competent to rule; and he met him in such a mighty clash that he pierced his shield and coat of mail, and the lance penetrated through to his back and forthwith struck him dead to the ground.

King Cildadan overthrew another knight who was coming with this one and who was one of the good knights of Barsinan's company, and likewise mighty blows were delivered by Don Guilan and King Arban of North Wales and the others who were coming with them, who were all very outstanding, picked knights; so that Barsinan's brigade would have been put to rout if Arcalaus had not come to its aid. And although he had lost half of his right hand — which Amadis, when he called himself Beltenebros, had cut off at the time he killed Lindoraque, Arcalaus's nephew — with his great experience at arms, he maneuvered now with his left hand as well as with the other. And with his arrival those on his side were greatly encouraged and again recovered great intrepidity of heart, so that many of King Lisuarte's men were killed or badly wounded and unhorsed. Arcalaus plunged into their midst and was performing great feats at arms, as one who was valiant and vigorous. But at this hour you would have seen King Cildadan and Norandel accomplishing wonders, and likewise Don Guilan and Cendil de Ganota, for these were a shield and protection for all their men; but all would have been of no avail if King Lisuarte had not helped; for the enemies, since they were more numerous and fresher, were already reducing them to defeat. But King Lisuarte, who never was the slightest bit remiss in what he ought to do in the great confrontation in which he found himself, went ahead of his men, more eager to receive death than to fail to accomplish the undertaking to which he was committed; the first man whom he encountered in his path was a brother of Alumas, the one whom Don Florestan killed in a dispute over the maidens whom the dwarfs were guarding at the Fountain of the Elms, and who was a first cousin of Dardan the Proud; and he pierced all his armor, and struck him dead to the ground, and his troops attacked the others with such force that they made them yield a large share of the field.

The king grasped his sword and struck such mighty blows with it that whomever he reached with a direct blow had no further need of a physician, and at that hour he became so infuriated that, forgetting all danger, he plunged into the midst of the enemy, wounding and killing them. Arcalaus, who previously had found out what arms he was bearing, in order to recognize him and injure him in any way that he best could, for

such were his methods, when he saw him thus separated from his men, went to Barsinan and said to him: "Barsinan, you see before you your enemy; for if this man dies, it is all over. Don't you see what King Lisuarte is doing?"

Barsinan picked ten knights from the men who were serving him as guards, and said to Arcalaus: "Now at him and may he die or all of us!"

Then they went for the king and attacked him from all sides, so that they unhorsed him. Filispinel was proceeding all the while accompanied by the twenty knights with whom, as you already have heard, he went to reconnoiter the sierra, and they had promised each other to stay together in that battle. So when they saw the king unhorsed, he said to them: "Oh lords! now is the time to die with the king."

Then they all moved forward and came to where the king was, and they found two knights were holding him in their embrace, for they had hurled themselves upon him before he could rise, and they had taken from him his sword. And Filispinel and his companions attacked Barsinan and Arcalaus and their men, so that they forced them against their will to withdraw. But already at the shouts that Arcalaus was uttering in summoning his men, the troops attacked so many of the enemy that if chance had not brought King Cildadan and Arquisil and Norandel and Brandoyvas there along with a few knights whom they had rescued, the king would have been lost. But these killed so many that by force of arms they recovered the king; for Norandel, as he came up, let himself drop from his horse, and struck heavy blows at those who were holding him, and recovered the king's sword and put it into his hands; and said to him: "Take my horse," and the king did so, and did not leave there until Brandoyvas gave another horse to Norandel and had him mount. And then they went to aid their men, who were fighting so hard that their foes did not dare to await them. Arcalaus said to a knight of his: "Ask King Arabigo why he is allowing us to be killed."

This knight went up to King Arabigo and asked him this, and he said to him: "For some little time I have been perceiving that rescuing them was in order, but I was refraining in order that

the enemy might withdraw farther away from the town. But since such is his wish, let it so be done."

Then the bugles sounded and he went with all his troops, and with him six knights of the Island of the Centaurs. And as he found them in confusion and weary, he attacked with impunity, and wrought great havoc among them. Those six knights that I mention performed marvelous deeds in unhorsing and killing everyone they overtook; so that, on account of what they accomplished and the achievements of the large number of fresh troops coming with King Arabigo, King Lisuarte's men could not withstand them and began to give ground like defeated troops. King Lisuarte, who saw his cause lost and perceived that in no way could it be won back, took with him King Cildadan and Norandel and Don Guilan and Arquisil and others of the most select group, and placing himself at the head of his men, ordered the other troops to retreat to the town, which was nearby. What shall I say to you? That in this flight and defeat the king did so much in defending his own men that never before had his excellence and courage been so well demonstrated since he had been a knight as at that time, and likewise that of all those knights who were with him.

But at last with great loss of troops slain as well as many taken prisoner and others wounded, they went, perforce in rout, through the gates into the town. And as the troops began to crowd in, and their enemies to charge at them as at adversaries already defeated, there were many more who lost their lives there. And King Arban of North Wales, and Don Grumedan with the standard of King Lisuarte, were unhorsed and taken prisoners by their enemies. And so the king would have been, except that some of his men seized him, and by force put him inside the town, and at once the gates were closed and the troops that entered there had been very few.

Their foes drew back, because they were being shot at with bows and crossbows, and they took with them King Arban and Don Grumedan with the king's standard. Arcalaus had wanted them to be killed at once, but King Arabigo did not permit it, telling him to restrain himself, that soon they would have King Lisuarte and all the others, and that in concert with him and the other great lords who were there, justice would be meted out

to them. And he gave orders to certain men of his to take and guard them very carefully.

Just as I tell you, King Lisuarte was overcome and routed, and the majority of his troops lost, as dead or imprisoned, and he and the others with him confined in that weak town where he expected nothing but death. Well, what shall we say brought it about? God and his own bad luck? Certainly not, only he himself, on account of having his ears more receptive and ready to receive defamatory words by believing what those evil men Brocadan and Gandandel had told him about Amadis, rather than what he with his own eyes saw. And he trusted more the iniquities of those men than the good deeds of Amadis and his relatives, by whom he had been elevated to a higher pinnacle of fame than any other prince in the world had reached. Then besides God our Lord, who will come to his aid? Will perchance the harm he has sustained and the danger he is in be repaired by Brocadan and Gandandel and those of their families, or by those who, like them devoid of conscience, had and still have such a function, which is to be envious of the virtuous and of the brave who place themselves in jeopardy for the sake of pursuing virtue, and not with any desire to pursue what the virtuous do, other than that of harming and defaming to the utmost the pursuit of virtue? So it seems to me that if King Lisuarte awaited the latter, quickly there would be avenged the death of Barsinan, Lord of Sansuenia, and the great loss that King Arabigo sustained in the battle of the Seven Kings, and the rage of Arcalaus. Then by whom will he be aided and rescued? Certainly by that famous and strong Amadis of Gaul, by whom he had been many other times, as this great story has set forth. Then had he much reason to do so, aside from serving his lady? Rather, I say that, in view of the great and fruitful services he had rendered him, and the poor recognition and gratitude that he had from him, with good reason and cause he ought to favor Lisuarte's complete annihilation. But, as this knight had been born into this world in order to win glory and fame from it, he only gave thought to noble deeds of great virtue, just as you will hear he did in the case of this king who was beaten, besieged, and brought to the verge of death and the loss of his kingdom.

Then returning to the subjcct matter, I say that after King Lisuarte had been put under siege in that town of his, King Arabigo withdrew to the countryside where he was in the eompany of those great lords, asking them their opinion about how to conclude that business. Among them there were many opinions, some of them in opposition to othcrs, as is wont to oeeur among thosc to whom Fortune is favorable; for they are so well off that they don't know how to ehoose what is best from what is good. Some of thcm said that it would be well to rest a while and make preparations for the eombat, and to set up strong guards so that the king might not get away. Others said that it would be well to fight them at once before they would be able to make further preparation for their defense, and that since they were defeated and faint-hearted they would be quiekly penetrated and seized.

All of this having been heard by King Arabigo, all were waiting to carry out his resolve, beeause he was the leader and hcad of them all; and he said: "Good lords and honorable knights, I have always heard that men ought to follow up good fortune when it comes to them, and not seek respites or excuses to abandon it; rather, with more courage and diligcnee to undertakc the task simultancously so that simultaneously there may eome rejoicing. And therefore I say that without any more delay Barsinan and the Duke of Bristol, with the troops that they desire, should go at once to the edge of the town; and I and Arcalaus with the King of the Deep Island and these other knights, remain on this other side. And with the equipment that we have, whieh is this with which we fight, let our enemies be attacked at once before nightfall, for less than two hours of daylight remain. And if by this eombat we do not foree an entry to them, we shall withdraw outside, and the troops will be able to refresh themselves somewhat, and at dawn let us fight again. And as for myself, I say to you, and so shall I say to all my men and to the others who may wish to follow me, that I shall not rest until either I die or I take them before I eat or drink, and as a king I promise that either my death or theirs can be eounted on by dawn."

King Arabigo afforded great encouragement and rejoicing to those lords, and they all agreed to what he said and promised.

And immediately they gave orders to bring some of the ample provisions they carried, and they had all their troops eat and drink while rallying them for the combat and telling them that when it was all over they were bound to be rich and favored by Fortune if they did not lose through lack of courage. This having been done, Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, and the Duke of Bristol, with half the troops moved on to the edge of the town; and King Arabigo and the other half remained on the other side of it. And they all immediately dismounted and made preparations to fight on hearing the sound of the bugles.

King Lisuarte, inside the town though he was, did not seek to rest, for he well envisaged his destruction; and although he recognized he was in a place where he could not defend himself for very long, he decided to put forth all his efforts until the very end of the misadventure, and to die like a knight rather than be taken prisoner by those very deadly enemies of his. And when he and his men had had something to eat that those of the town gave him, at once he distributed all the knights together with those of the town on the parts of the wall where the greatest weakness was, admonishing and telling them, that, after God, their well-being and lives consisted in defense by their own hands and hearts. But they were such that they had no need of anyone to embolden them; for each one of his own accord expected to die like the king his lord.

Then while they were deployed as you hear, their enemies came recklessly to the combat with that energy that victors are accustomed to have; and without any fear, covered by their shields and with their lances in hand if they still possessed them intact, and the others with swords and with the crossbowmen and archers at their backs they came up to the wall. Those inside received them with many stones, and arrows from crossbowmen as well as from archers; and as the wall was very low and in some places broken down, they made mutual contact as if they were in the field; but with that limited defense that those inside had, and more so with their great courage, they defended themselves so fiercely that their opponents, having lost that impetus and momentum with which they arrived, for the most part began immediately to slow down and were turning aside; and others

were fighting stoutly, so that there were many dead and wounded on both sides.

King Arabigo and all the other captains, who were going about on horseback, never stopped urging the troops forward; and the captains came up to the wall fearlessly so that their men would come up to it; and from their horses they struck with their lances those on top of the wall so that King Lisuarte was very close to having them force an entrance; but God sought to protect him by the fact that night had fallen with impenetrable darkness. Then the troops withdrew because they were ordered to do so, and they took care of their wounded; and the others were distributed to encircle the town, and a very strong guard was posted. And they held the opinion that next day at the first combat the affair would be settled, as indeed it was.

But now we shall tell you what Amadis and his companions did after they departed from King Perion to rescue this King Lisuarte.

CHAPTER CXVII

How Amadis went to rescue King Lisuarte and what happened to him on the way before he reached him.

We have already related how that very handsome youth Esplandian arrived in great haste at the camp of King Perion and informed Amadis of Gaul about the great danger and peril in which his lord King Lisuarte was, and how immediately King Perion with all the troops moved forward in his support, with Amadis in the vanguard with those knights, as you have already heard. But now we shall tell you what they did. Amadis, after he left his father, strove mightily to arrive in time to be able to effect that rescue so that his lady Oriana might recognize that rightly or wrongly he always had her image in mind to the end that he might serve her. And however hard he pushed his troops — as the journey was long, for from where he started to the camp where King Lisuarte had been when the great engagements took place, it was five leagues, and from there to the town of Luvayna, eight, this making in all thirteen leagues — he was not able to go fast enough to avoid night's overtaking him more than three leagues from the town. And with the extreme darkness and because Amadis ordered the guides to keep skirting the mountain in order to prevent King Arabigo from being able to take up some strong position, he lost his way; for the guides became confused and did not know where to go nor whether they had passed the town or had left it behind; which fact they immediately reported to Amadis. And when he heard it he had such great concern that he was close to being consumed with anxiety; and although he was the most long-suffering man in the

world and the one who best knew how to control his anger in any emotional matter, he was unable at that time to refrain from cursing many times himself and his luck that was so contrary; and there was no man who dared to speak to him. Don Cuadragante, who also was greatly distressed because of King Cildadan, whom he loved very much and with whom he had such close kinship, came up to him and said: "Good sir, do not become so distraught, for God knows what is best; and if He is served by our providing this aid to those kings and knights, who are such friends of ours, He will guide us; and if it is not His will, no one has the power to do anything else."

And certainly in view of what occurred afterwards, if there had not been that error, such an outcome — one so replete with honor for them — would not have come about as it did, as you will hear later.

So being thus at a standstill and they not knowing what was to be done, Amadis asked the guides whether the mountain was nearby. They told him they thought it was, as they had always kept wending their way by skirting it, as he had ordered them to do. Then he said to Gandalin: "Take one of these guides and try to find a slope and climb it; for if the troops are encamped, they will have fires, and note well whether you see anything."

Gandalin did so; for as the mountain was at his left, he had only to keep going in that direction and in a short while he found himself at its foot. And Gandalin went up as far as he could and looked down toward the plain and saw at once the fires of the troops, at which he was greatly pleased; and he called the guide and showed them to him, and he asked him whether he would know how to reach there; he said that he would. Then they returned as quickly as they could to where Amadis and the troops were, and they made their report to him, at which he was quite pleased, and said: "Since that is the way it is, lead on and let us travel as fast as possible, for already a good part of the night has passed."

So they all followed the guide in as orderly a formation as possible, for they did not know about King Perion, nor he about them. But the same distance that he went in following the troops' tracks, they covered, and they approached the town, for they saw the campfires, which were numerous. And whether they were

pleased by the fact need not be told, especially that vigorous Amadis, who never before in his life had wanted so much to find himself at a given place, so that King Lisuarte might recognize that he was always his protector against all dangers and that, after God, by him the king's life and whole high estate would be rendered seeure; for he indeed thought that Lisuarte could not escape from being defeated and killed in this present danger, in view of his small number of troops and the great number possessed by his foes, and that without seeing him or speaking to him, his life would be restored.

And at this hour day was beginning to break, and they were still one league from the town. Then, daylight having come, King Arabigo and all those knights made ready for the fight with great energy and pleasure. And when they were armed, they all came to the wall and to its postern gates, but King Lisuarte with his men defended them valiantly against them. But finally, as the troops were many and eneouraged by their good fortune, and those of the king few and most of them wounded and in dismay, they were not able to resist nor to prevent their enemies from entering by force with very great outcry; so that the noise was very loud in the streets along which the king and his men were defending themselves stoutly, and from the windows the women and youths and others capable of no more aggression than that were aiding them. The uproar from the knife- and lance-thrusts and the stone throwing, and the noise of voiees was so great that there was not a person who witnessed it who was not frightened.

When King Lisuarte and those knights who served him saw themselves lost, since now they deemed it more serious to be taken prisoners than to be killed, one would not be able to describe to you the great marvels that they performed there and the hard blows they struck, so that their foes did not dare come up to them; but with their lanee thrusts they kept driving them back. Then as for King Cildadan and Arquisil, and Flamineo and Norandel, who found themselves opposite King Arabigo, you can well believe that they were not idle, and with them there was a fierce fight; for King Arabigo entered the town and Arcalaus with him, and they brought with them the six knights of Centaur Island of which you have already heard, whom the king was continually keeping at his side to protect him. And as he

saw things at such a pass, he sent two of them through a short-cut street to where Barsinan and the Duke of Bristol were fighting, and the other four he stationed with himself where King Cildadan was defending; and he said to them: "Now, my friends, is the time to avenge your fury and the death of that noble knight Brontaxar de Anfania, for you see there those who killed him. Attack them, for they have no defense."

Then these four knights, when they found themselves free of the king, grasped their great strong knives and with great fury went through all of their men, thrusting them aside and knocking them down, until they came to where King Cildadan and his companions were; who when he saw them so tall and exceedingly large, was not so ardent and courageous that he did not have great fear; and he said at once to his men: "Come now, lords, with these men death is well employed, but let it be in such wise that if possible, they go ahead of us."

Then they went at each other very violently and fiercely as men who were desirous of no other outcome than to kill or be killed. One of these knights came up to King Cildadan and raised his blade to strike him on top of his helmet, for he really intended to split his head in two. And the king, when he saw the blow coming, raised his shield to receive it, and it was so powerful that the sword pierced it halfway down and cut the arc or rim of steel. When he tugged at the blade he could not withdraw it, and hauled in the shield along with it. King Cildadan, as he was very strong, and had seen himself many times in such a predicament, at that time did not lose heart or self-possession; instead he struck him with his sword on the arm, which on account of the weight of the shield he could not withdraw from him quickly enough, and he cut through the sleeve of his coat of mail and his whole arm except for a very little, so that it was left dangling, and the blade thrust through the shield fell at his feet. He withdrew as if paralyzed, and the king went to the aid of his own companions who were fighting valiantly the three, and thus both with the blow that he delivered and with his help, their opponents became dismayed; so that in that sector the street was being defended very well without much damage being received, although King Arabigo was behind them, shouting to them not to leave a man alive. The other two knights, who were

in the other sector, joined the fight, and on their arrival, King Lisuarte and his men were forced back to another intersection, where some of their men were remaining inactive without fighting because there was no room for them in the street, and there they halted. But all was to no avail, for so many troops were charging at them from all directions and were taking from them their rear guard, that if God through His mercy had not come to their aid with the arrival of Amadis, in less than a half hour all would have been dead or taken prisoner, in view of the wounds they had and their shattered armor. But even if everything had been safe and sound, it would not have made any difference, for they were already conquered and killed, for as such they considered themselves; but at this moment Amadis and his companions arrived with that body of troops that you have already heard about; for after daybreak, he spurred ahead as fast as he could so that before they were noticed they might be able to take them. And when he reached the town and saw the troops inside, and some others who were going about outside, he at once went all the way around the town, and they struck down and killed as many as they could overtake. And he through one gate and Don Cuadragante through the other entered with their troops, shouting: "Gaul, Gaul; Ireland! Ireland!"

And as they found the troops leaderless and unsuspecting, they killed many, and others took refuge from them in the houses. The ones ahead who were fighting heard the shouts and great noise with which the rescuers were proceeding with their men, and their battle cries. At once they thought that King Lisuarte was rescued, and they were greatly dismayed, for they did not know what to do: whether to fight with those they had in front of them or to go in aid of the others.

King Lisuarte, when he heard that noise and saw that his opponents were weakening, plucked up his courage and began to encourage his own men; and they charged at them so fiercely that they pushed them back to where they made contact with those who came fleeing from Amadis and his men; so that they had no resource except to place themselves back to back and defend themselves. King Arabigo and Arcalaus, when they saw the struggle lost, took refuge in a house, for they did not

have the courage to die in the street; but they were seized at once and taken prisoners.

Amadis delivered such hard blows that he no longer would have found any who would make a stand against him, if it had not been for those two knights of Centaur Island, who, as you have heard, were fighting in that area and who came at him. And he, although he saw them as brave as the story has already stated, was not frightened by them; instead he raised his very good sword, and struck one of them such a mighty blow on top of his helmet that although he was very strong, he did not have the strength to keep from falling on both knees to the ground. And Amadis, when he saw him thus, came up quickly and pushed him with his hands, and made him fall on his back; and he passed on over him. And he saw that Florestan, his brother, and Angriote de Estravaus had unhorsed the other one and had left him in the hands of those who came behind; and when all three passed on to where Barsinan and the Duke of Bristol were, who had been immediately vanquished, Barsinan came and embraced Amadis, and the Duke of Bristol Don Florestan, because King Lisuarte was pressing them so hard that there was no longer anything in prospect for them but death; and they asked them for mercy. Amadis looked ahead and recognized King Lisuarte; and as he saw that there was no one there with whom to fight, he turned back as much as he could over the way he had come, and took with him Barsinan and the Duke of Bristol. And he sought to go to the place where Don Cuadragante had entered, and he was told how he had already finished the business and was holding King Arabigo and Arcalaus prisoners. When he learned this news, he said to Gandalin: "Go tell Don Cuadragante that I am leaving the town, and that since this business is concluded, it will be well for us to go away without seeing King Lisuarte."

And he at once went down the street until he reached the gate of the town through which he had entered. And he had the troops who were going with him mount, and he did likewise.

King Lisuarte, when he beheld his life saved so quickly and his enemies dead and annihilated, was in such a state that he did not know what to say; and he called Don Guilan, whom he

had beside him, and said to him: "Don Guilan, what is this? Who are these men who have accomplished so much good?"

"Sire," said he, "who can it be but the one it is wont to be? It is none other than Amadis of Gaul, for you certainly heard how he called out his own name as a war cry, and it will be well, sire, for you to give him the thanks he deserves."

Then the king said: "Then go ahead, and if it be he, detain him; for he will certainly stop for you, and I shall be with you immediately."

Then he went down the street; and when Don Guilan reached the gate of the town, he ascertained at once that it was Amadis, and that he had already mounted and was going away with his troops, for he did not want to wait for Don Cuadragante lest he be detained. And Don Guilan shouted for him to turn back, that the king was there. Amadis, when he heard this, was greatly embarrassed, for he well recognized the man who was calling him to be one whom he greatly esteemed and loved. And he saw the king standing beside him, and he turned back; and when he was closer he looked at the king, and the latter had all his armor shattered and covered with blood from his wounds, and he felt great pity on seeing him thus; for although their disagreement had become so great, he kept remembering that this man was the wisest, most honorable, and most courageous king there ever was in the world. And when he came closer he dismounted and went toward him, and knelt and sought to kiss his hands. But he would not yield them to him, instead he embraced him very affably and lifted him up.

Then Don Cuadragante arrived, who was coming behind Amadis, and likewise King Cildadan, and many others with them; and they were coming out to stop Amadis from going away before he saw the king. And King Cildadan and Don Florestan and Angriote came up to kiss King Lisuarte's hands. Amadis went to King Cildadan and embraced him repeatedly. Who would be able to describe to you the pleasure that they all took in seeing themselves thus together and with the destruction of their foes? King Cildadan said to Amadis: "My lord, go back to the king and I shall remain with my uncle Don Cuadragante."

And he did so. At this juncture Brandoyvas reached them with great effort for he had many wounds; and he said to the king:

"Sire, your men and those of the town are killing so many of the foe who had taken refuge in houses that all the streets are flowing streams of blood; and although their lords might deserve it, their men do not. Therefore give orders as to what is to be done in the face of such cruel destruction."

And Amadis said: "Sire, give orders to correct it; for in such attacks and vanquishments magnanimity of heart is exhibited and displayed."

The king ordered his son Norandel and Don Guilan to go there and not let them kill those they found alive, but to take them to prison and put them in good custody; and thus it was done.

Amadis gave orders to Gandalin and Enil that together with Gandales, his foster father, they set a strong guard over King Arabigo and Arcalaus and Barsinan and the Duke of Bristol, and not leave them; and so they did. King Lisuarte took Amadis by the hand and said to him: "Lord, it will be well, if you please, that we give orders to rest and relax, for we indeed need to do so; and let us enter the town and remove the dead."

And Amadis said to him: "Sire, be kind enough to excuse us so that these knights and I may be able to return in time to my lord King Perion, who is coming with all the other troops."

"I shall certainly not excuse you; for although no one can outdo you in virtue and courage, in this matter I wish that you be outdone by me, and that we await the king your father, for it is not right that we part so quickly after an event so outstanding as the one which now has occurred."

Then he said to King Cildadan: "Hold this knight, since I cannot."

King Cildadan said to him: "My lord, do what the king begs of you so insistently, and don't let such discourtesy be shown by a man as well-bred as you are."

Amadis turned to his brother Don Florestan, and to Don Cuadragante and the other knights, and said to them: "Lords, what shall we do with regard to this which the king commands?"

They said that whatever he considered good should be done. Don Cuadragante said that since they had come there in order to help and serve him, and had done what was most important, what was least important should be done.

"Then, since that is your opinion, my lord, let it be done as you command," said Amadis.

Then they ordered their troops to dismount and put their horses out in that field and to look for something to eat. At this juncture, they saw King Arban and Don Grumedan coming, for the guards who had been holding them had released them; but they still had their hands tied, and it was a wonder that they had not been killed. When the king saw them he was greatly pleased, for he had considered them dead, and that would have been the case except for the help that arrived. They came up and kissed his hands, and went at once to Amadis with that enjoyment that you can imagine that his greatest friends to be found anywhere would have. They all told the king to take those knights with him and to lodge in the monastery until the town was cleared of the dead. At this point Arquisil arrived, who had been seeing to it that care was being afforded Flamineo, who was badly wounded; and when he saw Amadis, he went to embrace him, saying to him: "My lord, you brought aid to us at a good time; for though you have killed some of us, many more you have saved."

Amadis said to him: "My lord, I am very happy to give aid to you, for you may believe and be certain of my will to love you whole-heartedly."

Then as King Lisuarte was about to go to the monastery, they saw arriving the battalions of troops that King Perion was bringing, who had come at top speed. And Don Grumedan said to the king: "Lord, that is good succor, but if the first had been delayed, our welfare would have been permanently postponed."

The king said to him laughing genially: "If anyone engaged in debate with you, Don Grumedan, on whether the exploits of Amadis are well done or not, it would be for him a very long quest, and even greater would be the danger that would come to him from it."

Amadis said: "Sire, it is quite right that all we knights should love and honor Don Grumedan, for he is our model and guide for our honor. And because he knows with what obedience I would carry out what he commands, he loves me dearly, and not because he may have received from me any good service except good will."

Thus they were enjoying themselves, although some of them with plenty of wounds; but everyone considered that of little importance since they had escaped from that very cruel death that had been facing them. King Lisuarte called for a horse, and told King Cildadan to take another so that they might go welcome King Perion. Amadis said to him: "Sire, I would deem it better, subject to your approval, that you rest and that your wounds be cared for; because my lord the king will not fail to keep on his way until he sees you."

The king said that in any event he wished to go. Then he mounted a horse, with King Cildadan and Amadis on theirs, and they went in the direction from which King Perion was coming. Amadis ordered all his troops to remain quiet until he returned, and told Durin to go ahead of them and inform his father that King Lisuarte was coming.

So they went forth just as you hear, and many of those knights with them; Durin went faster and reached the battalions; and at their forefront he was told that the king and Gastiles were leading the rear guard. Then passing by them, he came to the king and gave him Amadis's message. The king took with him Gastiles and Grasandor, and Don Brian de Monjaste and Trion, and he asked Agrajes to come with the troops. He did this because of the anger that he knew Agrajes felt for King Lisuarte, and in order not to involve him in a confrontation. Agrajes was pleased thereby; and as King Perion went ahead, he continued to hold back with the troops so as not to have any reason to talk with King Lisuarte.

King Perion reached King Lisuarte with the escort about which I tell you; and when they saw each other they both came forward to each other and embraced with right good will; and when King Perion beheld him so wounded and hurt with his armor shattered, he said to him: "It appears to me, my good lord, that you did not leave camp so badly hurt as I now see you, although there your arms and armor were not in their sheaths, nor your person in the shade of the tents."

"My lord," said King Lisuarte, "I have deemed it well that you see me thus, so that you may know how badly off I was at the hour that Amadis and these knights came to my aid."

Then he related to him almost the whole story of the perilous engagement in which he had participated. King Perion was

greatly pleased to learn what his sons had accomplished with good fortune and with the very great honor that was aeeruing to them thereby; and he said: "I give many thanks to God that the dispute has been stopped in this way and that you, my lord, are served and aided by my sons and by others of my family; for eertainly, however things may have happened between us, it always has been and is my wish that they respeet and obey you as a lord and father."

King Lisuarte said: "Let us leave this now for when we have more time, for I trust in God that beforc we separate, we shall remain united and bound by much kinship and love for many long periods."

Then he looked around and did not see Agrajes, whom he highly esteemed not only for his excellence, but also for his elose kinship with those lords; and beeause already his mind was made up to do what you shall hear later on, hc did not wish a traee of any anger to remain, for he well knew that Agrajes more than any other was offended by him, and publicly was announeing that he wished him ill; therefore he asked for him. And King Perion told him that at his request he had remained with the battalions so that there might not be the dissension that frequently there is wont to be among soldiers in the absenee of anyone to eontrol them whom they fear.

"Then have him summoned," said the king, "for I shall not leave here until I see him."

Then Amadis said to his father: "Sir, I shall go for him."

And this he did, because he really thought that if at his request he would not eome, no one else would bring him. And he did what he said, for he went at onee to where the troops were, and spoke with Agrajes and told him all that they had done and how they annihilated and destroyed that whole body of troops, and the prisoners they were holding, and how when he himself had eome away without speaking to King Lisuarte, the latter had started out after him, also what they had said to eaeh other; and that since that enmity was finally about to beeome friendship while leaving their honor so augmented, he was begging him earnestly to go with him beeause King Lisuarte was unwilling to leave there without seeing him. Agrajes said to him: "My lord eousin, you already know that neither my anger

nor my pleasure will endure any longer than you wish; and as for this assistance that you have rendered this king, may it be God's will it be better rewarded than those of the past, which were not few in number. But I understand that defeat and damage have come to him, for it has pleased God that this should be so because his poor discernment deserved it; and thus it will happen to him in the future if he does not change his ways. And since it pleases you that I should see him, let it be done."

And he ordered the troops to remain quiet until they had his order.

So they both left, and on coming up to the king, Agrajes sought to kiss his hands, but he did not yield them to him, instead he embraced him and held him thus a while, and said: "Which has been for you the greater affront, to be now locked in an embrace with me, or when we were locked in the battle? I understand that you consider this the greater."

They all laughed at what the king said, and Agrajes with great self-restraint said to him: "Sire, more time will be needed for me to be able to answer quite truthfully what you ask me."

"Then it will be well," said the king, "that we go immediately to rest. And you, my good lord," said he to King Perion, "shall go be my guest with these knights who come with you; and have as many of your troops enter the town as there is room for, and the others can camp in these meadows. We shall lodge in the monastery, and I shall give orders that all the pack trains of provisions that are coming from my land to the camp should come on here, so that what we may need be not lacking."

King Perion thanked him heartily, and asked him for permission to leave, since he no longer needed them. But King Lisuarte was unwilling; instead he urged him so insistently and King Cildadan with him, that he had to yield; and so together they turned back to the monastery, where they were comfortably lodged.

Then the physicians whom King Lisuarte was summoning there cared for his wounds; but they all knew nothing in comparison with Master Elisabad, for he treated and restored to health not only the king but all the others in a way wondrous to behold, and also Amadis and some of those on his side, who had a few wounds, although not serious ones. But King Lisuarte

for more than ten days did not leave his bed, and each day there were there with him King Perion and all those lords in conversation on very pleasant topics without touching on anything having to do with peace or war, but only talking and laughing about how Arcalaus, being a knight of low character and not of high rank, had incited so many people to seditious revolt, as you have heard. And there it was recalled how he had enchanted Amadis, how by great deceit he had taken King Lisuarte prisoner and seized his daughter Oriana; how Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia had died because of him; how afterwards he had caused the seven kings to come to the battle against King Lisuarte; how he had held in prison King Perion and Amadis and Don Florestan, who had been deceived by his niece Dinarda; how later he had escaped from Don Galaor and Norandel by calling himself Granfiles, first cousin of Don Grumedan; and now how again he had involved King Arabigo and those knights, and would have had his objective accomplished if he had not been thwarted by the very great coincidence of that rescue's being so opportunely at hand; and many other things that they told about him in jest, but which were not far from the truth — things at which they laughed heartily. Then Don Grumedan, who as has been demonstrated to you in this great story, in all his affairs was a knight very intelligent in every respect, said: "You see here, my good lords, why many dare to be wicked, because in beholding a few examples of good fortune the Devil by his evil machinations causes them to achieve, because of that pleasure that they experience they do not heed or think about the very dishonorable and perilous calamities that therefore finally befall them; for if we were to consider what we have said about this Arcalaus that can be counted in his favor, he being now imprisoned, old with a crippled hand, at the mercy of his enemies, he alone would suffice as an object lesson for no one to deviate from the path of virtue for the sake of pursuing what brings about so much harm and misfortune. But, as virtues are hard to endure, and there are in them very rough paths, and evil deeds are just the opposite; and as all of us are naturally more attracted to evil than to what is good, we follow with utmost zeal what most pleases and satisfies us at the moment, being unmindful of what has a fortunate outcome and end, although forbidden at the outset.

And by following more the craving of our evil desire than equitable reason which is mistress and mother of the virtues, when we are most exalted we arrive at a fall, where neither body nor soul can be saved, just as Arcalaus the Necromancer, this wicked man of evil deeds, has done."

What this knight said seemed very good to King Perion, and he considered him a discreet man. And he frequently asked about him subsequently, for he well recognized that such a knight as he was worthy and deserving of being at the side of kings.

In the meantime the good and holy man Nasciano arrived, at which all were overjoyed, for just as until then because of the rupture everything had happened to both sides amid great shock and weariness of spirit, so now with everything changed to the opposite with the advent of peace, their minds, to their great pleasure, were at rest and in repose. When the good man saw them all united in such affection, when it had not yet been three days since they were killing one another with so much cruelty, he raised his hands to the heavens and said: "Oh, Lord of the world, how mighty is thy holy compassion, and how thou dost use it with those who have some understanding of thy holy service, for these kings and knights do not have the blood dried yet from the wounds that they inflicted on each other, the Evil One being the cause of their strife. And because I in thy name and with thy grace set them on the right road, they being willing to recognize the very great error into which they had fallen, thou, Lord, hast brought them to such love and good will as could never be imagined by anyone. Therefore, Lord, may it please Thee that by thy permitting the outcome and goal of this peace, I, as thy servant and a sinner, before I part from them may leave them in such tranquillity that desisting from the things contrary to thy service, they may have insight in promoting thy holy Catholic faith."

This saintly hermit kept going from one man to another, setting before them many moral lessons and doctrines so that they might follow through and provide a good outcome to the situation in which he had placed them, in such wise that their hard hearts he was completely softening and rendering amenable to reason.

Then one day while they were all in the room together, King Lisuarte asked King Perion from whom he had found out that the troops were in pursuit of him. King Perion told him that the youth Esplandian had told Amadis about it, and that that was all he knew about it. Then King Lisuarte gave orders to summon Esplandian, and he asked the latter how he had become aware of that body of troops. He told him that on coming to him in camp at the request of the good man his foster father, he had found it gone, and that when continuing on his way, he had seen the whole body of troops coming down the mountain towards where he was going, and that he thought at once, in view of their great numbers and the small, weak force that he was bringing, that he would not be able to escape from them without great danger; and that immediately he and Sargil had ridden their palfreys all night at top speed without halting and had informed Amadis of the situation. King Lisuarte said: "Esplandian, you have done me a great service, and I trust in God that you will be well rewarded by me."

The good man said: "Son, kiss the hands of the king your lord for what he says to you."

The youth came up, knelt and kissed his hands. The king clasped his head and thus drew him to him, kissed him on his face, and looked toward Amadis. And as Amadis had his gaze fixed on the youth and on what the king was doing, and saw that he was observing him at that time, his face turned crimson, for he clearly recognized that the king already knew about the whole affair between him and Oriana, and that this youth was their son. And that love that the king showed Esplandian rendered him so happy and so touched his heart that it increased his desire more than ever to serve him, and it had the same effect on the king; for the appearance and charm of that boy was so satisfying to them that as long as he was a bond between them, nothing could come about to prevent them from having love and esteem for each other.

Gasquilan, King of Suesa, had remained in the camp, battered from the battle he had with Amadis, and his men with him, those who had survived the battles. And when King Lisuarte parted from him, he had earnestly requested that he depart in a litter by another roundabout way bearing as much as possible to the

right of the mountain; and he left with him persons who would guide him very well. And so he did, for he set out over a plain going downstream along the bank of a river, which he put between himself and the mountain; and he camped that night under some trees, and the next day went his way, but very slowly, so that on account of the roundabout route that he followed he was unable to reach Lubayna in five days; and without knowing anything about what had happened, he arrived at the monastery where the kings were. And when they told him about it, he was very sad not to have participated in such an outstanding action on account of being physically incapacitated; and as he was very conceited and haughty, while complaining with great arrogance he said some things that those who heard did not like.

When King Perion and King Cildadan and those lords found out about his arrival, they came out to him at the gate of the monastery where he was in his litter, and they helped him get out of it, and knights took him in their arms and placed him where King Lisuarte was lying, for the latter had sent word to ask them to do so. And there in the room where the king was they made for him another bed and placed him in it. Gasquilan, once he was there, looked at all the knights from the Firm Island and saw them so handsome, with such fine figures and so adorned with the insignia of war, that in his opinion he had never seen people of such fine appearance; and he asked which of them was Amadis, and they pointed him out to him. And as Amadis saw that he was asking about him, he came up to him, holding King Arban of North Wales by the hand, and said: "My good lord, may you be very welcome, and it would have pleased me greatly to find you in good health, rather than in your present state; for in such a good man as you are, illness is ill employed; but God will be pleased for you to get well quickly, and what disaffection there has been between you and me will be mended with kindness."

Gasquilan, when he saw him so handsome and so calm and polite, if he had not known so much about his prowess, both by hearsay and through having tested it, would not have esteemed him highly; for in his opinion he was better prepared for association with matrons and maidens than with knights and acts of war; for since Gasquilan was bold by strength and courage, so

he prided himself on being so in speeeh, beeause it was his belief that he who was to be very eourageous, needed to be so in everything, and if he laeked any of this quality, it would greatly damage his reputation. And for this reason he did not eonsider it a defeet to be haughty; rather, he greatly prided himself on being so; and whether he was mistaken in this, anyone ean judge. And he answered Amadis, and said to him: "My good lord Amadis, in all the world you are the knight I most wished to see, and not for your own good, or for mine, but rather to fight with you to the death; and if it had happened to you with me as it happened to me with you; and if what I reeeived from you, you had reeeived from me, besides eonsidering myself the most highly honored knight in the world, I would have won thereby the love of a lady whom I love and desire very mueh, and at whose behest I had been seeking you until now; and it has turned out for me in sueh wise that I do not know how I ean appear before her; so that insofar as my ills are eoneerned what is unseen is mueh greater than what is evident and obvious to all."

Amadis, when he heard this, said to him: "This matter of your ladylove must trouble you deeply. Likewise it does me, for you ought not to be greatly eoneerned about everything that would have been gained in overeoming me; beeause in view of the faet that your deeds are so great and famous throughout the whole world, and are so outstanding at arms, you would not gain mueh in surpassing a knight of so little renown as I."

Then King Cildadan said to King Lisuarte, laughing: "My lord, it will be well for you to interpose your royal wand between these two knights."

And the king for their benefit became joeular and ineited them to more joking. Thus these kings and knights remained in the monastery, very abundantly provided with all that they needed; for as King Lisuarte was in his own land, he had many viands brought there in sueh abundanee that it afforded everyone great eontentment. King Perion asked him repeatedly to permit him to go with the troops to the Firm Island, and said that then he would have the two knights eome there, as per their agreement; but King Lisuarte was never willing to do so; and he said to him that sinee God had brought him there, by no means would he willingly let him go until everything was settled; so that King

Perion was embarrassed to ask him any more. And so he waited to see what the outcome would be of that good will that King Lisuarte was manifesting.

Arquisil spoke with Amadis, asking him what he was ordering him to do about his imprisonment, for he was ready to carry out the promise that he had made him. Amadis told him that he would speak with him not only about that but of other things that he had in mind, and that the next morning, after hearing mass he should have his horse brought around, for he wanted to talk to him in the countryside; which was done thus, for immediately next day they mounted their horses and went riding around outside the town. And when they were far away from everyone, Amadis said to him: "My good lord, all these past days that I have been here I had wanted to speak with you, and because of being busy, as you have seen, I have not been able to do so. Now that we have time, I want to tell you what I have in mind for you. I know that, in view of the direct line of your ancestry, once the emperor of Rome is dead, as he is, there remains in the entire empire no direct successor or heir but you; and I also know that by all those who are lords there you are greatly beloved. And if you were not by some one, it was only by your relative the emperor, for his envy of your good breeding gave him cause, by reason of his bad temperament, to hate you. And since the matter has reached such a stage, it would constitute a cogent reason to take care of a thing of such great importance as this is. You have here most of the best knights of the kingdom of Rome, and I have on the Firm Island Brondajel de Roca, the Duke of Ancona and the Archbishop of Talancia, with many others who were taken prisoner at sea. I shall send for them at once; let us talk about the matter; and before they leave here, let some way be found for them to pledge their allegiance to you as their emperor. And if some oppose it, I shall support your rights to the fullest extent; therefore, my good friend, keep the matter in mind and work on it, recognizing the opportunity that God gives you, and don't let it be lost through any fault of yours."

When Arquisil heard this from him, you can readily understand the pleasure he must have had from it; for he was expecting only that he would be ordered imprisoned in some place which he could not leave for a very long while; and he said to him:

"My good lord, I do not know why everybody in the world does not solicit your affection and acquaintanceship and is not engaged in increasing your honor and status. And for my part I tell you that whether or not what you say can be accomplished now, and however Fortune may deal with it, never shall I live at a time that I do not repay, even to the point of laying down my life, this favor and great honor that I am receiving from you; and if thanks could suffice for such a great benefit, I would give them. But what can they be? Certainly nothing less than my own person, as I have said, together with all that God and my fortunes may be able to give; and from now on I leave in your hands all my welfare and honor. And since you have expressed it so well, bring it to a conclusion, for what may be won is more yours than mine."

"Then I take charge of it," said Amadis, "and with the help of God you will go forth from here an emperor or I shall not consider myself a knight."

With this they broke off their [serious] conversation, and Amadis said to him: "Before we return to the monastery, let us enter the town, and I shall show you the man who, out of the whole world, hates me most."

So they entered Lubayna and went to the lodging of Don Gandales, where he was holding as prisoners King Arabigo and Arcalaus and the other knights about whom you have already heard. And when they entered it, they went at once to the room where King Arabigo and Arcalaus were alone, and they found them dressed and seated on a bed; for ever since they had been taken prisoners they had been unwilling to undress. And Amadis recognized Arcalaus at once, and said to him: "What are you doing, Arcalaus?"

And he said: "Who are you to ask?"

"I am Amadis of Gaul, the one whom you wanted so much to see."

Then Arcalaus observed him more closely than before, and said to him: "Certainly, you speak the truth, for although it has been a long time since I saw you, my memory does not fail to recognize you to be that Amadis whom I had in my power in my castle of Valderin. And that pity that I had then for your tender youth and for your very handsome appearance — that pity for long years has plunged me into many great tribulations, to the

point that finally you have brought me to such straits that I must ask mercy of you."

Amadis said to him: "If I had pity on you, would you ceasc to commit those very evil deeds and acts of cruelty that up until now you have committed?"

"No," said he, "for now my age, so protractedly accustomed to it, would not be able voluntarily to withdraw from what for such a long time I have deemed a pleasure; but constraint, which is a very hard and strong restraint causing every habit to change from good to bad, and from bad to good, according to thc person and cause affected, would make me do in my old age what my youth and freedom did not seek, nor were of sufficient avail to accomplish."

"Well, what constraint could I impose on you," said Amadis, "if I should let you go free and released?"

"That," said Arcalaus, "which, on account of my maintaining and enlarging it, has done much harm to my conscience and reputation, namely, my castles, which I shall order given and handed over to you with all my land, and I shall not take from all that any more than what through your goodness you may wish to give me, because at present I cannot set myself at anything else. And it may be that this very great necessity and your great kindness will bring about in me that change that up until now reason has not been able in any wise to effect."

Amadis said to him: "Arcalaus, if I have some hope that your harsh nature will be improved, it is based only on the knowledge that you exhibit in considering yourself wicked and a sinner. Therefore, pluck up your courage and take comfort, for it may be that this imprisonment of the body which you now are undergoing and so greatly fear, will be the key to set free your soul, which so long you have held enchained and captive."

And when Amadis was about to leave, Arcalaus said to him: "Amadis, look at this unfortunate king, who a short while ago was very near to being onc of the grcatest princes in the world, and in one momcnt that very same Fortune, who was favoring him in the matter, has overthrown him and placed him in such cruel captivity. May he serve as a moral lesson to you and to all those who have or desire honor and high estate; and I wish to

remind you that strong minds and hearts are the basis for conquest and pardon."

Amadis did not seek to answer since he held him prisoner, that indeed he entertained this argument in rebuttal against him: that although by arms and enchantments Arcalaus had overcome many, he had never learned how to pardon anyone. But on account of that he did not fail to recognize that he had made a fine plea.

So he and Arquisil left the room, mounted their horses and went on to the monastery. And at once Amadis gave orders to summon Ardian, his dwarf, and he ordered him to go to the Firm Island and tell Oriana and those ladies everything he had seen. And he gave him a letter for Isanjo to the effect that he should send to him at once under a good guard Brondajel of Roca and the Duke of Ancona and the Archbishop of Talancia, with all the other Romans who were prisoners there, as quickly as they could come. The dwarf was quite pleased to carry this news, because from it he expected great honor and much advantage. He mounted his hackney at once, and traveled day and night without much rest, until he arrived at the Firm Island, where nothing had been known about these latest events, for Oriana had had no news except concerning the two battles and about how Nasciano, the holy hermit, was holding them to a truce; and that the Emperor of Rome was dead, from which she took no little pleasure. But of the events from there on she knew nothing; instead she was in great anxiety, because she thought that that good man Nasciano would not be equal to bringing about peace in such a great rupture. And she did nothing but pray and perform many acts of devotion and pilgrimages in and to the churches of the Island, and implore God for peace and harmony between the contenders. And when the dwarf arrived, he went at once directly to the garden where Oriana was; and he told a lady-in-waiting who was guarding the gate to tell Oriana that he was there and that he was bringing news for her. The lady told her, and Oriana commanded him to enter; but while she awaited what he would say her heart was not calm, but rather it was greatly agitated because she could not hear it except to the advantage of one side and harm to the other; and as on one side was her lover Amadis and on the other her father the king,

although she feared harm to Amadis to the maximum degree, at whatever might befall her father she would be greatly grieved. And as the dwarf came in, he said to Oriana: "Lady, I demand a reward for good news, not because of my identity, but because of yours and the great news I bring you."

Oriana said to him: "Ardian, my friend, according to your expression, it relates to your lord; but tell me whether my father is alive."

The dwarf said: "What do you mean, my lady, by whether he is alive? He is alive and well, and happier than he ever has been."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Oriana, "tell me what you know; for if God grants me something good, I shall make you very fortunate in this world."

Then the dwarf told her the whole event just as it had taken place, and how the king, her father, when he was about to lose his life, being conquered and hemmed in by his enemies without any recourse, the very handsome youth Esplandian so informed Amadis, who immediately set out with the troops, and all the things that happened to him on the way which he himself had witnessed; and how Amadis reached the town, and the situation of the king her father, and how at Amadis's arrival all their foes were annihilated, being killed or taken prisoners; and that King Arabigo and Arcalaus the Enchanter and Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, and the Duke of Bristol were prisoners; and afterwards how the king her father went out after Amadis, who was going away without seeing him, and how King Perion arrived. In fine, he, as an eye-witness, told her everything that had happened and how they were all together in that monastery with great enjoyment. Oriana, who, on hearing it, was as if out of her senses from the great joy that she felt, knelt down on the ground, raised her hands, and said: "Oh, powerful Lord, restorer of all things! Blessed be thy holy name; and since thou, oh Lord, art a righteous judge, and knowest the great injustice being done me, I always have had hope that thy mercy, with great honor for me and for those who might be on my side, would put a stop to this business. And blessed be that very handsome youth who has been the cause of so much good and who thus has endeavored to prove true the prophecy which Urganda the Unknown wrote concerning

him, whence one can and ought to believe all the rest she has said about him. And I am greatly obligated to love and cherish him more than anyone can imagine, and to reward him for the good fortune that is coming to me through him."

Everybody thought she was saying this with reference to his having been the cause of that rescue of her father the king, which he had brought about, but what was secret came from her innermost being as from a mother to a son. Then she arose and asked the dwarf whether he would be returning at once. He said that he would, that Amadis had ordered that after he had told her and those ladies who were there that news, he should give a letter to Isanjo, which he was bringing to him, in which he ordered him to send him at once the Romans whom he was holding prisoners there.

"Ardian, my friend," said Oriana, "do tell me, what are said to be the pleasurable things they will seek to accomplish there?"

"Lady," said he, "I do not know for certain, except that the king your father is detaining King Perion and my lord, and all the lords and knights who came from here, and he says that he does not want them to leave there until everything that remains between them is settled very peacefully."

"May it please God that it be so," said Oriana.

Then Queen Briolanja and Melicia, who were together, asked him to tell them how that very handsome youth Esplandian was, and how King Lisuarte regarded that great service that Esplandian had rendered him; and he said to them: "My good ladies, when I was with Amadis in the king's chamber, I saw Esplandian come up to kiss the king's hands for the favors that he was promising him, and I saw the king clasp his head and kiss his eyes. And concerning his good looks I tell you that although he is a male and you pride yourselves on being very beautiful, if you were in his presence you would hide without daring to show yourselves."

"Then it is a good thing," said they, "that we are secluded here where he won't see us."

"Don't count on that," said he, "for he is such that although you may be quite secluded, you ladies and all others who are beautiful will go forth to look for him."

They all laughed heartily because of the good news that they had heard, and at what the dwarf responded. Oriana looked at Queen Sardamira and said to her: "My lady queen, cheer up, for that Lord who has given help to those of us who are here will not want you to remain forgotten."

The queen said: "My lady, I have hope in Him and in you that you will look out for my welfare, although I do not deserve it of you."

Then she asked the dwarf how those wretched, unfortunate Romans were who were with King Lisuarte. He said: "Lady, many of them as well as many of the others are missing, and those who are alive are badly wounded. But since the death of the Emperor and Floyan and Constaneio, no other Roman of consequenee is missing; for I saw Arquisil in good health and engaged in mueh conversation with my lord Amadis; and Flamineo your brother is wounded but not badly according to hearsay."

The queen said: "May it please God that since there is no help for the dead, there may be some for the living, and may He grant them the favor that not heeding past events, they may remain friends with great affeetion at present and in the future."

The dwarf asked Oriana whether she had any messages, for he wanted to go carry out the eommand of his lord. She said that since he had not brought a letter, he should convey her regards to King Perion and Agrajes and to all those knights.

Thereupon he went to Isanjo and gave him the letter from Amadis, and when he saw in it what the latter was eommanding him to do, he immediately brought out of a tower those Roman lords for whom Amadis was sending, and gave them mounts and a son of his together with other persons to escort and guide them, and he had them provided with food and everything else that they might need; and he set free all the others who were imprisoned, who in number were probably elose to two hundred men, and sent them to Amadis.

Thus they went their way until they reaehed the monastery where King Lisuarte was, and they kissed his hands, and the king weleomed them with great pleasure — although in secret he felt otherwise — in order not to cause them more distress than they already had inwardly. But when they saw Arquisil, they could not prevent the tears from eoming to their eyes, nor

to his. Amadis spoke to them very courteously, greatly heartening them, and he took them to his living quarters, where from him they received great honor and consolation. Then after their arrival there, and after they had rested somewhat from their journey, Amadis withdrew with them without Arquisil and said to them: "Good lords, I have had you come here because it seemed to me in view of the fact that matters are progressing toward a good outcome, that it is quite right for you to be present at everything that will be done — for very properly one ought to take into account such honorable men — and also because I wish to inform you that I have Arquisil's promise, as I believe you have heard, that he will suffer imprisonment wherever it may be indicated by me. And recognizing the noble lineage from which he comes and his own nobility, which cause him to be deserving of very great recompense, I have agreed to speak to you — since in the empire of Rome you do not have anyone else left who ought to have it as rightfully as this knight — so that a way may be found not only by you but by all those who are here, whereby he may receive your oaths of fealty and be accepted as your overlord. And in this you will accomplish two things: the first, the fulfillment of your obligation by giving the sovereignty to the one to whom it rightfully belongs, and who is a knight so perfect in every good quality and will do you many favors; and the other, that with regard to his imprisonment and yours, I shall consider it good to set you all free, so that without any delay you may be able to go to your own estates, and I shall always be a good friend to you as long as you please, for I esteem Arquisil highly and have as much love for him as for a real brother, and thus I shall maintain it for him, if it is not lost by him, in this matter and in everything else that may concern him."

This having been heard by those Roman lords, they asked Brondajel de Roca, who among them was outstanding and very well spoken, to respond to him; he said: "We esteem very highly your gracious speech, Lord Amadis, and we must be very grateful to you; but since this matter is of such large scope, and for it the consent of many is needed, we should not be able at present to answer, until it is discussed with the knights who are here, because although many of those who come here are not being taken into account, they are very important for this matter that

you, my lord, broach to us; for in our land they have many fortresses and cities and towns of the empire, and other community offices that are greatly concerned in the choice of an emperor. And therefore, if you please, you will give us an opportunity to see Flamineo, who is a very honorable knight, who we have been told is wounded; and into his presence everyone will be summoned by us, and it will be possible after deliberation to give you our reply."

Amadis considered it good and told them that they replied like prudent knights and properly, and that he asked of them that there be no delay because he believed his departure from there would be immediate. They told him that it would be done thus, for delay would be even more serious for them.

So then all mounted immediately and entered the town, which had already been cleared of the dead, for King Lisuarte had given orders for many people to come from the environs to bury them. And when they came to the dwelling where Flamineo was, they dismounted and entered his room. And they were very happy to see each other, although very sad of countenance because of the great misfortune that had come to them. And they at once told him that it was necessary to summon all the mayors and other persons of consequence who had remained alive there, because it was needful that they be informed of a speech that Amadis had made to them, on which their freedom or their imprisonment forever depended. Flamineo ordered them summoned, and those who were able to come, having arrived and assembled, Brondajel de Roca said to them: "Honorable knight Flamineo, and you, good friends, already know about the bad luck and great misfortune that have overtaken all the Romans since by command of our emperor, whom may God forgive, we came to this island of Great Britain; and because they are so well-known to you, it will be unnecessary to repeat them now. While we were prisoners on the Firm Island, Amadis of Gaul was kind enough to have us come here where you see us; and with great love and good will he has brought us and has shown us many courtesies; and he has spoken to us at great length, saying that since our Roman empire is without a ruler and by right the succession falls to Arquisil more properly than to anyone else, he will be gratified if the latter be accepted as lord and emperor

by you and us; and that not only will he give us freedom from the imprisonment he exercises over us, but will be a faithful friend and helper to us in everything in which we may have need of him. And it has seemed to us — in view of that predilection he has shown for this action about which we are telling you — that he deems it a foregone conclusion that if it is done by us voluntarily, he will reward us in the way you have heard; and if not, he will exert himself to have it done by other means. Therefore, good lord, and you, good friends, that is why you have been called here. And so that your wishes may be determined by knowing ours, it is quite right that the latter be stated to you; which are: that we have discussed this matter at length among us, and we have found that what this knight Amadis asks and begs of us, is what we would beg and ask very insistently of him; because, as you know, that very great dominion of Rome cannot remain without an overlord. So who by right, by strength, by virtues, deserves this more than Arquisil? Certainly, in my opinion, no one. He is our fellow citizen, reared among us. We know his good manners and customs. From him without apprehension we can ask by right of law what, even though it were right, another who perchance might be a foreigner would deny us. Besides this, we gain this famous knight Amadis as a friend, who just as when he was an enemy has had so much power to harm us, so also, by being a friend, with that same power, can render us great honor and benefit and make amends for the past. Now say what is your pleasure; do not take into account our imprisonment or fatigue, but only that to which reason and justice may guide you."

As just and honest things have so much strength that even wicked men cannot spurn them without great embarrassment, so these knights, as discreet persons of good intelligence, on seeing that what that knight Brondajel de Roca said was quite just and for them obligatory, could not contradict it. Even if it always happens that among the desires of many people, there would be diverse kinds of dissent, there were so many there who observed and followed reason that those who had desired something else found no room for their desire, and all unanimously said that it should be done just as Amadis was asking and that they should return with their emperor to their homes

without lingering any longer in those lands where they had been badly errant, and that they left them as leaders in charge of what Arquisil was to swear and promise. And with this agreement they returned to Amadis at the monastery and told him what was agreed upon, with which he was greatly pleased. So finally all the knights and great lords of the Romans and the other people of lower rank of the empire, having gathered together in the church, swore an oath of allegiance to Arquisil as their emperor, and promised him vassalage, and he swore to them to uphold all their laws and customs, and rendered and granted them all the favors for which they asked him with justification.

So because of this we can say that sometimes it is better to be subdued and constrained by good men without our liberty, than with it to serve and obey wicked ones; because from what is good, good is expected finally, without casting any doubt concerning the matter; and from what is evil, although for some time it may yield flowers, at the end they will be withered along with their roots; whence it follows that this Arquisil was reared with a man of his family who was the Emperor Patin, for whom he performed many outstanding services to the honor of his imperial crown; and instead of showing any recognition of them, the emperor brought him up as one cast aside and mistreated and almost banished from where he was, fearing that the virtue and good qualities of this knight, for which he would be loved and esteemed and done many favors, would take away his own rule from him, and later being a prisoner of his enemy in a situation where he expected no favor or honor, but rather entirely the opposite, from the latter on account of his being so different and so perfect in the virtue that was lacking to the other, there came to him that very great honor, and such high rank as to be emperor of Rome; in which fact, all should find a moral lesson and adhere to virtuous and prudent men, so that their share of what is good may overtake them; and should withdraw from scandalously wicked men who are envious, of scant virtue and of many vices, so that they be not ruined.

CHAPTER CXVIII

How king Lisuarte caused the kings and noble lords and many other knights to gather together in the monastery of Lubayna, where they were with him, and how he told them about the great services and honors that he had received from Amadis of Gaul, and the reward that he had given him for them.

Just as you have heard, this virtuous and valiant knight Arquisil was accepted as emperor of Rome because of his good friend Amadis of Gaul. Now the story relates that all these kings, leaders and knights remained quite given over to enjoyment in that monastery and in the town of Lubayna until King Lisuarte was in a better state of health and had risen from his sickbed, along with many others of his noble knights who had been wounded, he and they being under the care of that great physician Elisabad. And when King Lisuarte saw himself so improved in health, he one day had the kings and noble lords of both factions summoned; and in their company in the church of that monastery he said to them: "Honorable kings and famous knights, it seems to me very unnecessary to recall to your memory the past events, since you have seen them just as I have, in which events if they had not been forestalled, those of us who are alive would have become peers of the dead. So putting those events aside, recognizing the great injury that not only to the service of God but also to our own persons and dominions would have resulted by continuing with them, I have detained the noble King Perion of Gaul and all the princes and knights on his side so that what you are about to hear may be said in their presence and in yours."

Then turning to Amadis, he said to him: "Valiant knight Amadis of Gaul, in accordance with the goal and purpose of my speech, so foreign to my habit, which is not to speak highly of anyone in his presence, and so foreign to your desire, which is always embarrassed by such praise, it will be necessary for me before these kings and knights to recall to their memory past events of the relationship between you and me since the day you became in my court a knight of Queen Brisena my wife. And, although they be well known to all, seeing that they are known by me exactly as they took place, everyone would probably approve and consider well justified the reward of merit I wish to give to the aforesaid relationship. It is a fact that while you were at my court after you overcame Dardan the Proud and had brought me for my service your brother Don Galaor, who was the greatest gift ever made to a king, I was hoodwinked, as was my daughter Oriana, by this evil Arcalaus the Enchanter, and both she and I taken prisoner without the possibility of my being defended or rescued by all my knights, who were constrained to respect my order forbidding them to do so; whence she and I were in danger of cruel incarceration and death, and my dominion close to being lost. Then at this time, when you and Don Galaor were coming back from where the queen had sent you, on your learning of the situation I was in, by placing both your lives at the point of death in order to preserve ours, we were saved and rescued, and those enemies of mine who had taken us prisoners were killed and annihilated. And immediately through you the queen my wife was rescued, and Barsinan, father of this Lord of Sansuenia, who held her besieged in my city of London, was killed; so that just as I had been taken prisoner under circumstances involving much deception and great danger, so with much honor and security for me and my realm I was restored by you. This having taken place, after some elapse of time a battle was arranged between me and King Cildadan — who is here present — with one hundred knights fighting on each side; and before we had come to it, you relieved me of the opposition of this knight Don Cuadragante, and that of Famongomadan and Basagante, his son, the two bravest and strongest giants there were in all the islands of the sea. And you took my daughter Leonoreta away from them together with her

ladies-in-waiting and maidens, and ten of the good knights of my household, who were being carried off as captives in carts — from whom with all my power I never would have been able to recover her; since in view of the forces that King Cildadan brought to the battle, not only of strong giants, but also of other very valiant knights, if it had not been for you who with one blow killed the mighty Sardaman the Lion, and with another freed me from the hand of Madanfabul, the giant of the Vermilion Tower, who by snatching me out of my saddle while I was stunned and helpless, was carrying me away under his arm to put me on board ship — and had it not been for many other famous deeds that you performed in that battle, it is well known that I would not have had the victory and great honor that I acquired there. Then in addition to this you overcame that very valiant and world-famous Ardan Canileo the Feared, whereby my court was greatly honored by there being at it what could not be found in any of the other courts which he had frequented: for neither at them nor elsewhere that he had gone had one knight, or three or four knights together been able or dared to make a stand against him in the lists. Then if we wish to declare that you were duty-bound to do all this, since you were in my service, and that the great need and the obligation that you had to your honor constrained you to do it, let there be told what you have done for me since: more through my fault for having heeded evil counsellors than through yours, you left my court more as an opponent and enemy than as a friend or servitor; for when you found out, at the time that we were most inimical, about the great battle that I had in prospect with this King Arabigo and the other six kings, and many other foreign peoples and folk who came with the purpose and expectation of subjugating my dominions, you took measures with the king your father and with Don Florestan your brother, whereby you came to the battle to aid me — whereas with more reason and just cause, in view of our rigor and anger, you should have been arrayed against me — and almost entirely by dint of the prowess of you three, although there were on my side very good and highly esteemed knights, I obtained such a great victory that by annihilating all my enemies I rendered my person and my royal states secure with much more honor and grandeur than I had before. Now in

conclusion, I know that because of you, in the second battle that we had, the great danger in which I and all those on my side were, was removed and obviated, as they know — for it is my understanding that each one has the same feeling about it that I do — so that in this final rescue it will be indeed unnecessary to remind you of it, for the blood still flows from our wounds, and our souls have not had an opportunity to return to their dwelling place, in view of the way they had already been put aside and dismissed in farewell. Now, good lords, tell me what reward can be given that can repay in equal measure such great services and burdens. Certainly none save that, my person being honored and respected while living, these dominions and seignories of mine, which together with my person have been rescued and restored so many times by the hand and prowess of this knight, he have through wedlock with Oriana my daughter; and that just as of their own free will, they two are joined in matrimony without my having known it, so now that I know it and desire it, they may remain as my issue, successors and inheritors of my kingdom."

Amadis, when he heard the consent that the king was giving so publicly for him to have his lady, and in comparison with her all the other things by him recounted and told he considered as nothing, went to the king and knelt; and although the king was unwilling, he kissed his hands and said to him: "Sire, if it had pleased Your Grace, all this which has been said in praise of me might have been omitted, because, in view of the favors and honors that I and my relatives have received from you, we would be duty-bound to render much greater services. And therefore, sire, I do not wish to give you any thanks. But for the last thing you said, and I do not mean the inheritance of your great domains, but Your Grace's willingly giving me Princess Oriana, I shall serve you all the days of my life with the greatest obedience and circumspection that ever a son served a father or a vassal his lord."

King Lisuarte embraced him with very great love and said to him: "Then in me you will find that love as deep as that king who engendered you has for you."

All were greatly astonished at how the king in his speech had extinguished those great fires of enmity that had endured such

a long time, without there remaining anything about which it would be necessary to come to an understanding. And whether they were pleased about it there will be no need to say, because, even if at the beginning both sides very haughtily sought each other [in combat], in view of their having beheld the deaths of their men and their own so near at hand, they were very happy to have peace. And they were asking one another whether they knew why the king had said that Amadis and Oriana were joined in wedlock, because after they took her from the sea and brought her to the Firm Island never did they perceive any such relationship in their deportment, and before that it was unthinkable. But the king, who overheard, begged the saintly man Nasciano to tell it to those lords just as he had told him about it, so that they might learn the small part that Amadis had played in having taken possession of her at sea; and also that he, the king, was without blame in giving her to the emperor because he himself did not know about that relationship; and that if his daughter without his permission and knowledge had entered into it, they might learn the cogent cause and reason which obliged her to do so. Then the good man told them all about it, just as you have already heard him tell King Lisuarte in his tent at the camp.

When the youth Esplandian, whom the good man held by the hand beside him, heard that those two kings were his grandfathers, and Amadis his father, there is no need to ask whether he was pleased. And at once the hermit knelt with him before both kings and before his father, and told him to kiss their hands, and they to give him their blessing. Amadis said to King Lisuarte: "Sire, just as from now on it is pleasing and fitting for me to serve you, so it will be necessary to ask favors of you. And may the first be, since the Emperor of Rome has no wife and is disposed to have one, that it may please you to give him Princess Leonoreta your daughter, and I beg him to accept her so that their wedding and mine be together and that together we may remain as your sons."

The king considered it good to take him as his kinsman, and immediately promised him Leonoreta as his wife, and the Emperor accepted her with great contentment.

King Lisuarte asked King Perion if he had had any news concerning Galaor his son. He told him that since his arrival

Gandalin had come, who had left him somewhat improved, and that he himself was greatly concerned about his illness and in great fear of its being critical.

"I say to you," said the king, "that although he is your son, I do not esteem him any less; and if it were not for the controversy that arose at the time, I in person would have visited him. And I earnestly beg you to send for him if he is in condition to come, because I shall depart at once for Windsor, to which I bade the queen come; and I wish, in honor of Amadis, with her and with Leonoreta my daughter to return then to you in the Firm Island, where Amadis's and the emperor's wedding will be solemnized, and we shall see the rare things that Apolidon left there; and if I find Don Galaor there, the sight of him will give me great joy, for I have desired it for a long time."

King Perion told him that it would be done just as he wished. Amadis kissed the hands of King Lisuarte for the favor and honor he was doing him. And Agrajes begged him very insistently to send for Don Galvanes his uncle and for Madasima, and to bring them with him. King Lisuarte said that he would be pleased to do so and that it would be done without fail, and that immediately the next morning he wanted to leave in order to return quickly; for already it was time for those knights and their troops to go back to their own lands to seek repose, of which they were in great need, in view of the travail that they had undergone for their sake, and that they all should have their ships brought to the port of the Firm Island, so that from there they might all embark on their journeys. The Emperor earnestly entreated King Lisuarte to order his fleet to come to the Firm Island; and since he and the queen were to return there, to grant him permission to leave, for he wished to accompany Amadis because he was to speak with him at length about his affairs; and the King acceded to it.

CHAPTER CXIX

How King Lisuarte arrived at the town of Windsor, where Queen Brisena his wife was, and how with her and his daughter he agreed to return to the firm island.

King Lisuarte took with him King Cildadan and Gasquilan, King of Suesa, and with all their troops returned to the town of Windsor, where he had sent word commanding Queen Brisena his wife to wait for him. Since nothing more is related of what happened to him, except that he arrived at the town in five days, exhibiting a demeanor to a greater degree joyful than he was at heart; for he well recognized that although Amadis remained as his son, and his daughter with him very honorably, and that not only of him but also of the Emperor of Rome and King Perion and all the other noble lords he remained as chief, and all of them at his orders, he was not satisfied in his desire, because all this honor and gain had come to him after being overcome and reduced to dire straits, as has been related to you; and Amadis, against whom he had been going as at a mortal enemy, was carrying off all the glory. And such great sadness had taken possession of his heart that he could in nowise be joyful. But as he was already well along in years, and was very weary and troubled to see so many deaths and great misfortunes — all of them among Christians — and to perceive that the causes from which they sprang were worldly and perishable, and that to him, as a very powerful prince it had been granted to remove them as a threat to his power — even though some of his honor, which had always pursued quite the opposite course, had been tarnished by esteeming worldly honor so highly that it had caused him to forget completely the welfare of his soul — and that with

just cause God had given him such great chastisements, especially the last one about which you have already heard, he consoled himself and dissimulated as a man of great prudence so that no one might perceive that his thought was concerned with anything other than considering himself the lord and superior of everyone, and believing that with great honor he had won it.

So with this pretended joy and with a very complacent appearance he came to where the queen was with her very richly attired ladies and maidens-in-waiting, and he was leading by the hand the youth Esplandian, for the things of the past, both dangerous and pleasurable, she now knew about through Brandoyvas, who on behalf of the king had come ahead from the monastery to afford her joy. When the king came into the room, the queen came to him and kneeling sought to kiss his hands, but he withdrew them from her and lifting her up with great love, embraced her as one who loved her with all his heart. And while the ladies and maidens came up to kiss the hands of the king, the queen took into her arms the youth Esplandian, who was kneeling before her, and began to kiss him many times, and said: "Oh, my handsome and fortunate son! Blessed be that hour in which you were born, and may you have the blessing of God and my own, for so much good has come to me because of you; and may He be pleased through His holy mercy to give me the opportunity to repay in full this very great service that you have rendered the king my lord in being the cause, after God, of saving his life."

Then King Cildadan and Gasquilan, King of Suesa, came up to speak with the queen, and she received them with great courtesy, as one of the sensible and well-bred ladies of the world, and afterwards she greeted all the other knights who came up to kiss her hands. By this time it was already the supper hour, and there remained with the king those two kings and many other knights, to whom was served for supper many and diverse viands, as at the table of such a man as he was he had provided so many times, as was his wont.

After they had supped, the king had those kings stay in his palace in very luxurious apartments, and he retired to the queen's chamber. When he was in bed, he said to her: "Lady, if by chance you have been surprised at the news that you have been

told about Oriana your daughter and Amadis of Gaul, I also have been; for certainly I really think that that thought was far removed from you and from me without our having any suspicion of it. I am troubled only by the fact that we did not know of it previously; for there could have been avoided so many deaths and injuries that have occurred, due to our not knowing it. Now that it has come to our attention, and no remedy ean be found or given that would not be with more dishonor, let us accept as a solution that Oriana remain with the husband that she is pleased to take, for if with anger and passion put aside we recognize what is true and just, there is today in thc world no emperor or prince who can equal him; and not merely equal, for also with his surpassing diseretion and great courage — Fortune being more favorable to him than to any other mortal — from being in the guise of a poor knight errant, he has advanced to have today at his eommand the entire flower of the great and small who live in the world; and Leonoreta will be empress of Rome, for this I have authorized. Therefore, it is necessary — since I of my own free will have given my word, in order to honor Amadis that you and I and Leonoreta would be on the Firm Island, where they await us to bring everything to a conclusion — that you prepare yourself as is fitting and with your face showing sueh joy, while eeasing to talk about past events, as is necessary and ought to be done in such situations."

The queen kissed his hands because thus she sought to constrain his passion and strong will, and assent to what was already settled without further argument; and she told him that his commands would be carried out as given and that since two sueh sons subsisted for him, and all the others because of them were remaining at his service, it should be considered good, and that he should thank God because He thus had willed it to be done, although the manner thereof had not been quite in conformity with his desire.

So they took their ease that night, and next day the king arose and gave orders to King Arban of North Wales, his majordomo, to make ready very quickly all the things needed for that journey; and the queen did likewise in order that her daughter Leonoreta might go in a guise befitting the empress of such a great sovereignty.

CHAPTER CXX

How king perion and his companies returned to the firm island, and what they did before king lisuarte was there with them.

Now the story relates that King Perion and his companies, after King Lisuarte left them to go to Windsor, where Queen Brisena his wife was, all mounted with their battalions in military formation just as they had come there, and with great pleasure and joy in their hearts started on their way to the Firm Island. The Emperor of Rome regularly lodged with Amadis in his tent, and both slept in the same bed so that never for a single hour were they separated. And all the troops and tents and equipment were in the custody of Brondajel de Roca, as the emperor's chief majordomo, just as he was under the Emperor Patin, his predecessor. Their daily marches were very brief, and they always camped in very pleasant and agreable places. And when they had kept King Perion company for a while in his tent, they were all accustomed to gather together in the tents of Amadis, or sometimes in those of the emperor; and as most of them were young and of noble rank and upbringing, they were always playing and having fun at pleasurable activities, so that they were leading the best life that they had enjoyed in a long, long time.

So thus they arrived at the Firm Island, where in the garden they found Oriana and all the noble ladies who were there, so beautiful and so richly attired that they were wondrous to behold; for don't think that they seemed to be earthly or mortal persons,

but that God had created them in Heaven and had sent them there.

The great joy that one and all experienced on seeing themselves thus gathered together and in good health with so much honor and such agreement upon peace, words fail to describe. King Perion went ahead, and all the ladies paid him great respect, and with much humility he was greeted by those who properly should do so, and the others kissed his hands. Amadis took the emperor by the hand and came up to Oriana and said to her: "My lady, speak to this knight and great prince, who has never seen you and greatly esteems you."

She, as she already knew he was the emperor and was to be the husband of her sister, went up to him and sought to kneel and kiss his hands, but he bent down with very great respect and lifted her up, and said: "My lady, I am the one who ought to show humility before you and before your husband, because he is the lord of my land and of my person; for you may without fail, madam, believe that with reverence to both, there will be done only what be your desire and his."

Oriana said to him: "My lord, I acquiesce as far as your good gratitude is concerned, but with regard to the respect owed your virtue and high estate, I am the one who ought to treat you with great obsequiousness."

He thanked her profusely for this.

Agrajes and Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante and Don Brian de Monjaste went over to Queen Sardamira and to Olinda and Grasinda, who were together; and Don Bruneo of Bonamar to his greatly beloved lady Melicia; and the other knights to the other princesses and other very beautiful maidens of high degree who were there, and they talked with them with much enjoyment about what was most to their liking.

Amadis took Gastiles, nephew of the Emperor of Constantinople, and Grasander, son of the King of Bohemia, and brought them to Princess Mabilia his cousin, saying to her: "My good lady, take these princes and do them honor." She took them by the hand and sat down between them. Grasandor was quite pleased at this, because, as we have told you, the first day that he had seen her, he had lost his heart to her; and knowing who she was and her great goodness and gentility, and the close kinship

and great love that Amadis had for her, he was determined to ask for her hand in marriage; so he wanted very much to hear her speak and to engage her in intimate conversation, and therefore he was very pleased to see himself so near her. But as this princess was a maiden so surpassing in all goodness and modesty and grace with a large share of beauty, Grasandor was so delighted with her that he was moved to feel much greater affection that he had before.

Just as you hear, all those lords were enjoying what they most desired, except Amadis, who greatly wished to speak with his lady Oriana, and couldn't on account of the emperor. And when he saw Queen Briolanja, who was beside Don Bruneo and his sister Melicia, he went to her and brought her, leading her by the hand, to the emperor, saying to him: "Sire, speak to this lady and keep her company."

The emperor turned his gaze, for until then he had not taken his eyes from Oriana, for he was astonished to see her great beauty; and as he beheld the queen so elegant and beautiful, and the other ladies who were talking with those knights, he greatly marveled to see ladies so excelling any others he had ever seen, and he said to Amadis: "My good sir, I truly believe that these ladies are not born like other women, but that that eminent sage Apolidon through his great art created them and left them here on this island, where you have found them, and I can only imagine that they and I are enchanted; for I can say, and it is the truth, that if through the whole world one were to seek such a company as this, it could not possibly be found."

And Amadis embraced him laughing, and asked him if he had seen another such company in any other court, however large it might be. He said to him: "Certainly neither I nor anyone else could see it unless it were in that of Heaven."

While they were occupied as you hear, King Perion, who had been speaking for quite a while with the very beautiful Grasinda, came to them and took Queen Briolanja by the hand saying to the emperor: "My good lord, let us, you and I, remain with this beautiful queen, if you please, and let Amadis talk with Oriana, for I certainly think that he will take great pleasure in her company."

And so they both remained with Queen Briolanja, and Amadis went with great joy to his lady Oriana, and with deep humility sat down with her apart from the others, and said to her: "Oh, lady, with what services can I repay the favor you have done me in the faet that by your wish our love affair has been revealed."

Oriana said: "My lord, it is no longer a time for you to offer me such eourtesy, nor for me to receive it; bceause I am the one who must serve you and do your bidding with that obedience that a wife owes her husband. And from now on in this matter I want to reeognize the great love that you have for me, by bcing treated by you, my lord, as reason dictates and in no other manner; and about this let nothing more be said, except that I am so desirous of knowing how my father is, and how he has taken all this eoncerning us."

Amadis said: "Your father is very sagaeious, and although in seeret may have considered it otherwise, aeeording to the way he has seemed to everyone he remains quite eontent, and was so when he left us. Already, my lady, you know that he is to eome here as are the queen and your sister."

"I already know that," said she, "and the joy that my heart feels I eannot express. May it please our Lord that it all be carried out as arranged without there being any change in it; for you ean believe, my lord, that after you, there is no one in the world I love as much as I do him, although his great cruelty very rightly ought to have caused me to feel just the opposite. And now tell me about Esplandian, how he is, and what you think of him."

"Esplandian," said Amadis, "in his appearance and habits is your son; for it is not possible to say more, and I had greatly desired the holy man Naseiano to bring him to you; Nasciano is probably here now, for he did not wish to eome with the troops; but the king your father begged him to be allowed to take Esplandian to the queen so that she might see him, and said that he would eonduct him to her."

They remained talking about this and other things until it was time to sup, when King Perion arose and took the emperor, and they went to Oriana, saying to her: "Lady, it is time that we go to our quarters."

She told them to do what they liked best. So they all left, and the ladies remained wondrously happy and contented.

All the men supped that night in the quarters of King Perion, for Amadis gave orders that it be made ready there; where they were very well served and supplied with everything befitting a gathering of so many and such great lords. After they had supped, jugglers came who performed many sleight of hand tricks, from which they derived great enjoyment until it was time to sleep, when they all went to their quarters except Amadis, whom the king his father ordered to remain because he wanted to talk over a few matters.

Then all the others having gone, the king retired to his room and Amadis with him; and when they were alone, he said to him: "Son Amadis, since God our Lord has been pleased that these confrontations and great battles should bring such honor to you, for although in them many very worthy princes and great knights have risked their persons and estates, to you, through the goodness of God, accrues the major glory and fame, just as on the other hand your honor and great fame ran the greatest risk, as you have known. Now nothing else remains except that, with that same concern and great diligence that at the beginning of this so greatly augmented and dangerous confrontation when you were under the compulsion of such a great necessity you brought together and encouraged all these honorable knights, now being free of it you be even more greatly concerned to show your gratitude to them, deferring to their desires as to what ought to be done, not only about these prisoners, who are such mighty princes and lords of great lands, but also since you already have a wife, that they may have wives along with you, in order that it may be apparent that just as in troubles and dangers they were your helpers, so now in benefits and pleasures they may be your companions. And therefôre I defer to your wishes with respect to my daughter Melicia, so that you may give her to the man who will cherish most her virtue and great beauty; and the same you can do with Mabilia, your cousin; moreover I well understand that Queen Briolanja will do only what you deem best; also remember to include with these ladies your friend Grasinda, and even Queen Sardamira since here is the emperor, who can command her. If these ladies are pleased to marry in

this land, there will not be lacking knights who are their equals in estate and lineage; and remember your brothers, who are now ready to have wives, in whom they can beget a new generation to keep their memory alive. And let this be done at once, because good deeds that are done with difficulty and delay lose most of their value."

Amadis knelt before him and kissed his hands as a token of gratitude for what he had said to him, and as assurance that it would be done just as he commanded. With this resolution Amadis went to his lodging. And in the morning he arose and had all those lords assemble in the quarters of his cousin Agrajes, and when they were all together he said to them: "My noble lords, the great hardships of the past and the honor and glory that you have gained through them very rightfully entitle you to give your weary spirits some rest and repose. And since God has willed that out of your indebtedness and love I should achieve the things that I most desired in this world, so should I like those that are desired by you, if I can be instrumental in the matter, to be restored to you. Therefore, my lords, don't hesitate to make known to me your wishes not only in what concerns your loves and desires, if you love some of these ladies and wish them as wives, but also concerning what should be done with these prisoners, whom you overcame through the great virtue and courage of your hearts; because it is very fitting, since you received many wounds amid great danger because of them, that now while they are suffering you should enjoy and find repose in those great dominions that they possessed."

All those lords expressed their thanks for what Amadis was offering them, and they were quite pleased with him. And what related to their marriages was made known there at once: first Agrajes indicated that he would take his lady love Olinda. And Don Bruneo of Bonamar told him that he certainly believed that he knew he had all his hope and good fortune concentrated on his lady Melicia. Grasandor said that his heart had never been given to any woman of all those he had seen except to Princess Mabilia, and that he loved her and was asking for her as his wife. Don Cuadragante said to Amadis: "My good lord, time and youth until now have been very averse to any repose for me, or for me to have any concern other than for my horse and arms;

but now reason and age induce me to adopt another fashion; and if it pleases Grasinda to marry in this part of the world, I will take her for my wife."

Don Florestan said to Amadis: "Sir, although my desire had been, once these matters in which we have been engaged were settled, to go at once to Germany, of which I am a native on my mother's side, not only to see her but also all my other relatives — for in view of how long it has been since I left there, I would hardly recognize them — if here the consent of Queen Sardamira can be obtained, it could change my intention."

The other knights told him that they thanked him very heartily for his good will, but that, both because for the time being their hearts were not in subjugation to any of those ladies or to any others, and also, since they were quite young and of little renown, hence their age had afforded them scant opportunity to win fame, they purposed not to involve themselves in any gain or repose, but in the quest for adventure whereby they might exercise their bodies; and both in the matter of those ladies for whom those knights were asking and in what he said to them about the prisoners, they were totally abstaining; and he should allot everything among the former, since they were pleased to lead lives of more repose and with wives, and that as for themselves he should involve them in military operations and confrontations in which he might think they could win most fame and prestige.

Amadis said to them: "My noble lords, I trust in God that what you ask will be in His service and will be accomplished with His help. And since these young knights leave it all to you, I intend to divide it according to the way I have it planned, and I say that you, Sir Don Cuadragante, who are a king's son and brother of a king, and your estate is quite far from corresponding to your lineage and great merits, may have the sovereignty of Sansuenia, for since its lord is in your power, without much effort you can possess yourself of it. And you, my good lord Don Bruneo of Bonamar, besides my bestowing on you forthwith my sister Melicia, you shall have the kingdom of King Arabigo along with her; and the seigniory that you expect from your father the marquis make over to your brother Branfil. My brother Don Florestan shall have this queen for whom he asks, and besides what she possesses, which is the Island of Sardinia, the emperor,

at my request, will give him the whole scigniory of Calabria, which was Salustanquidio's. You, my lords Agrajes and Grasandor, must content yourselves for the present with the great kingdoms and dominions that you expect from your parents after they die, and I with this small nook of a Firm Island, until our Lord bring about an occasion on which we may be able to have more."

All approved and praised very highly what Amadis had decided, and they earnestly requested that it be done as he indicated. And because, if one were to relate what he went through with those ladies on the subject of these marriages, and with the emperor concerning that of Queen Sardamira, it would be too long a story, you shall know only that Amadis carried everything out as those knights had requested, and the emperor fulfilled that for which Amadis had asked for Don Florestan, and much more later on, as the story will relate. And they were then betrothed by the hand of that holy man Nasciano, the weddings being left for the day that Amadis and the emperor might set for them.

CHAPTER CXXI

How Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Angriote de Estravaus and Branfil went to Gaul for Queen Elisena and Don Galaor, and the adventure they experienced as they came back.

Amadis said to King Perion, his father: "Sire, it will be well that you send for my lady the queen and for my brother Don Galaor — for whom I hold in reserve the beautiful Queen Briolanja, with whom he will always be happy — so that they be here, as was agreed upon, when King Lisuarte comes."

"So let it be done," said the king, "and I shall write to the queen, and you send whatever most you like."

Don Bruneo arose and said: "I wish to make this journey if it pleases your Grace; and I shall take with me my brother Branfil."

"Well that journey will not be made without me," said Angriote de Estravaus.

King Perion said: "To you, Angriote and Branfil I consent, for Don Bruneo is not speaking sincerely, because he who takes him away from the side of his beloved would not be his friend; and because I have always been his friend, and in order not to lose him, I shall not give him permission."

Don Bruneo replied laughing: "Sire, although this is the greatest favor of those that I have received from you, I still want to serve the queen my lady, because from there comes contentment for everything else."

"So be it," said the king, "and may God grant, my good friend, that you find Don Galaor your brother-in-law in such a state of health as to be able to come."

Isanjo, who was present, said: "Sire, he is well now; for I so ascertained from some traders who were coming from Gaul over to Great Britain, and in order to ensure their safety, they came by here, for they were afraid of the war that was going on at the time; and I asked them about Don Galaor, and they told me they saw him up and going about the city, but quite thin."

All were very pleased with that news, and the king more than anyone, for at heart he was constantly worried and troubled by the illness of that son, and he was very much afraid of losing him, in view of its long duration.

So the next day these three knights about whom you have heard gave orders to make ready immediately a ship with everything they needed for that journey; they had their arms and horses placed aboard, and with their squires and sailors to guide them, they put out to sea. And as the weather was good, in a short while they crossed over to Gaul, where they were very well received by the queen. But I tell you that when Don Galaor saw them, so great was his pleasure that emaciated as he was he went running to embrace all three of them, and thus embraced he held them for a while, and the tears came to his eyes and he said to them: "Oh my lords and great friends! When will God be willing that I travel in your company by returning to arms, which I have forsaken for such a long time because of my misfortune?"

Angriote said to him: "Sir, do not be distressed, for God will bring about everything just as you desire, and be concerned only with learning the great and very joyous news that we bring you."

Then they told the queen and him all the events that you have heard that occurred, including how they began and the favorable outcome of the whole matter. When Don Galaor heard all this, he was greatly disturbed and said: "Oh, Holy Mary! And is it true that all that has happened to my lord King Lisuarte without my being with him? Now I can say that God has done me an outstanding favor in giving me at such a time so serious an illness; for certainly, although the king my father and my brothers were on the other side, I would not have been able to avoid placing this body of mine in King Lisuarte's service until death. And certainly if I had learned of it before now, given my weakness, I would have died of anxiety."

Don Bruneo said to him: "Sir, it is better thus, for with honor for all, and with you winning for a wife that very beautiful Queen Briolanja, whom your brother Amadis designates for you, peaee is made, as you will see when you arrive there."

Then they gave the letter to the queen, and told her that their eoming was for the purpose of bringing her so that she might be present at the weddings of all her ehildren and might see Queen Brisena and all those noble ladies who were there. As the queen was very noble and loved her husband and her ehildren, and after great risk and danger saw them in sueh peaeeful tranquillity, she gave many thanks to God and said: "My son Don Galaor, look at this letter and take eourage, and go see the king your father and your brothers, for it appears to me that there you will find King Lisuarte with more honor from your family than he desired."

Angriote said to her: "Madam, that you ean very well say, for your son Amadis is today the ehief flower and glory of the world, and dependent on his will and desire is that of all living grandees of most importance in it; whieh, good lady, you will see with your own eyes, for in his house and at his eommand are gathered emperors and kings and other princes and noble knights who love him deeply and appreeiate him to that degree that his merit deserves. And therefore it is neeessary that your departure be as early as possible; for we indeed believe that King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena his wife will already be there with their daughter Leonoreta in order to bestow her as wife upon the Emperor of Rome, whom your son Amadis has plaeed in that great sovereignty that he now holds as his own."

She said to them with very great delight: "My good friends, it will be done at onee as you say, and I shall give orders to prepare ships in whieh to travel."

So those knights stayed with the queen for a week, at the end of whieh the ships were outfitted with everything neeessary for the voyage, and they forthwith embarked in them very lightheartedly and began to sail away to the Firm Island.

Then while they were journeying over the sea as I say, and with very good weather, on the third day they saw eoming on their right a galley equipped with sails, and they deeided to wait for it in order to find out who was eoming on it, and also why it

was proeeeding direetly on the eourse they were pursuing. And when it drew near, a squire of Don Galaor's went out to meet it in a skiff and asked who was eoming on the ship. One of those on board told him very eourteously that it was a lady who was going to the Firm Island in very great haste. The squire, when he heard this, said to him: "Then tell that lady whom you mention, that this fleet you see here is going there, and that she not be afraid to approaeh it, for on it are persons in whose eompany she will greatly enjoy traveling."

When he heard this, that man very quiekly and joyfully went to tell his lady. And she gave orders to launeh a skiff with a knight in it, to find out whether what the former said was true. The latter reaehed the ship on whieh the queen was, and said to those knights: "Sirs, by the faith that you owe to God tell me whether that ship yonder in whieh a lady of high rank is traveling en route to the Firm Island, ean approaeh in safety, beeause this squire said you were pursuing the same eourse."

Angriote said to him: "Friend, the squire has told you the truth, and that lady you mention ean come in safety, for no one is aboard here from whom you may reeeive any harm; rather, people from whom you will have all the help that can rightly be given against anyone who may seek to do her harm."

"Thanks be to God," said the knight, "now I ask you to be kind enough to wait for her, and I shall have her eome to you at onee, for sinee you are knights, you will have great sorrow when you are apprised of her situation."

He returned at onee to the ship, and when he told her what he had diseovered, they went direetly to the ship on whieh the queen was, for that ship appeared to them to have the finest equipment. Then when they arrived there, a lady with veiled head and faee emerged, and asked who was eoming with those ships. Angriote said to her: "Madam, a queen of Gaul is aboard, who is going to the Firm Island."

"Then, sir knight," said the lady, "I beg of you in the name of your obligation as a knight, to arrange for me to speak with her."

Angriote said to her: "That will be done at onee, and likewise your eoming aboard this ship; for she is a lady who will enjoy

meeting you, just as she enjoys meeting all those who seek her out."

The matron boarded the ship, and Angriote took her by the hand and brought her to the queen, saying: "Madam, this lady wishes to see you."

"May she be welcome," said the queen, "and I ask you, Angriote, to tell me who she is."

Then the lady came up to her and greeted her, and said: "Madam, that good knight will not be able to answer that, because he does not know. But from me you shall ascertain it, and there will be no little to relate, in view of the disastrous misfortune and great hardship that undeservedly have overtaken me. But I wish, my good lady, to receive assurances from you that all my company and I will be safe, if what I say perchance moves you to anger rather than to pity."

The queen answered that she could safely say whatever she wished.

Then the lady began to weep very bitterly and said: "My good lady, even if from here I obtain no relief other than that of relating my misfortunes to such a noble lady as yourself, it will afford some rest to my grieving heart. You shall know that I was married to the King of Dacia, and with him I found myself a very happy queen; and by him I had two sons and one daughter. Then this daughter, who to my misfortune was begotten of me, the king her father and I gave in marriage to the Duke of the province of Sweden, a great dominion that borders on our kingdom; their marriage, just as it was celebrated very joyously amid great festivities and rejoicing, so subsequently has brought very great weeping and sorrow; for as this duke is a young man eager to rule, no matter by what means, and the king my husband was advanced in years, the duke reckoned that by killing him and seizing those two sons of mine, who are mere boys, for the elder is fourteen, he would quickly be able through his wife to be king of the realm. And just as he planned it he carried it out; for pretending that he was coming on a pleasure trip to our kingdom, and that his coming well accompanied was in our honor, when the king my husband was coming out with great pleasure and hearty good will to welcome him, the wicked traitor killed

him with his own hands. And God sought to protect the boys, for as they were coming behind on their palfreys, they took refuge in the city from which they had eome, and with them most of our knights and others who afterwards at great risk likewise entered, beeause that traitor at onee laid siege to them and thus holds them. Well, at that time I had gone on a pilgrimage that I was pledged to undertake to a very old ehurch of Our Lady, whieh is situated on a rock in the oeean about half a league offshore. There I was informed of the misfortune I had unknowingly sustained; and as I saw myself alone, I had no reeourse other than to take refuge in this ship on which I had gone there. For, my lady, I eome with the intention of going to the Firm Island to a knight called Amadis, and many others of noble rank who they tell me are there with him; and I shall tell him of this very great treachery whenee so much harm comes to me, and I shall beg him to have pity on those princes and not allow them to be killed so wrongfully; for if only a few were to go who would encourage my subjeets and serve as their leaders, that wicked man would not dare to stay there very long."

Queen Elisena and those knights were astonished at such great treachery and greatly pitied that queen; and at once the queen took her by the hand and had her sit beside her, saying to her: "My good lady, if I have not paid you the respect that your royal rank deserves, pardon me, for I did not know you, nor did I know the state of your affairs as I do now. And you may believe that your loss and hardship have moved me to sincere compassion and anguish on seeing that adverse Fortune spares no rank, however high it be, and that the one who finds himself happiest and most exalted ought most to fear her mutations; beeause when people deem themselves most secure, then there eomes to them what has come to you, my good lady. And since God has brought you here, I eonsider it good that you go in my eompany to the Firm Island; and there you will find the protection that you desire, just as all do who have had need of it."

"I know that already," said the Queen of Dacia; "for some knights who were erossing over to Greece told the king my lord the events that have oeeurred in eonneetion with Amadis's seizing the daughter of King Lisuarte, who was disinheriting her in

favor of another younger daughter, and was sending her to be the wife of the Emperor of Rome. And this caused me to seek this blessed knight, rescuer of the unfortunate who suffer wrongs."

When Angriote and his companions heard what Queen Elisena said, all three knelt before her and begged her earnestly to give them permission in order that that queen might be aided and avenged by them, if it were the will of God, for such great treachery; and that this could very well be done, because now they were quite near the Firm Island, where any obstacle to their arrival would not rightly be expected. The queen wanted first to arrive where the king her husband was, but they urged her so strongly, that she had to agree.

Then at once they boarded their own ships with their arms and horses and servants, and told the Queen of Dacia to give them someone to guide them, and said that she should go with Queen Elisena to the Firm Island. She answered them that she would not remain; instead she wanted to go with them, for her appearance would be worth a great deal in repairing and remedying the situation. So they went together, since they perceived her determination.

Queen Elisena and Don Galaor went on their way, and without anything happening to them, they arrived one morning at the harbor of the Firm Island. And when their arrival became known, the king her husband and their sons rode forth, along with the emperor and all the other knights, in order to welcome her. Oriana, with those ladies, had wanted to go with them, but the king sent word to beg her not to trouble to do so, for he would bring her to her immediately, and so she stayed behind.

Then the queen and Don Galaor disembarked and were received there with great pleasure. Amadis, after he kissed the hands of his mother, went and embraced Don Galaor, and the latter sought to kiss his hands, but he did not wish it; instead he remained for a while asking him about his illness. Don Galaor said that he was much improved and that he would be more so from then on, since an end had been put to the anger and rage at each other felt by King Lisuarte and by Amadis.

After the emperor and all the other lords had greeted the queen, they placed her on a palfrey and went to Oriana's apart-

ment in the castle, where the latter and the queens and noble ladies in very rich attire were at the gate of the garden to welcome her. The emperor led her horse by the reins and would not allow her to dismount except into his arms. Then when she entered where Oriana was, the latter clasped the hands of Queens Sardamira and Briolanja, and with them came up to Queen Elisena, all three kneeling before her with that submission due a real mother. The queen embraced and kissed them, and lifted them up. Then there arrived Mabilia, and Melicia and Grasinda, and all the other ladies; and they kissed her hands, and taking her in their midst, they went with her to her apartments. At this juncture Don Galaor arrived, and one could not begin to tell you the affection that Oriana showed for him, because, excepting Amadis, there was no one in the world she loved more, both on account of her lover, for she knew how much he loved him, and because of the very great love that King Lisuarte her father so truly had for him and the desire of Don Galaor to serve him against the whole world, as evidenced many times by his deeds. All the other ladies received him very well. Amadis, taking Queen Briolanja by the hand, said to Galaor: "Lord brother, this beautiful queen I entrust to you, for already on other occasions you have seen her and have become acquainted with her."

Don Galaor took her with him without any embarrassment, as one who is not frightened or disturbed on seeing women; and he said: "Sir, I consider it a great favor on your part that you give her to me, and on hers because she takes me and wishes me for her own."

The queen said nothing; rather, she blushed, which rendered her much more beautiful. Galaor, who was gazing at her, for since he had left Sobradisa at the time he brought his brother Don Florestan there (except afterwards briefly at the court of King Lisuarte when she came seeking Amadis), he had never again seen her, and at that time she was very young; but now that she was at perfection of age and beauty, he was so taken with her and so attractive did she seem to him that although he had seen and been intimate with many women, as this story tells when it speaks of him, never out of true love had he yielded his heart to anyone but this very beautiful queen. And likewise

she had given her heart to him, for knowing his great worth, both at arms and in all the other good qualities that the best knight in the world ought to have, all the great love that she had for his brother Amadis, she gave to this knight whom she already considered her husband. And just as their desires coincided at that time so completely, remaining so after they went away to their kingdom, they led a most gracious and honorable life and with greater love than could be fully described to you. And they had sons who were very handsome and very famous knights, who accomplished great and dangerous feats at arms, and won extensive lands and dominions, as we shall tell you in a continuation of this story that is called *The Exploits of Esplandian,* for this will be told there in full; and with Esplandian they maintained a close companionship before he was the emperor of Constantinople and afterwards.

So this reception of this noble Queen Elisena having been accomplished, and she now being lodged with those ladies, where no man other than King Perion entered — for it was so agreed upon until King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena and their daughter came, and the marriages of Oriana and of all the other ladies performed in their presence — all went to their own quarters to divert themselves in the many pastimes that they had in that island, especially for those who were fond of woodland hunting, because off the island on the mainland about a league away, there were the most beautiful groves and dense upland thickets, which, as the land was very well protected, were all full of deer and boar and rabbits, and other wild creatures, of which they killed many, not only with dogs and snares, but also by pursuing them in their haunts on horseback. There was also the hunting with falcons of many hares, partridges, and water-fowl; so that one can say that in that tiny nook there was a gathering together of the whole flower of chivalry of the world — that is to say, those who upheld chivalry to the highest degree — and of all the beauty and loveliness to be found in it. And afterwards there were great pleasures and delights about which we have told you, and others too numerous to relate — natural ones as well as artificial ones contrived by the enchantments of that very great sage Apolidon, who had left them there.

But now the story ceases to tell of these lords and ladies who were waiting for King Lisuarte and his retinue, in order to relate what happened to Don Bruneo and Angriote and Branfil, who were accompanying the Queen of Dacia, as you have already heard.

CHAPTER CXXII

CONCERNING WHAT HAPPENED TO DON BRUNEO OF BONAMAR AND TO ANGRIOTE DE ESTRAVAUS AND BRANFIL DURING THE RESCUE THAT THEY WENT WITH THE QUEEN OF DACIA TO EFFECT.

The story relates that Angriote de Estravaus and Don Bruneo of Bonamar and his brother Branfil, after they left Queen Elisena went ahead on their voyage, guided by those who knew the way. And the queen, because she was distraught, and also on account of her pleasure at having found those who would aid her in her extremity, had never asked them from where, or who they were. And as they sailed onwards just as I am telling you, one day she said to them: "Good lords and friends, although I have you in my company, I know no more of your estate than what I knew of you before I found you or saw you. I earnestly beg of you, if you please, to tell me, so that I may be able to address you with that degree of propriety befitting your honor and my own."

"Good lady," said Angriote, "although your ascertaining our names, in view of the slight acquaintanceship with us that you have, neither increases nor diminishes your peace of mind or your being helped, since you are pleased to obtain this information, we shall tell you. Know you that these two knights are brothers, and one is called Don Bruneo of Bonamar and the other Branfil, and Don Bruneo is through his spouse a brother-in-law of Amadis of Gaul, whose services you were going to enlist. And my name is Angriote de Estravaus."

When the queen heard them say who they were, she said: "Oh my good lords! I give many thanks to God for having found

you at such a time, and to you for the relief and pleasure that you have given to my troubled mind by informing me who you were; for although I am not acquainted with you, for I had never seen you before, your great fame resounds everywhere; because those knights from Greece about whom I spoke to Queen Elisena and who had passed through my land, told and recounted to the king my husband the great battles that had taken place between King Lisuarte and Amadis. They, while relating the events they had seen, told him the names of all the leading knights who participated and many of the great deeds of chivalry acomplished by them. And I remember that you were there accounted among the best, for which I give many thanks to our Lord; for certainly I have come with great concern at seeing you so few in number, and not knowing what protection I was bringing to this great emergency. But now I shall proceed with greater hope that my sons will be aided and defended against that traitor."

Angriote said: "Lady, since this is already our responsibility, more cannot be devoted to it than all our energies together with our lives."

"May God give you thanks," said she, "and bring me to a time when my sons and I may repay you by enhancing your estates."

Thus they traveled over the sea without pausing until they reached the kingdom of Dacia. Then having arrived there, they decided that the queen should stay on her ship out at sea until she saw how they were faring. And they had their horses landed and they armed themselves, and with their squires accompanying them and with two unarmed knights to guide them, who were with the queen at the time that she embarked, they went their way straight towards the city where the princes were, which from there was probably a good day's journey. And they had ordered their squires to bring along something to eat for them and forage for the horses, because they would not enter any populated area.

Just as I am telling you, these three knights went forth and traveled all day until evening. Then they rested at the edge of a forest of dense undergrowth, where they dined and fed their horses. And then they mounted and traveled so far by night

that they arrived an hour before dawn at the camp; which they approached as stealthily as they could in order to see where the greatest concentration of troops was, so that they might avoid it and go on through where there were but few until they entered the town. And so they did, for they ordered their squires and the two knights who were accompanying them to try to enter the town while they themselves remained on guard.

All three together attacked as many as ten knights whom they discovered in front of them, and from the first encounter on, each one unhorsed his man; and they broke their lances and grasped their swords and attacked them so fiercely that not only because of the powerful blows that they were dealing them, but also because the latter thought there were more people attacking, they began to flee, shouting for help. Angriote said: "It is well that we leave them and go reenforce the besieged." This was accordingly done, for with their company they arrived at the town walls, to which at the noise of their combat some one of those inside had come up. The two knights who came there with them called out and were at once recognized, and they opened a small postern gate through which they sometimes sallied forth at their enemies, and through it Angriote and his companions entered. The princes hastened there, for at the disturbance they had arisen and had ascertained that those knights were coming to their aid and that the queen their mother was well and in safety — for until then they had not known whether she was a prisoner or dead — news which greatly pleased them. All those of the town were greatly encouraged by their arrival when they found out who they were, and they had them housed with the princes in their palace, where they disarmed and rested for quite a while.

In the camp of the duke great confusion had been caused by the shouts that the knights who were fleeing had uttered, and very quickly all the troops came out, on foot as well as on horseback, for they did not know what was the matter; and before they calmed down, daylight came. The duke learned from the knights what had happened to them and how they had seen only about eight or ten mounted men — although they had thought that there might be more — and that these had entered the town. The duke said: "It is probably only some men from the coun-

tryside who have dared to enter. I will give orders to find out, and if I learn who they are, they will lose outside all that they leave here."

And then he ordered all to disarm and go to their quarters, and he did likewise.

Angriote and his companions, as soon as they had slept and rested, arose and heard mass with those youths whom they were protecting. Then they told them to order their ranking men to come there; and they did so. And from those ranking men they sought to find out what troops they had, in order to see whether there would be enough to go out and fight with their foes; and they earnestly besought them to have them all arm themselves, and they would review them in a large square that there was there; and so they did. Then all of them having turned out, and it having been definitely ascertained what troops the duke had, they perceived clearly that the situation could not be met with them except by means of some one of the artful strategems customarily sought in wars; and all three having taken counsel, they decided that night to go out and attack the enemy with great circumspection, and agreed that Don Bruneo and the younger prince, who was about twelve years old, should try to leave by another exit, and should concern themselves only with getting past their foes and going to a few nearby villages of that area — whose inhabitants, as they had seen the king killed, their lords under siege, and the queen in flight, did not dare to show themselves; instead, much against their will they were sending food to the duke's camp — and that they having arrived there, when the prince had been seen by the villagers and likewise the encouragement that Don Brunco would give them, they would assemble a force in order to be able to help those under siege; and if such an arrangement were found possible, that by night they give them certain signals, whereupon while they would be sallying forth to attack the camp, Don Bruneo would come with the troop that he had to the other side, where they had no fear of attack, and that thus they would be able to wreak great harm on their enemies.

This seemed to them a good resolution, and they discussed it with some of those knights who were most worthy and most

trusted to serve the princes in that very great confrontation and danger in which they were. All approved of its being done thus.

Then, night having come, and a good part of it over, Angriote and Branfil with all the people of the town went out to attack their foes, and Don Brunco with the prince went out on the other side as we told you. Angriote and Branfil, who were going in front of them all, entered a street bordered by gardens that they had seen that day — a street which ended at a large field where the camp was. And there was no guard outpost there by day, but at night some twenty men were standing guard in it; these they and their company attacked so fiercely that the guards were at once routed, and they moved ahead in pursuit of them. And some were killed and others wounded; for as they were people of low degree and these knights were so elite, very quickly they were all rendered powerless and were annihilated. The shouting was very loud, as was the resounding of blows; but Angriote and Branfil kept moving forward to attack the others who were hastening there from the camp and the other guard outposts, and they left many of them in the custody of their men, for they did nothing but seize and slay until they issued forth into the field where the camp was.

At that hour the duke was already on horseback; and as he saw his men annihilated by so few of his enemies, he was full of rage. And he spurred his horse, and went to attack them — and likewise all his troops that were there with him — so fiercely, that as it was night it seemed only that the whole of that field was red-hot molten metal; hence the forces from the city were seized with great fear and all of them took refuge in the alley through which they had passed to the field; so that there remained outside only those two knights Angriote and Branfil to await the whole fury of the duke. But so many men attacked them, that however much they achieved at arms — and they dealt the leaders notable blows and unhorsed the duke — perforce they had to retreat to the street where their men had sought refuge; and there, as the place was narrow, they halted. The duke was not wounded although he fell; and at once he was very quickly rescued by his men and placed on his horse. And he saw his enemies stationed in the street; and as he came up to them, he was greatly chagrined that only two knights were defending

themselves and holding that passageway against all the troops he had with him. And he said in a voice audible to all: "Oh, erring knights errant, to whom I am lending my own resources, what a disgrace it is that your strength does not suffice to overcome only two knights, for you are no longer contending with more!"

Then he attacked and many others with him, and so fast did so many come on the scene that in spite of themselves Angriote and Branfil, along with their men, were forced by them to retreat for some distance farther up the alley. The duke thought that they were already beaten and that there in the melee his forces would be able to kill many and enter together with the others into the town. And as a victor he went ahead of his men and came up sword in hand to Angriote, whom he encountered facing him, and struck him a mighty blow on top of the helmet. But he was not slow in receiving payment; for as Angriote was ever on the lookout for him after he heard him abuse his own men, he raised his sword, and with all his might he struck him on the helmet such a blow that he rendered him powerless and knocked him to the ground at his horse's feet. And when he saw him thus, he shouted to his men to seize him, that he was the duke; and Branfil and he advanced against the others and dealt them very great, heavy blows, so that they did not dare await them; for as that place where they were fighting was very narrow, they were unable to strike them except frontally. In the meantime the duke was taken and imprisoned by those of the town, but so stunned and out of his senses that he did not know whether his own men or his enemies were carrying him.

When his men saw him thus, they thought he was dead, and they retreated until out of that narrow alley. Angriote and Branfil, when they saw that, not only because the duke was dead or taken prisoner, but also because their adversaries were many and it was not prudent to attack them in such a large area, decided to turn back and be content with what they had accomplished on their first sally. And so they did, for very quietly they returned to their own men, quite content with the way the affair had turned out, although with some wounds but not serious ones, and with their armor badly battered. But their horses in a short while died from the wounds that they had received; and with their

forces gathered together, they returned to the town. And they found at the gate Prince Garinto, for that was his name, who when he saw them coming safe and sound and the duke, his enemy, taken prisoner, you can well understand the pleasure he felt. Then they all took refuge inside the town, rejoicing because they thus were bringing in their mortal enemy, who, as stated, had not yet regained consciousness, nor did he in all that remained of the night nor until noon of the next day.

Don Bruneo, who had gone out of the town on the other side, did not know anything of this except the shouts and great racket that he heard. And as the majority of the troops on the outside had hastened in the direction of the noise there only remained in that area a handful of foot soldiers, a few of whom, since they were going about disorganized and had no one to lead them, he was able to kill; but he stopped in order not to lose the prince whom he had in his charge, and he passed on by them without meeting any resistance. And they traveled all that remained of the night behind a man who was guiding them, who was riding a hackney; and morning having come, they saw nearby a town to which the guide was taking them. It was of respectable size and was called Alimenta; and there were coming out of it two armed knights, whom the duke had sent to find out who the men were who had entered the main town; and so they had carried their inquiry to other localities, but had found no trace or explanation of them. And they were returning to say so. Also on behalf of the duke they had ordered those of the town, with severe penalties for non-compliance, to send as much food as they could to the camp. And Don Bruneo, who saw them, asked that man if he knew who those two knights were, and on which side.

"Sir," said the man, "they are on the side of the duke, for I have already seen them many times wearing that armor while walking around outside the town in company with others who were companions at arms.

Then Don Bruneo said: "Well, you look after this youth and don't leave him; for I wish to see what kind of knights protect such a bad overlord."

Then he advanced somewhat and went to meet them; and they were paying no heed to him, believing him to be one of

those from the camp. When he came near he said: "Wicked knights, who live with that traitorous duke and are his friends, protect yourselves from me, for I defy you until death."

They replied to him: "Your great arrogance will pay you back for your madness; for thinking that you were one of our men we were willing to leave you alone; but now you will pay with that death you mention for what as a man of little sense you dare to undertake."

Then they went toward each other at the full speed of their horses, and struck each other hard on their shields, so that their lances were shattered to pieces; but the one of the knights who met Don Bruneo went to the ground without any delay, and he experienced such a great fall on the field, which was hard, that he stirred neither hand nor foot, but rather was stretched out as if he were dead. And Don Bruneo grasped his sword very stout-heartedly and went for the other one, who likewise had sword in hand, and well covered by his shield was waiting for him; so they struck very mighty and solid blows. But as Don Bruneo was the stronger, and was more versed in that profession, he belabored him with so many blows that he made him lose his sword from his hand and both stirrups, and he flung his arms around the neck of his horse and said: "Oh, sir knight, for God's sake don't kill me."

Don Bruneo desisted from striking him and said: "Acknowledge that you are defeated."

"I so acknowledge," said he, "in order not to die and lose my soul."

"Then get off your horse," said Don Bruneo, "until I make up my mind."

He did so, but was so dazed that he could not hold himself erect, and fell to the ground; and Don Bruneo forced him against his will to rise, and he said to him: "Go to that companion of yours and see whether he is dead or alive."

He did so as best he could, and went over to him and took his helmet from his head. And when he gave him air, he breathed better and to some degree recovered consciousness. At this moment, Don Bruneo looked around for the youth and saw him at some distance from him; for the man, not having much faith

in his prowess, had moved away from them with him. And with his sword he beckoned to them to come to him, and so they did; and when the youth came up, he was dumfounded at what Don Bruneo had done. And as he was a child and had never seen the like, he became quite pale of countenance, and Don Bruneo said to him: "Good youth, kill these enemies of yours, although it will be small vengeance for the great treason that their lord committed against your father."

The youth said to him: "Sir, perchance these are without blame for that treason; and it will be better, if it please you, that we bring them back alive rather than kill them."

Don Bruneo considered it good and was pleased with what the prince said; thinking that he would be a good man if he lived. Then he gave orders to that man who was accompanying them to help the other knight, and to place that one who was most stunned crosswise on the saddle of his horse, and for the other to mount, so that they might go on into the town. And so it was done.

And when they arrived there, many came out to see them and marveled at how they thus brought in those two knights who had left there that morning. So they went through the street of the town to the public square, to which many people had come. And when they saw the prince, they came up to him weeping to kiss his hands, saying to him: "Sir, if our hearts dared put into execution what our will desires, and if we saw a way to do so, we would all be in your service until death; but we do not know what action to take, since there is no leader or chief among us who knows how to command us."

Don Bruneo said to them: "Oh, people of little courage! Although until now you have been honorable, don't you remember that you are vassals of the king who was father of this youth and of the prince, his brother, who will be king? How do you as native-born subjects repay them what you owe them on seeing your lord killed so treacherously and his sons confined and besieged by that traitorous duke, his enemy?"

"Sir knight," said one of the most honorable men of the town, "you speak great truth; but as we do not have anyone to guide or command us, and as we are all people who lead a life of

ranching rather than by bearing arms, we do not know how to give ourselves the security befitting our loyalty. But now since this lord of ours is here, and you are in charge of him, determine what we ought and are able to do, and it will be done at once to the best of our ability."

"You speak as good men," said Don Bruneo, "and it is right that the king should grant favors to you and to all those who subscribe to this vow and opinion; and I come to lead you, and in your company to die or live."

Then he told them about the guard he had left in the town with the other prince, and how they had come with the queen their lady and where they had left her; and how as they were going to the Firm Island, they had met her at sea; and that they should not fear, for with a little help from them, their enemies would be very quickly annihilated and killed. When those people heard this, being greatly heartened and encouraged, they all became quite excited and said: "Sir knight of the Firm Island, since there never has been a knight there who was not fortunate since that famous Amadis of Gaul won it, command and direct for us all that we should do, and it will be done at once."

Don Bruneo thanked them heartily and had the prince thank them; after which he said to them: "Then give orders at once to close the gates of this town and place guards, so that by no one from here our enemy may be warned. And I shall tell you what must be done."

This was carried out immediately, and he said to them: "Then go to your homes and eat, make ready your arms, whatever they may be, and be ready to guard your town; and let there be no fear of those wicked people, for where they are they have enough to worry about in view of the protection remaining with the prince. And as soon as we dine and rest our horses a bit, the prince and I shall go on to another town which this guide whom I bring says is three leagues distant from this one. And we shall take all the people from there and come back here, and I shall conduct you in such a way that your enemies, if they are waiting, will be defeated, laid low and in your power."

They told him that they would do as he ordered, and at once they all went very willingly to do as he had commanded. And they

served the prince and Don Bruneo a good meal in the palace that was the king's. And as soon as they had eaten, since it was already past mid-day, they were about to mount in order to leave, when two men on foot arrived who had come at full speed to the gate of the town and had told the guards to let them enter, for they were bringing news which would please them. The guards took them to the prince and Don Bruneo, and they asked them what they were reporting. They said: "Sirs, we have come only to those of this town, for we did not know of the prince's and your arrival, because we had never seen you. And the news that we bring is such that both you and they will be quite pleased to learn it. Now know you that last night many people came out from the town, attacked the guards, and killed and took prisoner many of the duke's men. And when the duke learned of it he hastened there and encountered two foreign knights about whom they tell marvels, for they were killing his men; and he, to rescue the latter, fought with one of them, and with a single blow he knocked the duke from his horse, and he remained in the custody of those of the town; it is not known whether he is dead or alive. None of the troops of the camp know what to do, other than to gather in groups to talk things over; and it seemed to us they were preparing to move from there out of the great fear they have of those foreign knights about whom we are telling you. And we are from a village near here, and had the provisioning of the camp; and when we saw this, we decided to tell it to the gentlemen of this town so that they might be on their guard lest troops in flight harm or rob them."

When Don Bruneo heard this, he went out on horseback, and the prince with him, to the square, and had those who had arrived on foot tell the news to all those assembled there, so that they might be encouraged and heartened; and he said to them: "My good friends, I am of the opinion that I ought not to go farther than here; for according to this news, you and I suffice for the plan I had left for you. Therefore it is necessary that you all be armed at nightfall, and that we leave here; for it would be a great injustice that those of the big town should carry off all the glory of this victory without our sharing in it."

"Everything will be done immediately as you, sir, command," said they.

Thus they were occupied all day making ready their arms with such good will that they longed to be at grips with their enemies, because they already considered them annihilated, and they wanted to avenge themselves for the harm and injuries that they had received from them.

Night having come, Don Bruneo armed himself and mounted his horse, and took all the troops out to the countryside. And he asked the prince to wait there, but he wanted only to go with him. So just as you hear, they all went on their way to the camp; and Don Bruneo, after part of the night had passed, ordered the guide who had come with him, to make the signal to those of the town from where they might see it, as had been agreed upon, and he did so. And as soon as it was seen by them, they at once thought that Don Bruneo had good reinforcements, and immediately they made preparations to sally forth before dawn to attack the camp. But those of the camp had decided on another course of action, for as they saw the duke their lord in the power of their enemies and beheld those fire signals made by night, and because they had lost hope of recovering him; — on the contrary if they stayed it would be very dangerous for them — after part of the night had passed they gathered together all the troops and their baggage train and the wounded; and very secretly, without being noticed, they broke camp and started on the way to their own land; so that before their departure was detected they had traveled a long distance.

Then the hour having come when those of the town sallied forth, and Don Bruneo reached the other side of it, they found nothing; instead, not recognizing each other, as it was night, they might have had a great fight with each other, every one thinking the others were enemies as soon as no troops were discovered between the groups. But when they recognized each other, they were greatly distressed because their adversaries had escaped from them; and immediately they followed their trail, but with great difficulty, for because of the darkness they were at a loss and proceeded gropingly until dawn came. Then they saw them very clearly, and therefore those on horseback hastened and overtook the whole baggage train and the foot soldiers and the wounded; for the rest of the forces, as they were already beaten,

had not sought to do guard duty as soon as daylight came, because they were still going through the land of the enemy.

Of those overtaken they killed many, and took others prisoners, seizing a great deal of booty; and with great joy and glory they returned to the town. And then they sent knights to bring the queen; and when she came and saw her sons safe and sound, and her enemy taken prisoner, who can describe the great joy she felt?

Angriote and his companions, since they knew the arrangement of things at the Firm Island, and that those noble lords would be awaiting them, asked the queen for permission to leave, telling her that on an appointed day they were to be on the Firm Island and that since they were no longer needed, they wished to proceed on their way. The queen begged them out of regard for her to stay two days longer, because she wanted in their presence to proclaim her son Garinto king, and to mete out justice to that traitor of a very cruel duke. They said that they would be pleased to be present at the ceremony for her son, but not at the punishment of the duke; for since he was in her power, after their departure she might do with him whatever she liked. The queen gave orders to build at once in the square a large wooden platform, covered with very rich and attractive cloths of gold and silk, and ordered to come there all the leaders of her kingdom who were closest at hand; and they took up there Prince Garinto and the three knights. And they brought the duke, injured as he was, on a hackney without a saddle, and before him they sounded many trumpets hailing the prince as King of Dacia. And Angriote and Don Bruneo placed on his head a very fine crown of gold with many pearls and precious stones.

Thus they remained at those festivities a large part of the day, to the great distress and anguish of that duke who was watching, to whom the people addressed many insults and much abuse. But those knights asked the queen to order him taken away from there, or they would leave, for they did not wish to see any man who was a prisoner and vanquished receive abuse in their presence. The queen ordered him taken to the prison, since she saw his being there irked them; and she begged them to take rich jewels which she caused to be brought there to give to them. But they, however much she besought them, would

not take anything except — because they knew that in that land there were very beautiful whippets and beagles — that it be her pleasure to order some given to them for use in the hunting preserves of the Firm Island. At once they brought to them there more than forty from which to choose the most handsome and most to their liking. When the queen saw that they wished to go, she said to them: "My friends and good lords, since you do not wish to take my jewels, it is required that you take one, which is the one I love most in the world, and this is the king my son, whom on my behalf you may present to Amadis, so that in his company and that of his friends he may acquire the good breeding and manners that befit a knight, for with worldly goods he is abundantly provided. And if God brings him to full maturity, he will be better able to become a knight by Amadis's hand than by any other's. And tell him that both through his fame and through your prowess, this kingdom that you have won for me, has been won for him and for you."

They agreed to it as soon as they saw she desired it with such eagerness, and because it was a great honor to have in their company a king such as he, who though of such high rank, was soliciting their company in order to be more worthy.

The queen had a ship very lavishly equipped, as befitted a king, not only with fine adornments but also with rich and precious jewels on board for him to give to the knights and other persons on whom he might wish to bestow them, and his tutor with other servants. And she went with them down to the sea, and from there she returned; and on arriving at the town, ordered the duke executed with dishonor by hanging, so that all might see the fruit that the flowers of treason bore.

They boarded their ships and sailed until they reached that great harbor of the Firm Island, where they were being awaited with keen desire. Having arrived at the port, they sent a message to tell Amadis that they were bringing with them the King of Dacia and the reason why, so that he might see to what should be done at the arrival of such a prince. Amadis mounted his horse, taking only Agrajes with him, and half way down the hill leading up to the castle they met the knights with the king, who came richly clad and on a palfrey wondrously caparisoned. Amadis went up to him and greeted him, and the boy greeted Amadis very

courteously, for he had already been told who he was. Afterwards they all embraced each other laughing from the pleasure they took thereby; and thus together they went to the castle, where that king was lodged in the company of Don Bruneo until other youths should come, whom they were expecting. So those lords were on that island waiting for King Lisuarte; and in order to tell about him, we shall leave them until their time comes.

CHAPTER CXXIII

How king Lisuarte and queen Brisena, his wife and their daughter Leonoreta came to the firm island, and how those lords and ladies came out to welcome them.

As has been told, King Lisuarte, after he arrived at Windsor, ordered the queen to get ready the things needed by her and her daughter Leonoreta; and King Arban of North Wales, his chief majordomo, what he himself needed. And everything having been done and made ready in accordance with his eminence, he departed with his retinue. And he was willing to take with him only King Cildadan, and Don Galvanes, and Madasima, the latter's wife — who at the time had arrived there at his command from the Island of Mongaza — and a few others, who were knights of his own and luxuriously garbed; for Gasquilan, King of Suesa, from there had returned to his kingdom.

So with great joy they pursued their journey day by day until they stopped for the night four leagues away from the Island, a fact which was ascertained at once by Amadis and by all the other princes and knights who were with him there. And they decided that all together, and with those ladies accompanying them, they would go forth to welcome them at a distance of two leagues from the Island. Thus it was done, for the next day they all sallied forth, and with all the queens headed by Queen Elisena. The garments and rich adornments that they wore and the fine trappings of their palfreys, one's memory would not suffice to enumerate, nor one's hands to describe in writing. This much I tell you: that neither before nor afterwards was there ever known to have been in the world a company of so many

knights of such exalted lineage and such great courage, and so many ladies, queens, and princesses, and other high-born women of such beauty and so well adorned.

Thus together they traversed that plain until King Lisuarte was in sight; who when he saw so many people coming toward him, at once divined what it was all about; and with his whole company he went forward until he encountered King Perion and the Emperor and all the other knights who were coming ahead. All stopped there to embrace each other. Amadis was coming a little behind, talking with Don Galaor his brother, who was still so very weak that he could scarcely ride horseback, and as he arrived near the king he got off his horse. And the king shouted to him not to do so, but he did not stop on that account, and came up on foot; and although the king did not wish it, he kissed his hands. And he went over to the queen, whose mount that handsome youth Esplandian was leading by the rein; and the queen dismounted from her palfrey to embrace him; but Amadis took her hands and kissed them. Don Galaor came up to King Lisuarte; and when the king saw him so weak he went and embraced him, and tears came to the eyes of both. And thus the king held him for a while, for neither was able to speak a word for so long that some said that this emotion was from the pleasure they had in seeing each other, but others characterized it by saying that their remembering the past events, and not having participated together in them as their hearts desired, had brought those tears. This may be ascribed to whatever motive you like; but at any rate it was because they loved each other very much.

Oriana came up to the queen her mother after Queen Elisena had greeted her. And when her mother saw her, the one she most loved, she went to her and took her in her arms; and both would have fallen to the ground if it had not been for some knights who supported them; and the queen began to kiss her on the eyes and the face, saying: "Oh, my daughter, may it please God through His mercy that the hardships and anxiety that this great beauty of yours has given us, that beauty may now be the means of remedying amid great peace and happiness from now on!"

Out of joy Oriana made no reply except to weep. At this juncture Queens Briolanja and Sardamira came up and removed Oriana from her embrace; and they spoke to the queen, and

afterwards all the other ladies likewise with great courtesy, for they considered this lady one of the best and most honorable queens in the world. Leonoreta came up to kiss the hands of Oriana, and she embraced her and kissed her many times; and so also did all the matrons and maidens of the queen her mother, who with heart-felt affection loved her more than themselves; for as has been told you, this princess was the most noble and most courteous lady of her time in doing honor to everyone; and for this reason she was very much beloved and cherished by all the men and women who knew her.

The reception having been described, not as it was — for it would be impossible to do so adequately — but as befits the organization of this book, they all went on together to the island. When Queen Brisena saw so many knights and so many ladies and maidens of such high rank with whom she was very well acquainted and knew how high their standing was, and that all were subject to the will and command of Amadis, she was so astonished that she did not know what to say; for until then she had really thought that there was nowhere in the world a house or court equal to that of the king her husband; but having seen what I am telling you about, she thought of her own state as that of a mere count. And as she looked about her, she saw that everybody was walking behind Amadis and that they regarded him as their lord, that the one who was closest to him considered himself the most honored, and that wherever he went, they all went. She marveled at how a knight who never had acquired anything but arms and a horse could win such an exalted status; and although she considered him the husband of her daughter and punctilious in service, she could not avoid having great envy of him, because she had wanted that high standing for her husband, and thereafter Amadis would inherit it through her daughter. Therefore as she saw the situation to be just the opposite, she could not rejoice at it. But as she was very prudent, she pretended not to see it or understand it; and with a happy face and a troubled heart she talked and laughed with all those knights and ladies whom she had surrounding her; for the king, once he had spoken with Galaor, never once left him during that whole journey until they reached the island.

While they were proceeding on their way, Oriana could not take her eyes off Esplandian, for she loved him very much, as was natural. And the queen her mother, who noticed it, said: "Daughter, take this youth to escort you."

Oriana stopped, and the boy came up with very great humility to kiss her hands. Oriana had a great desire to kiss him, but the considerable embarrassment that she felt caused her to refrain. Mabilia came up to him and said to him: "My good friend, I also wish a share of your embrace."

He turned his face with a mien so gracious as to be wonderful to observe, recognizing her at once, and he spoke to her with great courtesy. So they brought him along between them, while talking with him on subjects most pleasing to them; and they were delighted with the way he answered, for his witty conversation and his graciousness made them very happy. And Oriana and Mabilia glanced at each other and then at the youth, and Mabilia said: "Does it seem to you, my lady, that this was fine food for the lioness and her offspring?"

"Oh my lady and friend!" said Oriana, "for Heaven's sake don't remind me of that, for even now I am sick at heart when I think about it!"

"Well, I understand," said Mabilia, "that his father experienced no less danger at sea when he was just as tiny. But God preserved him for what you see here; and so He will do, if it so please Him, for this one, who will surpass him and all those in the world in excellence."

Oriana laughed very heartily and said: "My true sister, it seems to me that you wish to test me to see for which of them I shall indicate a preference. So I do not wish to say, 'may it please God for it to be so,' but that He render both such that they have no equal, just as until now each one at his own age has not had a peer."

While speaking about this and other very agreeable matters, they all arrived at the castle of the Firm Island, where King Lisuarte and the queen his wife were lodged very comfortably where Oriana dwelt, and King Perion and his wife, in Queen Sardamira's quarters. Oriana, with all the other brides-to-be, took the highest of the towers. Amadis had given orders to set the tables in those very fine arcades of the garden; and there he had

that whole company dine very splendidly with such an abundance of foods and wines and fruits of all kinds, that it was very wonderful to see. Each one was seated according to protocol, and it was all done in very orderly fashion. Don Cuadragante took with him King Cildadan, whom he loved very much, and each one of all the other knights escorted one of the king's men according to his preference. And Amadis took with him Arban of North Wales, Don Grumedan and Don Guilan the Pensive. Norandel lodged with his good friend Don Galaor. Thus they spent that day with such pleasure as you can well imagine. But what Agrajes did with his uncle and with Madasima, one could in nowise relate or imagine; for he held him in as much respect and reverence as he had always held the king his father; and he had Madasima stay with Oriana and those queens and great ladies who were there, taking Don Galvanes with him to his own quarters. Esplandian at once approached the King of Dacia, who was of his own age and seemed to him a very good fellow, and such mutual affection resulted from the time that they first saw each other, that it lasted all the days of their lives; so that, for very long periods they traveled together after they were knights, and participated in mighty deeds at arms amid extreme danger to their persons, being very courageous knights. This knight was completely the confidant of Esplandian's love affair; through his good advice the latter was relieved many times of great anguish and mortal cares that came to him concerning his lady, and brought him to the point of death. This king I tell you about went to a great deal of trouble to speak to this lady and tell her what this knight was suffering out of love for her and to bid her have pity on his grievous suffering from the pangs of love. These two princes about whom I am telling you, for love of this lady, taking with them Talanque, son of Don Galaor, and Maneli the Moderate, son of King Cildadan — who procreated them with the nieces of Urganda when they were imprisoned, as the second Book of this story tells at great length — and Ambor, son of Angriote de Estravaus, all novice knights, crossed the sea in the region of Constantinople to the land of the pagans, and had there great battles, not only with strong giants but also with other foreigners of different ways; in which battles they participated to their great honor; whereby their extreme prowess and

great deeds of chivalry were proclaimed through the whole world, just as at greater length we shall relate to you in that continuation which, called *Esplandian,* stems from this story and tells of the latter's great deeds and of the love affair that he had with the flower and greatest beauty of the entire world, who was that shining star, before whom all other beauty grew pale: Leonorina, daughter of the Emperor of Constantinople, the girl who was a mere child when his father Amadis took leave of her in Greece after going there and slaying the mighty Endriago, as we have already told you.

But let us now leave this until the proper time and return to the present subject-matter of our story. Then the day that they arrived having passed, and another in resting from the journey, the kings gathered together with great pleasure to arrange how the marriages should be solemnized, and for their return to their own lands, for much remained for them to do: some to go to conquer the dominions of their enemies, and others to give them aid to that end.

And while they were together under some trees beside the fountain you already have heard about, they heard loud outcries that the people were making outside the garden, and a great hubbub of voices. And it having been ascertained what this was all about, they were told that the most frightful and strangest thing they had ever seen was approaching by sea. Then the kings asked for their horses and mounted, as did all the other knights, and they went to the harbor. The queen and all the other ladies went up to the top of the tower, which commanded an extensive view of the land and the sea. And they saw a cloud of smoke, blacker and more frightful than any they had ever seen, approaching over the water. All stood still until finding out what it was. And in a short while when the smoke began to clear away, they saw in the midst of it a sea serpent, much larger than the largest galley or ship in the world, and it had such enormous wings that they extended farther than one could shoot an arrow, and it had its tail coiled upward much higher than a tall tower. Its head and mouth and teeth were so big, and its eyes so frightful that there was no one who dared gaze at it; and from time to time it spewed out through its nostrils that very black smoke, which was rising into the sky and with which it was

completely covered. It was emitting raucous sounds and hisses so loud and terrifying that it seemed as if the sea was about to sink. It was ejecting from its mouth jets of water so powerful and to such a distance that no ship, however large it might be, could have approached it without being submerged.

The kings and knights, although they were very couragcous, gazed at one anothcr and did not know what to say, for they opined and believed that against a thing so frightful and appalling no resistance would suffice, but they stood their ground. The great serpent, as it now drew nearer, made three or four turns through the water, displaying its ferocity and flapping its wings so hard that the clashing of its scalcs resounded for more than a half league round about. When the horses which those knights were riding saw it, no one was strong enough to restrain his own mount; instead with them their steeds went running away through the countryside until their riders perforce had to dismount from them. Some said that since it was a fierce marine animal, it would not dare to come out on land; and that even if it did leave the water, there would be time for them to take refuge on the island, and that the serpent on seeing the land, was beginning already to suspend its activity.

Then while everybody was marveling at a thing the like of which they had never heard of or seen, they perceived that from the serpent's side they were lowering a small boat cntirely covered with very fine cloth of gold, and with a lady in it who at each side had a very elegantly clad page, and she was holding on to their shoulders for support, and two fantastically ugly dwarfs, each rowing one oar, were bringing the boat to land. Those lords were greatly astonished on seeing such a strange sight; but King Lisuarte said: "If this lady is not Urganda the Unknown, don't believe a word I say; for you certainly ought to remember," he added, addressing Amadis, "the fear she inspired in us when we were at my town of Fenusa at the time when she came by sea with those fireworks."

"I thought so," said Amadis, "after I saw her small boat; for before that I thought only that that serpent was some dcvil with which we would have our hands full."

At this moment the boat reached the shore, and as it was near at hand, they recognized thc lady as Urganda the Unknown;

for she was pleased to show herself in her own form, which she seldom did; instead she was wont to assume strange disguises, sometimes that of a very old woman, sometimes that of a very young girl, as has been told in many parts of this story. Thus she arrived with her very handsome and richly adorned pages, for their costumes were at many points embellished and adorned with precious stones of great value. The kings and great lords went ahead on foot just as they were, going alongside the place where she was landing. And as soon as she arrived she left the boat, holding on to the hands of her two handsome pages, and went at once to King Lisuarte to kiss his hands; but the king embraced her and did not wish to yield his hands to her, and King Perion and King Cildadan followed suit. Then she turned to the emperor and said to him: "My good lord, although you do not know me, nor have I ever seen you, I know a great deal about your affairs, not only who you are and the worth of your noble self, but also your high rank. And on this account and because of some services that before long you together with the empress will receive from me, I wish you to know me favorably and to esteem me, so that you may remember me, when you are in your own kingdom, by sending me word of anything in which I may be of service to you; for although it seems to you that this land where I dwell is very far from yours, it would not be for me any great task to travel the whole distance — all of it — in one ordinary day."

The emperor said to her: "My good lady and friend, I consider myself happier to have gained your love and good will than to have won most of my dominions. And since out of your goodness of heart you have invited me to do so, I beg you not to forget what you have promised me; for whether my heart and will are resolved to show you gratitude with all my might, you know better than I."

Urganda said to him: "My lord, I shall see you at a time when by me the first fruit of your procreation will be restored to you."

Then she looked toward Amadis, for she had not had time to be able to speak with him, and said: "Well, noble knight, one ought not to miss your embrace; although, in view of the way favorable fortune has raised you to such heights and placed you at the summit, probably you will not esteem very highly the

services and pleasures of us who can be of but little avail, beeause these mundane things very quickly following the course of world affairs, with but littlc eause and even without any at all eould change. Now that it seems to you that you will be able to spend your life in most carefree fashion, especially since you have in your possession what you most in the world desire and without which everything else would be for you the occasion of grievous loneliness; now it is more necessary to maintain everything with redoubled effort; for Fortune is not content when at such heights it strikes and shows its power, because it would be a much greater disgrace and diseredit for your great honor to lose what has been gained, than without it to earry on before it be won."

Amadis said to her: "In view of the large benefits that I have reeeived from you, my good lady, together with the great love that you have always had for me, although for the satisfying of my desires I may have found myself very effective, very poor would I feel on using my resources in matters eoneerning your honor that might be entrusted to me by you; for what I have won cannot be so great, even were it the whole world, as to render it wrong to risk it in what I am talking about."

Urganda said: "The great love that I have for you causes me to talk nonsense and to give advice where it is not needed."

Then all those knights eame up and greeted her, and she said to Don Galaor: "Neither to you, my good lord, nor to King Cildadan do I say anything now, because I shall sojourn here with you for a few days and we shall have time to talk."

And turning to her dwarfs, she ordered them to return to the Great Serpent and to bring her a palfrey in a small boat, and one for each of her pages, which was done at once. The horses of the kings and lords were at some distanee away from there, for the fear they had of that fierce creature did not give their riders an opportunity to approaeh them; and they left men there to put her on her palfrey, and they went on foot to reeover theirs. She told them that she earnestly entreated them to approve of no one's eseorting her except those two pages, who were devoted to her; so thus it was done, for all the others went ahead to the eastle, and she behind them with her retinue; and they continued on until they reached the garden where the queens and the noble ladies were, for she did not want to lodge anywhere else. And

before entering with them she said to Esplandian: "To you, very handsome youth, I entrust this treasure of mine for you to keep; for nowhere near here would there be found so fine a one."

Then she handed over to him the pages and entered the garden, where she was so well received by everyone that never was a woman anywhere so welcomed. When she saw so many queens, so many prineesscs, and an infinite number of other persons worthy of high esteem and who were of high rank, she gazed at them all with great pleasure and said: "Oh, my heart! What can you see from now henceforth, that will not be the cause of great nostalgia, since in onc day you have seen the best, most virtuous and most eourageous knights that there have ever been in the world, and the most honorable and beautiful queens and ladies ever born? Certainly I ean assert that here is perfection of both; and I say even more, for just as here are gathered together all the great prowess at arms and the beauty of the world, so also is love sustained here with the greatest loyalty that it ever has been at any time."

So she went into the tower with those ladies, and she asked permission of the qucens to be permitted to room with Oriana and those who were with her, who immediately took her up to Oriana's apartment. When they were in her ehamber she eould not remove her gaze from Oriana, and Queen Briolanja and Melicia, and Olinda, for no other woman was the equal of these in beauty, and she kept embraeing them all. Thus she was with them as if beside herself with pleasure, and they honored her as highly as if she were the mistress of them all.

CHAPTER CXXIV

How Amadis had his cousin Dragonis marry the princess Estrelleta and caused him to go win Deep Island, of which he would be king.

Now the story relates that Dragonis, cousin of Amadis and of Don Galaor, was a very honorable young knight of great courage, as he had demonstrated in past events, especially in the battle that King Lisuarte had with Galvanes and his companions over the Island of Mongaza, where this knight — after Don Florestan and Don Cuadragante and many other noble knights had been incapacitated and taken prisoner by Don Galaor and King Cildadan and Norandel and by all the great body of troops on their side that attacked them, and Don Galvanes had been carried to the aforementioned island very badly wounded — stayed with the few that remained on his side, and with his father's knights whom he had there, as the defense and aid of them all; whence because of his prudence and fine efforts they were afforded relief, as the third Book of this story had related in more detail.

He was not on the Firm Island at the time that Amadis arranged the marriages of his brothers and the other knights that you have already heard about, because from the monastery of Lubayna he went off with a maiden to whom he had promised a boon. And he fought with Angrifo, lord of the valley of the Deep Pool, who was holding her father prisoner in order to seize a fortress that he had at the entrance to the valley. And Dragonis had a cruel and mighty battle with him, because that Angrifo was the most valiant knight to be found in those mountains where he dwelt; but he was finally overcome by Dragonis, since the

latter was fighting for what was right, and he rescued the father of the maiden from Angrifo's custody, and he commanded Angrifo to go within twenty days to the Firm Island and submit himself to the mercy of Princess Oriana. And because Dragonis was near the Island of Mongaza he wished to see Don Galvanes and Madasima; and while he was with them, the messenger of King Lisuarte arrived with the summons to bring them to the Firm Island, just as the king had promised Agrajes. Dragonis went with them to Windsor, where they were received with much love and great honor. And from there, as you have already heard, he went with the king and queen to the Firm Island, where Dragonis discovered the marriage arrangements and the allotment of sovereignties, as has been related, at which allotment he was greatly pleased. And he highly praised what his cousin Amadis had done, and prepared himself as much as he could to participate in that conquest, for he truly had held the belief that it could not be brought to a conclusion without great deeds at arms. But Amadis, as he loved him sincerely, thought it would be a gross injustice and to his own great shame if such a knight should remain without a goodly share of what he had helped to win with so much effort; so one day taking him aside in that garden, he spoke to him thus: "My lord and good cousin, although your youth and great courage, desirous of increasing your honor in great armed encounters, take from you the wish for greater rank and repose than that which until now you have had, reason, to which all of us are obliged to have recourse as the chief source of virtue, and the opportunity which is offered you, require that your resolve be changed, and that you follow the counsel of my meager understanding and great good will, which has as much regard for you as for my own well-being. I have learned that at the time that we rescued King Lisuarte in Lubayna, with those who fled from the enemy at the outset was the King of the Deep Island, who was wounded; and now I learn from a squire of King Arabigo who has come here that on putting out to sea he at once died. So I consider it good for that island of which he was lord to be yours and I wish that you be named king of it; moreover that by your brother Palomir your father's kingdom be inherited; and that you be married to Princess Estrelleta, who, as you know, is a descendant of kings on both sides, and whom Oriana greatly

loves. And all this I deem good and it would please me that it be done, because I would rather force your will to submit to reason than that I should feel such shame, my good cousin, in your not sharing in the bounty that God has given me, just as you, more than anyone else, felt shame when I was badly treated."

Dragonis — although his wish had been to go with Don Bruneo and Don Cuadragante in order to afford them personal aid until they acquired their seigniories, and if he survived that, to go to Roman lands in quest of adventures, and to stay for some length of time with the King of Sardinia, Don Florestan, in order to see him and find out whether he, being a man in a foreign land, needed him for anything; and from there to return to see Amadis at the Firm Island or wherever he might be (and he thought that on these journeys he would be able to win much honor and great fame or die like a knight) — on seeing the great love with which Amadis had said to him what he did, was too embarrassed to answer anything except that he acceded entirely to his desire, for in that matter and to all his commands he would be obedient to him. Therefore he was immediately betrothed to that princess, and the Deep Island, about which you have already heard, designated as his, of which island he was at once named king and became so with very great honor, as later on will be told. This having been done just as you hear, Amadis asked King Lisuarte for the duchy of Bristol for Don Guilan the Pensive, for he had great affection for him; and his consent for him to marry the duchess, whom he loved so much, saying that he would hand over to him the duke [successor to her deceased husband, presumably her brother-in-law], whom he held prisoner there. The king, not only because of his love for Amadis, but also because he had many and great obligations to Don Guilan, and because the duke had been a traitor to him, willingly consented to it. Amadis kissed his hands for it, and Don Guilan wished to kiss Amadis's, but the latter was not willing; instead he embraced him with great love; for in his time, out of all the knights in the world he was the most obliging and the most gentle and kind to his friends.

CHAPTER CXXV

How the kings met to arrange the weddings of those noble lords and ladies, and what was done about it.

The kings assembled again as before, and arranged that the weddings be the fourth day, and that the festivities should last two weeks, at the end of which with all matters settled, they should leave and return to their own lands. The appointed day having come, all the bridegrooms gathered in Amadis's quarters, and they garbed themselves in such rich and costly apparel as their high estate required at such a ceremony. And the brides did likewise; and the kings and great lords took the bridegrooms with them, and mounting their very richly caparisoned palfreys, they went to the garden, where they found the queens and brides likewise on their palfreys. So thus all together they sallied forth to the church, where preparations for the mass had been made by the holy man Nasciano. The solemnizing of the marriages and marriage contracts having taken place with the impressiveness that Holy Church requires, Amadis came up to King Lisuarte and said to him: "Sire, I wish to ask of you a boon that will not be difficult for you to grant."

"I grant it," said the king.

"Then, sire, tell Oriana that before the dinner hour, she submit to the test of the Enchanted Arch of faithful lovers, and the Forbidden Chamber, which until now on account of her great sadness, it has never been possible for her to undergo, however much she has been besought and entreated by us; for because of her fidelity and her exceeding beauty, I have so much confidence that she will enter with no hindrance there where in the

last hundred years no woman, however much she exeelled others, has been able to enter, beeause I saw Grimanesa there where she was modelled with great skill by her husband Apolidon as realistieally as if she were alive, and her great beauty does not equal Oriana's. And in that ehamber prohibited to all other women shall be celebrated our wedding feast."

The king said to him: "My good son and lord, it is easy for me to comply with what you request; but I am afraid that with it we may cause some perturbation at these festivities beeause frequently — in faet usually — it happens that one's great earnestness of will deeeives one's eyes, which make judgments eontrary to reality; and so it might happen to you with my daughter Oriana."

"Don't worry about that," said Amadis, "for my heart tells me that just as I say, it will be realized."

"Sinee that is your pleasure, so be it," said the king.

Then he went to his daughter, who was among the queens and the other brides, and said to her: "Daughter, your husband asks of me a boon, and it eannot be earried out exeept by you. I want you to make good my promise."

She knelt before him, kissed his hands, and said: "Sire, may it please God that in some fashion an opportunity may eome about for me to be able to serve you; and do eommand whatever you like, for it will be done if it ean be carried out by me."

The king raised her up and kissed her on the cheeks, saying to her: "Daughter, then it is fitting that before you dine, the Areh of faithful lovers and the Forbidden Chamber be tested by you, for this is what your husband asks of me."

When this was heard by all those people, many were pleased to see the test carried out, and it occasioned great perturbation for others; because, since it was such a diffieult thing to aeeomplish and so many ladies of such standing had failed in it, they indeed thought that glory would be achieved by completing it, just as by failing in it, one would run the risk of being diseredited and embarrassed. But sinee they saw that the king was eommanding it and Amadis was asking for it, they did not want to say anything exeept that it should be done.

So just as they were, they left the ehureh, and on horseback they came to the boundary beyond whieh no man or woman was

permitted to penetrate, unless worthy to do so. Then having arrived there, Melicia and Olinda told their husbands that they too wanted to try that adventure; whereupon the hearts of the latter were overjoyed at seeing the great loyalty with which they exhibited such daring; but fearing some reverse might come to them, they told them that they were very happy and satisfied with their choice of wives; and as far as they were concerned, the latter should not assume that solicitude. But the ladies told them they had to try it, for if they had been elsewhere, they could reasonably have been excused from it; but there, where no reason sufficed, they did not want it thought that they had omitted it on account of their inward feelings.

"Since that is the way it is," said the husbands, "we cannot deny receiving from this the greatest favor that ever could come to us from any source."

This they said at once to King Lisuarte and the other lords: "In the name of God," they said in reply, "and may He be pleased that it be so auspiciously that the festivities in which we are engaged be very joyously augmented."

There they all dismounted and it was decided that Melicia and Olinda should enter first, and so it was done, for one after the other they passed beyond the barrier, and very shortly they were under the arch; and they entered the abode where Apolidon and Grimanesa used to stay, and the trumpets that the image above it was holding played very sweetly so that all were greatly cheered by such a tune, for never had they — with the exception of those who had already seen and made the test — ever witnessed anything like it.

Oriana reached the barrier, turned her face toward Amadis and wavered blushing deeply, then turned to enter; and on arriving at the center of the place, the image began the sweet melody. And when she came under the arch, there issued from the mouth of the trumpet so many roses and other flowers in such profusion that the ground was entirely covered with them, and the melody was so sweet and so different from the one played for the other ladies that all experienced such great delight that as long as it lasted, they thought it proper not to leave there; but when she passed through the arch, the melody ceased at once. Oriana found Olinda and Melicia looking at those figures and their names,

which were inscribed on the jasper; and when they saw her they went to her very joyously and linking arms with her they returned to the image. And Oriana looked very closely at Grimanesa's image, and saw quite clearly that neither one of those ladies, nor any of those who were outside were as beautiful as she; and she greatly feared the Forbidden Chamber test, for in order to enter it she had to surpass Grimanesa in beauty; and if it had been left to her she would have given up trying it, though she had never had any misgivings about the Enchanted Arch test, for she well knew the secret of her heart: namely, that it had never been given to anyone but her lover Amadis.

Thus they tarried a while and would have stayed longer, except that the time of day was such that they were being expected back; and they decided to come out as they were, all three together, so contented and so happy, that to those who were waiting for them and watching they seemed to have enhanced their beauty a great deal; and they themselves really thought that any of them would suffice to conclude favorably the adventure of the Chamber. And this, as I say, caused the great joy that they felt; for just as with joy all beauty is enhanced, so on the other hand, with sadness it languishes and diminishes. Their three husbands, Amadis and Agrajes and Don Bruneo, who had accomplished that adventure as the second Book of this story has already told you, went toward them, which none of the others who were there could do; and as they came up to them, the trumpet began the melody and to strew flowers, which fell on their heads, and their husbands embraced and kissed them; and thus all six issued forth.

This test having been accomplished, they decided to proceed to that of the Chamber, but there were some present who had grave misgivings about their ability to accomplish it. Then when they all arrived at the appointed place, which was in the castle hall, Grasinda came up to Amadis and said to him: "My lord, even if my beauty is not such as to enable me to realize my heart's desire, I cannot constrain my folly to the point of ceasing to desire to undergo the test at this entrance point, for certainly I would never cease to regret it if this test were completed without my trying it; and whatever the result, I still want to attempt it."

Amadis, who was thinking only that all the other ladies should try it before his lady did, so that she might have a complete victory over them all — for he had no doubt of her being able to accomplish it, as he did have concerning the others — replied to her: "My good lady, I consider nothing less than nobility of heart that you should say you wish to accomplish what so many beautiful ladies have failed to do; and so let it be done."

Then he took her by the hand and led her forward saying: "Ladies, this very beautiful lady wishes to test herself here, and so, my ladies Olinda and Melicia, should you do; for it should be considered great obstinacy, since God distributed among you all such extreme beauty, if in such an outstanding event you should fail out of any fear to utilize it, and it is possible that it will be accomplished by some one of you, and you will free Oriana from the great fear that she has."

This he said in public, but it was all feigned; for he well knew, as has been said, that it could be accomplished by none of them except his lady, for never could Grimanesa in her own time nor any other lady afterwards in any degree approach her beauty.

Everybody said that thus it should be done; and then Grasinda commended herself to God and entered the prohibited place, with but slight effort reaching the pillar of copper; and she went forward, and on approaching the pillar of marble, was stopped; but she with effort and the great courage that she demonstrated there — much more than was expected of a woman — reached the pillar of marble; but there without any pity she was seized by her very beautiful hair and thrown out of the place so stunned that she was in a faint. Don Cuadragante took her with him, and although he knew for certain that she was in no danger because of her swoon, he could not avoid being disturbed about it and having great pity for her; because as regards this knight, since he was now middle-aged and his heart had never been captivated by any woman any more than he himself could have been, what previously had been forgotten, plus what was now present, suddenly had disturbed him in such wise that he would not yield superiority to any man there in desiring and loving his lady.

So then came Olinda the Moderate with Agrajes leading her by the hand, for he was encouraging her greatly, although inwardly he had very little hope, for his great love and affection for her did not keep him from recognizing that she did not match Grimanesa in beauty; but he indeed thought that she would measure up to the foremost ladies. And on arriving at the place, he released her hand, and she entered and went directly to the pillar of copper, and from there passed on to the marble one, for she perceived nothing. But when she sought to continue on, the resistance was so great that no matter how much she persisted, she could not move forward more than a step, and then she was thrown out, like the other lady.

Melicia went in with excellent self-restraint and a gallant heart, for thus she was very graceful and very beautiful. And she passed so far beyond both of the pillars, that they all thought that she would enter the chamber; and Oriana, who thought so also, was completely beside herself with anxiety. But going one step farther than Olinda, she was immediately stunned, and like the others, taken out without any pity as unconscious as if she were dead; for the farther they went in, the worse in degree was the penalty meted out to each lady; and thus it had been done to the knights before Amadis had accomplished his feat. The rage that Don Bruneo experienced on Melicia's account moved many to pity; but those who knew how slightly she was endangered thereby, laughed heartily as they watched.

This having been done, Amadis brought Oriana forward, in whom all the beauty in the world was combined, and she reached the place, walking calmly and with a very modest mien; and crossing herself and commending herself to God, she went ahead, for without feeling anything she passed the pillars; and when she came within one step of the chamber she felt many hands that were pushing her and turning her about, so forcefully that three times they turned her around before she approached the marble pillar. But she merely pushed them aside with her own very beautiful hands, and it seemed to her that she was in contact with other arms and hands. And thus with much persistence and great courage, and especially with her great beauty, which was superior to that of Grimanesa, as has been said, very weary she reached the door of the room, and grasped one of the lintels;

then there came out that arm and hand which had laid hold of Amadis, and seized her by one hand and she heard more than twenty voices chanting very sweetly: "Welcome to the noble lady, who through her own great beauty has surpassed that of Grimanesa; and she will keep the knight company who, by being more valiant and vigorous at arms than that Apolidon — who in his time had no peer — won the sovereignty of this island; and by his descendants it will be ruled for long generations together with other great seigniories that they will win with it as their base."

Then the arm and the hand gave a tug, and Oriana entered the chamber, where she found herself as happy as if she were mistress of the world, and not so much on account of her beauty as because her lover Amadis, being the lord of that island, without any hindrance could keep her company in that beautiful chamber, while dispelling the hope that thence-forth any other lady, however beautiful she might be, might come to test herself. Isanjo, the knight who was governor of that island, then said: "Ladies and gentlemen, the enchantments of this island at this moment are all dissolved without any remaining; for thus was it established by that one who left them here; for he did not intend them to last any longer than it would take to find a lord and lady who would consummate these adventures, as this lord and lady have done. And without hindrance all the ladies can enter there, just as the men have done since Amadis's accomplishment."

Then the kings and queens entered, as did the other knights and ladies and maidens who were there, and they saw the richest and most delightful dwelling place that was ever seen, and they all embraced Oriana as if they had not seen her for a long time. So great was the pleasure and joy of all that they did not think of dining or of anything else but looking at that very extraordinary chamber. Amadis gave orders at once to bring the tables into that great chamber, and this was done. Finally the brides and grooms and the monarchs and those others for whom there was room took their ease and dined in the chamber, where they were very well served with many and diverse viands, and fruits of all kinds and wines.

Then night having come, after dining, in that very beautiful section of the room that we have already told you about in the

second Book, which was much more luxurious than all the rest of it and was partitioned off by a wall of glass, they made up a bed for Amadis and Oriana where they dwelt, and for the emperor and the other knights with their wives in the other rooms, of which there were many very sumptuous ones; in which, by satisfying their great and mortal desires, because of which they had suffered many dangers and great anxieties, they made matrons those ladies who were not; and those who were had no less pleasure than they with their greatly beloved husbands.

CHAPTER CXXVI

How Urganda the Unknown assembled all those kings and knights who were on the Firm Island; and the great past, present and future events about which she told them; and how she finally departed.

The story relates that after these great wedding festivities that took place on the Firm Island, Urganda the Unknown asked the kings to order all the knights and ladies and maidens to assemble because she wanted to speak to them about the cause of, and reason for her coming — a request with which they ordered compliance.

Then with all of them gathered in a great hall of the castle, Urganda took a seat apart, holding those two pages of hers by the hands; and when all became silent, awaiting what she might say, she spoke as follows: "My lords and ladies, without being told I found out about this very great festival following all the deaths and losses that have taken place because of you; and God is my witness that if any part or all of those misfortunes could have been prevented by me, on account of no personal hardship would I have failed to devote all my efforts to that end. But as it was permitted by that supreme Lord, it was through His favor given to me to know about it, but not to remedy it; because what is ordained by Him, no one except Him is powerful enough to obviate. And since the misfortune could not have been avoided by my presence, I decided by means of it to excel in what I think is good, in accordance with the great love that I have for many of you and you for me; and also to declare openly a few facts (which previously I told you in veiled terms, according to

my custom) in order that you may believe that I have told you the truth, just as in other things that at times you have heard from me previously." Then she looked toward Oriana and said: "My good lady and beautiful bride, you must recall clearly that when I was with the king your father and the queen your mother, in the town of Fenusa, lying with you in your bed, you asked me to tell you what was going to happen to you, and I begged you not to try to find out; but because I recognized your desire, I told you that the lion of the Fearful Island was going to leave his den, and with his loud roars your caretakers would be frightened; so that the lion would lay hands on your flesh, with which he would give relief to his great hunger; so one ought to recognize clearly what I meant: that this husband of yours, much stronger and braver than any lion, went forth from this island, which very rightly one can call Fearful, where he has so many very secret dens, and with his forces amid great outcry the fleet of the Romans which was guarding you was overwhelmed and destroyed; so that you were left in his strong arms, and he possessed himself of your flesh as everybody saw, without which his ravenous hunger could never have been satisfied or appeased. So you will recognize in all respects that I told the truth."

Then she said to Amadis: "Then you, good sir, very clearly will perceive to be the truth everything that at that time I told you: namely, that your blood you would give for another's, when in the battle of Ardan Canileo the Feared you gave it for your friends King Arban of North Wales and Angriote de Estravaus, who were prisoners; for when in the hands of your enemy, you saw your good sword with which he was harassing your flesh and bones, you certainly would have preferred to see it out of sight in some lake; then the reward that from this accrued to you, what was it? Certainly, none other than anger and great enmity that over the Island of Mongaza, which you won at that time, came into being between King Lisuarte, here present, and yourself, as everyone very clearly has seen; for this gain I told you you would obtain from it.

"Then the things I wrote to you, very virtuous King Lisuarte, at the time when that very handsome youth Esplandian, your grandson, you found in the forest hunting with the lioness, you well remember; and what I said concerning what is now

past, you will see that I knew because he was reared by three very different nurses; namely, the lioness, the ewe and the woman, who all suckled him. Also I informed you that this young man would effect peace between you and Amadis. I leave for you and him to judge how much anger, how much severity and enmity his very attractive good looks have dispelled from your desires; and how because of him and his great discretion you were rescued by Amadis at a time that you were expecting nothing but death. So whether such service as this was worthy to remove enmity and attract love, I leave to these lords to judge. Then as regards the other things that will happen in due course, just as the letter showed you, let them remain to be judged by those who are then alive; for in view of the past they can well believe the future to have been previously known to me. I made to you another prophecy, much more important than any of these, in which is contained all that happened to you in the course of your handing over your daughter Oriana to the Romans, and the great misfortunes and cruel deaths that resulted from it; which prophecy, in order not to recall to your memory at a time when one ought to be having so much enjoyment an event from which you may have distress and annoyance, I leave for those who wish to see it, in the second Book; by means of it they will see clearly that all the things that have happened are there contained and said by me beforehand. Now that I have told you of past events, I want you to know the present, of which you have no knowledge."

Then she took by their hands the handsome pages Talanque and Maneli the Moderate — for such was the latter's name — and said to Don Galaor and King Cildadan: "My good friends, if you have received from me any vital services and help, I declare myself satisfied with the reward that I have; for it will be sufficient glory for me, since I myself am sterile, to have been the cause of there having been born of other women such handsome youths as here you see that I have; for without any doubt you can believe if God permits them to reach the age of eligibility for knighthood and to obtain the same, they will perform such deeds in His service and in upholding truth and virtue that not only those who against the command of Holy Church engendered them, and I who caused it, will be pardoned, but their merits and

deserts will be so augmented that, not only in this world but also afterwards in the other, they will obtain great repose and I even more; and because the deeds that will be accomplished by these youths, no matter how much I might say, I would not finish describing, I leave them for the proper time, which will not be long delayed, in view of the ages of the protagonists."

Then she said to Esplandian: "You, very handsome and fortunate young Esplandian, who were engendered in love's fierce fire by those from whom you have inherited a very large share of it — without their losing a single bit — which your tender and unsophisticated age at present holds concealed, take this youth Talanque, son of Don Galaor, and this Maneli the Moderate, son of King Cildadan, and love them both equally; for although on their account you will be involved in many dangerous confrontations, they will aid you in others, in which no one else would be capable of doing so. And this great Serpent that brought me here I leave for you, and in it you will be dubbed a knight and provided with that horse and those arms that it holds hidden and enclosed within itself, with other and strange things that at the time your knighting is accomplished will be made manifest to you. This Serpent will be a guide in the first affair in which your strong heart will give an indication of its great excellence; this Serpent amid tremendous storms and mishaps, without any danger will carry you and many others of your eminent lineage over the broad ocean, where with great dangers and travail you will repay the Lord of the world for some of the great favors that you have received from Him; and in many places you will be known only as the Knight of the Great Serpent, and thus you will travel for many long days without having repose; for, besides the dangerous encounters that will take place because of you, your spirit will be placed in complete affliction and great anxiety by that lady by whom the seven fiery red letters on your left side will be read and understood. And that great fire and ardor which will never be quenched until the large flocks of cormorants pass from the east over the rough waves of the sea, and place in such dire straits the great eagle that it does not dare to take refuge even in its narrow eyrie; and the haughty stone falcon, more precious and beautiful than all the other birds of prey, joins with many others of its lineage and other birds that

are not, comes to its aid and wreaks such destruction on the cormorants that that entire countryside is covered with their plumage and many of them perish in the clutches of their very sharp claws, and others are drowned in the water, overtaken by the strong stone falcon and his cohorts. Then the great sea-eagle will draw out most of their entrails, and will put them in the sharp claws of its ally, with which the former will cause it to lose and to cease to have that ravenous hunger that has held it quite tormented for a long time; and by making it the possessor of all its forests and great mountainous regions it will be brought back to its perch in the tree of the holy garden. At this time this great Serpent, there being fulfilled for it the hour set by my extensive learning, in the presence of everyone will be swallowed up by the mighty ocean, as a notice to you that it is more fitting for you to spend the rest of your life on dry land than on the uncertain sea."

Having said this, she said to the kings and knights: "My good lords, I have to go elsewhere on an unavoidable journey, but at the time that Esplandian will be ready to receive knighthood, as will all these young squires who together with him will receive it, I know very well that at that time, by a circumstance that is hidden from you there will be here assembled many of you who are now present; and at that time I shall come, and in my presence will be held that great festival for the novice knights, and I shall tell you many of the great and marvelous things that will come about later. And I admonish you all that no one should make bold to approach the Serpent until I return; if anyone does, everyone in the world will not suffice to keep him from losing his life. And because you, my lord Amadis, hold here a prisoner that evil man of wicked deeds, Arcalaus — who is called the Enchanter, and with his evil knowledge which has always been used to harm others, might be able to injure you — take these two rings, one will be yours and the other Oriana's, for as long as you wear them on your hands, nothing that is done by him can injure you or any one else of your court, nor will his enchantments have any effect while you hold him prisoner. And I tell you not to kill him — because by dying he would not compensate in any way for the evil deeds done by him — but to place him in an iron cage, where everybody may see him, and

there let him die many times over; for much more painful is the death that leaves the person alive, than the one whereby he dies and passes away completely."

Then to Amadis and Oriana she gave the rings, which were the most splendid and rarest that ever had been seen. Amadis said to her: "My lady, what can I do that might be to your liking, in payment for so many honors and favors that I am receiving from you?"

"Not anything," said she; "because for all that I have done and may do from now on, you repaid me at the time that I was not able to take advantage of my knowledge, and you restored to me that very handsome knight, who is what I love most in the world — although his feeling for me is the opposite — when by force of arms you defeated the four knights in the castle of the Causeway, where they were keeping him from me by holding him prisoner; and you defeated the lord of the castle at the time that you made your brother Don Galaor a knight. And just as with that great benefaction, this life of mine, which could not be endured without him, was restored, so will it be devoted, during all the days that the very powerful Lord leaves it in this world, to matters pertaining to your advancement."

Then she gave orders that her palfrey be brought, and all those lords escorted her to the seacoast, where she found her dwarfs and boat. Then having bade them all farewell, she got into that boat and they watched her return to the Great Serpent; and at once the smoke was so black that for more than four days nothing enveloped in it could be seen; but at the end of that time it was removed from their view, and they saw the Serpent as before. They did not find out what had become of Urganda.

This leave-taking over, those lords returned to the island to resume their games and great merrymaking attendant upon those weddings. Finally, all matters having been settled, the emperor asked Amadis for permission to leave, because, if it was acceptable to him, he wanted to return with his wife to his own land to reorganize that great sovereignty which by God's will Amadis had given him, and he asked that Don Florestan, King of Sardinia, go with him; and he said that at once he would hand over to him the entire seigniory of Calabria, as Amadis had recommended to him, and that everything else he would

divide with him as with a true brother, which he did; for after this Arquisil, Emperor of Rome, arrived in his great empire, he was received by everyone very affectionately, and he always had in his company that vigorous and valiant knight Don Florestan, King of Sardinia and prince of Calabria, by whom both he himself and the whole empire were benefited and honored, as subsequently we shall relate to you.

Having bade farewell to Amadis, this emperor, after pledging himself and his realm to carry out his wishes and commands, taking with him his wife, whom he loved more than himself, and that very noble and courageous knight Florestan, whom he regarded as a brother, and the very beautiful Queen Sardamira, and bringing along the body of the Emperor Patin and that of the very brave knight Don Floyan — which were in the monastery of Lubayna, having been placed there by command of King Lisuarte — and that of Prince Salustanquidio (which at the time that Amadis and his companions had brought Oriana there to the Firm Island he had ordered placed in a chapel very honorably so that in his own land he might be given the interment befitting his high estate); and together with all the Romans who had been taken prisoner on the Firm Island, they all having embarked on the ships of the great fleet that the Emperor Patin had left in the harbor of Windsor, which he had ordered brought from there, he returned to his empire.

All the other kings and lords made preparation to depart for their own lands. But before their departure they decided to plan how those knights who were to go and conquer the domain of Sansuenia and that of King Arabigo and the Deep Island might proceed with such safeguards as to enable them without any opposition to accomplish what was essential.

Amadis spoke with King Lisuarte, telling him that he thought, in view of the length of time that he had been away from his land, that he might be experiencing some anxiety; and if so, he asked as a favor that he not delay any longer on his account. The king said to him that on the contrary he had taken his ease there with great enjoyment, though now it was time to do as he said; but that if his help were needed by those knights for what they were undertaking, he would willingly give it to them. Amadis thanked him very much and said that since the original

lords were held prisoners, no more reinforcements would be needed than the troops that were remaining there with King Perion, their lord; and that in case Lisuarte's aid was necessary he would take it as from a lord whom they all were to serve, and that conquest was being undertaken to that end. The king told him that since that was his opinion, he planned to leave at once. But first, he had all those lords and ladies assembled together in the great hall, because he wanted to talk to them. Then all being assembled, King Lisuarte said to King Cildadan: "Your great loyalty, which during past events has extricated me from many dangers and has saved me much anguish — that loyalty torments and afflicts me, because I don't know how to determine a way to reward it; and if I were to give a reward commensurate with what its great merit deserves, it would be useless to search for it, since it could not be found. And coming to what is in my hands as a possibility, I say that just as your noble person for the sake of what pertained to serving me has been involved in many dangerous situations, so my own person with everything in its power will be ready with complete willingness to carry out everything that may enhance your honor, by freeing you from this day forth from the vassalage in which your contrary fortune placed you under my overlordship, so that what up to now has been done under compulsion, be from now on, if it be your pleasure, accomplished willingly as between good brothers."

King Cildadan said to him: "Whether one ought to be grateful for this or not, I leave to those to judge, who on account of some compulsion, have had reason to follow another's will rather than their own, where anxiety and sighs always accompany them. And you may, my lord, believe that the willingness that until now you commanded by force and with dislike on my part, from now on with love and more soldiers and more obedience and respect will follow you in whatever matters be most to your liking; and let this await a time when it can be demonstrated by your experiencing it."

All those great lords considered very virtuous what King Lisuarte did, and many praised him highly for it; but none so highly as did Don Cuadragante, who always had been exclusively concerned with how that shame and very great misfortune

that was weighing upon that kingdom — of which he was a native, and had been formerly greatly honored and elevated above all others — might be rid of that very great and dishonorable servitude. King Lisuarte asked King Cildadan what he desired to do, because he himself planned to return to his own land. He replied that, if it was agreeable to him, he would remain there in order to make plans for his uncle Don Cuadragante's expedition to win the seigniory of Sansuenia, and even, if it were necessary, he would go with him. The king told him that his decision was well taken and that he was pleased to have him do so, and that if any of his own forces were needed, he would send them to him immediately. He thanked him heartily for the offer, and said that he really thought those that they would be able to send from there would suffice, since Barsinan was imprisoned.

Thereupon King Lisuarte and his company departed. Amadis and Oriana went with him, although he did not wish it, for nearly a day's journey; from which they returned to plan the matter about which you have heard, which was settled in this fashion: inasmuch as the kingdom of King Arabigo bordered on the seigniory of Sansuenia, that Don Cuadragante and Don Bruneo should go together and immediately at the outset should seize what might be most expugnable by reason of being weakest; and that the rest would be easier to conquer.

And Don Galaor said that he wanted to go, and that his cousin Dragonis should go with him, since in only a short while he would be able to take up arms; for he, with all the resources he might be able to muster in his own kingdom, intended to help him conquer that Deep Island. And Don Galvanes told him that he also wanted to go on that same expedition, and that he would be able to bring a good force for it from the Island of Mongaza.

With this agreement Don Galaor left with that very beautiful queen Briolanja, his wife, and Dragonis with them; and Don Galvanes and Madasima departed for their own land in order to make ready as quickly as they could for that journey.

Agrajes, although he was earnestly entreated to remain on the Firm Island with Amadis, did not wish to do so; instead he said that he would accompany Don Bruneo with the troops of the king his father, and that he would not depart from him

until he left him king and his realm in peace, and so said Don Brian de Monjaste to Don Cuadragante; and all the other knights who were there made similar statements, especially the good and vigorous Angriote of Estravaus; for no matter what reasons Amadis set forth to him as to why he should go take his ease in his own land, he was never able to dissuade him from going with Don Bruneo de Bonamar.

All these, with fresh arms and armor, and valiant hearts, taking with them the troops from Spain, those from Seotland and from Ireland, and from the Marquis of Troque, father of Don Bruneo, those from Gaul, and those of the King of Bohemia, and many other companies that came there from other regions, embarked in a large fleet, all having earnestly implored Grasandor to remain with Amadis in order to keep him eompany, henee the former stayed behind mueh against his will, for he would have preferred to make that journey. But he did not stay here in vain, nor Amadis either, for frequently they sallied forth and aecomplished great deeds at arms, righting many wrongs and injuries that were done to matrons and maidens and other persons who with their own hands or faeilities were unable to defend themselves, and by whom they were sought out, just as the story will relate to you subsequently.

King Cildadan, as he loved Don Cuadragante very mueh, besought him as insistently as he eould to be allowed to aeeompany him; but he would in nowise consent to it; instead he begged him out of regard for him to go at onee to his kingdom, in order to eheer and eonsole the queen, his wife, and all his men with the good news he was bringing which he could very well tell: namely, that if by doing punetiliously his duty, he had lost his liberty, by maintaining his honor and fulfilling that to whieh he was obligated under the promise he had made and the oath he had taken, he had regained it.

Gastiles, nephew of the Emperor of Constantinople, had sent all his troops with Marquis Saluder, and he remained behind to see how that whole business came out, s that he might be able to tell the emperor his lord the whole story. And when he saw what was being done, he spoke with Amadis and told him that he was very sorry not to have troops at his disposal to help those knights on such a military expedition, but that if Amadis

thought it a good idea he would go in person with some of those men who had remained with him. Amadis said to him: "My lord, what has been done ought to suffice, for because of your uncle and you I am afforded all the honor you see, and may it please God through His mercy to bring me to a time when I may render services to him in payment thereof. And you, my lord, leave at once, and kiss his hands for me, and tell him that all that was won in this past affair, he won; and that it will always be at his service and at that of whomsoever he may designate. And also I enjoin you to kiss the hands for me of very beautiful Leonorina and Queen Menoresa, and tell them I shall fulfill what I promised them, and I shall send them a knight of my family, by whom they will be enabled to be very well served."

"That I well believe," said Gastiles, "for there are so many of them in it that they would suffice for the whole world."

Whereupon he took his leave and boarded his ship, whence for the present no more will be told about him until the proper time.

What you have heard having been agreed upon and made ready, the grand fleet went out to sea from the harbor with all those knights imbued with that same courage that their great hearts were accustomed to give them in other dangerous confrontations. Amadis remained on the Firm Island and Grasandor with him, as has been told; and with Oriana there remained Mabilia and Melicia, and Olinda and Grasinda, praying God to help their husbands. King Perion and Queen Elisena, his wife, returned to Gaul. Esplandian and the King of Dacia and the other youths stayed with Amadis, waiting for the time for them to become knights, and for Urganda the Unknown, who was to arrange for the ceremony, as she had promised and stated.

But now the story ceases to speak of those knights who were going to conquer those seigniories, and of all the other matters, in order to relate what happened to Amadis after he had been there for some time.

CHAPTER CXXVII

How amadis departed alone with the matron who had come by sea, in order to avenge the death of the dead knight whom she was bringing on the ship, and what happened to amadis on that quest.

Just as you have heard, Amadis remained on the Firm Island with his lady Oriana in the greatest delight and pleasure that ever a knight enjoyed and from which he would not have wished to be separated, were he to be made lord of the world; for just as when he was absent from his lady the cares and sorrows and anxieties of his impassioned heart were wont to torment him to the maximum degree without his finding anywhere relief or respite, so everything was reversed to the maximum when he was in her presence and beholding that great beauty of hers, which had no equal; and thus all past events left his memory, for he had no thought of anything but that fortunate situation in which he found himself at the moment. But as in the perishable things of this world there can be no happy ending, since God has not sought to provide any — for when we here think we have reached the goal of our desires, immediately and forthwith we are tormented by others as great or perchance greater — after some time, Amadis, on coming to his senses and recognizing that now unopposed he had all that for his very own, began to remember his past life, how greatly to his honor and glory up to that time he had pursued a career at arms and how, if he continued for long to lead a life of domesticity, his fame could be obscured and discredited, and was thereby greatly distressed, not knowing what to do with himself. And sometimes he

mentioned it very humbly to Oriana, his lady, begging her quite earnestly to give him permission to leave there and go somewhere where he believed his help would be needed; but she, since she saw herself in that island away from her father and mother and from all her kind, and not having any other consolation or company except him to satisfy her loneliness, was never willing to grant him his request; instead with many tears she always begged him to rest his body from the travail that until then he had undergone, likewise telling him to remember that those friends of his had gone at such grave danger to themselves and their troops as might befall them in order to acquire those dominions, and if they should suffer there some reverses, that by staying there he would be much better able to go to their aid than from elsewhere — with all this and with many attempts at amorous persuasion striving to detain him. But as you have been told many times in this great story that the innermost being of this knight from his childhood on had been ablaze with that great fire of love that came to him from the first day that he began to love her, and there was coupled with this the great fear of angering her in any way or of disobeying her commands, at whatever cost to himself, with very little pressure, although his desire underwent great anguish, he was kept at home.

So now determined to do his lady's bidding, he decided with Grasandor, that while they were awaiting some news of the fleet they would go forth to scour the woods and engage in hunting in order to give their bodies some exercise — a project which was organized immediately, and with their beaters and dogs they left the island; for as you have been told in this Book, there were nearby better wooded areas and river valleys full of bear and wild pigs and deer, and many other animals, and river fowl, than could be found in any other such region. And they bagged much of it all, with which at night they — both men and women — went back to the island well content, and they led this life for some length of time.

So then it happened that Amadis, being one day among beaters on a hillside near the seashore, waiting for some wild boar or beast of prey, and holding by the leash a very beautiful dog of which he was quite fond, looked toward the sea and saw from afar off a boat coming toward where he was. And when it was

nearer, he saw in it a matron and a man who was rowing it; and because it seemed to him that it must be something unusual, he left the beaters where they were, and went down the hill with his dog, passing through the thick undergrowth without any of his company seeing him. And on reaching the shore, he found that that matron and that man who came with her were dragging out of the boat a dead knight, completely armor-clad; and they laid him on the ground with his shield beside him. Amadis, when he came up to them, said: "Lady, who is that knight and who killed him?"

The matron turned her head, and although she saw him in hunting clothes such as knights were accustomed to wear on such expeditions, and alone, she recognized at once that it was Amadis, and began to tear her headdress and clothes, making very great lamentations and saying: "Oh, lord Amadis of Gaul, on account of what you owe to chivalry help this sad, unfortunate woman, and because these hands of mine took you from the belly of your mother and fashioned the ark in which you were cast into the ocean; for you were born to rescue and help the distressed and persecuted of this world in such affliction as that which has overtaken me!"

Amadis felt very sorry for the matron, and when he heard those words, he looked at her more carefully than before, and immediately comprehended that it was Darioleta, the woman who was with the queen his mother at the time that he was engendered and born; whereupon his sorrow was greatly increased. And he came up to her and removing her hands from her hair, most of which was white, he asked her why it was that she was weeping and tearing her hair so violently, saying that she should tell him about it at once, and that he would not fail to risk his life in order to repair her great loss. The matron, when she heard this, knelt before him and sought to kiss his hands, but he would not give them to her; and she said to him: "Then, sir, it is emergent that without going anywhere else where you might be hindered, you enter this boat with me at once, and I shall guide you to where my distress can be remedied; and on the way I shall relate to you my misfortune."

Amadis, as he saw her so grieved and under such great stress of emotion, thought that the matron had indeed suffered some

grave affront. And as he saw himself unarmed, exeept only for his very good sword, and realized that if he should send for his arms and armor, Oriana would prevent him from going with the matron, he decided to arm himself with the dead knight's armor. And so he did, for he gave orders to that man to disarm the corpse and arm him, which was done immediately. And taking the matron with him, and the man who was rowing, he quickly entered the boat. And as they were about to leave the shore, by chance there approached one of those beaters of his company, who was in pursuit of a wounded deer that was seeking shelter there where the underbrush was very thick. This man, when Amadis saw him, he summoned and said to him: "Tell Grasandor that I am going with this lady, who just now has landed here, and that I beg his indulgence; for her terrible loss and her emergent situation prevent me from being able to speak to him or see him; and that I beg him to have this knight buried and to persuade my lady Oriana to forgive me, for I am making this voyage without her mandate; May she believe that I have not been able to do otherwise without incurring great disgrace."

And this having been said, the boat left the shore at top speed, and they traveled all that day and night back over the route the lady had followed to come there. Meanwhile Amadis asked the lady to tell him the predicament and danger in which she found herself and on account of which his help was so badly needed. She, weeping very bitterly, said to him: "My lord, you shall know that at the time the queen your mother left Gaul to go to this island of yours to your wedding and those of your brothers, to my husband and me in Little Brittany, where we were governors by her command, she dispatched a messenger by whom she sent word in a letter that after reading it we should follow them to the Firm Island, because it was not right that she should participate in sueh festivities without us; and her great nobility, and the great love that she has for us, rather than our own merit were the cause of this. So having this command, at once my husband and that ill-fated son of mine whom we left baek there dead, and whose armor you are wearing, and I myself, put out to sea in quite a large vessel with a goodly company of people to serve us. And after traveling with favorable weather, through our bad luck it changed to such an extent that it caused

us to deviate quite a distance from the course that we were pursuing, bringing us one night after two months and many dangers that overtook us because of that terrible storm, blown by the great force of the wind, to the Island of the Vermilion Tower, of which the giant called Balan — fiercer and stronger than any giant of all the islands — is the ruler. And as we reached the harbor, not knowing where we had arrived, as soon as we had stopped for a bit to take shelter there in that port, then in that hour people of the island in other boats immediately surrounded us so that we were all taken prisoners and held there until morning, when they took us to the giant; who when he saw us, asked if any knight was among us. My husband told him that he himself was, and also the other man, his son, who was beside him."

" 'Then' said the giant, 'it is necessary that you conform to the custom of the island.'

" 'And what is the custom?' said my husband.

" 'That you are to fight with me one at a time,' said the giant, 'and if either one of you can defend yourself for one hour, you and all your company will be free; and if you are overcome within that hour, you will be my prisoners; but you will be left with some hope for your well-being if as good men you exert yourself to the utmost. However, if perchance your cowardice be so great that it does not allow you to risk involving yourself in combat, you will be put into harsh confinement in a dungeon where you will undergo great anguish in payment for having embraced the order of chivalry while valuing life more than honor or the oath you took in order to receive knighthood. Now I have explained to you completely what is upheld here; choose what is most agreeable to you.'

"My husband said: 'We wish the battle; for in vain would we be bearing arms if through fear of some danger we should fail to do with them that for which they have been instituted. But what security shall we have, if we should be victors, that the law you mention will be observed?'

" 'There is no other,' said the giant, 'except my word, which, come what may, never with my consent will be broken; rather I would permit my own body to be broken, and to this I have

made a son of mine, whom I have here, swear, and likewise all my servants and vassals.'

" 'In the name of God' said my husband, 'have my arms and my horse given to me and also my son's to him; and prepare yourself for the combat.'

" 'That,' said the giant, 'will be done at once.'

"Then they and the giant were accordingly armed and placed on horseback in a great square which was situated in front of the gate to the castle — a well-fortified stronghold — and was bordered by rock formations. Then that luckless son of mine begged his father so insistently that he unwillingly granted him the first joust; in which he was charged so violently by the giant that both he and his horse were overthrown so mercilessly that both simultaneously lost their lives. My husband went at him and struck his shield, but it was just like attacking a tower. And the giant came up to him, and seized him so forcibly by an arm, that although he is possessed of plenty of strength for his size and age, he hurled him out of his saddle as if he were a child. Having done this, he gave orders to leave my dead son on the field, and he had my husband and me, and a daughter of ours, whom we were bringing along to serve as an attendant for your sister Melicia, taken up to the fortress, and he ordered our retainers put into a dungeon. When I saw this, I began like a woman out of her senses — for so I was at the time — to shout very loudly and say: " 'Oh, King Perion of Gaul! Would that you or one of your sons were here now, for with your aid or that of any one of them, I certainly think I would escape from this great tribulation!'

"When the giant heard this, he said: 'What acquaintance do you have with that king? Is he by chance the father of a man named Amadis of Gaul?'

" 'Yes, indeed,' said I, 'and if any of them were here, you would not be capable of doing me any harm; for they would help me, a woman who has spent her whole life in their service.'

" 'Well, if you have so much confidence in them,' said he, 'I shall give you the opportunity to call whichever one you like, and it would please me most if it were Amadis, who is so highly esteemed in the world, because he killed my father Mandanfabul in the battle between King Cildadan and King Lisuarte, when

my father was carrying this same King Lisuarte under his arm, having pulled him out of his saddle, and was going with him to the ships. And this Amadis, who at the time was called Beltenebros, pursued him, and although in defense of his lord and of those on his side he was able to strike in safety without my father's seeing him, it ought not to be accounted a great effort or act of valor on his part or great dishonor for my father. And if of this person who is so renowned and whom you have served so well, you wish to avail yourself, take that boat with a sailor that I shall give you to guide you, and seek him; and in order that his anger and desire to avenge you may be enkindled take that knight your son armed and dead as he is; and if Amadis esteems you as you think, and is as courageous as everyone says, on seeing your great grief, he will not fail to come.'

"When I heard this, I said to him: 'If I do as you say, and bring that knight to this island of yours, how will he be certain that you will keep faith with him?'

" 'About that,' said he, 'don't worry, nor should he; for although I may have other traits that are evil and stem from pride, this I have upheld and shall uphold all the days of my life: namely, that I would rather die than go back on my word concerning anything that I promise; which word I now give you for any knight who comes with you — and much more emphatically if it be Amadis of Gaul — that he may have nothing to fear except at my pleasure from my person alone.'

"So I, sir, in view of what the giant said to me and seeing my son dead, and my husband and lord, and my daughter taken prisoners along with our entire company, have dared to come in this manner, trusting in our Lord and in your good fortune, and in the fact that the cruelty of that devil is so opposed to His service that He will give me vengeance on that traitor with great glory to you."

Amadis, when he heard this, was very sorry about the misfortune of the matron, who was greatly esteemed by his father King Perion and by the queen his mother and by all of them, and regarded as one of the good matrons of her rank to be found anywhere. And furthermore he considered that confrontation a dangerous one, not only because of the risk involved in the battle — although it would be great in view of the renown of that

Balan — but also on account of entering his island and mingling with people with whom he would have to exercise utmost tact. But putting his problems entirely into the hands of that Lord who holds authority over everyone, and having great pity for that matron and her husband, for she never stopped weeping, putting behind him all fear, with very great courage he continued to console her and to tell her that very quickly her loss would be compensated for and avenged, if God approved of its being accomplished by him.

So just as you hear, they traveled two days and one night, and on the third day they saw on their left a small island with a castle that seemed very tall. Amadis asked the sailor if he knew whose island that was. He told him that he did, that it was King Cildadan's, and that it was called Princess Island.

"Now guide us there," said Amadis, "so that we may take on some provisions, for we do not know what may happen."

Then he turned the boat about, and in a short while they reached the island. And when they were at the foot of the rocky hill they saw a knight coming down its slope; and when he came up to them, he greeted them, and they, him. Amadis said to him: "I am a knight from the Firm Island, and I come to obtain justice for this lady, if it be God's will, for a wrong and an injury that beyond here on another island she received."

"On what island was it?" said the knight.

"On the Island of the Vermilion Tower," said Amadis.

"And who did her that wrong?" said the knight.

Amadis said: "Balan the Giant, who they say is lord of that island."

"Then what amends can you render her by yourself?"

"Fighting with him," said Amadis, "and putting a stop to the injury he has done this matron and many other people who have not deserved it from him."

The knight began to laugh, as if in scorn, and said: "Sir Knight of the Firm Island, do not let such great madness enter your heart so willingly as to seek out that man from whom everyone flees; for if the lord of that island from which you come, who is Amadis of Gaul, and his two brothers, Don Galaor and Don Florestan — who today are the flower and stem of all the knights in the world — should all three come to fight with this

Balan, it would be considered great madness on their part by those who know him. Therefore I advise you to give up this journey, because I would greatly regret that any harm and injury should come to you, for I am a knight and a friend of those whom my lord King Cildadan loves and esteems so highly; for I have been told that he and King Lisuarte are now reconciled with Amadis, and I do not know just how, merely that I am assured that they have finally achieved great love and harmony. So if you pursue what you have begun, it means only that knowingly you are proceeding to your death."

Amadis said to him: "Death or life are in God's hands, and those who wish to be praised above all others have to involve themselves in, and undertake dangerous enterprises, including those that others do not dare to undertake; and this I do not say because of considering myself such as they, but because I wish to be so. And for this reason I beg you, sir knight, not to infuse more fear in me than I already have, which is no little; and if you please, out of courtesy to aid me with some food we might use to advantage, if the opportunity presents itself."

"This I will gladly do," said the knight of the island; "and I will do more; for in order to see such a rare event, I wish to keep you company until your adventure, good or bad, takes place with that fierce giant."

CHAPTER CXXVIII

How Amadis went with the matron to the island of the giant called Balan, and the knight who was governor of Princess Island accompanied him.

That knight of whom the story tells gave orders to bring as much food as he saw was needed, and unarmed as he was, he entered a boat with men to show him the way. And they departed from that harbor together for Balan's island; and while they were proceeding over the sea, the knight asked Amadis if he knew King Cildadan. Amadis said that he did, that he had seen him and his great knightly exploits many times in the battles that King Lisuarte had with Amadis, and that he could truly say of him that he was one of the valiant and good kings of the world.

"Certainly," said the knight of Princess Island, "he is, except that contrary Fortune has been more adverse to him than to any other man in the world amounting to so much, by putting him under the domination and vassalage of King Lisuarte, for such a king as Cildadan was destined more to command and be master than to be a vassal."

"Now he is free of that tribute," said Amadis, "for the great strength of his heart and the valor of his person have removed from his high estate that stigma which was not his fault."

"How do you know about that, knight?"

"Sir," said he, "I know about it because I saw it."

Then he told him what King Lisuarte had done in releasing him, just as this Book has related it. The knight, when he heard this, knelt in the boat and said: "Lord God, may thou be praised

for ever and ever for having been willing to give that king what his great virtue and nobility deserved."

Amadis said to him: "Good sir, are you acquainted with this Balan?"

"Very well," said he.

"I earnestly beg of you, if you please, inasmuch as there is no need to talk about anything else, to tell me what you know, especially what one ought to know about him personally."

"I will do so," said the knight, "and perchance you would not find anyone else who can tell you about him in such full detail. Know you that this Balan is the son of the fierce Madanfabul, that giant whom Amadis of Gaul killed when he called himself Beltenebros, in the battle of one hundred against one hundred that King Cildadan had with King Lisuarte, in which there died many other giants and strong knights of his lineage who throughout this region had many islands of very great value, and who, out of the great love and affection they had for my lord King Cildadan, chose to be in his service, in which nearly all of them perished. And this Balan about whom you ask me was quite youthful when his father died, and he inherited this island which is in all respects the most productive, both in fruits of all kinds and in all the most prized and highly valued spices in the world. And for this reason there are on it many merchants and numerous other people who safely come to it, and from whom there accrue very handsome profits to the giant. And I tell you that since this man became a knight he has shown himself stronger than his father in complete valor and strength; and his nature and manner about which you wish to find out, is very different from, and contrary to, that of the other giants, who by nature are arrogant and boastful, whereas this giant is not; instead, very calm and very truthful in all his affairs — so much so that it is a wonder that a man of such lineage can be so different in nature from the others. And everybody thinks that in this he takes after his mother, who is a sister of the fierce giantess Gromadaza, widow of Famongomadan, he of the Boiling Lake — I do not know if you have heard this — and just as this giantess has surpassed Gromadaza in very great beauty, as well as many others who in their time were beautiful, so she has been very different in all other aspects of excellence; for the other giantess

was very fierce and excessively ill-tempered, whereas this one is quite gentle and devoted to complete virtue and humility. And this must bring it about that just as women who are ugly, appearing more virile than feminine, usually acquire that arrogance and manly rudeness of manner which is consistent with their natures; so beautiful ones, who are endowed with natures suitable for women, are the opposite; their nature being in conformity with a delicate voice, soft, smooth skin, and great beauty of countenance — qualities which put a woman at ease and to a large degree deflect her from aggressiveness, just as is the case with this giantess, the wife of Madanfabul and mother of this Balan; from which fact derives that mildness and poise of this son of hers. Her name is Madasima, and because of her, this same name was given to a very beautiful daughter left by Famongomadan, who married a knight named Don Galvanes, a man of equally high rank, and all who know her say that she also has a very noble nature and is very gentle with everyone. Now I want to explain to you how I know about all this that I am telling, and much more, on the subject of these giants. Know you that I have been governor of that Princess Island, where you met me, since the time that King Cildadan was a prince who held it as a fief without having any other inheritance. And more because of his courage and good ways than on account of his rank, King Abies sent word across the whole kingdom of Ireland in order to unite Cildadan in marriage with his daughter, and he inherited that kingdom at the time that Amadis of Gaul killed King Abies; and he continued to leave me in this governorship that I have. And as I am here among these people, and they all have great affection for my lord the king, I have many dealings with them, and I know that the sons of those giants who died in that battle that I mentioned to you, who are now men, have a great desire to avenge the deaths of their parents and relatives, were they to see an opportunity to do so."

Amadis, who was listening to this speech, said to him: "Good sir, I have derived great pleasure from what you have told me. I am disturbed only about the very good nature of this man whom I go seeking out; for it would please me more if he were completely the opposite with great ferocity and arrogance, because God's wrath and punishment are not slow in overtaking such as

he, and I do not want to deny that I am more afraid than before. But however that may be, I shall not fail to obtain amends for this matron, if I can, for the great harm and injustice that she has received undeservedly; and this much I want to find out from you: whether this Balan is married."

The knight of the island told him that he was.

"And to a daughter of a giant named Gandalac, lord of the Rock of Galtares, by whom he has a son some fifteen years of age, who if he lives, will be the heir to that seigniory."

When Amadis heard this, he was even more disturbed and regretted very much having learned it because of the great love that he had for Gandalac and the sons of the latter, who was the foster father of his brother Galaor. He considered that all Galaor's concerns were to be protected the same as his very own. And he said to the knight: "You have told me things that cause me to have more misgivings than ever."

And this was because of what he told him about Gandalac. The knight suspected that his misgivings were out of fear of the battle, but that was not so; for even if it were to be with his very own brother Don Galaor, whom he would fear more than the giant, he would in nowise leave it without obtaining justice and redress for that matron or losing his life; because it always was his custom to help anyone who rightfully asked him for aid.

So talking thus about this matter that you have heard and many other things, they traveled all that day and night. And next day at the hour of tierce they saw the Island of the Vermilion Tower, which gave them much pleasure, and they went on until they drew near it. Amadis gazed at it, and it seemed to him very beautiful — the land with its heavily wooded hills, and what he could perceive at a distance, such as the situation of the fortress with its very beautiful fortified towers, especially the one that was called the Vermilion Tower, which was the largest and made of the rarest stone to be found in the world. And in some histories one reads that at the beginning of the populating of that island the first builder of the tower and of most of the rest of that great fortress was Joseph, the son of Joseph of Arimathea, who brought the Holy Grail to Great Britain; and because at the time most of that land was in the possession of pagans, he on seeing the situation of that island, populated it with Christians, and built

that great tower where he and all of his men defended themselves when they saw themselves in any predicament. Afterwards, in due course it was ruled by the giants until it came down to this Balan, but the population always remained Christian, as it was now; the Christians lived there quite put upon and oppressed by their lords, because most of the latter embraced the pagan sect. But the Christians put up with it and tolerated it because of the immense wealth of the land; and if at any period they had some relief, it was only in Balan's time, on account of the good attitude that he maintained towards them and because of love for his father; for he came closer to adhering to the precepts of Jesus Christ than any of the others; and even much more so later on, as the story will relate.

Then having arrived there, Amadis said to the knight of Princess Island: "My good lord, if you please, since you are acquainted with this Balan, as a courtesy go to him and tell him that the matron whose son he killed and whose husband he took prisoner brings with her a knight from the Firm Island to seek redress from him for the injury that he has done her, and if he does not grant it, to fight with him and force him to grant it to her satisfaction. And secure from him a pledge that the knight will be safe from everyone save him alone, however well or badly it may turn out for him."

The knight said to him: "I am very happy to do so, and you can be certain that the promise that he gives will have no other stipulation."

Then the knight with his men entered his boat and went on to the port, and Amadis remained somewhat secluded with his matron.

Then when that knight arrived, he was at once recognized by the giant's men and taken before him. He received him affably, for a good many times he had talked to him; and he said to him: "Governor, what do you seek in my land? Tell me, for you already know that I consider you a friend."

The knight said to him: "So I do, and I am very grateful to you for it; but my coming is not with regard to any matter concerning myself, but because of a strange thing that I have witnessed, and this is that a knight from the Firm Island comes

of his own free will to fight with you, and I marvel greatly at his daring to do such a thing."

When the giant heard this he said: "That knight whom you mention, does he bring a matron with him?"

"Yes," said the knight, "indeed he does."

"It is my understanding," said the giant, "that it is probably that Amadis of Gaul who is lauded throughout the world with so much praise and publicity, or else one of his brothers, for in order to bring one of them she left here, and with that purpose I allowed her to go."

Then the knight said: "I do not know who he can be; but I tell you he is a very handsome knight and very well proportioned and fair spoken. I cannot understand whether simplemindedness or great courage has impelled him to this folly. I come to you to ask security for him, so that he may fear for himself only with respect to you."

The giant said to him: "You already know that my word will never willingly be broken; bring him with my assurance of safety, and by coming you will learn at first hand which one of those two motives that you have mentioned applies."

The knight returned to his boat and went back to Amadis. And when the latter heard the reply, without any distrust he came at once to the port and they immediately disembarked from their boats. And Amadis first drew aside that man who had guided the matron on the boat, and said to him: "Friend, I ask of you not to tell anyone my name, for if I have to die here, the fact will come to light; and if I have to be the victor, on that account I shall reward you handsomely."

The sailor promised him not to tell anyone. Then they went up to the castle and found the giant unarmed in that great square facing the gate. And when they arrived, the giant gazed intently at him and said to the matron: "Is this one of King Perion's sons whom you were to bring?"

The matron replied: "This is a knight who will seek satisfaction from you for the injuries that you have done me."

Then Amadis said: "Balan, it is not necessary for you to know who I am; let it suffice that I come to demand that you make amends to this matron for the very great injury you have done her without her having deserved it of you, in killing her son and

seizing her husband together with another child of hers, a daughter. And if you make such amends to her, I shall refrain from having an altercation with you; and if not, prepare yourself for the combat."

The giant said to him laughing: "The greatest amends that I can give you are to release you from your obligation and free you from death; for since you have come with such good will to repair her loss, you must value your own life as highly as hers. And although I am not accustomed to doing this for anyone without his first testing the edge of this sword of mine, I shall do it for you because through ignorance you have come to seek your harm without recognizing it."

"If I feared," said Amadis, "these threats that you make to me as much as you think, it would have been futile for me to seek you out from such a distant land. Do not think, Balan, that I challenge you through ignorance, for I well know that you are one of the most renowned giants in the world. But since I see that the custom that you maintain here is so opposed to the service of the most high Lord, and the right that I support is in accordance with His holy law, I do not esteem your valor very highly, because He will supply what I may lack. And because I hold you in high regard and I esteem you on account of others who esteem you, I beg you to make such amends to this matron as may be just."

When the giant heard this, he said to him: "You make so well your request for what you say that if it were not interpreted to my shame, I would do everything possible to satisfy this lady; but first I wish to test and see what the knights of the Firm Island are like. And because it is already late, I shall send you something to eat, and two very good horses from which you may choose according to your desire, along with two lances; and prepare yourself with all your strength, for you will really need it for the combat three hours from now. And to accommodate you if you should wish other arms, I shall give you better ones; for I think I have plenty from the knights that I have overcome."

Amadis said to him: "You act like a good knight, and the more courtesy I see in you, the more I regret that you do not have any understanding of what you ought to do. I shall take a horse and a lance, but no other armaments aside from those I

bring, for the blood on them from that man whom you have killed so without cause will give me more courage to avenge him."

The giant repaired to the castle without answering him further; and Amadis to his company and the knight of Princess Island, who did not wish to leave him, no matter how much the giant begged him to go with him to the castle. They remained under the arcade of a temple that was at one end of that square, and shortly thereafter food was brought to them. Thus they rested talking on subjects most to their liking while awaiting the appointed hour for the giant to sally forth. That knight repeatedly scrutinized Amadis's face to see whether it was changing color on account of that great danger, and to him he seemed to be with ever-increasing courage, at which he was greatly astonished.

Then the hour set by the giant having come, there were brought to Amadis two very big, beautiful horses with rich trappings for such an activity, and he took the one he preferred. And after looking it over, since it came saddled, he mounted it, put on his helmet and slung his shield from his neck; and having stationed himself in that great square, he ordered the man who had brought him the horses to return and tell the giant that he was waiting for him and not to let the day pass in vain. Most of the people of the island who could come were standing around the square in order to see the combat, and the wall-tops and the windows of the fortress were crowded with matrons and maidens.

And while he was waiting just as you hear, he perceived that in the great Vermilion Tower three trumpets played sweet music very harmoniously, which was the signal that the giant was coming out to do battle. And it was his custom to have this done each time that he was to fight. Amadis asked those who were there what that was. They told him the reason it was done, which seemed to him very good and the act of a great lord; and it came to his mind that when he was on the Firm Island with his lady, if he should have occasion to engage in a combat with anyone who was in quest of one with him, he would give orders for such a procedure to be followed, because in his opinion that music was calculated to increase the courage of the knight for whom it was played. Then, as the trumpets became silent, the gates of the fortress were opened, and the giant came out mounted on the other horse that he had sent to Amadis, and with lance in hand

and armed with armor of steel as bright as a mirror, both the helmet and the shield in proportion, and with armor plate that covered most of his body. And when he saw Amadis he said to him: "Knight of the Firm Island, now that you see me armed, do you dare await me?"

"Now I want you," said he, "to make amends to this matron for the evil deed that you did to her; if not, defend yourself from me."

Then the giant came toward him as fast as his horse could carry him, and he was so big that there was not a knight in the world, however valiant he might be, who would not be greatly frightened by him. And as he was charging very hard and with great eagerness to meet him, he lowered his lance so much in order not to misjudge the blow that he struck the horse of Amadis right in the middle of its forehead and thrust the lance through its head and through its neck for quite a distance; but Amadis, whom neither his size nor his valor disturbed, being a man who already knew what such giants were like, struck him on his large, strong shield such a blow that perforce he knocked the giant out of his saddle, and he fell to the ground, which was quite hard, very violently and was thereby terribly shaken up, and Amadis's horse fell dead to the ground with him. From underneath Amadis extricated himself as quickly as he could, although with great effort, because one of his legs was caught underneath, and as he rose to his feet he saw the giant getting up, who was somewhat dazed, but not so much as to be unable to grasp at once the sword of very strong steel that he was wearing, from which he thought that there was no knight in the world so strong as to dare to await two blows without being crippled or killed.

Amadis grasped his own very good sword, covered himself with his shield and went at him; and the giant likewise came at him with uplifted arm to strike him very heedlessly, not only out of great arrogance but also because the lance thrust that Amadis had given him was right at his heart, and because of having been given with such great force, it had jammed his shield against his chest so violently that his flesh was bruised and the cartilage broken, so that it was causing him great pain and greatly inhibiting his strength and breathing. Amadis, when he saw him coming in such a condition, recognized he was defeated; and he raised

his shield as high as he could to receive on it the blow. And the giant struck so hard, and his sword cut through so easily that from the boss down he cut away a third of the shield, for he did not reach any more of it; so that if he had reached it more completely, in addition Amadis's arm would have gone to the ground along with its possessor. Amadis, who was very experienced in swordsmanship, and from such dangerous situations knew how to extricate himself, not missing or forgetting a thing that he should do, before the giant withdrew his arm, struck him such a blow close to his elbow that although the sleeve of his coat of mail was very strong and of very thick mesh, it could not safeguard him or prevent Amadis's very good sword from slicing through it to the extent of cutting much of the flesh of his arm and one of its bones. That blow was very painful for the giant, and he gave ground somewhat. Amadis went at him immediately, and struck him another blow on top of the helmet with all his strength, so that sparks flew as if it had been set on fire by some other means, and it twisted the helmet around on his head in such fashion that it blocked his vision.

When the knight who was the governor of Princess Island, with whom Amadis had come there, saw the blows that Amadis was striking, not only in the encounter with the lance, in which he had unhorsed a thing as strong and ponderous as that giant was, but also those that he was giving with the sword, he began to make the sign of the cross many times; and he said to the lady whom he had beside him: "Lady, where did you find that devil who performs such feats, the like of which no other living knight has accomplished?"

The matron replied: "If many such devils as this went about the world, there would not be so many people as there are afflicted and humiliated by the haughty and the wicked."

The giant very quickly raised his hands to straighten his helmet, and he sensed that he had lost a great deal of strength in his right arm, so that he could hardly hold the sword in his hand, so he withdrew farther away; but Amadis at once joined with him as before and struck him another heavy blow on the boss of his shield, intending to hit him on the head but being unable to do so; for the giant when he saw the blow coming so hard, raised his shield to receive it, and the sword pierced it

so deep that when Amadis attempted to withdraw it, he couldn't; and the giant intended to strike him, but could only raise his arm very slightly, so that the blow was weak. Then Amadis pulled on the sword as hard as he could, and the giant on the shield, so that with the great strength of both of them, the leather straps that held it around his neck had to break, and Amadis took the shield along with his own sword, which could occasion and invite great danger for the giant, because in no way could he aid himself with it. The giant when he saw it thus, and saw himself without a shield, took his sword in his left hand and began to strike Amadis mighty blows with it; but the latter protected himself with great agility by covering himself with his shield, though not in such a way as to be able to prevent the blows of the giant from cutting through his coat of mail in a few places and reaching his flesh. And it is certain that if the giant had been able to strike with his right hand, Amadis would have found himself in great danger of death; but with the left hand, although the blows were mighty and delivered with great force, they were very erratic, so that most of them missed and were in vain. Amadis, as he sought to raise the sword in order to strike him, lifted with it the shield in which it was imbedded, for he was concerned only with defending himself thus. But when he saw himself encumbered and in such danger, he decided to remedy his situation as quickly as he could and withdrew a little to one side, took his shield off his neck and threw it on the ground between him and the giant. And he put one foot on the giant's shield and with both hands pulled so hard on the sword that he drew it out of the shield.

Meanwhile the giant took in his right hand Amadis's shield, and although it was quite light in weight, he could scarcely lift it or support it with his arm, for the wound was big and beside the elbow joint, and with the amount of blood that he had lost his arm was almost numb, for he could hardly lift it or grip with his hand otherwise than very weakly; and what impeded and distressed him most was the torn flesh, and the broken bones that he had pressing against his heart as a result of the lance-thrust about which you have already heard, a condition which kept him so winded that he could scarcely breathe at all. But as he was very strong as regards driving force and courage, and

saw himself in danger of death, he bore up with great effort; and this was because after Amadis's sword remained thrust in the shield because of the great blow, the latter had never been able to strike or oppose him; but when he drew it out and found himself free of that impediment, he seized by its clasps the giant's shield, which he could hardly lift, because of its size and weight, and went and struck him very heavy blows with all his might, so that the giant was so harassed not only by the pressure that Amadis was putting on him, but also with the haste he made to defend himself and to strike, that he suffered a heart occlusion from the pain he was enduring, and he fell as if dead on the field.

When the men who were watching in the fortress saw this, they shouted very loudly, and the matrons and maidens uttered loud cries, saying: "Dead is our lord; death to the traitor who killed him!"

Amadis, after the giant fell, went to him at once and took off his helmet and put the tip of his sword to his face, and said to him: "Balan, you die, unless you give satisfaction to the matron for the harm that you have done her."

But he did not respond or understand what he said to him, for he was as if dead. Then the knight of Princess Island, who had come there with Amadis, arrived and said: "Sir knight, is the giant dead?"

"I don't think so," said Amadis, "but the great suffocation he suffers keeps him in the state you see, for I do not see evidence on him of any mortal blow."

And he was speaking the truth, for the blow that he had on the breast, which inhibited his breath, he had not seen or perceived.

The knight said: "Sir, I beg you out of courtesy not to kill him until he comes to his senses and has the judgment to make amends to this matron voluntarily; and also because if he should die, no one will be powerful enough to guarantee you life."

"On that account," said Amadis, "I shall not fail to do my will with him; but out of regard for you and on account of the blood relationship that he has with Gandalac, I shall forbear killing him until I find out from him whether he will be willing to agree to what I shall ask of him."

At this juncture, they saw the giant's son coming out of the castle with as many as thirty armed men, and they came saying: "Let him die, let the traitor die!"

When Amadis heard this, you can now understand what hope he would have for his life on seeing them all come brashly to kill him. But he decided not to throw himself on their mercy, and that death should come to him only after he had done everything in his power without being remiss in anything that he ought to do. And he looked all about him and saw a gaping fissure between those rocks with which the square was encircled, for that square had been made there manually by taking away rocks and crags, but all around the outside many of them remained. And he went toward it bearing the giant's shield, which was very big and strong, and he put it at the entrance of that fissure, for he could not be harmed from any direction except from the front, nor from above because an overhang was formed there. Then the people came up, some to the giant to see if he was dead, and others to Amadis. And three men who came forward threw their lances at him, but did not harm him, for as the shield was, as has been told you, very large and strong, it protected most of his torso and his legs, which fact, after God, saved his life. And one of these three came up with his sword in order to strike him; and as Amadis saw him near, he came out at him and struck him such a blow on top of the head that he split it down to his neck and knocked him over dead at his feet.

When the others saw him outside of that shelter, they all came up to kill him; but he returned there immediately, and to the first who came up, he dealt such a blow on the shoulder that his armor was of no advantage to him, for the arm fell to the ground and the man fell dead on the other side. These two blows taught them such a lesson that no one was bold enough to approach him, and they hemmed him in from the front and on the sides, as they could not do so anywhere else; and they were hurling so many lances and darts and stones that almost half of his body was out of sight, but nothing harmed him, for the shield gave him protection from everything.

Meanwhile, they carried the giant to the castle, lamenting loudly, and they placed him on his bed as though dead without

any consciousness; and those who had carried him returned at once to help their companions. And when they came up they saw that no one was approaching Amadis, and that he had the two dead men beside him; and as they arrived fresh and greatly enraged, and did not know about, nor had seen, his very rude blows, they came up to attack him with their lances; but Amadis remained quiet, well protected by his shield, and the one who came ahead and struck a violent blow with his lance on his shield, he struck such a blow that he caused the fellow's head to fly to some distance away, and immediately those men turned away along with the others, for none dared to approach him.

Then while they were thus at a standstill except to hurl many darts and numerous stones at Amadis, the knight of Princess Island felt great compassion on seeing him in this situation; and he indeed thought that if they were to kill him, the best knight who ever bore arms would die; and he went at once to the giant's son, who was unarmed because of his tender age, and said to him: "Bravor, why do you do this against the word and pledge of your father, which never until today has been found to be broken? Have regard for the fact that you are his son and are to resemble him in good qualities. And take into consideration that your father assured his safety from all his men except from himself alone, and that if after this you kill him, never more will it behoove you to appear before honorable men, for always you will be vilified and held in great contempt."

The youth replied: "How can I endure seeing my father dead before me, and not take vengeance on him who did it?"

"Your father," said he, "is not dead, nor does he have a blow from which he should die, for I saw him lying on the ground, and that knight at my request, and because he told me that he esteemed him highly on account of the blood relationship that he had with Gandalac, gave up killing him, for it was in his power to do so."

"Then what shall I do?" said the youth.

"I will tell you," said the knight. "Keep him encircled just as he is all this night, without his receiving any harm; and between now and tomorrow the condition of your father will be determined, and according to how he is, you will make a decision,

for in your hands and according to your will his life or death rests, because he cannot leave here unless you order it."

The youth said to him: "I thank you very much for your advice to me, for if he should die and my father remain alive, it would not be desirable for me to live anywhere in all the world where he might find out about it, because I am indeed certain that he would search for me in order to kill me."

"Since you recognize that," said he, "do what I advise you."

"Let me speak first with my grandmother and with my mother, and let it be done with the benefit of their advice."

"That I consider good," said the knight, "and meanwhile order your men not to do any more than what they have done."

The youth said: "That order will be useless, for according as that knight seems to me to be defending his life, as I see it, except by starvation, in no way can anyone kill him; but on account of what you advise me, I shall do what you tell me."

Then he ordered them to remain there, and without anyone's harming that knight to guard well lest he leave where he was, while he himself went to the castle. All those who were there carried out his order, and he went and talked with those matrons; and although their emotion and sorrow were great, on considering that the knight would not be able to go away, and on seeing that the giant was beginning to recover his breath and some consciousness, and fearing to break his word, they told him to do just as that knight of Princess Island had advised him, an action for which it was a great help when the mother of this youth learned that that knight esteemed her father Gandalac, for she had feared that he was Don Galaor, the one whom her father had reared and who had restored him in the sovereignty of the Rock of Galtares by killing Albadan, the fierce giant, who was keeping it from him by force, as in greater detail the first Book of this story relates. Galaor she knew very well and loved sincerely because they had been reared together. And if it had not been for the fact that her husband was so critically ill that she would have been guilty of great impropriety, she herself in person would have ascertained whether the knight was Don Galaor or one of his brothers, for she had seen them all in the court of King Lisuarte, where she had stayed for some time during the period in which the battle between King Lisuarte and King Cildadan

took place, in which her father and his brothers participated, and they had performed rare deeds at arms in the service of King Lisuarte out of love for Don Galaor, as the second Book of this story relates at greater length.

With this agreement the youth returned at an hour when night had already closed in; and he gave orders to light a big fire in front of where Amadis was, who knew nothing of his agreement; and then he had his men keep vigil while armed, and with good precautions against the knight's coming forth and doing them harm, for he was deathly afraid of him. Amadis remained in that place where previously he had been, with the edge of the shield resting on the ground, holding one hand on its boss and his sword in the other hand, hoping to die rather than to permit himself to be captured; for he certainly thought that since despite the fact of such a pledge of security as he had from Balan, those men had attacked him in an endeavor to kill him, no other pledge that he might be given would be honored; therefore he would not consider asking for mercy even if he knew he might experience death a thousand times over; except asking God for mercy, to whom in every situation he committed himself wholeheartedly, and more than ever in that one, for which he did not have nor did he expect any other help except His.

CHAPTER CXXIX

How darioleta grieved because of the great danger in which amadis was.

Darioleta, the matron who had had Amadis come there, when she saw him thus encircled by all his enemies without having or expecting any help from any source, began to lament grievously and to curse her luck, which had brought her such anguish and sorrow, saying: "Oh wretched unfortunate woman that I am, what will become of me if on my account the best knight ever born should die? How shall I dare appear before his father and mother and brothers, knowing that I was the cause of his death? For if at the time of his birth I endeavored to save his life by making and contriving out of my own knowledge the ark in which he might escape, an action for which I have been rewarded abundantly — for if he had died then, it would have been a fruitless death — now not only have I forfeited past services, but moreover I deserve to die with the greatest sufferings and torments that any person ever had, because while he is the flower or glory of the world I have brought him to death. Oh wretch that I am, because I did not give him at the time that he came to me on the seashore any opportunity to be able to return to the Firm Island and bring some knights to assist him, who at least justifiably might have died in his company! But what can I say except that my heedlessness and rashness were characteristic of womankind?"

Just as you hear, Darioleta was lamenting under the arcades of that temple with very great anguish of heart, and with no other expectation than to see Amadis die very quickly, and herself

and her husband put into a dungeon from which they never would come out.

Amadis was at the edge of that fissure in the rocks, as we have told you, and he saw what the matron was doing, for with the huge fire that was in front of him, the whole square was visible, although it was quite large; and he was greatly perturbed to see her weeping and raising her hands to the heavens as she begged for mercy. Hence his fury increased so greatly that it rendered him beside himself. And he thought that much more danger could befall him when day came than at night, because then most of the people of the island were at rest and he only needed to beware of those whom he had before him; and that when morning came, many more people could attack him, so that he could not escape being killed; and even assuming that they could not harm him there where he was, sleep and hunger would overcome him and he would fall into their hands. And in this frenzy he thought that he would risk everything; and grasping his shield and with sword in hand he prepared to attack his enemies. But the knight of Princess Island, who was worried lest harm come to him, because he had pledged security to him on behalf of the giant and thus had broken his promise to him, was in their midst very much concerned lest the men at arms come at him before the giant's condition was ascertained, for it was indeed his belief that when the latter was in his right mind, he would apply such a remedy and admonishment to the situation that his word would be kept. And as he saw that Amadis was starting to come out against them, he went to him as fast as he could and said to him: "Sir knight, I beg of you out of courtesy to listen to me a bit before you come out of here."

Amadis stood still and the knight told him all that he had talked over with Bravor, the giant's son, and how he had him for the time being quite pacified until morning should come, and that in that space of time the giant would be greatly improved and returned to consciousness; and that he believed that undoubtedly he would carry out with him completely all that he was duty bound to do, even if he were at death's door, and that Amadis should be willing to be patient meanwhile, for with God's help he would remedy everything, and that he would take charge of the matter. Amadis, when he saw him speak

thus, was convinced that he was stating the truth, because in that little while that he had dealt with him he had come to consider him an honorable man; and he said: "Out of regard for you I shall forbear this time; but I tell you, knight, that all the effort that you may put forth in this matter will be wasted if first of all amends are not made to the lady."

The knight said to him: "That will be done and much more, or I would not consider myself a knight, nor would I so consider this giant whom I have always regarded as such; for believe me, in him resides much truth and goodness."

Amadis remained quietly where he was as before. So just as you hear, he remained among those forbidding rocks, surrounded by his enemies, waiting, just as they were, for morning.

Now the story relates that after his men had carried the giant to the castle as unconscious as if he were dead, and had put him on his bed, he remained in that condition most of the night without being able to speak, and he did nothing but put his hand directly over his heart, indicating that the pain was coming from there. And when his mother and his wife saw that, they had the physicians examine him; and they immediately found the injury that he had, on which they applied so many medical and other remedies which eased him, that before dawn he was completely conscious. And when he was able to speak, he asked where he was. The physicians told him that he was in his bed.

"But the combat that I had with the knight," said he, "how did it go?"

They told him the entire truth, which is right to tell truthful men, for they did not dare lie to him about anything, relating to him everything just as it had occurred; and how when the knight of the Firm Island had him on the ground, his son Bravor, thinking that he was dead, had come out from the castle with his men, and had held his opponent surrounded among the rocks of the square where the combat had taken place, and that they were waiting for whatever he might command. When the giant heard this, he said to them: "Is the knight alive?"

"Yes," they said.

"Then have my son come here with all the men who are with him, and have them release the knight."

This was done at once; and when the giant saw his son, he said to him: "Traitor, why have you broken my word? What honor and what benefit could accrue to you from what you have done? For if I were dead, it would be too late for you to restore me by any other means, and much more dead would your honor be, and with greater loss by my lineage in counteracting and enduring what you did than the death that I as a knight would have received without being remiss in any respect in what I should do. For if I had remained alive, don't you know that you would not have been able to escape from me anywhere without my killing you? So that you and all those who do not uphold the truth fall far short of their objective, for when they think to avenge injuries, they incur them with much more shame and dishonor than before. But I shall bring it about that as a wicked youth you suffer for it."

Then he ordered him to be seized and bound hand and foot, and be deposited in front of the knight of the Firm Island, and that the latter be told that that wicked son of his had broken his promise, and that he should exact from him whatever retribution he pleased. So he was taken before Amadis and put at his feet. The mother of that youth, when she saw this, was afraid that the knight, as an offended man, might do him some harm, and she went as a mother, without the giant's being aware of it, and as quickly as she could, to where Amadis was. At that time Amadis had his helmet in his hand — for until then and while the men at arms had him surrounded never had he removed it from his head — and his sword in its sheath, and he was untying the giant's son in order to release him. And when the matron came and saw his face, she recognized immediately that he was Amadis, and went toward him, weeping and unaccompanied by anyone else, and said to him: "My lord, do you recognize me?"

Amadis, although he saw at once that she was the daughter of Gandalac, foster father of Don Galaor, his brother, replied saying: "Madam, I do not know you."

"Well," said she, "my lord, I indeed know that you are Amadis, brother of my lord, Don Galaor. And if you consider it right that your name be concealed, I shall do so; and if you wish that it be known, do not fear the giant, since he has assured your safety. And in this action that he takes, you will see whether

he is disposed to keep his word, for here he sends you his and my son who broke it, so that you may take upon him all the vengeance you like, and for him I ask your pity."

"My good lady," said Amadis, "you already know how greatly interested all of us, as brothers and friends of Don Galaor, are in what concerns your father and his children; and I should like to demonstrate that I am interested in something else that greatly concerns you, for in this matter there is no need to thank me, because without your request I was already setting him free; for I do not take vengeance except on those who with arms are willing to defend their wicked deeds. And in this matter that you mention concerning my name, as to whether I consider it good that it be told or concealed, I say rather that I am pleased that the giant know who I am, and that you tell him that I shall not leave here until the satisfaction that I demand be rendered the matron who brought me here. And if he is as truthful as everybody says, he ought to place himself on this field in the same position as when I had him defeated, in order that I may fully wreak my will upon him; and if his being unconscious when he was carried away from here excuses him somewhat, now, if he is conscious, for no honest reason can he be excused."

The matron thanked him with great humility and said to him: "My lord, do not doubt my husband, for he will place himself according as you dictate or will carry out what you ask of him. And without any fear, come with me to where he is."

"My good lady and friend," said he, "to you I would trust my life without any misgivings, but I have a fear concerning the nature of giants, who seldom are governed by, and submissive to reason, because their great fury and rage in most matters holds them enslaved."

"It is true," said the matron, "but from what I know of this one, I beg you to come with me without any misgivings."

"Since thus it pleases you," said Amadis, "I deem it all right."

Then he put his helmet on his head and took his shield, and with sword in hand he went with her, thinking that it could be safer for him than to be as he was, expecting death without having or hoping for any help; for even if he killed all those men who had him surrounded, he would not be able to save himself

thereby; because before he could obtain a ship in order to be able to leave — for all were under the control of the giant's men — the people of the island would kill him themselves because although in the other regions where the giants held sway they were hated on account of their arrogant and excessive cruelties, this Balan was not hated by his subjects because he kept all of them protected and defended without taking anything of theirs from them. Therefore it was impossible to think of being able to maintain himself thus alone. And for these reasons he ventured, without any more security than that given him at first and what the lady offered him, to enter that mighty fortress armed as he was, resolving that if they attacked him out of a desire to trick him, he would perform rare exploits before being killed.

So just as the story tells you, Amadis went with the giantess wife of Balan to the castle; and when he was inside, the giant was informed that the knight who had fought with him was there and wanted to speak with him. He gave orders to bring him to where he was in bed, and thus it was done. Having entered the room, Amadis said: "Balan, I am quite dissatisfied with you, for I, on coming to seek you and to put myself in your power while trusting your word, in order to fight with you under the safe-conduct that you gave to the matron who went for me, and afterwards to the knight of Princess Island, your men, breaking your word, have sought wickedly to kill me. I indeed don't believe that it pleases you, or that you ordered it, for you were not in condition to do so; but this fact did not rid me of the danger, for I have been quite close to death; but however that may be, I declare myself content because of what you have done with your son. I beg of you, Balan, to be willing to make amends to this lady who brought me here; otherwise I cannot release you from the combat until it be concluded, although it already has had one ending, for it was in my power to kill you or save you. I respect you and value you more than you think because of the relationship that you have with Gandalac, the giant of the Rock of Galtares, for I have learned that you are married to his daughter. But although I have this good will toward you, I cannot avoid obtaining justice from you for this lady."

The giant answered him: "Knight, although the pain and sorrow that I have on seeing myself defeated by a single knight is such a great and rare event for me, for I never have been defeated until today, and although for me it is worse than death, I feel that it is nothing in comparison with what my son and my men have done to you. And if my strength afforded me the opportunity to carry it out personally, you would see the force of my word and what it embraces. But it can do no more than to surrender to you the one responsible, although he alone is the mirror in which his mother and I see ourselves; and if you wish more, ask for it, for your desire will be satisfied."

Amadis said to him: "I am contented with what you have done. Now tell me what you will do in the matter of the lady."

"Whatever you see that I can do," said the giant, "for the son of this matron is beyond help since he is dead. I beg you earnestly to ask of me what is possible."

"I shall do so," said Amadis, "for anything else would be folly."

"Then tell me what you wish," said he.

"What I wish," said Amadis, "is that you have the husband of that matron set free at once along with their daughter and their entire company, restoring to them all of their possessions and their ship; and for the son that you have killed you give them yours, to be married to that maiden; for although you are a noble lord, I tell you that in lineage and in complete excellence she owes you nothing because even in estate and rank they are not noticeably lacking, for besides their great possessions and income they are governors of one of my father's realms."

Then the giant when he heard this looked at him more intently than before and said to him: "I beg you as a courtesy to tell me who you are to set yourself so high, and who your father is."

"Know you," said Amadis, "that my father is King Perion of Gaul, and I am his son Amadis."

When the giant heard this, he immediately raised his head as best he could, and said: "What is that? Is it true that you are that Amadis who killed my father?"

"I am," said he, "the one who in order to rescue King Lisuarte, who was about to die, killed a giant, and I am told that he was your father."

"Now I say to you, Amadis," said the giant, "that I do not know to what to attribute this very great daring in coming to my land: whether to your great courage or to my promises being reputed truthful. But your great courage has brought it about, which has never feared or failed to attack and defeat all dangerous things. And since Fortune is so favorable to you, it is not right that I from now on try to oppose her might, for she has already shown me how ineffective my own strength is to harm you. And concerning what you say to me about my son, I give him to you to dispose of him at your pleasure; and not as a good son as I was hoping, but as a bad one, because he who does not keep his word has nothing left for which to be praised. And likewise I release the knight and his daughter together with their retinue, as you command; and I wish to become your friend, to do your bidding in any situation in which you may need me."

Amadis thanked him and said to him: "I consider you my friend since you were Gandalac's; and as a friend I beg of you that from now on you do not maintain this bad custom on this island; for if you do not conform in God's service by following His holy doctrine, all other things, even if they bring you some hope of honor and benefit, in the end will not be able to keep you from suffering great mishaps. And you will see this from the following : by God's will I was guided here, without my intending to come, and it was His will to give me courage to overcome and defeat you; for in view of your huge size and abundant strength of heart and valor, I would not have been of sufficient avail to do you any harm without His mercy. But now let us drop this matter, for I think that you will do what I ask of you. Pardon your son, not only because of his tender age, which was the cause of his error, but also out of regard for his mother, whom I consider as a sister. And have him and the maiden come here, and let them be betrothed at once."

"Since I am determined to be your friend," said the giant, "all that you consider good I shall do."

Then he ordered the knight who was husband of the matron to come there, and likewise his daughter and all their companions; for Dariolcta was with them with as much enjoyment at seeing such a shortcut taken as if she had been made mistress of the world. And before them and before the mother and grandmother of the youth, they were betrothed and Amadis ordered them to have the marriage solemnized at once.

Now the story wants to show you the reasons for this marriage: in the first place in order to make known to you how Amadis finished that very great adventure to his honor and to the satisfaction of that matron who had brought him there, by defeating that mighty Balan, daring — although the latter was his enemy on account of the father whom he had killed — to venture into his island, where he experienced such great danger as you have heard; the other reason being that you may know that to this Bravor, son of Balan and that daughter of Darioleta's was born a son who had the name Galeote, for already this lad took after his mother and was not so large and misshapen as giants were. This Galeote was lord of that island after the death of his father Bravor, and he married a daughter of Don Galvanes and beautiful Madasima his wife. And to these was born another son who had the name Balan like his grandfather; thus they kept succeeding to the rulership one after the other, continually ruling that island such a long time until from them was descended that valiant and vigorous Don Segurades, first cousin of the old knight who came to the court of King Arthur when he was one hundred and twenty years old, and had forty descendants — for on account of his great age he had given up the use of arms — and without a lance unhorsed all the knights of great renown who were at court at the time. Well, this Segurades lived in the time of King Utherpadragon, King Arthur's father and lord of Great Britain, and he left a son and ruler of that island named Bravor the "Brun"; for since he was so belligerent they gave him that name, because in the language of that time they said "brun" for "belligerent" [a nonsensical statement; see Notes. — E. B. P.]. Tristan de Leonis killed this Bravor in combat on that same island, on whose shores the hazards of the sea had cast him and Isolda the Blonde, daughter of King Languines of Ireland, and their entire company, as he was bringing her to become the wife

of his uncle King Mark of Cornwall. And from this Bravor the "Brun" came that great and very valiant prince Galeote the "Brun," lord of the Faraway Islands, and great friend of Don Lancelot of the Lake, as this way you can learn — if you have read or do read the book of Don Tristan and Lancelot, in which mention is made of these "Bruns" — from where the founding of their lineage stemmed. And because they were the successors of that giant, son of Balan, they were always called giants, although they did not conform to them in the size of their bodies because of the influence of the distaff side, just as we have told you; and also because all those of that lineage were very strong and valiant at arms, and with a large share of the haughtiness and conceit of the giants from whom they had sprung.

But now we shall leave Amadis on that island, where he rested a few days to have the wounds treated that Balan had given him in the combat, and because the giant and his wife earnestly besought him to do so; and there he received very fine service. And the story will tell you what Grasandor did after he was told by the huntsman of Amadis's command and learned that Amadis was going away by sea in a small boat.

The story has already told you how, at the time that Amadis departed from the seashore with the matron in the boat, having armed himself with the arms of the dead knight, he commanded one of his men to tell Grasandor that he was going away, and that he should have that knight buried and obtain for Amadis the pardon of his lady Oriana. So this man went at once to where Grasandor was engaged in hunting and knew nothing about the departure of Amadis — instead he thought that, like all the others, he was with his dog among the beaters in the place assigned to him — and he told him Amadis's message and command. And when Grasandor heard about it, he greatly wondered what very urgent reason had caused Amadis to leave him, and even more his lady Oriana, without seeing them first; and he left the hunt at once, ordering the beater to guide him to where the dead knight was. Having arrived there, he saw him lying on the ground, but he saw nothing more on the ocean, for the boat in which Amadis was traveling was already out of sight; and he immediately had the knight loaded on a palfrey, and the entire party having assembled, he returned to the Firm Island,

while greatly pondering what he would do. And arriving at the foot of the hill, he gave orders to those men who were coming with him to bury that knight in the monastery there, which Amadis had ordered built in honor of the Virgin Mary at the time that he came from the Poor Rock, as the second Book of this story relates; and he went to where Oriana and his wife Mabilia and those ladies were.

And as they saw him alone, they asked him where Amadis was. He told them everything that had happened to him and that he knew about him, without leaving out anything, but with a cheerful countenance in order not to frighten them. When Oriana heard it, she remained a while without being able to speak, because of the great perturbation she felt, and when she had recovered, she said: "I certainly think that since Amadis went without you and without my knowing about it, it would not be except for a compelling reason."

Grasandor said to her: "My lady, I think so, but I ask your pardon for him, for he sent word by the beater who saw him go to tell me to do so."

"My good lord," said Oriana, "it is more necessary to pray God out of His mercy to protect him than to ask me to pardon him; for I well know that never at any time has he been guilty of any transgression towards me, nor will he be hereafter, for such trust I have in the great and true love that he has for me. But what do you think should be done?"

Grasandor said to her: "It seems to me, madam, that it will be well to go and look for him; and if I can find him, to undergo that good or evil that he may be experiencing, for I shall not rest day or night until I find him."

All those ladies agreed concerning this matter that Grasandor should leave at once; but Mabilia all that night never stopped weeping over him, thinking that because of that journey great dangers and affronts could not be avoided for him. But finally, desiring more the honor of her husband than the satisfaction of her own wishes, she gave approval to his plan.

Then, morning having come, Grasandor arose and heard mass; and taking leave of Oriana and Mabilia and the other matrons, he went on board a vessel; and taking with him his arms and horse and two squires with the necessary provisions, and a sailor

to guide him, he put out to sea along that same route that Amadis had followed.

Grasandor traveled on over the sea ignorant of his destination, save only that it would be wherever Fortune might carry him; for the only thing he knew for certain was that Amadis had gone in that same direction. Then proceeding as you hear all that day and night and the next day, they sailed without finding anyone who could give Grasandor any information; and his ill-luck brought it about that on the second night he passed very close to Princess Island, and on account of its being a very dark night they did not see it; for if he had put into port there, he could not have missed finding Amadis because he would have discovered that he had landed there and that the knight governor of that island had departed with him, and he then would have been guided to the Island of the Vermilion Tower; but it turned out otherwise for him, for that night he went far beyond it and traveled another day, and at nightfall he found himself near the seacoast and close to a great expanse of beach. There Grasandor ordered the vessel to stop until morning in order to find out what land that was. So they remained until day came, when they could get a good look at the land, and it seemed to them the mainland and very beautiful with large groves of trees. Grasandor ordered his horse taken off, and he armed himself and told the sailor not to leave that place until he returned or he had word from him, because he wanted to see where they had landed and to try to find out some news of the man they were seeking.

Then he mounted his horse and with his squires accompanying him on foot, because they had not brought palfreys in order that the boat might not be weighted down and slowed. So he traveled most of the day without encountering anyone; and he was greatly surprised, for that land seemed to him uninhabited. And he dismounted beside a spring that he found at the edge of a forest which he was skirting, and the squires fed him and his horse; and as soon as they had eaten, they said to him: "Sir, return to the boat, for this land must be uninhabited."

Grasandor said to them: "You stay here, for you cannot keep up with me; and I shall go ahead until I obtain information. And

if I do not obtain any, I shall return to you at once; and if you should see that I am late, return to the boat, for if I can, I shall be there."

The squires, who, already tired out, could not go on, commended him to God and told him that they would do just as he ordered.

So Grasandor went through that forest and after a bit found a deep, very thickly wooded valley, at one end of which he saw a small monastery located where the forest was most dense, and he went there at once. On reaching its gate he found it open, and he dismounted from his horse and tying it to the gate-bar, went inside. And he went directly to the church and said his prayers the best he knew how, imploring God to guide him on that journey so that whatever he did might be to His honor, and to direct him to where he could find Amadis. While he was on his knees, he saw a Carmelite monk coming to the church; and he called out to him saying: "Father, what land is this and under what sovereignty is it?"

"This is under the sovereignty of Ireland, but it is not now very much at the king's command because near here is a knight named Galifon; and with two brothers who are very powerful knights just as he is, and as possessor of a strongly fortified castle in which he takes refuge, he has subjugated all this wooded hill area of very good land and quite prosperous villages, and does much harm to the knights errant who pass through here; for he and his brothers travel, all three of them, together, and when they encounter some knight, two of them hide and the other attacks him. And if the knight of the castle wins, the two make no move; and if it goes badly for him in the battle, they come out and easily defeat or kill the one who is alone. And yesterday it happened that two monks of this house on coming through these towns to beg alms saw all three brothers defeat and seriously wound a knight. And those two fathers asked them for him, begging them for the love of God not to kill him and to give him to them, since in him there was no longer any defense. And they urged them so insistently that they had to do so; and they brought him in on a donkey, and here we have him. And then a short while later another knight arrived who was a companion

of his; and when he found out about this episode, he left here — not long before you arrived — with the intention of dying or avenging this one who is wounded. And certainly he goes forth at great risk to his person."

When Grasandor heard this, he told the monk to show him the wounded knight. And he did so, for he brought him into a cell where the wounded man was lying on a bed. And when he saw him, he recognized him, for he was Eliseo, cousin of Don Cuadragante's nephew Landin. And likewise the knight recognized him, for many times they had seen each other and had conversed during the war between King Lisuarte and Amadis. And when Eliseo saw him, he said: "Oh my good lord Grasandor! I beg you as a courtesy to aid my cousin Landin, who goes into great danger; and afterwards I shall tell you how my adventure came about, for if I detain you now in order to relate it, your aid would not assist him at all."

Grasandor said to him: "Where shall I find him?"

"After going through this valley," said Eliseo, "you will see an extensive plateau, and on it a fortified castle; and there you will find him, for he is going to challenge a knight who is lord of it and from whom I received this wound."

Grasandor saw at once that what the monk had told him was true. And commending Eliseo to God, he mounted his horse and went as fast as he could on that road leading to where the monk indicated he could best see the castle. And when he had gone through the valley, he saw it immediately on a knoll higher than the other land around it, and on going towards it, he arrived at the edge of a forest which he had been traversing, and beheld Landin, who was in front of the castle gate shouting. But he did not understand what he was saying, for he was at some distance away. And he drew rein on his horse amid the thick undergrowth, for he did not want to appear until he saw whether Landin needed help. While remaining thus, he soon saw a very large and well-armed knight come out through the gate towards where Landin was, and he spoke a little with Landin and then they withdrew a short distance from each other, and went forward to attack one another at full speed of their horses; and they collided so violently with their lance thrusts and with their horses that

both perforce fell heavily to the ground. But the knight of the castle fell much harder, so that he was stunned; but he got up as quickly as he could, and grasped his sword to defend himself.

Landin arose as a man who was very agile and brave, and saw that his enemy was prepared to receive him; so he grasped his sword, covered himself with his shield, and went at him; and the other one likewise went forward at his adversary, and they dealt each other very mighty blows on top of their helmets so that sparks flew from them; and they shredded their shields and cut the mesh of their mail in many places so that their swords reached their flesh, and thus they went on for a time inflicting on each other all the injury they could. But soon Landin began to get the upperhand to such an extent that he was dominating the knight of the castle, who now was intent only on protecting himself from the blows without being able to deliver any. And when he saw himself thus, he began to motion with his sword to those of the castle to rescue him, for they were delaying a long time. Then two knights rode out at full speed, with their lances in hand, and saying: "Wicked scoundrel, don't kill him!"

When Landin saw them coming thus, he prepared to await them like a good knight, without any change of purpose, because he had already understood that if things went badly for the first knight, he would be aided by the other two; and he said to them: "You are the evil ones and traitors, for you deceitfully and without provocation kill good and loyal knights."

Grasandor, who was watching it all, when he saw them coming thus, spurred his horse as hard as he could and went toward them saying: "Let the knight alone, you wicked traitors!"

And he struck one of them on the shield with his lance such a mighty blow that without any delay he hurled him over the horse's rump and he landed on the ground, which was hard, in such a terrible fall that his left arm on which he fell, was broken, and he was so stunned that he could not get up. The other knight went forward to deliver a lance thrust at Landin with lance held high or trample him with the horse; but he was not able to do so, for Landin dodged with such agility and skill that the other one could not catch him; and he rushed past so hard on his horse that Landin could not strike him, although he tried

to cut the legs of the horse. Grasandor said to him: "Stay with that one who is on foot, and leave this one on horseback to me."

When Landin saw this he was very happy, but could not conceive who the knight could be who at such a time had come to his assistance. And he returned at once to the knight with whom he had been fighting previously, and struck him with the sword many hard and devastating blows. And although the knight tried as hard as he could to defend himself, it availed him nothing, for Landin was dominating him completely.

Grasandor was exchanging blows with the one on horseback, as they were dealing each other mighty blows with their swords, for Grasandor had severed his lance and wounded him on the hand. And thus all four were doing all the damage they could; but in a little while Landin knocked his foe down at his feet. And when the other one who was still on horseback saw this, he began to flee toward the castle as fast as he could, with Grasandor after him, for he did not leave him. And as he was in a daze, on heading for the drawbridge he missed his aim and fell with his horse into the moat, which was very deep and full of water, so that with the weight of his armor, in a short while he was drowned, for those of the castle could not rescue him because Grasandor had placed himself at the end of the bridge, as did Landin, who came up immediately on another of the horses that had remained in the field.

And when they saw the contest stopped and that there was nothing to do, they both returned to where they had left the knights, in order to see whether they had died.

And Landin said: "Sir knight, who are you who at such a time have come to my aid, when I had such great need of it?"

Grasandor said to him: "My lord Landin, I am Grasandor, your friend, and I give many thanks to God that I found you at a time when you had need of me."

When Landin heard this, he greatly wondered what chance could have brought him to that land, for he well knew that he had remained on the Firm Island with Amadis at the time that the fleet had left there to go to Sansuenia and the kingdom of King Arabigo; and he said to him: "My good lord, who has

brought you into this land, so far removed from where you were with Amadis?"

Grasandor told him all that you have heard, under what circumstances he had had to leave in search of Amadis, and he asked him if he knew anything about him. Landin said to him: "Know you, Lord Grasandor, that my cousin Eliseo and I come from where Cuadragante, my uncle, and Don Bruneo de Bonamar have stopped, together with those knights that you saw depart from the Firm Island; and we bear a message from my uncle for King Cildadan asking him for some troops, for back there we had a battle with a nephew of King Arabigo who had taken control of the land when he found out that his uncle the king had been overcome and taken prisoner. And although we were victors and wrought great havoc on the enemy, we received much damage, for we lost many troopers. And for this reason we come in order to bring back more, and it was about three days ago that we put into port at Princess Island, and there we found out that a knight who was bringing a matron and only one man had come in a small boat, and that they said they were going to the Island of the Vermilion Tower to fight with Balan, the giant; and they were not able to tell me why, except that the governor of that island went with the knight to observe the battle, because according to what is said, that giant is the most valiant there is in all the islands. And as you say that Amadis departed by sea with the matron, be assured that it is none other than he, for such an undertaking was appropriate for him."

"You have made me very happy," said Grasandor, "with this news: but I cannot refrain from being very sad not to have been with him in such a confrontation as that."

"Do not regret it," said Landin, "for God created that man for the express purpose of giving to him alone the honor and great glory that all others in the world put together would not be able to attain."

"Now tell me," said Grasandor, "what happened to you; for in the monastery down yonder in a deep valley I found your cousin Eliseo badly wounded; and from him I could not find out what had happened except only that you had come to fight with this knight. And the monks of that monastery told me the evil

tactics he and his brothers used in overcoming dishonorably the knights who fought with them; and in order not to be detained I asked no further questions."

Landin said to him: "Know you that we went ashore yesterday to go by land where King Cildadan is, for on arriving near that monastery you saw, we met a maiden who was coming in tears. She asked us for help. I asked her the reason for her grief and told her that if it was a matter that merited a remedy, I would provide it. She told me that a knight was holding her fiancé prisoner unjustly in order to take from him a piece of very good property that he had in his land, and he held him in chains in a tower, which was a good two leagues to the right of the monastery. I sought from the maiden a pledge that she was telling me the truth, and she gave it to me at once. I told my cousin Eliseo to stay behind in that monastery because he was more seasick than I, while I went with the maiden; and that if God guided me well, I would soon return for him. But he was so insistent on going with me that I could not avoid taking him along. And going through that valley yonder amid that thick undergrowth, with the maiden guiding us, we saw an armed knight on horseback who was already ascending to the plateau. Then Eliseo said to me: " 'Cousin, you go with the maiden, and I shall go to investigate that knight.' "

"So he left me, and I went with the maiden, and reached the tower where her betrothed was imprisoned. And I called to the knight who was holding him prisoner, and he came out unarmed to talk with me. And when he saw my face he recognized me at once and asked me what I wanted. I told him everything that the maiden had told me, and that I was asking him to set free her betrothed at once and not to do him henceforth any injury unjustly. And he complied immediately out of regard for me, because by no means did he want to fight with me, and he promised me to do as I had asked. And I reprimanded him severely, saying to him that it was not proper for a man in such good circumstances to do such things. I could talk this way because this knight was my friend, and when we were novice knights, we had traveled together in search of adventure. Then having settled this affair, I returned to the monastery as per

agreement and found Eliseo badly wounded, and I asked him what had happened to him. And he told me that as he was following that knight after he left me, and was shouting at him to turn back, the knight finally had returned to him and that they had had a fierce combat; and that in his opinion he had him at a disadvantage and almost defeated when two other knights came out of the forest and clashed with him so fiercely that they overthrew him and his horse, and wounded him very badly; and that if then God had not brought there to him two monks of that monastery who earnestly begged them for his life, they would have finished killing him; but out of regard for them they desisted, and those monks took him away."

"I know all that about your cousin, for the monks told me," said Grasandor, "but I did not know anything about your own adventure except that you had left the monastery to fight with these wicked, treacherous knights. But what in your opinion should we do with them if they are not dead?"

Landin said to him: "Let us find out in what condition they are, and then we shall decide."

Then they came to where Galifon, the lord of the castle, was stretched out on the ground, for he did not have the strength to get up; but he was already breathing better and more conscious than before. And in the same condition they found his brother, who was not dead but was very badly bruised. And Landin summoned two squires, who came with them, one of them his and the other his cousin's; and he had them dismount from their palfreys; and they slung those two knights across the saddles, and had the squires mount behind them. And they went toward the monastery with the intention of killing them if Eliseo was dead or dangerously wounded; but if he was better, they would take a different course of action.

Just as you hear, they reached the monastery, and they found Eliseo out of danger, for one of those monks, who knew what was needed, had treated and greatly helped him. At this time, that Galifon, lord of the castle, was entirely conscious; and when he saw Landin unarmed, he recognized him; for both he and his brothers were all King Cildadan's men. But when they saw that the king was going to help King Lisuarte in the war that the

latter was having with Amadis, these three brothers stayed in the land, for he could not take them with him. And while he was occupied in that affair, they caused much damage in that region, having little respect for King Cildadan on seeing him under the suzerainty of King Lisuarte; for when Fortune changes from good to bad, not only is it contrary and adverse in the principal matter at issue, but in many other secondary matters stemming from it, which can be compared to the consequences of deadly sin. And he said to him: "Sir Landin, would I be able to obtain some courtesy from you? And if you think that my evil deeds do not deserve it, may your good deeds merit it. And do not regard my mistakes, but what you ought to do in view of your reputation and the lineage from which you spring."

Landin said to him: "Galifon, such wicked deeds were not expected from you; for a knight who is brought up in the court of such a good king and in the company of so many good men is greatly obligated to lead a completely virtuous existence. And I am surprised to see your upbringing so corrupted by your pursuit of such an evil and treacherous life."

"The desire to exercise lordship," said Galifon, "turned me aside from what virtue constrained me to follow, just as it has many others who were worth and knew more than I; but the entire remedy is in your hands and dependent on your will."

"What do you want me to do?" said Landin.

"That you obtain pardon for me from the king, my lord," said he, "and I shall throw myself upon his mercy under your sponsorship as soon as I am able to mount a horse."

"It shall be just as you say," said Landin, "for from now on you will adopt the life style befitting the order of knighthood."

"So it shall be," said Galifon, "without any doubt."

"Then I set you and your brother free," said Landin, "with the proviso that three weeks from today you be before King Cildadan, my lord, and do whatever he may command; and in the meantime I shall obtain a pardon for you."

Galifon thanked him profusely and promised to do just as he ordered.

This having been done, they all remained there together that night. And the next morning early Grasandor heard mass and

took leave of Landin and his cousin in order to return to the boat he had left on the seashore, and with much joy in his heart because of the news that Landin had given him; for he was sure the knight was Amadis who had put into port at Princess Island in company with the matron and had gone to fight with the giant Balan. So he went back over the route by which he had come and arrived before nightfall at the boat; where to their mutual pleasure he found his squires.

Grasandor asked the sailor if he would know how to guide them to the island that is called Princess. He said he could, for after they arrived there, he had determined where they were, which he had not known at the time of their arrival; and that he would guide him to that island.

"Then let us go there," said Grasandor.

So they left the shore and sailed all that night; and next day at the hour of vespers they reached the island. And Grasandor landed and went up to the town, where they told him everything that had happened to Amadis with the giant, which they had found out from the governor, who had arrived there. Grasandor talked with him in order to be more certain, and he told him all he had seen of Amadis, just as the story has related it. Grasandor said to him: "Good sir, you have told me news that greatly pleases me. And this I say to you not because Amadis has come out of this adventure with such honor — for in view of the great exploits and perils in which he has been involved those of us familiar with them cannot be surprised at any others, however great they may be — but because of having found him; for certainly I would not have been able to achieve any rest or enjoyment anywhere until I obtained news of him."

The knight said to him: "I indeed believe, in view of the great deeds reported of this knight in all parts of the world, that those who at some time had kept company with him would have seen many of them. But I tell you that if, as I did, they could have seen what latterly he experienced, as I saw it, they would account it among the most dangerous."

Then they ceased talking about that, and Grasandor said to him: "I beg of you, knight, out of courtesy to give me some one of your men to guide me to the island where Amadis is."

"I shall gladly do so," said he, "and if you need some provisions for the voyage, they shall be provided for you at once."

"I thank you very much," said Grasandor, "but I am bringing everything necessary."

The knight of the island said: "Here is a man who will guide you, for yesterday he came from there."

Grasandor thanked him and got into the boat with that man who was to guide him, and went on his way over the sea. And they made such good progress that without difficulty they reached the harbor of the Island of the Vermilion Tower, where Amadis was.

And immediately he was seized by the giant's men, who asked him what he wanted. He told them that he came to look for a knight named Amadis of Gaul, who, he had been told, was on that island.

"You speak the truth," said they; "come up with us to the castle, for there you will find him."

Then he came off the boat armed as he was, and went up to the castle with those men. And when he reached the gate, Amadis was informed that a knight was there who was seeking him. Amadis immediately thought that it was probably one of his friends, and came out to the gate. When he saw that it was Grasandor, he was the happiest person in the world, and embraced him with great joy, and Grasandor likewise him, as if a long time had passed since they had seen each other. Amadis asked him about his lady Oriana, how she was, and whether she was greatly disturbed by his going away. Grasandor said to him: "My good lord, she and all the other ladies are very well; and as for Oriana, I tell you that she was greatly upset and disturbed when she found out from me about your departure. But as her discretion is so surpassingly great, she decided that you had not made this trip without good reason. And don't think that she continues to feel upset or angry over anything other than the fact that she will not be able to see you as soon as she desires. And although I come to summon you, I would be very pleased to have you stay on here for four or five days on my account, because I suffer from seasickness."

"I think it is a good idea," said Amadis, "to do so, for I also need the rest, because I still feel weak on account of some wounds that I sustained, from which I have not completely recovered. And what you tell me about my lady makes me very happy, for in comparison with her anger, all the things that could happen to me from great encounters, even death itself, I consider of no consequence."

CHAPTER CXXX

How while Amadis was on the Island of the Vermilion Tower seated on some crags overlooking the ocean and talking with Grasandor about his lady Oriana, he saw a ship coming; from which he ascertained news of the fleet that had gone to Sansuenia and the Islands of Landas.

Just as you hear, Amadis and Grasandor were enjoying life on that Island of the Vermilion Tower; and Amadis kept asking about his lady Oriana, because all his desires and concerns were focused on her; for although he now possessed her, he was not lacking a single jot of the love that he always had had for her; on the contrary now more than ever his heart was enthralled by her, and with even more circumspection he intended to do her bidding. What caused this was the fact that this great love affair of theirs did not come about by accident, as in the case of many who no sooner love and covet than they abhor; but it was so deep seated, and with such honorable intentions in conformity with good conscience that it became greater and greater, just as do all things established and founded upon virtue. But it is the opposite course that we all generally pursue, for our desires are more for the contentment and satisfaction of our base desires and appetites than for what we are constrained to do by goodness and reason; which we ought to keep in mind and ever present, considering that if all sweet and tasty things were placed in our mouths, and if in the end a bitter taste resulted, from the sweetness not only would the sweet taste be lost, but the desire would be so altered that because of what came last, a great distaste would be felt for what came first. Hence we can indeed say that

most delight and perfection comes at the end. Then if this be so, why do we fail to recognize that although illicit things, whether they be love affairs or of some other category, were at the outset wont to bring sweetness and in the end bitterness and repentance, the virtuous things of good conscience that at first appear harsh and bitter, in the long run always afford contentment and joy? But in the case of this knight and his lady we cannot separate the bad from the good, or the sad from the joyous, because from the beginning their thought was always to pursue the honest goal at which they now have arrived. And if they experienced no slight amount of care and anxiety over each other, as this great story relates, do not think that from such preoccupation they received pain or suffering; rather, much peace and joy; because the more they remembered their great love the more such memories caused each to visualize the other as if in the flesh; which fact brought such surcease and consolation to their keen anguish that in nowise would they have wished to give over that delightful memory. But let us stop talking on the subject of these faithful lovers, not only because it is unending but also because a very long time has passed and will continue to pass without other lovers like them being seen or memorialized in writing at such great length.

So Amadis was talking with Grasandor about those matters that afforded them most pleasure. And it happened to them that while both were seated on some high crags overlooking the sea, they saw a small craft coming straight to that harbor and they did not want to leave there without first finding out who was on it. The boat having arrived at the port, they gave orders to Grasandor's squire to ascertain who the people were who were arriving; he went at once to find out. And when he returned, he said: "Sirs, in it comes a majordomo of Madasima's, wife of Don Galvanes, en route to the Island of Mongaza."

"Well, where does he come from?" said Amadis.

"Sir," said the squire, "they say from where Don Galvanes and Don Galaor are. I did not find out any more about them."

When Amadis heard this, he and Grasandor came down from the crags and went to the harbor where the boat lay. And when they arrived, Amadis recognized Nalfon, for such was the name of the majordomo, and said to him: "Nalfon, my friend, I am

very glad to see you because you will tell me news of my brother Don Galaor and of Don Galvanes; for since they departed from the Firm Island I have had none."

When the majordomo saw and recognized that it was Amadis, he was greatly astonished to find him in such a place, for he well knew that that island belonged to the giant Balan, the chief enemy that Amadis had, on account of his having killed Balan's father. And he at once landed and knelt before him to kiss his hands; but Amadis embraced him and would not yield his hands to him. The majordomo said to him:

"Sir, what adventure was it that has brought you here to this land so far removed from where we left you?"

Amadis said to him: "My good friend, God brought me on a matter that later you will ascertain; but tell me everything that you have seen involving my brother and Don Galvanes and Dragonis."

"Sir," said he, "God be praised, I can indeed do so, and tell you things that will please you. Know you that Don Galaor and Dragonis left Sobradisa with many well-equipped troops. And my lord Don Galvanes with all the troops that he could muster from the Island of Mongaza joined them on the high seas at a rock that they had as a landmark, which is called the Rock of the Maiden Enchantress; I do not know whether you have heard of it."

Amadis said to him: "By the faith that you owe to God, majordomo, if you know anything about the things that are on that rock, tell me about them because Don Gavarte of the Fearful Valley had told me that when he was severely ill during a sea voyage, he passed by the foot of that Rock you mention, and his illness prevented him from ascending it and seeing many of the things that are on it. And those who have seen them told him that among them there was a great adventure in which the knights have failed who have attempted to engage in it."

The majordomo said to him: "All that I could learn about this matter that has remained in men's memories I shall gladly tell you. Know you that that Rock has retained this name because there was a time when it was colonized by a maiden who was suzerain of it and who strove very hard to learn the arts of magic and necromancy, and she learned them in such wise that

she accomplished everything she wished. At the time she lived there she built her dwelling, which was the most beautiful and luxurious ever seen, and frequently it happened that she had at anchor around that rock many ships that were crossing the sea from Ireland and Norway and Sobradisa to the Islands of Landas and the Deep Island. And in nowise could they depart from there unless the maiden afforded them an opportunity by dissolving those spells under which they were held and constrained; and from them she was accustomed to take whatever she pleased; and if knights came in the ships, she held them as long as she liked, and made them fight one another until they overcame and even killed each other, for they were powerless to do anything else; and from that she derived great enjoyment. She did many other things that would take too long to relate. But since it is quite certain that those who deceive, are in turn duped and roughly treated in this world and in the next by being caught in the same snares that they set for others, after some time had elapsed during which this maiden spent her days with such great wealth and delight, thinking to penetrate with her considerable knowledge the great secrets of God, with His permission she was duped and deceived by one who knew nothing of such matters. And this came about from the fact that among those knights whom she had thus brought there was one who was a native of the island of Crete, a handsome man, twenty-five years old and quite efficient at arms. The maiden was so greatly in love with him that he completely hoodwinked her, so that neither her great learning nor the strong resistance she made to her own confused and defeated impulses was able to prevent her from making this knight lord and master of what until then no one had possessed, which was her person; and with him she spent some time to the great delight of her heart; and he likewise with her, more on account of the profit that he expected from it than because of her beauty, with which she had been very scantily adorned by Nature. So while that maiden and the knight her lover were leading such a life, he, reflecting that it would be of very little benefit to him to rule the whole world in such a strange, remote place as that, began to consider what he might do in order to leave that prison. And he thought that sweet talk and a loving countenance along with the delightful acts involved in a love

affair, even though feigned, had great powers to upset and confuse the judgment of every person in love; so in their love affair he began much more than before to appear enthralled and passionately enamored, not only in public but in private, and to beg her very insistently not to entertain the thought that he was motivated by the power of her spells, but only because his desire and love for her so impelled him. Then he brought so much pressure to bear on her that she in the belief that she possessed him completely, and judging from her own captivated, constrained heart that he loved her as guilelessly as she did him, left him free to do as he liked. When he saw himself thus, desiring more than ever to leave that life, one day when he was talking with the maiden as they looked out to sea, meanwhile embracing her as on many other occasions and manifesting great love for her, he threw her down over the cliff from such a height that her body was completely broken to bits. When the knight had done this, he took everything he found there and all the inhabitants, men as well as women; and leaving the island uninhabited, he went to the isle of Crete. But he left there in a room of the chief palace of the maiden a great treasure, according to what they say, which he could not take, nor could anyone else, because it was, and is to this day, under a spell. And some, who in very cold weather when the serpents are hibernating have dared to climb the cliff, say that they reached the doors of that room, but were powerless to enter, and that on one of its doors there is an inscription in blood-red letters, and on the other, another one identifying the knight who is to enter there. And he is to win that treasure by first drawing out a sword that is inserted in the doors up to its hilt, and then they will be opened. That, sir, is what I know about what you have asked me."

Amadis, as soon as he had heard this, remained for a while meditating how he could best go and accomplish what so many had failed to do. And remaining silent on the subject, he kept his thoughts about it to himself; instead he asked Nalfon about his brothers and their friends. Nalfon said to him: "Sir, after the fleets had rendezvoused at the foot of that rock that you hear about, they went on their way to the Deep Island. But it was impossible for their coming to be so secret as not to have been made known to everyone by some persons that they had stationed

at sea; and the entire island was alerted by a first cousin of the dead king. So when we arrived at the port, all the people hastened there, with whom we of the ships had a great and dangerous battle. But finally Don Galaor and Don Galvanes and Dragonis leaped ashore in spite of our enemies, and in company with many others of our men who supported them, wrought such havoc among them that the troops withdrew from that end of the beach, so that we had the opportunity to disembark. Then all together we attacked them so hard that not being able to withstand us, they turned tail. But the exploits that Don Galaor performed no man would be able to describe adequately, for there he recovered everything that he had lost during such a long period because of his great illness. And among those whom he killed was that captain, cousin of the king, which enabled us more quickly to confine all his troops inside the town, surrounded on all sides by us. But since all were men of the lower class and they had no leader — for the leading men of that island had died with the king their lord in bringing aid to Lubayna, and many others had been taken prisoner; and since they saw that we were dominating the field and they were without any hope of being rescued — they at once proposed a pact whereby they would surrender if left unharmed in possession of their own property, and thus it was settled; so that in less than a week after we arrived there the whole island was won and Dragonis elevated to the throne. And because my lord Don Galvanes and Don Galaor were wounded, although not badly, it was decided to send me to my lady Madasima and to Queen Briolanja to tell them the news. And I, sire, came here to see my lady's aunt Madasima, whom she much esteems and loves because she is a very noble lady of great excellence. We had no thought of finding you in this region."

Amadis was very pleased with that news and gave many thanks to God because He had given such a victory to his brother and to those knights whom he loved so much. And he asked Nalfon if he had found out anything there about what Don Cuadragante and Don Bruneo of Bonamar and the knights who were with them had accomplished.

"Sir," said he, "after we had won the island we found on it some persons who had fled from the islands of Landas and from the city of Arabia, thinking that there they would be safer, for

they knew nothing of our coming. And they said that before they had departed from there, a great battle had been fought with a nephew of King Arabigo and with the troops of the city and island; but finally those of the island were annihilated and beaten, and that they knew nothing beyond that."

With this news, all with great pleasure went up to the castle, and Amadis talked with Balan, the giant, who had not yet risen from his sickbed; and he told the giant that in any event he himself ought to leave there, and that he was asking Balan to order restored to Darioleta and her husband everything that he had taken from them, and the ship in which they came, so that they might go to the Firm Island; and also that he, Amadis, would be pleased if Balan would send with them his son Bravor and the latter's wife, so that Oriana might see them, and that Bravor might be with other youths there of high rank until it was time to dub him a knight; and that he would send him back to him with all the honor befitting a man of such high rank. The giant said to him: "Sir Amadis, just as up to now my will had been desirous of doing you all the harm that I could, so it now desires the opposite, for I love you with a true love and I consider myself honored to be your friend. Hence this which you ask will be done at once, and when I get up and am in such a state of health as to be able to exert myself, I wish to go to see your home and that island, and to be in your company all the time you please."

Amadis said: "Let it be done just as you say, and do believe that always in me you will have a brother because of your great worth and your personal qualities, and on account of your being related to Gandalac, whom my brothers and I regard as a second father. And give us permission to leave, for tomorrow we wish to go; and do not forget what you are promising."

But I want you to know that this Balan did not make that journey as soon as he thought; instead, on learning that Don Cuadragante and Don Bruneo had laid siege to the city of Arabia and were in some need of troops, he took all that he could from the island and from other islands belonging to his friends and went to the aid of Cuadragante and Bruneo with such a well-equipped force that he enabled what was begun to be brought to a conclusion with great honor. And never did he leave them

until those two sovereignties of Sansuenia and of King Arabigo were won, as later on the story will relate.

Now the story tells that Amadis and Grasandor left one Monday morning from the great Island of the Vermilion Tower, of which that lusty giant Balan was ruler. And Amadis asked Nalfon, majordomo of Madasima, to give him one of his men to guide him to the Rock of the Maiden Enchantress. Nalfon told him that he was pleased to do so and that if he should want to climb up the cliff he would have good weather for it at that time, since it was in the dead of winter, and that if he were to order him to go with him, he would gladly do so. Amadis thanked him and told him it was not necessary for him to abandon what he had already directed him to do, for he needed only one guide.

"In the name of God," said the majordomo, "may He guide you and direct you in this and in everything else that you undertake, just as He has done until now."

Then they took leave of each other, and the majordomo went on his way to Anteyna, and Amadis and Grasandor set sail out over the sea with the guide whom they were bringing along. And they traveled a good five days without sighting the Rock, although they were having very good weather; and on the morning of the sixth day they saw it so lofty that it seemed to be touching the clouds. Then they went on until they were at the foot of it, and they found there a boat on the shore without any person to guard it, at which they were astonished; but they readily believed that someone who had climbed up the cliff had left it there. Amadis said to Grasandor: "My good sir, I want to climb up this cliff and see if what the majordomo told us is true as he related it; and I earnestly beg you, although you may feel some anxiety, to wait for me here until tomorrow night, when I shall be able to come or to signal you from above as to how it goes with me. And if during this interval or on the third day I do not return, you can believe that my undertaking is not going well, and you will take whatever course of action you please."

Grasandor said to him: "I am very sorry, sir, that you do not consider me capable of enduring to the point of death whatever danger may be in store for us, especially if I am in your company;

for what vigor you have in excess can well compensate for what I lack, and I want my share of the good or ill fortune resulting."

Amadis embraced him laughing and said: "My lord, do not take in that way what I said, for you already know very well that I am a witness to how self-sufficient your courage is. And since such is your pleasure, let it be done as you say."

Then they ordered themselves given something to eat, which was done; and after they had eaten what would suffice them for such a steep climb on foot, for on horseback it would be impossible they took all their arms except their lances and set out on their way, which was entirely hewn to the top of the cliff, but very rugged to climb. And thus they climbed a good part of the day, sometimes walking and at other times frequently resting, for with the weight of their armor they experienced great difficulty. And halfway up the cliff they found a house resembling a hermitage and built of stone, and inside it an idollike image of metal with a great metallic crown on its head, and which had against its breasts a great square, gilded tablet of that same metal, which the image was holding with both hands as if embracing it. And on the tablet were inscribed some very large, well-formed Greek letters, that were quite legible, although they dated from the time that the Maiden Enchantress had been there more than two hundred years before; for this maiden had been the daughter of a native of the city of Argos in Greece named Finetor, a great sage in all the arts, and particularly in those of magic and necromancy. And the daughter turned out to be of such fine talent that she gave herself over to learning those arts and she mastered them to such an extent that she knew them very much better than her father or anyone else of that time. And as has been stated, she came to establish a settlement on that rock. The way she did this, because its narration would necessitate a lengthy and tedious digression, is omitted from our story.

Amadis and Grasandor entered the hermitage, sat down to rest on a rock bench that they found in it, and after a bit, got up and went to look at the image, which seemed to them very beautiful. And they gazed at it a long while and saw the letters, which Amadis began to read; for at the time he traveled through Greece he had acquired some knowledge of the Greek alphabet

and language, much of which the physician Elisabad had taught him when they were traveling by sea, and he had also taught him the German language and those of other lands, of which he acquired a good knowledge, as a man who was learned in all the arts and had traveled through many provinces. And the inscription read as follows: "In the time that the great island will flourish and be ruled by the powerful king, and will be dominant over many other kingdoms and knights famous throughout the world, supremacy at arms and the flower of beauty, peerless in their own time, will be united. And from them will issue the one who will draw out the sword, whereby the destiny of his having been knighted will be fulfilled, and the mighty stone doors which guard the great treasure will be opened."

When Amadis had read the inscription, he said to Grasandor: "Sir, have you read this inscription?"

"No," said he, "for I do not understand the language in which it is written."

Amadis told him everything that it said. It seemed to him to be an ancient prophecy, and it was his opinion that that adventure would not be accomplished by either of them; although he certainly thought that he and his lady Oriana could well be those two by whom there was to be engendered that knight who would fulfill it. But he did not say anything about this to Grasandor. And Grasandor said to him: "If it is not fulfilled by you who are the son of the best knight in the world — the one who in his own time has held and maintained the exercise of arms at the highest level — and of the queen who according to what I have learned, was one of the most beautiful women of her time, a long period will ensue before it has fulfillment. Therefore let us go ahead up the rock and not fail to see and to test everything; for just as for others it is a rare thing to carry out a great adventure, so it will be much more rare for you to fail to accomplish it. And if such a thing happens, I shall see what no one in your time has been able to see until today."

Amadis laughed heartily and made no answer; but he well saw that Grasandor's remark was worth little, because neither the excellence of his father at arms nor the beauty of his mother equaled in any degree the corresponding attributes of himself

and Oriana. And he said to him: "Now let us go up and if possible let us reach the top before nightfall."

Then they left the hermitage and with great difficulty began to climb, for the cliff was very high and steep. They progressed so slowly that before they reached the summit, night overtook them, so that they had to remain under a cliff, where they stayed all night, talking about past events, and mostly about their beloved wives, to whom they had lost their hearts, and about the other ladies who were with them. Amadis told Grasandor that if he were not afraid of the anger and fury of his lady, after coming down from the cliff they would go where Don Cuadragante, Don Bruneo, Agrajes and their other friends were in order to help Don Cuadragante. Grasandor said to him: "I should like to do so; but it would not be proper at such a time as this, because in view of the fact that you left the Firm Island in such a hurry and I with equal haste came to seek you, if we delay here, it would cause your beloved to suffer great sadness and grief, especially since she doesn't know that I have found you; so I would deem it a good idea that we go see her before taking any avoidable trip elsewhere. Meanwhile we shall ascertain more news of those knights you mention and then make the best decision possible. And if our help is needed, let us provide it accompanied by more people."

"So be it," said Amadis, "and let our journey be by way of Princess Island, and there we shall obtain a boat for one of these squires of yours in which he may bear to Balan the giant my letter in which I shall beg him to send from his island a message to where they are fighting, so that on the Firm Island, where we shall wait for him, we may quickly be advised of their progress."

"That will be a very good idea," said Grasandor.

Thus they remained under the cliff, at times talking and at others sleeping, until day came, when they began to accomplish what little remained of the ascent. And when they were at the summit, they looked all about and saw a very large plain and many ruins of houses, and in the center of the plain were some very large edifices, for the most part in ruins. They went at once to see them and entered beneath a stone arch, on top of which was a stone image of a maiden carved with great perfection. And she was gripping in her right hand a pen of the same kind of

stone, held as if she intended to write; and in the left hand a placard bearing in Greek letters the inscription: "Certain knowledge is of more avail with the gods than with men, and all else is vanity."

Amadis read the writing in Greek and told Grasandor what it meant. And furthermore he said: "If wise men took cognizance of the mercy that they receive from God through His gift of so much of His grace so that many others may be ruled, counseled and governed by them, and if they would be willing to utilize their wisdom by taking care to rid their souls of those things that can inhibit them from proceeding with that same enlightenment and purity as that very high Lord of theirs caused to be brought into the world, how fruitful and helpful their knowledge would be! But when the opposite situation obtains, as generally happens to us through our wicked inclinations and natures, that knowledge that was given us for our salvation we use on things that by promising us the mundane and perishable favors, delights and advantages of this world cause us to lose the other, eternal world without end, just as this unfortunate maiden did, who in those few letters sets forth such great maxims and teachings. And although her judgment was so fully endowed and provided with all the most subtle arts, she took so little cognizance of her great learning and was so unable to profit from it. But let us now cease to talk further about this matter, since by making mistakes as did our predecessors, we shall pursue what they pursued; and let us go ahead and see what happens to us."

So they passed through that archway and entered a large yard in which there were fountains of water beside which there appeared to have been large structures that now were in ruins, and of the houses that formerly had been erected round about them, nothing was in evidence except their stone walls, which the water had not been able to wear away. And furthermore they found among those ruins many dens of serpents that were wont to take refuge there; and they really thought that they would not be able to see what they were looking for without incurring some great danger. But it was not so, for none of the serpents or anything else could they see to hinder them.

Thus they went forward through the houses, clasping their shields, helmeted with their unsheathed swords in their hands;

and passing through that yard they entered a large hall that was arched, in which the strength of the cement and stone had been able to preserve the arches so that after so many years a great part of their fine workmanship was still visible. At the end of this hall they saw more closed doors of stone so closely joined that nothing on the inside could be seen, and where they were joined a sword was thrust through to the hilt. Then they realized that was the enchanted chamber where the treasure was. They examined closely the sword guard, but could not determine the material of which it was made, so rare was its handiwork, especially in the case of the pommel and the crossbar; for the hand grips seemed to them of bone as transparent as crystal and as flaming red as a fine ruby. And likewise they saw on the right side of one door seven letters very well carved and as red as fresh blood; and on the other side were other letters much whiter than the stone, that were in Latin and read thus: "In vain will toil the knight who may seek to draw out this sword from here by dint of his own valor and strength, unless he be the one who exhibits the letters that the image bears depicted on the tablet it holds against its breast, and who will match with these the seven fiery red letters on his own chest. For this man the sword has been reserved by that woman who out of her great knowledge succeeded in learning that neither in her time nor for many years thereafter would there come any other who would be his equal."

When Amadis saw this and looked very closely at the red letters, he immediately recalled that such were those that his son Esplandian had on his left side; and he was convinced that for Esplandian, as a better knight than all others, even surpassing himself in excellence, that adventure was reserved. And he said to Grasandor: "What do you think of these letters?"

"I think," said he, "that I understand well what the white letters say, but I don't succeed in deciphering the red ones."

"Nor do I," said Amadis, "although I think I have already seen elsewhere other letters similar to these, and I believe that you have seen them."

Then Grasandor looked at them again more closely than before and said: "Holy Mary save us! These are the same ones that your son has, and to him this adventure is promised. Now I tell you that you will go from here without accomplishing it;

and blame yourself for having engendered another who is a better man than you are."

Amadis said to him: "My good friend, do believe that when we read the letters on the tablet held by the image in the hermitage through which we passed, I had this same thought that you are expressing. And because I do not consider myself as good as it says there that the one will be who engenders that knight, I dared not say so to you. But these letters cause me to believe what you have said."

Grasandor said to him, laughing good-humoredly: "Let us descend from here and return to our companions, for it seems to me that from here we shall carry off the honors and the victory in the self-same way. And let us leave all this for that young man who is beginning to ascend to where you are descending from."

Thus they both departed, much pleased with each other. And when they were outside of the great palace, Amadis said: "Let us see whether that enchanted chamber has any other place through which one could enter it by exercising cleverness."

Then they circled the buildings where the chamber was, and they found that it was entirely of solid masonry without any seams.

"Well protected," said Grasandor, "is this fortune. It will be well that we leave it for its owner, and that in hope of winning this sword that you have come to obtain, you do not leave that sword of yours that you have won with so many sighs and anxieties and such great earnestness of heart."

Grasandor said this because Amadis had won it as the most exalted and faithful lover of his time; for it could not have been achieved without his heart's having been subjected to many periods of intense anxiety, just as the second Book of this story relates.

Then they went across that plain, at the place where it seemed to them there had been the greatest density of population, and they found some ruined baths and very well-made small huts with some images of metal and others of stone, and likewise many other antique objects.

Then while they were occupied in the way you hear, they saw approaching them a knight armed completely in white armor

with sword in hand, who had come up along the same path as they had, for there was no other way to ascend. As he approached them, he greeted them and they him; and the knight said to them: "Knights, are you from the Firm Island?"

"Yes," said they, "why do you ask?"

"Because I found down there at the foot of this cliff some men in a boat, who told me that two knights from the Firm Island were up here, and I could not ascertain from them their names. And because I likewise am from there, I would not like to have any dispute with anyone else from there unless it was peaceful, for I come in quest of a wicked knight and I bring the information that he has taken refuge here with a maiden whom he is abducting."

Amadis, when he heard this, said: "Knight, for the sake of courtesy, I ask you to tell us your name, or that you take off your helmet."

"If you," said he, "tell and assure me on your word of honor that you are from the Firm Island, I will tell you my name; otherwise it will be futile to ask it of me."

"I tell you," said Grasandor, "on our word of honor that we are from where you were told."

Then the knight took off his helmet and said: "Now you will be able to recognize me if it is as you have said."

When they saw him thus they recognized that it was Gandalin. Amadis went toward him with open arms and said to him: "O my good friend and brother! How lucky I have been to find you!"

Gandalin was greatly astonished, for he still did not recognize him: and Grasandor said to him: "Gandalin, Amadis holds you embraced."

When he heard this, he knelt and took his hands and kissed them many times. But Amadis lifted him up and embraced him again as one whom he loved with all his heart. Then Amadis and Grasandor took off their helmets, and they asked him what adventure had brought him there. He said to them: "Good sirs, that same thing I might ask you, in view of where I left you and the remote and rugged spot where I now find you. But I intend to answer what you ask me. Know you that while I was with Agrajes and the other knights accompanying him on those

conquests that you know about, after our having won a great battle in which many troops suffered — a battle that we had with a nephew of King Arabigo, thereby putting his forces under siege within the great city of Arabia — one day there entered Agrajes' tent a matron from the kingdom of Norway, dressed entirely in black, who threw herself at the feet of Agrajes asking very humbly that he be willing to help her in her great distress. Agrajes had her get up and seated her beside him, asking her to tell him what her trouble was, and saying that he would afford her help if it could be done with just cause. The matron replied: 'Sir Agrajes, I am from the kingdom of Norway, of which my mistress Olinda, your wife, is a native. And I, being a native and vassal of the king her father, come to you in the name of the kinship and ties of love that you have with that lord and that lady to ask from you the aid of some good knight in forcing the return to me of a maiden, my daughter, who has been taken from me by force by a wicked knight, lord of the Great Tower by the Sea, because I did not wish to give her to him for his wife, for he is not in lineage and blood the equal of my daughter; rather, he is of low estate, except that he succeeded in becoming the owner of that tower, whereby he subjugates much of that region in which he lives. And my husband was a first cousin of Don Grumedan, the foster father of Queen Brisena of Great Britain. And never for anything that I have done has the knight been willing to return my daughter to me. And he says that only by force of arms may I hope to see her again in my company.'

"Agrajes said to her: 'Lady, how is it that the king your lord does not render justice to you?'

" 'Sir,' said she, 'the king is now very old and ailing, so that he cannot govern himself or anyone else.'

" 'Well, is it far from here,' said Agrajes, 'to where that knight is?'

" 'No,' said she, 'for in one day and one night with favorable weather it can be reached by sea.'

"When I heard this, I earnestly entreated Agrajes to give me permission to go with the matron, saying that if God should give me victory, I would return with the knight at once. Agrajes gave me permission, and commanded me not to involve myself

in any adventure other than this one. I so promised him. Then I took my arms and my horse and embarked with the matron on a ship on which she had come there, and we traveled all the rest of that day. And the next day at noon we landed, and the matron came with me and guided me to the region where the knight's tower was. When we reached it, I knocked at the gate, and a man answered me from a window, asking what I wanted. I told him to tell the knight who was the lord of that tower to give up at once a maiden that he had taken from the lady whom I was bringing with me, or to give reasons why he could and ought to hold her; and I added that if he did not do so, it was certain that no person would come out of that tower whom I would not kill or seize. The man answered me saying: 'What you can do is of very little concern to us here; but wait, for very quickly you will have what you are asking for.'

"Then I withdrew from the tower and a little while later they opened the gates, and a very tall knight came out, armed with bright yellow armor and riding a big horse, and he said to me: 'Knight, you who make senseless threats, what is your complaint and what is it that you want?'

"I said to him: 'I do not threaten or challenge you until I know the reason that you have for holding by force a maiden, the daughter of this matron, who tells me that you abducted her.'

" 'Well, even if the matron speaks the truth,' said he, 'what can you do about it?'

" 'Exact amends from you,' said I, 'if it be the will of God.'

"The knight said: 'Then at this lance point I am willing to yield her.'

"And at once he brashly came at me, and I at him. And we had our combat, which lasted a good part of the day. But finally, as I was sustaining the truth and that knight was defending the opposite, God willed to give me the victory, so that I had him stretched out at my feet in order to cut off his head. And he begged me for mercy's sake not to kill him, saying that he would do my bidding completely. I ordered him to give the maiden to her mother and to swear never to take any woman against her will, which he agreed to do. Then this having been agreed upon, I set him free, and he asked my permission to enter the tower,

stating that he himself would bring me the maiden. I trusted him and let him go; but a short while after he entered the tower, he went out through another door that faced the sea, and still armor-clad he got into a boat with the maiden and said to me: 'Knight, do not wonder that I do not keep my word, for the great power of love motivates me; because without this maiden I would not live a single hour. And since I cannot control or rule myself, do not blame me, I implore you, for any action of mine that you may perceive; and so that you may lose hope of ever having her, and her mother likewise, you see that I am going away with her over this sea to where it will be a long time before anyone locates me or her.'

"And as he said this, with an oar that he was gripping he shoved off from shore at full speed and went ahead over the sea with the maiden weeping very piteously. When I saw this, I was so very sad and regretful that I would have preferred death to life, because in my presence the lady who had brought me there rent her head-dress and clothing, making the saddest lamentation in the world, very grievous to behold, saying that she had received more harm from me than from the knight; because while her daughter was in that tower she always had the hope of recovering her, which now had completely come to an end, since she had seen her go where her eyes would never again be able to see her, for which I had been the cause; for although I had been enabled to defeat the knight, my discretion was not adequate to obtain from him the justice that she was expecting; and that not only was she ungrateful to me for what I had done, but that she would complain to everybody about me. I consoled her the best I could and said to her: 'Lady, do not hold me greatly at fault for not having been able to carry out that for which you brought me; because I ought to have realized that a knight who was so perfidiously holding your daughter by force would naturally be of little integrity in all other respects. But since that is the way it is I promise you that I shall never rest or have repose until, either on land or sea, I find him and bring you the maiden, or die in this endeavor. I ask of you only, since you are remaining in your land, that you aid me by letting me have the boat in which we came, together with one of your men to steer it.'

"The matron, comforted somewhat by this statement, told me to take it; and she ordered one of her men to go with me and to note well what I had promised her and what I would be doing about it. With this I took leave of her and went back over the route I had pursued in coming there. And when I reached the boat, it was already pitch-dark, so that I had to wait until morning. When it came, I took the route that I had seen the knight take with the maiden. I traveled that entire day without finding any trace of him, and then I journeyed for five days more, sailing at random. And this morning I met some men who were going fishing; and they told me that they had seen an armed knight coming in a boat, that he was bringing a maiden with him, and that they were going in the direction of this rock that is called the Rock of the Maiden Enchantress. When I ascertained this, I ordered the man who was guiding me to bring me here; and when I was at the base of the cliff, I found those who had accompanied you, and an empty boat at some distance from them, and I asked them for information about the knight and the maiden. They told me that they had not seen him, only that empty boat that was there, and for this reason I climbed up here to the summit, for I thought that undoubtedly this faithless knight had taken refuge here, and also that I might attempt an adventure of an enchanted chamber that those fishermen told me was on this rock, to see whether I could accomplish it; and if not, to be able to give information about it to those unaware of it."

Grasandor said to him laughing: "My good friend Gandalin, let the matter of the knight and the maiden be given your attention; for this adventure of which you speak will be left for later, because it is not so easy to accomplish."

Then they told him all that had happened to them, at which Gandalin was greatly astonished. Amadis said to him: "We have gone over most of this plain and through most of these houses, but we have not seen any person. Since that is the case, let us investigate everything to satisfy your desire."

Then all three began to search all of those ruined houses. And in a short while they found the knight with the maiden in a bathhouse. He, when he saw them, came out at once, leading

her by the hand and said: "Sir knights, for whom are you searching?"

"For you, master scoundrel," said Gandalin, "for now your lies and deceits will no longer be able to help you to avoid paying me for the trick you played on me and the trouble that I have taken to find you."

Then the knight recognized from his white armor that he was the one who had defeated him, and he said to him: "Knight, I have already told you that the great love I have for this maiden causes me not to be my own master. And if you or any other of these knights knows what true love is, you will not blame me for anything that I may do. Do with me what you will, provided that nothing short of death separates me from this woman."

Amadis, when he heard him speak, well recognized from the state of his own heart and because of the great love he had always had for his lady that the knight was blameless, since he no longer had the strength to control himself. And he said: "Knight, although what you say excuses somewhat your great guilt, not on that account ought this knight who comes in quest of you to forego exacting satisfaction from you on behalf of this maiden's mother, for if he did not do so, he would very rightly be adjudged culpable by honorable men."

The knight said to him: "Good sir, I recognize that to be so, and if it is agreeable to him I place myself in his custody in order that he may conduct me to the matron you mention, at whose request he fought with me, so that she may do with me whatever she wishes. And may he help me, since the daughter is content with me, to have the mother also be satisfied and give her to me for my wife."

Amadis asked the maiden if he was speaking the truth. She said he was, that although until then she had been in his power against her will, when she saw the great love that he had for her and in what on her account he had involved himself, her heart was now given over to loving and esteeming him, and having him for her husband. Amadis said to Gandalin: "Take them both and put them in the custody of that matron; and in whatever way you can, contrive that he may have her for his wife, since that is pleasing to her."

Whereupon they all eame down the cliff and slept that night in the hermitage with the metal image, and there they supped on what the knight and the maiden had for themselves. Next day they went down to where they had their boats, and Gandalin took leave of them and went away with the knight and the maiden. But first Amadis and Grasandor talked with him, and told him to give their regards to Agrajes and those friends of theirs, and to say that if they needed troops, to let them know at the Firm Island; for they would go personally or would send troops at once.

So they parted. And Gandalin on arriving at the matron's home, put the knight and her daughter into her custody; and just as with the love that that knight demonstrated for that maiden she had changed her mind, as women are accustomed to do, so the mother, fortunately having the same nature as her daughter, changed hers on account of what she had been told by Gandalin and by some others who had sought to straighten out the matter, so that to the pleasure and eontentment of all they were married.

This done, Gandalin returned to where Agrajes was; who was very pleased with him on aceount of the news that he told him concerning Amadis; and he found that everybody was quite happy beeause of the good fortune that had come to them at that siege; because after they had surrounded their enemies in that city, as you have already heard, they had had great fights, in which most of the best knights who were inside were killed or crippled; and also on account of the arrival of Don Galaor and of Don Galvanes, who, when they had left Dragonis on the Deep Island as its king, without any delay very quickly had boarded their fleet and had come to help them; for just as it happens that the ailing, when they leave their beds after a severe illness and continue eonvaleseing, think only of the things that conform to their desire and will, and thereby believe they dispel entirely the vestiges of their illness; so this king of Sobradisa, Don Galaor, when he beheld himself over that severe illness in whieh he had seen himself many times at the point of death, thought only of satisfying his desires or of mending his health with those affairs that his valiant and courageous heart demanded of him; for in this consisted all his enjoyment and great pleasure, as one who

from the day that his brother Amadis dubbed him knight in front of the castle of the Causeway in the presenee of Urganda the Unknown, never had put out of his mind the desire to know and practiec everything that pertained to the order of chivalry — as this great story relates everywhere that it makes mention of him — he being now heedless of the fact that he was a powerful king as husband of that very beautiful Queen Briolanja; and that in view of the feats at arms already performed by him, with much reason and cause he could have rested and enjoyed peace of mind for a long period. But considering that honor has no conclusion and is so delicate that with very little neglect it can be tarnished, especially in those whom Fortune has plaeed at its pinnacle, putting everything aside, this vigorous king sought to undertake the enterprise of helping Dragonis, his eousin, as you have heard; and not being content with the outcome of that eonfrontation and travail, to go immediately as fast as he could to help those knights who were his great friends.

Oh, how much consideration those born into this world to practice knighthood ought to give to all this, and to the fact that although for some time they may give a good account of their honor, by allowing that great obligation they have to be forgotten, not only do their arms become rusty, but their fame beeomes so tarnished that for a long time they eannot rid themselves of the stigma! For just as eraftsmen in any eraft by following it with diligence are established honorably and free of need according to their status, whereas by becoming forgetful of it because of their heedlessness and carelessness they lose what they have won, coming to poverty and misery; so by the same token knights by failing to heed what they ought to do, have their honor, their fame and virtue attacked and demolished amid great need and misery.

And this noble king Galaor in order not to fall into this error, keeping always in mind as models his father King Perion and his brothers, who were what you have heard, the moment that the affair of the Deep Island was settled departed just as you have been told, with Don Galvanes to help him, to bring to a conclusion the winning of the other project. And their arrival infused such great vigor in those on their side and such fear in their opponents that from the day that they arrived there, never

again did their enemies make bold to go outside the walls, so that in a short time they expected to win that whole kingdom.

But now we shall leave them in their camps laying plans to fight their enemies, who did not dare come out to them; and the story will tell you of Amadis and Grasandor, who left Gandalin by the Rock of the Maiden Enchantress and went on to the Firm Island. The story says that after Amadis and Grasandor left Gandalin at the foot of the Rock of the Maiden Enchantress, they sailed so far over the sea that without any difficulty or hindrance they arrived one morning at the great harbor of the Firm Island; and on disembarking, armed just as they were, they mounted their horses. And before climbing up to the castle they went to say their prayers in the monastery at the foot of the cliff, which Amadis had ordered built at the time that he came from the Poor Rock, and in fulfillment of his promise before the image of the Virgin Mary, which was at that time in the hermitage. And on reaching the gate, they found there a matron dressed in black, accompanied by two squires, and their palfreys were nearby. They greeted her, and she likewise greeted them. And while Amadis and Grasandor were kneeling before the altar, the matron found out from some people of the monastery that that was Amadis, and she waited for him at the door of the church. Then when she saw him coming, she went to him weeping, knelt down and said to him: "My lord Amadis, are you not that knight who brings aid to the afflicted and wretched, especially to matrons and maidens? Certainly if it were not so, your great fame would not be publicized with such honor everywhere in the world. Hence I, as one of the saddest and most unfortunate of women, ask of you mercy and pity."

Then she seized him so firmly with both hands by the skirt of his coat of mail that she did not let him take a single step forward. Amadis sought to lift her up, but could not, and said to her: "Good friend, tell me who you are and why you wish my help, for in view of your great sadness, even if I were to fail all other matrons, for you alone I would expose my person to every danger and risk that might come to me."

The matron said to him: "Who I am you will not know until from you I have assurance that you will accede to my petition; but what I ask is as follows: I am married to a knight whom I

greatly love, and his and my great misfortune has caused him to be imprisoned by the greatest enemy that he has in this world, and he cannot leave prison and be restored to me except through your kind offices; so be assured that these knees of mine never will be lifted from this floor or my hands taken away from this coat of mail — provided that with great violence and discourtesy you don't force me to remove them — until you grant what I ask."

When Amadis saw her behave thus and heard what she was saying, he did not know what to answer, for he was afraid to pledge his word to something that might turn out later to be very embarrassing to him. But because he saw her weeping so violently, and holding so firmly to his coat of mail while kneeling, he was moved to such great compassion that forgetting to obtain assurance that his aid to her would be in a just cause, he said to her: "Lady, tell me who you are, and I promise you to take your husband out from where he is imprisoned and deliver him to you if it can be accomplished by me."

Then the matron seized his hands and forcibly kissed them, and said to Grasandor: "Sir knight, observe what Amadis promises me." And then she said, "Know you, my lord Amadis, that I am the wife of Arcalaus the Enchanter, whom you have imprisoned. I demand of you that you give him to me and place him for me where this time I need not fear losing him; for you are the greatest enemy that he has, and I ask for him, as it were, from a mortal enemy, in order to make him a friend if I can."

When Amadis heard this, he was very much disturbed to see himself so cleverly deceived by that matron; and if he had found an honorable way not to comply, he would gladly have adopted it, for he feared more the danger and the harm that from that wicked knight could come to many who did not deserve it, than what might come to him from Arcalaus. But perceiving the strong motive that that matron had and that since she was under such an obligation to save her husband, she could not rightfully be blamed; and above all desiring that his word and veracity not be in any way impugned, he agreed to do what she asked, and said to her: "Madam, you have asked a great deal of me, for you can be very certain that I regard the forcing of my will to consent to what you ask of me as a greater confrontation than

to constrain my heart to rescue your husband by force of arms from anywhere he might be, however much danger might be risked in the effort. And I can indeed say that from the time I became a knight, never has any service or help that I have rendered to matron or maiden been so against my will as this one."

Then he and Grasandor mounted their horses, and Amadis told the matron to follow them, and they went up to the castle.

When Oriana and Mabilia learned of their arrival, the great pleasure and joy that they experienced was indescribable. And at once she and all those ladies who were there came out to welcome them at the entrance to the garden where they were. It will be unnecessary to describe the embraces and other signs of affection with which Amadis and his lady greeted each other, because although up to the present time mention has been made of them as lovers, now since they are already married, their relationship should be a private matter, although they continue with the same true love as ever.

Olinda the Prudent and Grasinda embraced Amadis and Grasandor, and all those present repaired to their apartments; which, as you have already heard, they had in the great tower which was in that garden, where they disported themselves with great delight, as persons who loved each other with all their hearts.

Amadis ordered the matron lodged and given everything she needed. And the next morning they all heard mass with Grasinda in her apartment. As soon as it was celebrated, the wife of Arealaus asked Amadis to fulfill his promise. He told her that he was willing. Then all those present went together to the castle where Arealaus was imprisoned in the iron cage. And since Amadis had spoken with him in the town of Lubayna when they had taken him prisoner, he had never made an effort to see him; nor had those ladies seen him, because except when they went forth to welcome King Lisuarte and on the day of the weddings, they had never gone out of the garden.

And when they arrived they found him wearing a jubbah lined with very valuable fur from animals captured on that island — a garment which Don Gandales, Amadis's foster father, had given him because it was winter — and he was reading a book of very good apothegms and teachings on the adversities of

Fortune, likewise sent by Gandales. He wore a very long grey beard; and as he was very large of body and ugly of countenance and always looked quite enraged, and much more so at that time when he saw them coming toward him, those ladies were quite frightened on seeing him, and especially Oriana, who remembered when she was being carried away by force, and Amadis had taken her away from him and four other knights, as the first Book of this story relates. When they arrived, he stopped reading and stood up; and he saw his wife but did not say anything. Amadis said to him: "Arcalaus, do you know this matron?"

"Yes, I know her."

"Are you pleased with her coming?"

"If it is to my benefit," said he, "you can decide; but if it bears no other fruit than what is apparent, it is not a pleasure; for as I am resolved to endure all the harm that can come to me, and already have my heart under control to that end, other than that the sight of her might bring me hope of some relief, it is the cause of greater suffering for me."

Amadis said to him: "If with her coming you are free of this imprisonment, will you be grateful to me for it and will you recognize it in advance?"

"If of your own free will," said he, "you sent for her in order to do as you say, I shall always greatly appreciate it. But if she came without your approval or knowledge and you have promised her something, I cannot thank you, because good deeds that are motivated more by necessity than out of charity are not worthy of being deemed of much merit. And therefore I earnestly beg you to tell me, if you think it proper, what has caused her and you to come to see me with these ladies."

Amadis said to him: "I shall tell you the truth about everything exactly as it took place, and I entreat you to be just as truthful in answering me."

Then he told him how his wife by deceitful means had asked a favor of him, and how she had begged him to set him free, and everything that he had said to her in reply, omitting nothing. Arcalaus said to Amadis: "However it may affect my fortunes, I shall tell you the complete truth concerning my attitude, since you wish to know it. If, in Lubayna when I asked you for pity and mercy, you had taken pity on me by setting me free, rest

assured that all the rest of my life I would have been under obligation to you and you always would have found me behaving as a true friend. But by setting me free now when you are constrained to do so against your will, just as you do me wickedly this good turn so do I thus receive it and rate it as it deserves; for you still would have a low opinion of me and would have deemed me lacking in courage if I had thanked you for what I ought to hate you for."

"I have enjoyed," said Amadis, "what you have said, and you speak the truth, for on account of my releasing you from here you ought not to be indebted to me; because certainly I was determined to hold you for a long time, believing that it was more proper to give you the punishment you deserved than for you to have given it to many who did not deserve it. But because of the promise that I made to this matron I shall order you taken out of this prison and released. One thing I ask of you: namely, — even if in intent and deed you not forgive me, and even if you treat me as evilly as you always have in the past — that you spare the others who have never done you any harm. And do this for that Lord who, when you least expeeted release and I least expected to grant it to you, was pleased to remedy your misfortunes; for out of His boundless mercy he does so for wieked men after he has tested them, so that on aecount of sueh scourgings and trials they may put an end to the deeds that are eontrary to His service. And when they recognize this, He renders good their remaining life in this world and in the next, bestowing on them blessed joy which is without end. And if they do the opposite, He gives them the opposite by executing justice with the punishment that they deserve without any hope remaining to them or any remedy for their souls after those souls have departed from their bodies."

Arcalaus said to him: "As for you, it is obvious that in nowise would I wish you well, nor shall I cease to do you all the harm I ean. About the other people of whom you speak I do not know what I shall do, because in view of my very ingrained habit of doing so much evil I have little hope left that that Lord you mention will give me His grace without my deserving it; and without it my nature would not be able to resist or oppose a thing so difficult and so forcign to its desires. And even assuming

that it were able to do so, I would resist doing it on your advice in order that through me you would not win the glory that you have won through everyone else. And if I have received some mercy from God, it consists only in my not having made any concession or opened my heart to you; for when I with so much humility asked you to set me free, instead God willed that it should be done in spite of you and so much against your will as to leave nothing for which I could be in your debt."

Those ladies were very frightened to hear what Arcalaus said to him, and they earnestly entreated Amadis not to set him free, because he would be erring more against God by permitting that evil man, once he was released, to carry out freely his wicked desires, than he would if he broke his promise by holding him prisoner.

Amadis said to them: "My ladies, just as it frequently happens that people in great adversity are reformed and improved by keeping their hearts quite strong and steadfast in their hope for the merey of God, so for those lacking in this respect, that hope and that mercy (which they lack) are the cause of their despair, whereby without any recourse, they are damned. And so it could happen to this Arcalaus if I held him here any longer, since I recognize that in this way it is not possible for him to be reformed or corrected. I shall keep my word and maintain my veracity, leaving the rest to that Lord who in an instant is capable of bringing him into His holy service, just as He has done in the case of many other worse sinners."

Whereupon they broke off their conversation, and the matron by order of Amadis was put into the iron cage with her husband to keep him company that night; and Amadis returned with those ladies to the garden tower. And the next morning Amadis gave orders to call Ysanjo, governor of the island; and he asked him to take Arcalaus and his wife out of the prison and give him a horse and arms, and to have his sons with ten knights escort him to where he would be contented and his wife satisfied concerning what she had asked for. This was carried out, for the sons of Ysanjo went with him as far as his castle of Valderin, where they left him. And as they were about to take their leave, Arcalaus said to them: "Knights, tell Amadis that fierce beasts and dumb animals are accustomed to being put in cages, but not such

knights as I; that he should beware of me, for I intend to avenge myself quiekly on him, even if that wieked whore Urganda the Unknown eomes to his assistance."

They said to him: "By this road you will quickly rcturn to the plaee you left."

And thereupon they returned home.

One ean well believe that sinee this matron, wife of this Arcalaus, was very pious and God-fearing, and at all the slayings and cruelties that her husband perpetrated, she was very sorrowful and heartsiek, excusing all of them that she could, by her own worthiness she obtained this divine favor of extricating her husband from where all those in the world would not have been able to release him. So a good matron and devout wife ought to be highly appreciated and greatly esteemed because through her, many times our Lord permits possessions, children and husband to be proteeted from great danger.

Just as you hear, Amadis and Grasandor were in heartfelt enjoyment with their wives on the Firm Island; where in a short time Darioleta arrived with her husband and daughter and the latter's husband Bravor, all of whom added greatly to their joy.

But now the story will cease to speak of them and will tell of what was done by Balan, the giant of the Island of the Vermilion Tower. The story relates that two weeks after Amadis and Grasandor departed from the Island of the Vermilion Tower where they had lcft Balan, the giant, the worse for wcar, the giant arose from his bed and gave orders to give to Darioleta, her husband and their daughter, many precious jewels and a very good ship in whieh to depart. And he sent his son Bravor with them, just as he had promised Amadis; and as soon as they had left there he had quite a large fleet made ready, not only of his own ships, of which he had many, but also of others that he had taken from those who traveled thereabouts; and he fitted out this fleet with arms and men, and with as many provisions as it could carry, and in vcry good weather put out to sea.

And so far did he travel without any setbaek that in ten days he arrived at thc harbor of a small town that had the name Licrea and was under the sovereignty of King Arabigo. And there he found out that those lords had the great city of Arabia surrounded, and were besieging it vigorously, especially after

Don Galaor, King of Sobradisa, and Don Galvanes arrived there. And at once he had all his troops disembarked, and their horses and arms taken ashore along with crossbowmen and archers and all the camp equipment. Then, leaving on board the guards necessary to assure the fleet's safety, he went directly to the place where he knew King Galaor and Don Galvanes were dwelling. When they learned of his arrival from messengers of the giant, they mounted with a large retinue and sallied forth to welcome him. The giant came up with his own very good company, he himself wearing very fine armor and mounted on a very beautiful big horse, so that there could have been few of his size to appear so fine and so gallant. They already knew what had happened to him with Amadis, for Gandalin had told them about it exactly as it had happened. And Don Galaor put Don Galvanes out in front, for although in dominions he was not his equal, in age he was much his senior. For this reason, and also because of the great lineage from which he was descended, and on account of his fine personal qualities, Amadis, his brothers, and Agrajes always accorded him much courtesy. The giant did not recognize him, for he had never seen him, although he knew about him in great detail because Madasima, the wife of this Don Galvanes, was a niece of Madasima, mother of this Balan, as has already been told you. And when he came up, the giant said to him: "My good lord, are you Don Galaor?"

"No," said he, "I am Don Galvanes, and I've been looking forward to meeting you."

Then the giant embraced him and said to him: "My lord Don Galvanes, in view of our relationship so much time should not have passed without your seeing me; but the enmity that I had with one who is your very close friend has caused the delay. But this is already dispelled by the hand of that man, who in discretion and courage has no equal."

King Galaor came up laughing to embrace him affably and said: "My good friend and lord, I am the one for whom you ask."

Balan looked at him and said: "Truly your appearance is a good proof of it, in view of its resemblance to that of the man because of whom I wanted to know you."

The giant said this because Amadis and Don Galaor resembled each other very much, so much so that in many places one was

taken for the other, except that Don Galaor was somewhat taller and Amadis heavier.

This done, they took King Galaor between them and went to their encampment; and while Balan's lodging was being made ready, Don Galvanes conducted him to his own tent, where he was served as was requisite and obligatory in the case of both of them.

CHAPTER CXXXI

How agrajes and don cuadragante and don bruneo de bonamar with many other knights came to see the giant balan, and what they experienced in his company.

Agrajes and Don Cuadragante and Don Bruneo de Bonamar, when they learned of the arrival of that giant, took with them Angriote de Estravaus, Don Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, Palomir, Don Brian de Monjaste and many other knights of great renown who were there with them to help them win those dominions that you have heard about, and they all went to the camp of King Galaor and Don Galvanes, where the giant was lodged; and they found him in Don Galvanes' tent, which was the finest and best made that any emperor or king could have; and which he had acquired through his wife Madasima, it having been left to her by Famongomadan, her father.

In this tent, each year, after he had it set up in a meadow that was in front of the castle of the Boiling Lake, Famongomadan used to have his son Basagante sit on a luxurious dais together with all his relatives, who were many and who obeyed him as a master because of his great strength and wealth. And his vassals and many other people that he held in subjugation by force of arms, were wont to do homage to him as King of Great Britain. And with this in mind he sent to ask King Lisuarte for Oriana as a wife for Basagante, that son of his; and because the king did not wish to give her to him, he was waging a very cruel war against him at the time that Amadis killed both of them and released Leonoreta, sister of Oriana, together with ten knights

whom they had taken prisoners with her, as the second Book of this story relates in greater detail.

Then at the time that these knights arrived, the giant Balan was unarmed and clothed in a cape of yellow silk with some roses on it beautifully broidered in gold. As he was tall and handsome and in the flower of manhood, everyone was well impressed with him, and much more so after they had talked with him; because, in view of the fact that they knew the very overbearing ways of giants, and how by nature they were all very disagreeable, haughty and utterly unreasonable, they had no idea that any of them possessed qualities so diametrically opposite, as was the case with this Balan. And for this reason they appreciated him much more than for his extreme valor — although many of them knew about great feats at arms that he had accomplished — because in their view great strength without a good nature and good discretion is frequently abhorred.

So while they were all together in that great tent, the giant looked at them, and liked them so much that he could not believe that anywhere else there were so many and such excellent knights. And as he saw that they had quieted down, he said to them: "If you are surprised at my unexpected coming to your aid, as something of which you had very little expectation or thought, so am I; because certainly I could not have believed that in any way I could be deterred from being a lifelong deadly enemy against you. But as the execution of intentions is more in the hand of God than in that of those who with great severity were seeking to carry them out, among many mighty and harsh battles that to my honor I have fought, there occurred one which constrained my intention at the outset and in the end changed it entirely; so that of my own volition I considered an honor what I had thought that I would deem a dishonor all the days of my life, until I had obtained vengeance for it. And when the thing that I most desired in this world was fulfilled in accordance with my desire, then my great rage and harshness were over and done, not in the way that I expected, but through means most pleasing to my adverse fortunes. You have already learned that I am the son of that valiant and vigorous giant, Madanfabul of the Island of the Vermilion Tower, whom Amadis of Gaul under the name of Beltenebros slew in the battle that King Lisuarte

and King Cildadan had. And I, as the son of such an honorable father, being so duty bound to avenge his death, never forgot how this great desire should be carried out: by taking the life of the man who took my father's life. And when I was most without hope of doing so, Fortune together with the great courage of that knight brought him into my hands within my own dominions, he being alone without a single person to help him; and by him with his great valor I was defeated and treated with even greater courtesy, since he is the one who possesses both valor and courtesy to a greater degree than any other living man; from which fact it has come about that that great mortal enmity I had for him has been changed into a greater amount of friendship and true love; a fact which has caused my coming, as you see; since I had learned that this army was in some need of reinforcements, and I believed that most of your honor and advantage reverts to him."

Then he told them from the beginning all that had happened to him with Amadis, and the combat that they had together, and all the other things that took place, omitting nothing, just as the story has related it to you. Finally he told them that until that war was over he would not leave their company; and that when it was ended he wished to go away at once to the Firm Island, as he had promised Amadis.

All those lords were very happy to hear from him what he told them, because although they had found out from Gandalin that Amadis had fought with this giant and had overcome him, they did not know the reason for it as he had told it. And they were very pleased with his coming, not only because of his personal worth, but also on account of the great and very good body of fighting men that he brought with him, for which they had a need in view of their losses in past engagements. And they gave him many thanks for his good will as manifested by the help that was being offered to them out of his affection for Amadis.

CHAPTER CXXXII

Which tells of the reply that Agrajes made to the giant Balan's speech.

Agrajes answered him, and said: "My good lord Balan, I wish to reply to you on what concerns the enmity of my lord cousin Amadis, since these lords and I with them have expressed to you our thanks for what is promised us by you; and if my reply is not in conformity with your desire, take it as a knight; for although at arms I may not be your equal, perhaps on account of the fact that I am older, and have used them more, I shall know more completely than you what is required in order to be punctilious in their use. And I say that knights who with just cause engage in combats and in them perform their duty without being remiss in anything rightly enjoined upon them, although in it they are fulfilling what they took an oath to do, are to be greatly praised, since the will and the deed have been left free of debt. But those who out of fantasy seek to exceed the bounds of reason are adjudged haughty and flighty, rather than strong and courageous, by those who achieve the height of honor. The manner of your father's death is very well-known to all, and you, sir, must not be unaware of it; for if Fortune had permitted a happy ending to his boldness in carrying off King Lisuarte as he was doing, he would have been exalted to the heavens, and by the same token the dishonor and discredit of those who served and helped this king would have been limitless. And therefore you ought not to be surprised that Amadis, having great envy of the glory that your father expected to obtain, would want it for himself, as all good men do or ought to do. And such a slaying as this one, in view

of the fact that each one sought to accomplish it, thinking thereby to achieve great fame, ought not to be the cause of vengeance being sought by anyone as in the case of those slayings foully committed, where very much honor is risked in condoning them. So, my lord, in what concerns your father, and in what befell you with Amadis, no just cause could be found for complaint, since you and he carried out very completely all that knights ought to accomplish. And if any complaint is to be made, it is to Fortune, who was pleased to bestow more help and favor on him than on you and your father. So, my good friend, consider it good that with your honor remaining intact and without blemish, you have won as allies that very noble knight and all these lords and brave knights whom you behold here, together with many others that you would see, if you were to have need of them."

When the giant Balan had heard this he said to him: "My lord Agrajes, although for the satisfaction of my desire no admonition was necessary, I thank you very much for what you have said to me, because although in this case it might have been unnecessary, that is no reason for considering it unnecessary for future situations. And dismissing this matter as over and forgotten, we shall do well to come to an understanding on how to conclude this confrontation with that courage and care that those ought to have who, leaving in security their own lands, seek to conquer those of others."

Don Galvanes said to him: "Good sir, let these knights go to their lodgings, for it is supper time; and you will rest tonight and tomorrow, and meanwhile your tents will be set up and your troops lodged. Then with your advice a plan will be devised concerning what ought to be done."

So those lords went away to their camps, and Don Galvanes and King Galaor remained with the giant, who with great enjoyment supped with them that night in that large, magnificent tent that you have already heard about. And when supper was over, the king went off to his tents and they remained and slept in their luxurious beds.

And morning having come, the giant said to Don Galvanes that he wanted to mount and circle the city to see the lie of the land, and where one could best fight. Don Galvanes informed King Galaor, and both went with him. And they circled around

that great city, which, since it had a large population, was fortified by many great towers and walls; for since this city was the capital of that whole great kingdom and of the islands of Landas, which were a part of it just as it was the principal place of residence of its kings, as they ruled one after another, so did they strive to augment its population and to fortify it as much as they could, so that in size and in strength of its fortifications it was quite outstanding. As soon as they had seen it, Balan said to them: "My lords, what do you think could be done against a thing as big as this is?"

Don Galaor said to him: "There is not in the world anything stronger or better than the courage of man; and if those who are within have courage, I very much doubt that it could be taken by force. But in the many there is always great discord, especially if Fortune is adverse to them; and if with discord they are overtaken by weakness, I do not doubt that just as other impregnable things have been lost for this reason, so may this be lost."

While talking about this and other matters, all three of them went together to the camps of Don Cuadragante and Don Bruneo and other companions of theirs; for in that area which they were traversing they were observing where best the fight could be waged. And when they arrived near the tents where Agrajes was housed, the good and vigorous Enil came to meet them, saying: "My lord Balan, Agrajes asks you to see King Arabigo, whom I hold imprisoned in my tent, because he wants to speak with you; for when he was told of your coming, he sent word with much affection and great love to beg Agrajes to give him such permission and to beg you to see him."

The giant said to him: "Good knight, I am happy to do so; and it is possible that this interview may be more fruitful than other great encounters from which more was expected."

So they all continued on their way as far as Enil's tent. King Galaor and Don Galvanes went on to see Don Bruneo; and the giant dismounted from his horse and went into the quarters where King Arabigo was, which were adorned with fine rugs and hangings, and he himself was dressed in splendid garb, for here by order of Agrajes he was receiving royal service. But he was wearing such strong, heavy fetters that they prevented him from taking a single step. As the giant saw him thus, he knelt before

him and sought to kiss his hands; but the king drew him to him and embraced him, weeping, and said to him: "My friend Balan, what do you think of me? Am I that great king whom your father and you have seen many times, or do you find me in that court accompanied by such noble princes and knights, and other kings, who were my friends, as many times you have found me while I was expecting to conquer and rule a very large part of the world? Certainly, instead, I think that you will adjudge me a lowly man, imprisoned, wretched, dishonored, placed in the power of my enemies as you well see. And what causes more pain to my sad heart is that those from whom I most expected help, such as you and other very strong giants whom I considered my friends, I behold coming to conclude my total destruction."

Having said this, he was unable to continue speaking on account of the paroxysm of tears with which he was seized.

Balan said to him: "It is clear to me, since my eyes have beheld it, that what you, good King Arabigo, have said, is true; for I have seen you well attended and honored with great preparations for, and hopes of, conquering great domains. And if now I see you so changed and transformed, do not think that I am greatly shocked, because although my rank is not to be compared with yours, on that account I do not fail to feel the cruel, hard blows of Fortune; for you already know, good king, how that very courageous Amadis of Gaul killed my father Madanfabul. And when I was most hopeful of avenging his death, my adverse and contrary Fortune willed that by this same Amadis I should be defeated and laid low by force of arms, he being privileged to give me death or life. And because your anguish and great sorrow overcome you to such a degree that you could not bear to hear so long a story as I could tell you about this, let it suffice you to know that as a man overcome by that knight whom I so greatly desired to conquer and to slay with my own hands if possible, I have come here, where with legitimate reason I could repay you with as many tears as, or perchance more than, my presence has given you cause to shed, so that no less than you, I would need consolation. But knowing the great and diverse ups and downs of the world, and how discretion is given in order to follow reason, I have adopted the course of becoming a friend of that very mortal enemy of mine; for I could not be otherwise,

since with just cause, nothing remaining because of weakness, without my leaving unfulfilled a single bit of my obligation, I could do so. And if you, noble king, take my advice, you too will do so because I consider it obvious that it will be well for you to take it. And I, as one who, if there is harshness and discord, has to be your enemy, will be a faithful friend to you if it could be under an agreement."

He, when he heard this, said to him: "What agreement can I make if I am losing my kingdom?"

"To be content," said the giant, "with what you can obtain with ease."

"Isn't it better," said he, "to die than to see myself abased and dishonored?"

"Since death," said Balan, "takes away all hope, and many times with life and a long lapse of time, desires are satisfied and great losses are restored for those who can make out with greater loss of profit than of dishonor, that is a much better course of action than to seek death."

"Balan, my friend," said the king, "I am willing to be guided by your advice, and in your hands I leave all that you see I ought to do. And I beg of you earnestly that, even if out yonder, you may appear inimical to my interests while absent from me, on seeing me in this prison you counsel me in my presence as a friend."

"I shall do so," said the giant, "without fail."

Then bidding him goodby and taking Enil with him, he went to the tent of Don Bruneo de Bonamar; where he found King Galaor, Agrajes, Don Galvanes and many other knights of high standing, who received and welcomed him to their midst with great pleasure. And he told them that inasmuch as he had talked over with King Arabigo some matters that they should know about, they should consider whether it was necessary that a few others be present there. Agrajes told him that it would be well to summon Don Cuadragante, Don Brian de Monjaste and Angriote de Estravaus, and so it was done; they came, and with them other knights of great renown. Then the giant told them everything that had taken place during his interview with King Arabigo, for nothing was omitted, and that his opinion was, laying aside the fact that he would follow and aid them through thick

and thin, that if King Arabigo were to be satisfied with some very remote one of those islands of Landas, and would hand everything else over to them without further loss of troops, an agreement and settlement would be good, especially so since there remained to be won the seigniory of Sansuenia, which not only because of its troops but also in view of its fortresses would be very difficult to take. Those lords thanked the giant very heartily for what he had said to them, and they considered him very wise, for they could not have thought or believed that a man of that lineage would have so much discretion. And it was reasonable for them to have had that opinion because formerly his great overweening pride did not leave any room for discretion and reason. But the difference between this Balan and the other giants was that, since his mother Madasima was possessed of such very noble qualities — as the story has related — and having had by her husband Madanfabul only this one son, she had tried very hard, although against the wish of her husband, who was wicked and haughty, to bring him up under the tutelage of a great scholar whom she had brought from Greece; from whose rearing and that which he received from his mother, who was very admirable in all respects, he emerged so gentle and so discreet that there were few men more judicious and sincere than he.

And those lords having come to an agreement, it was their decision that if what the giant had told them could be put into effect, it would be for them very advantageous and a great relief, even if some part of that kingdom remained in King Arabigo's hands. And they answered him that recognizing the love and good will with which he had come there and after discussing their situation, for him in preference to anyone else they would be willing to come to terms with that king.

From which it can here be noted that if in great disputes there are lacking persons who are moved by good intentions to provide a remedy, murders, imprisonments, and other things entailing infinite evil ensue and multiply.

Then this having been heard by the giant, he spoke with King Arabigo; and after many meetings and conversations that should be passed over in silence, not only because of their prolixity, but also in order not to deviate from what is pertinent to our account, it was agreed that King Arabigo should hand

over that great city with all of the adjoining territory that was under his rule; and of the three islands of Landas he was to take for himself the most remote one called Liconia, which was exposed to the cold north wind, and to call himself king of it; and the other islands should be surrendered along with the rest, and Don Bruneo should be named King of Arabia. This having been approved and agreed upon by King Arabigo's nephew, who was defending the kingdom as you have heard, and by all the leading men of the city, everything was surrendered as stipulated and King Arabigo was set free. And he very wearily and sick at heart went by sea to the island of Liconia. Don Bruneo was crowned king with much pleasure and great rejoicing, not only on the part of his supporters but also on that of his opponents, because knowing his excellence and great courage, they hoped with him to be very highly honored and protected.

This having been concluded just as the story has set forth, shortly after they had rested and relaxed there in company with King Bruneo, they assembled their battalions and everything necessary for their journey, and from there went on their way to the town of Califan, which was the closest to where they had had their camp.

But those of Sansuenia, when they found out that the city of Arabia was taken, and that King Arabigo had come to terms with those forces, fearing what it meant, all gathered together, both knights and peasants, forming a very great army, for that dominion was large and its people numerous, well armed and experienced in warfare, because they had always had very haughty and turbulent overlords who had involved them in many confrontations. And when they saw themselves assembled in such numbers, out of great pride and boldness, their courage increased. With their battalions drawn up in formation, headed by captains who were the leading men of the realm, they came out to confront their enemies before the latter reached the town of Califan; whence they met in combat and had a very cruel and fierce battle, which was quite distressing for both sides and in which took place many extraordinary feats at arms, and the deaths of many knights and other men. But what the outstanding knights and that brave and valiant giant accomplished there could in nowise be told adequately. All one can do is to state that by dint

of their great deeds and the courage of their militant hearts, the men of Sansuenia were so completely defeated and annihilated that most of them remained dead or wounded on the battlefield and the others so crushed that even in their strongholds they did not dare defend themselves; so that Don Cuadragante with all those lords and the troops they had left after the battle, although they suffered casualties in dead and wounded, dominated the field without encountering any defense or resistance. And if the story does not relate to you in greater detail the great knightly exploits and the mighty and courageous deeds that took place in all these conquests and in the battles over winning these seigniories, the cause of it is that this story is about Amadis, and if it does not bear on his own great deeds, there is no reason why those of the others be told except almost in summary, because otherwise not only their narration, because of its prolixity would cause readers annoyance and vexation, but also one's judgment would not be adequate to do justice to both sides; so with greater reason one ought to deal adequately with the principal subject, which is this vigorous and valiant knight Amadis, than with the other themes of which one has had to make mention on account of their connection with the story. And for this reason nothing more will be said, except that this great and dangerous battle having been won, in a short space of time that huge seigniory of Sansuenia was conquered, so that the weak towns of their own will, because they had no hope of help, and the fortified ones constrained by great battles, had all to take Don Cuadragante for their lord.

But now we shall leave them very contented and pleased with the victories that they had achieved, and there will be told you the story of King Lisuarte, who has not been mentioned for quite a while.

CHAPTER CXXXIII

How after king lisuarte returned from the firm island to his land, he was taken prisoner by enchantment, and what happened as a result.

The story relates that after King Lisuarte with Queen Brisena, his wife, departed from the Firm Island shortly after he had left wedded his daughters and the other ladies who were married at the same time, as you have heard, he went directly to his town of Fenusa, because it was a seaport and very abundant in forests in which much game was to be found, and it was a very healthful, happy place where he was accustomed to enjoy himself very much. And as soon as he reached there, in order to afford his heart some repose and rest from his past travail, he immediately devoted himself to the chase and to things that could give him most pleasure, and thus he spent quite a period of time. But as this now bored him, just as everything in the world does that men pursue for long, he began to think about times past and about eminent knights with whom his court formerly had been well supplied, and the great adventures that these knights used to experience, from which there had come to him much honor and such great fame that through all parts of the world his praises were sung and he was lauded to the skies. And although now his age required repose and tranquillity for him, his will being nourished on, and accustomed to, the opposite, having been inured to it for so long, would not consent; so that recalling the sweetness of past glory and the bitterness of not having it or being able to obtain it at present, his thoughts were rendered so tortured that many times he was as if out of his

mind, not being able to be cheered or to take eomfort with anything he saw. And what aggricved him most was to remember how in the battles and past contentions with Amadis, his honor had been so impaired, and that in the opinion of everyone, he had put an end to that great strife more out of nccessity than benevolcnce.

So with such thoughts as these, melancholy had the opportunity to obsess him in such a way that this man who was formerly such a powerful king, so graeious, so humane and so fearcd by all, had turned sad, pensive, misanthropic without wishing to see anyone, as usually happens to those who with good fortune spend their timc without receiving any greatly vexing setbaeks or opposition; and once their strength is thus weakened, cannot bear or be able to resist thc harsh and cruel blows of adverse fortune.

This king had the custom each morning after hearing mass of taking with him a crossbowman, and on his horse, armed only with his vcry good and valued sword, of going a long distanee through the forest absorbed in very bitter thought, and at times shooting with the erossbow. In this way be believed that he received some eomfort. So one day it happened that having gone some distance from the town through the dense growth of the forest, he saw a maiden coming on a palfrey at full speed through the undcrbrush, shouting and asking God for help. And when he saw her, he went toward her and said to her: "Maiden, what is the matter with you?"

"Ah, sire," said she, "for God's and merey's sake help my sister whom I left over there with a wicked man who is trying to rape her!"

The king felt sorry for her and said to her: "Maiden, guide me, for I will follow you."

Then she went back over the way she had come, as fast as she could spur her palfrey. And they went on until the king saw among some undergrowth that an unarmed man was holding the maiden by the hair and was jerking her hard in order to throw her down, and the maiden was uttering loud cries. The king came up on his horse, calling out to let the maiden go. And when the man saw him near him he released hcr and fled through the densest thickets. The king followed him on horseback, but was

not able to make mueh progress on aeeount of being obstrueted by braneheS; and when he pereeived this, he dismounted as quiekly as he eould with a great desire to seize him in order to give him the punishment that sueh an outrage deserved, for he indeed thought he was probably from his land. And he ran behind him as fast as he eould, ealling to him from very near at hand, and the denseness of that heavy undergrowth having been passed, he found a meadow in a elearing, and on it he saw a tent pitehed, and a matron, and the man who was fleeing behind her as if he intended to take refuge there. The king said to her: "Matron, is this man of your eompany?"

"Why do you ask?" said she.

"Beeause I want you to hand him over to me so that I may administer punishment to him, for if it had not been for me, he would have raped a maiden near here, where I found him."

The matron said: "Sir knight, eome in and I shall hear what you may say. And if it is as you say, I shall give him to you; for sinee I have been a maiden and have held my own honor in high esteem, I would not allow any other woman to be dishonored."

The king went immediately toward where the matron was, and at the first step that he took, he fell on the ground as eompletely insensible as if he were dead.

Then the maidens who were eoming behind him, approaehed, and the matron with them; and with the man whom she had there, they took the king, uneonseious as he was, in their arms. And two other men eame out from among the trees, who took down the tent; and they all went away to the seashore, whieh was quite near, where they had a boat hidden with boughs on it and so eovered that hardly any of it was visible, and they got into it, and plaeing the king on a bed, they began to sail away. This was so quiekly done and so seeretly and in sueh a plaee, that no other person eould have seen or heard it.

The king's erossbowman, as he was traveling on foot, eould not pursue him, beeause the king had been in sueh a hurry to reseue the maiden, and when he arrived where the horse had been left, he was greatly surprised to find it alone. Then he plunged as fast as he eould through the dense undergrowth looking everywhere, but did not diseover anything. And in a

short while he found himself in the meadow where the tent had been, and from there he returned to the horse and mounted it, and for a long while went back and forth through the forest and along the seashore searching. And as he found nothing, he decided to return to the city; and when he arrived near it and some people who were going about there saw him, they thought that the king was sending him for something. But he said nothing, and went on to where the queen was. Then he dismounted from the horse and entered the palace in great haste. And when he saw her, he told her everything that he had observed concerning the king and how he had searched for him very diligently without being able to find him. When the queen heard this, she was quite disturbed and said: "Oh, Holy Mary! What will become of the king my lord, if I have lost him through some misadventure?"

Then she summoned her nephew King Arban and Cendil de Ganota and told them that news. They displayed cheerful countenances, giving her hope, so that she would not be fearful, by saying that it was not a question of the king's being in danger, because very quickly he could have lost his way in that forest out of his desire to avenge the maiden; and that since he knew that land through which he had gone hunting many times, it would not be long before he returned; that if he left his horse, it would have been only that on account of the density of the trees he could not use it to advantage. But in truth considering it more serious than they revealed, they went at once to arm themselves and mount their horses; and they had all the people in the town come out, and as quickly as possible they plunged into the forest, taking with them the crossbowman to guide them; and the other people, who were many, scattered, searching in all directions. But neither they nor the knights, despite all the zeal they showed in looking for him, found any trace of him.

The queen remained all that day awaiting news with great perturbation and agitation of mind. But none was bold enough to return with such slight results as they found; instead not only those who came out from there, but also all those of the region who heard the news, never stopped searching with great diligence. Night having come, the queen decided to send messengers at full speed with letters to as many places as she could. And in this manner she spent the night without sleeping

even a short while. At dawn Don Grumedan and Giontes arrived; and when the queen saw them she asked them if they had found out anything about the king her lord. Don Grumedan said to her: "We know no more than what they told Giontes and me at the house from which we were going hunting; namely, that many people were looking for him. Thinking to find here some news, we decided not to go anywhere else first; but since we find no news, we shall set out at once in quest of him."

"Don Grumedan," said the queen, "I cannot calm myself or find repose or relief, nor can I imagine what has happened. And if I remained here, I would die of great anxiety; therefore I have resolved to go with you; because if good news should come there, I will learn of it more quickly than here; and if the opposite, not until death shall I desist in making the effort that I rightly ought to make."

Then she gave orders to bring her a palfrey. And taking with her Don Grumedan, Don Giontes, and a matron, wife of Brandoyvas, she went off to the forest as fast as she could, and soured it for three days, for she always lodged in towns; in which if it had not been for Grumedan, she would not have eaten a single mouthful; but he with great effort made her eat something. Every night she slept fully clothed under the trees, for although they found some small villages, she did not want to enter them, saying that her great anguish did not permit her to do so. [Translators' note: *The foregoing statements concerning the queen's entrance into towns are obviously confused and confusing.*] Then after these three days it happened that among the many people that they met in the forest, she encountered King Arban of North Wales, who arrived very sad and fatigued, and with his horse so weary and exhausted that it could no longer carry him. When the queen saw him she said to him: "Good nephew, what news do you bring of the king my lord?"

Tears came to his eyes and he said: "Madam, only what I knew when I left your presence. And believe me, madam, there are so many of us searching for him, and we have looked for him so hard and so persistently that it would have been impossible not to find him if he were on this side of the sea. But I believe that if he has been duped, it was not with the intention of leaving him within his kingdom; and certainly, madam, I have always

been worried about this misanthropy of his with so much aloofness and poor security of his person, because princes and great lords who are to govern and command many people cannot exercise such functions so equitably and benevolently as not to be feared by most of them; and if this fear is unaccompanied by affection, hatred follows immediately. And for this reason they ought to take precautions against commoners attacking their royal persons; for often such attacks cause others to be put in mind of what they previously had not thought of doing, and may it please God through His mercy to enable me to see him and tell him this and many other things; and I hope to God that He will do so. And you, madam, likewise have hope."

When the queen heard this, she completely lost consciousness, and having swooned fell off her palfrey. Don Grumedan dismounted as quickly as he could and took her in his arms. He held her thus for quite a while, for she was thought to be more dead than alive. When she recovered consciousness, she said very sadly, shedding a great abundance of tears: "False and terrifying Fortune, hope of the wretched, cruel enemy of the prosperous, subverter of worldly affairs, for what can I praise you? For if in times past you caused me to be made mistress of many realms, obeyed and revered by many people, and above all joined in matrimony with such a powerful and virtuous king, in one single moment by taking him away from me you have taken away and stolen everything; for if while I lose him you leave me the worldly possessions, that does not give me hope of recovering any peace or pleasure, but will occasion me much greater pain and bitterness; because if those possessions were valued and esteemed by me, it was only on account of the man who ruled and defended them. For certainly with much more cause would I have been able to thank you if you had left me as one of these plain women devoid of fame and pomp; so that I, like her, forgetting my own petty trivial ills, might shed my tears over the harsh, cruel misfortunes of others. But why shall I complain of you? For your deceits and great fickleness are so well known to all that they ought not to complain of you, but of themselves for trusting you."

Thus was this noble queen lamenting while seated on the ground, and her foster father, Don Grumedan, was on bended knee, holding her hands, consoling her with very gentle words

— as one in whom all virtue and discretion dwelt — with that same pity and love that he had shown her as a baby in the cradle. But consolation was not necessary, for she fainted so many times that she was without any feeling and almost dead; which was the cause of great sorrow to those who saw her. And when her mind to some extent had been recovering its faculties, she said to Don Grumedan: "Oh, my loyal and true friend, I beg you that just as these hands of yours in my first days were the cause of prolonging them, so now in my last days, may they receive my death!"

Don Grumedan, perceiving that any reply to her would be unnecessary in view of her condition, remained silent without saying a word; instead, he decided that it would be well to transport her to some town where help might be procured. This was done, for he and those other knights who were there placed her on her palfrey, and with Don Grumedan seated behind her holding her in his arms she was brought to a group of dwellings occupied by the king's huntsmen, who lived in the forest in order to protect it. And they immediately sent for beds and other conveniences whereby she might rest. But she would not occupy any bed except the poorest to be found there. Thus she remained for a few days without knowing where to go or what to do with herself. And when Don Grumedan saw her more composed, he said to her: "Noble and powerful queen, at the time that you have most need of your great discretion, what has become of it, that so ill-advisedly you seek and solicit death without remembering that with it all worldly things perish? And what help will it be to that very dearly beloved husband of yours if your soul has departed from the flesh? Are you perchance buying with it his well-being or remedying his misfortune? Rather, that is certainly quite the opposite of what sensible people ought to do, for courage and discretion for meeting such challenges were instituted by that most high Lord, and the fortunes of loved ones are to be aided with great effort and diligence rather than with excessive tears. Thus if a means to this end that I mention is afforded you, I wish you to know it just as I recognize it. You well know, madam, that besides the knights and many vassals who live in your realms, who with great devotion and love will carry out and fulfill your commands, on the blood of your royal

house almost all Christendom depends today, on account of its strength and its great empires and dominions overshadowing all, just as the sky does the earth; so who doubts that these above-mentioned dominions, when they learn of this very frustrating search, will wish like yourself to be helpful in it? And if the king your husband is hereabouts, we who are his vassals will provide the assistance; and if perchance the ocean has been crossed in what land however forbidding, or by what people however fierce, will resistance to his recovery be possible? Therefore, my good lady, laying aside the things that produce more harm than benefit, taking renewed comfort and new advice, let us pursue those things that can be of benefit to the furtherance and solution of this business."

Then this which Don Grumedan said having been heard by the queen, in a manner of speaking it brought her back from death to life. And recognizing that he was stating the entire truth, ceasing to weep and complain bitterly, she decided to send a message to Amadis, who was nearest at hand, trusting that out of his good fortune, just as in other matters, he would bring aid to this one; and at once she gave orders to Brandoyvas to seek out Amadis as quickly as he could, and give him a letter from her, which read as follows:

Letter from Queen Brisena to Amadis

If in times past, fortunate knight, this royal house was defended and protected by your great courage, at this juncture, being beset more than it ever has been, it appeals to you very urgently and in great affliction. And if the many benefits received from you have not been acknowledged to the extent that your great virtue deserves, be content, since that just Judge, powerful in all things, has sought to compensate for our dereliction by exalting you to the heavens and grinding us under foot. Know you, my very beloved son and true friend, that just as a flash of lightning on a dark night doubles the vision of the beholder, and by suddenly disappearing leaves that vision in greater darkness and obscurity than before; so when I had before my eyes the royal person of my husband and lord, King Lisuarte, who was light and illumination for them and for all my senses,

he, having been suddenly snatched from me, has left them in such bitterness and such an abundance of tears that they expect to perish very quickly in death. And because my situation is so grievous that neither my fortitude nor my judgment could endure writing it, trusting to my messenger, I bring this letter to an end, and my sad life likewise unless I quickly see a remedy for the situation."

The letter having been finished, she gave orders to Brandoyvas to relate that distressing news in more detail; and he set out at once with that good will that a very faithful servant, such as he was, ought to exhibit.

So this having been done, she started out immediately with those knights on the road to London, because that city was the capital of the whole realm, and if some uprising were to take place, there rather than anywhere else it would be found. But that did not happen; instead, after the news had spread to all regions, the reaction of the people was such that the great and petty, men and women alike, left their towns, and as if they were out of their senses went about shouting through the countryside in such numbers, while weeping and invoking the king their lord, that the forests and mountains were full of them; and many of the matrons and maidens of high rank with disheveled hair were uttering tearful laments for that man whom they always had found at hand to defend and assist them.

Oh, how fortunate ought kings to consider themselves if their vassals with such love and such great grief were to bemoan their loss or their hardships, and when furthermore their subjects would be the kind who with good reason could and should do so, because their kings had treated them as well as this noble king had treated his own people! But what a pity! The times now are much different from what they were, judging from the scant affection and less veracity that are found in people's attitudes toward their kings. And this ought to cause the climate of the world to deteriorate, for once the major share of virtue is lost, it cannot bear the fruit that it should, just as is the case with exhausted soil; for neither much plowing nor selected seed can prevent the growth of thistles and thorns, together with other weeds of little benefit that spring up. So let us implore that mighty

Lord to apply a remedy and if because of our unworthiness he is not pleased to listen to us, may He heed those whose lives are still to be forged, they not having been born yet, so that He may cause them to be born with charity and love as enkindled as was the ease in those past times, and cause the birth of kings who, devoid of anger and passion, may treat them and sustain them with a just and understanding hand.

Returning to the subject at hand, the story relates that this news was disseminated very quickly to all regions by those who had in Great Britain a great deal of business, on account of which most of the time they were sailing the seas, so that very soon it was known in those lands where Don Cuadragante, Lord of Sansuenia, and Don Bruneo, King of Arabia, and the other lords, their friends, were; who on considering the heavy responsibility that on this account Amadis would have in remedying the loss of the king, or of his kingdom, if in it any revolts broke out, decided — since there was no longer anything remaining to be done in those conquests and everything was under control — to go together just as they were to the Firm Island to be with Amadis and carry out whatever he might order. So with this agreement, Don Bruneo leaving his brother Branfil in his realm, and Don Cuadragante his nephew Landin — who had arrived a little while before in his realm of Sansuenia, with the troops of King Cildadan — and taking as many troops as they could, and leaving with the others what they deemed necessary to protect those lands, they set sail in their ships together with the giant Balan, who was loved and esteemed by all.

So far did they travel and with such favorable winds that twelve days after they departed from there they arrived at the harbor of the Firm Island. When Balan saw the huge Serpent that Urganda had left there, just as the story has told you, he was greatly astonished at such an extraordinary thing, and much more would he have been if those who came with him had told him the reason for it. At the time that these lords arrived there, Amadis was with his lady Oriana, for he dared not part from her; because when Brandoyvas had arrived on behalf of Queen Brisena with the letter that you have already heard, and Oriana had learned about her father, her grief and sadness were so extreme that she was close to losing her life. And when they

told her of the arrival of that fleet on which those lords were coming, she begged Grasandor to welcome them and to tell them the reason why she could not come out. Grasandor did so, for he arrived at the port on horseback and found that there had already landed, Don Galaor, King of Sobradisa; Don Bruneo, King of Arabia; Don Cuadragante, Lord of Sansuenia, the giant Balan, Don Galvanes, Angriote de Estravaus, Gavarte of the Fearful Valley, Agrajes, Palomir, and so many other knights of great renown at arms that it would be boring to enumerate them. Grasandor told them the situation in which Amadis found himself, and that they should lodge and rest that night, for the next day Amadis would come out to bring them up to date on that matter, which was probably already clear to them. Everybody considered that a good arrangement, and at once they went up to the castle and lodged in their own quarters. And Agrajes and his uncle Don Galvanes took Balan with them in order to do him all honor possible.

Then when the night was over, having heard mass they all went to the garden where Amadis was. And when he learned of it, leaving his lady somewhat calmer, and his cousin Mabilia, his sister Melicia and Grasinda with her, he left the tower and came out to them.

When he saw them thus gathered, having become kings and great lords, and having escaped so safe and sound from all the dangers and confrontations they had experienced, although in his face he showed sadness on account of King Lisuarte, he sincerely felt very great joy — much more joy than if all that had been won by him alone — and he went and embraced them and they all embraced him. But the one to whom he showed the greatest affection was Balan, the giant, for he embraced him many times, honoring him with great courtesy.

Then, while they were thus all together, King Galaor, as one who regretted the loss of King Lisuarte as much as if it had been that of King Perion his father, told them that without delaying any time at all, what they ought to do in the matter of King Lisuarte should be decided because he, if Amadis agreed, would like to start out at once in quest of him without resting or having repose either day or night until either losing his own life or saving the king's, if the latter were alive. Amadis said

to him: "Good sir brother, it would be a great injustice if that king who was so good and honorable, and such a rescuer of good men, in such an extreme emergency were not rescued by them; for aside from the close kinship that I have with him, which obliges all of us to do what you say, for his virtue and great nobility alone, he deserved to be served and helped in his perilous situations by all those in whom there is virtue and good understanding."

Then they ordered Brandoyvas to come before them, in order to find out what had been done in searching for the king, and to tell them with what the queen would be most aided and content. He told them all that he had seen, and about the multitude of people who at the time that the king was lost immediately went to look for him, and said they should believe that if somewhere in that forest or anywhere in his whole kingdom he were held prisoner, it was not a thing that could be concealed; but that the thought of the queen and of all the others was that he had been taken overseas and in the sea had been drowned; for in view of the fact that help had been available so quickly, there would not have been time to bury him; and that their opinion was, since all that realm had felt so much sorrow — and with so much love and good will all had remained at the queen's service, not expecting the opposite from any other quarter — that in that great fleet they had there they ought to fan out into many regions; for in view of the fact that in all the things begun by them, Fortune had been very favorable to them, in this one on which so much effort and zeal was being expended, she would not wish in anywise to change her ways.

The advice that Brandoyvas gave them seemed very good to all those lords, and they decided to act on it; and they asked Amadis to take charge of pointing out to them the areas of land and sea to search so that no part of either might be overlooked, and to take them before Oriana at once for to her they wanted to swear and promise never to halt their quest until they had brought her news of the king her father, either alive or dead; for in this way they thought to comfort her in her grief. So they all went to enter the tower. A man arrived who said to them: "Lords, a matron is leaving the Great Serpent, and it is thought

that she is Urganda the Unknown, for no other woman would be powerful enough to enter and leave there."

When Amadis heard this, he said: "If it is she, may she be very welcome, for at this time we ought to be more pleased to see her than anyone else."

Immediately they sent for their horses in order to welcome her, but it could not be done quickly enough to forestall Urganda's disembarkation and arrival at the garden gates, mounted on her palfrey and escorted by her two dwarfs. When those lords saw her there, they went to her, with King Galaor in the lead, and he taking her in his arms, helped her to dismount. Everyone greeted and honored her with much courtesy; and she said to them: "You may well believe, my good lords, that I shall not consider it strange to find you thus assembled, because when I departed from here I told you that you would be thus gathered together about a matter at that time unknown to you. But let us now speak of it, and before I say any more to you, I wish to see and comfort Oriana, because I am more sensitive to her anguish and grief than to my own."

Then they all went with her to Oriana's apartment. When Oriana saw her enter the door, she began to weep very bitterly and to say: "Oh my lady and good friend! Why, knowing all things before they happen, did you not avert this very great misfortune that has overtaken that king who loved you so much? Now I know that since you have failed him, everyone else will do the same."

And putting her hands to her face, she let herself fall on her dais. Urganda came up to her, and kneeling took her by the hands and said: "My beloved lady and daughter, do not complain or grieve so much, for the power and high rank with which you are so adorned and provided always entails such tribulations; and without this circumstance, no one can possess them; for if it were otherwise, those of us to whom that powerful Lord has given but little could very rightfully complain; so all of us having the same disposition and nature, addicted to vices and passions and finally equal in death, He has made us so different with regard to worldly goods; some of us lords, others, vassals so oppressed and humble that rightly or wrongly we have to endure imprisonment, death, banishment, and innumerable other trials, according

as the wills and desires of those in power command. And if these people who are thus put upon and oppressed experience any consolation for their great distress, it is only in beholding these workings of Fortune that bring about these dangerous downfalls; and just as this is ordained and permitted by his royal Majesty, so are all the other situations that have their ups and downs throughout the world, without anyone's being given the power, through any discretion or wisdom that he may possess, to change the situation a single bit by removing them. Therefore, very beloved lady, by compensating for what is bad with what is good, and for sorrow with joy, you will greatly relieve your distress. And in regard to what you tell me of the king your father, it is true that it was manifest to me beforehand, as in veiled terms I told you at the time that I departed from here. But it was not in my aforementioned power to be able to avert what was predestined. However, what is granted to me will be carried out on the occasion of this present visit of mine; which with the help of the all-highest Lord will be the cause of bringing the remedy that is needed for this very great sorrow in which I find you."

Then she left her and returned to the knights, who were gathered together to plan the journeys that each one was to undertake; and she said to them: "My good lords, you will probably remember well that at the time of my departure from this island, when you were together, I told you that at the time that the youth Esplandian was to receive his knighthood, because of an event hidden from you, most of you would be back here. So your presence gives testimony as to whether that prediction has been fulfilled. Now I have come as I promised, not only for that ceremony, but also to relieve you of the confrontations and great travail that can come to you from this quest on which you all are engaged, without my obtaining for you any help of the sort you desire; for if all those who are already born into the world, together with those who are about to be born, were they all alive, should try with complete diligence to find King Lisuarte, it would be impossible for them to accomplish it, in view of the region to which he has been taken. Therefore, since you have been forewarned by me, my lords, do not let such great folly enter your hearts as to seek so imprudently to learn what the will of the all-powerful Lord forbids being ascertained; and leave

it to the one to whom by His special grace it is permitted. And because from delay, great harm could be caused, it is necessary for the accomplishment of what is needed that just as you are, taking with you the handsome youth Esplandian, Talanque, Maneli the Moderate, the King of Dacia, and Ambor, son of Angriote de Estravaus, you be my guests tonight and part of the following day on that great ship that looks like a serpent."

When those lords heard what Urganda had said to them, they all kept silent, for no one knew what to answer; because in view of the fact that the things said by her in the past had turned out to be so true, they really believed that her present statement likewise would be; and for this reason without saying more, they decided to comply with what she ordered, considering it best. And immediately mounting their horses, and she on her palfrey, taking with her Esplandian and the other youths, they went to the docks where Urganda told them to go out with her to the Great Serpent in one of those vessels of the fleet, which was done accordingly.

They then having arrived and boarded that great ship, Urganda entered with them a splendid, large dining hall, where she had had tables set for dinner. And she with the youths went into a chapel that was at one end of the room, and was decorated in gold and with very precious stones; and there she dined with them to the accompaniment of many instruments that some maidens of hers played very sweetly. When the meal was over, Urganda, leaving the youths in the chapel, came out to the great hall where those lords were, and asked them to go to the chapel and keep the novices company. After some time, Urganda reappeared in the chapel carrying a coat of mail, and behind her came her niece Solisa with a helmet, and Julianda, the sister of this Solisa, with a shield. And these arms were not in conformity with those of other novices, who were accustomed at the beginning of their knighthood to wear white ones, but they were the blackest ever seen. Urganda went to Esplandian and said to him: "Youth, more fortunate than any other of your time, don these arms, which in color are consistent with the compassion and melancholy of your stout, brave heart that you inherit from the king your grandfather; for just as the men of the past who established the order of chivalry considered it good that for the new joy, new,

white arms be given, so I consider that for such great sorrow, melancholy sable ones be bestowed, so that on seeing them you may remember to remedy the cause of their sad color."

Then she put on him the coat of mail, which was very strong and well crafted. Solisa placed the helmet on his head, and Julianda slung the shield about his neck. Then Urganda looked at Amadis and said to him: "With good cause these knights could ask the reason why these arms lack a sword. But not you, my good lord, for you well know where you found it and how long it has been reserved for him by that woman who in her own time was unsurpassed in knowledge of all the arts, except only in that of deceitful love, by the man she loved more than herself, and at whose hand her life came to a disastrous and grievous end. So with his very strong arm and hand gripping that enchanted sword, which is capable of ending and dissolving all other spells, Esplandian will perform exploits such as to overshadow and render petty those which until now have shone resplendently."

Esplandian having been armed just as you hear, four maidens entered the chapel, each one with a set of knight's armor and arms as white and as bright as the moon, bordered and decorated with many precious stones and some black crosses. And each one of the maidens armed one of those youths; and the latter with Esplandian in the middle position knelt before the altar of the Virgin Mary and kept vigil over their arms. Just as was the custom at that time, they all had their hands and heads bare of armament. And Esplandian appeared so handsome in their midst that his face shone like the rays of the sun, to such a degree that it caused to marvel greatly all those who saw him kneeling with much devotion and great humility, begging the Virgin Mary to intercede with her glorious Son so that He might so aid and direct him that he by serving Him might be enabled to measure up to that great honor that he was receiving, and that He might give him grace out of His infinite goodness in order that by him, rather than by anyone else, King Lisuarte, if alive, might be restored in his honor and realm. Thus he remained all night without saying anything, except these aforementioned prayers and many others, reflecting that no strength or valor, however great it might be, would be more efficacious than that which was granted to him there.

Thus all the knights and ladies spent that night, as you have heard, keeping vigil over those novices. And morning having come, there appeared on top of that great Serpent a very ugly and emaciated dwarf with a great trumpet in his hand, and he sounded it so lustily that its loud sound was heard over most of that island; so that it roused most of the inhabitants and caused people to come out on top of the walls and towers of the castle, and impelled many others to post themselves on the crags and heights where they might command a better view. And the matrons and maidens who were in the great tower of the garden went up as hastily as they could to see what that could be which had made such a loud sound.

When Urganda saw them thus, she bade those lords who were there ascend to where her dwarf was, and immediately she placed the four novices in front of her and took Esplandian by the hand, and climbed up behind them, and behind her went six maidens attired in black with six golden trumpets. And when they were all topside, Urganda said to the giant Balan: "Friend Balan, just as nature has sought to set you apart from all others of your lineage in rendering you so alien to their ways by causing you to recognize reason and virtue — which until now has not been discernible in any of your forebears, whence it can be said that this gift or grace has come to you from a divine entity — so because of that deep seated affection which I recognize that you have in your heart for Amadis, I wish another distinction to be awarded to you, rather than to any other one of these very outstanding knights — a distinction which in the past, present, or future has been, is, and will be unattainable for everyone else — and it is that this youth be knighted by your hand so that his mighty deeds may testify to the truth of my words and render everlasting the glory that you attain by conferring this order of knighthood on one who will be so outstanding and so superior to so many good knights."

The giant, when he heard this, gazed at Amadis without answering anything, as if he feared to comply with what that matron had said to him. Amadis, who saw him thus, recognized immediately that his consent was necessary, and he said to him with great humility: "My good lord, do what Urganda tells you,

for we all must obey her commands without their being contravened in any respect."

Then the giant took Esplandian by the hand and said to him: "Handsome youth, do you wish to be a knight?"

"I do so wish," said he.

Then he kissed him and placed the spur on his right foot, saying: "May that powerful Lord who implanted in you so much of His image and grace — to a greater extent than in anyone else ever seen — make you such a good knight that very rightly from now on I may keep the fourth promise that I make: namely never to perform this ceremony for anyone else."

Once this was over, Urganda said: "Amadis, my lord, if perchance you recall anything that you wish to communicate to this novice knight, let it be at once because he must leave your presence shortly."

Amadis, knowing the ways of Urganda, and that her admonition had not been made without good reason, said: "Esplandian, my son, at the time that I passed through the islands of Romania and arrived in Greece, I received from that great emperor many honors and favors — and after I left his presence many more, for my own needs and those of these lords who will bear witness to the fact — whereby I am obligated to serve him as long as I live; for among those great honors that I received there was one which I ought to esteem highly. And this was the fact that the very beautiful Leonorina, daughter of that emperor, and more gracious and beautiful than any other maiden to be found in the whole world, and Queen Menoresa, with other matrons and maidens of very high rank entertained me in their apartments in an atmosphere of as much delight and joy, and taking care to honor me as greatly as if I had been the son of the emperor of the whole world, although at that time they knew me only as a poor knight. And these ladies at the time of my departure demanded of me a boon: that if it were possible to do so, I return to see them; and that if it were not possible, that I send to them a knight of my lineage by whom they could be served. I promised to do so. And because I am not in a position to carry out my promise in person I entrust this commitment to you, so that if God through His mercy permits you to accomplish this quest for the king as all of us desire, you may remember to redeem

my pledge made to, and held by, sueh a noble lady. And so that you may be believed to be the one who eomes on my behalf, take this beautiful ring, whieh was taken by her from her own hand in order to plaee it in mine."

Then he gave him the ring set with the preeious stone whieh matched the one in the fine eoronet — the one given him by that prineess as the third Book of this story relates. Esplandian knelt before him and kissed his hands saying that what he eommanded he would earry out if God approved. But this was not earried out as speedily as they both thought it would be; rather, this knight experieneed many dangers out of his love for this beautiful prineess — a love oeeasioned merely by the widespread reports that he had heard eoneerning her, as will be told you later on.

This having been done, Urganda said to Esplandian: "Fair son, dub these youths knights, for very quiekly they will repay you for this honor that they reeeive from your hand."

Esplandian did as she eommanded, so at that time all five reeeived that order of knighthood. Then the six maidens that you have already heard about played on their trumpets a tune so sweet and so delightful to hear that all those lords who were there, and the five noviee knights, fell asleep without retaining any vestige of eonseiousness. And the Great Serpent spewed forth from its nostrils a smoke so blaek and so thiek that no one of these who were watehing eould see anything save that intense darkness.

But in a little while, not knowing by what means or in what manner, all those lords found themselves baek under the trees in the garden where Urganda had met with them at the time that she arrived there. And that dense smoke having been dispelled, that Great Serpent was no longer to be seen, nor did they know what had beeome of Esplandian or the other noviee knights; henee they all were greatly frightened.

When those lords saw themselves thus, they looked at one another and it seemed to them that what had taken plaee was like a dream. But Amadis diseovered in his right hand a manuseript that read as follows: "You, oh kings and knights, here present, return to your own lands; find diversion for your minds and rest for your hearts; leave distinetion at arms and fame from honors to those who are beginning to ascend on fickle Fortune's

towering wheel; be happy with what you have already obtained from her, because for you, more than for any others of your time, she has been pleased to still the revolution of her dangerous wheel. And you, Amadis of Gaul — who, since the day your father King Perion at the request of your wife Oriana, made you a knight, have overcome many knights and strong fierce giants, living dangerously all the while until today, causing great fear with the valor of your doughty heart — from now on let your zealous limbs rest; for that Fortune so favorable to you, by turning its wheel for this knight, Esplandian, and leaving all the others beneath, authorizes him to be placed at the top. Begin now to taste the bitter potions that the reigns and seigniories attract, for soon you will attain them; because just as with only your person, arms and horse, while leading the life of a poor knight, you gave help to many and many had need of you; so now with great estates, which falsely promise a life of ease, you will have to be helped, aided, and protected by many others. And you — who until now have been concerned only with winning glory by your own efforts, believing in that way that the debt for which you were obligated would be paid — will now have to distribute your thoughts and concerns among so many and such diverse problems that many times you would like to be back in your former way of life, with only your dwarf to receive your commands. Take up now the new life with more concern to govern than to fight the way you have until now. Abandon your arms to that knight to whom great victories are promised by that high Judge who has no superior to revoke his decisions, for your great feats at arms so renowned throughout the world will become extinct in the face of his, so that by many who know no better, it will be said that the son killed the father. But I don't mean that natural death obligatory for us all, but that death resulting from the fact that one, in addition to suffering greater dangers, endures greater anguish and wins so much glory that that of the past is forgotten; or if some share of it remains it can't be called glory or fame, but its shadow."

Having finished reading that manuscript, they talked a great deal together concerning what they should or could do, so that opinions varied, although they amounted in the end to one and the same thing. But Amadis said to them: "Good sirs, although

it is forbidden to give any credence to necromancers and those familiar with such acts as these, the past successful predictions of this matron which have been witnessed by us ought to provide us with genuine hope for coming events, though not to such an extent that power over everything ceases to belong to that Lord who knows all and is all-powerful and by whom it can be permitted that what we could with such great difficulty find out in other ways, be made previously clear and manifest by this Urganda, just as she has demonstrated up to now with regard to so many other things. And therefore, good sirs, I consider it desirable for us to do exactly what she advises and commands: you returning to your newly won seigniories, and my brother King Galaor and Don Galvanes, my uncle, taking Brandoyvas with them, go to Queen Brisena, so that from them she may learn with what good will we desired to carry out her commands, and the reason why that has ceased to be done. And from her they will learn what further action she will be pleased for us to take. And I shall remain here with my cousin Agrajes until such time as some news comes to us; and if in such an event our aid and succor be needed, we shall learn of it much better separated than together, and wherever the news may come, let those who are there be responsible for hastening to the scene after notifying the others."

To all those lords and knights this which Amadis said to them seemed to be good advice, and so they put it into execution, for King Don Bruneo and Don Cuadragante, Lord of Sansuenia, returned to their seigniories, taking with them those very beautiful wives of theirs, Melicia and Grasinda. King Galaor and Don Galvanes went with Brandoyvas to London, where Queen Brisena was. And Amadis and Agrajes and Grasandor remained on the Firm Island, and with them that strong Balan, Lord of the Island of the Vermilion Tower, who was determined not to part from Amadis until some news of King Lisuarte was ascertained; and if it were such as to require the aid of troops, to enter upon whatever adventure and task they might wish to assign him.

Brought to a close are the four Books concerning the valiant and very virtuous knight Amadis of Gaul, in which are found in full detail the great adventures and terrible battles that in his time were accomplished and won by him, and by many other

knights, not only by those of his lineage but by friends of his. They have been printed in the very noble and very loyal city of Saragossa by Georg Koch, a German. Their printing was completed the 30th day of the month of October, of the year of the birth of our Savior Jesus Christ 1508.

The Branch Which, Growing from the Four Books of Amadís de Gaula, Is Called The Labors of the Very Brave Knight Esplandián, Son of the Excellent King Amadís de Gaula

Here begins the branch that grows from the four books of Amadís, called the Labors[1] of Esplandián, which were written in Greek by the hand of that great Master Helisabad,[2] who saw and heard many of his great deeds like the one that was motivated by the great love Esplandián held for his father Amadís and which put him in such a terrible strait. Seeing Esplandián's great feats of arms in diverse regions and seeing him badly wounded, the wise Helisabad was wont to use his knowledge to go to his aid. In due time these *Labors* were translated into the languages of the many provinces and kingdoms where they were made known to those who, having read the great deeds of the father, had a strong desire to know those of the son.

1

Which tells how Esplandián, awakening after the sweet sound of trumpets had caused him to fall asleep, found himself in his huge Caravel[1] of the Serpent at the foot of the Enchantress Damsel's crag, and what happened there.

The story relates that Esplandián, after awakening from the sleep caused by the sweet sound of golden horns made by Urganda the Unknown's[2] six damsels when he was received into the order of knight errantry, now all alone and completely armed in black,[3] found himself perched on the fierce and frightening wings of the Great Serpent at the foot of a high cliff. He was most astonished at this but remembered distinctly having been in that same place in the company of Urganda the Unknown, his father Amadís, all the other great lords and knights, and the four pages whom Amadís had knighted. At first, he did not know what to do; but then, thinking that this strange and different situation—like all the others—was made and controlled by Urganda's wise art, he left by the door that led down to the great room about which you have already heard.[4] Upon finding no one there either, he entered the richly adorned chapel where he was going to keep vigil over his arms. In this place he found his squire Sargil[5] sleeping before the altar and flanked by two other

men who were also sleeping soundly. These men had very long beards and hair and were dressed in Turkish-style clothing.[6] Then Esplandián kicked Sargil, calling out to him to get up. The latter awoke in terror, jumped up, and said:

"Who're you, and how'd you get here?"

Esplandián, laughing wholeheartedly, said to him:

"I am he whom you have seen now and again."

Then Esplandián grabbed him by the hand and gave him a big hug. After awaking somewhat, Sargil recognized Esplandián and said:

"I was in such a deep sleep it almost made me lose my mind."

"You know," Esplandián answered, "even more than you think."

Then he recounted to him how he had been sleeping on the caravel and how he had not seen any of the people who had been there when he was made a knight. Furthermore, he told Sargil, they were at the foot of an extremely high cliff he knew not where, and, after looking around, he discovered the crag was surrounded by water in every direction. Despite this, he believed the place was the Enchantress Damsel's crag[7] which he had heard his father Amadís speak about on several occasions. Noticing the two sleeping men, Sargil said:

"Who're those men lying there?"

"I do not know," Esplandián answered. "But I am certain that Urganda left them here. It is about time we awaken them."

Then each one took a man and cried out for him to get up. Once they were awake and on their feet, Esplandián asked them who they were, but they made a sign to the effect that they could not speak, that they were mutes. By then, the hour had passed midday and Esplandián, being hungry, said to Sargil:

"Friend, what shall we do since the lack of stores on this caravel will not help us and these men can aid us but little? Let us search diligently and see if we can find something to eat."

When those men heard what they were talking about, they made signs for them to remain where they were, and they left the chapel and went into a room that was off the great hall. Shortly, they returned with a table and victuals with which they made a meal, Esplandián being served in accordance with his rank. After they had all eaten, Esplandián called Sargil and, climbing onto the caravel's deck and showing his squire how high the rock was, he told him that, since his serpent was stopped and would not move, it was a sign that he would have to accept the challenge of the cliff and find out what mystery it held.

"It seems to me, master," said Sargil, "that the message we are confronted with is more to guess what is to be done than to ask questions since we won't get anything out of these men."

"That being so," answered Esplandián, "I want to find out by what cause or fortune[8] we have landed on this shore."

Then, armed as he was when Balán the giant[9] bestowed on him the arms

of a knight and lacking only his sword, he went down to the hall. There he indicated by signs for those two mutes to lower a small boat over the serpent's side into the water. This accomplished, he and Sargil got in while the other two, who remained on the caravel, put enough food into the boat to last three days. Then Esplandián and Sargil took the small boat to the cliff, which was nearby; they landed, and, after walking around the rock for a short stretch, they found the cut and graded path by which, as you have already been told, Amadís and Grasandor[10] had ascended.

In the face of Esplandián's desire to start the ascent, Sargil said to his master:

"What will you do without a sword if some danger confronts you while you're on the way up? Since you don't have one, I want you to take a part of the oar that was left in the boat, because a great endeavor often is impaired not so much by any fault of your own, but rather by not being prepared with the right equipment."

Thereupon, he went back to the boat that brought them, broke off a piece of the oar, returned to Esplandián, and put it in his hand. Esplandián took off his helmet[11] and gave it to his squire to carry. They ascended the cliff, which was difficult for Esplandián because he was in full armor. They walked until nightfall when they arrived at the hermitage where, as you have already heard,

---

[10] Grasandor appears first in bk. III, chap. 70, where he joins his father Tafinor, king of Bohemia, in a war against the emperor of Rome. In bk. IV, chap. 102, he falls in love with Mabilia, Oriana's principal lady-in-waiting and confidante, whom he marries in chap. 125, and he joins Amadís in the adventure of the Enchantress Damsel's crag referred to here.

[11] According to Martín de Riquer (Riq.), the helmet in the Amadís Cycle is made of steel, is cylindrical or tubular, covers the head and face completely, rests on top of the head, has a slit at eye level permitting limited vision, is tied by leather straps to the upper part of the cuirass, and doubles as a pillow at night. Underneath the helmet Esplandián would have worn a coif or skullcap. Other parts of the helmet include the arch inside the flat top, called the crown, and the skirt, which was either a mail covering inside the helmet or part below the eye slit. This style of helmet spread throughout Castilla about 1230 and throughout Catalunya and Aragón after 1286, but by the beginning of the fourteenth century it was already being replaced everywhere by the basinet-style helmet except in courtly jousts, where it remained popular until well into the sixteenth century. The cylindrical helmet, which permits GRM's knights to hide their identity, was a deliberate archaism at the time GRM was editing and creating his version of the Amadís/Esplandián myth. See Riq., 55–180. For an idea of the helmets and armor worn during the time Esplandián was being written, see fig. 8. It shows the armor worn by Felipe I el Hermoso (1478–1506), Fernando and Isabel's son. Also see the chap. on "The Heraldic Helmet" in Arthur Charles Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (London: T. C. & E. C. Jack, 1909), 303–25. Fox-Davies mentions that a fourteenth-century helmet, the "Pranker-Helm" in the Historical Court Museum at Vienna, weighs "5 kilogrammes 357 grammes."

there was a large metal statue and a chest-high engraven tablet. They went in with no light other than what was coming in through the very small door. For this reason, the only thing they could make out in the darkness was the outline of the statue. So they decided to stay there; which, in fact, is what they did. Esplandián took off his shield, and at the proper hour they ate dinner, after which they went to sleep in the doorway of the hermitage since it was too hot inside. At dawn they got up and saw very clearly the true form of the statue with Greek letters on a metal tablet, but they could not read them. After taking a long time to look at its every detail, Esplandián said to Sargil:

"My friend, I beg you earnestly to wait for me in this hermitage, because, if this cliff is, as I believe, the one where my father and Grasandor arrived by chance—or perhaps they sought it out on purpose—then it seems to me that, among their other adventures on this cliff, the one they considered most renowned and harmful was the one that happened in similarly hot weather and that threatened them with poison and other venomous things. You, because you are not armed, would be in danger of losing your life; whereas it is for me, armed as I am, to climb up there in order to reclaim what is mine if my fortune would have it so. May I be the one for whom ancient prophecies marked this task."

"By no means will I stay behind, nor God allow me to fail you at any time even for fear of death," Sargil said. "Because life would be much harder and more painful for me than death if I had to live without being in your service."

"I think so, too, my good friend and true brother," answered Esplandián. "But because I am armed, my life can be reasonably protected, whereas to expose yours would be attributable to mindless madness rather than love or devotion. Therefore, I beg you to do what I order without another word."

Sargil, seeing that that was his will, began crying wildly like those who love others more than themselves. Then Esplandián, in one hand taking up his helmet, shield, and whatever he could carry to eat, and in the other the shaft of the oar, started up the cliff; but progress was hard, so he stopped to rest and eat. When he arrived at the top, about two hours before the close of day, he saw that great plain, about which you have already heard,[12] along with the grand palaces and other buildings that were in the area, some of which were demolished. Most fervently commending his spirit to God, he marched straight to the palaces, passed through a stone arch, and studied the statue sitting at the top of the arch. However, since he could not read the letters or the sign the statue held in its left hand, he proceeded forward so far that he entered the great hall where the treasure chamber was. There was a giant serpent lying in front of the door. He observed first the stone doors and then

---

[12] In bk. IV, chap. 130, these 'grand palaces' are described as follows: "And when they [Amadís, Grasandor, and Balán] arrived at the peak, they looked around and saw a very wide plain with many buildings and crumbling houses, and in the middle of the plain were some very large palaces most of which were in ruins" (CB, II, 1705). They immediately discover the letters and the sword, but none of them is able to finish the adventure, which is reserved for Esplandián in bk. V. For a later reference to this adventure see chap. 89.

the hilt of a sword that was thrust through them; and, no matter how much panic that terrifying beast might cause him—especially seeing that he had no way to strike it—he did not for all that shrink from battling it courageously.

Upon seeing Esplandián approach, the snake awoke with a loud hiss, stuck its tongue out of its mouth more than an arm's length, and made a great leaping attack on him; but Esplandián, ready with the shield and the pole he was carrying and being close to the snake, was able to strike it with a swift, sharp blow between its giant ears. But the blow had little effect. The serpent then came at him with such violent impetuosity that it passed over him, and he, no longer able to stand, was knocked to the ground. Like one who is used to seeing himself at the point of death, Esplandián got up quickly and found that he was quite close to the chamber doors. Seeing the snake coming at him, he went to the doors as quickly as he could, and after releasing his grip on the pole, he pulled so hard on the sword that it came free.[13] Then both doors opened with such a loud noise that Esplandián and the serpent fell to the floor as if dead. The same thing also happened to Sargil back in the hermitage where he had remained, for the powerful noise was so terrifying that, for those people twenty or more leagues away in every direction who happened to be on the sea at the time, there was concern for one thing only: that the cliff would collapse and plunge into the sea.

This noise was so powerful that Esplandián did not regain consciousness until after midnight. Fully conscious again, he got up, grabbed the sword, which he saw lying near him, and discovered that the serpent was dead. He could see it was quite dead because, coming from the chamber, there was a great white light as powerful as the sun illuminating the entire house. Desirous to know what strange thing might be there, he straightaway entered the chamber, and in the center he saw a very large lion[14] made out of metal emplaced on top of a tomb which was made of a crystal-like stone of such limpid clarity that—having no impediment at all, yet, at the same time being sealed on all sides—everything in it was easily distinguishable. In its right hand the lion held the sheath of the sword[15] whose jeweled hand guard was made with such beautiful craftsmanship that the entire chamber—nay, the entire hall—was illuminated by the light emanating from it. In the left hand it held a large sign with letters[16] that read as follows:

2

How Esplandián, having read the letters on the sign, took the sword's sheath from the lion's hand and decided to leave; and about the lively discussion he had with Sargil near the hermitage.

Oh knight, who hast won the sword, frightful bellowing at a time of a great skirmish will compel you to return for the great treasure that will restore your lost joy, and it will cool those burning flames of cruel thunderbolts which will wound you from afar. Be content with what you have won because, in such an amazing age, when so many knights have expired seeking fame, changeable fortune[1] has mag-

nified you above all others, granting you the glory all others failed to attain."

After reading these words, Esplandián stood for a while in thought before realizing that, the message somehow being meant for him, it was best to await the events foretold by it. Still, like one who up to that moment had lived in complete freedom, he had no way to discern what would cause these other things to come his way. But, in no great a stretch of time, as this account will tell you shortly, he received an agonizing wound that came to pass more through the medium of news than through direct experience.

Then Esplandián took hold of the sheath that the huge lion held in its hand, slipped the sword into it, slung it over his shoulder, dropped to his knees on that very spot, and gave profound thanks to the sovereign God who had bestowed on him such great honor. Rising to his feet, he walked around the tomb searching in vain for an opening, because he desired greatly to see what was in the tomb; but his sight was severely obstructed by another covering, this one sky-colored, under the surface of the crystalline rock. This second covering was made of a metal or a material which no one could discern. After a long time, Esplandián decided to leave and return to his companion. Leaving the chamber and the great hall where the serpent was lying dead, he was no longer guided by his sword's powerful brilliance[2] because the light of day was now in full force. No sooner had he begun descending the mountain toward the hermitage where Sargil had remained than he met the latter ascending the crag determined to die if necessary attempting to discover what had befallen his master. Sargil, seeing him approach in such high spirits and with the magnificent sword slung around his neck, went up to him crying for sheer joy and said:

"Thanks be to God your protector, and praised be His mercy, because He has begun to show your greatness and your mysteries."

Esplandián embraced him with deep affection, and he told his squire everything that had happened, all of which could not have pleased Sargil more.

They descended the cliff at the quickest pace they could, but before they arrived at the hermitage they ate what they needed from Sargil's supplies, and outside the hermitage precincts they chose a spot under some giant trees

where they could spend the night. Conversing happily about those things that gave them most pleasure, Sargil said to Esplandián:

"Master, you're better than your father, since he failed in this adventure, but you were successful."

He said this because everyone knew that Amadís had refused to try his hand in that adventure knowing that the auguries were against him.[3] But no one knew for whom it was reserved because it pleased Amadís to keep it secret until such time as the letters should prove to be true. Thus, except for him and Grasandor and Urganda the Unknown, who were also present, none other knew what would become of the sword. Esplandián answered him by saying:

"My good friend, Sargil, if the great deeds my father undertook with such vigor and courage and in the face of mortal danger had been used in the service of that Lord who made him the best of so many good knights, there could be no fellow man equal to him in virtue or valor. But he has shown more liking for the things of this perishable world than those that will last forever. No matter how he attempted, in all his encounters, to take the side of right and reason—wherein the guilty party is often found guiltless—he nevertheless should not have ceased rising above the ire and fury with which he attacked those who opposed his law—many of whom he left wounded or dead—but he should also have continued attacking the enemies of his Savior, who neither permits nor wants evildoers to be punished by means of any arms other than the ones He bequeathed to His ministers. These arms, though often the means for justice, are all too often the cause of insult and injury. You already know the excuse offered by the kings and mighty lords who were left in the stead of God in this world and who cannot use those arms without passion and great cruelty while there are still enemies of our holy faith left in their presence. Not only do they give occasion for their own people to kill each other, but they themselves, forgetting their estate, their dignity, and the just cause they are bound to uphold, engage in such acts with their own hands; and worse, they even receive great praise as if they had no need to give an accounting to a higher power. Thus, if I resemble my father in any way, may it please our almighty Lord to protect me from all that may offend Him and to aid me in surpassing my father in goodness by traversing the path that leads to my soul's salvation rather than my body's glorification."[4]

"How is it, master," Sargil answered, "that you would oppose what every-

---

[3] This episode occurs in bk. IV, chap. 129.

[4] By means of this speech GRM signals clearly that he intends bk. V to subordinate the tenets of knight errantry to religious ends. In bk. VI, Páez de Ribera, a cleric from Sevilla, goes even further. He banishes all magical-fantastical elements and most all "gratuitous adventures," and he replaces them with sermons in which he explains that God is the only cause of the same kind of prodigious events. Because he thought GRM's bk. V was too rooted in the standard values of the Breton Cycle, Páez de Ribera even has Esplandián engage in a "gratuitous" passage of arms against the more godly hero Florisando. Bk. VI, a kind of *Götterdämmerung* of knight errantry, had only two editions: 1510 and 1526. See Maxime Chevalier, "Le Roman de chevalerie morigéné le 'Florisando.' "

one strives to achieve; namely, the very way the world is governed?"

"The world's bad ways," Esplandián said, "are so much worse, and those who follow them err and sin so much more when the habit of using them becomes engrained. If you want to see the prize those who follow the world's ways get, look at my grandfather who is the great and powerful King Lisuarte.[5] God rewarded him countless times by allowing his supreme glory and fame to be exalted throughout the world. However, his own people served him ill by taking advantage of the situation he created in order to kill one other. This happened so that it would be known that, despite having safety in his high estate, he would receive the same just desserts as they who also acted badly. In the end, he lost his honor, his fame, and even his own life. How he died no one knows. And if some should say that he only followed his own fate, do not believe there is any other fate than the good that comes from God. Likewise, the evil that men bring upon themselves by disobeying His commandments and following ones contrary to Him is no less powerful. If it pleases God for me to carry out my desire, you will see that insofar as my works differ from those of others, so much more will they be worthy of the One who gives the highest prize."

Thus spoke our knight, for, as our story will recount in what follows, his chivalric deeds, which had no peer in his time, were won against the pagan enemies of our holy Catholic faith, which just recently had been established.

3

In which the author adds that you should not marvel at the wonderful thoughts and holy doctrine that bear on this knight's youth and that from this moment forward are recorded herein, because our free will, solidly grounded in holy doctrine–as it is and as also was our knight–has greater power than the planets.

And because in this branch of our story, which was and is focused on our hero, you will find many places where he gives well-reasoned arguments about good Catholic doctrine, and many readers might say, for very good reason: "Well, since he is so young, it is not natural for him to give sermons as if he were such a wise old man; and since he should be arrogant at his tender age and with his great valor, it is not natural for him to give sermons so humbly;

---

[5] Lisuarte is encountered in person first in bk. V in chap. 6. He is king of Great Britain, Oriana's father, Amadís's father-in-law, and Esplandián's grandfather. His wife is Brisena, daughter of the king of Denmark. In the Amadís Cycle, which is set in a pre-Arthurian fictional period, Lisuarte is the counterpart to King Arthur. In bks. I to IV, he is at the center of the classical triangle of father, daughter-beloved, and seducer-son-in-law. This erotic conflict is one of the two major causes of a brutal war between Lisuarte and Amadís. The other cause is Lisuarte's mistake in heeding bad advice given him by evil advisors. After the climactic battles in bk. IV, and after Amadís and Oriana are married publicly, at the very end of bk. IV, Lisuarte is mysteriously captured. This event is one of the key motivational forces that lead to bk. V.

and since so much arrogance and valor should make him cruel, it is not natural for him to be so pious and merciful."

It would be natural to suspect that it is very likely that a speech like this one, seeing that it is delivered in such mild and Catholic terms, was produced by he who wrote the knight's story, and that the writer arranged and improved the speech so that it would seem nicer than the one to whom it was attributed. But there is no reason to remove from him what was properly his along with all other virtues and talents with which God endowed him. As the third part of this history has already recounted,[1] the truth is that our knight was raised by that saintly man Nasciano,[2] who saved him from the lioness's mouth, raised him as a playmate for his children, and had him in his charge until the age of seven or eight when it was time to turn him over to King Lisuarte. During his boyhood years he was indoctrinated and taught by Nasciano with so many words of such unsurpassing sweetness that he who said them is also the one who put them into action. By this means they were written in his deepest memory so that he could never forget them, even when he might be overcome by passionate rage. In addition to being strong and stout of heart when it was proper to be so, when he recalled his instruction he was also more humble, Catholic, and pious than anyone else in his time. All men should be guided by this example, especially those who plan to have positions of command or to follow the path of arms. They should also place their sons at an early age under the indoctrination and reproof of people who not only lead proper, saintly lives, but who are no less wise and wholesome. This is so because, although some learned men say all living things in this world are born under the signs, movements, and aspects of the planets, and that their talents and habits are so determined, I am bold to say that from on high the Lord of the world gave us free sway over all living things. Furthermore, I repeat, these things, which were taught, catechized, and tested by those whom

I have named herein, will have such force that they will once again be subject to the rule of good customs and sound upbringing.

But let us stop speaking of this now, for if we were to give free rein to our bad tendencies they would be our mistress; and we, nurturing and flattering her with our appetites, would then, by all rights, be her slaves. If this were to happen, then no amount of moral doctrine from the mouths of great sages would prevent us from abandoning what is bad and harmful and turning to that which promises spiritual glory. Therefore, let us return to Esplandián and his squire Sargil, whom we left resting under those aforementioned tall trees.

4

About how they, desiring to return to the ship, each climbed into a boat steered by a mute; and how one mute took Sargil to the ship, and the other took Esplandián to the open sea.

The story relates that between talking and sleeping, Esplandián and Sargil spent that night beneath the spreading trees which were adjacent to the hermitage on the crag of the Enchantress Damsel. That is where they found the giant metal idol. When morning came, they went down the hill, and, even though they walked fast, they arrived late at the place they had left the boat, whereupon they found awaiting them the two mute men you have already heard about, one of them in the boat itself and the other in a much larger ship. As they reached the shore, the man in the boat made signs for Esplandián to approach him, and the other one did the same to Sargil. Thus, each of them, with no misgiving whatsoever, climbed aboard their respective vessels. The one from the large ship rushed to where the Serpent Caravel was, and the one in the boat went the other way as quickly as he could, the result being that one pair was parted from the other and that master and squire were prevented from speaking to each other. But now we shall leave the mute in the Great Serpent with Sargil making great lamentations because he saw his master go off in this way without being able to remain in his company. The story goes on to tell what great things happened to Esplandián when, calling himself the Black Knight and being guided by that mute, he went out on the high seas without knowing where he was going or what was required of him, and how, after sailing for ten days, he landed in a port where King Lisuarte was being held captive.

5

About how Esplandián and the mute landed on the shore at the foot of a high mountain which was under the control of Persia; and about the exchange of questions and the discussion Esplandián had with a hermit he found there.

The story relates that the Black Knight spent ten days and nights sailing across the sea without knowing or even asking the mute where he was being taken because it was evident such a question would get him nowhere. Esplandián's only contact with him was when he brought something to eat from the food on board. Finally, at the end of those ten days, when they sighted terra firma, the Black Knight was quite pleased both because he was tired of the water and also because he seemed to be marking time without being able to be engaged in those other pursuits of his heart's desire, which was, namely, to fare well in those adventures that would bring him added honor and glory. Showing his pleasure, he made signs for the mute to direct him to that region, but he would not do so. Rather, the boat continued sailing on along the coast without sighting land until such a point where they saw a mountain that was covered with a dense forest and that rose up out of the beating sea like a wall cut from one giant rock slab.

So that they could land in one piece, the mariner steered the boat to shore and gave the signal for the knight to jump onto the land, which he then did; and with a gesture of his hand, the mute showed him that he should take a path that led toward the mountain. Placing himself under the protection of God, the knight, in order not to hinder his progress on foot, slung his shield around his neck, carried his helmet by hand, and hung the sword from his belt. Then he went forward along the path that led through thick mountain oak groves. Without finding a living soul or any other thing to hinder him he walked on until, off to the right and through some very tall trees, he saw a small hermitage with a cross over it. This pleased him greatly because he thought he might find someone in it whom he could ask about the land he was in. With this question in mind he approached it, and as he came closer, he saw next to a fountain an old man with a very long beard who was filling a large pitcher with water from the fountain. The Black Knight went up to him and said:

"God be with you."

"May it please Him," said the old man, "for that is why I came here to lead this life. But you, Sir Knight, who are you? Neither your dress nor your mien show you are from this land."

"You speak the truth, my goodman,"[1] answered the Black Knight. "I am

not from this land, but rather I am from far away. Fortune brought me here, but I have found no one except you of whom I can ask questions about this place—and for this I am very pleased. But I am even more pleased to see that sign you put over this house."

"How is it that you know of it?" asked the goodman. "And why do you know that it is highly valued?"

"Yes, I know of it," he said, "because the Lord whose servant I am died on another like it."

"Thanks be to God," said the goodman. "And many thanks I give Him, because he has allowed me to see one of His own before I should leave this life. I can certainly tell you that from the time of his suffering until today no one of his law could be found in this land because all those who live here are his enemies. And if I happen to be here, it is something you can hear about from me. Actually, I am quite amazed by you, and I would be even more amazed if I believed you were mortal, which I doubt, seeing how handsome you are. If this were not so, you would not have dared to come to such a place in such a guise as I see you in."

"Goodman," said the knight, "I am both mortal and a sinner. If you are amazed by me, so am I, for certainly the manner of my coming has been so strange that I am unable to give you either an accounting or an explanation for it. But I beg you, father, if it pleases you, to tell me what land this is and who is its lord."

The goodman then said to him:

"Come with me and I will be happy to tell you."

Then both of them went and entered the hermitage. The knight, on bended knee, prayed before another cross he found inside. After finishing his prayer, the goodman took him by his hand, and sitting with him on a stone seat against the wall, he said:

"Sir Knight, tell me where you are from. Whatever I know about this place I will happily tell you."

"Father," said the Black Knight, "I am from Great Britain. I do not know if you have heard it mentioned in these parts."

"How long ago did you leave it?" the gentleman asked. "I was there once. Do you know the king of that great island? He is called Lisuarte."

"Yes, I know him," he said. "I've seen him many times."

"How was he when you left?" asked the goodman.

"That I could not tell you, because at that time he was lost, and no one knew how or why. Until the time I left, many had searched for him with great diligence and no less dedication, but all to no effect."

When the goodman heard the knight say this, he was caught up short, and in a state of astonishment he was unable to speak for a long while. At this, the knight, like the other one, whose only thought was for news about the king, stopped talking in order to consider carefully what the other's silence would amount to. Upon regaining control, the goodman said:

"Sir Knight, so that you will feel like telling me about your household in every detail with neither suspicion nor fear—because this is as it should be—I

want you to know who I am, and, even more importantly, why I came to this strange land. First, you should know that I was born in this Great Britain of yours, that all of my natural line is from there, and that when a lady whom I was serving married a giant who was the lord of the mountain near here, I followed her here. My idea was to serve her, to have some favor from her, and to see the world and its foreign lands—a desire common to everyone. Once we got here, my lady, who until then had kept the laws of Christ, was converted to those of the pagans which her husband observed more zealously than anyone else. Seeing this, I found no solace in desiring to return to our own land. So, reflecting on the weakness of the human condition and thinking that intercourse with these people might cause me to fall into aberrant ways, I chose to escape to this place where I have often been mortally threatened by those evil people who hate the laws that are so beloved by me. If I have any satisfaction, after that which I receive from God, it is in having everyone know that I would look angrily on whomever might cause my lady any vexation. However, if fortune favors me, I am hoping to leave here and return to my homeland. I have told you my story; now I beg you, Sir Knight, if it please you, to tell me what fortune has brought you to such a dangerous land, for if you do not seek some means to turn around and leave, you will not be able to escape either death or cruel imprisonment. For this I would be greatly troubled, because you are from my own land, and such handsomeness as yours I have never laid my eyes on before."

The Black Knight answered him by saying:

"What you have told me has made me very happy, but before I answer your questions, I earnestly beg you to tell me what caused you to become troubled when you were talking about King Lisuarte. It seemed as if your attention wandered and you were agitated or even frightened."

"Sir Knight," said the hermit, "I want you to know that my daughter is a maiden who lives with the lady I told you about, and she brings me food and visits with me from time to time. Well, I found out that a short time ago the mistress of this place came from Great Britain. And I also came to know that one of her brothers from there brought a knight of great worth to be imprisoned here with great secrecy. My daughter could not tell me who he was, but she did know that, like the lady, both of the two giants who are her sons were overjoyed by this event. Since I already knew this, when you told me that King Lisuarte was lost at that time, I wondered if the prisoner might be he, because this lady knows much about the magical arts of enchantment by which she is capable of doing much evil."[2]

---

[2] This evil magician is Arcabona, Arcaláus' sister and Cartadaque's wife. She is mistress or queen of Forbidden Mountain. At the end of bk. IV, she has Lisuarte mysteriously captured and taken to the alcázar on her pagan mountain fortress. AKCT calls this place Defended Rock and Defended Mountain alternately, and the translator (Thomas Johnson) adds to the text of his chap. 3 the information that it was located "between the Marches of Turky [*sic*] and Greece."

"I beg you to tell me," said the Black Knight, "what land this is and where it lies. And this mountain you mentioned, what is it like and who owns it?"

The goodman answered him thus:

"This land is in the suzerain of Persia,[3] and on this side of the mountain a sharp and high cliff makes a large curve bordered by the sea. The mountain behind the cliff was under the power of that giant I told you about, and when he was alive he had such great strength that he subjugated most of the mountain and people of this land. At one end of this territory that borders on terra firma the king of Persia rules, and at the other end, separated by a small arm of the sea, the emperor of Constantinople rules.[4] So rough is this mountain's terrain that neither of them was ever able to subdue or conquer it, but this did not keep both of them from doing much of what each wanted to do against the other. What it has provided for these two very powerful empires or seigniories over a very long period of time is the opportunity for waging bitter wars against each other. And from this burly pagan I'm telling you about there have come two large and very brave sons who have brought much more territory under their subjugation than their father ever did. Until now these two have remained in the company of that lady who is their mother and my mistress."

"Which way is the road to the mountain?" asked the Black Knight.

"By the sea shore," answered the goodman, "for the waves beat directly against the tower of the alcázar.[5] And next to the tower there is a stairway of more than fifty steps carved out of bedrock. At the end of the stairway there is an iron gate that is guarded at all times by an armed knight who is entrusted with heavy responsibility because there is no other entrance to the mountain than that one. The sea encircles it on almost every side, and what little land entrance there is to it is guarded by a very high wall and fortified towers between which there is a small sally port through which only one mount at a time can pass."[6]

"So, how do you get to the main gate?" asked the knight.

"Across a rather long drawbridge made of wooden beams. This is how those in the alcázar come and go, and when there is some urgency it can be pulled down quickly. It is on this side where we are now."

"May God protect you," said the Black Knight. "I want to go see what form this thing you are telling me about has and I want to attempt to find out who the prisoner is you mentioned."

"And," said the goodman, "what good will it do you to take a look at it?

Nothing, I'm sure, except to get killed or to spend the rest of your life in captivity."

"No matter," said the knight, "for I must accept whatever challenge God gives me."

"Knight," said the goodman, "men are obliged to direct their energy to reasonable things because one can expect to achieve the fruit of one's labor from the effort; but those that are not reasonable, and wherein one risks both body and soul, must be accounted not only as great madness but also acknowledged as desperation. That's why, among the many examples and teachings our savior Jesus Christ left us in terms of the great miracles he did while walking among us throughout his whole life, one in particular was that, no matter how he was tempted by the Evil Enemy to do things possible for him but quite impossible for us, he always refused to do anything against natural reason. He told us that to do otherwise was to tempt God. In this way he leaves us to understand that his servants should do likewise and not do the type of things you wish to undertake. I'm telling you that, in addition to the strong knight who is guarding the gate to the cave that serves as the entrance to the mountain, there are in the great fortress two giants, sons of the lady I mentioned, the likes of which you will hardly find equals in strength or courage anywhere in the world."

"Good friend, I thank you very much for the advice you are giving me," said the Black Knight. "But, as for me, it is best to follow the path I was born into this world to traverse by seeking out the challenges that are beyond the ordinary bounds of nature. If I were not to do this, not only would the labor of those great sages who made many forecasts about my birth and extraordinary upbringing be in vain, but they would be taken for liars. So, if what they said about me was true, what greater glory can there be for me than to accomplish what others find impossibly frightening? And if by chance their wisdom were to turn out to be deceitful, I want it to appear more on account of their shameful lack of knowledge than of any cowardice on my part. I have only one course of action left: namely, to act against these evil people, these ministers and members of the devil over whom I expect to be victorious. If it does not turn out so, the Lord in whom I believe will have pity on my soul."

While the knight was saying this, the goodman was studying the other's handsome and brave mien, and tears came to his eyes, and he said to him:

"Oh most handsome knight who was ever born, may the Lord in whom you have so much hope succor and defend you; since you have set your will so determinedly on this enterprise, I beg you to stay here tonight. Although you could arrive within the hour, you couldn't get into the mountain because they close the gate shortly after the end of day."

The knight consented to this since he saw he could do aught else.

6

About how the Black Knight, guiding himself toward the cloven crag, entered the fortress where, by strength of arms, he killed three giant knights and freed King Lisuarte from prison.

Just as the story has told you, the Black Knight remained in the company of that hermit who fed him the dinner he had reserved for himself and gave him the least humble bed he had for him to sleep on. When morning had come, the knight got up, and, saying heartfelt prayers, he commended his spirit to God begging Him to guide him and help him in such guise that his honor more than his life should fall into no kind of danger. Then he put on all the arms he had brought to that place, and, by a rather narrow road lined with thick brush that the good hermit had shown him, he went on his way. The goodman was quite willing to keep him company, but he dared not for fear that the giants[1] would find out; so he went back weeping and begging God to aid the knight in the face of the great danger that awaited him. So then, our knight went down that path lined on both sides by a thicket of trees. In a short while he came across the seashore whereupon he found that the path led forward along the water's edge. Upon coming out of the forest he found a beautiful meadow. On the other side of this clearing he saw a high crag at the top of a mountain. The mountain was covered with beautiful groves and the crag seemed to have been carved to serve some deliberate purpose. After walking a considerable distance, he arrived at a bridge made of wooden planks which gave passage to the castle. Walking on, he crossed the bridge and quickly came to a small plaza protected by a stone seawall that kept the water at bay. On one side of the plaza stood the great tower of the alcázar, and on the other side the waves of the sea beat with great force. The knight looked up and saw two knights standing at a window in the tower directly over the water. The huge body and face of one of them amazed him. It occurred to him that this one could well be one of the giants, but the other one was not remotely his equal in size. Then, near the tower to his right, he saw

a stairway carved out of the hard rock, and, in the gate above where he was standing, there was a fully armed and fairly large knight with a steel battle axe in his hands. As they stood there looking at each other, the one guarding the gate said to him:

"Unlucky knight, who led you to this place? If the color of your arms is a sign of sadness, then you have come to a place where you will be accosted by many more arms than the ones your sadness has come seeking."[2]

The Black Knight answered him, "It is not fit for knights from lands so far from here to respond like men of little valor. If you wish to know why I have come, on guard, for I shall tell you."

Then he put on the helmet he had been carrying by hand so as not to lose his way, and, climbing to the top of the stairs, he reached the gate where the other knight was.

"Enter, ill-fated knight," said the guard at the gate, "where no intruder ever found good fortune."

The Black Knight said not a word, but instead charged through the gate to the cave on the other side. Once he was inside, the guard locked the gate so well that no one but he or the men of the castle would know how to open it. The only light entering the cave came from another gate that led to the mountain.

As he came walking forward, the guard said to him, "It would be good for you to drop those arms and to come to the alcázar with me so I can introduce you to the masters whom I serve."

"Better to take me to them," said the Black Knight, "as I am. If you do, I will gladly do what you ask."

"That cannot be," said the guard, "because your arms are mine by right. If you were to keep them, they would protect you from the other one who guards the alcázar's main gate, and you would lose them to him."

Saying this, he raised his axe with both hands to strike him on the head, but the knight, being ready for him, took the powerful blow on the shield he had raised into place. Then, quickly grabbing his sword, the knight unleashed such a strong blow on his helmet that he made his foe drop to his hands. In a flash, pinning him down with his knees, he was in a position to cut off his head, which was what he was supposed to do because the different laws of the people in that land required only that the victor kill or the vanquished receive death.

While our knight held the guard down, a man, about to enter by another gate which led to the mountain exit, said:

---

[2] According to the Siete Partidas, King Alfonso X el Sabio's great thirteenth century compilation of Castilian laws, there was a color tradition involved in investing a knight: "the ancients established certain colors for noble knights to wear while they are young; namely, reds, jades, greens or violet, in order to make them happy. But they did not approve of [young knights] wearing black or brown or any other color at all that makes them sad. They did this so that the vestments would be appropriate and they would be happier and to increase the zeal in their hearts." See Siete Partidas II (XXI, XVIII).

"Argante, why aren't you bringing in the knight who came in here? What's keeping you?"

"Do not be so upset," said the Black Knight. "I will be there quicker than you may wish if the doors do not block my way."

When the man heard this, and when he saw how his knight was pinned supine on the ground and the one on top was undoing the ties on his helmet, he turned around as quickly as he could, locked the gate through which he had entered, and returned to the alcázar thus leaving the Black Knight locked in the cave without knowing what he could do. Try the doors as he could he was unable to open any of them. They were too strong, and they were locked in such a way that they could be opened only by those who knew precisely how. Well, he was in such a guise for a stretch of time, feeling more anguish over being imprisoned there in the midst of that adventure than fear for whatever challenge might come his way. He was so anguished, in fact, that he would have taken it as a happy remedy to have both giants—and even any other knights in their company—come at him at once, provided the gate would be opened and he, as a knight, could suffer by doing his duty rather than be locked up where the best to be expected was to die like some beast.

While he was in such a furious state, with his heart beating and his blood boiling, he realized the entrance gate to the castle was being opened. Then he saw a knight of huge stature enter armed with green weapons edged in gold and brandishing a sword in his left hand.[3] When this knight saw the Knight of the Black Arms with his sword drawn and the decapitated body of the guard near him, he said, full of grief:

"Captive knight, why did you come seeking death willingly?"

The Black Knight turned to him and saw his shiny new armor and how tall, handsome, and graceful he was, and he said:

"Since God has made you so tall and handsome, why threaten me so audaciously and thereby discredit yourself by the sin of arrogance? Don't you think the death you refer to is also awaiting you?"

"Seeing my dear friend whom you killed at your feet," said the big knight, "what makes you think I should treat you well?"

"Therein you are twice injured," said the Black Knight. "You lost your friend through no fault of your own, but you use that to damage your honor. Fortitude and valor, to be praiseworthy, should be practised courteously and with great caution; but when they are exercised wrathfully and haughtily, they lose most of their value."

"I'm not here to get your advice," the other knight responded, "but to deal you death."

Then they began to attack each other so fiercely that no onlooker could witness them without awe and dread, for their battling in the cave made enough

---

[3] The images associated with this enemy knight identify him automatically to the sixteenth-century reader familiar with the Amadís Cycle as Arcaláus the Enchanter. He will be more fully identified in the next chap.

noise for ten or more knights. Without stopping for a moment they went on wounding each other wherever they could do the most damage. The tall knight was such an expert fighter—now he would receive the Black Knight's blows on his shield, now on his sword—that he was a marvel to behold. But it did him little good because within half an hour his shield was cut to pieces leaving only the sleeves covering his arms, and his armament was so slashed that it no longer protected him. The knight was quite alarmed to be so abused in so short a time, and, his strength and great skill in battle availing him little, he was surprised not to have been killed. No matter how he was able to fight as a youth, and no matter that he still fought against the best knights in the world at the more mature age he was now in, never before had he found one equal to this one. Finding himself almost defenseless and bleeding from many wounds, he tried to save himself by fleeing toward the gate from which he had come. But the Black Knight was on his tail in an instant and cut him off before he could escape through the gate. There he gave him such a mightily hard blow on the helmet that there was nothing left for the sword to cut but the very skull of his head. With one more blow he left him stretched out on the ground. In a little while, suffering from many wounds and from that last blow, he was dead.

Meanwhile, as these knights were engaged in such fierce combat, those who were in the alcázar sent two men to find out how their knight was faring in the battle. When they arrived at the gate they saw the Black Knight coming through it with his blood-stained sword in his hand, and they said to him:

"Knight, what happened to our knights?"

He answered them, "That which was ordained."

"And what is that?" they asked.

"That they should suffer in this life, and afterwards in the other life," he said. "Such is the fate of the wicked."

Then the two men looked toward the gate, saw the tall knight was dead, and turned and ran as fast as they could shouting at the top of their lungs:

"Come, come, master, for your uncle is dead."

Alerted by these cries, a youthful giant named Furion[4] rushed to the alcázar's gate. He was unarmed, but he had such a large body and face that he was an amazing sight to behold. Seeing the Black Knight coming toward him, he said:

"You, with your unusual arms, must be some sort of devil for having forced your way past the two gates and on your way through conquering them one of the best knights in the world. I'm sorry your death will avenge us little."

"Unnatural, oversized, irrational, evil beast," said the Black Knight, "what can I say but that you are much worse than that evil enemy you mention, because he who is condemned by the Lord on high no longer has time for repentance or for saving his life. But you received reason and time to repent from Him; therefore I hold you and your cruel acts as much worse than any

---

[4] Furion is a giant who is the son of Arcabona; his brothers are Matroco and Lindoraque; and he is the nephew of Amadís's archenemy Arcaláus.

of them, since what is in your hand is not in His, nor could it be. Move aside from that gate. Make way for me to enter and finish my quest."

When the giant heard this he said, "Oh, woe is me! What misfortune! What vengeance can I take on such a captive thing?"

Then he shut the gate. He returned as quickly as he could girded with such strong and heavy arms as his size and valor required. The Black Knight had waited sitting guardedly on a rock he found nearby, and when the giant returned to the gate, he stood up and said:

"Even though there is neither courtesy nor manners in you, since you now look like a knight, do one thing I ask."

"What is it you want?" asked the giant.

"Seeing that we are on foot," said he, "I ask that you find a place for our battle in a courtyard in the alcázar rather than outside in a field like brute beasts. Just as it would be better to do it out here if we were on horseback, so it is more reasonable to do it in there on foot." Our knight said this so that, if he were to vanquish the other, he would be inside the castle where they could not bar the gate on him.

"When I heard you begin to speak like that," the giant said, "I thought you were going to ask for mercy. That would have profited you little, because it is necessary for you to swallow the draught of death. But I shall oblige you since you ask not for mercy but your own harm. A wiser choice would have been out there where you could have made a quick escape."

Hearing this the Black Knight, refusing to give a full reply, said only: "May I do a knight's duty. For the rest, God's will shall be done."

Whereupon he went through the gate. The giant drew back and met him in the courtyard, which was dressed with very white, even, smooth stones both on the pavement and on the columns that supported the grand balconies. Facing the gate through which he entered was another large gate where there was stationed a lady of advanced age accompanied by other ladies and damsels. Then the giant turned to the lady and said:

"Mother, no matter whether good or ill may come my way from this knight, I beg you to allow no one to come to my aid; otherwise, I will kill myself with my own sword."

And then he added:

"Now for you, unlucky fellow, on guard."

Taking his sword in hand, covering himself with his strong, large shield, and moving as quickly as he could, he went toward him. The other, when he saw how large and well armed he was, said:

"Lord Jesus Christ, help me against this diabolical enemy of Yours, for without You I have much too little strength to hurt him."

Saying this, he went up against him. They both raised their swords with which they struck such great blows on their helmets that great fire and flame flew from them. Even though the giant's blow was strong and heavy, the black helmet was made in such a manner by her who gave it to him that the other's sword could find no place on it to catch hold and make a dent. Therefore, the knight scarcely felt the blow. But it wasn't like this for the giant, who, with

a forceful blow and a well-tempered sword, slashed into him so swiftly that he felt as if he were wielding a feather in his hand; and with the steel bow with which he was hitting him, he tore off a large part of the skirt from the other's helmet. Nevertheless, the giant was quite frightened by this because he believed that with such a well-placed blow no arms in the world, no matter how strong they were, could avail him, nor could any knight whosoever he was remain standing. More than ever, he now feared for the outcome of the fight, but not enough for him not to renew the battle striking at him angrily and brutally wherever possible. But if he came forward again courageously, the one who was facing him was neither faint-hearted nor off guard, for he took most of the blows on his shield which was made of the same metal as his helmet. The latter struck him all over so stoutly that his sword reached the other's flesh and stained the white stones red with his blood. But the giant was so stout-hearted and in such a high fury that he did not feel it, and with great heavy blows he continued assailing the Black Knight, who, nevertheless, avoided them by means of his agility, ardor and cleverness. Thereby, he made most of them miss as he did, when, long ago back in the time when he was with his grandfather Lisuarte and later with his father on the Firm Island, he went and learned how to wield weapons and to do all other things that were good for him to know. All knights in their youth ought to do this because valor often flags, not from fear or faint-heartedness, but from lack of practice or good judgment. Since this craft is a métier like any other, knights ought to take great care to learn it, because, in other crafts, even if one does not know it, one risks one's own selfish advantage; but in this craft, one risks life and, even more importantly, honor.

Just as you have heard, the Black Knight and Furion the giant continued fighting in such close combat that they pummeled each other so fiercely on their helmets with the hilts of their swords that it made their heads spin. Now the giant's armor was so destroyed that it provided no further defense, and, having lost so much blood from his wounds, he was so enfeebled that he could scarcely remain standing. Moreover, faced with the Black Knight's zealous harrying, which gave him not a moment's rest, and being able to resist no more, he began to retreat by taking refuge behind the stone pillars where he tried to fend off the harsh and merciless blows from which he could expect no escape but death.

When his dowager mother saw this—as you have heard she was watching the battle from the gate—she raised her voice in a loud outcry and said:

"Oh, my son! How can my eyes bear to witness your death?"

Then, beside herself with grief, she started moving toward them; but, before she could arrive, the giant was knocked to the floor by a heavy blow the Black Knight had given him on the helmet and by another blow that nearly severed his leg. So much blood flowed from this wound that, before he could be succored, his soul departed.

When the lady saw him lying dead, she fell on him unconscious. The other ladies, all ten of them, thinking she too was dead, came up to her, took her in their arms, and carried her into the castle all the while contemning the

knight with great insults and curses. But he, despite all that, said not one ungracious word to them. Rather, he followed them telling them to throw water on her face because she had only fainted. He refused to enter the hall where they had placed the lady until such time as she was fully revived. When she had recovered, she saw the Black Knight standing there, and she said to him:

"Sir Knight, you have destroyed my joy and all I hold dear. What do you want beyond what you have already done? Leave this castle. All that remain here are weak, distressed, and bitter women. If you want to, go in and do what you please. There is no one to block your way."

The lady said this with great deceitfulness because, being the principal enchantress and magician to be found in that whole region, she had placed the whole hall under an enchantment so that whoever might enter the room uninvited would fall to the floor unconscious, deprived of all his power. But what happened next was not as she had foreseen. Since our knight carried an enchanted sword, no other sorcery could harm him. Among all its other virtues this one was the first because it was wrought by the great art, knowledge, and wisdom of the distressed damsel, called the Enchantress, daughter of the famous sage Finetor, who, like her, had no equal in the necromantic arts. Since a spell had been cast on the sword many times in the past, no spell done later was sufficient to break it. For this reason, although Urganda the Unknown was unrivalled throughout the world in these arts, as this great story has told you, her skill was not strong enough to protect her very handsome and beloved friend while he was in the castle inside the alcázar because this castle had been enchanted first by the chatelaine. In the first part of our story you heard how Amadís had to get himself and Grasandor out of the same castle by force of arms.[5] Hence, the Black Knight, having heard what the lady said, entered the hall and said:

"Lady, bring me the king whom you brought here as a prisoner."

When the lady saw him enter unhindered and heard him ask about the king, she was most alarmed for she did not know what had caused her arts to lose their power. She said in a pained voice:

"Oh, unlucky prisoner that I am! What have I done? Trying to avenge the dead, I have brought the living to death."

After which, with a flood of tears in her eyes, she added, "Oh, my son Matroco,[6] where are you now? What harsh misfortune was yours when you went away from this castle, because, when you return, it will have another master, and if you want to win it back, you will lose your life just as your brother and uncle have, for this knight shows signs of not being mortal, since, if he were, my lamented old brother and my unlucky strapping son would have blocked his way better."

"What king do you want?" she said then to the knight. "Tell me, which one is he?"

---

[6] Matroco is the dowager lady's (Arcabona's) son and Arcaláus's nephew.

"Whichever one he is," said the knight, "is the one I seek so I can take him away from here. Since kings are ministers by God's will who are anointed to rule over a certain people, they should not be punished or hounded in any manner by anyone unless it is by Him alone. When a king is the kind who may merit severe punishment or chastisement, much larger and crueler will it be from His hand than people can ever give. Just as the grace given to grandees is more notable, so too will punishment fall on them more harshly and more heavily. Wherefore, lady, show me where he is."

"I don't know who you are," the lady said to him, "or who guided you safely through such a dangerous contest of arms which I had thought twenty like you wouldn't be enough to survive. And on top of this, you've destroyed my magical arts which I worked so hard to learn. Still, I don't believe either your might or courage are the cause, but rather the One in whom I used to believe and whose goodness I abandoned by turning to the evil enemy who has given me the grief he customarily gives those who follow him. Since you're aided by Him who can do all things, I can in no way refuse to do whatever you demand. Follow me. I'll show you what you are asking for, but I don't know if perchance it will be what you are expecting."

Then the lady went through another door into a small, dark dwelling where she took a key from her bosom and opened a second door, this time of iron, and to the knight she said:

"Enter. Here you'll find what you're seeking."

"If I were forced to overcome another of your tricks by force of arms alone," the knight answered, "you would see no sign of cowardice in me. But if your thin hand were to shut the door while I was in there, who would help me get out? Therefore I should proceed prudently as the wise do."

He then returned to the door by which they had entered and locked it with the crossbeam so that no one else could enter.

"Enter ahead of me," he ordered, turning back to the lady. "If there be evil, may it happen to you first."

"I see quite well," said the lady, "that my tricks can do you no harm; therefore, I'll do as you say. But what will happen in case there is no light for you to be able to see?"

"God will provide it," he answered.

Then he removed the covering on his sword's scabbard, which was made of a linen cloth his boatman had given him, and there was such a radiance that he could see a stairway leading down. The lady was astounded to see such a wonder, wherefore, deprived of her arts, it was as if she who until then had had the power to enchant all others were now herself enchanted.

At the bottom of the staircase they landed in a stone vault at the far end of which they saw King Lisuarte stretched out on a litter.[7] He had a bulky

---

[7] With this episode in which Esplandián rescues Lisuarte GRM completes a unifying three-part theme of escalating chivalry that carries throughout the five bks. In bk. I, chap. 36, Galaor, the quintessential Don Juanesque knight, rescues Lisuarte; in bk. IV, chap.

chain around his neck and very heavy shackles on his feet. As soon as he laid eyes on him, the Black Knight felt profound pity for him, and tears welled up in his eyes, but he did not want to make himself known until he heard what the king would say. From the moment he was brought there the king had seen neither light nor person in this place, so when he saw them in front of him, he was amazed, but seeing a fully armed knight before him, he also feared some unknown danger; so he decided to speak to the lady thus:

"Lady, do you know who I am?"

"Yes," she said, "you were born into this world in an evil hour much to my misfortune, because on account of you I've lost all I loved on earth."

"I am grieved to hear that," said the king, "because I have always striven to safeguard the honor of all ladies and damsels for whose sake I have placed myself in great danger. If you, on the contrary, have been endangered it does not accord with my will. Therefore, I beg you earnestly, if it pleases you, to tell me in what region and in whose power I am made a prisoner and in such a wretched place. I do not know nor can I imagine how I have come to be here. I remember quite well, after rescuing a damsel from an evil man who was attacking her, I entered a tent where I found him.[8] But about how I arrived here or who brought me I know nothing more than what I remember from a dream in which I was on this litter you see here, and I had these huge iron shackles and this chain around my neck, and I was in a very lugubrious gloom, and even though food has been brought me I have never seen who brought it. I have taken it in the dark where they would leave it."

The lady spoke to him and said:

"King, if you have been in this gloomy darkness so short a time, don't begin to think that I am yet satisfied because I've kept cruel, bitter gloom prepared for you for such a long time that were you to pluck out my heart you would see it has turned to coal. Just when I thought that imprisoning you would bring my anguish to an end and remedy my irretrievable losses, my always adverse fortune didn't shift direction as it often does for others, even though your imprisonment would have relieved me greatly. The departure of my hopes has been much bitterer and crueler than ever before. Just when I thought your imprisonment would be my cure, then, I know not how nor whence, this knight appeared and by force of arms has defeated and killed all

---

117, Amadís, the courtly knight par excellence, rescues the king; and in bk. V, chap. 6, Esplandián, the consummate Christian knight, rescues him a third time. The fact that the number of rescue episodes is three corresponds to GRM's use of three as a fundamental structuring device that carries throughout the entire novel.

[8] This episode is recounted by the narrator in bk. IV, chap. 133. After tracking the attacker to a vendor's tent, no sooner does Lisuarte enter the tent than he falls unconscious to the ground. He is thereupon mysteriously placed on a litter and spirited away via rowboat across the sea. For a fifteenth-century visual representation of this dramatic episode, see fig. 1, which is detail from Botticelli's painting of "The Story of Nastagio degli Onesti." Although the painting's subject is a direct illustration of a story from Boccaccio's Decamerone, it shows the kind of scene Lisuarte witnessed in the forest, and that motivated him to attempt to rescue a damsel in great distress.

who had taken up arms in this castle. He compelled and forced me to bring him here to your presence, which was the farthest thing from my desire; and since a woman's abiding wrath has no relief nor remedy until she gets the vengeance she desires, no force whatsoever except for this mighty one could have made me change my mind. But fortune, which has given me so much pain and anguish, probably hasn't sufficient power to sustain my life; and if my suffering doesn't bring about my death, I shall end it by killing myself."

Then she turned to the Black Knight and said:

"You who appear in the shape of a knight, you evil spirit—for if you were a human being you couldn't have overcome my great arts as you have—you see before you the king you seek. What do you want done with him?"

"I want you to release him immediately from his shackles and to give him his freedom," said the Black Knight.

The lady took out the keys she entrusted to no one and unlocked the king's chain and shackles. Freed, he stood up, went toward the knight, and said:

"Oh, good friend! Who are you? How good you have been to me, and how much honor and glory you have won for yourself!"

"When the time is right, king," answered the knight, "I will tell you what you want to know. In the meantime, leave this prison thanking the almighty Lord who, for the well-being and recovery of His own people, is known to scourge us like this."

Seeing the knight desired to hide his identity, the king made no reply. All three left the prison and went to the great hall. Still the Black Knight refused to take off his helmet so that he could not be recognized even though the king begged him to do so.

By this time, it was now rather late since two-thirds of the day had already been spent. The Black Knight arrived late in the morning and was considerably detained in the battles he had against the knight who was guarding the gate, with the other one who appeared later, and, last with the giant. No matter how well his strong weapons kept him from being injured, they could not protect his flesh from being badly lacerated, torn, and battered all over. Although his spirit was quite weary from all the blows, his heart and zeal, motivated by a desire to fulfill what was prophesied for him by the wise soothsayer Urganda and the enchantress damsel, refused to show signs of weakness or complaining. It often happens to many people that hearing their deeds praised makes them more daring than they are required to be, whereby they become twice as conceited. Therefore, their great effort is converted into madness, whereby they lose both their life and much of their honor, and their soul is at risk. Hence, we can say that by directing the intelligence and performing valiantly it is possible to achieve perfection.

7

About how, after King Lisuarte had been untied, the giant Matroco, the lord of the castle, arrived in port from across the sea, and how the latter agreed to a contest of arms with the Black Knight who was victorious.

While these three were in the great hall, and the Black Knight was asking the king what he wanted done now that he was free and what he planned to do, a duenna came up to them and said there were no longer any men in the alcázar, that they had all fled when the giant died. Then she added:

"Señora, your son Matroco has returned in his caravels and there are others with him all full of people."

"I'm not sure what you are telling me about his arrival pleases me," the lady replied, "because I don't want more anguish. My fierce pride has been broken and anguish has torn my heart from me."

Upon hearing this, the Black Knight said:

"Señora, lead us to the window I saw that opens onto the sea."

Then the lady led him through the castle with the king and the others following her, and they arrived at the window from which they could see much of the land and the sea. At the foot of the tower they saw Matroco's caravels and other ones among whose captives, taken at great risk by the giant, as you will soon hear, were Master Helisabad, his nephew Libeo,[1] and perhaps fifteen other men. At this moment the giant was on shore and talking to the men who had fled from the castle. The latter were telling him about the great harm that had befallen his uncle and brother and that the alcázar was now in the power of the one who had killed them.

More deeply disturbed by this news than words can express, the giant looked up at the window and saw King Lisuarte and the Knight of the Black Arms, and he asked his men who that knight was. They said to him:

"He is not a knight, but a devil from hell. What he does no mortal can do. He's the one who killed your uncle and brother and took the alcázar, and we think he has freed the one who is with him from the prison where you had him locked up so tightly even we didn't know who he was." Then the giant said in a loud and terrifying voice:

"Knight, are you the one who killed the mountain guard and my uncle and brother?"

"So, are you the insolent braggart," said the knight, "who imprisons kings, makes war on emperors, and brings back captives who never harmed you? Those you mention whom I killed were killed by their own arrogance and cruel deeds. The Redeemer of the world was angry with them and refused to tolerate their wickedness; so He made them pay for some of their iniquity

---

[1] Libeo, Helisabad's nephew, is a minor character who appears earlier in bk. IV, chaps. 99 and 105, and he will appear sporadically throughout bk. V.

here, but He did not take from them the punishment they merit in the place where they are going."

"Ah, knight," said the giant upon hearing this, "fortune indeed has chosen to favor and aid you in all things because I've found you locked up in such a stronghold where you needn't fear the blows from my strong arm. But fortune isn't strong enough to prevent me from besieging you by land and sea until I have you at my mercy and can do with you as I please. I won't kill you, for that would not make you suffer much; rather, by keeping you alive I will give you many very cruel deaths."

"Despite all your threats," said the Black Knight, "it is not the will of the Lord in whom I place my trust that I be disturbed by wrath, rage, or brutality. If I am to defeat you, it will be with a brave, stout heart and with a humble will in conformity with what is right, just like the example of Him who suffered to save us. Therefore, it is best for you to say no more and for me to stop responding. The most I want to know from you is what will make you happier: for me to meet you down there, or for you to come up here completely alone as I am."

"Since you leave that up to me," said the giant, "I shall go in and meet you there because, being surrounded by what is mine, risking my life, I will fight more vigorously to defend it."

"I too prefer it so," said the Black Knight.

Then the giant ordered his men (there were about sixty of them) not to move from where they were, and he went to the stairway you have already heard about that was carved out of the cliff. He ascended it armed fully except for his lance, and he arrived at the iron gate which was left open by the men of his who had fled. From there he entered the cave where he found the dead bodies of his knight Argante and the mountain's guard. This sight caused him great pain because Argante was a skilled knight who had been his father's servant for a long time. Stepping over him, he came to the other gate where he found, also dead, the great Knight of the Green Arms. At the sight of him he was shocked for a long while. Finally, he said:

"Oh, my good uncle! What pain your death would cause me wherever it took place; but it is especially painful here where I am lord. My ill-starred fate is the cause: since you handled arms for so many long years; since you overcame the greatest affronts a knight ever could; and since you escaped from many dangers; how then, at the end of your many days, could it lay you out dead and cold on the ground before my very eyes! What, then, shall I do? On whom shall I take my revenge? There is only one knight, and no more than one, left for me to conquer. Having done so much with his arms in so short a day, he surely no longer has his full force left intact. Conquering him will be no harder than conquering a woman. Oh, so that I could really use my wrath and strength, it would please the gods more if I had before me Amadís de Gaula,[2] so praised is he ev-

---

[2] This is the first time in bk. V that Amadís's full name is mentioned. We retain the original Spanish version of Gaula rather than translate it as Gaul as is usual in English because Gaula suggests a mythical or literary kingdom that overlaps but does not

erywhere, or one of his brothers, or even all three of them together. So that the great honor he won by defeating my knights and so that my loss caused by your ill-fated death be redeemed, and so that there be compensation for your precious blood, I shall seek redress by spilling his blood."

After expressing his grief in these terms, the giant called Matroco, went through the gate and saw the Black Knight waiting for him in the next gate, the one to the alcázar. With long strides, Matroco went toward him. Coming closer, he tried to enter the castle with a sudden charge because he neither thought nor believed that he had sufficient daring or strength to fulfill his bold boast by overcoming the protection afforded by the place. But the Black Knight, seeing the giant come at him, put his hands on his chest and pushed him so hard that he almost made him fall to the ground on his back. Then he said to Matroco:

"Hideous wild beast, you cannot enter here without my permission."

Upset, the giant turned to him and said, "But that is what you wanted."

"That is true," the knight said, "but not in such a way that it would seem that you had to enter by force."

Then, moving away from the door, he said:

"Now come and do what you can."

The giant entered the patio of the stone pillars where his brother Furion was lying dead. When Matroco's mother saw him with the knight, she left King Lisuarte with whom she had been in the doorway to the hall. She came up to them and said:

"My son Matroco, I beg you, out of the obedience you owe me as your mother, decline this battle because you are the only son left to me whom I had with my honored husband and on whom I can rest my weary eyes. Because of your deep love for me, you have been allowed to find me alive. It is obvious that I am the one who should die, for I am the one who ordered the renewal of calamities that had lain in oblivion for so long. Moreover, I have caused the great destruction that this knight has wreaked on your lineage and blood because you have followed the fury I felt after losing your father and which I always refused to pluck from my heart until at last it has meant my utter destruction. Therefore, I have received the guerdon that falls on those who, failing to bend their wills to the best purpose, try to cure one ill with another."

"Oh mother, milady," said the giant, "if until now you have received the great loss of those who lie dead, at least they ended their days as good knights by doing their duty; therefore, even more so will the duty of the living continue on your behalf. If the living were to fail to fulfill some part of their obligations, and if I, at my age, being so brave and ready for the fray, were to avoid a battle like this one for fear of dying, what account or excuse could I give? It is proper for you, as a woman, to say that, but it is proper for me, as a knight, to do some-

---

reproduce any particular geo-political space that might be suggested by the term Gaul. Since Montalvo never defines his kingdom of Gaula, it is impossible to say if he had in mind anything so vast as Roman Gallia (present-day France, western Germany, northern Italy, and parts of Belgium) or something as relatively small as the medieval kingdom that occupied what is now north-central France.

thing else. Therefore, mother, milady, remove yourself from here and let me take the small vengeance that will come from this victory."

"Matroco," the Black Knight said, "no matter how much it would please me for you to pay the debt you owe this lady who bore you, I will still not relieve you from this battle unless, from henceforth and in accordance with your rank and evil way of life, you first give me guarantees that would not be less onerous than death. So, it would suit you first to display that great valor you boast of so much, for in me you find a gallant opponent."

When the lady saw that her pleading got her nowhere, she moved out of the way, and then the knights attacked each other so fiercely and with such hard blows that King Lisuarte, who was watching them and who had seen and fought personally in other fierce battles, thought he had never seen one like this one. He was filled with wonderment over the Knight of the Black Arms, and he could not think who this knight might be who had come to that region so boldly and at such personal risk. He did not think it was Amadís in whom he had always had a fortunate defender of last resort in all assaults upon him. It was not Amadís because, first, his build and height were not similar, and he had last left him married, living happily with the person he loved most, and filled with honors gained from so many past travails (with good reason he could take a rest by dropping and letting go of many of those things he used to undertake). Second, because, although he witnessed the formidable one-on-one battles Amadís had with Dardán the Arrogant in Vindilisora[3] and the one he had later with Ardán Canileo the Feared,[4] which was one of the most dangerous he had ever seen, neither of them were equal to this battle, nor did Amadís's strength equal this knight's. The way in which the Black Knight surpassed Amadís was especially in agility and hearty alacrity,[5] for that same day he had already fought against and killed the two knights at the entrance to the mountain, and later on he fought against the other giant who was lying there dead, and it still did not seem that he lacked any of his great strength. He was not yet certain it was Esplandián who, according to what Urganda had written about him,[6] was achieving such glory in arms as none other could, because when he was taken prisoner Esplandián had not yet been dubbed a knight, and even though he was so dubbed later, Lisuarte did not think it probable that he would begin his knighthood by showing such a high level of dexterity in the exercise of the knightly arts. Furthermore, if it were he, the caravel of the Great Serpent, which Urganda had given him for his travels by sea, would be a present witness to this fact. Therefore, he had no way of knowing who this knight might be, except that, judging by what he saw, he held him to be the best knight to bear arms he ever saw. Thinking further about this he thought he might be some knight from the empire of Greece which was near that mountain. Once again, this was shown to him, for many things are revealed given a long enough stretch of time.

Returning to the knights, I repeat that they continued their battle for a long time, wounding each other as much as they could. Since the giant was very valiant and talented in that métier, sometimes he would attack and other times he would suffer; therefore, he was able to continue the fight better than if he had proceeded with more pride and less prudence, for that is what happened to his brother. But he was most hurt by two things: first, he could only strike the Black Knight with lucky blows, whereas the latter struck at will because he knew how to ward off most of his enemy's blows and to make the others miss. The second is quite opposite of the first: since the giant had an excessively large body—and large size reduces agility—he could not avoid being

struck, as you have heard, by all of the blows the knight was giving him with his sword; for no arms, no matter how strong they might be, could stop him without being smashed to pieces. Thus, two hours after the battle had commenced, the giant was badly harried, his arms were in so bad a shape that they provided very little protection, his thick, strong cuirass was shredded in more than twenty places, and his blood was flowing freely from so many wounds that no one who was either so valiant or zealous could have remained standing any longer. His shield and helmet were no longer intact; in fact, there was nothing left of either of them to prevent the knight's sword from striking cleanly every time it reached its target. Thus, the giant's great valor and brave heart were no longer sufficient to sustain the attack, and, retreating a little, he said:

"Knight, wait. I want to talk to you for a moment."

Our knight stopped cautiously to see what he would say because he, too, needed to rest from his heavy exertion. The giant said:

"Knight, you have come to this mountain of mine where, before today, while my father was still alive and even after his death when I became the lord, no knight or other person of any rank whatsoever ever dared to come except for those who came by our leave or by forcing their way in. Not only have you shown more rash courage than any before you did, but with your arrival three knights have fallen at your hands and two of them were the best in the world. Although I detest you to death, nevertheless, considering you did it as a skilled and spirited knight, I don't deny that I'm obliged to forgive you for the evil and harm you have caused me because I consider you one of the best knights I have ever seen, for I have fought and conquered many of them. If your desire is to take that king from prison, I grant you surety to do so, and I release you from the battle, provided that you go away immediately and leave me my castle."

Hearing this, the Black Knight answered him in these terms:

"Giant, you make much of my coming into your seigniory so boldly and my killing those you have mentioned. If you recognized the Lord whom I serve and were yourself to serve Him, then you would see that what seems so magnified to you, given His great power, is as nothing. Rather, nothing that comes from Him and flows back to Him should be attributed to me. But those whom you and they serve have given you the guerdon which they usually give their servants, which is to make you arrogant so long as you are alive, and by means of arrogance to lead you into cruelty and sin which in turn have lordship over you. Although these evils for a time have the sheen of honors and riches and other things that are of little value to you, and although they are esteemed by the wicked, the high calling of chivalric arms—and he who trusts most surely in it—cannot help but fall when based on such a false foundation. This is what happened to the captain and lord of those whom you honor and revere; that is, it happened to evil, arrogant Lucifer, who stood out above the other angels in beauty, bearing, and rank, who founded his purpose on great pride, and who tried to put himself in places not reserved for him. The almighty Lord of the world threw him and all his follow-

ers down from the heights to below the center of the earth where they will never receive mercy or redemption. But if you want to change from evil to good and from hard-hearted to humble, and to turn to the good and true belief I hold, then I will exercise my power and release you from the battle; for you no longer have enough strength for it or for anything else. As you are now, you seem more dead than alive. I will leave you your seigniory provided that, whenever I return here, we join forces in war and punitive raids on those who forget the truth and defend their belief in lies."

When the giant heard what the knight said to him, he was moved to so much anger that he groaned violently with anguish, and very thick smoke came out from his visor.[7] He said in a frightening voice:

"Oh! Captive knight, do you esteem my great strength so little that already you treat me with much vile contempt; and do you think I am already defeated?"

Having said this, he quickly took from around his neck the leather straps connected to his shield of which there was very little left—the ground around him being covered with pieces of it—and, dropping it, he grabbed his big knife with both hands, charged the knight as best as he could, and raised the knife high intending to hit him on top of his helmet. But it did not happen as he had planned, for God was protecting the knight. As the blow was so wild and was aimed so high, the Black Knight took courage and went into a clinch with the giant so quickly that the knife and his big hands that were holding it struck the void above his head and landed in the ground behind him so hard that perforce the knife fell loose from the giant's hands and went bouncing a short distance across the hard stones. The knight remained clasped so tightly in the giant's arms that he could only strike him with the haft, but the blow was given with such force that he almost tore the giant's helmet off and knocked him to the ground. When the giant raised his hands to secure his helmet the knight had enough space to break free from his arms.

Seeing her son without a sword and in imminent mortal danger, his mother approached them as much as possible, and, getting between them, she said:

"Oh, knight! If you were born of a womb, would that not oblige you to have mercy on widows and the defeated? I beg you, in the name of the Lord in whom you believe, have pity on me and spare my only son. Aren't the other knights of my lineage you've killed today enough for you?"

"Lady," the knight answered her, "give yourself up as a prisoner and do whatever I order, and I will release him from the battle. Otherwise your begging and tears are useless."

"Knight," the giant then said, "now I recognize what you said was true; that your spiritedness does not come from you but rather from the One in whom there is truth and power. If it were not for Him, your puny strength

---

[7] GRM uses the common medieval topos of smoke coming from a visor as the result of a terrible battle throughout his Amadís Cycle. Another example of its use is found in bk. II, chap. 55, when the giant Famongomadán is so angry with Amadís/Beltenebros that smoke comes out of his visor. See CB, II, 787.

would not be enough to overcome both my great strength and that of those you have defeated today, because they and I are sufficient to conquer a hundred such as you. But, since I received the wrong and the damage from Him whose enemy I used to be, then, from God himself, by becoming His servant, I will be changed and receive mercy. From this moment forward, I say to you that, with or without a battle, with life or death, I choose to believe in the One in whom you believe and to die in your law."

"Do you promise this," asked the Black Knight, "without deception of any sort?"[8]

"I so promise," said the giant, "exactly as I have said."

Then he kneeled on the ground and said, "Jesus Christ, Son of God, I believe you are the truth, and the gods that until now I have honored are false liars. By leaving them I turn to You, and I ask for Your mercy."

Making the sign of the cross on the stones with his right hand, he kissed it and stood up.

When the Black Knight saw this, he took his sword by the tip and went up to the giant, saying:

"Since you have had such a change of conscience, take the sword I used in this battle as a sign of honor. Although you have had many battles in this world in which you have received great glory, none of them can equal this one because in those other battles you conquered forces outside yourself, but in this one you overcame your own evil self, which was so strongly opposed to what is healthy and good."

The giant said, "When my works no longer belie my words, then I will have made good the honor you are giving me. Meanwhile, I place myself in your power, and I leave this seigniory to you. Do with it as you please."

"My desire," said the Black Knight, "is to love you and to have your friendship. I give you your freedom along with all you possess. Now I beg you to bring to me all of the prisoners you have brought here in your boats."

The giant told his mother to call them and to tell his men to remain where they were until the knight ordered otherwise. The lady carried out these orders from the window you already know about. She told them to come up the stairway and to enter the alcázar. Master Helisabad was quite suspicious because he did not know why they were being ordered to go up. But since he could act only as a prisoner, he left the boat along with his nephew Libeo and the whole company, which, until then, had not set foot on land. By this time the sun had already set. They all ascended the stairs, went through the cave, and found the two dead knights, at which sight they became quite frightened.

---

[8] For English speakers it is interesting to note that there is a reflection of this thought in the prayer called the General Thanksgiving in the Anglican mass: "And, we beseech thee, give us that due sense of all thy mercies, that our hearts may be unfeignedly thankful; and that we show forth thy praise, not only with our lips, but in our lives, by giving up our selves to thy service, and by walking before thee in holiness and righteousness all our days." Further resonances from this prayer are found in the dialogue that follows.

Going toward the alcázar, they saw the Black Knight in the gate waiting for them. He came forward, and, taking Master Helisabad by the hand, he said to him in so low a voice that no one else could hear:

"Good friend, if you recognize me, I beg you to keep a secret and to tell your men to keep it, too. It is this: for now I do not want anyone, except you, to know who I am. Tomorrow, you will find me in a hermitage near here. The road to it starts at the end of the bridge you see over there by the seashore, and from there it enters a path that goes through the middle of a heavy thicket. Following it will take you to where I will be. When I see you there we will speak at more length."

The master then recognized him and said, "My señor, I recognize you quite well by your arms, and I thank God I found you when I did, for I can tell you, if I was ever of service to your father, you have paid me back many times over."

"Master," said the knight, "enter this castle and you will find Lisuarte. Tell him that I am a wandering knight who wants to serve him, and that for now it is not necessary to tell him my name.[9] To judge by what I saw of him, I think he is in no condition to escape on his own."

While they were talking in the terms you have just heard, a duenna came out of the castle and said:

"Good knight, if you want to see the giant alive, come quickly, because, due to the large amount of blood he lost, he just fell to the ground as if he were dead."

When the knight heard this, he said:

"Master, help must come from you more than from me."

Then he left him, went straightway to the cave, and, passing through it, went down the stairs, crossed the bridge after sunset, and set off very eagerly on the road to the hermitage. You can certainly believe that, although he was covered by his armor and great strength, there was not an unharmed part on his body; on the contrary, the giant's heavy blows had left him so exhausted, weakened, and bruised that he felt as if he were on the verge of death. Feeling this way, he went up the path while carrying his helmet in his hand in order not to stray from the road, and in a little while he arrived at the hermitage. He was quite happy to find the mute mariner there, and he was no less happy to find the good old hermit, too. He asked them to help him remove his armor and to give him something to eat, for he had not eaten a bite since leaving the hermitage. The mariner gave him food from the stores he had brought with him, and the hermit added what he could. Then the latter said:

"Good knight, how did you escape from such a dangerous trial under arms? Did you see the giants?"

"Good friend," he said, "I saw them, and they did me great harm."

"Then, how is it they left you alive?" asked the goodman.

---

[9] Once again the parallel between the early episode of bk. I and this one is clear: neither father nor son wants his name to be known by King Lisuarte, but they both want to serve the king. Aside from being a topos of chivalric romances, in both cases the ostensible reason for wishing to remain incognito and unnamed is humility.

"Because it pleased God, who protected me," he said. "Tomorrow you can find out what happened; but for now, I feel more like curing my wounds than giving any sort of news. I beg you to give me a bed to lie on, for I am very tired."

"Knight," said the goodman, "I shall give you one. My daughter, the maiden about whom I have already told you, has one ready here that she sometimes sleeps on."

Then he led the knight into the little chamber where the bed was—and it was a rather good one. Then, much to his pleasure, he laid down to rest. However, the mute felt his body and was very pained and saddened to discover that he was covered with many large welts, and his flesh was cut and bruised. Then the mute took out some of the medicines he was given by the great healer and magician herself[10] to be used in just such a situation. He then smeared the ointments on all of the knight's cuts and bruises, wrapping him in a linen cloth that the good hermit had given him. Hence, with that care, with the aid of good fortune, and being as weary as he was, the knight slept through the night most peacefully.

But now we shall leave the Black Knight in the hermitage until we return to tell his story, and instead we will tell about King Lisuarte after he found out from Master Helisabad that the Black Knight had left, desiring neither to speak nor to make himself known.

8

About how Master Helisabad entered the castle to cure the giant Matroco, and about the great anguish and grief the Black Knight's absence caused King Lisuarte.

As the story has already related, Master Helisabad, after the knight left him at the gate to the grand Alcázar of the Mountain, gathered his companions together, went into the castle, and found King Lisuarte cradling the giant's head in his hands while the mother and all the other duennas and maidens were crying most bitterly. When he arrived, he knelt before the king and kissed his hands. The king was very pleased to receive him whom he knew to be a goodman, for the latter had cured his wounds in the Luvaina monastery—a story you have already heard[1]—and he said to him:

---

[10] The reference is to Urganda the Unknown.

[1] The town of Luvaina is the site around which the battle with the Arabian king takes place in bk. IV, chaps. 112–117. Lisuarte takes the Roman emperor's body to the monastery at the beginning of these chaps., and at the end of this episode he returns to be cured by Helisabad: "Then King Lisuarte was cured of his wounds there by the doctors he had in his service, but none of them knew anything in comparison to Master Elisabad [*sic* in CB], who cured and saved the king and all the others, and it was amazing to see

"Friend, you have arrived just in time, for you are needed to cure this knight. Since he saved his soul, it is right for you to heal his body."

"I will do everything I can for that knight," he said, "according to your desire and because you have entreated me to do so."

Then he looked at the giant's wounds from which he had lost much blood. Although there were immediate remedies he could apply, he still thought the giant's life was in grave danger. So, after taking off the pieces of armor that still remained on him after the battle and drawing his blood, he ordered him to be put on a litter. After this was done as he ordered, he decided not to apply any further cure until the giant had regained consciousness. Then the king asked what had become of the Black Knight. The master told him:

"My Lord, he went away, for under no circumstance did he want to remain here."

"Holy Mary," said the king, "can I not see that man who has helped me so much? And if it were not for helping the giant not to die, I would not have let him get away from me like this. Also, given the grave injuries we saw inflicted in the battle, he himself might need help. Do you know who he is? Master, for the love of God, I beseech you to tell me. I do not want to know so much because of his kind act toward me, but because he is the best knight at arms I have ever seen—and I have seen many. He is the flower of all of the knights in the world today. None of them is his equal."

The master said to him, "My good lord, I would err and be disloyal to him if I were to tell you about his estate, but if I were to deny your request I would go against my allegiance to you. Therefore, it is best for me to suffer your displeasure and to hope that you hear from him quicker than you think."

When Helisabad told the king what the knight ordered him to do, the king's desire to meet him grew, but, as one expects when desire is highest, his hopes shrank. The king said to him:

"Master and friend, it would be good for your companions to give us something to eat from what is found here, for it has been more than a whole day since a single crumb has entered my mouth."

Needing to eat no less than the king did, the master ordered his men to prepare a meal. This was done with many kinds of fowl and other provisions found in the castle.

---

his talent at work . . ." (CB, II, 1543). Regarding the spelling of this town, JV, JJAS, and SP have "Lubayna," CB and JJF have "Lubaina," and Gay. has "Luvaina." It is possible that this fictional site is based on the Belgian city of Louvain/Leuwen, which in contemporary Spanish is spelled "Lovaina." In this matter, we have chosen to follow Gay. in order to strike a compromise between a slight archaism and the modern usage of the real place.

9

In which Queen Arcabona tells King Lisuarte about the great misfortune and destruction in which cruel fortune had placed her estate and lineage; she confesses that it was she who had captured him by means of enchantment.

After dinner, the lady who was the giant's mother came to see the king, and when he saw her, he rose, and, making her sit next to him, he asked how her son was. She answered:

"The hope I have for the one who lies there dead is very little, because there is no resistance possible against such a grave misfortune as this one, which is what happens to many mothers. In the end lost hope will destroy me and all my things with it. There is no other way for misfortune to be satisfied but by increasing the deep bitterness in my heart. But as for me, I come to you, King Lisuarte, not to ask for pardon for the evil harm I have caused you; rather, I would be much happier if you were to carry out the death sentence I deserve, which would bring my heavy anguish and pain to an end. Since you have never failed to fulfill what any lady or maiden has ever asked you to do, don't fail me now in my moment of greatest need. If you reject this request, every evil act I may commit in the future will be imputed to you."

"Lady," said the king, "I do not know how you have wronged or harmed me, but even if I knew, I should be satisfied by the shame that would affect your honor. Although you are obliged to act virtuously, you behaved in such a way that discredits you. Therefore, I beg you to tell me what you did. Since I have offended and sinned against the Lord who has helped me so much, I would not be surprised to find that those whom I have never wronged had wronged me. Be this as it may, I would appreciate knowing, and even more so if it happened while I was in this prison. Although I have undergone many grave trials in this world, none of them before this one ever made me lose consciousness."

"King," the lady said then, "I shall tell you everything in complete detail even though I am afraid to do so; for those who do not covet life and material things have little reason to fear. You, oh king, probably know that I was born and raised on that great island where you are king; that I and my unlucky brother, Arcaláus the Enchanter,[1] come from the same womb; that we

---

[1] In bk. I, chap. 18, this powerful magician enchants Amadís, and then through bks. I to IV he is the principal antagonist for all of the main characters including the hero himself, Oriana, Lisuarte, Perión, Galaor, and others. At the end of bk. IV, he is still free to work his evil, but, as Avalle-Arce points out, he no longer has diabolical or magical powers. Through the five bks. he undergoes a gradual metamorphosis directly parallel to Amadís, for as the latter goes from mythical and quasi-pagan knight, to courtly lord to Christian king, so too Arcaláus goes from diabolical magician to evil archenemy to defeated infidel. See AArce, 392–94. It is left for Esplandián in bk. V, the Christian knight par excellence, to battle and defeat Arcaláus. Although Arcaláus is a male character, he is modelled on Morgan le Fay rather than Merlin because of the fact that he is an evil enchanter. GRM's first description of him says: "[he was] well-armed and riding a large

were raised in a wonderful time; and that he applied himself with great care and diligence to learning many arts, among which are both those for doing harm and evil to many people and those for self-defense. I also learned many of the same arts, so that often in many things I have lived through I have never forgotten them. On the contrary, I remembered them so well that, like him and all other practitioners of similar arts, I knew I could win easily. When I was a young girl, it chanced that, among the many countries and provinces to which my brother Arcaláus ventured in pursuit of knightly combat, he happened to come to this mountain, which is called Forbidden Mountain.[2] At that time, its lord was a young giant named Cartadaque[3] with whom my brother became a close friend. From this friendship came the idea that he should take me for his wife, and I was brought here where we had three children. The first was that handsome and brave young man named Lindoraque[4] in whom all my hopes were placed. The second is Matroco, who is now wounded. The third, Furion,[5] is lying dead out there. Well, I felt very lucky to live in this seigniory and have such a husband and such sons, who together, given his strength and theirs, were able to subjugate most of the lands in this region and to be feared by those in outlying areas. But fortune, which according to its customary and ancient wont pardons no one, sent a dark cloud to upset my great happiness. My husband learned that you, oh king, had postponed a battle with King Cildadán of Ireland[6] in which a few of the most skilled and strongest knights in the world were assembled with many strong giants who had came to the aid of Cildadán. He then took our son Lindoraque and left this mountain in order to take part in that exceedingly famous battle. In no time at all, he arrived in Great Britain and entered those

---

horse, for he was one of the greatest knights in the world, but he was not a giant." (CB, I, 435). It is important to note that Arcaláus is not superhuman: he is not a giant, monster, or devil. He represents, on the mythological plane, the Celtic pagan order overthrown by the arrival of proto-Christianity in the first half millenium of the current era. In Benoît de Sainte Maure's seminal *Roman de Troie*, there is an ally of the Greeks named Archelaus who is king of Boeotia. In Homer's *Iliad* this king's name is Arcesilaus. He is killed by Hector.

[2] The Spanish word, *Defendida*, was polysemous in the fifteenth century. The older sense, which disappears as GRM proceeds editing the Amadís materials, is that of forbidden. The other, and newer, sense is defended. Keith Whinnom glosses the term as forbidden or prohibited in his edition of Diego de San Pedro's *Cárcel de amor* (Madrid: Clásicos Castalia, 1985). Both senses apply especially since the mountain is protected by a virtually impregnable alcázar. However, we have chosen to use the older sense assuming that toponimia is basically conservative.

[3] Cartadaque appears first in bk. II, chap. 54. As here, he is lord of Forbidden Mountain, and he is Famongomadán's nephew. He fights with enemy troops in a battle against Lisuarte (chap. 58) in which he is killed by Galaor, Esplandián's uncle.

[4] Lindoraque is killed by Amadís in bk. II, chap. 57.

[5] Neither Matroco nor Furion is named in bks. I to IV.

[6] Cildadán, king of Ireland, married Abiés' daughter. The battle that is postponed is referred to in bk. II, chap. 53, and the battle takes place four chaps. later. Amadís wounds King Cildadán, but he is cured by Urganda. Later, Cildadán marries Solisa, and they have a child named Maneli, who reappears later and in bk. V.

castles where I was born and where my brother Arcaláus was lord. When they arrived, the battle had not yet begun; so Arcaláus took my son Lindoraque with him along the borders of your large kingdom in order to wreak havoc and to inflict as much harm on you as he could. I am told that, as they arrived in a wood that is quite near London, it happened that, to their great misfortune, they ran across a knight called Beltenebros.[7] It is said that he was leading a damsel with a very strange hood of flowers on her head and that my unfortunate son Lindoraque wanted to have the pretty hood for Madasima,[8] Madan's famous daughter, for whom he had done many famous knightly deeds. So, as a sign of how much he loved his lady, he sent a squire to ask for it, but Beltenebros loved the lady with the flowers, and he preferred to show force rather than acquiesce to a threat. In the battle, Lindoraque died in the first charge, and his uncle Arcaláus tried to avenge him, but he was defeated, and half his right hand was cut off. He escaped with his life only due to the swiftness of his horse. But my harsh fortune was not yet content and was intent on showing me that it had reserved for me an even more bitter syrup.[9] My husband, that highly skilled and feared giant Cartadaque, who had conquered and subjugated many by means of his great energy, heart and personal valor, was himself defeated and killed in that dangerous battle I have already mentioned, and the victor was only one knight, Beltenebros's own brother. So I, newly widowed, had lost that son, but I still had the other two sons, who, at that time, were very young boys. I led a sad and bitter life until they grew in years and their great youthful strength helped me forget my bitterness and put my sadness behind me. I'm not saying they helped me so much that I had so little memory of my great lamentations or of my adverse fortunes that, in time, I would not be able to seek a satisfactory redress of my wrongs. So, now, oh king, when I was nearing the end of my tale of woes, and I was nearly consoled, I received the news that my brother Arcaláus had been defeated by the knight who called himself Beltenebros—his name now is Amadís de Gaula—and he was in prison following the great battles he had with you in your kingdom.[10] This news made the wounds that had healed on

---

[7] Beltenebros is the name Amadís was given by the hermit Andalod and by which he was known after his adventure on Poor Crag (*Peña Pobre*). See bk. II, chap. 48. The episode referred to here occurs in bk. II, chap. 57.

[8] Madasima is Famongomadán's daughter. Madan [*sic* in Gay, JG, SP, and JJAS, but Madanfabul in JJF] is an abbreviation, a nickname or a misprint for Famongomadán. In bk. II, chap. 62, she marries Galvanes, and in bk. III, she becomes the chatelaine of the Castle of the Burning Lake. Famongomadán's nephew is Cartadaque; therefore, Madasima is Lindoraque's father's first cousin. The damsel with the flower hood is Oriana.

[9] In English, syrup comes from both the medieval Latin *syropus* and the Arabic *sarab*. GRM's original word is *xarave* (*xaropes* in JJF, *xarope* in JJAS and also in bk. IV, chap. 133, and in Act XV in *Celestina*), which is closer to the Arabic origin than the contemporary Spanish word with a similar meaning, *jarabe*. Clearly, the lady in the text is using oxymoron to dramatize her anguish and anger, and she is using a noticeably Arabic word to underscore the pagan aspect of her bitter fate.

[10] There are two episodes referred to here: the first is found in bk. I, chap. 57.

the surface open afresh, so that the old anguish was reinforced by new sorrow. Therefore, setting aside the repose proper to my age, I decided to leave here and go there where all of what I have told you had happened. When I arrived full of eagerness in the land where Arcaláus was, I discovered that he had been freed by the very hand of his great enemy and mine. Although my mind was somewhat at rest and my brooding had eased a little, my old sense of enmity and my great losses did not allow me to return to this land without first trying to see if I could harm you in some way. Since my arts were not sufficient weapons against the main enemy (because of a ring he wears on his finger that was given to him by Urganda the Unknown), and knowing how careless you are about your own safety, I set the trap you fell into when you were trying to aid the damsel whose loud cries you heard in the grove that stands near your town of Fenusa.[11] The deception was having the man who was grabbing her by the hair pretend to ravish her. And if you remember correctly, I'm the lady you found in the tent; I'm the one who protected the man you were pursuing; and I made you enter the tent where you fell unconscious as if dead. From there, in absolute secrecy, you were taken on a litter to a caravel in which I brought you to the dark jail you were in. Although I had thought that this had brought my grief to an end, that with you here the past deaths could be forgotten, and that by taking away part of your seigniories, my sons and relatives would have greater estates to enjoy, I now believe that you are the cause of this sudden reversal of events. This is evident because it never happened before—and it never will happen again in the future—that such a great fortress as this, which until today had been defended so often by force of arms against the kings of Persia and the emperors of Constantinople, and which all of the world's masters of enchantment were unable to win, could be conquered in one day by a single knight who has dealt cruel deaths to the strong knights who were found here. And you, oh king, snatched from the place where they all are, even though they might be from your place, you could scarcely do these great deeds by yourself. Hence, I can say without doubt that, in the gravest misfortune you were ever caught in, there was hidden the greatest good fortune you could ever receive, and that, for me, having achieved that which I desired most in this world, I was suddenly afflicted by

---

Earlier, in chap. 35, Amadís rescues Oriana from Arcaláus's clutches, defeats the knights guarding the latter, and chooses to return to Oriana rather than pursue his archenemy. This chivalrous action results indirectly in Esplandián's conception. Before this action, Oriana has promised to satisfy Amadís's ardent physical desire for her when the time is right. After Amadís has risked death to save her, he reminds her of the promise. Finding a suitable *locus amoenus*, Amadís makes love to the sleeping Oriana thereby "making a lady of the most beautiful maiden in the world" ("*fue hecha dueña la más hermosa donzella del mundo*"; CB, I, 574). Esplandián is not born until bk. III. The second episode is found at the end of bk. IV when Arcaláus is defeated and imprisoned (chap. 117), but he is freed by Amadís when the enchanter's wife tricks the knight (chap. 130). See details in chap. 11, n. 2.

[11] Fenusa is a fictional city located in Lisuarte's Great Britain. It is mentioned earlier in bk. II, chap. 58.

that which was farthest from my will and which I most detested."

When King Lisuarte heard what the lady said, he then realized that she was the one whom he had found in the tent, and he said to her:

"Lady, I am sure what you have said is true; that it was you who deceived me. I had no recollection of this until you helped me recall it now. But tell me, why did you blame me for the evil others did to you?"

"I blamed you," she answered, "so that I could take revenge where I could expect to find the most honor and profit, since all of that had turned to my disadvantage on account of you. As for the others, I could no longer be satisfied by having or holding their lives, even though they lost them because of me; for, even with their lives, there was little remedy for what was past."

"It may be," said the king, "that what you say truly happened at that time, but when you did it, my great power and seigniory had been transferred to another person on whom you could have soothed your burning anger and desire for revenge, and you would have achieved greater honor.[12] Now, go away and sleep, for I am determined to conquer evil with good, if I can. And this is what I shall do in your case, if you are willing to recognize the One who is able to give you the highest reward."

The lady went to the room where her son the giant Matroco was. The king ordered the alcázar's gates to be fully secured. Then he spent the night in restful sleep, which he never at all expected, given the way fortune had brought him such tribulation.

10

About how the giant Matroco expired at the end of his days, and how, because of his death, Queen Arcabona was outraged and tried to kill King Lisuarte, and then, in desperation, she went and threw herself through a window and into the sea.

Now the story tells that King Lisuarte stayed in the alcázar's strongest tower, in the room that, as you have already heard, had the window that looked out on the sea, and there a bed was made for him and another for Master Helisabad and his nephew Libeo. After ordering his other men to guard and keep watch over the castle, and realizing that he was out of the danger he had experienced in that castle that was now under his command, he slept more peacefully that night than he had on previous nights.

Having spent the night with no interruptions other than the voices of the watchmen, which made his sleep all the more sweet and restful, he awoke at the crack of dawn and was astounded to hear loud shrieking cries throughout

---

[12] The reference is to Amadís who was at the acme of power and glory at the end of bk. IV.

the castle. Getting up quickly, he grabbed a steel axe which he had put by his side the night before, and then he woke up Master Helisabad and his nephew who were sleeping soundly. He opened the window to let daylight in so that he might be able to see what was happening. Then he opened the chamber door and went out showing his characteristic ebullience. Going through a hall naked as he was, he saw the lady of the castle approaching him dressed only in a fur thrown over her chemise and crying and wailing loudly. The king said to her:

"Lady, what is wrong?"

"What I have always expected was bound to happen to me," she said.

As she saw him let down his guard by resting the axe head on the floor, she drew a sword she had hidden under her fur and charged the king with it so quickly that his only escape was to throw his body to one side thus causing the blow to strike in a void. Since she did not have enough strength to continue, the sword slipped from her hand and fell at the king's feet. Although he tried to grab her quickly with his arms rather than harm her with his axe, she rushed even more quickly through the chamber door and threw herself through the window and into the sea below where in no time she drowned.[1]

At this point, the watchmen rushed in carrying some of their weapons. These men and the master and his nephew, who had just picked up their clothes and were now carrying them in their hands, came up to where the king was. Then they all entered the chamber where they had heard the voices and where they had seen the women of the castle crying for the giant whom they had found lying dead in his bed where he had died all alone. They told this to the king, who, when he heard it, returned to his bed, got dressed, and laughed over the battle he had just had in the campaign with the queen. Then he told them that all men should always keep some weapons at hand when they sleep thus anticipating dangers that often occur when they least expect them. As he was—even more than the other bold and prudent kings of his time—the most charming and witty prince in all things among his people, he spent a while joking and laughing over these matters with them. While they were engaged in these things, he asked about the sword the lady was carrying. Libeo told him:

"Sire, I picked it up. Here it is."

The king looked at it, and, as you have already been told, recognized it as the one he had had at the time he was enchanted. He then spoke these words:

"Oh, my good and prized sword! How much of the honor, glory, and prosperity I have in this world have you helped me win! When the wheel of for-

---

[1] This fictional episode is reminiscent of a real one in Jerónimo Zurita's chronicle of the conquest of the Islas Afortunadas (Canary Islands) by Spain in 1478–79. According to Zurita, the last and largest battle of the conquest "was so fierce and terrible . . . that the women threw themselves down onto the rocks below [from the heights where they were fighting] in order not to come into the hands of their enemies [i.e., the Christians]." Zurita, 395.

tune turned against me—not only do I feel it because of what happened to my enemies but also I feel it in you—I always realized that I held you as my friend and companion. In all my struggles I put you in those places where you could earn the most honor and esteem."[2]

That great king continued rhapsodizing in this way with his sword, which for a long period of time had subjugated great princes and provinces and had won many battles. Consoling himself for having defended himself as he did against a feeble woman, he recalled both prosperous and adverse times, and he thought about how bitter griefs and terrible tribulations are inserted in the sweet marrow of worldly things.[3] Also he remembered that no one should rely on his own grandeur, but rather should always live in the fear of the Lord on High who gave it to him, and should in total humility beg the Lord for the discernment to remain in His service, believing that when He relaxes His hand there is nothing so great or strong that can be upheld without falling.

11

About how King Lisuarte guarded the castle and had the dead buried, each one according to his merits.

The king, being occupied in this way, as you have heard, ordered the sheath to be found and the sword to be securely put away because at that time it was the best that could be found in the world. Then he said to the master:

"Good friend, since the castle is free of danger, as you see, it is right to set up guards and to hold it for that knight who won it by his excellent chivalric deeds. In the meantime, see to the burial of those dead knights. As for me, I will be forced to remain here several days. I would like to leave, but there is no one to guide me. Even if I could find a guide in this land, it would be a mistake to trust him."

Doing as the king ordered, the master gathered his men and went to the entrance to the mountain. He had the bodies taken outside and prepared for burial. When the knights were stripped of their arms, he immediately recog-

---

[2] Lisuarte's powerful but unnamed sword is the subject of personification throughout the Amadís Cycle. For example, Amadís uses his father-in-law's sword to good purposes in bk. I, chap. 30. Again, in chap. 38, Amadís uses it to defeat Barsinán, Arcaláus's foil in his battle to overthrow Lisuarte and his forces of good. In the central episode in bk. I, Amadís also apostrophized the sword: "Oh, sword! The knight who received you was born under a lucky star. It is certain that you are properly used in the service of good, and that, being the best sword in the world, the best man of all owns you" (CB, I, 590).

[3] It is King Lisuarte's lot to experience constant shifts in the wheel of fortune. As here, at the beginning of *Esplandián*, the whole Amadís Cycle rests on an elaborate episodic structure, the didactic point of which is to show that Lisuarte is the greatest and best king in the world, but that his status is insufficient to shield him from the vagaries of fate.

nized the one with the green armor as Arcaláus the Enchanter.[1] It seems that his sister Arcabona, after hearing that he was taken prisoner, went to the land of his castles only to find out, as you have already been told, that he had been freed. She then returned to her alcázar bringing King Lisuarte back as her prisoner. Arcaláus knew nothing about this, but when he heard the news that the king had left, and that he was neither dead nor alive, he then suspected that, given his sister's arts and her great enmity for the king, she had hexed him by means of some trick. Without further delay and in order to find out what had happened, Arcaláus had those arms made for him, set out to sea in a caravel, and arrived at Forbidden Mountain five days before the Black Knight; whereupon his sister Arcabona told him in great secrecy how she had captured King Lisuarte. Arcaláus was most amazed and happy to be freed from the prison of his great enemy Amadís and to have the king, his other principal enemy, in prison. However, as no one in this world knows where his good fortune or bad is to be found, it is precisely then, with this news, that Arcaláus seemed to think he was freest and most fortunate, and it is just then that he was to lose his life, which, until then he had defended with so much travail. Therefore, the master was amazed and could scarcely believe his eyes, given the scant passage of time since he had left the iron jail[2] and the long distance by road from his land to this one. He went directly to tell the king that one of the two knights that had been killed in the cave was Arcaláus the Enchanter. The king said to the master:

"How can that be? Amadís was keeping him on Firm Island with the intention of never letting him out of the iron jail."

---

[1] By winning the magic sword in chap. 2 and killing Arcaláus the Enchanter in chap. 9, Esplandián brings to a conclusion two of the exploits that were left for him in the four bks. dedicated to his father. Another major exploit is for Esplandián to redeem his father's pledge to Leonorina—either to return or to send back to her a member of his family. Defeating Arcaláus is especially significant because this evil enchanter is the principal representative of the forces of evil in the partially Manichæan world view on which the Amadís Cycle is based. Rather than continuing to fight *mano a mano* duels, as in bks. I to IV, Esplandián is now freed to lead a collective battle between the forces of Christianity and those of the so-called pagan world. CB speculates that GRM added a passage to bk. I, chap. 19, about enmity between Amadís and Arcaláus's wife in order to prepare for the resolution of this monumental conflict in this episode in *Esplandián* in which our hero kills Arcaláus. See CB, I, 444.

[2] As alluded to earlier (chap. 9, n. 10), Arcaláus is captured in Luvaina after he and the Arabian King are defeated in bk. IV, chap. 1. He is placed in an iron jail in an alcázar on Firm Island. He is released in chap. 130 by means of a trick contrived by his wife. The description of Arcaláus in prison is notable: "When they arrived, they found him dressed in an aljuba [Moorish overcoat with short sleeves] lined with the valuable furs of animals hunted on that island which Don Gandales, the warden, who was provided by Amadís, gave him because it was winter. He was reading a book given him because it contained good moral examples and doctrine about the adversities caused by fortune. His beard was very long and gray, and, as he had a very large body and an ugly face, which was always ruddy, he was a frightening sight to those ladies who saw him come toward them." (CB, II, 22).

The master told him about the trick by which he had been freed. The king continued:

"Master, we see in all this how God alone, and no one else, knows what of all worldly things is best. See that he is buried in cold earth, for his soul, as is right and in accord with his works, will rest in the hottest place. And as for the giant Matroco, who died a Christian, arrange it so that he can be taken to a sacred resting place."

This was accomplished after some time had passed, because, when the Black Knight became lord of much of that part of the kingdom of Persia, he ordered a monastery erected on the site where the hermitage was; he had the giant put in it in a richly adorned tomb; and he had an inscription placed on it telling the story of his battle and how he was converted; all of which this book will tell in what follows.

12

About how Master Helisabad went to visit the Black Knight who was in the hermitage, how he told him about the message taken by Grasinda[1] to the marquis[2] in Constantinople, and about matters concerning him and others he had discussed with the emperor and Princess Leonorina[3] and Queen Menoresa.[4]

After the giants and knights were buried, as you have heard, King Lisuarte asked what happened to the giant Matroco's men who had been in the caravels in the port. They told him that when Arcabona threw herself from the window they found her body and went off with it. Then the king asked them to feed him, and this was done, although, due to all the commotion, the cooking was not as good as it should have been. After eating he lay down on his bed and ordered them not to wake him, for he was tired and needed a sound sleep.

When Helisabad saw him sleeping, he decided it was time to go see the Black Knight who had begged him to do so. Leaving his nephew Libeo with

his other companions to guard the king and the castle, he left as incognito as possible by going down the crag's stairway. After crossing the bridge, he saw a path that led across level ground, which he crossed as quickly as he could. Then he turned at the sea's edge and went along it until he arrived at a place where the path entered some thickets, which were so dense that he doubted he could find his way through them without getting lost. He was so afraid that several times he was on the point of turning back, but his great desire to see the one for whom he was searching put him in a mind not to fear any risky adventure he might encounter. But he did not walk far before he saw the hermitage, which he recognized by the description the Black Knight had given him of it. He arrived quite tired, like one in whom age and lack of walking are the cause of increased aches and pains. Finding the goodman and the mute at the door, he exchanged greetings with them and asked them where the knight was. The goodman would have demurred, not knowing if the knight would be angry with him, but the mute, who knew the master, made gestures toward the little chamber. Seeing this, the master went in and found the knight stretched out on his bed. When Esplandián saw him, in order to talk, he leaned forward with much difficulty by pushing himself up on his arms. However, Helisabad knelt down by the bed and bent down to kiss his hands, and the knight embraced him with all the joy that his coming caused him. He held him in this way for a while, and then, making him sit next to him, he said:

"My good friend, what adventure brought you to this land so far from Firm Island where you were last with my father? As for me, you should not worry, for, according to what has been said about me, I was not born for tranquillity."

"My lord," said the master, "after you were dubbed a knight, and after the Great Serpent Caravel took you across the sea and we were put to sleep by the sweet sound of those trumpets, then, on the third day, King Bruneo[5] and Sir Cuadragante[6] left Firm Island along with all of the other knights except for those who remained with Amadís. Grasinda, my lady, ordered me to go to her land, and after I collected some things from her estate, I was to go to Grasinda's brother, the marquis Saluder,[7] in Constantinople. There I was to

---

[5] Bruneo is the son of Valladas, brother of Branfil, and he loves Melicia, who is Esplandián's aunt. He appears first in bk. II, chap. 44. In bk. III, chap. 75, Helisabad cures him of nearly fatal wounds, and he helps rescue Oriana. Toward the end of bk. IV (chap. 125) he marries Melicia, he is given the kingdom of the Arabian king, and he cedes his marquisate to Branfil. Just before Lisuarte disappears at the end of bk. IV, he goes to Firm Island.

[6] Cuadragante is seen first in bk. II, chap. 44, when his sword is prominently displayed on Firm Island. He becomes a friend of Amadís after the latter defeats him in battle. He too joins forces to save Oriana in bk. III. In bk. IV, chap. 120, he marries Grasinda, and Amadís makes him lord of Sansueña (chap. 120), Arcaláus's former seigniory. When Lisuarte disappears at the end of bk. IV, he rushes off to Firm Island.

[7] Saluder is Grasinda's brother. He appears first as a knight of Constantinople in bk. III, chap. 74.

let him know that she had come into much honor, having married a knight of very high lineage, and that they were now the lords of the seigniory of Sansueña. I was also to tell him about everything else that had occurred after he left Firm Island, and I was to find out from him how his trip had been. Hence, I arrived in Constantinople with this mission, I delivered the message I was carrying to the marquis, and I saw the emperor, who received me affectionately. He insisted on knowing everything that had happened since his nephew Gastiles[8] had arrived there, all of which I told him as it had come to pass. Loving your father as much as he did, he detained me for a long time on the details. Wishing to take leave of him, I was summoned by his daughter, the beautiful Leonorina, she who, today, surpasses all other damsels in the world in beauty, grace, and bearing. When I came before her, as well as before Queen Menoresa and the other high-born damsels, she asked me eagerly about the Knight of the Green Sword.[9] She told me that, although she knew he was now called Amadís de Gaula, she herself would call him by no other name than the one he used when he promised either to come to see her again or to send her a knight who would serve her.[10] I told her many other things that had happened on Firm Island which were not known there because news of them had not reached them. Also, I told her that King Lisuarte had been lost and that there had been no news of him; that Urganda the Unknown dubbed you a knight to fulfill said bond; that good fortune came from your dubbing; that your father ordered you to fulfill the promise he made to her; that you serve her in whatever way she commanded; and that we were put to sleep by the sweet sound of trumpets in such guise that we knew nothing about you, or the novice knights, or what had become of the Serpent Caravel. So, there was nothing I did not inform her about. And I tell

---

[8] Gastiles is the emperor of Constantinople's nephew. He appears first in bk. III, chap. 74. He goes to Santa María Island looking for the Knight of the Green Sword (i.e., Amadís). He leads the emperor's army in helping Amadís. Later he accompanies Bruneo in conquering the Arabian kingdom.

[9] Amadís is known as the Knight of the Green Sword after his adventures in Germany in bk. III, chap. 70.

[10] Amadís makes this promise to princess Leonorina in Constantinople when she is nine years old (see bk. III, chap. 74). It is one of the more memorable passages in the Amadís Cycle. Amadís has just arrived in audience with the emperor after his dramatic victory over the monster Endriago. Leonorina asks him three favors, the first two of which deal with devices of golden crowns, and the last of which is a request to know the name of the lady who had just made him cry. Since the rules of chivalry forbid Amadís to reveal it, Leonorina is embarrassed for her faux pas. To make amends, she gives him a precious ring with a mythical history. The ring originated with King Felipanos of Judea and then passed in order to Apolidón, his wife Grimanesa, her grand-daughter Leonorina, Amadís, Esplandián, and finally, to Leonorina again. Later, Amadís promises that either he or someone from his family will return to her (CB, II, 1173). The narrator comments that Amadís was thinking of his brother Galaor when he said this, but the narrator continues by saying that another knight from his lineage would fulfill the promise and that "all of this appears in a branch of these books called *The Labors of Esplandián.*" (CB II, 1177). Cacho Blecua and Avalle-Arce both believe the whole passage is created especially to tie into the future creation of bk. V.

you she listened to it all with the most eagerness you can imagine, and then she said to me:

" 'Aside from the other things my cousin Gastiles told me that happened in that region, he spoke to me about the young don you have mentioned, and about how handsome he is, and about the grand things that Urganda has said about him—for there she is considered a very wise woman—and about the very strange letters he was born with on his chest.[11] Master, I beg you to tell me what you know about him, because the great affection my lord the emperor and all of us have for his father makes us want to know about everything that is subject to him.'

"Then I told her in detail about your birth, and what your boyhood was like, and how King Lisuarte found you in the wood with the lioness and the letter Urganda the Unknown wrote him containing the great things that had happened to you. I found out about all of this when I was in Great Britain. I told her that the letter said that on your right side your name is written and on the left side is the name of your destined lady, and that the letters that show your name are white and are easily readable, and that the other ones are a marvel because they are so red they seem to be burning; but they could not be read nor understood by anyone in the past, nor will they be read in the future by anyone except her whose great beauty will win him by captivating his heart. Then she said to me:

" 'Master, even if the red letters cannot be read nor understood by anyone, it is still not possible to hide who his lady friend is whom he has worn on his heart since birth.'

"I answered her by saying that you were not yet old enough to lose your freedom and become subject to another; but, as everyone believes, given your grand lineage, the very great status that awaits you, and the great things you are to accomplish thereby surpassing all other knights in the world, you cannot help but be loved and desired by her whose majesty and beauty exceed all others in her time. She said:

" 'Master, surely, if the knight is as you say, so should she be who is to be his beloved lady and mistress, for he would reap merits in accordance with

---

[11] In bk. III, chap. 66, the episode of Esplandián's birth is narrated. His mother Oriana is assisted in the birth by Mabilia and her lady-in-waiting, the damsel from Denmark. The latter tells Mabilia that the baby "has something on its chest that no other babies have." Then, by candlelight, they see "below his right nipple some letters as white as snow, and below the left nipple seven letters as red as burning embers; but they were unable to read either set, nor did they know what they meant, because the white ones were in a very obscure Latin, and the red ones were in a very cryptic form of Greek."

the level of his valor. Since his father ordered him to come serve me, I entreat you earnestly, master, if you see him, to tell him on my behalf to come. I should like to see if his deeds are such that his father's would pale by comparison.'

"I said to her, 'my mistress, his departure from Firm Island was, as I have said, so strange that I would not know where to find him even if, for love of you, I were to work hard searching. Nevertheless, I am certain that before long his acts will attract so much notice that they will reveal his whereabouts no matter how much he tries to hide, for those black arms of his and what he does with them will give him renown in many places.'

"So, my good lord, until I took my leave from her, that princess detained me to talk about the things I have told you and about other things. Then my nephew and I went to sea with those companions you saw, and on the second day, fortune took me to the region where the giant Matroco was sailing and delivered me into his hands."

When the Black Knight heard what Master Helisabad told him about how that noble and most beautiful lady truly wanted to know all about him, and how she sent the master to call him to her service, suddenly he felt a wound in his heart. Not knowing why, he became quite weak, color was drained from his face, and he could not speak for a while. When he was somewhat recovered, he did not dare speak further with the master, so he said:

"My good friend, it would be best for you to return to the king before he misses you, because I would not want your absence to cause him to find out about me."

"Why are you concealing your identity so much from your grandfather the king?" asked the master. "I believe without a doubt that one cannot find his equal in the world, unless it is King Perión,[12] whom we recognize as such. Although some knights might equal him or even exceed him in strength, nevertheless they should not be considered on an equal level, for we are right to say that there is much difference between the great princes, some of whom forget the majestic status God gave them, and prefer placing their bodies in great peril, trying to be where there is the most danger and hardship, and risking their lives to shield and succor their own people. Other princes do the same without having high status. However you may expect to find it out in the future, you have never known what it means to rule. But Perión is not one of those kings who, in order to keep their realms free from trouble, distance themselves personally from the conflicts that might harm them and order others to risk dying for them. From this it usually follows that kings who are not like Perión are often led by willful passions and that they are not constrained by reason or necessity. Rather they take off on adventures

---

[12] King Perión de Gaula is Esplandián's grandfather, Elisena's husband, and father to Amadís, Galaor, Melicia, and Florestán (by a different mother). At the very beginning of the Amadís Cycle, we see him fall in love with Elisena, conceive Amadís, have premonitory dreams, and dub Amadís knight without recognizing him. In bk. III, chap. 69, he is captured by Arcaláus, and later he fights against Lisuarte and the emperor of Rome.

through distant lands risking the lives of innocent people all the while spending their lives in depravity and pleasure and forgetting those who work and suffer in their service. In all this, our king has always been very different. Therefore, it is right that not only his own people but also foreigners seek to serve him and all kings and great lords who have similar habits."

"Master, all of what you say is true," said the knight. "Only by a miracle could another king as good as he be found. The only reason why I will not go see him or why I will not make myself known to him is that I am not worthy to appear before him: so many great things have been written to him about me, and I have done so few."

"Since this is your desire," said the master, "so be it; although it would please me for him to see you because, besides being greatly pleased, he would know that when he was most distanced from your father, it was precisely then that his salvation came from your father."[13]

13

About how Damsel Carmela made herself known to the king, and with his permission went to see her father the hermit in the forest where, having heard about the Black Knight, she became angry enough to kill him in his bed where he was sleeping alone, but, observing his handsomeness, she was captivated by love for him.

After what you have just heard, Master Helisabad left the hermitage where the Black Knight remained so bruised that he was completely unable to rise from his bed. He returned by the same path on which he had come, he entered Forbidden Mountain without anyone knowing he had gone, and he found King Lisuarte had gotten up and was walking about the chamber in the great tower looking at the sea and longing to find someone who could take him back to his land. Then the master approached the king and asked him what he had done and if he had slept. He told the king that he had been walking about the mountain observing the most beautiful land he had ever seen. At this moment, one of the damsels from the alcázar entered the cham-

---

[13] Toward the end of bk. IV, Perión fights against Lisuarte and the emperor of Rome. When Nasciano tells Lisuarte that Amadís and Oriana were secretly married, Lisuarte accepts a humiliating peace treaty that saves him (bk. IV, chap. 113). For more about Nasciano, who does not reappear in *Esplandián*, see chap. III, n. 1. According to Fogelquist, Lisuarte's defeat marks his lowest point in a personal trajectory that begins at the height of glory and ends in ignominy. By the same token, Amadís's path, as ruled by fortune, is ascendent. Based on his analysis of the rule of fortune, Fogelquist predicts that Amadís also must fall: "Amadís will follow the same personal descending trajectory as Lisuarte. It will be another example of the fall of princes" (Fogelquist, 9). To the contrary, bk. V demonstrates that, by following the spiritual path, by discovering the rule of Christian self-overcoming, there is nothing inevitable about the ultimate fall of princes: Lisuarte, Amadís, and Esplandián all end on the highest spiritual plane.

ber. Her name was Carmela.[1] She was the daughter of the hermit about whom you already know. She kneeled down before the king and said to him:

"King, I want you to know who I am and for you to let me serve you since I am your natural subject."

"Damsel," the king answered, "I thank you for those words, and if they are to win my favor, no matter where you are from, you will earn it, for ladies and damsels will never cease being honored or favored by me in whatever way I can. Even though fortune has gone against me on account of some of them, I do not blame them, because my bad fortune has not come from them but from the Lord whom I have angered. Now, tell me who you are."

Then the damsel related that they had come with her mistress, Queen Arcabona and that her father was the hermit in the forest beyond the mountain. She also related to him everything you have already heard the hermit tell the Black Knight. The king spent that day talking with the damsel and with Master Helisabad and his nephew, inquiring about the affairs of that land. He told them he was distressed and dispirited not knowing who the knight with the black arms was, and he had an abiding sadness not knowing whether or not the knight had left the land without his knowledge. After the day had passed and the night come, they prepared a meal for the king. As he was getting ready to retire to his bed, Damsel Carmela approached him, knelt down, and said:

"King, I ask your leave to go tomorrow to see my father the hermit and tell him what I have seen happen to you here. This will bring him great comfort."

"So be it," said the king, "and tell him that I would be pleased for him to see me."

The damsel then took her leave from the king.

The next day at sunrise she ordered the castle gate opened for her, and, riding her palfrey, she went across the mountain to the place not bordered by the sea. She took her palfrey through a little one-horse postern gate she found between two towers and for which she had the key. Locking the gate on the outside, she remounted and rode across a deep and thickly wooded valley. She arrived at the hermitage after the mute sailor and her father the hermit had gone to the boat for things they needed to get for the knight, whom they had left sleeping. After Master Helisabad had left him the day before, Esplandián continued thinking about that lady who was already causing torment in his heart, but, because the idea was such a novelty for him, he could find no remedy for his pain. Rather, the delicious memory of what the master had told him remained foremost in his mind, and several times he fell into a swoon. Then, feeling so afflicted, he would put his hands on his heart, which he feared would burst from his chest, but he found the red letters thereon burning so ardently that he could barely stand to keep his hands

---

[1] Carmela and her father are the first characters in this novel who are not found in bks. I to IV of GRM's Amadís Cycle. AKCT spells her name as 'Carmelle.'

there. He remained in this condition for the rest of the day and most of the night, for it was impossible for him to sleep. Thinking that he was sick from the past battle, he had his sailor apply some medicines, but they were of little help. This is because one sickness hurt his flesh, but the other one wracked and tore the strings and fabric of his heart. Even so, as morning approached, the strength of his entire torment was lessened so much that a great weariness and desire for rest overcame him. Thus, he fell into a deep sleep. At this, the damsel arrived. She tied her palfrey to a tree, went into the hermitage expecting to find her father, but not seeing him, she then went into her chamber as she had done many other times. After opening the door and going into the room, she saw a richly decorated sword leaning against the headboard of her bed and the form of a person lying on it. At this she was most surprised. As quietly as possible she came closer, put her hands on the sword, took it out of its sheath, and found it splattered with blood. Looking around, she saw the black arms at one end of the bedroom, and she recognized them as belonging to the knight who had killed her señores. She was deeply shocked and her hands and her whole body were shaking so much that she almost dropped the sword; but she encouraged herself by realizing that, even if she were caught then and there, no danger would come to her because she was a woman. Gaining courage, she tried to see who was sleeping on her bed, and, if her heart were strong enough for it, she would avenge herself on the one who had done so much harm to those on whom she had placed so much hope. Approaching the bed, she looked at the knight's face which was half-covered by a piece of linen cloth that had been wrapped around his face to ease the pain from the blows he had received. Seeing how handsome and how beautiful and radiant of countenance he was—even though his features were marred by all the tears he had shed—she was brought to a sudden halt, and she stood there looking at him for a long time without being able to take her eyes off him.

While she was standing there, the Black Knight rolled over without awaking and said:

"Oh, unfortunate knight that I am! What will become of me?"

The damsel stood quietly and did not move, but, seeing he was still asleep, she went around the bed, and, in a state of great agitation, put her face near his. She was so strongly captivated by love for him that her senses were suspended, and great quantities of tears flowed from her eyes and rolled down her cheeks without her being aware of it. Hence, one could well say that there, in such a little house, so poor, so isolated and so far from intercourse with the outside world, cruel and false Cupid refused to pardon those lovers; there he gave them such painful wounds with his cruel arrows that they felt them deeply for the rest of their lives. These love pangs grew into a thousand sighs, pains, cries of lovers' anguish. It is irrelevant whether the time was ripe when this happened to them, for it happened even though one of them was so exhausted from the travails of his recent hard battles that it is reasonable to suppose that he had little cause to think about anything other than his health. And the maiden, having seen all her masters killed in only one day—not the least of whom was the mistress who raised her, and from whom she

had expected thanks and many good turns—should she not have turned her thoughts to finding someone to console her? For both of them, all this failed to help them escape being prisoners and captives for the rest of their lives. So, if it is true that no one, no matter how tired or troubled, can find help or defense from that cruel tyrant, then what can those men and women do who, with their superabundance of passion and pleasures, not only do not try to parry his shafts, but also of their own volition awaken him and attract him by invoking his memory? Whether right or wrong, whether modest or immodest, these people think only about desire and love.

14

Wherein Damsel Carmela secretly took the knight's sword to the alcázar, and the hermit and the mute, returning from the boat, discovered it was lost and were highly upset.

While Damsel Carmela, daughter of that goodman and hermit, stood there, as was said, looking so attentively and with so much desire at that handsome knight, she gradually returned to her senses and thought that there had to be another way to cure the wound that had come upon her so suddenly. So she returned the sword to its sheath, put it under her cloak to conceal it as much as possible, and rode back on her palfrey through the thickly wooded valley by the way she had come. She returned through the postern you have heard about and entered the castle where she hid the sword so well that no one would know it was there.

A little while later, the mute and the goodman from the hermitage came with the message that they needed meat and other things, but they added that the Black Knight had ordered them not to get them from the castle so that his whereabouts would not be discovered. However, they could not get them elsewhere because the towns in that region were far away and in the hands of the Turks.[1] When they had entered the knight's chamber, they woke him to

---

[1] This is the second mention of the Turks in *Esplandián*. The first mention is in chap. 1. The term applied in GRM's time, and continues to apply, to the main ethnic group in Turkey. However, there are connotations in our text and in general Spanish culture that make the term apply generally to: (1) all Moslems; (2) the Moslems in Spain; (3) the Moslems in Granada prior to 1492; and (4) all pagans. In many parts of Latin America today, the term still refers to Moslems or Arabs in general, including those who are permanent residents or citizens of various Latin American countries. Cov. says: "This nation is better known than it should be for having conquered a large part of the globe; low people of bad customs who lived from robbing and mistreating others." By the time of the DA (1.737), this sense was dropped from official usage, and it no longer remains in contemporary dictionaries. The plot of *Esplandián* will focus on the Turks as pre-Moslem pagans from the area surrounding Constantinople. However, given the fact that GRM was writing during the fervor of the reconquest of Granada, the text is saturated with all the other connotations.

give him something to eat, but he was so sleepy, weary, and anguished that he was quite bewildered. Moreover, the imprisonment of his spirit that came from the lady, on the one hand, brought great sweetness to his mind, but, on the other hand, it also brought him great fainting spells. So, our knight could not think where a remedy might come from; for if he were to seek to be her servant, he did not consider himself her equal, given both her majesty and her great beauty; nor did he think his knightly qualities were good enough to satisfy his very great desire—nor much less to achieve what she expected of him. Still, being, as he was, so far from her presence, it was impossible to continue living or even to keep his heart from being broken apart and converted into a pool of tears. He was in this mood, neither asleep nor awake, when these two men found him, and, as I said, against his will gave him something to eat. But it is what Master Helisabad said to him that caused the dramatic change that came over him at that time.

While they were engaged in this way, as you have just heard, they were amazed to see the sword was missing, and they asked the knight if he had put it somewhere else. He answered that he had not seen it, and they—and especially the sailor—began to be very worried about the loss that had happened to their master. However, the knight said to them:

"My friends, do not be so afflicted or troubled, for my affairs are not the same as others. The sword was won by the accidents of fate, and it has been lost through the same fate. Perhaps it was kept so long for me only to fulfill the reason why it was made. Let us leave all this to the Lord in whose hands there is power over all things."

15

About how King Lisuarte, being informed by Damsel Carmela about the Black Knight and where he was, departed with her alone to go see him, and how, halfway there, a messenger who was in a hurry gave him the news that there was a brute battle in which Lindoraque the giant and his two knights were killed by the hands of two unknown knights; how the king went quickly into the forest to see it; how the king, recognizing the two as Talanque[1] *and Ambor,*[2] *natives of his land, took them with Carmela to the hermitage from which place they took Esplandián, who was filled with joy, to the alcázar; and how the king confirmed the boon he had granted Carmela.*

So, returning to King Lisuarte, the story tells that he spent five days in the grand alcázar on Forbidden Mountain without doing anything other than talk with Master Helisabad, who was lettered and knowledgeable about all things. The king brought up the subject of the Black Knight to see if there were some means to get the master to talk about him, but the latter was so loyal and so true to his word that he would not under any guise break his promise to the knight, which was that he would not reveal his whereabouts. However, Damsel Carmela, who was present throughout this conversation, seeing the king's great desire to learn more about the knight, could not help but put him at his ease. Thus, hoping to attain what she loved most in the world, she took the king aside one day as if it had to do with something else, and said to him:

"Good king, if you promise to be my helper in a project that means for me earning life or reaping death from that knight who you want to learn about, I'll lead you to him in a place where you can speak to him without hindrance. And so you'll believe what I've said is true, come to my chamber and you'll see a token that'll take away any doubt you may have about me."

"Good damsel," said the king, "if you can do what you have said, there is nothing within my power I would not do for you."

"I want only," she answered, "for you to be my helper in something I'll ask of that knight."

Then, with no one else around, she took the king to her chamber, and, showing him the knight's sword, she said:

"I'm sure you know this one well."

"Of course I know it," said the king. "It was a great help in my liberation."

"Well then," she said, "don't fear coming with me. I'll show you the one

---

[1] Talanque is the son of Galaor and Julianda. His birth is narrated in bk. II, chap. 59. At the end of bk. IV (chap. 126), Urganda foretells his future and he is knighted (chap. 133). Julianda, who is Urganda's niece, takes part in Esplandián's knighting. This also occurs in bk. IV, chap. 133, the last chap. of the first four bks. Julianda reappears later in *Esplandián.*

[2] Ambor is the son of Angriote, and in bk. III, chap. 75, he is a member of Oriana's train. Like Esplandián and Talanque, he is knighted in the last chap. of bk. IV.

who fought better with it in a short space of time than anyone else now or ever could possibly do."

"Damsel, what do you want me to do now?" the king asked.

"Good king, nothing other than to go out with me tomorrow," answered the damsel. "By the time you return for lunch, what I've promised you will be carried out."

"Shall I go armed?" he asked.

"Only your sword," she answered. "Because no knight at any time or on any occasion should leave it behind. You should also take one of the horses you'll find in this castle."

"So be it," said the king. "For I cannot risk enough to see him who underwent so much danger and hardship on my account, because he merits no less."

Then he returned to the others and was talking with them about many things including his desire to sally forth the next day in the company of the damsel to see something of the mountain, for he truly wanted to get out in the countryside.

After the night passed and when morning came, the king ordered one of the giants' excellent horses to be saddled for him. Mounting this beautiful horse and ordering the master to stay with his men to guard the alcázar, he went off with the damsel. She took him to the postern you have already heard about, and then they led the horses through it and crossed the deep and dense valley going straight to the hermitage where the Black Knight was. When they got to the halfway point, they saw a man on horseback coming toward them down the slope as fast as he could straight along the same valley road they were taking. Upon seeing him, the king stopped his horse, the man came up to them, he recognized the damsel, she recognized him, and she said to him:

"Friend, what's your hurry?"

"As you see, I'm going to Forbidden Mountain to get help from your masters for your uncle Lindoraque, who, when he was coming from his tower to see them, found in the plain two foreign knights who no one knew were in this land. They had black armor with white devices, and they killed two of his knights who were preceding him, and these knights, who are unlike those from our land, are now locked with him in the fiercest battle ever seen."

When the king heard him say they were knights and describe their heraldic devices, he immediately suspected they were companions of the other foreign knight, the one with black arms. He said to the damsel:

"Friend, stay with this man with whom you are acquainted, for I want to go see the battle."

He then gave spurs to his horse, and, as quickly as possible, went along the path by which the man had come toward them. When he reached the crest of a hill, he looked into another valley and saw the two knights attacking a giant between them with ferociously mortal blows. But the giant was defending

himself most fiercely with an immense mace.[3] Because it was heavy, he remained stationary, while the two knights moved swiftly on their horses avoiding his blows and escaping from him whenever they wished.[4] They continued in this way for a while with the knights striking heavy blows that did very little damage to him. He was unharmed because his strong armor protected him well. Neither was he capable of landing a solid blow with the mace, but, as the horses began to tire, the brave giant got the chance to seriously wound one of them so hard on his helmet with the strong and heavy mace that it broke into pieces, and the horse fell to the ground dead. The knight was somewhat hurt in the fall, but not enough to prevent him from quickly getting to his feet and grasping his sword, which he had not lost. When this knight's companion saw him in such straits, he spurred his horse as hard as he could, and, before the giant could harm him, he closed in on him so fast that the only thing the giant could do was to grasp him tightly in his arms and not let him go. The king, who was watching the battle, was amazed by this action.

In this part of the fight, with the giant grabbing the knight so strongly that he pulled him from the saddle, the other knight approached on foot and joined in the battle in the same fashion; thereby, with the giant between both of them, all three were knocked to the ground. But the knight who was on foot, seeing his companion being brought down, backed off a little way, and, when they had fallen to the ground locked in an embrace, he leaped on the giant. Before the companion could get disentangled, the other one thrust his sword through to the other side of the visor in the giant's helmet cutting his face. Therefore, the giant had to open his arms and release the knight he was grasping. Then, groping with his right hand for the sword he had lost—for he was blinded by all of the blood covering his eyes—he grabbed the knight who had wounded him by the skirt of the cuirass[5] and pulled him toward himself so forcefully that he made the knight fall unwillingly face down across him and land on the other side. But the knight who was now free attacked him by striking the giant's hand so hard with a sword that it was severed and fell to the ground. The giant gave a loud roar, but he no longer had enough strength to defend himself, and so there, below the broad and thick leaves of the trees they thrust their swords in him killing him.

Seeing this outcome of the contest, the king was pleased, because he thought these knights were Christians, for their arms bore the sign of the cross. Realizing they were about to ride off—they were mounting the remain-

---

[3] Generally speaking, in the Middle Ages, a mace was seen as a sign of authority, but in the Amadís Cycle a mace is usually associated with the less than noble antagonists. See Riq., 77–80.

[4] This is what the *Glosa al regimiento de príncipes*, III, 313, says about swiftness in knightly combat: "[Knights] should be able continually to move their limbs, for whoever moves swiftly in battle and goes from spot to spot hardly ever will be wounded; also when the banner is moved and does not stay fixed in one place, the crossbowmen are unable to hit it."

ing horses and the giant's horse as a replacement for one of theirs the giant had killed—he went toward them. Quietly they awaited his approach, because they did not know who he was. As he got closer, they recognized him and said:

"Blessed be the Lord who led us to where we would find you."

And they knelt before him, one on each side of him.

"Knights," replied the king, "I beg you earnestly to tell me who you are, for you do me great honor."

They took off their helmets, and the king recognized them: one was Talanque, Sir Galaor's son, and the other was Ambor de Gadel, Angriote de Estraváus's son. The king said to them:

"My friends, it is not without reason for you to be happy to be here with me, for I have always been happy to be with your fathers, and so I am again to be with you. But tell me, what force of events brought you to this exceedingly strange land?"

"Sir," they answered, "we have come tracking a knight who bears black arms, and we hope we can find him."

"Do you know what that knight's name is?" asked the king.

"Yes," they answered. "He is your grandson, Esplandián."

"Oh, Holy Mary, help me!" exclaimed the king. "Tell me no more, for I could not stand it, but rather, mount your horses and come with me. I intend to show him to you, and when we have more peace and quiet I want you to tell me about his deeds and yours."

The knights mounted their horses as the king did and they rode behind him leaving the giant and the other two knights dead in the field. In a little while they came across the damsel, who was astonished that those knights were accompanying the king so peacefully, and she said:

"King, who are these knights?"

"My fair damsel," answered the king, "you will find out in due time. But tell me, what happened to the man who remained with you? What did you find out from him?"

"When I told him about the horrible destruction of the giants and their mother," she said, "he went across the mountain as fast as possible. But first, he told me how the giant you have left up there in one of his towers found out something of what happened down here and came down to find out what it was. He said he only had with him two very good knights who always protected him, and, when he left the giant, he found the two knights dead, but the giant didn't see them because he was coming along far behind. When the giant arrived on the scene, he saw the two foreign knights attack him, and that's all he knew."

"Now, lead us where you promised," said the king, "for the giant you are talking about has gone where he will reap the reward his deeds merit."

The damsel then took the road toward the hermitage, and it was not long before they arrived and found the hermit sitting on a stone in the door. When he saw them, he got up with a start and said:

"Daughter, who are these men who have come with you?"

"Father," she said, "this is King Lisuarte, and we're his subjects."

The goodman looked at him, and even though the king was much younger when he left the kingdom to come here, he recognized him by his facial features, and he went up to the king to kiss his foot, but this he would not permit. Instead the king dismounted and handed him his horse. Then he went into the hermitage following the damsel who was heading to her room just as the mute sailor was leaving it to find out who had arrived. Seeing the king, the mute kneeled before him. But, since the king was in such a hurry to find the knight, he didn't stop at all, but rather went right into the little house. He saw Esplandián dressed, sitting on the bed and eating a meal that had been set before him. The king's joy on seeing him was so great that he could not say a single word. He went to him, took him in his arms, kissed him over and over, and held him so tight that Esplandián could not kiss his hands. They were in this position for a long time looking at each other very happily and with warm tears in their eyes. At this moment, the two companions came in, and they said to the king:

"Sire, let us reach that knight, too. We have a strong desire to see him although our paths separated only a little time ago."

The king withdrew a little, and they approached him and gave him the happiest and most joyful hugs you can imagine. Thereupon, the king said to Esplandián:

"Beloved boy, we must go to the castle where you will be given better care, for in this little house there is not enough room either for you or for us. Rouse yourself so you can return on horseback."

"Sire," Esplandián said, "may it be as it pleases Your Highness."

They put him on the damsel's palfrey, and she rode with Ambor. The king ordered the hermit and the sailor to bring Esplandián's black arms, and they all went to the castle.

As you are about to hear, they all traversed the wooded valley until they reached the little postern, and from there they returned to the castle where the king ordered his servants to set up a bed for Esplandián in his chamber and another for his companions. This was done to please Esplandián. They spent the remainder of the day eating and speaking about the things that made them happiest. During all this time Damsel Carmela never took her eyes off Esplandián, but rather she continued looking at him as if she had lost her senses. However, he, who was not looking at her, was quite unaware of this.

The next day, after the king had risen, while he was in his chamber speaking and laughing with the knights, joking with Ambor about the time when the giant threw him across the giant's body, and sharing many other past experiences—from which they all derived great pleasure—Damsel Carmela came in and said:

"Good king, have I kept my promise?"

"Yes, most certainly," he answered, "and so much to my liking that I will always owe you honor and thanks."

"That being so," said the damsel, "if you want to keep faith as all knights

are obliged to do, and kings much more so, please do what I shall ask—for much good or ill redounds from the examples of kings."

"Ask what you please," said the king. "If it is within my power, it shall be done."

"King," she said, "remember that not long ago I asked your leave to go see my father, who was in the hermitage, and not finding him or any other person there, I entered the small chamber you saw in which I often used to sleep in days past. There I found this knight's sword, and, seizing it and recognizing him as my lords' murderer, I decided, against a woman's natural tendency, to take my revenge upon him. And taking the naked sword in my hand in order to strike him, I saw his exceedingly handsome face, and then, not knowing how or why, I was captured so strongly by love for him that, if it were not for some form of hope I have had in you, I would have been happier to kill myself rather than continue living in grief.[6] But since then I have come to know more about this knight, and my aim has changed to something else. Before, I thought he was on a par with other knights who sally forth seeking adventures, and I thought I would be somewhat his equal; and if he were a little above me, my beseeching and your majesty could make up for what I lack, and I could become his wife. But the matching between us is so unmatched that neither you, great king, nor all the emperors and princes in the world would be able to join us by the means I thought we could use. Since this is the way it is, since I can't have him for a mate, what I ask in fulfillment of your promise is to have him serve me as his lady and for me to call him my knight, and for him never to leave my presence unless it is by my choosing.[7] And, oh king, if what I ask is beyond your power, and if he doesn't grant it, then with the same sword that brought my lords to such an agonizingly miserable end I will without hesitation bring about my own end, with great danger to my soul."

When the king heard what the damsel was asking for, he marvelled to see such a strong and deeply felt love that sprang up so suddenly, and he feared that if he were to contradict her in any way such an act would have a bad effect on her life. So, he responded thus:

---

[6] Despite some marked differences starting with class, there is a noticeable parallel between Carmela's impossible and unrequited love for Esplandián and Queen Briolanja's roughly similar situation vis-à-vis Amadís. Both father and son have committed their love to another, Oriana and Leonorina respectively, and therefore, because both knights are the most perfect examples of erotic fidelity, they must reject the love of these other ladies. The fact that Amadís and Oriana knew each other for a long time and consummated their relationship before Briolanja complicates things, and the fact that Esplandián just heard about Leonorina shortly before Carmela's declaration here does not change the basic situation. Amadís and Esplandián are totally faithful knights errant. See CB, I, chap. 42, and CB, II, chaps. 57 and 58.

[7] Like Amadís and Briolanja, Esplandián will accept being Carmela's knight, but, unlike the first couple, the fact that Esplandián will serve Carmela will not cause the severe problems that it caused Amadís and Oriana: jealousy, penitence, etc. Furthermore, this is the only case in the Amadís Cycle that a noble knight serves a commoner.

"Fair damsel, I glory in this knight being loved by all men and women who see him and know about all his good traits. Therefore, what you ask of me, the same I ask and beg you: namely, that you always love him and seek his service in whatever way you wish; and, as for him, I order him to take you as his amie[8] and companion, and, as his duty obliges him, to protect your honor and reputation."

"Well, let him grant it, too," said the damsel.

Esplandián, who witnessed all this with embarrassment but saw the king's approval, said to her:

"Fair damsel, for what you want you did not need the king my lord's commandment, for I myself of my own accord accept to love you and to keep you in my company, as I would do for all fair damsels like you. Even though this is my general principle, I shall treat you specially just as your love for me is special. Whatever God may give me I shall share with you as I ought to do with a good lady friend such as you."

The damsel was at once so happy to hear his words that it was as if she had become mistress of the world. Kneeling before him, she said:

"From now on, I am yours until the end of my life, and you are my lord. For me, even if not for you, no name other than 'my lord'—not emperor, nor king, nor whatever other magnates there may be in the world—will ever come from my mouth."

---

[8] The word used by the king here is *amiga*, the first sense of which is "friend." Here, the word is borrowed from the French cycle of chivalric romances, *ami* ['ami/amie' in OED], and the concept derives from the medieval Provençal concept of courtly love wherein the relationship between knight and lady is based on absolute fidelity, more or less platonic ideality, and physical satisfaction. In this last sense *ami/amie* can also mean paramour or concubine. The fourteenth century *Fuero de Aragón* (a compilation of Aragonese laws) defines it thus: "*Concubinarios vulgariter vocatus amigos.*" As late as DA (1726), *amiga* still connoted concubine. Cervantes uses the term in this sense in *Don Quixote* (I, 25). When Don Quixote is in the Sierra Morena imitating Amadís/Beltenebros, he contradicts Cardenio who had referred to Queen Madasima as Helisabad's *amiga* or concubine: "*pero pensar que ella era su amiga es disparate digno de muy gran castigo* [but to believe she was his concubine is nonsense deserving of very severe punishment]." The OED lists "ami" or "amy" as a now obsolete lexeme used in Middle English to mean friend or lover. It should be recognized that both the character who is speaking in the passage above and sixteenth-century readers would understand and delight in the ambiguity of the term; however, we have chosen not to use equivalent terms with sexual connotations because it would misrepresent the underlying situation. This notwithstanding, as will be seen in chap. 16, Carmela sleeps in Esplandián's bed and has all other attributes of wife, mistress, or concubine; but she does not command the primary place in his heart. In other words, in the medieval scheme, courtly fidelity to Leonorina is not diminished by the knight having another *amiga*.

16

In which is explained why the story refers so often to Damsel Carmela.

The story wishes to relate why poor Damsel Carmela, who does not spring from any grand lineage, is mentioned so often. It is because she is very discerning and virtuous, qualities that equate the highborn with those of low birth if the former lack them. She always served our knight wherever he went, and she saw all of the great combats he had. He sent her on missions both of amity and enmity to great kings and provinces. She gave such a good account of her honor and reputation that she was known and held in high repute in those lands where her knight spent most of his time making war on the infidels. For the same reason, she was beloved of the emperor of Constantinople and his daughter Leonorina to whom she often went by order of our knight. The fame she achieved for her good manners, effectiveness, and services was such that in due time her honor and station grew so much that it so happened that many princes and lords of many lands desired her most earnestly for a wife, but she always refused to marry or to exchange her first love for any other. Rather, she always kept the same resolve to serve and wait on the one whom she loved more than herself by sleeping in his bed, serving his meals, and never leaving his side. From this it follows necessarily and reasonably that people in this world should always aim their thoughts to what is good, trying to get the best things from fortune, and when they are able to have them, to seize them; but they should do so while taking stock of their conscience and never forgetting that these things are perishable and unsubstantial, and that everlasting glory should not be lost in their pursuit.

17

In which Talanque, Sir Galaor's son, and Ambor de Gadel, son of Angriote de Estraváus, tell the king about the adventurous exploits that happened to them while looking for Esplandián after he had dubbed them knights.

While King Lisuarte was in the castle on Forbidden Mountain, as you have heard, Helisabad and his nephew Libeo told him about how and in what way Urganda the Unknown knighted Esplandián; about the letter Amadís found in his hand when he and the other knights awoke from the sleep induced by the sweet sound of horns; about how Esplandián made knights of the novices; about how they together left the great port of Firm Island without one group knowing about the other; about how Urganda hindered Amadís, Don Galaor, the king, and all those lords in their quest to search for and find Esplandián, because, no matter how much effort they exerted, it would do them little good; about how Esplandián found himself in the Great Caravel at the foot of the Enchantress Damsel's crag; about everything that happened when he

won the sword; about how he was afterwards taken by the mute sailor across the sea for ten days without knowing where he was, at the end of which time he found himself on a shore from where he saw Forbidden Mountain; about how he went ashore and arrived at the gate of the hermitage where he found the goodman who gave him information that led him to conclude that the knight mentioned by the hermit, and whom the giants and their mother had locked in prison, was probably he, which is what our story has already recounted; about how the king wanted Talanque and Ambor to inform him about the cause and manner of their arrival in such a remote land, and how they related that they found themselves in a boat rigged for battle, and that, after they awoke—near a village on the seashore in the kingdom of Norway, which is called Artimata[1]—from a deep sleep which they had fallen into when they left the port of Firm Island, Esplandián dubbed both them and two knights next to them; about how then, coming to Forbidden Mountain, they desired to know where they were and to find something to eat; and about how, when the villagers saw them, they rose up against them and sent a man to them to find out who they were, and they told him that they were foreign knights who had come from Firm Island. The man then said:

" 'Thank God you have arrived at this moment, for you are needed because of the plight the king of this land is in.'

" 'Who is the king?' we asked. 'And what kingdom is this?'

" 'Sires,' said the man, 'this is the kingdom of Norway, and the king is a good knight by the name of Adroin,[2] Agrajes's[3] father-in-law. I don't know if you know him.'

" 'What does that matter?' we said to him.

" 'Sires,' the man answered, 'because he is already very old and can no longer command except with great difficulty, a cousin of his—his cousin's son—who is also a very powerful neighbor, has dared enter his kingdom with some of his evil and disloyal vassals, and they have besieged one of his good towns. The king is in another town and cannot come to its rescue because of both his advanced age and a lack of men, for all of the ones he relied on have failed him. This often happens to those in need; namely, that they are not only mistreated and insulted by their enemies, but even worse they are hated by their relatives and friends. What causes this is the lack of love and the even greater lack of truth and virtue found in people.'

" 'Now, tell us,' we asked, 'how far is it to where the king is?'

" 'A short day's ride,' he said.

" 'Then tell the goodmen in that town to give us food and a guide, for out of love for Agrajes we will willingly serve the king in whatever way is just.'

---

[1] Artimata is not identifiable as a real or known place in European geography.

[2] Adroin, king of Norway, is not mentioned by name in bks. I to IV. He is important because he is Olinda's father, and therefore Agrajes's father-in-law.

[3] Agrajes is Amadís's first cousin, and therefore he is Esplandián's second cousin once removed. With Amadís, Galaor, and Florestán, they make a virtual four musketeers of the Amadís Cycle.

" 'I will do that for you,' said the man.

"Then he went away, and a little while later he returned with a message about what we had asked for. After we ate and our horses were fed, about two-thirds of the day had already passed, and we took to the road with a man they had given us as a guide. We travelled through the remainder of the day and through the whole night, and at daybreak we entered the town where the king was. Hearing we knights were friends of Agrajes, he was pleased and encouraged, and he told us what his situation was: namely, that his cousin had the other town besieged, and how he could not go to its rescue because he had few supporters and the enemy had many, including especially two of the king's nephews, who were with him and who were the bravest knights one could find in that region, and how all of his people had placed their hopes on these two. We asked him why his cousin wanted to seize his land. He said the only reason was because he did not have a male child to whom he could leave his kingdom. He said:

" 'I plan to give it to Olinda, my daughter, who is married to Agrajes.'

" 'Then, do so,' we said. 'Send a message to him saying that since this dispute is over legal matters there is no reason for our people to suffer and die. Tell him you will place two knights in the field to fight against two of his, and that God will then be the judge. And in the event he declines the battle, tell him that, relying on the rightness of your cause, you will also consent to his entering the field as the third of their knights.'

"When the king heard this, he thought for a while and then said:

" 'Oh knights, I do not know who you are, but if you certify that you are from Firm Island, I shall not fear entrusting my cause to you and to reward you for every way in which you will serve me, for only good men can come from there. Otherwise, they would not suit either the señor of Firm Island or the other knights who serve him and are at his command.'

" 'Therefore, have no fear,' we said, 'for we swear we're telling the truth.'

"Then the king sent his messengers with this challenge to his enemy. The latter, when he heard it, thought that the king probably did not have in his court two knights good enough to dare enter the field with his nephews. He answered that it pleased him to accept the terms of the challenge. This having been agreed upon, all four of us went out on the field with the guards and retainers of our respective camps, and we engaged in a hard-fought and highly-disputed battle. But, in the end, as justice was on our side, and as those knights and their uncle had mistreated the aged king with their pompous vanity, it pleased God in His mercy to give us the victory, but not without a few wounds on our bodies. When we had both of them pinned on the ground ready to cut off their heads, their uncle entreated and begged us not to do so, promising to do whatever we wanted. We gave them back to him provided they drop their cause and leave the king free to do with his kingdom as he pleased. To the king's great joy, they granted all this. Then he agreed for us to stay there until we were in such condition to be able to continue on our way. Meanwhile, several merchants landed in the port. They arrived greatly frightened by a serpent they had seen at sea near the Enchantress Damsel's

crag. We asked them what it looked like. They said that it was as big as the biggest ship there was in the sea. Hearing this, we realized immediately that it was Esplandián's caravel, which made us very happy, and although our wounds were not completely healed, we asked the king to give us one of his men to guide us to the crag. He supplied us with one, and he also wanted to give us many rich gifts, but we took nothing from him; rather we immediately set out to sea, and in six days we arrived at the place where the caravel was. Even though it was well-known to us and we had been dubbed knights in it, the very sight of this huge and terrifying caravel frightened us greatly. Therefore, we had to force the man who was leading us there to bring us up next to it. Seeing no one around, we called out in loud voices for someone to respond. Then a man we recognized as Sargil appeared at the caravel's side. Screaming, he told us what had happened when Esplandián won the sword; that he had gone off with the mute sailor; that he didn't know whether he was dead or alive; that he remained with the other mute; and that he didn't know what he should do or where he should go. Hearing him say this, we told him to take us to the mute. When the latter appeared, we implored him to take us to where Esplandián and his companion had gone. Without saying a word, the mute jumped aboard our caravel, and, rowing very rapidly, at the end of eleven days, we landed in the place where we found the two knights who had been killed and the giant that you saw, sire. This is what happened to us after we left the island."

18

In which the king ordered Master Helisabad to write down faithfully the stories of these knights' feats of arms.

The king was very pleased by what they told him, and he asked Master Helisabad to put down in writing both what those two novice knights had recounted and everything that happened to Esplandián from the time he left Firm Island until then.[1] The master told him he would do so, and that he would

note not only those things but everything else that came to his attention, for he intended to write Esplandián's history, because very strange and marvellous things were expected of such a high and famous prince. Well, just as you have heard, these *Labors* (which means his prowess or feats), known as those of *Esplandián*, which follow upon the four books of Amadís, come from the hand of that goodman who would write nothing but the truth. Although one could reasonably raise some doubt concerning what is said about Amadís, one must place more faith in what is written about our knight, for this master intended only to leave a written record of what he saw and what he heard from credible witnesses.

19

About how, when King Lisuarte desired to return to his land, the Great Serpent Caravel arrived on the shore; when the king and the knights went down to meet it, a damsel who was on a mission from Urganda came out of it and gave Esplandián some arms and a horse of such singular bearing that all were exceedingly amazed.

As you have heard, while King Lisuarte was in the company of the two knights, he was planning how to return to his kingdom, which he wanted to do, not so much because he was greedy to rule as supreme lord as he had done until then—for now age, destiny, and even more so, desire, which is the principal mistress and guardian of what our appetites crave, was denied him—but rather, to please both his wife the queen, whom he loved as much as he loved himself, and his loyal vassals, who, as Master Helisabad had told him, had shown much pain and sadness during his adversity. Also, he wanted to make a change in his manner of living from then until the very end of his days in order more truly and more profitably to spread his fame in spiritual matters—because praise for him in temporal matters had always been raised to the heavens. While planning not to leave such a notable place as Forbidden Mountain unprotected—where so much service could be rendered to God and where so much misfortune could result if it were lost—and before his route home could be determined, it happened that, an hour before dawn broke, while he was still in bed pondering this and even graver problems, all of which weighed on his conscience, there came to his ears from across the sea, the strange phenomenon of a very sweet sound. Without waking any of the knights who were sleeping in his chamber, he got up, opened the windows, and began listening attentively to try to discover what caused it. The night was dark. There was enough wind to make the sea rather rough, and the reverber-

ations of the wind in the cavities in the wild cliffs and the sound of the waves increased the sweetness of that sound to such a degree that the king, who was naked, could not leave the window. He did not know, and he could not imagine, what made the sound, unless it was a mermaid, as he had been told by some who had seen them.

He stood there listening for a long while without thinking about or focussing on anything else until the sound stopped. Then he called the novice knights, who, in their extreme youth, had continued sleeping soundly, and he told them about what he had heard. They got up and went to the window as quickly as their drowsy bodies would allow them, and it was not long before the sweet sound began again with such a gentle melody that neither the king nor they left the window once until daylight came. Then they were able to see down below them on the deep sea the Great Serpent Caravel, the sight of which gave them much happiness and pleasure, for they thought that it had come to help and relieve them. Then the king and knights got dressed, and ordering both the gate and the little entrance into the crag to be opened, they left the alcázar and descended the steps until they came to the causeway against which the waves beat. After they had been there for a little while, a beautiful and opulently dressed damsel left the caravel in a small vessel. She had at her side a bundle wrapped in red silk, and, landing near them, she took out the bundle, kneeled on the sand before the king, and said:

"Good sire, Urganda, my mistress, humbly kisses your hands and hereby wishes to inform you that she was unable to be in your presence and to share completely in the joy caused by your liberation because of an urgent mission she had to undertake to the emperor of Rome and your daughter, the empress."[1]

Turning to Esplandián, she said:

"Handsome knight, my mistress, who loves you dearly, herewith sends you new arms and orders you to discard the old ones she gave you in the time of your great sadness. On them you will find the device of those arms with which your father adorned his head to the praise and glory of his great handsomeness. Just as the sad recollection of the reason why you were given the first ones helped increase your anger and daring during your auspicious first adventure, so shall the delightful memory of these increase the praise of your methods and your goals."

Then the damsel unwrapped the bundle and took out a helmet, shield, and cuirass and with them the caparisons for his horse. They were all of a beautiful clear white color, and the escutcheon's field was covered with mysteriously cut golden crowns which were embellished with pearls and precious stones. They were so well crafted that the king, who was holding them up to study

---

[1] The empress is Leonoreta, Lisuarte's youngest child and Oriana's younger sister. She is a significant character in bk. II, chaps. 54 and 55, where she is captured by the giant Famongomadán and liberated by Amadís/Beltenebros when he kills the giant and his son Basagante. This action immediately precedes Amadís's reunion with Oriana, the result of which is the conception of Esplandián in the castle of Miraflores. She is not to be confused with Esplandián's beloved Leonorina.

them, said he had never in his life seen a prince or knight in the world who had more beautiful or more magnificent arms.

20

In which is told the reason why there were crowns on Esplandián's arms, and why he came to receive the present; and you are also told about the pleasant chat they had.

Now here is the reason why you have been told that the device on the arms had crowns. This is because, when Amadís, who, at the time he was known as the Knight of the Green Sword, went to see the emperor of Constantinople, as is told in Book III, his very beautiful daughter Leonorina gave Amadís two priceless crowns: he was to give one of them to the most beautiful damsel in the world, and the other to the most beautiful lady. He kept one for his lady Oriana, who was his mistress, and he put the other one on Leonorina's head because she was the most beautiful of all the damsels he had ever seen. He said that if any knight said this was not true he would make him admit it by force of arms. So, because he honored that beautiful princess in this way, she appreciated it so much that from that day forward she always wore a device of crowns on all her gowns. This she did to commemorate the crown given her by the hand of her own knight. Since Urganda the Unknown knew what was to become of Leonorina and Esplandián, she decided their future was to begin with this sign, not so that his desire would burn stronger than it already did, but to awaken her desire which was still lying dormant. As with what Master Helisabad had told her about him—about which you have already heard—every time she heard more about our knight she became agitated.

Taking up his arms, Esplandián said:

"Fair damsel, I indeed thank your mistress for the great honors she bestows on me. May it please God in his mercy for me to fulfill those honors in due time to repay her in a way that will increase her honor. I shall wear these arms as her knight, and as for the device, I am certain it will be as she says, but for now I do not understand."

"Whatever my mistress does for you," said the damsel, "she does out of debt to your father, because he did her the greatest service of all which was to restore her lover whom she loved more than anyone else in the world. She had given him up for lost and her great powers were not strong enough to get him back.[1] And as for the devices, she says that it will not be long before you will feel the pain and sweetness they will cause you, whereby you will have good reason to understand why she sends them."

Hearing what was said about Urganda's own knight, Carmela, the damsel

you have already met, and who remained at Esplandián's side, said:

"Damsel, tell your mistress that she is quite right in rewarding her knight for what he did for her, assuming she loves him so much; but there are others from whom, if the same thing happened to them, their own beloved knights would be able to find recompense, for these ladies would satisfy them not only with worldly things of little value, but with things for which they would risk their lives and even their souls."

Urganda's damsel looked at her and said:

"I tell you, damsel, that you would have good reason to count me among those to whom you are referring."

The king began to laugh at them because he still remembered the time when he was their age and could have closed the circle with them: it was when he was a prince and in love with his wife the queen, and she was a maiden, and he was in the house of his father, the king of Denmark, on whose behalf he did many marvellous feats of arms. All this was before he became king of Great Britain. But now, with the desire of those burning flames cooled, he marvelled how much love held them in its subjugation. Then he asked the other damsel who had made the sweet sound they had heard the night before. She said to him:

"My master, I made it with an instrument my mistress enjoys in moments of relaxation. I always carry it with me, for I too suffer the same ailment as this damsel of yours, which makes it hard for me to sleep. So, in order to keep my mind from dwelling on what upsets me, I find relief and consolation in what you heard."

21

About how Urganda's damsel, after she finished explaining her mistress's message, left the Serpent Caravel there so that the king and Esplandián could return to their land; and how she took her leave with the two mutes in the little vessel.

Now, tell us," said the king, "who is in the caravel?"

"Good sire," she said, "only Esplandián's squire, whom I found more dead than alive because he was so worried about his master, and a white horse for this illustrious knight. It is the most beautiful ever seen and it is outfitted with the most magnificent harness and bit found anywhere."

"Well," the king asked, "did Urganda give you any more messages for me?"

"Yes," said the damsel. "Upon my arrival, you and Esplandián were to board the caravel, and it would take you to your kingdom where your presence will console and give joy to many of those who love you. But, good king, she adds that the vain world tricks us with the snare of reuniting the green flower of youth with the age that is drying up; therefore, she says, make sure you put into practice deliberately and reasonably that which occurred to you here accidentally."

The king was quite frightened by what the damsel said, because that meant that Urganda knew instantaneously what he himself scarcely knew he had even thought. He said to her:

"Damsel, tell your mistress that, of all of the honor and service I have received from her, I consider this one the most important, and I thank her for it. Even more, I thank the Lord whom I pray will give me strength to accomplish completely what I purpose and what she orders."

"There is more," said the damsel. "She says for you to leave Talanque and Ambor with Libeo and for their company to guard this mountain. This is because from a base on this mountain the whole world will hear about great things that will be done in God's service. This is what my mistress sent me to say. Now, may God bless you, for I must go off with these two mutes who have fulfilled what they were sent to do."

Then she got in the little vessel that brought Esplandián there, and together with the mutes, she went across the sea with all possible haste, and in a little while she was out of sight.

22

About how King Lisuarte, after leaving guards on the mountain, departed for his land, and about the message Esplandián sent with Damsel Carmela to Leonorina, daughter of the emperor of Constantinople.

King Lisuarte returned to the castle where he ordered Talanque, Ambor, Libeo and his company to remain on the mountain and secure it. Then he boarded the Serpent Caravel with Esplandián and Master Helisabad. However, Esplandián realized he was being forced to go farther away from the land of his most beloved lady, without knowing anything about her anxieties and desires; so, sick at heart, he spoke to Damsel Carmela thus:

"My damsel and true friend, if for any reason I were to consider breaking the promise I made you and that you asked for so lovingly, neither you nor anyone should think of me as a worthy knight, nor will you be asked to do anything against your will; but if you consent freely and without coercion or embarrassment to undertake a trip for me, you would gladden my heart greatly."

"My lord above all others," the damsel said, "if there is enough strength in my desire, from which I hope to receive many honors and thanks from you, then it will only be fulfilled and satisfied when it is placed at your disposal. Therefore, master, order whatever makes you happiest, for I shall execute it even at the risk of my own death."

Esplandián thanked her very much and said to her, "My dear friend, take a message to the emperor of Constantinople's daughter, the one whose name is exalted and noised abroad and whose great beauty is known throughout the world. After kissing her hand on my behalf, tell her that when I was

knighted, my father ordered me to have and serve her in his place, and thereby he withdrew his word he had promised her, a word for which, when he gave it to her, he received much honor and thanks. And I, who know of her unsurpassed beauty and high nobility, and who must perform in the stead of such a famous knight, and in his place fulfill the great favors for which even his strength might not suffice, I, being as unknown as I am, who in no wise would be so bold as to appear in her presence—even though Helisabad himself were to order me to do so—no matter where I am, I am here to be her knight. Whatever may happen to me, so long as I still have life, I will be in her service. So that she believe that I am the one whom my father foretold, so that there be no embarrassment over any breach of his word, and so that she be certain about this, let her have this ring[1] as a sign that she will certainly recognize. I take it off my tormented, subjugated, and captive ring finger."[2]

"My lord," said the damsel, "what you order I will carry out if my unhappy state doesn't hinder me. But, as you're going so far away from this land, where shall I find you when you return?"

"Come here, to this mountain," he said. "After I leave my lord the king in his realm, I will not hesitate to return."

With this mission you have heard about, the damsel departed on Master Helisabad's caravel with two sailors who led her to Constantinople. You will hear about what happened to her during this voyage in what follows.

23

About how the Great Serpent, after the king, Esplandián and the master boarded her, sailed by herself, without being steered by sailors and only by Urganda's knowledge; and how she took them to Firm Island.

When King Lisuarte got in the Serpent Caravel, he was pleased to find that Esplandián, Master Helisabad, and Sargil were already on board, and that it

---

[1] See bk. III, chap. 74, for reference to this episode. Leonorina gave Amadís this quasi-mythical ring in order to make amends, as she says, for a trap she unknowingly laid for him by asking him who had made him cry. The connection between "trap" and "ring" is based on an untranslatable play on words: she uses the archaic term *lazo* [tie or ring] for *trampa* [trap]. The ring itself has a circular history within the Amadís Cycle. For more about this, see chap. 12, n. 10, and chap. 176, n. 4.

[2] In late medieval and Renaissance Spanish the name for the ring finger was *dedo del corazón*/"heart finger." Unfortunately, no direct or indirect translation can capture the original. Cov. explains the term thus: "Rings were particularly worn on the finger nearest the little finger on the left hand for one of two reasons: either because they were safer and it was less likely that precious stones would break there, or because in that place in the human body anatomists found a delicate little nerve that goes from that finger to the heart, and therefore gold and its virtue are communicated to and comfort is given from one place to the other" (Cov. 121).

was very well provisioned. He asked how they would sail the caravel, and the master told him that when it was time it would move by its own power. As they were discussing this, the Serpent left the port without having anyone at the tiller other than the vast knowledge of her whose powerful arts were capable of much more than this. After navigating many days and nights without incident and avoiding all the ships that were plying the sea and that knew about her, on the afternoon of the twentieth day, just before nightfall, they arrived at Firm Island's port.

24

About how much joy and happiness Amadís, Agrajes, and the others had over the arrival of the king and Esplandián, and about how the king recounted his past adventures.

When some of those who were in the castle saw that giant caravel, which they were well acquainted with, they raised a loud, glad cry. Many of those who heard the outcry were incited to go down to the shore to see whose arrival was causing such an uproar. According to what Urganda communicated at the time of their departure, there was reason to believe that it would be some happy mystery for their masters. Then the news was sent to Amadís, Agrajes, those knights who happened to be there, and Oriana,[1] who, more than all of the others, wanted to hear some good news about the king, her father, whom, after her ami and husband, she loved more than anyone else on earth. Hearing this and without stopping to get their horses, Amadís and all of his knights set out on foot as fast as they could. They descended the slope to the seashore where a crowd was already waiting expectantly.

While all these people were gathered around looking out to sea, as we have just told you, a small boat was let down from the caravel, and King Lisuarte, Esplandián, Master Helisabad, and Sargil got in it. They watched as Sargil took the oars and rowed them straight to where Amadís was. As soon as they arrived and jumped ashore, all the knights approached the king and kissed his hand. The giant Balán was pushed to the front of the line, for, although they had heard about each other, they had never before met. The king, who was very happy to see them, embraced the giant first while refusing to proffer his hand; and afterwards he embraced Amadís, Agrajes, Grasandor,

---

[1] Oriana is mentioned first in bk. V in chap. 1, n. 15, but this is her first appearance in the text itself. Oriana is the daughter of Lisuarte and Brisena, daughter of the king of Denmark. She is Esplandián's mother, and she appears first in bk. I, chap. 4, when she meets Amadís in the court of Scotland. She and Amadís incarnate the most perfect courtly lovers who ever existed prior to Esplandián and Leonorina. Oriana becomes pregnant in bk. II, chap. 64. Amadís liberates her from a potential state marriage in bk. III, chap. 81, and she and Amadís are married publicly in chap. 125 near the end of bk. IV.

and all of the other knights who were with them. Then they all rejoiced greatly taking turns embracing Esplandián over and over again, for he was loved by all for his charming speech and fine manners.

Amadís was very pleased with his grand friend the Master Helisabad, and he was amazed to see him in that company. So, he said to him:

"My good friend, why have you ventured to come here where I see you now?"

"My lord," he answered, "the cause is more likely because of misadventure. But let us leave this, if you please, for later when we have more time, for I have much to tell you."

At this, all of Amadís's knights and the master's companions arrived, and, bidding the king and his retainers to ride, together they all went to the castle. When Oriana heard that her father the king and her son had come, I cannot tell you how pleased she was. She and all the other ladies left the garden on foot very desirous to greet them. Seeing them, the king dismounted and went up to them laughing most affably. Oriana knelt before him, but he put his arm around her neck and kissed her on the cheek, and she kissed his hands. Tears, which often accompany great joy, were flowing down Oriana's and all the other ladies' cheeks. Then Esplandián arrived and fell to his knees before his mother. She was beside herself with joy, took him in her arms, embraced him, and kissed him uncontrollably again and again. She held him tight and refused to let go of him until Mabilia[2] and Olinda[3] took him from her and kissed him out of the great love they had for him. After these greetings, which have not been described as they happened because such acts have more substance in the doing than the telling, they all entered the alcázar where the king spent three very relaxing and pleasurable days. There he told them everything that had happened: how Esplandián rescued him from prison by deeds of arms in which he killed the giant Matroco, Arcaláus the Enchanter, and the mountain guards; that he saw the battle with the other giant; why he was taken prisoner and by what deception it happened; and everything else that happened from the moment he was missing until then. After hearing this, Oriana ordered the damsel from Denmark to find her brother Durín[4] and for them to go tell her mother Queen Brisena this felicitous news just as they had heard it. Also, they were to tell her that the king would leave soon to rejoin her; that Oriana, Amadís, and all those notables who were there with their wives would accompany him; and for her to be joyful because

---

[2] Mabilia, Languines' daughter and Agrajes' sister, is Oriana's principal lady-in-waiting and confidante in Lisuarte's court in Great Britain. She is therefore the princess of Scotland. At the end of bk. IV, she marries Grasandor.

[3] Olinda is the king of Norway's daughter and Agrajes' *amiga* first and wife later. She is a minor character in *Esplandián*.

[4] Durín is, as it says here, the damsel from Denmark's brother. He appears first in bk. II, chap. 45, in which he takes Oriana's negative letter to Amadís. In bk. III, chap. 66, he and his sister take the baby Esplandián to a monastery to be raised, and then he announces the birth to Amadís in chap. 68. He is a minor character in bk. V.

God had cured her great sadness. The damsel from Denmark heard her mistress's orders and then undertook to carry them out with alacrity, for she expected to receive no little honor and no less boon from such a task.

25

About how King Lisuarte and his knights went to London to see the queen, and how four knights who were leaving a wood attacked Esplandián and jousted with him. After Esplandián defeated them they revealed their identity: Don Cendil de Ganota,[1] *Don Galvanes,*[2] *Angriote de Estraváus,*[3] *and Don Galaor.*[4]

After the three days during which King Lisuarte had rested from the travails at sea, he said to Amadís and his daughter Oriana that he wanted to go see his wife the queen without further delay. They agreed with him that that was a good thing to do because his visit would console not only the queen but many others too, and they said that they along with Agrajes, the giant Balán, Grasandor,[5] their wives, and the other knights who were there would accompany and serve him on the way. The king was pleased to receive their service. As soon as all of the provisions needed for the journey were readied, they left

---

[1] Don Cendil de Ganota is one of King Lisuarte's knights who appears first in bk. III, and at the end of bk. IV Brisena tells him her husband has disappeared. He will appear again in the Battle of Constantinople.

[2] Don Galvanes, called Galvanes the Landless, is Agrajes' uncle and Languines' brother. He appears first in bk. I, chap. 16. He falls in love with Madasima whom he defends in bk. II, chap. 63. In bk. III, he conquers Mongaza Island. He goes to Firm Island at the end of bk. IV after Lisuarte's disappearance. He will reappear in the Battle of Constantinople in bk. V.

[3] Angriote de Estraváus is a major character who appears first in bk. I, chap. 18, in which Amadís defeats him in single combat, but with Amadís's help he marries his beloved lady Grovenesa. He appears in most of the major episodes throughout the first four bks. He goes to Firm Island after Lisuarte disappears, and in *Esplandián*, chap. 66, Amadís names him his major-domo. Avalle-Arce asserts that this character's name is derived from an amalgamation of two characters from the Vulgate Arthur: Key d'Estraus and his nephew Ayglyn des Vaus (AArce, 180–81).

[4] Don Galaor is one of the major characters from the very beginning of the Amadís Cycle. He is Amadís's brother, and Perión and Elisena's son. As a child, he is stolen by a giant and raised by a hermit. Amadís dubs him with a sword supplied by Urganda. He is the most Don Juanesque of the knights. In bk. II, chap. 59, Urganda cures him of wounds incurred during a major battle, and she uses him to allow her niece Julianda (Urganda's sister Grimota had two daughters from Lisuarte's brother Falangrís, Julianda and Solís) to conceive a baby who will be Talanque, Queen Calafía's future husband. In bk. IV, chap. 125, Galaor marries Briolanja, and in chap. 133 he goes to Firm Island after receiving news of Lisuarte's disappearance.

[5] Grasandor appears first in bk. III in a battle against the Romans. In the great wedding chap., he marries Amadís's sister Mabilia. He accompanies Amadís in the adventure of the Enchantress Damsel's crag at the end of bk. IV.

Firm Island. The knights went armed according to their usual custom, and Esplandián, with bare head and hands, wore the arms decorated with crowns that Urganda had sent him. Dressed as he was and riding his beautiful white horse, he looked so handsome that no one who looked at him could take his eyes off him. And so, enjoying all of the amenities of life—Amadís had engaged people to provide lodging for them with a full array of beds, tables, and viands as required by such a trip—off they went to London to see the queen.

When they were one day's march from the town of London, they entered a very dense forest which had always been the king's hunting demesne. A league into the forest, they saw four knights on the road sitting on their horses under some trees. They were fully armed, and their squires were near them guarding only their lances and shields, for they wore their helmets on their heads. With them was a prettily dressed damsel riding a palfrey. She rode toward the king, and when she arrived, said:

"You, Don Knight of the White Arms! Those knights yonder have sent me to tell you they want to know why you chose that crown device, and if it turns out that your answer satisfies their honor, then from this moment on they will desist in their challenge. If not, you are advised to drop your arms or to defend them as if your device were the most precious thing in the world."

Hearing this, Esplandián said:

"Damsel, tell those knights I know of no reason that may satisfy them right now other than that they are very beautiful and that I bear them on account of the lady Urganda the Unknown who sent them to me. If this does not satisfy them, tell them that that is very little reason to challenge me to battle, for their energy would be much better served in some other way."

"Knight," the damsel answered him, "they are not the kind who need your advice, nor does your answer release you from their demand. Therefore, arm yourself, for you cannot avoid this with words."

"Certainly, damsel," he said, "I am quite removed from what they want; so, may it please them not to be so adamant with me over such a trivial matter."

"Your handsome face, magnificent arms, and horse," said the damsel, "may they fail you, for your answer dishonors both you and them. You must either leave your companions and this road, or prepare to defend the crowns."

"I must take this road," said Esplandián. "If they attack me, they affront me."

The king and the other knights marvelled at the challenge issued by a damsel none of them knew, nor could they imagine who the knights were. So they continued on their way without saying a word because Amadís and his companions, remembering what the king had said, wanted to see him fight even though they could not believe that at such a tender age his strength was at a sufficient level for this battle. Oriana and the other ladies, out of shyness, did not enter into the discussion of an alien matter so opposed to their nature. Esplandián strapped on his helmet, took up his shield and lance, and continued on as before. The knights saw this, and one of them came forward and said:

"Knight, since you did not do what our damsel told you to, I say to you: On guard!"

Then he spurred his horse as hard as he could, lowered his lance, and

charged. Seeing the other knight coming at him, Esplandián spurred his horse into as fast a gallop as it would go and met the knight with such a hard blow on his shield that he knocked him out of his saddle and over the horse's hind quarters. He fell so heavily on the field that he was completely unable to get up, and his lance was broken. Seeing this, one of his companions came forward and said:

"Knight, take another lance, for it is fitting for you to joust with me."

Amadís heard this and gave Esplandián his lance. The latter took it more angrily than before because they were insisting on attacking him. So they went at each other, and the knight was easily felled to the earth with his horse on top of him. Beholding this, the king said:

"What do you think of this new, young knight?"

"I certainly say that of all of the knights I have ever seen," said Agrajes, "none, not even his father—who is in a class by himself—was more handsome in jousting than that one. But, as for the knights he's unseated so far, without knowing who they are and what else they're capable of, I don't know what to say."

Then the third knight came up to meet Esplandián, and he said:

"Take another lance, because I want to test if I'm a better jouster than my companions."

"Knight," Esplandián responded, "that you all have attacked me without cause ought to be sufficient for you. I beg you to leave me alone, for all of this is being done against my will, because, whatever strength I have received from the Lord whose it is to give, I would rather use it in his service than in this game you take to be honor."

The knight then said to him:

"Be that as it may. I should not be shamed without sharing in the good or ill these knights have received."

"If they erred, and you know it," said Esplandián, "I do not think it is reasonable for you to continue what they began. Rather, the wise learn from both the good and bad examples of others. This would be the better course. But, since this is your pleasure, so be it."

Then he sent Sargil to Agrajes to ask him for his lance. After he moved away some distance from the third knight, they went at each other as hard as their horses would take them. The lances shattered into pieces on their shields, and their horses and shields hit each other so fiercely that Esplandián was almost knocked senseless; but the other knight suffered such a swift fall from his saddle to the hard ground that he did not know where he was. At this the fourth knight was most frightened, and he said:

"Now I can say that both Urganda and the king failed to praise this knight enough, for you cannot say too much about him. But I still must test him, for if I were not to do so, I would never live down the pity of a lost occasion."

And he added this directed at Esplandián:

"Knight, I advise you to joust with me, although I recognize that in doing so I am committing a courtly affront against you. But, given what you have done so far, whatever may happen to you henceforth should not lessen your merit."

Esplandián replied:

"Your arrogant attacks on me are unreasonable; so, if the blame is yours, you should not be surprised that the injury is yours as well."

Then he sent for Grasandor's lance, and they went at each other as fast as their horses would go. Neither one's lance missed its target; rather, they both hit the others' shields in such a way that the lances were entirely shattered. However, they did no other damage, and they passed by each other. Taking stock of this situation, the Knight of the Forest turned his horse around and said:

"Good knight, please let us joust again. I appeal to you on the grounds of courtly combat."

"Since it would please you so much," said Esplandián, "so be it, although it does not accord with my will."

Esplandián then sent for a lance that was being borne for the king. They separated at opposite ends of the field and then had such a hard encounter that their lances were broken; they and their horses were immediately joined in close combat, and they hit each other with their shields so hard that Esplandián lost his stirrups and had to hug his horse's neck. But the Knight of the Forest and his horse fell together to the earth so hard that those who were looking on thought he had been killed; but this was not the case, for he rolled away from the horse, got up, and said:

"Good knight, you have certainly shown us that your knightly prowess surpasses all others."[6]

Esplandián answered not a word, because he was most embarrassed by what had transpired before his father. At that moment, King Amadís and his entourage approached. The knight who was on foot took off his helmet, and, when he was going up to the king to embrace him, they recognized him as the king of Sobradisa, Don Galaor. When King Lisuarte realized who he was, no one could tell you the pleasure he received from seeing him, and he started to dismount in order to embrace him, but Don Galaor would not permit it, so they embraced as those do who love each other. Amadís said laughingly to Don Galaor:

"My lord and brother, so you have become a highway robber?"

"My lord, just as you see," he said, "the better to test this knight's mettle and to see if, except for you, we could consider him better than all of us."

When Esplandián heard that that knight was his uncle, King Galaor, he dismounted and knelt before him asking for his forgiveness; but at that, the latter bade him rise, embraced and kissed him most joyfully, and said to him:

"Good nephew, there is no reason to forgive you, because the biggest mistake of all that happened here is the one I made by showing everyone that you are a much better knight than I. You should not wonder that I tested you with every intention of besting you, because if, as I thought, the prophecies

---

[6] This episode of four consecutive jousts follows a pattern that dominates bks. I to IV. Each joust increases one increment in difficulty until it reaches the highest level of danger for the hero. In this case, Esplandián could fight no more accomplished a knight than Amadís himself, which he will do in a later chap.

that foretold your praise were fulfilled, then all the glory, fame, courage, and great zeal that your matchless father always had would end in empty illusion."

The other knights, though still staggering from their hard falls, were getting up by now, and the king asked him who they were. Don Galaor told him the first one to joust was Don Cendil de Ganota, the second Don Galvanes, and the third Angriote de Estraváus. The king, Amadís, and their companions were very pleased to hear that, especially because there was no real danger involved. But most pleased of all was Oriana, who was so overjoyed by her son's good fortune that it was as if she were made queen of the world. As far as Esplandián is concerned, let me say that, even though outwardly he showed signs of deep sorrow for having jousted with his uncle the king and the other knights whom his father loved so much, inwardly he was jumping with joy. It made him happy to have unhorsed those knights who had done so many famous deeds of arms, and especially his uncle who, along with his father Amadís, had no equal anywhere in the world in knightly prowess. The king paused there long enough to give those knights time to recover; then, telling them to get back on their horses, he continued his journey talking and joking with them, for he loved them heartily.

26

About how Don Galaor declared to the king the reason why they invited Esplandián to joust with them; also, it speaks of the great pleasure and joy Queen Brisena and all of those in her palace received from the king's and Esplandián's presence.

Then the king asked Don Galaor why they sought to joust against Esplandián. The former answered that the damsel from Denmark had come with a message from Oriana to the queen to the effect that the damsel was to tell her everything that had happened to him in prison and what Esplandián had done about it. Furthermore, the message told them to test him, as they did. For this purpose, they left London secretly without anyone noticing them. Thinking that Esplandián's high knightly qualities resided more in his fondness for being the object of his grandfather's affection than in his own valor or zeal, they found no way to arouse his anger other than that business about the crowns. For, along with things the damsel from Denmark related about him, she also related what Urganda had ordered her to say; namely, that the arms she sent him by means of her damsel had a device that was composed of many crowns. She also said that he was the least quick-tempered knight in the world.

"That is so true," said the king, "that where they do not know him he will receive little respect in every way until they test him."

The king and his companions continued on their way until they came to a little place in the forest where a meal was prepared for them. So, what with the jousts, the time authorized by the king for the knights to recover, and the

meal, they could not get to London that day. Therefore, they were forced to spend that night in the Miraflores Castle[1] which was on the main road to London. The king dismounted at the monastery where the honorable duenna Adalasta was abbess,[2] and he ordered no one to go to London because he did not want anyone to come out to receive him. Since in will and years he was headed toward old age, so too his heated desire for worldly things that he had gloried in until then was growing cold; therefore, he felt a strong need to thank the Lord of the world because his state, combined with his age, made him want to conform to this practice. This seldom happens due to our sinful nature. Rather, it happens much to the contrary, for, when youth's freshness has faded, a clear and healthy judgment ought to free us to pursue that for which we were created; but it is precisely then that arrogance, covetousness, vainglory, and many other vices and sins take up residence in their place.

He spent that night in the monastery with his knights talking about their joust and other matters that entertained them most, and the next day the king and his companions rode to London, which was two leagues away. He entered the palaces through a gate that opened onto the fields. When the queen heard he had arrived, she left her chamber with her ladies-in-waiting

---

[1] The Miraflores Castle (Miraflores = Flower Vista) is important in the Amadís Cycle and in Esplandián's genesis because this is the pleasure palace near London in which Amadís and Oriana meet secretly and in which their son is conceived. In bk. II, chap. 44, Oriana sends Amadís the letter that causes their tragic separation. In chap. 49, she invites him back into her grace and to meet her in the Miraflores Castle. He receives the letter in chap. 52, and in chap. 53 she retires to the castle to await his arrival. In the latter chap. we find the following description: "Miraflores Castle was two leagues from London. Although it was small, it was the most marvellous dwelling found in that whole region. It was situated in a forest at the foot of a mountain and surrounded by orchards of fruit trees and many other groves in which there were herbs, and many varieties of flowers. Everything was marvelously designed and cared for, and inside were richly decorated halls and chambers, and in the patios there were many delightful water fountains surrounded by shade trees that bore flowers and fruits the year round" (CB, I, 753). This description prompts several critics, including Cacho Blecua, to surmise that GRM may have known the region near London personally. A better source of inspiration for GRM's creation of Miraflores and good hunting is the castle called Manzanares el Real, which is situated 47 km. N of Madrid. The town of Miraflores de la Sierra lies 15 km NE of the castle. The castle was finished during GRM's lifetime, and it is considered by many the best-preserved castle in Spain (see fig. 9). Amadís arrives in the castle's vicinity in chap. 55, which he recognized because he had hunted there often. (The character known as the author is also a hunter and could well have hunted in the Guadarrama mountains just above the castle of Manzanares el Real.) But Amadís and his lover do not enjoy each other's intimate company until chap. 56. The intercourse scenes are referred to in passing by a narrator who says that he has passed the age in which he can authentically reproduce "the lover's embraces, sweet kisses, and tears that passed from mouth to mouth" (CB, I, 794). This passage has led most observers to surmise that GRM wrote this chap. during his old age. Be this as it may, the castle and its setting are the perfect *locus amoenus* for this the quintessential courtly love affair in all of Spanish letters.

[2] Adalasta is the abbess of a monastery close to Miraflores Castle. Oriana cleverly uses Adalasta to hide her secret love affair with Amadís by having the abbess keep the keys to the castle and the garden's postern gate. Oriana, of course, has a second set made secretly for her erotic purposes.

and her damsels. As she was going to receive him, she saw him coming through the hall; so she went up to him to kiss his hand. However, she was so extremely excited that she fell half-dead and unconscious in his arms. This happened because, just as her sadness over his earlier disappearance was infinite, even more so was she overcome with great joy upon seeing him now. It is natural for us to want to reject what bothers us and to believe what makes us happy. Considering the first instance, she felt that she had lost her consolation, her estate, and the very ground for her honor when she lost her husband; and, in the last instance, everything was repaired upon seeing him whom she loved as much as herself and about whom she always prayed devoutly and earnestly that God would take him from this world before her, for she did not want to be spared that violence as many do, because, after experiencing it, they are battered by unexpected anguish and great sorrow. With his wife in a faint in his arms, the king held her closer to him because it was obvious that, if he released her from his grasp, she would not have enough strength to stand on her own. After she had recovered a little from her faint, Amadís arrived with Agrajes, Grasandor, and Balán to kiss her hands. But she saw Esplandían and how elegant and handsome he was in his armor, and she thought he had grown a hand's width since the last time she saw him. Then he knelt before her, and, with tears welling in her eyes, she embraced him holding his face to her bosom:

"Oh, my fortunate child! May God bless you for bringing such joy and comfort to this distressed house!"

At that, Oriana and the other lords came forward very humbly, knelt and kissed her hands.

27

About how, when the news was received about the king's arrival to his kingdom, all of his subjects from every region agreed to go see him; and how Esplandián took his leave to go to Firm Island.

As you have heard, King Lisuarte was released from a cruel imprisonment and, with his freedom restored, returned to his kingdom to find more joy for him, his household, and his vassals than if such a harsh setback had not happened to him. Therefore, he increased his thanks to God—which he was able to do given his prosperity—and he remembered that those past shifts of fortune and travails that had overcome him were due to the insufficient recognition he had had until then of his need to serve the true Lord who had blessed him so much. He now believed that no empire or great seigniory could shield itself for even a moment from God's anger. Hence, surrounded as we are by worldly luxuries and pleasures, we should not only not flee fearfully from sudden reversals of fate, but rather we ought to ask for them, because it is much better to have our ways humbly mended by adversity than to be arrogant ingrates in our prosperity.

When this news about the king was bruited throughout the realm, the people

rose up to see him in such numbers that they covered the roads and fields, and within a week London town and much of the surrounding district were filled to capacity. The king and his knights walked among them, encouraging them, honoring them, and thanking them for the great love they showed the king by their outpouring of feeling. After the people returned to their lands, the king stopped to relax and have a good time with his lords and ladies, but without forgetting to lead such a life from then on whereby he would earn a reward different from the one he would have earned for his past life. Esplandián was very desirous to return to Forbidden Mountain because it was near where his mistress was, and because he wanted to know what response Damsel Carmela would bring back from her mission. Also, he wanted to insure that the armed battles he would be involved in would be aimed at the destruction of Turkish enemies, and that, if death were to overtake him in such battles, he would thereby reap no little perpetual glory. With these thoughts, he went to speak with the king, asking him, if it would please His Grace, to grant him leave to return to the mountain in order to win some honor. So little time had passed since he was knighted that he had not yet had an appropriate opportunity to win honor.

Although the king's strong reaction to Esplandián's departure was like having his heart torn out of his chest, he realized he should not block this youth's desire, especially considering the auspicious beginning of his chivalric career and knowing where he planned to exercise his talents. Hence, reason triumphing over willfulness successfully disposed the king to grant the requested leave. Moreover, it would be irritatingly prolix to tell what transpired in the alcázar between Oriana and her mother the queen. We shall only say that they spilled many tears over his departure, but, in the end, they and his father Amadís granted his request, which filled Esplandián's spirit with immense pleasure and joy. Then, on the third day, a Monday morning, he took the road to Firm Island with only Master Helisabad and his squire Sargil in his train: they were riding their own palfreys, and he was riding his handsome white horse and wearing his magnificent crown-covered arms.

28

About Esplandián, who was headed to Firm Island, and a brave adventuresome knight who confronted him in such a fierce battle that both of them were closer to death than life; the adventurer, admitting defeat, declared he was his father Amadís; and both, suffering gravely, were brought to the Miraflores Monastery.

As you have heard, after Esplandián left the city of London with his two companions, his grandfather King Lisuarte and his mother Queen Oriana[1] missed him greatly, but his father Amadís, to whom he had already said good-

[1] GRM is anticipating the episode later in bk. V when Oriana will be made a queen. See chaps. 62–66.

bye, left the day before saying he was going deer hunting. Intending to avoid any joust or battle that might cross his path, Esplandián went straight to Firm Island where his Great Caravel had remained, for his only burning passion was his desire to make war on the enemies of the faith.[2] When Esplandián and his companions had gone three leagues, they entered a wood, and before they could get to another clearing, they had gone another three. As they were going along together, before arriving at a big river that crossed the wood, they came across a bridge and a royal mountain lodge named Beautiful Rose where the king now and then stayed during hunting and fishing expeditions. At this place, they saw a knight come up from the river bank, mounted on a big handsome horse and fully armed with a lance in his hand as a sign that he wanted to joust. As they approached him, the knight said from the river bank:

"Knight, do not step forward, because I am the keeper of this bridge. It is advisable to do as I say so that I will not fail to keep my word. But if you pass over by force of arms, I shall be free of my promise, and you will be free from the trouble of seeking another crossing."

Esplandián said to him:

"If you had been here in the time of my father and other famous knights who sought adventures in this land and who were moved to fight over causes such as yours, you could have tested your challenge according to the dictates of fortune; but I say to you, sir knight and lord, I should not want to have either the honor or the fame I would get from defeating you, nor God grant that I get it by such means. Even though you are barring us from crossing the bridge, you will not block the wide open field."

Then he turned to go by another way, but the knight said to him:

"Your attempt to try and find a ford in the river is useless because night would overtake you first."

Hearing this, Esplandián, who was somewhat vexed, said:

"Knight, according to what you say, I cannot avoid having a battle with you; well, since that is how it must be, I want to see if you are more of an obstacle for me than the inconvenience of finding a roundabout way would be."

Then he laced on his helmet, raised his shield to his shoulder, took up his lance, and said:

---

[2] While the whole Amadís Cycle is composed under the ægis of a Spanish Christian world view, Amadís now and then gives signs of his general Christianity, and, as has been noted, Esplandián is not the first *caballero de Dios*. However, the ideology of this fifth bk. of Amadís is centered very specifically on a war between Christians and "enemies of the faith." In contrast to Esplandián, *el caballero Çifar* is a prime example of a knight of God, but even he seems cast within a traditional mode: to wit, it is part of the essential definition of a knight errant to battle pagans or infidels. Even Amadís, at the end of bk. II, responds to Lisuarte's order to expel him from his realm by saying airily and somewhat contradictorily that he cannot be exiled because he was never Lisuarte's knight, but rather, he was only God's knight (CB, II, 903). Still, Amadís does not spearhead an institutionalized and single-minded war on behalf of a Christian empire the way Esplandián does. This present chap. is a good example that Esplandián's Christian purposefulness is challenged even by his own father.

"Now, clear the way, or beware of me!"

The other knight answered not a word; instead, he charged him as fast as his horse would go. Esplandián did the same, and they hit so hard that their shields met and their lances broke, but no harm was done. Since the horses were galloping so fast and the knights were both set on winning, they and their shields and their helmets collided so fiercely that they both fell from their horses to the ground. Their falls were so great that the master thought they were killed, but after a brief moment Esplandián rose and put his hand to his sword ashamed for having fallen. He went at his opponent who was all ready to attack him, and they began the most savage battle against each other that had ever been seen by anyone at any time. Master Helisabad from his vantage point said:

"Oh, Holy Mary! Help Esplandián! What is this? The other one must be some devil in a knight's shape who has met us in the road to confuse us."

The knights battled for a full hour without resting or doing anything other than give each other the hardest, strongest blows they could. Thus, their shields were slashed to shreds and the mesh on their cuirasses was undone and torn in many places. Hence, they were losing so much blood that the field was stained red. Then the Knight of the Bridge withdrew a little and said:

"Knight, leave the road and I will excuse you from the battle, because you are the best I have ever tested; it would be a great pity if you were eternally lost here."

Esplandián said to him:

"If you were the kind of knight who seemed to hold virtue in higher regard than cowardice, it might be that I would do what you suggest to satisfy my original desire, but seeing you have put me in such straits where the only aim of glory, I think, will be both our deaths, do not think about anything other than defending yourself. You can be certain that until we are separated by the death or victory of one of us, as far as I am concerned there will be no other respite."

Then they both went at each other, battling again stronger and much more enraged than at first. In the second phase, they spent two long hours without either one showing signs of weakening and with both testing their entire strength. The noise from the blows was so loud that it was as if twenty knights were fighting. Many times they fought arm to arm, letting their swords hang from the chains that held them, but being unable to knock the other down, they returned to their first mode of cruel attack.

Seeing them so angry and in such danger, Master Helisabad said:

"My friend Sargil, I think Esplandián has found an early grave for the flower of his youth. Lord God, have pity on him, for his only desire is to grow in your holy law."

Sargil was most frightened, and tears were rolling down his cheeks at the sight of the straits his master was in. Soon, however—in fact, it was before the end of the third hour—the Knight of the Bridge became so sluggish and his armor was so damaged that all that was left in him was death. On the other hand, Esplandián pressed him with such hard blows, and his movements were

so lively and nimble that he did not ease up on him for one single moment. This was so evident that the onlookers realized that if his opponent persisted in his obstinacy he would be killed. At this instant, Esplandián, who was still burning with anger for being so mistreated, said to him:

"Don knight, you have done me much ill by pushing me to death's door for no reason, but I will make you go through the door before me."

Then he raised his sword to strike him with all his strength, but his enemy, who could no longer wield his own sword, cried out saying:

"No more. I admit defeat."

Esplandián stayed his blow and said:

"Well, tell me who you are."

"Bring Master Helisabad to me," said the knight, "for I need him urgently."

Then his sword fell from his hand, and he sat down on the field, for he could not remain on his feet. Esplandián called the master telling him the knight wanted to speak to him. The master arrived, got off his palfrey, and went to the knight who had passed out from all the blood he had lost and the horrible blows he had received. Removing the knight's helmet, Helisabad was shocked to discover that it was Amadís. When Esplandián saw him, he threw his sword onto the field, and, taking off his helmet, he began to cry most bitterly and to say:

"Oh, luckless captive! What have I done?"

And he fell senseless next to his father.[3]

Seeing the state the father and son were in, the master began to curse over and over again his own miserable misfortune which had brought him to this place where he saw the two people he loved most in the world about to die before his very own eyes. It was obvious to him that he could not treat them very well there, so he called to Sargil to come help him. Since he was the one who had no equal anywhere in his métier, he applied to Amadís's wounds a kind of cure that was known to no one else. Sargil succored his master by holding him in his arms. Master and squire continued like this until both recovered consciousness. Then Helisabad made them mount their horses and ride, even though this was very difficult for Amadís. But his great strong

---

[3] María Rosa Lida de Malkiel was the first to posit that the *Ur-Amadís* ends with a regicide (Amadís kills Lisuarte), parricide (Esplandián kills Amadís), and suicide (Oriana kills herself to end her despair). See this critic's article: "El desenlace del Amadís primitivo." Most recently, Avalle-Arce has returned in copious detail to the idea of the original dénouement. See especially AArce, 72. He concludes that Amadís was killed in the thirteenth-century version, but he is more cautious about which character actually killed Amadís. More importantly for bk. V, Avalle-Arce posits that GRM defers the original *mano-a-mano* duel to this present chap. in order to link this bk. to the first four and to dramatize the outstanding difference between father and son in terms of vocational motivation; that is, Amadís remains oriented around traditional chivalric values, whereas Esplandián is a latter day crusader. GRM even uses physical type to highlight their differences: Amadís is large and slow, but Esplandián is small and quick. In this world view, the terminus ad quem of large size is giants, and on the scale of good and evil they are placed farthest from godliness.

heart, which as always overcame weakness, gave him so much courage that he presented no impediment to those who were carrying him, and they were able to take him to the Miraflores Monastery where he and his son were placed each on his own bed.

29

How Amadís did not die from his wounds, and about how he declared to the king why he had tested his son in such a rough battle.

As a result of the cruel hard battle that Amadís had with his son, which you have just heard about, it was variously said that Amadís died of his wounds or that Esplandián's first lance pierced him through and through. Others said that Oriana threw herself from her window when she heard the news. But none of that is true, for Master Helisabad cured him of his wounds, and in a short while, King Lisuarte and Oriana's mother the queen abdicated their thrones in favor of Amadís and Oriana and went into retirement, all of which you will hear about in due time.[1] Amadís and Oriana then became the sovereigns; they prospered in Great Britain and Gaul; and they had another son whom they called Perión[2] and a daughter[3] who was no less beautiful than her mother and who married one of the sons of Arquisil, the emperor of Rome.[4] Because of Arquisil's death at Amadís's hands, his great deeds passed into oblivion as if they had been buried under the earth, but his son flourished with such fame and glory that his deeds were trumpeted to the sky.

As soon as Lisuarte knew about the condition of our two knights, he, Queen Oriana, and others responded by going to see them. While they were very sorrowful for the great pain the two suffered, they all considered that if there were any honor to be won from their battle, it was to be shared by father and son. Also, all were consoled by the knowledge that the master had high hopes for their return to good health, so they showed happy rather than sad faces. The queen and the other lords asked Amadís what his reason was for testing his son so brutally. He answered that for a long time now the level of their respective strengths was so equal that without the danger of a serious challenge the youth's inferiority could not be known. Since he himself had

---

[1] This passage concerning versions of Amadís's death is evidence that GRM was reworking older versions as he wrote his own definitive version. See above chap. 28, n. 3.

[2] This son of Amadís and Oriana, called Perión like Amadís's father, is mentioned again in the last chap. of *Esplandián*, and he has many other resonances in the long series of romances in the Amadís Cycle.

[3] The daughter is named in chap. 184. Like Oriana's mother, her name is Brisena. She does not appear again in GRM's Amadís Cycle.

[4] Arquisil appears first in bk. III as a Roman knight who is conquered by Amadís. He then becomes one of Lisuarte's allies in bk. IV in the war against the Arabian king. He marries Lisuarte's daughter Leonoreta at the end of bk. IV. Arquisil appears later in *Esplandián*.

undergone such notable things, and seeing that his son's gifts had caused his own aged gifts to pass into oblivion, he wanted to restore his fame by placing himself and his son in that difficulty, and he wanted to be the victor. He believed that helpful fortune would shine on him favorably in that enterprise as it had in all others; that by winning, he would win all fame and all nobility of arms; and that no father should yield to a son, nor should a servant to his master when they can have it all to themselves. But fortune herself had taught him the harsh lesson that there is a big difference between believing and doing, and that if there were any consolation for him it was in knowing that a good son's honor can extend to the father.

So, Amadís and his son Esplandián were lying in their beds in that condition with Master Helisabad tending their wounds and with King Lisuarte and many knights keeping them company along with Queen Brisena, Oriana, and many high ranking duennas and damsels. But now the story will cease talking about them for a while and instead will tell you what happened to King Garinto of Dacia[5] and Maneli the Prudent.[6]

30

About how King Garinto of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent rescued Urganda from an attack on her by knights in a mountain while she was escorting the emperor of Rome's son.

After King Garinto and Maneli the Prudent awoke from the sleep they found themselves in when they left the port of Firm Island, as you have already been told,[1] they found themselves at night fully armed and at sea in a small boat accompanied by their two squires. The night was so dark that they could hardly see each other, but they were close enough to land that they could leap ashore in no time at all if they wished. All four did not know what to say or think since they were quite puzzled about how they got there: all they could remember was what they had experienced and what they had seen on Firm Island and how they had been knighted, but they did not know how

---

[5] Garinto is made king of Dacia with the help of Angriote de Estraváus. At the end of bk. IV, when all of the main characters are united over the disappearance of King Lisuarte, he goes to Firm Island and is knighted along with Esplandián and other novice knights. Dacia is an ancient European region located between the Tisza River, the Black Sea and the Dniester River, or roughly the area of the former southwestern USSR and northern Rumania. However, according to the *Libro del conoscimiento*, it was a kingdom in the North Sea between Denmark and the Netherlands. In bk. IV, chap. 121, the narrator locates Dacia on the border of Sweden. As Cacho Blecua comments, "let's not ask more precision regarding this fantastical geography or these remote lands" (CB, II, 1584).

[6] Maneli the Prudent is a major character in *Esplandián*, but he appears seldom in the first four bks. In bk. II he is seen as the illegitimate son of Cildadán and Solisa (II, 59), and he, Garinto, Esplandián, and others are knighted at the end of bk. IV.

[1] This episode appears in bk. IV, chap. 133.

they had embarked because it seemed as if everything that had happened to them had a dreamlike quality to it. But when they were more awake, it occurred to them that their life or death was less in their own hands than in the hands of the Almighty Lord to whom all things are subject. Not knowing what to do, whether to sail away from the land out into the open sea or to wait for day to come, they soon saw a huge fire on land not far from where they were, and they decided to leave the caravel and to go see if they could find someone who could tell them in what region they had landed. After ordering their squires not to depart from there, they left the little ship with their helmets in their hands and their shields strapped around their necks, and they began walking up a thickly forested mountainside in the direction of the fire. With much difficulty they got to the fire, and they saw a woman with a baby in her arms in the center of a ring of fire ten steps wide on all sides. There were ten armed knights encircling this scene who did not dare go into it, and one of them, who was magnificently armed, was threatening the woman saying:

"Duenna, evil female, your arts will not protect you enough to keep me from giving you a most cruel death."

But when the two knights arrived, even though they had by then put their helmets on their heads, they were immediately recognized by that woman. She set the baby on the ground and came running to them shouting loudly:

"Help me, my sons, for I need you urgently!"

Hearing these cries, the two knights looked at her more closely and were highly amazed to see that it was Urganda the Unknown, and they said to her:

"Our lady, do not fear, for our lives will be offered to save yours."

The knight who appeared to be master of all the others then approached at that moment and said to them:

"Knights, are you companions of this treacherous duenna who has played such a bad trick on me I know not why?"

"Knight," said Maneli, "the duenna is trustworthy, and if she has hurt or offended you, it would be to correct some error of yours."

"What!" exclaimed the knight. "It seems you want to uphold her wickedness."

"We want only," said Maneli, "to oppose your arrogance, for her goodness is known by very great men in many places, and neither your words nor those of men like you can do very much to diminish the high honor in which she is held."

The knight became very angry and irritated hearing these words. So he put hand to his sword in order to attack Maneli, and his companions did likewise. Maneli and the king then took hold of theirs in order to be ready to use them and to defend themselves, but Urganda, seeing them ready to fight, suddenly killed the fire and pulled the two knights toward her by the ties on their helmets.[2] The night was so exceedingly dark that the ten knights could not see

each other even though they were nearby. In order to vent their pent-up rage, they thought they could attack the two knights, but instead, without knowing who they were hitting, they attacked each other with hard, unfriendly blows. Hence, the dispute was between them, and in a very short period of time most of them were badly hurt. However, Urganda picked up the baby and took the two knights as quickly as she could into the deepest part of the mountain's thickets. They walked a long while until they became tired and it behooved them to rest under some tall trees. Just then the moon appeared. When they were situated in this place, as you have heard, Urganda was blithe over the two knights, and they were likewise toward her, especially since they found her just when they could serve her. They asked her what that very strange adventure was about and where they were, for they knew little because just that night they had arrived at the nearby shore from whence they saw that huge fire, and they had left their boat to go find someone who could inform them. Urganda answered thus:

"My sons, you should know that this child here is the son of the emperor of Rome and his wife Leonoreta.[3] That knight you saw back there among the others, the one who wore such elegant armor, stole the baby from his parents' palace. He is the son of evil Don Garadán,[4] who was the nephew, that is, the brother's son, of Patín, the emperor of Rome,[5] who was killed by Amadís when the latter was known as the Knight of the Green Sword.[6] This took place in a battle witnessed by King Tafinor of Bohemia.[7] Because this son did not find the kind of welcome he expected from this emperor—his father had had an important position in that large seigniory—he stole this little boy thinking that he could obtain what, in his opinion, was due him and

---

[3] In bk. IV, chap. 123, Urganda first meets Arquisil, Patín's successor as emperor of Rome, and she predicts the episode here: "Because of a service you and the empress will receive from me before long, I want to remain loved and favored by you. For this reason I want you to remember me" (CB, II, 1612).

[4] The episode referred to here occurs in bk. III, chap. 70. The son is not mentioned in the first four bks.

[5] Patín is an important character in bks. II through IV. In bk. II he falls in love with Oriana whom he wishes to marry, but he postpones his desire until bk. III. In bk. III he sends Garadán to conclude a treaty with Tafinor of Bohemia, and later in bk. III he is named emperor when he renews his desire to marry Oriana. This causes Amadís to fight against him. Patín's fleet is defeated, and he joins Lisuarte to try to get revenge on Amadís, but he is killed by the hero in bk. IV, chap. 111. In short, his frustrated love for Oriana motivates much of bks. III and IV.

[6] In bk. III, chap. 70, Amadís, calling himself the Knight of the Green Sword or the Knight of the Dwarf, goes to Germany to help King Tafinor conquer the Romans.

[7] Tafinor is aided in his war against Patín by Amadís in bk. III, chap. 70.

his father. He had forgotten that, if the good and loyal service that is done in this world is not rewarded with thanks by those who receive it, and that when a servant has the least hope of receiving the guerdon he merits, then the Lord of the whole world who knows all things satisfies him more abundantly and in unexpected ways. But, He did not think it good for anyone so treacherous as this knight to mend his ways since it was very unusual for one force in His service to be corrected by another. Furthermore, since we are all subjugated by pride, it could not be done without His going far beyond the limits of just proportion. For this reason, instead He created dispassionate and unprejudiced ministers who would correct unbalanced forces by means of common consent and keen judgment. But, my children, woe is upon us if those who have authority and no less power do the opposite of what they should. But even if they may not suffer in this perishable world, they will pay for it everlastingly in the other world. This is even graver inasmuch as they, more than anyone else, were given the task of correcting evil doers.[8]

"Concerning this knight I'm telling you about, he was oblivious to all warnings and was following the haughty nature of his father Garadán, who suffered a wretched death, when he craftily stole this boy with the idea of locking him away in one of his castles. He was accompanied by those knights you saw and by a wet nurse who could give suck to the baby; and as they came this way so fast that their horses could no longer carry them, they felt the urgent need to rest and take shelter in some shepherd huts that are found in this mountain. When I found out about this, I decided to fulfill the promise I made to the emperor when I was on Firm Island: so, leaving my palfrey hidden in some dense thickets, I went to those huts on the pretext that I was fleeing from some thieves who had robbed me and killed my husband. When the knights and the woman were eating what they could find there, they handed the child over to me for safekeeping. However, while they were making ready to leave and were saddling their horses and picking up their armor, they ceased watching me. Thus, without them paying attention to me, I got out of there as fast as I could by running into the mountain's densest thicket. My plan was to get the palfrey, but the wet nurse saw me and gave out a loud cry to the knights for them to follow me. They reacted so quickly that they left their horses and went after me on foot. But the night was so dark they

---

[8] In this parenthetical sermonette purportedly spoken by Urganda, the narrator/Helisabad/Montalvo seems to be preaching a concept new in the fifteenth century for how society should control the lawless such as Garadán's unnamed son. Common consent (*acuerdo*) and keen judgment (*justo juicio*) by royal ministers or judges (*ministros*) was to take the place of God's direct intervention in the balancing of the forces of good and the forces of evil. As Cacho Blecua points out, there is a parallel sermonette in bk. III when Amadís advises his followers in the new art of war just before they attack and conquer Mongaça Isle. He advises them to act together (*acuerdo*) and with good judgment (*cuerdamente* and with *discreción*) rather then separately and using blind force (*gran esfuerço*). Cacho Blecua sets the opposition in universal terms: *fortitudo* versus *sapientia*. See CB, II, 965. This present sermonette, however, seems aimed less at fighting than at the new legal institutions set up by the Catholic monarchs and the need for upright judges.

could not find me until they had spread out in all directions. Since it was hard for me to keep running, both because of the child I was carrying and because I was exhausted, two of them caught up with me, and, realizing I had no other protection, instantaneously I made that fire circle you saw around me. At the cries these two raised, all of the others came around just as you found them, for it pleased the Lord on High at the moment to send you to that spot, which is what He usually does for those who are in His service. So, the knights ended up with some of the grief they deserve, and we were saved."

"Good lady," they asked, "now what are you going to do with that tiny baby, for it will soon perish of hunger? And what do you want us to do?"

"My sons," she answered, "before daybreak I will have collected enough herbs from which I will make a juice for his nourishment, and you will come with me to my caravel, which I left anchored at the foot of this mountain, and there we shall confer about what should be done."

"So be it," they said. "We are very pleased for the emperor and his wife to receive whatever good actions they can from us. But we beseech you, señora, tell us, if you will, what happened to Esplandián? And what news is there about King Lisuarte?"

"I will not tell you," said Urganda, "because first you must undergo a singular adventure in which your spirits will be subjected to very great misery."

Seeing that she wanted to conceal the answer, they stopped questioning her further, and they spoke about other things until day broke. Then, taking the little boy in her arms, Urganda relieved his hunger, and she walked along with the two knights stopping now and then to rest until they came to the ship where they found four damsels and two dwarfs who were there to steer it.

31

About how Urganda, after taking leave of the two novice knights, was accompanied by two strong dragons on the journey in which she took the prince to the emperor of Rome, and about the great joy her arrival caused.

On the ship you have just heard about, Urganda was relaxing with the two novice knights and they were talking as best they knew how, but she did not want to restore the boy to his father the emperor because the emperor would value her service all the more if he was in despair of ever recovering his son. After a couple of days had passed, she thought it would be a good idea to end the sadness that was upsetting the emperor's court at that time, and so she told them to return to the small ship. Then she took leave of the two knights after admonishing and urging them to resist stout-heartedly the forces of changeable fortune whenever it might turn against them, for they were born to serve the highest and most demanding of all professions, that of the order of chivalry.

She rode her palfrey and carried the boy in her arms, accompanied by two very strong dragons on either side, who were breathing flames of fire from their mouths. Urganda took the land route through the mountain's thickets in the direction of a town called Trimola[1] where the emperor was. Although it was not long before she met many groups of people who were searching for the child, they all fled in great fear and dread of the dragons as if the dragons were death itself. But she continued on the road very happily, laughing at their fear. She proceeded on her way until she encountered Don Florestán, the brave and courageous king of Sardinia, who had pursued his quest most zealously, for he had already found Don Garadán's son and the other knights to whom, as you have already been told, so much harm had come in that affair. As he had seen the people fleeing from the dragons, he, who always displayed the noble quality of a strong and brave heart in similarly challenging cases—as this one was—determined to find out what the cause was. Arriving in the duenna's path, he recognized her much more readily than the others who had never heard of her, and without fear or trepidation he went up to her and bowed down in a very courtly fashion. The duenna Urganda began to laugh, and she said:

"Noble king, come to me. Now that I have you to guard me, the fearful dragons can be dispensed with, for their great ferocity cannot equal your bravery."

Then the king rested his lance on a tree trunk, took his helmet from his head, and noticed that the duenna was alone on her palfrey with a child in her arms. He never knew what became of the two giant serpents. After they had greeted each other, the king took her horse by the reins and gave his armor to his squire, who was following behind him. They were very happy to be in each other's company and they talked about many things. They arrived in the town of Trimola, where they found the empress who was full of anguish and tears over the disappearance of her son. Then, using the power that great joy often commands over sadness, everything was completely reversed, and, consigning anguish and distress to the past, messengers were sent in every direction to find the emperor, who had left with a great host by another road. Upon his return, his spirits were raised and he was equally overjoyed by the recovery of his son and by Urganda's visit.

But now, we shall leave them to their pleasures which were considerably increased by the hope Urganda gave them concerning King Lisuarte's disappearance, and we shall turn to what the two novice knights did after parting from Urganda.

---

[1] This is the only chap. in GRM's Amadís Cycle in which references to Trimola are made. It does not appear to exist in real geography.

32

In which we tell the stories of the strange adventures that happened to these novice knights and how they battled a wild bear in a mountain; and from there they returned to the shore to find their boat nearly sunk in the waves.

These two novices, the king of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent, after parting from Urganda, as you have heard, returned to their boat where they found their squires, and, boarding it, they pushed out to the deep water with no thought about going anywhere other than where chance would take them. Although at the time they set out the weather was very pleasant, it was not long before very strong winds of a big and powerful storm came up and the sea became so turbulent that they could neither find relief nor help themselves. All four worked hard, but in vain, with the oars at their disposal, to return to the land from which they had departed. Finding themselves with no hope other than God's, they found consolation by commending themselves to Him and by telling each other not to be troubled or to become wearied over whatever destiny the bad weather would bring them, for the honor and glory that come from a life of arms are achievable only by confronting brushes with death. Well, all four were in this condition of not knowing what would become of them. Would the small room of their current abode, which was subject to the will of the strong winds and wild waves rather than their own wills, be a shelter or the perdition of all of them? But, for all their fear and lack of consolation, the boat did not stop its continual journeying to regions to which it was being led both day and night by an alien will. Moreover, they were never able to see either land or other people travelling on the sea. Finally, at the end of thirty days, with scarcely any victuals left, they chanced to be thrown onto a very beautiful little island covered with trees and on which there seemed to be some outer crags.

By whatever means it came about, those knights were very pleased to have arrived at land. When the boat reached the shore, they disembarked, chained it to a tree, and left one of their squires aboard. Then they agreed to seek such aid as they might find there; so they started into the island wearing their helmets on their heads and their shields around their necks. However, they did not walk far before arriving in a valley where they found a fountain under some beautiful tall trees. They took off their helmets, washed, and drank the water that seemed fresh and delicious. The squire who was accompanying them belonged to the king of Dacia. His name was Argento[1] and he said to them:

"Good lords, if you agree, though I have no armor, I want to find out what is on this island, so that you can come to an agreement based on whatever I find."

---

[1] Argento does not appear in bks. I to IV. Argento is the king of Dacia's squire, and, although it does not say so directly here, Maneli the Prudent also has a squire, named in chap. 34, whose name is Milon. His existence is implied at the beginning of chap. 30.

"That is fine," they said, "but make sure you do not go and get lost."

"I shall do as you say," he said. "If I can't see what I'm looking for from that peak, I'll return directly to you."

Then he went through the thickets, and when he was some distance from them, he saw an amazingly large bear coming toward him, which filled him with fear. While shouting loudly for them to rescue him, he quickly climbed a tree with the bear following him up to the foot of the tree. The knights, who had remained at the fountain, upon hearing Argento's shouts, ran so rapidly toward him that they could not take along their helmets, which they left at the fountain. Coming near the squire, they discovered he was in the tree, and the bear was climbing up to get him; so they gave loud cries for it to leave him alone. At this, the bear turned its head, saw the knights coming against it, descended as quickly as it could, stood up on its hind feet, and faced them. The king, who was younger and stronger than Maneli, putting his shield on his head and grabbing his sword, was the first to go forward toward the bear. He gave it such a big blow on its head that he sliced off an ear and a part of its jawbone, but the bear seized him with its powerful arms and sunk its teeth into his shield so deeply that they came out the other side. Therefore, the king was so crushed by the bear, which had him wrapped in its arms, that he had no room for action, and there was nothing further for him to do. It felt as if every bone in his body were breaking. But by this time Maneli arrived, and he struck the bear so hard on one leg near the paw with such a hard blow that it was cut completely off. Falling to the ground, the bear gave out a savage roar, and, releasing the knight, began to flee on three feet with Maneli in pursuit trying to attack the bear. But, being unable to catch it, he returned to the king who was abundantly wounded in the battle with the bear. Approaching him, Maneli asked how he was.

"Not well," the king answered. "That evil, diabolical beast has broken my whole body."

Meanwhile, the very frightened squire climbed down from the tree. He came to where they were and said:

"Sires, I think there are more wild animals in this land than people. If you agree, it would be good to return to the fountain. While we wait for the sea to calm its fury, it may be that someone will appear; that is, if the island's not deserted."

"Let us do that," said Maneli, "because it might be necessary to return."

Thus, they turned to go back to the fountain. When they were near it, they saw two very large monkeys holding the helmets in their hands: they were putting them on and taking them off their heads.[2] Seeing the knights, they climbed to the top of the trees, taking the helmets with them. They went

---

[2] GRM demonstrates a clear narrative tendency in his recasting of bks. I, II and III, and in his invention of bks. IV and V, by having comic scenes follow scenes of high drama or tension. It is somewhat unusual to find two such scenes follow one upon the other: first, the squire treed by a bear, and now the knights' helmets stolen by monkeys.

from branch to branch so nimbly it seemed as if they were carrying nothing at all. From below, the knights yelled and threw stones at them, but the monkeys avoided them easily, and in return, they scolded the knights furiously by making a sharp rattling sound with their teeth. Realizing they had lost their helmets in their adventure and seeing what the monkeys were doing—one minute they were threatening to throw the helmets down at them, the next they stopped gesturing—they could barely restrain their desire to break out laughing. Finally, they did not know what to do, for the storm blocked their return to the sea; furthermore, being in that wilderness with no more food than the little they had left meant they could not expect any remedy that might be good for them. In any case, they determined to spend the night there, and they sent Argento to call the other squire, who had remained on the boat, and to tell him to bring some food, for they were in great need of nourishment. This was done as ordered. After the squire arrived with the supplies, the knights took off their armor, and they ate dinner near the fountain while talking about many pleasant things. When it came time to sleep, they lay down on the surrounding, abundant, fresh grass, and, because they had spent many days at sea without rest or tranquility fearing they would be shipwrecked, they slept until morning.

At daybreak, they awoke and saw their helmets on the grass under the trees, but what really amazed them was they were missing their cuirasses. Searching for them, they looked up in the trees and saw that the monkeys were wearing them, at which they immediately crossed themselves, believing those monkeys must be some sort of devils. But Argento, the king of Dacia's squire, who had a keen and subtle wit, said to the knights:

"Sires, let's look for a way to recover the cuirasses, and then let's get out of here, because our food's getting low. With the mercy of our almighty and powerful Lord, it will be less dangerous to try our fortune at sea, than to stay and die of hunger on this deserted island."

"Well said," they replied. "But, how can we do that? There are many very high trees, and there is no way to capture the monkeys."

Then Argento took a tree branch that seemed best suited to his purpose. He cut it, making a bow, and put on it one of the silk cords they used to hang their shields from their necks. Next, he made arrows with very sharp points, and standing below the trees, he began to shoot at the monkeys. No matter how much the beasts tried to ward off the arrows, the squire, who was practiced in that art, was hitting them on their faces, heads, and bodies in such a way that they were bloodied all over. The monkeys tried to flee, but they were hindered by the weight of the cuirasses. So the monkeys' efforts came to naught, and they howled loudly, which pleased the knights greatly and made them laugh a lot; then, expecting the monkeys would fall, they readied their swords in order to kill them. Finally, Argento harried and wounded the monkeys so much that they lost control of their own strength. First he downed one, and then the other. The knights seized them, but they did not want to kill them; rather, after taking the cuirasses, they freed them, letting them take shelter in the forest.

This done, they put on their armor desiring to embark once again. They felt it was less hazardous on the sea than on that deserted and uninhabited land where there was no hope; this is because, just as life is repaired by death, so death could happen to them from life in that place. But it happened differently from what they expected, for, as soon as they got to the shore, they found that the heavy winds had broken the chains that held the boat, which was now scuttled at the bottom of the sea. This made them quite discouraged, and they felt that now without a doubt they had no hope of ever achieving fame and glory, for death had come for them. Upset by this strange turn of events, they decided to return to the fountain you have heard about and to stay near the little food they had—which might last them two days—and to wait on God's mercy, for He had brought them there, and He would take them to a safe harbor.

33

About how, while these knights were waiting for an adventure to come from God, the storm on the sea threw up on shore the valiant Frandalo and his ship, in which Damsel Carmela, Esplandián's messenger, was being held captive, and against whom Maneli accepted a battle in order to free the damsel.

So, after those two days, having nothing left to eat, with no hope of living, and expecting cruel death, while they were sitting on a very high crag and looking at the rough seas, which had calmed not one whit, there came to them the remedy about which you will now hear, but it was not without great challenge and danger to their lives. Just after daybreak they saw a ship driven by chance and without helm coming toward the place where they were. Seeing it arrive, their spirits were lifted with not a little joy. Once the ship had landed and the knights had gone down to the water's edge, they asked the sailors whose xebec[1] it was. They answered:

---

[1] The term used in Spanish is *fusta* which we have translated until here as "caravel." However, since *fusta* is a general term for Mediterranean ships with two or three masts, lateen sails, and oars, which were used as warships or corsairs, we are going to distinguish from this point onward between similar ships used by the opposing forces of the time. Christian *fustas* will be referred to as "caravels," and Turkish or pagan *fustas* will be referred to as "xebecs." The word entered English in 1756 from Spanish, and it entered Spanish from the Arabic word *ʃabbak*—hence the differential use for Frandalo's and others' ships. The Spanish term for "xebec" is *jabeque*. DA defines a *xabeque* (the "x" preserves the original Arabic [ʃ] pronunciation) as "a small galley or frigate with oars and sails. It is used in the Mediterranean especially among Mallorcans and sailors from Ibiza." For an encyclopedic presentation of Christian and Turkish ships and navies in the Mediterranean from Montalvo's time through the seventeenth century,

"It belongs to him whose greatest happiness is inflicting the most sadness and tribulation on those who encounter him."

"Despite that," said the knights, "to us it is great news because no matter what cruelty is done to us, it would be a gift just to take us from here. But, please tell us who is it you say who inspires such fear?"

"He is," they said, "valiant Frandalo,[2] who, with his great energy and his large fleet roams about subjugating most everything that sails these seas. This storm dispersed the fleet here and there, but he remained in this single xebec, which many times was about to sink."

While they were speaking, a man appeared at the ship's railing. Seeing the knights armed as they were, he cried in a loud voice:

"Sire, come up, come up. Here are the two knights who killed your cousin, your uncle's son."[3]

At these words, a large-bodied and fierce looking knight came on deck and said to the knights:

"Are you the ones who killed my cousin Lindoraque?"[4]

"We do not know," said Maneli, "who your cousin was, nor from the moment we became knights until now have our swords ever been tested in anything that might resemble danger."

"Don't believe it," said the squire. "These are the knights I was telling you about. I know them by their armor, and the damsel you've taken prisoner will tell you the same thing."

"Knights," said Frandalo, "why do you deny what you did, for it will do you no good? It is necessary for you to suffer death because you killed the best knight who ever lived and the one I loved most."

Maneli, who was the most prudent, as you have been told, answered him by saying:

"If the one you are referring to was your cousin, as you say, then we shall happily dare to confront the danger with which you are threatening us so that we can earn the glory that will come from such a victory. But we would not be honest to accept praise for what we might have done, especially since we never did what you say."

"Well, bring the damsel here," said Frandalo, "so she can tell us the truth."

The squire then went and brought her, and as soon as she saw the knights, she exclaimed in a loud voice:

---

[2] Frandalo does not appear in bks. I to IV. See chap. 34, n. 1, for a more detailed presentation of Frandalo.

[3] Although the original text does not say so, the phrase "uncle's son" is an elliptical correction for "father's brother's son." In Spanish, these cousins or primos are called *primos hermanos*. The actual Spanish text says *primo, hijo de hermano*. A similar situation arose in chap. 30 with reference to Garadán's son, Patín, but in that context confusion was avoided because Garadán was also mentioned.

[4] It is not clear to which Lindoraque Frandalo is referring. Ambor and Talanque, in *Esplandián*, chap. 15, killed Frandalo's uncle Lindoraque, but Amadís killed his cousin Lindoraque in bk. I, chap. 14, at the same time that Esplandián's father sliced off part of Arcaláus's hand. Arcaláus is this Lindoraque's uncle.

"Holy Mary! Who do I see? I know the arms but not the faces."

And she added:

"Knights, tell me in the name of God, where did you get those arms?"

"Fair damsel," answered the king of Dacia, "why do you ask?"

"Because," she said, "I saw them on two knights who, if they were here, would fight to the death to get me out of this prison."

"Well, tell us, if you will," asked the king, "who are the knights on whom you saw these arms? If there is sufficient cause for us to free you, and if we have enough strength to do so, we will not lack the courage to accomplish the task."

"Since this is your wish," she said, "I shall tell you, but keep your promise."

She continued:

"I tell you, one is called Talanque and the other Ambor. They are companions of the master whom I serve."

"Ah, damsel!" exclaimed Maneli. "In God's name, tell us what you know about them."

"Well," she said, "beg this knight, who has forced me to go with him, to free me, and everything I know I shall declare to you; and there won't be little to tell; nor, if you love them, will the pleasure you get from the telling be small."

So they begged the Knight of the Ship most earnestly to give them the damsel since he was keeping her against her will. At this, he began to laugh derisively and said:

"It won't take long to put you in such a pass that she will have to be your beseecher. Try to defend yourselves and not to flee, for I know full well you cannot escape into that island."

Maneli, hearing such a threat, became very angry and said:

"Knight, we have more reason to say that to you, because you have the means whereby you can go freely wherever you please; but we have neither caravel nor refuge on land with which to sustain our lives. Since your spirit is sufficient to make you so arrogant, suffice it for you personally to exercise your arrogance against whichever one of us you choose, and either for you to come down here where we are, or with a safety guarantee from all your people or from you alone, for us to go board your ship; and let the victor have the damsel."

Frandalo, who thought little of them because of his own excessive bravery and because of their extreme youth, turned to ask that his arms be brought to him. That was done, and he was armed most magnificently, for he was the one who had gathered unto himself the majority of the riches to be found among those who sailed those seas. Jumping first onto the damsel's little boat, which was tied to the ship, he then leaped onto the land near the knights, and, with his helmet tied on and his shield at his neck, he said to them:

"Unlucky boys, have pity on your youth. Drop your arms and put yourselves at my mercy."

"Let us drop all the threats," said Maneli. "I put my trust in God that soon you will beg for mercy. Choose one of us to fight you for the damsel, and the

other will take her boat to your xebec so that the battle will take place under equal threats."

"No matter under what conditions," said Frandalo, "you cannot escape me, for I think little of a battle with two knights even though they may be very renowned. So I want to give you this glory because, by becoming so emboldened as to remain on the battlefield alone with me, you will be able to have the greatest and final chance in your life to earn glory."

Maneli said nothing in reply, and, turning to the king of Dacia, he said:

"Good sire, while this knight is pleased for me to have the first battle, I beg you to go to the xebec, and if I am destined to die, take your own cognizance of whatever reason may oblige you."

The king, who realized the request was just and increased their honor, jumped on the boat and went over to the ship where the men and the damsel were. At the same time he prayed that God would give his companion the victory and himself the courage to avenge him if He should order some other action.

34

About how Frandalo was defeated in the battle and surrendered to Maneli's mercy, and how they won the ship and freed the damsel.

Once strong Frandalo and Maneli the Prudent were alone, as you have heard, Maneli said:

"Knight, give us the damsel and go your way. Considering the haughty words you have spoken, and since the insult may turn back on you, I release you from them."

"Well, since your heart is already growing weak," said Frandalo, "drop your arms and I will have pity on you, which is something I seldom ever do."

"Now, on guard," said Maneli. "I want to see if your strength is worth removing the guilt from your immense arrogance."

Then they attacked each other very fiercely. The knight was very husky because, on his mother's side, he came from the race of strong giants that are found throughout the seigniory of Persia. And on his father's side, he descended from brave and daring pagan knights, which is what he was.[1] Al-

---

[1] Frandalo's mother has not been identified earlier. His father's side belongs to a mythical pre-Arthurian lineage of Celtic or Armorican origin. Frandalo is therefore half-giant. Giantness was virtually synonymous with evil in Western literature prior to Rabelais and this writer's good giants Gargantua and Pantagruel.

The 1694 English translation of *Amadís of Greece* (vol. 7 of the international Amadís Cycle) calls this character Frandalon the Ciclops [*sic*]. See *Amadis of Greece* . . . (London: J. Deacon, 1694). Also, see fig. 10 for a representation from contemporary Spanish culture of a traditional view of an Arabian- or Moorish-looking giant.

though Maneli was very young and had never been in any such ordeal, except for the fight to rescue Urganda the Unknown, the noble and very brave blood he got from King Cildadán, his father, made him so exceedingly daring that he preferred a thousand times to suffer death rather than a single moment of shame or timidity. So they gave each other huge and dangerous sword blows on their helmets, on which were lit fires of live flames. Thus, now and then, their heads felt the hard blows and bent forward on their chests. Neither did the shields fail to receive so many hard blows that the field was covered with slices from them. Those who were watching from the ship were greatly alarmed and amazed by the battle both because they were used to witnessing Frandalo's tremendous victories and because one lone knight was lasting so long in the field against him. The king of Dacia, who had not thought Maneli's strength would extend so far, was very happy because he observed that his friend was moving agilely and had lost none of his strength; nevertheless, he was waiting fearfully for the end of the battle because Frandalo was showing great valor and a real mastery of the offensive and defensive arts. Still, the knights continued without respite, attacking each other at every point for more than an hour, and it was impossible to discern which one was superior. The damsel, while watching them, said:

"If you are of the company and lineage of my master and of the others who show these devices, I don't doubt that you will have the glory of victory and I'll be freed to carry out my mission."

But I tell you that the men on the ship did not think that Maneli would be victorious, because most of them were forced against their will to be there, and they were never allowed to touch land.

By this time, the knights were very tired, and their armor was broken in so many places that they were useless for defense. The cuirasses had lost many of their meshes,[2] and much blood was flowing through the cuts and staining the field. The Knight of the Ship stepped back a little and said:

"Knight, place yourself under my power and stop seeking to die like this; because I recognize in you more excellence of arms than anyone else I have ever fought, I will grant you what I have never granted anyone before today."

"Give us the damsel," said Maneli, "and that little boat with some food for our voyage, and I shall release you from the battle; but otherwise, neither your words nor your strength will keep you from dying at my hands. And if you still do not grant my request, it will be too late, for I tell you that until either you die or your honor is ended, I shall give you not a moment's breathing space."

Raising in front of himself the little bit of the shield that was left, Maneli

---

[2] The cuirass or lorica in the Amadís Cycle is a kind of smock made of metal meshes that goes from the neck to the knees with appendages to protect the arms and head. In chap. 15 the cuirass's skirt was alluded to. GRM uses two terms for this item of a knight's defensive armor, *loriga* and *arnés*. The term used here is *loriga*, which is a corselet made of meshes stronger than those of an *arnés*. The meshes on a *loriga* cannot be torn off individually because they are composed of interlocking metal rings.

went at Frandalo with great zeal, but he did not find any weakness in his opponent, who may well have been tired and wounded. Rather, the latter also returned to the attack; then they gave each other such heavy and fierce sword blows that they made the hafts turn around in their hands, and it seemed that none of their strength had diminished. But Maneli, pondering the great danger he was in—it was more likely he would be killed than be victorious—and knowing that the knight's cruelty was satisfied only when carried to the highest degree, he strove to draw on all his strength, in which, after God's, he placed all his hope for survival, and therefore he began to pursue Frandalo with such hard and mortal blows that Frandalo became bewildered and was able to do no more than parry the blows with his sword. Feeling he was mortally wounded both because of all of the blood he was losing and because of the very hard blows Maneli was landing, and knowing that there was no refuge on land, Frandalo went into the water thinking he might find some help from his men. However, Maneli, although he was very badly wounded, went in after him, but was unable to reach the giant because he was taller; so all Maneli could do was strike at his opponent's armpits and neck.

Just then, a very large tumult started on the ship: four of Frandalo's servants jumped quickly on the little boat and went to rescue their master. Maneli feared they would sink it, so he returned very quickly to land; and those men worked hurriedly to pull Frandalo aboard, but he was so disoriented that he was almost unconscious. The others, who were on the xebec with the king of Dacia, took up their arms to kill the king, but those who were forced to be aboard took his side, and a dangerous battle began among all of them. The damsel was shielded behind the king's back, and he helped her as much as he could. Despite his youth, he gave big blows to those who approached him; then, seeing he was being aided by some rebels, he took heart and waded into them wounding and killing as many as he could; for he found they were not wearing armor, but rather most of them had only iron-tipped poles. Frandalo kept them armed this way on purpose so that they would not revolt. Aided by those rebels, he harassed them so well that he made them surrender and beg him for mercy. Meanwhile, those on the little boat were waiting to see if their fellows would win so they could bring their master, who had revived somewhat, up to the bigger ship. But when they saw that the foreign knight had taken control of the xebec, they lost heart and did not know what to do, for their master was bleeding so profusely from his wounds, which they were unable to dress, that the only thing they expected was to see him die before them.

As you have heard, Maneli was on land at the seashore, which means those on the xebec could not seize him as they wished because the water was too shallow there, nor could he pass over to them. His squire, Milon, and the king's squire, Argento, had taken off their chemises and were stanching Maneli's blood, which was flowing freely. And Frandalo, who thought there was no remedy for his death, which he felt was near, did not dare go over to the little boat, which he could well have done, because the distance between the two boats was great and he feared he did not have a league's worth of life left. Finding no solution, and rather than waiting for the cruel draught of

death, he decided very boldly to attempt to get something from that enemy knight of his, and so he said in a feeble voice:

"Knight, if you guarantee my life, I will place myself at your mercy hoping to find in it some haven."

Since that satisfied his honor, Maneli granted it, and, rather than letting him die like that, he ordered the men to forget their fear and to carry Frandalo to the ship. This was done. The king and the others who were with him took Frandalo from the boat and put him on his own bed where some of the king's men let his blood and treated him as was necessary. Then Maneli ordered the boat sent to ferry him and the squires to the ship. They were all overjoyed at the good fortune God had given them, although it was at considerable risk, as you have heard. And the damsel embraced them over and over, saying:

"The sight of these arms of yours has awakened the sweet memory of my lord and his friends, and it increases my desire to see them."

35

About how, while these knights were waiting for good sailing weather and while they were recovering from their wounds, they asked the damsel to tell them who she was and what news she had; and about what she and a squire answered.

After this was over, the knights wanted to know from the damsel who she was and where she had seen Talanque and Ambor. With all sitting before the king, and her in front of Maneli's bed, they begged her to tell them what she had promised. The damsel said to them:

"My good friends, to judge by the immense joy you showed when I mentioned them, it certainly seems you love them a lot, and I tell you I left them happy and healthy in the region of a land where they earned much honor and great renown at arms. And about me, please know that I am under the orders of the best knight in the world, and that while I was on a mission in his service, I and others were taken prisoner by the men of Frandalo, whom you hold captive here. The others deserved this fate as little as I. And if you want to know more from me, take me to Constantinople, which is my destination, and there I will tell you of the many strange and wonderful things that happened in the place I come from."

Realizing the damsel wanted to keep her counsel, the knights called the squire who had made the loud cry calling out the ship's knight, and they said to him:

"Tell us, then, what did you know about us that caused you to seek our harm? And why did you maintain what we never did?"

Full of fear, the squire said:

"Sires, since you are knights, you shouldn't be surprised I tried to get revenge for the death of the lord who raised me. Two knights who had the same devices as you killed him, and I don't know if you are the ones."

"Where was that?" asked the king.

"Very near the strong Forbidden Mountain," he said, "where I found this damsel. She was going through a valley full of trees and there was an unarmed knight with her. Then I left where she was without her knowing I had been there, and I went back to the place where the battle had been between the two knights and my lord the giant, and I found him killed. Afterwards I found out a knight with black arms won control of that mountain by personally killing two very strong giants and two other knights who were in its strong alcázar. And I know nothing more than what I've said."

After the two knights heard this, the king of Dacia said:

"Ah! Holy Mary, help me! That knight must be Esplandián. He was dubbed with those devices, and according to what Urganda said about him, none other than he could have been granted the glory of such a victory."

The damsel began to laugh when she saw their reaction. Maneli said to her:

"Damsel, for the faith you have in what you love most, tell us what you know about this."

"Who I love more than anything else," she said, "is the Knight of the Black Arms, and don't think your entreating will do you any good, for I will only tell you when I'm in the place I told you."

"Well, that shall not remain an obstacle," they said. "If fortune does not interfere, we shall have the ship steered where you direct."

Then they spoke to the sailors, asking them if they knew how to sail to Constantinople. They said:

"Very well, but it's very far. If this storm doesn't stop, you can't get there in less than four days."

"In the name of God," they said, "let us wait here until the weather changes. In the meantime, take good care of Frandalo so that he may not die. It may be that, just as his fortune changed, and whereas he was once the victor and is now the vanquished, so his disposition to follow another and better path may change. Or so it often happens."

36

About how, in calm weather, the knights, urged by the damsel, sailed to Constantinople, accompanied the damsel to the palace, and delivered Frandalo into the emperor and Leonorina's service, thus guaranteeing his life.

Just as you have heard, the king of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent were aboard the ship they had won by their formidable prowess and where they found the sustenance in food and many other things of which they were in such need. Maneli was in the care of the damsel, who trusted no one but herself; Frandalo was attended by one of his men, whom he had captured for that purpose; and they were all waiting for fortune to calm the sea. They spent twenty days without daring to move from that place, but at the end of that time, the weather calmed down, and they departed for Constantinople.

However, Frandalo—whose health was better, but not good enough for him to be able to get out of bed—found out where they were travelling, and, remembering the trouble and disservice he had been to the emperor and to many others who did not deserve it, he felt great anguish and pain in his soul. He thought there was probably no one powerful enough to save him from death if he were discovered in that region. He communicated this to the king of Dacia, begging him to intercede with his companion to find a way to save him from such a grave danger. But they offered him hope only if he were to change for the good those things he had done until then.

And so, as has been said, they sailed toward their destination. On the morning of the fourth day, just as dawn was about to break, they arrived in Constantinople. This made the damsel very happy because she considered accomplished that which her beloved sire had so fondly ordered her to do. After arriving, the knights asked the damsel what it pleased her to do. They also asked her to tell them, as she had promised, about Talanque and Ambor and the Knight of the Black Armor, for they had fulfilled everything she had desired. The damsel said to them:

"Good friends, I must carry out my instructions to speak with the emperor and his daughter, and if it would please you to take me to them, there you will hear everything I know. Needless to say, you'll be glad at the news."

Maneli, who was still weak, begged the king to accompany the damsel and to find out what they needed to hear so that they could find those knights they loved so much. This request pleased the king, but Maneli also wanted to see the emperor and his daughter, because she was praised by everyone for her renowned beauty. Then he put on all his magnificent arms, except those for his face and hands; and being quite handsome and a youth of sixteen, he was the very picture of a dashing knight. As the king was preparing to leave the xebec with the damsel, Maneli said to him:

"Sire, it would be good for us to be remembered in this region for doing some service for the beautiful infanta.[1] I suggest you take Frandalo with you and give him to her on behalf of two novice knights from Firm Island, and tell her that she, keeping him alive, may order him to serve her in whatever way she deems fit."

"Quite so," the king replied. "Since he has always been opposed to her service, it may be that this constraint on him may force him to change his views and thereby to correct the great errors of his ways."

Then they communicated this intention to Frandalo, and he became very upset and ashamed. But, having no choice in the matter, he got out of bed and dressed as best he could. Argento, the king's squire, took his arm to help him, the king took the damsel by the hand, and, leaving the ship on foot, they set off to enter the city.

When the people saw how magnificently dressed the damsel was, how handsome the knight was and what arms he was wearing, and how they were marching Frandalo before them—for they all knew him as an evil, strong knight—they regarded them with wonder. The people came from everywhere to discover what adventure had brought them there; in fact, so many came that the road was blocked, and the visitors could scarcely proceed up the street. Finally, they arrived at the emperor's grand palace.[2] However, he was

out hunting in a forest near the city, which he had stocked with large herds of deer and many other rare breeds of game which he had brought from distant lands.[3] The damsel asked about Infanta Leonorina's apartment. Having it pointed out to her, she begged the doorkeepers to tell the princess that a damsel and a foreign knight wished to speak to her. When Leonorina heard this request and the manner of their arrival, she felt an urgent need to see them, so she ordered them to enter. Once they were in her presence, they found she was with Queen Menoresa[4] and many other damsels, all daughters of kings and other grandees, and they were surprised and overwhelmed by the princess's great beauty. The damsel was more impressed than the king because he had seen the beauty of Oriana when she was accompanied by Queen Briolanja,[5] Melicia,[6] and Olinda; although the infanta exceeded all others in beauty, the difference was not so great that it caused him to forget the others' beauty.

The king knelt before Leonorina with the intention of kissing her hands, but, not wishing to let him do so, she pulled them away and made him rise. The damsel bowed her head while still standing and without making any other sign of obeisance. Leonorina was watching her and said:

---

[3] On the grounds of the Topkapí Sarayí, the Ottoman Turks' grand palaces, there are still remnants of a wood used for hunting by the Byzantine emperors and the Turkish sultans.

[4] Menoresa is queen and mistress of Gadabasta Island. She is Leonorina's principal lady-of-honor. Prior to bk. V, she appears only in bk. III, chap. 74, wherein she gives Esplandián's father six swords.

[5] Briolanja appears throughout the first four bks. Her name is probably derived from that of Briolande in the *Suite du Merlin*. Her presence throughout GRM's five bks. is the most problematic of all the characters in that she provides evidence of at least five versions of Amadís. See AArce, 161–66. She is the daughter of Tagadán, king of Sobradisa. She falls in unrequited love with Amadís, who restores her to her kingdom after her father dies. Oriana's jealousy of Briolanja's affection for Amadís is the cause of the whole episode of Beltenebros and Poor Rock. Oriana's jealousy is somewhat assuaged when she convinces herself that her rival is not quite as beautiful as herself. Briolanja marries Galaor at the end of bk. IV. For Briolanja's key role in bk. V, see chap. 99 below. Also see Juan Manuel Cacho Blecua, *Amadís: heroísmo mítico cortesano* (Madrid: Cupsa Editorial, 1979), 367–68; and Harvey L. Sharrer, "Briolanja as a Name in Early Fifteenth-Century Portugal: Echo of a Reworked Portuguese *Amadis de Gaula*?" *La Corónica*, vol. 19, no. 1 (1990): 112–18.

[6] Melicia is one of Oriana's principal confidantes and ladies-in-waiting throughout the first four bks. She is Amadís's sister. As a child in bk. I, chap. 3, she is instrumental in identifying the baby Amadís. In the famous wedding chapter, she marries Bruneo de Bonamar.

"Good damsel, you and the knight who is escorting you are most welcome."

"Infanta," said she, "after he's told you why he's here, I'll speak with you and tell you who I am and why I've risked myself to come see you and speak to you."

"Beautiful lady," the king then said, "after I and another novice knight like myself left the big port of Firm Island, we found ourselves on a little boat at sea. This happened after we had been put into a deep sleep by a strange adventure. So, we awoke on the high seas without knowing where our fortune had taken us. After a few things happened to us, such a fierce storm arose that our lives were more than once placed on the edge of death, not by armed challenge, but in the way in which fortune is accustomed to: that is, by tormenting whomever it likes; hence, fortune can increase its great power by showing how strongly it can produce calamities; and often these latter are even remedied adversely by fortune.[7] So, with much difficulty, we arrived at a deserted island at the same time we ran out of the food we had had for our sustenance; and our little boat was torn from its mooring and sunk to the bottom of the sea by the force of the great storm. Waiting for death and without any hope for our lives, this knight Frandalo happened along, separated from his convoy in one lone ship in which this damsel was being held prisoner. Then, being mortally threatened by him, and in order to obtain her freedom and ours, we had a terrible battle—my companion against him, and I against those who were aboard the xebec. Being the victors, we took control of the ship, imprisoned him, and, responding to the damsel's pleas, agreed to sail here where we plan to begin the quest to find a knight with black armor to whom are promised all the fame and all the glory that deeds of arms can achieve. Moreover, because we know that the most famous knight, Amadís de Gaula, lord of Firm Island, has made his will a vassal to honor and no less to your father's service, and in recognition of the great benefit and favor you received from his battles, we, his knights and loyal friends, therefore decided to serve you, milady, by giving you this knight Frandalo. Just as others have gained great fame by doing amazing things on land, it seems that he—so we have discovered—was authorized by fortune to subjugate a vast part of the seas. This was done so that everything of his except his very life, which was preserved by and promised to the knight who defeated him, would be placed entirely at your pleasure and for you to command as may be best for your service."

Leonorina was very pleased by the things the knight said, and especially by his reference to Firm Island. She thanked the knight for the present he had given her, saying that she appreciated it all the more because they had come from such a distant land and therefore could not have been farther from being in her service. Then she ordered one of her stewards, called Almeno,

---

[7] For an extended explanation of the Spanish concept of fortune, see chap. 2, n. 1; and for an apostrophe to the goddess Fortune, see chap. 135, n. 2.

prince of Brandalia,[8] to put Frandalo in safekeeping until he could be turned over to her father, the emperor. The king of Dacia, turning to Damsel Carmela, said:

"Friend, you know very well what you promised to tell us. Please do so now, because you can help us obtain what would otherwise be very difficult for us to find."

"Knight," the damsel said, "return to the ship while I speak with the infanta, for there I will reveal to you everything I know."

After taking leave of the infanta, the king returned to the ship and told his companion Maneli everything he had seen including Leonorina's very great beauty and surpassing majesty. He also said that the damsel had promised she would soon join them there.

37

About how Damsel Carmela spoke very wisely, giving her message and a ring to Princess Leonorina, who ordered Esplandián's exalted and great deeds told to the emperor; and how he, being supremely impressed, happy and amazed, ordered that the promise made by the father Amadís not be dissolved until he, the emperor, beheld the son in his very presence.

Remaining with Leonorina, as you have heard, the damsel said:

"If you please, princess, let me tell you the message I bring you, but let it be over there by that window."

The infanta moved away from the women she had been with, took the damsel by the hand, went over to the window, and said:

"Now, say what you wish, for I will listen to you most willingly."

Then the damsel, who was most awed by her great beauty, said:

"Infanta Leonorina, you are more beautiful than any other maiden in the whole world today; like the sun that is brighter than all other luminaries, you are much more radiant than all other beauties. I bring you a message from the knight, my lord, before whom all elegant, all valiant, and all zealous knights ought to appear as before the chief caudillo of the entire order of chivalry, and they ought to place the imperial crown of seigniory on his head, he is so grand. Given his lofty beginning in armed battles, he promises to achieve every knightly perfection possible. And take note, infanta. Your excellence is so lofty and abundant that he from whom all flee—the evil out of fear, and the good to keep their fame from being overshadowed by his—fears appearing in your presence because he thinks he is unworthy and he thinks that each of his great deeds in their own particular way is insufficient to be placed in your service; nor does he think they are sufficient to satisfy his

---

[8] Almeno, prince of Brandalia, a minor character in *Esplandián*, does not appear in bks. I to IV.

desire. For these reasons, he thought it right and fit for me to tell you that he has come to this land in order to fulfill the promise his very famous father made to you in recompense for the great favors he received from you. Furthermore, he wants you to know for certain that he is your knight; that everything fortune will allow him to achieve at great cost to him will redound to your sweet memory; that without knowledge of your blessing, there is no bravery, there is no strength, however great they may be, that could inspire any zeal in him. Oh exalted princess, so that you may be more certain of all this, take this jewel that you gave so willingly to him who cannot serve you in person, but who has had it sent to you to fulfill his word."

Then she gave her the ring about which you have heard,[1] saying:

"This ring was taken from my lord's hand, from the finger that connects to the heart.[2] In the ring, both lovers' rays meet, and, because they seek each other's flames of passion, they experience some peace; but my master's flames, having no peace, remain inflamed, and his tribulation is therefore much greater."

The infanta took the ring, looked at it and said:

"Damsel, my friend, I gave this ring to the best knight in the world."

"Just so," she responded. "He who is sent to you now is much greater than either the one you mention or any other knight who was ever born."

Hearing this, Leonorina bowed her head a little, and for a while she looked at the floor thinking and seeing nothing else. When she ceased meditating, she looked up and, seeing the damsel still there, said to her:

"Good damsel, by chance is it possible this knight you refer to is the one Master Helisabad told me is called Esplandián, son of the Knight of the Green Sword, who came to this land? Is he the one who was mysteriously dubbed a knight with black armor in the port of Firm Island by Urganda's shrewd advice? And from there, without anyone's knowledge, he went out onto the high seas in a frightening, serpent-shaped caravel?"

"I don't know who the Knight of the Green Sword was," said the damsel. "But the name and the arms you mention, milady, certainly do belong to the great knight on whose behalf I've come to you. And if you want to know what he did with those arms in only one day, and what caused him to undertake such deeds, and how I met him, I will tell you, and you will marvel greatly over such deeds of arms."

"Good friend," Leonorina then said, "such a speech is more proper for strong knights than weak maidens. I beg you fervently to keep secret from my father the emperor what would upset and worry him. But I beg you to repeat all the rest to him so that this knight's high valor be judged and appreciated by those who spend their days vigorously trying to find similarly dangerous pursuits."

---

[1] The earlier reference is now internal to this volume (chap. 22). The promises Amadís made to Leonorina were first narrated in bk. III, chap. 74.

[2] See chap. 22, n. 2, for a discussion of the ring finger/heart finger.

"Because you order it," said she, "it shall be done with the secrecy necessary for the good reputation of two noble people who are respected by all."

Knowing the emperor had returned from hunting, Leonorina then took her to the palace where he was. When they were before him, the emperor noticed that the damsel was well dressed, and he greeted her, but the only obeisance she made was to bow, and she said to him:

"Great and very powerful emperor, don't be surprised that I didn't make the reverence your royal status demands. Since, after God, I have only one lord to whom my heart is tied like a servant's by big, strong knots, therefore, he could not be placed in obedience to any other seigniory by word or deed. Moreover, I don't ask your pardon, although some may think me at fault for not showing Your Highness the kind of obedience I ought to.[3] This is because, even though your estate is the greatest in the world, surely no one equals the one I'm devoted to and whom I serve by virtue of his personal fortitude alone. Now, if it pleases you, I will tell you why I've come."

The emperor, who was delighted to observe her, was watching her vivacious countenance and was quite puzzled by what caused her to talk thus. Desiring to know this and where she was from, he was moved to ask:

"Fair damsel, I certainly believe that, just like your arrival, so are your affairs extraordinary. Equally extraordinary, or perhaps even more so, must be the cause of your coming. Therefore, say what you like, for willingly and happily you will be heard out by me."

The damsel began her speech in the following manner:

"I believe, oh emperor, that you are not unaware of the great fortress on Forbidden Mountain, which was ruled first by the strong, brave, and no less cruel giant Cartadaque and later by his sons. You have received much bothersome aggravation from that mountain, and despite your great state, and even though many of your men have tried, you have never until today been able to overthrow its lords. That grand stronghold was guarded and defended by such valiant giants as Matroco and his brother Furion, but they were killed by the hand of one single knight, who also killed their uncle, Arcaláus the Enchanter, and Argante, who guarded the mountain by forbidding all entrance into it. Well, in only one day, the fortress was conquered by this one knight I've mentioned. If any other deed as great as this one is alive in people's memories, I defer to you to say so, for very few things have happened without Your Highness having them presented before you. After that seigniory was won, King Lisuarte, who had been locked up there in utmost secrecy, was brought by the knight's hand out of the cruel confinement of a very dark and gloomy prison. What neither you nor all of the princes and great lords every-

where were able to do—to take this great mountain—he did in a short time, without having a host of people killed, and before you could seize it."

The emperor heard this speech and said:

"Damsel, if you are telling me the truth about this, it is the greatest wonder and highest quality message any ambassador ever brought to one of the world's princes."

"I tell you," said the damsel, "it is as I have said, for one would deserve a terrible punishment if one did not tell the truth to such a mighty lord as you."

"Could you tell me who the knight is and how he ended such an extraordinary adventure?" the emperor asked.

"Yes, certainly," she answered. "I can tell you more completely than anyone else."

"So, please tell me," commanded the emperor. "I should be most happy to be fully informed."

Then the damsel told him how King Lisuarte had been imprisoned; how the Knight of the Black Arms went on a quest to find him; how he won the enchanted sword on the Enchantress Damsel's crag; how he arrived in the port where he found her father's hermitage; how he went from there to Forbidden Mountain where he battled Argante, Arcaláus, and the other giants, all of whom he killed; how, without revealing his identity, he rescued King Lisuarte from the dark prison in which he was locked; how he returned to the hermitage from which he had departed; and, likewise, how Duenna Arcabona would have killed the king with a sword if he had not jumped aside. Finally, she told him everything that had occurred, just as the story has related: how, after she had remained in the alcázar with King Lisuarte, she then went to see her father in the hermitage, but, not finding him there, she discovered the Knight of the Black Arms stretched out on her bed; how she grabbed his sword and, holding it naked in her hand, raised it over his head to kill him, but, seeing his great handsomeness, suddenly she fell so desperately in love with him that she felt she could not live one hour longer; how she took the knight's sword without waking him and returned to the mountain; how she guided King Lisuarte, who longed to meet him, to the hermitage; how the king was exceedingly happy upon recognizing his grandson Esplandián; how the knight was carried to the alcázar, and, within a very short time, they departed in the Great Serpent Caravel for Great Britain, while she was ordered by Esplandián, whom she served as her lord, to come and inform Infanta Leonorina on his behalf that his father, Amadís de Gaula, desiring to be freed from a promise he had made when he departed from her presence, said that either he would return, or he would send a knight of his lineage who could perform the great favors he had done for her in his place and that Esplandián was therefore sent to free him from that promise; and, finally, how he thought that he, in his unworthiness, did not dare present himself to serve a princess such as she, with her majesty, supreme virtue, high estate, and beauty unmatched by any other woman, but that he could be her knight wherever else he might be.

The emperor and all the grandees who were there heard this speech and were so stunned that they did not speak for a long while. Calling to mind the amazing things that had happened to Amadís, it occurred to them that his son's superior beginning might soon consign his father's deeds to oblivion and sweep aside his glory and that of all those who professed chivalry. Gastiles, the emperor's nephew, who was there, said:

"Sire, according to Esplandián's bearing and what Urganda the Unknown said about him while I was present, this one may be the least of the many things that are expected to happen to him: in the eyes of the living, it seems a most extraordinary case to pass judgment on."

"It certainly is, nephew, just as you say," said the emperor. "He alone will suffice to subjugate the whole round[4] earth."

Leonorina, who was present for all the preceding, remained as if crippled with joy, but not the joy of those who laugh aloud and make a big show, but rather in a new way for her, for intense anguish and pain were mixed with pleasure.[5] In order for love to subjugate her as it had the knight, who had been as free from love as she, cruel Cupid had already begun to shoot his hidden arrows into her innocent and free heart. When she could speak, she said to her father:

"Sire, here you see the beautiful ring that I gave the Knight of the Green Sword in your presence. Thinking that he would be released from his promise to me, this damsel has brought it on behalf of the knight she has spoken about. It seems to give credence to all she has said."

"My daughter," said the emperor, "since two knights such as these are in your service, I do not agree to release the father from his promise until we discover if the son's presence is a sufficient substitute; and so I order this damsel to report the same on your behalf to the knight on whose mission she has come."

38

About how the emperor, being assured by Leonorina of Frandalo's imprisonment, desired by any means to meet those novice knights who had been of such supreme service to him; and how he ordered her to retire and that Carmela be treated with high honors in his palace.

Sire," said Leonorina, "it is very important for you to know about a service two novice knights from Firm Island have rendered me now. While their lives were placed in terrible straits by the recent sea storm, fortune, which never leaves things tranquil, made them meet Frandalo the Valiant, whose big fleet has done much damage in this region. After they suffered a cruel and bloody battle with him and his men, from which they emerged victorious, they took from him a ship he personally used and imprisoned him on board. One of those knights, who came here armed with very magnificent armor, gave Frandalo to me as a present and informed me that I was to do with him whatever I wished, with the exception that I was to order that his life be safeguarded because they had so promised him."

"Are you certain, my beloved daughter," asked the emperor, "that Frandalo is under your power?"

"Yes, sire, I am certain," she replied. "Brandalia, my steward, has him."

"By the faith I profess," he said, "except when the Knight of the Green Sword killed the Endriago,[1] thereby recovering the island for me, never until today has my spirit received more pleasure than it has upon hearing about

the imprisonment of this evil man, who, I believe, has stolen enough of my realm alone to make and unmake two kings. I would love to hear the knights who captured him describe the battle they fought against him."

"You can find that out from me," said the damsel, "for I was present during the whole time. I saw what happened."

"Well, tell me," said the emperor, "for I very much would like to know about it."

She told him in detail that, while travelling by sea from Forbidden Mountain with the message for his daughter, she was seized by Frandalo and imprisoned on his xebec. Strong winds came up scattering his huge fleet, and they were forced to land Frandalo's lone ship on an uninhabited island where they found two knights from Firm Island who had no way to leave there, nor did they have anything to eat. Also, she related the exchange of words between them and Frandalo, the result of which was to settle on a battle, and she told everything else that happened just as you have heard. Then Gastiles said:

"Damsel, did you meet those novice knights, or do you know their names?"

"No," she said, "but I can tell you they are very young and powerful, and, from what I saw, they have great zeal and daring. However, I do know two other knights who use the same devices, and these two are not worse than the other two."

"Well then," said Gastiles, "do you know their names?"

"Of course I do," she said. "One's Talanque and the other's Ambor."

"Now I tell you," he said, "the two you found here are the king of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent. They were designated by Urganda to be knighted at the same time as Esplandián. This is what Helisabad told us: that they received the order of knight errantry the same day Esplandián did."

"Do you know them?" asked the damsel.

"Yes, I certainly do," he said, "because I saw them often on Firm Island when they were pages and when I accompanied Amadís in the big battles we fought against the emperor of Rome and King Lisuarte."[2]

"Then, show them great honor," she said, "and earn the glory natives earn by honoring and welcoming foreigners."

"I would do that happily," he said, "if I knew where they were."

"You'll find them," she replied, "on a ship that landed in port today."

Hearing this, the emperor said:

"Nephew, go there immediately, and do what needs to be done to bring them to me."

Gastiles was very pleased to go find the knights from Firm Island of whom

---

[2] In bk. II, Amadís is exiled from King Lisuarte's court. In bk. III, he travels throughout Europe under various names gathering allies for the big battle that is fought in bk. IV. Among Amadís's major allies are the king of Bohemia and the emperor of Constantinople, and his major reason for fighting are Lisuarte's dislike for him and the fact that the king has arranged a marriage between Oriana and Patín, the emperor of Rome.

he was so fond, so he left right away to carry out his uncle's order. Then the emperor bade his daughter to retire, taking Damsel Carmela with her and showing her the honor she merited.

39

About how beautiful Leonorina, upon hearing Esplandián's exceedingly excellent qualities, was so wounded by Cupid's arrows that she retired secretly, spilling sweet tears; how she pacified Carmela by giving her a rich empress[1] *from her own head in the name of their knight; and how the damsel was dressed in fine clothes decorated with crown devices.*

Well, the story now tells us that the princess went to her room speaking with Damsel Carmela, whom she loved more than before and wanted to have at her side. As they walked together she laughingly asked Carmela if she was in love with the Knight of the Black Arms although she had seen him for only such a short time. The damsel answered:

"It was long enough to discover that he is in love with another, for which I feel much consoled because then I can judge her heart by mine and I can feel the painfully sweet fury that he also makes me feel."

"Then, what hope can you have from her?" Leonorina asked.

"Just the hope," answered the damsel, "—which I know places an obstacle between him and me—that, when I am in his presence and see his great handsomeness, my soul may receive some peace. But, given what he is suffering while absent from her, and given his fear of being present before his lady, he supposes that the mere sight of her would be powerful enough to take his life from him. He is now surely wandering in tribulation, lost, disconsolate, unable to find relief or rest of any sort."

That most beautiful of princesses continued conversing with Esplandián's damsel in the way you have just heard, all the while feeling in her heart what those who are prisoners feel—as she already felt—namely, the sting of the dangerous amorous herb.[2] Appreciating so much what she had heard about the knight's handsomeness and great bravery, she felt that even if she were the

---

[1] The Spanish term *empresa* does not appear in Cov. However, it does appear in DA and contemporary dictionaries meaning "a symbol or enigmatic figure." OED dates the term "empress" to 1593, meaning "a motto or significant device." OED also states that it is a variant of "imprese," which dates to 1588 and means "emblazoned shields." Clearly, this "empress" refers to a headpiece that has printed on it some royal device.

[2] The trope is synechdoche for "archer's herb" [*yerba de ballestero*] (Cov.) or "St. John's herb" [*hierba del Señor San Juan*] (DA). In either case, the reference is to the aphrodisiac Cupid uses to poison his darts. The second reference is to herbs traditionally sold in Spain on St. John the Baptist's Day (June 24). Traditionally, June 24 is Spain's longest day of the year, and it is known universally as lover's day.

mistress of the whole world, she would consider herself fortunate to be his subject. When she got to her chamber she sat down to eat, for it was time for the midday meal. At her table were her governess and guardian, Queen Menoresa, and other damsels, who were all daughters of kings and princes; at the other table were others of high status and Damsel Carmela. They were served many different kinds of dishes, but the one thing that gave the most delicious savor to her meal was asking Damsel Carmela to tell again in more detail everything that happened to the Knight of the Black Arms, including how she fell in love with him and how, desiring to be his courtly lady or wife, she became his servant. The damsel told them the shape and manner of his adventures from beginning to end without leaving out anything. She said that the favor King Lisuarte promised her had given her the great hope of marrying the Black Knight, but that, after coming to know him and knowing about his high status and lineage, she realized her plan went against all reason. She said that she was content for him to take her as his own damsel on the condition that she would never have to leave his presence against her will; and, she said, she valued this favor more than if she were the wife or lover of any king.

The meal was spent talking about this matter, which you have just heard about, and other pleasant topics. When the meal was ended and the table cleared, Leonorina remained alone with the damsel while all of the others retired to their rooms. Then the infanta said to the damsel:

"Friend, it seems very strange to me that your sire should be called the Black Knight even though he is so handsome."

"Oh, infanta!" she exclaimed. "Listen to me and you'll hear what I can tell you about this. You should know that, after Esplandián was recognized by his grandfather, King Lisuarte, and while he and the two novice knights were in the king's chamber, before dawn one night, they heard coming through the windows from the sea below such a sweet sound that all of them got up from their beds, and they were unable to get back to sleep because the sound was so gentle in their ears. At daybreak, they saw at the foot of the great tower which rises from the sea below, the big Serpent Caravel, the sight of which made them very happy. After they dressed and went down the stairway to a wide road which is nearly surrounded by water, it was not long before a damsel left the caravel and came over to them in a skiff. She was carrying a bundle covered in silk, from which she took out armor as white as snow and on which were spread the most beautiful and magnificent golden crowns[3]

ever seen on any king or emperor's head; then she spoke these words to my sire, Esplandián:

" 'Handsome knight, my mistress Urganda sends you these arms wherefore you are to dispose of the others, which she gave you during the time of your sadness. These new arms have the device of her on whose head your father placed it in order to honor and glorify her great beauty.[4] And thus, as the sad remembrance of the reason why you were given the first arms, which was to increase your courage and daring for your first adventure, so the sweet memory of these arms will increase the praise of your next adventures and your ultimate goals.'[5]

"Esplandián took them and disposed of the black arms along with that black name and the great sadness which had caused him to take them up in the beginning."

Hearing this, Leonorina clearly remembered having asked a boon of the Knight of the Green Sword by which he had placed the golden crown on her head as a sign that she was the most beautiful damsel of all. Although she tried hard to conceal it, her spirit was very agitated because she already knew that everything Urganda said was true, and that it was already true for her, feeling as captive to that new passion as she did, and feeling her former innocence and freedom as besieged as they were. The damsel, who had not taken her eyes off the infanta, recognized clearly she was suffering from the same wound from which she herself never expected to recover; so she said to her:

"Most beautiful princess, what you are feeling now I give you as an answer for what you asked me before, regarding what it felt like to fall in love with my Lord Esplandián: as I couldn't put it into words, neither can you."

Her cheeks flushed with very vivid and shining hue, Leonorina blushed and said to the damsel:

"Friend, now that you have carried out your order, what do you wish to do?"

"If you so order me," she answered, "I would like to go console and restore to life him to whom I can take medicine from here, or to whom I can give certain death if I do not take it to him as he hopes."

"So be it. Go now," said Leonorina, "and greet your sire for me, and give him the answer my father told you to give him when he arrived, and give him this barrette I have here on my head, which was the first jewel my grandmother, Grimanesa,[6] gave her beloved courtly friend Apolidón.[7] Take it to him more for its name than its value—and for love of me."

Then, taking from her beautiful hair the barrette, which was adorned with the most precious stones ever seen, she put it in the damsel's hand. Seeing this and realizing what a great service she was doing for Esplandián by taking the princess's favor to him, the damsel kneeled before Leonorina and said:

"Not for me, for I can't be subject to anyone, but for him who is your subject, I wish to kiss your hands."

"For that reason I agree to let you do so," said the infanta. "But I will do with you what he merits."

With that, she bent down and, taking the damsel's head in her beautiful hands, she kissed her on the face. But she could resist no longer, and tears began streaming down her beautiful cheeks. Taking the damsel with her to another chamber, she had her dress in very precious clothes decorated all over with the crown devices, which she always wore for grand festivities.

40

How the emperor refused to allow all the novice knights and Carmela to depart before they had spent a few days in his company.

When Leonorina finished saying good-bye to the damsel, the story says that she went to see her father and that he was very happy to have met the king of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent, who were in his presence. Seeing her enter the palace accompanied by such grand ladies, they were most amazed; but what amazed them most was her great beauty. Maneli, who had not seen her before, went to kneel before her and to kiss her hands, but she drew him toward her, refusing to proffer her hands. Maneli still insisted on kissing them, but the emperor said to her:

"My daughter, do not present them to him; for that knight who is before you is the son of one of the most prized kings in the world."

The infanta took him by her hands and made him rise. Then she went to sit next to her mother and the emperor. Well, it was there in that company that the two novice knights found out from Damsel Carmela everything that had happened to Esplandián on Forbidden Mountain just as she had told it to the emperor. This news about King Lisuarte's deliverance and the good fortune of Esplandián, whom they loved very much, made them exceedingly happy. So they asked the emperor's permission to go immediately to the mountain where, according to the damsel's information, they expected to find Esplandián, or where he would be soon. However, he refused to grant their request until after they had enjoyed his hospitality for several days. They agreed to this more to serve him than to please themselves. The knights were accommodated in the room where the Knight of the Green Sword was accustomed to staying when he was there, and the damsel stayed in Infanta Leonorina's luxurious room along with her attendant damsels.

41

How the emperor, being informed that Armato, king of Persia,[1] *had laid siege to Forbidden Mountain, sent Frandalo, who had reneged his evil sect, and the novice knights to aid those on the mountain; and how Damsel Carmela joined them.*

While the king of Dacia, Maneli the Prudent, and Damsel Carmela were with the emperor in Constantinople, as the story has told you, they revelled

---

[1] King Armato is not mentioned in bks. I to IV. That new characters in bk. V tend to be pagans is a further sign that, whereas the books centered on Amadís are oriented more toward Arthurian and Celtic themes, *Esplandián* is dedicated to refighting the Christian vs. Pagan/Moslem battle that centered on Constantinople for more than a millennium. It is also indicative of the fact that Spain's Reconquest of the Moslem kingdom of Granada was imminent at the time GRM was writing the first half of bk. V.

in the services provided by the household of this great man, and they enjoyed everything they could possibly need. The emperor inquired of the novice knights about what had happened in Great Britain after his nephew Gastiles had returned from there; and Infanta Leonorina, who already anticipated the loneliness she would feel when the damsel left, spoke with her often. After a few days during which time the knights thought they had satisfied the emperor's desire, they took their leave of him. As they were preparing to take to the sea in order to return to Forbidden Mountain, a boat arrived in the port with four of the men whom Master Helisabad and his nephew Libeo had left on the mountain. After disembarking, they sought an audience with the emperor in order to inform him that Armato, king of Persia, had found out that the giants, who had proved to be weaker defenders than earlier ones, were dead, and that the knight who had killed them and captured the fortress had left the place. Therefore, he, with a great land force, and other captains of his, with a fleet by sea, had come to lay siege to the mountain. These messengers said that they, ordered by Talanque, Ambor, and Libeo, had embarked at great risk and had passed through the enemy's xebecs in order to bring this news; and that, since the mountain was under his suzerainty, which is what Esplandián had ordered when he had left with King Lisuarte, they had come so that he could order the proper relief for this property of his.

Hearing this, the emperor said nothing for a while, for he was thinking, on the one hand, that remedying such an affront would be a major undertaking and would cost him a lot of trouble, and, on the other hand, that if the mountain were lost, he would lose part of his suzerainty. Hence, realizing it was best to choose travail over the inaction of leaving his enemy an easy path to capture such a notable place as that mountain, he said to the novice knights:

"Friends, forget your departure; for it is necessary to assemble more equipment and provisions than you alone have."

Then he ordered Frandalo brought before him, the very man his daughter had placed under guard. When he appeared before the emperor, he dropped to the ground on his knees, and, anticipating that his request would not be granted, he asked for pity and mercy. Allowing Frandalo to remain on his knees, the emperor said to him:

"If I believed that all those whom you have harmed so grievously could be remedied by ordering you into the harsh and cruel imprisonment you gave them, and even more, if your long and hard imprisonment could recompense me for all the vexations I have so often received at your hands, then I would order you imprisoned more cruelly than any man ever suffered before. But, since any troubles or anguish you might suffer would not be adequate compensation for their suffering, I have decided, if you agree, to do what our almighty and merciful Lord is used to doing with wicked sinners, which is to turn their bad works into good ones, and, when they continue doing good, He promises mercifully to give them salvation in the world to come. But I, His minister, will give it to you in this world if you choose to abandon the evil and perverse sect you have followed until now, and if you stop the evil works which you have done to so many innocent people, and instead you serve me

in such a way that you not only give me reason to forget the great vexation you have caused me, but also act so well that I rightfully ought to, and will, reward you. Now, tell me what you choose to do. Tell me not with the kind of truth customary in those who are mired in evil, but with the truth of the noble order of chivalry you once professed."

Frandalo, who was still on his knees, had expected that his many evil deeds would prove insufficient to uphold the promise he had been given to protect his life, but he now saw that it was the emperor's desire and will to allow him to choose either freedom or prison. Therefore, he became cheerful and said:

"Sire, the great good turns fortune has until now shown both me alone and in concert with those who helped and served me did not permit me to adopt any other life style than the one I used to satisfy my pride and greed. Furthermore, I thought that I could always count on fortune[2] as a contented friend; but now, I see that fortune, in a short space of time and by the hand of a lone and very young knight, chose to cast me down from the great height to which it had raised me. Just as fortune has made such a sudden change, so, too, have I changed my resolve, and I will surrender myself to reason rather than to willfulness.[3] And if your Highness, having pity on me, were to trust my word, everything you order me to do will be carried out by me including changing to your law as well as reversing the works I have spent my life doing. I will work so hard as your good and loyal servant that I may be able to achieve more glory and to rise to a much higher status than I received in the past when I was attracted to malice and disloyalty."

"Now, rise," said the emperor. "Since I accept what you say as true, I order you to join the novice knights, who have treated you so virtuously; to return to the ship you came in; to gather together your fleet, which you shall search for throughout the sea; and to report to me concerning the disposition of Forbidden Mountain. Tell me if your forces are sufficient for rescue by water, and if not, inform me to that effect so that you can be provided with what is necessary."

Frandalo, approaching the emperor on his knees, kissed his foot and said:

---

[2] Otis H. Green calls the kind of fortune Frandalo is referring to *fortuna de tejas abajo* [without help from above; worldly fortune; pagan fortune]. In fifteenth-century Spain, this kind of fortune contrasted with *fortuna de tejas arriba* [divine providence or fortune]. The conflict between both fortunes is a major characteristic of Spanish literature of the period. See Otis H. Green, "Sobre las dos fortunas de tejas arriba y de tejas abajo," *Homenaje a Dámaso Alonso* (Madrid: Gredos, 1961), 143–54. Howard Rollin Patch makes this comment about fortune's wheel: "But the wheel is a symbol with an almost limitless significance. At one time or another the circular form has been used to typify speed, travel, guidance, the endless round of monotonous existence, changeableness, the sun, the earth, God, and eternity." See Patch, *The Goddess Fortuna in Medieval Literature* (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard Univ. Press, 1927), 147.

[3] In his article on the Spanish word *voluntad*, translated here as "willfulness," Cov. says the following: "What can one expect from a man who has more respect for what his will is inclined toward than to what God's law obliges him to do? The will is perverse, says St. Gregory, lib. I *Dialogorum* ... Said St. Jerome: I always refused to follow my own desire and will because it is usually a very bad counsellor."

"My works will bear witness to the truth of my words."

Then, rising, he took with him the two knights and Damsel Carmela, who refused to remain there. After saying farewell to the emperor, they went down to the ship and entered it joyful for the opportunity to go where they could demonstrate their zealous desire to display their talents in something so important to Esplandián. Once on the ship, the three knights put on their armor, and Frandalo ordered his colors, which were very well known by his men, to be raised, and they left the port of Constantinople resolved to search everywhere for his fleet, and with it to try their luck and to test the limits of their strength. However, the story now will leave them until the proper time and instead will tell how Esplandián, after recovering from his wounds, departed from the Miraflores Castle in order to go to Firm Island, in whose port he had left the Great Serpent Caravel.

42

How Esplandián, having recovered from his wounds, received permission from King Lisuarte and Amadís to leave Miraflores Castle and to go to Firm Island from whence he departed on his caravel, which he had left there; and about the discussion he had with Master Helisabad.

As we have told you, Esplandián was in Miraflores Castle lying wounded from the very cruel and dangerous battle he had had with his father Amadís. While his indisposition still did not allow him to get out of bed and take up arms again, his grandfather, King Lisuarte, ordered new arms for him like the ones he had before they were completely broken and cut to pieces. Also, he ordered the new ones decorated with similar-looking crowns. However, even though they were magnificently made, they could not equal the original ones, which were beyond the best work even the master armorers could achieve, for they were beautifully wrought by order of that great wise woman Urganda, who gave them to him. By the time this work was finished, his health had improved enough so that there was no danger in his getting up, doing work, and bearing arms. By leave of his father the king, who remained weak in bed, his grandmother, the queen, and his mother Oriana, he said good-bye to all of them and to all the grand ladies who were there. Then he mounted his very handsome white horse, and, accompanied by Master Helisabad and his squire Sargil, he returned to the road by which he had come, and he headed toward Firm Island, where he expected to find his Great Serpent ship. He had a very strong desire to return to Forbidden Mountain in the caravel—if Urganda so permitted—because he wanted to find out from Damsel Carmela whether she brought news of death or life. Already by this time his spirit was placed in such straits that many times he found himself on the edge of death, for his amorous passion never ceased growing: the more he thought and worried about his amie, the more his memory tormented him; and the more he felt

it, the more he was subjugated and oppressed by this kind of challenge and innocent battle, the likes of which he had never felt before and from which he had lived far removed until then.

In this condition he went on his way without anything worth telling happening to him. This is because the knights he encountered knew him by the devices on his armor; therefore, mortally afraid of him, they let him pass by without daring to attack him. And he dissuaded others who did not know him with reasonable arguments, thereby saving his strength for action in service of the Lord who gave it to him.

By travelling hard he arrived at Firm Island in twelve days. As the sun was about to set, he caught sight of the caravel waiting for him on the sea; so, filled with happiness and without pausing to rest, he and his retinue boarded a boat provided by Isanjo, the island's governor,[1] and got set for a short ride to the caravel. Once he arrived, Esplandián took off his armor, and, while dining in the highest part of the ship, he looked across the calm sea and saw the imposing alcázar that Amadís had won by means of his supreme prowess, thereby surpassing Apolidón in strength and valor. Speaking with Master Helisabad about this feat, Esplandián said he had deep doubts that his bravery exceeded his father's, given the amazing things Amadís did that redounded to his honor. The master answered that the young knight had been made so strong by the almighty Lord's great power that it was not too much to think that he was good enough to surpass in glory and fame not only Amadís, who likewise had made a fine showing at the beginning of his career in chivalry, but also any other knight. The master added that he should always retain a memory of his father in order to follow his example, and that he should not allow his will to put him in the path of comfort or laziness, because an active and greedy will usually dragged things to the end it desired most.

43

How Esplandián and Master Helisabad left the port on Firm Island and went where fortune guided them; how they arrived at a very deserted land[1] where Esplandián unmercifully went out to meet two frightening and savage giants; how Esplandián defeated them by force of arms; and how he freed from irons Gandalín,[2] Lasindo,[3] and many other Christians whom those two giants had held captive for a long time in a fearful cave.

After speaking about these and many other very pleasant things, as you have heard, it came time to go to sleep. Thus, lying in their very comfortable beds with no concern for who was steering the caravel other than the One of whom they already knew, they commended themselves both to God and to the good fortunes that were promised them, and they slept until the new dawn's light awoke them. When they rose, not knowing where the caravel was or where it was heading, they could see nothing other than a great expanse of water on all sides. This pleased Esplandián greatly because he believed that, since the caravel was being moved in harmony with his will, it would therefore land where his desire could be satisfied. So, having neither worry nor thought about anything other than commending himself to Almighty God and to his ship's destined course, he spent his time talking to Master Helisabad, who was a wise and cultured man, especially in the area of all the languages he knew: Greek, German, and Persian.[4] The knight, who had learned a lot about these languages, thought he had the greatest need for these because he had a strong desire to travel throughout those lands. This came about after King Lisuarte left Forbidden Mountain in order to return to his king-

dom, as you have already been told; for during all the time from then until now, the Master taught Esplandián those languages and many others, and he used this learning to great advantage in some places where fortune guided him, as you will be told below.

After navigating for seven days in the Great Caravel in that fashion, as you have heard, it arrived at land, where it stopped. Esplandián realized that it was intended for him to debark there, so he said to the master:

"Father (after the battle with Amadís he always called him this to honor him for having cured him of those terrible wounds), seeing that the ship is stopping here, I must take to the land and find out where we have arrived. Since this would be difficult for you, I entreat you to wait for me here."

Accepting that that was his will, the master agreed.

Then Esplandián, who was carrying his armor and leading a white horse, arrived on shore in a boat, and his squire Sargil came in his own boat. Leaving the boats tied down on the shore, he jumped onto the sand, and with his horse he entered a road, not knowing or caring whether he was going one way or another. After crossing level ground, he saw a very beautiful countryside in a valley below with great stands of trees; nearer him there were some houses, so he went toward them thinking he might find someone to tell him what land he was in. Coming closer, he looked into the gateway of one house and saw a very handsome and exceedingly large bay horse and some other smaller horses being tended by a man. Approaching him, Esplandián said:

"Friend, whose horses are those?"

The man answered in German that he did not understand.

Esplandián asked him again in German what he asked before, and the man, understanding this time, said:

"They belong to a giant and his squires."

"Where is he?" asked Esplandián.

"He's in there eating," said the man.

Stepping forward, Esplandián saw the giant, fully armed with very strong and clean armor, sitting at a table with men around serving him. When the giant saw him, he looked at the knight with a strong, mean-looking face and said:

"What devil brought you to land here? Because I'm going to put you where I've put many others, and your great good looks won't like it."

Seeing the giant's evil mien and excessive arrogance, Esplandián quickly realized that he was not the type he was trying to avoid fighting, but rather he was one of those who had to be sought everywhere in order for him to remove them from the world, if he could, because they did nothing in the world but harm God's servants. So he said to the giant:

"He who brought me here is not the devil, as you say, but He who has me subjugated in His chains just as He has you. If I can, it will not be long before you receive the punishment you deserve, and the captives you mention will have the freedom they ought to have."

Once the giant heard this, he stopped eating, got up stoutly, and said to his men in a wild rage:

"Seize the horse by the bit before he flees."

The men started toward him, but the knight kicked the first one in the face so hard that he knocked him dazed to the ground, whereat the others kept away from him. Esplandián said:

"Giant, mount your horse, for you will find me in the field there; then we will see who wishes to flee."

Thereupon Esplandián withdrew from the door, took up his arms, and rode to a nearby plain where he stopped. The giant rode while putting a helmet as clean as a mirror on his head, positioning on his neck a shield made out of very strong leather and grabbing a lance of thick, heavy iron. Approaching the knight, he said:

"Never until today and never since I learned how to use these arms has fortune shamed and dishonored me so much. For never before did a callow youth like you dare wait for me in a field. To defeat you adds nothing to my glory. Rather, it is yours for only hoping that my eyes will chance to glance at you."

"As you are a creature of the devil," said Esplandián, "you value zeal and physical strength highly because you think they cannot be ruled and guided by the higher power who gives strength and takes it away. It seems clear that you have not heard about that slim, young shepherd who killed the brave Philistine one-on-one in a field with a slingshot and stones; nor have your heard about the other one who killed six hundred men with the naked jawbone of an ass. If you had these examples in your memory, you would live subjugated by reason and fear. But he whom you serve does not let you know these things. Instead, he lets your will drag you from one thing to another, because, in the end, he never loses the sweet hope that he will be able to enjoy the fruit of his labor, which will be to take your soul to hell after you have lost your body."

"Damn the hour I was born," said the giant. "Although I have done so many things, and I have won such a grand seigniory by my armed prowess in arms, I am affronted by a youngster on whom I can take no revenge."

Lowering his lance, he spurred his horse, which was very fleet. However, Esplandián saw him coming and, fearing nothing, charged him. When they both met, the giant, whose horse was racing forward fast and furiously, missed his blow, but Esplandián hit him so fiercely in the middle of his shield that he doubled backwards, his head fell on the horse's hindquarters, and he broke his back on the saddle's backside. Gall oozed from his mouth, and in a short time he was dead. The force of the blow made Esplandián's horse reel back enough to make it almost fall, but he kicked it with his spurs and made it continue forward. When he saw the giant hanging dead from the saddle, he gave many silent thanks to God, who made him defeat someone so strong and oversized. Calling to the men who were watching him, he said:

"Show me where this giant kept his prisoners, and do not lie to me, or you shall die."

"Sire," they said, "we will. Follow us."

"Then, lead on," he said.

He put them ahead of him, and they guided him along a path which went through the plain and into some very rough cliffs through which his horse could barely pass. At the end of a long trek they found about twenty men in the mouth of a cave hidden among some very thick trees. When the men in the cave saw the knight, they asked the prisoners:

"Who is that knight? Is our lord sending him to prison?"

"My God!" the prisoners exclaimed. "On the contrary: it turned out the opposite for him. This knight fought with him and killed him in the first charge."

Hearing this, they cried loudly and said:

"Then, since he's done us so much harm, let him die like a traitor."

As fast as they could they all entered the cave, came out again with lances, axes[5] and capelines,[6] and moved to attack him. Seeing this, Esplandián spurred his horse and charged into the middle of them, wounding them so fiercely with his sword that the ones he hit never again got up from the ground. But there were many of them, and they attacked him from so many angles that they killed his beautiful horse. Realizing the danger he was in, and with his horse dead, Esplandián extricated himself very rapidly from the horse and got away from them a pace, suffering in the process great blows on his helmet and shield. Who could describe the immense anger that came over him at that moment? It is not incidental to add that neither the gentle words he was raised with by the saintly hermit[7] nor his own naturally gentle temperament sufficed to restrain him; on the contrary, virtually out of control and with blood dancing in his eyes, he went about wounding them with such severity that, after he had defeated them, he himself was shocked to see what fatal blows he had given: those hit on the head were slit open to the waist and their capelines were split in two; and those he struck on the ribs with the axe had their bodies almost cut in half. The result is that they were all killed or badly wounded except two who yelled at him from the cave, saying:

"Come, sire; your son Bramato[8] and all our men have been killed."

Hearing these shouts, from a chamber in the cliff came forth the fiercest, most disfigured, and unnatural giant ever seen, and his hair and beard were white and very long. As soon as he saw the knight with a blood-covered sword and his men lying around dead or gravely wounded, he said in a frightening voice:

---

[5] Axes [*hachas*] in the Amadís Cycle, according to Riquer, are offensive weapons used almost exclusively by squires, peasants, and giants. Curiously, Riquer documents the appearance of axes only in the first three bks. of *Amadís*, whereas they clearly appear also in bk. V. See Riq., 80–84.

[6] "Capeline" entered English through fourteenth-century French, Portuguese, and perhaps Spanish, and means a skull-cap of iron worn by archers in the Middle Ages. DA says that it is a synonym for helmet, but that it has a connotation of being worn by peasants. According to Riquer, a *capellina* [capeline] is an iron helmet moulded to the shape of the head. In the Amadís Cycle both capelines and axes together are offensive weapons used exclusively by giants.

[7] The reference is to Nasciano, the hermit who raised Esplandián.

[8] Bramato does not appear in bks. I to IV.

"Oh gods in whom I believe! How or why have I angered you so? How can a single knight have defeated and killed my son and all my men? Well, your rage cannot be so overwhelming that I cannot overcome it by avenging myself on this traitor who has caused me so much harm."

Esplandián was quite frightened by the sight of him, for he certainly did not seem humanlike. Rather, he seemed like a ghost come from the darkest depths of hell to destroy the world. Esplandián said to him:

"Misshapen devil, I am certain you were not conceived within nature's laws; rather, I think you have come from the depths of hell where you were born. To judge by your appearance, either evil enemies came from you, or you came from them, because you have their same looks. Arm yourself quickly, and watch out for me. I put my trust in the Lord Jesus Christ, and before nightfall I will send you to the place where your son and your men went."

Hearing how little time the knight was giving him, the giant called his men to help him put his armor on; but they did not dare move from the spot where they were standing unless the knight so ordered it. They insisted they would do only what he ordered. However, they decided to do it in any case. Entering the chamber, they armed the giant as quickly as they could. Then he went out very fast toward Esplandián, who, compared to the giant, did not seem more than a dove facing a golden eagle.[9] The giant took hold of a long knife and charged him very hard. Esplandián waited for him with virile heart, very well covered by his shield and with his sword in his hand. The giant gave Esplandián such a fierce blow on the steel rim at the top of his shield that it was cut into two pieces; but the giant's sword was swung so fast and hard by his strong arm that the sword smashed against the ground, which was hard rock, and the sword broke in half. Being without a shield and without an arm—or so he thought, given how deadened it felt as a result of the giant's blow—Esplandián nevertheless hit the giant on top of his helmet. Although it was strong enough not to be cut, it did not keep the giant from feeling its grave effects in such a way that he was so dazed that flames of fire came out of his eyes, and for a time he was not fully alert. Coming to, he realized the knight was hitting him with many heavy blows, but his thick armor prevented his flesh from suffering. Then he raised his half knife to strike his enemy's head, thinking this would be the last blow he would have to make, and, indeed, it was so, but the result was not what he foresaw. Instead, Esplandián, who did not have a shield, and who saw the very strong blow about to come,

---

[9] DA cites the minor seventeenth-century Spanish poet, Fr. Nicolás Bravo, as a source for this phrase: *caudal águila*. DA says that this eagle has golden feathers similar to the color of a lion. Fr. Bravo alludes to this bird, the Roman Aguila Regia, in these verses from his poem "Benedictina," Canto 9:

Like a royal eagle rising in flight
Where Phoebus shines most radiant.

This image gives the giant in this chap. much more glamor than Esplandián's view of him as ugly as sin would otherwise have the reader believe.

saved himself by slipping his body to one side, thus making the blow miss. Simultaneously, he thrust a counterblow sideways with his right hand, and God, who guided the blow, directed it to the giant's unprotected wrist below the sleeve of the cuirass, and the hand and the knife it held fell to the ground. The giant let out a frighteningly terrible cry which made the whole cave shake, and then, in his powerless state, he tried to pick up the knife with his left hand; but Esplandián struck back by slitting the giant's hand in half up to his arm. When the giant realized he had lost both hands and could no longer defend himself, he bellowed so loudly and so forcefully that it was painful to hear; and he was so distressed that he snorted thick smoke from the visor on his helmet. However, Esplandián, who himself had come very close to being killed, continued attacking him with his sword on top of the giant's helmet, thus making the giant step back first in this direction and then in that direction. The knight pressed him so hard that, bewildered, suffocated and unable to find any escape, he fell to the ground stretched out and unconscious. Then Esplandián stood over him, took off his helmet, and cut off his head. After doing this, he cleaned his sword, put it in the scabbard, kneeled on the ground, and thanked God abundantly because he believed such a great victory came from Him who was angry at the life those evil men led; for they had persisted for a long time in customs opposed to His holy service, while He had continued hoping that they would correct their ways and return to His holy law so that He could either pardon them or take them from their cruel world and place them in dismal hell, where one correctly should believe their souls were, and always would be, lodged. Returning to his feet, he said to the men:

"Quickly, show me the prisoners."

Full of fear, they led him through the cave until, in a very dark room at the far end, they came to twenty duennas and damsels, ten knights, and fifteen squires all in very heavy chains. One of them was Gandalín[10] and another was Lasindo,[11] who, after the seigniory of Sansueña was conquered and before the news came of King Lisuarte's capture, had both sallied forth in search of adventure. Because Gandalín had found many adventures when earlier he had gone through this land on the edges of Germany with Amadís when he was called the Knight of the Green Sword, he led them there to try their fortune. Having already had many adventures, all of which had added to their honor and not a little to their fame, chance brought them to that region where those giants—both the father and the son—held that cave and from

---

[10] In bk. IV, chap. 109, just before the big battle between Amadís and his allies and Lisuarte and his allies, Amadís's squire Gandalín comes to his master and begs to be knighted because he does not want to miss taking part, and winning glory, in the greatest battle of his master's adventures. Amadís recognizes the justice of his petition and knights Gandalín in chap. 110. Gandalín's armor is blank of devices because he is a novice knight.

[11] Like Gandalín (see n. 10), Lasindo served as a squire to a knight, Bruneo de Bonamar, and was knighted by him just before the big battle between Amadís and Lisuarte in bk. IV.

which center they had also forcibly subjugated much of the surrounding district. Gandalín and Lasindo were unable to resist the giant's force and were taken prisoner. When Esplandián saw them weighed down in iron shackles and so ashen and disfigured that they did not look like themselves, tears came uncontrollably to his eyes from the great pity he felt for them. In order to console them a little, he took off his helmet so they could recognize him. They were astounded to think any knight had sufficient strength and skill to arrive safely where they were, and they wondered who he was. When they saw his face, they recognized him immediately; and, just as they were, they struggled to approach him and kneel in order to kiss his hands. He bent down, took them in his arms, hugged them, and showed them much love and compassion for the state they were in. Then he ordered released from their chains those who were kneeling before him and the others, all of whom were crying for joy.

44

About how Esplandián ordered the prisoners whom he had liberated from the cave–except for Gandalín and Lasindo whom he agreed to take with him back to where he had left the caravel–to go appear before the emperor of Constantinople and his daughter, Leonorina.

Having killed those brave and strong giants and almost all their men, and having freed the prisoners from the dark jail, as we have told you, night being near and not knowing where to go, Esplandián decided to rest in the cave until morning, and that is what he did. After taking off his armor, he took both the men and women prisoners with him, and he went out with them to the cave's mouth where Sargil met them. The squire was not a little frightened by his master's delay and by the giant's very loud, frightful cries. But when he saw the knight come out unscathed, happy, and accompanied by the others, I cannot tell you what joy and pleasure he felt in his soul. Then Esplandián said to Sargil:

"Sargil, take one of these men to guide you and go get the giant's bay horse that was put in those houses and replace mine, which is dead as you know. Also, get the giant's shield, and be back here by tomorrow."

While Sargil was leaving to carry out this order, Esplandián ordered a meal prepared for himself. This was done immediately because the giants had a large supply of provisions. So he stayed there that night, and the next morning Sargil returned with the horse and shield. Then he asked the prisoners what it pleased them to do, because he wanted to leave. They told him they would only do what he ordered and nothing else.

"Since that is how it is," he said, "if it is not too much trouble for you men, please go and present yourselves to the emperor of Constantinople; and you duennas and damsels, go see his daughter. Report to them on behalf of a knight who wears arms of crowns, tell them about your fortune, and ask

their favor to repair your bad fortune. If perchance it pleases you to do something else, do so; because I am not imposing this task for any reason except that the emperor's grandeur and virtue are such that I think you will be warmly received by him. And you, Gandalín and Lasindo, you will come with me where your desires will be satisfied by finding such adventures for you to undertake that will win you distinction before Almighty God."

They all kissed his hands for what he had ordered. The prisoners took all the animals they could find and set off on their journey. Gandalín and Lasindo, each on their own horse and armed in their own armor, readied themselves to go wherever Esplandián was heading. Sargil took the saddle and magnificent bit off the white horse and put them on the bay, and he turned the horse over to his señor. Then they left there to return to the sea, where the Great Serpent Caravel had remained.

45

About how Esplandián, accompanied by Gandalín and Lasindo, was returning to the Serpent Caravel and met Norandel,[1] who had come searching for his father King Lisuarte; and how, when Esplandián assured him that the king had been freed, they all went very happily to see Master Helisabad on the Great Caravel.

This story tells that, as Esplandián and the two knights were coming out of rugged cliffs into the plain where the first giant was killed, they saw coming along the foothills of the sierra on the right a fully armed knight accompanied by two squires. In order to find out who he was, they agreed to wait where they were. A little while later he came closer, and they saw that his horse was breathing hard and was very tired and that his arms were perforated and broken all over just as his helmet was, which was still on his head. Approaching them, he said:

"Sir knights, tell me, if you please, where you are from."

"We are from Great Britain," said Esplandián.

"Thank God," he replied. "For now I can get some news to soothe my afflicted heart."

"What news do you want from us?" asked Esplandián. "We will willingly tell you whatever we know."

"Many thanks," said the knight. "Then, tell me now, please, if my sire King Lisuarte has been found, for I was told he was lost and there was no news

---

[1] Norandel is Lisuarte's illegitimate son by Celinda. He is first encountered in bk. III, chap. 66. Among his other exploits, he fights in Lisuarte's army against Amadís (bk. IV, chap. 106) and with the combined Christian forces against the Arabian king (bk. IV, chap. 116). He has a moderately important role in bks. III and IV, but he is a major character in bk. V.

about whether he was dead or alive; and I have worked hard searching for him, and I shall go on searching without ceasing the rest of the days of my life until I know for certain if he is alive or dead."

"Knight," said Esplandián, "if you deeply love the king you mention, and if you have good reason to love him, as we do no less than you, then tell me who you are, and you will receive such news and such an account that you will be happily relieved of your quest."

"Oh, God!" the knight exclaimed, "if it is as you say, blessed is the hour I met you. I tell you my name is Norandel, and I am a son of the king I am asking you about."

"Oh, Holy Mary, bless me!" said Esplandián. "What good news am I hearing! I tell you, my lord Norandel, that King Lisuarte is free, safe, and completely happy at home in his kingdom, and if you want to know more about him, accompany us down to the sea where you can find Master Helisabad, who can give you more details about how he was lost and how he was found again."

Then Esplandián untied his helmet and took it off his head. Seeing his face, Norandel said in a loud voice:

"My God, what good luck this is for me!"

Norandel, who loved Esplandián very much, went up to him to embrace him even though he did not know how Amadís's son had been made a knight, for he left Firm Island after peace had been reached in order to sally forth searching for adventures in which he could obtain honor and glory. Seeing that all the knights of Great Britain were suffering and exhausted from the battles in the recent war[2] and that rest was more important for them than toil; and seeing that his good friend Don Galaor was married; he decided to leave that land and go search for lands where his bravery would be bruited about. When he heard that in the region of Germany there were brave knights and strong giants who wreaked injustice upon the land, he wanted to go spend some time there, serving God and winning honor or dying honorably as the order of chivalry dictated.[3] As he went throughout that region initiating and terminating many very dangerous deeds, he found out about his father King Lisuarte's disappearance and how he was not to be found anywhere in his kingdom even though all of his people searched tirelessly for him. Thinking he was taken elsewhere and that misadventure may have caused him to disappear, then he could probably be found through good fortune. Therefore, until then he had suffered many dangerous confrontations searching for him in many places.

Since Norandel had met the other knights, as you have heard, Esplandián

---

[2] This war is the final one of bk. IV against the Arabian king.

asked him what road he was taking and where he purposed to go.

"I will tell you," he said. "I heard that there are in these mountains two very strong giants who do much harm to everyone they can, men and women alike. I have come to fight them, hoping God may give me such good fortune that something evil could be chastised by me. I was told that one of them often spends considerable time in those houses we can see over there, lying in wait to seize or kill those who venture by; so I came here to see if perhaps I could find him alone when he was not with the other giant who usually accompanies him. If I cannot find him now, I shall be forced to wait for a few days, assuming I have enough provisions; or I shall search for him in those mountains. But, hoping my fortune will be favorable to me, I shall not cease in this quest until life or death release me from it."

"Good sire," said Gandalín, "just as your first quest, the one for King Lisuarte, has been accomplished, so has your second quest, because you see before you he who released you from this dangerous challenge."

Then they told him how Esplandián killed the giants and how he freed the prisoners from the cave. Hearing this, Norandel became very happy and said:

"I thank God my quest ended thus and that I am released from such a great challenge without dishonor. Certainly, while my plan to find and fight those giants would not have flagged under any circumstance, nevertheless, I do not consider myself so good a knight that I did not expect to die rather than survive a battle with them."

"Sire," said Esplandián, "now what do you want to do?"

"Whatever you think best," answered Norandel. "Now that these two quests of mine have ended so happily, I cannot do anything that would not be rest by comparison. First, I want to see Master Helisabad, and then I can decide where my efforts can be employed best."

46

How Norandel heard about Esplandián's great exploits from Master Helisabad; how he arranged to follow Esplandián always; and how, during five days they spent at sea without seeing land, they told Master Helisabad their adventures so that he would write them down.

After what just occurred, all four knights went to find the Great Caravel and Master Helisabad. The pleasure they got from being reunited can in no way be told properly. Norandel found out everything that had happened to King Lisuarte; and, if he was most pleased by this news, he marvelled no less at hearing the amazing things that Esplandián had undergone in his knightly beginnings, and he thought that all other knights would struggle in vain seeking to bring life-threatening adventures to successful completion because Esplandián would likely carry off all fame and no less all glory. He was even more impressed when the master told him how Esplandián unhorsed four knights

in a forest, one of whom was Don Galaor, and how his father, Amadís, fought against him as if he were an enemy trying to win the honor that was promised to Esplandián, and that, in the end, Amadís was defeated and almost killed. Likewise, he was told that Esplandián's goal was, if fortune so guided him, to go to Forbidden Mountain to injure and make war on enemies of the faith, because he believed that for this purpose, and not for other arrogant frivolities, the Lord of the world had given him boldness of body, stoutness of heart, and, above all, reason and soundness of mind.

After hearing this, Norandel was silent for a while, at the end of which he turned to Esplandián and said:

"My lord and nephew, I have gone through many adventures seeking the strange things spread around this world of ours, but according to what Master Helisabad has told me, I truly believe that none of those I have been able to find, even the biggest, begins to equal those strange and marvellous ones you have undergone. Although I have a very powerful desire that urges me to return to the land where my father the king and my friends are, reason tells me to turn away from them and to join your company; and the thought I have had until now, which was to win honor and fame in exploits that had a past quality—most of which, by the way, have done little good—has been changed and converted into seeking that by which, risking the death of my body, I can win glory and eternal life for my soul. So, señor, from this moment on, count me as one of those who wants to end his days following your healthy purpose."

"Well then, good señor," said Esplandián, "in the name of our Almighty Lord God, may He guide us so that whatever honor we win in this world may help us achieve blessedness in the other world, which is where we are to remain forever."

By this time it was already night. After enjoying a good dinner, they retired to their bunks with the intention of returning to land the next morning if the caravel did not leave that night, and to seek those who arrogantly were wont to commit insipid offenses against the innocent. But it did not turn out this way, for when dawn came, they were far out to sea with no sight of land on any side. They sailed for six days without working at anything except recounting their adventures to Master Helisabad so that he could write them down, thereby leaving a perpetual record of them.

47

About how Esplandián arrived at the port of Santa María Island[1] led by the great Master Helisabad, who had been there before with Amadís; how Esplandián, accompanied by his entourage, went to see the wonders and the huge statues of his father, Amadís de Gaula, and the Endriago, as well as the place where the cruel battle had taken place; and about the doleful speech he made standing before the image of his father's likeness.

In the way you have heard, they navigated across those seas until fortune led them to the port of Santa María Island, which is where Amadís was taken by a great storm when he was known as the Knight of the Green Sword, and in a greater challenge and with more danger to himself he fought against that frightening and devious Endriago, as the third part of this great history has narrated. This island was recognized by Master Helisabad, and he said:

"I tell you, gentlemen, that I came to this port once before. Then I was accompanying Amadís at the time of much greater challenges both at sea and on land; for death itself—which can only come once—visited us: nay, we suffered death many times, what with how fearfully frightened we were."

"Father," said Esplandián, "what strong storm at sea or danger on land could be so forceful that you still remember it so vividly, as you say?"

"My lord," said the master, "it often occurs that grave and sluggish men do trivial things of little substance trying to flee from the truth only to lie down with its opposite. However, regarding those things that happen to us that threaten extreme misfortune, no one is sufficiently talented to recount what he saw or what his feelings were at the time. If you want to know if what I am saying is the truth, let us leave the caravel, for it seems she will let us do so, and I shall show you the shadow of some of those dangers I have mentioned. Even the shadow image will give you no little fright."

The knights were very happy to hear what the master was telling them. Then they began to arm themselves to sally out to see what he had recommended so strongly. Gandalín understood personally what he was referring to, so the master made a sign for him not to tell what he knew. After the knights were armed, and they and their horses had gone onto the land, and Master Helisabad had joined them on his palfrey, they rode so far that they arrived at the castle you have heard about, where Amadís was given shelter to recover from his wounds. There they found a knight who was posted on guard duty and made governor in the name of the emperor of Constantinople. After the latter recognized Master Helisabad and was told who the other knights were, he placed himself at their service. They thanked him and then asked the master to guide them where he had promised. The master contin-

---

[1] Santa María Island is the name given to the former Devil's Island after Amadís killed the Endriago in bk. III, chap. 74. This fictional island is not to be confused with the French penal colony also known as Devil's Island.

ued forward, and it was not long before they arrived where the dreadfully cruel battle between Amadís and the Endriago had taken place. They found the statues of the one and the other so superbly and grandly done that it was as if they were alive. Moreover, the emperor ordered a monastery of nuns erected there to give perpetual memory to such a heroic feat. The Endriago had the same wild ferocity he had when he was killed. Amadís was represented with his own armor and a sword very like his green one; he was well protected by his shield, and he was shown pressing his lance's point into one of Endriago's eyes. Gandalín, looking at the figures, could see the battle with his mind's eye, and he said that the scene happened just as it was sculpted. But I tell you that Esplandián, Norandel, and Lasindo crossed themselves over and over again because they were so struck by seeing such a threatening thing, and they could not imagine that any human being could overcome his own tremendous fear in order to defeat such a monster. Esplandián dismounted, took off his helmet very quickly, went and kneeled before the image of his father, and kissed the hand that held the lance.[2] Then tears welled in his eyes. As he said afterwards, they were not the kind of tears that come willingly. On the contrary, while pondering the prophecies foretelling that he would surpass his father in valor and zeal, and while contemplating the spectacle in front of him, the brave zeal of his stout heart could not keep the weakness of his human flesh, which was overcome by great fear, from recoiling from those images that stood before his eyes, since his life was already condemned beforehand to undergo a thousand deaths rather than flee from similar and many much greater challenges that would come his way. Standing up, he turned toward the Endriago, and putting his hand on his head, he said these words:

"Oh great and wise Urganda the Unknown, although you and your supreme understanding may have come to know future things, and, knowing them, you may have announced that I am he whose talents will surpass this knight's, still my will is now full of fearful doubts; because, seeing that the danger he underwent is exalted to such extreme heights that no one can possibly surpass him, I do not know how or where I can search to find a way to fulfill your words and my desire. But you, my good lady, never to this day have the things you foretold failed to come to pass; therefore, guide me where I can find such natural and artificial challenges that may seem impossible for anyone to succeed in—challenges like the marvellous test of the Defended Chamber on Firm Island, or this equally difficult one I have laid my eyes on here, or others so fearful that they would cast these into oblivion. I ask this so that I, who despise life and want to make what you have said come true, may continue living or die satisfied with my will and yours."[3]

---

[2] In good Arthurian tradition, Esplandián is paying symbolic homage to his father, whose lance symbolizes his penis and also points the way down the path the son's chivalric career will take: namely, he will attack the very eye of evil as incarnated for him by the Turks.

[3] Passages such as this apostrophe to Urganda the Unknown remind the reader that

When Esplandián finished saying these words, his very beautiful face was bright scarlet, and he looked angry. Hence, he inspired equal amounts of fear and joy in those who were watching him and who saw his great handsomeness and his fiery, proud will.

48

In which Esplandián gives very just reasons to the great Master Helisabad why his father, Amadís, could be defeated by him.

Master Helisabad, seeing Esplandián as he was described above, said to him:

"Good sire, the defeat you gave your father should remove all doubts you have about your own prowess."

"Oh, father!"[1] said Esplandián, "there is a very great difference between valor and daring; for if I overcame Amadís, it was caused only by my powers rising while his are descending. When youth passes, virility and stouthearted-ness fade, and so the will's eager desires, by which most things are achieved, also fade. But who was or ever will be his equal in boldness and fearless assault? No one, of course: not even strong Hercules, about whom so many marvels of armed combat are written and known throughout the world; for truly the deeds he did are commonly practicable by many people, but those that seem more amazing, you know quite well, father, they were intended by the poets more as a fictional legacy than as a record of true deeds. But let us cease talking about this. The principal difference between Amadís and me will lie in the fact that God will give me strength to fight against His enemies, the evil infidels, whereas Amadís did not do this."

Getting back on his horse, he put on his helmet, and they all returned to the great ship from which they had left. Then they took off their armor, ate, and rested, awaiting whatever would come their way next; because they knew for certain that the end of their trip was subject more to an alien will than their own.

---

this is not, despite a guiding Roman Catholic world view, an allegorical Christian novel such as John Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress*, but rather, it is a latter-day chivalric romance in the Breton or Arthurian Cycles. Evidence of this conclusion is that Esplandián's speech in the context of one of Amadís's exploits is not a prayer to God, the Virgin Mary or Santiago, but rather it is an apostrophe to Urganda the Unknown, who is more like a combination of a good Morgan le Fay and Merlin. There is very little of the arch-Catholic in Urganda; on the contrary, she belongs to the underlying pagan Celtic and Armorican myths GRM and his sources drew on to create Amadís and his world in the High Middle Ages. In addition, despite the hyper-Catholic atmosphere that dominated life in Spain at the end of the fifteenth century, Urganda is not a symbolic projection of the Virgin Mary. On the other hand she is not an old writer's muse either.

[1] Esplandián addresses Helisabad with the word *padre*, which also means father in the double sense of parent and priest.

49

About how Esplandián and his companions left Santa María Island and victoriously entered the port of the famous city of Constantinople; and about the immense pleasure and fear the emperor and Infanta Leonorina got from seeing the Great Serpent Caravel arrive.

After Esplandián and his companions assembled in the port of Santa María Island, the Great Caravel left there before nightfall. After five days at sea, it anchored about the distance of a bowshot from the very great and famous city of Constantinople, and upon seeing the caravel, the whole city was excited. All the people, both men and women, crowded along the high walls and in the towers to get a look at the caravel, because they felt it was the strangest and most frightening thing they had ever heard of or seen. The commotion and the shouting was so loud that the emperor and all his knights, kings, and princes filled the windows of his grand palace.[1] Also, the empress and her beautiful daughter Leonorina, along with their duennas and noble damsels, came to see what that marvellous thing might be.[2] They watched as the Great Serpent moved about the port fiercely rustling its wings, striking the water with its tail, and launching gurgling sounds[3] from its throat and very thick

---

[1] The physical description of the citizens watching the visitors' arrival from the city's walls and towers and the imperial family watching from windows in the palace is quite accurate. In fig. 11, which is a photograph of the ruins of the palace walls taken from the shore of the Sea of Marmara, the area in the foreground covered by weeds was actually filled by sea water in the fifteenth century and earlier.

[2] Although Esplandián himself does not actually enter Constantinople until his secret visit in chaps. 94 through 97, the special excitement attached to the Great Serpent's epiphany in the city's port foreshadows the axial conjunction of the two main foci of the hero's quest: the military-religious campaign and the erotic quest for his lady Leonorina. Esplandián himself does not rejoin his forces assembled around the city until chap. 162, and he never makes a triumphal entrance in which he is celebrated. By way of comparison, the part of *Tirant lo Blanc* written by Joanot Martorell is also centered on the double axis of Tirant defending Constantinople and winning his lady Carmesina. Rafael Beltrán Llavador says this about the Catalan chivalric novel:

> [Tirant acts in favor of the emperor *because* he also acts to win Carmesina, . . . the creation of whom, beside providing the novel's most delirious episodes, serves as the key point in this novel's structural thrust and in that of all novelistic works of the fifteenth century.]

[3] The original Spanish word *gorgozadas* [gurgling sounds] is not attested in any dictionary, but the context and its similarity to words meaning "gurgling" is close enough to allow this translation. In his review of French scholarship on Ur-texts for Rabelais's creation of the giant Gargantua, the Indo-European root *garg-*, meaning "throat" or "gullet." From this base, a pre-Christian Celtic god was derived. His name was Gargan, and he was propitiated by the burning of human sacrifices. Further-

black smoke from its nostrils. It seemed, indeed, as if all of the earth's storms had come together there in that place. Gastiles, the emperor's nephew, who was there, said:

"This is the Great Caravel in which Esplandián travels about. He is the one about whom you have heard so many knightly wonders told."

The emperor was very pleased to hear this, and he himself said:

"Nephew, since you know him better than anyone else, take one of those ships, go to him, and arrange a way for him to see me."

In order to carry out the emperor's order, Gastiles went aboard the largest caravel in the port and he was joined by people well rehearsed in their duties. He began to insist they hurry to Esplandián's caravel, but the Serpent made such big waves that there was no way they could get near it. On the contrary, they were constantly thrown back to the shore, and many times they were nearly sunk. The emperor watched the scene and he became very disturbed and asked if there were someone who could remedy the situation so that his envoy could carry out his mission. But no one was found who could help.

Hearing that that was her knight's caravel and seeing that he possessed such a frightening and world-famous thing, the very beautiful Leonorina began to think that perhaps everything else about him might be the same way; so she thought to herself:

"Oh, caravel! How frightening you are to others, but how pleasing you are to me! How right you are in counting yourself blessed, because at your pleasure you carry him who deserves to rule all others! Oh, how blessed I would be if you made me subject to you as you are subject to him! I wish this so that the burning flames and cruel anguish of my afflicted heart, at the sight of his great handsomeness, may be cooled a little before burning completely to ashes."[4] Then she added:

---

more, some scholars see a link between Gargan and Mont St. Michel, a place often proposed as the model for Firm Island. The Great Serpent Caravel, a kind of giant ship in a zoomorphic form, and the use of a term relating to the throat sounds a Celtic devouring god made, tend to explain that the fear caused by Esplandián's ship is related to a traditional pre-Renaissance belief in giants as representative of everything rejected by official culture. The role of enemy giants in *Esplandián* further supports this proposition.

[4] The terms of Leonorina's erotic peroration—an apostrophe to the Great Serpent Caravel—belong to standard courtly rhetoric of the fifteenth century. To say this is not to trivialize such hyperbole in the service of love's anguish, but rather to suggest that such language was popular and instantly recognizable by readers contemporary to GRM. Compare the following stanza from the twelfth song in the *cancionero* (collection of poems and songs) of Jorge Manrique (1440–79), a great knight and poet who was roughly GRM's contemporary:

"Oh, Damsel Carmela, how you tried to kill me with your sweetly flattering words, leaving me captive to all the anxiety and pain you brought from that mountain, and taking a powerful medicine back to him who suffered so much. Hence, I am certain that if what you told me is true—that is, that I am loved so deeply by your lord—then the more certain his hope is, the more his burning hot flames will be magnified. So, it is not in vain that my afflicted heart is suffering, because it is requited by another being so generous as he."

For a long time she remained speechless and astounded, for her agitation was obvious to whomever turned their eyes upon her, but everyone's attention was so riveted on the giant caravel that they had no intention of turning their eyes toward the infanta. However, having recovered her composure slightly, she said:

"Oh, captive that I am, how could I have been tricked, Carmela, into dressing you in my elegant clothes! Why, surely, when your lord saw you dressed in them, he would want to embrace them, and then he would be obliged to take you in his arms! Well, who doubts that you, having so near what you love most in the world, would touch your cheek to his or perhaps even your mouth to his! And you are not so ugly either that any other knight would not be very happy to return your affection. How do I know he would not do so, too? Often parallel causes are so strongly linked that they bring into effect the chains of such sins as were never foreseen. Hence, I could be the cause of my own harm.[5] But if perchance what were to occur were a show of the honest love that stands between him and you, then, since I cannot see him, it would be a great consolation for me to be assured that my clothes saw and embraced him."

With these thoughts, this very beautiful infanta spent some time consoling herself in the face of those strong and sharp thorns that were stuck in her tender heart. She felt the full force of love's gravity, love's sweetness, love's delicious bitterness just as those who know what it means to be tied in a real true-love knot.[6] And while her cares and tumultuous desires were most severe, do not think for a moment that the knight, for all his challenges and

---

[The fires that were lit in me / by my past loves, / could never be killed / by the tears that flowed / from my anguished eyes; // then it is not due to crying a little, / for I wept abundantly, / but the fires of true love / cannot be killed / if they were truly lit.] See Jorge Manrique, *Obras*, ed. Vicente Beltrán (Barcelona: Libro Clásico, 1989), 171.

[5] This moralizing statement about parallel causes is an example of a stylistic device characteristic of GRM. However, unlike its location here in the middle of a speech, it usually is placed at the end for more dramatic and pedagogical effect.

[6] The original Spanish is *ñudoso lazo* [knotty tie]. The OED traces the English phrase "true-love knot," meaning an ornamental, double-looped bow used as a symbol of true love to 1495, the time this novel was being written.

dangers, was any less afflicted. However, unlike his father, Amadís, before, whose constant suffering for love has been told in this great story, if we were to write about the son's constant sighing and copious shedding of tears, this branch or part concerning his son which sprouts from the trunk would attract the reader not with delight but with immense irritation. Thus, omitting most such references as excessive superfluity, the story shall proceed by informing you about what heroic deeds the knight performed until fortune, angered and tired of keeping him so cruelly tormented by going back and forth between this challenge and that one, decided to remedy his torments by allowing him to reach the delicious fruit his very great travails merited.

50

About how the Great Serpent Caravel left the port of Constantinople, arrived near Forbidden Mountain, and found Frandalo with his entire fleet and the novice knights, who had left Constantinople earlier, and who tell Esplandián about Frandalo's imprisonment and all of the other adventures that had come upon them afterwards.

As has been said, the giant Serpent Caravel was moving about so furiously before the great city of Constantinople until nightfall that no one was strong enough either to approach it or leave it. When the darkness of night came over the city and the emperor had retired to his apartment and the rest of the vast crowd that had been watching had gone home, the caravel sailed out of the port, travelled all night and two-thirds of the next day, and came within sight of the very strong Forbidden Mountain. Esplandián and Master Helisabad, who knew it well, were exceedingly glad to see it again. But while they were still a long way away, they found the fleet you have already been told about, which was captained by the very strong Frandalo, and in which were the king of Dacia and Maneli the Prudent who had left the same port of Constantinople to engage in that rescue mission. However, because the pagan king's fleet was so powerful, they had not been able to harm it in any way. They had told the emperor this, and they were now waiting an agreed upon length of time which would give Frandalo opportunity to appraise the situation, for in all those seas he had no equal in zeal or in the ability to devise the right plan for such a case. Now I want you to know that at the instant when the men in Frandalo's fleet saw the Serpent Caravel, which is a very strange and frightening thing, they all wanted to flee thinking that it was a live animal; but, since the two knights, the king of Dacia, and Maneli, had already been aboard it, they told Frandalo and his men the truth about what it was. With that information they were not only reassured, but they rejoiced on account of it, because they recognized both how fond those knights were of their lord and how dedicated their wills and desires were to carry out that rescue mission successfully. From this we can draw an important example: this Frandalo you have heard about was a pagan by birth as were those from

whom he descended. Furthermore, all those who served him, who helped him achieve the great things for which he was renowned, and who worked and died doing only that which was most pleasing to their master, observed no other law or way of life than what their ancestors had observed. Still, there were in the fleet some men who were there more by force than by their own election, which is a very ancient abuse often practiced on the seas.[1] But by the force of adverse fortune and by the Lord on High's special grace—which, even when our weak minds cannot perceive why, is often sent to those who seem to all others to be the strongest enemies of His holy law—Frandalo was turned toward the law of truth; and as for his men, with no more indoctrination or information than what is usually used to convert sinners, they abandoned the beliefs they were born with, the beliefs they held to be the true law, the beliefs they saw their relatives and friends maintain, the beliefs by which they expected to save their souls. Then they acted on their wills and turned to follow and love that to which their master had turned, and they did so with so much enthusiasm that, as soon as they were told that the Great Caravel belonged to Esplandián, who was the greatest enemy confronting the heathens in the world at that time, they showed the same joy Frandalo showed upon seeing it. They did as he did in order to follow his good example.[2]

Well, Christians, what shall we say about this? If these men were so suddenly converted to faith in Christ just to follow their sinful leader, what shall or what should we ourselves do, knowing that our true God, in order to set a good example and to show us the true path for the salvation of our souls, came into the world not only to teach but also to do those works by which we could attain a state of blessedness? For us, He suffered hunger and cold and many other troubles, affronts, and injustices, and at the end He even allowed Himself to be placed on the cross, where He suffered immense, infinite, and cruel torments. So, for us who call ourselves His followers and invoke His name, what does all this mean? Perchance, does it mean we should be converted and follow His holy works, just as Frandalo's men followed their leader simply to please and gratify him? I should certainly think not. For if this Lord of ours, our Redeemer and Savior, came into the world in all humility, then we, willfully understanding the message in the opposite way, are subjugated to immense pride; and if He came barefoot, naked, and without covetousness, then we, blind and lost toilers in death, in order to accumulate the goods of this temporal world, which He rejected and abhorred so profoundly, wander through our lives working against His admonishments. When we believe that having worldly possessions helps us achieve some peace, some freedom, some happiness, then in reality each day we are afflicted with the burden of more travail, more trouble, and much more greed; and what is worse, instead of making us free, we are made captives and subjects to the pursuit of increasing them or living off those who are also captives like us. From all this, we can without a doubt firmly believe that our Lord and the world's Redeemer chose to shunt aside them and their strange and misguided notion of service to Him.[3]

Now we shall stop speaking further about this because the ideas are so high and my mind is so low; but I only want to say to our very Holy Father, emperors, kings, princes, and others of lower estate, to whom our powerful Lord gave the right to rule over many groups of people, that they should seek to do good works because their subjects find most of their examples of good or ill in their masters' deeds.[4] Furthermore, rulers can save themselves from

cruel suffering in hell by doing good now, by not postponing everything to the sad hour of their death, and by following our Lord's commandments and examples; thereby we and our rulers may merit a place in His holy kingdom in paradise. Hence, we could reasonably believe that this is what happened to Frandalo and his men, especially given the works they did after their conversion. This is so if it happened in truth as we have represented it here in fiction.

Returning to our subject, when Frandalo's fleet encountered the grand Serpentine Caravel, the men in one group and the other met each other with such happiness that there is no way to relate their pleasure. By Esplandián's request, the king of Dacia, Maneli, and Frandalo were transferred to his ship. Then they climbed aboard and they all exchanged greetings—most especially Esplandián and the king of Dacia; for, as we have already told you, they loved each other deeply from the first moment they met, and their mutual love lasted their whole lives, as you will be told farther ahead.

Esplandián informed himself about Frandalo's estate and reputation, about who he was, and how he was taken prisoner and carried to Constantinople, and about all manner of things that had happened to him until then. Likewise, the two knights told him how they found Urganda the Unknown and everything that happened when the ten knights had her surrounded, and how they saw her safely to her ship where they took leave of her as she went on her way with the child to go to the emperor.[5] They added that a big storm came upon the sea after they embarked and took them to port at Deserted Island, and they told about their adventure with the monkeys, which gave all of them a good laugh. Then Esplandián said to them:

"I admit that you can rightfully say that you underwent the most amazing adventure at the beginning of your knighthood that has ever been heard of, but I think it was not more dangerous than the one we ourselves saw on Santa María Island."

"That may well be," said Argento, the king of Dacia's squire, "but the one you saw inspired tears, whereas ours inspires laughter, which is what we did."

"My friend Argento," said Esplandián, "your adventure can be forgotten immediately, but a perpetual memory of this other adventure will remain."

"You have spoken the truth," Argento said. "In the end, both will be equal, but that is not what will happen with this challenge wherein you are now going against the infidels, because it will be eternally praised much more in the high heavens than down here on earth."

Our knights spent some time entertaining themselves alone conversing about these things as you have heard. Then Esplandián and Norandel discovered that the king of Persia had Forbidden Mountain surrounded; so they decided that Frandalo's fleet would sail some distance behind the big caravel be-

cause its great waves could sink them as well as their enemies; and if God and His fortune gave them a happy outcome by which they could enter the alcázar and be reunited with Talanque and Ambor—if these two could hold out until their arrival—then together they could achieve such things that would be bruited throughout the whole world. Or they could die doing their duty.

51

About how Carmela, with no little sagacity, wanted Esplandián to know nothing about her until they arrived at Forbidden Mountain.

Damsel Carmela, who, as you have heard, was travelling in the company of these three knights, was considering whether or not at that time she would tell Esplandián the great news she was carrying, for he would be very angered if what he wanted to take place in total secrecy were accidentally divulged to everyone. Although her very discrete judgment was sufficient to the task of remedying this problem, it was insufficient to find a way to remove him from the rescue mission he was engaged in or to keep him from endangering his life in the face of death—indeed, this is exactly what his great zeal made him seek—so she begged those knights not to say anything to him about her, nor to inform him about how she came there until they arrived on Forbidden Mountain. For this reason, she remained on Frandalo's ship, although her heart desired very fervently to see him whom she loved so much and to reveal to him the great service she had done for him, by which she would oblige him always to repay her in goods and favors. In this, she sought to follow her reason rather than to satisfy her will, which very seldom happens among servants; for they are so exceedingly greedy to collect what they expect from their masters that they not only do not wait for the appropriate time and occasion, but, on the contrary, they manage their masters' lives in such a way that they can satisfy their greedy appetites. Then, if their masters do not give them the goods and favors to which they think their services entitle them, this can only be caused by the little love they inspire. As the saying very correctly has it: good works done without charity merit scanty guerdon. However, we shall stop talking about this since it is off the subject, but we remit you to those who could very easily speak to you about it at more length and with more acumen.

52

About how Frandalo, being advised by Esplandián, was baptized as he had promised the emperor earlier, and how he chose Esplandián himself and also Norandel as his godfathers.

After Esplandián found out from the two knights about Frandalo's exploits, the details of the life he had led until then, and what he had promised the emperor, facts which they discovered in Constantinople, he decided to speak to Frandalo before proceeding further. So, taking him by the hand, climbing onto the Great Serpent's large wings, and watching their approach to Forbidden Mountain, Esplandián began speaking to him in these terms:

"Frandalo, I learned from these knights who you are and what victories and good fortune you have had in this world, but these successes have a way of becoming misfortune. That this is so, I leave to you to say; for, after having been so favored and aided by fortune and placed so securely at fortune's summit—or at least you thought so—it chose to give you the guerdon it habitually reserves for those who trust it; that is, at the end of all of the many great travails and dangers you undertook to win honor and profit, you were separated from your people and deprived of your caravels, and you were defeated by a knight who had never before engaged in combat with any other knight. Then you were taken prisoner and placed before the emperor, whom you had harmed and angered many times and in many ways. The emperor had good cause to apply the just justice you deserved, but the Redeemer of the world, who chose to suffer for your kind, believing that by turning your strength to His service—the opposite being how you used it until now—took pity on your brave body and the great strength he gave you. By doing this, He has applied a remedy by which, if you will only recognize it, you can turn away from the evil and perishable fame you achieved before, and instead you can turn toward the great, eternal glory you can achieve first for all time in this world and afterwards in the other world. Because no building can be safe or lasting without a good foundation, it is necessary for you to leave the bad building of your evil and false heathen sect and to turn immediately to the holy law of our Lord Jesus Christ, outside of which no one can be saved. So, let this happen immediately just as the emperor told me you promised; for, even though you have many men and a powerful fleet, I would not dare undertake any battle in the company of those who were enemies of our Lord God, who has the power to give victory and take it away, and no one can prevent Him from doing so."[1]

---

[1] "No one can prevent Him from doing so" [*sin que alguno ni ninguno a la mano le vaya*] is a colloquial phrase reported in Cov. and contemporary dictionaries meaning "to check, refrain, or contradict someone." Esplandián's style of speech is normally pitched at the level of pre-Renaissance high elegance, for which GRM was famous and which Cervantes praises in *Don Quixote* (pt. I, chap. 6). Therefore, it is surprising to find this colloquialism at the end of his speech.

Frandalo, who was watching him and observing how handsome he was and how circumspect he was in his speech, already knew the marvellous and very extraordinary feats of arms he had done, and he was truly convinced that such a person could not have been born of mortals, nor could he remain as he was without being protected by the law of truth. And even if he had never landed in such a strait where he had no choice but to promise the emperor what Esplandián was now requesting, he now knew that merely seeing and hearing the knight were enough to convert not only him but all pagans. Then Frandalo said to him:

"Fortunate knight, I want to believe in and serve the Lord in whom you believe and who made you as you are. You may arrange for me whatever pleases you. I'm ready to follow wherever you wish."

Being very happy to hear this, Esplandián took his hand and led him down to the beautiful chapel where he was dubbed a knight; there Master Helisabad, who could say mass, presented Esplandián and Norandel to him as his godfathers and baptized him, thereby making him and all his men Christians. However, he refused to change his name from Frandalo saying that, since he had become so famous using that name in the service of the evil one, he planned to do such things with the same name in the service of the Lord he now accepted—if death did not cut his career short—that he would be an example to his relatives and friends who lived throughout all that territory, and that he would convert them to a holy knowledge of the holy Catholic faith which he now professed. Certainly, his intention was not in vain, for, as you will be told later, many of them were converted to the holy Catholic faith on account of him, and from this there followed a very large increase in the Christian faith.[2]

53

About what the king of Dacia told Esplandián concerning Damsel Carmela; and about the things he saw in Constantinople.

Esplandián and the king of Dacia, who loved each other, were talking together, and the king related how he came to see the beautiful Infanta Leonorina

when he presented Frandalo to her. The king said to Esplandián:

"Believe me, señor, neither your mother, who is esteemed and praised by everyone as the most beautiful woman who has ever been seen, nor all the others you know in whom there is the highest degree of perfect beauty, come close to being Leonorina's equal. I believe it is certain there is no mortal person who has ever reached such a level of beauty or grace."

Likewise, he told Esplandián about the great affection the emperor showered on them, and he said that as soon as the emperor heard what great things they told him about Esplandián, the emperor wanted to see him; he also related what Gastiles said; so, there was nothing else to tell except for the matter concerning Damsel Carmela, which he left out on account of her request, as we have already told you. Esplandián, who was listening very happily, felt his emotions not a little moved by hearing his friend speak in those terms about her to whom his heart was totally subject, but he was very surprised not to hear him mention Damsel Carmela, so he said:

"My good señor, did you perchance hear about my damsel who went to the emperor's household on a mission from me?"

"Yes, I did," said the king. "I saw her in the emperor's palace, and, as she told us, she will come to Forbidden Mountain very promptly, if this siege does not hinder her."

"How did you know she was the one I am asking about?" Esplandián asked. "Or how did you recognize her?"

"I shall tell you how," he answered. "When she saw Maneli and me armed as we are now, she was very happy and she wondered why she recognized our arms but not us. Then she spoke to us giving us news about Talanque and Ambor, and she said they bore devices similar to ours. Furthermore, in our presence, she informed the emperor about everything that had happened to you until you rescued King Lisuarte from prison; and he and every knight in his court considered your exploits a great marvel."

"I cannot imagine at all," said Esplandián, "what caused her to fail to accompany you, because I sent her with a message for the infanta whom you saw. My damsel was to inform her about the order my father gave me the day we were dubbed knights. According to this order I would remove the word that remained for him to keep, and I would faithfully do everything in my power that she might wish to be done in her service. It would please me very much to know what message my damsel brought back, and if the infanta is willing to substitute my service for my father's."

"About that, I can tell you what I found out there," said the king. "Infanta Leonorina told her father just what you have said, that the damsel had brought both that message on your behalf and a very beautiful ring as a sign that the message was true. However, the emperor answered that he would not excuse your father from that promise until you appeared in person in the very place where the word was given, because they wanted to see if your deeds were sufficient to exempt your father from his responsibilities."

"Well," he said, "both suggestions, the one about going there and the one about equality with my father, just now are very far removed from my

thoughts or will. You would be considered totally mad if you thought that I or anyone born were remotely equal to Amadís's extraordinarily great deeds. This is true even if he accomplished no other feat than the one in which he killed the evil and frightening Endriago, the evidence of which I just saw. This sight has broken my heart, not because I do not have enough heart to accept a similar challenge, but because I think it will be impossible ever to find another one so dangerous or fearful as long as I or anyone alive shall live."

"Do not think like that," said the king, "for while the world exists, other amazing things will always be discovered by men of stout hearts, and even though they may not chance to be of the quality of that one involving the Endriago, there will be many more of them.[1] I believe there is nothing in the world stronger than a man's heart, if it is directed wisely. This capacity is something dumb animals do not have; for while animals possess much more physical strength, they lack in inverse proportion the faculty of reason by which to employ their strength."

"Now, good sire," said Esplandián, "let us stop speaking further about this; for I cannot be more obligated than I already am to offer my life by risking death in order to prove that what is said about me is true, and to do so in those places where I can offend God least. If my deeds do not measure up to others' great deeds, I cannot give higher satisfaction than what I have just said."

54

How the Great Serpent Caravel and Frandalo's fleet wrecked the enemies' ships and were united with marvellous force at the foot of Forbidden Mountain's alcázar; and how Esplandián and Frandalo both entered the fortress.

Esplandián and his very good friend Garinto, king of Dacia, in their very large ship, sailed ahead of Frandalo's fleet toward Forbidden Mountain; but since night was already as near as they were to said mountain, they decided among themselves that Frandalo, Maneli, the king of Dacia, Gandalín, and Lasindo would go over to the fleet so that, if the Great Serpent Caravel were able to wreck some of the adversaries' ships as it was arriving at the mountain, they would be able to maneuver so as to attack and rout them. After this

---

[1] Through the king of Dacia, the narrator is subtly foreshadowing the direction Esplandián's actions will take. While Amadís is the quintessential knight of individual action, and while he conquered an individually monstrous representation of evil in the Endriago, Esplandián, who is a character cast in a mold closer to the historical forces of late fifteenth-century Spain, will fight in a battle that is pitched between the numerically large forces of two different religious empires: that is, Christendom versus Heathendom/Islam—or, to use bk. V's terms of discourse, those within the true law and those outside the true law.

was done, with about two hours of night left, the big caravel arrived with Frandalo and his companions following some distance behind. The enemy troops were resting with no notion of what had come upon them, for they were so powerful in ships and men that they feared only the emperor's forces with whom they were observing a truce. Furthermore, up until that hour they were advised to observe an order not to make any movement in those ports where their xebecs were anchored.[1] But when Esplandián arrived so suddenly and without warning in his big ship, its force and wildness were so overwhelming that all the xebecs in its path were sunk, and the others were spread from one end of the port to the other. Thus, without any obstacle at all it came right up to the alcázar's great tower, the one you have already heard about, against which the waves continually pounded.

When Frandalo and his companions saw the turn of events, they raised their sails and put out their oars, and, with much loud shouting and trumpets blaring, they made their way to the right flank where they found their adversaries in a panic and their ships dispersed and in disarray; before they could bring them together again, many were sunk or scuttled, and others were seized with many defenders killed or wounded. Hence, before dawn came more than half of the Turkish king's fleet was destroyed and thrown into confusion. Concerning Frandalo, I shall tell you that—given his great valorous zeal and the long experience of a lifetime in all manner of things relating to the sea and to sea battles—in that combat he did such extraordinary marvels of arms that he was held in very high esteem by all of the knights. So highly was he honored, in fact, that to him fell the glory from that battle. This is because those knights who fought with him did not have as much experience as he in that kind of fighting even though they did not lack zeal or cunning. But what caused this knight to be praised most highly was the fact that he convinced everyone that he truly retained the holy law of our Lord Jesus Christ, which he had accepted so shortly before—indeed, it was not yet three days—whereas he had it freely in his power to do the opposite of what he did: he could have gone over with his fleet to his own people and relatives, taking with him those esteemed knights who trusted him. After these events you have just heard about, when dawn was about to break, Frandalo very efficiently collected all his ships where the Great Caravel was already resting more calmly, and he placed all of them under its wide wings.

At this time, Talanque, Ambor de Gadel, and all the others who were in the alcázar went to the window in the great tower and were as happy to see that help coming as those who have been in similar situations can well imagine. Esplandián, who was atop the Great Caravel, and Norandel asked them where the easiest place was to enter the castle. They answered that they

---

literally, "they were holding their xebecs."

could in no wise enter by any other place than through that window, because by force of arms a crowd of troops had gained the mine,[2] which was the mountain's entrance. Likewise, they had taken the postern on the terra firma side. Hence, the enemy was quite near the alcázar's main gates, but they had defended the gates by making a very thick and strong rock wall.

"Then, what shall we do?" asked Esplandián. "Or how shall we arrange to climb up there, if that is what is best for us to do?"

"As for that," they said, "we can supply a very good rigging, and it will not be dangerous at all."

Then they let down two very strong rope ladders they had made with the idea that they would need them if they were to be rescued through that window. Esplandián then gave the order to call Frandalo and all his men, who came immediately. When they were before him, he told them to leave enough men with the fleet to guarantee its defense, for their best plan would be for them to enter the alcázar through the good place they had found. Then they took his counsel about what they were to do. They all thought his plan was good, and they did as agreed, for all of them proceeded to ascend the ladder with very little trouble. Having already tasted death and realizing they might lose their lives there, nevertheless, by being united all together with Frandalo's people in that great enterprise, they felt immense joy in themselves; and they felt their hearts expand at the thought that they were trying to achieve so many great things in that challenge that they would all leave perpetually great fame throughout the world by which they would be equally esteemed and honored.

55

In which Talanque responds to a question by telling Esplandián and Frandalo how the enemies entered the mountain; and in which Esplandián urges all to work zealously.

Then Esplandián and Frandalo went to the other side of the alcázar where they saw that the Turk's troops were in their barriers quite near the castle's gates, and they saw the defensive works those inside had made, and they saw

---

[2] Cov. defines *mina* [mine] as "the cave made below the earth either to get water or as an offensive stratagem against enemies by which one arrives close to their walls to explode them with powder devices." He adds that the use of the term for a cave from which precious metals is extracted is an extension of the primary meaning quoted. DCECH corroborates this information, and adds that *mina* entered the Celtic language from northern France. This explains in part the earlier reference to this entrance to the castle part of the alcázar as a "cave." The indigenous, Latin-based Spanish words for this military concept are *cava* and *vena*. Another Spanish word, *almadén*, comes from Arabic and means "the mine."

that the adversaries were entering and leaving by the postern gate between the two towers. They also saw the numerous forces where King Armato was encamped with many tents and huts. Esplandián asked those knights how the enemy had entered the mountain seeing how fortified it was.

"I shall tell you," said Talanque. "A few days after you left here with King Lisuarte, that Turkish king you see over there came to lay siege against us with very powerful land forces and no fewer sea forces. Meanwhile we, fearing what later happened, took great precaution with that postern by sealing it off on the inside with earth and heavy rocks; and we always had four men posted atop the towers whose task was to prevent anyone from coming close to them. However, the Turks, after many attacks during which many of them were killed by the stones our defenders threw down on them from above, made a device covered with wood and iron leaves with which they were able to arrive at the postern unhindered by the stones we used to harm them. Using their ingenuity, they removed the gate from its place, and, finding our defense work was made of earth and stones, they very quickly pierced it; and while some of our forces fought them off at the entrance both day and night, they brought so many troops to that point that great exhaustion and continual lack of sleep forced us to withdraw to the castle because their people were already passing through the postern. Likewise, Ambor was forced to abandon the mine. Because of the crowd of enemy forces he faced there, we were unable to defend it; so we thought the best course was to wait on relief from God, because we were defending this alcázar in His service, but by risking ourselves in actions outside it we might have been in danger of losing everything. Although on a few occasions we have gone out against the enemy and killed many of them, we stopped doing so because we considered it more harmful for us to lose one than for them to lose a hundred."

"You did very well," said Esplandián. "If you only had to account for your own persons and you were to place yourselves in extreme dangers, some would call it madness and others would call it zeal, which it generally is; but you are in charge of the very signal fortress that is this mountain where your service can redound to our Lord on High, but if you were to lose it, the opposite would result. Therefore, it would be much worse to put yourselves at risk for His sake than for yours, because now you have time and more resources to demonstrate the virtue of your hearts."

By now, it was time to eat, so they went to where the meal was laid out. While they were spending a pleasant time there eating and talking about how they could injure their enemies, Esplandián said to them:

"Come now, good señores, these are not the adventures of Great Britain, most of which were taken on more for vainglory and fictional dreams than for any other just cause. If you were very seriously prohibited from acting out of anger and rage in adventures of that kind, in the kind that now stands before you, it is not only a sin not to show those emotions, but before our very high Lord God one gains the greatest merit by means of them. Hence, señores, eat and rest now; because before morning comes, I confide so much in the grace of that very high and immense God I mentioned, and I trust the

very profound loyalty of our new and true friend Frandalo so thoroughly, that I am certain we will inflict heavy damage and losses on these enemies of ours, and that these camps you now see full of people will be quite deserted."[1]

Just as you have heard, these knights and Libeo were eating and wondering what would come of those words they heard Esplandián speak, for they found them strange, considering how numerous the enemy was and the lack of equipment they had to oppose them. However, they believed that his adventures were very different from those of all other knights, and they felt him instill in them not a little hope that what he said would come to pass. When they finished eating, they took off their armor in order to let their bodies relax and to let their spirits rest.

56

How Armato, king of Persia, once he was informed about the damage to his fleet, decided to go see the Great Serpent Caravel, which had caused the damage; and how he returned to his camp after encouraging his forces to engage in the battle.

King Armato, who was resting calmly and happily in his tents in the camp, was informed about how much the Christians had damaged and dispersed his fleet, and he was very angry about this. He wondered who could have arrived there so unexpectedly since he had his people posted everywhere the emperor of Constantinople had ships, and the lookouts were ordered to notify him immediately of the emperor's ship movements. Besides, the king had a truce in force with his adversary. But some of those who remained aboard their xebecs saw the Great Serpent Caravel as soon as it was morning, and, full of fear, they told him what it looked like to them. They made it out to be so fearful and threatening that they not only praised what they had done in their own fleet, but they also said that if it were able to sally forth from where it was, all of the ships[1] of the sea together would not dare approach it. But

---

[1] Samuel Gili Gaya cites this passage as evidence that *Esplandián* is a purposeful refutation of traditional chivalric romances. See Gili Gaya, "Las sergas como crítica," 106.

[1] The Spanish word for these vessels is *nave*. In the fifteenth century, these ships were not as big as cargo vessels (*naos*), but they were the best combination of size, strength, and speed for use in the Mediterranean. They usually had one or two masts and were rigged with lateen sails. Cov. defines them this way: "Vessel with a high railing, with a large cargo capacity and strong enough to withstand storms and waves at sea. It is, let us say, a [floating] castle well armed with men and munition that moves across the sea" (Cov. 825). According to Rafael Monleón, the standard Spanish authority on ancient sailing vessels, the prow of a *nave latina* [lateen-rigged ship] was called precisely a *castillo* [castle], and the stern was called the *alcázar*. The distinction in the terms recreates the fact that the poop deck (the *alcázar*) was higher than the deck at the prow. Hence, our text has an internal, direct correlation between the sea battle and the land battle for control of Forbidden Mountain. Monleón says that a *nave* was used in the Middle Ages to distin-

others, who knew what it truly was, knew that Urganda the Unknown had given it to Esplandián, and they told the king about it. They said that it was cunningly made, and they thought the best knight to be found in the world had come on it, and that he is the one who had killed the great giant Matroco and his brother, thereby winning the seigniory of the mountain.

Hearing this, it pleased the king to go see it. Mounting his horse and accompanied by those who were charged with guarding him, he went to the place they told him his fleet had gathered. Arriving there, he boarded one of his fastest xebecs. Sailing away from the alcázar, he went to where he could observe the Serpent Caravel at his leisure and without any danger. But when he saw how frightening and strange it was—it was like nothing else he had ever heard about in his life—he was speechless for a while, because he realized there was no fleet anywhere in the world powerful enough to resist an attack by it with any means whatsoever. However, in order not to increase the pain of the crushing losses his forces already suffered, he showed them a bold face and let them know that he did not respect it one whit, and he said to them:

"Friends, do not let the shape of that caravel frighten you, for the gods did not make it, nor did the gods come here in it. It is an artifice of mortals, and those who are aboard it are human. Besides, there are not a few of you and your forces are not so diminished that there are not ten of you for each one that their ships can hold. Have courage and keep watch tonight. When you hear my forces are attacking the castle by land, all of you come speedily, vigorously, and unhesitatingly, and torch their ships. The little ones will cause the big one to catch fire. Once you have done this, you will be able to move freely on the sea; and I will continue to control the land as I have until now. Those newcomers who have just arrived raise my hopes for finishing what we have begun. When they have neither caravels nor rescuers, their victuals will run out on them very quickly."

At this, he returned to his camp and ordered his captains to prepare for the battle which was to commence two hours before dawn. Meanwhile those in his fleet were gathering the necessary things to set fire to the adversaries' ships. Likewise, those in the alcázar were reviewing their armor to be ready when their caudillo Esplandián would order them to arm themselves and to be deployed where they could attack the enemy most carefully, protect their own lives, and exercise their strong and stout hearts.

---

guish this type of ship from all others, such as *fustas* that used oars or a combination of oars and sails. A *nave* could be used as a small cargo ship, but it could also be equipped with guns for war. It is characterized by a high gunwale, a very wide beam, a deep draft, two castles—a forecastle and a poop deck—and square sails, although Mediterranean *naves* could use lateen sails. For a view of a *nave* see fig. 12.

About the cruel battle that Esplandián and Frandalo waged against Armato, king of Persia, by whom the mountain was besieged; in which battle the king was taken prisoner and all his people were routed; and about the extraordinary things Esplandián and Frandalo did therein.

So, when the darkness of night—which was awaited by both sides—came upon them, Esplandián and his companions put on their armor. Taking Frandalo's hand, Esplandián said to all:

"Good señores, in God and in this knight's great loyalty lie our chances for good fortune, and after them it lies in your courage. I beg you to begin a fierce attack on the enemy half an hour from now, and to use such concerted action that you can sustain your combat for some time. I especially charge you, my lord and uncle Norandel, to use your great courage and good judgment to temper these knights' boldness, for they have never known armed challenges as you know them. As for Frandalo and me, commend us to the very high and powerful Lord in whose service we go forth and in whose service you continue."

Then Esplandián covered his armor with vestments in the Turkish style, which they found at the end of stacks of clothing in the castle. Frandalo did likewise. Both of them went down the rope ladders you already heard about and boarded the Great Caravel. From there they went down into a small boat, and they ordered everyone who remained behind protecting the fleet to arm themselves, to go up into the castle, and to do whatever Norandel ordered. Meanwhile, Esplandián and Frandalo accompanied by only one other man, a guide, went across the sea toward the place that remained cleared of the enemy after the battle the night before. They went some distance until they thought it was time to take to the land. Arriving at the shore, they left the other man in the boat, and, even though Frandalo did not know what the object of the trip was, they both went forth on foot with their helmets on their heads and their shields at their necks. Finally, Esplandián said to Frandalo:

"My good friend, guide me to the Turkish king's tent, where we saw his large flag, which is called a standard.[1] If his guards encounter us, say in your language that we belong to those who guard the mountain entrance at the sea's edge, and that we are bearing a major piece of information to the king

---

[1] The synonyms GRM uses here for "flag" and "standard" are *seña* and *estandarte*. While the first is now, and was in his age, a general term for "flag," "sign," and the like, *estandarte* had a more limited semantic range. Cov. says the following: "Law 13, title 23, part 2: 'Standard' is used for the square flag [*seña*] without a serrated edge; the only one permitted to bear a standard is an emperor or king, because just as it is not divided [i.e., by the points on the serrated edge] so kings must not be divided where they are lords." Ramón Llull says in pt. 5, par. 19, in his treatise on chivalry that the sign is given to kings, princes and the master of the knights as a sign that "the honor of the seignior and his estates must be maintained" (Llull, *Caballería*, 71).

with which he can do great damage to the Christians' caravels. Farther ahead I will tell you what my plan is."

"Sire," said Frandalo, "this and all else you order I shall do, if death does not impede it."

"I have full confidence in you, my good friend. Let us move on," said Esplandián.

Then they headed toward the king's camp which was not far away. It was not long before some Turks came out to meet them, for some of the enemy troops had still not withdrawn into their encampments. Asked who they were, Frandalo answered what he had agreed with Esplandián. Not bothering to ask anything else, the Turks thought they were on their side, so they let them pass. Then without anyone else stopping them, they walked on until they finally entered the royal camp. They went as far as the king's tent where they encountered many other armed knights who were arriving at the same time as they in order to take their usual turn at night guard duty. The captains who were in the tent were coordinating plans for the battle that was to take place that same night. While Esplandián and Frandalo were standing behind other armed troops watching what the Turks were doing, they heard a great algarad[2] from the Turks who were quartered on the mountain. According to the plan, at this moment the knights from the alcázar with about two hundred well-armed men from Frandalo's host, sallied forth so intrepidly that they crossed the enemy's barriers, killing and wounding many of them as they went. Hence the Christians made the Turks retreat over a long distance, and for this reason their loud, repeated cries reached the heavens. This news reached the king's tent quickly, and he then ordered all his caudillos to help those in retreat with as many people as possible, to work very hard to plunge into the adversaries, to reach the fortress, and to cut off those who had left it. Hearing this order, his troops instantly set about carrying it out. But Esplandián and Frandalo remained where the king's guards were. Soon a man came and said to the king:

"Hear this, sire: a large force has come out of the alcázar, and among them are knights who are doing marvels with their weapons. They've killed many of your men, and we scarcely have anyone left for their knights to fight."

This made the king angry, and he said:

"So those captive dogs are sufficient to oppose my forces? Then I will make them know that neither their Jesus Christ nor they themselves are powerful enough to confound and kill all my men."

---

[2] OED dates the entrance of the term 'algarad' into English from French and Spanish (*algarada*) to 1649, meaning a Moorish raid, or by extension, the Moorish war cry made during a raid. The actual term in our text is *alarido*, which is closely related. Cov. says an *alarido* refers to the sound the Arabs use when beginning a battle: "they shout and repeat this term lalalá in order to raise their spirits and to make the enemy lose theirs." SS translates *algarada* as "din, shouting, uproar," and *alarido* as "howl" or "Moorish war cry." Alarido derives from Arabic *al-garid*, and *algarada* derives from Arabic *al-gara*.

Then he ordered his arms brought to him in a hurry, and he had himself armed at the tent's door. When it became known throughout the royal camp that the king was going to enter the fight in order to succor his men, all of the others there armed themselves without delay and followed him, for he was already mounted and riding toward the postern. Esplandián and Frandalo put themselves among the king's guards leading the way so that they could enter the mountain when he did. Arriving at the postern, the king dismounted, grabbed an oval shield[3] with his left hand and a dagger with his other hand, and entered the fray his men were involved in. Noticing that his soldiers were laying heavy blows on the Christians who were defending themselves fiercely, he went to the forefront of the fight shouting orders to cut the enemy off, to let none escape, and to leave none of them alive. Esplandián said to Frandalo:

"My friend, do not get separated from me, and keep your eyes on me. What I undertake will tell you what you ought to do."

Then he went and placed himself where the king was fighting, and he saw what his friends were doing—they were killing many Turks, but without harming the enemy forces seriously, for the Christians were still being pressed by so many of them—so he thought to himself:

"Oh, my good friends! If God in His mercy will but grant that I can bring about what I intend to do, I would be able to help you in this great danger I see you in, even unto death."

Fighting fiercely from one end of the fray to the other and never taking his eyes off the king—for he was in the area Esplandián was guarding—the knight moved as strongly as he could, and, while shouting for Frandalo to help him, he seized the king. Seeing what Esplandián did, Frandalo, who was a very strong man, also grabbed the king very courageously, and between them they began to drag him across the Christian side of the battle line. But the king resisted with all his strength and gave a great loud cry calling his men to come to his aid. Hearing him, many came to help. So Esplandián, seeing his project in danger, left the king in Frandalo's grasp. Then he took his very good sword in hand. As you have been told, winning this sword was a sign that it was better than any of the swords his father had ever won. Calling out his name, he waded into the Turks and started attacking with so many cruel blows that it was an amazing sight to behold. There his anger and wrath grew; there he was filled with great pride; and there he did more marvels than any other

---

[3] The Spanish term is *adarga*, which, according to Cov. is "a type of shield made of buffalo hide used by Spanish coast riders who fight with lance and adarga. Also used by Arabs." It entered Spanish from the Arabic word *ad-daraqa*. It is an oval shield known in Spain to be used particularly by Arabs. Riquer comments that the shields of giants and "normal knights" were differentiated in GRM's fictional world. However, Riquer finds only one mention of an *adarga* before bk. V, and that is in bk. I. See Riq. 147, n. 86, for the reference to *adarga* and 147–65 for a discussion of shields in general. Furthermore, the *adarga* is the shield with which Don Quixote begins his adventures (*Don Quixote*, I, chap. 1).

knight ever did. So, in a short time he had more than twenty men dead or wounded at his feet because he gave no solid blow that did not either maim or kill. When Norandel and the other knights saw the great fight, and when they heard Esplandián shouting out his name,[4] some of them went to join him. They found Frandalo keeping a firm grip on the king and calling them to help him carry him away. At the same time, the king called urgently for his men to come help him. And although it was night, the knights saw the marvels Esplandián was doing while being surrounded by Turks none of whom dared approach him, and they saw the dead that had fallen all around him. Then Norandel and Talanque and Maneli and Gandalín courageously succored him while Lasindo, Libeo, and some others aided Frandalo, who was badly wounded and was being harrowed by many big blows, while he himself was in mortal danger and was unable to strike back because he had a tight grip on the king. Frandalo was beginning to feel there would be no victory over the enemy; but when the knights arrived, they began turning the tide by attacking the Turks so very fiercely they were able to kill many of them, and much to the enemy's displeasure their great king was captured by the Christians.

The king of Dacia, Ambor, and Belleriz,[5] Frandalo's nephew and a very valiant knight, held out on the other flank with more than a hundred of their own men by fighting very fiercely against the enemy that had killed many of them while trying to encircle them on their back side. The shouting was so loud and so continuous that it seemed as if the whole mountain was sinking. With great difficulty Norandel and his companions arrived where Esplandián was, and they found him—as we have told you—looking like a wild fighting bull against which one dares thrust the lance only at a great distance. But when he saw those good knights near him, he began to take heart telling them to follow him, for that is where their courage would be well employed. And again he waded into the Turks as hard as he could, for they were fleeing before him, and the ones he was able to overtake he dispatched in only one blow. As Norandel and the other knights were following behind him very closely they were greatly amazed by his feats, but they were also afraid he would be lost there. They were concerned both because he plunged into the enemy with such abandon and because they thought their strength would not be sufficient to succor him. When the Turks, who were fighting in other places saw that their people were being defeated in that place, they decided

---

[4] Pierre Derveaux points out that national coats of arms include a war cry. Spain's, for instance, is "*Santiago y cierra España*" [Santiago and close ranks, Spain]. In bk. IV, several characters use their war cries at crucial moments in battles as if they were a special part of their armor. Amadís cries "Gaula, Gaula" (CB, II, 1535); Cildadán, the king of Ireland, cries "Ireland, Ireland" (CB, II, 1535); the emperor of Rome cries "Roma, Roma" (CB, II, 1469); and Lisuarte shouts "Clarencia, Clarencia" (CB, II, 1042). By shouting his own name, the symbolic effect for Esplandián would be equivalent to shouting "Radiance, Radiance." See Pierre Derveaux, *Blasons et armoiries*, 30.

[5] Belleriz does not appear in bks. I to IV.

to help some of them; so two captains approached, and they attacked Esplandián, Norandel, and some of their companions with such strength and such a throng of soldiers that they almost knocked the Christians to the ground. But then Esplandián's marvels in killing and prostrating those he could reach shown brilliantly on that battlefield: his whole sword was blood-stained as were his shield and his helmet, and his flesh seemed slashed to pieces; but it was not so, for it was the enemies' blood that had splashed onto his arms.

Talanque and Maneli charged into a fierce and very cruel battle against the two captains who had led their own men into the fight while wielding sharp knives. Seeing the great danger Esplandián was constantly in, Norandel did not dare leave his nephew's side. For this reason, Norandel had little opportunity to wound any Turks because he was guarding against attacks directed at Esplandián's back and sides; but whomever he did reach had no need for a doctor. However, they were all in dire need, for the enemy that had fallen upon them was innumerable, Esplandián was tired, Talanque and Maneli were fully occupied with the battle against the two captains, and those who were helping them were so few that they all ran the imminent risk of being killed where they were. However, despite being wounded, that strong knight Frandalo, after leaving the Turkish king in the hands of some of his men who locked him in the castle, took about twenty soldiers and went as fast as he could to the place where he saw the bitterest fighting because he thought he would find Esplandián there. With Frandalo's arrival, the other Christian knights were relieved of the great danger they had been in. Then Frandalo, Esplandián, and their men began to attack and kill the Turks so powerfully that before long the enemy was led unwillingly into some misfortune: their two captains, who were fighting against Talanque and Maneli, were captured by them. Furthermore, since it was night, the Turks, who had suddenly charged as an unruly crowd when they had the advantage, just as suddenly retreated in complete disarray when their men who were in the front of the fight were harried. They all threw each other into confusion. When Frandalo saw Esplandián covered with blood, he was suddenly very sad, and he said to him:

"Master, how are you? You're all disfigured. I worry you're in danger given how covered with blood you are."

"My friend," said Esplandián. "I am so mastered by rage that I feel bad only because I cannot destroy this whole evil host."

"You have done plenty," he said. "Their king is in your castle; this entire road is covered with their dead; and I beg you to be content with this for once. Let's withdraw, for it's time. We've heard loud voices in the castle saying that their fleet's attacking us."

Although he desired otherwise, Esplandián decided to accede to Frandalo's begging; so they began to withdraw, taking the two captive captains with them. The Turks, most of whom knew their king was captured, were very frightened and did not attempt to follow the withdrawing Christians; but rather, they called to each other to return to the royal camp. Finally, they all thought it wise to end the battle. With the Christians gathered in the castle

and the Turks in their camp, and with no Turks left either on the mountain or in the mines at the two gates, the field was sown with many dead, almost all of whom were Turks. Because Frandalo's men spent their lives in constant war and were well armed, they therefore knew how to inflict damage on the enemy while protecting their lives.

58

About how the Turks burned Frandalo's great fleet and how angry this made Esplandián.

So, while Esplandián, his friends, and all the others were in the alcázar, they watched as Frandalo's fleet burned in roaring flames. It seems the Turks on King Armato's ships were outfitted to fight and set fire to Frandalo's xebecs as they had been ordered to do. Hearing the algarad coming from the battle site and assuming they could get there, they attempted to enter the fray impetuously and without delay, but the giant waves that were rebounding from the caravel placed an obstacle in their path. Seeing it was impossible for them to effect their plan, they began shooting fast and furiously with their bows and arbalests; so their arrows were falling like the densest rain. The arrows and darts carried Grecian fire,[1] which is made with little balls tied to the iron tips. In this way, even though the ships were gathered under the Serpent's wings, it was not possible to prevent the ships from catching fire, and as one after the other caught fire, the flames were so whipped up that those who were in the castle had to close the windows for fear the mighty fire might en-

---

[1] Grecian fire [*fuego griego*] was first used by Emperor Constantine IV's Byzantine navy in 678 in an epochal victory over the Moslems near Constantinople. In 674 the Moslems began their first attack in a four-year war on the capital of the Byzantine Empire. This war ended when the Byzantine forces successfully used this new weapon, which was brought to Constantinople by a Syrian refugee named Callinicus. According to Richard Humble, "Greek fire was probably based on naphtha, which, when mixed with several other substances such as pitch, sulphur and saltpetre, was capable of spontaneous combustion. It was sealed in pottery containers and fired from catapults. It was almost impossible to extinguish even under water. Alternatively Greek fire could be discharged from tubes powered by a pump in the vessel in the form of a primitive flame thrower." See *Naval Warfare: An Illustrated History*, ed. Richard Humble (London: Orbis Publishing, 1983), 24–25. It appears that GRM is not accurate in his description of this weapon, nor, if he is recalling this famous sea battle of 678, did he attribute its use to the correct side, but he is aware that it was used in a decisive sea battle between Moslems and Byzantine Christians, and his metaphor of fire falling like dense rain is most accurate. J. R. Partington says that at various periods of history Greek fire has been known, among other things, as (1) naphtha [ancient Assyria], (2) liquid pitch [from 430 BC Greece], (3) a mixture of pitch, resin and sulphur [from 424 BC Greece], and (4) a product containing a secret ingredient [used first in the eighth century].

ter there. The result was that Frandalo's whole fleet was burned. But I tell you that the fire failed to catch on any part of the Great Caravel, nor did she suffer any more damage than she had before. Esplandián and the other knights were greatly grieved over having lost their ships in this way, but as they already realized that they could not win honor in such challenges nor inflict damage on their enemies without in turn receiving damage from them, they took consolation from the thought that they had wreaked great destruction on them. With this thought they found rest and great relief.

59

How, after the night passed and the knights were cured of their wounds, they went to eat taking the king with them; about the reverence Frandalo showed him; how he introduced Esplandián to him; and how he told the king about the great deeds Esplandián had done.

After those events, these famous knights placed guards and watchmen about. Then they took off their armor, Master Helisabad cured their wounds, and it pleased God in His grace that he found no one in any danger, nor did any of the wounds prevent them from getting up off the master's couch. While many received blows, the Turks' weapons were weak, and the strength of the Christians' weapons protected their flesh from being overly harmed. But if some harm was done, it was to the other forces who were not as well armed as the Christians. Thus, the latter, having placed the king and the two captains under guard, were lying on their beds sleeping away what little remained of that night. At daybreak, after the master had cured them, they all rose in order to eat, for they were in need of food. But Frandalo begged them first to go see the king, who was withdrawn in the solitude of a chamber, and to honor him according to such a great prince's station by having him join them at the meal. They all thought it was a wise idea, so together they went to the chamber where he was, and they found him sitting before a bed and covered with a silk jubbah,[1] which he was wearing over his armor. Seeing the knights, he rose to his feet. Frandalo, who knew him well because he had been his vassal and had done many great feats of arms in his service

---

[1] OED says that a "jubbah" (*aljuba* in GRM) is "an outer garment worn by Moslems and Parsees, consisting of a long cloth coat, open in front, with sleeves reaching nearly to the wrists," and that it dates to 1548 in English. Cov. calls it simply "a kind of Moorish garment." Both the Spanish and the English words come from the Arabic *al-yubba* meaning "a tunic." "Las armas," 399–401) does not mention this cloak in his article on arms in Amadís de Gaula, but he does say that the knights wore outer cloaks called *sobrevista, sobreseñal,* or *gambax.* These are all worn by Christian knights. In *Esplandián,* GRM, therefore, seems to make a distinction between Christian and pagan/Moslem attire by using the correct terminology.

by harming the Christians severely, went up to him, knelt, and kissed his hand saying:

"Although I now observe the other, true faith and serve the Lord whom you, my king, hold as an enemy, I recognize your majesty as much as when I was your vassal, and I wish to show you reverence, not with the obedience I used to show, but with the courtliness I owe you as a knight."

The king took his hands, made him rise, and said to him:

"Frandalo, given your strong, fierce heart and the great enmity you always showed Christians, I find it stranger to see that you have turned to this other law you mention—if you have done so willingly—than to find myself captive as I am. I say this because we who spend our lives pursuing battles and armed challenges of all kinds cannot be so secure that we are not subject to the whims of fortune, which can give victory and snatch it away as it pleases. But for a person of your calibre to change from one law to another with such burning passion, and for you to uproot from the first one and to reroot solidly in the second one, that I cannot believe; nor can it occur without the intervention of some mystery either by the Lord you have accepted or by my gods who, being angered somehow by me over something I have done to irritate them, felt it was best for me to be harshly castigated by you. Still, although there is now, as you say, so much divergence between you and me, I beg you to fulfill your duty to me by looking after me in whatever way you deem fit for my service."[2]

As Esplandián was about to take Frandalo aside, the latter said in his own language:

"King, I cannot do or say more than what this knight, my lord, wills me to do; and if by leaving the law I was once in, I have caused you to doubt how firmly I hold the new law I am now in, then let your imprisonment stand as a witness to the truth."

Esplandián, who knew that language quite well even though he preferred not to speak it,[3] said:

"My friend Frandalo, by your great valor and loyalty you merit the faith I and all these knights have in you; therefore, we sanction whatever you think best."

Throughout this conversation the king kept his eyes on Esplandián, and he saw how very young he was. He thought he was the most handsome man he had ever seen. Not understanding what the youth said, he asked Frandalo what the knight answered and who this man was to whom he had subjugated himself. Frandalo told him everything in such a way that the king would be certain of the truth of his words. He told him that Esplandián was the one who in a single day killed in combat the giants Matroco and Furion, their un-

---

[3] Note that the narrator prepared the reader for this dimension of Esplandián's knowledge in chap. 43. See discussion of the hero's linguistic capabilities in chap. 43, n. 4.

cle Arcaláus, and their servant Argante, thereby winning the seigniory of that mountain. He added that Esplandián had not only shown his knightly excellence in those deeds alone, but that later he had undergone many other difficult challenges which redounded greatly to his honor. The king was very amazed to hear that, and he said:

"Now I tell you, Frandalo, that even if the Christian God were not to do any miracle other than the one you have told me about, this one is enough to make me believe that He is the most powerful of all gods."

"King," Frandalo said, "come with these knights. They have come looking for you to have you eat with them. And you should have more confidence in their great virtue than in the power of those idols you serve."

"I shall do so," said the king, "because those whose venture is adverse not only give themselves more trouble than their fortune gives them, but also they are able to bear courageously all the adversities that may come their way while continuing to wait with firm resolve for shifts in changeable fortune; for fortune swiftly humbles the haughty and raises up the downtrodden."

With a happy mien, but with a heavy heart, he went with them. When they reached the table-boards[4] that were set up for them, they had him sit in the seat of honor and had him served as a king. The knights also had the two captains sit among them, and they treated the two with special honor.

All were sitting and eating very happily, some because of their good luck and the others because they did not realize they were victims of much bad luck. There they were served as time gave occasion to do so. After eating, they took the king to his chamber in the company of Gandalín and Lasindo who were charged with guarding him. The two captains were charged to Libeo who was asked to watch them. Esplandián advised Norandel to retire to a very beautiful salon to rest with Frandalo, Maneli, Talanque, and Ambor. Into another chamber Esplandián withdrew with the king of Dacia, whom he loved greatly, having determined in his mind that he would describe the troubles, torments, and mortal desire he felt for his lady Leonorina. He felt that he could tell this friend, in whom he trusted as he trusted his own heart, that if venture were to guide him according to his heart's desire, his great happiness would be considerably increased, and that, by confiding in him he might feel closer to her. But if misfortune were to turn against him, he would have found in the king of Dacia a person in whom he could confide his anguish, find consolation for his torment, and complain about his sharp pains. Thus, either he could find relief or, if he did not feel consoled, he could receive death.

---

[4] The Spanish term here is the archaic form *tablas*, meaning simply "table." Cov. says a *tabla* is a *mesa* [table] where we eat. The current semantic domain of the Spanish word excludes the notion of a raised board supported on legs at which people sit for a meal, a meaning that entered the English term "table" in Middle English. Because the Spanish term is archaic, we have tried to suggest an archaic flavor in our translation.

60

How Carmela, damsel most prudent,
Tells the message happy and great
To the good knight about his soul mate
While the king of Dacia is present;
And how, spread out and very brilliant,
They saw the emperor's ensign ahead
Come across the sea proudly adorned
Showing favor and a host most militant.[1]

Damsel Carmela had come to the mountain on strong Frandalo's ship without appearing in Esplandián's presence; and, as you were told, she chose not to tell Esplandián the happy and blessed news she was bringing him before the rescue mission started. She did not want to increase his joy excessively or to incite him to too much zeal, because with greater personal daring—his own high zeal was already sufficient—he would come closer to death. She chose to do this because she could not make the trip to Forbidden Mountain without having what it was right to keep secret discovered. At an apt time, after the Great Caravel arrived at the mountain, covering herself with a scarlet cape, which was given to her by those in Frandalo's chamber, and knowing that Esplandián had gone to the Turkish king's camp, as you have already heard, she went up the rope ladder to the alcázar where she waited in a chamber until Esplandián returned from the battle bringing the Turkish king back as a prisoner. After making certain all were settled in their apartments, Carmela, dressed in the magnificent clothes decorated with the crowns Infanta Leonorina had given her in Constantinople, went to the chamber where Esplandián was resting with the king of Dacia. Upon entering the chamber, she saw both dressed, reclining on a bed and talking. But when Esplandián saw her, he jumped from the bed and in a loud voice said:

"Holy Mary! Either this is my damsel or I am out of my mind!"

The damsel came to him, kneeled on the ground, and began to kiss his hands, but he was so excited he did not notice this; neither could the damsel speak because of how moved she was by having before her the being she loved most in the world. They both remained like this for a long while. But then Esplandián recovered a little, made her rise, and said:

"Oh, my dear damsel! How did you venture to come to me in such dangerous times?"

"By that good fortune," she said, "that never forsakes your servants. For when I was under an extreme threat of losing my honor, that king who is over there and the other one who is his companion saved me from imprisonment at great personal risk; then they took me where you, my lord, ordered me to go."

"Then, my good amie," asked Esplandián, "what message do you bring from your trip? Tell me everything, and especially if the infanta was satisfied to release my father in exchange for what you offered her on my behalf."

"Señor," said the damsel, "some things can be said without hiding them from anyone, but others should be revealed to you alone."

"That would be so if there were a third person here," he said. "But since this king is close to my own heart, and since he has decided to share fully in my life and my death however fortune may determine them, please say before him everything that should be said or divulged to me, and if not to me, then it cannot be said to anyone."

The damsel answered thus:

"My lord, this king and I both saw the things that happened in public, so he will be able to tell them better than I; but those that were hidden from him will be told by me, not with the keenness they had when they happened, for that would be impossible, but rather in the order of their occurrence, which is what messengers can hope to know in order to relate them. Therefore, my lord, I tell you that while I was alone with the princess, who is the most beautiful and charming one who ever lived, I delivered the part of your message that has to do with your father; but when I gave her the ring, I recalled the loving and very sweet words you told me at the time you gave it to me, and so I repeated them with so much force and feeling that her heart, which had possessed so much freedom until then, felt all of the true and ever constant ardor that torments my own passionate and subject heart. And this exceedingly precious jewel—which was the first one that her great-grandmother, the very beautiful and no less praised Grimanesa, gave her beloved ami and husband Apolidón—is a witness to my words. It is sent to you by her with the message that you should wear it for love of her, not because of its little value or lack of lustre, but for the name that is most pleasing to her. And, wanting me to kiss your hands for her, kneeling on her knees, she said she wanted to do to me what you deserved: so, taking my head in her very beautiful hands, she kissed me on the face while tears flowed from her eyes and down her beautiful cheeks."

Then she put in his hand the barrette that beautiful Leonorina had given her, and she said:

"This was taken from her head by her own hands, and these elegant robes were taken from her very own body so that mine could be dressed in them."

When Esplandián heard those words and saw the magnificent barrette and the robes with the crown devices, which he had not seen until then because he was watching the damsel's face to see if she was showing happiness or sadness, he was invaded by such great happiness that, nearly out of his mind, he would have fallen to the ground on the spot were it not for the king who recognized his state, steadied him in his arms, and guided him as he was to a nearby couch. Damsel Carmela picked up the barrette which had fallen in front of her. Then she went and sat next to Esplandián, who lay there for a long time without talking. Soon he recovered somewhat and begged her to tell him again, but in more detail, everything that had happened while she was with the infanta, for he had understood very little of what she had said before. The damsel then repeated everything you have just heard, after which Esplandián stretched out his arms, put them on Carmela's shoulders, and said:

"Oh my damsel and true amie! When will the time come when I can repay you for what you have done for me? May it please God in His immense goodness that I can really fulfill this wish just as I hold it in my heart."

"My lord," she said, "the favor I received from you—which is that I may never be parted from your presence against my will, and which gave loving rest to my very distressed and tormented heart—that favor gives me a guerdon for everything I can do to serve you. Compared to the distress I feel on a lower order of things, all of the travail I commit to higher things should be dismissed as if it were a dream. Therefore, my lord, what you are hoping to do in the future I have already accounted as satisfied in the past. But if your mouth can be placed here where your lady put hers, then you will satisfy both her debt and my desire."

Esplandián took her cheeks in his own hands, placed his mouth on the spot the damsel indicated, and held it there for a long time. In this manner, he, overcome with the sweet thought of his lady Leonorina, and the damsel, with great pleasure filling her passionate heart, both felt it was good not to be separated from that embrace until death parted them. However, Gandalín's entrance into the chamber made the king separate them. The former said to them:

"Señores, it appears a large fleet is coming toward us via the same route we took."

Hearing what Gandalín told them, they immediately went to the window that looked out over the sea, and they found Norandel, Frandalo, and the other knights already assembled there. Together they saw many ships with their course set for the mountain, and among the ships they saw the emperor of Constantinople's ensign. This gave them no little pleasure because they knew he was coming to favor them with his help. It was not long before the fleet arrived near the Great Serpent ship to the accompaniment of loud voices and horns. But before the emperor's ships arrived, those in the castle saw that Armato's fleet, which, as you heard, was in the port waiting for orders from the captains who remained in the royal camp, disembarked as

quickly as it could and sailed away leaving the place it had been unprotected. Armato's ships recognized that the ensign that was coming toward them belonged to the emperor of Constantinople; therefore they fled in the direction of their own land. All of the people in the royal camp very quickly did likewise, fearing they would either be lost or killed. Esplandián and his companions would have sallied out in pursuit of the fleeing enemy if Master Helisabad had not forbidden it because he feared such an action could have caused grave dangers to the wounds on their bodies.

61

About the joyful reception Esplandián and Frandalo gave the emperor's nephew Gastiles, who brought the great fleet under his uncle's orders to succor the mountain.

When the emperor's great fleet had arrived there, as the story has told you, those in the ships shouted to those in the alcázar telling them that Gastiles was coming to give aid to the mountain and that they should give that message to Esplandián if he was there. When the knights heard this, they asked Master Helisabad—for their indisposition prevented them from doing so themselves—to go down to the stone causeway to receive Gastiles and all who came with him and to have them come up to where they were. Master Helisabad did so immediately. After going through the cave, he descended the stairway that came out on the causeway, and, placing himself there, he was quickly recognized by Gastiles, who ordered his ship to approach enough for him to be able to land where the master was. Being informed by the master about the knights' condition and what they had asked him to do, Gastiles accompanied him without delay and entered the castle where, in the first hall, which connected to the patio, he found Esplandián and those knights who were attending him. When he saw how robust and handsome Esplandián was, he went to embrace him affectionately, and he said:

"I give God many thanks for allowing me see one of the world's truly distinguished men."

Esplandián knelt down before him with much courtliness. Then they all came forward to embrace him and show him great reverence. When Gastiles saw himself among those young noble knights, whom he had left on Firm Island,[1] and knowing whose sons they were and the great deeds they had done so soon after being dubbed knights, no one could tell you how very pleased he was. But they were no less pleased than he. This was especially true of Esplandián, who knew that this knight was very closely related to his noble and high-born lady, Leonorina. Since they were all gathered together, Gastiles said to them:

---

[1] Gastiles joins his uncle's forces, who support Amadís, in the war against Lisuarte in the *dénouement* in bk. IV (chaps. 105–20).

"Good señores and knights, my uncle and lord the emperor was informed by one of Frandalo's messengers that King Armato had assembled a host around this mountain, encircling it by land and by sea. He was also told that there were too few people on the ships you came in to defend yourselves against them. Furthermore, he thought that, if this fortress were lost, it would no longer serve either him or the Lord God, and your very selves would be in grave danger. Therefore, he sent me with these provisions you see before you, not only in order to clear all barriers on the sea for you, but also in order to allow you to inform him about the things you may need to complete this task. He will have whatever you need sent to you immediately. But it seems to me that, by God's goodness, I have found you in much less difficulty and need than we were told in Constantinople. I do not know the reason for this; therefore, señores, tell me what you want me to do, first, so that I can fulfill the orders my lord and uncle gave me, and second, because I hold your fathers in such high esteem I wish to do everything for you as if I were doing it for myself."

Esplandián and the other knights begged Norandel to give him the thanks that such a mission merited. Norandel then said:

"Señor Gastiles, there was a time when, due to the great harm that your uncle, the emperor, did to my lord, King Lisuarte,[2] I would not have deigned to give you this answer, because I could not have found it in me to render unto you the very great courtesies such an answer deserves. But, since it pleased our Lord God to turn two such great adversaries into one like-minded and harmonious party, then it behooves me to change my attitude. Therefore, I pledge that Esplandián, these knights, and I, trusting in your uncle the emperor's lofty virtue, will enter his Highness's service, kiss his hands and thank him for the good turn he is doing for us now and for the future help he is offering us. Seeing that our first desire, like yours, is to serve our powerful Almighty Lord and God and His holy law, and our second desire is to serve the emperor, then I know he will have sent to us the kind of favor and help that our adversities and travails require."

After this greeting took place, they told Gastiles everything that had happened with the Turks and how they had captured their great king. Gastiles marvelled no less joyfully upon hearing this, and he said he wanted to see the king, for he had spoken to him occasionally when it was necessary for the emperor and him to agree upon truces. Then they all went to the chamber where the grand Turkish king was. When Gastiles saw him, he approached him in order to kiss his hands because he realized he was a great and very powerful prince, the greatest, in fact, known until that time among the Turks. He was master over many vast kingdoms and over infinite peoples who were vassals and subjects to him. However, the king recognized Gastiles and re-

---

[2] See bk. IV, chaps. 109–14, in which the battle and peace negotiations between Lisuarte, on the one hand, and Amadís and the emperor of Constantinople, on the other, take place.

fused to proffer his hands; rather, bidding him to rise, the king said to him:

"Gastiles, I am very surprised that your uncle has broken the truce to which you agreed on his behalf. This does not become such a lofty man as he."

"King," said Gastiles, "that complaint is better directed against you, for you knew that this mountain was in his service and held by his knights, and still you laid siege to it with a large force. In that way you have broken all binding, signed, and sworn agreements."

"I do not see it that way," said the king. "The mountain was not sworn to him, nor were the knights you mention his; rather, they were foreigners who conquered it while a truce was in effect; and, having no means to defend it, they went to find welcome at your uncle's gates. If there were to be found the requisite truth in him, knowing that this fortress was in my seigniory, he should not have helped nor aided in its conquest; for the giants who controlled it, although they were known to do me some harm, often served as my vassals, which they never did with your uncle, because they were always his mortal enemies. Hence, he acted according to his will, but not in accordance with his honor or worthiness. But things will not remain this way for long. If I cannot gain my freedom simply by asking for it, then my son will demand it most mercilessly, or I will no longer consider him my son."

Esplandián, who understood all these statements, was already filled with anger, and before Gastiles could answer him, he said:

"King, at any time or in any place that knights speak intemperately, it is considered bad form, but it is even worse when it happens in a place where they cannot uphold their haughtiness by means of their hands or their hearts. Those who know how to suffer their adversities honestly and prudently by bearing and enduring them satisfy the zeal of their heart, and they are therefore considered virtuous and wise. But, on the other hand, those who are held in powerless subjection by their enemies and who try to show much more fire and haughtiness than they ought to have, instead are judged by all who see them as more effeminate than knightly. Well then, the only hope they have is their enemy's pity and mercy; but by impetuously trying to rely on what they were accustomed to do while they were free, their actions are surely reputed to be madness rather than signs of great spirit."

The king, who did not take his eyes off Esplandián, saw that his speech was directed to him in a different language; so he asked Frandalo to repeat it to him clearly. After hearing everything Frandalo said, he lowered his head, calmed himself more than before, and said:

"I tell you, Frandalo, that this Christian most certainly deserves to be lord of a large territory, because in part I esteem his great sagacity much more than his bravery. If he were to free me, and if he wished to serve me in whatever law that pleased him most, I would make him the second king in all my lands."

"Don't think, oh king, that you're saying very much," said Frandalo; "for if you knew who he is, even if you were to give him your entire seigniory, you would still be giving him too little. So, let me tell you why: you know quite well—since you've often heard it said—who King Lisuarte of Great Britain is, and also King Perión de Gaula."

"Of course, I know," said the Turkish king. "They are two princes, who, even if all Christendom were lost, alone would suffice to recover all of it."

"Then I tell you," said Frandalo, "that this knight is the grandson of both kings and the inheritor of all their seigniories. And I tell you more: he is the son of that noble and daring knight, Amadís de Gaula, he who has amazed not only the Christians with his great deeds but also all heathendom which fears being subjugated by his great strength. Several times you spoke to me about your fear of him."

The king was stunned to hear this and he said:

"Ye gods, now I tell you that neither your power, nor the strength of my great, multitudinous troops, nor the might of my seigniories are strong enough to defend me against such a strong adversary placed so close to me as my contrary fortune has now done."

They spent some time there discussing these things, as you have heard. Then, leaving the king, they went back to their lodgings where they showed as much honor to Gastiles as they would have done to the emperor himself. He spent two days there very willingly. Then, seeing his help was not needed, he expressed a desire to return to Constantinople; but Frandalo begged Esplandián earnestly to detain him, because, before Gastiles' men were dispersed, he had an idea for using them in such a place that they could earn great honor by seizing a very notable part of Turkish land. It would be an opportunity to subjugate a very great part of that region. It took little pressure to convince Gastiles to agree to that idea, because, since he saw that war had already broken out, he wanted very much to be of some service to his uncle the emperor before returning to Constantinople. But the story will not tell you about this for now; rather, tell you it will what King Lisuarte and his wife, Queen Brisena, did, being, as they were, at an age when it was better to save their souls than to maintain the pomp and vanities they had pursued all their lives.

62

How King Lisuarte, his life's course run,
Forgetting the willful pomp of the earth,
With its vain triumphs and charms and mirth,
Decides to follow the kingdom of heaven;
And how all his knights, full of emotion,
After winning so many battles in war,
Departing to see the lands of his lore,
Take leave of him with much consolation.

King Lisuarte was in Miraflores Castle, as you heard, keeping Amadís company, who was wounded from the battle he had with his son Esplandián. Also, there were Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa, Agrajes, Grasandor, the giant Balán, Don Galvanes, Angriote de Estraváus, and several other of his knights. Al-

though all of them gave King Lisuarte great pleasure and served him well by joining him in games and hunts, none of these things prevented him from feeling sick at heart, because he remembered the very great sublimity he experienced while he was engaged in chivalric deeds. Moreover, the multitudinous company of knights whom he raised for temporal pursuits and others who joined his court for other reasons all felt the need for a change: some who were married wanted a life of repose; others were tired of a life at arms and vexed by having to seek adventures; and the youths, who were at an age when their desire to seek adventures was beginning, heard about the strange things Esplandián was doing and how he was using his energy against infidel enemies. So they went about searching for ships and provisions to go to Forbidden Mountain in order to serve God and help the knight. Hence, King Lisuarte could not avoid feeling much anguish over the state of his affairs; but, at his advanced age, his conscience and great sagacity, and above all the almighty Lord's grace, which was imprinted in his heart, were converging to give him the guerdon of the virtuous life he had led as a monarch. Although he occasionally erred, he usually held firmly to the holy Catholic faith, maintained justice and truth among his vassals, and followed all other good customs that any good king ought to follow. Despite this, he now felt so heavily burdened that it was as if someone were sinking their hands very cruelly into his sides and plucking out of his bowels those sweet but perishable vanities of his past life. By doing this, he felt great pain and anguish almost as bitter as the draught of death itself.

Hence, these weighty and serious things we have just mentioned turned his will and desire toward what now and then he had thought about doing—and especially when he was thrown into Duenna Arcabona's dark and no less sad prison. That is, he was forsaking weakness and embracing strength and steadfastness. Therefore, with new freedom and without giving free rein to any more capricious thoughts, and seeing that the dense cloud which prevents so many from seeing true clarity was removed from him, he decided to speak with his beloved queen. And this he did one night when he was resting with her in bed. He revealed all this thinking to her: to wit, he wanted to leave his kingdoms and seigniories to his daughter Oriana and her husband Amadís if the queen agreed; and then he wanted to find rest in this world by attempting to gain repose in the next world. Hearing this, the queen became very happy, because from her memory she called up before her mind's eye all the anguish and great distress she felt as a result of the danger in which he had placed his life during his challenges, battles, and other affairs. Thus, she praised and supported his good and holy desire, and they both united in one will, which pleased the king beyond measure, because he believed that he was receiving such a good boon as a gift from God rather than as a result of his piety or his merits.[1] Then he said:

---

[1] Like Lisuarte, St. George turns from chivalric glory to piety. This is how Barclay expresses the saint's change of life:

"Duenna, since you agree, I shall bring this about in such a way that, given our age, we can honorably increase our ease in this life and our repose in the next life."

Having decided this issue, as you have just heard, the king immediately changed his style of living dramatically from what it used to be. Ever since the major events that had happened between him and Amadís and by which his honor was tarnished,[2] his life had been dominated by a constantly afflicted and sad heart and by always having to make a great effort to show only a happy face. Now he felt so immensely happy that his face was not capable of showing more than half the joy he felt, and this half already appeared in his countenance. This was such a novelty that the señores and knights who were there noticed it, but, not knowing its cause, they remained very puzzled by such a surprising development. Since they saw such an enormous change in the king, and since Amadís had gotten up from his bed after recovering from the wounds Esplandián had given him, the knights first sought the king's counsel and permission and then they asked his leave to go visit their lands: Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa, asked to return to his beautiful queen;[3] Don Galvanes to his beloved Madasima; Agrajes to his wife, the beautiful Olinda, in order to take over the kingdom of Norway to which he was called because of the demise of his father-in-law, King Gavain;[4] and the giant Balán to return to Vermilion Tower Island.[5] With much love and loving embraces, this giant[6] departed from Amadís who begged him to go by way of Firm Island and to send him his son Bravor,[7] for it was the right time for him to be knighted. Only Grasandor stayed there with Amadís. Even though he wanted to accompany his wife, the noble and prudent Mabilia, to the kingdom of Bohemia where her father was—he had written many times for Grasandor to come see him—Oriana's tears and entreaties had enough force to keep Mabilia from going, and he therefore had to change his desire. These same tears caused Amadís not to leave in those knights' company for the time being. This came about both because Oriana was so attached to the very beautiful Miraflores Castle where she had enjoyed so many delightful pleasures with her ami and where she was restored to a happy and sweet life after expecting a cruel death,[8] as this story relates in the second part, and because her father, the king, without revealing why, ordered her not to consent to Amadís departing from there at that time for any reason.

How King Lisuarte left for London, called together all his kingdom's grandees, and had his will and testament put in order in which he left his daughter Oriana and Amadís to inherit his kingdom.

After these knights had departed in the way you have just heard, the king spoke to Amadís telling him that it would be good to go to London, because, while he was caring for various affairs of the kingdom, Amadís and his wife Oriana could see to their own affairs in a more leisurely fashion. Amadís said to him:

"Sire, we shall not have either rest or leisure except when you also have them. But since it seems this is what you desire, it is only right for us to obey your wish."

After hearing mass, they rode off on their palfreys with all their companions who were there. They took to the road and arrived in London in time for a delicious meal that had been prepared for them. Things being as you have been told, the king then ordered all his many large treasures handed over to his confessor so that whatever debts and liabilities the king and queen had could be satisfied, and he ordered letters sent out calling together all high noblemen of his realms, cities, and towns. They were deputized with sufficient powers to come to Cortes[1] with the purpose of authorizing whatever was agreed upon in them. This order of his was obeyed most willingly by all invited on the day indicated. When the king saw this, he ordered a large dais erected outside his grand palace under some windows that opened onto a large plaza. He had the dais covered completely with golden and silken drapes, and he had his and the queen's royal thrones placed upon it; they, too, were covered with magnificent drapery. Then he ordered a general proclamation for all the lords and other people he had called and the citizens of the city to meet together in that place, because he wanted to speak to them

---

[1] The Cortes is a distinctively Spanish quasi-parliamentary institution that dates from the high Middle Ages to the present and has had various forms and varying degrees of effectiveness as a representative body. The term and concept of 'Cortes' in Spanish are plural. Cov. says they are "the assembly of cities and towns with a vote for the purpose of proposing and decreeing what seems good for the realm and the king and to grant him ordinary and extraordinary services." During the composite reign of the Catholic monarchs, the situation of the Cortes was very complex, since each region continued to have its own Cortes which was responsible for its individual and bilateral relations with the twin crowns. For example, there were separate Cortes for Aragón, Catalunya, Valencia, Castilla, and the like. On occasion, they all met together, often in Monzón. During the joint reign of Isabel and Fernando, the Castilian Cortes met only five times: 1476 in Madrigal de las Altas Torres, Isabel's home town, when the Santa Hermandad (Holy Brotherhood) was created; 1480 in Toledo, when the Catholic monarchs finally imposed their will over the nobility and the Cortes; 1498; 1499; and 1502. Joseph Pérez concludes that, "In the XVth century, the Cortes ceased being a meeting of the three estates [i.e., clergy, nobility, and middle class]" and that "they ceased having any purpose." See Joseph Pérez, *Isabel Y Fernando: los Reyes Católicos*,

about several things that affected them directly. They came for the usual reason groups of people come to such events, which is that they wanted to know what the king intended to say; but they came also because these Cortes promised something different from all others. So many came that the entire plaza was filled and many remained in the doorways and in the streets.

When everyone was assembled, the king and queen came out in their royal robes that were covered with precious stones, and each was wearing a very valuable crown—indeed, they were priceless. Then, with the royal couple still sitting and Oriana and Amadís standing, the king, who was holding the royal scepter in his left hand, took Amadís by his right hand, the queen took Oriana by her left hand, and, with everyone waiting expectantly in absolute silence, the king spoke to them in the following way:

"It is unnecessary for me to recall with you, my friends and loyal vassals, what you and I have experienced from the time I became king upon the demise of my brother, King Falangrís,[2] to this very day; for some of you have placed yourselves in great danger and travail for us, and others have very generously given and offered their income and belongings. Because these things which have been dealt with are now in the past and are well known to you, I shall not refer to them. I only want you to know that since those many good and fortunate times that occurred to us, which let us feel great delight and pleasure, and since the adverse times when we were vexed and troubled, this face of mine has changed: you first knew it in the freshness of youth, but now you see it wrinkled and aged; my hair is now white; the vision in my eyes has dimmed; my teeth are weak; and other passions that are not obvious to you have also followed in their train.[3] So, my friends, all this, from whence does it come? Who has caused this chain of events? Of course, there is no other cause than the earth, which demands this body of mine as the price of a debt owed to her, and the Lord on High who demands my soul so that I can go give Him an accounting of the great authority and seigniory in which He placed my soul. Since I cannot turn back from this path, since I realize it is impossible to recover the youthful vigor of the past just as it is impossible for rivers to return to their birthplace,[4] I have decided that, before departing these realms of earth and dust, I shall do such penance that I will at last be able to reach the endless realms of glory and pleasure. And for your care, I leave you my daughter Oriana and this knight, her husband. If you felt protected by any strength in me, then know that his is much greater than mine; and if I come from a high lineage, I tell you that his is so high that no other exceeds it. You as well as I know about his status, character, and good customs, which any good king ought to have, because he spent his best hours in my service and your company. Concerning my daughter Oriana, besides being the rightful heir of these realms, her status and virtue are such that, knowing who she is, no one else beside her has any rightful claim; therefore, she has just cause to be called to reign.[5]

Knowing how all life's worldly pomp confounds,
These devout people, Lisuarte and Brisena,
Give Amadís and Infanta Oriana
Their precious self-removed royal crowns;
And, choosing a healthier life to find,
They retire to Miraflores Castle
Where they plan to be monastic people
And leave the other, profane world behind.

When those high men and the town's people heard what the king said, they all began to murmur among themselves, and some began to wail loudly, raising their voices, kneeling on the ground, and raising their hands toward the king, saying:

"Oh king of Great Britain, our lord and natural king! Why does it please you to forsake us thus? Why do you want to adopt an unusual condition? What can the cause of such a change be? If perchance it is because you do not have the means to satisfy something you wish to do, then take our estates, our children, and wives, take them all; do with them, not as you would with your vassals, but as you would with captive slaves; but do not leave us, sire, to the kind of heavy tribulation we would have in your absence. As for what you say about Amadís, he is known to both us and you. But who does not doubt that, when he is raised to the majestic heights of a king, his humility will turn into great arrogance and his generosity into excessive cupidity? This very thing has happened to other princes in this world, who, while lacking power to rule over any seigniories, behaved with all pleasing graces; but after getting the power to rule, their vassals discovered the opposite. We do not know if this is because they feigned the good qualities or because elevated estates bring with them such changes and such bane. But in you, good sire, we have always found a true father, a strong shield in our defense, and a protector and savior of widows and orphans; and we have never seen you affected by changes in your youth or old age. You, sire, we love; and we implore you with our tears and with our hands and submissively on our knees not to forsake us, nor, so long as you live, sire, to make us accept new yokes, which, given the gentleness of your commandments, our meekly-trained necks never felt. We implore you, do not let new yokes abuse or slit our necks."

When the king heard such an outcry and so much wailing, and when he saw so many tears accompanied with words of such loving devotion, he found the ramparts of his heart attacked, and he could not help returning the debt he owed humanity for such gestures. These emotions caused two fountains to begin streaming from his eyes, and against his will infinite tears flowed so copiously that he could not answer for a long while. However, after his spirit calmed down somewhat, he said to them:

"My true friends, I implore you as much as I can and with all the love I have always had for you, and I always will, to accept this order as loyally as

you were always accustomed to obeying my orders in the past. This shall be my last command, and by having it fulfilled, my desire and will can at last find rest. As for the doubts and fears my decision has caused, I and the queen, who authorized me to do this—as she has always done in things I have wished to do—will remain near enough to you so that if this knight, my son, in some way fails to fulfill the confidence I have placed in him—which I do not think will happen—we can repair and remedy whatever harm may occur, not with the strength of lords, but with the command and entreaty of true parents."

Realizing that this was the king's will and accepting that they could not change his mind since he had announced it in such a public place, the high nobles and other vassals, crying and sobbing loudly, all acquiesced and approved what he wanted to do. Then the king rose from his royal seat, lifted his hand to his head, took his crown off, and put it on Amadís's head. Next he removed his mantle and wrapped Amadís in it; the queen did likewise with their daughter. They who never expected to exchange their royal robes for anything except similar robes were left standing in black woolen cloaks. Then Lisuarte had Amadís and Oriana sit on the thrones, and, placing his royal scepter in Amadís's right hand, he said to him:

"King of Great Britain, take these precious jewels, and with them take care to give an accounting of your honor and reputation to the world; and to God, who has placed you on this seat, give an accounting of your conscience. Do this because you will receive a great guerdon from the Almighty Lord if you return to your vassals the same justice and truth that comes from them, and if you show them the love you owe them and you protect, honor, and love them, not as serfs, but as vassals and friends. But, if you do the opposite, you will be severely punished with harsh troubles more surely than if you were the lowest of your subjects."

Amadís, the new king, and Queen Oriana kneeled and kissed the former king and queen's hands, and the latter embraced and kissed them with loving compassion. At the same time they gave them their blessing, and, asking them to sit again on their royal seats, they invited all present to accept them as their lords and to come forward to kiss their hands. Then, desiring to leave accompanied by no one but Don Grumedán,[1] the queen's good, esteemed old guardian, they returned to the palace. As soon as they entered one of the halls, all the crying duennas and damsels came to Lisuarte and threw themselves at his feet wishing to kiss them. However, Lisuarte and Brisena, showing them the loving manners with which they had always treated them, made them rise and approach them, and they consoled them with encouraging words saying that their children, the new monarchs, would treat them more lovingly and caringly, and that they would do them more favors than they

---

[1] Grumedán is seen first in bk. II, chap. 38, as Brisena's old guardian. Later he becomes Oriana's tutor. He is known throughout the first four bks. as an expert on the protocols of honor. In this regard, he fights on Lisuarte's side in the war against Amadís even though he tells the king that he is not in the right. In bk. IV, chap. 133, he joins Brisena in her search for Lisuarte.

had. After this encounter, both left by the gate for the country. The king took Don Grumedán with him. Lisuarte and Brisena, who had been raised at Don Grumedán's wife's teats,[2] begged him very tearfully to continue serving them until the end of their days. After he granted the king and the queen's request to accompany him—for they intended to take the same road he took—they rode away on their palfreys, and they went to the peaceful and delightful castle of Miraflores. Upon entering the castle grounds, they found two aged chaplains[3] saying mass at a small table for two people which they had set up under beautiful trees near a fountain that was surrounded by many roses and other kinds of flowers. Near this table there was another one with glasses, earthenware plates, and some fruit from the orchard.

When the king arrived at this place, he kneeled on the ground, raised his hands toward heaven, and said:

"Oh Lord of the whole earth! Oh God on High! If I was obliged to serve You in the great majesty in which You placed me, with the fame and honor You gave me above many kings and princes, I am much more obliged to you now, because You took me out of that briny deep, out of that dangerously knotty trap, and You have placed me where—if I do not lose the highest prize by my own malice or fault—I can leave behind the many tribulations my mind nourished at such a risk to my soul. Now, in this place, without those dangers, only wanting to humble my will and to illuminate my understanding by serving You, I can earn other, more precious things that have no end or limit."

They rose, the chaplains blessed the table, and the king, queen, Don Grumedán, and his wife invited the two clergymen to eat the simple food they had ordered prepared by the monastery where Adalasta was the upright abbess. In this fashion food was sent to them each day, for the king refused to allow any other person to enter that place than those we have mentioned. After eating and dining, they kneeled on the earth giving thanks to God, they prayed, and they heard all the hours in a beautiful chapel there. They dedicated themselves to nothing other than devout meditation, to looking at the stars in the heavens; to wishing that their merits were so worthy that they

---

[2] Gay., JJAS, JJF, SP, and JG report a difficult phrase here, for they all say the same thing: *y a la reyna su mujer: a las tetas de la qual fue criada* [and his wife the queen at the teets of whom she was raised]. But they do not state clearly who is the possessor of the teets. It appears that GRM metaphorically wishes to make Grumedán's previously unknown wife appear cryptically as a kind of she-wolf to the Romulus-like Brisena. NH and AI simply avoid the problem by omitting the phrase from their translations. Naz. correctly, we think, interpolates *a la reyna su mujer* to *la reyna a su mujer*,

[3] Chaplains [*capellanes*] are clergymen who conduct religious services in private chapels of a sovereign, lord, high official, etc. Cov. says the following about them: "The world's vanity has introduced the practice among *señores*, and *señoras*, and even those who are not, for them to receive clerics into their service calling them their chaplains, and asking them to accompany them and to take care of tasks incompatible with priestly dignity. . . This is a lamentable institution." Clearly, GRM has no such view of the clergymen in this chap.

could worthily save their souls there and forget everything they had dealt with in the past as if it had never happened; and to wishing that they could remain in the style of that holy and devout life, and that it might please the Almighty Lord, with His grace, to allow all who follow His holy law to retire to that kind of life at the moment when the world begins scorning them and attacking them with passions, pains, and a thousand other cares and afflictions that happen to them, and that He not wait for their pains to end when the days of their lives end.[4] No matter how late we come to Him, and even though we may not recognize our erring ways fully until our old age—although youth's vigor seems to mitigate them somewhat—the true God, being true to His word, in His holy mercy and pity, will give us, not what our sins deserve, but that which His holy passion promises us every day.[5]

65

How the principal lords of the kingdom of Britain swore allegiance to Amadís as king.

Well then, while the new monarchs, Amadís and Oriana, were still sitting on their royal seats, all the noblemen and town representatives[1] for their realms came forward to kiss their hands, thereby showing such obeisance and vassalage as loyal vassals ought to render to their sovereigns. At the same time they demanded reconfirmation of their *fueros*,[2] customs, and many other favors. All this Amadís and Oriana very courteously not only granted, but they also guaranteed in such a way that before much time had passed, the great fervor of love and loyal obedience that had been directed toward King Lisuarte and his wife, the noble Queen Brisena, was redirected toward them with more intensity, because their subjects realized that the new monarchs' nobility and great virtue merited even greater realms and kingdoms.

66

About the favors King Amadís gave the knights whom King Lisuarte had under his command.

The king granted to King Arbán de Norgales[1] an island that bordered the kingdom of Norgales, and he gave him permission to leave immediately because, as he said, even though he was Lisuarte's loyal subject and swore service to him, he could not continue to spend more time in the royal court. The office of chief steward, which Amadís himself had had, he gave to his good and faithful friend, Angriote de Estraváus. The queen gave a county[2] to the

[2] *Fueros* (from Latin *forum*) are special laws, privileges, and exemptions that ruled localities, communities, and provinces in various Spanish kingdoms.

damsel from Denmark; the king gave Gandalín, his foster brother and his squire, all of the lands and castles that had belonged to Arcaláus the Enchanter; he ordered Don Guilán, duke of Bristol,[3] to take his men and go lay siege to those territories; he gave his master Gandales[4] part of a very beautiful territory in the seigniory of Fresca; and he did likewise with Don Cendil de Ganota, Brandoivas,[5] and other knights who had served the former king. But the greatest grant he made was to Giontes,[6] the king's nephew whom Lisuarte had entrusted to Amadís and whom he made duke of Cornwall. Also he made his dwarf Ardián[7] his chamberlain because the task he had undertaken until then, which was to take charge of his knight errant's clothes, qualified him for the position of overseeing the royal vestments and jewels.

Then Amadís would have made many grants to the knights who accompanied him in the great challenges and big battles of the past, about which you have already heard,[8] were it not that they felt it was a greater honor and a better choice to go to Forbidden Mountain where Esplandián was; which is what they did and what you will be told about in what follows. Some might say that these knights, who had always served the king in all his challenges and difficulties, should have chosen to allow him to bestow those favors on them rather than forsake those realms and leave them to the attentiveness or whim of someone else. Certainly, there is some reason to take that argument, which is fair enough, into account; but since the king was very sensible, he thought that, since these knights no longer served him, but rather were now in the service of Amadís and his daughter, to whom he had given the freedom to grant those favors, they would be all the more disposed to turn the love and obedience they had had for him toward their new masters. This and much more is what he, his daughter, and Amadís had agreed among themselves so that the latter two would enjoy those knights' service.

67

About how Queen Oriana gave birth, and about the festivities her subjects held to celebrate the event.

At this time, Queen Oriana gave birth to twins, a son and a daughter. The girl was named Brisena, and the boy was named Perión. Everyone in the kingdom was very happy over this glad news, they held great, joyful festivities, and they brought the king and the queen many things to honor them.[1]

68

How King Amadís used his time maintaining peace in his realms and sending caravels and troops to his son Esplandián on Forbidden Mountain.

As you have heard, King Lisuarte and his wife, Queen Brisena, retired to Miraflores Castle, leaving Amadís and Oriana in charge of their realms and large seigniories. The first two retired to a spiritual life, whereas the other two remained in the temporal world, and each pair enjoyed their particular style of life by resting and relaxing their spirits from the great travails and dangers they had undergone in earlier times. King Amadís was no longer preoccupied with seeking adventures,[1] nor did he care if his knights sought them; rather,

he spent all his energy on maintaining peace and tranquility in his realms, granting favors to those who merited them, and outfitting many troops and caravels for shipment to his son, Esplandián. Amadís heard from one of Norandel's squires, who had come to see him, that Esplandián, Norandel, Gandalín, and Lasindo had gone directly to Forbidden Mountain and that Esplandián had killed the two giants who lived in the cave which was on the edge of upper Germany. And he knew nothing else to add because he had left them there. However, since King Amadís's affairs are not central to the thread of our story, they will be dropped here as things of the past that have been told and retold; instead, you shall be informed about the adventures of the knight who sought to do them with more zeal and more faith than others did, who trod a different and more catholic path, and who thereby won honor for himself in this world and salvation for his soul.

69

In which Frandalo affirms his great loyalty to the new holy faith he adopted, and in which he advises Esplandián and Gastiles to be prepared for other, more difficult battles and more trophies.

Esplandián, as you have been told, was on Forbidden Mountain where, at strong Frandalo's earnest urging and instance, he was detaining Gastiles, the emperor of Constantinople's nephew, along with the whole fleet Gastiles had brought with him. Esplandián had reason to hope that in the future Frandalo would continue to be as loyal in his firm resolve as he had been in the past, and Esplandián believed that, since Frandalo was a native of that land, and since he had exercised the profession of arms for so many years, he himself could gain more from his Turkish friend's advice than from anyone else's, and in this way the Lord would be well served. That is what happened, for

twenty days after the battle with King Armato took place, when all of the knights had recovered from their wounds and were disposed to put on their armor again, Frandalo took Esplandián and Gastiles aside and spoke to them in this way:

"Good Lord Gastiles, you know very well who I may have been and how I lived, and you know what I have done since then: due to the mercy of the world's Redeemer and to your uncle's mercy, I was converted to this holy faith. My heart burns with such a great desire to be faithful to this law that I will not have a moment's rest until I achieve what I intend to do. Furthermore, my desire is much stronger since I spoke with Master Helisabad about the state of my soul. Among other holy words of his, he told me that God is like a father with many children in his home: when one child that was lost and that he had little hope of ever seeing again returns to him, the father feels more consolation and delight over that one child than with all the others even though they too are loved by him. Our Redeemer does the same thing when some notable sinner is turned from evil to what He gave us in His works and examples. It seems that the sorrows, troubles, cruel passion, and merciless death he suffered in this world nevertheless contain the fruit for which he decided to bear them, which was to save sinners. While there may be many saints seated before His Divine Majesty, when one of these sinners I've mentioned is presented to Him, He experiences the great joy that only the true God can experience. And because I am considered by all, and even more I consider myself, one of the worst evildoers ever, I have set my mind on serving Him by risking my body in grave dangers and by plucking my former evil acts from my soul so that I may attain the glory that knows no end. Hence, my good lords, do not doubt my loyalty, but rather, make yourselves ready; for I will lead you quickly to where you will be most certain that we will win great and just booty and trophies."

70

About the speech that Esplandián made to Gastiles in Frandalo's presence.

Hearing this, Esplandián turned to Gastiles and said:

"Señor, you have just heard what this noble knight has said, and you also know what he did after he joined us. Seeing that Frandalo wants to dedicate an earnest effort to this task, I am certain that one of the principal tools for conquering this land of Turkey and turning it to the service of God and the emperor, your uncle, is Frandalo's advice and desire. I can do nothing other than follow him with my companions and my person, and thereby carry out everything that fortune sees fit to grant us. Besides this, it remains for you, my good Lord, to respond."

About the counsel Frandalo, Esplandián, and Gastiles took with each other in order to lay siege to the manor town of Alfarín, and how they departed for their target, Gastiles going by sea and the others by land.

The very prudent Gastiles, who was a very good knight in every way and who loved Esplandián very much, knew how much good will his uncle the emperor had for him, and he knew that the truce was broken. Therefore, he thought that however he chose to use the fleet—even though fortune intervened in the outcome—the emperor would see it more as a service than a mistake. So he responded in the following manner:

"Lord Esplandián, if it is certain that my spirit is delighted and relieved to serve my uncle or to help you, how much more should it be to work for the Lord whose subjects we all are. This is especially true in the light of Frandalo's will to put into effect what until this campaign he had considered so alien and so abhorrent. Well then, nothing remains but to carry out Frandalo's plan. Still, let us not lack determination. And I shall follow your command."

"With that," said Frandalo, "let me take charge, and if what I plan perchance goes awry, it will be obvious to you that it happened more because of misfortune than because of my fault. Since the time has come to act, you, Lord Gastiles, should go immediately to your fleet. With everyone available in it, start sailing toward Villa Alfarín[1] as soon as night falls, for you already know the site and its big fortress quite well. As for my nephew Belleriz, whom I sent recently to reconnoiter it, he told me that in the town are Infanta Heliaxa,[2] daughter of King Anfion de Media[3] and wife of Prince Alforax,[4] inheritor of the seigniory of Persia. He also found out that they wanted to get married and go to the very great city of Ctesifonte.[5] If God allows us to arrive quickly enough, we will capture her either in the town or somewhere on the road; and, if we conquer this place, which I expect, a large part of that district will become subject to us. I will guide all my men who have horses and Esplandián with all his knights to a certain place so that, when your fleet arrives in the port at night and begins an attack from the sea, we will also begin to attack by land. I trust that, in the name of the Almighty Lord who is guiding us, and in whose service we go forward, we will capture both the town and the infanta."

With this agreement about which you have just heard, Gastiles took leave of Esplandián and all his companions, knowing full well the time he had to arrive at the port of Alfarín in order to begin the battle. Then he rejoined his immense fleet, and, pretending to direct the fleet back to Constantinople, began to sail across the deep sea without disclosing to any of his comrades what the real destination of their voyage was. Esplandián and strong Frandalo spoke to Norandel and their other companions, telling them how they needed to equip themselves in order to fulfill their desire, which was to find more dangers and great battles in which they could earn honor and renown. Then, following the lead of their ardent and brave hearts, Esplandián and Frandalo urged them to prepare their armor and horses to be ready by the time strong Frandalo ordered them to begin their march. This news filled their spirits with great joy and happiness, which is how good knights ought to feel when they are heading into actions that may properly appertain[6] to them even though they may seem very dangerous. This is so because such actions neces-

sarily show them the purpose of virtue[1] demanded by the profession of knight errantry. Although other, lower occupations are praised for their own high qualities, chivalry demands still higher qualities, since, like the bright sun that stands out above all other luminaries, knight errantry shines more splendently[2] than any other métier.

72

How Esplandián and Frandalo left Forbidden Mountain with several other knights and arrived near Villa Alfarín; how, sending their companions in another direction under Belleriz's command, Esplandián and Frandalo went by way of Venturous Spring where they found Infanta Heliaxa who was guarded by twenty knights; and how, after defeating the knights by force of arms in an open field, Esplandián and Frandalo took the infanta away most honorably.

After daylight disappeared and night came, Esplandián charged Libeo with the defense of Forbidden Mountain and with guarding the Turkish king and the two captive captains. Then about a hundred stout knights put on their strong armor, provisioned themselves with enough victuals for the four days they planned to be separated from Gastiles' fleet, mounted their horses, rode very quickly through the mountain's little postern gate, about which you have already heard, and took the road Frandalo showed them. Once they were all assembled together on the other side of the gate, they rode through the night across a very flat and beautiful land covered with great groves of trees. They did not come across a single settlement because Frandalo, who knew the land

---

[1] The term *virtud* [virtue] in the last decade of the fifteenth century in Spain, and indeed, until the end of the Spanish Golden Age (ca. 1700) retained its Latin connotations. To Virgil, for example, *virtus* represented the highest ideals of the Roman Empire: valor, worth, merit, and moral perfection. Moreover, in the last chap. of bk. IV, when Urganda tells Balán that he has the honor of dubbing Esplandián, she mentions virtue as one of the three maximum qualities in GRM's chivalric universe: virtue, reason, and courage/strength/zeal (*esfuerzo*). See CB, II, 1758. As glossed by Eugène Vinaver in Malory's Arthurian Cycle, 'vertue' meant power and ability. A century earlier in English, vertu also meant moral excellence. Chaucer uses the term in this sense in the General Prologue to *The Canterbury Tales* in describing the clerk: "Sownynge in moral vertu was his speche, / And gladly wolde he lerne and gladly teche" (See Chaucer, 28, lines 307–8).

[2] The Spanish verb for "shines more splendently" reminds the reader that Esplandián is the quintessential knight errant: *resplandece/Esplandián*. It is worth noting, in addition, that the same term is used for Tirant lo Blanc at the beginning of this Catalan chivalric novel, which is contemporaneous with GRM's Amadís Cycle: "aquell tan famós cavaller, que, com lo sol resplandeix entre los altres planetes, així resplandeix aquest en singularitat de cavalleria entre els altres cavallers del món, apellat Tirant lo Blanc" [that very famous knight who, as the sun shines among the other planets, also shines in unique chivalric fashion among the world's other knights, a knight called Tirant lo Blanc]. See Joanot Martorell, *Tirant lo Blanc*, Martí de Riquer, ed., vol. 1 (Barcelona: Edicions 62, 1983), 21.

well, led them away from the villages so that their presence would not be discovered. At daybreak, they were very well hidden in the deepest part of a wood into which they and their horses had walked, and they spent the whole day there resting. When night came, they began to travel again on foot, with Frandalo taking the lead. Only he and his nephew Belleriz knew where they were going. After travelling through most of the night and when they were approaching the town, Frandalo said to Esplandián:

"Señor, let these knights go with my nephew Belleriz, for by daybreak he will be able to guide them to a place in some foothills from which they can see Villa Alfarín; and if Gastiles gets to the port before their arrival and has already begun the battle, then they will be able to hear it. Let them do what seems most expedient to them, and let them be guided by Belleriz's instructions, because, given my tutoring, he will know what to do just as well as I would. As for us, I will lead you to Venturous Spring,[3] which lies in a place between the villa and Ctesifonte.[4] This spring is highly unusual in that it never lacks for adventures; and it may be that fortune will allow us to lay our hands on Infanta Heliaxa, whom I mentioned to you. From the spring we shall take the road back to where our knights are."

"My true friend," Esplandián said, "we are all under your care and orders; so let everything be done according to your plans."

Then, as his uncle commanded, Belleriz departed with the knights, and Esplandián and strong Frandalo departed with their squires and Damsel Carmela, who never left Esplandián's presence. Frandalo set off on the road with Esplandián following him, and they travelled until day was about to break and they were near Venturous Spring, which was situated between four pillars of gilded copper. Each of the pillars was inscribed with very beautiful letters. What caused these inscriptions to be placed on them will be declared to you in due time. Just before dawn, at the moment they arrived near the spring, they noticed a bright light which allowed them to see that a magnificent piece of golden cloth was attached to the top of the four pillars. Under the cloth was a damsel who was preparing to rise from a bed covered with silk drapes

---

[3] The original Spanish name, *Fuente Aventurosa*, can be translated as we have it or as the 1694 English edition of vol. 9 translates this place that takes on the life of a minor literary mythical space: Adventurous Fountain. We follow SS, which lists "spring" as the first definition of *fuente*.

[4] Although GRM's style and content become more realistic as we progress from bk. to bk. in the Amadís Cycle, there is a relative lack of geographical realism in this information, assuming the narrator would have us believe Venturous Spring is roughly half way between the coast and Ctesiphon—and assuming he means to identify the latter city with GRM's Tesifante; for the real location is 1875 km from the Mediterranean coast. On the other hand, GRM may be less "unrealistic" than surface appearance would suggest. They plan to be gone for four days; they traverse flat, beautiful, and wooded terrain; they travel at night on foot; and they stay away from inhabited areas. Perhaps they could travel several hundred kms in this fashion. In other words, the narrator is assuming that the reader, with a minimum of textual signs, is able to add to the text his or her own information about verisimilar time and distance.

and to get dressed. Twenty knights well equipped with arms and horses were guarding her, and they had a very beautiful and elegantly caparisoned palfrey ready for her. When Frandalo, who was in the lead, saw them, he said to Esplandián:

"Well now, señor! This is the kind of hunt you're fond of."

Then they charged the knights as fast as their horses would go. Since the attack surprised the enemy, Frandalo and Esplandián caught them off guard. Some of them, supposing there were many attackers, fled across the field in disarray, but others remained bunched together. Two of these latter defenders were immediately killed in the first lance encounters; however, realizing there were no more than two attackers, they quickly reformed their ranks and counterattacked so abruptly and so hard that they almost knocked Frandalo and Esplandián out of their saddles. But, since our knights were so good, and since they saw that they were on the verge of being killed and that their only recourse was to kill or to die, they shook off their sluggishness and began attacking so roughly that, before breaking their first lance, eight of the enemy knights were left lying on the ground dead or wounded before them. Once they were without their lances, they seized their swords and continued attacking those who remained. As these did the same, there began a very fierce and no less dangerous combat. The blows Esplandián dealt out cannot, nor ought to be, believed, for no mortal person had ever hit so powerfully. If we are to give any credence to this, it is because this knight lived such a holy life which he directed wholly and solely to serving the world's Redeemer and to believing in His holy law, which He had given the world so recently.[5] It could be that, just as He gave our knight a special grace by which he was able to achieve such great marvels in arms for as long as he wore them, He also gave some others a special grace of such hearty zeal and corporal strength that

---

[5] Although GRM and his contemporaneous readers were not overly upset by anachronism in fiction, nevertheless, here the narrator wants subtly to remind the reader that he has set the time of the action close to the advent of Christianity. However, it cannot be too close given other indicators in the last chap. The action must take place both after the founding of Ctesiphon (211) and Constantinople (330). The other *termino ad quem* is the advent of Arthur, which happens somewhere near 430 (i.e., the death of Christ plus the 400 years Joseph of Arimatheus safeguards the Holy Grail) and which, as GRM specifies in bk. II, comes after Amadís and his son. These dates (330–430) leave us within the period when there was still a Roman emperor (i.e., until 476). Furthermore, in bk. IV, chap. 129, the narrator gives Balán's genealogy in order to justify the conversion of this pivotal character from heathenish giantdom to Christendom and to relate Balán and his descendants to King Arthur's court. Assuming twenty years per generation, and assuming a rough dating of the fictional Arthur at 430, here is the genealogy: Madanfabul (330); Balán (and his contemporary Amadís, 350); Bravor (and his contemporary Esplandián, 370); Galeote (390); another Balán (410); Segurades (430); Bravor el Brun (Tristan's friend, 450); Galeote el Brun (Lancelot's friend, 470). GRM does not give these dates. They are only rough approximations, and do not hold up exactly upon close scrutiny, but, for date-conscious readers, they give an idea of the general period involved, and they serve to link GRM's characters with the Arthurian myth. For Montalvo and his readers, literary and mythical time was much more significant than real, chronological time.

they were able to give equally hard blows—which is what we read in some histories. However, Esplandián needed strength from all sources, because he and Frandalo were exhausted from all the blows they had given, and there were many opponents among whom there were courageous knights and two very strong giants. If both of them were not such champion knights, they would not have been able to maintain the field much longer.

With increased daylight, Esplandián was able to see what Frandalo was doing and that their enemies were putting a lot of energy into trying to kill them. He also saw that the attackers were sheltered behind the giants, who were being used as shields. Therefore, taking a firm hold of his good enchanted sword by its pommel, he spurred his horse, which by this time was quite tired, and, standing in the stirrups, he struck one of the giants so hard on top of his helmet that, although it was made out of very strong, heavy iron—as giants' helmets should be—it was not strong enough to keep his helmet and his head from being split in two down to his neck. With this blow the giant fell so hard to the ground that it was as if a tower had fallen.[6] This blow was one of the two greatest and most notable he or anyone else mentioned in this great story ever gave. Although his father Amadís killed some very big and strong giants, and his brother Galaor killed Albadán, the strong giant on Galtares Cliff,[7] these victories happened as a result of either very fortuitous encounters or Our Lord's permission, because they were lucky that their lance tips struck those giants in vulnerable places that caused their deaths. And even then, these heroes were sometimes injured by the fortunate blow itself. But to cut in two a thick, strong helmet and the head inside it by arm strength alone, that, as I have already told you, you will not find anywhere else in this entire story. This is because those giants were so powerful and they could wear such smooth and heavy helmets that, until this combat, no one ever heard of a knight's sword catching hold on their helmets or cutting through them.

When the six knights who remained alive—the other six were already very badly defeated—saw such a monstrous blow, they were so frightened they left the field and began fleeing. Esplandián pursued them and, reaching one of them, gave him such a great blow on top of his shoulder that he split him open down to the waist. Meanwhile, Frandalo was engaged in a battle with another giant, but he was not able to defeat him. When Esplandián saw the other knights flee leaving the field free of enemies, with his sword in his hand ready to attack he turned swiftly against the giant. Frandalo, seeing him in this position, said:

"Señor, please leave him to me, for if I defeat him you will esteem me much more."

---

[6] This tower metaphor confirms the view that GRM has a traditional conception of giants and their size. According to the pre-Rabelaisian tradition, giants were evil, stupid, gluttonous, strong, and very large, measuring between fifteen and thirty cubits (eight to sixteen meters). See Stephens, *Giants*, 58–97.

[7] This episode takes place in bk. I, chap. 12.

"Oh Frandalo," said Esplandián in a loud voice, "I am well acquainted with your proven courage; but this is not the time for us to observe niceties and proper manners while fighting such an evil type as this giant."

When the giant heard Frandalo's name, he stayed his sword and said:

"Frandalo, I ask you, please hear what I want to tell you."

When both knights saw him surrender his arms and show that he refused to defend himself, they stopped attacking him, and Frandalo said to him:

"Who are you? It seems you know me."

"I'm your cousin Foron,"[8] he said. "The one who often accompanied you in those great adventures in the past you and I know about."

"Then take off your helmet," ordered Frandalo. "I want to see if you're telling me the truth."

The giant took it off as best he could, and Frandalo recognized him because he loved him very much. Then Frandalo said to Esplandián:

"May it please your grace to give this knight to me."

"Good friend," said Esplandián, "I will grant that and everything else you ask or command."

"Well then, cousin," said Frandalo, "give your armor to those squires and come with us; but you must swear not to hinder us in anything you see us do. If you swear this, before night arrives, I'll show my loyalty to you by freeing you."

"Then I so promise," said the giant as he gave his arms to Sargil and Fornace,[9] Frandalo's squire.

After that, they all went to the spring where the damsel was. They found her dressed and standing on the bed. Her garments were very elegant and they were covered with golden flowers. Strings of pearls and other very valuable precious stones with holes in the center were strung from strands of her beautiful hair. Aside from the fact that her attire was quite sumptuous and valuable, she was a strange sight to see. Her bearing was so prepossessing that it seemed she was not affected by what happened to her knights. When they approached her, Frandalo recognized her immediately as Heliaxa, Infante Al-

---

[8] Foron does not appear in bks. I to IV. The fact that he is clearly identified as a giant, that he is related to Frandalo, and that Frandalo has converted, confirms that the latter is a "good giant." See Stephens' discussion of Saint Christopher (*Giants*, 43–52): "Christopher illustrates all the problems involved in identifying any Giant as *inherently* 'Us,' good or domestic. As Giant, he was faithful to the cultural meaning of his earlier nature as Cynocephalus, and remained the prime example of a threatening and essentially inhuman Other who had been miraculously tamed and convinced to serve the good" (Stevens, 50). Columbus, Juan de la Cosa, GRM, and most Spaniards of that period were consumed with the idea of, as Juan de la Cosa's illuminated chart shows, carrying Christ and Christianity to so-called pagan lands. See fig. 14, which is an enlargement of St. Christopher featured on Juan de la Cosa's chart of the Caribbean dated 1500. For more on the relationship between this chart, GRM, and California, see Little, "Spain's Fantastic Vision," 9–14.

[9] Fornace does not appear in bks. I to IV.

forax's wife. Just before Frandalo was captured by Maneli the Prudent, he had been present at their wedding; he had seen her arrive on her journey from the kingdom of Media; and he saw her at a tourney many knights and strong giants gave in her honor and in which Frandalo performed marvels that were highly praised by all. In fact, he was so favored by that infanta that she took him for her knight. Turning to Esplandián, he said:

"Señor, this is the catch we were searching for."

Frandalo told him who she was, and he asked permission to speak to her. Esplandián answered that whatever Frandalo did he considered well done. Then Frandalo dismounted, took off his helmet and went to kneel before the infanta who immediately recognized him. She stretched out her very beautiful hands for him to kiss, which is what he wanted to do, and she said to him:

"My good friend Frandalo, what is this? You were once my knight and servant. Why have you now become my enemy and killed my knights? I never expected such a good man as you, with your chivalric accomplishments, to do anything like this. Rather, I thought that you alone would remain in my favor and faithful service should all others fail me."

"Good lady," said Frandalo, "I am not surprised by your blaming me, for I understand you have not received news about what has happened to me since I left your presence and departed from your court. When these things are declared to you, I'm certain you'll think everything I've done has been proper. However, be this as it may, if my will were my own and under no coercion, I would now, during this adversity of yours, look after your welfare more enthusiastically."

Hearing this, Esplandián said:

"My true friend, your will is your own, and you are under no limiting constraint of any sort."

"Well, señor, if that is so," he said, "let what happens to this lady be guided by my decisions."

"It shall be so," said Esplandián.

Then Frandalo said to the infanta:

"Mount your palfrey, señora, and ride with us to a place where you will see another tourney, which is even more beautiful than the one that was held for your wedding. If God directs things as I think He will, then you will soon see that what I shall do will justify the praise and favors I received from your Highness. And depending on what I can do, I, a poor knight, will be an example and warning to high princes like you that, when God places you on your thrones and you seem to have everything at your feet, then you should take care to honor the less fortunate by drawing them near to you. You should do this in order to remember that, as in what has just happened to you, fortune's wheel changes swiftly along with all changeable things."

Hearing this, the infanta made no sign of weakness. As she was mounting her horse she said to him:

"If I have lost some good knights, other better ones remain in my service. Now, let us go wherever it may please you."

73

How Esplandián and Frandalo arrived at Villa Alfarín where they saw the battle was already engaged between their men, who were attacking very daringly, and the enemy forces, who, after an armed skirmish with the attackers, were forced back into the villa where they were now found alone.

After what just happened, they took the road toward Villa Alfarín with Frandalo holding the reins of Infanta Heliaxa's horse and with Esplandián, who decided not to remove his helmet, speaking with the giant. While they were still three leagues away, they heard voices shouting inside and outside the town, and they heard what sounded like very lively combat. It all made them wonder what it meant, and they regretted having taken so long in arriving. Spurring their animals more than before, they did not take long getting within view of the town. Then they saw that their land forces were engaged in a tumultuous and dangerous battle with the enemy. When they reached a place where some of their men—some servants of little value—were watching the fight, they left their squires, Damsel Carmela, the giant, and Infanta Heliaxa; and they told them to do nothing but remain there, and if they did not, they would pay the consequences. Then the infanta said to them:

"Knights, as for that, do not worry; for, if you are as stout in the fight as I am in keeping my word, it will not be long before you enter the town."

Taking their arms and going as fast as their horses could go, they attacked the enemy. As their people were nearby, they saw they were all on foot because the terrain was so rugged that the horses were useless. Also, they saw that Norandel, Talanque, Maneli, Ambor, the king of Dacia, Belleriz, Gandalín, and Lasindo were leading their men in a crude battle against the knights who had sallied from the town via a gate and a drawbridge that crossed a deep moat. Since the road was very narrow and there were many men from the villa, there was no way for so few knights to attack them as they desired. Seeing this situation, Esplandián dismounted, and Frandalo did likewise. Saying, "Friend, protect me," Esplandián went forward. Covering himself with his shield and grabbing his sword, he passed through those who were on his side and started attacking the enemy. With the great, mortal blows he was dishing out with his sword, he did not bother to stop at the enemy's first line, but rather, he marched forward killing and knocking to the ground all who tried to block his way. Without pausing whatsoever, he cleared a path through to the last of the enemy. Frandalo followed the whole way, fearing the dangers to Esplandián's life as well as his own. What can I tell? They harried so much and they killed so many of them that they had to cross the bridge in order to shelter and defend themselves inside the town. However, since Esplandián was so entangled with their opponents, they were not able to elude them, but rather, he was forced to continue fighting even after arriving at the gate. When Frandalo saw what was happening, while still struggling mightily to protect Esplandián, he said to him:

"Oh Lord of the world, help your knight."

With a great display of strength and a courageous heart, he arrived at the gate, which was almost closed. Suffering many very heavy blows, Frandalo went through it just as the gates were being closed. This left many from the villa locked outside and Esplandián and Frandalo locked inside and surrounded by the enemy.

74

Of the strange things that were done all alone
By the great knight and Frandalo the Strong;
Seeing death, like a neighbor, had come along,
They continued to fight while trapped in the town;
And how, after the gates were broken down
By Belleriz, Talanque, good Norandel,
Gandalín, Garinto, and Ambor de Gadel,
The Turks surrendered their arms with a moan.[1]

Once both knights were inside the villa with the gates closed on them, Frandalo saw what danger they were in, and, thinking all his companions were inside the villa as he was, he refused to consider any other action than dedicating himself solely to sticking close to Esplandián in order to help and defend him. Meanwhile, he was still engaged in killing and felling many of the enemy on the walkway near the town's walls.[2] Because of Frandalo's and Esplandián's great strength, their foes kept a respectful distance from them. For this reason, some of the townspeople had enough room to open the gates again for their comrades, who were shouting that they would all die if they did not open them. Most of the foes were able to enter, but some were killed. Then the gates were closed again. Still, because the passageway was so narrow and filled with corpses, none of Esplandián's men was able to come through the gates with the enemy. When those people were safely out of danger, and when they realized there were only two knights to defeat inside the town, they took heart, raised a great algarad, and rushed at their backs in order to kill them. Frandalo turned his head and saw them, but he could not imagine how they were going to escape death. However, God, who in such moments succors His own with previously unheard of methods, sent Frandalo the idea of looking toward the wall where he saw a stone stairway; and then it occurred

---

[1] While the translation has taken the liberty to vary the rhyme scheme, the original repeats the pattern seen in previous epigraphic poems.

[2] The Spanish phrase here, *por la ronda los llevaba*, refers to the space between the inside of a city's walls and where the buildings begin. This space was used by the roundsman at night to preserve law and order.

to him that, if they were to ascend it, they would be able to defend themselves much better from such a high position rather than in the low position where they were. Grabbing Esplandián by the strap on his helmet,[3] he said:

"Señor, take pity on our lives and retreat with me quickly. If you don't, we're both dead."

Saying this and ascending the stone stairway was one simultaneous action. Hearing Frandalo's loud entreaties, Esplandián reacted as if he were awaking from a very deep sleep—for he had been so completely absorbed in the fighting—and he agreed to take the recommended remedial action. This pained his foes who had him hemmed in on every side. He went up the stairway very eagerly since he was being harried by many very strong blows. Still, those he hit squarely needed no further help. Finally, both knights reached the top of the wall. Frandalo, who knew the villa well, said:

"Señor, follow me."

As fast as they could, they retreated to an arch in the passageway at the top of the town's main gate. Then the townspeople gathered below them fearlessly, and from there they attacked the two knights over and over again. However, since the wall was narrow enough for two or three men alone to stand guard in it, by each taking one side of the arch they were able to defend themselves from the enemy without much difficulty. There they toiled hard until night came. Meanwhile Norandel and his companions, who were deeply upset thinking that Esplandián was either lost or dead, arrived at the gate. They intended to break it down by the force of their combined strength; but this plan failed because the gates and the locks on the inside were too strong for them. Since nothing they tried worked, they decided to set fire to it. So they shouted to their own troops to bring them something with which to start a fire.

Just when the plight Esplandián and strong Frandalo were in had reached such an extreme, and while they were avoiding death and capture by force of arms even though they were being combatted by many armed men, a fully armed knight riding a large horse came down the street toward them shouting:

"Take courage, knights and townsmen. Even though the enemy is waging a very hard and cruel attack against us by sea, and even though they have left many of our men dead or wounded from one end of the port to the other, nevertheless, by the grace of our gods they have not been able to take even one of our battlements."

When those who were on the wall fighting against our two knights heard this, their spirits revived, for they had a deep fear that they would lose the battle at the town's weakest point, which was on the side by the sea. So they said to the knight on horseback:

---

[3] See chap. 30, n. 2, for a discussion of these straps [*tiracoles*] on Esplandián's helmet. In this case, it is clear that Frandalo is pulling on the straps on the back of the helmet in order to attract the knight's attention. If this is the case, it appears GRM is using the term *tiracoles* correctly here.

"Knight, go aid those in the sea battle; as for us here, we have little to fear. But we'll tell you something amazing the likes of which has never been seen before: two of the enemy's knights plunged into the fray with us. They've both done marvellous deeds of arms, but the smaller one is so amazing we can't imagine he's mortal. He's given and received so many blows, and he's killed so many of us, that we'd be dumbfounded if he could be killed. In any case, just when we began to press both of them most, fortune decided to favor them by showing them one of the wall's stairways by which they were able to save themselves. Now they're defending themselves from us in that arch over the gate. We can't believe they were able to find it unless one of them knew about it beforehand."

"Capture them alive," said the knight who was below on horseback, "and hold them for ransom. They may be so important that their companions will leave us in peace in exchange for them."

"You're quite right," they said.

Then those who were fighting backed up a little and said to Esplandián and Frandalo:

"Knights, you must realize that there's no way you can avoid being killed. But because we appreciate your great prowess,[4] we think it would be a pity for men like you to die. Therefore, give up, and we'll save your lives."

Esplandián heard them and responded:

"What! Are you crazy! Do you think you are already finished with us? Well, I trust in my Lord Jesus Christ, and I tell you that before morning we will capture the town, and you will be killed, and your wives and children will be placed in harsh captivity. But if you want to accept our mercy before more are killed, we shall make you the offer you are threatening us with."

Hearing this, the knight who was still on his horse below flew into a rage and said:

"Well then, either kill them now or die. How shameful it is for two lone men to defend themselves from you. All they have is that lord they men-

---

[4] Knightly prowess [*bondad*] is defined in detail in Alfonso el Sabio's great thirteenth-century legal compendium, *Las Siete Partidas* (ca. 1270), Partida II, Title XXI, Law IV and V: "Prowess is the good qualities that men naturally have in themselves, which are called virtues in Latin. Among all these qualities, the four principal ones are prudence, wisdom, strength, and justice." According to this treatise, these four qualities give rise logically and necessarily to knights' offensive and defensive arms, which are then described and discussed. See *Las Siete Partidas*, in *Colección de códices y leyes de España* (Madrid: Imprenta de R. Labajos, 1865), 240–49. In Chaucer, the term was still close to its Latin root, *bonum* [good]: "bounte," "bonte," "bownte." In the "Monk's Tale" in *The Canterbury Tales*, the Monk describes Hercules in these terms:

> Thurghout this wyde world his name ran,
> What for his strengthe and for his heigh bountee,
> And every reawme wente he for to see. (line 2114)

A century later, in Malory's Arthurian Cycle, the term for this concept is worship. Below, the narrator will refer to Frandalo and Esplandián's prudence [*cordura*], the first of the knightly virtues mentioned by Alfonso el Sabio's *Las siete partidas*: "Prudence will instruct them how to behave properly and keep away from harm" (241).

tioned, and he's our enemy. Don't believe me if these two knights aren't the same ones who seized our lord, King Armato."

When those who were on the wall heard what the knight said, they made a great clamor and said:

"Either they die or we do."

Since there was so much commotion, and since in their eagerness they all tried to charge forward at once, they became jammed together in the wall's narrow walkway with many of them falling into the inside passageway below. But despite all the enemies' howling[5] and fury, the two stout-hearted knights' courage and zeal did not flag. On the contrary, Esplandián came back at them like a fierce, rampaging lion[6] that one sees charging a line of hunters, and even though he took on those who were waiting for him two or three at a time, those he hit squarely were left either dead or badly wounded. While those who were on the wall were throwing rocks and shooting arrows at him, Esplandián felt it was best to return to a defensive position. Meantime, Frandalo was not remaining inactive; rather, he made a supreme effort to fight in tandem with Esplandián, who was at his side, because he was afraid of not doing what had to be done in Esplandián's presence. Even though he was hit in many places and blood was flowing from more than ten wounds, he did marvellous deeds of arms and he killed many. But, if their companions outside the walls had not arrived at that moment with fire and kindling, and despite all of the defensive prowess of theirs about which we have told you, they

---

[5] The word in JJAS is *algarradas*; in Gay. it is *albuervolas*; and in SP, JV, and JJF it is *abueruolas*. Gay. says the word is Arabic and is a synonym for *grito* or *alarido* [algarad, shouting]. The word comes from Arabic *wálwala*, a word still current in Arabic meaning shouts. lists the word as accented on the penultimate syllable. Martín Alonso, *Enciclopedia del idioma* lists *albuérbola* as a thirteenth- to seventeenth-century variant of the contemporary word *albórbola*, which means gaiety, cheering. Cov. says the word implies that what causes the shouting will die down shortly just as boiling water calms down quickly after the heat is removed. DCECH attests the word among contemporary Sephardic women in Morocco who use a variant of it (*auarualás*) during wedding festivities. They would have taken it to Morocco as a result of their expulsion from Spain in 1492, during the time Esplandián was being written. On the other hand, it is possible that JJAS's version is closer to GRM's intention. Cov. says that an *algarada* [*sic*] is a type of military trick. Cov. adds that "since this stratagem is carried out by many soldiers and much shouting, it is called *algarada*." We choose to follow Gay. and SP because the terms are related and because the specific quality of howling seems to fit the context best.

[6] Metaphor is rare in GRM's Amadís Cycle; so when it is used, it is as refreshing as it is significant. The lion is traditional for a medieval knight (for example, Chrétien de Troyes's *Yvain, ou le chevalier au lion*, ca. 1170), and the image is central to medieval bestiaries. In fact, in *Esplandián*, the figure appears first at the end of chap. 1, and it will be seen again in chap. 89. Among other things, it reminds us that Leonorina is the object of Esplandián's desire; that he was suckled by a lioness; and that he is a kingly and Christ-like figure. In his compendium of medieval bestiaries, Ignacio Malaxecheverría says that the lion symbolized Christ as the king of all humans and that the lioness symbolized the Virgin Mary. For further lion symbolism, see chap. 89 below.

would not have avoided being killed, because those in the town had the kind of weapons that would have allowed them to kill or knock them off the wall with impunity. When the Christian reinforcements set fire to the gate, the defenders inside the town could not repel them because the arch over the gate was held by Esplandián and Frandalo; therefore, it was not long before the gates were reduced to ashes.

When those in the town saw this happen, they had no choice but to bring even more firewood, thereby feeding the fire and blocking the way for the enemy to enter. What can I say?[7] The fire burned so crisply and so powerfully that Esplandián and Frandalo would have been incinerated in a half hour if it were not for their knightly prowess. However, by means of their great prudence they were able to protect themselves for a long time, until finally the stones began to heat up and they began to feel the heat on the soles of their feet. When Norandel and his companions realized that those on the inside were using the same device they had used to block the entrance, and when they heard them say the two knights were being burned, they decided to order their men to go as quickly as they could to a nearby lagoon from which cattle drank, to fill their helmets[8] with water and to throw it on the fire. They did this very diligently and with no little danger to themselves, for some of them were killed by the many arrows that were being shot at them. But the attackers poured on the water so quickly that, no matter how much wood those on the inside heaped on the fire, the pile was soon wet and the fire began to die down.

Upon seeing this, Talanque and Maneli, who were in front of their men and so close to the fire it caused great wonderment that they could stand such heat, plunged into the middle of the mass of red-hot coals at great risk to themselves. Even though the lower part of their armor and the flesh on their legs were burned, and even though they were met by hard blows from the enemy, their great desire forced them not to stop until they crossed completely into the town. Once they were inside, you could see the marvellous deeds of arms they accomplished. Both killed and wounded all those from the town whom they found in their path; however, as there were many of them, Talanque and Maneli became surrounded on all sides. That is when Norandel came through the fire to rescue them; and after Norandel came Ambor de Gadel, Gandalín, the king of Dacia, Belleriz, and many other good knights who were following them. Seeing their enemies before them, the townsmen lost heart and fled through the streets. Likewise, those on the wall began to flee, with Esplandián and Frandalo in hot pursuit, killing them and knocking them off the wall so cruelly that in a short while, between the dead and the fleeing, there were none left to fight against. Then they went down from the

---

[7] Above, the narrator uses the plural, magisterial we, and here he uses the singular I. We, the translator, have chosen to respect such variations in the original text.

[8] This use of the helmet as a fire bucket supports conclusion that the helmets in the Amadís Cycle are shaped like solid cylinders or barrels made of one piece.

wall and rejoined their companions who were hurrying about wounding and killing the foes. Although the darkness of night had descended upon them several hours earlier, light from the fire allowed them all to see each other.[9]

75

About how, on the same night they entered the villa, Esplandián sent for Infanta Heliaxa and the giant who had remained outside the town with Damsel Carmela and certain foot soldiers.

When the news came to those who were fighting on the sea that their town had been seized and that all hope was lost, they slackened their effort and became weak-hearted. At the same time, Gastiles and his men heard the same news, and they redoubled their effort so much that in a short time they breached the enemy's lines of defense. All the foes then sought sanctuary in a very magnificent and strong temple of Jupiter. Noticing how very dark the night was, Gastiles stopped his men as well as he could, and he quickly sent word out of his camp to Esplandián to find what the situation was like for him and his forces in the villa. Because the night was so dark he did not dare move from his camp, and he wanted Esplandián to agree with him that this was the right course of action until morning came; for if their men started to enter the houses they would only kill one another. When Esplandián received this message, he thought it was a very good idea, and he ordered it to be put into effect. Then he remembered he had left only the two squires and a few servants to guard Infanta Heliaxa, the giant, and the provisions packed on some camels, and he was worried he might have lost her. Calling Gandalín and Lasindo, he said to them:

"Go immediately to the place you left the camels. There you will find Damsel Carmela and another woman. Do not leave them alone until morning, and then bring them here. Make sure you take special care of the woman, for she is of high estate."

Hearing this, they left by the gate, found some horses near there which their squires were tending, mounted, and rode where they were ordered to go. When they arrived, they saw the infanta seated next to Damsel Carmela on the green grass, and she seemed like a marvellous vision: for more than twenty paces around her there was a resplendent ring of light that was as

---

[9] The description of this episode is reminiscent of the chronicler Fernando del Pulgar's description of the Christians' successful battle against the invading Turks at Rhodes in 1479: "And the Christians struggled hard and fought throughout the streets against the Turks, and they threw them out of the city. In this feat of arms many died on both sides; notable among the dead within the city were fourteen knight commanders [*comendadores*], principle men all, who fought with great zeal to cast the Turks out. And as the Turks saw that they could not seize the city, because it had been rescued by the great aid that came to it daily from everywhere by land and by sea throughout Christendom, they decided to raise the siege they had laid against it" (Pulgar, *Crónica*, 412).

bright as if it came from a torch. The cause of this light was the magnificent, priceless gems that were strung along strands of her hair. Likewise, her hands were studded with very beautiful rings and the most precious stones to be found anywhere. The infanta's father was very covetous of these jewels, and he worked very diligently to search throughout the world to find and purchase them; and when he had to send his daughter to wed Infante Alforax, he shared many of his jewels with her because he loved her very much.

So, after Gandalín and Lasindo arrived in her presence, they greeted her with consummate courtly manners, for they recognized immediately that she was a person of very high station, and they said:

"Good lady, Esplandián has sent us to come offer you our service; and we hereby do so most willingly. Señora, you may dispose of us as you please."

"Good friends," she said, "I thank him and you very much for your offer; but I do not know about whom you are speaking. I was brought here by two knights. One I recognized as Frandalo, but I do not know who the other one was."

"Señora," said Carmela, "the other one is Esplandián. He's the one you saw perform unheard of feats of arms—the likes of which none other could do—when your knights were killed and wounded."

"Is it true, damsel," asked the infanta, "that the knight who was accompanying Frandalo is Esplandián? The one who conquered Forbidden Mountain, killed the giants, and later captured my lord, King Armato?"

"Yes, señora," said the damsel, "the one you saw is Esplandián."

"I am most vexed by him," said the infanta, "because it is said that he is the most courtly and revered knight in the world, but he refused to speak to me even though he knew who I am and even though he had me in his power as a captive . That is when he should have shown his virtues and his nobility. Therefore, I shall always harbor this complaint about him wherever I may be."

"Good lady," said Carmela, "don't judge him so harshly, and don't think what he did was so bad. He probably did it because he loves Frandalo so much; and when Esplandián saw you knew him, he wanted to give his friend all the honor of addressing you. And it seemed to him that since Frandalo is first in his affection, he should be the first to serve you without any other interference from anyone else. You may be very certain that Esplandián is the one knight in the world who knows best how to honor and favor his friends."

"In that case," said the infanta, "if he cannot exculpate himself with more legitimate reasons than that, he shall not receive pardon from me."

Gandalín and Lasindo made the men who were there mow the grass and cut branches from the trees; then they used Esplandián's, Frandalo's, and their own cloaks of fine, crimson silk to make a bed for the infanta, and they invited her to use it to make herself comfortable and to sleep. She asked them if the villa had surrendered to them yet.

"Yes," they said. "Our land and sea forces are both inside the town. They are only waiting for daylight before they kill everyone there."

"Then, oh knights, I entreat you," she said, "take me to Esplandián and Frandalo before dawn. It may be that many lives will be saved if they see me

first. This is because it will be necessary for those who are going to do the killing to expose their lives to mortal dangers; for the townspeople have probably gathered in the temple from where they cannot be routed out without grave danger to the attackers."

"We shall do as you say," they said, "and we shall do as Esplandián ordered us when he sent us here."

"Now I want to sleep in order to protect my life," said the infanta. "If my life failed me, I would get little satisfaction from whatever vengeance could be had for this grievous destruction; because it seems to me that such vengeance will neither be small nor long in coming."

Then she lay down and slept very soundly. After finding out who the giant was and why he escaped with his life, Gandalín, who was very experienced in binding his master Amadís's wounds, forced the giant Foron to dismount, and then he bound up his wounds, too. Furthermore, after consoling Foron by telling him about his cousin Frandalo's nobility, Gandalín invited the giant to rest and sleep, for, he said it was certain that they had not given their word in vain, but rather, that it would work toward their deliverance. The giant thanked him very much, and at that moment he recognized that he, and indeed all giants, had always lived in great error, for by nature they had no knowledge of mercy, nor was mercy ever found in them because they considered it contrary to their concept of virtue.[1] And so, if he were given the freedom to do so, he intended to change his behavior regarding this very issue.

76

How Frandalo the Strong urgently implored
The good knight with happy mien and countenance
To free the infanta in the first instance
And his cousin Foron the giant afterward;
And how she, mediating for those of Turkey,
Although she had to give up her jewels for lost,
Saved their sad bodies and lives at such a cost,
And she and they went to great Tesifante.

They all spent the night just as the story has told you, but the infanta did not forget her good plan. As dawn was approaching, she got up, took the two

---

[1] On the nature of traditional giants, see especially Walter Stevens' chapter on "Giants, History and Theology" in *Giants in Those Days*: "In folklore, the overcoded valences of 'Nature' and 'culture' consistently represent the uncultured Giant as stupid, but in the theological context, this stupidity was more precisely defined as an arrogant disregard for divine supremacy, a fallacious conviction of autonomy based on their pride in mere physical strength" (Stevens, 69). In GRM's world view, and in Stevens' terms, Frandalo's giant cousin overcomes his culturally based "stupidity" because he experiences an act of Gandalín's divinely based mercy.

knights and Damsel Carmela, mounted her palfrey, and went to the villa. Since they passed through the gate just as dawn was breaking, there was still the right kind of light for her precious stones to shine resplendently. Upon seeing her and the great aura of light around her, Esplandián was dumb struck. Frandalo went to her despite his wounds and said:

"Lady, here I am, your knight and servant. What do you order me to do?"

"My good friend," she said, "I shall remain on this palfrey until the sun is fully up, and then I wish to see Esplandián and his knights, and I shall tell them my plan for preventing any more killing than what has already happened. I have just crossed a field covered with the dead. I can see not a few have died."

Esplandián, who was still wearing his helmet, approached her and said:

"Good lady, we shall all serve you and do whatever you order. As you already command Frandalo's will, so too, we all give you ours, for he has our love, and we must do whatever he does."

By this time, dawn had come, and the soldiers were beginning to prepare for attacking the enemy. Seeing this activity, the infanta said to Frandalo:

"Since you say you want to serve me, take me to Esplandián and the most notable knights of this host; and arrange it so that I can be heard before anyone makes a move against the townspeople. And send the same message to your forces on the sea."

"Sire, what do you think about this order of the infanta's?" Frandalo asked Esplandián.

"The same thing you think, my friend," he answered.

"Then let's carry out what she's asking."

"So be it," said Esplandián.

Then he sent a knight to Gastiles, who asked him not to break out in an attack on the adversaries for another hour. He also told him it was very urgent to go see Esplandián immediately. This done, Gastiles came on horseback dressed in the armor he was wearing when he got the message. After Esplandián told him what was transpiring with the infanta, and that everything was placed in Frandalo's hands, Gastiles agreed to and approved of what was happening. Esplandián took off his helmet, and he, Gastiles, Norandel, and Frandalo led the infanta, who was still sitting atop her palfrey, away from her people. Then they asked her what her proposal was. When she saw how young and handsome Esplandián was, she could not believe this boy was he, especially in light of the great feats of arms she heard he had done; so she said to Frandalo:

"Tell me, is this boy the knight who has alarmed all of us? Is he the one who did great marvels in the recent past and who did those in the present I witnessed yesterday?"

"Yes, he is," said Frandalo. "The one who does wonders. The one to whom the whole world ought to be subject."

"I am certain, Frandalo," she said, "that his mettle and his heroic deeds come from a more powerful source. For if this were not so, seeing how young he is and how small his body is, there would be many others who would surpass him. But leaving this aside—for, as it exceeds all reason and the order of

nature itself, it is not for us to know—I want you to grant me a favor, which will be more for others' freedom than for mine. It is this: in the name of your love and devotion for me, grant the lives of these townspeople, who are at death's door, and let them go wherever they wish."

"My good lady," Esplandián said, "we have left everything concerning you and them in Frandalo's hands. We shall not oppose anything he sees fit to decree."

This statement made Frandalo very happy, so he knelt and tried to kiss the knight's hands. However, Esplandián very affectionately made him rise. Then Frandalo turned to the infanta and said:

"Mistress, since I have been authorized to do this, I free you so that you can return freely to your husband, and I free all others who may wish to accompany you."

"Thank you very much," she said. "But I regret I cannot say that I will reward you for it; however, seeing the company you are keeping, and if our gods in their grace do not prevent it, you will sooner grant favors than receive them. But I accept all this in the degree it deserves. Now I want to speak to the townspeople."

Then Heliaxa took Carmela, Esplandián's damsel, and went straight to the temple of Jupiter where her people were gathered awaiting cruel deaths. When they saw her, both men and women kneeled before her crying, and they started to speak thus:

"Oh, our mistress! Who could have brought you here at such a time? Even though it seems you've come for our good, it can't be good for you because of the grave dangers that await those of high rank like you more than lower people like us. How can you have come from where your enemies and ours are?"

"Friends," she said, "get up and cease crying; for it often happens that what seems to go against all reason, and what fills our hearts with fear and pain, the same things bring people health and comfort. Therefore, I tell you, friends, when I left here, I went to Venturous Spring with the knights and giants you saw, and I was pleased to spend the night there both because it was so hot and because I wanted to see if my knights might find some strange adventures there where they are prone to happen. Near dawn, two knights arrived who proceeded to kill and destroy all my knights and the two giants, and I was taken prisoner by them. I firmly believe that, should the spring last until the end of time, no other adventure like that one will ever again happen there. However, good fortune came from so much adversity, for I recognized one of those knights as Frandalo the Strong, who used to live in my household very devotedly; and he turned out to be such a good and grateful servant that he freed me along with all of you who would like to leave here in my company. Now, decide what you want to do. In my opinion, if you choose to stay here, you are better prepared to lose your lives than to defend them."

"Mistress," they all said, "we are indebted to you to do what we can to save our lives. Otherwise, it is certain that we will die here."

"In that case, leave here quickly," said the infanta.

Those who were armed disarmed, and all of them, men, women, and children, left the temple while surrounding the infanta on all sides. Then they went to see Esplandián and the other knights who received her with all courtliness. Seeing Esplandián, the infanta said:

"Esplandián, my good lord, I am most vexed by you. You killed my knights, and now you are holding me prisoner, and still you refused to speak to me. That attitude does not accord with your reputation, which praises you for being very courteous and civil."

"My good señora," he said, "while we all have strong Frandalo as a caudillo whose job is to direct us, and while I saw how attached he was to your service, I thought it was improper for me to speak about matters under his control."

"Be that as it may," said the infanta with a happy and smiling mien, "it would still seem right for you to speak to me; and since your excuse is badly argued, I will not be satisfied until you make amends for the error in your conduct."

"Señora," said Esplandián, "I wish to make amends in whatever way will serve you most."

"Well, with your pledge that you shall do so, I ask your leave to depart with these people to go see my husband."

These words were exchanged playfully, but a time would come when they proved to be very true, and a lot made of them, as will be related later.

The infanta left by the gate, and all of the people went with her, some holding her palfrey's bridle, others hanging onto her magnificent robes, and still others crowding as near her as they could, thinking that therein was their salvation. As she was leaving, she saw Frandalo on horseback and ready to accompany her even though he was still quite wounded from the recent combat. She asked him where he intended to go. He said:

"Good lady, to accompany you some distance on this road, because I want to serve you in every way I can until you arrive in Ctesifonte."

"No, you won't," she said. "Although you, as a good knight, used your power to serve and save me, it may be that I, as a woman, do not have the same power. I say this because by now the five knights who escaped and fled from the battle you and Esplandián waged around Venturous Spring have probably informed Infante Alforax about what happened here. I do not doubt that he has already entered the field with many of his people, and I tell you that I do not dare try to restrain his vehement passion, which has surely been ignited by the severity of his and my losses—and he has yet to hear about what happened to Villa Alfarín. Therefore, my good friend, I do not want the pleasure you have given me to turn into danger for you or vexation for me."

Frandalo knew she was right, and he said:

"Milady, since you think that's best, so be it. Please take my cousin Foron with you, for I hereby release him from prison."

About how Infante Alforax came to his wife, the infanta's, rescue; how he found her near Venturous Spring where she had been captured by the two knights; and how she recounted the adverse fortune that had happened to her and to her entourage.

With this, Infanta Heliaxa, accompanied by all the townspeople, went straight to the great city of Ctesifonte, and she took the wounded giant with her. She travelled so hard that she passed Venturous Spring where she ordered no one to remove the golden cloth that was suspended from the pillars or the silk-covered bed she had slept on the previous night. She made the order so that everyone might see that, although she had been captured there by knights from Forbidden Mountain, not only did they agree to free her because she was a high-born princess, but they also refused to take any of her very precious riches. She wanted this to be an example to her own pagan kinsmen that they should be motivated by virtue and nobility rather than evil greed and cruelty. When they had already left the spring quite a distance behind, they encountered on the road many knights who were approaching them very fast racing to her rescue. Her husband, the infante, who was leading them, was very upset because they had spent the early part of the day pursuing a false lead. Having forgotten entirely about Villa Alfarín, he thought the infanta had been carried off to Forbidden Mountain. Not finding any trace of her there, they turned to look for her at the battle site, where they were arriving at the time you are now hearing about. When they saw her, they wondered how she could appear so marvellous; they wondered even more when they noticed she was accompanied by so many people of such diverse ranks. Then they stopped in silence, seeing her so order them. At this moment the infante arrived. Seeing her, he said:

"Señora, what happened to you?"

"My husband and my lord," she said, "much evil and much good, for fortune displayed both things to me at the same time."

Then she told him all that had occurred until she was reunited with him.

"Oh gods!" said the infante. "What a double marvel am I hearing! First, I hear that you, one of the most notable people in the world, were captured by those unbelievers, but now you are here free and accompanied by so many people; and second, I hear my strong Villa Alfarín was taken by force of arms. Now I tell you, milady, I do not know how to react to this show of moderation by our gods. On the one hand, they threaten me with the loss of my entire seigniory; but on the other hand, after I feared she was lost and imprisoned by my enemies, the gods console me by protecting what I love more than anything else in the world. Since it is not clear what their will is, I shall work zealously and diligently to make them intervene in my favor. But I shall not act against those who seized Villa Alfarín, for such revenge would be very small even though they hold the king, my lord, captive. Rather, I shall move

against that evil perjurer,[1] the emperor of Constantinople, who, by breaking the truce, has caused all my troubles. I swear by the great god Jupiter and by very powerful Mars, god of battles, that I shall never relax, nor shall my heart rest until I gather together at the gates of the emperor's great city of Constantinople as many people as the great sea has sand and until I pluck him out of his palace by his white hairs and place him in prison. And then, after doing that, I shall show these three knights mercy, and you, milady, taking pity on them, will grant them their freedom as payment for the signal service they did for you; and you will do this so that they recognize my immense power and your consummate magnanimity."

After making these vows, he returned to the great city of Ctesifonte from whence he came.

However, the story will leave him here until later, when you will be told about an assemblage of people so astounding that they made the whole earth shake. Instead, you will now be told what the knights in Villa Alfarín agreed to do, both for its defense and to further their course, which was to kill and destroy evil and very perverse pagans, the enemies of the world's Redeemer.

78

How Gastiles, who had already departed
From him who beat the mountain by fierce action,
Saw a caravel of the king of Britain
Approach at sea, and how he was detainèd;
Which, seeing the direction it was headed,
Raised its sails to the strong wind that was blowing
And, in port Constantinople disembarking,
The things that had happened he then recounted.

Once the stronghold and great port of Villa Alfarín was conquered by Esplandián, the emperor of Constantinople's nephew Gastiles, and their companions, as we told you, then they ordered lookouts posted on the towers, and they ordered an accounting of the abundant spoils, which included much gold and silver and many other precious jewels. Many rich merchants lived in Alfarín because it was a very great sea port, well protected and unafraid of

---

[1] The term used here is *perjuro* [purjurer] rather than *mentiroso* [liar]. While the terms in Spanish and English are relatively similar, and while they are close synonyms, the first term has at once more legalistic and slightly more negative connotations. Both sets mean to lie maliciously, but the second set connotes lying in a legal context. The pair *perjuro/perjurer* derives from Latin: per [away to destruction] + juro [I swear]. Cov. adds the following comment to his definition: "There are grave penalties against such [perjurers], and the degree of the crime increases the penalty; such perjurers are vile scoundrels." This is another indication that GRM was connected to the law, either by education or his duties as Medina's *regidor*.

the rest of the surrounding districts. Also, Princess Heliaxa was much enamored of it because it was in a region with a very gentle climate, it had great stands of trees including every kind of fruit trees, and it was a land abundant in sweet spring water. For this reason, her father-in-law, King Armato, had given it to her while he lived and was still able to govern the seigniory of Persia so that she and her husband could live there in ease and comfort.[1] When King Armato was taken prisoner, as we told you, both of them were in the town. The infante, upon hearing about his father, left his wife there and travelled across the kingdom to see about his safety. Then he sent a message for her to go to Ctesifonte, and he intended to send troops to the town and a great fleet by sea in order to make war on the emperor, but, as you have heard, fortune guided events by a different route. That is why there were so few experienced fighters in the villa when combat broke out in it, and that is why it was so easy to conquer. Although Esplandián and his companions did in the combat what has been mentioned, the glory belongs entirely to strong Frandalo. By smartly discovering from his nephew Belleriz that the villa was poorly protected, Frandalo was able to order the knights to begin an immediate surprise attack, which enabled them to win.

Returning to the knights in the town, Gastiles said to Esplandián and the others:

"My good friends, out of love for you I have delayed longer than I was ordered. But, seeing the good fruits such an error as this one yielded, may it please God that I may commit many other errors just like it. Now I would like to leave. As things stand now, I believe firmly that the emperor will accept my return in such a way that we can be reunited before long. Therefore, take men or supplies from the fleet as you need them, for insofar as it is in my power, I shall do whatever you require."

"My Lord Gastiles," answered Esplandián, "for all you have done, your thanks will come from our Lord God, but not from us, because we are unable to thank you in proportion to what you merit. Like you, we have enlisted in the service of the emperor and his household; and everything we may win we consider his and for his use. Trusting that this is so, my good señor, I now want to speak to you at more length, as you are about to hear, even though you may have some idea of what I am going to say. You already know that when I was dubbed a knight, my father Amadís asked me to remove a promise he left pledged to Infanta Leonorina because he himself could not fulfill his word. His request consisted in my being her knight and in my serving her in whatever way she might deem fit. And when my father was prevented from representing himself to her for the strange reasons you know about,[2] fortune and Urganda's great wisdom guided me to where I was able to free my grandfather King Lisuarte from prison and to capture Forbidden Mountain, which you have seen. Because that stronghold was defeated by my personal intervention alone; because, as her knight, I am subject to Infanta Leonorina, as I said; because I captured the infidel's king afterwards with my companions' help; because, by their consent, I have the power to dispose of him as I choose; and because King Armato was captured under the emperor's aegis; therefore, I have determined to hand him over to the emperor's service. My Lord, please tell me what you wish to do about this, for whatever you say will be done immediately. Regarding this villa, over which we have all dallied, we should hold it for the emperor rather than anyone else.[3] This is what I have determined. So, offer it to him, and also take him the wealth of jewels we have found here. According to our accounting, there are countless of them, and they are all his. As for us, we do not need precious stones, or pearls, or silver, or gold; for all we need is the armor we wear and that was given to us to use, not where our will might lead us, but where He who has the whole world in His hand wills.[4] We shall keep whatever food we find so that we can sustain our

lives and the town. In addition, I ask you, my good señor, as soon as you inform the emperor about strong Frandalo's great exploits and his total loyalty, to beg him on my behalf to use his grace to grant this villa to Frandalo either as his own or in tenancy to the emperor. In either case, he will be his vassal."

"I shall say everything it pleases you for me to say," said Gastiles. "I am certain that what you ask will be granted."

Then he embraced Esplandián and said laughingly:

"As for what you are offering my cousin the infanta, I shall tell her to accept it and to leave the mountain aside so that you can be named its alcayde.[5] In this way, she may have what no one else alive today can hope to have."

Esplandián was very happy to hear him mention the person to whom his heart was captive and subject, and he said:

"Well, those people you have just alluded to ought to be subject to the princess given her great majesty and beauty. As for me, it is not unimaginable that I should be her alcayde and knight since this accords with what I was ordered."

Then he ordered Gandalín, whom he considered a very loyal and good knight, to collect all the richest jewels in the villa and to put them on Gastiles' ship.[6] Also, he ordered Lasindo and him to find out if there were enough supplies for the people, and if there were a shortage to take as much as could reasonably be taken from Gastiles' fleet. However, this was not necessary, because they found so many provisions in the town that the people who remained there would be supplied for a year. But there were so many jewels that Gastiles was quite overwhelmed when he saw them on his ship. As he was getting ready to depart from Esplandián and all the other knights, and as his men were preparing to board their ships, Gastiles was notified by other men of his who had remained on the ships that it seemed as though a very large caravel was coming from the direction of Forbidden Mountain. He decided to wait, because he could not imagine whose it was. Fearing for his fleet, he ordered his ships to clear a very wide path in all directions, and he ordered none of them to appear on the sea. About an hour later the great ship arrived. Aboard were these knights about whom you will now hear: Palomir,[7] Branfil,[8] Helián the Vigorous,[9] Gavarte of Fearful Vale,[10] and Bravor, the giant Balán's son, whom Amadís had knighted with high honors. Also aboard were Imosil of Burgundy,[11] Ledaderín de Fajarque,[12] Listorán of the White Tower,[13] Trion,[14] beautiful Queen Briolanja's cousin, Tantiles the Proud,[15] Guil the Good and Prized,[16] Grodonán,[17] Angriote de Estraváus's brother, two sons of Isanjo's, the governor of Firm Island, whose sons were just boys at the beginning of their knightly careers, and many others prized for their prowess in arms we will not mention because to write all their names would be too prolix. All of these knights were of one mind in their desire to join Esplandián's holy cause against the Turks. Besides there were few adventures left in Great Britain, and those had little to do with the salvation of their souls. In comparison with Esplandián's, they saw the adventures they left behind as no more than grand and vain madness. Therefore, they decided to board that big beautiful caravel, which King Amadís ordered given to them and which he had anchored in Firm Island's big port along with many others, and to sail to Forbidden Mountain to serve God and to help the knight whom they all loved. When they arrived at the mountain, they were informed by Libeo that Esplandián had taken all the troops and gone by land and sea to conquer Villa Alfarín. After hearing this news, and still desiring to participate in whatever battles and dangers Esplandián's knights might find themselves in, they continued their trip, but so as not to get lost, they went coasting in their

big ship in the direction of the villa. When they discovered that it had been captured, they thanked God profusely; but they were certain that, because of this happy result, they would not lack for other challenges in which they could test the resolve of their holy desire. The caravel arrived at the port, where all of those knights disembarked wearing their beautifully decorated armor and accompanied by many other admirable knights all believing that their talents would be needed more in that land than in their own.

As soon as Esplandián, Norandel, and their companions heard about the arrival of a caravel and that it was full of their friends, well, who could tell you what a joyous lift that gave their spirits? Even though they were all wounded and they were being attended by the great Master Helisabad, they struggled to get dressed as best they could and go receive those close friends of theirs. When they met them, their friends had already landed, for Gastiles had gone out to see who they were. At that very moment, they ran to embrace each other with tears of great joy streaming from their eyes. They were all so unspeakably encouraged to see everyone reunited again, and they knew that, so long as the almighty Lord was not angry at them, there was no challenge that might confront them that they could not overcome. All were lodged in very good houses, of which there were many in the villa; but before they retired to remove their armor, Esplandián thought it would be a good idea for them to go speak to Frandalo, for he was more badly wounded than the rest. In fact, his condition was so bad that he could not get out of bed. So they went to see him in order to give him the honor he merited, to show him how many excellent knights had arrived, and to encourage him to place them where God would be best served. When they entered the room where Frandalo was lying—they were already briefed on who he was and what great deeds he had done—they approached his bed, and, gathering around him, they said:

"Noble, courageous knight, we thank God sincerely for bringing us to this region so that we could meet you and rejoice in hearing about the great things that have happened to you and will continue to happen to you, God willing. Consequently, good señor, at the proper time, lead us to engage the infidels as we desire; for, after Esplandián, we shall be under your orders."

79

About how immensely pleased strong Frandalo was to receive the knights of Great Britain who went to see him when he was confined to bed; and about how he thanked them.

Frandalo was amazed to see such a group of knights with such armor, so young, so handsome, so sturdy, and who had come from such a long way away to look for him; even so, he was more amazed when he first saw Esplandián. Then he said to them:

"My good señores, I thank you very much for the large honor you give me.

What you ask for, I shall grant. I want you to know from me that I have never seen such a marvellous group of knights as you, and I have seen many knights in my time. But, after I saw Esplandián, my master and true friend, and his prowess, everything else I can possibly see that has to do with chivalry does not make me feel either fear or delight."

Hearing himself praised so much, Esplandián was embarrassed, and he said:

"My good friend, if I have done anything that seems good, after God, you were the cause, for everything has derived from your great zeal. So, I pass the honor and glory for all this to you. Now, because these knights are probably exhausted from the trouble they had in getting here, I am sure they need to relax. Therefore, I want to have them taken to their lodgings so they can rest until such a time as you are recovered and are ready to lead them as they have requested. Until we are better acquainted with this land, it would be foolhardy for us to seek challenges here without your guidance."

Then he went out of the room with the others following him. They all went to their houses, and the wounded returned to their beds, for they were in great need of recuperation. Now we shall cease talking about them; instead we shall talk about Gastiles, how he arrived in Constantinople, and how happy the emperor and the others were to welcome him.

80

How Gastiles carefully told the emperor about the great adventures that happened to Esplandián and strong Frandalo both before and after he arrived at the mountain; how Infanta Leonorina gave a gruff, though feigned, answer to Esplandián's just request; and how she ordered Gastiles to write him with her answer.

Gastiles and his entire fleet arrived in Constantinople after an uneventful voyage. When the emperor found out about his arrival, he rode with a host of high nobles to go see Gastiles, for he had a strong desire to be informed about what had happened and about the status of the mountain, which he considered one of the wonders of the world. Given King Armato's great power, the emperor thought it would be difficult to rescue it from the king's siege. As the emperor was going down the street toward the sea, he saw his nephew Gastiles coming up the street on foot surrounded by a large crowd; so he decided to remain where he was. Gastiles then approached him, kissed his hands, and said to him:

"Sire, the two knights who left here, Esplandián and Frandalo, and many very distinguished knights from Great Britain and other lands kiss your hands, desiring to serve you in every way they can. I would like to tell you as much as I can before my lady the empress and Leonorina, if you so command. You will hear about the very strange and pleasing events that have resulted in an increase in your state, for God miraculously sent that knight to serve you."

"Good nephew," the emperor said, "I knew that by sending such a good man as you, I would receive good news. So then, you shall have the audience you request."

Turning to one of his retainers, he ordered a palfrey be given to Gastiles for him to ride the rest of the way to the palace. Upon arriving, they, the grandees, and many others in their train entered the empress's apartments, for they all had a burning desire to know what news Gastiles was bringing them. The emperor ordered his daughter Leonorina, Queen Menoresa, and other ladies of the higher nobility in her entourage to present themselves to him—for, you should know, since the empress[1] was of an advanced age and very withdrawn, she spent all her time doing nothing but saying her hours, which is why all the duennas and damsels were in Leonorina's apartments. The emperor told Gastiles to relate everything that had happened since his departure. Gastiles said:

"Sire, I left with the fleet under your orders to succor Forbidden Mountain. Even though fortune favored us with good weather and favorable winds, by the time I arrived, most of King Armato's fleet had already been wrecked by Esplandián's Great Serpent Caravel and by the fleet of strong Frandalo, who, by the way, performed marvels. Also, I found King Armato held prisoner in the alcázar."

Then Gastiles recounted how Esplandián had captured him, how the Turks were destroyed by that action, and how they were forced to abandon the mountain. Likewise, he told about his visit to King Armato, what he said to him, how he interrupted his speech to the king when Esplandián intervened, and how this exchange caused them to combat and conquer Villa Alfarín.[2] He finished telling everything that happened including the capture and freeing of Infanta Heliaxa and the arrival of the knights from Great Britain, whom he named because he knew them very well and who arrived just as he was about to disembark. At last, turning to Infanta Leonorina, he said:

"My lady, that exceedingly handsome knight of yours asked me to kiss your hands for him, and he has sent me to tell you that, from the moment his father Amadís ordered him to serve you in his place, he has considered himself your knight, and that everything he does will be for your service. He adds that, since the victory over Forbidden Mountain is attributable to him; since he is the one who seized King Armato of Persia, whom he can command as he deems fit; and since he did all this in your name, he begs you to take him

---

[1] In this chap. we encounter the first sustained references to the empress of Constantinople in *Esplandián*. Given the narrator's wry appositional characterization of her as aged, pious, and isolated from court life, it is not surprising not to have heard about her before. Nevertheless, we shall continue to hear about her in what follows.

[2] The narrator's (Master Helisabad's?) recapitulation of Gastiles' speech to the court of Constantinople provides more information than was given before. Before there was no clear statement that Esplandián's reproof of Armato's haughtiness led directly to the conquest of Alfarín. Is this a narrative mistake? Is it the narrator allowing a character the free will to offer his own interpretation and point of view? Is it simply new information?

and to do with him what you please. Furthermore, he will deliver to you whatever else God may give him in this quest he has undertaken. Also, my Lord Emperor, regarding Villa Alfarín, Esplandián wishes you to know that it was conquered by the combined efforts of your troops and him and his friends. They are all at your service. Moreover, the villa and all other riches found in it are yours to do with as it seems best to Your Grace. Finally, I have brought you so many precious jewels that, if you did not already have many yourself, they would seem priceless, which, indeed, they are. Concerning the villa itself, sire, I implore you to grant it outright or in tenancy—as you please and as you think it right to do—to strong Frandalo, since he has shown himself so loyal and so confirmed in the holy law of Jesus Christ."

Hearing this, the emperor said:

"Good nephew, everything you have told me makes me very happy, and I thank God for what has happened. The only thing that bothers me is that you have brought me the jewels you mentioned; but, seeing how dangerous it was to win them, they should have gone to those knights rather than me. God did not give me such majesty for me to take things, but to give favors, which is what I shall do. If I behaved any other way, I would be reputed to be disordinately greedy, which is something princes and grandees ought to guard against with the greatest care. They ought to resist vigorously ever beginning this vice, because once they make room for their covetous appetites—seeing there is no end to them—their craving thirst to satisfy them will burn ever greater; and just when it seems the thirst is slaked, the greedy will find themselves most ravaged by their desires. And when they are ready to turn away from their vice, so many obstacles cross their paths that they not only think about not abandoning what they took, but finding it difficult to regain their serenity, they think about what remains that they could still get. From this, many great dangers often occur. That this is true is proved very clearly by the ancient histories of very great men in which we read that, however much they displayed their shining wealth in the beginning in order to be more feared and to seem bolder, in the end they were destroyed, exiled, disgraced, and torn to pieces by their evil greed. But, with God's grace, I will not fall into this trap. On the contrary, I herewith order that all those jewels be put in safekeeping so that they and any other of my jewels can be returned to those noble knights. Regarding the villa, even though I accept it as mine, I ask Esplandián to do with it as he pleases, for his wish is mine. However, Frandalo merits not only that favor but also others I shall do for him, as you will see in due time. As for you, my daughter, you may respond to what your knight is offering you."

Leonorina, hearing the emperor refer to her, was very happy to oblige by talking about him who was the cause of her heart's anguish. But it occurred to her that, since the pliantly charming message she had sent to him via Damsel Carmela had not been strong enough to induce him to come present himself before her, perhaps she could achieve the desired effect by sending the opposite message, by responding with harshness and discontent. Therefore, with a light heart but with her beautiful features showing feigned rage, she said:

"Nephew Gastiles, although you and all others think of Esplandián as so

good and so courtly, as you have often said; although you think he is my knight; and although you may be offering me what you mentioned, I see it the opposite way. I think that he wanted to do neither what his father ordered him to do nor what my lord the emperor told his damsel, which was that he was to come see me here immediately so that his very presence might indicate whether or not his father were to be freed from his promise. But he has not done it. Rather, he goes about fleeing from me. I say that I ought not consider him mine; nor should I consider mine anything he wishes to send me. Thus, I beg you earnestly to inform him about my response. He is to believe that I will thank him for nothing he may do for my sake until we see him here."

Seeing her so irate, angry, and vexed, the emperor said:

"My daughter, how can you reject the service of such a nobleman, of a man known throughout the world?"

"Yes, sire," she said. "This is what the master should do whose servant goes about fleeing from his presence, refusing to do what he is ordered to do. And this has been going on for almost three years."[3]

The emperor put his hands on her cheeks, laughed good-humoredly, kissed her on the forehead, and said:

"My daughter, it certainly appears that you possess more than a woman's heart. The Lord of the world had good cause to allow you to inherit such a mighty seigniory as I have."

Turning to Gastiles, he said:

"By your faith, nephew, go inform Esplandián quickly about all your cousin has said and about my answer."

"Certainly, sire," he said, "the message shall not be delayed by me; rather, by the quickest caravel, he shall receive the message I am ordered to send."

And so, that quarrel then stood just as you have heard it, and Gastiles sent his messengers on a mission by which Esplandián found out about everything that happened in Constantinople. This made him most upset. What Esplandián did about it the story will tell you in what follows; so now it returns to him.

---

[3] The quick, subtle interjection of a reference to the passage of a specific period of time is GRM's standard device for attempting to give a slightly realistic dimension to the novel's temporal aspect. It is also the method by which he lets the reader imagine that his characters have matured (Esplandián is no longer the callow youth he was in the first chap., and Leonorina is no longer the nine-year-old girl Amadís met on his visit to Constantinople in bk. III, chap. 74; CB, II, 1761), aged (Amadís no longer seeks adventures; Lisuarte retires), accumulated experience, etc.

81

How, after the courageous British platoons
Had finished taking their needed repose,
And after conquering the villa those
Others had recovered from their cruel wounds,
When the hour came and night's shadows were long,
Esplandián sallied forth with Frandalo
And forty other knights armed high and low,
Following advice by Frandalo the Strong.

Esplandián and the other knights in Villa Alfarín had been forced to rest, some because of the great travails they had suffered as the result of their long and difficult sea voyage—for they were much more accustomed to toiling on terra firma than on water—and the others were recovering from the wounds they received during combat in the villa. It happened that these latter were cured by the hand of the great Master Helisabad, who seems surely to have been given to them as a grant from God; for it is certain that, given the terrible battles they had to fight in that land against their enemies, they could not have found anyone else but him who could have provided remedies for their ills; otherwise their ills would have led them straight to death. If they had not had this famous wise man with them, many of them would have met a cruel death. God saw their good and holy intentions, and He saw they were not like some who pretend to serve Him by feigning to do what is holy and good, but instead actually do the opposite by seeking to hunt Him as they hunt birds and beasts. Hence, seeing these knights aimed more at His holy service than at greedily obtaining worldly goods, He not only gave them great relief in the person of a man like Master Helisabad, but He also gave them all other boons about which this story will tell you. Twenty days later, during which time some found relief from their travail and others were freed from their beds, in order not to waste any time, they counselled with strong Frandalo concerning what they could do that would best allow them to satisfy the desire that motivated them to leave their lands. Frandalo said to them:

"Good señores, in this land our only salvation is to use our sound minds and our courageous hearts. The first, our salvation, must come from our Lord and Redeemer who will illuminate us; and the second, our courage, belongs both to Him and to us, for we must endure great apprehension and suffer terrible wounds; we must not fear the multitudes of our enemies; and, attacking and killing them with our strong armor, we of needs will attain glory in this world and the next. Some of you made me an heir of eternal life by giving me the share in it I had lost—and which I hope not to lose through any further wickedness of my own. Hence, my lords, since what you desire is that we exercise our profession, let's pursue this task with such diligent fortitude that our honor will not be defamed. Therefore, saddle your horses and prepare your armor; for tonight—seeing that what you desire and seek are dangers and battles—I will lead up to forty of you, whom Esplandián will choose, to a place that will please you.

The others of you will remain to guard the villa until you're summoned."

When those knights—and especially the ones who had just arrived and had only heard indirectly about Esplandián's and the others' experiences with him—heard what Frandalo told them, they were very happy to discover that his fervor and good judgment were signs that indicated the extent of his knowledge and ability. Without making any further reply and with high spirits, they prepared what they needed for the upcoming action, knowing that their earthly bodies might return to the earth while their souls would be raised to the glory for which they were created. Also, they knew that whereas they had invested much energy in the adventures of Great Britain where they had been formed and had spent much of their time, they now considered those adventures vanity and manifest folly. On the other hand, their zeal for these new adventures on which they were about to embark was growing rapidly. When the agreed-upon time came, Frandalo asked Esplandián, with whom he shared a room, and Belleriz to mount their horses. Then the three rode through the main gateway that had already been fitted with new gates, and they took the road that led to the great city of Ctesifonte. Following them came the forty knights that Norandel, upon Esplandián's request, had chosen. After they left, the gates were closed by those who remained and who prayed to God to protect the forty, for they were going forth in His service.

82

How Frandalo, after instructing all about what they had to do, sent several knights with his nephew Belleriz to fight at Xanthinomela[1] while he and Esplandián left for the Valley of the King to guard against those who might come from greater Ctesifonte to reinforce Xanthinomela.

With Frandalo leading the knights, they arrived at the foothills of a mountain where they found two roads. At that crossroads he said to them:

"Good señores, I know that all or most of you were born and raised in Great Britain or other places, where, despite great differences among various lands, the law was one and the same. Because of this situation, with good or bad fortune, you could always find a way to fill your needs. Likewise, the customs of your lands are such that you experienced battles and other chivalric events more in an individual than a general way. Except for a few battles that took place between kingdoms, all the rest were adventures in which you encountered each

other as knights whose style was to travel alone, because you thought it was more glorious and courageous for you to pursue that approach than to be accompanied by others.[2] But over here, good señores, you cannot continue in that style without mortal danger; for, while it is certain that by combining His help with our mettle we shall find a way to remain safe; nevertheless, since we are Christians and these lands and their inhabitants are pagan enemies of the Lord whom we serve, we cannot expect to find any safety in prison here. On the contrary, of necessity we have no choice but to kill or be killed, because, although some mercy may be found in us, I know there is none to be found in our enemies. I know this from my own experience from when I lived according to the great error they live in. In addition to this, you cannot expect to find battles here to be similar to the ones in your lands, because the style is different here. Instead, as our forces allow us to fight hosts of knights, here we must assault large and small places, and we must also fight against many people of lower status,[3] against whom, back where you come from, you wielded your swords only to your dishonor. Hence, since fortune has thrown you into very different foreign lands, so you must now adopt their different customs. I say this, my good señores, because if I do not satisfy you by leading you to what you desire, then lay the blame on what I have just said rather than on any lack of desire on my part to satisfy the objects of your desire. And now, it seems to me, señores, that the night is escaping without bearing fruit, so let's set in motion the reason why I brought you out of Villa Alfarín."[4]

Turning to Belleriz, he said:

"Good nephew, you were raised in this land. Therefore, using your knowledge, guide Norandel and half our company along this road to the right and go attack the place that overlooks Ctesifonte, which is called Xanthinomela.[5] If you do not find any great resistance—and I expect none—attack with no more zeal than you need, but rather make your attack more noisy and tumultuous than really cruel; for those people, as you know, are only weak peasants and have no other customs than tilling fields and breaking sod.[6] Meanwhile, I shall lead Es-

---

[2] GRM's master plan for the five bks. of his version of the Amadís myth is apparent in Frandalo's speech. Just as the real practice of knight errantry and war changed during the course of the fifteenth century from small, or individual, encounters to large scale war, so GRM works a slow change as he progresses from bk. I to bk. V until finally he allows a character to express the change consciously within the fictional space itself.

[3] Cacho Blecua notes that the first time in the Amadís Cycle when knights must fight against commoners is in bk. IV, chap. 122, when Don Bruneo leads a group of peasants against an evil duke. The beneficiary of this action is the elevation of a youth, Garinto, to the throne of the kingdom of Dacia.

[4] Gili Gaya points out that Frandalo's distinction between types of former and new warfare was made prior to GRM's works; that is, the distinction appears in *Tirant lo Blanc* (1460–90). Personal encounters between individual knights are called *requestas* in *Tirant*, and large-scale warfare of the type Frandalo is describing in this chap. is called *guerra guerrejada*. See Gili Gaya, "Las sergas como crítica," 108.

[5] Since the Xanthus River Valley is over 900 kms from Ctesiphon in terms of real geography, it seems that GRM does not intend our proposed sources to correspond to extra-literary reality.

[6] The weak character of the residents of Xanthinomela supports the identification of

plandián and the remaining knights down this other road, and, as secretly as I can, I shall occupy the valley known as King's Valley that is very close to the city. When we hear your cries, I shall send one of my men to the city gate pretending to be one of our enemies. He will ask for help on behalf of his forces by telling them that the knights who seized Villa Alfarín are fighting and killing them. I believe Infante Alforax will immediately send some knights to the rescue; and, if that happens, we shall have an opportunity to execute our fury by killing and wounding those who are our mortal enemies. And if it so happens that none of them comes out of the town, we shall carry off everyone of them and all the spoils to our fortress. For the present we must be contented with this action, because I think there is nothing else we could do that would be safer."

83

How good Belleriz and his companions,
About half way down the road, encounter
And engage in a terribly fierce slaughter
With two hundred or more Turkish minions;
And how the immense Turkish batallions
Were defeated after Frandalo and the son
Of the king of Britain arrived and won
The grand alguazil[1] *who was placed in irons.*

As it was planned by this knight, everything was put into effect. Belleriz took Norandel and his company with him, and they set off on the road he was shown. Frandalo, Esplandián, and the other knights took the other road. Both parties had the intention to put into effect the agreed-upon plan of action. But, as often happens in such matters, it turned out differently. After the two groups had been heading down their separate roads for a while on this rather clear night, which they had chosen on purpose, Belleriz encountered some peons who were heading toward the city on a crossroad. Seeing them, he immediately went forward to meet them, and, speaking to them in their language, he said:

"Friends, where are you going?"

"We're going to Villa Falandia,"[2] they said.

---

this place with the Licians of the Xanthus River Valley, because, after the Persians defeated them, the formerly militant Licians were taught singing and dancing by their Persian conquerors in order to create a supposedly effeminate nature in them.

[1] OED says an alguazil (Arabic, *al-wazir*, senior minister of state) entered English from Spanish in 1598. Alguazil is a synonym for vizier, as both derive from Arabic *wazir*. The *Siete Partidas* of Alfonso X defines an alguazil as "he who makes arrests and carries out justice in the royal court by order of the King" (Partida II, 20, 9). Nebr. defines the term as *officialis praefecti, vel executor*. The contemporary Spanish spelling is *alguacil*.

[2] Villa Falandia is unidentifiable as a real place in Turkey near Xanthus.

"Oh, that's where we're from," said Belleriz. "We're going to see our lord the infante to tell him how the Christian dogs who took Alfarín two days ago went out from there to wreak havoc in this land, and if he gives us more people than the few of us who are here, we will easily capture them, given where we left them."

"And who are you?" they asked.

"I'm Rosán, the governor's nephew," he answered.

"We're glad to meet you," they said. "In this case, we want to give you happy news. Behind us are the high alguazil and two hundred horsemen. They're going to Villa Falandia and the other villas to warn them to be prepared so that they not fall victims as Alfarín did. You can join him and do what you say, because, with his men and yours and more he can raise, you'll be able to achieve your goal."

"May it please the gods to give you the joy I desire and also to give victory to the alguazil," said Belleriz.

Then he let them go on their way and he returned to Norandel to whom he related everything that had just happened. When their men heard this news, although it seemed to them there were many adversaries, they did not lose their accustomed zeal; rather, taking up their helmets, shields, and lances, they stationed themselves in a place where the enemy could not see them until the moment they could begin the attack. Meanwhile, as you were told, Frandalo, who was travelling the other road with Esplandián and their companions, rode fast until they entered the King's Valley, where they were waiting to hear the tumult the other party would make. At this moment the high alguazil, who was a very good knight, arrived in good order with the two hundred knights we mentioned. Since he was a great warrior who was proud of his prowess, which was inferior only to the king's and the infante's, he had the most honor and authority in that seigniory. Therefore, he always endeavored to have around him excellent and well-armed warriors. Those he had with him at that moment certainly fit that description. When the Christians saw them, they came out from their hiding place to begin the attack very boldly, as fast as their horses would go, in close formation, and covered by their shields. In the first encounters they downed up to ten of the enemy, most of whom died shortly, and they put the alguazil and all of his other men in a state of sudden fright. Almost immediately, however, the enemy regrouped. Then, seeing how few attackers there were and that they had gone completely past his ranks in the first encounters, and recognizing by the knights' arms and the devices on their outer tunics[3] that they were Christians, the alguazil shouted for his men to attack them and leave none of them alive. Raising a loud algarad, the Turks launched their attack with their caudillo leading the way like the courageous knight he was.

---

[3] The Spanish term for this tunic is *sobreseñal.* they are light tunics worn over the arms and are decorated with the knight's heraldic devices. The term appears in bks. II through IV.

But Norandel, who was in front of his own men, and next to Enil[4] and Gavarte of Fearful Vale, charged at the alguazil with his sword in his hand, and the alguazil returned the blow so hard that Norandel's shield was shattered, his cuirass was broken, and his arm was slightly wounded. However, Norandel, with all his might, hit him with a passing thrust so hard on top of his helmet that his foe lost his stirrups, and, not able to remain on his horse, he fell unconscious to the ground. Gavarte and Enil did likewise to two of the alguazil's companions whom they downed. The crush of many foes was so great that by the knights' own actions and by the horses' strength the enemy was able to down four of them, and the rest were rather disorganized. But being such a select group of courageous knights and seeing their companions on the ground, they recovered their aplomb, regrouped, and moved in close to wound and kill the Turks so roughly that the latter did not dare approach them. The four knights who were on foot saw they were in mortal danger, and, despite being hurt by their falls and by being butted by the horses, they decided to sell their lives at a very high price. So, with their swords they attacked the horses, cutting the legs of both mounts and their riders, many of whom fell to the ground. Nevertheless, even though these knights and those who remained on their horses achieved marvels, they did not have enough strength to avoid being killed if God had not succored them. Both they and their horses were walking wounded, and the Turks were many, and the enemy did not miss the fallen among their number, and, with great loud cries, they attacked the Christians so fiercely that ten of them were unhorsed and the others, who were fighting to the death, were losing the reserves of their stamina, and they had little zest left in their spirits.

Meanwhile, as we said, Frandalo and his companions were in the King's Valley, where they heard the first shouts that were raised. So, as agreed, Frandalo sent one of his squires to those who were watching the city's gate. Upon arriving, the squire said to them:

"Friends, I've come from Xanthinomela where that shouting is taking place. You should know that those who took Alfarín are fighting at Xanthinomela, and they're killing everyone they can; but there are very few of them. Tell our lord, the infante, to send reinforcements. Even if he only sends fifty knights, they and the other men in the town will leave none of the Christians alive."

The guards heard the din and the algarad, and they wondered what it could be. After hearing the squire's words, they said:

"Friend, it's not necessary to tell the infante, because his high alguazil just left here with two hundred knights, and his route will take him near that

---

[4] Curiously, Enil was left out of the narrator's list of knights from Great Britain who came to join Esplandián's crusade. He is Gandales' nephew, and he appears throughout bks. II through IV. He sets out to find Amadís when the hero is estranged from Oriana; finding him in the persona of Beltenebros, Enil serves as his squire and is then knighted by him. Later, he fights with Amadís to rescue Oriana from the emperor of Rome, and he fights in the big war against Lisuarte in the climax of bk. IV.

place. In fact, he's probably already embroiled with them. As for you, since you have a horse, follow those tracks our people left; and if they don't know about it, tell them what's happening. That's the best and quickest aid you can lend them, for they're already armed and in the field."

When Frandalo's squire heard this, he feared the worst, and, spurring his horse as hard as he could, he raced to the King's Valley where he told his companions this news. They instantly realized their men were involved in a battle. Fearing their companions were lost, they left the valley very fast with Frandalo in the lead—for he had traversed that land often—and they travelled so hard and so fast that they arrived just when the Turks were about to kill the knights, who were defending themselves very courageously, but with no hope of survival. If there was any hope, it came from the alguazil whose men had helped him remount. Seeing the Christians had almost no defense left, he ordered them taken alive so that he could present them to his master the infante and especially to Infanta Heliaxa. With this present he intended to repay some of the favors they had done for him, as you have already heard. At this moment, Esplandián and his companions arrived impelled by such ferocity that they felt they could destroy and tear to pieces not only the one hundred fifty or more enemy knights in that field, but the assembled might of the Turks. Many of the pagans were knocked to the ground in the first charge. But there are no words to tell you the marvels Esplandián did after he saw how humiliated his companions were, for what he did was so amazing and so beyond reason that it would be very hard to believe. So, what shall I say? Just this: the alguazil, who showed courage and bravery in handling his arms and who had often taken part in similar combat—although never before with knights such as these—knew many of his men remained in the field. So, he gathered his fellow fighters together as best he could, and, sword in hand, he encouraged them to attack their foes bitterly. However, when the other distinguished knights arrived to reinforce their companions, the alguazil's forces were easily cut off from one another, and most of the first ones Esplandián's forces encountered wound up on the ground. In the end, however, when Esplandián saw how well the Turks were holding up against his companions, and when he realized their strength was caused by their caudillo's encouragement, the knight moved against him intending to strike him on the head. The alguazil raised his shield, but Esplandián's blow struck so hard it split the shield in half, and his sword plunged all the way to the horse's front quarter ribs and came to rest in its chest. Hence, the horse was nearly cut in half, and it immediately fell dead pinning its master underneath it.

When the Turks saw such a blow, and, thinking their caudillo was dead, they were disheartened and plunged into such despair that those who were on horseback and who knew the terrain began to flee, and those on foot asked for mercy. Although Esplandián was so possessed by the fury of the cause on this occasion, nevertheless, seeing the enemy either dead or thoroughly defeated, he ordered the killing to cease and the lives spared of those who still had them. He did this because he realized that fortune, which was favorable this time, often in similar challenges may change for the worse; more-

over, he realized that the mercy that those foes were asking for was the same as what some on his side might ask for some day.

From the moment Frandalo took up arms he was constantly engaged in many battles both on land and at sea. You have already been told about these battles, which were different from the kind those knights understood; for the latter engaged mostly in individual challenges, whereas he was more accustomed to war's full bellicosity fought now on a small scale, now on a large scale.[5] Therefore, since he was more cunning and shrewd about this matter, he purposed to take the necessary precautions so that no contretemps would upset the victory he had achieved. Frandalo noticed that day was approaching and he knew that, once Infante Alforax was informed about what had happened by those who fled from the battle, he would send a lot of help. He also knew that the few knights in his band were mostly all wounded and that they were in imminent danger of death or prison, and he was worried that his counsel might seem to have come more from a madman than someone with experience in that business. Therefore, he immediately called his squire who had spoken to the city's sentries, and he said:

"Friend, it's advisable for you to go as fast as your hack[6] will take you to the gate of the city I sent you to before, and to tell the guards that the high alguazil wants them to inform the infante that he has crushed the Christians and killed many of them, that he has taken others of them prisoner, and that he will take them bound to him as soon as he has cared for the wounded among his own men, of which there are not a few, for he found great resistance among the opponents. Also, tell the infante that he should severely punish any of his men who may have returned to him with other news, because

---

[5] The narrator is fully aware of the change in the nature of war that was taking place as the Middle Ages were drawing to a close and as Spain was in the process of concluding the reconquest. This qualitative change is noted as early as chap. 55 above when Esplandián explains that he and his men are no longer engaged in adventures like those of Great Britain. This evolution is clearly seen in the last ten years of the conquest of the Moorish kingdom of Granada. In the first battle in 1482, the Marqués de Cádiz, Don Rodrigo Ponce de León, conquered Alhama with approximately 2,500 horsemen and 3,000 foot soldiers. GRM, as a member of the 100 knights from Medina del Campo sent by the Catholic monarchs to reinforce Alhama immediately after it was conquered, experienced personally at least the first part of this change in warfare from individual quality to collective quantity. For the final assault on Granada in 1491, the Catholic monarchs amassed an army of approximately 10,000 horsemen and 50,000 foot soldiers.

By contrast, this quantitative change in warfare occurred earlier in the Moslem conquest of Constantinople. In 1453, Emperor Constantine XII had 6,000 men in his army to defend the city against Turkish forces of 145 ships, 14 canons and 200,000 men. In the final assault 10,000 janizaries and 50,000 other soldiers entered Constantinople.

. In chap. 168, the narrator will inflate these numbers to underscore the epic nature of his historical and apocalyptic revisionism.

[6] To the best of our knowledge, this is the first use of the term hack [*rocín*] in GRM's five bks. of the Amadís Cycle. Cov. defines *rocín* as "a colt [*potro*] that is too young or too mistreated or of insufficient breeding to merit the name of horse." Of course, Don Quixote's Rocinante is the most famous *rocín* in world literature.

they fled from the battle. After you deliver this message, take the road to Villa Alfarín, for we shall go there, God willing."

After listening to Frandalo, the squire put spurs to his horse, and he arrived at the gates when the townspeople were rushing about the city in a great uproar, preparing to rescue the high alguazil. It seems that some of the knights who had fled from the battle returned there and reported that the alguazil and his men were dead or wounded and that they were lucky to have escaped. Hearing this news, Infante Alforax immediately ordered a rescue party to be formed. At that point, the squire said to them:

"Friends, I'm the man who spoke to you before, asking for help, and I went after the high alguazil and his men, as you told me to. I've come to tell you that he crushed the Christians. He killed many of them, and he took many others prisoner."

In this way he told them everything you have heard Frandalo order him to say, and he told them to repeat this to the infante. When the sentries heard this, they were very pleased to run to the palaces to tell the infante. As he, too, was very happy to hear the news, first he ordered the rescue party disbanded, and then he ordered no one to leave the city because his alguazil had had such a great victory. He was certain that the dead and imprisoned would be among the best of the foreign knights, because they had the boldness to dare come so close to such a major city as the one he was in.

84

About how, after conquering the two hundred knights and capturing the high alguazil, Esplandián and all his companions who were being instructed by Frandalo returned by a safe road to Villa Alfarín.

Not only were those people defeated and destroyed in the way you have just heard but Esplandián and all the others were also saved by means of Frandalo's brains and knowledge. Since they were so far from Villa Alfarín, since they were so injured by the battle, and since morning light was already upon them, it is certain that, were it not for his cleverness, they would not have had any means to escape capture. Furthermore, many Turks were ready to sally forth to kill them, and even if there were ten times more Christians, they could not have eluded death. At this point, we can properly mention that in that group of knights there were many who equalled Frandalo's armed prowess, and there were some who exceeded him by a wide margin. But in this case, we should not think of them as his equal, because it is often seen that daring, no matter how great, if not ruled and balanced by wise judgment and caution, becomes madness or folly. This is so in proportion to the difficulty of the challenge. Hence, in my opinion, this should be an example for kings and grandees who have a hand and command over many peoples. They ought to give and entrust positions—especially those relating to matters of war and

battles—to those who are most qualified to handle and carry them out. Moreover, they should disregard kinship, favoritism, magnitude, status, and number of services performed; and they should be blind to those who have acquired a large personal fortune and those of whom they are very fond. Rather, they should prefer those who are steeped in the mettle, diligence,[1] care, and wisdom that come from facing challenges in their own areas; and with such experience these people are almost able to divine what the future holds. Hence, if fickle and changeable fortune falls to the lot of the experienced, all should know that the fault lies in fortune's overwhelming inconstancy rather than in them failing to follow the dictates of truth and reason.

Now, returning to our story, I repeat that Esplandián ordered the living not to be killed, and Frandalo effected the precautions you have heard about. Then, taking that knight, the high alguazil, as a prisoner, they decided to return to Alfarín not by the road on which they came but by another Frandalo showed them. Even though it was a much rougher road, they considered it much safer. Thus, they travelled through the thickest part of the mountain until midday, when they arrived at the edge of a fresh-water stream, where they set up some of their company as sentries to keep watch for whomever might approach them. There they rested and ate what their squires provided, and their horses grazed on the green grass. After using the cures their servants often brought with them, the knights recovered somewhat from their travails and wounds, and then they took to the road again travelling so hard that they passed through the villa's gates as the sun was setting.

Now, however, the story ceases talking further about this. Instead, it shows pity on the two lovers and tells you how fortune united them, and how, by enabling them to see each other, it thereby made their passion burn hotter than before.

---

[1] There is a prominent Spanish saying that applies to the narrator's parenthesis here in a dramatic moment in the action: "*La diligencia es madre de la buena ventura*" [Diligence is the mother of good fortune]. Cervantes uses the saying twice, once in pt. I, chap. 46, when Don Quixote begs Dorotea to leave the inn-castle; and again in pt. II, chap. 43, when Don Quixote gives Sancho Panza advice on how to be a good governor of the Island of Barataria.

85

How, as the Author[1] *was extending his pen*
To write of heroic deeds and mighty grandees,
Cupid forced him to drop all talk of armies
And to turn his hand to love and devotion;
And, suffering in the long style, Cupid said
He was to say, without any more demurrers,
That fortune decided to join those lovers
Before either one or the other was dead.

Reason dictates that the story should consign to silence and inattention for a time matters relating to armed clashes and everything else the above-mentioned knights wanted to do against the infidel enemies of the holy faith of Jesus Christ. Instead, the story should recount how fortune decided to give relief to the two lovers, Esplandián and beautiful Leonorina, daughter of the great emperor, and how it took pity on their affliction, on their mortal desires, on the infinite tears that they continually spilled because of the pain in their distressed, captive, and subjugated hearts. Fortune also decided to favor them because its cruelty would have seemed excessive were it to have permitted their suffering to continue so much that they themselves might have been converted into nothing more than a flood of tears and therefore pass from this world for lack of surcease or comfort. However, although this favor might have satisfied their strong desires somewhat, fortune also decided to place an obstacle before them that not only would not cause their feverish hearts to cool even a little, but on the contrary, as you will now hear, would cause their hot fiery passion to be whipped into great burning flames.

86

About the change Esplandián felt as soon as he was informed by Gastiles' messengers about Infanta Leonorina's furious reply, and about the cure Damsel Carmela gives[1] *him.*

You have been told that Gastiles, the Emperor of Constantinople's nephew, sent his messengers to Esplandián in order to inform him about his uncle's

---

[1] This is the first direct reference to the "author." This figure—the narrator's first voice—will reappear dramatically in chaps. 99 through 102. It has been present from the beginning of bk. I but it has not been identified so self-consciously before. Nevertheless, it is worth noting that the self-referencing "author" does not actually appear in chap. 85; on the contrary, responsibility for the narration is placed, in the first instance, on "the story," and in the second instance on "fortune."

[1] Gay., JJAS, JJF, JV, and SP have the first verb (felt) in the past tense and the second (gives) in the present tense, a stylistic freedom of GRM's or the writer of the chap. titles (Proaza?) we shall respect.

charming reply and the fury of his cousin the Infanta Leonorina's reply. These messengers arrived at Villa Alfarín after the knights had already returned to the villa and after defeating their enemies and bringing back as a prisoner that great señor and caudillo, the high alguazil. So, after being cured by the hand of Master Helisabad and while the knights were resting in their lodgings, the messengers entered Esplandián's rooms where he was lodged with the king of Dacia and Damsel Carmela, and they handed him the letters they were carrying. The damsel realized what the mission was when she found out where it was from, and she feared the alteration either for joy or its opposite that any news might occasion him. Therefore, before Esplandián could reply, she said:

"Friends, go relax in your lodgings, and I shall bring you the answer."

Once the messengers had gone, Esplandián read the letters; but when he came to his lady's answer, he suddenly turned pale thinking that all of the hope his damsel had given him was in vain. His arms grew weak and limp and fell to his sides. The damsel did not take her eyes off him, and she noticed that Esplandián suddenly showed unmistakable signs of becoming upset; so she went over to him and said:

"My lord, what happened? What news has disturbed you? I'm certain that the only news that could affect you so strongly—indeed, that could cause your strong, brave heart to become so faint—comes from her whom no force, no knight's bravery, can resist. Señor, tell me that she who gave you the first sweet hope is the same who will give you medicine to maintain it and to make it come true."

"My damsel and my amie," said Esplandián, "read these letters. They will show you the cause of my misfortune."

The damsel took the letters, and when she saw the infanta's furious answer, she began to laugh, and she said:

"The difference between you men and us women regarding love is very great, and it lies in this: men usually show what they feel in their heart openly by their gestures and their speech and without guile or wariness; and often they do much more than just show their feelings. But we women do not do this; although, following the feelings of our troubled hearts, sometimes our wills wish our faces to deny what our words say. I don't mean to say we do this to practice deception; but rather, I mean that the world's customs have placed very great differences in the respective morals[2] of men and women. For whereas men achieve glory by setting their sights on loving women of higher social status and by making such an affair publicly known, such an affair causes dishonor and shame for women if they announce it publicly.

---

[2] The original Spanish word is *honras* [honors]. There is a famous distinction between *honra* and *honor* that dominated literature and morals in the Spanish Golden Age, the inception of which is marked by GRM's Amadís Cycle, the conquest of Granada, and the publication of *Celestina* (1499), among other things. Although the distinction is not so marked here as it became later, the term used here refers to fame, public reputation, integrity, probity, chastity, modesty, morals, and the like, as opposed to *honor*, meaning internal, lasting honor.

Therefore, it behooves us for a very good reason to deny what we desire. Nevertheless, for my part, I should not take this stance, nor could this logic suit me; for, if my heart feels any happiness, it is only in desiring to announce to everyone the incurable love I feel for you, my lord. But the just and proper medicine that works in my favor is my lowliness and your majesty: this does not hold when two people are considered to be on the same social level. Hence, your lady's response is the same thing your heart desires most ardently, which is to find itself near the heart that is likewise wounded and tormented by those same great, mortal desires. Therefore, my good lord, it behooves you to drop everything else and go see her. As I said, if you fell overwhelmingly in love by hearsay,[3] your actual presence will increase your love much more. Why, even your enemies delight in seeing her. Then, how much more will they delight who cast their eyes on her with great love and affection?"

[3] GRM presents this motif of Esplandián's love by hearsay as part of Urganda's prophecies in bk. IV, chap. 133. Just before he and the four other novice knights enter the Great Serpent Caravel and are put to sleep, Amadís gives Esplandián the ring Leonorina gave him in Constantinople, and the father then asks the son to fulfill his promise. The narrator comments: "But this did not happen as fast as either the one or the other expected; on the contrary, the knight underwent many dangers for love of this beautiful infanta, a love he conceived only because of the great fame of hers he heard about, as you will be told later" (CB, II, 1761). Cacho Blecua comments that this kind of love is much more spiritual than Amadís's. See Domingo Ynduráin's article, "Enamorarse de oídas," in *Serta Philologica F. Lázaro Carreter*, ed. Emilio Alarcos Llorach, vol. 2 (Madrid: Cátedra, 1985), 589–603.

How, in fine oration,
Garinto to the knight,
Seeing his deep sadness
And his profound distress,
Gave good consolation;
And how forgetfulness
Rests on prolonged absence
Which differs from presence
As is shown by the light
Of Clytemnestra's[1] *license.*[2]

After the damsel finished speaking, the king of Dacia said:

"My good señor, the damsel is right: you have come here by your father's order to serve the infanta, and not of your own free will, but rather due to a debt he owed her for the favors and great honors she gave him; and so you let her understand. She sent for you to drop everything and go see her because she wanted to see if you personally could satisfy your father's obligation to her. You have not done that. You have offered excuses aimed more in accord with knights than with a damsel's will. And you are surprised by her response. It seems to have quite dropped from your memory how easily absence causes women's truly ardent loves to be forgotten and altered. What then can be the result of those loves that have no foundation, where instead they ought to have a firm and secure base such as yours has? Remember how many tears, how much pain, how much anguish, the very beautiful Briseida[3] showed her beloved and very courageous Trojan knight Troilus[4] the night before she was forced to be separated from him. Remember how, the very next day, after a separation of so short a time and space, not three hours had passed after she arrived in the Greek's royal camp that she fell in love with Diomedes, king of Tracia.[5] As a sign to show that her freedom was now subject to him, she gave him an alb with her own beautiful hands. Recall Queen Clythemnestra, who not only cursed her husband because of his absence but also cut off his head with that strange costume.[6] I am referring to that head in which there was so much wisdom that for ten years it was able to command most of the world's great kings and princes. I could cite many other examples, but I will refrain from doing so in order not to call into question the perfect loyalty of those women who, rather than attain and lose those ideals, actually died for them. The only thing I want to say, my good señor, is that, for those who have a mutual and profound love, their presence, the glory of their words, and their acts of love light fires in the most tepid and chilled lovers even if these gestures are feigned. If this is so, imagine what such a world-renowed presence as yours could do, and imagine what power the lovers have who are inflamed with ardent, passionate desire."

"Oh, king of Dacia," said Esplandián, "everything you tell me I know is true. But, what shall I do? I have in my mind such an exalted image of the infanta's majesty and great beauty that I would not consider myself worthy to appear in her presence even if I alone had subjugated the entire earth."

"In that case," said the king, "forget her, and pick another woman of high estate, for they will beg for your service on their knees."

"That cannot be," said Esplandián, "both because it would be impossible and because I would be forgotten and buried under the earth if I were lost from her memory."

"Then do what we advise," said the king.

"I will do as you ordain because it is your idea," said Esplandián, "not because it is mine, for I do not understand."

"I think it would be good for you to speak to our knights and to leave them in Frandalo and your uncle Norandel's charge so that they can continue harassing and harming the infidels in this region, just as we have already begun to do. Then you should go to Forbidden Mountain in the knights' caravel, and you should take with you Gandalín and Enil, who are your father's servants and whom you trust without fear, and your damsel and me. Once we have arrived there, we can make whatever plans we deem fit. As for Gastiles's messengers, give them a letter in which you thank him profusely for remembering so well to do what you entrusted to him, and ask him on your behalf and mine to kiss the emperor's hands. Regarding the infanta, you will send a messenger to Constantinople to find out what her grace's orders for you are and in what way you can best serve her; and have the messenger tell her that you will set in motion whatever she orders."

"Since this is what you recommend," said Esplandián, "so be it, and may God in His mercy direct it. You may be sure, my lord, if we do not find a remedy for her fury, you need not bother yourself looking for a way to prevent my death."

How, after leaving Villa Alfarín and heading for Forbidden Mountain, a great sea storm that lasted ten days forced Esplandián to land at the foot of the Enchantress Damsel's crag.[1]

Their conversation ended with the agreement you have just heard. Afterwards, Esplandián spoke with their knights, and he dispatched Gastiles' messengers as they had decided. Then, taking some mariners to guide him, he set out to sea with the company you heard about. With those who remained and those who were leaving inspired by the true love the Almighty Lord had placed in them, Esplandián and his band left the port of Alfarín intending to go to Forbidden Mountain. However, what happened was quite different, for fortune wished to guide our knight, as it is accustomed to doing with those whom it wishes to exalt and gladden, by allowing him to discover unexpected things and to think unthinkable thoughts. After sailing through the first day and much of the following night, the good, steady weather was suddenly upset by a wind so violent the sailors were forced to cease relying on their skill, and instead, losing all hope, they gave free rein to the fortunes of the storm to guide them wherever it listed. The sea ran so high that many times they were about to sink, and it seemed to them that their lives would not survive such a terrible challenge. Then pilgrimages were devoutly promised; then knees were bended; then hands were raised heavenward beseeching mercy. But none of this had any effect. The winds and the storm never ceased growing in intensity.

Then that courageous knight Esplandián consoled his damsel, the king of Dacia, and the other knights in their company, and he spoke to them—this knight who was conceived in the season after his famous father, whose spirit was filled with immense grief, pain, and bitterness; who was ordered by his very beloved lady Oriana to leave Poor Rock; who, before seeing her, added to his glory and good fortune by defeating that energetic knight Don Cuadragante in single combat;[2] who defeated the ten knights of Infanta Leonoreta,

---

[1] Cacho Blecua points out that the Enchantress Damsel's crag is physically the highest point in GRM's Amadís Cycle. As such it symbolizes ascension, verticality, and the antithetical opposite of Arcaláus, the representative of evil and black magic. Indeed, this present chap. is an excursus on the contrast between the depths of terror in a sea storm, on the one hand, and the promised heights of human and divine glory on the other. In bk. IV, chap. 130, the narrator describes the crag thus: "They [Amadís and Grasandor] walked hard for five whole days without being able to see the crag even though the weather was very good. On the morning of the sixth day, they saw it high above them, so high was it that it seemed to touch the clouds" (CB, II, 1701). After having Leonorina's message plunge Esplandián into a nadir of despair, it is part of the logic of GRM's concept of fortune (luck/sea storm/supernatural will) to return to his knightly origin and essence on this high crag.

[2] Amadís, when he is known as Beltenebros, defeats Cuadragante in bk. II, chap. 55, as he is on his way to Miraflores Castle to be reunited with Oriana, the result of which

daughter to the great King Lisuarte;[3] and who defeated those frightening giants Famongomadán and his son Basagante, both of whom were feared by the whole world[4]—our knight, I say, whose birth and upbringing, like his father's, were so strange, and about whom the great wise woman Urganda and the Enchantress Damsel pronounced such praiseworthy and grand riddles, he not only suffered the wind's cruel force and the storm's dangers in a state of personal consolation, but he also spoke to the others with these consoling words:

"My friends, if this terrible challenge in which you find yourselves had happened to you alone, you would certainly be right to consider yourselves more dead than alive. But do not fear, for I am with you: I was born for this sort of thing, and I was knighted to face much more fearful things. Our Almighty Lord will not only send us a remedy for the straits we are in now, but He will even permit us to come out of it twice as happy as we were before. It so happens that I cannot arrive at the heights of glory or knightly prowess that are expected of me without passing through frights like this one and others that exceed it. And in the event that I lose my life in the meantime, I and those who spoke about me will be blameless, because the power of the Lord on High is above all things."

While Esplandián was talking to them, while they were commending themselves to God, while the caravel was sailing absolutely rudderlessly, and while they had no idea where they were nor where their voyage was heading, they ended the tenth day without having encountered anyone else on the rough sea and without seeing any stretch of land. Then, near midnight, they found themselves at the foot of the Enchantress Damsel's crag, which Esplandián, Gandalín,[5] and Sargil recognized immediately. Thus, the ship arrived, and the knights jumped ashore where they tied the ship by chains so tightly the water's force would not carry it off.

---

will be Esplandián's conception. This is the first, and easiest, of three trials the hero must undergo before he merits being reunited with his beloved. The same is true of Esplandián. By repeating the mythic structure he uses in bks. I to IV, GRM obtains integration and unity among all five bks.

[3] In bk. II, chap. 55, immediately after defeating Cuadragante, Beltenebros tries to avoid further adventures, but he is forced to fight against Leonoreta's ten knights, all of whom he defeats in short order. This is the second, and somewhat more difficult, adventure that the hero must overcome on his road to bliss.

[4] Amadís's third and hardest trial in bk. II, chap. 55, is individual combat with the giant Famongomadán and his equally giant son Basagante, both of whom he kills. Famongomadán was taking Leonoreta as a captive to be sacrificed when he came across Amadís who saved her. Frandalo is Famongomadán's grandson.

[5] Gandalín recognizes the crag because he, who is Amadís's former squire, arrived there alone in bk. IV, chap. 130, after Amadís and Galvanes had arrived there earlier in order to allow Amadís to attempt the adventure of the magic sword.

89

How Esplandián and his companions climbed up the Enchanted Damsel's crag, and about the things that happened to them before they arrived at the grand palaces.[1]

Esplandián and the knights were most consoled to have been given such a shelter from that dangerous adventure. However, they were even more frightened by a strange thing they heard then. The noise was this: from atop the high cliff came the strongest, loudest, most frightening roaring they ever heard come from any beast or thing. It was so strong that it seemed to shake the whole crag. Hearing it made Esplandián recall the prophecy that was written on the sign the lion held.[2] Believing that fortune had guided him there, and that he was now permitted to fulfill the prophecy, with great happiness in his spirit he said in a loud voice:

"Oh, Holy Mary, help me! The time that I have wanted so much has arrived. If it pleases God, now my tears and my mortal desires will begin to have some relief."

The king of Dacia, the damsel, and the knights were amazed to hear him say this; for they did not know what prompted him to say it, whereas he knew. Just as the story has already told you, he had read the letters that promised complete relief for his love pangs and declared that the entire adventure of the chamber with the great treasure would be accomplished by him when the lion would roar.

There they rested very pleasurably, dining on the provisions they brought and sleeping through the little that remained of that night on the blankets they took from the caravel. The next morning, Esplandián told the king what had happened to him on the crag when he was able to win his beautiful, magnificent sword. Gandalín also told them how he climbed up the cliff looking for the knight who was carrying a damsel off against her will; how he found Amadís and Grasandor there; how they all had a good laugh when he told them he wanted to try his hand at the adventure Amadís had not dared attempt; how Grasandor spoke to him after their laugh[3]—so they all laughed

---

[1] See chap. 1, n. 12, for the first reference in *Esplandián* to the crag and its grand palaces. See bk. I, chap. 130, for their first appearance in the Amadís Cycle.

[2] This episode is narrated in chaps. 1 and 2 of this bk. The lion appears at the end of the first chap., and the inscription prophesying the action in chap. 89 appears at the beginning of the second chap. The fulfilling of previous prophecies are standard narrative and thematic devices GRM uses throughout his five bks. See chap. 74, n. 6, for another reference to a lion image. Here, according to medieval bestiaries, the roar of the lion symbolizes God's virtue: "Thanks to it [divine virtue], Christ was delivered from hell and resurrected" (Ignacio Malaxecheverría, *Bestiario medieval*, 28). Likewise, the roar of the lion icon delivers Esplandián from the hell of his erotic despair.

[3] Gandalín narrates his adventure on the crag to Amadís, Grasandor, and Balán in bk. IV, chap. 130. The narrator, or the character, is exaggerating slightly about how much laughing took place in the chap. alluded to above. The earlier text says simply: "Grasan-

heartily over it again—how they found the knight and the damsel in the ancient baths; and how she, who had once abhored him, turned lack of love into overflowing love by agreeing to marry him. Hearing this, Damsel Carmela said:

"According to what you say, no one should despair of God's grace or what one desires. I for one shall take this to heart."

Esplandián laughed, embraced her, and said:

"My damsel and my very great amie, the love I have for you is much truer and much surer than that knight had for that damsel or even any love like it."

"My señor," she said, "please endure my excitability, because my heart suffers a thousand threats on account of you, and it pardons him who cannot do any more to assuage a thousand torments and a thousand emotions."

Then she bowed her knees and tried to kiss his hands, but he pulled them away, and when he was helping her rise he said:

"My amie, I shall give you my hands at such a time that many people of high rank will be happy to kiss your hands."

They spent a long time talking about these pleasant things you have just heard, for they were happy to have escaped from the dangers at sea, as you have heard. Happiest of all was Esplandián for the reasons I have told you about.[4] After a few hours of the day had passed, and they had eaten and rested, Esplandián told the king of Dacia that it was time for him to climb up the cliff, that he would take Gandalín and Enil with him, and that, if it was not too much trouble, he wished that the king would stay behind with the damsel until his return. Moreover, he wanted to take those two knights along not because he feared any danger, but because he thought they would only be needed to lift the tombstone.[5] The king responded:

"My señor, if I were to remain here at such a time, it could be said that two damsels were here without any knight. I want to go up with you and see what I have never seen."

"And I will go up, too," said the damsel.

"Well then, let us go with God's blessing," said Esplandián.

---

dor said laughingly" (CB, II, 1714). Either GRM has committed a small lapse or he is willing to have his character exaggerate for the effect of his own story telling. Cacho Blecua notes that, as GRM advances through the five bks., he allows the characters themselves increasingly to narrate their own adventures.

[4] The fact that GRM repeats his narrative tic ("as you have just heard" and its variants) three times in three successive short clauses, seems to be an indication of pending writer's, or narrator's, malaise, a condition we shall see so dramatically in chaps. 98 and 99. It would be hard to justify such a stylistic lapse for any other aesthetic or structural reasons.

[5] The prophetic words left on the metal idol by the Enchantress Damsel as reported in bk. II, chap. 130, when Amadís visits the crag say as follows: "From them [the knights on Firm Island] will come the one who [Esplandián] will remove the sword whereby he will be confirmed in the order of knight errantry, and the strong stone doors will be opened behind which is hidden the great treasure" (CB, II, 1703). See chap. 2 above in bk. V for Esplandián's earlier inability to find a way to penetrate the "opening" on the tomb or to discern what it was made of.

Sargil and Argento, the king's squire, packed as many provisions as they could carry; the damsel carried Esplandián's helmet; the king and the other knights carried their armor; and they all began climbing up the cliff. They walked so hard and long that at sunset they arrived at the hermitage where the big idol was. There they dined and slept, and at daybreak they continued their journey, walking so long that after three quarters of the day had passed they arrived at the summit of that very high crag. Because it was already very late, they decided to rest that night near the springs and ponds they found there. However, they got little rest because the snakes that were accustomed to drinking from that water came out of their caves. Sensing the people there, the snakes moved around them writhing[6] and hissing, and the people sallied out to attack them, but they were unable to reach them, because some of them went back into hiding and others fled slithering through the field. Since this action entertained them through the night, they never had enough peace to sleep. What prevented such wild, poisonous snakes from daring to come closer to those knights was Esplandián's enchanted sword, which, besides providing light by means of the radiance that came from the precious stones that were set in it, was made so cunningly that nothing enchanted or poisonous was powerful enough to harm anyone who was near it. Otherwise, none of them could have escaped being killed. By then, the lion's roaring was so loud that they would have been very frightened if Esplandián had not told them the cause of the roaring, as he had already seen it in writing.

90

How Esplandián opened the enchanted treasure chamber and entered with his companions; and you will hear that, after taking the lion off the top of the crystal tomb and opening it, he found marvellous and rich things in it.

When there was sufficient daylight, they went to the Enchantress Damsel's big palaces, and they crossed a hall which led to the doors of the enchanted chamber. As soon as Esplandián placed his right hand on the doors, they immediately opened and the roaring ceased. Then he and all the others entered, and he told Gandalín and Enil to take the lion from the top of the tomb; however, no matter how much they and the king of Dacia and the damsel, who were helping them, worked at it, they failed to move it. Seeing this, Esplandián approached it and tried to remove it with the strength of his hands. At his touch, it moved, and it was as easy to remove as if it were the lightest thing that ever existed. The same thing happened to him with the tomb,

---

[6] The original Spanish word here is *saltar* [jump]. It stretches our imagination a little to think of snakes jumping. However, Cov. says that, among other things, the Spanish verb *saltar* [to jump] means "to move from one place to another violently."

where he no sooner lifted the first crystalline cover than a second one appeared. This one was the color of the sky, and it was closed tight with a lock made out of one emerald in which there was a key made from a diamond, and its hinges were made with many very precious rubies. Once it was open, he saw a golden idol in it completely studded with very big—indeed disproportionately large—gems and very thick seed-pearls,[1] and on its head was a golden crown that was so well worked that it was considered a wonder by whoever saw it afterwards. On it were some letters written in burning red rubies which read as follows: "Jupiter, the greatest of the gods." Hanging from its head was a tablet with more very beautiful and well-carved letters which read as follows: "In the time that is coming when my great knowledge will be lost, when the maiden slave's slave who is buried here will be restored to life by the one who suffers death, then, at that time, the Grecian sheep, who were raised on another and stranger pasture, will be constrained and placed in great tribulation by hungry sea wolves, who will cover a large part of the wide sea, and many of the sheep will be enclosed in a large forest, and many of them will be killed and torn to pieces. In this manner, their shepherd, having lost all hope and having been filled with deep anguish, will weep over his wretched end; but, at that time, the son of the wild lion will appear, and wreaking very cruel destruction, he will seize power and command from the great shepherd, and they will savor sinking their savage teeth and sharp claws into the tissues of his heart, and his sheep will remain under his and his brave companions' rule. Then the artful and great Serpent, the enchanted knife, and this very high rock will be sunk for ever into the deep sea."[2]

---

[1] Seed-pearls (Spanish: *aljófar*) are small, irregularly shaped pearls. The word comes from Arabic *al-yawhar* [pearl]. Cov. says that "those that are not round, but have one flat side and the other round, are called seated-pearls, and these are usually used to encrust in jeweled things made of gold and silver in which they cover the flat places; because they were encrusted in the shell from which they came, they are able to be seated in the decoration, which is why they are called seated-pearls." Hence their appropriate use on this idol. In the *Lapidario* (1250–60) by Alfonso X el Sabio's school, *aljófar* is described as a hot, dry precious stone which comes from the Great Sea that surrounds all land, and it is thought to be very noble and very precious. Ground into a powder, it is, says the *Lapidario*, a remedy for heart tremors, melancholy, sadness, cloudy eyesight, and headaches. The stars that have influence over these pearls are those in "the third curve in the figure of the Dragon" and "the one that is on the Woman's breast."

[2] For critical comments on previous prophecies in bks. II and IV, see AArce, 250–51 and 397–98.

How, while Carmela was lowering the lion,
And others lowered the tomb's golden bust,
They took that magnificent treasure just
Where the caravel awaited its captain;
How Garinto was sent without delay
By the knight who was a suffering lover
To enquire of the emperor's daughter
If she had complaints against him to lay.

While the king of Dacia, Damsel Carmela, and the other knights were looking at the grandiose riches from the huge idol of Jupiter, they marvelled over it observing how its decoration was designed with those gems, and they imagined that if all the world's jewels were assembled in one place they would still not equal that statue's value. Meanwhile, Esplandián read the Greek letters—for he knew that language very well—but he was not yet able to understand what its message was. Turning to the king, he said:

"My good sire, what do you think about what we have found here?"

"It certainly seems to me that we could not have found such precious or such priceless things anywhere in the world."

"Have you read these letters?" asked Esplandián.

"No," answered the king of Dacia. "Although I have looked at them, I do not know the language, and it seems very strange to me."

"Well, after we have taken care of those other things, I shall interpret them for you. If we can decipher it, I think you will not underestimate its import; although right now it seems very obscure to me."

"Then, what shall we do?" said the king.

"Let us take everything we found here down to the ship," said Esplandián, "and we shall take it with us, since, at the end of its long and grand history, God and fortune granted it to us and to no one else."

"So be it," said the king. "It would be foolish to leave what has been offered you for so little trouble. Especially since the world's greatest men would place themselves and their people at death's door to acquire it."

"My damsel," said Esplandián, "put your arms around this lion and take it away; for since it was subject to my will, it is subject to my command. Gandalín and Enil will carry the crystal tomb cover, and the king, our squires, and I shall work with the idol's tomb."

As she was ordered, the damsel, having no hope of being able to lift the lion off the ground, went to pick it up, and it was light as a feather. And so was everything else, which they raised from the ground without any difficulty. They carried it all from the palaces and placed it where the descent from the rock's summit began. And from there on it all felt much lighter because they were going downhill. They walked until reaching the hermitage where, after setting down their treasures, they were pleased to rest, dine on the stores they had with them, and sleep through that night. The next morning they began

descending as they had before, and they arrived at the foot of the crag before nightfall, when Esplandián ordered the tomb placed in the ship with the lion on top just as they were in the chamber. By this time the weather was much calmer, and he ordered the mariners to set sail for Forbidden Mountain, which they did. On the second day of the voyage, the king of Dacia said to Esplandián:

"My good señor, I thought it would be good for me to take the boat that we have on board the caravel and to go with a sailor to Constantinople, where I can work to find a way to speak with your lady and discover as much as possible what is behind her fury. Also, I will try to find out in what manner she wishes you to see her, and, if I can arrange it, you shall see her secretly before you see her father the emperor. And if this cannot be accomplished, you will have to do whatever seems best."

"My good sire," said Esplandián, "I take what you say as good advice. Since I have entrusted my will to my damsel's sagacity and yours, what seems best to you will be put into effect. Certainly, if what you say ... that is, if I could see the infanta secretly, although it were done completely virtuously, that would satisfy me much more than to present myself before her father and the entire court. Since I am hers, from her alone should I like to receive the command to serve her. While you are travelling, I plan to wait for you on this ship in that place on the sea where I found you in Frandalo's fleet. In that place, I can know quickly what you are doing and what my lady commands."

"I agree," said the king.

92

How Garinto, king of Dacia, left for Constantinople and, travelling across the sea, was lost for forty days, during which time he faced many terrible dangers.

Then the king of Dacia and his squire Argento, who was bearing his arms, let the little boat down into the water with some provisions and two mariners to man the oars, and departing from Esplandián, they set off bound for Constantinople. However, fortune, in order to show its great power and to teach men that they cannot attribute everything that happens solely to their own sagacity, often reverses men's plans, especially those that are held most firmly and securely. This is what fortune did with the king: it hindered him by diverting the boat's course at night without the mariners knowing how it happened. So, at the light of dawn, they could not figure out where they were, nor much less where they should head. Hence, believing they would land in some port where they could reorient themselves, they thought it suited them to follow chance rather than their knowledge.

The king of Dacia wandered across the sea lost for more than forty days

during which he suffered[1] many dangers and misfortunes that brought him to the cruel edge of death. If the story were to relate them to you, it would mean leaving its original object. Especially regarding how, after running out of viands, he put into port on the isle of a giant named Grasión.[2] After going inland a short way, they drank from a spring called Forgetfulness, and he and his squire Argento fell next to it completely unconscious. From there they were carried to the giant, who locked them in a cruel prison; and a damsel saw how young and handsome the king was and fell in love with him; and she helped him escape by very mysterious means and recover his arms, boat, and mariners; and she went with him; and later he put into port on another island in the region of Hungary[3] where he discovered that a damsel was to be burned alive, but no knight would accept the challenge to defend her; and he fought another knight whom he defeated; and this damsel also went with him; and later his adventures took him to the foot of a tower against which the sea beat in which there was an imprisoned duenna; and she entrusted herself to him, and he took her from there by defeating the master of the tower. Many other adventures happened to him, but it would be too long and prolix to relate them; so whoever wishes to know about them may read the great chronicle Master Helisabad wrote about Esplandián at the time he was emperor, and in it you will find everything I have said here and many other great deeds of chivalry done by the knights who remained in Villa Alfarín, by those who came from Great Britain, and by those who came from the region of Rome to fight in this war that was begun against the infidels. But in these pages called the *Labors* you will only be told that the two lovers met;[4] that the wise

---

[1] Here we follow JJF, JV, JJAS, and SP (*passo* [suffered]) rather than Gay., who has *puso* [put, placed].

[2] Grasión appears only in this chap. in GRM's Amadís Cycle.

[3] As the four, and now five, wayward characters wander about, so does the style and the fanciful geography. To cut a tangential narration short on the grounds that it would be too prolix to give every detail is one of GRM's standard narrative devices. However, in this chap., he cuts away from Garinto before allowing him to develop as an independent character. By contrast, in bks. I to IV, a number of characters including Lisuarte, Agrajes, Galaor, Balán, and others, are allowed to pursue full adventures independent of the main character. In bk. V, however, GRM focuses so single-mindedly on Esplandián that he sacrifices all to his main purpose, a purpose prepared and fully announced in the preceding four bks. In this sense, GRM is fulfilling one of the laws of epic folk narrative as postulated by Axel Olrik and at the same time he is violating another. The focus on the protagonist follows the law he calls "*Konzentration um eine Hauptperson*" (Concentration on a Leading Character), but the scant development he gives the king of Dacia in this chap. violates "*das Gesetz des Gegensatzes*" (Law of Contrast).

[4] In his introduction to a modern Spanish translation of *Tirant lo Blanc*, Mario Vargas Llosa makes an eloquent, though debatable, case for the novel's greatness being based on the author's decision to create "fiction as self-sufficient reality." He adds that "the total novel is a representation of reality conditioned on being an autonomous creation, an object gilded with a life of its own." See "Carta de batalla por Tirant lo Blanc," in Joanot Martorell, *Tirant lo Blanc*, vol. 1 34. By contrast, GRM works his

woman Urganda the Unknown accompanied Esplandián to the emperor's court; that many amazing things happened there; that a great battle was waged around Constantinople by land and by sea; that a horde of barbarian kings from white and black nations joined in the battle; that an equal number of Christian princes and grandees came to Esplandián's aid; that the death toll was immense on both sides; and that after the battle was terminated, these so-called *Labors* were likewise terminated, the title meaning something akin to Esplandián's deeds of prowess. Therefore, the story will continue recounting how Esplandián sent for information about the king of Dacia when the latter delayed his return, and, finding out nothing at all, he made the decision you will now hear.

93

How, after his fortune prevented sad
Garinto from arriving where he wished,
The great knight, sorrowful and anguished,
Alone with Carmela her counsel bade;
And she, not thinking, found a remedy
For him to be able to speak to her
Who has forced him horribly to suffer
And who stole his sense and his liberty.

Esplandián, after the king of Dacia left him, ordered his ship to sail to the place on the sea where he had told his friend he would wait for him. Once he arrived there, he waited at anchor for ten days, but seeing that neither his friend nor a messenger were returning, he decided to send a man in a small boat to go find out if the king of Dacia had arrived in Constantinople and to bring him word quickly. This messenger came and went without being able to ascertain anything about the king, for it was true that he had not gone there. This puzzled Esplandián greatly; but then it occurred to him that, as happened with the other knights who were guided by a force beyond reason, events that might really happen to the king would be considered vain and unreal if they were not subject to the same force. Thinking that fickle fortune would be impotent to interfere with his friend's fortunes, Esplandián continued to place his hope in the Almighty Lord in whom he believed firmly for his salva-

---

artistic magic by using the opposite means. Throughout all five bks. he never allows the reader to suspend disbelief for long. Rather than wishing to create an independent reality, his purpose is to create a fiction that fully integrates with the art, society, and politics of the time in which he is writing. In this way, GRM is able to create as much universality, though of a different kind, as Martorell does in his Catalan masterpiece. In this sense, he is more a precursor of Cervantes, Sterne, Diderot, and Joyce, than of Flaubert, James, and Mann.

tion. Without feeling any irritation over this, he called his damsel and said:

"My true amie, you already know why Garinto, king of Dacia, left us. I expect he went off course due to the waves of the sea rather than his own will, and therefore he has not been able to carry out his good plan. Since we cannot do anything else, let us take whatever remedial action is possible. Advise me, my good amie, because those who are tormented by passion's wounds lose their sense in these matters even though their faculties remain intact in every other way. I could prove this by citing cases of many great men who were still able to achieve famous deeds, but who failed in this one challenge alone.

"Master," the damsel said, "even though you were to search the whole world for someone to judge the truth of this matter, you couldn't find anyone better than me. This is because there is no one but I who could stand—and much less contemplate—the unlimited and anguished passion I suffer. For me, the greatest remedy is to be in your company. If this boon were taken away from me, or if I were separated from you, I would lose my life immediately. Regarding what concerns me about all this, if I were to find some remedy for you that I thought might oppress my heart, I wouldn't be more a part of the remedy than if I were dead. But, regarding what concerns you—having, as you do, less keenness due to your disturbed judgment, and having more will to serve her than I have—you should take my advice, for a bizarre means has occurred to me by which you will be able to see your lady; but it won't be without grave danger to both of you. However, high goals can seldom be reached without danger. My Master, I want to remind you that among your cargo is the tomb with its precious, priceless treasure, which no emperor or king has ever amassed anywhere in the world. Order this ship to land in the port of Constantinople, and warn the crew to keep your presence aboard secret. Instead, you'll be hidden in the bottom of the ship while I'll take Gandalín and Enil ashore, and I'll inform the emperor and empress that I've come on your behalf to bring their daughter this very precious present; and I'll contrive to have them come to the ship to see it. Then after they've all left, you enter the tomb with the idol, and together we'll carry you to Infanta Leonorina, and I'll have you placed in her dressing room. As for everything else, leave it to me, for I'll find a way for her to see you, and then for you to be taken out of there the next day. If what I'm suggesting seems burdensome to you, remember that it is more burdensome to endure the anguish and shackles that continually torment you."

Hearing this, Esplandián was pensive for a while. Upon reflection, he said to her:

"My damsel, I do not fear death, because it cannot be as cruel or as painful as what I suffer many times each day; but, if by some misadventure I were to be discovered, what I fear for is the honor of the great emperor who showed my father so many favors. Above all, I fear the harm and trouble that it might cause my lady. But, since I am firmly resolved to serve her and to protect her honor more than that of anyone else who is alive today, as the Lord on High is my witness, I trust He will guard us and see us safely through

this daring plan you are giving me. Therefore, I order it to be done as you have said."

"The Lord you refer to," said the damsel, "will help us. And after Him, I will help you, for you will see what my desire and great love for you is good for."

94

How Esplandián secretly arrived in the port of Constantinople with two companions, and what the emperor did due to Damsel Carmela's ingenuity.

Having taken the decision I have told you about, Esplandián ordered the ship to set sail for Constantinople. He travelled so hard that at the end of eight days, he arrived in the great port. As he was about to land he was speaking to the men who were accompanying him, and he told them they were not to mention him to anyone under any circumstances except to say that he had remained at Forbidden Mountain. The reason for this was that for the time being he did not want to be met by the emperor until more knights were with him; for to be presented again to such a great man, it was best to do so in a group. Therefore, to be well concealed, he intended to remain in the most secret parts of the ship, which is what he did. Meanwhile, the damsel took Gandalín and Enil, who were fully armed, and went ashore, and afoot they went up the street to the grand palaces.[1] On the way she was recognized by many onlookers who said:

"This is the damsel of that blessed knight. Oh, Lord God! If only You could find a way for him to come here, this whole seigniory would be honored by his presence."

With that they arrived at the palaces where they announced their arrival to the emperor, who was very pleased to have them enter his great hall where the empress and other kings and high nobles were in attendance. The damsel arrived without making any obeisance other than what you heard she made at the time of her first visit. However, Gandalín kneeled, desiring to kiss the emperor's foot. Enil did likewise, but the emperor would not permit it; rather, he stretched out a hand to each of them, and, ordering them to rise, he said to them very happily:

"Friend Gandalín, I am pleased to welcome you, but while your visit gladdens me, my heart is all the more sorrowful because I am reminded of the time you were here with your master, whom I love deeply, but whom I have not seen since, nor do I hope to see."

---

[1] Once again, the physical description of the relationship between Constantinople's shore, main street, and palaces is accurate. Fig. 11 shows the palace walls at the edge of the Sea of Marmara, a rapid rise uphill toward the Blue Mosque (Sultan Ahmet I) at the base of which the core of the Byzantine Bucoleon Palace stood in a state of serious disrepair in 1453.

"Sire," said Gandalín, "Your Highness is quite right to feel as he does; for, my master, being who he is and deserving, as he does, to rule over most of the earth, is anxious to serve you with the same obedience he had for him from whom he received the great state he is enjoying today."

"I did what I did for Amadís for the sake of kinship and love," said the emperor, "and I consider myself honored to have him for a friend. And it gave me great pleasure to hear that King Lisuarte voluntarily abdicated the throne of Great Britain in Amadís's favor; but I do not know if this is so."

"It's true," said Enil. "I witnessed the abdication. Even though I wish the world for my lord Amadís, it's certain that everyone was moved to deep pity and compassion for Lisuarte, especially given the changes in fortune Lisuarte suffered. The ceremony happened to the accompaniment of copious tears and much lamentation; although afterwards all of the witnesses who know about it are quick to praise him for such an act."

"Knight, I beg you to tell me about it," said the emperor. "We high nobles are compellingly obliged to be informed about the virtuous deeds our peers perform."

Enil told him everything he knew without leaving anything out, just as you have already heard. At this, the emperor lowered his head and stood pensively for a moment, after which he said:

"I am certain that a very long time will pass before a better man than King Lisuarte appears. Nor will another spend his time with such wisdom and courage as he did. Furthermore, in my opinion, the same good fortune that favored him so much during his youth by giving him energy to achieve victory in so many battles and to win so much glory decided to be even more gracious and generous toward him. Fortune did this for him by putting him on the right road to overcome himself. It did this for him, first, after satiating the ordained tribulations and miseries of his flesh, and, second, after fulfilling the faith of his spiritual soul. Very few mortals are strong enough to do this without the mercy of our Gracious God."

Then, with a happy mien, he turned to Damsel Carmela and said:

"Good damsel, I am pleased to welcome you, too. Peradventure have you come more disposed than the last time to show some courtesy?"

"How can my will bend, when I've come more in love and more subject to him on whose behalf I'm here," said the damsel. "Rather, of course, I see it much more the other way around than before."

The emperor, empress, and all of the high nobles laughed gaily. Then he said to her:

"By what you seem to indicate, we need not suspect that you have come to get another amie for your master even though he may have energetically charged you to do so."

"As for that," she said, "you may reasonably judge what should have been, but I must serve him in all things."

"Good damsel," said the emperor, "I love and esteem you; if you have come for something I can do for you, say so, for it shall be done immediately."

"Emperor," she said, "the purpose of my trip is to ask you and the em-

press a favor that is not made out of gold or silver. Seeing what I have in my hands today, I'm certain that you in all your grandeur will envy me. But what I ask is that you and she go to a ship I've left on the sea under your windows in order to see a present my master Esplandián is sending to your daughter the infanta in his capacity as her knight."

"In my opinion," he said, "it behooves us to ask for such a boon rather than to grant it. So then, let us do what you ask."

At once, he ordered mounts brought for him and the empress. But as soon as the people in the palace as well as outside heard about the damsel's request, they thought it probably involved something amazing; in fact, so many went with the emperor and empress by horse or on foot that it was a marvel to see. Arriving at the seashore, the emperor and empress dismounted and went aboard the ship with as many knights as would fit. The damsel guided them to the tomb, and she said:

"Emperor, this tomb you see before you was on the very high crag of the Enchantress Damsel two hundred years ago in exactly this position. But through all that time, none of the knights of all those who have lived since then except my master Esplandián was ever able to see it no matter how much courage or valor they had. My master is he who won the sword, as I think you know, and he went back again to get what you'll see here."

Saying that, she removed the lion and raised the first crystal covering. After unlocking the second crystal covering, the idol that was enclosed inside the tomb was revealed. When the emperor and empress saw it, they looked at it very closely full of wonder, and they said that it was impossible that anything of similar value existed anywhere else in the world; and that, if the seed-pearls were distributed, there would be enough there to make everyone alive in the world rich. Noticing their reaction, the damsel said:

"Emperor, what do you think? He who is capable of sending such a present to your daughter the infanta, is he worth consummating his father's promise?"

"Of course, damsel," said the emperor, "he who possesses something like this should be considered a great grandee; but as for what you ask, I do not assent to it; for no matter how well furnished one is with temporal goods, they are never equated with the virtue and good manners knights achieve. Many evil people can have the first, but the second are possessed only by those who are subject to virtue. You already know I ordered my daughter not to release the father until the son appeared in her presence so that we could judge whether he is of the kind who is able to consummate the pledged word of one of the most distinguished knights in the world."

Then he looked at the golden tablet and read slowly, for no one had yet understood the letters, as you have heard. Although the interpretation seemed obscure to him for the present, it disturbed him profoundly, and while taking hold of it and removing it from the tomb, he said to the damsel:

"Of these gifts I want this one. As for the rest of it, do with it as you were ordered."

After saying this, he and the empress and all those who had gone on board

with them left the ship, for they had all enjoyed seeing that wonder very much. However, after they had gone, so many others came aboard to see it that they did not cease coming until nightfall.

95

About how love, with great power and impress,
Whose commands we should never try to bend,
At the right moment, presents the imprisoned
And good lover before the proud princess;
And she, like a jewel of precious, rich light,
Accepts his service, without precautions;
Delivering the key, Carmela cautions:
"Here in your presence stands your loyal knight."

When night came and the ship was disencumbered of all strangers, the damsel went in to where Esplandián was hiding, and she said to him:

"Hey, señor, the time has come when it will please the Lord in His grace for your desires to be fulfilled. Prepare yourself, and then get in the tomb, for it's time to take it to your lady."

Hearing this, Esplandián made no further reply, but he called Enil saying to him:

"My good señor and friend, what did you do with the robes my mother Queen Oriana sent with you for me?"

"Señor," answered Enil, "here they are. Thinking you would need them, I put them in your cabin."

"Then give them to me," said Esplandián.

Enil removed them from the bundle they were in. They were very beautifully decorated with many flowers and golden roses[1] and bordered by gems and large pearls,[2] and in some parts there were birds that seemed to fly. The queen ordered them made by the finest masters, and she had them sew into them those beautiful stones that she inherited from her father and mother. Esplandián put them on, girding his sword over them. He had on his head nothing other than his beautiful locks which covered his shoulders. The finest gold paled in comparison to his hair, and his face was comparable to the face of angels. Damsel Carmela was stupified to see him dressed in this way, and she said to him:

"Oh, Santa María! What's this I see? Oh, Lord, take pity on me, and get

---

[1] GRM uses this binary phrase, flowers and roses, often throughout his *roman fleuve*. It was a standard cliché in fifteenth-century Spanish literature.

[2] GRM calls these large pearls *aljófar grueso*. According to Cov., under his entry on *aljófar*: "The large ones . . . were commonly called pearls." In chap. 90, the reference to pearls was not modified by calling them large. See chap. 90, n. 1.

into the tomb quickly; for my afflicted eyes can't stand seeing such great beauty. I wouldn't be surprised to fall dead right here before your eyes."

Seeing her react this way, Esplandián took her in one arm and said:

"Then, my amie, clear the people out, and I will do what you ask."

"That has already been taken care of," she said, although she was very agitated.

"Then let's go," he said.

They went to the tomb and raised the lid. Esplandián got in next to the idol, and the damsel closed and locked it as it had been before. Then she replaced the lion on top of it. After doing this, she had Gandalín take one corner, Enil another, and one of the ship's mariners the third corner. Lifting the tomb without much difficulty, they left the caravel. By that time the sun had already set, but as they were entering the city, they were spotted, and all the people came out of their houses with so many candles burning that it seemed to be day, and in that way they could all see very clearly. Then and there Esplandián was exalted by everyone so fervently that they raised his praises to the clouds; then they were reminded of the frightful battle the Knight of the Green Sword had had with the cruel Endriago;[3] then they recalled and talked about how Esplandián, that knight's son, had accomplished the adventure his father had not dared attempt; and then they referred to the way the young knight had defeated his father in single combat. What can I tell you? Just that never have such wonders been told about strong Hercules, or brave Hector, or courageous Achilles, or Prince Tydeus.[4]

So then, escorted as you have heard, they arrived at the emperor's palaces and at beautiful Leonorina's richly appointed chamber, for she had already been informed by her mother about who had come. The infanta bade them enter a long hall, brilliantly lighted by torches, where she was waiting in the company of Queen Menoresa and other duennas and damsels of very high lineages. When the ladies were all in their places, the visitors placed the tomb with the lion on it before the infanta. Damsel Carmela knelt in front of her and said:

"Beautiful princess, give me your hands so I can kiss them on behalf of your knight; as for me, if I do not kiss your hands, I will kiss no one's."

The beautiful infanta refused to proffer them, but rather embraced her, and, laughing very graciously, she said:

"Damsel, what does your arrival mean? And what is this you are bringing me?"

---

[3] This attitude by the citizens of Constantinople represents a kind of hagiography within GRM's fictional space. In bk. III, chap. 74, the emperor orders Gastiles to lead an expedition to Santa María Island to visit Amadís and to erect a statue to commemorate the famous battle. Events from bk. III are therefore a vital part of the present action. The last two items in this list of chivalric deeds are narrated in the present novel.

[4] Prince Tydeus is a mythical Greek character. He is Diomedes' father and one of the seven against Thebes. He was killed in an unsuccessful attack on Thebes. His story is narrated in the *Crónica troyana*, and he is referred to several times in Homer's *Iliad*.

"Beautiful princess," she answered, "On behalf of the knight, I bring you these gifts as a token of service the likes of which could not be found even if one were to search the entire world. But I don't want them to be seen by you or anyone tonight. So you must wait until tomorrow when I'll return with this key. As a boon I ask you only to give me the tomb's second lid so that I can place it on the tomb of the giant Matroco, who died a Christian. It's for the monastery I'm ordering built in my father's hermitage. As for the rest, do with it as you please; but until I return, I ask you to do me the favor of having this tomb placed in your dressing room tonight."

"I shall order it all done as you wish," Leonorina said.

Then the damsel had it taken up and carried as before, and the three men placed it in the chamber in which no one else slept except the infanta and Queen Menoresa. While that was happening all the duennas and damsels were walking about watching the proceedings, and Leonorina and the damsel were conversing. Finding an opportune time and place, Carmela said to the infanta:

"Beautiful princess, now I want to test the strength of your heart and your discretion, for in this tomb I am leaving for you one dead and one living treasure. Be wise enough to apply the right medicine. I've completed my work. Now only you and a confidante you trust will see it."[5]

Placing the key in the infanta's hand so carefully that no one else could see or hear what she was doing, she took the knights with her as quickly as possible, and without waiting for a reply, she left the great hall and then returned to the ship.

96

About the heartweary speech the infanta made to Queen Menoresa concerning her confusion; and about how she opened the tomb and how Esplandián was able to spend that night honestly talking with what he loved more than anything else.

Hearing this, the infanta, who was very sharp, was exceedingly upset, and she almost fainted. Wondering what that was all about, she feared the damsel had played a big trick on her. She was so confused she did not know how to protect herself. As quickly as she could she found a way to have her duennas and damsels retire to their rooms: she pretended to be indisposed. Then taking Queen Menoresa aside as she was accustomed to doing, she went into her chamber, locked the door, and, with a pale face and wringing her hands, she

---

[5] The pronoun "it" is a prime example of untranslatability because the Spanish phrase is deliciously ambiguous whereas the English is not: "*tú lo verás.*" The Spanish pronoun "*lo*" refers to the treasure and to Esplandián; whereas English forces the choice between him and it.

threw herself down on a dais.[1] Seeing her like this, the queen kneeled in front of her and said:

"Milady, how do you feel?"

"Oh, my true friend!" said the infanta, "I don't know. All I know is my heart feels faint, and it was an unlucky moment when I saw Damsel Carmela, for she's caused my death."

"How is that, milady?" said the queen. "Tell me, for you know I love your heart more than my own. Did she peradventure say something that troubled you?"

"Oh, Queen Menoresa," she answered, "what she told me infused my heart with great gladness, but that's what has caused me such agony. My senses are torn on the one hand by love and on the other by fear; and together they've brought me to the edge of death. Oh queen and my friend! If you love me as much as you say, there has never before been a time like this to show it to me."

Crying freely, Leonorina put her beautiful arms around the queen's neck and she held her tight. Seeing her like this, the queen was very disquieted, and she said through her own tears:

"Oh, Santa María! What can this mean? For God's sake, milady, tell me. Do not fear, for I will place my life in whatever danger arises not only to save your life, but also to keep you from suffering any unpleasantness whatsoever."

"In that case," said the infanta, "I want to reveal to you what's troubling my heart. You already know that the damsel brought me a message from Esplandián, the son of the Knight of the Green Sword, and you know all the things she said in public. But in addition she told me other things in private by which she made me understand that I have caused the knight to fall passionately in love with me, and from that love he is filled with anguish and mortal desires, and I, hearing that he is prized more highly than all other knights alive today in terms of valor, prowess in arms, immense handsomeness, and royal rank, I, too, have let those words of love nest in my heart. Even though they may have been auspicated by fortune, I did not shelter them so that they would grow and increase as they have, and I did not want them to cause me to have any immodest thoughts. I only wanted to feel the glory of being loved by such a knight, who is prized above all others in the world. Moreover, the merciful and loving reply the damsel took him from me will cause both him and me to be carried off by death if you, oh queen, don't find a remedy for us. And I think almost certainly that, according to what the damsel just told me, hidden in that tomb in the dressing room over there with the great treasure in it we'll find Esplandián."

Hearing this the queen's heart began to throb throughout her whole body,

---

[1] The original Spanish has *estrado*, which in modern Spanish means dais, raised platform or drawing room furniture. But, more to the context here, Cov. says it means "a place where señoras sit on cushions and receive visits." The OED allows this meaning as a dialectal variation for dais.

and her flesh began to tremble from the great shock she felt.[2] However, since she was very sensible, and since she saw the dangers that were lurking, she struggled as much as she could not to increase Leonorina's distress, and she said to her with a composed countenance:

"Milady, have no fear, for I will help you in such a way that, with God's grace, all your sadness and suffering will be turned into happiness, and your honor will remain in the sublime state it merits. The only thing that bothers me is that the key's not here."

"Here it is," said the infanta.

"Then, if it's true that he's in there," said the queen, "may God confound me if he were to leave here without us seeing him. Come what may, give me that key, and you stay here, for I'm going to see what this is all about."

Then, leaving the infanta on the dais, she picked up the key and a candle with her beautiful fingers—for she was as beautiful as she was spirited—entered the dressing room, approached the tomb, and, with little hope that her weak strength would suffice, she grabbed a hold of the crystal lid and lifted it as if it were made of a much lighter material. Putting it and the lion to one side, she approached the lock and said softly:

"Is anyone in there?"

"Yes," said Esplandián.

"Well, who are you?" she asked. "Tell me."

"Rather, who are you who ask me?" said Esplandián.

"I am," she said, "Queen Menoresa."

"I am," said Esplandián, "that fortunate or unfortunate[3] knight who has come here seeking life or death depending on whether I find pity or cruelty in my Lady Leonorina, whom I desire fervently to serve so long as I am granted life to do so."

"Knight," said Queen Menoresa, "you need not tell me any more, for I already recognize you as Esplandián, son of him whom I love very much.[4] If, as a loyal knight, you promise you will not disobey me, I shall get you out of here, and I shall speak to you with as much good will as I would to your father."

"My good señora," he said, "I shall never disobey you unless my lady orders otherwise."

"Well, I'm quite certain of that," she said, "for she will order nothing against my will."

---

[2] AKCT invents the following lovely simile to describe Leonorina's emotional and physical state here: "[she] shook like an Aspen leaf" (chap. 36 in AKCT).

[3] The original Spanish antonyms here, *bienaventurado* and *sin ventura*, in addition to meaning luck or fortune, also connote heavenly or eternal bliss, blessedness, and their opposites, damnation, and the like.

[4] In bk. III, chap. 74, when Amadís is about to leave Constantinople, many ladies who have fallen hopelessly in love with him offer him gifts. The only ones he accepts are a ring from Leonorina and six swords from Menoresa who intuited correctly that his heart was already dedicated to another lady. Menoresa is described as "the most beautiful woman in all Greece after Leonorina" (CB, II, 1175).

Then she unlocked and raised the cover, and Esplandián emerged and stood before her.[5] When the queen saw how beautiful he was dressed in his very elegant robes, she was so amazed that for a long time she stood looking at him without being able to speak, and she was thinking that no other creature so fair or so good-looking had ever been fashioned since the beginning of the world. Without saying anything to him, she took his hand and went with him to the door that connected the dressing room to the larger chamber. Stopping in the doorway, she said to him:

"You shall not pass this spot." And she added, "Milady Leonorina, do not be afraid, but banish all fear; for the Almighty Lord is sending you one of his angels to succor you. Come, my good lady, and you will see the greatest wonder you ever saw; nor could you see the like anywhere else. I shall keep my promise to you: your great distress will be turned to exceeding joy, for the great adventures foretold for your knight reach even unto us here."

The infanta heard this, and, even though her body was trembling like leaves of a tree in the wind, she realized the queen was calling her with a cheerful voice. Therefore, banishing most of her fear, she was moved by great desire to see him whom she loved so much. She rose from the dais, and, with steps that were as halting as her heart, she went toward the queen, stopping in front of her on the other side of the doorway.

When Esplandián saw her, he nearly fell completely unconscious to the floor for thinking to himself that all beauty and grace in the world were enclosed in her. However, he was fortified by the desire not to lose the great delight his eyes felt when they captured her in their sight.[6] Bending his knees to the floor, he was so totally confused, he did not know what to say. He remained mute for a while; but, remembering the shock he felt upon receiving the response from her sent via Gastiles, which he never forgot, he said:

"Lady, if you are angry with me, I ask your forgiveness. I am not satisfied by my services to you, if indeed there have been any, for they cannot be very large

---

[5] See fig. 15, an illumination from the *Crónica troyana*, a work with which GRM was very familiar, which shows the kind of image he may have had in mind when creating this scene.

[6] While Esplandián and Leonorina fall in love first *de oídas* [by hearsay]—that is, by the sense of hearing—this initial aspect of their love is balanced in person by a strong sense of sight. Aristotle taught that knowledge that comes via hearing is knowledge filtered by others; whereas knowledge via sight constitutes learning on one's own. Domingo Induráin says that the sense of hearing dominated the Middle Ages and the sense of sight in the Renaissance presented a balance between hearing and sight. Induráin offers the following conclusion: "If this is so, as it seems to be, we should understand that partisans of sight confide in their own personal and individual capacities in order to discover truth. Partisans of hearing, on the contrary, prefer established doctrine, authority, etc." See Domingo Induráin, "Enamorarse," 598. In face of the first two stages in the erotic relationship between the hero and heroine of bk. V (i.e., first hearing, then sight) it seems, following Induráin, we are observing a sign of the passage from the medieval to Renaissance tendencies in this text. Cervantes both parodies and immortalizes this kind of love in the relationship between Don Quixote and Dulcinea, about whom the mad Don was aware only by hearsay. See *Don Quixote*, pt. II, chaps. 9–10.

seeing that the debt my father burdened me with could not be larger than when he ordered me in his stead to repay the favors he received from you, milady."

The infanta, who was suffering the same confusion, stood watching him without responding in any way. So the queen said:

"Lady, order him to rise, because his great obedience and courtesy oblige you to treat him well."

"Queen, my friend," she said, "leave him there, for so long as he's there he won't flee from me as he's done until now; however, since you're holding his hand, he couldn't escape even if he wanted to. So, go ahead and have him rise."

Queen Menoresa tried to carry out her command, but he said to the queen:

"Your Majesty, I shall continue kneeling until my lady gives me her hands and lets her knight kiss them, thereby setting aside the fury that caused her to send me such an irate answer."

The queen, seeing the infanta was not going to reply, said to her:

"Milady, give him those beautiful hands of yours. They'll be put to good purpose by being pressed to such a handsome mouth. In my opinion, since fortune has placed him in such sublime spheres of estate, lineage, and prowess in arms, and since he is subjugated by all virtues and gifted with more handsomeness than has ever been seen in a man, it would not be surprising if before long you were to ask him for his hands; so be happy that he's offering them to you as your husband."

At first, the infanta's face went completely white, but then it blushed more than her natural color. Then, feeling somewhat calmer after the great distress she had felt until then, she extended her hands to him, and he, placing them in his and unable to keep the love that welled in his heart from overflowing through tears in his eyes, kissed them again and again so much that her hands were bathed in his tears. However, when the infanta, who had reserved some freedom for herself during the knight's absence, felt her hands in his and his mouth pressed to them, she was not able to resist any longer, and the breaches in her heart broke open in so many places that she was conquered and subjugated through and through. From that moment on, the lovers were filled with such passionate sighing and so much mortal desire for each other that, if a more powerful Lord had not interposed a fitting remedy, the world would have been impoverished by the death of the two most stellar people ever born. Then the princess saw that it was reasonable to give him some happiness, so she took his hands and made him rise. There they stood before each other for a while without talking but with free rein given by their love-filled and afflicted hearts to communicate the changes in their feelings by means of gestures. The queen was standing between them and watching full of astonishment, for she thought it was a miracle that two people like them could have been conceived each by another two mortals. She said to them:

"Truly, I think a very long time will pass before anyone else will again be accompanied as I am and have at their command two great princes like you who are so immoderate in their condition as nobles and so moderate in their deeds."

How, after the handsome knight of good fame
Departed from the beautiful princesa,
He accompanied Queen Menoresa
Back to the dark, cold tomb from which he came;
And, breaking the beams of Venus' power,
Wise Carmela returns him locked away,
By using the same device two times per day,
And they hoist the sails, and farewell, lover.

While what you have just heard was happening, night was unconcerned about the lovers' fears or joys; on the contrary, time went rambling along its natural course and fleeing from the lovers' cruel enemy who was following in its tracks. When the queen saw how little of the night remained, she feared some misadventure might ruin such boldness if it were to become known; so she said to Esplandián:

"My good señor, it is time for you to return to where you came from, for such precious and beautiful quarters are fitting for such a handsome and prized knight."

Hearing this, Esplandián said to his mistress:

"Well, milady, since my good fortune has reached the heights of continuing to be your knight, would that it might reach the heights of knowing what you command and how to serve you."

Leonorina said to him:

"My ami, what I ask and command is for you, upon leaving here, to go to those knights who are your friends and to bring them here as quickly as possible. Leave guards in those places you have won, and return to see my father the emperor, who has a great desire to see you, given the great love he has for your father and given what he has been told about you. Then either he or I will tell you what to do."

With that, the queen took him by the hand and entered the dressing chamber. Removing the idol from its place in the tomb, she put it under the crystal cover, which seemed very clear and beautiful, and then she put Esplandián under the other cover in preparation for Damsel Carmela to take him away.[1] After locking it, she turned to the infanta and said:

"Lady, this key gives you total certainty that you will be able to see the service your knight does for you."

Taking her by the hand, the queen led her to where the idol under the crystal cover was. Because the shining knight was inside, the tomb shone

---

[1] AKCT's translation reduces the complexity surrounding the chest in which Esplandián is placed and what follows with this telegraphic passage: "[she] caused Esplandian presently to lie down in the Cedar Chest, in such sort, that the air entred therein on all sides, and covering it with the Azure and Christal Stones, Gandalin, Enil, and their Squires took the tomb . . ." (chap. 36 in AKCT).

through the lid making it seem like the most beautiful jewel that ever existed.

Both of the women stood there happily looking at it for a long time and thinking that by safely sending off one of the tomb's contents, the other one remained, and that this one was just like the other one—albeit less valuable—in that there was no emperor or king in the world who equalled it. The ladies were laughing over this, but the infanta never removed her eyes from the tomb that held her heart. Seeing her friend's look, the queen said to her:

"Milady, it seems you covet the living more than the dead."

"My friend," she replied, "that's caused by a dead heart that is seeking the one who can revive it."

The queen was astonished to hear her say that, because she had never known the very young infanta to think about anyone in that way. However, she was even more astonished about herself, for she had been a free person who was subject to no one or nothing, but before long her heart became so inflamed by the same fire the infanta felt that, if a remedy had not come quickly, she would have been consumed in hot flames or in a flood of tears flowing from her eyes. You will hear about such a remedy in what follows when you are told about the arrival at the emperor's great court of the wise woman Urganda the Unknown, who will speak about this and many other very pleasant things.

After the beautiful Infanta Leonorina and Queen Menoresa spent a while looking in wonderment at the idol with its great riches lying under its crystal tomb, they went to bed when no more than one hour of the night remained. At the break of day they arose with no little fear for they were anxious to see the knight taken to a safe place according to the plan about which you have heard. Before long, Damsel Carmela came with the same companions who had accompanied her the day before, and she said to Leonorina:

"Beautiful princess, I want you to give me what's mine, which I must take away, and you may keep what is yours, which will amaze you when you see it. If you wish, I'll go in with you and Queen Menoresa to retrieve it, and afterwards you can show it to whomever you please."

"I so order," said Leonorina. "However, I wish the whole treasure could remain intact just as your knight won it; because the part that shows is very remarkable, and the part that does not show must be just as striking. If any part of it is taken away, its value is gravely reduced."

"On behalf of your knight," she said, "I already requested from you the second tomb. Since it was granted to me, I dare not leave without it. But if it pleased you so much, everything I planned to do with it can be left to serve you, and I will bring it here again."

"Then, you and the queen can come now," said the infanta. "You may do whatever you please."

Then she entered first, and the other two followed. After they had been inside a short time, the damsel came out and called Gandalín, Enil, and the sailor. All four picked up the tomb Esplandián was in, and, after taking it out of the dressing room and the chamber, they carried it across half the city to their ship. Putting it aboard, the mariners raised anchor, and they left the

port setting their sails for Forbidden Mountain. Meanwhile the infanta was full of regrets because, in her extreme agitation, she forgot to look at the letters the knight had on his chest. So she spent her time sighing for the treasure that had gone away, which for her was much more beautiful and pleasing than the rich treasure that remained, and she was sunk in the kind of loneliness that a captive and subjugated heart usually feels when it sees itself separated from the being without whom it can neither live nor find serenity.

98[1]

How the author, due to a vision he saw, brings this work to an end without conclusion; and how he takes leave from it.

Seeing my spirit and my quill had become tired and my mind had become exceedingly weary, and considering how little fruit this simple and badly organized work could hope to bear—seeing as how it was emended by a fatigued mind and hand—I came to fear that it would be a very serious error to complete it after having joined the two loyal lovers, as the story has shown you, rather than remit it to those who possess subtler and keener minds than I. Not only could they correct my simplistic deliria, but also, being worthier than I, they could carry on the work more gracefully and discretely—if peradventure they felt some beautiful and eternal work could be built on such a feeble foundation as this one. Then, already having let the quill fall from my hand and with a change in my will by which I decided to direct my mind toward the pursuit of other worldly matters, suddenly there came to my heart I know not how a new stimulus by which, forgetting weariness and discarding laziness, I saw in my mind's eye the great error I would have committed if I had allowed any obstacle to prevent me from narrating both the extraordinary appearance that the great wise woman Urganda the Unknown made with Esplandián and their companions in the court of the grand emperor and the amazing things that happened to them. Likewise, I had to recount, along with many other important events, the frightful and huge battle fought on land and sea by almost all of the forces of the world's two great opposing camps, the battle that allowed the two loyal lovers to end their terrible anguish.

---

[1] Thomas Johnson does not include chaps. 98 or 99 in his translation in AKCT. To expunge these two interpolated chaps. may be somewhat understandable from the point of view of the plot, but their absence seriously undermines the overall architecture of bk. V as it stands alone and of bks. I to V as a whole. An interesting sign of the general thrust of Thomas Johnson's work is his addition to the very end of the novel in which he says that all of the characters will be revived "in sixt book" [*sic*]. He is referring to the sixth bk. in which Páez de Ribera sets out to revise all of GRM's apparent heterodoxy. The present chap. and the following one are axial for a proper reading of the complex issue of GRM's relationship to Spanish Inquisitorial orthodoxy.

Hence, putting aside all other tasks, I determined to dedicate myself to this one alone. However, I do not know how it happened, or if it was a dream, or if it occurred in some other way, but while I was in my chamber, I was transported in such a way that I had virtually no sensation or any other thought left in me except for the memory of what I shall now tell you.[2] It seemed that I was on a very high crag surrounded on all sides by the sea's violent waves, that I was very frightened as I was looking about myself seeing nothing but wild escarpments as sharp as the edges of a diamond. I was hemmed in so tightly that I not only could not walk about, but I had barely enough room for the soles of my feet to find firm footing. The winds that whipped around that promontory were so high that, if I had not held tight to the rugged cliffs, I would have been thrown through the air into the depths of the sea below. I can only say for certain that, given how strongly I was being threatened by cruel death's severest draughts, I was tempted many times to let myself be swept off the cliffs. I would have done it only to end my suffering, except that in my mind I always retained the thought that I would lose my soul if I did not use all my might to defend it in this wretched body of mine. So, there I was in that tribulation for an entire day; but, as night was approaching, still having no hope of finding a remedy for my condition, and while my tearful

---

[2] Given present knowledge about GRM's life it is impossible to state what caused him to become depressed and to suspend work on the novel, if indeed this is an autobiographical statement. This kind of narrative interruption is a very standard literary topos. Moreover, the plot resumé he gives immediately above follows precisely what will happen when he returns to the main narration. In other words, nothing essential is altered by this false and deceptive palinode. Nevertheless, there were enough turbulent events in his life in 1491 and 1492 to cause peaks of joy or sadness depending on his affiliations: increasing persecution by the Inquisition; the expulsion of the Jews, of whom there were many in Medina del Campo; the conquest of Granada, which would involve the death of friends of GRM's who, as knights, were involved in the fighting; discovery of the Antilles, which would cause a change in *Weltanschauung*, etc. In addition, Medina del Campo suffered the plague and a devastating fire in 1492, precisely the time when GRM was *regidor*. During the last decade of the fifteenth century GRM was one of seven *regidores* of Medina del Campo (until ca. 1502 when he was replaced by his nephew), which would indicate success and prestige. However, toward the end of the last decade of that century a García de Montalvo (the author or his nephew?) was involved in a lawsuit with the Duque de Alba, one of the most powerful nobles in Spain. The documents concerning this case are unfortunately lost. By the beginning of the next century, GRM disappears from records, until it was mentioned in a lawsuit of 1505 that he had died some time before that date. (See introduction, pt. II above.) In literary terms, the voice here is one of the narrators voices called "the Author." It is characteristic of GRM's approach to the Amadís Cycle to have periodic narrative interruptions to vary the style and content, thereby involving the reader in the fictional world, but this is the first time the so-called Author intervenes consciously. This interruption, therefore, has an autobiographical ring to it that makes one suspect a real event. In his analysis of the Spanish caste conflict at the end of the fifteenth century, Américo Castro says this about authorial self-revelation: "In that age, every time an author exhibits or expresses a lived experience concerning the way in which he is present in his work and how the public perceives him, we can be certain that the text expresses the soul of a converso." See Américo Castro, *La Celestina como contienda literaria*, 68. See also Narciso Alonso Cortés, "Montalvo, el del Amadís," *Revue Hispanique* 81 (1933): 434–42; and *Historia de Medina del Campo*, ed. Eufemio Lorenzo, 272–82.

eyes were searching across the stretch of sea as far as my sight could reach, I suddenly saw a small ship racing across the water as if it were flying. Even though it was pursuing its course as fast as if it were an arrow shot from a crossbow, to me, given my anguished mental state and the hopelessness of my location, it seemed to be delaying its arrival most indolently; for, if I were somehow able to get down to it, whether by land or at sea or wherever I might be tossed by chance, I would nevertheless not be without great consolation. However, since I could not imagine how anyone might be able to ascend to me—nor much less how I might descend—I was plunged into the uttermost depths of tribulation and despair.

Meanwhile, the boat arrived at the crag, and I saw a lone damsel descend from it via what seemed like a very simple, flat ladder. Then she began to climb up the cliff so agilely that it seemed as if she had been loaned a pair of great, wide wings, which she did not really have. Thus, she joined me very quickly. Once she was in my presence, the damsel said:

"Wisdom, which is the master and enemy of simplemindedness, has sent me to take you to her in order for you to give an accounting of what she will ask you; and if you do not answer satisfactorily, I tell you that most certainly you will be severely punished by being returned to this same place, not for you to die, but for you to expiate the error you committed."

"Oh, señora! Oh, damsel!" I exclaimed. "For whatever reason you wish, take me wherever you please! No matter where it is, in comparison to this place, it cannot be so harsh as it is here; moreover, I am willing to work without resting to leave here."

"In that case, take this veil," she said, "and cover your eyes so you cannot see anything, and I shall take you where I am ordered."

Next she took it off her head and threw it to me. I caught it and did what she told me to do. Then I know not how, it seemed we flew through the air, and in a short while we landed in the boat; but I never dared remove the blindfold because I was not so ordered. The bark departed from there, and I do not know how long it was before I took off the veil, and, after waiting for my eyes to adjust, I found myself in a large and beautiful vessel.[3] In it there were large torches like sanctuary lights, by which I saw many illustrious[4] knights and duennas and damsels attired in magnificent finery, and they were promenading leisurely in a great cabin at the far end of which there was a

---

[3] In this passage, the Spanish word for boat and bark is *barca*, whereas the word for vessel is *nao*. While no particular explanation is required for the first term, the second is unusual in GRM's Amadís Cycle. According to Monleón, in *Construcciones navales bajo su aspecto artístico*, a *nao* is "a vessel with a high shipboard that sailed almost exclusively with sails as opposed to quicker ships or those propelled by oars; they are much shorter in proportion to their beam; they have a rounded shape and a deep draft." See fig. 16 of a *nao* from Alfonso el Sabio's *El Lapidario* (1276–79).

[4] The Spanish term, *claros*, means "what is opposed to obscure or dark" (Cov.), illustrious, as in noble or illustrious lineage; and it recalls the title and content of a famous work of fifteenth-century Spanish letters, Fernando del Pulgar's *Claros varones de Castilla* [Illustrious Men of Castile] (1486).

duenna dressed in modest clothes sitting on a dais, and around her were four richly attired damsels playing sweet sounding instruments. While I was embarrassed not knowing what to do, the damsels quieted their instruments, and I was called to approach the duenna.

Seeing her surrounded by such pomp, I thought she was some person of high estate and that I was brought there by the damsel at the duenna's behest. Since the look she directed at me was so irate, I was deeply fearful about what command she wished to give me.[5] However, knowing that obvious signs of obeisance and humility often placate others' anger, I went toward her, bowed, and said:

"Señora, if you are the person who has sent for me, I come before your presence. Command me however you wish me to serve you."

"I am certain," said the duenna with a scornful laugh, "that, even though virtue does not oblige you to serve me, your obvious fear would still constrain you to do so. Well, if you do not have a legitimate reason to be excused from what you will now hear, neither the one nor the other will avail you. I have found out," she continued, "that you are a simple, unlettered man; that your only education is what uncouth peasants just like you have; and that even though you occupy a position in which you govern many people, and although you may have other even higher positions, you do not know how to govern either them or yourself; nor do you know how best to manage your household or your affairs.[6] Then, tell me, you unthinking man, where did

---

[5] This episode is highly reminiscent of a similar one in Boccaccio's *De Casibus*. In the middle of his "little book" Boccaccio interrupts his narration of the fall of princes with a protracted confrontation with Fortune personified as a monster with burning eyes and a hundred hands. Like the Author in chap. 98, Lydgate describes Boccaccio as "feerful of cheer[e], pale of contenaunce" (Lydgate, *Fall of Princes*, vol. 3, 681–88). Fortune derides Boccaccio for criticizing her mutability and she attacks his "rud[e] stile." Then, after proudly defending himself, he asks Fortune to help him finish the book, which she happily does. An indication of the general parallel between Boccaccio and GRM is the fact that the former says in the intercourse with Fortune that he undertook to write the book in order to avoid lechery. Similarly, Urganda—GRM's personified Fortune—here below excoriates the Author for attempting to describe the intimate passions of Esplandián and Leonorina in chap. 97.

[6] Given the putative narrator's characterization, this declaration does not refer to Master Helisabad. On the other hand, if it is autobiographical, it is unlikely that GRM had as bad an education as the duenna (Urganda) accuses him of here, nor has he shown in the Amadís Cycle that he is at all illiterate. On the contrary, he commands Greek mythology fairly well, and he edits and writes 1900 pages of the superb writing Cervantes praised as a model within the genre of chivalric romances. Furthermore, he belonged to the lineage of Martín Gutiérrez de Montalvo, eighth señor of Botalorno, a fact of birth that gave him access to education, culture, money, etc. (See Juan José de Montalvo, *De la historia de Arévalo y sus sexmos*, vol. 1, 312.) In addition, he was a knight who was one of a hundred *peones* (old hidalgos) sent by the Catholic monarchs in 1482 to reinforce Alhama de Granada. He is listed in 1482 as a member of the knightly group of "San Juan e Santiago" as "García Rodríguez de Montalvo, regidor, hidalgo." In 1490 he is listed in the municipal registry of Medina del Campo by the notary Fernán Ruiz as one of seven *regidores* with an annual salary of 3,000 maravedís (an ancient Spanish coin). In the late 1490's there was a lawsuit against his nephew, also named García Rodríguez de Montalvo, for disorder-

your inspiration come from? It could not have come from heaven. How is it that you forgot about the necessary things that keep sane men busy? Instead, with your weak mind you decided to occupy your time by meddling in such needless idleness as this business of emending a great text about all these famous knights and these the highest emperors, kings, queens, duennas, and damsels. How did you dare talk about their great deeds while the fact dropped from your memory that innumerable famous sages never dared speak or write about these same things? And while some did dare to do so, they committed many errors and their works are full of many vulgar and licentious words. But you, who are so clumsy and dimwitted, you deserve a terrible punishment for having had the audacity to dare attempt such a thing. Given that you already took on this bold task—for which, after all, you might be able to find some reasonable excuse, seeing how your spirit is so eager to know about famous deeds of arms, and seeing that you desired to mold your life around chivalric pursuits from the moment of your birth—tell me what irrational thought made you barge into telling the story about our two young people's mutual, passionate, and loyal love which was closer to perfection than any love that ever happened to any other couple alive. Although I was the first to plot the conception of their love, and although later I worked to increase its strength to a degree never granted to any other mortals except me, I would never have dared, nor is my great wisdom sufficient, to relate the tiniest part of their love, even though I feel it as intensely as they do in the depths of my bowels and in the core of my heart. You simpleton, as I already said, you are so lacking in discretion and wisdom that you mock and abominate good judgment and you do not fear the great shame that the learned and the sagacious could heap upon you. You closed your eyes to understanding, and as if you had thrown yourself desperately into some lake—which would have been a much better decision—you occupied your time in desiring to leave an eternal memory in your name of those things you know nothing about and whose fortunes and misfortunes you do not feel. Oh madman! How vain you were to believe that you could compress into such brief and ill-chosen words such an excellent and noble thing as truly loyal and virtuous love, which cannot begin to fit in a great number of works. And you thought fearlessly that such words as yours could give you lasting fame despite the fact that your advanced age, like water on fire, or like cold snow under the great, hot sun, makes you inimical to such testimony. You did not even suspect that the only ones who can and ought to speak about such an extraordinary theme as this one are those whose vitals are virtually scorched and ignited by the flames of passion. I tell you that you deserve a great reprimand and punishment, and such you shall have before you leave here."[7]

---

ly conduct. Could the author be referring to this shameful episode in his private life? The autobiographical term in the passage above (*regir* [manage]) refers to his office of *regidor*.

When I, who was very upset, heard these words spoken to me by such an eminent duenna who purposed to tell me the pure truth, not only did I become very afraid, but also I realized I was liable to receive whatever serious and cruel punishment that might be levied on me, so I said to her:

"If there is any consolation for those who feel they are being justly punished for their crimes—and I do so recognize mine, my good señora, although my spirit is very confused as I am awaiting punishment to expiate the guilt my great error merits—then may my consciousness be consoled by knowing that the greatest consolation there could be is that it should suffer. Therefore, I am prepared—not without great dread, but with a feeling of just cause—for discretion, which has a great seigniory over simpleness, to make such corrections and to exact such punishment against me as it deems most fitting and as it wishes. But, Milady, you could take pity on me, because I now see that the sages you mentioned avoid writing works such as mine, but instead they work assiduously on books that interest them more for the sake of profit than glory or fame; whereas I will achieve neither the one nor the other. On the contrary, I erred more in deed than in intention. Moreover, Your Excellency could be satisfied that I wasted the long time I spent working on an emendation of this text which should be thrown immediately into a fire's hot flames, and thereby it would be cast into oblivion. In this way, not only will your sentence against me be fulfilled, but you will be certain to have my firm promise that I will forget in thought and action every detail concerning what was planned for the continuation of the work."

The duenna, who had spoken to me with such brutal disdain, saw that I accepted full blame for everything she imputed to me. Her fury somewhat soothed, she said:

"I do not want the sentence you mention carried out, because, if your rusticity were hidden from everyone, it would mean glory, not punishment. Rather, I desire and command that you be given one of the severest sentences possible: namely, I order you to remain silent as a writer, and that you not resume your work until I so order it. Furthermore, I order that said punishment be made public and posted in many places. As far as other dimensions of your penalty are concerned, you will be informed about them when, by means of another strange adventure, you will be summoned to appear before me. For now, I want you to know that I am the great sage Urganda the Unknown, who is mentioned throughout this work, but no matter how often you said you were amazed by my wondrous deeds, I am certain you never believed any of them. Finally, I tell you that, although my knowledge goes beyond the Catholic[8] way, my judgment[9] makes it useful to many men and women."

As she was ending her speech, the great fog or phantasm that I was in began dissipating, and I thought I was still on the waves of the storm-tossed sea; but I recovered my senses and discovered that I was in the place in my chamber where I had been put to sleep or bewitched.[10] Well, I was frightened by the species, and I feared any relapse would be harsher and crueler; but, being determined to follow that great wise woman obediently in this case, and while awaiting the order from her that would give me the boldness and courage to bring this story to a conclusion just when it arrived at such a great moment, I decided to beg those writers wiser, wittier, more discrete, less fearful, and more capable than I to take a little trouble and to continue relating the little that remains to be told[11] by finding the order of events as said text will show them the way.

99

How this Author, having terminated this work by order of Urganda the Unknown, as you have been told, was forced to return to it by another very strange adventure that came his way.

It is fitting for me, with great fatigue in my soul and anguish in my heart, to deny my own will and, as if I were afflicted with one of the world's ancient diseases, to follow an alien will. I say disease because, although we are all equal at birth and at death, we are not equal in the different conditions of our lives. No matter how harsh this seems, it is possible to believe that the Almighty Lord chose to permit it so that the world would be better ordered; from which it follows that we should believe such a thing is for the better and more aligned with his service. Earlier, where I ended this work, I told you I was called in a strange way by that great sage Urganda the Unknown and that, after she vented her rage by taking revenge on me, with that brutal face and those cruel words of hers, she commanded me to terminate this work until such time as she ordered otherwise. Likewise, I told you that I began fearfully fulfilling her mandate, which I considered quite just given the punishment I deserved for having intruded my feeble and simple mind into what I could not even begin to grasp. Therefore, I dropped writing entirely and instead directed my mind to other pursuits in the belief that the wise duenna was also occupied in more serious matters and that she would have forgotten about my case. But, as I now see, it was not to be so; rather, either to increase my punishment or to further satisfy her willful desires, she chose to call me in the manner that will now be described. It happened this way: one day, as I was sallying out to go hunting, as I am wont to do, in the district called Castillejo[1]—which is the best possible place to find game because it is a very hard, rocky and irregular region—I came across an owl[2] as soon as I arrived, and even though it was windy I launched my falcon[3] against it. Both birds rose to a great height, one to defend its life, and the other to kill its hunger with the other's death. At last, the owl became exhausted and was seized by the falcon's sharp talons. Seeing them descend toward me filled my spirit with not a little joy; but an obstacle that often bothers hunters occurred, and it took away much of my happiness. It was this: as the falcon was coming down to the ground, it and the owl fell together into a nearby well that was very deep and that was constructed in time immemorial. When I saw this disaster as I was watching them, I was so filled with dejection that I got off my horse, rushed to the well's edge, and tried to see if there was any way I could recover my falcon. But since there is no law that prevents disasters from following one on the other, a great whirlwind approached the place where I was and, lifting me off the ground, threw me into that deep pit without harming me.[4]

When I saw myself among a number of snakes and other poisonous things, I was naturally highly distressed. But then I remembered that the remedy for the many dangers that attend such adventures often comes from a courageous heart, and I hoped that one of my hunters, whom I had left in a valley where he had fallen from his horse, would arrive, discover where I was and search for help among the people in the neighboring villages in order to get me out of there. In that state of mind, it occurred to me to feed the falcon, but, as I was about to do so, I was met face to face with a greater misadventure, which was much more dreadful than death itself. I do not know how, but on one of the well's four walls a giant mouth opened up. It was so dark and so deep that it seemed to me there was good cause to think it was one of the openings of hell. The sight of it, of course, alarmed me, and within a short while there seemed to emerge through it a bigger and more frightening snake[5] than those who are alive today have ever seen. It entered the well with its mouth open, shooting huge flames of fire through its nostrils, eyes, ears, and mouth. Suddenly, the whole cave was illuminated. Oh God! Oh God! When I saw such a grotesque, fierce beast, and that it was on a journey to find me, realizing I had no weapon with which to defend myself and giving myself up for already swallowed and devoured, I appealed to the Almighty Lord before whose great power such things should be dismissed as if they were nothing. With knees bowed to the ground, with hands raised to the little patch of heaven I could descry, I said:

"Oh God on High, since the body wherein the soul is housed must pay its debts, I beg you to have pity and mercy on me."

I was in this position for a long time without daring to lower my eyes and completely ringed by that brightness. When it ceased to shine, I felt as if I were being returned to my former posture, so I lowered my eyes supposing I would meet the end of my sad life. Rather than seeing the cruel serpent, instead I saw in front of me an aged duenna dressed in a style appropriate to her age, and she said to me:

"I can tell by your face that you've had a great fright!"

Because I was so disturbed and because my soul was jumping about in my body from one place to another searching for a way to escape, I did not have enough energy to answer. However, she continued by saying:

"Do you know me, by chance? Tell me. Do not fear, for she who gave you such a fright is capable of turning it into great delight."

After hearing this, I was holding onto life with great strength and my heart was trembling and I said:

"It seems to me, señora, that I have seen you once before when the damsel carried me across the sea to the great caravel and placed me in your presence; I am most amazed if that is true. What vexations and disservice did I commit that merited being avenged by such cruelties?"

"Let's stop talking about that now," she said, "because often bitter foods that seem very opposed to our palate are the cause of good health, and they give relief to those who eat and drink unwillingly; the same could happen to you for what is past and what is to come. It is advisable for you to forget your fear and to come with me unafraid, and I shall show you such very amazing things that, although you may understand them when you see them now, your eyes never before saw, nor seeing them, would have understood them were I not your intercessor."

Neither having nor hoping for any remedy of any sort and even feeling unworthy of receiving a miracle from Almighty God that might take me out of there, I decided the best thing to do was obey the great sage's commands.

At that moment two dwarfs entered the cave, each carrying a torch which illuminated everything with a great brilliance. They turned around and went back by the path that brought them with the duenna, and I followed them. I believe firmly that we walked continually downward for almost two hours, at the end of which time we arrived at another door. Going through it, we saw sky, a very bright sun, and land that seemed to belong to terra firma. Looking more, we saw a cliff on top of which there appeared a very beautiful fortress surrounded by a very high wall and very tall and massive towers. Without saying anything to me, the duenna began climbing up a steep hill with me following her, desiring to see and discover where such a strange trip would end. On we walked until we came upon a plain across which was the main gate to the big alcázar. As we stood looking at this scene, the duenna asked me if perhaps I remembered what that stronghold was called. I was unable to answer her question, so I began running my eyes across as much of the fortress as I could descry. Soon I saw at one end of the plain a very beautiful stone arch on top of which was an effigy of great stature with a trumpet at its mouth and being held in its right hand as if it were in the act of playing. Beyond the arch was a palace surrounded by a garden and large groves of beautiful trees, and just inside the arch was a great marble statue rising from the ground. Suddenly, I recalled some information I had once received about this place: it was the Arch of Loyal Lovers which the great wizard Apolidón[6] had left on Firm Island,[7] and I said to the duenna:

"Señora, to judge by the signs we see here and by everything else my eyes have taken in, I am led to believe that this is Firm Island; but I do not know if my judgment is mistaken in this."

The duenna turned her face to me very lovingly and said:

"What you say is true, for this is the island you say it is. I am very pleased to see you have so much cleverness left in your deep knowledge, because it means you will be able to understand discerningly everything else I plan to show you. So, follow me."

Then we arrived at the alcázar's grand gate, which we found open, and we went through it. The duenna guided me to the Defended Chamber,[8] with which I was well acquainted because I knew its signs by the way they were described in this great big text you are now reading. In this place I saw the copper and marble pillars and the letters that were inscribed above the gate. But when we were inside the chamber, the riches and other amazing things contained in it seemed so wondrous that it is impossible to commit them to writing. Therefore, out of respect for them, we will not describe here either those that were in the chamber itself or the very beautiful piecework that showed through the crystal wall. While I was stunned with my eyes riveted on these amazing things, the duenna said to me:

"Although this may seem astonishing to you, look over here."

Reacting to her indication, I turned my head and saw seated on two magnificent chairs fashioned out of gold and studded with priceless stones a knight and a duenna both wearing royal crowns. The knight was dressed in a very beautiful white cuirass, and he had all of the other arms that befitted him. Attached to the statue by means of golden hinges and screws he seemed to hold a sword whose scabbard and belts[9] were as green as a burning emerald.[10] His face and hands were unarmed; at his neck was a shield; on his head was a beautiful helmet embellished with very thick nacre and trimmed in gold by means of the best craftsmanship; and at his feet was a dwarf sitting on a silk cushion. The duenna was dazzlingly beautiful and her singular gown was covered with golden flowers which were made far back in antiquity.

While I was looking keenly at these things and feeling great delight, the duenna said:

"You must fully understand the beauty you see, for it suits me to show you other things."

Turning in another direction, I looked up and, higher than these two figures, I saw sitting on two imperial thrones another knight and another duenna each of whom were also wearing crowns, and it seemed to me that these two were more handsome than those I saw first. At his feet and sitting on a step, the knight was attended by a richly dressed damsel. He had a shield at his neck, in his hands he held a helmet so magnificent that no other could match it no matter how magnificent, and his countenance was as resplendently beautiful as the sun's bright rays. The sagacious duenna said to me:

"Have you looked closely at this knight and this duenna?"

"Yes," I answered.

"Then follow me, and I shall show you more."

After leaving the magnificent chamber, we entered a very large and beautiful hall in which we found four knights and four damsels sitting two by two on royal chairs. The knights were magnificently armed, and their faces revealed great beauty. Their shields were lying at their feet on a silken rug, and their helmets were on top of the shields. The duennas looked very beautiful; and one in particular was a stunning sight. My guide stopped me there for a long time so that I could take in completely all of the astounding things these figures had around them. Then she took me back to the place we had left the first four statues. Placing me in front of them, she said:

"I want you to know that the knight and lady you see here are Amadís de Gaula—about whom you have read such famous and strange things—and Oriana,[11] who was called Peerless because her beauty was unequalled by any one else's. The other two you see, who are seated on the higher and more elegant chairs, are the blessed knight Esplandián—who is known as a friend and servant of the Almighty Lord on High and a great enemy of infidels—and his lady and most beloved wife Leonorina, empress of Constantinople.[12] Now let's go over to the others so that it can be revealed who they are."

"Good señora," I said while she was walking away, "I beg you earnestly to tell me who this damsel is."

"She is," said the duenna, "Esplandián's Damsel Carmela, who, for her good judgment and great loyalty deserved to be placed among kings and queens. This is what should happen to all those who follow virtue and reject everything that may harm virtue."

Leaving that place, we returned to the great hall where the other knights and duennas were. Arriving before the first two, the wise woman said:

"Here you see Don Galaor and his beautiful wife Briolanja. The others are courageous Don Florestán[13] and Queen Sardamira;[14] the third pair is the courageous and proud-hearted Agrajes with his Olinda; and the last pair is Grasandor with the courteous and very prudent Mabilia. Take your time to look at them, and then I beg you to tell me which one of these ladies seems the most beautiful to you."[15]

"Truly, señora," I said, "although I am very desirous to obey and fulfill your commandments, it is very hard for me to make such a determination, because a woman's beauty lies in the eyes of the man who beholds her, and it is determined by the amount of their mutual love and attraction. From precisely this come many conflicts. Indeed, it is seldom possible to concur about this subject. Still, to obey your order, as I said I would, I shall say as much as my reason allows me to perceive. I have observed all these ladies with the eyes of both my body and my mind—for in each of their stories I have often read about the various qualities of their beauty, and in those stories I was told that they were at the head of all of the women in the world during their lives. This is especially true about Oriana and Leonorina; but, as it seems to me now, I cannot support that, for, seeing Queen Briolanja's very great beauty, bearing, and elegance, I don't believe any of these queens surpasses her, and I'm very surprised she was not successful in the adventure of the Defended Chamber when she attempted it."

Hearing this, the duenna said:

"Now I tell you I am guilty of having wrongly underrated and despised you the first time I saw you, because you have judged the truth about this with such profound perception that you did not deserve the treatment I gave you. So, I wish to reply to what you say: you need to know that when beautiful Queen Briolanja went to Villa Fenusa[16] to meet King Lisuarte she said to

Amadís that she wanted to test herself in the chamber. Amadís granted her wish, and from this followed his lady Oriana's great fury. But it did not happen this way in reality; rather the opposite occurred, because Amadís saw that the figure of Grimanesa was not as beautiful or as stately as this queen was, and that if she were to attempt the adventure, it would have been easy for her to do as well in it as his lady Oriana did. But since she had no hope of achieving such honor and reward from him, since he was the island's señor, he advised her to return to her realm before going to Firm Island, and he said that he would go quickly to meet her in her kingdom and then take her to the test. For this reason she did not go there as she wished. In the meantime, there arose the strife and enmity between King Lisuarte and Amadís whereby everything else was suspended in oblivion until fortune a long time later brought about a large reunion of many people on the island. That is when Amadís, the emperor of Rome,[17] and many other knights were married, as you know quite well. And it is then that Amadís deceived the beautiful queen a second time—or, to tell the truth, when Amadís wronged her again; for when Grasinda, Olinda, and Melicia tried and failed the adventure, Amadís, still fearing the immense beauty of this woman I'm referring to, who, to be victorious would only have had to attempt it, contrived to have Oriana attempt it before her.[18] Hence, Briolanja, through no fault of her own, but rather due to another's fault, lost in advance the guerdon—nay, the victory—that her great beauty and bearing would have awarded her."

"Truly, my good señora," I said, "even though this beautiful lady was robbed of such an outstanding glory which she could have achieved, she does not for that reason cease being a brightly shining star of beauty among the women of her time."

The sagacious duenna did not respond to my statement; but rather, she said:

"Now, I beg you to tell me what you think about the knights. I do not mean how handsome they are, because it's obvious that none of them comes remotely close to Esplandián in that regard. On the contrary, what I want to know from you is this: which one do you think has most reason to be considered valiant?"

"Señora," I said, "this question is much harder for me than the first one, because eyes can judge fairly accurately by what they see, which is what happened with the queens. But, even though I would be very happy to be able to do so, I don't feel my perceptive powers are sharp enough to make correct judgments about what is invisible. And if what I shall say were perchance untrue, my simplicity should surely be forgiven. Therefore, to answer what you

---

[17] The reference is to Arquisil whom Amadís contrives to make the emperor of Rome to replace the one who was engaged to Oriana and who was killed.

[18] Oriana, Grasinda, Olinda, and Melicia attempt the adventure in bk. II, chap. 125. All pass through the Arch of Loyal Lovers, but only Oriana succeeds getting into the Defended Chamber.

order me to respond to, I say that, although those knights are all endowed with great beauty and stately and well-developed bodies, which are qualities by which one can faithfully assert that they are all most valiant, the one my preference leans toward and whom I consider most valiant, given the virile look of his body and his bearing, is Don Florestán, king of Sardinia. On the other hand, I have excluded Esplandián from consideration, for he employed his strength time and again in the face of cruel death in order to serve the Almighty Lord; he evaded all vainglory and most of the folly the others pursued. It is certain that none of the others or even all together could be his equal."

"I refuse either to agree or disagree with your arguments," the duenna said after hearing my opinion. "All I can say is that I remember well when this Don Florestán you refer to unhorsed Agrajes and Galaor in a forest, and afterwards he downed Amadís,[19] all of which is a sign to everyone of his great valor. Nevertheless, I will not tell you any of what truly happened after these events, for my tongue would not be strong enough to express my deep personal opinions, or those of other women. Since you've responded to my questions as you have, I beg you earnestly to tell me if, in the world in which you live, you have ever seen kings and queens comparable to these. This can't be a tough question for you. More than anyone else, you're acquainted with their great, famous deeds, and you've also seen many things with your own eyes."[20]

"Everything you say is true, my good señora," said I. "And so shall I speak the truth in my answer. It is certain that in these realms where I was born and where I make my home, during my youth I saw some kings and queens who went from arduous lives to cruel deaths.[21] I shall decline telling about the prosperous and adverse times they suffered because my tender age during those reigns did not allow me to have a solid understanding of those things.[22] However, concerning those about which I can make true observations, I shall tell you what I know without deviating one whit from the truth. I am referring to the great and famous deeds of my lords the king and queen who are currently ruling and commanding almost all of the realms of Spain[23] and other realms beyond our borders. I wish you to know, señora, that the great king about whom I'm telling you the truth cannot be matched by any of those kings of yours in beauty of face, nobility of body, grandeur of speech, accomplished discretion, and all the other virtues and graces that it is fitting for a king to have. In short, my talents are insufficient to relate how astute he is, what a courageous heart he has, what great deeds he has performed from his earliest youth until the time we are in now. I am referring to his deeds of physical accomplishment and discretion, all of which merit the highest praise.[24] For this reason, I shall leave them and turn to the very fa-

mous queen I mentioned to you. She is the most elegant, most charming, and most sagacious sovereign that anyone alive today has ever seen and who was ever recorded in all writings and memorials ever handed down from remotest antiquity to the present. From the moment the great hero Hercules began populating the Spanish realms,[25] no other queen has come close to equalling her. Leaving her prudence aside, her modesty is so much a part of her exceedingly elevated beauty and grace that I tell you that many sharp minds considered her beautiful looks more divine than temporal, not because they are, but because they approach divine qualities so much."[26]

"Although I know from other sources everything you have said is true," said the wise woman, "my soul is very delighted to hear it from you, for, judging by what I have heard you say in the past, I believe you would not say anything that is not true. If it were possible for me to see them and serve them, aside from telling them a few things they do not know, I would fain advise them[27] never to tire of or abandon the holy war they have begun against the infidels;[28] for with that war their vassals will be happy to serve them with their persons and their estates, the Almighty Lord will help and favor them as He has done until now; and at the end He will make them possessors of the great glory He has reserved for people like them. Let's not talk about this any longer, because no one can tell me more about their great excellent qualities than I know could be revealed to me."

"That, señora, you can believe without question," I said. "Since you have ordered that we speak no more about this, which is so big a topic that it is almost endless, I want to ask you by what cause, or for what purpose, you have placed these kings and queens here."

"I will tell you willingly," she said. "You know that I was present in the world when they were alive, and therefore you know what I did for them and how much love and obedience they showed me. Realizing that their dark and sad deaths could not be avoided, I felt it was a great pity that the crude and heavy earth should devour such high-born, beautiful, and notable people as they were in all ways. So I devised a manner for all of them to be reunited together on the island where we are now. Then I, with my magical arts, put such strong enchantments on both them and the island that I returned them to the age in which each possessed their most perfect beauty; and, by a very great adventure I created, I pulled the earth over the island while these kings and queens were still sitting on those seats, and I placed the whole thing, which I am able to move about from one place to another at will, in the center of the deepest abyss. The end I'm expecting for this is that Morgan le Fay, who came a long time after me, has informed me that she is holding her brother King Arthur enchanted, and that perforce he must sally forth once again to reign over Great Britain. At that time, these knights could leave here, join him and, counter to all their successors among the great Christian kings and queens, go conquer the great Empire of Constantinople and everything else that, due to them, is under the forced seigniory of the infidel Turks, who are enemies of the holy Catholic faith. These kings I've referred to always refused to lift a hand to save that empire. On the contrary, they spend more of their time greedily and arrogantly working at things that satisfy their corrupt appetites than they spend in the service of the Lord who placed them in their great seigniories and estates."[29]

I was very amazed to hear this, and I said:

"Señora, is it true that these knights, who should have died and been removed from the world so many years ago, can return and do those things they did when they were alive?"

"My good friend," the duenna said, "believe truly that if King Arthur returns to reign, as I said he would, they will sally forth with him; and if they do not, they will remain as you see them until their time. Now, because I have detained you a long time, I want you to know why I made you come here and what order I want to give you."

Then she left there with me following her. She led me through a great hall, and we entered a magnificent and extravagantly decorated chamber in which a man was sitting on a chair. He was dressed in long, modest robes, his beard and hair were very long, and in his hands he held a book whose binding was covered with finely-wrought, golden plates. The duenna said to me:

"The man you see here is the great wise Master Helisabad, whose writings about Emperor Esplandián's great deeds were so complete because he witnessed most of them, as is shown in this book you see in his hands. Since you have not seen or been able to reach the end of it—but rather, you have only gotten to where Esplandián was found in the stone covering near Constantinople, was revealed to his lady in the great city and departed from her in a caravel that crossed the sea—I now want to revoke the very restrictive order I gave you not to proceed further in this work. Instead, I want you to see what happens further along, and I want you to take it from here in your memory so that you can put it into writing and it can be published.[30] It would be a great injustice, if, as I said, knowing what has happened up to this point in the story, the public could not enjoy what they do not know and cannot find out if you do not carry it forward from here. I'm doing this in order to reduce the trouble it would cause you to compose the rest from your own fancy. I do it even more because I don't trust you, and I'm not sure if your understanding is profound enough to tell such great things. Since this book is written in Greek, it is out of the question for you to read it. Therefore, because you could not understand it, my niece Julianda, who will come here, will read it to you."

"Oh, señora," I said, "what a great help this will be for me! And what a

---

[30] The original Spanish term for publish is *divulgado*. In modern Spanish it means simply divulge or make known. However, in the fifteenth century the meaning was closer to its Latin etymons: *dis* [away, abroad] + *vulgus* [common people]. It is to be noted that the first sense of publish in Web. and the OED is to make publicly known; the fourth sense refers to the special usage concerning printing and issuing books for sale. Book printing and publishing with movable type (i.e., Gutenberg's Bible, 1456) was still such a rarity that making the book known in a general sense was more important than publication per se. GRM did not live to see his book become a best-seller that reached the sixteenth-century equivalent of a mass audience. Of special note, too, in chaps. 98 and 99 is a very contemporary textual, authorial, and narrative self-consciousness. Cervantes, Diderot, Pirandello, Unamuno, and other authors find their spiritual fathers in this regard in GRM because in the present passage he proposes that a writer is a reader of his own memory and a receiver of a character's reading.

great consolation I feel for being able to take from here what I desired so much to see! Although I'll earn nothing more from this than satisfying your will and ceasing to be frightened by you from here on out as I've been until now, I shall consider myself a fortunate man."

That damsel then took the book from the master's hands, and, declaiming its contents in the language I understand quite well, she began reading at the point I mentioned—which is when Esplandián left his lady's presence in the tomb, boarded his ship, and set out on the high seas—and she read to the book's very end, when the hero is married and has the title of emperor. Delightedly hearing what I heard, my ears took in every detail, and I retained most of it in my memory. When this was concluded, as you have heard, I wished to leave such a very strange place both in order to rest and also to put what I have said into writing; so I asked the great sage if she wanted to issue any further orders for me. She replied no for the time being.

"Then, señora," I said, "I beg you kindly to give the order permitting me to leave here."

"So be it," she said, at which she ordered her niece to take me with her and to leave me wherever I wished.

Carrying out her order, Julianda returned with me to the cave, about which you have heard, and through which we walked until we arrived at the bottom of the well. Then she made me put my right hand in a very little book which trapped me in a very deep sleep. I do not know how long I was in that state, but when I awoke, I found myself sitting on my horse, on my hand my falcon was sitting with his hood on, and my hunter was next to me, which surprised me greatly; so I said to him:

"Tell me, didn't we capture an owl in flight with this falcon?"

"No," he said. "So far we haven't even found one or anything else we could release the falcon for."

"Santa María!" I said. "Then, what have we done?"

"The only thing we've done," he said, "is come to this place where you suddenly fell into a deep sleep. I wasn't even able to wake you seeing that you're on your horse. You slept so soundly I thought some evil misfortune had befallen you, which made it seem as if you were dead."

"How long was I like this?" I asked.

"More than three hours," said the hunter. "It amazed me to see you in a state I never before saw you in."[31]

"Don't be surprised," I said, "because the same thing happens to you every

---

[31] This passage concerning the psychological, temporal, and narrative relativity in this enchanted cave episode, and the resulting comical dialogue between the author and his hunter is reworked a hundred years later by Cervantes in *Don Quixote*, pt. II, chap. 23, in the episode in the Cave of Montesinos. The last exchange between the two interlocutors, for example, constitutes a direct parallel between the two texts. Don Quixote asks Sancho Panza, "How long ago did I descend [into the cave]?" to which Sancho replies, "Little more than an hour ago." (*Don Quixote*, vol. 2, 353.

day. Now, let's continue the hunt, and let's try to raise a prey for this falcon."[32]

Hence, we left that place, but I was still shaken by the earlier fright I had had even though I knew it had been in a dream and I was delighted to see it come to an end. I wished to fulfill what I was ordered to do, but I could not find any way to calm down; so, I took to the road and returned home, where, isolating myself from everyone, I took pen and paper and began to write what I had committed to memory and which you will now hear.

100

About how Esplandián left Constantinople destined for Forbidden Mountain; how the sea's stormy fortunes threw him up in a unknown port near Villa Alfarín, where he found six of his knights fighting in a cruel battle against many Turks; and about what marvels of arms he did there.

You have been told how Damsel Carmela and the knights Enil and Gandalín took Esplandián out of the dressing chamber of his most beloved and beautiful Leonorina in that tomb in which he was hidden; how they carried him to the ship still in the tomb; and how he sailed away from there as fast as he could. Now, you will be told what happened on that voyage. This is what occurred: with their tiller set for Forbidden Mountain, where he wanted to go in order to verify what precautions had been taken with King Armato, whom Esplandián had left a prisoner there, fortune diverted the caravel onto another course which took the courageous knight where he would have been permanently injured if he had not survived a certain challenge. Fortune has very little regard for men who want their plans and desires to turn out as they wish if their plans do not accord with fortune's fickleness. But if fortune gets men to consent to its whims, then they will obediently follow all other prosperous and adverse things fortune directs for them. The challenge was this: due to the irresistible force of a great cross-wind the ship took shelter near the edge of the sea where strong Villa Alfarín was on his left-hand side and where he had left those knights who were his friends. Since the ship was near land, those who were aboard it saw among some rough cliffs a group of armed people who were involved in a big tumult. They were making a big algarad with lots of shouting as if they were involved in a dangerous battle among themselves. Seeing this, Esplandián, being a person with a deep knowledge about everything, said to Enil and Gandalín:

"Do not believe me if our caravel has come here in vain; consequently, let

---

[32] For the first time in this work, GRM uses a word other than *falcón* for falcon: *neblí*. This bird is a Northern European species of falcon. The word *neblí* comes, however, from Arabic, *lablí*. Cov. says it is the most noble of all falcons.

us arm ourselves quickly, and let us go over to those people; for my heart tells me that our effort will not be in vain. I say this because, as you know, the knights who are our friends remained in Villa Alfarín, and, wishing to use their great virtue and their usual fortitude, they have probably sallied out in this area, which is filled with enemies. I suspect that, as usually happens in such skirmishes, even though they found no danger entering this district, perhaps they have found leaving it more troublesome. If it is as I think, we shall find life or death with them as chance pleases to direct the outcome."

Then they were armed by their squires, they left the ship, and they strode as quickly as they could toward the people they saw. Arriving near them, it appeared clear that a certain number of pagan knights—seemingly up to about thirty—who were on foot and well armed with shields, helmets, and cuirasses, and who were joined by about twenty other men of a lower lot, were fighting very fiercely against six knights, who were defending themselves very courageously with their backs to some cliffs. The devices on their arms immediately revealed the latter to be those the knight suspected they were. Coming closer to those people, Esplandián said in a loud voice:

"Withdraw, evil people, friends, and servants of the evil enemy, and leave these knights of our Lord God alone; if not, you will all be killed and destroyed."

Hearing that, those people, who had supposed the newcomers were friends who had come to aid their six adversaries, now recognized by the knight's words that they were indeed like the six. So half of them, shrugging aside the threats and desiring to kill them, left the main fight in order to oppose the newcomers. But Esplandián and his companions went to meet them; so they were joined in what became a dangerous battle. However, since the pagans were many, since most of them were well armed, and since they held the high ground on the cliff, they attacked those who were below in safety and at will with lances, arrows from their bows, and rocks they rolled down the cliff. Still, Esplandián and his two knights were not dismayed or frightened by this; rather, struggling to close in even more with the enemy, they continued receiving all those attacks on their shields until they were able to force their way forward without the enemy being able to resist their charge. Then suddenly, the Christians, with a terrifying effort, wedged their way into the middle of them thereby dividing them into two bands and leaving for dead all those whom they found in front of them. Then and there you could see the marvels Esplandián performed; there you could adjudge him the acme of courage and of the whole order of chivalry; for after he entered the fray, there was not a knight or one of the others he hit who was able to rise again from the ground. Concerning Enil and Gandalín, I tell you that, seeing what their caudillo was doing, they doubled the strength of their zealous hearts, and they followed their leader, knocking down and killing all those who engaged them in battle and making certain none could attack him from his blind side. By now, this action was seen by those who were defending themselves among the cliffs. These latter, seeing how the three knights had dispersed so many of the enemy, came out together from their defensive position with much more

hope than they had before, and they harried their opponents so much that, against their wishes, they forced them to join those few who were retreating from Esplandián. Thus, both Christian bands were united in the middle of the enemies; however, these, seeing how many of their number were dead and hearing the howls of agony of the wounded, abandoned the battle and began to flee among the cliffs attempting to escape. Some of them, however, were killed before they could get away, and others were saved because those knights could not follow them due to how heavy their arms were.

101

How their leader, the flower of Great Britain,
Seeing all his men were safe and secure,
Departs in search of greater adventure
Where he can avenge his hungry dudgeon;
Then his holy group, entering a valley,
Found Melía,[1] *a female magician,*
And they saw Frandalo on a mountain
Coming with a group of more than sixty.

At the end of these events the knights then recognized each other. After removing their helmets, they embraced over and over again like friends who loved each other very heartily. Esplandián asked them what that had been about, what adventure had brought them there. Helián the Vigorous said to him:

"Señor, Trion, Ambor, two of Isanjo's sons, and I earnestly begged Belleriz, who's here, to guide us to some place where we'd be able to win honor. For love of us, last night he led us out of Alfarín and brought us to these foothills within sight of a village that is situated at the edge of the sea, and from there we killed some Turks who were going in other directions. We

---

[1] Melía, a great enchantress, does not appear in bks. I to IV. The correct stress of Melía's name (as shown here) is revealed by its use in end rhymes in the Spanish versions of the epigraphical poems for this chap. and for chap. 113. There are several possible etymologies for this enchantress's name: (1) in Greek mythology Melía is known as Danaus, the king of Argos' wife; their daughters were known as the *meliæ*, that is ash nymphs who were condemned to draw water with a sieve in Hades for killing their husbands; (2) "Melia" is the ash tree from the family *Meliaceæ*; it is often called the Persian lilac and is a native of northern India: this coincides with the description of Melía below for she looked as old as "trees when they become gnarled with age"; and (3) in Greek, μηλεα [*meléa*] means apple tree (*Pyrus malus*), which is significant to our story because, according to an ancient and widely-circulated Byzantine legend, after the fall of Constantinople, a poor or humble man (this was reelaborated after 1453 to mean the revived Emperor Constantine XI) would rise to kill the Turks and chase them as far as Monodendrion (single tree), or according to another version, to *Kokkini Melía* (the Red Apple Tree), which tradition marked as the ancient boundary between Persia and Byzantium. It appears GRM cast Esplandián in the role of this humble man who would drive the infidels back to "Melía." AKCT calls her Melie the Enchantress.

were so embroiled in that action that Belleriz, despite things he did, was unable to get us out of there before a whole company of knights and peons came from a villa called Galacia.[2] In fact, there were so many in their sally that they overwhelmed us. Although we got the upper hand on them a few times and we killed a few of them, in the end it suited us to leave our horses, which were killed by them, and to retreat to this place. We, too, would have been killed if the Lord whom we serve had not succored us by sending you and those knights to us."

"My good friends," said Esplandián, "you made a grave error in not taking Belleriz's advice since you had him as your guide. Even if you had killed many of those very low[3] people, it would have behooved you to listen to him, for you yourselves might have been the ones who were killed. Do you not remember where we are? The loss of one of us is worse than a thousand of the enemy. Always follow reason in all things without tempting our very powerful Lord whom we obey, and you will be helped by Him and protected from danger. You will not often receive miracles like this one; for although we are all in His service, as you say, He does not want to be served except by the path of reason. If we engage in other superficialities, so too shall we find His help and grace superficial. Because it seems you are very badly wounded, let us go down to the caravel I have come in. We can be there quickly, and there you can be well cared for."

"Señor," they said, "we don't have any wounds to really complain of; but let's do what you command."

Then they went down from the cliffs, and they found the two squires Enil and Gandalín, who had tied up by their reins to some trees most of the horses of the knights whom they had killed or dispersed. When Belleriz saw them, he said to Esplandián:

"Señor, if some mistake occurred in the past, it is not my fault; but we

---

[2] Galacia is an ancient region of Turkey settled by the Celts in 278 BC and incorporated into the Roman (and, later, Byzantine) Empire beginning in 25 BC. No specific town or city can be associated with the Villa Galacia here except to note that GRM has generally located the fictional space to coincide rather closely with the real space of Asia Minor.

[3] The original Span. in SP, JG, and Gay. has *civil* [civil]; JJAS shows *cevil*; JJF and JV print the plural form of people as *ceuiles*. Unless GRM is allowing Esplandián to be uncharacteristically flip or sarcastic, we have chosen to use a lesser meaning indicated by DA, "*que no sean hombres baxos ni civiles*" [let them not be low or civil men], which opposes such "civilians" to knights, soldiers, nobles, and the like. DCECH traces this use of civil to the *Gran conquista de ultramar* (ca. 1305). In his edition of Juan de Mena's *Laberinto de Fortuna*, John C. Cummins says that *civil* in line 1233 may mean cruel. See María Rosa Lida, "*Cevil, 'cruel,'* " *Nueva Revista de Filología Hispánica* 1 (1947): 80–85. Coincidentally, the line is a reference to events in Medina del Campo in 1441 when the Princes of Aragón besieged King Juan II and in the process destroyed the city's walls:

> [Most of all I saw the civil fury of Medina, / and I saw its walls not well perforated].

should not let that interfere with the good that can come our way in the future. Since these knights aren't badly wounded, have them bind their wounds as best they can; and then let's mount these horses and return to Villa Galacia, because it's surely impossible that more people haven't come from there to rescue those you dispersed. We'll be safely able to inflict great harm on them."

Esplandián considered that very good advice, and he asked the knights themselves if they were in good enough condition to be able to put into effect what Belleriz said they could. The knights said yes. Then they had their wounds bound very well, for they were neither numerous nor very serious. Riding their horses, they began to follow the road down which Belleriz took them. They went some distance along the mountain path until they entered a valley bordered by very rugged cliffs and very thick stands of trees. Looking to their right, they saw the mouth of a cave, and sitting next to it was the most misshapen thing on which they had ever laid their eyes. In order to see what this thing was, all together they left the road they were taking and went up through the thickets. When they came near enough to be able to discern what it might be, they saw the form of a very ugly, hairy woman, and her dishevelled hair was touching the ground. Her face and hands and feet seemed as wrinkled as trees when they become gnarled with age. Hence, by all appearances she seemed not to belong to the order of nature. They all marvelled greatly to see such a strange thing, and they asked Belleriz if he knew peradventure what that very strange thing might be. He answered them by saying:

"This very strange, disfigured thing you see here is a woman who was of very high lineage and refined manners: she descends in a direct line from the illustrious blood[4] of the kings of Persia. She is the sister of King Armato's grandmother, the king whom you, señor Esplandián, took prisoner on Forbidden Mountain. Although she was a woman renowned for great beauty and all other feminine things, it never pleased her to marry, so she always avoided getting married. Instead, she dedicated herself to learning every language she could as well as astrological arts, the movements of the heavens, and many other exotic sciences. Over a long period of time she became learned in all these matters. So, with her vast knowledge she has been saying for a long time that during her lifetime the great seigniory of Persia was bound to be lost; what's more, she said it was to be subjugated and ruled by foreigners, and for that reason she ordered that cave made for her, the one you see her near and in which she makes her dwelling and abode. After she came here,

---

[4] It is interesting to note GRM's tolerance in the face of the Castilian campaign against Jews and Moslems in the early 1490s in his use of such terms as "illustrious blood" for enemy royalty. The Spanish term for illustrious is *esclarecida*, which, in addition to illustrious and distinguished, means clear or pure blood, an obsession for Christian Spaniards in those turbulent times. But GRM solved any potential conflict with the Inquisition by making it clear in chap. 99 that the original text was supposedly written in Greek and was translated by Urganda's niece Julianda. GRM is, therefore, by this novelistic trick, merely an amanuensis.

she tore her royal vestments apart, and she always refuses to put on any others; moreover, she refuses to speak to anyone; she eats herbs and roots; she is, as some say, more than one hundred twenty years old; and she's the duenna who erected the gilded metal pillars at Venturous Spring with their inscriptions that no one so far has been able to understand. That's where you, señor Esplandián, routed some knights and captured Infanta Heliaxa."

"Truly, Belleriz," said Esplandián, "you have spoken about a very strange person. I should like to know what it is she does in the cave."

"No one, señor," he said, "has been able to discover that. But everyone believes that, since she entered it with a great number of books, she spends her time with them."

"Well then, let's see," said Esplandián. "Why doesn't someone go in to see what she does?"

"Señor," he said, "some tried years ago, but they came out so battered that they were unable to take six steps forward."

"Still, let's go closer," said Esplandián, "and we shall ask her some questions in our language."

Then they approached her, but they did not walk far before she rose from the boulder on which she was sitting, and she said:

"Knight, I found out about your coming to this land more than eighty years before you were born. I am leading this harsh life on account of you, but I find it better than being your captive."

Saying this, she went into the cave in such a way that she could no longer be seen. The knights returned to the road they had left following the path Belleriz chose. They did not ride long before they saw a battalion of knights very well provisioned with shiny arms coming down another of the mountain's valleys. It seemed they numbered about sixty. Esplandián decided with Belleriz and Enil that these two should approach the sixty as secretly as possible in order to discover what the best plan of action would be.

These two knights threaded their way into the most thickly-forested part of the region, and in a little while they came across the others, who were traversing the bottom of the valley. The two saw that they were travelling under the sign of a vermillion cross. Thus, they immediately realized that they were a contingent of knights who had remained in Villa Alfarín; and they also recognized the guide who was leading them as strong Frandalo: they could make him out by the beautiful, highly-decorated arms he was wearing. Without going down to meet them, they quickly turned around and with happiness and pleasure they went to tell Esplandián this news. Hearing it, he set off immediately to meet them. When they were in sight of each other, Frandalo thought they were an enemy company, and he prepared his men for an attack; however, Esplandián, ordering his men to stay behind, much to their surprise rushed alone toward the others as fast as his horse would go. Then he was soon recognized by all. Frandalo dismounted, went to the knight on foot, took his hands, and kissed them many times even though they were fully armed. Esplandián leaned over his horse's neck and held Frandalo in a firm embrace. With this, the knights arrived so joyfully that their eyes were full of

tears of happiness, and they greeted him with expressions of love. Calling the other knights who had stayed back, they all came together. Who could tell you how fortunate they felt, seeing them all reunited in that manner with the blessed knight, whom they revered and loved as they loved their own hearts and lives? They loved him more because of his great virtues and catholic sagacity than because of his valor.

102

How Esplandián and strong Frandalo, with the other knights, won Villa Galacia from the Turks, and how the author turns his voice to the kings and princes and grandees who govern Christians.

Being reunited with the others as you have heard, Esplandián asked them what caused them to leave Villa Alfarín, and he told them what had happened to the sixty, and how they were travelling under Belleriz's advice to see if they could seize some of those who might leave the village to rescue their own people. Frandalo said:

"Señor, this morning I found out that my nephew Belleriz left last night with these young knights who wished to do something notable. In order to keep any reversal from overtaking them, I begged your uncle Norandel to remain guarding the village and to allow me and these knights to go out and search for them. Although he wanted to make the trip, he realized how necessary guard duty was; so he thought my idea was a good one, and he granted my request. Therefore, you see why we've come. But now I see them out of danger, and you, my Lord, whom I so desired to see, I see with them; and I now see with us the happy good fortune which always comes with your presence. Hence, with God's help and yours, it'll be good for us not to return to our post without doing some service for Him. In order to carry this out, I suggest we follow Belleriz's advice. Let's go to a place I'll lead you to where we can safely observe the people leaving Villa Galacia in the rescue party. Then we'll decide on a plan of action depending on what we see."

All consented to Frandalo's exposition of this plan. With him in the lead, they began to follow him toward their objective. So, with Frandalo's nephew Belleriz and Enil scouting ahead, they went through the mountain's most concealed parts until they arrived near the village. Looking through some thick brush within sight of the villa, they saw very many men on foot taking the road their knights and peons had taken earlier. This was quickly reported to Esplandián and the knights who were with him. Hearing the report, Frandalo said:

"Señores, now I tell you that we'll win the village if we don't lose it due to some bad luck. Let's let those people get well away, and as soon as they've gone down the grade, follow me. The Lord on High is with us and He will help us."

With this and with courage and joy in their hearts, they pushed forward. Seeing the people were as disorganized as townspeople usually are, and realizing that if they were to attack them they could inflict great harm on them, the knights therefore thought Frandalo's was a good plan. As soon as the peons were behind a long slope and into the mountain, Frandalo said in a loud voice:

"Knights, follow me!"

He spurred his horse as hard as he could, and he charged toward some common men and women who had gone out to watch the others leave, and he went straight toward the villa's gate which was open. Upon seeing the knights, the common people I have mentioned tried to close the gates; but the knights arrived so hard and so fast that the gates could not be closed. Instead, the commoners began to flee shouting as they went through the streets. Esplandián, who was in the lead, went through the gate with Frandalo next to him, and all the others came after. Dismounting, some of them took control of the towers above the gate. After closing the gate, some stayed behind to guard it, and others entered the streets with great zeal to fight whomever they might encounter. But they found no resistance whatsoever. All they found were women and children and some men who were useless for bearing arms.

Not fearing what actually happened, all of the villagers had left, as we told you above, to succor their own people who were delaying their return too much. When the townspeople saw they were lost, some climbed into the towers where they made a great algarad. In this way, even though their own soldiers were very far away, the outcry was heard by them. Not knowing what it could mean, they sent some horsemen to go discover what the algarad was about. These latter returned and immediately discovered that the Christians were in their town and that there was no one left to repel them, and as fast as they could they informed their own forces. Hearing this, they all began weeping lamentably together and cursing their luck and the day they were born; and they had no idea what to do. But among them was a knight of rather advanced age who was well provisioned due to both his lineage and his fortune and who was respected and revered by all of these people. He said to them:

"Friends, do not cry, for by our crying we shall recover little or nothing of what we have lost. Embolden your hearts, and let's go against those vile people with the intention of either dying or getting back our women and children and properties. For us, life will be more painful than seeing them captured by those who by rights ought to be our captives."

Hearing what he said, they all gathered around him and said in loud voices:

"We all wish to die. Lead and command us, for we shall carry out your orders until death itself."

"Then, let's go," said the knight.

Thereupon, they attacked their own village very zealously, but they did not find those who were holding the villa now any less zealous, nor did they find them lacking the necessary means to defend it. On the contrary, the Chris-

tians had taken all of the towers in the walls, and they had posted defenders in them. Meanwhile Esplandián, strong Frandalo, Enil, Gandalín, Helián the Vigorous, Trion, and ten more knights went down to the villa's gate through which they had entered—for none of the village's other gates required as much protection as it, and the one on the seaside was controlled only by caravels on the water. Opening the gates, they found themselves face to face with the enemy, who, snarling and baring their teeth like rabid dogs, were attacking with loud cries. Then, when both groups met, they were joined in the crudest and most frightening battle in which so few people could ever engage. Those on the outside, so full of lamentation and great rage, threw themselves among the sharp lances and spears with no fear of death, and since they were carrying few arms, they were killed with very little difficulty by their opponents, because the latter harbored no doubts about their own fiery spirit or strength. What shall I say? Just that the dispute and the massacre lasted so long that the pile of the dead was so thick that both sides were unable to reach each other.

Combat in other places was no less fierce, although courage was mixed with huge madness; for, after passing the deep moat, the people—the completely stupefied common people—reached the wall hugging the rocks in the wall. But they obtained nothing for this effort because none of them had any ladders, pickaxes, or any of the other instruments needed for such combat. However, once their great fury passed, they withdrew because those on top of the wall were killing and disabling them with giant rocks. In the way you are hearing about, that disorderly combat lasted more than three hours, which was until nightfall. During that time those on the inside became tired of killing men without receiving any injuries in return; so they closed the gates and gathered inside the villa where they found abundant victuals and great riches. Meanwhile, those on the outside who were still alive, given the calamitous damage they had sustained, felt they were deader than those who had died, for in the fight they lost their wives, children, relatives, possessions, and fellow citizens. With no hope of recovering them and with no thought of returning to the battle, they decided to withdraw to the mountain; moreover, their only desire was to inform their lord, Infante Alforax, so that he could relieve their distress.

Exclamation by the author

Thus they spent the night, one side with great, joyful spirits for the good fortune their Lord gave them; and the other side with the sadness, nay, with the bitter misery about which you have heard. This is how many Christian peoples who are neighbors of the great seigniory of Persia live even today. They are subjugated, captured, killed, and robbed by those infidels who make them renege their Catholic faith and worship that ridiculous and false law. They—those who follow no law—rape the Christians' wives and daughters, and even

their sons; they force them to become common tribute payers;[1] they refuse to allow them to practise the holy law they were promised in baptism; and they subject them to many other ugly and evil betrayals in the course of keeping the Christians in captivity, oppression, and tyranny. And despite all that, the kings, princes, and grandees who command and rule over Christendom show no concern for such a calamity, nor does it occur to them to use their treasures and their great hosts of men in any remedial action. Rather, forgetting that to which nobility obliges them, they spend their sleepless nights planning how to lord it over those kings and grandees who have less power than they themselves. Furthermore, the mighty desire passionately to eject the less powerful forcibly from their seigniories in order to rob them; and this is done in the belief that, by increasing their estates, they can sate their cupidity. Meanwhile, they have not a thought or care for the holy law of Jesus Christ whose name they adopt and whose doctrines they are supposed to follow as He gave the first example. However, following no other law or order than the ones their passions raise and incite in them, they rob, burn, and pillage their fellow men, when instead they should desire their welfare in order to fulfill one of the Almighty Lord's commandments. And they lose their sleep, appetite, and tranquillity in order to satisfy their wants and to cause many innocent people to be killed and destroyed. Of course, we can except our very Catholic king and queen from this accounting, because not only did they expend great energy and suffer many travails bringing order to the kingdoms of Castilla and León, which they found plundered, burned, destroyed, and distributed into many pieces of land on each of which many nobles were ready to raise themselves up as so many kings to whom our king and queen would eternally have been held in misery, subjugation, and captivity; but also, with no rest for their persons and without withholding their treasures, they ejected from the other end of the seas the infidels who, so many years ago against all law and justice, seized and usurped the kingdom of Granada.[2] And not content with this, they cleaned out that dirty leprosy,[3] that wicked heresy of both the visible and invisible kinds that had been sown in their realms for many years. In addition, many other Catholic works were ordered done by them.

Well then, if kings and grandees like those I mentioned before, in order to shield and protect their errors, claim to have justice on their side, and if all should be satisfied by their deeds, then what need do we have of our Holy Father[4] or of the crowd of kings and grandees, or of divine and human laws? All of these would rush to the aid of the aggrieved when so requested, and if their help were not requested, the mighty would volunteer, as a Catholic good deed, to work with all their strength to preserve justice. The strong and powerful would do these things because they would recall the ways of fickle fortune, which in a flash turns things upside down, and against which no one can be certain that its great power will not torment him. Indeed, fortune is so powerful that no one, no matter how great a señor he may be, no matter what persons or messengers he may have, and no matter if he be reinforced by the Holy Apostle[5] himself, can escape its fickleness. When the almighty Lord sees the kings and grandees to whom we have referred in conformity to Him, then he will approach them with His mercy, just as the evil enemy seems to enter dissension with his fiendish cruelty.

But let us leave this now, because if the Lord of the world does not send His divine grace to those grandees I mentioned in order to make them remove that thick cloud by which their great arrogance, cupidity, and many other worldly things have always obscured and confused their minds, then

due to our sins, things will go from bad to worse. Experience shows us that this is true as we judge by the great difference in virtue during times past and these present times of ours. So now, let the story return to where we left it.

103

How Infante Alforax consoles those who retreated from Galacia to great Ctesifonte.

The story tells you that when day came the people from the village, who had been controlled more by passion than reason, withdrew into the mountains after the combat about which you have heard. There all of them decided to go to the great city of Ctesifonte, which after a time was called Samasana[1] and which is where Infante Alforax always was. After arriving and being presented to the king, they told him about their great misfortunes with great clamoring and painful cries. Hence, they moved the hearts of all who heard them to great sorrow and pity. The infante said to them:

"Friends, do not cry or be so afflicted, for if we were to achieve any remedy by that means, who more than I would seek to use it, given how adverse fortune has been to me? On the contrary, we ought to flee from such womanly acts; rather we ought to turn to imitate those things that strong, virile men do in battles and heroic feats. If it pleases the gods, I have it in mind to do just that; but not against those few who have entered my empire, because, even though they were put on the gallows, I should think that such an act would redound to my dishonor and shame rather than my glory. But my fury and my towering ire will be turned against that evil and false emperor of Constantinople, who has caused all this; and if I can, I shall not delay for long the cruel vengeance that his lies deserve. Meanwhile, do not depart from here. I shall order your grievances to be redressed in such a way that you will be happy and you will no longer remember what you lost."

With these words that the infante said to them, they were somewhat consoled, and retiring to some rooms they were given, they waited hopefully for the time when they could recover their property, wives, and children.

---

[1] Samasana may be a fictionalized version of the Sasanian dynasty of the Persian Empire which ruled from 211 to 651, or about the period in which this novel's action is thought to take place.

How Esplandián requested that the emperor send people to reinforce those villas he had won; and how he sent very rich jewels to him and many captives to the infanta; and about the answer that was sent him about all this.

Esplandián and the knights who were in Villa Galacia, seeing that their enemies had left the mountain, and not fearing any imminent battle, met to take counsel regarding what they should do. After discussing many things among themselves, they determined that Gandalín should go to the emperor of Constantinople in the caravel that had brought Esplandián. Furthermore, it was decided that, in two other caravels that belonged to the villa, he should take with him to the emperor all of the most precious jewels that were to be found in the villa; he should also take to Infanta Leonorina all of the damsels, girls, and children that were beyond nursing age, and he should request reinforcements so that those conquered villas would not be lost again. Immediately, all these decisions were put into effect, and the booty seemed so great that it made a wondrous sight. Regarding the people I mentioned, it was determined that they numbered one thousand five hundred people. As soon as these captives were put on the caravels along with men who knew how to handle them, Gandalín left the port, and, without any change in the wind, he arrived at the great city of Constantinople, where he found the emperor accompanied by the empress, his daughter the beautiful Leonorina, and many noblemen.

When the emperor saw Gandalín, he recognized him immediately, and he said:

"Gandalín, friend, what brings you here?"

The knight knelt to the ground, kissed the emperor's hands, and said:

"Sire, Esplandián and the knights with him are sending to you via me part of the spoils they found in Villa Galacia after they seized it. Here in one of the ships I left anchored in the port are the great quantities of all the gold and silver jewels, precious stones, and pearls that we captured."

Turning toward Leonorina, he continued:

"Lady, that knight of yours is sending for your service up to one thousand five hundred damsels, girls of lower birth, and boys and girls who can be raised perfectly well without their mothers."

"Gandalín," Leonorina said, "that lord of yours seems more yours than mine, because he is unconcerned about his father's command and he ignores the order I sent him to the effect that he come immediately to my lord the emperor; instead, he wanders fleeing me as if our orders were some sort of trick. Unless it is considered discourteous of me, I shall not take any part of what he is sending me."

"Daughter, how can that be?" the emperor said laughing. "Do you still harbor your rage against the world's best knight? The knight who wants to serve you and who does it with actions?"

"Sire," she said, "I do not doubt that his courage and bravery are equal to

How Tartario,[1] *the emperor's admiral with one thousand five hundred armed men commanded a great fleet which he took to the port of Galacia in order to succor Esplandián and the other knights who were there.*

The emperor ordered his admiral Tartario to be summoned. This was his name because he was a native of Tartaria. Although his birth prevented him from rising to a high estate, his knowledge of marine arts was so extensive that on account of it he attained the great honor of being the admiral for such a great emperor. He immediately ordered him to furnish his fleet with as many provisions as he could carry; to take one thousand five hundred well-armed men with him; to leave swiftly on a route that Gandalín would show him; and to make all this available for whatever Esplandián would command. The admiral put these orders into effect as quickly as he could because he wanted to carry out his master's order and because he felt completely natural only when undertaking such tasks. When all preparations were completed, he took leave of the emperor, and taking Gandalín with him he set out to sea in favorable winds. Hence, in four days they arrived at the port of Villa Galacia, where they were greeted very warmly and hospitably by Esplandián and the other knights. Since the new arrivals realized that they were in charge of guarding those villas, they could disembark without fear in order to serve God and to satisfy their desires, and thereby they could gratify their strong and brave hearts.

[1] Tartario is not mentioned in bks. I to IV, and his first appearance is as an unnamed admiral in chap. 104. Below he is identified as a native of Tartaria, a vast region in central Russia through which the Volga River flows.

How Frandalo the Strong ordered the admiral
To disembark one thousand five hundred men
Where the living[1] *expected a doubtful burden,*
And where death was most feared by them all;
And, with the sounds of a thousand instruments
And very bizarre displays that alarm the people,
How in the port the Great Serpent Caravel
Arrives without aid from wind or elements.

Once the great fleet arrived in port, as you have been told, then, following strong Frandalo's counsel, the men and provisions were distributed among those villas according to the needs of each city. Thus, all of the knights were disengaged from guard duty and were therefore freed to do whatever would serve the almighty Lord most. However, when Esplandián heard what Gandalín told him on behalf of his very beloved lady, he was exceedingly fearful of vexing her, so he decided to leave that conquest which gave such delightful pleasure to his soul and to free himself from the other conquest that, if no relief were found quickly, might bring him to a very cruel death. While pondering how best to undertake his trip, the high and powerful Lord whose servant and slave he was gave him such a solution that his trip came to a more glorious and more pleasant end than he ever imagined. It happened in this way: one morning at daybreak, the Great Serpent Caravel, which until then had remained near Forbidden Mountain, arrived at the port of Galacia to the accompaniment of horns and many kinds of instruments that were playing so harmoniously that it fairly seemed to be the work of heavenly angels. On the caravel were silk pennons embroidered with gold; its very large sails were made of the finest cloth; and it had many other noble things that would please a great emperor. The songs were so melodious and so sweet that no man could turn away from them. And above the Serpent's wide wings there appeared damsels dressed in very rich finery. What else can I tell you, but that never until then had any mortal seen anything more beautiful or more extraordinary?

---

[1] Here we follow Gay. (*las vidas* [the living]) over JJF, JJAS, JV, and SP (*las villas* [the towns]); however, we are not certain that Gay.'s emendation solves the riddle of a difficult reading. There is no reason why the living is not metonymy for the towns in which the people live. The superiority of the versions other than Gay. is further shown by the fact that the same word [*villas*] is used in line 3.

About how Esplandián and the other knights boarded the Great Serpent Caravel desiring earnestly to see Urganda the Unknown, who, after speaking to them about many things, went to Villa Galacia with them.

When the knights heard that great clamor and the sounds of the horns, they got up from their beds on which they were resting, and very quickly demanded their arms be brought to them because they thought a great host of Turks must have descended upon them. Soon however, they were informed by those who were standing night watch on the wall that they should not fear an attack; rather, the news they could give them was of the pleasant kind, for Esplandián's Great Serpent Caravel had just arrived in the port. The watchmen speculated that, given how well equipped it was with horns and many other sweet-sounding instruments which were being played by richly-attired damsels who were also singing, the only people who could be aboard must surely be coming out of great love. Hearing this Esplandián became very happy and said:

"You are certainly telling the truth. Let us go quickly and discover what this is all about. However, I think it must be that grand sage Urganda the Unknown, for no one else has been granted such power to be able to command my caravel."

Then they all dressed and, meeting in Esplandián's lodging, they went down to the sea with him, where they saw the Great Caravel and heard the sweet songs that were coming from it. Thus, they boarded some ships they found there; they went out to the deepest part of the port; and they came alongside it where they met Urganda at the hatch in the gunwale from whence she commanded the ship. She said to them:

"My good señores, come to me, for I wish to speak to you in this serpentine caravel."

The first to enter were Talanque and Maneli the Prudent along with their servants, because they had a very great desire to talk to her. After kneeling they kissed her hands many times. She embraced and kissed them as tears were falling from her eyes. Esplandián entered next, and when Urganda saw him, she knelt before him and said:

"Blessed knight, give me your hands so that I may kiss them, for some time in the future I still hope to receive great boons from you."

He was embarrassed to see her before him thus, so he said to her:

"My good señora, you are the one who is capable of doing favors; therefore, it is I who should bow before you. So, please rise, milady. There is no cause for a person of such high esteem and distinction to make such obeisance before anyone even if he were lord of the whole earth."

"Oh knight," Urganda said, "even if I were to show some moderation in the way I greet all of the world's princes, I shall not behave in such a way with you. I say this not so much because of your high estate, but because I see you serving the Lord of Truth so zealously; for no matter how noble and no

matter what other works one may achieve, whoever is wanting in such excellent Catholic works can never achieve lasting glory."

Then she stood up and spoke very lovingly to all of the other knights. Turning to Esplandián, she said:

"Blessed knight, given how events are developing and in order to satisfy your desire and another's—even though for now these things are still hidden—it behooves you and all these knights to go without any delay to the great court of the emperor of Constantinople, who loves you all very much. You must go now, because it will be impossible to do so at any other time without facing the grave threats of death and danger. In addition to the fact that my will is set on making this trip in your company, I hereby order you to go forward wearing the arms of matching devices that I have brought you. With these outfits you will be able to present yourselves in court with a more handsome bearing. After the very happy and delightful meetings there have passed, you will have many other encounters that will cause you much torment, pain, and bitterness, all of which will last until that side of fortune's wheel turns to the bottom thereby making the other, opposite side that everyone will see appear at the top.[1] But before the Great Serpent Caravel may leave here with us, I want to enter the villa and see some of this land, for, as my arts have shown me, I must face a great challenge here; but until now I have not been able to discover how it will happen. For this reason, I have wished to flee it with all my strength; but fortune, who guides all such things and who takes precedence over me, has given me no escape. Hence, even though it is against my will, it is incumbent upon me to submit to that law, which is of a higher order than I."

"My good señora," said Esplandián, "do not fear; for the only thing for which there is no remedy, unless it is from Him alone, is the wrath of the

---

[1] In Juan de Mena's famous politico-allegorical work on fortune, *Laberinto de Fortuna* (1444), the narrator is taken to Fortune's house where he sees Fortune's three wheels of which the first (past) and third (future) are immobile, whereas of the middle wheel he says:

> [but the middle one did not cease turning; / and I saw below all of them / an infinite number of people had fallen, / each of whom had written on their forehead / the name and lot that had befallen them.]

Each of the three wheels is composed of seven circles corresponding to the seven medieval planets which, in turn, represent seven kinds of people. The work's remaining 1900 lines describe the seven circles in the middle wheel. For another view of fortune during the period *Esplandián* was being written,

true God. But from that source nothing adverse can happen to you, for all of us here who are your knights would sooner lose our lives. So, if it pleases you, inform us in time so that we can apply a quick remedy."

"My señor," she said, "what I think is that I am to be made a prisoner of a very big enemy of mine; but none of my arts have enabled me to discover who it is or where it will occur."

"In that case," said Esplandián, "with help from our true Lord, we shall take such precautions that your danger will be very slight."

"Let us go now to the villa," she said. "Let my damsels and dwarfs remain on this caravel. Then send for Norandel, for there is no reason to make this journey without the company of such a good knight. As for your close friend, the king of Dacia, I have brought him to you, for I found him wounded as the result of a battle he had against Garlante, señor of Calafera Island,[2] who was attempting to seize two damsels who were travelling in his boat with him. However, the king, as a good knight, fought with him for a long time at great risk to his life, and, after defeating him and preparing to cut off his head, he granted his opponent's request to allow him to live. The king pardoned him and made him swear that he would never deal with chivalry except according to its rules. At that time, I was crossing that island, so I took the king with me and put him in the Great Caravel."

"Thanks be to God," said Esplandián, "for the very good news you are giving us, señora; for truly, I have been continually brokenhearted worrying that I had lost him to some bad turn of fate and that I had no way to recover him. Let us go see him, for I desire to do so very much."

While they were talking, all of the knights boarded that Great Serpentine Caravel, and together they entered a very elegant stateroom, where the king was lying on a couch. Upon seeing each other, they were all very happy; but Esplandián was especially joyful, because he loved the king as he loved himself. Embracing him again and again and seeing how wounded he was from a battle in which he had been unable to join his friend, tears filled Esplandián's eyes.

"Good señores," said Urganda, "since the king is being well taken care of, you may leave him, and we should go to the villa."

This they did immediately. Then into their caravels they took her and Esplandián's Damsel Carmela and no one else, and they passed over to the place where Esplandián and strong Frandalo were staying and in which Urganda was given lodging. There she was served with as much love and attention as could be given the noble Queen Brisena.

---

[2] Garlante appears only in this passage in GRM's Amadís Cycle. Calafera Island does not appear to refer to a real place, but it does seem to foreshadow Queen Calafía's Island in chap. 157 below.

How the magnanimous, virile Esplandián,
Being moved by compassion, virtue and pity,
Liberates the common folk of the city
By following the example of great Scipion;[1]
And how, showing abundant resolution,
Carmela takes them to great Ctesifonte,
To the place in which reside the infante
And all that perfidious and wealthy nation.

After that night passed and day came, Esplandián gathered in his inn—because Urganda was there—all the knights to whom he spoke in these words:

"My good señores, you have already seen how, due to God's goodness and mercy, you defeated this villa without our planning it and without personal danger to us. Likewise, as it was reasonable for you to do, you have already disposed of its riches and the people that were set aside to serve you here. Now you must take counsel regarding what remains to be done. Here there are many married women with suckling babies, and there are many others who are too old to be of much value. Truly, it seems to me that it would be a manifest and great cruelty to want all these people to pass through the bitter gates of death. Yet, to consider selling them does little to satisfy our interests; for, if we were to pursue that plan, given their condition, we would be shrinking away from what virtue obliges us to do. But, to intend keeping them in our service I consider the most dangerous plan because of how it impinges on both our honor and our consciences, wherein grave consequences would pursue our souls. Therefore, we should recall some of the things done through the ages by those who were victors in history's great conquests, some of which were virtuous and others of which were the opposite. Viewing these events as examples for us, let us choose to follow those magnificently virtuous deeds that the great sages decided to set down in their writings. Certainly, what Scipio Africanus the Major did with the exceedingly beautiful damsel of high estate when he followed the magnanimous and excellent dictates of his heart is better than what the king of this Empire of Persia did with the emperor of Constantinople: Scipio restored her to her husband after caring for her as if she were his daughter. On the other hand, after defeating and capturing

---

[1] Scipion is the Spanish rendering of the name of Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus (237–283 BC), the Roman general who defeated Hannibal in 202 BC. He is known in English as Scipio. This Scipio is called the Elder, or the Major; hence, the Spanish *gran Scipion* [Scipion the Great]. He served as Proconsul in Spain in 211 BC, and he became Consul in 205 BC. Among his other deeds, he was the general who commanded the Roman attack on Carthage, and he defeated Hannibal in 202 BC. A famous painting by Theodor van Thulden (1606–69), "The Continence of Scipio" (1635), depicts the act in which the general renounces accepting a slave woman, and instead returns her to her lover.

the emperor of Constantinople in the field, the king of Persia made him put the palms of his hands and his knees on the ground, and then, with raging haughtiness rising in his heart, he trampled him with his horse.[2] Hence, fortune repented for having given so much glory to someone who disregarded fortune's power and instead swiftly punished him for his ignorance. With these examples I turn the decision over to your judgment. I believe the inherent evil is obvious to you; therefore, I suggest that these duennas with children and the others who have husbands elsewhere all be restored to their husbands, and that with the women should go the men who are almost departed from this world due to their advanced age. On the one hand, this solution will be reputed as virtuous; and on the other hand, if the world's Lord whom we serve has designated us to win this seigniory for his holy service, then our glory shall be increased in proportion to the number of future generations that may live in it."

Since those knights were converted into virtue itself, and since they considered Esplandián's speech a branch of the same virtue, they all said they agreed that what he suggested should be done. Then Carmela said:

"Señor, if it pleases Your Grace and these knights, I'll go with these people, and I'll present them on your behalf and theirs to Infanta Heliaxa."

They were all very pleased by what the damsel said, wherefore they granted her request. Then Urganda ordered a very beautiful palfrey with magnificent trappings be brought without delay from the Great Caravel, and she ordered some of her own clothes that were adorned with many very beautiful and

---

[2] GRM seemingly has confused the countries of origin of these opponents in order to make them conform to his narrative. Timur Lenk (1336–1405), known as Tamerlane and creator of the second Mongol Empire with the capital in Samarkand, perpetrated the referred to barbarity against Bayazid I (called Yildirim, the Thunderbolt, 1360–1403), Sultan (1389–1402) of the Ottoman, or Turkish, Empire. Doukas (fl. 1455), a source GRM may have known, says that Bayazid was "terrifying and mighty above all others" (op. cit., 61). Doukas adds this to the portrait of this sultan: "He was a feared man, precipitate in deeds of war, a persecutor of Christians as no other around him, and in the religion of the Arabs a most ardent disciple of Muhammad, whose unlawful commandments were observed to the utmost, never sleeping, spending his nights contriving intrigues and machinations against the rational flock of Christ" (ibid., 62). Bayazid I founded the first centralized Ottoman state based on traditional Turkish and Moslem cultural patterns. Between 1391 and 1398 he blockaded Constantinople, and he would no doubt have conquered the city-state then if not for his defeat in 1402 in the Battle of Ankara by Tamerlane. Among legends concerning how Tamerlane treated him are these: (1) Tamerlane carried him around with him in an iron cage; (2) Tamerlane forced him to remain under the table at meals and to eat only the scraps thrown to him; and (3) Tamerlane used him as his stirrups when he rode his horse. Perhaps GRM's version of the legend is similar to the third one. Doukas says this: "During the night he was bound by iron collars and manacles while during the day many soldiers kept guard over him" (op. cit., 96). Doukas adds that Tamerlane intended to "exhibit him as a spectacle and to parade him about," but that Bayazid died "after much suffering" (ibid., 99). In any case, modern historians tend to believe that the legendary accounts of Bayazid's cruel treatment at Tamerlane's hands are false; on the contrary, the Turkish sultan seems to have died of apoplexy rather than ill treatment. Bayazid, however, would be a good case study for GRM's theory of the wheel of fortune, for he was crushed just as he was about to achieve his greatest success.

priceless gems be brought to the damsel. After the damsel dressed and mounted the palfrey, those lords gave permission to all the men and women who remained in the villa to go in safety with her to the great city of Ctesifonte, where they would be delivered to their husbands. Hearing this, the captives raised their hands to heaven in the style of their aberrant sect and gave thanks to their gods. The women took their children and the old men took some worthless beasts they found there and they left following the damsel on the road they were shown.

However, let us leave their company and allow the story to tell us what happened in the meantime.

110

About the amusing hand to hand battle or
Combat both female magicians engaged in,
And, like Medea meeting Medea,[1] *to win*
Their fingernails replaced chivalric armor;
And although one of them encircled the other
With her arts, she herself received raving pain;
Then when art versus art ceases to obtain
Victory, Circe's[2] *brilliant sword arrives thither.*

This is what occurred: While Esplandián was speaking with Urganda about pleasant things, he remembered the woman they saw at the mouth of the cave. He then described to Urganda the woman's bizarre appearance: hair entirely covered her body and, according to Belleriz, she was more than one hundred twenty years old. This observation was safely attested by her very old face and knotty hands, all of which were converted into the likeness of tree roots.

"Santa María!" exclaimed Urganda. "I was told about that woman a very long time ago, and I have long since had a very strong desire to meet her! I am sure you have already been told she was a very beautiful infanta, that her

---

[1] Medea was the daughter of the king of Colchis, which was a mythological island in the Black Sea and was the name of the region at the eastern end of the Black Sea in real geography. It was an important buffer state between the Sasanian and Byzantine empires. Notice the similarity between the names Medea and Melía. Like the two enchantresses in this chap., she had powerful magical arts with which she guarded the Golden Fleece. She married Jason, but when abandoned by him, she murdered their children. GRM knew the story from the *Crónica troyana* among other sources.

[2] Gay., JJF, JJAS, and SP use an adjectival form, *circea*, in this metaphor regarding Circe's (?) sword. JG has the neologistic adjective in a capital letter: *Circea*. JG helps identify the reference as Circe, the mythological enchantress who turned Ulysses' men into swine. In Greek mythology, Circe was the daughter of Helios (sun god) and Perse (ocean nymph). The hero tricked her to get his men back. Through a rhetorical trope, Circe's sword refers to Esplandián's sword.

name is Melía, and that she became very knowledgeable in the arts of the stars, by means of which she learned very profound things. Then, scorning the world, she decided to live in that cave. Because my mind has been occupied by other things, and because I was very far removed from this land, I could not fulfill my desire to come speak to her."

Esplandián conceived a powerful wish to try and capture that strange woman by some means, so he said to Urganda:

"My señora, if it pleases you, we shall all delay our departure and guard you so you can see her, for she is very near here. In this alone there is no reason to fear any danger."

"Of course, my lord, even if there were a risk, I agree it should be done."

So, all of those knights, of whom there were more than sixty of the best, and their various servants put on their armor—the servants were also provided with armor because this was a war against infidels—and, taking Urganda with them, they soon arrived where the cave was. They found Infanta Melía sitting in front of it. Urganda said to them:

"Remain here, and I will go talk to her."

Moving forward on her horse, she arrived within shouting distance, and she said:

"Infanta, would you like to speak with me; for, like you, I'm a woman."

"Who are you?" she said.

"I'm Urganda the Unknown, and I have wanted to meet you for a long time."

"You are," she asked, "the one who takes precedence over and exceeds all others in the world in great wisdom? Of course. Well, I have had no less a desire to make your acquaintance. If you don't mind, please get off your horse and sit next to me. Although you have been the guiding force behind those knights coming to this land,[3] where daily they do so much harm, I recognize your obligation: you have to promote your law. Therefore, I will endure the suffering that your acts have caused me."

Seeing how old and feeble she was and thinking that there would be some way to detain her until the knights could seize her, Urganda dismounted and went toward her. When the infanta saw her coming, she placed herself at the cave's mouth and said:

"Urganda, I wouldn't want to be tricked by you in any way. I say this because I see those knights so near that they could seize me if you were to hinder me a little. Therefore, if you wish to speak to me, come closer."

Seeing she was so old and feeble, Urganda thought that it would be easy to pull her out of there from wherever she might lay hands on her. But it did not happen as she expected, for as soon as the old woman got near Urganda,

---

[3] It is noteworthy that through Melía, GRM attributes the motivation for the Christian invasion of the Turkish Kingdom to Urganda rather than to one or more parts of the Christian Trinity or to the Virgin Mary. In this aspect, despite the notable differences in bk. V as compared to bks. I to IV, GRM retains narrative integrity throughout the whole Amadís Cycle, but this integrity conceals a difference: because Melía is a pagan, she was thought by Spanish readers to be a liar.

she grabbed her with her knotty hands, she began raising loud shrieks—shout she could not, because her extreme age prevented her from doing so—and she pulled so hard on Urganda that she forced her into the cave against her will. After yelling for the knights to aid her, Urganda was dragged into the cave. Once inside, she was so dismayed that she almost fell unconscious. Then the old woman began pulling on her coif and grabbing her by her gray hair; and, knocking Urganda to the ground, she dragged her a long distance into the cave.

As the knights had their eyes riveted on what the two women were doing, they saw that struggle, and, spurring their horses, they moved to succor Urganda. The first to arrive were Talanque and Maneli, for they loved her deeply. Talanque charged into the cave fearlessly, but before taking eight steps he fell to the ground in a nearly mortal swoon. The same happened to Maneli, who went in after him. At that moment, Esplandián arrived at the cave on horseback. Dismounting as quickly as possible, he went in forgetting the great protection he was carrying, which was his very beautiful sword. As he had already proved on Forbidden Mountain in Lady Arcabona's presence, no enchantment had any power against his sword. Reaching the place where Talanque and Maneli were lying on the ground, Esplandián stepped over them, and, as he was entering the cave's darkest part, he was presented with the brilliant light that came from the great virtue possessed by the precious stones on his sword. With that light, he saw that the old infanta was holding Urganda supine on the ground and that she had her hands on her throat trying to choke her. Urganda, in the throes of death, was gripping Melía on her hairy arms. Seeing Urganda like this, he went to her aid as well as he could. Grasping the old woman, he said with raging anger:

"Would that God had made you an armed knight errant so that my wrath could be vented somewhat on you."

Then, taking her by her long hair, he pulled her to him; but at that moment an exceedingly large ape[4] leapt toward Esplandián intending to attack his face. The ape was so old that the wrinkled creases of its skin were dragging on the ground, and its eyes were like two burning embers. However, the knight, who was holding the old woman with his left hand, raised his right hand and hit the ape so hard in the face with his fist that its jawbone was shattered and it fell dead to the floor. Then he took the old woman out of the cave and he placed her in Frandalo's keeping. Entering the cave again, he disregarded the knights, and instead he went directly to see if Urganda was dead. He found her waving her arms about as if her soul wanted to take leave of her body. He picked her up, took her out of the cave, and then returned for the knights, whom he removed from the cave by dragging them out of

---

[4] Medieval bestiaries identified apes as images of the devil. In addition, the Cambridge bestiary says: "the devil looks like these animals, for they have a head (*cauda*), but they do not have letters (*caudex*)." GRM draws our attention to this medieval Latin play on words (e.g., head, tail, privy member, stem, codex, etc.) metaphorically by having a diabolical ape attack Esplandián in a cave full of books that are full of knowledge.

there. In the fresh air the knights and Urganda could breathe better, and the enchantment no longer had the force it had over whomever entered the cave. Therefore, in a very short period of time they recovered consciousness completely as if nothing at all had happened. But about Urganda I can tell you that her throat looked as black as if her blood and soul were about to leave her at the same time.

111

How Esplandián, Urganda, and the other knights returned to Villa Galacia bringing Infanta Melía as a prisoner with them.

When Urganda felt better she recalled the mortal battle she had just had, and she said:

"Although I reached the point of death, I see that I am now out of danger; when the danger was greatest, my heart was broken, but now everything has been turned into exceeding joy; from this I conclude that we should not be frightened by fortune's cruel blows, which we fear so much, because they often happen to us for our benefit. On the contrary, we should endure them with strong spirits for the very reason that their changeableness means the greatest comfort and happiness usually comes after the roughest and most frightful turns of fate. Therefore, we should always remember to follow a moderate course both when we are riding the crest of prosperity and when it pleases fortune to bring us the opposite. Knowing that change is certain to come, we should not let ourselves remain unprepared or be taken by surprise; nor should we be so vain or arrogant as to think that bad fortune can be so powerful that it can make us despair of ever receiving any good remedy or that it can subjugate our minds and threaten our souls by making us lose all hope of salvation."

"Certainly, my good señora," said Esplandián, "what you say is true. This beautiful lesson you have just given us should be taken as an example not only by you and us, but also by all mortals. So, what do you order us to do with this woman?"

"Let us take her from here," she said. "Given the goal of our trip, which is to go to the court of that great emperor, there is nothing else we could take him that could match her in strangeness and wonderment."

Then, after they all took off their armor, Esplandián took one of the silk jubbah's his squire Sargil always carried for him, and he put it on the infanta, for it seemed proper to cover the parts of her body that were immodestly clad. After helping Urganda mount her palfrey and after putting the old woman on Sargil's mount with the squire riding on its haunches, and with Urganda and the others having a hearty laugh about this, they returned to the villa from which they had left while taking with them that prize captive, the likes of which could be found nowhere else on earth. When they reached the villa,

they showed Urganda the human string of beads they captured in that land.

Now the story turns to Damsel Carmela.

112

How Carmela arrived in the city of Ctesifonte–
Carmela, who travels with unbowed insistence–
Where pretty Queen Heliaxa showed her presence
And presents the prisoners to the infante;
The latter receives them in a jocular mood,
And he pays favors to that unperturbed damsel
Including knights who must return on her vessel;
He dismisses her thus ending this interlude.

Damsel Carmela, as you have been told, had left[1] Villa[2] Galacia with that train of people following her, and with four squires whom Esplandián had ordered given to her for her service, and she travelled the rest of that day until nightfall, which found her in a forest where they rested and dined on what they were carrying with them. Given the kind of beds on which they slept, they awoke very early, continued on their way, and soon arrived in Ctesifonte, where so many people were congregated to greet them that they could not continue forward. After much difficulty, they entered the palace grounds where the infante and his wife were. Being alerted to what was happening, both of them went to some windows that overlooked a great patio. They saw what condition all those people were in, and they saw the damsel riding a palfrey and attired in magnificent garments. Infante Alforax, who by then knew about the loss of another villa, was so afflicted with grief that, virtually crazed, he said:

"Oh gods in whom I believe, what can this be? If I have angered you, take your revenge on me, but do not let these indigent, simple people suffer. Of course, I should be complaining about myself more than you, because I have delayed so long in taking corrective measures. But I promise you that, if fortune, which is against me now, gives me just a little time, it will not be long before your service and my honor will be satisfied."

"Sire," said the infanta, who saw him in such a mood, "I entreat you to

---

[1] SP and JG have *salia* (verb in the imperfect tense) here, whereas Gay. has emended to *salida* (adjectival participle). JJAS, JJF, and JV have *salio*. While the difference has little effect on the translation, we have chosen to follow the earliest extant editions (JJAS, JJF, and JV) because of the parallel verbal construction of left and travelled.

[2] Gay. and SP have *vista* [view] here; whereas JJAS, JJF, and JV have *villa*. We have emended to Villa because the fixed phrase Villa Galacia is much more expected in this context than view of Galacia, which would be a fresher, and therefore, less likely choice, given GRM's convention-bound stylistics.

moderate your excessive, though very just, passion with some prudence. Likewise, I ask you to receive this damsel, who merits such treatment because of the good way she served me for so short a time."

"That's fair," he said. "So be it. It is true that when discretion cannot control passion it seldom does the right thing."

Then the infanta ordered one of her servants to bring the damsel to her. Upon arriving before the infanta, the damsel said without bowing:

"Infanta, since you are acquainted with the master to whom I'm tied because he holds my heart captive, you know that I can neither recognize as master nor bow to anyone other than he. It is only right that I should be forgiven for this. Now I want to tell you the purpose of my trip. You've probably already heard that Esplandián and his companions have taken control of Villa Galacia. When they were distributing what they found there, the people who've come here with me fell to your service. Since you have their husbands, it also seemed right for you to have their wives and tiny children so that you can restore them to their husbands or do whatever else you deem fit. You can rest assured that, although those knights are your enemy in a general sense, they wish to serve you in particular by doing those things that noble knights ought to do without offense to their honor or souls."

"Carmela, my friend," said the infanta, "I have received so many favors from those knights that no matter what manner of weal or adversity I may receive from them, I should always wish to recognize their great merits. But I know full well that my desire can have no effect except when they are touched by their own good or bad fortunes. At that time, I shall give them the virtue of my full recognition and thanks."

Before the damsel could respond, Infante Alforax said:

"Damsel, tell Esplandián and those knights not to trouble themselves to guard those villas of mine, because, even though they were to lay waste to them, I would not order them to be reconquered. That is because those villas will be the cause for so many people to come[3] to my aid by crossing the seas that I shall be satisfied with another great seigniory like the one I now possess. Then, as the infanta said, Esplandián can be guerdoned for the services he has done for her."

Carmela, who was both very sharp and wise, understood quite well what the object of so much haughtiness was; so she said:

"Infante, the future can be judged by what we see in the present. Often the almighty Lord alters the way people's plans are carried out by substituting events that are completely opposite of what they thought. So that this may satisfy what the infanta said, no other reply is necessary. Therefore, if it pleases you and her to grant me leave, with assurance that I will not be mistreated, I shall return to where I came from."

---

[3] Gay. corrects SP and JG by replacing *ayudar* [help] with *venir* [come]. JJAS, JJF, and JV have *allegar* (*en mi ayuda*), [bring, arrive, come (to my aid)]. We follow the sense of Gay's emendation as it is close to the earlier editions.

"My friend," said the infanta, "given the great love I have for you, you show a great lack of confidence. You shall travel in safety guaranteed by the knights and the precious jewels I shall give you."

Then she ordered one of her knights to accompany her with his people and to take her to a safe place; and she ordered one of her chamberlains to pack a horse with the most elegant of her personal garments and many golden jewels and stones and pearls, and to deliver it quite close to Galacia. The damsel did not want to accept it, but the infanta implored her so insistently in Esplandián's name that the damsel was obliged to grant her request. So that knight, whose name was Falarno,[4] and ten of his men took her within sight of the villa. Then he ordered the man who was leading the horse to turn it over to her. They went back while the damsel entered the villa, which made all of her people very happy. When all had gathered where Urganda was staying, they were all told what had happened on her trip.

113

How the two peerless and valiant men,
Returned with two companions to look
For Melía's great necromantical book
In the place where they seized the magician.
And how, as they were arriving at the cave,
They discovered three fierce giants fully armèd;
And the knights, after leaving them defeated
Took the magic book and began to turn back.[1]

Urganda said:

"My good señores, although the infante said those words while feeling great passion and sorrow, you may be certain that fortune, whose purposes he cannot see, has set aside great things for him—so great, in fact, that many ages will pass before others like them will be seen again. Since this will happen soon, I shall stop speaking about it further; for those who are living now will experience what I am indicating."

"Señor," she continued, turning to Esplandián, "when you rushed to my aid so zealously, without realizing it, you left in the cave many very precious books that she used in order to work her magic. I hope you agree with me, for it is not right to leave them entombed in there where only you can reach

---

[4] Falarno does not appear in bks. I to IV; nor is it the toponym of a real place.

[1] The Spanish poem has the usual rhyme scheme of ABBACDDC. However, the prosody in the original Spanish poem is very irregular, the number of syllables varying from nine to twelve. There is no way to account for such irregularities except to conclude that it is a very defective poem.

them. But I tell you they are so powerful that, once the books are removed, the cave will change condition in such a way that anyone who so wished could enter it without any hindrance."

"My good señora," said Esplandián, who saw that she said this because she had a strong desire to see them, "I shall not fail to fulfill whatever seems best to you, especially since there is little risk in the task. In fact, I shall do it immediately."

After asking Frandalo, Enil, and Gandalín to join him, they put on their armor and mounted their horses. Then he left Urganda in the care of his uncle Norandel, who had just arrived. Sallying out from the villa accompanied by those knights, he took the road to the cave. Coming within sight of it, they saw three giants and twelve very well-armed knights at its mouth calling for the infanta to come out. They were doing that because some men who were tending flocks in the mountain, while they were hiding for fear of Christians, saw through the thickets that the old infanta had been taken away. This they told to some others from that district. In order to verify if what they said was true, or if, on the contrary, it was caused by fear, those people I have just mentioned went to the cave.

When Esplandián and his knights saw the others, they realized they were the enemy; so, taking their helmets, shields, and lances from their squires, they charged at them as hard as their horses would go. However, it was a long run, and the others had time to mount their horses and get their arms. Hence, in good order and well covered by their shields, they all set out together to go against those who were coming toward them. All three giants were leading their group. So, Esplandián and strong Frandalo aimed at two of them while Gandalín and Enil took on the other one. The encounters were not very hard because the lances flew into the air in pieces. However, the horse and rider Esplandián met were turned upside down: their feet and hands flew into the air and both the giant and his horse fell to the ground so hard that neither could rise for a long time. The two giants who quickly broke their lances, as I told you, were charging in such a frenzy, and their horses were so big and running so freely that they charged off across the field because their riders were unable to halt them. At that moment, the twelve knights arrived and they encountered Esplandián and his companions. Although the clashes were hard, the Christians all remained in their saddles, whereas four of the Turks tripped over the giant and his horse and fell to the ground. Next, Esplandián and his companions grabbed their swords and waded into the enemy attacking right and left. In this way they downed the eight who were still mounted. Four of these were badly wounded and could not get up. Then, the two giants returned wielding very strong knives. Esplandián saw them and said in a loud voice:

"Frandalo, let the two of us oppose these two. We'll let Enil and Gandalín handle the others."

With that, all four charged furiously hitting against each other with strong and dangerous blows and fearing shame more than death. Thus, very large flames of fire flashed from their helmets. In that battle you could see how

courageous and quick Esplandián was, for he was by now very adept at his profession. About Frandalo, I tell you that, since he was valiant, strong, and large-bodied, and since he could bear armor as strong and as heavy as that of the giant, he did not feel the giant's blows any more than the latter felt his. Hence both of these two received severe sword wounds; their armor was broken in many places; and their blood flowed abundantly. Meanwhile, Enil and Gandalín had no easier a battle on their hands; for, since the other knights were well armed, they were fighting hard against them. Therefore, they too were involved in a cruel battle.

As things stood, Esplandián, who not only was occupied fending off his enemy, but also was watching what his companions were doing, saw that their opponents were lasting a long time in the field. This made him very angry, and with mounting rage, he went at the giant with his sword held high in his hand, and he hit him with all his might so hard on top of his helmet that it was removed from his head and went rolling across the field. The giant was so stunned that his sword fell onto the horse's neck. Seeing him like that, Esplandián hit him again cleanly, and he split his head open down to the neck. The giant dropped to the ground dead. By then Enil and Gandalín had knocked two of the four others off their horses, and those two had retreated to help the others who had been downed before. When engaging them in battle, Enil and Gandalín had wounded their horses severely; so both of the enemy were about to fall with their horses. Esplandián, seeing that his friend Frandalo had the other giant fully under control, decided to succor his other two friends, and he charged impetuously against the enemy. The two who were on horseback did not dare oppose his charge, so Esplandián attacked those who were on foot in such a manner that both of them tripped his horse, and, not being able to keep his balance, the knight and his horse together took a big spill.

When the Turks saw him fallen, they took heart, and the riders sought to prevent him from receiving any help. Those on foot then attacked him with such tremendous blows that if his arms—nay, to tell the truth, if not for the grace of God, who had marked him in the world for victory and conquest over that great seigniory—had not protected him, he would have been in grave danger of being killed. Meanwhile his horse struggled to rise leaving Esplandián on the ground. After being freed from the horse, and discovering he was still holding his sword, he got up despite those who were attacking him, and he waded into them so bravely and so brutally that it was not long before both their armor and their bodies were cut to pieces. The two knights who were fighting against Enil and Gandalín, seeing the other action taking place, began to flee into the mountain, and in a short while they were out of sight. Esplandián, who was injured from the fall, looked to see what Frandalo was doing. The latter had thrown to the ground the little bit of his shield that was left, and he was holding onto the giant's helmet visor[2] with his left hand

---

[2] The Spanish term for visor is *visal*. [illegible] GRM uses the term *visera* in

while he was thrusting his sword with his right hand into the opening, thus weakening the giant and making him fall from his horse. The other giant, whom Esplandián had knocked down at the beginning of the combat, was still pinned under his horse and was totally unable to get up. When Esplandián came near him, the giant, fearing death, begged for mercy. The knight granted him his life, since he was in no condition to defend himself.

114

About how the strong caudillos felt grave danger
When they were alone, very short of people,
And threatened in the bridge's very middle
By Turks who fought them on one side and the other;
And how the miserable Turks, without delay,
Died by the sword and in the water did fall
After these fine knights rushed to answer a call:
Ambor, Trion, Norandel, and Talanque.

After the battle ended, as you have heard, the squires treated their knights' wounds as best they could and as they had often done in the past. Esplandián said that in any case he intended to fetch the books from the cave. Upon entering it, the light from his sword enabled him to see the ape, which was dead. Stepping over it, he found a very well-made square[1] chamber with a skylight in the ceiling where there was a room made with tree branches. Farther on there was another chamber, where he found so many books that he was amazed. Picking up as many as he could, he took them out of the cave, and he did the same with the remaining books even though it took a long time and it was hard work.

Upon seeing several priceless gems and all the books with their magnificent bindings covered in gold and silver, the knights were awestruck. After loading everything they could on three camels they had with them, and leaving many other things for which they intended to return later, they began the return trip to the villa from whence they came. But this was not as easy for them as they had thought it would be; for the two knights who fled, as you have heard, took the message to the town they had left, which was two leagues distant and which was called Farzalina.[2] More than twenty knights

---

most of bk. I for this opening in the helmet, but that he uses *visal* and *vista* in bk. II. GRM uses these terms wishing to avoid having the reader imagine a movable visor, which was introduced at the beginning of the fourteenth century. See Riq., 103–105.

[1] Gay. has *en cuadro*, while JJF, JJAS, JV, and SP have *en quadra*. The difference does not affect the translation.

[2] Farzalina does not appear in bks. I to IV; nor can it be located as a toponym of real geography.

and forty footmen from there began to arm themselves immediately. With the two knights leading the way, they left quickly enough that they were able to intercept Esplandián and his companions about a half league from Galacia. As soon as they sighted their enemy, the knights from Farzalina knew for certain that there were only four Christians and that they had been wounded in the previous combat. Then, leaving their peons without protection so that they would not run away, they charged across the field. Esplandián saw them and said:

"Look out, good señores, for now is the time for us to show how much love and devotion we have for our Lord Jesus Christ. Let us pretend that we do not want to be caught. That way, after we move the battle far enough away from their footmen so they cannot come to their masters' aid, we shall turn to face them, for, it seems from the scattered way they are coming at us that we shall be able to inflict great damage on them. In the meantime, one of our squires should go as fast as he can to tell those in the villa about this. As soon as some of our fellows join us here, none of the enemy will escape us."

"Señor," said Frandalo, "while we must act according to the will of the Lord we serve, which is the goal of our eternal bliss, we ought not even for that purpose neglect safeguarding our lives through the use of reason. For, if we lost our lives due to lack of moderation, so too our reward would be immoderate. I say this, señor, because you see a host of people descending on us, but we're wounded and exhausted from the recent battle. On the one hand, if we flee, our honor and fame will be greatly discredited; but, on the other hand, it would obviously be mad to attack them, for we would surely go to our graves. Therefore, given our options, let me take us to a place where we can hurt the enemy while having a reasonable chance to save our lives."

"My good friend," said Esplandián, "we are all under your orders in this as in everything else."

"Then, follow me," he said.

Leaving the road they were taking, he led them to the right. They did not travel far before they reached a river with a rather high bridge over it. Approaching the bridge, they noticed the enemy was close behind, and leading them was the knight who was the governor of that villa and all the towns of the district that bordered on Infante Alforax's lands. This knight was a fine warrior, and he always went about wearing magnificent arms. Knowing that he was leading superior forces and seeing that his opponents were not showing their faces, he rode well in advance of his men.

Enil saw him and begged Esplandián to allow him to joust with him. His wish was granted provided he do it quickly enough not to get involved in any other battle and that he return to them. Enil went out onto the field and got set for the encounter. Likewise, the Turk, well covered by a strong shield, got ready and, in the charge, thrust his lance through Enil's shield wounding him on his arm. The Turk's lance broke and a piece of it became stuck in Enil's shield and in the sleeve of his cuirass. However, since Enil was a robust knight with enough hearty courage and innate ability to achieve what he had to do,

he struck the Turk on his oval shield[3] so hard that his lance not only pierced it and the enemy's cuirass, but it went through the Turk's body by a full arm's length, thereby causing the latter to fall to the ground dead.

When the Turk's people saw this, they came to his aid as vigorously as they could; Esplandián and those on his side did likewise for Enil. Since they were all raging with a desire for death, the result was a very ferocious and dangerous fight. Esplandián distinguished himself marvellously by striking the greatest and cruelest blows that were ever given by the hand of a knight. Moreover, Frandalo and the other knights, who achieved and endured so many deeds of arms that day, would have nearly routed the horsemen if their footmen had not arrived. When the latter came on the scene, Frandalo and his men were forced to retreat to the bridge. Leaving their horses in the field, these four knights went onto the bridge, and the enemy pursued them so impetuously and with such a loud algarad that it seemed their cries perforated heaven. The four knights were at the bridge entrance where some of the enemy could reach them. These they attacked so zealously and with such big blows that the victims needed no doctors. This is what they did to the knights who attempted to enter into combat with them; hence, they were able to defend themselves in safety while damaging the enemy. When the Turks discovered they could not harm the Christians in that place, they sent five horsemen and fifteen footmen to ford the river, which was easy to cross, and to attack the Christians from their backs at the other end of the bridge. Seeing this maneuvre, Esplandián said to Frandalo:

"Friend, take Enil with you and fight against those knights; meanwhile, Gandalín and I will take on these here, if it pleases God."

Frandalo and Enil then went to the other end where the enemies arrived very arrogantly thinking that this time the Christians could not escape death. However, it did not turn out as they planned, because the four knights, seeing themselves surrounded and having for the moment no other hope than faith in God and their stout hearts, became even more courageous, furious, and angry in their self-defense, and they wielded their swords with such amazing and cruel strength that their opponents were unable to force their way onto the bridge from either end.

Meanwhile, Fornace, Frandalo's squire, who had gone to the villa for succor, as you were told, arrived there as quickly as he could. He informed those knights that, if they were not rescued by them very soon, Esplandián and his companions would be in grave and mortal danger, given how many people had descended upon them. As soon as they heard this news, twenty of them armed themselves, mounted their horses, and departed for the place to which Fornace would guide them. The rest of them remained behind to guard the villa so that they could not be the victims of a trick. When they arrived where

---

[3] Enil's shield is called an *escudo*, whereas the Turk's shield is an *adarga*. See chap. 57, n. 3, for a full explanation of an *adarga*. The term used for the Turk's shield earlier in this paragraph is *escudo*.

Fornace took them, they were surprised not to find either them or any sign of fighting. Not knowing where the others had gone and fearing they were all lost, they wandered aimlessly through the fields. However, in a short while, Norandel, Talanque, Maneli, Ambor, and Trion heard the Turkish algarad on their right, which they assumed was caused by fighting. Spurring their horses as hard as they could, they ran fast to the place from whence they heard the loud voices coming. Before long they saw in the distance a large gathering of people. Coming closer, they discovered clearly that these people were combatting their companions on the bridge. With their anger rising as much as their bravery, they went to the spot where strong Frandalo was fighting. With not a care in the world for their lives, they waded into the enemies, hitting them with very cruel and strong blows.

Seeing this development, Frandalo and Enil left the bridge to help the newcomers. Since the enemies were unarmed, they hit them freely. In this way, they harried them so much it forced them to retreat unwillingly into the river; but, with this move, these Turks intended to join ranks with the other group of their men. However, the knights who were on horseback attacked them. Frandalo and Enil did likewise. Since the water was deep, they could not defend themselves, and in a short while either all of them were killed by the great blows or they were drowned in the water, and none remained alive. Then Frandalo and Enil, who had knocked two knights into the water by the strength of their arms, swiftly jumped on their horses, crossed the river with their companions, and attacked those who were fighting against Esplandián and Gandalín. All resistance soon ended; for the Turks saw their fellows floating in the river dead; they saw that those knights were killing them mercilessly; and they saw how Esplandián and Gandalín left the bridge and were leaving no one alive. Therefore, they began to flee in all directions; but this move was useless, because those on horseback and Esplandián and Gandalín, who had mounted their horses again, pursued them so furiously that not one escaped. Seeing their enemies dead and realizing they were all alive, though with a few wounds, they felt great joy, and, raising their hands heavenward, embracing each other, and with pious tears in their eyes, they gave thanks to the almighty Lord.

115

How Esplandián and his companions, having won the cruel battle on the bridge, entered Galacia; and about how happy Urganda was to see them.

Having settled the battle, as the story is telling you, they decided to go to Villa Galacia. Furthermore, they ordered some men to fetch the dead men's armor, for it is what was in shortest supply for the footmen. After making these decisions, they took the road their companions were using to search for them. They all found each other, which gave them as great pleasure to their eyes as their victory gave to their hearts, but which victory caused their ene-

mies so much damage. After the reunion, they went to the villa where Urganda and Damsel Carmela, who were waiting for them, met them at the gate. Laughing, Urganda said to Esplandián:

"Señor, if I came near death in order to carry out your order, it seems to me that you suffered no less an affront in trying to achieve my request. Hence, both of us should consider ourselves satisfied."

"My good señora," said Esplandián, "although I was in danger for service and love of you, too much should not be made of it, for, as you know quite well, I was born for this and much more. However, we have good reason to strive for you by placing ourselves in whatever danger may arise because we wish to prevent you from suffering any annoyance. We do this because you have always cured and helped those whose great trials and tribulations most needed your succor. And if this recent battle had been of the type for which no redress was possible, and if it had turned out any differently for you, then, my good señora, you would truly have seen what tremendous love we have for you."

"Now, my señor," she said, "you and those knights, please go take off your arms, and you shall be cured of your wounds. As for what you say about yourself, it always delights me to find that no one else can tell me more than what I myself know. I feel blessed by this gift."

Carmela, the knight's damsel, was holding Esplandián's hands now that he was afoot, and she kissed them again and again. Taking her by the hand, he led her to his room, and all of the knights went to theirs, where they were cured of their wounds by the hand of the great Master Helisabad, who had come from Villa Alfarín with Norandel. The master had arrived in this last-mentioned villa when Esplandián and the king of Dacia left there by sea, as was said earlier.

116

How Urganda the Unknown ordered all the knights who were gathered in Villa Galacia outfitted so they could be presented with her to the emperor; and how they obeyed her.

Fifteen days passed during which they did nothing other than restore their health. During this period, they had the books brought from the mouth of the cave where they had left them; then all the books were viewed by Urganda. Aside from containing all of the major things that one could wish to find concerning all of the world's known arts, they were in themselves the most beautiful books to look at. They had letters and parchments that were very cunningly-wrought in gold; and they had the histories of those who had first composed them written in gold; and likewise all the other capital letters were in gold. Many of the book covers were worked with silver, gold, precious stones, and pearls in such an elaborate manner that Urganda and the knights

marvelled to see them. And of these books about which I am telling you, the most magnificent had in them an image of the Enchantress Damsel you heard about, and the very beautiful lettering on the images which featured her name was made out of gems and diamonds and burning rubies. These books Infanta Melía got when she began her studies on the Island of Crete,[1] where they were taken by the knight whom the luckless damsel loved more than herself and who threw her off the very high crag.[2] Urganda ordered all of them put into safekeeping in order to show them to the emperor of Constantinople.

For the next two weeks those people did the things I have just mentioned. At the end of those days, the knights were cured of their wounds, and they were again ready to take up their arms and go where they pleased. Then Urganda asked them to gather around her, and she said to them:

"My good señores, I came here to see Esplandián and all of you, and I hoped to find you full of the desire to fulfill the order of knight errantry more out of dutiful service to the almighty Lord than out of a desire for worldly vainglory; for those who serve Mammon are always given an evil guerdon. Having found you, not only is my heart greatly relieved, but I am now ready to toil so that such a holy cause may be maintained at the high level God's servants are obliged to achieve. Now, for the present, I want to advise you concerning what is best for your honor. It is namely this: that you drop everything, that we all board the Great Caravel, and that we make ready to go present ourselves to His Majesty the emperor, without whom I believe it will be impossible to pluck the fruits we desire from this enterprise that has begun. Moreover, because of you, it will not be long before he finds himself confronted with the greatest challenge that to this very day has ever been seen. I'm certain that by your presence and by knowing that he has such fine knights in his service he will receive so much pleasure and encouragement that, when fortune places him in the direst straits, he will retain the hope that, after God, you will be able to remedy the situation. When you come to that difficult pass, you will clearly recognize the truth of what I am saying by the signs you see."

All of those knights listened attentively to what the great sage was telling them, and they could well believe that her words would surely come to pass. They were very puzzled wondering what a great battle it would have to be, as foreseen by Urganda, to cause the emperor such a disturbance, given all his might. For such an event the whole world would have to be disordered. However, assuming Urganda's words were truthful—which one had to because her predictions were always true—and assuming the trouble would have to do with

---

[1] Crete is, of course, famous as the center of the Minoan civilization in antiquity. In the *Crónica troyana*, pt. II, chap. 1, Crete is mentioned in passing as the kingdom where Jupiter is king. Among the specific characteristics Jupiter is given in the *Crónica troyana* is that of being the greatest lover of his time.

[2] See chap. 1, n. 9, for a full explanation of the Enchantress Damsel and the knight who kills her. Also, see CB, II, 1696–97. No specific mention is made of books in any earlier reference to this adventure.

armed battles, they were very happy, because in that case they would be able to show why they vowed to follow the order of knight errantry. For them, nothing else on earth matched chivalry, for in said profession they could show that they esteemed honor more than they feared death. But above all others, great was the pleasure Esplandián felt when he realized that, if fortune were to bring the emperor so much danger, then he could repay the great debt his father owed him, about which this story has already told you. Also, before his most beloved lady, he could show his valor and his brave heart's zeal in action that would redound so much to her glory; or he would lose his life in her service, whereby his unending mortal desires would cease, for he often suffered those desires in this bitter life which he was bearing only on account of her and which left him alive only to increase his torment. Then they responded by saying to Urganda:

"Señora, we are all your knights. Tell us what you want us to do, for your desire is our command: tell us, and we shall then carry it out."

"Well, señores," she said, "have your horses put on board the great ship, but do not worry about your arms, for I shall give you some that will be to your advantage seeing what you will soon face. After you are on board, we shall continue the trip I shall indicate. Not only your honor, but also your souls—which often are separate things, but sometimes, as on this occasion, they can be joined into one whole—will be able to be bound together and thereby they can enjoy the combined value that they seldom receive in this world. So, let us get started immediately; because time often causes change by interposing obstacles in the way of that which was promised but which is lost due to negligence."

117

How forty men, all virile novice knights errant,
The bravest, the highest, the noblest, the strongest,
By old Urganda's wise, knowing hand and behest
Were armed with devices both holy and magnificent;
And how they and she, led in orderly fashion,
In every way showing skillful exquisiteness,
Presented themselves before His Royal Highness
And to the assembled courtly congregation.

Just as it was decided by the great wise woman, so all those knights carried out her orders. After leaving Villa Galacia in the hands of people who would certainly be able to defend it, given what a great fortress it was, Urganda ordered them to put all their horses and lances aboard the Serpent ship[1] along

[1] All Spanish versions agree in using the term *nave* here rather than the usual *fusta* in collocation with Urganda-Esplandián's vessel. This change of terminology underlies the

with Infanta Melía, the High Alguazil who was captured near Ctesifonte, and all the books about which we told you. When all were aboard, the Serpent began sailing. Since Forbidden Mountain was nearby, without needing to change course, Urganda advised Esplandián to have King Armato and the two captains who were being held captives there brought on board. She advised this because with them and the old infanta their audience with the emperor and his high nobles would seem more amazing and more authoritative.

Well, when they came within sight of that great city of Constantinople, Urganda ordered a grand pennon placed at the topmost part of the caravel. The pennon showed a red cross on a golden field. Then she had the magnificent arms she had promised Esplandián and his companions brought out from a cabin. Like the pennon, they also showed a golden field with red crosses,[2] and there was no difference in any of the devices. Finally, she had forty of the most prized knights armed. They were those whose names follow: Esplandián; Norandel; Frandalo the Strong; Talanque; Maneli the Prudent; Ambor de Gadel; Gavarte of Fearful Vale; Gandalín; Enil; Trion, Queen Briolanja's cousin; Bravor, the giant Balán's son; Belleriz, Frandalo's nephew; Helián the Vigorous; Listorán of the White Tower; Madancián of the Silver Bridge;[3] Landín de Fajarque;[4] Madanil of Burgundy;[5] Ledaderín de Fajarque; Sarquiles, Angriote's nephew;[6] Palomir; Branfil; Tantiles the Proud;[7] Galbino,[8] Isanjo's

---

fact that the vessel can change its characteristics depending on its masters' needs and the circumstances: the Great Serpent Caravel is now a cargo ship carrying a duenna, damsels, books, men, horses, lances, and other armor.

[2] All texts agree that the ship's pennon is a golden field with one red cross, whereas the knights' arms are a golden field with red crosses. Does this mean there is a different number of crosses on the pennon and the arms? Or does it mean GRM suggests that so many arms with one cross each add up together to many crosses? One cross each would make their arms seem like those of the Knights Templar. On the other hand, there is a parallel with Esplandián's heraldic devices which show many golden crowns. It is also significant that Esplandián is not distinguished from his fellow warriors by having the slightest difference in symbols on his arms.

[3] Madancián of the Silver Bridge is the first knight in this list not previously mentioned in bk. V. He is known as Madancil, Madansil, and Madandián in bks. II and III. Among his few appearances in these bks., he takes charge of defending Madasima (bk. II, chap. 63) and fighting with Galvanes against Lisuarte (Introduction to bk. III). JJAS, JJF, and JV, against other texts, have these names: Licorán of the White Tower and Listorán of the Silver Bridge.

[4] Landín de Fajarque appears often in bks. II through IV. He is Cuadragante's nephew, and he appears first when he challenges Lisuarte in the name of his uncle and of the giants. He fights in Amadís's army against Lisuarte, and at the end of bk. IV, he takes charge of the Seigniory of Sansueña when his uncle goes to Firm Island.

[5] Madanil is the duke of Burgundy's son, and he is the ami of Guinda Flamenca. In bk. II, chap. 44, he is successful in the test of the Arch of Loyal Lovers. JJAS and JJF show his name as Mosil of Burgundy, and JV has Imosil of Burgundy.

[6] Sarquiles appears earlier in bks. II and III. His major role is as Oriana's principal guardian after she is rescued from the Romans by Amadís.

[7] Tantiles in this chap. is called Tantales by Gay. CB lists his name as Tantalís. We choose to follow JG, JJF, JJAS, JV, and SP in spelling his name as shown.

[8] Beginning with Galbino, there follow names not seen before in either bks. I to IV

son; his brother Carpineo; Carineo de Carsante; Olivas's son Atalio; Brascelo, Brandinas's son; Garamante, Norgales's son; Enfemo of Germany; Brandonio de Gaula; Penatrio of Spain; his brother Falameno; Culsicio of Bohemia; Amandario from Little Brittany; Silvestre of Hungary; Manelio of Sweden; Galfario of Rumania; Galiote of Scotland; his brother Avandalio; and Califeno the Proud. Since all of them were striplings who were well built and robust, and since they all bore the same device with those crosses, not only were they praised in the human realm, but in the divine realm they inspired devoutness in all who saw them, for many others also wished to belong to that holy order. From this we can conclude that, if you were to think more about the truth than the fiction of this story, given how little time had passed since the holy law of Christ had begun, this was the first crusade that was instituted by Christians against infidels.

The Great Caravel sailed until it arrived in port next to the city as morning light was about to break. As its arrival was felt and seen by the people, all of them made a lot of noise and raised a great outcry, saying:

"Santa María, this is the extraordinary caravel of that blessed knight Esplandián, who the almighty Lord has brought here for our welfare."

All together they ran very quickly to go see it, both those who were dressed as well as those who were naked. The commotion was so great that the emperor, his wife and daughter, along with his whole retinue in the palace, took up places in the windows. They were all very relieved to see that that unusual caravel was behaving peacefully. This way they could view it better than they could on its first visit. Moreover, they were sure that it was not coming there without its great caudillo, that famous knight whom the emperor and all of them desired to see and to meet more than anyone else alive. Well then, what shall we say here about Leonorina, who was as beautiful as the shining morning star, who surpassed all others in beauty? What shall we say about her as she watched the caravel while imagining that her beloved knight must be aboard it because of her command? Truly, nothing other than what those men and women probably say whose very marrow is inflamed by a similar fire. When their eyes see that which always makes them cry when it is unseen, then their joy is so abundant that, by sending some of the joy to their hearts, they are able to throw off the sadness and gloominess that had controlled them, and thereby they are able to reignite a livelier fire in the place where absence usually causes a chill.

While all those people were observing the caravel, they saw a door open in its broadside, a small boat put into the sea, and Damsel Carmela—whom they all recognized instantly—get in it along with two other damsels who were each carrying a golden horn. When these three arrived at the shore, they jumped

---

or bk. V: Galbino, Carpineo, Carineo, Atalio, Brascelo, Garamante, Enfemo, Brandonio, Penatrio, Falameno, Culsicio, Amandario, Silvestre, Manelio, Galfario, Galiote, Avandalio, and Califeno. JJAS, JV, and JJF show Galbión, whereas the other editions spell the name as Galbino.

onto the land. With Carmela between the other two, they entered the city via the main street with the goal of going to the emperor's palace. Carmela was very magnificently dressed in the robes and precious stones given to her by Infanta Heliaxa—you were already told about this—and the two damsels, who were also grandly attired, were playing such sweet tunes on their horns that the multitude that was watching them was most delighted. In a loud voice, they all said:

"Oh, good damsel, tell us if perchance your master, the blessed knight, has come on that strange and frightening caravel. Tell us, good damsel, so that we may enjoy the pleasure our spirits always receive from his visits to this city."

"Good friends," said the damsel while greeting them with a loving mien, "if that master of mine is loved and cherished by you, likewise he loves and cherishes your graces, and he will not delay coming among you."

"Blessed are you and the hour you were born for giving us the certainty of such good news."

Hence, the three damsels arrived at the palace accompanied by so many people that it was a marvellous sight. Entering the great hall where the emperor was with his noblemen—they had gathered there to discover news about the Great Caravel—the damsels played their horns so sweetly that the emperor and all the others felt profound pleasure, and they wondered what that might be about and why such messengers had come. Then Carmela presented herself to the emperor and said:

"Emperor, I bring you news that I think will make you happy. I tell you that my master Esplandián and many other very prized knights who are his friends and who attend him have come on the caravel. Together they serve the almighty Lord, who is also your Lord, and they have taken up arms seeking to perform heroic deeds. With him has come the great sage Urganda. She wishes to meet you; for, given your majesty and your famed virtue that is bruited about everywhere, she wants to speak to you and to make obeisance to you. All of them beg you to await them here in the palace with the empress and your daughter Infanta Leonorina. When I return to them, then they will leave the ship and come to this grand palace."

"Santa María!" said the emperor in a loud voice after hearing this. "What good news is this for me! Is it true, good damsel, that Esplandián and his companions and the great sage Urganda have come to see me?"

"Certainly. It is as I say," said the damsel. "Their presence will show how true it is."

"Although you, good friend," said the emperor, "following the dictates of your accustomed style, refuse to show me any courtesy or civility, your mission merits from me that I break my habits and that I give you the thanks you deserve."

Approaching her, he took her in his arms, hugged her, held her in an embrace for a while, and said to her:

"My good friend, return to the caravel immediately, so that those you mention can come the quicker. Meanwhile I shall await them in this hall with the company they have requested."

After Damsel Carmela returned to the seashore accompanied by the other two damsels and more people than can be counted, she got in the little boat and went to the Great Caravel with the message you have just heard. When those who sent her heard it, they immediately ordered three more big boats put down on the sea, by means of which they transferred their horses and Urganda's and the damsels' palfreys to land. And then, boarding the boats, they too went across to the land armed with their beautiful new arms, all of which had the same devices about which we told you; their horses also had trappings[9] with the same devices. Men and women mounted, they moved from the port into the city adorned as described. Ahead of them were six damsels each with a golden horn, and following these six were another four carrying instruments. When the first six stopped playing their sweet sounds, the others played their music so harmoniously and sang songs of such sweetness that it seemed as if they were angels.[10] Behind the damsels came the two Turkish captains dressed in the magnificent style of their land, and with them was the high alguazil. After them came Armato, the great king of Persia, who was wearing a beautiful and very artfully broidered[11] jubbah that Urganda had given him. Next to him was Infanta Melía with her hairy arms and her long hair covering her from head to toe, which made her appear the strangest sight ever seen. A squire was riding with her holding her tightly, because she was struggling angrily to throw herself to the ground. After them came Esplandián and Urganda holding each other's hands. Following them were the king of Dacia, Norandel, and the other knights all of whom were processing two by two. In this manner they went up the main street. What shall I tell you? That such a great multitude came out to see them, and the noise was so loud, that it seemed as if everyone on earth were gathered there. The six damsels played their horns so sweetly, and, when they stopped, the four plucked their instruments and sang in such harmony with them that the sweetness of all melody was joined into one grand whole.

In this way and because of the crowding of the people, they proceeded with great difficulty toward the grand palaces. After entering them and dis-

---

[9] The Spanish term for trappings is *sobrevista*. This term appears only twice before in GRM's Amadís Cycle, once in bk. II and once in bk. III. According to Riquer, it is a light tunic adorned with heraldic devices worn over armor. The *Historia troyana* (ca. 1270) used the term *sobrevista* to translate the French term *cotte d'armes* [coat of arms] found in the *Roman de Troie* [*Trojan Romance*]. See Riq., 144–45.

[10] In the protagonist's list of twenty reasons why men are beholden to women in Diego de San Pedro's *Cárcel de amor*, the sixteenth reason correlates women with music: "The sixteenth reason is because they [women] perform music for us, and they make us enjoy its sweetnesses. For whom do their sweet songs ring? For whom are pretty ballads sung? For whom do they blend their voices? For whom are all subtle things perfected that are found in song?" Diego de San Pedro

[11] Webs. and OED list broider as an archaism. OED dates it to 1450. The Spanish term, *broslada* was already an archaism in DA, and Cov. says: *es palabra corrompida por el vulgo* [it is a word corrupted by the common people].

mounting, they presented themselves in the same order in which they arrived to the emperor, who crossed more than half of the hall to receive them. Esplandián placed Urganda ahead of everyone else so that she might be the first to receive the honors. Kneeling on the ground,[12] she asked for his hands so that she could kiss them. However, the emperor refused to proffer them; instead he embraced her and made her rise.

Next came Esplandián, who, with his grand courtliness, had amazed all who were watching him. With great ceremony he bent his knees to the earth and tried to kiss the emperor's hands. However, the latter not only refused to proffer them, but rather, taking his head in both hands, he bent down, kissed him on the face, and made him rise from the ground. The next to arrive were the king of Dacia and Norandel, and after them came all the other knights. The emperor received them with affectionate mien and good humor. Then Urganda, accompanied by Esplandián, approached the empress. Bowing and making the proper obeisance, they gave way for all of the others to do similarly. Then the emperor took Esplandián by the hand and placed him before his daughter Leonorina, saying:

"My daughter, you have your knight before you. How does he seem to you? Can you set aside your anger now?"

Esplandián was on his knees before her asking for her hands to kiss them, but she was pulling them away from him, and she said to her father:

"Sire, what I think of him is that, seeing him here in my presence, he has shown that he is the son of the noble Knight of the Green Sword. As for my anger, I do not feel compelled to drop it."

"What, my daughter?" asked the emperor. "Are you not satisfied with the great services he has done for love of you? Are you not satisfied with the magnificent presents he has sent you?"

"Sire," she said, "all that was done without my willing it; that is to say that he refused to carry out what he was ordered by the message I sent him to do on your behalf and mine. But now that he is here, whatever he may do from now on shall be taken into account. May God grant that his works be of such a kind that he may be released from the pledge his father gave me."

The emperor began to laugh, and he said to Urganda:

"My good friend, come to me, and you will resolve a dispute we are having."

Urganda approached him, and, after the emperor told her what the quarrel was about, she said laughing:

"Most beautiful lady, you are right. Since Esplandián came to serve you as ordered by his father, which occurred in my presence,[13] he should have fol-

---

[12] The Spanish term *tierra* [ground, earth] makes us imagine that the hall in which this grand reception is taking place is a large external hall with an earthen floor.

[13] Toward the end of the last chap. of bk. IV, Urganda gives Amadís a last chance to give his son whatever information and advice he wishes before Esplandián disappears. Amadís then tells him about his promise to Leonorina, and he gives Esplandián the ring and gem she had given Amadís in Constantinople in bk. III.

lowed your desires in every way; and if he has done anything of any sort or condition outside of your will, you have good cause to reject his deeds. However, I am certain that, although he had no fear in all the battles in which he placed his brave and stout heart and which were more dangerous than could ever be imagined or witnessed, he felt timorous and unworthy to come into your presence—considering, of course, your grandeur and the beauty of yours that surpasses everyone else's who is living today. Hence, milady, if your complaint is justified, so too is he justified in receiving forgiveness."

Leonorina was looking at his very handsome face and his graceful and seemly bearing. Therefore, because he for whom she suffered during his absence was so close to her now, her flesh was trembling from overflowing joy, her heart was softened into great sweetness, and she was discarding the burden of her heavy cares and her mortal desires which had tormented her until then. Likewise, it is to be believed that Esplandián was having similar feelings, for both were wounded and tormented by one and the same doleance and by one and the same passion; just so, they were enraptured by the same delight, the same mutual joy. Leonorina answered Urganda by saying:

"My friend, I would not dare contradict what you say; so, this one time I forgive him. But if hereafter I have reason to complain about him, my complaints will be directed to you, because his pardon is due to you."

Then she lowered her hands to help Esplandián rise. He took them in his hands and kissed them, and he did likewise to Urganda for the favor she did for him. Then they left Leonorina and returned to the empress who wished to speak with Esplandián. Leaving him with her, the emperor went to King Armato, took his hand, and said:

"Good sire, forgive me for not speaking to you before receiving such distinguished company. Now I wish to give you the welcome such a great prince as you merits."

"Sire," said the king, "you are obliged to do so, because fortune often upsets its dangerous game, not as people expect, but as it wishes."

Then the emperor had him sit on the dais with the empress. Calling strong Frandalo, the emperor placed his hands on his shoulders and said to him:

"My true friend, the world's Almighty Lord knows how much I prize and love you for all the grand services I have received from you. To repay you for them, I want you to be my chief alferes;[14] moreover, I grant you the County of Grigentor,[15] and I bestow on you the name of count."[16]

Frandalo kissed his foot even though the emperor tried to prevent it, and Esplandián kissed his hands for the favor he had just done.

---

[14] An alferes is a standard bearer, ensign, second lieutenant, etc. OED dates the entrance of this Arabic term (*al-faris* [knight, cavalier]) into English from Spanish in 1591. Cov. says the term derives from the Arabic *ferese* meaning "to be a knight."

[15] This is the first and only reference to Grigentor County in GRM's Amadís Cycle.

[16] See chap. 66, n. 2, for a full accounting of the title of count [*conde*].

How Norandel and Queen Menoresa were conversing, and how they became captives of inflamed love for each other; and how those knights, magnates, and high-born ladies were ordered by the emperor to sit down to eat observing due protocol.

At that time, the king of Dacia and Norandel, who were together, went to speak to Infanta Leonorina who was asking Damsel Carmela who those two knights were and what their names were. The damsel told her that one was the king of Dacia who had given her Frandalo as a present, and the other, who was more handsome and more corpulent, was Norandel, King Lisuarte's son. Next she identified some of the others for her, too. Coming forward, these two knights kissed her hands, and Norandel was shocked to see the most beautiful woman he had ever seen or about whom he had ever heard. Before they could say anything, Carmela said to them:

"My good friends, speak to Queen Menoresa whom you have before you. As you see, given her looks, she would be well received in any plaza."[1]

Having had their eyes on Leonorina, they then turned them to the queen, and she seemed marvellously beautiful to them. And of course she was, for, after the infanta, no other woman in the empire matched her beauty. The knights tried to kiss her hands, but she refused to proffer them knowing they were of such high lineages. Instead, she embraced them and bade them rise.

Norandel stared at her, and she seemed to him one of the most elegant and charming women he had ever seen,[2] and in that instant he was struck[3] by such a strong blow of love for her that he almost fell to the ground, and he said softly:

"Santa María, help me! What can this be?"

However, cruel Cupid, not content that one alone of them was subjugated,

---

[1] The term Carmela uses here is *plaça* [plaza]. The semantic range for the term is very wide, including town square, market place, shopping plaza, fortress, room, job, employment, and many more. In addition, DA cites meanings of fame and opinion or reputation. Given Carmela's speech style, it seems best to leave the equivalent English term as attested in English by OED as early as 1683. Instead of saying that Queen Menoresa would be well received in any court, the term plaza gives the statement the humorous and common touch of understatement.

[2] Contrary to the sensory medium by which Esplandián and Leonorina fall in love (e.g., through the sense of hearing), Norandel and Queen Menoresa fall in love by the means of love at first sight. In GRM's ideological universe, which is suspended on Spain's medieval-Renaissance divide, this means both that the love shared by the first couple is superior, and that there is a balance in the novel between one affair mediated by hearing and the other mediated by sight.

[3] The Spanish term is *preso* [arrested, seized]. The major expression of a character arrested or imprisoned by love in the literature of GRM's time is Leriano in Diego de San Pedro's *Cárcel de Amor* [Cupid's Jail] (1492). The novel begins with an elaborate allegorical description of the jail and the four pillars that hold it up: Understanding, Reason, Memory, and Desire or Will. See Diego de San Pedro, *Obras completas*, vol. 1, op. cit.

shot an arrow into her heart too, which made her lose her color, her senses, and her composure so much that she did not know who she was. These changes in her were so great that they could no longer be concealed. The mutual veneration in their eyes showed so strongly what their hearts eagerly desired that it was impossible for them not to reveal something to each other. Thus, looking at each other amorously, their new fire was multiplied and increased many times over. While the king of Dacia was speaking with Leonorina, Norandel, drawing closer to the queen, said to her:

"Ah, milady! You have killed me! It was at a fateful hour that my eyes saw your great beauty, for it has shot to my heart and caused a mortal wound there."

The queen, who was somewhat more serene, responded:

"Friend, señor, I do not esteem my beauty so much that I think it is capable of inspiring such an impetuous passion in a knight as reasonable as you. Rather, I think it is due to the way you knights have of talking to the ladies whose acquaintance you have just made. That is because, not having any reason to speak about other things, you try to satisfy your wills with words like those."

"Ah, milady! Have pity!" he said. "I am all yours, and I shall be yours as long as I live; so, as your knight and servant, command me to do whatever pleases you most, for I shall risk my life to carry it out."

The queen, who was very wise, realized fully that those words came from his heart, which made her very happy. But, not showing her happiness, she said:

"I do not want to grant or deny what you are asking of me until I see in what way your deeds show me what I should do."

"As far as that goes," Norandel said, "I feel very favored, because if how I serve you suffices, then I shall use all my strength to guide your will, and my life will be directed toward those fortunate things that can sustain your will."

At that moment, they were given a call on behalf of the emperor who was ready to eat. At the same time, the queen went to Leonorina and said:

"Milady, have you perchance felt some extraordinary change since these knights came here?"

"My friend," she said, "the only change I feel is the great pleasure my spirit receives from seeing Esplandián. But, why do you ask?"

"Because, either I've been enchanted, or I'm about to die, for my heart and senses are failing me."

"How long have you felt this sickness?"

"Since that knight Norandel came to talk to me, for I've felt ill since the moment I saw him."

"Santa María," said Leonorina, "you've been wounded and imprisoned by the same emotion that I feel in my heart with such cruel sweetness."

"I don't know, milady, what it is," she said, "but, as far as I know, what you say is true."

"I'm very happy," said Leonorina, "that you've set your eyes on and freely subjugated your heart to such a prize, because, even leaving aside the fact that

he's the son of such a noble and great king as his father King Lisuarte is, to judge by his own person he's one of the world's truly good knights. My cousin Gastiles told me he considers Norandel one of the best of the top knights who took part in the battles in Great Britain.[4] But, seeing his physique and handsomeness, and excepting Esplandián, do you realize, my friend, that none of the others even comes close to him?"

"Oh, milady, wretched me!" said the queen. "I expected you to reprove and correct me in order to free me from this lunacy, but instead you've ignited the fire and made it leap into greater and hotter flames."

The infanta began to laugh gleefully and to clap her hands in a display of great pleasure; so, she said:

"Milady, my friend. Even though you're older, wiser, and more discrete than I, you could not know about, and you could not cure my ailment; then what did you expect from me? I'm tormented by the same ailment as yours, or perhaps mine's even worse."

While they were talking about the things you have just heard, they were called to go to the empress because she decided it was time to eat. After the emperor had all of the knights remove their arms, he sat down at his table, and with him were seated his nephew Gastiles, Esplandián, the king of Dacia, Norandel, Talanque, and Maneli the Prudent. At another table near the first sat Count Frandalo, Master Helisabad, as many knights as there were places for them, and all of the others. At that meal, they were all served as was required by the house of such a mighty man as the emperor. Meanwhile the empress was seated at her table in her apartment, and with her she took her daughter, Queen Menoresa, and Infanta Melía, whom she had dressed in magnificent clothes, because she was in the direct line of the great kings of Persia. At another table, were seated Urganda, infantas, daughters of kings and grandees, and Damsel Carmela, who was well received by all of the ladies. While greatly enjoying the delicious food, they were entertained by the amazing things Urganda was telling them. After finishing the meal, Leonorina was ordered by her mother to take Urganda and Damsel Carmela to her apartment, while the empress detained Infanta Melía in her own chamber because her great age was not suitable for the company of young women. The knights were housed in the magnificent apartment where the Knight of the Green Sword was lodged during his stay, as the third part of this story tells. In that apartment were Gastiles, Marqués Saluder, and other señores who were accompanying the emperor.

---

[4] Norandel took part in the following battles: (1) against Galvanes' army (bk. III, chap. 67); (2) against the seven kings who fought against Lisuarte (bk. III, chap. 68); (3) with Lisuarte against Amadís (bk. IV, chap. 106); and (4) with Lisuarte and Amadís's armies against the Arabian king (bk. IV, chap. 116).

How Urganda the Unknown, by the emperor's command, declared what prophecy had been found in the tomb containing the idol of Jupiter.

As you have heard, they all spent four delightful days of pleasure and relaxation; but Esplandián and Norandel were especially pleased, for, by contrast to all of the others, they were able to see and speak at their leisure with their ladies, who held their knights' lives and deaths in their hands and who could reward them one way or the other as they deemed fit. Meanwhile fortune, which had granted that short-lived period of delight and bliss, was plotting and spinning an as yet unforeseen fateful warp of bitter designs against all of them, replete with more torment and pain than you could either think possible or even imagine in your wildest dream, as the story will show in what follows. So, at the end of those days I mentioned, the emperor recalled the prophecy that he took from the tomb where the idol was and that he always found very disquieting. Realizing he had the great sage Urganda in his power, and that she could interpret it for him better than any other mortal, he decided to set the wheels in motion to resolve the issue. After taking the empress, his daughter Leonorina, Queen Menoresa, and Urganda into his chamber and locking the doors so that no one at all could hear them, he showed Urganda the prophecy, and he begged her very earnestly to interpret it for him. Furthermore, he asked her not to hesitate to reveal the message despite whatever she might find that was perilous or evil in it. After reading it, Urganda said:

"Sire, as far as I can tell from this prophecy, it says that that idol, which has the likeness of Jupiter and which was made with such a magnificent casing, was left by Jupiter's design and not by design of the Enchantress Damsel. It also says that his great knowledge will be lost in a later time. This means that after Jesus Christ came into the world, Jupiter's great knowledge was lost, for he had been revered as a god. Concerning this passage about the manservant and maidservant being buried with him in the same place and about him who suffers death being restored to life, this seems too obscure to decipher, but I shall figure it out before I leave here and I shall tell you."

When Leonorina and Queen Menoresa heard that, and since they knew that Esplandián had been entombed in that place and that by that means he had been transported into her chamber, they became so disturbed and they were so embarrassed that their bodies trembled, the blood drained completely from their faces, they looked at each other, and their eyes filled with water. But Urganda, who perceived their great fear, did not want to dilate their suffering any more; therefore, stopping short of declaring the truth about the matter, she chose another path, which seemed more fitting to her and which she contrived while she pretended to read the prophecy three or four more times. Then she said:

"Sire, what I feel this means is that you already know how Matroco, the giant who was formerly a pagan, died on Forbidden Mountain after professing faith in Jesus Christ. By this we should understand that he was a servant for

the female slave, which is what we ought to call that sect.[1] You are also aware that Esplandián had him buried in the hermitage where the Christian hermit lives, and that Damsel Carmela took from here the tomb on top of which the idol of Jupiter stood, and she used it as a coffin for the giant Matroco himself, and in it he is interred today. Regarding what it says about the one who suffers death being restored to life, this means that, by dying in the very holy law of Jesus Christ, he will be restored to eternal life, which is the surest and truest law; for life in this world, properly speaking, is death. Hence, my lord, by my lights, that is what I believe those words mean. And if perhaps the prophecy leans in another direction or indicates something else, I tell you I know nothing about it, nor can I guess what that could be any more than what these two very beautiful ladies know; I mean your daughter Leonorina and Queen Menoresa, who, I think, have not learned the arts that apply to this case."[2]

---

[1] Urganda is trying to soothe her interlocutors' feelings and to misinform the emperor by playing with various interpretations of the terms for manservant [*siervo*] and maidservant or female slave [*sierva*]. Cov. says these terms were equivalent to slave. A *siervo*, or *sierva*, was a person captured in battle whom a lord allowed to live in exchange for loss of freedom. The reality behind this concept is a prominent part of GRM's *Zeitgeist*. For example, of the nearly 15,000 Moslem residents of Málaga that were captured by Fernando *el Católico*'s army in 1487, about 3,000 Moslem soldiers were distributed as *siervos* among the principle Christian military officials. In this context, a Spanish reader in the last decade of the fifteenth century or the first decades of the next century would not be surprised to identify Islam with the metaphor female slave (the term *religión* in Spanish is grammatically feminine).

Cov. adds that the term can also mean generally a lord's maid or servant. Interestingly, the term has also been used since GRM's time in collocation with the Christian God, as in *siervo de Dios* [servant of God], which is what the knights in *Esplandián* have been calling themselves for 119 chaps.

[2] A reader of bks. I to IV would bring added intertextual knowledge to an appreciation of this speech by Urganda. Such a reader would be accustomed to GRM's narrative and stylistic device of using doublets-with-a-difference to advance through the plot and ideology. For example, Amadís and his brother Galaor are raised by adoptive fathers, but the second's substitute father is a giant. Bk. V continues the practice and uses all of the first four bks. as a source of increased complexity. Therefore, our well-read reader would recognize that the key to the plot of bks. I to IV is Lisuarte's ignorance of the courtly-erotic relationship between Amadís and Oriana. The Gordian knot is cut by the existence of Esplandián himself, and as soon as the double secret (marriage and progeny) is revealed to Lisuarte, the rest of the plot moves toward dénouement. In bk. V, as previously, lover and beloved have a secret relationship, they keep it a secret from the father and the father's and daughter's honors are threatened. The difference lies in the fact that because there is no fait accompli such as marriage, progeny, or perhaps even sexual intercourse, the emperor's honor is on much shakier grounds than was Lisuarte's. On the one hand his honor is safer because it appears nothing concrete has happened; but on the other hand it is more threatened because nothing like marriage has occurred to obviate any potential dishonor. Hence, Urganda's squirming attempt to use verbal subterfuge on the emperor results in a comically effective passage and dramatizes one of the key motifs in the entire Amadís Cycle. For a similar plot and its resolution, see Diego de San Pedro's *Cárcel de amor*, in which the father refuses to believe the lovers (Leriano and Laureola) when they swear that they never violated his honor. The result is multiple tragedy including Leriano's suicide.

"My good friend," then said the emperor, who still had questions for her, "what you have declared is true and should not be understood in any other way. Now I beg you to reveal what remains."

"Sire," said Urganda, "I shall not do that for any reason, because it is not advantageous for you to know any more. However, I will tell you that it will come about very soon, and that, if some of it touches you, it will profit your soul very much. For now, I shall say no more."

"That," said the emperor, "consoles me greatly; for, so long as the soul, as you say, is safe, fortune may do with the body as it pleases. But let us speak no more about it."

120

How the emperor celebrated with his court in
A giant paroxism of earthly pleasure and rest;
But, while they were celebrating in a forest,
Fortune decided to give its big wheel a spin;
Then there came two dragons with prodigious power,
One flew off with poor, sad Urganda in its grasp
And Armato and Melía too, while the asp,
So ordered, made all show of resistance go sour.

After this exchange, they left the chamber and went to the great hall where many high princes and grandees were waiting with all of the knights who were Esplandián's friends. They were all dressed in magnificently embellished clothes; hence, they made such a rich assembly that another like it could not be found anywhere else in the world. They spent the whole day in grand parties, in which they arranged their fortunes and their future tasks. In order to increase his guests' pleasure, and to show the Turkish king a part of his grandeur, the emperor commanded many tents to be taken to his private wood; and along with the tents he ordered great sets of wonderfully designed gold and silver tableware, and many kinds of cloths and finery made of silk and gold and on which there were abundant embroideries of flowers and beasts and birds. There were also many other very magnificent jewels, large earthen jars, and chamber pots made of gold and many other materials. All of this was carried to the wood, which was very near the city and in which there were very beautiful meadows, very well-made fountains, and other very entertaining things. There were also many deer and bears and wild boars and an infinite number of wild beasts that had been brought there from very distant lands.

When everything was ready, the emperor mounted his horse as did all his principle men, the empress and their daughter, and all their duennas and damsels, among whom there were many infantas and daughters of kings, grandees, and dukes. Esplandián and those knights who were his friends went with the emperor, while King Armato, Infanta Melía, and Urganda the Un-

known accompanied the empress. Arriving at the magnificent tents, they dismounted from their horses and palfreys, and the emperor then ordered hunting outfits and knives brought to them, which they all put on. Esplandián gave his magnificent sword to his squire Sargil and asked him to take it back to his room in the city. Then they all joined their hunting parties, each having a pack of handsome dogs. The howling was great and they successfully bagged a lot of wild game. After killing an infinite number of the animals, they returned to the tents to show the fruits of the kill to the empress, her daughter, and the other ladies, which pleased them greatly. Thus, they spent that day very pleasantly: the knights walked about while the duennas and damsels promenaded throughout the green meadows picking roses and other very fragrant flowers. They had time to speak at their leisure with those they liked most, and they all lunched and dined on many very admirable dishes. Finally, just as they were achieving the height, the pinnacle of pleasure—this is often how fickle fortune arranges it—fortune began laughing disdainfully at these people who arrived carelessly and agonizingly at these heights while forgetting that dangerous falls happen most unexpectedly to those at the top. Then their hearts wail with redoubled sadness and bitterness, and they suffer measureless grief more deeply and more painfully over such a mutation than if they had engaged in those delights of theirs with the moderation that worldly things require, which was the Almighty Lord's initial intention in creating them.

Immediately on the following day fortune chose to display its games, for it happened that while the emperor and empress were enjoying themselves, as you were told, old Infanta Melía, with whom they were unable to speak until then, responded to one of their questions by saying to Urganda:

"If you are as wise as everyone says you are, do something magical here with your knowledge so that this grand fiesta can be magnified. On occasions such as this one, those who possess a sharp mind should display it."

"Infanta," said Urganda, "what you say applies to you more than me, because you are older and have much more of antiquity's wisdom than I."

"If you leave it to me to begin," she said, "I'll do it, but only on condition that you do the same. In that way this grand emperor can award the palms of knowledge to the one who deserves it most."

"I so authorize it," said Urganda.

"Then," she said, "have someone bring me one of the books that were taken from my cave. On its cover is a figure of Medea with her name displayed in bold letters. Before your very eyes I want you to see what I'll do with it. If perchance you cannot figure it out now, you will later on."

"Do as she asks," said Urganda ordering one of her damsels to go get the book.

The damsel returned shortly, but in the meantime, Infanta Melía had taken King Armato by the hand, and, as they were walking through a meadow, she spoke to him secretly so that no one could hear them or discover what was happening. Returning to sit on the dais the empress had occupied before, she took the book, opened it, and began reading it while making some signs,

looking up to the sky, and speaking to herself. Then she said to Urganda:

"Urganda, come here and you will see something you never saw before."

After Urganda had come to Melía's side, King Armato said:

"I want to see what these two great conjuresses are doing, for even I have some knowledge of those things."

Then he stood at Urganda's side. In this way, while the infanta was beside the other two, she started showing Urganda some of the book's prophecies. Before long they saw a round and very dark cloud coming toward them through the air. Very quickly it covered everyone who was watching what the three of them were doing, for they were all disposed to see something that might seem like a marvel.[1] In the middle of the cloud there appeared two very large, ugly, fierce, and winged dragons[2] yoked to a chariot, and as they approached they were spreading a fog before them.

Then Infanta Melía on one side and King Armato on the other seized Urganda so brutally that they forced her into the chariot against her will. They too climbed in, and the dragons flew through the air with the chariot and all as freely as two birds. Urganda cried very hard for the others below to save her, but it all happened so fast and so suddenly that no one could rescue her. Thus, in a short while, the chariot swept the fog away, and all could see clearly that it flew so high that it seemed to touch the clouds. Soon they lost sight of it. When Urganda's damsels saw her taken away by such misfortune, they thought they would never see her again; so they began tearing their coifs and their dresses, and they wailed so loud their lamentations seemed to pierce the heavens.

---

[1] It is worth noting that throughout this episode GRM uses a relatively safe vocabulary—safe from the point of views of the Inquisition—for what is essentially two magicians performing magic. The women are *sabidoras*, an archaic word for wise or learned women, and their feats are *maravillas*, marvels or wonders, but not magic.

[2] According to the Latin bestiary at the Univ. of Cambridge, dragons are the largest of all serpents and all living beings. The Cambridge bestiary says: "When the dragon leaves its cave, it often rises into the heavens, and the air around it becomes burning hot." Furthermore, they are supposed to come from Ethiopia and India. The presence in the text of a fabulous being from India foreshadows the arrival of griffins to the scene of the action in chap. 157. Furthermore, the devil, like dragons, says the Cambridge bestiary, deceives fools by false hopes of glory and earthly pleasure. A medieval reader would have associated these ideas directly with the action in this chap., and therefore he or she would have realized that King Armato and Melía's rescue and pleasure is a momentary trick of the devil. See *Bestiario medieval*, ed. Ignacio Malaxecheverría, 180–82. This is how Barclay describes the cloud that surrounds the dragon/serpent in his early sixteenth-century version of *The Life of St. George*:

> Anone where as / the ayre before was clere
> A clowde obumbred / the heuyn and fyrmament.
> The sonne began / all pale and blake to apere
> For ayre infectyf / of this moste fowle serpent
> Unto the banke / she swam in contynent
> She sought and gapyd / for hyr acustomyd pray
> Hyr brennynge iyen / fast rollynge euery way.

The emperor was very disturbed, and tears came to his eyes. The same happened to the empress, their daughter, and all the duennas and damsels. However, what Esplandián did is not to be believed. His raging ire was so towering that flames of fire seemed to shoot from his eyes. But then, Talanque and Maneli the Prudent were no less angered, for they wanted to tear themselves apart with great rage. What shall I tell you? That all of the men and women were so deeply upset that they immediately left the forest, mounted their horses and palfreys, and returned to the city in a gloomy mood. Without waiting for anything, Esplandián and his companions took their leave from the emperor, the empress, and their daughter and boarded the Great Caravel. Their departure caused Leonorina and Queen Menoresa no little pain and anguish, for they loved them very much with a requited love. The caravel left the port, and in a few days it arrived at Forbidden Mountain.

121

How the dragons placed King Armato and Urganda the Unknown in the middle of the plaza in great Ctesifonte; how Infanta Melía ordered Urganda locked in a tower; and how the king was very festively received in his grand palaces.

The dragons pulling the chariot rose to the great height we just told you, and that night, before morning, they arrived in great Ctesifonte in whose plaza they left the king and two women. Then they went their way and never appeared again. Seeing himself in the place he recognized as his own city, the king was as happy as he had been sad when he was a prisoner of his enemies. Realizing dawn was about to break, he went to his palace where he called his guards to whom he revealed his identity and whom he asked to inform his son the infante. Seeing him on foot and alone at such an hour, the guards could not believe it was he; rather, they thought he was crazy. However, they went in to where the infante was sleeping, and they said to him:

"Sire, a man's at the palace gate, and he says he's your father, the king. If it pleases you, it would be good for you to see him."

"It must be some madman or joker," said the infante, beginning to laugh. "I want to see him."

He got up, put on a jubbah, went to the window, and said:

"What manner of man are you who wants to speak to me?"

"My son," said the king, "I am your father, King Armato. By an amazing adventure I have been freed from my enemies. Therefore, son, do not doubt what I am saying; but prepare to receive me up there."

The infante recognized him by his speech, but not by his person, for his beard and hair had grown long, and the trials and ordeals of imprisonment had changed his manner. The son went down the stairway immediately, and, approaching his father, he was more certain it was he; so he knelt before him and among his tears kissed his hands many times. The father embraced and kissed him in return due to the great love he had for him.

Then they called Infanta Melía and Urganda to go with them, and they all entered the palace where they found Infanta Heliaxa almost naked, for she had little time to dress given how rushed she was to see her father-in-law. The king approached her, took her in his arms, and kissed her on the face. She took his hands while blessing their gods, because they had given so much joy to that tormented household and to the whole kingdom of Persia. Infanta Melía said to Urganda:

"I grant you your life for two reasons: first, because although I had you on the point of death in my cave, afterwards, when I was in your power, you said not one insulting word to me, and you sought to prevent any harm from coming to me. The other reason is because you willingly gave the king that magnificent jubbah; that act could only come from a generous heart. If it were not for the great harm that this kingdom is suffering on account of you, I would leave you free to go, and I would release you in a safe place. However, your role in all this causes me such great, passionate ire that I cannot see fit to do that. Hence, until another decision is reached and until my fury is satisfied by taking revenge on others, as I hope to, I plan to keep you locked in a tower by means of such strong enchantments that your great arts will avail you not at all. For the present, this is what I have made up my mind to do with you."

"Infanta," said Urganda, "I am in your power. You can make determinations and orders concerning me, and I shall obey whatever conditions you impose on me. Remember the high lineage you come from, for it obliges you more than other, lower people to practise virtue and nobility."

"Now," said the infanta, "let's rest from the recent travails, and then I shall do with you what I have just decided."

The king entered his chamber, and, after undressing, he climbed into his own bed eagerly seeking rest like one who never expected to rest in it again all the days of his life. Old Infanta Melía took Urganda off with her to a very strong tower that stood at one corner of the plaza. The tower was the first thing in the great city that was erected when the city was first inhabited. It was placed there by a giant named Leonato,[1] who cast such a strong spell on

---

[1] Leonato does not appear in bks. I to IV. This giant recalls the Biblical archgiant, Nimrod, who, according to St. Augustine and other Biblical commentators—though not according to the Bible itself—was the giant who built the Tower of Babel (Gen. ll:4). Aside from general medieval cultural tradition, GRM knew about Nimrod from the *Crónica troyana* (pt. I, chaps. 3 and 4, in the version published in Medina del Campo in 1587). Nimrod is referred to as Membrot in this edition and as Nembrot in chap. 124 below. He is a giant who built the Tower of Babel, he is called the first conquistador, and, following the Bible, he is seen as a great hunter (Gen. 10:9). Walter Stevens says that medieval writers including Dante saw Nimrod leading "the first great collective effort of pride against God" (*Giants*, 68). In his analysis of the contribution to medieval Nimrod lore by the *Anonimo Selmiano* (before 1337), Stevens says that this anonymous Florentine writer saw Nimrod's pride and revolt against God as "the original event behind the pagan traditions of the revolt of the Giants." Regarding *Esplandián*, the fact that GRM inserts a reference to a giant who built a tower at the foundational center of the pagan capital serves to re-

it that Urganda's arts were not sufficient to break it. Melía locked her behind a little iron door. Pocketing the key, the infanta returned to the palace, and she ordered Urganda to be provided food by means of a basket attached to a cord that she left in the cell.

Urganda remained there for some time not moving because her spirit was so filled with grief. She was reflecting on how her great wise arts had conquered the seas, kings, strong knights, and wild animals, and how, without being informed by anyone, her knowledge had reached into past and future events. But now, all that was consigned to oblivion, and she was a prisoner of that one hundred twenty year-old woman, who, according to Nature's order, should have returned to a childlike state. Furthermore, fortune, discontent and dissatisfied with her when she escaped from the first danger, chose to have her captured again by the same old woman who used a very unusual adventure to do so; and neither the great emperor, nor strong Esplandián, nor all those famous knights who were present could do a thing to succor her. And her wisdom availed her even less. Instead, whereas until then her deeds had been considered wonders that were renowned throughout the world, now they were completely denigrated, insulted, mocked, and laughed at as mere rumors. She was nearly out of her mind and wished she were dead, because fortune was tormenting her so severely without her meriting it. However, on the other hand, she consoled herself by remembering that, in this world, there is neither perfect good nor ill without remedy. So, she reflected on King Armato, who had been overpowered and imprisoned by his enemies; on what Infanta Melía did at the end of such a long life; and on herself and how she had been honored and revered by the emperor and all those high princes and famous knights because they had seen her as the mistress of the great king and the infanta. Although she was plunged into the depths of bitter despair during such an accursed moment, while they were free and she was imprisoned, she consoled herself hoping the same thing would happen: namely, that fortune would give its wheel a turn and that she would be relieved. By meditating on this realization, which the wise ought to do during such disasters, she began to feel consoled; and she continually implored the Lord on High, in whose service she had come with a burning desire to that very strange land, to have mercy on her, to remove her from there, and to deliver her from any evil temptation that might make her despair and thereby put her soul in danger.[2] Moreover, she hoped fortune would turn against those

---

mind us that GRM saw giants as related to pagans (i.e., Moslems), and that both were—to use Stevens' terminology—the cultural other. Nimrod was identified with Moslems because, according to the genealogies in Genesis, he was the great-grandson of Noah and the grandson of Ham, the founder of the Hamitic peoples, who include the Arabs. Urganda's plight adds another dimension to GRM's complex analysis throughout the Amadís Cycle of the fine line between the sin of pride and positive chivalric pride.

[2] The end of the Spanish sentence in all editions says: *poner su ánima en condición* [to put her soul in condition]. The phrase normally means simply in danger. However, in this context there may be an added connotation of a legal or theological ellipsis for *condición*

evil people with double harshness, against those friends of the evil enemy, whereby her holy faith would be advanced.

122

About how King Armato thanked his gods for having freed him miraculously from the power of his enemies.

King Armato of Persia, who found himself in his kingdom after leaving Christian imprisonment, from which he never expected to be freed, gave many thanks to his gods. Assuming he was delivered from such a bitter life and returned to so much good fortune more because of his gods' will and design than any other knowing force, he ordered abundant alms of gold and silver and other rich jewels to be given to the temples of the gods. Moreover, he believed that he had suffered so many previous reversals because he had made them angry at him. But now they seemed to be happy with him: they were accepting the way he was serving them, and they were changing their anger into pious compliance; hence, his affairs would be directed along a different path, one filled with so much pleasing happiness that it would surpass his former sadness. Blissfully enjoying the great change to which he was being treated by the turn of fortune's wheel, which shifted him from down below to on top, he wished to follow what his mind perceived would be a way to serve his gods. So, without further delay, he decided to put into practice what he thought would not only increase his realm's security forever—which was to eject his powerful enemies from it—but also to seek to expand it to twice its size or perhaps even more, whereby he would remain the greatest sovereign who ever ruled over Persia. For this purpose, he had many letters composed for the grandees of the Orient, which he sent out by means of his messengers. The letters read as follows:

123

About the letter King Armato sent to all paganism.

To all soldans,[1] caliphs,[2] Tamerlanes,[3] kings, and all other grandees of any sort who follow the pagan law in all regions on both the right hand and the left hand of the Orient. I, Armato, king of Persia, caudillo of the border, defender of all paganism, having escaped from imprisonment by our enemies due to a miracle by the gods whom we worship, I hereby inform you that once again a knight who is descended from the Trojan Brutus[4] has risen up. It is the latter who killed the strong giant who was lord of the great island; and it was on account of this Trojan knight's name that the great island is called Britain.[5] Well, this new knight about whom I am talking now went

---

casual [fortuitous, accidental, chance condition], which is defined by DA as "what does not depend upon the power or will of men, but upon chance."

alone to Forbidden Mountain, killed in armed combat both the valiant giants Matroco and Furion and other knights, and became lord of the mountain. Was he able to do this because our gods so willed it? Did we indeed anger them? Or did he succeed because of the god whose law he observes and who was crucified so recently in the city of Jerusalem?[6] Thinking such an act was a dangerous threat to us, I personally led my people to besiege the mountain, but while I was holding the approach to it, I was unfortunately taken prisoner by the said knight's tricks, and I was held in his power until now, when, due to our merciful gods, as I said, I was freed.

"Moreover, this very mortal enemy was not content with this while he held me, but he proceeded to seize two more of my villas, both seaports and the strongest fortresses in my entire seigniory. Meanwhile, fortune has placed him where my forces are not strong enough to oppose him; furthermore, the evil, swindling emperor of Constantinople broke the truces he signed with me, and now he is favoring and helping the knight with all his power. Hence, if a remedy is not found, I, who am strategically placed as everyone's shield, in a short time will be destroyed, and I will lose this seigniory which is everyone's protection and defense. Therefore, I beg and call upon you to serve our gods and to preserve your well-being and mine by personally coming with so many of your people that not only will such a mortal enemy be ejected from your seigniory,[7] but also so that the traitor may be besieged in his city of Constantinople from where I have promised the gods to drag him by his long beard and place him at your mercy. Hence, most high princes, from this plan it will follow that that evil man's goal will be upset, and whereas he intended to conquer our seigniory, he will instead lose his."

124

How pagan kings from every region
After heeding the Persian king's plea,
With enough boats to cover the sea
Met in the seaport of Ténedon.
Then there came together drawn by hate
More high kings, caudillos and giants strong
Than could be counted, and in a throng
Five hundred caliphs and soldans great.

Many letters of this sort were written, and by order of the king of Persia they were sent by messengers, who, he was confident, would make every effort to deliver them to the places he desired. After the messengers arrived in those lands—of both the main and insular kind—they gave the letters to all those very exalted men, who at that time were in a state of great peace and tranquility, during which they themselves and their people were attempting to use their restfulness to serve their gods. However, they were aroused by such a ready willingness to rush to the king's aid that it seemed as if they were altogether driven by one mind and one desire. Then, communicating by means of messengers sent among themselves, they agreed that each in his own realm would outfit the largest fleet and the biggest army he possibly could, and that on a set day they would all meet in the port of Ténedon[1] near the ruins of Troy.[2] What can I tell you but that there were so many fleets and so many

soldiers, all of whom spoke different languages, that it seemed the sea was so thoroughly covered that not a drop of water could be seen? To that place came all the emperors and kings in person: white as well as black. Not a single one remained in his land. To that place they brought their caudillos who showed great dexterity in all manners of war; and they brought their admirals who were great masters of navigational arts. So many came that, once all were on land, they covered the fields and they dried up the rivers they crossed because their thirst was endless. Finally, there were so many people that similar numbers are found in no other written text since the time of that giant Nimrod.[3] What is more, I want you to know that it was said without mistake that, excluding those below the level of king, there were more than five hundred grandees alone; and the other people were countless.

125

How Frandalo counselled Belleriz, Talanque, and Maneli to leave Forbidden Mountain and go discover news about King Armato and the two lady sages; and about what happened to them on this journey.

As you have been told, Esplandián went to Forbidden Mountain with a heavy heart over the loss of Urganda, which happened in such a manner that he was unable to succor her even though she was in his presence. On the mountain he spoke to Count Frandalo[1] thus:

"My true friend, I am out of my mind, for I find no way to find consolation or relief from the thought that Urganda came to see us so lovingly and to accompany us on the visit we made to the emperor's court. In my mind I

---

[3] For a discussion of the foreshadowing preceding this allusion to Nimrod, see chap. 121, n. 1. As an example of GRM's possible use of Boccaccio's *De Casibus Illustrium Virorum* as a source for *Esplandián*, it is of note that GRM's Italian predecessor retells the story of Nimrod. John Lydgate's English version of *De Casibus* (ca. 1431–1439) describes Nimrod thus:

> This Nembroth wex myhti, large and long,
> Excelling othre as off his stature,
> Surquedous, hardi and strong,
> And in his tyme gret labour myht endure,
> And in his force so moche he dede assure,
> That ther was noon on watir nor on lond
> Which durste presume his power to withstond.

Lydgate's Fall of Princes, ed. Henry Bergen, vol. 1 (Oxford: Oxford Univ. Press, 1924), 29–30. In verse 1073, Lydgate says specifically that Nimrod was a "geant" and that the Tower of Babel built by Nimrod was the "cheeff habitacioun" of serpents and dragons. (Another fantastical serpent will appear in the next chap.) Furthermore, Nimrod is apposite to GRM's story because, according to Boccaccio and Lydgate, Nimrod was the founder of "paganysme," who, after the fall of Babel, made the first great empire in Persia (line 1259).

[1] Frandalo was made a count in chap. 117.

see the honor that redounded to us on her account; and yet, being stolen from before our very eyes, she suffered a greater calamity than anyone else ever did. Please realize I am about to go crazy or to give up on my life. Hence, my good friend, advise me and help me to get her back. After God, you are my salvation because you are acquainted with this land. Let's find out if she is alive or dead. If she is dead, you can be sure that I will practice such terrible cruelties on these people that, if death does not cut me short, what I do will shock the whole world. But if by chance she is alive, I will not fear danger or death until I recover her."

"Señor," said Count Frandalo, "I share the same grief I see you have. I'm affected because it's as if I'd received many honors from that duenna. As for my will, you'll discover it when you see my deeds. Concerning your order for me to advise you, I tell you that no one should take these temporal things personally; rather, we should react to the pain caused by her loss with the same detached moderation we use for impersonal matters. Remember, señor, how little time we held prisoners both the king of this land and Infanta Melía, whom we removed from the cave where she had remained enchanted for more than sixty years. And there was nothing we could do to prevent their escape. Remember how it seemed to everyone that, after they were taken across the sea to the great court of Constantinople, they could not return to their own land even if they were left at their liberty. And remember that it was in that place, where their only source of salvation was our mercy, that the remedy for their liberation came to them. Well then, what is our role in these games of fickle fortune? Truly, in my opinion, our only recourse is for those in high positions to fear falling, as many have. The ancient chronicles show precisely this. The converse is for those who are at the bottom to hope to ascend to the place from which the others have fallen. So, my señor, take heart. Remove from your mind all grief and affliction which are of no advantage for you, but which can cause you great harm. Instead, let's think about a remedy for this situation. What occurs to me at the moment is for my nephew Belleriz, who knows the land well, to reconnoitre with a man who can inform us about what has happened to our duenna. We can take counsel again after hearing the news he brings."

Esplandián was very consoled by this advice and he said:

"My friend, in this case, I shall leave you in charge. Do just as you have said. But do it immediately and without delay."

Frandalo spoke with his nephew, who was a very good and loyal knight, and he ordered him to take two other knights with him and to try to find out from someone among the enemy what was done with King Armato and the two women who went with him. Belleriz gave this message to Talanque and Maneli to see if they wanted to join him on that journey. Like knights who desired nothing other than to sally forth into that land looking for some adventures in which they could earn honor and glory, they were very pleased to say that they would willingly go wherever he wished. Taking their arms and mounting their horses, they left Forbidden Mountain at midnight. While they were on the road, Talanque said:

"Friend Belleriz, because we desire to find some adventures in this land we implore you to guide us to a place where we can find them."

"Good señores," he said, "adventures are found when men least expect them, but often they can't be found when they are most earnestly sought. Still there's a place near here called Venturous Spring. Some amazing things happen at the spring or near it. If you please, I shall lead you there."

"It would make us very happy if you would do so," said Talanque.

"Then follow me," he said.

To get there they rode through what remained of the night, and, when it was bright day, they came within sight of the spring with the golden cloth that was tied to the metal pillars and the silk bed that Infanta Heliaxa ordered left there when she was captured. All of this you have already been told. Going toward the spring and then drawing near it, they saw a very large serpent stretched out on the bed. Seeing them, it raised its head and hissed. However, the knights spurred their horses and went to attack it as fast as their horses could run. The serpent raised up and began to flee toward some boulders that were nearby. The knights followed it very courageously, although their horses were too afraid to overtake it. When the serpent felt harried, it began to raise an outcry that sounded like that of a woman in distress. At that moment, four well-armed knights on handsome horses came from the mountain shouting and saying:

"Don't touch the damsel or you're dead men."

Then the opposing knights clashed fiercely, and their lances flew into the air in pieces; but none of them fell, so they grabbed their swords, and the Christian knights turned to attack the knights of the mountain. However, the latter said:

"Since the damsel is safe, we have nothing else to do here, nor do we have any other orders."

Reining their horses in the other direction, they plunged into some dense thickets, and they were seen no more. The others, turning to the serpent, saw it at the mouth of a cave they could not reach. Therefore, they left it and returned to their journey laughing about what had happened. Wishing to make some progress, they looked ahead and saw a knight at the spring who was wearing magnificently beautiful arms and who was letting his horse take a drink. They turned toward him and said:

"Knight, who are you?"

"Why do you ask?" he said.

"Because we want to know if it suits us to joust with you," they said.

"For that," said the knight, "it's not necessary to know who I am; for, although there are three of you, I shall not leave you until I test the mettle of foreign knights such as you."

Hearing this, they marvelled at how daringly he spoke to them. Talanque, who had already taken up his arms, said:

"Knight, in that case, I want you to test what you've said."

After they both moved apart some distance, their horses charged at each other, and they struck each other's shields with such powerful blows that Ta-

lanque's lance was burst into pieces. But the other knight's lance remained intact, and Talanque was knocked out of his saddle so smoothly that he scarcely felt the fall. His companions were amazed to see this. Next Maneli charged him, and he too was knocked down in the same manner. The same happened to Belleriz. Seeing themselves unhorsed by a single knight, they looked at each other in amazement. Then they challenged the knight to battle with swords, for they wanted to combat him one on one and without any deception. He said to them:

"I have been ordered not to do any more of this."

Then, spurring his horse, he rode off into the mountain. The knights remounted with the intention of following him, but on their left they heard some very doleful voices coming from the foothills. Leaving the way they intended to take, they rushed toward the voices to see what caused them. Entering the first thicket, they saw a naked and dishevelled woman running toward them shouting, as a lion chased her. It reached her at the very moment they saw her, and with its sharp claws it tore her back open. The knights felt great pity for her and wanted to help her by killing the lion, but it roared so fiercely that the horses bolted instantly, and their riders were unable to rein them in until they had run a long distance. By the time they returned they found neither the lion nor the woman. Belleriz said to them:

"Señores, if you don't turn away from this spring, we'll never cease being besieged by strange things. Infanta Melía left the things in this mountain we've just seen and infinitely more like them."

"My friend Belleriz," said Maneli, "if it weren't because we're charged with gathering information and returning with it, I tell you I would not leave here until I saw as many of these adventures as I could. But it will be good to leave them for now and go wherever it behooves us."

Leaving the spring and the mountain behind, they went another way until they arrived at a river bank where they saw about ten unarmed men and two women on palfreys. One of the ladies was very beautiful and marvellously well dressed. When the men saw the knights, they fled along the bank along which there was a dense stand of trees. Meanwhile the women were seized by the knights. Seeing themselves abandoned by their men and placed at the mercy of foreigners, they began to cry. Talanque said to them:

"Friends, don't cry, for we shall do nothing untoward either to you, because you're women, or to your men, because they're unarmed. But tell us the absolute truth, if you know it, about a certain thing."

The beautiful damsel was somewhat consoled by the courtesy the women were being paid, and she replied:

"Sires, ask what you please. If we know the answer, we shall tell you."

"Now tell us everything you know about King Armato," they said.

"What we know," she said, "is that the king you named was returned to his realm by a great wonder. He brought with him old Infanta Melía, who, like him, was held captive by the Christians, and another woman, who everyone says is one of the world's greatest sorceresses. They say her name is Urganda the Unknown, and she has been put in a tower that stands in a corner of the

plaza in Ctesifonte. Also, they say that Infanta Melía has bewitched her so thoroughly that the only way she can leave there is by Melía's consent."

"Then tell us," they said, "what King Armato is doing, or what he has done, since he returned from imprisonment."

"Sires," the damsel answered, "what he has done is give great thanks to the gods and give them abundant offerings for the good fortune they have bestowed on him. Also, it is said that he sent letters via many messengers to all the pagan kings of the Orient and to those on all the islands in the sea, asking them to come help him lay siege to Constantinople. Messengers have already returned saying that the number of people who are coming is so great that never before since the foundation of the world itself has such a multitude been seen."

"According to this news," said the knights upon hearing this, "it is best for us not to seek other strange adventures, for none can be as amazing as those we just had."

After assuring those women that no harm would come to them, the knights took the women with them and returned to Forbidden Mountain without anything inopportune happening on the return trip. They arrived at the mountain at one o'clock at night. In that place, they had the beautiful damsel tell Esplandián and the other knights the news you have heard about both Urganda and the numerous people King Armato was expecting. After dining very pleasurably and with all joining in the laughter over the stories about their adventures near Venturous Spring including the one in which a knight very easily unhorsed all three of them, everyone went to bed. Damsel Carmela took the two damsels with her, and when morning came, they were given their palfreys and allowed to go wherever they pleased.

126

How the good knight is informed by tips
That Tartario is plying the seas,
And they are, like a forest of trees,
Entirely covered with pagan ships;
And how the knight, wishing to find a
Remedy, sends a knight to discover
Firsthand the place where the great corsair
Plans to manoeuvre his armada.

The news you heard concerning the innumerable people who were coming made Esplandián and the knights very concerned, for they did not know what would be the best thing to do. Should they notify the emperor and then divide themselves among the three villas and defend themselves there? Or should they go enter Constantinople, because there they could defend themselves from whatever dangers they might face? Before they could make a de-

cision, the nephew of the emperor's admiral, who was also called Tartario, arrived in the port. The younger Tartario, while accompanying his uncle, was given command over the entire fleet in his uncle's absence, and he then made off with six heavy ships[1] so that he could become a corsair against the Turks, but when he failed to take any prizes from them, he took them from the Christians when he could. This Tartario, running with his ships to the region of Troy, saw so many pagan fleets arriving across the sea and anchoring in the great port of Ténedon that he was frightened by the sight of them. Even though he was a sinner, he had pity on the Christians who were about to face such a grave danger, and he decided to inform Esplandián and his companions about this so that they could take necessary corrective measures. So, after he passed through Esplandián's caravels, landed, and went up to the grand alcázar, he told them everything he saw. Furthermore, he insisted they understand clearly that no mention of a similarly great number of people could be found written anywhere, nor could it be found in anyone's memory. They thanked him for such a warning, and agreed that he and Belleriz would return in a small boat to survey those people and to watch to see if, when leaving the port, they set sail toward the villas they had seized, or in the direction of Constantinople. As soon as they knew this, they could take counsel about what action would be appropriate. This was immediately undertaken: Belleriz and the corsair Tartario, who repented the evil deeds he had done previously and decided to make amends by serving Jesus Christ, the world's Savior, with such acts that would help him be forgiven, departed across the sea to carry out their orders.

127

How Norandel and Count Frandalo were ordered by Esplandián to depart for Constantinople to inform the emperor about the Turks' great armada; and about what happened with Infanta Leonorina and Queen Menoresa.

When the two you just heard about departed, Esplandían and the other knights took counsel. They thought it would not be a good idea to wait for those pagan fleets to make the first move, for while they were deciding what action to take, some obstacle could arise to prevent it, and the emperor therefore would be in grave danger. It was better to risk losing or having to liberate those villas rather than lose such a notable place as Constantinople, for if the latter were lost, everything else would fall automatically. So, they decided

---

[1] These "heavy ships" are called *navíos gruesos* by GRM, which are roughly equivalent to *naos*, or ships used for cargo. A talented corsair would not have chosen *navíos* for his raids, as these ships are too slow and not very maneuverable. Tartario the Younger is obviously a callow corsair.

that Norandel, Count Frandalo, and all those peerless knights should go immediately and without delay to the emperor, with whom they should work to prepare the city's people with arms and ordnance. Also, they should have the emperor order victuals gathered and all of the people withdrawn into the strongest places; and they should tell him not to fear any attack no matter how frightening it might seem, because so many prime knights would come to his aid and service that his enemies would not dare await their arrival, or, if they did await them, they would all be killed or discomfitted. Meanwhile, Esplandián and the king of Dacia would wait where they were with Gandalín and Enil to bring succor, for there was no reason for them to move until Belleriz returned with sure information about where the pagan fleets would head.

That plan pleased Norandel very much, because whatever he might do would be witnessed personally by the queen, whom he loved very much, and for whom his heart was continually besieged by such great pains and mortal desires that he was being driven so crazy that if he were to lose hope he would lose his life. Likewise, Count Frandalo was pleased because in such an armed expedition he could serve the emperor by repaying the favors he had been granted. Moreover, none of the knights felt any less happiness considering that such an endeavor was the goal of their bliss: by serving the Lord, they would be able to show clear evidence of their bodies' valor and their hearts' zeal. And if it were foreseen by Him that their bodies would die there, He would have mercy on their souls and they would rest in glory forever. Then they were armed with the crusaders' arms Urganda had given them, and, setting out to sea with their horses, they arrived at the port of Constantinople, where they were received with great pleasure by the emperor. He asked them why they were returning so soon. Norandel gave him the news they received on Forbidden Mountain. He told the emperor how he was informed, and he said that they and Esplandián thought the best recourse was for the knight and his men to remain on the mountain in order to be able to come to the rescue if it were necessary and for them to serve the emperor by joining him in the city. Also, they told him everything else you heard.

The emperor, who never ceased to be shaken by the prophecy after he heard it, thought then that its words were being irremediably fulfilled. But, with confidence in God, whom he wished to serve, and in order to have whatever ill might overcome him imputed to fortune rather than to Him, he decided to set up a defense with great, zealous diligence. Following that, he issued an order to bring many arms to the city, most of his empire's fighting men, and all the provisions that could be found. In addition, in concert with those knights, he provided everything else that was necessary. On her father's advice, Leonorina sent a message to Norandel and Count Frandalo via one of her damsels to visit her along with any other knights who wanted to see her, for she wished to speak with them because she was very pleased by their arrival. Carrying out her command, they went to see her in her abode,[1] and they

[1] The Spanish term here is *posada*. Strictly speaking it is a resting place, but, as Cov.

found her on her magnificent dais being attended by Queen Menoresa and many other duennas and damsels of the upper nobility. Seeing them, she rose to greet them. They kneeled and kissed her hands. Norandel approached his lady the queen whom he loved very much and who loved him very much in return, although she had not shown him signs of it. Kneeling before her, he insisted on kissing her hands, but she pulled them back and bade him rise. Realizing he was before her, his flesh was trembling from the great pleasure his heart was feeling, and, with the kind of confusion that often happens in similar circumstances, he said to her:

"Lady, now I consider myself blessed, because fortune has favored me by bringing me to this place where I am most needed and where, in your presence and in your service, I can carry out what my will most desires. I shall either die in your service or I shall do this in such a way that, given the very pained love my heart holds for you, you would be committing a signal wrong if you did not love me and take me for your knight. But if I were to lose all hope for what I have said, I would gladly welcome death, because it would cure the painful torment I feel more bitterly and more mortally than death itself."

With that, he could not keep tears from filling his eyes. The queen, who was watching him closely, saw that she had complete power and authority over him. Knowing she loved him more than her own life, it occurred to her that, given the way her knight's great courage was wedded to a passionate love for her, he would attempt such feats of arms in the first battle that he would place his life in grave peril. As the thought of this prospect gave her great pain, she said:

"Ami, señor, I do not want you to engage in exploits for my sake that would be judged more as madness than as courage just so you can hope to win me, for I fear that in the very process of winning me you may risk losing me. If you said those words to me so that I would accept you as my knight, here and now I so receive you. But I do so on condition that you moderate your zeal wisely, for wisdom is what gives knights just acclaim and allows them to do the right thing in all they undertake. When they go outside these bounds, although they retain the honor due their valor, their reputation for prudence is spoiled. Therefore, as in all other things, I want you to obey the commandment I have just given you."

When Norandel heard this, his pleasure was so great that he almost fainted, and he was incapable of answering her, which caused the wound in his beloved's heart to increase. Then she lowered her head in all humility. Even though Leonorina was speaking with Count Frandalo and some of the other knights, she wondered intensely what the two lovers could be talking about. But so that they would not be hindered, she detained the others in deep discussion. After engaging in some light banter, she said to the Count:

"Friend, how goes it with my knight? Why did he not accompany you?"

---

says, it can mean simply abode or house. GRM has varied his vocabulary here, for he usually uses terms such as "apartment," "chamber," and the like in this context.

"Lady," he answered, "the knight, who deserves to belong only to you and to God, has been full of heartache due to absence from his amie. If it were not for this important news, which has made him forget everything else, you would discover what he would do here to be liberated from his distress. However, as I say, this is so important that he refuses to concentrate on anything other than concluding this challenge successfully. He has remained behind waiting to discover where all those ships and people are going to head. If they come here, as it is said they will, then he will send messengers with urgent letters to so many top knights telling them to join him here that no matter how many foes there are, none will escape his grasp but those who are dead or lost."

"May God grant it to happen as you say, my good friend," said Leonorina.

"So shall it be," he said. "As for you, milady, while we are engaged in action, place yourself where you can watch, and there you will see the stuff of which those your knight is waiting for are made."

After these words, they departed from the ladies and went to see the emperor, who was waiting for them.

128

How Esplandián writes letters that are shown below after finding out that the Turks' great armada weighed anchor for Constantinople.

Ten days after the knights left Esplandián behind on Forbidden Mountain, the messengers returned to him with the news he expected the corsair Tartario and Belleriz would send him. From four Turks they seized at night in a small boat that belonged to the grand armada, Esplandián's two knights found out that King Armato and his son Infante Alforax were already at sea with as many people and ships as could be supplied and that they had rendezvoused with the other multitude. Then, the day after Tartario and Belleriz seized the four Turks, the united pagan fleets left for Constantinople seemingly without fixing on any other destination. Tartario and Belleriz did not doubt this, because they waited long enough to see the fleet sail past them, leaving the villas of Galacia and Alfarín well behind. Hearing this, Esplandián decided to send a letter via Enil to the emperor of Rome, who owed a great debt to his father, Amadís. Also, he sent a letter of embassy to his uncle, Don Florestán, king of Sardinia. The letters read as follows:

Letter to the emperor of Rome:

To His Highness, emperor of Rome, I, Esplandián, servant of Jesus Christ, Knight of the Shining Star,[1] kiss your hands via my messenger.

"Remember, sire, that the Lord is richer in nobility and virtue than wealth or estate. The Lord, I repeat, by His divine grace, placed you in such a high seigniory that today you are one of the major ministers whose duty it is to maintain and propagate the holy Catholic faith.[2] Therefore, more than anyone else, your position obligates you to eschew restful pleasures and follow his service by dedicating your person and great empire tirelessly to the work of defending His holy law. But if you do not do this, the multitudes who obey you, the sweet pleasures that surround you, and all the other temporal things all mortals engage in—which we hope will be converted into eternal life—will be dissolved into bitter draughts and wretched affliction. If we do not work for Him, nothing will save us: neither great valor, nor courageous hearts, nor abundant treasure, nor numerous vassals. Nothing will avail us. Moreover, I believe it is true that this message has not come to your attention only recently. Coming to the point, you should know that, while I was on this mountain accompanied by other noble knights who had abandoned the vain folly that had occupied them previously, they and I have come to know the truth, wherefore we have made war on the infidels who are the cruel enemies of our

---

[1] Esplandián gives himself this title without previous explanation or preparation. Despite the suddenness of the change of name, the reference is clear: the Bright and Morning Star (i.e., Shining Star) is a development from his name as explained in chap. 1, and it represents the hero's close identification with Christ, also named in this passage. Moreover, the title of Knight of the Shining Star is in apposition to the reference to Jesus Christ. This "star" is Venus, identified with both the Greek goddess of love and with Christ. Esplandián's previous appellations in bk. V are the Knight of the Serpent and the Black Knight. Now he gives himself a new name following his father's example and anticipating Don Quixote's parodical name changes. It is a commonplace that a change of name signals a change of identity.

[2] From the fall of Byzantium in 1453 and throughout the remainder of GRM's life, the unity of Christian European states against the Moslem world was a major topic of international politics. To GRM and other westerners, Rome (here represented by the emperor of Rome and his empire) was the key to such unity. From 1469 onward the Ottoman Empire, for example, was threatening central Europe as far as Budapest. Meanwhile, during the period of GRM's youth, Spain seemed to be adding to disintegration rather than unity. While King Juan II of Aragón (Fernando *el Católico*'s father) was working via diplomacy and matrimonial politics to put together a "great [anti-French] Western alliance," Castilla was mired in a civil war centered on dynastic politics. After Isabel consolidated her power and undertook the crusade against Granada, the disintegration of the West would have seemed to GRM to have moved in the direction expressed in Esplandián's letter in this chap. See Luis Suárez Fernández, *Los Reyes Católicos: la conquista del trono* (Madrid: Ediciones Rialp, 1989). One of the few European monarchs to support Constantinople was Alfonso V of Aragón and Sicily, Fernando *el Católico*'s grandfather. But even he had a selfish motive for such support since he nourished a distant claim to the emperorship of Constantinople.

true Lord. First we seized two of the strongest seaport villas in their seigniory, and then we defended them with help from the very noble and very Catholic emperor of Constantinople. Just when we were prepared to wrest all their other territories from them, the pagan king, Armato, in order to save himself and to destroy us, issued a call summoning all paganism to come to his aid. All pagans left their lands eagerly in great fleets filled with innumerable people, the likes of which have never before been assembled in one place, and they have now arrived in the large port of Ténedon intent on besieging the great city of Constantinople. If, for their good fortune but our misfortune, they capture it, they will have no difficulty capturing first the entire empire and later anything they find in their path. Hence, august emperor, holding faith with your Lord, your virtue, and your own great courage, come help us apply the major remedy required by such a perilous affliction. I leave the rest for the messenger to say."

130

About another letter sent to his uncle Don Florestán, king of Sardinia.

Noble king of Sardinia, my uncle Don Florestán:

"I am writing a letter for the emperor[1] which Enil will show you. Not only is it necessary for you to act on it too, but also you need to recall that your past deeds of prowess were dedicated more to testing yourself in situations of personal danger than to the good of your soul.[2] Well then, the almighty Lord has brought you to such a mature age, given you such a seigniory, and exalted you so much in the world's eyes that you should make sure your end does not happen outside His service. When the end of our lives is as it ought to be—that is, when we correct our earlier, youthful errors—we achieve the unseen, sublime truth, and what we do see remains as a foolish illusion, which is what it is. The rest I remit to Enil because he will speak to you at greater length."

131

How Esplandián sent Gandalín to ask for help from the kings and grandees

Having dispatched these two letters, Esplandián decided to have Gandalín go see his father and tell him about the critical and dangerous pass in which Christendom would be placed if a remedy were not applied. Likewise, he asked Gandalín to tell Amadís on his behalf that the following should be summoned: Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa; Galvanes; King Don Bruneo;[1] Don Cuadragante, señor of Sansueña; Dragonís, king of Deep Island;[2] Gasquilán, king of Sweden;[3] and Agrajes. Esplandián even thought that it would be a good idea for Gandalín, if he agreed, to inform his lord King Perión, for, if he could not come in person, he would be present in spirit, or he would send his people. Gandalín was also charged with going to kiss the hands of his grandparents, King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena, to tell them about everything that was happening, and to ask them, since the almighty Lord had given them His grace to end their lives in such holy reclusion, to help with their prayers and with those of all other religious people in that realm. Also, he was to tell his father that it seemed to Esplandián that all Christian fleets should meet in the port of Firm Island so that they could all depart from there together and that this should be done with all haste because at that moment siege was already being laid to Constantinople. Gandalín was to give his father a letter that read as follows:

132

Esplandián's letter to his father:

Noble and valiant king of Great Britain, my sire and father:

"Your son Esplandián, servant of Jesus Christ, Knight of the Shining Star, hereby kisses your hands. Now, sir, the time has come when you can repay the debts you owe for the things fortune previously gave you. The first debt is owed to our Lord God, who gave you greater knightly and royal gifts than all the world's princes have and by which none of them can match your honor and glory. The second one is the heavy burden you took on when the noble emperor of Constantinople gave you his help and favor at the time you were in the direst need of it, the result of which was your elevation to the highest position among all mortals. But then, regarding the third one, it behooves you to beg forgiveness, for it is when you wasted your time and energy on countless grave perils in pursuit of worldly vainglory; but in comparison with your three debts, if you pursue truth and reason and choose to join us in our present circumstances, all your debts will be expiated. Because the messenger is who he is,[1] and because he is informed about everything that bears on our great, needy necessity,[2] I end here, and I kiss the hands of the queen, my mother and lady."

133

How the emperor of Rome and Don Florestán received the letters and reached an agreement together that Don Florestán would immediately depart for the port of Firm Island with a great fleet prepared by the emperor.

With these letters about which you have just heard, the two knights Enil and Gandalín left Forbidden Mountain in a little boat with two men as guides. Rowing across the high seas with no little danger, the highest and most powerful Lord of the entire earth, seeing that they were journeying in His service, made them arrive after fifteen days in a Roman port called Laudato.[1] Landing there, Enil took his arms, mounted his horse, and rode to the

---

[1] Gandalín was Amadís's bosom friend and squire through bks. I, II and III.

[2] The preceding clause in the original Spanish reads as follows: *que va informado de todas las otras cosas a esta tan gran necessidad necessarias.* This is the kind of redundant rhetoric that became stereotyped in the popular genre of Renaissance chivalric novels in Spain after GRM and which caused Cervantes to satirize them. Still, phrases such as "needy necessity" are rare in GRM's Amadís Cycle, but they appear more in bk. V than in the previous four bks., and their frequency increases from this point to the end of the novel.

[1] Laudato is not named previously in this bk. or in bks. I to IV, nor is it immediately identifiable with a concrete geographical place near Rome. However, Clavdivs Ptolemævs does show a port town called "Porto" near "Roma" on his atlas of 1477. See Clavdivs Ptolemævs, *Cosmographia*, n.p.

place he knew the emperor would be, because they told him the king, Don Florestán, never left his side. Presenting himself to him after kissing his hands, he gave them Esplandián's letters. Taking his letter, the emperor laughed and said:

"Enil, my friend, if perchance this is like the other message you brought me in the king's encampment at Vindilisora, how disturbed that would make me!"[2]

"Sire," said Enil, "although this message is much shorter in length, it is much greater in content, because there is a big difference between a vow made to men and one made to the true Lord."

"Now it seems what I said in jest will turn out to be true," said the emperor.

Opening the letter, he read it, and he was most amazed and joyful because it occurred to him that in such a chivalric expedition he could repay God for some of the great favors He had done for him. The king, Don Florestán, read his letter first and then the emperor's, and he said:

"Blessed be the world's Lord who has allowed us to live long enough to join such a notable enterprise and thereby to expiate the follies we committed in the past against His realm."

Then, without delay, it was decided that the brave and zealous king of Sardinia would command the emperor's large fleet which would be provisioned with the best men available in the entire empire and with his own men, and that he would then lead it immediately to the port of Firm Island, which is the place Enil told them that everyone was to meet. Hence, from this mission many people were gathered, but no more mention will be made about them until the proper time.

134

How Gandalín presented letters to King Amadís and Queen Oriana, and about the exceeding pleasure they received from his visit.

After Gandalín departed from Enil in the little boat, he took port in Great Britain, and after landing he went to London where his lord King Amadís was. Who could tell you how pleased they were to see him when he presented himself to the king and to Queen Oriana? With tears in their eyes they em-

---

[2] Arquisil, before he becomes the emperor of Rome, is defeated in single combat by Amadís in bk. III, chap. 70. The latter sets him free on condition that he come to him whenever summoned. Arquisil then goes to serve Lisuarte, but when sides are drawn up in the impending war between Amadís and Lisuarte, his father-in-law to be, Amadís calls Arquisil to join him on Firm Island. Enil took the message to him at Vindilisora in Great Britain. After the former emperor of Rome is defeated and killed by Amadís's forces, the hero makes Arquisil the new emperor of Rome because of his noble attributes, and then Arquisil marries Lisuarte's second daughter, Leonoreta. For these reasons, both Lisuarte and Amadís respected Arquisil. For the reference to the former visit to Vindilisora, see CB, II, 1434–35.

braced him again and again, and they recalled to their minds' eyes how often in times past they were saved from cruel death and restored to life's delights by his counsel and comfort. Although for the time being God had placed them in their current exalted estate wherein they were señores of so many kingdoms, they were exhausted by constant, irritating travail and they would gladly have exchanged this style of life for their former lives of sweet delights even though lovers' passions and pleasures also usually bring great bitterness in their train. At the moment Gandalín arrived, if they could have controlled their own destiny and if it would not have meant sacrificing their consciences and risking their honor, they would have preferred to return to their former lives rather than live as they were. For example, those who refuse to consider future joy or sadness, who quite greedily spend all their thought and energy on amassing worldly goods, and who forget that those who possess them suffer great torments, pains and difficulties on account of them in this world and in the next where salvation is no longer possible, all these people, I say, should procure worldly things with more moderation, because, as temporal things come to an end, they should not be loved for their end. Ancient writings and the greatest sages show us the truth of this, for they praised poverty in their famous sayings with zealous certainty.

135

How, distressed by justifiable fear
And full of sad tears and litigious strife,[1]
Fearing the dangers to the father's life,
The mother refuses a plea for help to hear;
But then, drawing strength from her oppression,
She chooses what she refused to dignify,
And, seeing it a sign from the Lord on High,
She sends the father to guide the good son.

Well, after Gandalín gave the letter to King Amadís, and after he delivered the rest of the message orally he was charged to bring him, the king was greatly pleased and said to Queen Oriana:

---

[1] The original Spanish phrase is *todo letijo* in all versions. Gay. tries to make sense of this by proposing that *letijo* (which rhymes with *hijo* [son] at the end of the next line) means "happiness, joy," and that the word is derived from Latin *lætitio* [happiness], even though, as he says, the context seems to require the opposite sense, that of "sadness." We propose, to the contrary, that GRM, who has shown a tendency to use legalisms, deliberately chose *letijo* knowing that the Latin root, *lit*, means strife. Hence, our translation, following GRM's practice of using two words to augment one general unit of meaning, expresses the reinforced phrase *todo letijo* [all litigation] by use of a hendiadys, "litigious strife." Keith Whinnom attests *letigio, letijo, sin letijo*, and *litigados pensamientos* in Diego de San Pedro. Whinnom glosses the last of these phrases as meaning "doubts," "internal conflict." See Diego de San Pedro, vol. 1, op. cit., 19b.

"Milady, look at this letter from your son, hear what Gandalín says, and then lend your help so that he can be succored; but please do not present me with some unreasonable obstacle, because the arrival of all those he would like to gather around him depends on my departure."

Seeing how great the danger was, Oriana said:

"Oh, Santa María! Help me! What will become of me? I've lost my son, and now his father wishes to be lost too!"

With that, she began to cry and wring her hands.

"What is this about?" said Gandalín. "Don't you remember you're the daughter and wife of the world's two best kings, and you're the mother of that blessed knight the likes of whom the world has never seen from its creation until our own time? How can you show such weakness at a time like this, when all Christendom is about to be lost and your son torn to pieces? Of course, no one expected such a reaction from a distinguished person like you who has no equal anywhere in the world."

"Gandalín, my friend, do not blame me. Given the anguish, pains, and great sorrow I have suffered throughout my life in order to arrive where I am now, and given how often I wished to die, now, just when I thought I was beyond all that, you bring me the gravest news of all. I wish it would please God in His infinite goodness and mercy to make me a simple and forgotten woman and to remove me from all of these great seigniories. Oh! Woe is me! What good are they to me? Does reigning mean doing nothing other than either punishing or saving everyone? Does it only mean having my afflicted soul's salvation constantly threatened? And more than that, does it mean that every hour and second more things must arise to torment my mind, and that I lose all memory of pleasure or comfort?"

"Milady," said King Amadís as he took her hand, "will you allow your world-renowned son to be killed because he was not succored by his father? In God's name, milady, I hope you never commit such a great cruelty. Well, besides that, everyone knows I am obligated to that emperor, and you, my beloved lady, know well when I became his very close friend. Therefore, you must endure the fact that God made you a ruler with the same spirit with which you endured earlier misfortunes when you were a powerless damsel. Let your heart's wisdom increase to the same level as the high station you occupy now; for if the two do not match, they can neither rule you nor reconcile you very well."

"Ah, Fortune!" said the queen as she embraced the king. "How often you raised me up only to cast me down with heavy blows later! Certainly, the only thing I can say about you is that, if we were to think more in terms of reason than false enthusiasm, your immoderateness is actually beneficial moderation. Since you, Fortune, guide all worldly things, I submit to your law, and I beg you to be content with my past adversities and to be benign and merciful in the future. Although I direct my plea to you, Fortune, I am in reality only imploring the almighty Lord, whose will rules over your power."[2]

---

[2] Oriana's apostrophe to Fortune is an excellent summation of the "theology" regard-

About the strong feeling King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena show after Gandalín relates Esplandián's message to them.

After Gandalín witnessed Queen Oriana's passionate outburst, he said to the king:

"Sire, I have to carry out your son's order for me to kiss the hands of his grandparents, King Lisuarte and the queen. As for what he's written you, take action immediately since it's the most notable and most dangerous thing that could have arisen on earth."

Taking his leave of Amadís, Gandalín went to Miraflores Castle, where, when the former king heard of his arrival, he ordered Gandalín brought to him, because he was certain he would hear news of his grandson, whom he loved more than himself. As Gandalín was entering, he saw the king saying

---

ing the relationship between a medieval concept of deterministic and pagan fortune versus the Catholic, anti-pagan doctrine of free will that more or less dominated the period of the Catholic monarchs. Howard R. Patch points out that Dante, in the seventh canto of the *Inferno*, lets Virgil deliver the first major statement in the Middle Ages which clarifies the relationship between Fortune and God: "the capricious goddess becomes a ministering angel entirely subservient to the Christian God" (Patch, *The Goddess Fortuna in Mediaeval Literature*, Nevertheless, the Christian disclaimer in Oriana's last sentence above ("Although I direct my plea . . .") is virtually as transparent as the commonplace disclaimers in the *converso* Rojas's *Celestina*. In this sense, Oriana's plea to "Fortuna" reads like a gentle preamble to the considerably harsher railing against Fortune Rojas places in Pleberio's mouth in his final, desperate soliloquy at the end of *Celestina: "O fortuna variable, ministra y mayordoma de los temporales bienes . . ."* [Oh changeable fortune, ministress and stewardess of worldly goods] (*Celestina*, 338). Oriana's plight is also reminiscent of Lydgate's rendering of Boccaccio's envoy to Fortune in *The Fall of Princes*:

> Is ther any gretter euidence
> Of worldli trouble of worldli constaunce,
> Than seen princis from ther magnificence
> And from ther myhti roial [hih] puissaunce
> Vnwarli brouht bi Fortune to myschaunce,
> And ouerwhelmyd from ther tranquillite?
> Seeth heer a merour ful notable in sustaunce
> Of Lisymachus and queen Arsynoe.

(Lydgate, *Fall of Princes*, vol. 2, 568).

Closer to GRM, the Spanish poet and knight, Jorge Manrique (1440–79), apostrophizes Fortune

[Fortune, do not threaten me; even less, do not show me / a harsh gesture; / for your wars and your peace / I know them well, and therefore / I do not trust you.]
Jorge Manrique, *Obras*, ed. Vicente Beltrán (Barcelona: Libro Clásico, 1989), 174.

his hours under some very beautiful trees which were completely shading some fountains. Kneeling, he kissed his hands saying:

"Sire, I do this on behalf of the blessed knight, your grandson."

"Friend Gandalín," said the king very happily, "you are most welcome here. Tell me, how is this child of mine whom you mention?"

"Sire," he said, "he's very well in health, but in spirit he's so afflicted by sorrow that, for him, it's like being dead."

"What causes that?" asked the king.

"Sire," said Gandalín, "the greatest cause that was ever known to exist."

Then he told the king the current state of the entire affair. Also, he relayed what Esplandián asked him to: namely, as was said, that Esplandián begged the king to help him by praying. Hearing this, the king lowered his head, went into deep thought, and did not respond for a while. In this way, he neither spoke to Gandalín, nor did the latter dare say anything to the king, because he wondered what caused such a profound silence. So he decided not to move from his presence until the king's mood came to an end. Recovering, the king said:

"Friend Gandalín, go in to see the queen and give her news about this young man whom she loves so much, but do not for any reason tell her the truth about what is happening; rather, tell her that Esplandián became seasick while coming to visit us, that he stopped on Firm Island, and that, as Master Helisabad says, it is necessary to bring him here where he was born and raised; for otherwise, his life would be in danger."

"Sire," he replied, "I shall say as you order."

Then he went into the queen's chamber, and, kissing her hands, he said:

"Mistress, that boy of yours, Esplandián, who today is the brightest star of all knights who bear arms, had the bad fortune to become ill while he was eagerly coming to this land, so he stopped at Firm Island. I was ordered by Master Helisabad to come to my lords, the king and queen, to find a way to have him transported here immediately, because otherwise his illness could worsen very dangerously."

"My friend Gandalín," said the queen, "for as much pleasure as your presence gives me, the news you bring is so upsetting that I cannot guess what my sad heart feels, but I do know that it is suffering more than my will would like. I feel this despite the fact that it is so natural and common for people to fall ill that, by applying the right medicine, our troubled spirits are greatly relieved. On the contrary, this is not how I feel. Rather, I am so deeply disturbed that it is as if my mind were divining other, much more painful and sadder things."

"Mistress," Gandalín said, "as for now there is no cause for letting sadness dominate happiness. As for the future, no one is prescient enough to know what the result of one's suspicion will be. Every day we see how our imagination fails us most of the time. Therefore, in those who are very wise, it is best to be optimistic about those things that the almighty Lord has ordained."

"Everything you say, my friend Gandalín," said the queen, "I realize is very true; but humanity is so weak, and we are so subjugated by our human condi-

tion that, forgetting the divine condition, we cannot help but follow our all too human ways, and that is what I am doing. Clearly, although in the past, as you know quite well, I was constantly distressed by frights and shocks, none of them hit me as hard as this news; none of them ever caused my troubled heart to feel so faint."

The discussion you just heard took place between the noble queen and Gandalín without them knowing its full import. However, not much time passed before it became manifest that what the queen divined, as if she were dreaming it, actually happened in reality, as this story will tell in what follows.

137

How Amadís informed his father King Perión, his uncle Don Galvanes, and the king of Sobradisa about his son Esplandián's need for succor.

After leaving Miraflores Castle and returning to Amadís's presence in London, Gandalín told him everything that happened during his visit to King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena. Amadís responded to him:

"Friend Gandalín, although he is a famous king, as you know, I cannot believe that either his deep thought or the queen's exceeding sadness occurred in vain; for it often happens that before things come to pass they are perceived with unexpectedly clear signs of sadness. But, let's leave this to God, who controls all things, for Him to direct it to His service. As for us, who wander blindly through these things, let us follow reason's dictates. It occurs to me that now you should add a little more to the travails of your long and hard journey by taking a letter to my brother, the king of Sobradisa; because, as soon as he is informed about this affair by you rather than by anyone else at all, it will cause him to cast his calm, quiet life into oblivion and to plunge into the adventure. Then you shall take another letter to my father, King Perión. Both it and your presence will occasion further aid."

"Sire," said Gandalín, "I was sent on this mission by your son because he believed I am capable of carrying it out better than anyone else; therefore, I consider whatever can help advance my mission a cause of repose rather than travail."

"Then take this letter," said the king. "I leave the rest to you."

The letter read as follows:

138

About the letter King Amadís sent to his brother Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa.

Beloved brother, king of Sobradisa:

"I hereby inform you that fortune, the power that reveals and turns world-

ly things of the favorable and unfavorable kind upside down, is at present showing us a wonderfully favorable face, as Gandalín will inform you. What he will tell you should cause incomparably great joy in our minds and even much more in our souls where the better, truer part of joy resides. Therefore, brother, remember how we spent the past in frivolities that often brought us to the edge of death. While our bodies remain in this world, our souls are condemned if we do not amend them properly. Therefore, it is right for us to return to true reason and for us to recall very carefully what we have nearly consigned to oblivion, which is what happens due to our sins; for, observing the present and our hope for the future, we often think very little about overcoming our past faults.[1] In the challenge you will hear about, you can put your strong, hard arm to good use; you can exercise your brave heart's great zeal; and you can achieve the sublime glory your efforts merit. Also, please send this letter to my uncle, Don Galvanes, who I also wish would take it to heart."

After handing this letter to Gandalín for him to take to Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa, and to Don Galvanes, lord of Mongaza Island, King Amadís handed him another for King Perión.

139

About the letter King Amadís sent his father, King Perión de Gaula.

Exalted King Perión de Gaula, my sire and my father:

"If you were granted immense fame in the past, by which Your Highness' great prowess and worth are bruited throughout the world, then in the present you have an opportunity to double the victories of your body and soul. Like youth, temporal things naturally bring in their train arrogance, covetousness, vainglory, and many other vices offensive to the almighty Lord; and because of youth's energy, it is very difficult for us to apply moderation to resist them. However, advanced age advises and commands us to overcome those vices with their opposites: we must turn our arrogance against the infidels, who oppose our holy law; our boiling hot covetousness we should use to destroy them; and we should overcome our vainglory in fulfilling the promise we are given of full heavenly bliss. And because all this bears on what Gandalín will tell you, I beg you, Your Highness, to act on the remedy that can be applied in this case."

---

[1] Samuel Gili Gaya cites this passage (which he mistakenly identifies as belonging to chap. 83) as evidence that GRM has made Amadís apostasize his own self. He calls Amadís's change of ethics "an unpardonable artistic falsification of the character who was a model of all virtues" (Gili Gaya, "Las sergas como crítica," 107). The same passage might also view psychological change as a sign of modernity in which the character, rather than being frozen in a standardized posture, is given realistic three dimensionality.

How King Amadís married Gandalín to the damsel from Denmark, made him a count and gave him the castles and land that remained from what had formerly belonged to Arcaláus the Enchanter.

After taking care of this matter, the king said to Gandalín:

"My friend, before you leave here, I want you to marry the damsel from Denmark; for you know how, after God, she gave me life.[1] Both you and I are fully aware of her excellent personal qualities. The queen has given her a county as a guerdon for her good services, and I have been holding for you all of Arcaláus the Enchanter's remaining castles and lands.[2] You know that I was enchanted in one of them, that that evil man made me face a life or death situation, and that you too were thrown into that cruel dungeon with little hope of escaping.[3] But, leaving aside everything that shows us the almighty Lord's great power, bear in mind that not only were we freed from that prison for our great joy, but also the Lord permitted Arcaláus's highly beloved and strongly defended estate to come into your hands without you even dreaming such a thing could happen. This shows us fickle fortune's great power. Hence, my good friend, since I owe you this gesture as my lordly duty and since it is an honor for you,[4] let us not delay putting it into effect: I shall send a message to your father for him to make provision immediately for occupying those castles, and I shall send Don Guilán, duke of Bristol, whom I ordered to besiege and seize them,[5] to hand them over to you."

"Sire, I am your servant," said Gandalín. "I have never at any time refused to do anything that pertained to your service; in this, as in all things, may your will be fulfilled; for your will is mine."

Then he was immediately engaged and married to the damsel from Denmark, and neither of them had second thoughts about this, for they loved each other deeply and faithfully. And he was called count and she countess; for their great service and loyalty merited such titles. After their wedding feasts ended, Count Gandalín departed with the letters, about which you have heard, but he was ordered by the king to return via the same route because Amadís wanted to take Gandalín with him in his fleet. Amadís provided him with four squires for his service and everything else necessary for the trip.[6]

141

How Amadís informs Don Gasquilán, Don Bruneo, and Don Cuadragante via letter about his son Esplandián's urgent and present need.

After the departure of Gandalín about which you were just told, King Amadís sent a knight called Handro[1] who had recently come into his service. He was the mistress of Flanders' first cousin, and he was renowned for armed deeds in his land. Hearing that the world's most prized knights were leaving their lands and going to serve God in Esplandián's company, he too wished to follow this course, and so he decided to go to Great Britain and join the first fleet from there that was going to Constantinople. Since King Amadís had heard about his prowess, he showed him high honors by asking him to take to the road with a letter for Gasquilán, king of Sweden, and others for Don Bruneo, king of Arabia, and Cuadragante, lord of Sansueña. The letters read as follows:

142

King Amadís's letter to Gasquilán, king of Sweden:

If you, courageous king of Sweden,[1] are willing to risk your noble person in grievous dangers and to suffer sorrow in order to serve the lady and princess whom you love so deeply[2]—which is one of the most trivial of temporal pursuits that can be imagined, as I have proved by first-hand experience—then how much more reason do you have to serve the Lord for whom everything evil is alien and against whose great power nothing can offer the slightest resistance. As I can attest that your courageous heart will never be satisfied except by undertaking exploits that seem impossible to achieve, great king, I wish to advise you to seek those exploits where your eternal soul can enjoy the glory that will last forever even though your earthly body may suffer. Because the circumstance to which I am referring is so momentous and because it would require a very long text to explain every detail of it, please refer to the messenger for the rest. Trust his words, for with your trust our holy faith will be increased."

143

Another letter from King Amadís to Don Bruneo, king of Arabia, and to Don Cuadragante, señor of Sansueña.

Beloved brothers, Don Bruneo, king of Arabia, and Don Cuadragante, señor of Sansueña:

"Although you are comforted by the great deeds you have accomplished in the past to increase your praises and spread the renowned prowess of your noble persons, and although you are now living carefree lives, I send you news of much more virtuous and more profitable deeds. You will have to abandon the restful comforts that our bodies enjoy during a life of pleasurable delights; instead you will have to face fatiguing anguish in your spirits and

---

[1] As noted previously (chap. 131), Gasquilán is called Gasquilán the Idle, but he is described by the omniscient narrator as courageous and valiant in battle. In fact, he was elevated to the kingship upon the death of his uncle because his bravery was so renowned. In bk. III, when Gasquilán hears that war has broken out between Amadís and Lisuarte, he leaves his land to join Lisuarte's forces and to test himself against Amadís, who defeats him in single combat before the general fighting starts. Therefore, Amadís's admiring salutation is probably not ironic, despite Gasquilán's nickname, which is probably due to the fact that he is the son of a giant, Madarque of Sad Island. Furthermore, Amadís respects knights like Gasquilán who confront danger in their ladies' names. Avalle-Arce suggests that Gasquilán's name is derived from Gosenain/Gasenain, a character found in the Prose Tristan and the Prose Merlin. If Avalle-Arce is right, then GRM has changed an Arthurian dwarf into a Montalvan giant. See AArce, 269 and 353–55.

[2] The lady is never named in GRM's entire Amadís Cycle.

embrace the travails that guarantee winning the true pleasures of a repose that knows no end. But because this case deserves to be conveyed to you by word of mouth rather than in writing, listen to the messenger who will tell you about it more extensively."

144

About how the knight Handro departed with the letters Amadís gave him.

Well then, Handro the knight took his arms, horse, and a squire with him, he boarded a caravel, and he crossed the sea with the prime intention of fulfilling the duties his señor assigned him. What success he had will be narrated later. Now, however, the story turns to tell what the pagans' great fleets and masses of people did in the meantime concerning the siege they were laying around the great city of Constantinople.[1]

145

How the Turks arrive in the grand seaport
Of Constantinople with evil intent,
With sails in a wind of perfidious portent
And showing the vain pride of their ill sort;
Seeing the evil forces there exhibited,
Good Norandel and Frandalo the Strong
Sell their lives so dearly all the day long
And leave the bloody field covered with dead.

When the pagan multitudes arrived in the port of Ténedon of Troy, King Armato quickly joined them with a great fleet he had assembled and which he

---

[1] Sultan Mehmet II of the Ottoman Empire, a youth of nineteen, began the final encirclement of Constantinople in 1451. For readers of GRM's time, stories of the two-year siege of Constantinople, "the Queen of Cities, the New Jerusalem," were circulated widely throughout Western Europe by refugees from the last bastion of Christianity in Eastern Europe and Asia Minor. Just after describing the city's utter destruction, Doukas, one of the most important fifteenth-century chroniclers of the fall of Constantinople, apostrophizes the city in these moving words: "O City, City, head of all cities! O City, City, the center of the four corners of the earth! O City, City, the boast of Christians and the ruin of barbarians! O City, City, a second Paradise planted in the West and containing within many plants laden with spiritual fruits! Where is your beauty, O paradise?" (Doukas, *Decline and Fall*, 236). Another major source for the fall of Constantinople is George Sphrantzes' *Chronicon Maius* (ca. 1477), which circulated in Italy and almost certainly in Spain. Other accounts are: Nicolo Barbaro, *Giornale dell'Assedio di Constantinopoli*, ed. E. Cornet (Vienna, 1856); Leonikos Chalkokondyles, *Laonici Chalcocandylæ Historiarum Demonstrationes*; (ca. 1480), 2 vols. (Budapest, 1922–27); Demetrios Kydones, *Correspondence* (Vatican City, and Donald MacGillivray Nicol, *The End of the Byzantine Empire*

had provisioned with many well-armed men and as many victuals as were to be found. The king placed his son Infante Alforax in charge of the fleet because he was still unwell due to how much he had suffered in prison. Then, because there were so many of them, the pagans were filled with so much arrogance that they thought they could conquer not only that city but also the rest of the world. So, without further delay they departed for the great city. Thus, after seven days they arrived within sight of the city. There were so many ships that the seas were covered with them and scarcely a patch of water could be seen. Indeed, to those who watched them advance, they seemed like the mountains in a great sierra, or so the high waves made them seem. The emperor, those knights who were with him, as you have already heard, and all the rest of the people rushed to the places that were most vulnerable to a landing by sea, and there they prepared to defend themselves with great spirit and zeal. The Turks who were in the ships that were best rigged for approaching land arrived with a loud algarad, and at that moment those on the sea and those on the land became embroiled in a fierce battle fought with bows and crossbows, the arrows of which were flying through the air harder and faster than the densest rain. However, in the face of such stern resistance, those on the ships failed to reach land even though many of them jumped in the water, which was very shallow. As they did so, the Christians quickly engaged them and made some of them return unwillingly to their boats; the others were killed by the hands of Norandel, Count Frandalo, and their companions. Even so, the pagans were not prevented from landing; for they were spread out across such a broad front that the Christians could not draw on sufficient forces to withstand all of them, who, after landing and mounting their horses, numbered more than two hundred thousand. The Christians wanted to confront and engage them, but the emperor refused permission to do so saying that, if they were to fight against them, the others who remained at sea would land abruptly and be able to capture them while they were still fighting. Furthermore, he said that since it was useless to oppose so many of them, it would be better to withdraw to defend the city, because there the enemy's losses would be so high that they would be seriously endangered.

The crusader knights, who had never before turned their backs in any battle in which they had ever been involved, found it hard to accept this decision, but, recognizing that it was required by both reason and the emperor, they were forced to accept it. Thus, when the Christians began abandoning the port, the Turks left their ships as if they were pursuing a defeated army, and they rushed forward in impetuous disorder. Then and there you would have seen the great marvels Norandel and his comrades did defending their own men. Since the pagans were bearing few arms, and those they had were not very strong, Norandel's men wreaked such devastation among them that they covered the entire field across which they were retreating with dead and wounded enemies. Seeing how much damage they were receiving, the pagans slowed their advance. But then, the other group you heard about arrived. The latter screamed so loud that the Christians could not stand the uproar, and so they were forced to retreat more quickly. Hence, in this last attack, the Chris-

tians lost some footmen; but the city was close, and the others were all able to regroup by entering the city through the Aquiline Gate.[1]

At this time a young and magnificently armed pagan king advanced riding a beautiful horse. He moved so far from his troops that Norandel realized that he would have time to earn victory—if God were to give it to him—without risking any more danger than that which the young king might inflict on him.[2] So Norandel said to Count Frandalo:

"My friend, if you see the fight becoming bitter, look out after me."

Then he spurred his horse and charged forward with his sword in his hand—he had already broken his lance. Likewise, the king turned toward him and met him, striking him on his shield in such a way that his lance broke, but in passing by, Norandel hit him so hard on his head with his sword that Norandel knocked his helmet off and made it roll across the field. The king was so stunned that he lost his stirrups and was knocked nearly senseless. Then Norandel grabbed his horse's reins and began to lead it away with the king on it. Meanwhile, his own men saw the strait he was in and began charg-

---

[1] None of the many famous gates of Constantinople in the fifteenth century is known to us now by this name. AKCT translates it as "Gate Equiline." If GRM knew about the physical location of Constantinople, he would have known that the city is situated on a triangular peninsula bordered on the north by the Golden Horn, on the east by the Bosphorus, and on the south by the Sea of Marmora. Therefore, the only place for a land encounter such as is described in this chap., and like the one that overwhelmed the city in 1453, is on the west where there was a defensive system of three successive walls about 6.5 km long and in which there were twelve gates. The first main gate on the south end of the wall is now known as the Yediküle ("seven towers" in Turkish), but it was known in GRM's age as the Golden Gate because it was once entirely covered in gold. (One hundred meters to the south of this gate, at the shore of the Marmara is a smaller gate, which now functions as the main entrance to the city from the airport.) The Golden Gate was the city's main gate, and it gave access to the Triumphal Way which led to the old imperial palace at the far eastern side of the city. No doubt, if GRM's fictional space corresponds roughly with real space, this is the gate referred to as the "first gate" in chap. 147, and known as the Aquiline Gate. DCECH says that the term *aquileño* [aquiline] was a semi-learned term in 1464. Michael Maclagan says the Golden Gate was probably built in 388, and he describes it thus: "The plan is simple and imposing: a large arch between two lesser entries is flanked on the west by two great marble pylons. In front of them is an outwork and a deep moat. This was the assembly point for the great procession when an emperor returned in triumph to the city. Here came, for example, Heraclius after his recovery of the True Cross, or Basil II after his great slaughter of the Bulgars." Maclagan, *The City of Constantinople* (London: Thames and Hudson, 1968), 31–32. After the conquest by Mehmet II, three more towers were added to the four built by the Romans and Byzantines, thereby producing the seven standing today. The mystery of GRM's reference to the Aquiline Gate may be resolved by the fact that the present translator found several sculptures of eagles in the Yediküle; most notably, he found the sculpture of an eagle in the commanding position at the corner of the cornice on the northern marble pylon that flanks the Golden Gate. This pylon is actually older than the walls of Constantinople.

[2] It is worth noting here that this episode forms a narrative doublet following Axel Olrik's Laws of Repetition (*das Gesetz der Wiederholung*) and patterning (*die Schematisierung*). Notice, for example, that having Norandel turn back to challenge a single enemy knight is a repetition and an intensification of a scene in chap. 114 above in which Enil does a similar thing. See Olrik, "Epic Laws," 132–37.

ing across the battlefield very fast in order to succor him. However, Frandalo, who was forewarned, shouted very loudly and said:

"Come along, señores! Now's the time!"

He spurred his horse, held his sword high in the air, and charged to the rescue. All the others who were there also attacked very boldly, and, when they met the Turks, they knocked many of them to the ground. Hence, with the aid of this diversion Norandel had time to lead the pagan king away with him. Then, leaving him in his comrade's hands and forgetting the promise he gave his beloved lady, Queen Menoresa, he turned like a raging lion and waded into the enemy so courageously that he was often on the point of being lost. However, Count Frandalo, Talanque, Maneli, Ambor, Bravor—the giant Balán's son, who also performed wonders like the ones his brave father and grandfather often performed—all their other companions, who were also very valiant, and the good knights from the emperor's household, immediately went to his aid by wounding and killing as many of the enemy as they could reach. By means of that armed intervention they were able to get him out of that crisis even though a great crowd had descended upon them, and with the prudence that accompanies a major effort, they suffered little harm and were able to withdraw to the place where their own men were.

146

How, when night came, the Turks retreated to their ships, and the emperor's troops, who had sallied forth to the fight, withdrew into the great city of Constantinople.

Some might believe that, given how many pagan forces were gathered there, these pagans represented most of all those who existed at that time. Nevertheless, I tell you—and do not doubt it—that, even though there were more than three hundred thousand of them there, counting those who remained on the sea and those who separated from them to land in other places, these did not make up even one tenth of all of them. By the time the Christians had safely passed through the Aquiline Gate the sun had almost set; and the pagans, who had no one else to combat, thought it best to return to their ships[1] where they would decide how to organize the siege. Meanwhile, the emperor ordered the gates closed, and he went with all his people to his grand palace, where the crusaders stayed with him. The other people went to their lodgings to rest, of which they were in dire need. Before resting, however, the emperor wanted to be informed about what his nephew Gastiles, the king of Hungary, Prince Brandalia, Count Saluder,[2] and Admiral Tartario had done on the

---

[1] These pagan ships are *naos*; that is, the cargo ships referred to earlier.

[2] In all previous appearances in this volume, Saluder is referred to as a marqués. There is no explanation for his change of noble rank.

other side of the city to prevent the pagans from coming ashore. They said they had engaged in a very perilous battle against them, in which many pagans as well as citizens of the city had died. Even so, given the great crush of people who descended upon them, they failed to keep them from coming ashore, and they themselves were forced to retreat to the walls near the gate which was known as Dragon Gate.[3] It was called this because the first people to inhabit the city found a very fierce dragon in a cave there, and they kept it tied up in strong chains for a long time as one of the city's wonders. Hearing this, the emperor sent for those knights, and after this group and that one had removed their armor, and after their diverse wounds were cured by the hand of the great Master Helisabad, the emperor had them sit at dinner at his tables, and he placed his table among theirs. However, he made more of a show of energy and pleasure than he actually felt in his heart; for every time he recalled the Enchantress Damsel's prophecy, it caused him to suffer great torment and anguish. Therefore, men should not try to know such things, for if they truly are to come about, who can prevent them except the Lord on High who has dominion over all human things? And if they do not actually happen, what good does it do people to be afflicted and saddened by them beforehand? For God's sake, let us cease forcing our gross discernment to dwell on such subtleties, for to do so is to go against our mind's natural order whereby we fall into many errors. Instead, let us seize what is graspable by human understanding, what is very easy to follow and even easier to put into practice so that we can drive away the vices that seem to us at every hour and every minute of the day so abominably hard to cast aside, and that lead us into sadness and bitterness, whereby we lose hope for salvation and fall into eternal torment.

147

How pagan forces on sea and on land,
Surround the most holy Christian banner
While the saints within fight the devils and
Invent a thousand manners to make war;
Meanwhile, three bold knights defend the first gate–
They are all stout-hearted–and they fasten
The Gates of the Well and of the Dragon;
For all other gates are closed like their fate.

After dinner, the emperor ordered the walls secured, and then everyone went to bed expecting greater challenges when day would come, for they

---

[3] The name of Dragon Gate does not correlate with any gate known specifically by this name in Constantinople in 1453. However, it is possible that the Gate of the Drongarion [Admiral's Gate] in 1453 could have been known as the Dragon Gate. This distant correlation is derived by a process of popular metathesis: "dronga" becomes "dragon" (δρακω·).

were sure even more opponents would come against them. Norandel took the pagan king with him—he was a very fine-looking young man—and they spent the night together. The next day the emperor rose early, and all the knights went to hear mass in the empress's chapel, where her daughter, Queen Menoresa, and many other noble ladies had already gathered. After mass ended, Norandel ordered his prisoner brought to him. Taking his hand, he led him to Infanta Leonorina saying to her:

"Lady, given your eminence, one should not put anyone but emperors in your prison, and because this prisoner of mine is not an emperor, but rather is only a king, it seems to me, if Your Grace so orders, that he should be given to a queen. Therefore, I place him at the mercy and judgment of Queen Menoresa."

"My good friend," said Leonorina, seeing where his idea was heading, "what you say is just, and I so order it: therefore, I beg the queen to receive into her service the honored present you are giving her. As for me, knowing you and your companions, I am sure I will not lack for presents that are singled out for me."

The queen took the prisoner and thanked Norandel profoundly with the great love she held for him in her heart, but she was careful to use the dissembling words that are customary in such situations.

At this time, the pagans noticed that all of the city's citizens were gathering quietly together and that access to the battlefield was unobstructed; so, many of them sallied from their ships and completely encircled the city. However, they left an infinite number of other soldiers in the fleet to protect it, for they feared the arrival of Christian reinforcements. Then, working to prepare an attack on the city, they proceeded to pitch their tents and to fortify the encampment with great, deep trenches. Among them were many soldans, Tamerlanes, kings, and other grandees who rule over many vassals. The emperor ordered Norandel to take half the empire's soldiers and many of his own men to go secure the Aquiline Gate. Count Frandalo along with other men was ordered to take charge of the Gate of the Dragon. And he ordered his nephew Gastiles, the king of Hungary and many other knights to guard the Gate of the Well,[1] which was known by this name because next to it was a well that was so deep that its bottom was never found. Because of its depth and because a great roaring sound came from it, everyone believed it was an infernal pit. All of the city's gates, of which there were more than forty,[2] were closed

---

[1] On the NE side of Constantinople, a half km up the Golden Horn from the Gate of the Drongarion, is the Eis Pegas Gate, which is derived from Greek: εισπαιω [to rush in]. The noun η πηγη means "running water," "source," "fount." Since this gate is on the wall overlooking the Golden Horn, it is possible that the changing tides caused the sound referred to in the text. Although it is clear that GRM is presenting a universal fictional vision that does not need to correlate his work with real space, nevertheless, there is enough correlation to view this narrative passage as rooted in reality, a characteristic that is a distinctive feature of Spanish literature in general.

[2] Constantinople in 1453 had at least thirty-three major gates and many more minor

for fear of the enemy. While all were waiting expectantly, a knight wearing black armor appeared before the wall that was commanded by Norandel along with Talanque, Maneli, Ambor, and Gavarte of Fearful Vale. This knight's armor was adorned with very finely-wrought gold: where the cuirass was fastened and all around his shield the gold was studded with many precious stones, but his helmet was so strong that none other like it had ever been seen. He was riding a bay horse that was amazingly large, as was the knight, for he appeared to be nothing other than a giant. In his hand he was holding a lance adorned with golden leafing covered with very valuable gems, and its iron tip was huge and so clean that it shone like a star. He was parading about giving many people orders: some were erecting tents and others were digging trenches.

While all the Christians were watching him in amazement, they saw a damsel come riding up to him, and as soon as she exchanged a few words with him, she turned away and rode toward the city. When she arrived before the knights, they noticed that she was riding an animal that seemingly seemed[3] very spirited. It had a magnificent saddle and bridle which were decorated with gold. The workmanship of her clothes and headdress was extraordinary. Her face and hands were black, but her features were very pretty, and she seemed very beautiful—so beautiful, in fact, that it is certain that some of the knights who saw her would have been happy to serve her. Displaying a letter she was holding, she stopped before Norandel, who was located in front of his men, and she said to him:

"Sir knight, is there a knight here called the Knight of the Great Serpent?"

"Good damsel," asked Norandel, surprised to hear her speak a language he understands very well, "what do you want?"

"I want to give him this letter on behalf of that knight you see over there," she answered.

Norandel quickly surmised what she was referring to, and feeling a great desire to find out more, he said to her:

"I am he whom you seek."

"Then," she said, "take this letter, and send us the only response that would make us believe the reports about you that are resounding throughout the world."

Turning around, she went back to the other knight. Meanwhile, Norandel opened the letter, which read as follows:

---

gates in the walls ringing the city. This makes GRM's figure roughly accurate, which is highly unusual in the context of the epic nature of the battle this is developed from here to the end of bk. V. See Steven Runciman, *The Fall of Constantinople 1453* (Cambridge: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1965). As James Donald Fogelquist points out, GRM's basic approach to the genre of his Amadís Cycle was to write *historia fingida* [pretend, or feigned, history]. This methodology accords with a strong vein of literary realism notable more in bk. V than in the preceding four. See Fogelquist, *El Amadís y el género*, 9–27.

[3] The redundancy is in the original. It is an example of the excessive chivalric style parodied by Cervantes.

About the letter Radiaro de Liquía[1] *sent Esplandián.*

I, Radiaro, grand soldan of Liquía, friend of the gods, enemy of my enemies, and shield and defender of pagans, inform you, serpentine knight, who commands and governs the Great Serpent Caravel, that I have come to these lands, where I discovered that you, behaving like a cruel enemy, have killed many of the people who serve my uncle, King Armato of Persia; you have seized and plundered some of his villas; you captured him by deceptive means; you announced that you plan to banish him from his great seigniory, while you remain in his place; and, for help and protection you are counting on that emperor of yours, whom we have besieged and whom we have almost captured. Although we hold the keys and power over his destruction and yours, I wish to show you a maximum of mercy and compassion because I have heard your fame and personal prowess praised everywhere. Therefore, I propose an encounter on the battlefield between you and me alone, or between ten against ten, or five against five, or two hundred of my knights against the same number of yours. With the help of my gods, I will make you recognize what a violent affront you have committed against my uncle, who is a great and honorable king. If you are he who by rights deserves to be praised, as your fame has it, you cannot reject any part of this challenge."

---

[1] Neither the character, Radiaro, nor the place from which he hails, Liquía, appears in bks. I to IV, nor can either be identified with real history or geography. In bk. IV, chap. 130, a villa called Licrea is mentioned as belonging to the Arabian king. Perhaps there is a parallel between both Moslem-pagan places in GRM's fictional cosmos. Gay., JJAS, JJF, SP, and JG all show no accent mark on Liquía, of course, as none was used in this period. However, we believe the phonology of the word is best represented with the stress as shown. It is possible that Liquía is meant to represent Lycia, a mountainous country in southwest Asia Minor, for the Greek form of Lycia (λυκια) was pronounced roughly as written by GRM. Furthermore, there is a close relationship between Radiaro and Apollo, the Lycians' principal deity, for both represent the sun's radiance (λυκη = god of light). In addition, there is an inverse parallel between Radiaro and Esplandián based on theme and etymology. Radiaro (Latin *radians* = "shining") de Liquía's (Greek: Apollonian light) name and bearing make him the quintessential, antonomastic pagan leader; whereas Esplandián's name (Latin *splendor* = "brilliance") and bearing make him GRM's ideal representative of Christian values. Curiously, AKCT chooses to hispanicize this character's fine arch-romance-like name thus: "Rodrique, Great Souldan of Liquie." AKCT's English translator thereby seems to equate Hispanic names with pagans.

149

How, with permission from the emperor, the crusaders accepted the challenge just as Radiaro had issued it.

After Norandel read the letter out loud, those knights were very happy to tell him to send a reply back immediately accepting a battle of single combat or of ten against ten, because they were sure that there were men good enough to uphold the rightness of their cause. However, Norandel told them that, since they were all pledged to the emperor's service, he judged it best not to send any reply without the emperor's advice and instructions. They all thought Norandel was right. So, resolved to resist to the death, they remained guarding the gate waiting to see if the pagans would initiate some action. But nothing happened, for they were so occupied by fortifying their camps while the soldan was waiting for an answer to his letter that they were not of a mind to do anything else. When night came and the gates were closed, they placed guards atop the wall, and then the others retired to their rooms. Norandel and his knights showed the letter to the emperor, and they begged him insistently to permit them to undertake the battle against the soldan in individual combat or ten against ten. The emperor, being in such terrible straits, did not want to risk any of his knights except in unavoidable activities; for he needed one more than the enemy needed ten thousand. Nevertheless, they begged him so much that, even though it was against his will, he granted what they were asking, which made them very happy. After dining and resting that night, the next day came, and they were all dressed, armed, and posted as guards where they were sent. Then a squire was sent with a note replying to the challenge they had been issued. The note read as follows:

150

About the note the crusaders sent Radiaro, soldan of Liquía.

We knights, crusading under the sign of the tree on which the world's Redeemer and Savior received death, for whom we toil and whom we serve, before the emperor of Constantinople; we, ministers of the Highest Lord, in order to profess our belief, to defend His holy law and to destroy all other laws outside ours; we say to you, Radiaro, who call yourself soldan of Liquía, that we received a note from a damsel who claimed she came from you; and the note said you wish to dispute some things the blessed serpentine knight has done either by entering into battle with him or by having an equal number of knights on both sides fight each other. You leave the choice to our will and disposition. Since responding to other issues is not to the point, if you please, due to the absence of that knight, and because he cannot be reached temporarily, we tell you that there are sufficient knights, all sons of kings, who are ready to satisfy your challenge either against you alone or in a group of ten,

as you suggest. Choose whichever pleases you most. When you designate a secure battlefield, then we will enter it, and there the ignorant obscurity of your law and the brilliance of ours will be manifested.[1]

151

How one side and the other agreed upon a battle of ten against ten.

The squire took this note to the place where the soldan was parading in his armor, and he said to him:

"The knights of Jesus Christ send you this letter. Answer however you please."

He took it, read it, and paused for a while to think; then he said:

"Squire, tell those who sent you here that my only desire is to test my prowess against him who they believe has no equal, no matter how great his strength. Also, tell them that my fondest desire is to meet him on the field more on account of his fame than his estate; for I am certain that, given the glory he has earned among you, my praises will be somewhat increased by the glory I will win by defeating him.[1] If it were not for this, I have many others like him in my service; but since he is not available for the time being, to battle those knights of yours, as I just mentioned, I shall offer ten of the knights who are all sons of kings or grandees."

"Soldan," said the squire, "I only came to you to give you that note; therfore, I will not respond further. But what I will say is that, if you were to dare enter the field against that blessed knight whom you now despise, you would find everything you thought you believed turned upside down."

Rather angrily, the soldan said, "I have given you an answer, so delay no more in my presence. Since you know him but not me, you have replied like a senseless man."

The squire returned to those who were anxiously awaiting him, and he told them about everything that happened. They took counsel and said to him:

"Return immediately and tell the soldan that we accept what he says, and we believe firmly that, even though it is not on account of our honor but rath-

---

[1] Riquer shows that exchanges of written challenges such as these between the soldan of Liquía and Norandel and his knights are similar to real events in Spain in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. For example, in Zaragoza in 1431, two knights, Bernat de Coscón and Anthoni de Mont Aperto exchanged written challenges, one from Coscón that in part read as follows: "Nevertheless, if you desire to challenge me to an armed battle, display such armed devices or lay down such a gauntlet that normally causes knights to accept a battle; for I most willingly am ready to offer my honor to defend the truth with the aid of our Lord God and Sir Saint George and to deliver you from your pledge, and to accept your challenge." See Riquer, *Caballeros andantes españoles* (Madrid: Espasa-Calpe, 1967), 18.

[1] For a discussion of the notion of knightly fame and glory in *Amadís de Gaula*, see James Donald Fogelquist, *El Amadís y el género*, 69–71.

er his, he should send to the battle only knights of high station, which is what we shall do on our side. Then tell him to order his men to arm quickly, for we shall be there soon."

Returning fast, the squire said to Radiaro:

"Soldan, those knights concede what you determined. Now order your knights to be armed, for you will find ours in the field provided you give the safe-conduct assurances required in such cases."

"Squire," replied the soldan, "I am not accustomed to having low-grade men enter such battles as my knights. Tomorrow I shall enclose a large battlefield with wooden planks and iron chains. Furthermore, security will be so securely enforced that it will be as if the battle were taking place within that great city. Have them arrive promptly, for mine shall be waiting for them. As for that other matter, I shall supply knights who are their equals so that there will be no reproach possible."

When Norandel and his companions heard this answer, they thought well of the arrangements. Meanwhile they remained guarding the gate hoping to do some damage to the enemy if time offered them the opportunity to do so. But time did not, because the great soldan, who wanted to see some signs of the prowess he heard those crusaders possessed, ordered his forces not to take undue risks in attacks on the Christians during that day. Likewise, he announced to all pagans who were at sea or on land that he had arranged the battle for the next day, and he asked them to make no move whatsoever so that his word would not be broken. All of his princes agreed, because, although many were of very exalted estate, the soldan of Liquía was one of the very highest; and in terms of personal valor and a courageous heart, he was the most distinguished of all. Moreover, he prized himself for always retaining in his service the most select knights to be found in the various regions of his great seigniory; and so they were, for all other knights considered them the most select group.

152

How Norandel named the nine knights who were to enter the battle in his company.

Well then, after the sun set and the gates were locked, and during the time when those in the city were retiring, those knights went to the place in the emperor's palace where the royal apartments were. There they found the tables set and dinner prepared. After disarming, they sat down in the order mentioned earlier. Eating and chatting in animated good spirits, they told the emperor how they had not negotiated the battle with the soldan himself because he had withdrawn on the pretext that he could not fight against Esplandián; but rather they had concerted a battle against ten of what the soldan called his noblest knights. Likewise, they told the emperor the soldan had made arrangements for the field and designated the battle for the next day.

Although the emperor was pained over putting ten of his good knights at risk, in order not to appear disheartened, he said that everything seemed to be in order, and he told them to beg God's help for His own, and he added this:

"I tell you, friends, given my knowledge of certain people, this soldan is one of the finest knights to be found in the entire Orient, and the same holds true for those who live with him; for he boasts of them above everything else."

After dinner was ended, while everyone was withdrawing to rest, Norandel said to his companions:

"Good señores, you see very well what we're involved in. We can only have ten knights in this battle. If you don't mind, I shall name them, and when we see how things start off, those of you who are left out will not lack opportunity to demonstrate your great talents."

They all replied that they would be content with whatever he chose to do.

"Then, señores," he said, "those who ought to enter the field for now are these knights: Don Gavarte of Fearful Vail; Talanque; Maneli the Prudent; Ambor de Gadel; Helián the Vigorous; Bravor, the giant Balán's son; Imosil of Burgundy; Trion, Queen Briolanja's cousin; Listorán of the Silver Bridge;[1] and, of course, I will join this group. As for the others of you, implore the world's Lord on High to give us victory, and to give you victory when you find yourselves in similar battles. And if we are to serve Him more by means of our deaths, may He have mercy on our souls."

---

[1] There is another character known by the epithet "of the Silver Bridge" in bks. II through V: Madancián, who is also known as Madancil and Madansil. It appears GRM has confused Listorán with Madancián, for Listorán is known in bks. III and V as "of the White Tower."

With the sun fairly placed,[1] *they sallied forth,*
Equal number against equal number;
Infidels and faithful kill each other
While shouting and charging south and north;
On the field, after becoming well mired,
Norandel, Talanque, Imosil, Helián,
Trion, Gavarte, Ambor, Listorán,
Bravor, and Maneli won and conquered.

As soon as this decision was made, they all laid down in their beds, but when the hour of midnight arrived, those ten knights rose and, ordering the emperor's chaplains summoned, they went to the chapel, where they confessed and communicated very devoutly. At daybreak the emperor and empress with their daughter, duennas, and damsels all appeared at mass to keep the knights company, after which Norandel took the other nine knights, approached Infanta Leonorina, knelt, and said to her:

"Beautiful lady, since we are all yours, just as your knight is, we wish you would allow us to kiss your hands so that we can go to the battle with your favor and love."

"My good friends," said the infanta, asking them to rise, "you have my full love, and you will have it as long as I live. Hence, I implore our Lord to give you His love and favor and to bring you through this peril with weal and honor so that my lord, the emperor, can give you the guerdons your great services merit. But I shall not offer you my hands; instead, I shall hold them up together toward heaven begging for you good health."

Then, while the infanta was asking if they had any news from her knight, Norandel went to Queen Menoresa and said to her:

"My true lady, I beg you for a favor so that I can be certain that I have been accepted as your knight: please give me some empress cloth that I can carry as a sign of your love."

The queen, who was a captive of love's power as much as or perhaps more than he, was no longer able to resist or to dissemble her love; so she replied:

"Friend of mine, the most precious jewel I can give you to carry is my heart. As I told you before, if you love me as you say you do, it is only right for you to safeguard your heart in order to protect your life; so, with my love, take this ring of mine."

Then from her finger she took the ring, which was adorned with mag-

---

[1] The Spanish phrase here is *el sol repartido*. Literally, we have "the sun distributed or apportioned." Whinnom, in Diego de San Pedro, *Obras completas*, vol. 1, glosses *repartirse* as "each to go to his own end." In the context of a chivalric contest this makes sense. The sense then is that each group went to its own end of the field in such a fashion that the sun was not shining unfairly in anyone's eyes. The phrase appears twice in *Don Quixote* (Part II, chaps. 6 and 56).

nificent stones, and she gave it to him as secretly as she could. Hearing those words made Norandel feel happier than if he had conquered the entire world. In addition, it made him so exuberant that he could not wait for the battle to start, and he thought that he would win the love of his precious and beautiful queen more on account of his effort and his cunning dexterity than his riches, from which he was separated for the time being. After taking leave of the ladies, Norandel took his companions and went to the emperor, before whom they put on their very fine armor with the cross devices, about which you already heard. Then they mounted their horses, which were waiting for them at the palace gates, and they went to the main gate, which their company was guarding. Accompanying them were the emperor and so many other people who wanted to watch the battle that it was a wonder to see. Once they arrived there, they saw the soldan riding about armed in the distinctive style he chose when he was engaged in war, and with him were more than two thousand men who had just fenced off a large field with gear the soldan brought with him; for, wherever he went, including his own land, he always sought jousts for himself in case he might find a willing opponent, and if he found none, the gear was for his knights: to wit, there were wooden posts planted in the ground and connected by heavy chains. The ten knights entered the field observing what the soldan told them to do. Before long, five unarmed and magnificently dressed knights approached them, and they said to the ten:

"Knights, the soldan urges you to enter the field trusting his word, for you will not be deceived or affronted. On the contrary, he will protect you as justice demands. And he says that, since the profession of arms is the most excellent of all others in the world, and since it is the one to which he is totally devoted, he will uphold it with all his strength and with all the majesty it deserves."[2]

With a profound desire to engage in the battle in order to fulfill a vow he made to the world's most mighty Lord, Norandel also felt that armed battle could assuage the inner battle his tormented heart was waging every moment over his lady. Thus, he addressed the five messengers:

"Knights, do you assure us upon your faith and your soldan's that, if we enter the field, no matter what happens to his knights for good or ill, he will maintain all the laws of the order of chivalry?"

"Yes," they answered with all the genuine constancy that attends the truth.

"Then, order his men to come forward," said Norandel; "for they shall find us there."

---

[2] According to Ramón Llull and other medieval writers of manuals of knight errantry, the two noblest of all professions are the priesthood and chivalry. One of the major tenets of chivalry is that knights should show mutual respect. For example, according to Llull, "if men who are not knights are obliged to honor a knight, how much more is a knight obliged to honor himself and his equal!" (Llull, *Libro del orden*, 91). The pagan Radiaro is following knightly etiquette to the letter. In this episode, GRM returns to the values upon which the *Ur-Amadís* and bks. I to IV were primarily based. That is, the conviction that the laws of chivalry transcended cultural, national, and even religious differences.

With those words, they crossed the battlefield intending to enter the place that was set aside for them. However, when the city's people saw them go so decisively into such a danger zone, they began to wail, for they pitied them greatly; and they said:

"Oh knights, servants of Jesus Christ, may He keep you and defend you today from any treachery those evil infidels might do you."

By this time, so many onlookers were gathered on one side and the other that it seemed as if the entire world were assembled there. The ten knights entered the field by a gate constructed in the enclosure, and then, from the other camp, there sallied forth on very large and handsome horses those with whom they were to fight. The enemy knights were large-bodied, their arms were quite strong and magnificent, and they were thrashing their lances about so violently it seemed they would break. It certainly seemed they were very strong. Then they too entered the field, and the soldan went with them, and he said to the crusaders:

"Knights, send one of your party to represent you so that together with one of mine you can agree on what positions you should occupy; for I would rather taste death than have any of you be offended in any way."

"We shall leave that to you alone," said Norandel, "because you are a knight, and, knowing your reputation, we suppose you know more about this than anyone else."

"Well, since you leave it to me," he said, "I shall do what I must do."

Then he placed one group at one end of the field and the other group at the other end, marked the field's midpoint on the ground, and said to the Christians:

"I want you to know the custom of my country in such battles, and if it pleases you, accept it, and if not, we shall follow your customs even if they are different from ours."

"Tell us," said Norandel, "for we are happy to listen, and we shall even agree to your customs if they conform to reason."[3]

"You should know," said the soldan, "that in battles such as this one where equal numbers fight against each other, it is our custom for the knights to joust one on one so that each one can demonstrate his qualities without hindrance from the others. In this way, those who fall from their horses and

---

[3] Ramón Llull comments on chivalric customs in pt. 3 of his treatise on knight errantry: "Therefore, to despise the customs and usage of that for which the knight learns to exercise his trade is to despise the order of knight errantry" (*Libro del orden*, 33). Also, Llull prescribes the rule of reason as a guide to making chivalric decisions, such as Norandel is called upon to do here: "Just as a judge fulfills his duties when he bases a decision on sworn testimony, so too a knight follows his profession when he uses reason and prudence, which testify to what he ought to do in armed combat" (*Libro*, 84). The signs of multicultural reason and harmony that are featured as centerpieces in this joust episode are bittersweet vestiges of the multicultural harmony that once existed in Spain between Christians, Jews, and Moslems. The reign of Alfonso X el Sabio was notable for such relative harmony. For this reason, a note of cultural tolerance in a text written during a period of severe religious and cultural disintegration is as unusual as it is typical of GRM.

those who do not fall must wait until all of the jousts are concluded. Afterwards, the individual battles continue on foot with swords. We do this because it often happens that the knight's strongest blows miss in thin air due to their horses' slowness or high-spiritedness. In the end, a knight to whom this happens may be shamed or dishonored through no fault of his own. But, on foot this can only happen to him through his own ineptitude or lack of courage."

"Indeed," said Norandel, "that is a very fine custom, and so my companions and I will accept it. What's more, to try it out, I shall go first."

Moving away from the others, he turned his horse's head toward the pagans. The soldan commanded his knights to observe the customs of their land, for the Christians had so agreed, and then he left the field. Thereupon, a knight charged at Norandel as fast as his horse would go, and Norandel covered himself very well with his shield, and he also charged. Neither of them missed their blows, for their lances struck each other's shields, but both lances were broken. Since the horses were galloping at full tilt, and since the knights yearned deeply to hurt each other, they met so fiercely that the pagan was knocked from his saddle and fell to the ground so hard that he was unconscious for a long time. As for Norandel, his horse could no longer move because its back was broken; so he dismounted, but he did nothing further against that knight. Next to joust against his opposite number was Gavarte of Fearful Vale. Although their lances flew into the air in pieces, they remained on their horses; for neither of them fell as did both Maneli and Ambor. However, Bravor, the giant Balán's son, struck a sure blow against the one with whom he jousted, and he threw him from his saddle, making him roll across the field. This is also what one of the pagans did to Imosil of Burgundy, who was struck so hard that he was wrenched from his saddle and thrown soundly to the ground. Helián the Vigorous met his opponent, and they both lost their stirrups, but neither took a fall. Listorán of the Silver Bridge met another knight, but they both missed with their lances, and they remained on their horses. This also happened to Trion and the opponent who came at him.

The jousting having ended, all of those who were still mounted alighted on their feet, and they all joined their own contingent. Raising their shields into position and gripping their swords, they attacked fiercely and with such raging zeal that it frightened those who were watching them. They smote each other with strong, hard blows wherever they thought they could do the most damage. But, since they were all highly skilled in their profession, their arms received more of the dangerous and harmful blows than did their bodies. Furthermore, they used their shields and swords with such talented expertise that those who were watching thought that their armor must surely have been dashed to pieces; but such was not the case. The battle continued in this way for over two hours and without respite. There was little difference between the two sides, and neither one was able to gain any advantage over the other. At last, however, they became extremely fatigued; so they agreed to separate to recover their breath and to recoup their strength. It was then that Norandel noticed the very beautiful ring on his finger given to him by his very beloved lady; and he said:

"Señores, there is no time to rest until the battle comes to an end."

Raising the little bit of his shield that was left, he marched toward the pagans, and against him came the knight he had downed before to see if he could avenge what happened with lances in the joust. They smote each other on their helmets with such hard and terrible blows that flames of fire leaped from them, but Norandel's blow was so strong that he knocked all his opponent's strength from him, which made him drop his sword from his hand, lose his balance, and fall to the ground. Seeing this, Talanque and Maneli pressed the attack against their counterparts with such hard, strong blows that they bewildered them and had them at their mercy. Bravor had already downed his opponent, but the others were still embroiled with theirs, with whom they were still exchanging very heavy blows. But, since Norandel and Bravor were able to rush to their aid, in a short time the enemy was pommelled into submission so thoroughly that all that was left for them was cruel death; so they were all forced to leave the field in defeat. When the soldan saw this, he came to the edge of the field where they were fighting, and he said:

"Knights, if you please, listen to me for a moment."

Norandel stopped, motioned for his men to back off, and said:

"Soldan, what is it you want?"

"What I want," he said, "if you and your companions agree, is for you to interrupt the battle, understanding, of course, that my men are defeated. This would please me, because what would ensue from here would only be cruelty that would win no honor. But if this offends you, do what you will."

"If they concede defeat, or if you do it for them, given your power to command them, we shall quit the battle, because we are not used to laying our arms on those who cannot defend themselves."

"I so concede it," said the soldan. "And, of course, I am very happy with your good judgment as well as with your bravery, which is so extreme that it has been a long time since I have seen such a display."

Then, sheathing their swords, they mounted their horses agilely, left the field, and went off to the city, where the emperor was expecting them, for he had seen the battle and the victory very clearly. However, he could not hear the words that passed between the two sides until they related everything to him. The emperor was as pleased as he was full of praise for what his knights had done because they left those against whom they had fought so thoroughly defeated, and they concluded the affair so honorably for their own honor. Then he thanked God in the belief that, since they had been so fortunate in those two battles, they would also be fortunate in the future. After ordering the gate to be securely guarded, he took them with him, and they went to the palace, where he had them divested of their arms and cured of some small wounds they had received.

The soldan, all his knights, and all of their other people who had gone to see the battle were abashed by the crushing defeat suffered by those knights whom all considered so highly prized. Then he sent his messengers to all the other great emperors and kings telling them that it seemed to him that they should prepare for combat without delay because it would be very difficult to

maintain so many people in a foreign territory. When those grandees heard this message of the grand soldan's they immediately ordered very many big lombards[4] and many other kinds of gunnery and combat ordnance brought from the ships. At the same time, they landed more than a thousand incredibly large elephants with castles[5] on top and people riding in them, and they also landed many other very unusual military stores, which they had ordered brought from their lands for this occasion. Likewise, they proclaimed throughout the fleets and the camps that in four days everyone should have all their arms ready in order to attack the city.

154

How the first terrible combat took place
On land and sea against the noble city
With big, new armaments of great cruelty;
In fact, they were of the worst kind to face;
Although the tilting[1] *lasted many hours,*
The crusaders, who fought with bravery,
Pommelled not a few of the enemy,
And the city retained all its powers.

The emperor, who heard the call to battle that was sent to the fleets and camps and who realized that the pagans were getting ready with great amounts of equipment, wanted all necessary measures for the city's defense put in place.

Then he ordered the wall divided into military posts[2] provided with very heavy gunpowder weapons, crossbowmen, archers, and other well-armed soldiers. In addition, he ordered firewood stacked near the inside of the wall along with the largest caldrons that could be found; and lots of oil, saltpeter, and tar; and men to take charge of these items so that at the right time they could heat up the mixture and bring it to a boil; and others who could carry it to the top of the wall and throw it down on the enemy combatants below. He ordered knights to guard the Aquiline Gate and the Gates of the Dragon and the Well, and he implored them not to let their zeal overpower their reason so that, if serious bad fortune should confront them, they would not fail to close them. On the contrary, should the enemy gain access through those gates, the city would face the worst possible danger. In the same manner, he saw that all other necessary measures were taken. Then he, with ten thousand cavalrymen, planned to rove about conspicuously in order to offer succor wherever he found the greatest weakness in the defense.

These preparations took four days, during which time no armed action at

---

[1] The Spanish term for "tilting" is *liza* [lists, tournament field, combat, fight]. It is not attested in Cov., but DA gives it with its modern meanings. The Spanish term (*liza*) comes from Old French *lisse* [barrier around a tilting field or the fight itself], which is derived from Frankish *listja* [barrier]. The ultimate etymon for the English term "lists" is Germanic **liston*, which meant "border," "edge," or "strip." The English term was reinforced with the sense of a "jousting field" or the fight itself through contact with Old French *lisse*, or *lice*. The last form is attested in French as early as 1155 in Robert Wace, the twelfth-century Anglo-Norman chronicler and poet.

all took place. But on the fifth day, early in the morning, those who had laid the siege on land armed themselves, followed their captains, who had left their posts, and prepared to fight with the equipment they were issued. Likewise, they brought out their thousand elephants with very high castles on their backs where many armed men were riding: these devices seemed like the most beautiful things in the world. The elephants were pulling very tall wooden turrets that were as tall as the walls, and in these towers there were many archers and crossbowmen who used their weapons very skillfully, and they also were supplied with many other things necessary for combat. Since those pagans were such great princes that they had the unassailable power to command whatever their caprice desired, it was easy for them, in the past, while relaxing in their palaces packed with sensual pleasures, to order their subjects rightfully or wrongfully to bring those war supplies to them by land and sea. That is, they could command temporal things that pass away as in a dream, but they could not command those true things of the future such as glory and damnation.

Meanwhile, the people in the fleets were no less busy, for they were fully occupied handling the sails and oars along with those who usually did these chores. Their object was to move quickly so that they could fight on the city's other side where it touched the sea.[3] With them they had a great supply of crossbows and very strong bows made out of horn,[4] and there were enough young men who were trained to use them from their earliest years. Also, they had iron grappling hooks attached to the tip of long wooden poles, which were used to seize their opponents and either pull them toward them or cast them into the depths of the sea. They had many other things suitable for that kind of enterprise, but it would take too long to list all of them. Therefore, with everything arranged on both sides, as you have heard, the pagan captains ordered the people who were in charge of the elephants to begin moving them and the wooden turrets forward and not to stop until they crossed the ditch—after it was filled in—and they were alongside the wall.[5] Likewise, they ordered a very large company of knights to attack those who were guarding the city's gates very hard; others were ordered to fill in the ditch with dirt and

---

[3] If GRM intends this to correspond to real geography, and if he modelled this battle on the real one of 1453—neither of which is necessarily the case—the ships have been in the Bosphorus on the north, and are heading around the city's eastern tip to the Sea of Marmora on the south. According to Runciman, the real Turkish armada consisted of 126 boats, 75 of which were xebecs (i.e., *fustas*), which used a combination of oars and sails.

[4] Cov. says that deer horns were used to make the nuts that tightened the chords on crossbows.

[5] Except for the elephants, which is an exotic touch added by the narrator, this description of the Turkish approach to the walls coincides very closely with the real history of 1453. The outer defensework was a ditch, or moat, twenty meters wide and seven to ten meters deep. After filling it in, the Turks were able to reach the outer wall. Also, they had turrets on wheels that were as tall as the ten-meter high towers in this first wall.

branches; and still others were commanded to fight to the death with all their strength in order to enter the city and attack those on the ground and those on the walls from the inside. The soldan of Liquía and the soldan of Alapa[6] remained in reserve with more than one hundred thousand knights to succor the others. Then, the army began to move forward in the order we have told you, and they were making such a great algarad and so many trumpets were blaring that it seemed as though they were making the earth shake. The elephants and the turrets arrived at the edge of the ditch, and, since the turrets were very tall, the many crossbowmen and archers in them began shooting at those who were defending the wall, which was of an equal height, and those on the wall began shooting back. Such a tremendous volume of darts and arrows were exchanged that they blocked out the sunlight: many were killed and wounded on both sides. Then the pagan knights made a heavy charge against those who were guarding the gates; however, even though they charged very boldly, they did not find any weakness in the crusaders and those who were fighting alongside them. Rather, the Christians went out to meet the attackers, they killed the first they reached, and they threw many others to the ground with their lances. Then, grasping their swords, they began to attack so fiercely that it was a marvel to see, for none of those they reached on horseback remained in their saddles. Hence, in a very short period of time, they covered the field with dead pagans, and although they were tormented by many blows from their enemies' lances and knives, their bodies were not harmed because they were all well covered by their strong armor. This was not the case with the pagans, however, because most of them were not wearing armor, but rather, they had only wooden shields and lances, and, if they wore anything else, it was iron or leather capelines. Meanwhile, the Christians did not dare leave the city's gates unprotected for fear of losing them; for this reason alone, they took shelter near the gates. Then the pagans pounced on them hoping that, with the sudden intensity of their attack and their loud shouting, the Christians could not continue blocking the way into the city. However, the opposite resulted; for the Christians turned against them, and, with heavy sword blows, they killed or wounded many and they forced the rest of them to back away. At the same time, those in the towers over the gates were shooting many arrows at the enemy, thereby doing them grievous harm.

While this battle was taking place, the common soldiers filled in the ditch, which was not too difficult because there were so very many of them. This

---

[6] This is first of several references to the soldan of Alapa in GRM's Amadís Cycle. Gay., SP, and JG spell the name "Halapa." However, JJAS, JJF, and JV have "Alapa," which we shall adopt because it is older and it approximates a style closer to an Arabic flavor familiar in Spain. Alapa appears in *La gran conquista de ultramar*, a thirteenth-century chronicle about the crusades sponsored by Alfonso X el Sabio. It is a reference to the Syrian city of Aleppo. The Moslem leader of the city is referred to as Seguin de Halapa [*sic*] in *La gran conquista de ultramar*,

permitted the turrets to arrive next to the wall without hindrance. Then you would have seen such a beautiful and dangerous battle that it would have been a wondrous sight: those within and those outside the city were so close to each other that it seemed as if they were all one turbulent unit. Then many bridges were thrown from the turrets to the wall, and the pagans climbed on them to pass from one side to the other. But the Christians, in the face of fearful death, drew on renewed energy from their courageous hearts and tore the bridges down. Nevertheless, despite this move, the enemy press was so numerous and so heavy that their effort would have been severely endangered if it had not been for the boiling oil, saltpeter, and tar that those inside the city were pouring with great accuracy on the elephants' heads, which made them wheel around and around while bellowing very loudly. This disrupted the attack in such a way that the enemy could not force the elephants to advance any farther; on the contrary, many of them were so nauseated by the smoke from the raging fire that they knocked the castles off their backs, and they themselves became dizzy and fell to the ground. When the Christians saw this fortunate turn of events, they charged ever harder at the other fighters who still remained, and they used large iron bars to smash the wooden bridges. By now, the attack was almost repulsed. The knights who were defending the gate continued fighting very fiercely, and they killed many of the enemy. While the two soldans were reconnoitering, they saw how valiantly the Christians were fighting; so they each led fifty thousand cavalrymen in such a sudden and tumultuous attack that it forced the Christians to retreat into the city and to close the gates very fast. Then the pagans set fire to the gates. If it had not been for the great engines atop the towers, the Christians could not have prevented the gates from burning down despite all their gunfire, rocks and arrows. Nevertheless, the pagans were content to have contained them within the gates, and they even considered the Christians already virtually defeated.

155

About the cruel battle Count Frandalo sustained against the Turks who were combatting the city on the sea; and how, in the end, night came and the count and his forces withdrew to the city.

Although those who were fighting the pagans from their ships on the other side of the city were displaying immense bravery; although the archers, crossbowmen, and those who were firing the lombards were very effective; and although they were all killing and wounding so many of the enemy that there were mountains of them on land and in the water; nevertheless, despite the great resistance by those from the city, their efforts were insufficient to keep them from returning to land. But at that moment, Count Frandalo and his companions rushed into the fray, for his post was very near the sea. When he

was fully engaged with the enemy, a very cruel and dangerous battle ensued in which many were killed. Since the count knew that those at the other posts had been forced to withdraw and that the city's gates were closed, he realized it was incumbent upon him to do the same as they without sustaining any damage. Hence, the city was ringed round about on all sides and there were so many people on land that the city was in deep trouble; and it seemed there was so little hope for rescue that everyone believed there would be no escape from death or captivity. In fact, they already saw their own people discouraged and wounded; whereas the opposite side behaved with a full display of energetic arrogance, and they continually threatened the Christians with cruel death and crushing imprisonment as if, to the pagans' glory, those inside Constantinople were already in their power. During all this, the emperor tried to make a show of high morale by giving everyone hope for their success; nevertheless, his heart was very troubled and depressed, for he constantly called to mind the prophecy about which you have heard, and he saw clearly that it was gradually being fulfilled. Thus, the combat on that first day broke off, because night came over them. The pagans brought in fresh forces to guard the turrets and elephants that had remained in place, because they did not want to lose any part of the ground they had won. With this, they hoped to be able to arrive the next day without danger at the foot of the wall and to breach it with their gunnery in so many places that they could enter the city very easily and conclude what they had begun.

156

How, after the emperor commanded
The gates placed in the hands of the strongest
Warriors, and then all of them went to rest
In the grand palaces where they resided;
And how he had their belovéd ladies
Remove the heavy armor from their knights
Who were most bloodied after their cruel fights,
And then they go dine in comfort and ease.

When night came, the emperor, who went about calling everyone, left some of his people guarding the gates and the wall. Then he took the knights to his palace so they could rest and be cured of their wounds. Entering the hall, he was surprised to discover that the empress and their daughter, who were accompanied by their duennas and damsels, were waiting for them; for since combat began they never left their chapel where they remained with their knees on the ground begging God most tearfully to have mercy on His own people. In the hall, the ladies removed the knights' armor; however, the only way they were able to detach the swords from their hands was with hot water, because the swords were completely covered with blood up to the hilt, and

their hands were swollen and glued shut with congealed blood. As soon as their helmets were removed, it was obvious that their faces were swollen and bruised from the beatings they had received from their opponents' blows. However, these marks were not considered ugly; rather, they were seen as being as beautiful as precious stones due to the reason why they had received them: they were signs of their effort, their valor, and their fighting courage in the face of the extreme danger to their lives. Then they were served dinner, and the emperor spoke with them, laughed about what they had undergone, and praised their great deeds. They responded by telling him how pleased they were to hear the elephants bellow and see them turn around and around trying to escape from the boiling oil that was poured on them; and how, in the midst of the battle, they could not help laughing when they saw the pagans fall from the elephants' castles on top of each other with their legs in the air and their heads on the ground. They spent the dinner hour talking about these things you have just heard and about many other matters until it was time to go get some desperately needed rest.

157

About the frightening and unheard of succor Queen Calafía brought to the port of Constantinople in order to help the Turks.

Now I wish you to know about the strangest thing ever found anywhere in written texts or in human memory. By means of this dangerous wonder, the next day, when the city was on the verge of being lost, its salvation came from the new danger itself. I tell you that on the right-hand side of the Indies there was an island called California,[1] which was very close to the region of the Earthly Paradise. This island was inhabited by black women, and there were no males among them at all, for their life style was similar to that of the Amazons.[2] The island was made up of the wildest cliffs and the sharpest precipices found anywhere in the world.[3] These women had energetic bodies and courageous, ardent hearts, and they were very strong. Their armor was made entirely out of gold[4]—which was the only metal found on the island—as were the trappings on the fierce beasts that they rode once they were tamed. They lived in very well-designed caves. They had many ships they used to sally forth on their raiding expeditions and in which they carried away the men they seized and whom they killed in a way about which you will soon hear. On occasion, they kept the peace with their male opponents, and the females and the males mixed with each other in complete safety, and they had carnal relations, from which unions it follows that many of the women became pregnant. If they bore a female, they kept her, but if they bore a male, he was immediately killed. The reason for this, inasmuch as it is known, is that, according to their thinking, they were set on reducing the number of males to so small a group that the Amazons could easily rule over them and all their lands; therefore, they kept only those few men whom they realized they needed for their race not to die out.[5]

On this island called California, there were many griffins,[6] because these

beasts were suited to the ruggedness of the terrain, which was a perfect habitat for the infinite number of wild animals that lived there and that were not found in any other part of the world. When the griffins had offspring, in order to capture the young, these women ingenuously covered themselves in coarse hides; then they took them back to their caves where they raised them. When their plumage was even, they fed them so often and so cleverly with the captured men and the boys they bore that the griffins became well acquainted to the women and never harmed them in any way. Therefore, every man who ventured onto the island was immediately killed and devoured by the griffins; and even though they became stuffed, they never for that reason stopped seizing them, carrying them aloft as they flew through the air, and, when tired of carrying them, dropping them to their certain deaths.

At the time when all of the pagans' grandees left with those very large fleets, as the story has already told you, there reigned on California Island a queen in the flower of her youth who was bigger and more beautiful than the other women on the island, and she conceived a grand design to achieve great deeds. Moreover, of all who ruled that seigniory before her, she had more bold energy and more fire in her brave heart than any of the others. When she heard that most regions of the world were joining together in that expedition against the Christians—regions about which she knew nothing because she was acquainted only with neighboring lands[7]—she conceived a desire to see the world and its various generations,[8] and she thought that her great strength and that of her own people would enable her, by means of force or gratitude, to win the largest share of all the spoils. Therefore, she told all her ladies who were skilled in war that it would be a good idea to join the great fleets and sail in the same direction all those grand princes and mighty men were taking. Then she encouraged them and urged them on by holding up before them the great honor and profit that could redound to them by undertaking such a journey. Above all, she insisted on the very great fame they could achieve by having their glory bruited throughout the whole world; but, instead, remaining on their island and doing nothing other than what their ancestors did would be tantamount to being buried alive like the living dead and to living out the rest of their days like dumb animals without fame or glory.

That very zealous Queen Calafia[9] said so much to them that she not only moved her people to agree to such a journey, but they themselves were so animated with a deep desire to have their fame divulged throughout the world that they hurriedly put out to sea in order to join those grandees in whatever battles might occur. Seeing her people's will, without delay the queen ordered her huge fleet provisioned with victuals, all their golden arms, and everything else they needed. Then she ordered the largest of her xebecs repaired, which was constructed in the shape of a heavy wooden cage, and in it she put five hundred griffins, which, as you were told earlier, were raised and fed with men. In addition, on board went all the animals they used for mounts, of which there were several kinds, and the most select and best-armed women available.[10] Finally, after leaving orders for the island to be securely guarded, she ordered the other women to board other ships, and they all departed with such speed that they came across the pagan fleets on the same night when the first combat you were told about occurred. Their arrival caused the pagans very great pleasure, and the grandees immediately visited the queen whom they received with full respect. She inquired about the state of their affairs by begging them insistently to give her a detailed report. After hearing their account, she said:

"You have attacked this city with your large armies, but you failed to capture it. Therefore, if you please, and if you are willing to follow my command, I want to try out my forces to see if they suffice for the task."

All those grandees told her they would issue whatever orders she wished to have carried out.

"In that case, send a message immediately telling all your captains not to leave their posts tomorrow under any circumstance unless I give the order to do so; then you will see the most amazing battle you ever saw in your lives or that you ever even heard about."

This message was taken immediately to the great soldan of Liquía and the soldan of Alapa, who were[11] in charge of the land armies, and these leaders passed the order on to all of their troops. At the same time, they wondered where the queen's plan of action would lead them.

158

How the griffins seized the men they perceived
And then flew with them above the high wall;
Then, killing them, they returned for more haul:
It was the fiercest hunt ever conceived;
And how the Turks who ventured above deck,
While expecting help from the wild griffins,
Received the same awful harm for their sins,
Which was a cruel death and a broken neck.

After night passed and morning came, Queen Calafía and her women left the sea wearing their golden armor that was studded all over with very precious stones, which were found on California Island as abundantly as rocks in a field. Then they mounted their wild beasts, which were adorned as we told you, and she ordered the xebec's gate to the griffins' cage opened. The griffins flew away very quickly, and, as soon as they saw the battlefield, they displayed great joy by being able to fly through the air. Then they spied the multitude of people that were walking along the top of the wall.[1] Since they were as hungry as they were fearless, each griffin seized a man in its claws, soared very high, and began eating him.[2] The Christians shot many arrows at them,

---

[11] Here we correct Gay., who has a singular verb here [*tenía*]. Instead, we follow JG, JJF, JJAS, JV, and SP who have the verb in the plural [*tenían*].

[1] Steven Runciman observes that the inner wall in Constantinople's defensive system in 1453 was 15 m high, it had towers 20 m high, and there was a passageway running the entire length of the wall. The wall was up to 10 m wide. At 6 km long, that equates to nearly 60,000 square meters, which would have been more than enough to hold all of the 7,000 actual defenders in the entire city in 1453 and much more than enough for the few who were actually on the wall. GRM inflates the number of defenders considerably in order to magnify the hyperbolic effect of an epic battle. See Runciman, *The Fall*, 93.

[2] Although it is unlikely that GRM knew Doukas' *Historia Turco-Byzantina* (ca. 1460s), survivors of the fallen city must have fled to Spain, among other places, where they told exaggerated accounts that served as GRM's source for this highly imaginative episode. For example, Doukas himself uses unusually vivid language in describing the Turks' assault on Byzantium's walls: "When they [the Turks] saw the sallyport . . . open, some fifty of the

and they jabbed very sharply at them with their swords and lances; however, the griffins' plumage was so thick and so strong that their blows failed to reach flesh. This turned out to be the most beautiful and pleasing hunt their partisans ever saw in their lives. When the Turks saw how the griffins were flying off with their enemies, they raised an immense algarad of joy that pierced the heavens. But for those in the city, this was the saddest and most bitter sight they ever witnessed, because they saw a son snatched from his father, a father from his son, and a brother from his family. Thus, their weeping over their losses and their expressions of fury were so great that it made for a pitiful sight.

After the griffins finished flying for a while through the air, and after dropping some of their catches in the sea and others on land, they returned and began all over again by fearlessly seizing more victims. This doubled the pleasure of those on their side, and it increased the Christians' sadness. What can I tell you? Only that those on the wall were so frightened that the wall's entire defense would have been completely abandoned except for the few who found protection in the vaults under the towers' domes. Seeing what was happening, Queen Calafía shouted to the two soldans to have their soldiers scale the wall by climbing up the ladders, for they could now seize the city. Meanwhile, the griffins had released the second group of victims; then they saw the pagans whom they did not recognize, and they proceeded to catch them in the same manner they used on the Christians: they soared through the air with them until they were high enough to let them drop to a certain death. At this, pleasure and pain switched sides; for those on the outside were crying pitifully for their companions; while those on the inside, who had given themselves up for lost when they saw the enemy walking along the wall, were now greatly consoled. At this juncture, as the pagans who remained hiding behind the parapets on the walkway at the top of the wall were suddenly being filled with fear that they too would be killed as their companions were, the Christians came out from hiding in the vaults, and in a flash they killed many of the Turks found in the space outside the wall, and they made the others jump down from the wall. Then they returned to the vaults because they saw the griffins coming toward them. When Queen Calafía saw this turn of events, she was deeply saddened, and she said:

"My idols, whom I worship and in whom I believe, what does this mean? How can my arrival have favored my enemies as well as my friends? I thought that by combining your help with my strong companions and my great weapons their destruction would be assured. But now that will not happen."

---

tyrant's [Mehmet II] renowned slaves leaped inside. They climbed to the top of the walls and zealously slew anyone they met and struck down the sentinels who discharged missiles from above. It was a sight filled with horror! Some of the Romans and Latins who were preventing the Turks from attaching scaling ladders to the walls were cut to pieces, while others, closing their eyes, jumped from the wall and ended their lives horribly by smashing their bodies. Unimpeded, the Turks threw up the scaling ladders *and ascended like soaring eagles*" (emphasis added). Doukas, *Decline and Fall*, 223.

Then she ordered her Amazons, who would be safe from the griffins, to climb up the ladders and to try to capture the towers by killing all those they found in them. To carry out their queen's order, they immediately dismounted and placed before their breasts half skulls of fish heads, which were large enough and strong enough to protect the whole front of their bodies, for no weapon could penetrate them. Also, they put on their arms and legs the other gold-covered armor about which you have heard. Then they strode boldly to the wall, swiftly went up the ladders, and reached the top where they began to fight very hard against those in the domes. However, the latter were able to defend themselves fiercely because they were in narrow places with access only through little doors. Meanwhile, those down below in the city were shooting darts and arrows at those women, and since they were aiming at their sides where the Amazon's golden armor was weakest, they were able to wound many of them. All the while the griffins were flying about above them without leaving the area. Seeing this situation, Queen Calafía said to the soldans:

"Order your shock troops up there now while my fighters can protect them against those birds because they will not attack my women."

Thereupon the soldans commanded their men to climb the ladders and to conquer the wall and towers. By nightfall, all of their armies would join them and together they could conquer the city. The troops sallied from their posts, ran as fast as they could, and scaled the walls where the women were battling. But as soon as the griffins saw these men, they seized them as precipitately as if they had not grabbed a single man during the whole day. Although the women threatened them with knives, this did little good; for, no matter how much they struggled to help their men, the griffins swooped between them and plucked the men out forcibly. Then, carrying them to great heights, they dropped them to their deaths. The pagans' horror and fear were so great that their descent and headlong rush back to their camps were quicker than their ascent. Seeing there was no remedy for that disaster, the queen sent a message to those who were in charge of handling the griffins to recall them immediately and to lock them in the xebec. The handlers heard the queen's command, went up on the ship's deck, and shouted orders in their language calling the griffins back. They came as obediently as if they were human beings, and they returned meekly to their mesh cages.

The Author's exhortation[1] *to Christians in which he holds up for their illumination the great obedience these griffins, these wild animals, showed to the person who raised them.*

Oh, what a remarkable thing it is to observe mortals! We are made in God's sublimely perfect likeness by the work of His hand and holy mouth; we have a brain, understanding, immortal souls, knowledge, and seigniory over everything living and dead that was ever created by Him in the world; we receive laws from God for guidance and a promise of eternal bliss in celestial glory, and, with the vivid picture of the death of children, parents, friends, and relatives, we understand the threat of infernal torment; we realize that there is no hope of escape from death's narrow and very sad path; and we are shown both the swift turns of fortune's wheel, whereby the very mighty are lowered into the earth and the lowly are raised to the heights, and many other mutations that our corporal eyes see every day and which our dull minds are able to understand with no difficulty at all. Then, casting all this into oblivion, we run without stopping after that which is so harmful to us, that causes us so much grief, and that lasts so short a time. We flee what is reasonable only to have our corrupt wills embrace our desires and caprices, and we purge from our memories the bitterest and most sorrowful Passion, which was accompanied by infinitely cruel torments and which our Almighty God willingly chose to suffer for our redemption, and by means of which He promised us truly restful repose, provided He find in us deep understanding, true loyalty, and bitter repentance. Although we are not obligated by divine law to remember His Passion, we are obligated by truth and virtue. Instead, we wander blindly through life burdened with many afflictions in search of our own blindness, in search of an enchanted poison we ought to abhor and flee. Worse yet, these objects of our desire infect not only our entrails and blood vessels, but our souls also, and they plunge us into total sadness, every kind of bitterness and eternal suffering.

From this it follows that, even if we cast such a holy and true message from our memories, at least we may still focus on the example of these cruel griffins—fictional[2] and contrived though they may be—and ponder the fact that, although they were raised in a rugged, brambly, and isolated place that conforms with their ferocity; although they were taken from there by the Amazons' craftiness to a place where they were forcibly raised outside their natural habitat; and although they flew over Constantinople so covered with blood and so full of their own arrogance and cruelty; nevertheless, of their own volition they responded with absolute obedience when those women called them to return to their prison. But wretched us, we are born of reasonable men and women, raised and ruled by natural means, admonished and instructed by saintly men and great teachers, chastised and corrected by confessors, and threatened and terrorized by the law, yet these and many other influences do not impress us strongly enough to make us withdraw from the licentiousness and frivolity that grip us so tightly and that make us fall headlong into the sins of pride, covetousness, lust, blasphemy, and a hundred thousand other miseries that are the sisters, relatives, and grand friends of the infernal torments.[3] Well, Almighty God, who came into this world to redeem sins, send us Your grace, pour your mercy on us, because by doing so You can smash the strong chains of evil that bind us. May You, Lord, enjoy our service, and may we enjoy the holy glory that You have prepared for the just and the good.

How the forces of the tyrannical nations,
Seeking revenge with assagais[1] *and such aids,*
Cross the ditches, battle lines, and palisades,
And break through the barrier wall of the Christians;
And how Calafía, with her sword in her hand,
Wreaks great havoc with her Amazonian stand,
Where people of both sides, some Christian faithful
And many more pagans, die by the swordful.

After the Christians were once again securely inside the gates, as you heard, Queen Calafía said to the soldans:

"Since my presence has caused you vexation, now I would like to give you some pleasure. Order your forces to sally, and we shall go against whatever knights in the city dare appear in our path. Let the battle be the harshest possible. I and my forces shall take the vanguard in this battle."

The soldans immediately told their men, who were already armed, that the birds had returned to their cages; then they commanded their forces to sally very boldly and to try to reach the parapet. The soldans themselves would lead the cavalry in protecting Queen Calafía's back. With those orders, they all sallied in a mad rush, and they quickly reached the wall, but not as safely as they thought they would; for some of the wall's guards were already prepared for them. While the pagans were scaling the wall, the Christians were knocking them down, which caused many of them to be killed or mangled. However, others, who came with protective devices and iron tools, were able to dig deep holes in the wall. The oil and other things were dangerous hindrances for them, but not enough to prevent them from making many holes and breaches. Nevertheless, the emperor, who continued making the rounds with his ten thousand cavalrymen, placed enough men there so that they were successful in defending the wall, despite the pagans, until the main defenders were able to plug the gaps with boards, rocks, and dirt.[2]

After observing the progress of the battle, the queen took some of her troops very hurriedly to the Aquiline Gate, which Norandel was guarding. She was at the front of her whole company, and she was well covered with the shields about which we told you, and she was gripping her lance very firmly. Seeing her approach, Norandel went to meet her, and they struck each other

---

[1] An "assagai," from the Spanish *azagaya*, and Berber *az-zagayah*, is a slender wooden spear or lance with an iron tip used in battle. The word dates in English to 1625 according to OED.

[2] The emperor's absence during an early attack on the wall in *Esplandián* corresponds to events during the real attack on April 18, 1453. In Runciman's words: "The Emperor himself was not present. He had feared that this was to be an attack along the whole line of the walls and was on a hasty tour of inspection, to see that everyone was prepared." Runciman, *The Fall*, 99.

so hard that their lances shattered in pieces; but neither of them fell. Then Norandel took hold of his sword, and the queen grabbed her long knife, whose blade was a large hand's-breadth wide, and they dealt each other very hard blows. At the same time, their followers became so embroiled in a turbulent skirmish, and they hit each other so hard, that it was an amazing sight to see. What's more, combat was so evenly matched that an equal number of men and women fell to the ground. Now, if this story does not proceed to tell you every detail of what each combatant was doing, if it does not feature their individual strength and courage, the cause of this silence is none other than the fact that the press of fighters was so heavy, and each of the Christians were combatting so many, that the great Master Helisabad, who was writing down what he saw, could only ascertain definitively a few of the particularly unusual things that were happening at this critical moment—such as the encounter between the queen and Norandel, about which you just heard. The fighting was so bitter and so confusing that the two principals soon had to break off their duel and turn to aiding their fellow fighters.[3] At all events, I tell you that the queen's feats of arms—on the one hand in terms of killing knights and causing casualties, and on the other in terms of wading so boldly into the fray—were so extraordinary that they cannot be related, nor is it believable that any woman had sufficient strength to achieve so much. It is especially amazing since she fought against such prized knights, who never ceased striking her with strong, heavy blows. But she received almost all of them on her hard and very strong shield.

Talanque and Maneli decided to attack that woman when they noticed what she was doing, what great damage she was inflicting on their side in the battle. They approached her one on each side and they laid into her so roughly that she became disoriented. But one of her sisters, whose name was Liota[4] and who was her personal bodyguard, came to Calafía's rescue with the fury of a raging lioness. She aimed such lethal blows at the knights that she was successful in extricating the queen from them, and she restored her to her fellow Amazons.

In the meantime, you are not to think that the troops in the fleets were resting idly; rather, I tell you so many of them landed that, if it were not for God's grace and the great effort put forward by Count Frandalo and his companions, the city would have been given up for lost. Both sides suffered many casualties, although there were more on the pagans' side because their arms were weaker.[5]

---

[3] This passage about fighting coincides with the actual battle on April 18, 1453. According to Runciman: "Fighting was confused." Furthermore, the narrow terrain where the battle was fought—it was in the middle of the wall called the Mesoteichon—invalidated the Turks' numerical superiority. See Runciman, 99.

[4] Liota is Calafía's sister and she does not appear in bks. I to IV. In the *Crónica troyana* (1587), in addition to the two queens who are named (Antiope and Oricia), two other Amazons have names: Maniple and Ypolita, who fight featured individual battles against Hercules and Theseus, respectively.

[5] Details in this passage also coincide with the battle of April 18, 1453. Regarding the

As you have just heard, the fighting in that cruel battle went on nearly until nightfall. During the battle, the only open gate was the one Norandel was defending;[6] for it was necessary to close the others—against the knights' wills—once they had retreated to safety through them. But the one I mentioned was still open. As the two soldans had a great desire to see how the women fought, they forbade their people to enter the fray. However, seeing daylight wane, they chose to attack so violently that they almost succeeded in entering the city by force; even so, more than one hundred men and women did enter. Nevertheless, due to God's intervention, the emperor, who made certain the other gates were secured, rushed to the first gate as soon as he heard that the battle was continuing around that spot. Seeing how harried the gate's defenders were, he pressed the counterattack so hard that his men killed some and drove the others outside the gate. Then the pagans lost many more men who were killed by those who were in the towers. Of the women, more than two hundred died. Yet this success occurred at the price of many casualties suffered by those on the inside, including ten crusaders who were killed. Among the latter were these: Ledaderín de Fajarque, Trion, Imosil of Burgundy, and Isanjo's two sons. When all of the city's people were safely gathered inside, the pagans then withdrew to their camps, and Queen Calafía returned to her fleet, for she had not set up camp on land. The other nations boarded their ships, and for the rest of that day there was no more combat. Now, however, we shall leave them as they are, and we shall tell you the story of the fleets of Christian kings that gathered in the port of Firm Island and that left there on a rescue mission.

---

difference in the strength of the armor, Runciman says: "The armour worn by the Christians was more efficient than that of the Turks and enabled them to risk their persons more boldly" (Runciman, 99). The fighting lasted four hours, and, according to Nicolo Barbaro, a Venetian diarist who was in Constantinople during the siege, 200 Turks and no Christians died. GRM, *more realistically*, has more than ten Christians killed. Still, Barbaro is reputed to be a reliable eye witness. See Nicolo Barbaro, *Giornale dell' assedio di Constantinopoli*, ed. E. Cornet (Vienna, 1856), 23. This is not the first time that the Turks' weak armor has been mentioned. Earlier references are in chaps. 145 and 154.

[6] Norandel plays as prominent a role in GRM's fictional defense of Constantinople as a real Genovese knight named Giovanni Giustiniani Longo did in 1453. Runciman says this about Giustiniani: "[he] was in command and proved his value as a leader. Greeks as well as Italians were inspired by his energy and courage and loyally supported him" (Runciman, 99).

How, by order of our almighty Lord,
So many caravels meet in the port
Called Firm, that according to the report,
No armada ever had more men on board;
From whence they all sailed with holy fervor–
King Perión was assigned to take the lead–
And while favorable winds met their need,
They hauled into sight of the emperor.

The story has told you how Enil arrived in Rome and how magnificently supplied he found Emperor Arquisil and Don Florestán, king of Sardinia. Likewise, you heard about Gandalín's arrival in Great Britain, and that, upon King Amadís's order, he went to see Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa, and Don Galvanes; and how he crossed the Channel to see King Perión de Gaula. Well, now you will be told about the results of his mission.

When those kings read King Amadís's letters, when Gandalín found out how anguished Esplandián was, and when they all realized that all those immense pagan armies had already descended upon Constantinople–and that, if it were to be lost, all Christendom would be gravely endangered–they decided to apply the remedy that all the almighty Lord's ministers ought to when they serve Him, which is to carry out what they owed[1] to their true faith. Then they very diligently prepared their fleets, furnished them with as many of the best men they could command, and, without further delay, they themselves joined their fleets, setting their course for Firm Island. They journeyed forth with a great common will to serve God and to earn His forgiveness for the sins they had committed against Him. Meanwhile, King Amadís was not idle. Counting the ships of King Lisuarte's that were still available to him and others loaned to him by neighboring kings, he succeeded in raising such a vast armada that it was a wonder to see.

After Count Gandalín returned from the regions we mentioned before, and after he reported the preparations those señores were making, he decided to go see King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena before departing. They were in Miraflores Castle which the king had sealed off from outside news so that the queen would hear nothing other than reports about Esplandián's illness. King Lisuarte also circulated the news that Esplandián had sent another messenger begging both the king of Great Britain and the former king to visit him because his illness had become so grave that he did not expect to survive.

---

[1] Here we follow JJAS, JJF, and JV which have a plural verb (*tenían*) as opposed to Gay., SP, and JG, which show the verb in the singular. The context seems to suggest that the ministers owe obedience to their faith; otherwise, the Lord has a debt to His own faith, which is a less satisfying rendering.

Then Amadís arrived at Miraflores, and he was well received by King Lisuarte, who said to him:

"My son and señor, I wanted to call you to come here so that you could hear what I am going to say. I have already been informed by Gandalín about Esplandián's difficulties. It seems to me that this danger—nay, this battle—affects not only that emperor but also all of us who serve Our Savior Jesus Christ. And since I have vast worldly experience, since I performed my duties with total dedication, and since I have cast my past cares into oblivion by doing penance for them with enough tears required for divine forgiveness, I have now decided to join you on the voyage you are planning; and, in order to serve the Lord whom I have vexed so often, I wish to occupy one of the forward positions just as I did when I was serving the illusory world. Because the queen would be most upset if she knew the truth, and so that my departure from here may cause her more happiness than sadness, I have devised the following precaution: I have led her to believe that Esplandián is lying sick on Firm Island, and that he has sent word for you and me to go see him. Hence, you must use this stratagem to get me out of here; for I am determined not to remain here under any circumstances."

"Sire," said King Amadís, "your intention is Catholic, it gives so much honor to the world, and it is so good for your soul that there is nothing for me to reply other than to say that your will should be carried out without delay. Now, let's go see the queen."

Entering her chamber, they found her praying. King Amadís said to her:

"Oh, lady, Gandalín informed you about your grandson's ailment, and now he has sent another messenger to beg my lord the king and me to go see him, because he believes that just by seeing us much of his illness will be alleviated. Please do not be distressed; for we shall return quickly and bring him with us."

"Señor, beloved son," said the queen, "although I feel as if my grandson's illness is tearing my heart from my body, I am somewhat consoled by the thought that sickness is natural. Yet, since Gandalín's visit, my eyes have never ceased crying, for Esplandián's very concealed illness is causing me very heavy pain. If some kind of pleasure does not come from this, my life will not last long. Concerning the other thing you mentioned, my lord the king is free to do whatever he pleases; for his pleasure is mine."

"Rejoice, duenna," said the king. "We shall return to you quickly with the boy you love so much."

After saying good-bye to her, King Lisuarte retrieved his sword, they took Don Grumedán with them, and they departed for London. They entered the alcázar at night because Lisuarte did not want anyone to recognize him, and he remained hidden until everything was ready. Then they went to their ships and set sail for Firm Island's great port. As soon as they arrived they found that the very courageous king of Sardinia had already anchored the emperor of Rome's huge fleet and his own in the port. This sight filled them with joy. What can I tell you? Within a week King Perión, Agrajes, and the king of Sobradisa joined them there. In addition, when the very valiant King Cildadán

heard the momentous news, he rushed to assemble a large armada of very good fighters, and he too came even though he had not been summoned. Also, Don Galvanes, King Don Bruneo, and Don Cuadragante came, and on the way they encountered the king of Sweden and Grasandor, who were bringing their own large fleets.

When so many contingents were assembled in one place, their spirits welled up so tremendously in their hearts that, even though the rest of the world were to oppose them, they would have no fear. Then they implored God fervently to give them the opportunity to encounter the infidels so that, by serving Him, they could make amends for the sinful errors they had committed against Him. Sailing in the lead ships, the two handsome and aged kings, Lisuarte and Perión, led the whole armada out to sea and on the course for the place they expected to find their enemies. Finally, after twenty days, they hove into sight of Constantinople's high towers.[2] When the city's defenders first spotted them, they waited for them to come closer to discern whether or not they were Christians; but as soon as they recognized them clearly by the standards and pennon the ships were flying proudly in the stiff breeze, they began to raise loud cries of joy, and they said:

"Pagan traitors and enemies of the true faith, now you will all be confounded, destroyed, and torn to pieces if you dare confront those great armies that are coming at you."

Hearing the uproar, everyone in the city instantly became excited, and they asked those in the towers what was happening: were they just taunting the enemy, or did they mean to give true pleasure to friends? Those in the towers replied that it was to do both things: they should believe for certain that God was on their side, for so many Christian fleets were coming across the sea that all their enemies could not escape being killed. They added that the rescuers would arrive very soon. Therefore, they should go tell the emperor. The city dwellers ran toward the grand palaces to tell him the news. There is no way to describe his joy when he was informed, because anyone can imagine it. Immediately, he put on his armor and ordered all his knights and all citizens to arm themselves. Then, accompanied by ten thousand cavalrymen, he notified the gates, and he arrived at the Gate of the Dragon, which was being guarded

---

[2] On April 20, 1453, three Venetian galleys broke the Turkish blockade and arrived in Constantinople with additional manpower, food, and weapons to hearten the outnumbered defenders of the beleaguered city. Runciman comments on the state of affairs as they stood five weeks before the city was overrun: "If help would soon arrive from the outside world the city might yet be saved" (Runciman, *The Fall*, 99). The city sent out desperate appeals for massive aid, and they heard rumors that a giant fleet was to be organized under the ægis of Venice; that it was to meet in Crete; and that from there it would sail up the Dardanelles and force its way into Constantinople. The three Venetian galleys reported seeing no signs of such a fleet, and hope in the city disappeared. The final report that no fleet was coming was receiving in the city on May 23. Constantinople fell on May 28, 1453, and the pope was still working on rescue plans on June 5. Clearly, GRM modelled his "improved history" on well-known events of Constantinople's last days.

by Count Frandalo. From there he saw clearly that these were rescue fleets. The same was also obvious to the enemy. Then all the ships, which had been spread out, moved in closer to each other. Once they were in close formation, they began to tie the ships together with very heavy chains. After doing this, the Christians withdrew some distance so that they could all land without any hindrance. At the same time, all of the forces in the pagan camps who were under the orders of Radiaro, the valiant soldan of Liquía, and the soldan of Alapa, whose name was Mazortino,[3] armed themselves.

162

How Amadís sent a message to his son Esplandián calling him from Forbidden Mountain before all those great kings entered the port of Constantinople.

While the Christians fleets were still a long distance from coming within sight of the city, King Amadís ordered Count Gandalín to take his small boat and to go tell Esplandián to come join them. This was done immediately. Upon hearing this news, the latter was so pleased that he bowed his knees to the ground, and he said:

"King of the heavens and the earth, blessed be Your name; for this is how You succor those who travel in Your service."

After ordering his arms and horse loaded on the Serpentine Caravel, he and Count Gandalín also went on board. However, the caravel made no sign of moving, which surprised Esplandián. So, he waited for a while, but still it remained motionless. The count said to him:

"Señor, what does this mean? Is this ship going to fail you just when you need it most?"

"I do not know what to make of it," said Esplandián. "Perhaps it only moves by Urganda's powers; but she is imprisoned and enchanted, and therefore she is prevented from using her arts. Everything that depends on her must be affected in the same way."[1]

What he said was true, because the undiscoverable island she inhabited, which was known to no one, was clearly seen and visited by anyone who wished to do so during the interval of her imprisonment. Seeing there was nothing he could do, Esplandián put all his equipment, his armor, and his horse on Gandalín's little boat, he found a mariner to steer it, and he set out to sea. He travelled so hard that on the second night he passed close by the

---

[3] JG, JJAS, and SP spell his name "Maçortino." JJF and JV (Naz. follows JV) show a typographical error by printing "Macortino." We follow Gay. in modernizing the spelling. This character does not appear in bks. I through IV.

[1] The first time in bk. V the caravel will not move is in chap. 1. On that occasion, however, Urganda wills the Great Serpent not to move so that Esplandián has to face his first challenge.

pagan fleets, and he came so close to the side of the city by the Dragon Gate that he saw quite clearly that the Christian fleets had not yet arrived.[2] Then he followed the course Count Gandalín showed him, and, before sailing far, he found the fleets. As soon as Gandalín informed him that his grandfathers King Lisuarte and King Perión were aboard the lead ship, he went to it because his father was also aboard. When he came alongside no one recognized him because he had his helmet on his head. Then he went to where King Lisuarte was, and no sooner did he see him than he approached him and threw himself at the king's feet. The latter, seeing him enter so suddenly, was so highly moved that words failed him. Then he took Esplandián in his arms, hugged him, and while tears were streaming down his cheeks and drenching his long beard, he kissed Esplandián over and over again on his face and his eyes. Esplandián did not have a chance to kiss the king's hands, and he cried due to the immense joy he felt at being in the presence of the king who had raised him and whom he loved so much. At this moment, his father King Amadís came in and said to him:

"Son, we are very pleased that you have come."

Esplandián extricated himself from his grandfather's embrace, and then he knelt before his father and kissed his hands. In return, Amadís kissed him and gave him his blessing. And if you were to be told how he was greeted by King Perión, his uncles—who were also kings—and all the others, it would amount to excessive prolixity. Suffice it to say that, as they felt immense love for him, so, too, their pleasure upon seeing him was just as immense.

163

How the servants of the almighty Lord,
Landed and set up a magnificent
Display of rich treasures before each tent;
Their coming is what the Turks most abhorred;
And how Calafía and the Turks at night,
Wishing to avenge their perfidious rage,
Wrote a letter of fury and outrage
To the king of Britain and to the knight.

Following the course you have heard, the Christians arrived near the city in the company of the emperor's fleet, which had sailed some distance away due

[2] If GRM's Constantinople were modelled on the real space occupied by Istanbul, the information given here would be accurate. The Christians placed a giant chain across the mouth of the Golden Horn on the city's north side. Safely beyond the chain, up the Golden Horn, is the Gate of the Drongarii, which we have tentatively identified with the Dragon Gate. In addition, he would have passed the pagan fleets in the Sea of Marmora to the south. Of course, it would have been possible for Esplandián in his little boat to miss seeing the Christian fleet in the Sea of Marmora or before passing through the Dardanelles.

to fear of the enemy. From this vantage point they could observe the pagan fleets, which had remained grouped together. Likewise, they were able to see some of the camps on terra firma. Then the Christian kings in the vanguard very swiftly and without any interference set up a beachhead. Later, you will hear why they were not attacked by the pagans. Onto that stretch of land there sallied forth very many armies, and they brought out their horses and tents and much more equipment in conformity to their grandeur. Also, there came forth many soldiers equipped with their own gear, and they had many kinds of tools with which they dug ditches and fosses to fortify the royal camps. They spent that day occupied in these tasks, for, as we promised to tell you, they planned to do nothing other than that and to send a message to the emperor telling him to remain calm in the city.[1] There would be sufficient time to meet later. They also requested that Count Frandalo, who was highly accomplished in the arts of war, be relieved of guard duty at his gate and that he be told to join Agrajes in the fleets. While those kings were in their tents sending out orders to fortify their military posts very well and to prepare to give battle to their enemies the next day, the great soldan of Liquía and Queen Calafía, who together were making the rounds among their forces to insist that they not get out of line, were informed by some scouts that Amadís, king of Great Britain, and his son, the Serpentine Knight, were in the Christian encampment. They rejoiced upon hearing this news. Thereupon, they summoned the soldan's damsel about whom you heard earlier—the one who delivered the note to Norandel—and they ordered her to go to the Christian camp, to ask for King Amadís and his son, the Serpentine Knight, and to hand them a letter on their behalf that read as follows:

164

The letter from the soldan of Liquía and Queen Calafía to King Amadís and his son Esplandián.

We, Radiaro, soldan of Liquía, shield and defender of the pagan faith, destroyer of Christians, cruel enemy of the enemies of the gods, and Queen Calafía, the very courageous ruler of the great California Island, where an amazing abundance of gold and precious stones are found, wish to inform you,

---

[1] This sentence is punctuated in various ways depending on the edition. JJAS, JJF, and JV break the sentence with a colon after "they planned to do nothing [else]": (Naz. regularly omits these breaks). JG and SP put a period after the same clause: "they planned to do nothing [else]. [They sent a] message." Gay. corrects these versions by making one long sentence as we have attempted to render it. The confusion seems due to the clause "as we promised to tell you," which seems to refer to the promise above to explain why the enemy did not attack. We choose to use the insights in JG, JJF, JJAS, JV, and SP but to follow Gay.'s general emendation.

Amadís de Gaula, king of Great Britain, and you, Knight of the Great Serpent, his son, that we have come to these parts with the intention of destroying the city of Constantinople. We plan to do so both because of the aggravation and harm your evil emperor has inflicted on our brother and friend, the very honorable King Armato of Persia, and because he has deceptively given shelter and aid that resulted in part of Armato's seigniory being seized. Since our only desire is to win glory and fame, which our favorable fortune has granted us so far, and since we have heard about your great chivalric deeds that circulate throughout the world, we have decided, if you agree, or if you have sufficient strength to do so, to challenge you to individual battles between you and us. The defeated will give themselves in obedient subjugation to the victors to be killed or taken captives wherever the victors may choose. We send this challenge before the inevitable conflict between our large contingents necessarily takes place. If you reject it, we will be justified in adding all your past glories to ours and to count them as our own. Moreover, it will be a clear sign that the future victory will be on our side."

165

How the high kings, who were very knowing men,
Read the stiff, blunt challenge backward and forward,
And, although they suspected something untoward,
They accepted the challenge as manna from heaven;
And how Calafía, dressed as a woman
In the very best of exotic raiment,
Took two thousand women from her regiment
To view the Serpent Knight[1] *as woman to man.*

The beautiful black damsel, who was very magnificently attired, mounted her fiery beast and took the note directly to the Christian camp. There she asked for the two knights—for the father and the son—and she was told they were in King Lisuarte's tent. As she was going there, she was stared at by everyone because they were impressed by her particular beauty and by the foreign style of her very magnificent dress and adornments. Upon approaching the tent, she asked for them, and she was told they were with King Lisuarte.

"Then, tell them a foreign damsel wishes to see them; and ask them if they want to see me inside or here where I am."

---

[1] In terms of comparative mythology it is interesting to note that the designation of Esplandián as the Serpent Knight parallels the Meso-American Plumed Serpent God known as Quetzalcóatl to the Aztecs, as Kukulkán to the Mayas, and as Gucumatz in the *Popol Vuh*, the sacred book of the Guatemalan Mayas. This is significant inasmuch as Hernán Cortés, the conquistador of México, is known to have read *Esplandián*, and after being informed about the legends of Quetzalcóatl, he also impersonated the Plumed Serpent God as part of his war tactics.

When this message was passed on to them, they would have gone out to meet her, but kings Lisuarte and Perión told the messenger to have her enter, for that was the most proper thing to do. The damsel got off her beast and entered the tent where the kings, who were armed, received her. They sat on their royal chairs that were finely decorated with precious stones; for, during wartime in that ancient age, it was the custom to bring to the battlefield the most precious jewels they had for their persons, their attire, and everything else that pertained to their service. They brought their riches into battle camp where some lacked riches, others had none, and still others did not dare bring theirs with them for fear of losing them; but the mightiest kings brought theirs because, by displaying their great treasures, they would appear more powerful and they would seem to belong to a higher estate, and, therefore, they would be obeyed more respectfully. The damsel came before them and said:

"Is Amadís here, king of Great Britain, and his son Esplandián, who is called the Knight of the Great Serpent?"

"Yes," said Amadís. "What do you desire, good damsel? I am the one you ask for. And here you see my son."

The damsel turned her head and saw Esplandián, who was standing in front of his grandfather, King Lisuarte. She was shocked to see how handsome he was, and she said:

"Truly, oh king, you are right when you say he is the knight I am seeking; for the fame of his very great handsomeness has spread throughout the whole world. I hear too much cannot be said in praise of his looks for fear that words would fail upon seeing him. Well, then, take this note, which is for you and him, and answer it in accordance with your great reputation and depending on the amount of courage you have in your hearts."

They took the note, read it, and told the damsel to return to her palfrey and to wait there for their reply. She did as ordered. There was some disagreement among the kings. Some said that, while they were facing so many enemies, they could not afford risking their two best knights in individual battles, for great misfortune often occurs when running such a risk; that is to say that, if they were to lose them, they would all lose much of their hope for victory. Others said that it would be better to attack the soldan and the queen with a larger party of knights. But then, Amadís said:

"Good sires, both the particular and the general depend on God's will, from which no one can flee without His grace. If we were to decline this challenge for any reason, it would give our enemies great encouragement, and, above all, it would be an obvious blot on our honor. Moreover, it would be worse in this land, seeing that we are strangers here and that they have not seen any sign of our zeal. What is already widely known in our land, and what would be seen as virtuous and a sign of good judgment there, here would be considered a sure proof of great cowardice. Therefore, trusting in the Lord's mercy, I maintain the battle should be accepted, and it should happen without any further delay."

"Since that is your pleasure," said King Lisuarte and King Perión, "so be it. May God aid you with His mercy."

Then King Amadís went to the damsel and said to her:

"Friend, tell your master and Queen Calafía that we accept the battle with whatever arms they choose. Let the field be this field, divided in half. I give my word that we shall not be succored by our forces no matter what may happen. Tell them to order their forces to do the same. If they accept these terms, let the battle begin soon."

The damsel departed with this response, which she relayed to her two masters. Queen Calafía asked her what she thought of the Christians.

"They are fine," she answered. "They are all good-looking and well armed. But I tell you, oh queen, that the Serpentine Knight is among them. I believe a more stunningly handsome knight has never lived. One like him never existed in the past, does not exist in the present, and will never exist in the future. No one has ever seen anyone like him, and they never will. Oh queen! What can I tell you but that, if he belonged to our religion, we would certainly believe that our gods had made him, and that they had used all their creative power and knowledge to produce such a masterpiece from which they left nothing out?"

"Damsel, friend," said the queen upon hearing this, "those are powerful words."

"No, they are not," she said. "No sense other than sight is powerful enough to give you a faithful report about how perfect he is."

"Now I tell you," said the queen, "I will not enter the lists against such a man without first seeing him and speaking with him. So, I ask the soldan to give his consent, and I ask you to arrange a meeting with him."

"I agree to anything that pleases you, oh queen," said the soldan.

"Then I will carry out your command as you wish," said the damsel.

Turning her bestial[2] around, she went back to the Christian camp, where everyone thought she was returning with a formal acceptance of the battle. However, as soon as she arrived, she found the kings at the tent's door, and she said:

"Amadís, king, Queen Calafía begs you to give her safe conduct so that she can come see your son tomorrow."

He began to laugh, and he said to the other kings:

"What do you think about this request?"

"I say, let her come," said King Lisuarte. "It is a good idea to see one of the world's most notable women."

"Take that as your answer," Amadís said to the damsel. "Have no fear that she will be treated with all honesty and propriety."

She was very happy with this result of her mission. So, she returned to the queen and gave her the message. The queen said to the soldan:

"Stay here in good health, and warn your people not to do anything foolish while I am away."

---

[2] The Spanish term, *animalía* [animal], is listed as an archaism in DA, and it was also an archaism to GRM. It is attested throughout medieval Spanish literature as a variant of *animal*. We have attempted to reflect its archaic quality in our translation of bestial, which is allowed by OED as a noun in the sense of a single beast.

"Do not worry about that," he said.

Then she went to her ships, where she spent the whole night trying to decide whether she would undertake the visit wearing her armor or not. In the end, she decided on feminine apparel because it would be more modest. When dawn came, she rose, and she was given some robes to put on which were made entirely of gold and many precious stones. Also, she wore a finely designed headdress with a huge volume of twists and turns, and when she finally put it on her head it was like a capeline: it was made completely of gold studded with gems of great value. To ride to her meeting, she was brought the strangest-looking bestial that was ever seen: each ear was as large as a shield; its forehead was broad; it had only one eye, which looked like a mirror; its nostrils were widely-flared; its face was short and so snub-nosed that it almost had no snout at all; and two tusks that were each two hands long rose out of its bottom jaw. It was of a yellow color with royal purple spots like those of an ounce, but it was larger than a dromedary, and it had cloven hooves like an ox's. It ran as fiercely as the wind, and, like mountain goat's, it was able to negotiate the most rugged crags very fleetly. It ate only dates, figs, and raisins, and nothing else at all. Viewed from the haunches, sides, and chest, it was quite beautiful.[3] In short, as you heard before, this is the bestial on which that beautiful queen rode out of her camp while being accompanied by two thousand of her wonderfully-attired women. Attending her were twenty magnificently-attired damsels who were charged with caring for her skirts, which flowed from that beast's back for more than four braces[4] and dragged along the ground. The queen arrived at the Christian camp dressed in that fashion and with that large retinue. There she found all the kings, who were now all on land, seated on their chairs, which were covered with golden cloths. Moreover, they were all armed, because they did not trust the pagans' promises. They came out to meet her at the door to the tent, where she

---

[3] Concerning elements of obvious fantasy such as Calafía's yellow, purple-spotted bestial, which is beautiful when viewed in two dimensions, it is interesting to note that the first four bks., which are much less "historical" and "realistic" than bk. V, have many fewer fantastical creations. Aside from the omnipresence of giants, the only monster is the Endriago, and even it is a supposed product of human incest, rather than a purely imaginary creature. By contrast, *Esplandián* has a Serpent Caravel, monstrous serpents, snakes, strange monkeys, a flying dragon, griffins, and now a delightfully amazing bestial. The increased combination of reality and fantasy in this bk. is explained in part by GRM's manifest desire to express the symbolic and didactic dimension of real history. In this regard, during the same historical period Columbus was searching biblical and mythological literature for symbols and signs that he was destined to discover a western route to the Indies. He compiled these findings in his *Book of Prophecies*. See Cristóbal Colón, . Furthermore, as soon as the New World was opened to Western exploration, Amazons, fantastic animals, and the rest became common currency in European discourse. For these reasons, given the date of GRM's death (ca. 1502), it is possible that this chap. was written after one or more of the voyages of Columbus and others.

[4] A brace (Spanish *braza*) is two rods or 1.67 meters long. Four braces are therefore 6.67 meters.

alighted from her mount in the arms of Don Cuadragante. The two kings, Lisuarte and Perión, took her hands and showed her to a chair that was placed between them. From this position, she looked about and saw Esplandián next to King Lisuarte, who was holding his hand. Since his handsomeness exceeded the others' in the extreme, she realized it was he, and she said in a loud voice:

"Oh, my gods, what can this be! Now I tell you that I have seen the likes of which was never seen[5] before and will never be seen again."

As he was staring at her beautiful face with his charming eyes, she felt the rays that were emanating from his radiant beauty wound her eyes and penetrate straight to her heart. Hence, although she had never before been conquered by any great force of arms, nor had she ever been bowed in any battle against an enemy, she was as softened and weakened by that vision and that amorous passion as if she had run a gauntlet of iron mallets. Seeing herself so afflicted, she realized that, if she sojourned there any longer, more difficulties might damage her great fame as a manly knight, which she had won by overcoming so much peril and travail. Moreover, by staying longer she was risking discredit and dishonor, and she knew she would be returned to the state of natural weakness that was nature's first gift and ornament to women. Painfully struggling to keep her reason from succumbing to her will, she rose from the chair and said:

"Knight of the Great Serpent, I wanted to see you on account of two qualities that make you more famous than all other mortals: the first is your great handsomeness, which I would not have believed had I not seen it with my own eyes, for no report is capable of describing your great good looks; and the second is the valor and courage of your strong heart. I have seen the first one, the likes of which I never saw before and I never expect to see again even though I am granted many more years of life. As for the second one, it will be revealed on the battlefield against brave Radiaro, soldan of Liquía; and my valor will be shown against this powerful king, your father. And if fortune ordains us to come through these and the other battles alive, as we expect we shall, then, before I return to my land, I will approach you again to discuss some of my affairs."

Turning to the kings, she said:

"Kings, fare ye well; for I wish to go now. You will see me next dressed in different clothes and waiting for King Amadís on the battlefield. I shall place my hopes in changeable fortune, trusting that he who was never defeated by any knight, no matter how valorous, nor by even the most horrifying wild beasts, will now be defeated by a woman."

Before Esplandián could respond, the two elder kings took her hands, led her out of the tent, and helped her mount her strange bestial. They prevented him from entering into a discussion with her even though she was an amazing sight to look at and even though she was beautiful, because they felt

---

[5] Here we follow JJF, JJAS, and JV (*pudo*) rather than Gay., SP, and JG. The latter three have the verb in the present tense (*puede*), whereas the first three have it in the preterite, which seems to us a better reading.

it was most immodest for her to dress in armor rather than the style that befit her feminine nature and that was commanded by the very mouth of God, who said that women ought to be subject to men; whereas she was seeking the opposite: she desired to rule over all men, not by means of sharpness of mind, but rather by force of arms. But above all, they interrupted the conversation because she was one of the infidels whom he detested mortally and whom he sought to destroy. After she departed, King Amadís ordered that his horses and Esplandián's be brought to them so that they would be prepared for battle whenever the soldan and the queen went onto the battlefield.

Just then, Don Brian de Monjaste,[6] who was a good knight known for valor in arms, arrived by sea. He had been in Cesonia—which was later known as Ceuta[7]—with a great fleet ordered by his father, King Ladasán[8] of Spain, to inflict damage on the Africans. During that engagement a corsair who covered vast areas of the sea told him about the siege of Constantinople, and he said to him:[9]

"Don Brian, if you and your people ever wished to serve our high and mighty Lord, now is the time; for almost all of the world's pagans have gone to lay siege to Constantinople, and they are pressing it hard. Now all of Christendom has gone on a rescue mission, and the only nation that is missing is Spain. If our Lord God does not send His mercy to His people, neither this region nor that one will fail to come under pagan domination."[10]

As soon as he heard this, Don Brian sent this news to his father the king, returned to his fleet, and, navigating very fast and desiring to take part in such a great and notable event, he soon landed in the place about which I just told you. His arrival pleased and encouraged everyone very much.

---

[6] As GRM tells us immediately, Brian de Monjaste and his father, Ladasán, are from Spain. His mother is one of Perión's sisters. He is one of the prominent knights throughout bks. II to IV. He fights with Amadís against Lisuarte, and then he and Cuadragante are charged with negotiating a peace treaty with Lisuarte. At the end of bk. IV, Cuadragante, Bruneo, and he conquer the territories of the Arabian king. As Cacho Blecua points out, Brian de Monjaste is one of the few ostensibly Spanish elements in the entire Amadís Cycle. In bk. II, chap. 68, the narrator says that Brian "arrived with his Spaniards, who were a strong people and good horsemen" (CB, II, 1041).

[7] Ceuta is a city in North Africa that has belonged to Spain since 1580. It was conquered from Moroccan Moslems by Portugal in 1415 and reverted to Spain upon Felipe II's accession to the throne of Portugal in 1580.

[8] Ladasán's name is spelled "Lasadán" by JJAS, JJF, JG, JV, and SP. However, Gay. and CB have the spelling we are adopting in order to have his name coincide with its spelling in bks. I to IV. Ladasán's only resonance in the Amadís Cycle is as Brian's father.

[9] Here we choose to follow the punctuation of JJF, JJAS, JG, JV, and SP over Gay. In the first five, there is a punctuation mark after "said to him." This means that the corsair begins his speech by addressing Brian. Gay., less convincingly, has: "Brian said to him."

[10] Assuming this passage was written after chap. 102, in which there are allusions to the conquest of Granada, GRM's campaign for Spain to engage in a new crusade against the Moslem East is evident in this statement by a Christian corsair who is well acquainted with Mediterranean reality.

How each Scipio seized his competitor
After they finished the joust as victor
On the field where they showed the valor
Of their hearts and the strength of their armor;
And then, their fiery nature turned peaceful,
The great Radiaro and Amazon queen
Left the battlefield without a fine screen[1]
And were carried off from their own people.

It was not long before King Amadís and Esplandián, who were armed and awaiting their arrival, saw Radiaro, soldan of Liquía, and Calafía, queen of California, ride toward them equipped for battle. All the people on both sides took their places to watch. Those in the city took up positions lining the walls and filling the towers. The emperor was outside the city near the wall, and he ordered his daughter Leonorina to join all her duennas and damsels atop one of the towers so that she could see what her knight was going to do. All the spectators were armed, so that they would not lose their freedom of action in case the security measures broke down. At this point, King Amadís and his son appeared riding their beautiful horses. Carrying their shields, helmets, and lances, they approached the enemy on their beautiful, high-stepping horses in such a way that those on both sides regarded them with wonder. Then the soldan said in a loud voice:

"Knights, if you please, let us speak before we begin fighting."

Amadís refused to answer, but instead, they continued at the same pace until they reached their opponents. Only then Amadís said:

"What do you want, soldan?"

"What I want," he said, "is for the vanquished, if they are not killed, to be taken as captive prisoners by the victors without any impediment."

"I so agree," said Amadís.

"Then, let us begin jousting now," said the soldan.

With that, they separated a short distance and began their attacks. The soldan struck Esplandián on his shield so hard that a brace-long piece of the pagan's lance pierced it: the onlookers thought Esplandián was hit in the body, but he was not, for the lance passed alongside his arm and in the direction away from his body. As for Esplandián, who noticed where his very beloved

---

[1] The Spanish term, *anteparo* [screen], attested in all texts, does not appear in any dictionary or work we have consulted from the period. The closest we can come is the word *antipara*, which means "screen." The idea, we suppose, is that the combatants lost the protection—the screen—provided by their shields, their dignity, and their invincibility. An editor's good guess would suggest that *anteparo* is a misprint for *amparo*. This would yield one of GRM's stock phrases (*sin más amparo* [without further avail]), which would also fit the sense better. We choose not to adopt this solution because there is no textual evidence to support it.

lady was, his blow struck Radiaro's shield, passed through it, and the iron tip landed on the strong coat of plates[2] under the pagan's cuirass, where the lance stopped. The knight's blow was so forceful that it knocked Radiaro from his saddle, making him roll violently across the field, while his helmet, which was torn from his head, rolled in another direction. Esplandián passed by him quite handsomely without suffering any setback. Meanwhile, the queen came at Amadís, and he at her, but before he met her, he turned the lance chape-end forward,[3] and they struck each other's shields in such a way that her lance shattered into many pieces. Amadís's did not strike squarely, but rather glanced off. Instead, they hit each other so fiercely with their shields that the strength of the blow knocked the queen senseless, and she fell to the earth. The same happened to Amadís's horse, whose head was split in two. Amadís's leg was pinned underneath the dead horse. When his son saw him, he jumped off his horse and dragged his father from immediate danger. Meanwhile, the queen came to, grabbed her sword, and rejoined the soldan, who had risen with great difficulty because he had fallen hard, but he had already retrieved his helmet and sword. Then they commenced attacking very fiercely. However, as we told you, Esplandián, who felt the presence of his precious infanta, whom he loved more than himself, pressed the attack on the soldan with such bitterly hard blows that, even though the latter was one of the bravest knights in the pagans' camp, even though he himself had won many dangerous battles, and even though he was very skilled in the art of jousting, none of this availed him at all, and he became very discouraged. He was losing strength fast; he had next to no opportunities to strike a blow; and he was slowly but surely being forced off the battlefield. When the queen stood up to face Amadís, she began by landing some very hard blows, some of which missed and others of which he took on his shield. He, on the other hand, in order not to have to use his sword, pulled out the piece of her lance that had broken off in his shield, and he hit her so hard on top of her helmet that he nearly knocked her down. Reacting to this, she said:

"How is this, Amadís? Do you esteem my strength so little that you plan to defeat me with sticks?"

"Queen," he said, "it has always been my rule to serve and aid women. If I were to lay any weapon at all on you, seeing you are a woman, I would deserve to lose the good[4] reputation of all my past deeds."

---

[2] This "coat of plates" is called *fojas* in Spanish (*fojas* in Riq., JJAS, and JV; *hojas* in Gay., SP, JJF, and JG). Riquer says that *fojas* are a separate defensive layer that complements the cuirass. He adds that these *fojas* are found throughout bks. I to IV. It covered the whole body from throat to thighs, it was made of metal laminations, and it could even have its own covering of chain mail. For this translation we are borrowing Bengt Thordeman's terminology in *Armour from the Battle of Wisby*.

[3] A chape (*cuento*) is the metal ring or covering that covers the end of the lance opposite the sharp iron tip or knife. It is not used in an attempt to kill but rather to knock down.

[4] Here we follow JJAS and JJF over Gay., SP, and JG. JJAS, JJF, and JV have: *perder todo el bien hecho passado*. This is not an obviously eloquent construction, but it seems bet-

"What! Do you count me among other women?" the queen exclaimed. "Well, now you shall see."

Then she took up her sword with both hands and went to attack him full of rage. Amadís raised his shield on which he received the blow, which was so savage and so hard that it split his shield in two, and half of it fell to the ground. However, this meant she was very close to him; so he shifted the stick to his left hand and wedged it into her shield's protective rim.[5] Then he pulled on it so hard that the chords that tied her shield to her neck broke and he was able to snatch it away from her in his other hand so violently that she was forced to drop one knee to the ground. While she was springing quickly to her feet, Amadís threw aside the half of the shield he was holding, and grabbed the other half. Grasping the truncheon, he went at her, saying:

"Queen, surrender as my prisoner; for your soldan has already lost."

She turned her head and saw that he had just conceded defeat and that Esplandián had taken him prisoner. So she said to Amadís:

"First I want to try my luck one more time."

She raised the tip of her sword as high as she could with both hands intending to hit him on top of his helmet, assuming that it and his head would be split in two. However, Amadís, who was very agile, evaded the blow, which missed him, and at the same time he struck her so hard on top of her helmet with the piece of the lance that he knocked her breathless, and he made her drop her sword. Amadís grabbed it and, seeing what condition she was in, he pulled on her helmet so hard that it came free. Tossing it aside, he said:

"Now, are you my prisoner?"

"Yes," she said, "for there was nothing else I could do."[6]

At that moment, Esplandián approached them with the soldan, who had surrendered to him. Then, while no one dared break the security agreement, they marched their captives off in everyone's view. Arriving at their camp, they were greeted with great pleasure, not so much because of victory in the battle—for they had a long record of great armed deeds, as this story has dem-

---

ter than the alternative reading: *perder todo lo hecho pasado* [to lose all of what I did in the past].

[5] The Spanish for "the shield's protective rim" is *brocal*. Riquer discusses various interpretations of this part of a shield. Essentially, it is a steel reinforcement on the top edge of a shield where the most damaging blows were likely to strike. Even so, a tremendous blow on the *brocal* could dent the shield severely or even split it in two as here. Some specialists think this part of the rim was made out of steel, but Riquer doubts this conclusion in face of the fact that shields with a *brocal* were often cut in half. Others think, therefore, that the *brocal* was a decorative rim.

[6] The conclusion to this battle between Calafía and Amadís is considerably different from the end of the battle between the Amazon Queen Pantaselona and Pirrus in the Galician-Castilian *Historia troyana*. In this latter work, the contestants hit each other on top of their helmets just as they do here; but, by contrast, Pirrus cuts off Pantaselona's arm, and, when she is defeated, he cuts off her head and continues to hack her to pieces. See *Historia troyana*,

onstrated, and this one victory did not add to their glory—but because they interpreted it as a good portent for what was yet to come. King Amadís ordered Count Gandalín to take the two prisoners to Infanta Leonorina on behalf of him and his son Esplandián. Also, he asked Gandalín to tell her that it was his desire that she show the soldan all honor due him because he was a great prince and a noble and courageous knight; and he requested that honor be given the queen because she was a woman. Furthermore, Amadís trusted that God would allow them similarly to send to her all of those pagans who remained alive after whatever battles they still wished to have with them. The count took them away, and since the city was very near, he soon arrived at the palaces, where he found the infanta. Presenting the prisoners to her, he delivered Amadís's message. The infanta said:

"Tell King Amadís I am very grateful for these presents he has sent me. Given his past good fortune and great courage, I will not be surprised to see Amadís fulfill his desire to offer the others to me, too. All of us here are very anxious to see him here, because, although I have forgiven his son, I want him to arbitrate between us."

The count kissed her hands and returned to the royal camp. Then the infanta ordered some of her magnificent clothes and a headdress brought from her mother the empress's wardrobe. Ordering the queen to take off her armor, Leonorina had her dressed in the new clothes. For the soldan, she did likewise with some of the clothes of her father the emperor, and she asked Master Helisabad to treat some small wounds they had. But here I must tell you that the queen was awe-struck by Leonorina's immense beauty, and she said to her:

"I tell you, infanta, that I was just as awed seeing how handsome your knight is as I am now seeing your beauty, which overwhelms me. And, since looks are deeds, I fear no affront by being your prisoner."

"Queen," said the infanta, "the Lord in whom I believe will, I hope, direct events in such a way that I may have good cause to fulfill the debt that victors have, by reason of their own innate virtue, over the vanquished."[7]

167

How the great Christian kings deployed their battalions on land and sea.

After this action, the Christian kings and grandees decided to give battle on the next day; so they ordered everyone present to hear mass and to be armed

---

[7] JJAS, JJF, JV, SP, and Gay. punctuate the final clauses in this grammatically complex sentence in three different ways. In addition, JJAS, JJF, and JV add a word (*en*) that helps disentangle the complexity. Gay.: "*los vencedores tienen virtud sobre sí contra los vencidos.*" SP: "*los vencedores tienen virtud sobre si, contra los vencidos.*" JJAS: "*los vencedores tienen, en virtud sobre si contra los vencidos.*" JV eliminates the comma from JJAS. We choose to follow a combined version of JJAS, JV, and JJF (the latter capitalizes *Vencidos*).

and mounted at daybreak. King Lisuarte, King Perión, and King Cildadán took the lead. Behind them were King Amadís and his two royal brothers, Don Galaor and Don Florestán. In the third battalion were Gasquilán, king of Sweden, Don Galvanes, and the giant Balán, who arrived that very day in a fleet full of good men. In the fourth battalion were King Don Bruneo, Don Cuadragante, Grasandor, and the duke of Bristol. Esplandián refused to go anywhere else than with his kingly grandfathers in the vanguard. Agrajes and Don Brian de Monjaste remained in the fleet with Count Frandalo, about whom it can be truly affirmed that there was no better seaman on either side of the conflict. The kings sent word to their fleet that they were to attack the pagans as soon as they ascertained that the land battle had begun; and, if they could they should try to set the enemy ships on fire, which, being chained very tightly together, would burn up before they could be unchained. Likewise, they sent a message advising the emperor to secure the city with the most common of the people and to release all the knights to Norandel's charge so that, at the right time, he could lead a deadly attack; for, with death, they would all earn eternal life. Now we shall tell you what the pagans did.

168

About the first very cruel battle fought against the Turks by the Christian kings on land, and by Agrajes and Count Frandalo at sea.

When the pagans saw the defeat of Radiaro, soldan of Liquía, and Queen Calafía, they were highly discomfited, because they were fully confident that these two could overcome any adversity that fortune might cause them. However, quickly realizing that they constituted a vast multitude, they refused to abandon the project they had begun. Therefore, sixty kings, two caliphs, four Tamorlanes, and many others sent a message to the soldan of Alapa's camps saying that they calculated that, if the Christians who were on land were vanquished, there would be no reason to fear[1] those who were on the sea. Likewise, they made provisions for the ships in the fleets to remain close together, for they were fearful that danger would increase should they become separated. Also, they provided fifty kings to make certain their people were prepared with great instruments of war. These kings were to act as their captains and to be ready to attempt to enter the city as soon as they saw the commotion of the battle begin. Having agreed upon these plans, the armies in both camps took the field. The Christian kings were deployed as you already heard, but the pagans handled their people in the opposite way, for they were unable to organize such a multitude. They made no distinctions among armies or divisions of any sort; instead, they all remained in one mass, for they covered the

[1] Here we follow JJF, JJAS, JV, and SP (*temer*) over Gay. (*remer*) because Gay.'s reading is an obvious typographical mistake.

entire battlefield. This meant the Christians were forced to do the same. They feared that none of their battalions was strong enough to stop such a vast amount of people, and that, if the enemy broke through the Christians' first rank, their last ranks would not be able to catch them; rather, the enemy's rear guard would turn back on them and defeat them. Therefore, they too formed into one body, which was probably composed of nearly one hundred thousand men; whereas, the opposition had more than seven hundred thousand.[2]

Aligned in this way, both camps marched across the field toward each other at the pace their horses set. When they were separated by the distance of an arrow shot, the elderly kings, King Amadís, and the other kings and grandees, all of whom went before their forces like a shield, spurred their horses very hard and attacked some of the enemy kings, who were also out in front and who were wearing very magnificent arms. Then and there, one of the finest jousts ever seen began. Because everything was happening in such close quarters and because there was so little room for the battles between horses, lances, and shields—all of which were very strong—none of the pagans remained in their saddles. What's more, they all died trampled by the huge crowd. The confusion of clamoring voices and pagan algarads was so tremendous that they made the heavens and the earth shake. It was amazing to see those renowned kings and knights all plunge so boldly into the tumult and to see them attack and kill with so little fear of death because their aim was to give their souls true life. Most especially, there is no mind capable of grasping, nor is any hand capable of writing, what Esplandián did to protect his very beloved lady, for she was his only death or imprisonment. The knight waded into the enemy, knocking them down, wounding them, and killing them so zealously and so bravely that they were fleeing from him as if he were death itself. Many times the pagans tried to surround him, but those kings who were his father, grandfathers, and uncles, fearing the great danger he was in, neither lost sight of him nor ceased following him; and although their strength was diminished by age, their fiery will ignited more strength in places where it had lain lost or hidden in them.[3] It often happens that, when people pursue ephemeral, worldly things, which lead straight to hell even though they temporarily satisfy their desires, they are forced sooner or later to regret them because of their evil effects. On the contrary, those people who struggle seriously against their bad inclinations and change their paths in order to pursue the promise of eternal glory—even though they feel the irritating pains that accompany the change of direction—are rewarded in the end with the restful joy inherent in the struggle to attain eternity.

---

[2] See chap. 133, n. 5, for a reference to the actual numbers of combatants on both sides of the battle for Constantinople in 1453.

[3] Here we follow ĮJAS, ĮJF, and JV over Gay. and SP. The last two have: *la fuerza le menoscabase* [his strength was diminished], meaning Esplandián's. ĮJAS and JV have *la fuerça les menoscabasse* [their strength was diminished] (ĮJF spells the last word *menoscabase*). Clearly, the sense is that the elder kings, not Esplandián, had to dig deep to discover strength lost to a combination of age and inaction.

These kings to whom I am referring were fully aware of the great feats they performed while serving worldly goals but that contributed to their souls' eventual damnation. Now, however, they were in circumstances whereby they not only could be pardoned for their past deeds but they also could receive very large credit for their future salvation. Hence, they waded into a sea of sharp-pointed lances and swords while eschewing all fear of death. Their spirits were filled with the joyful hope that their blood would be spilled serving the Lord who spilled His while suffering severe scourging and terrible wounds. For all these reasons, those kings struggled in the face of grave dangers to succor Esplandián. The battle waged between knights on both sides was very cruel and painful, for they were mercilessly smiting and slaughtering each other. But since many of the infinite number of pagans could not enter the fray, and while they were going from place to place looking for a way to become engaged later on, it so happened that, before long, they had the Christians completely surrounded. From the vantage point of observers in the distance, it appeared that the Christian army was submerged in a pagan sea. Luckily, however, it was not so; for, as soon as the Christians saw the new enemy positions, which meant they were nearly surrounded, they decided to form a ring[4] with their backs to each other and their faces toward the enemy. Then the pagans laid it on them with arrows, rocks, and lances, but the Christians were not badly damaged because their great strength was sufficient to prevent the enemy from daring to come close enough to them to carry them off. In short, the pagans were very afraid of the Christians' blows, which they had already experienced. But the Christians were not content with their defensive position; on the contrary, now and then they would leave the circle and charge the pagans. Whoever of these dared receive such attacks was immediately killed or disabled.

While the battle was in the phase about which you just heard, the courageous lover Norandel, who commanded many knights, said to them:

"Now, señores, it is time to show your prowess."[5]

Putting spurs to his horse, he charged the enemy, and all his knights followed him. They attacked one flank so boldly, and they clashed so hard with lances and swords that, among the dead and disabled, more than eight thousand knights were laid out on the ground. Once this happened, it was incumbent on more pagans to rush to the scene of so much damage against their

---

[4] The Spanish term for "ring" is *muela*, which generally means millstone. In SS and DA a figurative sense for *muela* is "ring." The term appears nowhere else in the Amadís Cycle. Jesús Cañas glosses the term in his edition of the *Libro de Alexandre* as meaning a "hill ringed with escarpments." In any case, it is clear that the Christian knights are forming a ring as described. Figuratively, we are to imagine that the heroes are forming what amounts to their own wheel of fortune, an idea that anticipates Renaissance independence from medieval determinism.

[5] The Spanish term here once again is *bondad*, which is the special quality or excellence that distinguished knights from ordinary mortals. For an earlier discussion of this term, see chap. 74, n. 4.

comrades. The result of this action was that the place the pagans left was almost cleared out.[6] When they saw this, those who were surrounded attacked their adversaries fiercely. Since the latter had increased the risk to themselves by spreading out more than before, the Christians were able to kill many of them, albeit with large losses of their own. Finally, however, they got a small breathing space when they succeeded in passing over to the other side where they rejoined Norandel and his knights.

Meanwhile, as we told you, the fleets which were waiting for orders from their caudillos, attacked the pagans with the intention of either destroying all of them or dying. But, since the enemy fleet was so large, and since their largest ships were chained securely together, as you were told before, the battle did not go as they foresaw. On the contrary, the pagans fought very hard because, compared with their vast multitude, the number of Christians was laughably small. Then it was that you would have seen courageous Agrajes' brio in the attack, for he never came alongside a ship onto which he did not jump. Frandalo, who was constantly extricating Agrajes from these scrapes, thought such temerarious action was due more to foolishness than courage, because it threatened both of their lives. Both of them were badly belabored, and their arms were soon of no defensive value. Yet, such daring, added to what Brian de Monjaste did, allowed Belleriz, Count Frandalo's nephew, and the corsair Tartario to set fire to one of the enemies' biggest xebecs, which burst into leaping flames. When this occurred, many pagans approached the xebec to put out the fire, while the Christians tried to prevent them from doing so. Thus, a very cruel battle began, in which many on both sides perished. However, Frandalo knew how very damaging that fire would be to the enemy and what good fortune it would bring his side; therefore, what he did then was so amazing it cannot be put down in writing.[7] In short, he manoeuvered his ship so daringly and so dangerously in attempting to prevent the pagans from putting the fire out that, if it had not been for Brian de Monjaste, he would have been lost innumerable times.

---

[6] The Spanish term for "clear out" is *desembargado*. The usual sense of this term is "to lift an embargo." SS translates the term as "to remove legal restrictions." Neither Cov. nor any of the glossaries of late fifteenth-century Spanish we consulted show the term. DA says it means "to remove an obstacle," but this usage is rare. However, DA cites its appearance in the thirteenth-century *Crónica general* in a text that seems to relate to GRM's use of the term: "And the Moors did not trouble themselves over this [unknown reference], and they refused to clear it out, as they did before, although there were so many good and honorable companies in Toledo."

[7] This is a key example of GRM's strategy in rewriting the tragic history of 1453 in such a way that the Christians defending Constantinople might win the epic battle. In this case, Doukas, writing about the fall of "The City" in the 1460's, says the following: "Longo Giustiniani devised a scheme to sail to the [Turkish] biremes in the night and set them on fire" (Doukas, *Decline and Fall*, 218). Unfortunately, however, the Genoese Christians of Galata, a Christian trading city across the Golden Horn from Constantinople, learning of the strategem, betrayed their Christian allies by informing the Turks, who then sank the fire ship. Naturally, the Turks were as elated as Giovanni and the Byzantines were despondent.

If the pagans' great deeds are not recounted as extensively here as we are doing with the Christians' deeds, do not believe that it is due to blind zeal; for, by exalting the pagans' strengths, those who surpassed and conquered them would seem even stronger. The reason for this gap is that the great Master Helisabad, who, as we told you, wrote this great story, had no knowledge of them, nor did he know their names. What he knew is what he could see from one of the high towers in the city of Constantinople. Well, what can I tell you but that the fire raged and spread so much that, despite the pagans' tremendously diligent effort to control it, they could not keep the fire from destroying all of the ships that were tied and chained tightly together—there were more than four hundred of them—along with most of the people on board? The only ones to save themselves were some who swam to other ships and others who were picked up by their comrades.

169

About the battle the fifty kings waged against the city while the land and sea battles lasted.

During the events you have just heard, the kings and caudillos who were charged with attacking the city with their large armies entered the combat with their big instruments of war. They believed their enemies on land and sea would have so much to do that they would pay no attention to the city, thinking it was secure. But they did not find things as they expected, for the emperor, who was prepared, quickly and courageously set up the city's defenses. However, since there were many enemy forces, and since they had abundant ordnance, the Christians failed to prevent them from making many holes in the wall through which some pagans entered the city. Suddenly, the city's defenders thought they were lost and that enemy swords were hanging over their heads ready to hack them to pieces. As they were common citizens who were unaccustomed to fighting, they were mortally afraid; but they found strength in places in their hearts they had never known they had, and they began attacking the enemy very fearlessly and boldly. Although many of the defenders were killed, they were able to kill many of the attackers, and they succeeded in turning them back to the gaps in the wall and forcefully throwing them out of the city. Thus, it can be said that the city was not taken more because of the grace and mercy of God, who succors His people in times of greatest trouble and challenge, than because of the effort by those lowly people. And if the city had fallen, most in Christendom would have died or been taken captive with it.[1]

---

[1] On the surface, it appears that GRM has concluded this chap. with a didactic point that is not completely linked with what immediately precedes it. He has just said that the common people courageously defended the city, and then he adds that the city was saved

170

How, after the crude and horrifying battle
Was interrupted, the sky was rent with
Shouted laments that are the stuff of myth:
All cried for the dead who were past the rattle;
And how all of the kings heard the shouting
And how they gave comfort to the bereaved
By saying: "Folks, don't cry, but be relieved,
For the dead are now hearing heaven's singing."

As the story has told you, these three battles occurred on the first day, and they ended after night fell over the combatants. After the fighters returned to their camps and the opposing fleets separated, great wailing for the dead began. Soon, however, they were soothed by the kings, who said that everything done for the mightiest Lord, whether it was brought on by good or ill fortune, should not cause grief or pain. This was so, they said, because, even if their bodies passed away and returned to the earth from which they were made, their immortal souls[1] were enjoying the guerdon they earned by departing from the path of delights and pleasures which they had tread so zealously before. The deceased died martyr's deaths for Him who voluntarily suffered a much crueler and more bitter death in order to give us life, which we lost at the very beginning of the world.

171

About the decision the pagans reached concerning the next battle.

Both sides were so hurt by the number of dead and wounded that they decided firmly to spend the next day resting. In order to prepare for the next battle, they repaired their weapons and healed their horses and their wounded. The pagans were much weaker than the Christians because they lost many

---

by God's will. It is possible, of course, that he meant, though he does not say so directly, that God aided the citizens in finding unexpected courage in their hearts. Be this as it may, the issue of God's will for Constantinople was a very lively issue in 1453. Citizens and soldiers on both sides of the conflict desperately searched for signs of divine intervention. Until the last few days, the defense was so courageous that it seemed that God was aiding the Christians; however, four days before the fall, there were numerous signs of doom: a thunderstorm, hail, rain, an eclipse of the moon, fog, a mysterious light on the dome of the basilica of Santa Sophia, and the fact that the city's holiest icon, a statue of the Virgin Mary, slipped off its platform during a religious procession through the city. GRM's lack of religious fanaticism seems evident in the absence of any reference to positive or negative divine portents. Instead, he limits himself to simple didactic observations here and in the following chaps. See Runciman, *The Fall*, 133.

[1] Naz. correctly emends JV's misprint of *animalias* [bestials] to *ánimas* [souls].

more people; but what hurt them most was losing so many ships. While they were consulting each other, some said that it would be best for them to return to their lands, because the city's defenses were nearly impregnable and the Christian knights were so strong that they had every reason to lose hope of ever achieving glory or victory from this campaign. Others said that, if they chose that option, it would discourage their supporters while encouraging their enemy's fury; and it would cause all of them to be vanquished and killed with little effort on the Christians' part. Furthermore, they were so deeply involved in the conflict already that it was the wrong time to turn back; rather, with hope in their gods, they should attack the enemy again and expect to conquer and destroy them. All concurred with this advice, which they thought was the best course of action. Those high noblemen decided that two of the kings who were most experienced in armed combat should take two thousand knights and work to intercept some of the Christian knights who did most of the damage by fearlessly wading into the middle of the pagan forces. If they could do that, the rest of the Christians could be killed or defeated with little effort.

172

How, as is recounted in this history,
The huge battalions returned to the fray,
And, after battling intensely all day,
The holy team carried off the victory;
But, while they were winning crowns of glory,
These two kings lost their lives in the battle:
King Perión, whose virtue was most noble
And the always renowned King Lisuarte.

After the day and night of rest passed, dawn came, and while trumpets began to sound in both camps, the armies took up their arms and were stationed where the battle was to occur. They were not on the same battlefield as before, because it was littered with bodies, which meant there was no way the knights could manoeuvre there. As soon as both sides caught sight of each other, they began the battle by charging more ferociously than they had before. After Esplandián downed more than ten knights with his lance, it broke. Then he drew his sword, which, as you were told before, he won as a token that he was the world's best knight, and he proceeded to sow death among his Lord's enemies. Charging into the middle of the enemies, he began to disable and kill as cruelly as he could. Meanwhile, his father, Amadís, was doing wonders in another location. So were good King Cildadán, Don Galaor, the very courageous king of Sardinia, and the other famous knights, among whom were strong Don Cuadragante, and Don Bruneo, king of Arabia. All of these were not content to stand their ground in one place in order to wait for opponents to come to them rather than seeking them out.

On the contrary, they went wherever they thought their help was most needed. For this reason, despite all the blows they received, they never ceased killing and felling everyone they encountered. Still, the pagans' soldans, Tamorlanes, and kings, who were good and well-armed knights, rushed to help their forces that were most harried, and, if need be, they were quick to engage the enemy knights. However, even though they were able to maintain the field against the Christian knights for a while, in the end some of them were badly hurt or wound up lying on the ground, while others sought safety among their own troops.

Some who have witnessed other battles that seemed much different from this one might wish to raise the objection that it was not possible for these mighty Christians to kill so many people. However, I would like to remove from my writing any element of doubt that might impoverish or discredit it. Therefore, I tell you that the cause of such a disparity lies in the fact that, although the number of pagans was infinite, most of them were of the lower, poverty-stricken classes; and, as you were told, they had access to almost no arms at all. Many of them bore only a lance; another had only a bow; and still others only had iron-tipped poles and bludgeons;[1] for they needed no weapons other than those in the battles they had among themselves. On the other hand, although the Christians were fewer in number, they had abundant access to iron for weapons, which most of the enemy armies lacked. What aided the Christians especially is that they had a superior ability to produce those weapons, and therefore they were able to enter a battle in greater security. Hence, the results were unequal because one side was armed, while the other was unarmed.[2]

Also, some might object that no mention is made here of those strong women from California Island, who were present with their señora, Queen Calafía. To this I answer that the queen was a double prisoner of both her body and her heart. As you were told, she was subjugated and captivated by Esplandián's great handsomeness; and therefore, during every minute and hour of the day, she was inflamed, tormented, and totally deranged by a fiery passion. Furthermore, if he came out of the battle alive, she hoped he would agree to take her hand in marriage. She harbored this hope because she was

---

[1] In addition to meaning "bludgeon," the Spanish word here (*porra*) carries connotations of "dolt," "oaf," "fool." Cov. explains that the connotations are derived from the instrument: "we say *porro* for a fool who is not very sharp, but rather is dull, like the end of the *porro*." As we see, GRM is also quick to define the class of people by the weapon.

[2] GRM's conclusions about the technological superiority of the Christians in his fictional defense of Constantinople in the fourth century is actually based on an accurate observation of the major factors in Spain's victory over the Moslem kingdom of Granada in the last two decades of the fifteenth century. Miguel A. Ladero Quesada says this: "Granadines, who were accustomed to the vicissitudes involved in skirmishes, sieges, and *algaradas* [see chap. 74, n. 4], could not withstand the power of [the Castilian] weapons that destroyed their means of defense . . . , weapons, in addition, to which they themselves hardly had access" (Miguel A. Ladero Quesada, *Castilla y la conquistă del reino de Granada* [Granada: Diputación Provincial de Granada 118).

the señora of a great land and many people, because she possessed more gold and precious stones than were to be found in the rest of the world, and because he might reach out and have her in her own law—and, if not, then she would immediately become a Christian, even though she was a great señora; for she coveted what all mortals generally desire most zealously, and which they work and die to achieve, which is that he would have her in matrimony. For this reason, she sent word to her sister Liota to collect their ships, to lead them away from the pagans' fleets so that no harm could come to them and not to move again until she received a new order.[3]

Leaving this matter here, the history will now return to its story, wherein it will inform you that, either due to fortune's willfulness or because their time was limited, from which, when the hour strikes, no one can flee (or, more truthfully, due to the will of the almighty Lord, who is always prepared quickly to pardon sinners who acknowledge and correct their erring ways), some of the Lord's servants, about whom you will now hear, were taken to His holy kingdom in paradise.

You were told before that those Christian kings, who were inspired with a burning desire to serve their Lord, were battling among the enemy where they could be most useful to their friends and do most harm to their foes. Since Esplandián fought with immense bravura and raging fury, and since he was more embattled than the others, he was constantly faced with great personal danger. Seeing this and fearing for his safety, his grandfathers, King Lisuarte and King Perión, stayed close to him while performing marvellous feats of arms; but they had no way at all to avoid brushing against much of their grandson's danger. Meanwhile, the two pagan kings who were charged with using all their strength against those Christians they thought were least protected by the group, ordered some of their men to pursue the two Christian kings. Gripping their swords firmly, these pagan soldiers went against the two aged kings, because they did not dare attack Esplandián, whose towering blows they feared greatly. Then they began a fight that did not last long. After no more than an exchange of three thrusts, the two pagan kings had their helmets and much of their heads cut off, and they fell dead at the victors' feet. However, the two thousand cavalrymen who were guarding them and whose eyes were fixed on them suddenly charged into the fray so wildly that they could not keep themselves and their horses from falling to the earth. The two Christian kings were able to kill many of them now that they were on foot, and they were succored by that good and honorable old man, Don Grumedán, and also by Don Guilán—the duke of Bristol—Brandoivas, Nicorán of the Hazardous Bridge,[4] and Cendil de Ganota, none of whom ever left King Li-

---

[3] The translator of AKCT lays the blame (or credit) for the pagan defeat squarely on Calafía. He says the pagans correctly feared the Amazon's treachery, but in the text itself he adds generously that "God of his goodness provided better for them" (chap. 53 in AKCT).

[4] Nicorán of the Hazardous Bridge is a knight who appears briefly in bks. II and III.

suarte's side. Nevertheless, the multitudes of the pagan army came charging over them and knocked them repeatedly to the ground. Despite their great effort to get up again, it was inevitable that all of them would be killed. When some of the other Christians saw this, and when King Amadís and other señores were told that the two kings' and Esplandián's deaths were imminent if they were not rescued, they rushed to the scene of that battle very quickly, and, investing the enemy, they killed and felled them as if they were lions in a flock of weak sheep. Reaching the place where the Christian kings were killed,[5] they stepped over them and rescued Esplandián, who was critically wounded. Even though the latter was holding his attackers at bay in a circle around him, and even though none of them was daring or courageous enough to reach him, his horse had so many lances and arrows jabbed into it that it would have died a thousand times if Almighty God had not succored him. Then, when his father and the other señores arrived, you would have seen what was never seen before: they gave Esplandián a fresh horse, and they began smiting the pagans with so many blows that they left no one alive. Seeing how their comrades were being slaughtered, the other pagans lost all fear of death and pursued the Christian knights very zealously.

At this juncture, you should recall that Norandel did not enter the battle during all this time, because the day before he was ordered by the kings not to enter the combat until he received their message to do so. Observing how turbulent the fighting was, and judging that with some help the foes' fears would be greatly increased, King Amadís ordered Count Gandalín to go as fast as he could to tell Norandel that it was time for him to enter the battle and to do so very intrepidly. Although the count was unwilling to leave Amadís at such a dangerous moment, he did as he was bade, and he left the battle. Then Gandalín gave Norandel Amadís's message. Hearing this, Norandel was overjoyed; but, at the same time, he grieved deeply over the losses they had suffered because he had not disobeyed the kings' orders. Then, warning his knights that they were not to deviate from his instructions, he led the charge against the pagans so savagely that his men left more than ten thousand killed and wounded on the field after their initial attack. Continuing forward, they began to wield their swords so powerfully that those who were in their path did not dare to wait for them. Amidst the yelling and the noise, the Christians said:

---

[5] King Lisuarte's death on this battlefield is a counterpart to the prototypical death of King Arthur at Salisbury at the hands of his son Mordred:

> "And whan sir Mordred felte that he had hys dethys wounde he threste hymselff with the myght that he had upp to the burre of kyng Arthurs speare, and ryght so he smote hys fadir, kynge Arthure, with hys swerde holdynge in both hys hondys, uppon the syde of the hede, that the swerde perced the helmet and the tay of the brayne." (Malory, *Works*, 714.)

However, Lisuarte's death scene is not featured like that of Arthur because GRM has cast the battles of bk. V in the context of the relatively real anonymity of war as it was fought in the late fifteenth century. Here there are no mythical damsels in a small bark to take the king's body to sea and a mysterious grave. For Lisuarte's burial with honors, see chap. 175 below.

"The infidel traitors are beaten."

Upon seeing what Norandel and his companions were doing, and upon hearing the Christians' shouting, King Amadís, the other kings, and the grandees all pressed the attack so fiercely that it behooved the pagans, who were now mortally afraid, to turn their backs and to retreat to their camps, believing that they might find shelter for their lives there. The pagans were horrified to see so many of their dead and wounded strewn across the battlefield, and they saw that their horses had nowhere else to walk but on those bodies. When the Christians saw how thorough their victory was, the spirit in their hearts doubled, and they pursued the enemy more. As a result, there occurred the largest slaughter that there had ever been in any battle. The Christians harried the pagans so severely that the enemy was forcibly rounded up and confined beyond their trenches, which were so deep that, in their hurry they fell on top of each other and many more were killed and disabled.

173

How Count Frandalo captured thirty of the most important of the enemy's xebecs in addition to the four hundred that were burned.

Those who were on the sea had a large battle in which many were killed and wounded. However, if it were to be recounted extensively, it would open up a very prolix subject. You need know only that the pagans, seeing their four hundred ships burned, became so distraught that they continued fighting as if they were already defeated. When Count Frandalo discerned how dejected they were, he and his men pressed the enemy so hard that they captured more than thirty of the enemy's most important xebecs while they were retreating. Immediately after capturing the xebecs, the Christians boarded them and threw everyone they found into the water.

174

How the Turks, seeing their total perdition,
Reacted to the rout by choosing to flee
To their heavy ships where they hoped to be
Safe, only to find increased ruination;
And how the wretched xebecs that were found
Were harried so badly by the Christians
That, of three thousand ships of the pagans,
Scarcely a hundred were not run to ground.

The other caudillos, who were charged with attacking the city, began the combat with an abundance of ordnance. According to their thinking, once the city was captured, everything else would fall to them easily. Therefore,

even though it cost them many casualties, they worked diligently at breaching the wall at those points that were under their control. They made so many gaps between those they had made before, and so many of the stones were loosened, that the wall's front edge crashed to the ground. At this, the emperor became very frightened; but his people, who were of the humbler classes, were even more frightened. Nevertheless, realizing that whether they fought or behaved as cowards in the face of death, they still could not flee, they decided to offer themselves as willing victims. Therefore, they made a wall out of their own bodies by lining up in front of the sharp-pointed swords and lances. It was impossible for many of them to avoid dying, and the emperor himself took more of the brunt of the most dangerous action than any of the others. For his daring he received three dangerous wounds. That combat was very intense on both sides because those on the outside fought hard thinking victory was within easy reach; while those on the inside performed wonders because they realized they would die if they did not draw strength from their hearts. So many pagans were storming the wall, and they had broken through in so many places that neither the defenders' forces nor the emperor's courage were sufficient to prevent the pagans from rushing into a conquered city.

At this precise moment, our Lord intervened. He often brings His own people back to His service by showing them mercy, and, at other times, He harasses, troubles, whips, and affronts them because He sees no room for goodness in them. On this occasion, however, He showed his mercy by having the enemies of His holy law violently wrenched, as you heard, from the battlefield where they were fighting against the kings. This was seen by both bands that were battling in the breach: those on the outside were frightened and dismayed, while the zeal of those on the inside was renewed and increased. As a result, even the pagans' great numbers could not keep them from breaking off the battle in extreme fear. Since it is the rule that no lord or captain has the power to make large, retreating, and intimidated armies recover lost fighting spirit, so it happened in this case. Seeing their own forces defeated and contained in their own camp, no one had the power to make them turn back to the battle. On the contrary, fearing the kind of death that is made all the crueler and more certain by such circumstances, they turned their backs and withdrew very speedily to their ships from which they had issued before. However, they were unable to escape safely out of harm's way, for the emperor and his men killed more than half of them: the number of dead was probably more than thirty thousand. Well then, what can the story relate or tell you but that the pagans gathered in the fortified camps they had set up and did not dare venture onto the battlefield, because they had lost many of the high officials in whom they had placed their trust? Also, fearing the Christians' great might like death itself, their only thought concerned how to get safely to the shelter of their ships. On the other side, the Christians, who were angrily grieving over the deaths of their own kings and knights, saw the pagans' weakness and were determined to return to the battle day after day. Not finding it on the battlefield, they used all their strength to find battle in the camps, which they entered in order to kill everyone with their own hands.

But, recognizing their enemy's intention and fearing death—which, naturally, is feared by everyone—the pagans defended themselves so tenaciously that the fighting lasted more than another two weeks. During this time, the pagans' provisions ran so low that nothing remained for them to eat. Since they had no other recourse left, one night they decided to abandon their tents and all their possessions and to take refuge on the sea, where, if they were attacked, their chances were better than on land. As soon as they reached this decision, they set about carrying it out. However, they could not escape without having the Christian night watchmen, who were vigilant in case something unforeseen might happen, discover the pagans' secret and sudden plan. The watchmen informed the other knights. Although they were all weary and fatigued, and although many were wounded, they felt this action would be conclusive. Harboring a strong desire that none of their foes escape a cruel death, as quickly as they could, they were all armed and they sallied out of their encampments. Going toward the enemy camps, they discovered that what they were told was true; so, with a great effort and loud shouting, they crossed the trenches rather easily and descended on the pagans. Then and there you would have seen the biggest fight and the most killing that has ever been recorded in writing or human memory. Truly, neither the battles around the great city of Troy, nor the battles between Rome and Carthage, nor those between Julius Cæsar and Pompey could compare with the magnitude of this one. Hence, without stopping to rest, the Christians spent all night killing pagans. When morning came, they pursued them to the sea with such efficiency, such fury, such violence that the whole way was sown with countless dead.

Do not believe for a moment that the pagans' lives were safe even when they reached the shelter of their ships, because the Christian knights were inspired by victory to go as swiftly as possible to their own ships. By contrast, the enemies' hearts were broken by an immense fear of death, which was increased because they did not know what to do with themselves. Furthermore, they were enthralled by horrifying fear because there was no surcease even in flight. The Christians, however, who were filled with much more spirit for concerted action, attacked so fiercely that, finding the enemy almost defenseless, they were able to board most of the xebecs and to kill all those they encountered on them. Thus, a great stretch of the sea lost its natural color and was turned into the color of blood because so much of it had been spilled. Finally, the Christians' strength was so supreme, and the pagans' weakness was so abysmal that, of the more than three thousand ships in which they arrived, less than one hundred were able to escape. Some were sunk and the others wound up in the hands of the Christian kings and knights.

175

How the emperor had the two aged kings and the other grandees who died in the battles buried with full honors.

When the battle was settled and when the initial weeping for the dead kings subsided, the emperor made arrangements to visit his aides' camp even though he was wounded. After giving him their full respect, all who were on land and at sea agreed to gather in the city and to bring their dead with them, so that each one could be honored in accordance with his importance. They also decided that the two kings, Lisuarte and Perión, would be interred in the chapels of the emperors[1] and that the other distinguished knights would be buried in another place set aside for those of their rank. Beside those who the story told you died in the battles, many other knights were also killed, including the very valiant giant Balán, who was señor of Vermillion Tower Island, Helián the Vigorous, Palomir, the good knight Enil, and so many others that it would be too prolix to mention them here.

176

How messages were sent to all the kings
By the emperor; they read: "Señores,
For the rest of time no one shall erase
My profound faults and numerous failings;
But first, because I plan to leave the world,
I want bans of marriage to be unfurled
For my precious daughter and the good knight
Who can rule my realms in a better light."

By this time the weary were all resting calmly, the wounded were being treated by Master Helisabad, the emperor had risen from his bed after recovering

---

[1] It is especially significant that the two oldest founders of the lineages of Great Britain and Gaula in GRM's Amadís Cycle are buried in holy chapels in Constantinople. There is no surer proof of Gili Gaya's thesis that GRM intended bk. V to be a critical reversal of the values of the Breton or Arthurian Cycles of chivalric novels. See Samuel Gili Gaya, "Las sergas como crítica," 103–11. It is important to notice, however, that the earthly end of Amadís and Esplandián's progenitors in sanctified Byzantine soil is not simply an idea that belongs exclusively to bk. V. On the contrary, it is the culminating touch in GRM's global approach to his recasting of the *Ur-Amadís* materials he inherited. This is especially true of Lisuarte, who is a much more fully realized character than Perión. GRM's Lisuarte is predicated on the struggle that worldly rulers have in overcoming transient values in order to merit Christian salvation. In this sense, the full scope of Lisuarte's story, which is fundamental for understanding GRM's total ideology, is truncated if it is left hanging at the end of bk. IV as part of the supposed "open structure" of *Amadís de Gaula* (in four bks.).

from the wounds he had suffered, and they were all retreating into the kind of wise seclusion that is appropriate at such times—which is, namely, to pray for the souls of the dead and to refrain from referring to earthly bodies. Then the emperor decided to make such arrangements for himself that, the almighty Lord's mercy willing, his end would be the kind that would allow Him to take his soul to holy glory.[1] Calling together all the kings and renowned knights who remained alive, he spoke to them thus:

"Mighty kings and courageous knights, because we acknowledge transient, worldly things rather than oppose or repugn[2] them, they make us fall into the dangerous snares[3] the world has set for us, and they prevent us, because of our fault, from availing ourselves of the free will that the highest Lord chose to give us above all living beings in the world. This tendency to evil comes from the sin committed by our first father. However, by means of God's divine grace we are able to have a clear understanding of the nature of what can either harm or benefit us. The more our wills and uncontrolled desires are restrained, the more our worthy guerdon is being readied for us. Since the inveterate methods that govern the world and the passions that rule youth are cut from the same cloth, it is true that no amount of diligent carefulness can be so perfect that it cannot go awry, that it will not often go beyond the line and cross the limits of reason and conscience. Nor can such care be dispensed with. This is especially true of those of us who occupy positions of seignorial power. Because we ourselves do not suffice for the task of governing alone, we are responsible for an infinite number of people whose mistakes and malfeasance we must pay for. Then, what solution shall we adopt? Certainly, the only one, in my opinion, is for the almighty Lord to gather us to Himself in such a way that He may grant us death in the same state of innocence with which we entered life. He should do this for us in our oppressive old age just as He did during the freshness of our youth, when He snatched us from grave dangers and when, if our bodies had perished, so too our eternal souls would have perished; and if we had died then, we would never have achieved our glorious reward; nor would we ever have had the knowledge of the truth which we had forgotten until then. And because I am one of the most notable examples of what I am talking about I want to un-

---

[1] Here we follow JJAS over Gay., JJF, JG, JV, and SP. The latter five lack a verb for "would be" [*fuese*] that JJAS has as follows: *que su fin fuese pudiesse su anima llevar a la santa gloria.*

[2] In order to communicate the early Renaissance, and therefore archaic, form of this word (*repunadas*) we are using a rare usage of the English transitive verb "repugn."

[3] The Spanish term here (*lazos*) returns us full circle to one of the bases upon which GRM prepared for and constructed bk. V. It involves the play on the same word (*lazos* means "ring" and "trap") used in the scene between Leonorina and Amadís in bk. III, chap. 74, where she gives him the mythical ring. GRM's extremely subtle mastery of the minutest details of his art is in evidence here in the present chap. where the emperor plans to escape worldly *lazos* (traps) just before announcing his daughter's (the originator of this complex image) *lazo* (tie, bond, engagement) to Esplandián, the primary symbol of which is a *lazo* (ring). See chap. 12, n. 10, and chap. 22, n. 1.

burden myself of two very large debts that are encumbent upon me if God in His mercy will permit me to do so. The first and most important one is to put my life in proper order during the few days I have left to live in the world. To do this I wish to find a place where, absolutely unhindered, I can bemoan and bewail my guilt and sins and where I can beg pardon from Him who chose to suffer a cruel death in order to forgive us. As for the other one, I am in your debt for having travailed so hard to rescue me from the danger and dire need in which I found myself. After God, your great courage restored my life, my honor and my whole condition and state. As a guerdon and recompense I see fit to have my precious daughter marry Esplandián, who can be considered everyone's son. Now, I tell you that among everything the great sages have prophesied about him there is one prophecy that says that his name is written on the right side of his chest, that the name of her who belongs to him appears on his left side, and that the letters of her name are to be revealed by her alone. Because I am certain of this, I want my daughter to look at them, and we shall then see by this test if he ought to have her."

177

How the emperor married his daughter Leonorina to Esplandián and then renounced his entire empire in their favor; and how he and the empress retired to a monastery.

King Amadís said to him:

"Good sire, concerning what you say about the great debt you owe the almighty Lord and your holy intention to discharge it, there is nothing to say except that, when such divine grace comes over people and ravishes their passions so forcefully, they should use all their force to act accordingly; for it is often true that, in our inattention, worldly pleasures and sins are so deeply rooted that there is no longer any room for God's inspiration. Concerning the other debt you mentioned, great Lord, the entire world knows that, if my lineage, my friends, and I have life, high estate, and honor, you gave them to us; and you gave them in such abundance that there is no service we could perform, nor is there any payment valuable enough we could make, by which we could repay our debt to you."

"Now, brother," said the emperor, "stop that. Let's call my daughter and see what it is she will reveal."

Then the very beautiful and composed infanta came as commanded. The emperor approached Esplandián and unfastened the doublet he wore with his armor so that everyone could see the letters very clearly. The infanta came up to him, put her beautiful hands on both sides of his chest and saw that the

white letters spelled Esplandián.[1] Then she looked at the red ones and said to her father:

"Sire, when Infanta Melía was in milady the empress's chamber, she took me aside and said to me: 'Infanta, because your father treated me with honor, I want you to know something that is very important for you to know when you will be asked about it in very distinguished company.' Then she had brought to her one of the books Urganda ordered taken from her cave. In the book, I saw an image of the Enchantress Damsel, and Infanta Melía pointed to one leaf in particular which showed these seven red letters just like the ones on Esplandián. Underneath the letters was a caption. When she read it to me, it was clear that I was the person identified by these letters."

"Daughter," asked the emperor, "would you recognize that book again?"

"Yes, sire," she said, "for I myself marked it and put it in a special place in one of my trunks."

"Well then, have it brought here," he said.

She sent a damsel to her chamber. When it was brought back, the infanta took it, opened it, and showed them the letters and everything else in the book. The emperor and all those lords read them and saw clearly that they did not vary one jot from the ones on Esplandián. Then they looked at the caption, which read thus: "The blessed knight who will win the sword and great treasure that I enchanted will be the one who has his name and his amie's name written on his chest. Because the seven red letters will be very obscure, and because there will be no one learned enough to decipher them, I have decided to inform those who will come two hundred years after me that the red letters spell the name of Leonorina, daughter of the great emperor of Greece."

Upon reading these words, the emperor told the archbishop of Galterna[2] to marry them immediately, which is what was done. After the wedding celebrations were ended, without further delay, the emperor and empress—she had been present since well before that event—renounced their great empire in favor of the newlyweds, and together they entered a very beautiful monas-

---

[1] Gay. emphasizes the hero's name typographically, but JJAS, SP, and JG do not use any special typographical devises to call attention to the name. JJF and JV set his name off with a period before and after it. As Naz. shows, this was equivalent to setting the name in quotation marks.

[2] Gay. speculates that the archbishop's name should be 'Salerno' to coincide more or less with the name CB documents as the bishop of Salerna in bk. I, chap. 31. This bishop marries Angriote and Grovenesa and then disappears thereafter. JJF, JJAS, JG, JV, and SP all show 'Galterna.' About twenty years have passed since the time of the action in bk. I. It is possible GRM elevated the bishop of Salerna to the rank of archbishop (of the same place), and that the same cleric appears 1200 pages later to perform a similar duty, and it is likely that editors or typesetters mistook Salerna for Galterna. We choose to let the possible inconsistency or subtle similarity remain a mystery. It is to be noted that "the holy man" Nasciano performed the mass marriages in bk. IV, chap. 125. Cacho Blecua notes that "these church marriages were performed as often as one might think; however, in the fifteenth century, the upper classes celebrated them more assiduously, and thereby they fulfilled established norms" (CB, II, 1619).

tery, which they had had built. Now, if the story does not tell more extensively about the reception the beautiful infanta gave King Amadís and everyone else, it is due only to the fact that the great sadness they all felt for the dead kings makes it seem improper to make room here for anything pleasurable.

178

How, by the hand of the Almighty Lord,
Who inspires his divine grace everywhere,
Talanque and Calafía were married there,
And Maneli wed Liota afterward;
Then, saying good-bye to the emperor,
The newlyweds sail away with the queen:
One couple with King Cildadán was seen,
And the other went with Don Galaor.

After Queen Calafía saw the wedding, her spirit nearly departed her body, for she lost all hope of having the knight whom she loved so deeply. Presenting herself to the new emperor and the other grandees, she said these words:

"I am the queen of a large seigniory, where there is a vast abundance of what the whole world prizes most, which is gold and precious stones. My lineage is very high, for my royal bloodline is so old there is no record of its beginning. I am justly famed for the moral perfection of my chastity; and the same purity holds for my honorable birth. Fortune brought me to this region, from whence I expected to carry off many captives; but I am the captive, and I am not speaking about the imprisonment that can be seen. Given the great events of the favorable and adverse kinds that I have often overcome, I was certain that captivity would not be strong enough to undo fortune's games. However, what I am referring to is the prison in which my tormented and afflicted heart was locked the moment my eyes fell on the new emperor's great handsomeness. In accordance with my grandeur and surpassing wealth—both of which usually confuse and snare[1] most people—I had reason to hope that, by converting to your law I could win him for my husband. However, when I first came into the presence of the beautiful empress, I understood both that each side in their union was of equal merit and that my thoughts amounted to so much vanity. Furthermore, I realized that reason would guide this matter by its own dictates. Since fortune intended this passion of mine to be eternal, I will use all my strength to obliterate it from my mind; and, as the

[1] The Spanish term, *enlaza*, is directly related to the metaphor of the ring-trap used and discussed earlier (see chaps. 12, 22, 55, and 176). But the verb, *enlazar*, used here has the added connotation of connect, link, marry, which is Calafía's temporarily frustrated object.

wise ought to do when faced with irremediable things, I want, if you please, to take another husband; preferably, a king's son who is as courageous as a good knight ought to be; and I will become a Christian. I do this because I have seen that your law is very orderly and well organized, whereas the others suffer great disorder. Therefore, it is very clear that the law you observe is the truth, while ours is a false lie."

Hearing this, the emperor laughed, embraced her, and said:

"Queen Calafía, my good amie, before now you never spoke to me nor exchanged any words with me. That is because such is my nature that I can only speak to those who are confirmed in the holy law of truth; for it is quite certain that I cannot keep myself from looking on all others who are outside our law[2] with anything other than raging enmity. But now that the Almighty Lord has shown you this great favor by giving you the kind of understanding that makes you wish to be His servant, you will find great love in me. It is as if my father the king had begotten both of us. As for what you request, I give you my word that you will have a knight whose virtue and lineage far exceed what you required."

Then he took the hand of his cousin Talanque, who was the king of Sobradisa's son. Talanque had a large body, and he was very handsome. Then Esplandián said:

"Queen, here you have one of my cousins. He is the son of the king you see over there, who is the brother of my father the king. Take him with you, for I guarantee you that good fortune will follow you on his account."

The queen looked at him, and, approving of his good looks, she said:

"I am content with his bearing. As for his lineage and courage, I am quite satisfied simply because you yourself are his surety.[3] Now let me have someone who can go call my sister Liota, who is on the sea with my fleet. I sent her a message before not to move my people."

The emperor ordered Tartario to go fetch her immediately, which he did. Finding her not far away, he brought her back and set her before the emperor. Queen Calafía told her what her whole will was and ordered and begged her to acquiesce to it. Her sister Liota knelt on the floor, kissed her hands,

---

[2] Here we follow JJAS, JJF, JG, JV, and SP against Gay. There is an appositional phrase in the middle of the sentence that is difficult, given GRM's Latinate style, to place in the whole context: *y bien a todos los otros que fuera della son* [literally: and certainly those who are outside it]. Gay. amends this by adding the verb quieren: *y quieren bien a todos los otros que fuera della son*. It appears the addition of this verb would contradict Esplandián's categorical rejection of all who are outside the Christian faith thus: "it is my nature that, except for those who are confirmed in the holy law of truth, and [who] love all those who are outside it, it is quite certain . . ."

[3] The word surety here may provide a clue to the etymon for Talanque's name. The word *talanquera* in Spanish means a defensive wall, or, figuratively, security, defense. The word is ultimately derived from Celtic *tarinca*. This term is related to the English term targe, which means a shield. In terms of literary criticism, it is possible to see earlier references to Calafía's highly unusual and large shield as foreshadowing for her marriage to Talanque.

and said that Calafía did not have to give her an accounting concerning anything relating to her service. The queen had her rise and embraced her while tears were filling her eyes. Then she took Talanque's hand and said:

"You shall be my señor, and you shall rule over my state, which is a very large seigniory. On account of you, the island will change the style of living it has observed for a very long time. Whereas the island has been isolated from men for many ages, henceforth it will adopt the practice of natural generation of men and women. And if you have a friend whom you love very much, and if he has the same rank as you, have him marry this sister of mine; for it will not be long before, with your help, she will be the queen of a great land."

Since Talanque loved Maneli the Prudent very much, both because their mothers were sisters and because they were raised together, he put Maneli before her and said:

"Queen, after my señor the emperor, I love this friend as much as I love myself and as much as I shall love you. Take him and do with him what you would do with me."

"What I want," she said, "now that we belong to your law, is for me and my sister to be your wives."

Upon seeing the harmonious agreement among the queen, her sister, and the two knights, Emperor Esplandián and the other kings led them to the chapel where Calafía and Liota were changed into Christians and married to the two famous knights. Following this, all the women who remained in the fleet were converted. Then the order was given whereby Talanque departed in the fleet of his father, King Galaor, while Maneli took King Cildadán's fleet. After the emperor gave these knights—who were like his true brothers—his pledge that he would come to their aid if he were ever needed, they took charge of those fleets that were fully equipped, fully manned, and fully provisioned with many other necessary items, and they sailed off with their wives. They underwent many amazing adventures including very large challenges, many battles, and victories over great seigniories, but we decline to say more about what became of them, because, if we wished to do so, it would be a never-ending story.

179

How Emperor Esplandián married his uncle Norandel to Queen Menoresa and then gave them Forbidden Mountain; and about other villas he had won from the Turks.

Empress Leonorina informed her husband, the emperor, about the strong loving attraction that existed between Norandel and Queen Menoresa. This pleased Esplandián very much, and he found a way to have them married before the other grandees returned to their lands; and so this was done. In addition to Forbidden Mountain, he and the empress gave the newlyweds the vil-

las of Alfarín and Galacia and the Galiantas Islands,[1] which were well-populated and very rich.

180

How, after swift negotiations, the Turks
And the emperor exchanged prisoners;
And how, among others in the transfers
Are the great wise woman and her good works;
And how the Great Serpentine Caravel
Hid from everyone with raging might
While the Circean sword vanishes from sight:
Who did not see it was a rich marvel?

Emperor Esplandián suffered with grief in his heart over the loss of Urganda; he knew that the principal business was settled; and he realized that his father King Amadís and the other kings wanted to return to their kingdoms. So, he took them aside and told them about the misfortune that happened to the duenna in Villa Galacia. He told them that she had brought very beautiful arms to the young knights; that she had accompanied him and the other knights to the emperor's court; that he knew she was locked in a tower in the great city of Ctesifonte; and that he would be happy to risk his life to free her. Knowing that they all loved her as much as he did and that she had honored and aided all of them very much, he begged them to give him their best advice. He reminded them not to forget to satisfy the heavy debt they owed her, now that they had time to give her the guerdon she merited.

Upon hearing this, those kings were deeply saddened—even though they had heard it before from Count Gandalín and Enil. Although they desired to return to their kingdoms, and although they were tired and weary of the great pressures and dangers they had confronted in the recent battles, they accepted the truth of what the emperor said to them. So, they responded by telling him that it would be best if there were some measure he could take to get her back; but, if not, they should all go immediately to the kingdom of Persia and destroy it completely: they should besiege the great city, invest it, and then take her out of there; or they should have their souls plucked from their bodies. Then they put their first measure into action. They decided to send Damsel Carmela, who once before took a message to that city—to King Armato's capital—where she was to tell him on the Christians' behalf, that if he gave them that duenna, in exchange, they would give him Radiaro, the soldan of Liquía. If he refused, Carmela was to tell him that they meant unmercifully to torch every corner of his kingdom, and that they would find the duenna no

[1] The Galiantas Islands (JJAS, JJF, and JV) are not identifiable in real geography. Gay. and SP have Galiantes. We prefer JJAS, JJF, and JV because they are the earlier editions.

matter how perfectly hidden she was. The damsel took with her two other damsels and four squires, set out to sea, and went to Forbidden Mountain. From there she sent one of the damsels to Ctesifonte to inform King Armato that she was going to bring a message from her lord the emperor and those great Christian knights. Also, her damsel was to ask the king, if he so pleased, to give them a safe-conduct pass so that she could carry out her mission.

At last, Carmela's damsel arrived before King Armato, and she told him what she was ordered to say. The king had given her the pass so that she could present herself to him and deliver her message. He was very distressed by events of the recent past, which turned out very differently from what he expected, and which included the death of Infante Alforax, who was killed in the battle. He himself escaped from the battle badly wounded by fleeing across the sea with the few followers of his who were left alive. He said to her:

"Tell your mistress that I guarantee her safety; also, she can come see me without any conditions, for, while I was a prisoner, she served me in many important ways. Therefore, I am in her debt and wish to repay her with very generous favors."

After receiving this answer from King Armato, the damsel returned very happily to Forbidden Mountain. As soon as Carmela was informed about the message her damsel brought back, she immediately departed with her entire retinue. Arriving in the great city of Ctesifonte, she told King Armato everything she was ordered to say by the emperor and the kings. She certainly left nothing out. The king, who, as has already been said, was very fearful for having lost so much of his seigniory, privately thanked his gods for letting him escape total destruction at the hands of those powerful princes in exchange for so little. Therefore, he sent a message telling Infanta Melía to give Urganda to him immediately, which she did. When Urganda was brought before him, he said:

"Carmela, is this the duenna you are requesting?"

"Correct," she answered.

Then he delivered Urganda to Carmela and said:

"I entrust her to you, and, because of you, I trust the soldan of Liquía will be sent to me."

"Have no fear about that," she said. "As soon as I arrive where he is, he will be sent wherever you wish. Now, order a palfrey brought for this duenna to ride."

The king ordered one of Infanta Heliaxa's brought to Urganda along with some very magnificent clothes, and he said to her:

"Take these clothes in payment for the jubbah you gave me; for you honored me even though I was a prisoner at the time. Fortune and its fortunate wheel willed that, when I was free and you were a prisoner, I could satisfy my debt to you. I do not mean to say that my gift is sufficient, for, seeing who I am, you were to be given gratitude, acknowledgment, and much more abundant favors. However, there is no time left for me to do so now."

"King," said Urganda, "in the face of the very great tribulation that I suffered until today in the ordeal of my imprisonment, I am bound to thank you

for whatever degree of mercy I may receive from your hands. However, you ought[1] to have dealt with me opportunely, which is something that all noble and virtuous kings are bound to do. If you received some small service from me when I was under no obligation to aid you, then you should have offered me a guerdon or shown gratitude at a time when you were constrained to do so by reason of virtue rather than necessity. Kings and grandees must measure their hearts and their spirits in proportion to their great estates so that the former are equal to the latter. Otherwise, their great authority, their large seigniories, and their fabulous wealth are of no avail if they intend to use them to achieve glory and fame. Oh king, assuming I did you some favor, how good it would have been in the eyes of all mortals if, having captured me by means of such a tremendous trick, you had guerdoned me by sending me from your kingdom, not because of my merits, but in conformity with who you are."

The king noticed that the damsel had not had any opportunity to address one word to Urganda, and he was amazed that, as she developed her speech, it seemed as if she knew about the whole affair.[2] Then he asked her:

"How do you know that I am constrained more by necessity than virtue?"

"I know," said Urganda, "because, at the moment I left that tower where I was held by an enchantment, at that very moment, all of my great wisdom returned with perfect clarity. Hence, it was suddenly revealed to me what message the emperor and the other great kings had sent you via the damsel."

"I ask you, Urganda," said King Armato, "to leave my presence so that I will not be tricked by you as you were by Infanta Melía."

"I shall do so," she said. "Therefore, I beg your leave."

Mounting the palfrey, she took Damsel Carmela with her and she went her way. When she arrived at Forbidden Mountain, she and those who were accompanying her boarded the Serpent Caravel, and in a short time she arrived in the port of Constantinople.

When the people saw that ship about to arrive, they notified the emperor, who happily imagined who was aboard. Then he took the kings with him and went to the seashore. Upon arriving, they saw Urganda and Carmela emerge from the ship and approach the shore in a boat: all the others took another boat. Esplandián approached them showing all the reverence and honor that befit his royal status. After greeting Urganda with joyful hearts, they decided

---

[1] All editions consulted attest *fuyste* [Gay., *fuiste*] *a tiempo de*. However, the sense seems to call for the preterite of *deber* (*debiste*) in order to yield the sense of our translation. Urganda is reproving Armato concerning his noble obligations (from *deber*) to her.

[2] Here we follow JJAS, JJF, and JV rather than Gay. and SP. The latter two make the last clause negative: *como si ella no lo supiese* (Gay.) [literally: as if she did not know about it]. JJAS, JJF, and JV have this: *como si lo ella supiesse*. The problem lies in what the neuter direct object pronoun *lo* [it] refers to. Does it refer to the possibility that Urganda does not know the damsel is there? This is not likely in light of the king's next question. If the pronoun anticipates his question, which is possible given GRM's flexible syntax, then there is a positively inverse relationship between the damsel speaking to Urganda and the latter's knowledge about the king's state of mind. Hence, our translation.

to lead her back to his palaces; but she told them not to be in a rush, because she wanted them to see the fulfillment of a prophecy. For their part, they were pleased to accede to her request; and they were also willing to wait for her because they were sure that something amazing was about to happen. Before long, the Great Serpentine Caravel began to move with such a great fury that everyone became very frightened. It moved about in this way for about half an hour, at the end of which time it submerged its head under the water; and likewise, the rest of its huge body was submerged never to appear again. After this happened, they saw a boulder or cliff float across the sea toward them. When it was very near them, a totally dishevelled and naked woman was exhibited to them standing on top of it; the only parts of her that were covered were those that would seem indecent if they were uncovered. Around her they saw a very large number of big and little snakes. After studying the boulder carefully, they realized it was the Enchantress Damsel's Crag. Then the cliff began to sink slowly,[3] and the snakes, fearing the water, went bounding around violently trying to find safety. Meanwhile, the damsel was yelling very loudly and pulling on her very long hair. This sight moved those señores who were watching her to pity her deeply: they wanted to jump on the ships in the harbor and try to rescue her, but Urganda said to them:

"Do not be so foolish, because your travail would be in vain."

Hearing this, they waited expectantly, and the cliff finished submerging completely, never to appear again.

While they were still marvelling over this adventure, they saw the same damsel come from the right across the sea and straight toward them. She was shouting, and behind her was a very large sea fish with its mouth open ready to devour her. As she was approaching them, she was saying at the top of her lungs:

"Emperor, rescue me; there is no one else who can succor me."

The emperor put his hand on his magnificent and enchanted sword and moved as fast as he could to rescue her. When she reached him, she locked both hands onto the sword's blade so hard that she wrenched it violently from his hand. Then, brandishing it, she returned to the sea and plunged with it below the surface with the sea fish following her. Upon seeing this, those kings were at first very astonished, and then they said to the emperor:

"It seems to us that you got the sword from a damsel and a damsel has taken it from you."

Then they laughed and joked and talked about how a naked woman had taken his sword from him. After this, they returned to his palaces, where Urganda was honored by the lavish reception given her by the empress and all the other queens and grand ladies. However, it is impossible to tell you what

---

[3] Here we follow JJAS, JJF, JV, and SP over Gay. and Naz. The first three have *sumir de vagar*; whereas Gay. and Naz. add a needless comma: *sumir, de vagar*. The problem is that *devagar* means slowly in Portuguese. Were this a Portuguese term it could be used to support a long-standing, but now unacceptable, thesis that the *Ur-Amadís* was Portuguese. However, DA reports that *vagar* can be used as a noun meaning slowness, pause.

Urganda's damsels did with her, including all the hugging and embracing and kissing her hands, all of which was accompanied by copious tears of joy. The soldan was sent back to King Armato very honorably.

181

How the Christian kings took leave of the emperor and returned to their kingdoms; and how Urganda the Unknown returned to Unfound Island.[1]

The kings spent another week there in order to honor Urganda. At the end of this time all of their things were packed in order to effect their voyages. After saying good-bye to the emperor and taking the wise woman Urganda with them, they boarded their ships, and with fair winds at times, and at others with foul winds, they reached their kingdoms. King Amadís found his very beloved queen very sad over the death of her mother Queen Brisena, who, after discovering that her husband King Lisuarte had departed from her, was filled with such overwhelming heartache, sorrow, and anguish that these feelings caused her soul to depart from her body. All of these emotions were doubled when Oriana heard[2] about her father's death. Urganda went to Unfound Island, where she rested for a long time and where her activities were left in a temporary state of cessation. The kings Don Galaor, Don Bruneo, and Cildadán; and the other grandees did the same thing.

182

How, after Esplandián the emperor
Conquered great Ctesifonte, the seat of greed,
And the queen, the infante's wife, was freed,
Norandel remained as the governor;
Then, returning with great glory and more
To Constantinople with his companions,
He dubs as knights two courageous champions
Who were sons of the noble Galaor.

In the meantime, Emperor Esplandián sent many of the crusading knights who had survived the past battles to King Norandel, who had established him-

---

[1] Urganda's Unfound Island is presented first in bk. II, chap. 59.

[2] Here we follow JJAS, JJF, and JV (. . . *cuerpo. Lo qual fue todo doblado quando supo* . . .) rather than Gay. and SP (. . . *cuerpo, lo cual fue todo doblado en saber* . . .) because the hidden subject of the subordinate clause in the latter version makes a needlessly obscure reading.

self on Forbidden Mountain with his beloved and very beautiful Queen Menoresa. He ordered Norandel to make war[1] immediately on King Armato, to destroy him and to burn as much of his kingdom as he could. This was carried out with such diligence and such cruelty that King Armato had no other recourse than to gather a large force and to come out and give Norandel a battle in which many were killed and wounded on both sides. Even though most of the knights I mentioned died in that war, and even though Norandel suffered many grave wounds, nevertheless, since he and they were all very valiant, King Armato and his entire army were vanquished. Moreover, he was so weakened that he never again dared return to a battlefield.

As soon as the emperor heard this news, he himself travelled to Persia, taking a host with him, and he set up a siege of the great city of Ctesifonte, because he thought that, once it was conquered, the rest would also fall without a fight. But King Armato, fearing that he would either be killed or captured, left the city before the siege was laid intending to go search for help. Meanwhile, however, the emperor took such precautions and he used all his forces so well that the city was taken within a few days. Then he had most of the people found in it put to the sword. Infanta Heliaxa was apprehended while weeping very bitterly and cursing her fortune, because it had been too cruel to her. The emperor took her with him, paid her the honor due her status, and consoled her most compassionately by saying that events of that kind seldom happened except to the men of high station against whose grandeur fortune could best vent its wrath. But, on the other hand, fortune's ire could find no lodging among lesser people. Then, recalling the promise he had given her when he apprehended her before, as the present story has told you, he gave her all of the great riches she possessed, many of which she sent to her father, King Anfión of Media.

After these events, those who were still in the kingdom knew both that Esplandián wished to continue the war and that their king had fled. Not daring to place their hope in such a notable and great city that Ctesifonte had been, they all surrendered to Esplandián, they turned their strongholds over to him,

---

[1] The term *guerra* [war] is used in the Amadís Cycle only toward the end of bk. V. This is significant because it shows GRM's conscious desire to have his mythical world of knight errantry evolve and meld into the real world. Until this point in the story, the chivalric vocabulary has reflected this fact. Battles, challenges, jousts, affronts, and the like have given way to war. Cov. takes pains to distinguish between *guerra* and *batalla* [battle]: "by war we understand the whole time during which there is no peace treaty; whereas a battle is a conflict or skirmish between one army and another." Furthermore, the use of the term makes manifest the change in Esplandián's identity. According to the notion expressed earlier that a change of name signals a change in identity, it is to be noted that the narrator makes a sudden shift in the approach to the hero when he becomes emperor of Constantinople. He is referred to almost exclusively as the Emperor or Emperor Esplandián. The few times that the simple name 'Esplandián' appears in the translation is in the service of stylistic variation necessary for a reasonably smooth contemporary English style. All of Esplandián's humility and boyishness are gone. It may also be possible to say that much of his humanity has vanished as the narrator moves him, the others characters, and the plot toward fictional and textual immortality.

and they became his vassals. Then, leaving King Norandel as governor of that large seigniory, Esplandián returned to Constantinople, where he was met by two very handsome infantes, one of whom was called Perión and the other Garínter.[2] They were the sons of King Galaor and his wife, the very beautiful Queen Briolanja, and they came to be dubbed as knights and to be sent to fight against the Turks. The emperor of Constantinople was very glad to meet them, and they were dubbed most honorably by his hand. Now that they had received that honor, they desired to go; but, finding that the war in those distant regions had ended, they begged the emperor to give them leave to travel to California Island, where Talanque and Maneli were making a heavy war on their neighbors and where they were winning vast and rich land. Although the emperor loved them very much and wished to keep them with him, he realized that there was no way for them to test their strength or the courage in their hearts if they remained in Constantinople, for there was no one left to fight. So, he gave them many suits of arms, many trappings for their horses, many other magnificent jewels, a very beautiful ship, and master mariners to sail it out of all danger. After embracing them and kissing them on their cheeks, he sent them on their way. Then, those knights arrived safely in those regions, where they performed many famous chivalric exploits, which this story will decline to narrate. The only thing you should know is that, after a while, Perión, who was the older of the two, returned to his father's kingdom, where he became king. But Garínter remained in those regions, where he married a very beautiful infanta named Heletria,[3] who was the señora of the Sitarias Islands. She fell in love with Garínter when she saw him win a battle against a fierce, strong giant, whom the young knight had sought on purpose and whom he had found where the infanta was. At that, she wished to know who he was; and when she was certain that he was the son of a king and a queen, she took him for her husband. Hence, those islands were ruled for a very long time by the descendents of those knights until distance and the passage of time made them fade away, which is what usually happens with all things temporal.

---

[2] Neither Garínter nor this Perión (consult the List of Characters in Appendix I for two others) appear in bks. I to IV.

[3] Neither Heletria nor her realm of the Sitarias Islands appear in bks. I to IV, nor do they coincide with known real geography.

How King Amadís, the good emperor,
Don Florestán, and brave King Galaor
Were summoned by Urganda the Unknown
To go to Firm Island, but not alone;
Once there–they were joined by some other knights–
The great lady sorceress addressed them first
And then the earth opened up with a burst:
There they stayed enchanted below the heights.

While Urganda was on Unfound Island, she discovered by means of her arts that death was approaching all of those kings and queens whom she loved most. Feeling it was a pity that such precious flesh as theirs would soon waste away in the possessive earth, she decided to apply the remedy which you are about to hear. She set out to sea accompanied by her nieces Julianda and Solisa[1] and other damsels, and she sailed until reaching Firm Island. From there, she sent a damsel to each of the following kings with a message begging them and their wives to come to Firm Island, for she had to speak to them urgently about several amazing matters: King Amadís; Emperor Esplandián; Don Galaor, king of Sobradisa; Don Florestán, king of Sardinia; Agrajes; and Grasandor, king of Bohemia. Also, she sent for Master Helisabad, asking him to bring everything he had written about Emperor Esplandián. In addition, she sent for Amadís's dwarf and Count Gandalín and his wife, the countess of Denmark. She was insistent that they not fail to do her bidding, and she wanted all of them to know for certain that, since she took the trouble to go to Firm Island, it was absolutely necessary for them to come. Otherwise, they would have to swallow death's bitter draught.[2]

When the emperor and the kings heard this message, they did not take it lightly. Therefore, both because of the message and because they wanted to meet again, they immediately collected their wives, set out to sea without further delay, and, in a short time, gathered around the great sorceress. As they were arriving, she no sooner saw them than her eyes filled with the kind of tears that come not from happiness but rather from great sadness and bitter-

---

[1] Solisa is Urganda's second principal damsel and her niece. She is Maneli's mother. She was referred to earlier in bk. V, but this is the first time she is mentioned by name. She appears in earlier bks., once in bk. II, and, most notably, in bk. IV, chap. 133, when she intervenes in the dubbing of Esplandián and the other novice knights.

[2] We follow JJAS, JJF, JV, and SP for the translation "death's bitter draught" [*trago de la cruel muerte*]. The same phrase will be found in chap. 184. However, it is worth noting that Gay. reports *trasgo* instead of *trago*. A *trasgo* is a sprite, imp, or goblin. GRM might have in mind an evil spirit that personifies death; however, DA and Cov. say that the term refers to a familiar evil spirit that wakes people at night by making strange noises, knocking over tables, and the like. The context of this passage seems to have in mind something much more fearful than a playful sprite. Therefore, we choose to follow the cited editions.

ness. Then she embraced them, and her eyes were transformed into two fountains. Such a large change in her puzzled them deeply and made them wonder what caused it; so they asked her if they could do something to cure her grief and copious tears. Without replying in any way, Urganda looked at them and began crying uncontrollably. Then a long period of time passed during which she was unable to speak to them. When she finally recovered her composure somewhat, she spoke to them with these words:

"Just as everything in the world was instituted by the Almighty Lord, so He ordained that living beings pass from this life into the obscurity of death, and He ordained that new beings replace them according to the nature of each. This law is so definite that it cannot be changed in any way until that great, predetermined and fearful day. For this reason, many of the ancients believed firmly that they could make themselves immortal by attempting immense travail and many battles in order to achieve very great fame. They did this even though they knew that, being mortal and earthly, their bodies would be reduced to dust. We have so many important and well-known examples of this that they can be passed over given the prolixity of this text. And I used my great magical[3] arts to discover that, just as in the past, no less in the present, your time is cut short by the same means. Knowing this, I want to repay the great debt I owe you for the boundless love of me that you imprinted in your hearts. Consequently, I wish you to show your virtuous obedience and subjection to me in what I intend to contrive now just as you showed them in abundance in all of the other challenges you faced with the bravest of hearts. With help from the mightiest Lord and my knowledge as one of His servants, you will now and through many ages be placed outside the natural order in a place where there will be no hope of returning to the world. You will be arranged so that you are seen in your most perfect beauty, in the fresh bloom of the age when you shone most brilliantly; and you shall be placed in the company of a very great and famous king and knight, who will come a very long time after you when he will reign over the great island of Britain. But if by chance my great knowledge fails to know for certain what the outcome will be of all I have told you, then I shall transport you to many places where you will be viewed with great wonderment by those whom I choose to observe and revere you."

Now then, dear señores,[4] I want to tell you that, although Emperor Es-

---

[3] Urganda dares use the term "magical" [*mágicas*] here for the first time in *Esplandián*. As a sign of things to come in the Spain that became repressed by the Inquisition that was nascent during the end of GRM's life, Cov. says this: "all who use magical arts are condemned and censured." Cov. adds that magic is the work of the devil. It is certain that GRM's text was relatively protected by having concluded the plot with a holocaust the Christian forces visit on the pagans at Constantinople in the climax to this work and in the kingdom of Persia in the anticlimax.

[4] The narrator is now using his voice called the Author. By apostrophizing his readers with the same term the noble characters use in addressing each other, he is dignifying and elevating us to a lordly level. He adopts this narrative tactic in order to link his fictional world concretely to the real world.

plandián and those great kings and queens possessed sufficiently stout hearts to confront that challenge, nevertheless, they were powerless to keep their bodies from trembling as they listened to Urganda tell them in very obscure terms that they were now facing the straits of death and that there was no way they could fight against it by force of arms. This reaction was truest of the very beautiful Empress Leonorina and the other queens who were with her. Then King Amadís said:

"My dear señora, much more than anyone else, and certainly more than we ourselves, you are able to perceive how surely your will is our command. Therefore, we yield and leave everything in your hands so that you can do with us whatever pleases you most, providing it does not harm our souls or honor."

Then the sorceress Urganda ordered brought before her all of their royal thrones, which emperors and kings usually carried with them in those days. The thrones were finely wrought, they were completely covered with gold, and they were studded with very many precious stones and very valuable pearls. This custom existed because, even though the highest noblemen might appear equal in their dress, they were not equal in what they sat on, because their chairs were invested with great authority. Moreover, whenever strangers entered royal palaces they would recognize the monarchs by their thrones even though they were not warned in advance. Then, Urganda had the chairs placed in the Defended Chamber and in an adjoining hall, about which you have already heard; she had them put on some magnificent arms that she brought them; and she asked them to be seated. Next, her two nieces, Solisa[5] and Julianda, entered. They were carrying golden washbowls full of water confected[6] with many herbs by Urganda before their arrival. Placing them[7] before the lords and ladies, she told them to wash their faces in that water. Being determined to fulfill her desire, they acquiesced and did what she asked. Without delay, the water worked its powers in such a way that it changed them into the appearance they had in the perfection of their youth when their radiant beauty shone most clearly. So complete was the transformation that they themselves marvelled at their incomparable beauty. Then Urganda took Master Helisabad with her—he was unchanged—and bade him sit on another chair, which was in a very beautiful chamber that adjoined the great hall. When he was seated, she put this book that he had written and arranged in his hands. Leaving there she took Count Gandalín; his wife, the countess of Denmark; and Ardián, Amadís's dwarf, to the palace where the Arch of Loyal Lovers was and where the statues of Apolidón and Grimanesa were

---

[5] JJF and JV spell this character's name Solisea.

[6] The Spanish term for confected is the archaism *confacionada* in Gay., JJAS, JJF, JV, and SP.

[7] The object pronoun for them (*las*) is feminine in Gay. and SP, which makes it refer to the two nieces. JJAS, JJF, and JV have a masculine pronoun (*los*) which refers to the washbowls. Both readings are possible, but the general context seems to support our translation, which we base on the earlier editions in this case.

found. After having them sit on a stone bench against the wall, she said:

"Just as faithful, true, and worthy lovers deserved to enter this place, so now, because you showed your masters unfailing loyalty and true love, I command and warn you never to leave here for any reason whatsoever."

After doing this, she returned to where the emperor and the other kings were. She took Damsel Carmela by the hand and said these words to her:

"Carmela, you were of humble origin, but your virtue and noble heart, which often make the lowly equal to those of the highest ranks, warrant having you placed at the emperors' feet. Another reason for you to be here is to allow this emperor to satisfy you by keeping his promise that you would never have to be separated or removed from his presence against your will."

Turning to all those lords and ladies, she begged them not to move from the seats where she left them under any conditions until her return. Then she left the palace, went to the garden, and climbed to the top of the high tower carrying with her four books: one was her own; one belonged to the great sorceress Medea; another was the Enchantress Damsel's; and the last one was Infanta Melía's. With her gray hair flowing down her back, Urganda was reading from those books, looking at the heavens, and turning to the four corners of the world so wildly that it seemed as if living tongues of fire were leaping from her eyes. While she was making signs with her fingers and saying terrible and frightening words, the island was quaking just like a ship in the deepest water of a wild sea, and she continued calling forth such tremendous thunder and lightening that it seemed as though the heavens would split asunder. At that moment, she tore the great alcázar and the site of the Lovers' Arch from the earth and held it aloft in the sky. Next, a vast opening was made in the earth, and she caused the whole mass to be plunged into the abyss, where all those great princes, deprived of their senses, remained guarded by the enchantments of the great sorceress Urganda. After many long ages passed, Morgan le Fay informed her that she had enchanted her brother Arthur of Britain. She also assured Urganda that he would come out of the enchantment and rule once again over his kingdom of Great Britain and that, at the same time, the emperor and those great kings who were with him would together restore the parts of Christendom that would be lost by Christian kings who were to come after them.[8]

---

[8] Contrary to those critics who see bk. V as GRM's thoroughgoing refutation of the *Ur-Amadís*, we see this cataclysmic episode as an appropriate conclusion to GRM's five-volume vision. On the one hand, it constitutes a nostalgic return to the mystico-magical realms of the Arthurian materials upon which he built his fictional world. On the other hand, it is clear that by entombing the characters oriented to the past *including Esplandián* in a vault in the earth, GRM semiotically buries the Breton material and he gives all of the dominant parts of the novel a closed ending. At the same time, however, in chap. 184 he gives the novel an open ending by extending the adventures of the children of the buried characters and of those who sail to New World islands. José Amezcua alludes to the complexity of the ending in these words: "Is this not a parable of what Montalvo did with the *Amadís* characters? The author thinks that in order not to die knights must change by adapting to new military tactics and to a new view of their goals. But paradoxi-

How the Author summarizes some of the things that occurred after those great emperors and kings were enchanted.

Now, in this space, I shall tell you that Emperor Esplandián left a son he had with his beloved wife, the empress of Constantinople, and whom he name Lisuarte out of the great affection he had for his grandfather. The boy was enchanted at eight years of age. King Amadís left a son and a daughter, named, respectively, Perión and Brisena; the girl was married to the eldest son of Arquisil, the emperor of Rome. Don Galaor, the king of Sobradisa, begot two sons on beautiful Queen Briolanja, one named Perión and the other Garínter, whom the story presented to you when they were dubbed knights by Emperor Esplandián's hand, after which they went to California Island. Don Florestán, king of Sardinia, had two children: one, named Florestán like his father, inherited his kingdom; and the other was named Parmineo the German, which was the name of his great-grandfather, the count of Selandia. Parmineo inherited the count's territory from his grandmother who was the count's daughter. Agrajes had two sons, the first named Languínez and the other Galménez.[1] King Don Bruneo had a son and a daughter. She was married to Don Cuadragante's son; the boy was called Vallados and the girl Elisena.[2] Don Cuadragante had only one son, whom he named after himself. King Cildadán had more sons and daughters: the oldest was named Abiés of Ireland[3] like his grandfather, whom Amadís killed when he was known as the Boy from the Sea. In addition, the mighty men of various kingdoms had other sons and daughters according to the natural order by which one generation follows another.

The Author has called this account to your attention in order to inform you that these young infantes, upon discovering how their parents were removed from the light of the world, continued to hope for their return, because they never swallowed death's draught. For this reason, the infantes never permitted themselves to be called emperors or kings. However, when they reached the perfect age, being grown and handsome and desiring to spend their time engaged in acts that would bring them great fame, they all decided

---

cally this change, like the enchantment wrought by Urganda, will entail an even more dreadful death, which is the suppression of chivalric adventure" (Amezcua, "La oposición," 337).

[1] We take the spelling of Agrajes' two sons' names from Gay., JJF, JV, and SP. JJAS has, respectively, Lauguinem and Galmenem, both of which appear to be obvious misspellings. In bks. I to IV, there are two characters called Languines [*sic*], one very minor, and the other is the king of Scotland.

[2] This Elisena has the same name as Garínter's (Lisuarte's father-in-law) daughter, and Vallados's name is similar to Bruneo's father's name, Valladas [*sic*].

[3] We stress Abiés's name according to CB. The episode of Amadís killing Abiés's grandfather is found at the beginning of the Amadís Cycle in bk. I, chap. 9.

to meet and go to Ireland together, where they were dubbed knights by the hand of King Cildadán, whose many days had brought him to exceeding old age. After returning to their seigniories, they pondered past times, when their fathers sought challenging adventures and achieved great feats of arms. By contrast, these young knights realized that all of that had vanished from the age in which they lived; but they still did not know what to do or how to demonstrate their great strength. Having naturally fiery temperaments, they felt so much zeal that their hearts were about to burst out of their chests. By common agreement, they decided to resuscitate the former, forgotten times and to return to the original ways, wandering throughout their own and foreign lands as knights errant. And this is what they put into practice.[4]

Since the young men's hearts were so uplifted by this burning desire, and since there were so many of them, they were involved in so many great knightly deeds that, in comparison, their fathers' were largely forgotten. I do not say that the challenges faced by the young knights were harder or more dangerous, because nothing could surpass their fathers' adventures in violence or ferocity. Nor should you think that Talanque, Maneli the Prudent, or Garínter in their regions were involved in any lesser deeds, or that their show of prowess in deeds of arms and love were any easier. Moreover, a great sage who was learned in all the world's arts wrote a very charming book about their deeds of high chivalry, and he sent it to Emperor Esplandián. However, when it arrived in his empire, he was not there, but rather, his son Lisuarte was. This was the sage's explanation: it seems that while Talanque was on California Island, he commanded a great fleet to be raised to conquer another island, which was known as Argalia.[5] Meanwhile, his wife Queen Calafía observed the laws of modesty that applied both to her and to her husband: she did this by wearing feminine garb from the time she was married and by letting it seem that he was the head and master in everything. Upon seeing so many people gathered together, she coveted being included in that voyage of

---

[4] As we indicated in the Introduction, *Esplandián* is a major, and often direct, source for *Don Quixote*. For example, at the very beginning of the opening chap. of Cervantes' novel, the narrator says that Don Quixote went crazy and decided to become a knight errant: "both in order to increase his honor and to serve his republic it was necessary to become a knight errant, to go throughout the world with his arms and his horse seeking adventures and doing what he had read knights errant did" (*Don Quixote*, ed. Vicente Gaos, vol. 1, 59–60). Another dimension of the similarities between this paragraph in chap. 184 and *Don Quixote* is the fact that both narrators predicate the actions of their characters on the notion that the glorious chivalry of the past had been lost and needed resurrecting. The form of the resurrection differs diametrically, but it does not negate the parallelism. Beyond that, there is a noteworthy prophetic dimension to the open-ended projection of knightly action in GRM's novel that uncannily prefigures the discoveries and conquests in all of the real and imaginary Californias that Spain's conquistadors were realizing around the globe in the decades following the writing of this chap. In this regard, the use of the term 'conquest' a few lines below must be read in terms of American conquistadors rather than the Amadisian battles of bks. I to IV, or Esplandián's in bk. V—with the notable exception of his last, brutal *conquista*.

[5] Argalia does not appear in bks. I to IV, nor is it locatable in real geography.

conquest; therefore, she begged her husband Talanque to allow her once again to take up arms with her women, and to take them with him. He willingly accepted her request because he loved her deeply. After arriving at Argalia Island they had large battles and heavy combat against the islanders, and the queen and her women performed marvellous feats of arms. But, in the end, unable to withstand the valor of Talanque and his forces, the beleaguered islanders all surrendered. Besides winning a seigniory, which was very large, the conquerors won very great riches.

Well then, while Talanque and his people were on that island, they heard that the great sage was traversing the mountains and the rugged terrain, and in his train were many fierce and wild animals,[6] all of which he had tamed by means of his great wisdom. Conceiving a strong desire to see him, Talanque and the queen decided to go together to search for him. They found him as I have told you, but they did not dare approach until he assured them that his very frightening menagerie was safe. After greeting him and telling him who they were, they begged him very earnestly to return to their palaces with them, which he did. While he was there, they toiled hard getting him to agree to let them send him to the emperor of Constantinople, where he would be shown high honors. He told them that, although he had never left that island, he could use his powerful arts to learn all there was to know about that emperor and all others in the world; in short, he was pleased to carry out their command. However, when he arrived in that region, he would find[7] everything changed from the way it had been when Talanque and the others left it: there were new people with new customs and new masters. When they first saw him, a goal they had all harbored would suddenly germinate, for, throughout the world, news circulated about his desire to take the trouble to set down in writing both everything they would do and also whatever works he might effect by means of his great wisdom. This wise man arrived in those regions just as I am telling you, and there he did so many very amazing things that nothing done by Urganda the Unknown, nor Infanta Melía, nor the Enchantress Damsel was ever remotely equal to them, which will be demonstrated by the aforementioned book when it appears.

Here ends *The Labors of Esplandián*, son of the daring and virtuous knight Amadís de Gaula, the likes of whose labors were never seen before and which were corrected and translated by the honorable knight García Gutiérrez de Montalvo, the alderman from Medina del Campo who likewise corrected and emended the four books of Amadís. This book was printed in the imperial city of Toledo by Juan de Villaquirán, book printer. The work was completed on the eighth of May in the year of our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ, fifteen twenty-one.

[Amadys the very handsome / neither rain nor wind storms / did he find too rough / because he was loyal and famous: / you will find his deeds and you will pray / that God give him a holy rest.]